





**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1982**

# Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- ☒ Additional comments:/  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- ☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

Irregular pagination: [1] - 502, 499, 504, 628, 625 - 765 p.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

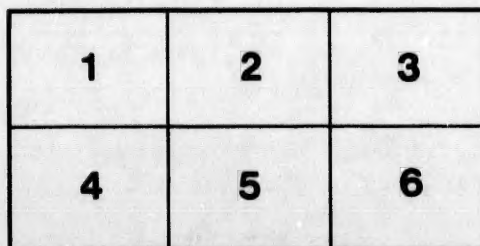
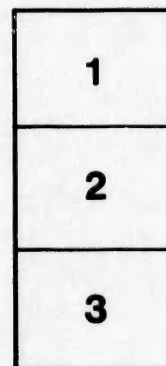
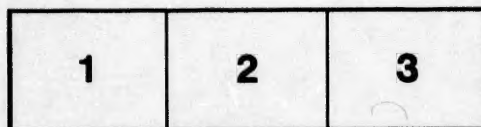
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol ➡ (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole ➡ signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

errata  
to  
t  
e pelure,  
on à

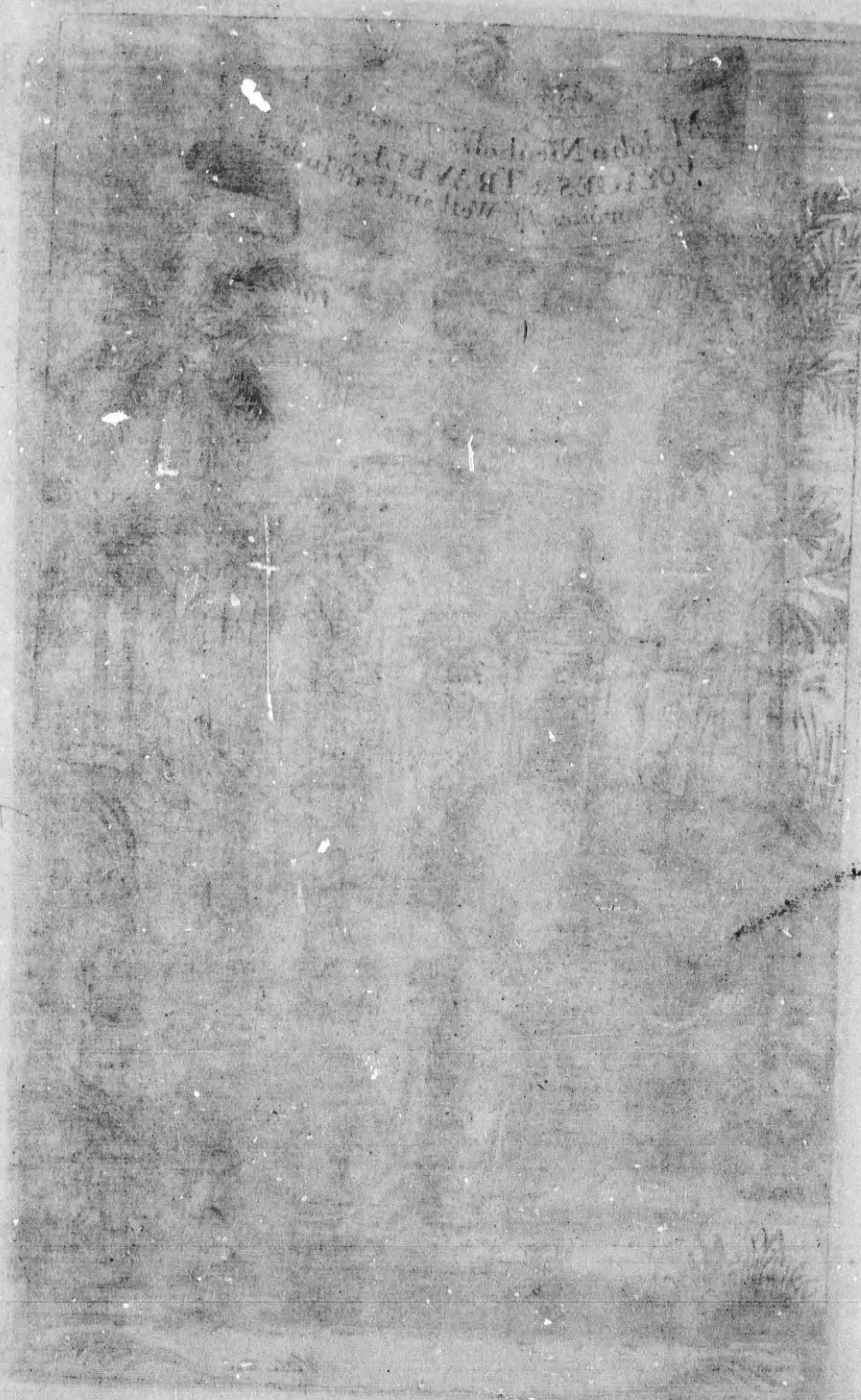


*The Effigies of M<sup>r</sup>. Jn. Nieuhoff.*



Vol. II.





For  
at  
for  
at  
Jo  
an  
Fl



A  
COLLECTION  
OF

Voyages and Travels,

SOME

Now first Printed from *Original Manuscripts*,

OTHERS

Now first Published in ENGLISH.

In Six VOLUMES.

With a General PREFACE, giving an Account of the  
Progress of NAVIGATION, from its first Beginning.

---

Illustrated with a great Number of useful Maps and Cuts,  
Curiously Engraven.

---

VOL. II

---

L O N D O N :

Printed by Assignment from Mess<sup>rs</sup>. CHURCHILL,

For JOHN WALTHOE, over-against the *Royal-Exchange*, in *Cornhill*; THO. WOTTON,  
at the *Queen's-Head* and *Three Daggers* over-against *St. Dunstan's Church*, in *Fleet-  
street*; SAMUEL BIRT, in *Ave-Mary-Lane*, *Ludgate-street*; DANIEL BROWNE,  
at the *Black-Swan*, without *Temple-Bar*; THOMAS OSBORN, in *Gray's-Inn*;  
JOHN SHUCKBURGH, at the *Sun*, next the *Inner-Temple-Gate*, in *Fleetstreet*;  
and HENRY LINTOT, at the *Cross-Keys*, against *St. Dunstan's Church*, in  
*Fleetstreet*. M DCC XXXII.

66

# COLLECTION

Notes and Observations

on the

History of the

State of

the

of

the

the

the

the

# THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

<b>M</b> R. John Nieuhoff's remarkable voyages and travels in- to Brazil, and the best parts of the East-Indies. Tran- slated out of Dutch.	Page 1
<i>The true travels and adventures of captin John Smith, into Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, from the year 1592, to 1629.</i>	329
<i>Two journals: The first kept by seven sailors, in the isle of S. Maurice in Greenland, in the years 1633, and 1634, who pass'd the winter, and all died in the said island. The second, kept by seven other sailors, who in the years 1633, and 1634, winter'd at Spitzbergen. Done out of Low Dutch.</i>	369
<i>A true and short account of forty two persons, who peris'd by shipwreck near Spitzbergen, in the year 1646. Out of Low Dutch.</i>	381
<i>An account of Ifeland, sent to monsieur de la Mothe de Vayer, by la Peyrere. Done out of French.</i>	383
<i>An account of Greenland, to monsieur de la Mothe de Vayer, by la Peyrere. Done out of French.</i>	399
<i>Captain Thomas James's strange and dangerous voyage in his intended discovery of the north-west passage into the South- Sea, in the years 1631, and 1632, with many curious Ob- servations.</i>	429
<i>An account of two voyages: The first of Feodor Iskowitz Backhoff, the Muscovite envoy, into China: The second, of Mr. Zachary Wagener, through a great part of the world into China. Translated from the High Dutch.</i>	489
<i>The life of Christopher Columbus, and the history of his dis- covery of the West-Indies; written by his own son, D. Fer- dinand Columbus. Translated from the Italian.</i>	501
	Pyrami-

## THE CONTENTS.

**Pyramidographia: Or, A description of the Pyramids in Egypt:**  
*By John Greaves, professor of Astronomy at Oxford; with  
additions of his own.* Page 625

**A discourse of the Roman Foot and Denarius, from whence,  
as from two principles, the measures and weights used by the  
ancients, may be deduced. By the same John Greaves.** 673

**An account of Cochin-China; in two parts: The first treats  
of the temporal state of that kingdom: The second, of what  
concerns the spiritual. By the R. F. Christopher Borri, of  
the society of Jesus. Translated from the Italian.** 721

## VOYAGES

in Egypt:  
rd; with  
Page 625  
whence,  
ed by the  
es. 678  
st treats  
of what  
Borri, of  
721

---

V O Y A G E S  
AND  
T R A V E L S  
INTO  
B R A S I L  
AND THE  
E A S T - I N D I E S.

CONTAINING,

An exact Description of the *DUTCH BRASIL*, and divers  
Parts of the *EAST-INDIES*; their PROVINCES, CITIES,  
LIVING CREATURES, and PRODUCTS; the MANNERS,  
CUSTOMS, HABITS, and RELIGION of the INHABITANTS:

WITH

A particular ACCOUNT of all the remarkable Passages that happened  
during the Author's stay of nine Years in *BRASIL*; especially in Relation  
to the REVOLT of the *Portuguese*, and the intestine War carried on there from  
1640, to 1649.

AS ALSO

A most ample Description of the most famous City of *BATAVIA* in the *East-Indies*. By Mr. *JOHN NIEUHOFF*.

Both adorned with *COPPER PLATES*, done after the Life. Translated from the  
*Dutch Original*.

---

## ADVERTISEMENT to the READER.

**I**T is about nineteen years since my brother, John Nieuhoff, just before his second voyage into the Indies, presented me with his description of China, and certain draughts he had made during his embassy in that empire, which being afterwards published, were soon after translated into six several languages.

My brother had, before that time, not only been in Brasil, and several other places in those parts, but also since that time, has had the opportunity of travelling through a great part of Asia, till 1671. when returning into Holland, he brought along with him all his papers, observations, and draughts, he had collected during his voyages; which, though much coveted by all curious persons, yet, for some reasons best known to himself, he did not think fit to commit to publick view.

But, after his decease, considering with myself, that such useful collections ought not to be buried in oblivion, I thought fit to publish them for the publick good.

As those things which he relates of the revolt of the Portuguese in Brasil, are extracted verbatim out of the records kept during my brother's abode of nine years in Brasil, under the government of the lords, Henry Hamel, Peter Bas, and Adrian Bullestrate, and authentic letters; so the truth thereof admits not of the least doubt from unbiass'd persons.

The vast countries through which my brother travell'd in his life-time, as Brasil, part of Persia, Malabar, Madura, Coromandel, Amboyna, Ceylon, Malacca, Sumatra, Java, Tagowan, and part of China, besides many islands, could not in the least infect him with that disease, so incident to travellers, to relate fables instead of histories, it having been his constant practice, to adhere most religiously in all his treatises, to the naked truth, without the least disguise.

His last voyage to the isle of Madagascar, where he was lost, I have taken partly out of his own letters, partly out of the journal of captain Reinard Claefon, which he brought along with him from thence.

As to his person, I will only add thus much: He was born at Uffen, in the earldom of Benthem, (where his father, brother, and brother-in-law, were all three Burgomasters) of a good family, the 22<sup>d</sup> of July 1618. He was a comely person, of a good understanding, good humour'd, and agreeable in conversation; a great admirer of poetry, drawing, and musick: As he delighted in travelling, so he was thereby become master of divers languages: In what station he lived during his abode in Brasil, and the East-Indies, will best appear by the two following treatises.

HENRY NIEUHOFF.



ER.

second voyage  
ought to be had  
I, were soon

places in those  
great part of  
his papers,  
much coveted  
it fit to com-

ought not to be

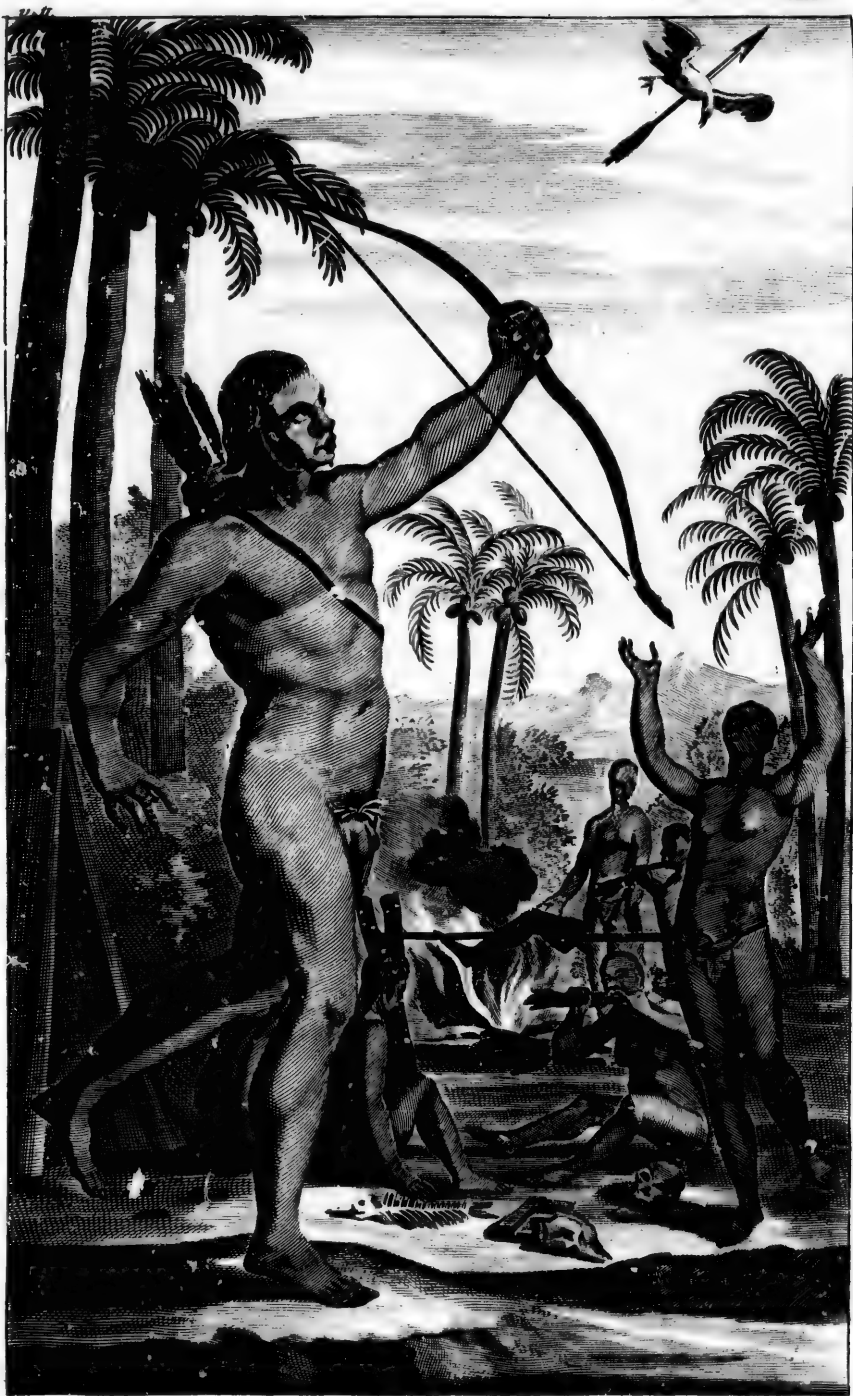
are extracted  
I, under the  
and authen-

isil, part of  
atra, Java,  
I him with  
ng been his  
without the

erily out of  
ought along

earldom of  
asters) of a  
nding, good  
nd musick:  
: In what  
by the two

HOFF.



*A Brazilian*

*p.3.*

*1.*

1640.

*His departure out of Holland.*

*A violent storm.*

**I** abo-  
gun-  
las  
of t  
seve  
and  
the  
the  
C  
mol  
take  
from  
the  
four  
con  
nue  
nex  
wo  
othe  
the  
C  
the  
nex  
som  
the  
tha  
ship  
but

## Mr. JOHN NIEUHOFF's

REMARKABLE

## VOYAGES

AND

## TRAVELS

TO

## BRASIL.

1640. **I**N the year 1640, I entred into the service of the *West-India* company, and on the 24<sup>th</sup> of *October*, went in the quality of merchant supercargo, aboard the ship called the *Roebuck*, of 28 guns and 130 men, commanded by *Nicholas Selles* of *Durkendam*. We set sail out of the *Texel* the same day, in company of several other vessels bound for *France*, *Spain* and the *Streights*; and pursued our voyage the 28<sup>th</sup> with a favourable gale through the channel betwixt *France* and *England*.

His departure out of Holland.

A violent storm.

On the 29<sup>th</sup> we were overtaken with a most violent tempest, which obliged us to take in all our great sails: It continued from morning to night, when the fury of the winds being somewhat allay'd, we found that we had escaped without any considerable damage; but the sea continued very turbulent all that night. The next day following our seamen catch'd a wood snipe, a wild pidgeon, and several other small birds; which were forc'd into the sea by the violence of the storm.

On the 31<sup>st</sup> we found ourselves under the 45<sup>th</sup> degree of northern latitude. The next morning being the first of *November*, some of our seamen catch'd a sea-hog by the means of a harpoon: It was so big, that four men could scarce lift it into the ship. It's taste was not very agreeable, but rankish, which was the reason our men

did not catch any more of them, though they swam in vast numbers round about our vessel. By sun-set the wind beginning to encrease, we parted from the other ships, bound for *Spain* and the *Streights*, which were not separated from us in the last storm, steering our course south-west. The 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> it blew very hard, with thunder and lightning, so that we were forc'd to take in all our great sails, and the ship being very leaky ever since the last tempest, to ply the pump with all our night.

Another most violent storm.

The 4<sup>th</sup> we found ourselves under the 40 deg. 30 min. when about midnight the wind encreased with so much violence, that the air which surrounded us, appearing no otherwise than one continual fire, occasion'd by the lightning, which scarce ever ceas'd all that night. During this calamity we perceived certain small fires or lights fix'd to the mast: They are called *Peaceable's fires* by the seamen. These fires are suppos'd to be certain sulphureous vapours, forc'd by the violence of the winds from the shore into the sea, where being lighted by the violent agitation of the air, they burn till their oily substance be consumed. The seamen look upon them as a good omen, that the storm is going to abate; which prov'd true in effect, the fury of the winds beginning to allay from that

Wild-fire.

that time; and we had the good fortune to discover two leaks near our fore-castle, which else might have prov'd of dangerous consequence.

They pass  
the Bar-  
rels.

The 5<sup>th</sup> we pass'd the *Barrels*, under the 39<sup>th</sup> degree; where according to an antient custom, every one, of what quality or degree soever, that has not pass'd there before, is obliged to be baptized, or redeem himself from it. He that is to be baptized, has a rope tied round his middle, wherewith he is drawn up to the very top of the bowsprit, and from thence three times successively tumbled into the water. There were some who look'd very blank upon the Matter, but others went cheerfully about it, and for a measure of *Spanish* wine, suffered themselves to be rebaptized for the master and the merchant. But this custom is abolished of late years, by special orders from the governors of the company, to avoid broils and quarrels, which used often to arise upon this occasion.

They dis-  
cover two  
'Turkish  
vessels.

Prepar-  
ed for an en-  
gagement.

The 6<sup>th</sup>, as we were steering our course *S. S. W.* with a fresh gale, we descried two vessels, making all the sail they could towards us, whom we supposed to be *Turkish* pirates (as indeed they proved afterwards) it was resolv'd to defend us till the utmost extremity. Accordingly orders were given to clear every thing upon the deck, and to furnish the seamen with musquets, hangers, pikes, and other such like weapons. Every one having taken his station, we put up the bloody flag, and expected their coming under the found of our trumpets. The master of the ship, being all that time very ill of some wounds he had received formerly, which were now broken up afresh; and the commissary *Francis Zeevers*, not being in a condition, by reason of his great age, to remain upon deck, I was fain to undertake the whole management of the ship, and encouraged them to fight bravely for their lives and liberty, ordering them not to fire at all, till they were in their full reach, they being much better mann'd than we.

An en-  
gagement  
with two  
'Turkish  
rovers.

About noon we saw the *Turks* make up towards us with orange-colour'd flags, which however they soon after changed for the bloody flags, and the biggest of them saluted us with two cannon shot out of his fore-castle, without doing us the least harm, but the second time almost shot our fore-mast in pieces. In the mean while we were come so near to one another, that we sent them a good broadside into their ship, which the *Turks* repay'd us immediately; but it was not long before we observ'd the biggest of the two had received a shot betwixt wind and water, which made her keep at some farther distance, till she had

repaired her damage, which gave me opportunity to encourage our people with words, and a good proportion of wine; which they mix'd with some gunpowder, and I, to please them, followed their example.

By this time they returned both to the charge, and saluted us so fiercely with their cannon and small shot, that they took away the roof of our great cabin, and did us some damage in our rigging. I then changed my scimeter for a musquet, and discharged continually upon the enemy, and I found myself sore several weeks after, by the hurt I received from a musquet of one that stood hard by me, which being by a cannon ball forced out of his hands against my body, I fell down stretch'd all along upon the deck, without sense or motion; but having after some time recovered myself, I returned to my post. I then perceived the captain of the biggest *Turkish* ship with a turbant on his head, in the stern, encouraging his men, which made me order those about me, to aim at him with their small shot, which, as I suppose, succeeded according to our hopes, it being not long before we lost sight of him. Notwithstanding this, the heat of the fight increased on both sides, many broadsides passing betwixt us, accompanied with most dreadful outcries and lamentations of the wounded on both sides. However, the *Turks* durst not attempt to board us; whether it were that they thought us better mann'd than really we were, or that they feared we would set fire to the ship, which we threaten'd we would, shewing them a match ready for that purpose. They answered us in *Dutch*, that they would not part with us upon those terms; yet was it not long before we saw them make away from us, having received many shots thro' their ships; and we with a brisk gale, made all the sail we could to be rid of these unwelcome guests, steering a quite different course, which with the advantage of the darkness of the night, brought us quite out of sight of them by next morning.

The *Turks*  
leave the  
fight.

We gave thanks to God for his having delivered us from the danger of slavery, and crowning our endeavours with success against an enemy much stronger than us, the biggest of them carrying twenty-four guns, and the other two; whereas we had no more than eighteen, besides that they were much better mann'd than we. After having taken a view of our ship, and found it sound under water, we betook ourselves to repair the damage we had received during the fight; but whilst we were busy in this work, we were on the 7<sup>th</sup> surprized by so violent a storm, that we were forced to take

Trav-  
elers.

They catch  
abundance  
of fish.

1640. take in all our sails. This put us to a great nonplus, but by good fortune the storm blew soon over, when orders were given to give an Allowance of three pounds and a half of biscuit *per week* to the seamen, all our other bread being become musty by that time. The 10<sup>th</sup> we found ourselves under the 39<sup>th</sup> deg. and 30 min. about 20 leagues off the *Canary Islands*; here we discovered the pike of *Tenariff*, being two leagues and a half high, and accounted the highest mountain in the world. It may be discovered at 60 leagues distance from the shore. Thus we continued our voyage till the 14<sup>th</sup>, without any memorable accident, when we passed the tropick of *Cancer*. About noon we were overtaken by another storm, which made us take in most of our great sails, for fear of the worst, but it lasted not long.

This tract of the sea is called by the *Dutch*, the *Kroos Sea*; by the *Portuguese*, *Mar del Aragaco* (or *Largaco*, or *Suargaco*) i. e. *The Sea of Ducks-meat*, because hereabouts, viz. from the 18<sup>th</sup> to the 30<sup>th</sup> degree, or as some will have it, from the 20<sup>th</sup> to the 22<sup>d</sup> and 23<sup>d</sup> degree of northern latitude, it is found in great quantity, and carried along with the stream: Its leaves are of a pale green colour, like that of parrots, small, thin and carved at the end. It bears berries of the same colour, about the bigness of a pepper corn, that are quite hollow, without any seed within or taste. It is sometimes so closely twisted together, that it stops a ship in its full course; tho' we had the good fortune to pass thro' it without much difficulty, being then about 400 leagues from the coast of *Africk*, where are no islands nor anchorage. It may be pickled with salt and pepper, and used like as we do capers, being accounted a good remedy against the gravel. It is generally found without roots, having only a few thin sprouts, which, as it is supposed, take root in the sandy grounds of the sea; tho' others are of opinion, that it is carried by the violence of the stream from the islands into the sea.

The 18<sup>th</sup>, one of our ships crew died, who was the next day thrown overboard, at which time I observed, what indeed I had heard often before, that the dead carcasses always float with their heads to the east at sea.

The 22<sup>d</sup> we were overtaken by another tempest, called *Travado*, which with horrible thunder and lightning surprizes the ships so suddenly, that they have scarce leisure to take in their sails, and sometimes returns three times in an hour. We catch'd here abundance of fish, such as *Bonytes* of ten foot long, and *Korets*, and a great

lamprey, which we had enough to do to bring aboard; we only took out the brains, being look'd upon as a sovereign remedy against the stone in the bladder, the flesh being of an oily taste.

The 24<sup>th</sup> we saw great quantities of small birds about our vessel, and catch'd one not unlike a crane, but somewhat smaller, it being a very fair day.

The 26<sup>th</sup>, being under the fifth degree, 47 minutes, we were so becalmed that we could not perceive the ship to move, and spent our time in catching of fish, of which we had such plenty, that we chose only the best for our eating; among the rest we met with a fish called the *king's-fish*: For by reason of the impenetrable depth of the sea in this place, the waters are so clear and transparent in still weather, that you may see the fish in vast numbers swimming near two feet deep; so that you need but fasten a crooked nail or any thing else like a hook to a string, and hanging it in the sea, you may catch as many fish as you please. This calm was followed by a most violent storm of rain.

The 30<sup>th</sup> we found ourselves under the fourth degree, 41 minutes, where we saw abundance of *flying fish*.

The 3<sup>d</sup> of *December* we came under the first degree, 30 minutes, where we met with millions of fish, and did catch as many as we thought fit: Some we put in salt, others we rubbed in the belly with pepper and salt, and hung them up by the tail in the sun.

The 4<sup>th</sup>, by break of day, being very clear weather, we saw the island of *St. Paulo*, as it is called by the *Portuguese*, which at a distance represents a sail, which as you approach nearer to it, proves five high rocks. About noon we found ourselves at 53 minutes of northern latitude, taking our course five leagues to the west. Here at several times we catch'd some sea-gulls; those birds make a shew as if they would bite you, but remain unmoveable in the place, till they are caught or kill'd.

The 5<sup>th</sup>, about eleven a clock we pass'd the equinoctial line, so that in the afternoon we found ourselves at five minutes southern latitude, where we had but little reason to complain of cold; it being often so calm here, that ships are forced to spend a considerable time in passing this tract. It is extremely hot here, and great scarcity of good and sweet water, the rain water being not wholesome, but causing the scurvy, by reason of its being corrupted by the violent heat of sun.

About three years after my arrival in *Brasil*, a certain *Portuguese* ship was found adrift under the equinoctial line, without

C

any

They discover the island of St. Paulo.

The Turks leave the fight.

Travado, what.

They catch abundance of fish.

Vol. II.

1643.

They pay  
the Equi-  
noctial  
Line.

any living creature in it, which according to the journal, had been six whole weeks under the line. We had a very good passage, and caught abundance of fish, and among the rest a certain fish called the *Blower*, which swallow a considerable quantity of water in their guts, and then at once spout it forth again. They will follow the ships for a long time.

The 8<sup>th</sup> we passed by the isle called *Iba Ferdinando de Neronba*; it being very serene weather, we saw vast numbers of birds, and whole shoals of flying fish, which were followed by the *Bonytes* and *Korets*.

The Isle of  
Ferdinan-  
do.

The island of *Ferdinando de Neronba*, situated under the fourth degree of southern latitude, about fifty leagues from the coast of *Brasil*, was about the year 1630. inhabited by the *Dutch*, but by reason of the vast numbers of rats, which consumed all the fruits of the earth, deserted by them a few years after; it being otherwise a very fruitful island, and abounding with fish, the inhabitants of *Recief* being used to send their fisherboats thither, which return commonly well freighted with fish. The council of *Brasil* did afterwards send a certain number of negroes thither, under the conduct of one *Gellis Vepant*, to cultivate the ground for their subsistence, who likewise stayed there for some time. About a year and a half after, the council of justice banished several malefactors into that island, who being furnished with necessary instruments for cultivating the ground, were forced to seek for their subsistence there.

The 11<sup>th</sup> at night we found ourselves under the seventh degree, over against the province of *Goyana*, about twenty leagues on this side of *Olinda*; with break of day we saw the shore of *Brasil*, but kept out at sea till it was broad day.

The 12<sup>th</sup> it was very foggy, and we kept our course with fair wind and water all along the coast, and arrived before noon safely near the *Recief*, where we cast our anchor at several fathoms depth, after we had spent seven weeks and one day in the voyage.

Their Ar-  
rival in  
Brasil.

After we had returned our thanks to God for his deliverance from the dangers of the sea, and slavery of the *Turks*; I went ashore the same night with the master and commissary in a boat, to notify our happy arrival, and to deliver a letter to count *Maurice*, and the governor of the council. I continued ashore that night, but returned aboard the next day. And,

The 15<sup>th</sup> the pilots conducted our vessel into the harbour of the *Recief*, where we found twenty-eight vessels and two yachts lying behind the *Water Castel*.

1643.

Towards the latter end of August 1643, I received orders from the council to sail

with the yacht called the *Sea-Hog*, laden with fullers-earth to the isle of *St. Thomas*, to exchange it for black sugar, this being the chief commodity transported from thence. My voyage proved fortunate enough, not meeting with any sinister accident, except with a violent tempest of thunder, lightning, and rains, and came the 9<sup>th</sup> of September at an anchor there; the cargo did bear no good price, yet after a stay of fourteen days, I returned with a cargo of black sugar to *Brasil*, where I arrived the 3<sup>d</sup> of October before the *Recief*, after a voyage of near three months.

The isle of *St. Thomas* is of a circular figure, about thirty-six leagues in compass, the high mountains in the midst of that island are always covered with snow, notwithstanding that in the low grounds, by reason of its situation under the line, it is excessive hot. It is very fertile in black sugar and ginger; the sugar-fields being continually moistened by the melted snow that falls down from the mountains. There were at that time above sixty sugar mills there, but the air is the most unwholesome in the world, no foreigner daring to stay so much as one night ashore, without running the hazard of his life; because by the heat of the sun beams such venomous vapours are drawn from the earth, as are unsupportable to strangers. This fog continues till about ten a clock in the morning, when the same is dispersed, and the air cleared, which made us always stay aboard till after that time. This mist is not observed at sea.

The Island  
of St. Tho-  
mas.

The air here is very hot and moist throughout the year, except in the summer about June, when the south-east and south-west winds abate much of the heat of the climate. The vapours drawn up by the sun, occasion certain epidemical intermittent fevers, which carry off the patient in a few days, with excessive pains in the head, and violent torments in the bowels; though some attribute it to the immoderate use of women, and of the juice of *Coco's*. Certain it is, that among a hundred foreigners, scarce ten escape with life, and those seldom live till fifty years of age; though some of the inhabitants, as likewise the negroes (who are all lousy here) live to a great age. Its first inhabitants were *Jews*, banished out of *Portugal*; they are of a very odd complexion. Among the mountains dwell abundance of negroes, who are run away from the *Portuguese*, and make sometimes excursions to the very gates of the city of *Pavaofa*. It is almost next to a miracle, that any people should inhabit so unwholesome a climate; but that the hopes of lucre makes all danger easy.

The city of *Pavaofa*, belonging to this island

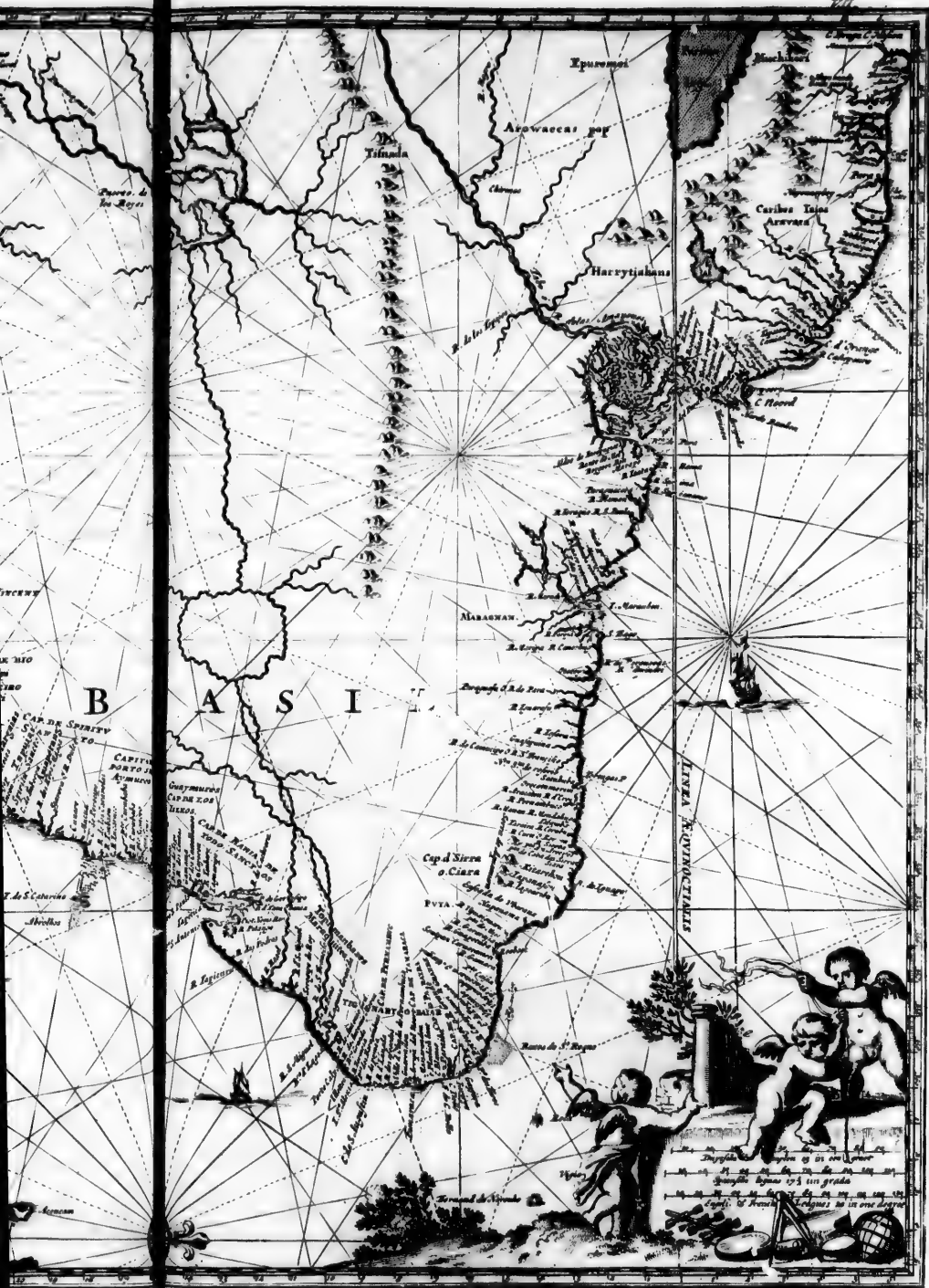


-Hog, laden 1643,  
of St. Thomas,  
ar, this being  
ported from  
fortunate e-  
sinister acci-  
pest of thun-  
d came the 9<sup>th</sup>  
; the cargoe  
fter a stay of  
h a cargoe of  
I arrived the  
fter a voyage

a circular fi-  
in compass;  
dft of that i-  
snow, not-  
grounds, by  
the line, it is  
in black fu-  
ls being con-  
ed snow that  
ins. There  
y sugar mills  
unwholsome  
ng to stay so  
out running  
by the heat  
vapours are  
supportable  
es till about  
en the same  
red, which  
ll after that  
d at sea.  
ist through-  
mmer about  
l south-west  
the climate.  
n, occasion  
evers, which  
ys, with ex-  
violent tor-  
ne attribute  
men, and  
is is, that  
arce ten e-  
m live till  
of the in-  
s (who are  
n. Its first  
out of For-  
omplexion.  
undance of  
the Portu-  
fions to the  
It is al-  
ny people  
a climate;  
es all dan-  
ng to this  
land

*The Island  
of St. Tho-  
mas.*





a

c

b

fo

bu

ve

w

an

lia

co

ha

Pa

ye

the

to

fil

upo

for

the

stre

Nie

I

L

nada

Flor

ico,

choa

bask

Kuli

Ania

Guau

Hono

ragu

T

form

to th

streig

of for

upon

to th

circu

or on

the p

called

Karib

west

inland

Bro

ro Kaj

Ameri

He g

was a

into t

same

quantit

First Dif-  
ference of  
Latitude

1643. island, is situate upon a rivulet; it contains about eight hundred houses, and three churches. This city, as well as the whole land, was 1641, October 16, conquered by the admiral Cornelius Tel, after a siege of forty days, without any considerable loss; but both he and his lieutenant, as well as several other commanders and many seamen, were swept away by this pestilential air; and of three hundred *Brasilians*, not above sixty escaped with life.

But, before I proceed to give you an account of all the remarkable passages that happened in *Brasil*, since the revolt of the *Portuguese*, and during my stay of eight years there; it will not be amiss to insert a short description of this country.

#### A description of Brasil.

*America* (or the *West-Indies*) is divided into the northern and southern *America*. *Brasil* is part of the last.

The northern *America* borders to the North upon the *Terra incognita*, or rather upon *Hudson's Streights*; to the South and West upon the *South-Sea*, and to the East upon the *Streights of Panama*, the bay of *Mexico*, or *Nieu Spain*, and the *North-Sea*.

It comprehends the following provinces, *Esotiland* and *Labrador*, *Nieu France*, *Canada*, *Bakalaos*, *Nieu England*, *Virginia*, *Florida*, *Nieu Spain*, the provinces of *Mexico*, *Nieu Mexico*, *Tlaskalla*, *Guaxaca*, *Mechoakana*, *Zakaula*, *Kolim*, *Yukatan*, *Tabasco*, *Nieu Galicia*, *Nieu Biscay*, *Chiamella*, *Kuliaka*, *Cimalon*, *Nieu Granada*, *Kalifornia*, *Anian*, *Quivira* or *Nieu Albion*, *Konibas*, *Guatemala*, *Sokonufko*, *Chiapa*, *Vera pas*, *Honduras*, *Nikaragua*, *Kestrika*, and *Veragua*.

The southern *America* is a demi-island in form of a pyramid; the basis of which lies to the North, the point extends to the *Streights of Magellan*, under the 53<sup>d</sup> degree of southern latitude; bordering to the east upon the *Atlantick Ocean*, or *North-Sea*, and to the west upon the *South-Sea*, its whole circuit being of about four thousand *Italian* or one thousand *German* miles. It contains the provinces of *Kasilla d'Or*, *Terra ferma*, called by the *Portuguese*, *Paria*, *Kumana*, *Karibana*, *Brasil*, *Chika* to the east, to the west *Popayan*, *Peru*, *Chili*, besides several inland provinces.

*Brasil* was first discovered by *Pedro Alvaro Kapralis*, a *Portuguese*, sometime before *Americus Vesputius*, viz. in the year 1500. He gave it the name of *Santa Cruz*, which was afterwards by the *Portuguese* changed into that of *Brasil*, from the wood of the same name, which is found there in great quantity, and from thence transported into

all parts of *Europe*, for the use of the dyers.

It is situate in the midst of the *Tropical Zone*, extending to the *Tropic of Cancer* and the *Temperate Zone*.

Concerning its extent from north to south, there is no small difference among the geographers; but according to the best computations, its beginning may be fixed under the second degree and a half of northern latitude, near the river *Para*, and its end under the twenty-fourth degree and a half of southern latitude, to the river *Capibari*, two leagues above the city of *St. Vincent*; so that its whole extent from north to south, comprehends twenty-five degrees, or three hundred seventy-five leagues; some place *Brasil* betwixt the river of *Maranbaon* and *Rio de la Plata*. The extent of *Brasil* from the east (where it borders upon the *North-Sea*) to the west, is not determined hitherto, there being very few who have penetrated so deep into the country; tho' its bigness from east to west may be computed to be seven hundred forty-two leagues; there are however some who extend its limits farther to the east, and to the west as far as *Peru* or *Guiana*, which makes an addition of one hundred eighty-eight leagues. Some make the boundaries of *Brasil* to the north the river of the *Amazons*; to the south *Rio de la Plata*; to the east the *North-Sea*, and to the west the mountains of *Peru* or *Guiana*.

*Brasil* thus limited, is divided by the *Portuguese* into fourteen districts, called by them *Kapitanias*, or Captainships; viz. *Paria*, the first of all towards the north; *Maranbaon*, *Siara*, *Potigi* or *Rio Grande*, *Paraiaba*, *Parnambuko*, *Tarmarika* or *Itamarika*, *Seregippo del Rey*, *Quirimune* or *Bahia dos todos los Santos*, *Nboe-Kombe*, or *os Ilhos*, *Pakata*, or *Porto Seguro*, *Rio de Janeiro* or *Nbeteroya*, *St. Vincent* and *Espiritu St.*

Whilst part of *Brasil* was in our possession, it might conveniently be divided into the *Dutch* and *Portuguese Brasil*. Each of these captainships is watered by some considerable river or other, besides several others of less note; most of these have very rapid currents in the rainy months, and overflow the adjacent country.

The river of *St. Francis*, the largest and most considerable in those parts, is the common boundary of the captainship of *Parnambuko* and *Bahia dos todos los Santos*, or the *Bay of all Saints*. In some places it is so broad, that a six-pounder can scarce reach over it, and its depth is eight, twelve, and sometimes fifteen yards; but it admits of no Ships of burthen, because its Entrance is choak'd up with sands.

Its first spring is said to arise out of a certain

1643.

It is Situated.

Extent.

Its Division.

The River of St. Francis.

1643. certain lake, which being augmented by many rivelets out of the mountains of *Peru*, but especially by the rivers of *Rio de la Plata* and *Maranbaon* exonerates it felt into the sea. Some of our people went in a shallop near forty leagues up the river, and found it of a good depth and pretty broad. If we may believe the *Portuguese*, there are about fifty leagues from the sea, certain impassable cataracts or water-falls, called by them *Kakeeras*; beyond those the river winds to the north, 'till you come to its source in the lake, in which are many pleasant islands, inhabited by the barbarians; as is likewise the shore round about it. They find good store of gold-dust in this lake, but it is none of the best, being carried thither by the many rivulets, which wash the gold-bearing rocks of *Peru*; here is also most excellent salt-petre.

It is observable, that in the summer and those winter months, when it rains but seldom, this river has more water than in the rain season: The reason alledged for it is, the vast distance from its first source, whether the rains that fall from the mountains must first be convey'd by many rivulets: All the other rivers near the *Receif*, are so empty of water during the summer season, that they are rendred quite unnavigable. But the ridges of mountains which lie not far from the sea-shore, exonerate their waters as well here as in *Peru*, backward to the west, and dividing themselves into two branches; the first runs into the north, and joins with the large and most rapid rivers of *Maranbaon*, and of the *Amazens*; the other with the rivers of *St. Francis de la Plata*, and *Janciro*. The waters of these rivers being considerably encreased by many rivulets, they exonerate themselves with so much violence into the sea, that the seamen meet often with fresh water at a considerable distance at sea.

The increase of the waters in this river, during the dry season, may likewise be attributed to the vast quantity of snow among the mountains, which being melted by the heat of the sun occasions the river to transgress its ordinary bounds; which in this point is quite different from other rivers, which commonly in the winter time over-flow their banks.

The Dutch  
Brasil. Six of those *captainships* were under the jurisdiction of the *West-India* company, before the *Portuguese* revolted from the *Dutch*, which they had conquer'd with their Swords, viz. The *captainship*, (it begins on the south-side) *Seregippe del Rey* of *Parnambuco*, *Itamarika*, unto which belongs *Gauiana*, *Paraiba*, *Potigi* or *Rio Grande* and *Siara* or *Ciara*. The *captainship* of *Maranbaon* was 1644, by special command of the

company, left by the *Dutch*. This part of *Brasil* used to be called by the *Portuguese*, the *Northern-Brasil*, as the other remaining in their possession went by the name of *South-Brasil*.

The six *Dutch* *captainships* did extend all along the sea-coast from north to south, in length about a hundred and sixty or a hundred and eighty leagues; for from *Rio Grande*, to the northern border of *Seregippe del Rey*, is a hundred leagues: The two others, viz. that of *Siara* to the north, and *Seregippe del Rey* to the south, make up the rest. Each of these *captainships* contain several other lesser districts, call'd by the *Portuguese* *Fregesias*, and by us *Fregesien*; as for instance, in *Seregippe del Rey*, are *Pojuka*, *Kameragibi*, *Porto Calvo*, *Serinbaim*, and several others. *Fregasie*, comprehends a certain tract of ground, composed of divers villages, rivers, hills and vallies, betwixt each of which is commonly a tract of barren hills, of about three or four leagues in length. Most of the *Dutch* *captainships*, are but indifferently cultivated, because the *Portuguese* used not to manure the ground in those parts, beyond three or four, or at farthest, five leagues distant from the Sea.

The *captainship* of *Seregippe del Rey*, is likewise called *Carigi*, from a certain small lake of that name; it is situate in the southern part of *Brasil*, extending about thirty two leagues along the sea coast, bordering on the north side, upon the river of *St. Francis*, by which it is divided from *Parnambuco*, as on the south side it is separated by *Rio Real*, from *Babia dos todos los Santos*, *Seregippe del Rey*, has among others, a certain *Fregasie*, called *Porto Calvo*, situated betwixt the 9<sup>th</sup> and the 10<sup>th</sup> degree of southern latitude; being encompassed on the north-west side by the *Fregasie* of *Serinbaim*, and the small river of *Pirajouunga*, extending to the south as far as the river *Pareguera*, by which it is divided from the *Fregasie* of *Alagoasi*, containing in all about twelve leagues in length near the sea shore, its bounds on the land side reaching to the unpassable woods.

In this *Fregasie*, is a village call'd by the *Portuguese*, *Villa de bon successo de Porto Calo*, but was formerly called *Portocano Dos quatro Rios*, it being situate at the confluence of the four rivers, *Malcita*, *Tapamunde*, *Commentabunda* and *Monguaba*. It is built upon a rising ground, about four leagues from the sea shore, and by the *Dutch* strengthened with two forts; the biggest of which was called *Bon Successo*, being built all of stone, surrounded with a good counter-carp, with a large basin for fresh water within. The other fort was called by us, the *New-Church*, being created out of the ruins

Seregippe  
del Rey.

The vil-  
lage of  
Bon Suc-  
cesso de  
Porto  
Calvo.



This part 1643.  
the Portu-  
other re-  
ent by the

extend all  
to south, in  
or a hun-  
from Rio  
f Seregippe  
The two o-  
north, and  
ake up the  
contain fe-  
by the Por-  
tuguese, as for  
are Pejuka,  
im, and se-  
ends a cer-  
tains villa-  
betwixt each  
barren hills,  
in length.  
are but in-  
the Portu-  
und in those  
at farthest,

del Rey, is Seregippe  
certain small del Rey.  
uate in the  
nding about  
a coast, bor-  
the river of  
ed from Par-  
is separated  
los Santos.  
others, a cer-  
ree, situated  
ree of south-  
ssed on the  
of Serinbaum,  
nga, extend-  
river Pare-  
from the Fre-  
in all about  
the sea shore,  
ching to the

call'd by the The vil-  
le Porto Calo, lage of  
ano Dos qua Bon Sau-  
ne confluence cello de  
Porto  
Tapamunde, Calvo.  
It is built  
four leagues  
the Dutch  
the biggest  
being built  
good coun-  
fresh water  
called by us,  
d out of the  
ruins

1643. ruins of an old church, called by the Por-  
tuguese, *Nossa Senhora da Presentacao*. Be-  
twixt both these forts, a third was ordered  
to be erected by count Maurice, upon the  
banks of the river, but it lying within the  
reach of musket-shot from the mountains,  
was not brought to perfection.

The village has two streets, the chief of  
which runs parallel with the river, from one  
fort to the other, and is call'd *St. Joseph's-  
street*; it contain'd no more than three houses  
of one story high, and about thirty six others  
cover'd with pantiles, being only built up-  
on the ground. The Portuguese have in  
lieu of their churches, which are demolish-  
ed, when the fortifications were erected,  
built themselves another on the other side  
of the river, where they sometimes hear  
mass. The village is situate in a most plea-  
sant and wholesome air, being cooled by the  
continual breezes from the sea, which are  
not stopp'd by any hills, betwixt them and  
the shore. In the night time they enjoy  
the benefit of the land wind, which drives  
the cool vapours arising from the neigh-  
bouring rivers thither: Formerly there was  
a certain town called *Seregippe del Rey*,  
somewhat higher up the river, in a very  
barren place, of a considerable bigness, and  
well built, with three goodly churches, and  
a monastery belonging to the *Franciscans*,  
but without any fortifications. Above  
this town you see a chapel dedicated to  
*St. Christopher*, whether the *Roman Catho-  
licks* come on pilgrimage.

This *captainship* was first of all reduced  
under the obedience of the Portuguese or  
*Spaniards*, by *Christevan de Barros*; who  
for this his good service, had all the lands  
betwixt the small lake of *Seregippe* and  
*St. Francisco*, granted to him, with full  
power to settle colonies there within a li-  
mited time. This drew many of the in-  
habitants of the *Bay of all Saints* thither; who  
within a few years after laid the foundati-  
ons of this town, by erecting four sugar-  
mills, and building about a hundred houses,  
with four hundred stables for their cattle.  
But this town, with all the circumjacent  
houses, was 1637, the 24<sup>th</sup> of December,  
laid desolate by our people, the inhabitants  
retiring to the *Bay of all Saints*. For the  
*Spanish* general *Benjola* being, 1637, posted  
with a body of two thousand men near  
that place, did with ravaging and burning,  
considerable damage to our colonies, which  
oblig'd count Maurice to dislodge him from  
thence; but being then sick of an ague,  
he committed this expedition to the charge  
of colonel *Schoppe*; for which purpose ha-  
ving gather'd a body of two thousand three  
hundred men, besides four hundred *Bra-  
silians*, and two hundred and fifty seamen

VOL. II.

1643. out of the the adjacent Places, near the  
river of *St. Francis*, *Alagoas*, the Cape of  
*St. Austin*, out of the *Receif* and *Moribe-  
ka*, and given him for his assistant Mr. *John  
van Gieselen*, a member of the great coun-  
cil, he commanded the Dutch admiral  
*Lichtbart*, to cruise with his fleet near the  
*Bay of all Saints*, thereby to draw the ene-  
my out of his advantageous post to the  
sea-shore. The *Spanish* general had no  
sooner notice of our passing the river, but  
tearing to be enclosed betwixt us and the  
fleet, march'd with his body to *Torre Gar-  
cie de Avila*, a place about fourteen leagues  
to the north of the city of *St. Salvador*.

The Dutch general *Schoppe*, hearing of his  
removal, immediately attack'd the place,  
which he laid desolate, and returned with  
incredible swiftness to the south side of the  
river of *St. Francis*.

Here he intrench'd himself, with an in-  
tention to annoy the enemy, by cutting off  
his provisions, and driving away his cat-  
tle; which succeeded so well, that we kill'd  
above three thousand of their horned beasts,  
besides what was carried away on the other  
side of the river; so that what was left by  
the soldiers, was by the inhabitants carried  
to the *Bay of all Saints*; from whence it is  
evident, what vast numbers of cattle this  
country did produce at that time.

The great council took once a resolu-  
tion to re-people that part of the coun-  
try, and agreed for this purpose with *Nun-  
no Olferdi*, councillor of justice in the *Re-  
ceif*, who found means to settle several fami-  
lies there: But the council of nineteen dis-  
approving the matter, it was laid aside.

In the year 1641, count Maurice re-  
duced this place under the obedience of the  
*West-India* company, erected a fort there,  
and surrounded the town *Seregippe del Rey*  
with a ditch. It lies upon a small river,  
betwixt *St. Francisco* and *Real*, which how-  
ever at spring-tide has fourteen foot water  
or thereabouts. Within the jurisdiction of  
this *captainship*, is the mountain of *Tabay-  
na*; from whence several sorts of valuable  
oar was presented to the council of nine-  
teen; but upon proof was found not worth  
farther looking after.

#### The captainship of Parnambuko.

The *captainship* of *Parnambuko*, is one  
of the chiefest and biggest of the Dutch-  
*Brasil*. It extends above sixty leagues along  
the coast, betwixt the river of *St. Francis*,  
and the *captainship* of *Tamarika*. *Parn-  
ambuko* properly denotes the entrance of  
the harbour, which by reason of the many  
rocks and shelves hidden under water, was  
called by the Portuguese, *Inferno Bokko*, and  
broken

1643. broken *Parnambuko*, or the *Month of Hell*. It is subdivided into eleven lesser districts, inhabited by the *Portuguese*, viz. the city of *Olinda*, *Garazu*, *Receif*, *Moribeka*, *St. Anthony*, *Poyuka*, *Serinbaim*, *Gonçalvi d'Una*, *Porto Calvo*, the *Northern Alagoa*, and the *Southern Alagoa*. Among which *Olinda* and *Garazu* were the chiefest.

*Garazu*. The town, or rather the village of *Garazu*, lies at some distance from the shore, over against the Island of *Tamarika*, upon a river of the same name, about five leagues from *Olinda*. It was formerly inhabited by *Portuguese* handicrafts men, but since our taking of *Olinda*, several rich Families settled there; we became masters of the place 1633, in *May*.

*Moribeka*. *Moribeka* lies deeper into the country, more to the south, about five leagues off of the *Receif*.

*St. Anthony*. *St. Anthony* is about seven or eight leagues distant from the *Receif* to the south, near the *Cape of St. Austlin*.

*Poyuka*. The city of *St. Michael de Poyuka*, lies about ten leagues to the south of the *Receif* upon a river of the same name, which disembogues in the sea; on the south side of the *Cape of St. Austlin*. It was formerly a very populous place, and had thirteen sugar-mills.

*Serinbaim*. The village *Serinbaim*, much about the same distance thence with the former, is a very pleasant place, has twelve sugar-mills, each of which produces six or seven hundred *Aroba's*, an *Aroba* making about twenty seven or twenty eight pound weight.

*Gonçalvi d'Una*. The village of *Gonçalvi d'Una*, lies twenty leagues from the *Receif*; it has five sugar-mills.

*Porto Calvo*. The village called *Porto Calvo*, is twenty leagues distant from the *Receif*; it has seven or eight sugar-mills. Here is the castle of *Porocano*, which was not conquer'd by us, till under the government of count *Maurice*.

The towns of the northern and southern *Alagoa's*, are forty leagues from the *Receif*.

Within the district of *Parnambuko*, are two woods, called by the *Portuguese's* the greater and lesser *Palmaisras*, or *Palmtree-Woods*.

The Lesser *Palmaisras*, which is inhabited by six thousand negroes, lies about twenty leagues above the *Alagoas*, being enclosed with woods near the small lake of *Guagububi*, which exonerates it self into the great lake of *Parayba*, six leagues from thence to the north, about four leagues from the lake *Meridai*, to the south of the *Northern Alagoa*, being near that point of land commonly called *Jaragao*. The village consists of three streets, each near half a league

in length. Their huts are made of straw twitted together, one near another, their plantations being behind. They retain something of the religious worship of the *Portuguese*, but have their peculiar priests and judges. Their business is to rob the *Portuguese* of their slaves, who remain in slavery among them, 'till they have redeemed themselves by stealing another: But such slaves as run over to them, are as free as the rest. Their food is dates, beans, meal, barley, sugar-canes, tamar-tow, (of which they have great plenty) and fish, which the lake furnishes them withal. They have twice a year a harvest of barley, which being over, they make merry for a whole Week together. Before sowing time, they light great fires for fourteen days, which may be seen at a great distance. The shortest way from the *Receif* to this *Palmaisras*, is along the lake of the *Northern Alagoa*.

The greater *Palmaisras* is betwixt twenty and thirty leagues distant behind the village of *St. Amar*, near the mountain of *Bebe*, being surrounded with a double enclosure. About eight thousand Negroes are said to inhabit the Vallies near the mountains, besides many others, who dwell in lesser numbers of fifty or a hundred, in other places. Their houses lie straggling, they sow and reap among the woods, and have certain caves whither they retreat in case of necessity. They dress their victuals in the day time, and at night tell over their whole number, to see whether any be wanting; if not, they conclude the evening with dancing and beating the drum, which may be heard at a great distance. Then they go to sleep 'till nine or ten a clock the next day. During the dry season, they detach a certain number among them, to steal slaves from the *Portuguese*. The shortest cut to their habitations, is from the *Alagoas* through *St. Amar*, and so cross the plains of *Nbumabu* and *Koro-ripe*, towards the backside of the mountain of *Warrakaka*, 'till you come to the lake *Paraiba*; along which you pass 'till you reach the mountain *Bebe*, from whence you go directly into the vallies. Under the Government of Count *Maurice*, the negroes of this *Palmaisras* did considerable mischief, especially to the country people about the *Alagoas*; to repress which, he sent three hundred firelocks, a hundred *Mamelukes*, and seven hundred *Brazilians*.

The *Receif*, *Maurice's town*, and *Anthony Vaez*.

The *Receif* is, by reason of its commodious and advantageous situation the strongest.

The two  
Palmai-  
ras.

1643. eff  
str  
ces  
m  
fit  
fer  
fro  
a  
wh  
oth  
are  
wh  
for  
fou  
Rid  
the  
rid  
Po  
the  
the  
wat



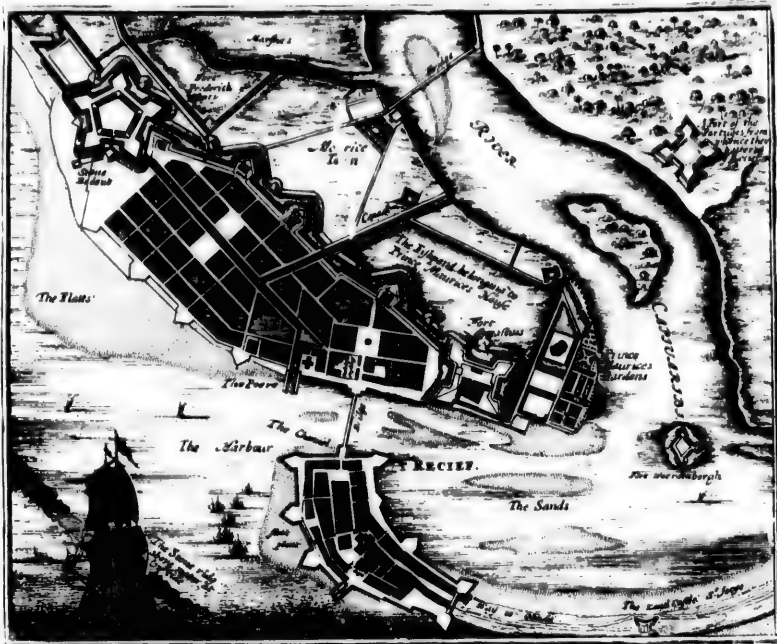
The  
Receif,  
a lea  
a vil  
peop  
lous  
ing

de of straw 1643.  
 other, their  
 they retain  
 ship of the  
 ular priests  
 to rob the  
 remain in  
 have re-  
 another:  
 em, are as  
 es, beans,  
 e-towl, (of  
 ) and fish,  
 thal. They  
 rley, which  
 for a whole  
 g time, they  
 days, which  
 nce. The  
 to this Pal-  
 ne Northern

1643. est place of all *Brasil*, besides that, it is strengthened and defended by several adjacent Forts: But to give you the most commodious view both of the *Recife*, and the situation of *Maurice's* town, it is to be observed, that the whole coast of *Brasil*, is from one end to the other surrounded with a long, thick, and flat ridge of rocks, which in some Places is twenty, and in others thirty paces broad: However, there are certain passages in this ridge, through which the ships approach the shoar, and some few places, where this ridge is not found at all. Thus a league on this side *Rio doce*, two leagues on the northside of the city of *Olinda*, there is nothing of this ridge to be found; but begins again near *Poumarelle* or *Sexamarido*, and extends to the isle of *Itamarika*. Betwixt the ridge and the continent, you may pass in boats at high water; for at low-tide most of those rocks

appear above water; tho' the tide never fails to cover the same. The rock over-against the *Recife* of *Parnambuco*, is between twenty and thirty paces broad, being not only at spring-tides, but at all other tides overflowed by the sea; it is thereabouts very flat, without any prominencies, and extends for a league from south to north. On the north point is an open Passage for ships to approach the shoar, lying five hundred paces further to the north, than the *Recife* it self. It is but narrow, and at spring-tide not above twenty two foot deep.

Betwixt this rocky ridge and the continent, there is a sandy ridge, or small island extended to the south from *Olinda*, a league in length, and about two hundred paces broad. This is by our people commonly called, *The Sandy Recife*, to distinguish it from *The Stony Recife*.



wixt twenty  
 ind the vil-  
 mountain of  
 a double en-  
 Negroes are  
 the moun-  
 who dwell in  
 hundred, in  
 straggling,  
 woods, and  
 they retreat  
 in their victu-  
 light tell over  
 ether any be-  
 de the even-  
 the drum,  
 eat distance.  
 ne or ten a  
 the dry fea-  
 nber among  
 e Portuguese.  
 bitations, is  
 Amar, and  
 u and Koro-  
 the mountain  
 to the lake  
 as 'till you  
 whence you  
 Under the  
 the negroes  
 ple mischief,  
 e about the  
 sent three  
 Mamelukes,

The Sandy Recife.

On the southern point of this little island, a league off *Olinda*, the Portuguese had built a village, called *Povoacano*, which signifies peopling, or else *Recifo*; it was very populous for a considerable time, 'till the building of *Maurice's* town, in the island of *An-*

*ibony Vaex*. For after *Olinda* was forsaken by its inhabitants, and destroy'd by us, many of them, but especially the merchants, settled in this *Recifo*, or the village of *Povoacano*, where they erected magnificent structures. At our first arrival, we found

ad Anthony

its commo- The Re-  
 the strong- cef.  
 cit

1643. no more than two hundred houses there, which were afterwards increased to above two thousand, some of which are very goodly edifices. We surrounded it with Pallisades on the side of the river *Biberibi*, which at low-water is fordable; and for its better security fortified it with three bulwarks, one towards *Olinda*, the other to the harbour, and the third towards the *Salt River*; upon each of which was raised a good battery with three great cannon. This *Receif* is situate under the 8<sup>th</sup> degree 20 minutes southern latitude.

The derivation of the word *Receif*.

Some derive the word *Receiffo* from the Latin, *recipere* and *receptus* to receive, which after was turned into *Receiffo*, because the ships used to be received betwixt the stony and sandy *Receiffo*, to load and unload their goods. Before the building of *Maurice's* town, we kept here our factories, and all business both of peace and war, was transacted in this place. In the time of the *Portuguese*, all the ships coming out of the sea, did unload on the village of *Povoacano*, or the *Receif*, and the goods were from thence in boats and lighters conveyed up the river *Biberibi*, to the suburbs of *Olinda*.

Before the building of *Maurice's* town, most of the traffick was in the *Receif*, where all the great merchants had their habitations, and from hence the Sugar was transported into *Holland*. To prevent the frauds in the customs, it was surrounded with pallisades, and a goodly hospital was erected for the convenience of the sick and wounded, and the education of orphans, under the tuition of four governors, and as many governesses.

Upon the uttermost point of the stony *Receif*, on the left side as you enter the harbour out of the sea, is a strong and large castle, built of free-stone, surrounded with a very high wall, upon which are mounted many heavy cannon, with suitable artillery and other provisions. When we took the place, we found nine brass, and twenty two iron pieces of cannon within it; so that it seems both by art and nature impregnable; there being no coming near it on foot, at high-water.

About five leagues higher, upon a branch of the great river, lies a small town of little consequence, called by our people, *The New City*, and upon another branch of the same river, opposite to the former, a village called *Atapuepe*.

The island of Anthony Vaez, and Maurice's Town.

The isle of Anthony Vaez.

To the south of the *Receif*, opposite to it, lies the isle of *Anthony Vaez*, so called

by our People, from its ancient possessor. It is about half a league in circuit, being divided from the *Receif*, by the *Salt-River*, or *Biberibi*.

On the east-side of this island, count *Maurice* laid the foundation of a city, which, after his own Name, he called *Maurice's* town or city; the ruins of the churches or monasteries of the city of *Olinda*, furnish'd the materials for the building of it, which were from thence carried to the *Receif*, and so transported to this place.

On the west-side it is environ'd with a morass; and on the east-side wash'd by the sea, which passes the stony ridge. Besides which, it is on the land-side strengthen'd with an earthen wall, four bulwarks and a large moat.

On that side where the fort of *Ernestus* was, the town lay open, and the houses took up a larger compass than those in the *Receif*, but after the revolt of the *Portuguese*, most of those houses were pulled down, and the place drawn into a more narrow compass, to render it more defensible: Yet was the place well stocked with inhabitants, as well merchants as handicrafts men.

*Maurice's* town was on each side guarded by a fort. On the south side by the fort called *Frederick Henry*, or the quinqueangular fort, from its five bulwarks. This fort was besides this, surrounded by a large ditch and pallisades, and strengthened by two horn-works, so that it commanded the whole plain, which at spring-tides used to be overflowed by the sea.

The second fort *Ernestus*, thus called after *John Ernest*, the brother of count *Maurice*, was four-square, with four bulwarks, with a very large ditch; it commanded the river, the plains, and *Maurice's* town. Near this last fort was the garden of count *Maurice*, stored with all sorts of trees, brought thither from *Europe* and both the *Indies*.

Upon the north point of the stony *Receif*, just over against the sandy *Receif*, lies the beforenamed fort, built all of stone, being about a hundred paces in circumference, provided with a good garrison and twenty pieces of great cannon, though in stormy weather the water flies over it on all sides. It commands the harbour, the land fort, the *Bruin Fort*, and the *Receif*.

As the isle of *Anthony Vaez* was joined to the continent by a bridge, so it was thought necessary to join the *Receif* with another bridge to the said island, for the convenience of carriage; the sugar chests being before that time never to be transported to the *Receif*, except at low water, unless the owners would run the hazard of exposing them to the danger of the sea in small boats. Accordingly

1643.

Maurice's Town.

The Fort Frederick Henry.

The Fort Ernestus.

The Fort St. Stone.

The Bridge betwixt the Receif and the Island.

ent possessor. 1643.  
circuit, being  
the Salt-River,

island, count  
of a city,  
he called Maurice's  
ruins of the  
city of Olinda  
for the build-  
ence carried  
ported to this

ron'd with a  
wall'd by the  
dge. Besides  
strengthen'd  
bulwarks and a

rt of Ernestus  
he houses took  
e in the Receif;  
tuguese, molt  
own, and the  
row compass,  
Yet was the  
itants, as well

h side guarded  
by the fort cal-  
quingangular  
This fort was  
arge ditch and  
by two horn-  
ed the whole  
ed to be over-

thus called af- The Fort  
of count Mau- Ernestus.  
four bulwarks,  
ommanded the  
s town. Near  
of count Mau-  
rees, brought  
the Indies.

the Stony Receif,  
ceif, lies the  
stone, being  
circumference,  
n and twenty  
gh in stormy  
e on all sides,  
he land fort,

was joined to The Bridge  
was thought betwixt  
with another the Receif  
the conveni- and the  
ests being land.  
ported to the  
the owners  
sing them to  
boats. Ac-  
cordingly

1643. cordingly the great council, with consent of the governor count Maurice, agreed with a certain architect for the building of a bridge with stone arches, for the sum of two hundred fifty thousand florins. But after the architect had consumed a prodigious quantity of stone, and raised the structure near to the height of the banks of the river, finding that at low-water there was still eleven foot water, and despairing to be able to accomplish it, left it unfinished. But the council being unwilling to desist, renewed the work, which had already cost a hundred thousand florins; and by means of many trees of forty and fifty foot long, stopped the current till the bridge was brought to perfection, which was done in two months time, and a certain toll imposed upon all passengers, viz. for an inhabitant two pence, for a soldier and negroe one penny, for a horse four pence, and a waggon drawn by oxen seven pence.

The space betwixt the Sandy and Stony Receif, is properly the harbour, which at high-water has about thirteen or fourteen foot depth, where the ships ride very safe, being defended from the sea by the Stony Receif. The passage betwixt the Sandy Receif and the continent, is called the Salt-River, to distinguish it from the river Kapivaribi, which carries sweet water.

The river Kapivaribi has derived its name from a certain kind of river or sea hogs, which used to be found there, and were by the *Brasilians* called *Kapivaribi*. This river arises some leagues to the west, passing by the *Matta*, or the *Wood of Brasil*, *Majajati*, *St. Lorenzo* and *Real*, where joining with the river *Affogados*, near another river of the same name, disembogues in the sea, near the *Receif*. The river *Kapivaribi* divides itself into two branches; one turns to the south, and passes by the fort *William*, and is called *Affogados*; the other running to the north, retains its former name, continuing its course betwixt the continent and *Maurice's* town, or the isle of *Anthony Vaez* (into which you may pass over it by a bridge) and so to *Waerdenburg*, where it joins with the river *Biberibi*, or *Salt-River*, both which are afterwards mixed with the sea. The two branches of this river, surround the river *Biberibi* on the west-side, and to the east the isle of *Anthony Vaez*. Upon that branch of the river called *Affogados*, is an abundance of sugar-mills, from whence the *Portuguese* used to convey their sugar-chests, either in boats by the way of the river, or in carts to *Baretta*, and from thence in flat bottomed boats to the *Receif*, and to *Olinda*.

A league to the south of *Maurice's* Town upon the branch called *Affogados*, is a four-square fort of the same name, otherwise cal-

1633. led fort *William*; from whence you may pass along a dike to the fort *Frederick Henry*, or *Maurice's* Town. It was a noble structure, surrounded with high and strong walls, a large ditch and palisadoes, with six brass cannon: It defended the avenues to the plains.

About half a league from thence, and at the same distance from the continent, lies another fort on the sea shore, called *Baretta*: This commands the avenues both by sea and land to the cape of *St. Anjir*, and the *Receif*.

Upon that part of the island which lies betwixt the rivers *Kapivaribi*, and *Biberibi*, and betwixt the forts of *Ernestus* and the triangular fort of *Waerdenburg*, were the before mentioned gardens of count *Maurice*, stored with all kinds of trees, fruits, flowers and greens, which either *Europe*, *Africa*, or both the *Indies* could afford. There were near seven hundred cocoa-trees of all sizes, some of which were thirty, forty, and fifty foot high; which being transplanted thither, out of the circumjacent countries, bore abundance of fruit the very first year: Above fifty lemon-trees, and eighteen citron-trees, eighty pomgranate-trees, and sixty-six fig-trees, were also to be seen in these gardens.

In the midst of it stood the seat itself, called *Vryburgb*, a noble structure indeed, which as is reported, cost six hundred thousand florins: It had a most admirable prospect, both to the sea and land side, and its two towers were of such a height, that they might be seen six or seven leagues off at sea, and served the seamen for a beacon. In the front of the house was a battery of marble, rising by degrees from the river-side, upon which were mounted ten pieces of cannon for the defence of the river. About two or three rods from the river, were several large basons in the garden, containing very sweet water, notwithstanding the river all round about afforded nothing but salt-water; besides this, there were divers fish-ponds, stocked with all sorts of fish.

At the very foot of the bridge which is built over the river *Kapivaribi*, from *Maurice's* town to the continent, count *Maurice* had built a very pleasant summer seat, called by the *Portuguese*, *Baavista*, i. e. *A fair Prospect*. It was not only surrounded with very pleasant gardens and fish-ponds, but served likewise as a fort for the defence of the isle of *Anthony Vaez*, and *Maurice's* Town.

Upon the *Sandy Receif*, opposite to the *Sea*, or *Water Fort*, was a strong fort built of stone, called by the *Portuguese*, *St. Toris*, fort. Our people used to call it the *Land Fort*, to distinguish it from the beforementioned *Water Fort*; it defends the entrance of the harbour

1643. About a musket shot thence to the north, lies upon the same sandy *Receif*, a small fort with four bastions, called the fort of *Bruin*; and about a musket shot further to the north, a redoubt, called *Madame de Bruin*: Both these forts were built by the *Dutch*.

The fort  
Bruin.

The fort of  
Waerden-  
burg.

Near the continent, not far from the faltpits, betwixt the *Sandy Receif*, and the isle of *Antony Vaez*, was a triangular fort called the fort of *Waerdenburg*. It was at first a four-square, but afterwards turned by the *Dutch* into a triangular fort, the fourth bulwark being not defensible, by reason of the ground: Those three bulwarks were afterwards changed into as many redoubts, and provided with some brass guns: At high tide it is surrounded on all sides with water.

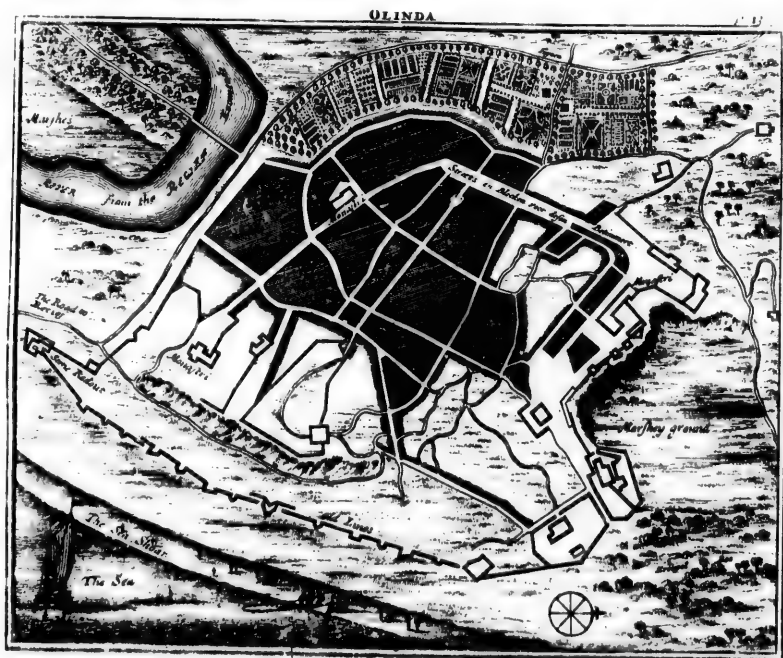
#### The City of Olinda.

At a small distance from the *Receif*, or *Maurice's Town*, to the north, is the ruined city of *Olinda*, once a famous place among the *Portuguese*; the whole product

of *Brasil*, being from thence transported by sea into *Europe*. The best part of the city was built upon divers hills; towards the sea, on the south side, these hills were pretty plain, extending to the sea-shore, which has a very white sand all along that coast: Towards the land side, or the north, those hills are more steep and craggy, full of thorn-bushes, intermixed with a few orange-trees. These hills are an additional strength to the place, which besides this, was guarded by several bastions to the land side, though by reason of the great variety of hills contained in its circuit, it was a difficult task to bring the fortifications into a regular form. There is a very fair prospect from the higher part of the town, both to the south and north, or to the sea and land side, by reason of the great quantity of circumjacent trees, which continue green all the year round. You may also from thence see the isle of *Antony Vaez*, and *Maurice's town*. The point of land near *Olinda*, is called *Ti-po* by the inhabitants.

1643.

1645.



Upon



transported by 1643.  
of the city  
wards the sea,  
were pretty  
e, which has  
coast: To-  
n, those hills  
full of thorn-  
orange-trees.  
length to the  
guarded by  
, though by  
hills contain-  
difficult talk to  
regular form.  
om the high-  
the south and  
side, by rea-  
circumjacent  
all the year  
hence see the  
urice's town.  
is called Ti-

1643. Upon the highest hill within the place, stood formerly a convent belonging to the *Jesuits*, being a magnificent structure, founded by *Sebastian* king of *Portugal*, who endowed it with considerable revenues. It had a very fair prospect, and might be seen at a good distance at sea. Not far from thence was another Monastery belonging to the *Capucines*; and near the sea-shore, another of the *Dominican* friars: Besides which, it had two churches, the one called *St. Salvador*, the other *St. Peter*.

It contained above two thousand inhabitants, besides the clergymen and slaves, among whom were two hundred that were accounted very rich. On the foot of the mountain upon which the city of *Olinda* was built, a strong redoubt was erected, which in the year 1645, was by a serjeant betrayed to the *Portuguese* for a sum of money. About a league from the city, near the water-side, were the suburbs, well stored with inhabitants and packhouses; but destitute of fresh water, which they were fain to fetch from beyond the river.

The whole district of *Parnambuco* abounds in divers kinds of fruits and cattle. The valleys afford good pasturage, and the lower grounds near the rivers, great store of sugar reeds, which are much cultivated hereabouts. The mountains produce richer minerals here, than in the other captainships. During the rainy season the heat is more tolerable here in the day time than the cold nights.

The Cameleon, or Indian Salamander, otherwise called *Gekko*.

This creature, which is not only found in *Brasil*, but also in the isle of *Java*, belonging to the *East-Indies*, and which, by our people is called *Gekko*, from its constant cry (like among us that of the *Cuckoo*) is properly an *Indian Salamander*. It is about a foot long, its skin of a pale or sea-green colour, with red spots. The head is not unlike that of a tortoise, with a straight mouth. The eyes are very large, starting out of the head, with long and small eye-apples. The tail is distinguished by several white rings: Its teeth are so sharp as to make an impression even upon steel. Each of its four legs had five crooked claws armed on the end with nails. Its gait is very flow, but wherever it fastens it is not easily removed. It dwells commonly upon rotten trees, or among the ruins of old houses and churches; it oftentimes settles near the bedsteads, which makes sometimes the moors pull down their huts.

Its constant cry is *Gekko*, but before it begins it makes a kind of hissing noise. The

1643. sting of this creature is so venomous, that the wound proves mortal, unless it be immediately burnt with a red hot iron, or cut off. The blood is of a palish colour, resembling poison itself.

The *Javanese* use to dip their arrows in the blood of this creature; and those who deal in poisons among them (an art much esteemed in the island of *Java*, by both sexes) hang it up with a string tied to the tail on the cieiing, by which means it being exasperated to the highest pitch, sends forth a yellow liquor out of its mouth, which they gather in small pots set underneath, and afterwards coagulate into a body in the sun. This they continue for several months together, by giving daily food to the creature. It is unquestionably the strongest poison in the world; its urine being of so corrosive a quality, that it not only raises blisters, wherever it touches the skin, but turns the flesh black, and causes a gangrene. The inhabitants of the *East-Indies* say, that the best remedy against this poison is the *Curcuma* root. Such a *Gekko* was got within the body of the wall of the church in the *Receif*, which obliged us to have a great hole made in the said wall, to dislodge it from thence.

The strongest poison in the World.

There are also several sorts of Serpents in *Brasil*; such as *Rattle Serpents*, *Double-headed Serpents*, and such like; of which the *Brasilians* enumerate twenty-three, viz. *Boigvaca*, or *Liboya*, *Arabo*, *Bioby*, *Boicininga*, *Boitrapo*, *Boykupekanga*, *Bapoba*, *Kukuruku*, *Kaninana*, *Kurukakutinga*, *Grinipajaguara*, *Ibiara*, *Jakapekoaja*, *Ibiboboca*, *Jararaka*, *Manima*, *Vona*, *Tarciboya*, *Kakaboya*, *Amorepinima*.

Serpents in Brasil.

We will give you an account of those only that dwell in the houses and woods of *Parnambuco*, passing by the rest, as not so well known among us; and it is observable that though some of the *American* or *Brasilian* serpents exceed those of *Europe* in bigness, they are nevertheless not so poisonous.

The serpent of *Boicininga*, or *Boicininga*, likewise called *Boiquira* by the *Brasilians*, is by the *Portuguese* called *Kiskeveda* and *Tangedor*, i. e. a *Rattle*, and by our people a *Rattle Serpent*, because it makes a noise with its tail, not unlike a rattle: This serpent is found both upon the highway and in desolate places; it moves with such swiftness, as if it had wings, and is extremely venomous. In the midst it is about the thickness of a man's arm near the elbow, but grows thinner by degrees towards the head and tail. The belly and head is flattish, the last being of the length and breadth of a finger and a half, with very small eyes. It has four peculiar teeth longer than all the rest, white and sharp like a thorn, which it hides sometimes

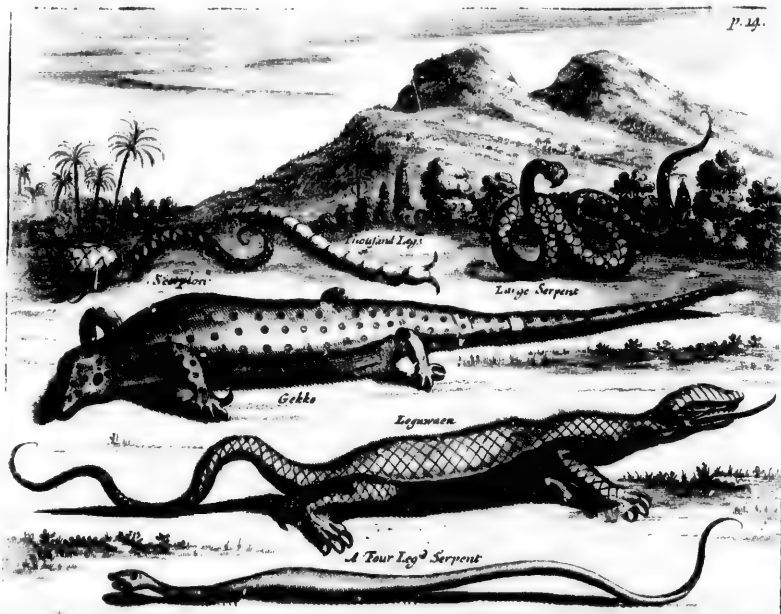
The Rattle Serpent.





1643. sometimes within the gums. The skin is covered with thick scales, those upon the back being somewhat higher than the rest, and of a pale yellowish colour, with black edges. The sides of the body are likewise yellowish with black scales on each side; but those upon the belly are larger, four-square, and of a yellow colour. It is three, four, and sometimes five foot long; has a round tongue split in the middle, with long and sharp teeth. The tail is composed of several loose and bony joints, which make such a noise that it may be heard at a distance. Or rather at the end of the tail, is a long piece consisting of several joints, join-

ed within one another in a most peculiar manner, not unlike a chain. Every year there is an addition of one of these joints, so that you may know the exact age of the serpent by their number; nature seeming in this point to have favoured mankind, as a warning to avoid this poisonous creature by this noise. One of these joints put in the fundament causes immediate death; but the sting of this creature proceeds much slower in its operation, for in the beginning a bloody matter issues from the wound, afterwards the flesh turns blue, and the ulcer corrodes the adjacent parts by degrees.



The most sovereign remedy used by the *Brazilians* against the poison of this and other serpents, is the head of the same serpent that has given the wound, which they bruise in a mortar, and in form of a plaster apply it to the affected part. They mix it commonly with fasting spittle, wherewith they also frequently moisten the wound. If they find the poison begins to seize the nobler parts, they use the *Tiproka* as a cordial, and afterwards give strong sudorificks. They also lay open the wound, and apply

cupping-glasses, to draw the venom from thence. Or else they burn it with a red hot iron.

The serpent *Kukuruku* is of an ash colour, with yellow spots within and black speckles without, and has just such scales as the *Rattle Serpent*.

The serpent *Guaku*, or *Liboya*, is questionless the biggest of all serpents; some being 18, 24, nay 30 foot long, and of the thickness of a man in the middle. The *Portuguese* call it *Kobra de bado*, or the

Roebuck

1643. A  
The Ro-  
back jer-  
per.

Paraka.

Boitrapo.

Biara.

Kukuruku

1643. A  
w  
th  
b  
f  
f  
ra  
as  
ta  
te  
it  
It  
ar  
no  
T  
of  
sti  
wo  
pli  
to  
for  
na  
ing  
pro  
wo  
wre  
for  
tra  
the  
exc  
bow  
the  
such  
an  
col  
dan  
fym  
bod  
fore  
boil  
with  
upon  
T  
tug  
in l  
feed  
loun  
sting  
terp  
coun  
hot  
T  
led  
i. e.  
app  
is n  
bers  
feed  
the  
half  
more  
V

most peculiar 164:  
Every year  
of these joints,  
fact age of the  
ture seeming in  
nankind, as a  
ous creature by  
ints put in the  
death; but the  
ls much slower  
ginning a bloo-  
und, afterwards  
ulcer corrodes  
s.



e venom from  
with a red hot

an ash colour,  
black speckles  
les as the Rat-

iboya, is que-  
rpernts; some  
long, and of  
the middle.  
chado, or the  
Roebuck

1643. *Roebuck serpent*, because it will swallow a whole roebuck or any other deer it meets with; and this is performed by sucking it through the throat, which is pretty narrow, but the belly vastly big. After they have swallowed such a deer, they fall asleep, and so are catch'd. Such a one I saw near *Paraba*, which was 30 foot long, and as big as a barrel. Some negroes saw it accidentally swallow a roebuck, whereupon thirteen musqueteers were sent out, who shot it, and cut the roebuck out of its belly. It was of a greyish colour, though others are inclining more to the brown. It is not so venomous as the other serpents. The *Negroes* and *Portuguese*, nay even some of the *Dutch* eat the flesh; neither are its stings look'd upon as very infectious, the wound healing often up without any application of remedies; so that it ought not to be reckoned among the number of poisonous serpents, no more than the *Kaminana*, *Marina* and *Vocia*. This serpent being a very devouring creature, greedy of prey, leaps from amongst the hedges and woods, and standing upright upon its tail, writtles both with men and wild beasts; sometimes it leaps from the trees upon the traveller, whom it fastens upon, and beats the breath out of his body with its tail.

The serpent *Jararaka* is short, seldom exceeding the length of an arm to the elbow. It has certain protuberant veins on the head like the adder, and makes much such a noise. The skin is covered with red and black spots, the rest being of an earth colour. The stings of this creature are as dangerous, and attended with the same symptoms, as those of other serpents. Its body, the head, tail and skin, being before taken away together with the entrails, boil'd in the water of the root of *Jurepeba*, with salt, dill, and such like, is look'd upon as a very good remedy.

The serpent *Boitrapo*, call'd by the *Portuguese*, *Cobre de Cibo*, is about seven foot in length, of the thickness of a man's arm, feeds upon frogs, and is of an olive colour. It is very venomous, and when it stings, occasion the same symptoms as the serpent *Kukuruku*; nay, the wound is accounted past curing, unless you apply the hot iron.

The adder *Ibiara*, by the *Portuguese* call'd *Cobra Vega*, or *Cobra de das Cabeças*, i. e. *The Doubleheaded Serpent*, because it appears to have two heads, which however is not so. They are found in great numbers, lurking in holes under ground. They feed upon pirimires, are of the thickness of the length of a finger, and a foot and a half long, of a silver colour; nothing is more poisonous than the stings of these

creatures, tho' not beyond all hopes of cure, provided the before-mentioned remedies be applied in time.

The serpent by the *Brasilians* call'd *Ibiboboka*, the *Portuguese* call *Cobra de Cerais*. It is very beautiful, of a snow white colour, speckled with black and red spots, and about two foot long: Its sting is mortal, but kills by degrees.

The serpent *Biobi*, call'd by the *Portuguese* *Cabro Verde*, or the *Green Serpent*, about three quarters of a yard long, and the thickness of a thumb; of a shining green colour. It lives among houses, and hurts no body, unless when provoked. Its sting is however full of poison, and scarce curable. A certain soldier being wounded by one of these creatures, which lay hidden in a hedge, in his thigh, did for want of proper remedies, die in few hours after: His body swell'd, and turn'd pale blue.

The serpent *Kaminana* is yellow on the belly and green on the back; its length is about eight hands, and is look'd upon as the least venomous of all. It feeds upon eggs and birds, and the *Negroes* and *Brasilians* eat the body, after they have cut off the head and tail.

The serpent call'd by the *Brasilians* *Ibirakoa*, is of several colours, with white, black, and red spots. The sting of this creature is very poisonous, attended with the same symptoms as that of *Kukuruku*; for it kills infallibly, unless proper remedies be applied immediately. If the poison has not seized the heart, they boil the flesh of the same serpent with certain roots, and give it the patient in wine.

The serpent *Tarciboya* and *Kakaboya*, are amphibious creatures. The first is of a blackish colour, very large, and stings when provoked, but is not very difficult to be cured. The *Kakaboya* is of a yellowish colour, six hands long, and feeds upon tame fowl.

#### Of the Senembi or the Leguan.

Not only in the *Captainship of Parnambuco*, but also all over *Brasil* and *America*, as likewise in the Isle of *Java* in the *East-Indies*, are a certain kind of *Land Crocodile*, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Senembi*, by our people *Leguan*: Some are larger than others, some being three, others four foot long, but seldom exceed five: They are all over covered with scales, which are somewhat bigger on the back, legs, and beginning of the tail, than on the other parts: The neck is about a finger and a half long, the eyes are black and bright, and the nostrils in the hindmost part of the head. Each jawbone is full of small, black,

black, and short teeth; the tongue is very thick: All along the back from the neck to the tail, are small sharp teeth of a greenish colour; they are biggest on the neck, and grow smaller and smaller towards the tail: Under the throat are likewise many of the same kind. The whole skin is of a delicate green, with black and white spots. It has four legs and feet, with five claws armed with very sharp nails: It can live two or three months without food. Its flesh is as white as that of a rabbit, and of as good a taste as that of fowls or rabbits, if it be boil'd or well fry'd with butter. In the head of this creature are certain stones, which are an infallible remedy to break and drive the gravel out of the kidneys, given to the quantity of two drams at a time, or carried on some part of the body.

There are in *Brazil* lizards both great and small; some are green, others greyish, and some four foot long, with sparkling eyes. The *Negroes* feed upon some of them, whom they kill with blunt arrows; they broil them, after they have skin'd them, and eat them without the least harm. Among all those that are found among the thorns and briars, or the ruins of houses, there is but one kind venomous, which is called *Bibora*. They are like the others, but lesser, not exceeding the bigness of a thumb; they are of an ash colour, inclining to white; the body and limbs thick and swell'd with the poison, but the tail short and broad. The wounds given by them are full of a thin stinking matter, with blue swellings, with a pain near the heart, and in the bowels.

There are also certain creatures, called *Tboufand Legs*, as likewise *Hundred Legs*, by the natives called *Ambua*, who bend as they crawl along, and are accounted very poisonous. The first are commonly found in the Houses, and the last among the woods, where they not only spoil the fruits of the Earth, but also plague men and beasts.

Scorpions, by the *Brazilians* called *Jacaiara*, are found here in great numbers, being in shape like the *European* scorpions, but not so pestiferous, and consequently the wounds given by them are easily cured. They lurk in houses, behind old stools, benches and chests. They are exceeding big, no bigger being to be found in any other parts, some being five or six foot long, and of a considerable thickness.

There are such prodigious quantities of pismires in *Brazil*, that for this reason, they are called by the *Portuguese*, *Rey de Brazil*, i. e. King of *Brazil*. They eat all

that lights in their way, as fruit, flesh, fish, and insects without any harm. There is also a certain flying pismire of a fingers length, with a triangular head, the body being separated into two parts, and fastened together by a small string. On the head are two small and long horns, their eyes being very small. On the foremost part of the body are six legs, three joints each, and four thin and transparent wings; to wit, two without, and two within; the hindmost part is of a bright colour and round, which is eaten by the *Negroes*. They dig into the ground like the moles, and consume the feed.

There is another kind of great pismires, resembling a great fly; the whole body of which is about the length of half a finger, and separated into three several parts.

The last part resembling in shape and bigness a barley corn; the middlemost of an oblong figure, with six legs, half a finger long, each of which has four joints: The foremost part, or the head, is pretty thick, in the shape of a heart, with two horns, and as many black crooked teeth: The white of the eyes is inclining to black, the whole composition of the head being the two eyes, placed opposite to one another, resembling the figure of a heart. The fore and hindmost parts are of a bright red colour.

There is another kind of pismire, of a bright black colour, with black and rough legs. It is about the length of a finger, with a large foursquare head, starting black eyes and teeth, and two horns, half a finger longer. The body is also separated into three parts. The foremost of an oblong figure, not very thick, with six legs, each of the length of half a finger; the middlemost very small and square, not exceeding the bigness of a louse; the hindmost is the biggest of the three, of an oval figure, and sharp on the end. These three parts are fastened together with a single string, the *Brazilians* call it *Tapijai*.

There is besides this another pismire, call'd by the *Brazilians* *Kupia*, of a chestnut brown colour; its head being as big as another pismire, with black eyes, two horns, and two tusks instead of teeth. The whole body is covered with hair; it is divided into two parts; The foremost with six legs, being somewhat less than the hindmost; at certain seasons it gets four wings, the foremost being a little bigger than the hindmost, which it loses again at a certain time.

The *Iron-pig* of *Brazil*, called by the *Brazilians* *Kuanda*; and by the *Portuguese* *Ourico Kachiero*, is of the bigness of a large ape, its whole body being covered with sharp

fruit, flesh, 1643.  
arm. There  
of a finger  
d, the body  
es, and fast-  
ing. On the  
horns, their  
the foremost  
three joints  
arent wings;  
within; the  
at colour and  
egroes. They  
e moles, and

great pismires,  
whole body of  
of half a fin-  
several parts.  
shape and big-  
blem of an  
half a finger  
r joints: The  
pretty thick,  
th two horns,  
d teeth: The  
to black, the  
head being the  
o one another,  
art. The fore  
f a bright red

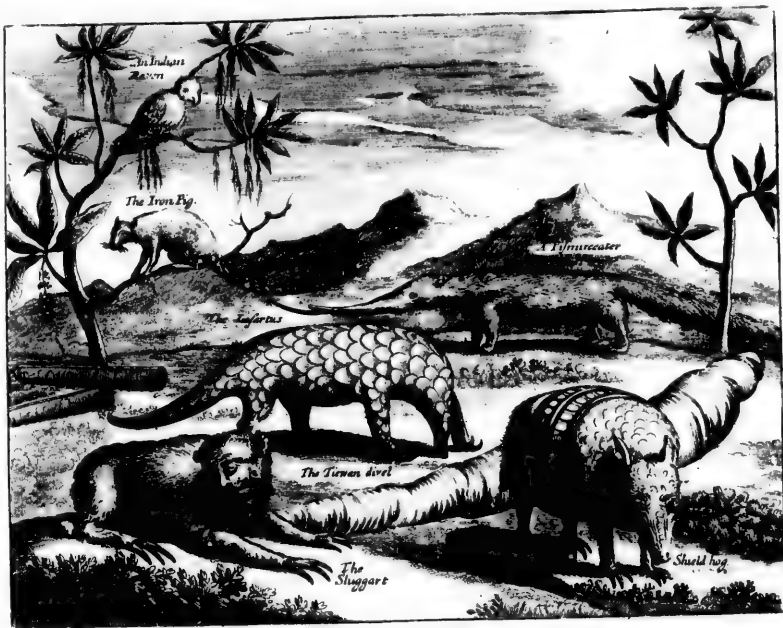
pismire, of a  
back and rough  
th of a finger,  
starting black  
ns, half a fin-  
also separated  
most of an ob-  
with six legs,  
a finger; the  
l square, not  
ous; the hin-  
e three, of an  
e end. These  
er with a fin-  
it *Tapijai*.

other pismire,  
*ia*, of a che-  
being as big  
ack eyes, two  
of teeth. The  
hair; it is di-  
foremost with  
than the hin-  
it gets four  
little bigger  
it loses again

called by the  
ne Portuguese  
acts of a large  
covered with  
sharp

1643. sharp spikes of three or four fingers long, without any hair. Towards the body those spikes are halfways yellowish, the remaining part is black, except the points, which are whitish, and as sharp as an awl. When they are vexed, they are able, by a certain contraction of the skin, to throw or dart them with such violence, that they wound, nay, sometimes kill men or beasts. Their whole body to measure from the hindermost part of the head to the beginning of the tail, is a foot long, and the tail a foot and five inches in length,

which likewise has always sharp spikes, 1643. the rest being covered with bristles like other hogs. The eyes are round, starting and glistening like a Carbuncle; about the mouth and nose are hair of four fingers length, resembling those of our cats or hares: The feet are like those of apes, but with four fingers only without a thumb, instead of which you see a place vacant, as if it had been cut away. The four legs are less than the hindermost, they are likewise armed with spikes, but not the feet.



This creature commonly sleeps in the day time, and roves about by night; it breaths through the nostrils, is a great lover of fowl, and climbs up the trees, tho' very slowly. The flesh is of no ungrateful taste, but roasted and eaten by the Inhabitants. It makes a noise *Jii*, like the *Luyaert*.

That four-legg'd creature, by the *Brasilians* called *Ati*, by the Portuguese *Prigui-za*, and by the Dutch *Luyaert* (lazy-back) from its lazy and slow pace, because in fifteen days time it scarce walks above a stones throw. It is about the bigness of a

middle-sized fox, its length being a little above a foot, to measure from the neck (which is scarce three fingers long) to the tail. The fore-legs are seven fingers long to the feet, but the hindermost about six; the head round of three fingers in length: its mouth, which never is without a foam, is round and small, its teeth neither large nor sharp. The nose is black, high, and glib, and the eyes small, black and heavy. The body is covered all over with ash-coloured hair, about two fingers long; which are more inclining to the white towards the back. Round about the neck the

1643. the hair is somewhat longer than the rest. It is a very lazy creature, unable to undergo any fatigues, by reason its legs are as it were disjointed in the middle; yet it keeps upon the trees, but moves, or rather creeps along very slowly. Its food is the leaves of the trees, it never drinks, and when it rains, hides itself. Wherever it fastens with its paws, it is not easily removed; it makes, tho' seldom, a noise like our cats.

The *Pijmire-Eater*, is thus called, because he feeds upon nothing but *pismires*; there are two sorts, the great and the small: The *Brazilians* call the first *Tamanduai*, and the last *Tamanduai-Guacu*. It is a four-legg'd creature, of the bigness of a dog, with a round head, long snout, small mouth, and no teeth. The tongue is roundish, but sometimes twenty-five inches, nay two foot and a half long. When it feeds, it stretches out its tongue upon the dunghills, till the *pismires* have settled upon it, and then swallows them. It has round ears, and a rough tail; is not nimble, but may be taken with the hand in the field. The small one, called *Tamanduai-Guacu*, is of the bigness of a *Brazilian* fox, about a foot in length. On the fore-feet it has four crooked claws, two big ones in the midst, and the two lesser on the sides. The head is round, yet pointed at one end, a little bent below; with a little black mouth without teeth. The eyes are very small, the ears stand upright about a fingers length. Two broad black lists run along on both sides of the back; the hairs on the tail are longer than those on the back, the extremity of the tail is without hair, wherewith it fastens to the branches of the trees. The hairs all over the body are of a pale yellow, hard and bright. Its tongue is round, and about eight fingers long. It is a very savage creature, grasps every thing with its paws, and if you hit it with a stick, sits upright like a bear, and takes hold of it with its mouth. It sleeps all day long, with its head and fore-feet under the neck, and roves about in the night

time. As often as it drinks, the water 1643. spouts forth immediately through the nostrils.

They have also a kind of serpents of about two fathoms long, without legs, with a skin of various colours, and four teeth. The tongue is split in the middle, resembling two arrows, and the poison is hid in a bladder in its tail.

The four legg'd creature, called by the *Brazilians*, *Tatu* and *Tatupera*, by the *Spaniards*, *Armadillo*, by the *Portuguese*, *Encuberto*, and by the *Dutch*, *Schild-Verken*, (*Shield-Hog*) because it is defended with scales like as with an armour, resembles in bigness and shape our hogs; there are several sorts of them. The uppermost part of the body, as well as the head and tail, is covered with bony shields, composed of very fine scales. It has on the back seven partitions, betwixt each of which appears a dark brown skin. The head is altogether like that of a hog, with a sharp nose, wherewith they grub under ground; small eyes, which lie deep in the head; a little, but sharp tongue; dark brown and short ears, without hair or scales: The colour of the whole body inclining to red; the tail in its beginning is about four fingers thick, but grows by degrees sharp and round to the end, like those of our pigs: But the belly, the breast, and legs are without any scales; but covered with a skin not unlike that of a goose, and whitish hair of a fingers length. It is generally very bulky and fat, living upon malecons and roots, and does considerable mischief in the plantations. It loves to rout under ground, eats rabbits, and the dead carcases of birds, or any other carrion: It drinks much, lives for the most part upon the land, yet loves the water and marshy places. Its flesh is fit to be eaten. It is catch'd like the *doc* in *Holland* with the rabbits, by sending a small dog abroad, who by his barking, gives notice where it lurks under ground, and so by digging up the ground it is found and catch'd.

Shield-Hogs.

1643.

Bats.

Will-guac.

The

The bird  
Toukan.

the water 1643.  
gh the no-

serpents of  
without legs,  
s, and four  
the middle,  
the poison is

called by the  
by the *Spa-*  
*tuquefe*, *En-*  
*cbilt-Verken*,  
fended with  
r, refembles  
; there are  
permost part  
ad and tail,  
, compofed  
on the back  
h of which  
The head is  
with a sharp  
der ground;  
the head; a  
k brown and  
les: The com-  
ing to red;  
out four fin-  
egrees sharp  
thofe of our  
aft, and legs  
covered with  
goofe, and  
ngth. It is  
living upon  
confiderable  
It loves to  
pets, and the  
y other car-  
for the moft  
es the water  
is fit to be  
doe in *Hol-*  
ding a fmall  
rking, gives  
ground, and  
it is found

The

1643.



Bats.

Wild-  
goose.

The bird  
Toukan.

The bats in *Brasil*, called by the inhabitants *Andirika*, are of the bigness of our crows; they are very fierce, and bite most violently with their sharp teeth. They build their nests in hollow trees and holes.

The bird called by the *Brasilians*, *Ipekati Apoa*, by the *Portuguese*, *Paia*, is no more than a goose; and for that reason by the *Dutch* called a wild goose. It is of the bigness of one of our geese of about nine months old, and in all other respects resembles them. The belly and under part of the tail, as likewise the neck, is covered with white feathers; but on the back to the neck, on the wings and head, the feathers are black intermixed with some green. There are also some black feathers intermixed with the white ones on the neck and belly. They differ from our geese in this, that they are somewhat bigger; their bills resemble rather those of our ducks, but are black, and turned at the end, and on the top of it grows a broad, round, and black piece of flesh, with white speckles. They are commonly found near the river-side, are very fleshy and well-tasted.

The bird by the *Brasilians* called *Toukan*, or large bill, is about the bigness of a wood

VOL. II.

pigeon. It has a crop about the breast of three or four fingers in compass, of a saffron colour, with high red coloured feathers round the edges, which are yellow on the breast, but black on the back and all the other parts of the body. Its bill is very large, of the length of a palm of a hand, yellow without and red within. It is almost incredible how so small a bird is able to manage so large a bill, but that it is very thin and light.

The bird called by the *Brasilians*, *Kokoi*, *The bird Kokoi*, is a kind of a crane, very pleasing to the sight, as big as our storks. Their bills are straight and sharp, about six fingers in length, of a yellowish colour inclining to green. The neck is fifteen fingers long, the body ten, the tail five: Their legs are half-ways covered with feathers, about eight fingers in length, the remaining part being six and an half. The neck and throat is white, both sides of the head black, mixt with ash-colour. On the far and undermost part of the neck are most delicious, white, long, and thin feathers, fit for plumes: The wings and tail are of an ash-colour, y<sup>e</sup> mixt with some white feathers. All along the back you see long and light feathers, like those

G

on

1643.



1643. on the necks, but are of an ash-colour: Their flesh is very good, and of a grateful taste. There is another kind of these birds, which is somewhat bigger than a tame duck. Its bill is straight, and sharp at the end, of the length of four fingers and a half, with a double set of teeth both above and below: The head and neck (which is two foot long) resembles the crane, with black eyes enclosed in a gold coloured circle. The body is two foot and a half in length; the tail, which stands even with the extremity of the wings, four fingers. The bill is of an ash colour towards the head, the rest yellow, inclining to green. The head and upper part of the neck are covered with long pale yellowish feathers, intermixt with black. On the back and wings it hath ash coloured feathers inclining to yellow; but the legs and feet are dark grey: The flesh of this bird is eatable, and tastes like that of a crane.

Jibiru ga-  
aku.

The bird called by the *Brasilians*, *Jibiru Guaku*, and by the *Dutch*, *Schuur Vogel*, or barn-bird, has no tongue, but a very large bill, near seven foot and a half long; round and crooked towards the end, of a grey colour. On the top of the head is a crown of white and green feathers. The eyes are black, behind each of which are two great concavities instead of ears. The neck is ten fingers in length, one half part of which as well as the head, is not covered with feathers, but with an ash-coloured, whitish, rugged skin. This bird is of the bigness of a Stork, with a short black tail, which stands even with the extremities of the wings. The other part of the neck, and the whole body, is covered with white feathers, and those on the neck very long ones: The wings are likewise white, but mixt with some red. The flesh if boiled, after the skin is taken of, is good food, being very white, but somewhat dry.

*Brasil* produces incredible quantities of other wild fowl of all sorts, both great and small, some of which live among the woods, others in the water, but are very good food.

Of the best kind are the thrushes, called by them *Bamodi*; Pheasants of divers kinds, called by the *Barbarians*, *Magnagu*, *Jaku*, and *Arakua*.

*Mouton* is a bird of the bigness of a peacock, but has black feathers, the flesh is very good and tender. Because this country is full of fruit trees and woody places, it produces abundance of sparrow-hawks, and other hawks, called by the *Portuguese*, *Gavilón*, and by the *Brasilians*, *Teguata* and *Inage*, which are always at enmity with the chickens and pigeons.

Among those that live both in the water and upon the land, the wild ducks claim the

precedency; some of those are smaller than the *European* ducks, others much exceed them, being as big as a goose. They have also a sort of snipes, called *Jakana-miri* and *Jakana-guaku*. Besides these there are cranes, quails and ostridges, and many others of that kind; the flesh of which is eatable, but not very toothsome.

The rest of these birds are very greedy after the amber-greese, which is thrown ashore by the boisterous sea, which they devour before the inhabitants can come thither to gather it. They have also abundance of *Parrots*, or small parrots, these never speak; but their parrot are extraordinary fine and large, some of which learn to speak as distinctly as a Man. I have seen some of these parrots express every thing what they heard cried in the streets very plainly; and among the rest I saw one, which if put in a basket upon the floor, would make a dog that belonged to the same house, sit up before the basket, crying out to him, fit up, fit up, you nasty toad. Neither did this parrot leave off calling and crying, till the dog came to sit up before the basket. It was afterwards presented to the queen of *Sweden*.

There is among the rest a certain small bird, no bigger than a joint of a finger, which notwithstanding this, makes a great noise, and is catched with the hands whilst it is sitting among the flowers, from whence it draws its nourishment. As often as you turn this bird, the feathers represent a different colour, which makes the *Brasilian* women fasten then with golden wires to their ears, as we do our-rings. The birds here are never destitute of food, which they always meet with either among the flowers or fruits of the trees, which are never spoiled here during the winter season.

The rivers and lakes of *Brasil*, as well as the neighbouring sea, furnishes them with great store of all sorts of fish, which are accounted so wholesome here, that they are even allowed for those that are troubled with agues. The standing waters near the sea-side, which sometimes are quite dried up, produce abundance of craw-fish, tortoises, shrimps, crabs, oysters, and divers others of this kind, which are all very good food.

There are abundance of fish in *Brasil*, common to the sea and rivers, especially during the rainy season; when a great quantity of the river water being conveyed into the sea, the sweetness of the water allures the fish into the rivers, where meeting with abundance of green weeds (the product of the bottom of the rivers) they never return to the sea.

Among the river fish the chiefest are, the *Duja*, *Prajuba*, and *Akara-Puku*, the last

of

1643.

1643. of

sec  
len  
wil  
Jib



Their fish.

piders.

Ne  
one c  
ways  
conca  
Nhan  
webs  
and b  
teeth.  
with  
as sca  
tumou  
be no  
matio  
symp  
Ne  
of a c  
kets;  
of thi  
shape  
kind;

Ballar, or  
Kabotto.



1643. of which resembles the best and largest of our perches.

*Brasil* produces also various kinds of insects, some of which are of four fingers length, and an inch thick. They have likewise silk worms, called by the *Brasilians*, *Ifokuku's*, and their silk, *Ifokurenimbo*.

There are also divers sorts of fire-flies, 1643. which are likewise found in the *East-Indies*, where we shall give you a further account of them. Besides these, there are many sorts of other flies, hornets, wasps, and bees: some of which produce honey, some none at all.



Among other kinds of spiders there is one of a prodigious bigness, which is always found either in dunghills, or in the concavities of hollow trees: They call it *Nbanduguaka*. These creatures weave cobwebs like other spiders; the skin is rough and black, provided with sharp and long teeth. This creature if provoked wounds with its poisonous sting, which is so small as scarce to be visible, and raises a blueish tumour, which is very painful, and if care be not taken in time, occasions an inflammation, attended with such dangerous symptoms as prove afterwards incurable.

Near *Rio St. Francisco* are vast numbers of a certain small insect not unlike our crickets; I have been very curious to get sight of this creature, to satisfy myself as to its shape, and resemblance to others of this kind; but though it makes a very shrill

noise, which resembles that of our crickets, I was never able to see any of them; for as soon as you approach they desist, so that you are at a loss which way to look. They sing sometimes for a quarter of an hour without intermission. In the island of *Java* in the *East-Indies* it is commonly heard in the months of *February* and *June*. At last I had the good fortune to get one of these creatures into my hands, by means of a certain *Chinese* woman; after I had often been in search of it, both within and without the city of *Batavia*. The *Javanese* set two of these little creatures a fighting together, and lay money on both sides, as we do at a cock-match.

There are also abundance of ravenous wild beasts in *Brasil*, such as tygers, leopards, &c. The tygers are extremely savage here; they fall upon beasts, and sometimes

1643. than a crocodile they have miri and cranes, of that e, but not

greedy af-  
own ashore  
deavour be-  
her to ga-  
ce of Par-  
ver speak  
y fine and  
eak as di-  
me of these  
they heard  
and among  
t in a bal-  
a dog that  
up before  
up, sit up,  
this parrot  
e dog came  
e was after-  
Sweden.

certain small  
f a finger,  
akes a great  
hands whilst  
rom whence  
ften as you  
sent a disse-  
rasilian wo-  
res to their  
birds here  
ich they al-  
the flowers  
never spoil-  
n.

, as well as  
them with  
which are  
at they are  
re troubled  
ers near the  
quite dried  
-fish, tor-  
and divers  
very good

in *Brasil*.  
pecially du-  
quantity  
ed into the  
allures the  
ng with a-  
product of  
ever return

iefest are,  
ku, the last  
of

Their fish. spiders.

Ballar, or  
Kabitto.

1643. times upon men, of whom several were killed by them in my time. A certain *Portuguese* had a sugar-mill very pleasantly situated near a wood, whither we used to go to divert ourselves sometimes. The *Portuguese* sitting one time with four more of his friends in the house, with the windows drawn up for the convenience of the land air, a dog belonging to the house, who had ventured too far into the adjacent wood, was pursued by a tyger, so that to save his life he leapt into the window to seek for shelter near his master; but the tyger closely pursuing him, leapt also through the window into the room, where the door being shut, he tore two of those there present in pieces before the rest could make their escape, and afterwards went his way.

There is another sort of savage beast in those parts, called by some of our people, *Jan-over-Zee*, or jack beyond sea, which surpasses all others in nimbleness, and tears all to pieces it meets with.

*Cattle.* *Brasil* has also great plenty of cattle, but the flesh will not keep above twenty-four hours after it is dress'd. The *Dutch* cut off the fat, and cut the lean in thin slices, and dry it in the sun like fish. No butter is to be made here, because the milk turns to curds immediately; the *Dutch* butter is drawn out of a vessel like oil.

*Hogs.* Their hogs are small and black, but very well tasted, and wholesome; there is another kind of amphibious hogs, by the *Portuguese* called *Kapiverres*, they are very near as black as the others, and good food.

*Antes.* There is another four legg'd creature in *Brasil*, called by the inhabitants *Taperete*, and by the *Portuguese*, *Antes*; its flesh has the taste of beef, but somewhat finer. It is about the bigness of a calf, but shaped like a hog; it sleeps all day among the woods, and seeks for belly-timber in the night: Its food is grass, sugar-reeds, cabbages, and such like. They have likewise good store of goats, called by them *Pakas*, and *Kotias*, and hares and rabbits, which don't give way in goodness to those of *Europe*. There is also an excellent kind of lizards, called by the inhabitants, *Vuana* and *Teju*, which are accounted a dainty bit.

*Fish.* The fish in *Brasil* are no less considerable for the supply of our plantations, than the cattle, which are on the coasts of *Brasil*, but especially in *Parnambuko*, where they are found in such plenty, that at one draught they catch sometimes two or three thousand fine fish, in the four or five summer months, for during the rainy season, they catch but few. There are certain districts along the sea coast whither the fish most resort; some of those belong to the inhabitants, the rest to the company, and are farmed at a cer-

tain rate *per annum*. The lakes as well as the bays, are stored with an incredible multitude of fish; the first are by the *Portuguese* called *Alagons*; and the best they produce are the *Sindia*, *Qyeba*, and *Noja*, all without scales. And though the fish which are caught in the lakes are not so much esteemed as the river-fish, nevertheless are they not much behind them in goodness, because these lakes are not always standing waters, but intermixt with several rivers. Some of these fish they dry in the sun. The chiefest of this kind are those called by the *Brasilians*, *Kurima Parati*, and by the *Dutch* inhabitants *Herders*. They abound no less in sea-fish of all sorts. The fish called by the *Brasilians*, *Karapantangele*, which is not unlike our perch, has the preference among them. And as the rivers furnish infinite numbers of fish, so they are generally fatter and better tasted than the sea-fish. Those which are caught in those fisheries near the sea-shore, are for the most part salted, and carried from thence into the country, for the use of the sugar-mills, which cause great plenty among them.

The craw-fish, which are in great quantities near the rivers and in the marshy grounds, serve likewise for food to the *Brasilians* and negroes, and some of our people like them tolerably well.

It is further to be observed, that whereas a considerable number of cattle, during the war was run astray out of the parks into the forests and woods beyond the river of *St. Francis*, it was thought convenient by the great council of the company here, to agree with certain persons to catch this cattle, and bring it to the *Receif*, in order to be killed for the use of the inhabitants. The time of the said contract being expired, it was consulted whether the same should be renewed; but it being apparent that there were not enough left to quit cost, the same was laid aside, and this resolution sent to the council of nineteen. For in the mean while the inhabitants near *Rio St. Francisco* and *Rio Grande*, having applied themselves to the breeding of cattle, their parks were so well stocked by this time, that they not only furnished the inhabitants of the *Receif*, but also the sugar-mills, with plenty of meat, which was bought at the rate of three and four pence *per pound* in the country; besides that, they provided the garrisons with the same for a twelve-month, after the store-houses of the *Receif* were emptied; and notwithstanding this, the inhabitants of those parts were not out of debt, when those of *Parnambuko* and *Parayba*, were involved over head and ears; which shews what advantage they reap from the breeding of cattle; and that if the

1643. the *Dutch Brasil* had continued in peace, those parks might have furnished all the garrisons with meat, without impairing their stock for breeding; which, together with the great plenty of fish, are the two main pillars of the state of *Brasil*.

Notwithstanding all which, it is certain that the inhabitants of the *Dutch Brasil* cannot be provided with sufficient maintenance, without a yearly supply from *Europe*, as well eatables as other commodities, as has been found by experience, to the great detriment of the company; after our store-houses were exhausted by the several expeditions against *Angola*, *Meranbaon*, and other places.

In the rivers and lakes here are also found crocodiles, by the *Brazilians* called *Jakare*, and in the *East-Indies*, *Kaymans*. They are like the *African* crocodiles, but not quite so big, seldom exceeding five foot in length. They lay twenty or thirty eggs bigger than geese eggs, which are eaten by the *Brazilians*, *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, as well as the *fish*.

In the seas near the coast of *Brasil*, they meet also sometimes with great lampreys. Before the bridge from the *Receif* to *Mauvice-town* was built, one of this kind of a considerable bigness did lurk near that passage, where the boats used to pass over from one side to the other, and snatched all that fell in his way, both men and dogs that swam sometimes after the boat, into the water: But at a certain time, by the sudden falling of the tide, being got aground with the foremost part of the body, he was with much ado brought ashore.

The district of *Pernambuco* does also abound in various sorts of fruits, as well as all the other parts of *Brasil*, of which we shall say more hereafter.

Upon the captainship of *Pernambuco*, borders to the north the captainship of *Tamarika*, which owes its name to an island of the same name, being the chiefest part of this district, which however extends near thirty-five leagues along the sea coast on the continent.

The island of *Tamarika* lies two leagues to the north of *Pomerello*, in the sea; being parted from the continent by the river *Tamarika*, its most southern point lying under the 7<sup>th</sup> degree 58<sup>m</sup> southern latitude. It is from south to north about two leagues long, and its circuit near seven. To the jurisdiction of this isle did also belong *Goyana*, *Kapavaribi*, *Terukupa*, and *Abray* on the continent. Formerly it had but few inhabitants, and scarce any houses, though it is a very pleasant isle, and tolerably fertile, producing *brasil-wood*, *coco nuts*, *cotton*, *sugar-reeds*, *melons*, and such like; be-

VOL. II.

1643. sides wood for firing, and fresh water for the conveniency of the *Receif*: It abounds likewise in wood both for building of houses and shipping. This island was much infested with wild beasts, which did great mischief to the sugar reeds: This moved *Peter Pat*, director of the captainship of *Tamarika*, to make his application to count *Maurice* and the great council in 1647, to know their pleasure, whether they should dispose of those beasts by contract, to such as would be at the charge of catching of them, or whether they should be taken and killed for the use of the garrisons; but this was rejected by the council, who enjoined the inhabitants not to kill those beasts in the open fields, unless they should break into their plantations, it being for the interest of the company to preserve them in case of a necessity: The damage which from thence might accrue to the sugar reeds, being to be prevented by surrounding their plantations with pales and stakes.

The island is look'd upon as of the greatest consequence to us, it having been proposed by some to transfer the seat of the *Dutch-Brasil* from the *Receif* thither; but the directors of the company did not agree to it, considering that at that time this island was quite desolate; whereas upon the *Receif* were store-houses, magazines, ware-houses, and such like buildings ready to their hands, besides that the place was much more pleasant, fertile, and stronger; and the harbour much more convenient for ships: The river *Tamarika* on the other hand being not navigable, but for small vessels, by reason of the shallowness of the harbour, which was noted for shipwrecks. The defect of fresh water in the *Receif*, in which this isle abounds, may be supplied from the river *Biberibi*; besides that, they had several basons with fresh water within the *Receif*, for their present use. During the war with the *Portuguese* we were sensible of the conveniencies we received from this island, by reason of its strength both by art and nature, which might serve as a safe retreat upon all emergencies; besides, that its preservation was absolutely necessary for the *Receif*, which was supplied from thence with fish, and several other sorts of provisions.

Upon the banks of the river at the south entrance of the harbour, we had built a quadrangular fort, called *Orange*. It was provided with a goodly wall, but the ditch was not very deep, and for the most part without water, for which reason it was strengthen'd with palisadoes. On the north-side we had a hornwork, but much decayed; within the body of the fort was a powder-vault, and other conveniencies for the bedding

The consequence of this isle.

1643. bedding of soldiers. Several batteries were raised upon the walls, mounted upon six brass and as many iron great guns. In the island near the entrance of the river, close by a morass full of thorn-bushes, was a small town, most inhabited by soldiers, called by the Portuguese, *Nossa Senhora da Concepciao*. Upon a hanging rock, just by, was an old redoubt erected by the Portuguese, called by the same Names, which together with the whole island, was taken by the Dutch, under the command of colonel Schop from the Portuguese, and the place, after his name, called *Schop's Town*. This fort was afterwards by the Dutch closed up on the backside towards the church, so that it afterwards served both for the defence of the town and the harbour, as the *Blockhouse* on the north-side cover'd the gates. There were then eleven pieces of cannon mounted upon it. At the north entrance of the harbour, was another redoubt, which defended that passage on that side, with three iron cannon. One Mr. Dormont, governor of *Itamarika*, found under the before-mention'd rock, in 1645, as he was digging a well, a spring of fresh water, which proved very useful for the garrison, because it could not be cut off by the enemy.

Somewhat higher up the river *Tamarika*, lies an island called *Magiope*, where are found abundance of *Mandiboka* roots. You may go quite round this island in barks; it having a kind of a harbour on both ends, viz. to the south and north, but the first is the best; because there arises from the northern shore of the continent, a shelf, which reaches very close to the island, the channel betwixt both not having above ten or twelve foot water. The only harbour fit for use thereabouts is the south-entrance of the river, which makes *Tamarika* an island, where ships that drew fourteen or fifteen foot water, may pass through; there is no convenient anchorage. That end, where the river returns into the sea, is by the Dutch called the northern-entrance, and by the Portuguese *Katuamma*.

Betwixt *Pomerello* and the river *Tamarika*, a river comes from the continent, fit for barges, called *Marafarinha*; and half a league within the mouth of the river *Tamarika*, another falls likewise from the continent called *Garaffou*, but is of little moment. From thence to the north, are several other rivers near the sea-shore, which are navigable with barges, for the convenience of the sugar-mills, of which there are several thereabouts.

A league and an half further to the north of the north-entrance of *Tamarika*, is a noted point of land called by the Portuguese,

*Punto Pedra*, surrounded with a Reef, betwixt which you may pass with barges and yachts.

A league further to the north from this point, and three leagues to the north-west of *Tamarika*, is the small river *Goyana*, under 7 deg. 46 min. which discharges in two branches in the bay; at the entrance lies a great rock, where is great store of sea-fowl. Before it lies a great Reef, but within are so many shelves that renders the passage very dangerous.

About two leagues and a half beyond the river *Goyana*, to the north, is a great river, called *Auyay*, but the entrance is so choak'd up with sands, that there is scarce any passage for barges. This river sends forth several branches into the country, upon one of which to the north, lies the village of *Maurice*, and upon the southern branch the village *Auyay*.

Among others, *Porto Francisco* lies in a creek three long leagues to the north of the river *Auyay*; and five leagues to the north-west of the same river, an unnavigable river called *Grammana*, besides several other rivulets.

About a league and a half to the north-west of the river *Grammana*, is the *Cabo Blanco*, or *White Cape*, and three leagues from thence to the north-west, the cape of *Parayba*, being a long point of land, with a large adjacent bay. The whole coast from *Pomerello* to the cape of *Parayba*, is cover'd with reefs or rocks, which lying for the most part about half a league from the shore, and the water between them being generally very smooth, affords an easy passage to barges, even in tempestuous weather; when it is almost impossible for ships to pass without the rocks, by reason of the violence of the current from the northern and the southern winds, which blow there continually.

Three leagues within the mouth of the river *Goyana* is a town of the same name, where is kept the court of judicature of this captainship. There are five or six sugar-mills thereabouts, situated upon the banks of the river, for the more commodious transportation of sugar in barges to *Pernambuco*. This country produces likewise brasil-wood, ginger, cotton, and *Indian* nuts; the people called *Peiguaves* inhabit here; tho' this whole tract of land, as far as *Cabo Blanco*, is not very populous, having only a few villages, inhabited by the *Brazilians*.

The isle of *Tamarika* has several landing places on the river-side, the chiefest are: *Os Markos* and *Pedreiros*, where the river is narrowest; *Tapasma* and *Kamboa* of *Domingos Rebeiro*; the great *Makqueira* and

Hanging-rock.

The rivers Marafarinha and Garaffou.

Punto Pedra.

The river Goyana.

The river Auyay.

Porto Francisco.

Cape of Parayba.

The Town of Goyana.

The city Parayba.

with a *Receif*, 1643.  
with barges

orth from this *The river*  
the north-west *Goyana*  
river *Goyana*,  
a difembogues  
at the entrance  
great store of  
eat *Receif*, but  
that renders the

a half beyond  
orth, is a great  
entrance is so  
there is scarce  
this river fends  
to the country,  
north, lies the  
on the southern

*Francisco* lies in a *Porto*  
*Francisco*  
leagues to the  
river, an unnavi-  
gable, besides feve-

lf to the north-  
na, is the *Cabo*  
d three leagues  
west, the cape of  
of land, with *Cape of*  
the whole coast *Parayba*  
e of *Parayba*, is  
ks, which lying  
f a league from  
between them be-  
affords an easy  
in tempestuous  
it impossible for  
ocks, by reason  
current from the  
winds, which

the mouth of the *The Town*  
the same name, *of Goyana*  
of judicature of  
are five or six  
uated upon the  
more commo-  
ar in barges to  
y produces like-  
otton, and *In-*  
Petiguaves in-  
tract of land,  
very populous,  
inhabited by

s several land-  
e, the chiefest  
ros, where the  
na and *Kamboa*  
great *Makgueira*  
and

1643. and *Kamboa* of *Conrad Pauli*; in which  
places the enemy landed in that island.  
The pass near the north-entrance of *To-*  
*powa*, and the island *Taposoka*, where with  
one single ship you may defend the pas-  
sage from the rivers *Tujukapape* and *Masse-*  
*vandaku*, as likewise from the sea. For the  
rest, the shore all along the river being  
very marshy and full of *Manga* trees, is  
of a very difficult access. The shore to-  
wards the sea-side is very flat, but woody,  
which together with the sands, that are at  
some distance in the sea, makes the ap-  
proach of ships very dangerous on that  
side. Formerly the court of judicature of  
the *captainship* was kept in this island, but  
was afterwards transferred from thence, as  
we told you before, to the Town of *Go-*  
*yana* and *Kapivaribi* on the continent, be-  
cause these places were both more popu-  
lous, and more sugar-mills were built there-  
abouts, the ground being much better here  
than in the island. In my time there were  
five judges belonging to this court, three  
of which lived at *Goyana*, and the other  
two in the isle of *Itamarika*. However,  
this court was afterwards likewise remov-  
ed from *Goyana*. In the year 1641, Mr.  
*Peter Pas* was director of the *captainship* of  
*Itamarika* for the *West-India* company, and  
captain *Sluiter* commander in chief over  
the soldiers.

This *captainship* has derived its name  
from the capital city, which has borrow'd  
hers of the river *Parayba*, upon which it  
is situate. It is one of the most northerly  
*captainships*, about five leagues distant from  
the sea. It was formerly in the possession  
of the *French*, who were 1585, chased from  
thence and several other harbours, by the  
*Portuguese* general *Martin Leytan*.

Five leagues upwards the river *Parayba*,  
is a city founded by the *Portuguese*, and  
after *Philip* king of Spain, called *Filippen*  
and *Nossa Senhora de nives*, otherwise *Pa-*  
*rayba*, from the river *Parayba*; which name  
was by the *Dutch*, after they had in No-  
vember 1633, conquered the whole *cap-*  
*tainship*, changed into that of *Frederick's*  
*Town*, after *Frederick* Henry prince of *O-*  
*range*. This city had been but lately built  
by the *Portuguese*, and had several stately  
houses with marble pillars, the rest being  
only of stone. Here is kept the court of  
judicature of this *captainship*. Before the  
time of the rebellion of the *Portuguese*,  
this place was inhabited as well by the  
*Portuguese* as *Dutch*, being much frequen-  
ted by the inhabitants of the circumjacent  
country, was used to exchange their su-  
gar for what other commodities they stood  
in need of, which was afterwards from  
thence transported to other places.

Within the mouth of the river *Parayba*, 1643.  
were three very considerable forts. One  
on the fourth-point, by the *Portuguese* cal-  
led *Catharine*, but by count *Maurice*, after-  
wards named *Margaret*, after his Sister. It  
was defended with five goodly battions,  
and a hornwork without.

The fort called *St. Antonio*, by the *Por-*  
*tuguese*, was built upon a small island,  
which by a narrow breach was separated  
from the north-point. This is only the  
remainder of a large four square fort, for-  
merly erected by the *Portuguese*, which  
was afterwards rased by the *Dutch*, part  
of it having been wash'd away by the ri-  
ver. It is surrounded with palisadoes and  
a good ditch, supplied with water from  
the beforenamed branch of the river: The  
Walls are very strong, and upon a battary  
are mounted six iron pieces of cannon. It  
may be defended by the cannon both from  
the city of *Parayba*, and from the fort *Mar-*  
*garet*, lying just opposite to it on the  
south-side, which is the reason it was al-  
ways but carelessly guarded by the *Por-*  
*tuguese*.

The third fort lies upon a triangular  
island, called *Restinga*, not far from thence,  
more upwards the river. It was strength-  
ened with palisadoes, and upon the batte-  
ries were mounted five brass, and as many  
iron pieces of cannon.

The *captainship* of *Parayba* is watered  
and divided by two considerable rivers, viz,  
the *Parayba* and *Mongoapa*, otherwise call'd  
*St. Domingo*. The great river of *Parayba* *The river*  
lies under the 6<sup>th</sup> deg. 24 min. four leagues *Parayba*.  
to the north of *Cabo Blanco*, and discharges  
itself in two branches into the Sea, being  
separated by a large sand-bank: One is  
called the northern, and the other the  
southern entrance. From the last extends  
a rocky-ridge as far *Cabo Blanco*, and with-  
in the river lies a sand-bank quite cross to  
the fort *Margaret*. This river is very  
shallow during the summer time, but in  
the winter season, the waters rise to that  
height that they overflow all the adjacent  
countray, sometimes to the great loss of  
men and cattle.

Two leagues beyond this river to the  
north, is a bay which affords a very safe  
station to the largest ships. It is by the  
*Portuguese* called *Porto Lucena*, and by the *Porto*  
*Dutch* the *Red-Land*, the grounds being *Lucena*.  
red hereabouts. There is very good an-  
chorage here at five and six fathom water,  
and the country near it affords very good  
fresh water; which is the reason why the  
*Dutch* ships bound for *Holland* from the  
*Receif*, used to stay for one another com-  
ing in this bay, and to provide themselves  
with fresh water.

Half

1643.  
River  
Mongoa-  
pa.

Half a league further to the north, under 6 deg. 34 min. the river *Mongopa*, or *Mongoanawapy*, exonerates it self into the sea: This river is much larger towards its source than at the mouth; the banks on both sides being full of briers, bushes and *Munga* trees. Before its entrance lies a *Recess*, and at the very mouth two dangerous sand-banks; it has three fathom water at low tide.

About two small leagues to the north of the river *Mongopa*, is a bay called by the Portuguese *Bahia de Treycano*, or *Treafon*, where, at about a league distant from the shore, is eleven or twelve fathom water. Five leagues to the north of this bay, you meet with the river *Barra Conguon* or *Konayo*, which is scarce passable for Yatches. About a league and a half from thence is large bay of about two leagues in length, called *Pernambuko*; and five leagues beyond it to the north, the river *Jan de Sta*, or *Efftan*.

The natives of *Parayba* inhabit about seven villages, the chiefest of which is call'd *Pinda Una*, which in 1634, contained about fifteen hundred inhabitants, where each of the others had scarce three hundred; each of these comprehending not above five or six very long buildings, with a great many doors, but very small ones.

The chief commodities of this captainship are sugar, brasil-wood, tobacco, hides, cotton, and such like. The sugar-reeds did bear extremely well, because they were transplanted into fresh grounds. Whilst the district of *Parayba* was under our jurisdiction, there were above one and twenty sugar-mills on both sides of the banks of the river, eighteen of which sent away every year four thousand chests of sugar. Near the river-side, the country is low and plain, but not far from thence rises by degrees, and affords a very agreeable variety of hills and valleys. The flat country, which is also the most fertile, is distinguished into several divisions, some of which have borrow'd their names from small rivers which run thro' them; as for instance, *Gramamma*, *Tapoa*, *Tibery*, *Ingeby*, *Monguappe*, *Incery*, *Kamaratuba*, and several more. All those countries are extremely fertile, occasion'd by the overflowing of the river *Parayba*. Their products are, sugar, barley, turky-wheat, potatoes, ananas, coco-nuts, melons, oranges, citrons, bananas, pakovas, markomas, cucumbers, and all other necessaries for the sustenance of men and beasts. They have here a kind of wild pears, called kajous, which are very juicy and well-tasted; within is a certain bean or small nut, the rind of which is bitter, but the kernel sweet,

It is fertile.

if roasted in the ashes. The pear is very cooling, but the nut has a contrary quality.

Towards the end of November 1634, the Dutch undertook the expedition against *Parayba*, their forces being embarked in thirty two ships under the command of colonel *Schoppe*, *Artisjeski*, *Hinderfon*, *Stachouwer* and *Carpentier*. The whole fleet was divided into two squadrons, the first consisted of one and twenty ships, in which were nineteen hundred and forty five men, the other of eleven yachts, with four hundred and nine men. *Schoppe* was the first that landed six hundred men, and advanced towards the enemy, who betook themselves to their heels, leaving their arms and cloaths behind them; *Anthony Albuquerque* their general, himself scarce escaping their hands. In the mean while, the rest being likewise got a shore, three companies, under the conduct of *Guifer Ley*, marched directly to the fort of *Margaret*, and intrencht himself near the fort, whilst *Schoppe* kept all along the shore, and *Artisjeski*, posted himself on the right-side, in sight of the garrison: At the same time Mr. *Lichtbart* attack'd the fort in the small island *Restinga*, which he took by force, and put the garrison to the sword. By this time *Schoppe* had rais'd a battery against the fort, from whence he so freely gall'd the besieged, that their commander *Simon d'Albuquerque* surrendred the place. Hereupon the fort of *St. Antonio* was summon'd to surrender, *Maglianes* the governor desired three days delay, which being denied, he march'd away secretly by night, leaving the place to *Lichtbart*, who found there five great brass pieces, and nineteen iron pieces of cannon.

The same night our forces march'd towards the city of *Parayba*, being sixteen hundred strong, and having pass'd a small branch of the river called *Tambra Grande*, made themselves masters of it without any opposition: The Spanish general *Baniola*, who commanded there with two hundred and fifty men only, having left the place before, and being retired to *Goyana*, after he had either sunk or nail'd up the cannon, set fire to three ships and two warehouses, in which were consumed three thousand chest with sugar. The fort of *St. Catharine* being much decay'd, was order'd by count *Maurice* to be repaired, and the ditch to be enlarged and deepen'd; giving it the name of *Margaret*, after his Sister. The fort of *St. Antonio* was rais'd, for the greatest part, there being only one bulwark left for the defence of the north-point of the river. The fort *Restingas* was order'd to be surrounded with new palisades

1643.

1643.

Potig. or  
Rio Grande.

The Dutch  
conquer  
Parayba.

River Rio  
Grande.



is very 1643.  
ary qua-

1634,  
n against  
arked in  
mand of  
son, Sta-  
hole fleet  
the first  
in which  
five men,  
four hun-  
us the first  
advanced  
themselves  
arms and  
Albuquerque  
aping their  
rest being  
panies, un-  
, marched  
t, and in-  
hillt Schop-  
Artigosti,  
e, in light  
e Mr. Lieb-  
small island  
ce, and put  
y this time  
against the  
y gall'd the  
Simon d'Al-  
Hereupon  
immoned to  
gnor desired  
denied, he  
ht, leaving  
found there  
ineteen iron

marched to-  
eing sixteen  
s'd a small  
bra Grande,  
without any  
ral Banjela,  
wo hundred  
it the place  
yana, after  
p the can-  
two ware-  
three thou-  
fort of St.  
was order'd  
ed, and the  
d, giving  
his Sister.  
ed, for the  
y one bul-  
north-point  
as was or-  
new pallisa-  
does

1643.

Potigi, or  
Rio Gran-  
de.

does, and the convent of *Parayba* fortified with a wall and outwork; and the command thereof given to *Elias Markman*, together with the government of the whole captainship.

The captainship of *Potigi*, or *Potingi* or *Poteingi*, is otherwise, by the Portuguese, called *Rio Grande*, from a river of the same Name: The Dutch call it *Norib-Brasil*, in respect of the more southern captainships of *Brasil*. It borders to the south upon *Parayba*, and to the north upon the captainship of *Siara*; tho' the Portuguese geographers extended its bounds as far as the illad *Maranbaon*.

The French were once masters of this captainship, 'till 1597, they were chased from thence by the Spanish commander, *Feliciano Creza de Karvalalho*. It has four divisions, named after so many rivers, that run through them; viz. *Kunbao*, *Goyana*, *Mumpobu* and *Potegy*. And tho' this district has been much neglected by the Portuguese, yet does it produce plenty of wild-fowl and fish, which are so luscious, that they commonly eat them only with lemon-juice or vinegar, without oil. There is an incredible number of fish in the lake *Goraires*; besides which, abundance of *Farinha* is planted here. This part of the country stood us in good stead during the late rebellion of the Portuguese, our garrisons in *Parayba*, and other places, being supplied from thence with good store of flesh and fish.

River Rio  
Grande.

Above the river *Rio Grande*, is a town of no great moment, call'd *Amsterdam*; the inhabitants live by planting *Farinha* and *Tobacco*, and fishing. Higher up in the country live some *Moradores* or husbandmen, who cultivate the grounds; but on the north-side of *Rio Grande* are but few inhabitants.

The river *Rio Grande*, i. e. the Great-river, is so called by the Portuguese from its bigness, but by the *Brasilians*, *Potigi* or *Poteingi*. The mouth of this river lies under 50 deg. 42 min. southern latitude, three leagues from *Punto Negro*, coming from the west-side of the continent. It disembogues four leagues above the fort *Keulen*, called by the Portuguese, *Tres Reyes*: It bears ships of great burthen; but the river *Kunbao* in the same captainship is only navigable with barges and yachts. The bays of this captainship are, *Babia Formosa*, *Punto Negro*, *Ponto de Pisas*, and the Bay of *Marin Tussen*. The Bay of *Ginapabo* lies beyond *Rio Grande* to the north; and beyond that a river call'd *Gnasavi*, upon which, near the mouth lies the village *Atape Wappa*. Near to the north you meet with the river *Siria Afixui*; and near the village of *Natal*, and the fort of

VOL. II.

*Tres Reyes*, passes a river called the *Crofs-River*, which arises out of a small lake in *Rio Grande*. Over against the same fort, a fresh river falls into the great river, betwixt two land-banks, and not far from thence another salt-water river.

The fort *Keulen* was four-square, built upon a rock or point of a *Reccif*, at some distance from the shore, at the mouth of the river *Reccif*; being surrounded with water, as oft as it's flowing water, so that at high tide there is no coming at it but with boats. In the midst of this fort is a small chappel, where in 1645, and 1646, our people found a wall about a foot and a half wide on the top, but at the bottom three feet, cut within a rock, which brings fresh supplies of good and sweet water every tide; with an ordinary tide two hundred and twenty five, and at spring-tide about three hundred and fifty quarts; which is more than sufficient for the use of the garrison, in case of siege. The fort is built of a square stone; being towards the shore defended with two half bastions, in form of hornworks. In the year 1646, there was an artillery of twenty nine, as well brass as iron pieces of cannon in the place, and provided with a good under-vault, and convenient lodgments for the soldiers.

This fort was in 1633, taken by the Dutch, under the command of *Matthias van Keulen*, one of the governors of the company, who being assisted by several noted captains, viz. *Byma*, *Klo-penburg*, *Lichtbart*, *Garlzman* and *Mansfelt van Keulen*, set sail thither with eight hundred and eight men, embarked in four ships and seven yachts, and made himself master of it, and the whole captainship at the same time; since which it changed its name *Tres Reyes*, into that of *A. Alen*, from the commander in chief of this expedition.

The *Tapoyers* (or mountaineers) use commonly twice a year, especially when the dry season puts them in want of fresh water, to make an inroad into this captainship; there being a constant enmity betwixt them and the Portuguese. It happen'd in July 1645, that these *Tapoyers* being advertised that the Portuguese intended to revolt from us, and had actually begun the same in *Pernambuko*, did, under the conduct of one of their leaders, called *Jacob Rabbi*, after several provocations given them by the Portuguese, make an incursion into *Kunbao*, where they killed thirty six Persons in a sugar-mill belonging to one *Gonsalvo d'Oliveira*. From thence they marched to a certain place, where the Portuguese had cast up a line for their defence, which they made themselves masters of, and put

1643.

The fort  
Keulen

Its con-  
quest by  
the Dutch.

I

the



1643. the *Portuguese* to the sword. The *Brasilians* told us, that this had been done in requital of what had been done to some of those mountaineers by one *Andrew Vidal* in *Serinbaim*, after quarter given them before, of which we shall say more hereafter. Since which time, the *Portuguese* have laid this tract desolate, which the *Dutch* once had a mind to re-people, and to put it in the same condition as the *Portuguese* had possess'd it, but for want of people that design was vain to be laid aside.

*Siara*. The captainship of *Siara* is one of the most northerly districts of *Brasil*, bordering upon *Maranbaou* to the north upon the river *Siara*. It is of no great extent, its whole compass being not above ten or twelve leagues.

The river *Siara*, which rises deep in the continent, disembogues about seven leagues and a half to the north of the bay *Mangorypa*, under 3 deg. 40 min. southern latitude.

The native inhabitants of this captainship, according to the report of those that have frequently visited it, are very large of stature, with ugly features, long hair and black skin; except the space betwixt the eyes and mouth. They have holes in their ears, which hang downwards upon the shoulders; some make holes in their lips, some in their noses, in which they wear stones as an ornament. Their food is *Farinba*, wild-fowls, fish and fruit. They drink most water, but make likewise a certain liquor out of *Farinba*; and of late began to be used to drink good store of brandy, tho' it was expressly forbidden to bring it into the villages, to keep them from the excessive use of strong liquors. The country produces sugar-reeds, chrystal, cotton, pearls, salt, and several other commodities. Ambergrease is also found on the sea-shore.

The inland part of the country was in 1630, governed by one of their own kings, call'd *Algodoi*; in some respect tributary to the *Portuguese*, who had built a fort upon the river *Siara*, and made themselves masters of the whole sea-coast thereabouts; notwithstanding which they were in continual broils with one another, 'till 1638, this fort and the whole country was taken by the *Dutch* from the *Portuguese*, in the following manner.

Count *Maurice* and the council, being solicited by the natives of that country, to make themselves masters of the *Portuguese* fort on that side, and to deliver them from the oppression they lay under at that time, they offering their assistance, and giving two young lads of their best families, as pledges of their fidelity, this expedition was resolved upon. The chief

command over the Troops design'd for this exploit, was conferr'd upon colonel *John Garfman*, a man of more than ordinary conduct in martial affairs, tho' as the case then stood, this enterprize was not likely to meet with any considerable difficulties; being assured of the assistance of the *Brasilians*, who bore an old hatred to the *Portuguese*, and were acquainted with the strength and condition both of their forces and places. *Garfman* being provided with ships, men, ammunition, and all other necessaries requisite for such an expedition, set sail towards the river *Siara*; where being met by the *Algodoi*, or king, with white ensigns in token of peace; and having landed his men, two hundred of the natives joined with them. With those he marched directly to the fort, which after a brave resistance from the *Portuguese*, who killed some of his men, he took by storm; and made most of the garrison prisoners, among whom were some commanders of note: They found good store of cannon and artillery in the place.

Since that time, the *Dutch* built a small fort upon the *Siara*, unto which they gave likewise the name of *Siara*, which was provided with a garrison of betwixt thirty and forty soldiers only; not so much for the defence of the country, as to maintain a good correspondency with the *Brasilians*, who being very numerous in those parts, might do us considerable service in time of war. It was upon this consideration, that the great council always commanded their officers, sent thither, to cultivate a good understanding with them; and at several times sent them some small presents, which, however proved ineffectual in the end, for in 1644, they attack'd and kill'd several of our men at *Komesay*, (a place about thirty leagues from *Siara*) as we shall hear anon.

For the *Brasilians* being, in 1641, increased to such a number in *Siara*, that the villages thereabouts were not able to contain them without great inconvenience, whereas the district of *Rio Grande* was almost destitute of inhabitants, and consequently not in a condition to oppose an enemy; one *Andrew Ulijs* propos'd to the great council, to build a village in *Rio Grande*, for the use of such as intended to settle there out of *Siara*, desiring to be constituted chief of the said village. Count *Maurice* and the great council, being informed of the inclinations of those *Siara*, who were willing to settle in *Rio Grande*, their ancient place of abode, and considering the benefit that was likely to accrue to the company, from the settlement of those *Brasilians*, so near at hand, granted *Ulijs*'s request, wishing him to bring thither

1643.

The fort  
Siara.

1643.

excellent  
of  
hall.

1643. d for this

onel John  
an ordinary  
as the café  
likely to be  
ulties; be-  
Brasilians,  
Portuguese,  
rength and  
and places.  
hips, men,  
aries requi-  
fail towards  
t by the Al  
ns in token  
is men, two  
with them.  
to the fort,  
e from the  
of his men,  
de most of  
whom were  
They found  
illery in the

build a small  
ch they gave  
Siara.

which was pro-  
ced thirty and  
much for the  
to maintain a  
ne Brasilians,  
those parts,  
ice in time of  
iteration, that  
manded their  
ivate a good  
nd at several  
ents, which,  
the end, for  
I'd several of  
about thirty  
hear anon.

In 1641, in-  
Siara, that  
not able to  
convenience,  
ande was al-  
and confe-  
to oppose an  
posed to the  
lage in Rio  
intended to be  
firing to be  
lage. Count  
being in-  
those Sia. a.  
Rio Grande,  
and confi-  
likely to ac-  
the settlement  
hand, grant-  
m to bring  
thither

1643. thither as many of the *Brasilians* of *Siara* as he thought convenient, for the compass of a village of which he was made chief or captain. Things being thus settled, they chose, with the approbation of our directors, certain chiefs or heads out of the most ancient families of each division, called *Residors* by the *Portuguese*, and certain judges; as for instance in *Goyana*, *Domingoi*, *Fernandes*, and *Karapeva*; in *Parayba*, *Peter Potts*; and in *Rio Grande*, *Antonio Perapeva*. Notwithstanding all this, the *Brasilians* of *Siara* revolted against the *Dutch* in 1644. surprized the garrison in the fort, which they razed, and killed the commander in chief, *Gideon Morritz*, with the whole garrison, besides all the women belonging to the salt-pits near the river *Upanemna*, who were all cut in pieces by these *Barbarians*.

A certain master of a ship, with a captain, lieutenant, and some soldiers, who happened to come ashore in a boat to fetch some fresh provisions, being ignorant of their treachery, were also put to the slaughter, three seamen having the good fortune to escape with their lives into the wood.

Some laid the cause of this rebellion at the door of the *Portuguese* and *Brasilians* of *Maranbaon*, bordering upon them; but if we search into the true source of this evil, it must be attributed to the miscarriage of our own officers, who by their hard usage, had forced the inhabitants to revenge themselves for the injuries received at their hands.

Thus much concerning the *Captains/ships* of the *Dutch Brasil*; we will in the next place give you an account of all the memorable transactions that happened betwixt the *Dutch* and *Portuguese* in *Brasil* during our stay there; after I have represented to you the excellency and convenient situation of this country, together with the ecclesiastical estate of the *Dutch Brasil*.

excl.  
ary of  
null.

*Brasil* is a country excellently well qualified by nature for the producing of all things, which are generally found in the *West-Indies*, under or near the same climate; except, that hitherto no gold or silver mines have been discovered here worth taking notice of. But next to gold and silver, the sugar claims the precedence here before all other commodities. Among all the harbours and places of the *West-Indies*, there is not one that can compare with *Brasil*, either for the product, or convenience of transportation of sugar; the whole coast of *Brasil* being full of small rivers, which flowing through the adjacent valleys, disembogue in the sea; from whence the sugar-mills built in the

1643. valleys reap the benefit of saving vast charges, which else must be bestowed upon labourers and carriages; whereas these rivers drive the mills, serve for the transportation of sugar to other places, and furnish them at an easy rate with what commodities they stand in need of; all which conveniences, as they are not to be met with in any other place of the *West-Indies*; so, no sugar-mills could be erected there with any prospect of profit. The exportation of sugar from *Brasil* into *Europe* and *Africa*, is likewise performed with much more ease than from any other places in the *West-Indies*; for the situation of *Brasil*, (being the most eastern part of all *America*) is such, as could not be more conveniently contrived by human art or nature for the transportation of so general and agreeable a commodity as sugar, into all the other parts of the world; considering those two excellencies of *Brasil*, together with its vast extent, it is most certain, that, provided it were well peopled, it might command both the *Norib* and *Ethiopian* seas, and spread its commerce over all parts of the world; nay, it might extend its conquests both to the east and west, or at least establish factories there for the convenience of traffick. To prove which, it is to be observed:

That all *East-India* ships, both going and coming, must pass by the coast of *Brasil*; and as those ships in their voyages thither, are often forced to touch upon this coast, so in their return, nothing could be more commodious for them, than to be supplied with fresh provisions here. From *Brasil* you may sail in fourteen days to the *Caribbee* islands, and in the same time, or a little longer, to *Sierra Leona* on the coast of *Guinea*. It is impossible to enter deep into the great south sea, (whereabouts a great part of the terrestrial globe remains as yet undiscovered) unless you take in fresh provisions and firing in *Brasil*, or expose yourself to the greatest hazards imaginable in so long a voyage, as is sufficiently evident from the journals of *Oliver Van North*, *Spilbergen*, *le Maire*, and *John P'Heremite*. And experience has taught us, since *Mr. Brewster's* voyage to *Chili*, how easy the passage is betwixt *Brasil* and the south sea; for he lost not so much as one ship out of four, and very few died in the whole voyage.

*Brasil* enjoys likewise the advantage of a very wholesome climate; for tho' it lies betwixt the equinoctial line and the *Tropic of Capricorn*, and consequently is subject to burning heats, yet are the same much allayed by the winds, that blow out of the east from the sea, their free passage being

The whol-  
some-ness of  
its climate.

1643. being not interrupted by any mountains or islands; which is the reason, that in *Brasil* the same distempers are rarely to be met with which reign so frequently in *Angola*, *Guinea*, *St. Thomas*, and several other places, where the east winds cannot afford them the same advantage. A plague is a thing unknown in *Brasil*, in which it excels all other countries; tho' they are not free from continual putrid fevers, caused by the hot and moist air, and the excessive use of raw fruits.

Those that are bound for the coast of *Brasil* ought to have a special regard to the season of the year, which regulates the winds and stream thereabouts; and to be very careful to sail above the harbour whither they are bound; for if they miss and come below it, they lose their aim, and must stay till the next turn of the wind and stream. For it is observable, that on the coast of *Brasil*, the stream runs from *February* till past *July* constantly northerly, during which time there is no passing from the north to the south; but after those months are past the stream turns, and from the beginning of *September* to the latter end of *November*, runs as violently to the south as it did to the north before, and consequently there is no sailing from the north to the south, no more than before from the south to the north. The winds here turn with the stream; and at the beginning of *March* blow south-south-east, and south-east. And like as the stream changes its current till *September*, so the winds continue in the east, and blow till that time out of the east-south-east. For there are but two winds that reign along this coast, viz. the south-east and north-east winds; according to which ships must regulate their course here.

The ecclesiastical state of the *Dutch Brasil* was in my time thus ordered:

Before the insurrection of the *Portuguese*, there were to the south of the *Receif* five protestant churches; viz. in *Rio St. Francisco*, *Porto Calvo*, *Serinbaim*, the *Cape St. Austin*, and *St. Anthony*; though these were seldom altogether provided with ministers, because that some or other of them returned into *Holland*, after their limited time was expired. In the isle *Tamarika* and fort *Orange*, was at that time a minister, one *John Offringo*, who lived formerly in the town of *Schop*, and at the same time preached in the church of *Igarassu*, which was afterwards left by the *Dutch* and possess'd by the *Portuguese*. In *Rio Grande* preached one *John Theodora Polheim*. In *Parayba* were formerly two ministers, whilst the town of *Frederica* was as yet under the *Dutch* ju-

risdiction, but after the revolt of the *Portuguese* the place was left by the inhabitants, and *Henry Harman* was the only minister in those parts. In the *Receif*, *Maurice's* town, and the circumjacent forts, which contained about 400 protestants, *Dutch*, *French* and *English*, were three ministers, who preach'd in the *Dutch* tongue; *Nicholas Vogel*, *Peter Ongena*, and *Peter Grib*. Besides these there was a fourth called *Jodocus Alkett*, who formerly had been minister of the *Cape of St. Austin*, but now was employed either aboard our fleet, or upon any land expedition. The *French* church here remained without a minister, after the departure of *Joachim Solaer*, so that they were forced to be contented with reading of certain chapters of the bible, and prayers every *Sunday* morning. The *English* minister was one *Samuel Batcbelour*, who 1646 return'd likewise to *England*; about which time there were seven *Dutch* ministers in the *Dutch Brasil*. Our religious worship was both in its doctrine and practice regulated exactly according to the prescription of the synod of *Dort*, and peculiar care was taken for the education of the youth, for which purpose the catechism was every *Sunday* in the afternoon explained, both in the *Receif* and *Maurice's* town. Four times in the year the holy sacrament was administered, those who desired to be partakers of it, being obliged to make their confession before the church-council, or the ministers, who entered their names in a book; and if they came from abroad, published their names to the congregation; and in all other respects the church discipline was carefully observed. The church-council was composed of six church-wardens, besides the minister, these met duly once a week, and if any business of moment happen'd, such as choosing a minister, &c. they called the deacons, who were likewise six in number, to their assistance. Out of the deacons were every month chosen two, who (besides their ordinary business) were to visit the sick and wounded, and to provide for them if necessity required. They also took care of the orphans, to have them instructed in reading and writing. In the same manner the other churches were regulated, with this difference only, that the number of church-wardens and deacons was less, in proportion to the number of their respective congregations. Thus much of the ecclesiastical state.

Besides those living creatures we have given you a description of before, there are divers sorts of bees in *Brasil*, call'd *Eiruku's*, which settle upon the trees in a most surprizing manner. They are not unlike

The ecclesiastical state of the Dutch Brasil.

Their church-council.

uljam.

of the Por- 1643.  
the inhabi- 1643.  
was the only  
the *Recife*,  
adjacent forts,  
protestants,  
ere three mi-  
Dutch tongue;  
a, and Peter  
a fourth call-  
erly had been  
stin, but now  
our fleet, or  
The French  
ut a minister,  
Jim Soler, so  
contented with  
of the bible,  
morning. The  
uel Batchelour,  
e to England;  
re seven Dutch  
Our religious  
ctrine and pra-  
ording to the  
Dort, and pe-  
the education of  
pose the cate-  
n the afternoon  
f and Maurice's  
year the holy  
those who de-  
being obliged  
fore the church-  
who entred their  
they came from  
times to the con-  
ner respects the  
fully observed.  
composed of six  
e minister, these  
d if any business  
h as chusing a  
he deacons, who  
er, to their as-  
ons were every  
besides their or-  
fit the sick and  
for them if ne-  
to took care of  
m instructed in  
the same manner  
regulated, with  
the number of  
ns was less, in  
of their respec-  
as much of the

Their  
church-  
council.

Basiliam.

unlike our bees, but somewhat smaller, and swarm chiefly among the woods. The *Brasilians* distinguish them into twelve different kinds; viz. *Amanakay-Miri*, *Amanakay-Peu*, *Aibu*, *Mumbuka*, *Pixuna*, *Urutueta*, *Tubuna*, *Tujuba*, *Eiruku*, *Eixu*, *Kubiara* and *Kurupireira*; the last of which are in no esteem among them.

The bees *Eiruku* are the largest of all, and produce a very good honey, though it is not commonly used. They make their combs within the hollowness of trees, which the *Brasilians* draw from thence by the means of a hollow pipe. The bees called *Eiku* and *Kopy*, are smaller and of a blackish colour; they make holes from without, in the bark of the trees, in the nature of bee-hives; and the comb within is all of white wax; this is now counted the best thing, but is not gathered in the same quantity as the former; besides that these bees sting very furiously. The bees *Tbanbuka* are likewise small, of a yellowish colour; they fix their combs on the top of the highest trees, and afford the best honey, which is in great quantities transported from hence to *Europe*, where it is sold very cheap. It is little inferior in goodness to the *European* honey, and of a good substance, transparent and of an agreeable scent. It is accounted very balsamick, corrects the sharp humours in the intestines, and especially in the kidneys, and provokes urine. They make of this honey metheglin, which is very strong, and will keep a great while: You may also make meat with this honey without boiling, only mix'd with some spring water and expos'd to the weather.

*Brasil* produces likewise several sorts of balsams; the best of which is called by the *Brasilians* *Kopaiba*, from the trees from whence it comes. *Kopaiba* is a very high wild tree, with an ash-coloured bark, which spreads at the top into many branches. The leaves are about half a foot long, sometimes larger, sometimes lesser, which in the midst of the branches stand opposite to one another, but on the end like other leaves. At the end of the great branches are abundance of lesser sprouts full of leaves, out of which comes forth the blossom, and afterwards berries, not unlike our laurel-berries. They are green at first, but as they ripen turn black and sweet. Within is a round hard stone, the kernel of which is white, but mealy, and not fit to be eaten. The berries ripen in *June*, when the *Brasilians* suck the juice out of them, and throw away the stone and skin. The apes take great delight in this fruit.

The oily and odoriferous balsam, in which this tree abounds, drops every full

VOL. II.

moon, provided you cut a slit through the bark as deep as to the pith, in such quantity, that in three hours time you may gather above twelve *Mengelu*. But if that does not drop immediately, the slit is made up with wax; and within fourteen days after, they are sure the balsam will come in great quantity. This tree does not grow so plentifully in the captainship of *Pernambuko*, as in the isle *Maranbaon*, from whence this balsam is transported into *Europe*. The balsam is hot in the second degree, of a thick oleaginous and resinous substance. It is very stomachic, and a good remedy against the cholick, occasioned by cold, externally applied to the affected parts; some few drops taken inwardly strengthen the bowels, and stop the overflowing in women, the looseness and involuntary emission of seed in men; against which distempers it likewise is used in clysters or by syringing. Thus far concerning the sole *Dutch Brasil*; we will now proceed to give you an account of what passed during our abode there.

In the year 1640, Mr. Henry Hamel, one of the directors of the *West-India* company for the chamber of *Amsterdam*, and Mr. Dirck Kodde Vander Burgh (both persons excellently well qualified for the management of the *Dutch Brasil*, and of great experience in affairs of commerce) were at the request of the council of nineteen, sent to *Brasil*, and arrived there on the 8<sup>th</sup> of *August*, the two preceding directors or counsellors, *Matthias Van Keulen* and *John Gijfeling*, resigned their places to them, and with them the chief management of the *Dutch Brasil*, under the government of *John Maurice* count *Nassau*.

At the time of their arrival in *Brasil*, there were under the jurisdiction of the states the following *Captainships*: *Pernambuko*, *Ilamarika* (unto which belongs *Goi-ana*) *Parayba*, *Rio Grande* and *Siara*, being the northern part of *Brasil*: The southern part, which contained the *Captainships* *Babia*, *Ileos*, *Porto seguro*, *Spirito Santo*, *Rio Janeiro* and *St. Vincent*, remained under the *Portuguese*, who inhabited the country as far as *Rio de Plate*. Not many months after the island of *Maranbaon* was joined with the *Dutch Brasil*, but the charges we were fain to be at to defend it against the *Portuguese*, those of *Para* and the natives, which over-balancing the profit the company was likely to reap from thence, it was thought most expedient to quit the same; which was done accordingly in the year 1644, or rather to confess the truth, by the combination of the *Portuguese*, those of *Grand Para* and the natives, we were forced to abandon it.

K

Before

1643.  
A Mer-  
selin is  
near the  
quart.

New direc-  
tors sent  
to Brasil.

Dutch  
Brasil.

Portuguese  
Brasil.

1643. Before the arrival of those new directors a fleet had been sent to the *Babia*, to land some men there, and to destroy all with fire and sword; which after they had put in execution, and returned to the *Receif*, the same fleet under the command of admiral *Jol* and *Cornelius Liebtart*, was by special command from the council of nineteen in *Holland* ordered to the *West-Indies*, to lay in wait for the *Spanish* plate fleet of *Terra firma* and new *Spain*; but they returned without doing any thing, 1640 in *December*, having lost four or five ships in this voyage. Colonel *Koën* was much about the same time sent with a body of soldiers into the captainship of *Rio Real*, to bridle the *Portuguese*, by making a diversion in their own territories; but those troops being but indifferently supplied with necessities in an enemies country, and forced to undergo great fatigues; they were so much weakened that it was thought advisable to recall them out of *Rio Real*, and to assign them quarters of refreshment in the garrisons. Major *Van Brande* had worse success than all the rest, for being sent abroad with a party to fetch in some cattle, was put to the rout, and he himself taken prisoner.

The Dutch military in their design upon the Spanish plate fleet.

In the mean while that our whole fleet was waiting for the *Spanish* plate fleet on the coast of *America*, and we consequently were not in a condition to undertake any thing at sea; our directors had all the reason in the world to fear, that the *Portuguese* would take this opportunity to revenge their loss, by destroying our sugar-mills, which made them leave no stone unturned to secure the *Dutch Brasil* and its inhabitants, against the attempts of the enemy: And considering that a great part of our security depended on the good inclinations of the *Portuguese* living among us, it was thought convenient to call an assembly of the chiefest *Portuguese* inhabitants of the three captainships of *Pernambuco*, *Ilmarika*, and *Parayba*, towards the latter end of *August*, to concert measures how to defend their sugar-mills and fields against the incursions of the enemy.

The most effectual means that could be pitched upon in this assembly were, to provide their forts with good garrisons on the borders, and to secure the sugar-mills, by putting a certain number of soldiers in or near them, for the security of the adjacent fields. This was put in execution accordingly, and the officers had strict charge to keep a watchful eye upon the least motion of the *Portuguese*, notwithstanding which it had not the desired effect; because those *Portuguese* who lived at a considerable distance from us, and near the enemies frontiers, durst not give timely notice

of their approach; besides that many among them having a constant hatred to our nation, did favour the enterprizes of those parties that burnt the sugar-fields and plundered the mills, served them sometimes for guides, and had their share in the booty; which obliged our people to be at a constant charge of a strong guard to conduct their goods, and defend them against any sudden attempts. Such an incursion was not long after made by the *Portuguese* into our territories. For in *November* the viceroy, the marquis of *Montelvano* sent two barges full of soldiers to burn our sugar-reeds in the plains, which they effected, but durst not go too far, or attempt any thing against our mills, for fear of the soldiers quartered thereabouts; who could not prevent their burning in the fields, as being done in the night time. The *Dutch* were the greatest losers by it, because they had generally the greatest share in those fields and mills, besides that the *Portuguese* spared those of their own country-men; all which brought a great damp upon trade, every one being afraid to venture in any business, where he might lose all his substance in one night, and that perhaps by the hands of a single person, whereby the revenues of the company were greatly impaired, and their charges increased, being forced to maintain twenty or thirty soldiers for the defence of any considerable plantation or sugar-mills; which prevented them from bringing a sufficient body of men into the field, to make head against the enemy. This was the state of the *Dutch Brasil* towards the latter end of 1640.

The twenty-second of *December* in the same year, Mr. *Adrian van Ballestraete* arrived at the *Receif* from *Middleburg*, in the quality of director of *Brasil*, so that now the great council being complete, the best expedient to obviate all these difficulties, was judged to consist in our fleet; pursuant to this resolution, all our ships were ordered to the *Babia*, to make the enemy sensible that we were in a condition to be even with them, and thereby to facilitate the negotiation that was in hand, for the surceasing of burning on both sides. The council of nineteen having also sent express orders to cruise with some ships before *Rio Janeiro*, from whence the *Spanish* ships used generally to return into *Spain*, about the month of *May* or *June*, some of the biggest ships were ordered that way to intercept if possible the *Flota*, the rest being left near the *Babia*.

But whilst our commissioners were treating with the viceroy about the surceasing of burning and plundering, a certain *Portuguese*, *Paulo de Kunba* by name, committed

The Dutch ships ordered to the Bahia.

The treaty against burning concluded.

1643.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

1643. unheard of cruelties, with murdering, plundering and burning, in the open country, which made count Maurice write the following letter to the viceroy.

Count Maurice's letter to the vice-roy.

Count Maurice's letter to the viceroy.

THE barbarities lately committed by Paulo de Kunha, with burning, murdering, and plundering in the open country, give me great reason to fear, that your last obliging letter was designed for a complement, without any reality. The confidence I had in your excellency's sincerity, made me recal our ships and forces from your territories, to take away all means of offence: But the long stay of our deputies affords great occasion of suspicion, that your intention is only to amuse us, which has obliged me to dispatch a vessel to let them know that in case the treaty is not brought to a conclusion, to return without delay, it being our intention that the said negotiation should not be continued longer. Your excellency will there dismiss them, together with our two hostages, as we are resolved to send back to you Martin Ferreira, left with us as hostage from your excellency, his companion being dead of late.

Hereby, by the mediation of the clergy living under our jurisdiction, but especially by the indefatigable care of Dirck Kodde Vander Burgh, who was sent thither for that purpose, the treaty was brought to a happy conclusion in February 1641, by virtue of which, all destruction by burning and plundering were to cease on both sides; which being published by proclamation, the Portuguese were ordered to quit our dominions, whereby we reapt this advantage, that now we might turn all our forces where we found it most expedient.

The treaty against burning concluded.

In June 1641, count Maurice and the great council received advice of the ten years truce concluded betwixt the states of Holland and the king of Portugal, with all the articles thereunto belonging, which were published by proclamation in all our captainships, and all acts of hostilities ceased on both sides; the Dutch living in good understanding with the inhabitants of the Bahia, giving them all the demonstrations of friendship, sufficient to convince the Portuguese that they had not the least reason to fear any infraction on their side.

The great council being willing to improve this interval of peace for the advancement of traffick, and the benefit of the company, gave all imaginable encouragement, in proportion to the circumstances of time and place, to all the inhabitants of what nation soever, for the cultivating the lands, which had this good effect, that the masters of the sugar-mills rebuilt their

mills, and the husbandmen betook themselves with so much eagerness to the cultivating of their sugar-fields, that they borrowed considerable sums, upon a prospect of sure gain, which would over pay their debts; as without question it would have done in a short time, if by the treachery of the Portuguese they had not been disappointed in their hopes. The next thing to be taken in hand, was to make such wholesome laws as were thought most expedient for the establishment and increase of commerce, both in the Recife and other places, and to improve the domains and other revenues belonging to the company, during this time of truce.

Trade then began to flourish apace, so that some time after the truce, the merchants and factors sold more commodities than had ever been known either before or since. Many millions were dealt for in a little time, the merchants and factors being contented to sell to those who would pay some money in part, though there were buyers enough who would and could buy for ready cash.

The finances of the company in Brasil were in so good a state by the extraordinary care of the great council, that 1640 and 1641, they bought considerable quantities of sugar upon the publick account, which they sent to Holland. In the Recife and Maurice Town. we saw several goodly structures erected by the inhabitants, who lived in great plenty and magnificence, every one looking upon his debts as secure, and having a fair prospect to increase his riches, by the flourishing state of commerce and improvement of the lands.

The flourishing state of Brasil.

But this was of no long continuance, for in the beginning of 1643, things began to appear with a quite different face; for the magazines of the company being exhausted by several expeditions against Angola, &c. and having received no supplies in their stead out of Holland, as they used to do before, the great council was obliged to make use of what was due to the company, for the payment of the garrisons and other officers, and consequently to force their debtors to prompt payments.

Its decay.

For at the beginning of the government of the new directors, the company had a considerable naval force upon the coast of Brasil, their magazines were well provided with provision and ammunition, and they maintained a good number of soldiers. The great council of the Dutch Brasil relying upon their strength, did with consent of count Maurice, send in 1641, several fleets with soldiers to Spirito Santo, Rio de Janeiro, the isle of Maranhao, Angola, St. Thomas, and other places thereabouts, to attack

1643.

ny a-  
o our  
those  
plun-  
es for  
ooty;  
con-  
duct  
st any  
n was  
se into  
e vice-  
at two  
sugar-  
ed, but  
y thing  
soldiers  
not pre-  
being  
h were  
ey had  
e fields  
ese spa-  
en; all  
trade,  
in any  
his sub-  
aps by  
hereby  
greatly  
ed, be-  
e thirty  
derable  
evented  
of men  
the e-  
utch Ba-

in the  
raete ar-  
in the  
at now  
the best  
culties,  
pursuant  
e order-  
y sensi-  
be even  
e ne-  
surceaf-  
council  
orders  
aneiro,  
general-  
onth of  
st ships  
if pos-  
ear the

the treat-  
sing of  
Portu-  
mitted  
heard

The Dutch ships ordered to the Bahia.



1643. tack the same, which succeeded according to expectation; but their magazines were greatly exhausted by those expeditions. Besides this, the merchants in *Holland* began to call upon their servants and factors for considerable sums of money, in return of what they had received from them; who being obliged to send all the money they could bring together from their creditors, to their masters in *Holland*; this occasioned great scarcity of ready money, and consequently no small detriment in traffick, which continuing thus from time to time, there arose such a general scarcity of money, as is scarce to be imagined; many of the masters of the sugar-mills, that had no ready money to satisfy their debts at the appointed time, being forced to take up money upon credit, and to pay three or four *per cent per month*, which reduced many of them to such an extremity in a little time, that they were neither able to pay the principal nor interest.

Upon the arrival of the three new directors, or members of the great council in 1640, viz. *Henry Hamel, Kodde, and Bullestraete*, they found that the inhabitants, but especially the *Portuguese* of the *Dutch Brasil*, by buying of sugar-mills and plantations, as well as negroes and other commodities, had run themselves much in debt; having bought their negroes not only at three hundred pieces of eight *per head*, but also given most extravagant prices for all other sorts of commodities, and purchasing whole warehouses without making a just account how to be able to pay for them. This was done by the *Portuguese* in hopes of the good success of those great fleets they understood were equipping in *Spain*, to reduce *Brasil* under the king's obedience, which they supposed would free them from all their debts; which the factors not being aware of, and blinded with the prospect of vast profit, sold their goods to the *Portuguese* without reluctance. But the design of the *Portuguese* vanishing into smoke for that time, they were forced to pay; but new supplies of all sorts of commodities being sent out of *Holland*, they bought on a-fresh, heaping debts upon debts, till failing in their payments, their credit began also to fail with the merchants, who now began to urge for satisfaction of their debts. For the country traders being urged by the factors and merchants, who received those commodities from their correspondents in *Holland*, was obliged to call to an account the *Portuguese* unto whom he had sold the goods. And because the *Portuguese* had not bought those commodities from the *Dutch*, but with an intention never to pay for them, the country trader who was obliged to pay the merchants in the *Receif*, saw himself re-

duced to ruin, the *Portuguese* having not wherewithal to satisfy their debts.

Thus through the unwariness and mismanagement of those factors, whom the merchants in *Holland* had intrusted with their goods, such a confusion was introduced, as tended to the great detriment of their correspondents in *Holland*. All the business at that time lay among the lawyers, and in the courts of judicature, which considering the chargeableness of law-suits in *Brasil*, tended to their farther ruin; for when they had obtained sentence and execution against the debtors, the greatest difficulty was, how and which way to lay the execution; most of the *Portuguese* suing for protection from the regency, which if they could not obtain, they lived incognito; especially those who had no lands or effects, or if they had, it was no easy matter to find out where they were. Besides that, if the creditors executed their executions upon the lands, they were forced to be the buyers themselves, and to live in the country to manage the lands, a thing altogether inconvenient to the merchants, who had other business upon their hands in the *Receif*. Such as were cast into prison must be maintained there at the charge of the creditor, which in process of time amounted to such a sum, that they themselves were fain to solicit the releasement of their debtors, and to make the best composition with them they could.

Besides these inconveniences, there have happened of late several others, viz. a Mortality among the negroes. great mortality of the negroes and *Brasilians*, by a certain infectious distemper, incident to the natives, called *Bexigos*, resembling our small-pox in *Europe*. Most of these negroes were bought at the rate of three hundred pieces of eight, and consequently their loss drew after it the ruin of the planters, who also complained much of vermin, and several inundations that had done considerable damage to the sugar-fields. This confusion in traffick introduced no small broils among the inhabitants themselves, who in case of non-payment, threw one another in prison without mercy, and endeavoured to prevent one another by clandestine means, to get in their debts before the rest; offering considerable abatements and rewards to such as would undertake surrender or transport their effects; and those divisions were not a little fomented by some ill minded persons, to the prejudice of the government; many of those, who either by unwariness or other mismanagement lost their debts, laying the fault thereof at the door of the regency and of the courts of justice, vainly imagining that what they had lost by their own neg-

1643.

Great confusion in traffick.

1643.

left by happy incident perfect T created to before of affi nificat dices coun die, debts success Mr. leave com, dy m for the g in the tain, sent f that in *Br* vast n after fell m debtor ments prefs of the ne ing th put in who v that t lower burden distem fain to the ne for the such a stance negroes but w they c The theref upon their s cers in them Fro senten The n it not in per payme ny. I Vor

1643.

left or want of care, should be made good by the publick purse; especially if it happened so, that the same persons were indebted to the company as well as private persons, there arise great contentions about the preference.

The debts of the company did also increase every day, which at last amounted to some millions: For the directors, which before the year 1640 had the management of affairs in *Brasil*, did sell most of the confiscated estates, sugar-mills, and merchandizes, as well as the negroes bought on account of the company in *Africa*, upon credit, so that their books were filled with debts, but their cash empty of money. The succeeding members of the great council, Mr. Hamel, Bulleste, and Kodelle, did leave no stone unturned to correct this custom, and to sell their commodities for ready money, or otherwise to exchange them for sugars, thereby to ease the company in the great charge they were forced to be at in their several expeditions; and it is certain, that in 1640, 1641, and 1642, they sent such vast cargoes of sugar to *Holland*, that the like had never been known before in *Brasil*. Notwithstanding which, by the vast numbers of negroes that were imported, after our conquest of *Angola*, the company fell more and more in debt, by reason their debtors were very dilatory in their payments. The council of nineteen sent express orders to remedy this evil, by selling the negroes for ready money, or exchanging them for sugar; but this could not be put in practice, because there was no body who would buy upon those conditions, so that the price of the negroes falling daily lower and lower, and these being a great burden to the company, and subject to distempers and mortality, this order was fain to be revoked, unless they would see the negroe trade dwindle away into nothing; for the inhabitants being for the most part such as had bestowed most part of their substance in their sugar-mills, plantations, and negroes, they could not pay ready money, but were forced to deal upon credit, till they could reap the benefit of their labour.

The members of the great council did therefore take all imaginable care to call upon their debtors exactly at the time of their sugar-harvest, and ordered their officers in the country to seize upon some of them on account of the company.

From hence arose nothing but law-suits, sentences, executions, and imprisonments: The members of the great council thinking it not below their station, to go sometimes in person into the country to promote the payment of the debts owing to the company. But this had a contrary effect, for the

merchants and factors began to be extremely dissatisfied, that the company should seize upon the sugar in the mills, without letting them who were creditors as well as they, have their share in them. This occasioned not only murmurings, but also threats, and complaints to the council of nineteen, where they misrepresented these transactions under the worst colours they could, hoping thereby to deter the officers of the company from doing their duty. The great council having taken the matter into mature deliberation, and fearing, not without reason, that in time it might occasion a general discontent, they left no stone unturned to satisfy the minds of the people, by finding out means to have their debts satisfied. It was propoised by several understanding persons, that the company should undertake to satisfy the debts of private persons, either by way of payment or exchange; in lieu of which the masters of the sugar-mills should surrender to the company every year, the whole product of these mills, till they had satisfied all their debts: And to make the same the more effectual, for the general benefit as well of the company and sugar-mills, as the merchants and factors, it was agreed, that certain articles should be agreed upon for that purpose; the greatest advantage the company pretended to reap by it being, that they should have a fair opportunity of recovering some of their debts, which were given over for lost. These agreements were wonderfully pleasing to the council of nineteen, who in the year 1645, on the 16<sup>th</sup> of June, sent their approbation of a second agreement made with one George Homo Pinto (which indeed was of as great consequence as all the other contracts together) to the great council as follows:

*Approbation of the Agreement.*

Concerning the agreement by you (meaning the council) on the 14<sup>th</sup> of December last, made with George Homo Pinto, we have had several debates, which we find to have been brought to a conclusion, with the previous advice and approbation of the councillors of justice and of the finances, so that both in respect of the same, and of the great benefit that is likely to accrue thereby to the company, we have thought fit to approve of the said Agreement; recommending to you the execution of it, with the same zeal as you have shewn your conduct and circumspection in the whole management of these contracts.

That these agreements were by all people, that had any knowledge of those affairs, looked upon as greatly for the interest

1643. rest of the company, is most evident from hence, that several other merchants that were sensible of this advantage, made agreements with their debtors much upon the same terms as the company had done; which that it may be put beyond all doubt, we will give you a copy of one of those agreements, from whence it will plainly appear with how much circumspection the council proceeded in this matter, betwixt the company, the masters of the sugar-mills and their debtors.

*The copy of an Agreement.*

*The copy of  
an agree-  
ment.*

**M**R. Peter John Bas, and John van Ratfield, counsellors of justice of Brasil, by special commission from the West-India company, and John van Walbeek, assessor of the great council, did appear before us on one side; and Manuel Fernando Cruz, Sieur de Ingenho Tapicura, in behalf of himself and his heirs, as also Benjamin de Pina for ten thousand six hundred guilders; Isaac de Costa for thirteen thousand one hundred and eight; Joseph Abenacar for four hundred ninety; Simon de Vale for three hundred twenty-five; Gasper Francisco and David Brandao for eleven hundred thirty-three; Abraham de Tovaer for one thousand; John Parente for three hundred and fifty; John Mendonça de Moe-ribeca for four thousand three hundred fifty; James Gabay for one thousand and fifty; More de Leon for six hundred; Balthazar de Fonseca for six hundred; Simon Gomes de Lisboa for five thousand nine hundred ten; Bartholomew Rodrigues for nine hundred; and Daniel Cardoso for nine hundred and ten guilders; the whole amounting to forty thousand five hundred twenty-six guilders, being all creditors of the said Manuel Fernando Cruz, and for the most part debtors to the company on the other side, who profess and declare to have agreed among themselves, that the beforementioned Manuel Fernando Cruz, shall pay to the company the full sum of sixty thousand seven hundred ninety five guilders, viz. nineteen thousand two hundred sixty nine guilders upon his own account, being by him owing to the said company, and the remaining sum on the account of his creditors, which proportionably to their respective debts, ought to be discounted for with him by the said company, upon the following conditions.

I. That the whole debt is to be satisfied in the three next following years, the first payment to begin in January 1645, and if it happen, that in one year a less share be paid than in the other, the whole is to be made good in the last year.

II. That no discounts shall be entred in the books of the company, 'till after the payment

of the due proportion appointed for each respective term or time. 1643.

III. That the creditors of those with whom they have entred into articles of agreement, as well as the debtors of the company, shall not be discharged of their debts in the books of the company, but in case of failure or delay of payment, either of the whole sum or part thereof, all the respective appointed times, shall stand engaged and answerable, each for his respective debt, unless they give other security to the company; but those creditors who have no debts in the books of the company, shall have liberty to transfer other debts, or else to receive their share in two years time, either by assignments or in Negroes; but not in any commodities imported from abroad, or sugar to be exported, provided nevertheless that the articles of agreement be fulfilled, or otherwise the sum be put to their own account immediately, in which case they are to allow eighteen pound per cent. and nevertheless be liable to see the agreement put in execution.

IV. Those who are entred into articles of agreement shall be obliged to engage both their body and goods for the performance thereof, but especially to deliver an inventory of their personal estates, confirm'd by oath; besides which, they are to give such securities as shall be approved of by the great council; with renouncing the beneficium ordinis, divisionis & excusationis, as well for each respective payment at the appointed times, as the whole sum in general.

V. These before-mention'd securities are to be persons well-qualified, of good substance, not involv'd in debts, but especially in the company's; and shall be warranted by the magistrates of their respective places of abode.

VI. Publick notice is to be given to all persons, who have any bonds, bills, or accounts, or other engagements relating to the personal estates (which shall be named or specified) of such as are entred into those articles, that within the space of three weeks they are to produce the same, or else to be excluded from the benefit thereof, 'till after the expiration of the time mentioned and appointed in the said agreement.

VII. That he, who has engaged himself in such an agreement or contract, shall not be permitted to contract new debts, unless with the consent of the great council; otherwise the same to be void and null, of which publick notice shall be given. Neither shall be alienate any sugars by land as remains, under the penalty of restitution to be made with full interest and charges.

1643.

The creditors shall be obliged to surrender and renounce all their pretensions, engagements and actions to the company; neither shall they lay any claim upon that score of precedence or otherwise.

Whenever it shall be judged requisite, by the great council, to send a certain person to the ingenho of any person entered into such an agreement, for the better security of their debt, and the receiving and sending away the sugar, allotted to the company, he shall be obliged to find him with victuals and lodgings in his ingenho; but the company shall pay him for his pains.

Pursuant to which, the before named Manuel Fernando Cruz, with the advice and consent of his before-mentioned creditors, has obliged himself in general, and by these presents, obliges and engages his person and estate, both real and personal, without any reservation or exception; but especially the before-named Ingenho Tapicura, with all its appurtenances, according to the inventory thereunto affixed and confirmed by oath; which Ingenho Tapicura, he declares to be free from any pre-engagements, with all the grounds, sugar-fields, pasturages, woods, and other things thereunto belonging, viz. eight brass caldrons, ten tachos and ten parvos, besides several other copper vessels belonging to the said ingenho; twenty slaves belonging to the said ingenho, and Manuel Ferdinando Cruz, his house and sixty oxen. And for the better performance of this agreement, Senhor John de Mendose dwelling at Moiribeca, and Manuel Gomes des Lisboa, living in Moquiaxe, have, after certificates obtained from the magistrates of their respective dwelling-places, engaged themselves, and do by these presents engage themselves as securities for the whole debt, and as debtors for each and every part thereof, promising to indemnify the company of all actions, suits, or other pretensions which may be made against them on the account of any other creditors of the said Manuel Ferdinando Cruz, not mention'd or engaged in this agreement; as likewise, that no sugar shall be surreptitiously convey'd away or alienated: That in case of non-payment, the company shall be hereby fully empowered to recover their damages with interest and charges, upon their persons and estates; they renouncing by these presents all exceptions, ordins, divisions & excusationis, as likewise all other pretensions of privileges tending to the invalidity of this contract. The before-named creditors also, in general, and every one of them in particular, declare that they have given in a true account of all their respective pretensions upon the said Manuel Fernando Cruz, neither that they do demand any other sum or sums of him, but what have been specified there under their respective names; promising to be well satisfied

with what has been stipulated, and, if put in execution accordingly, to renounce all actions or private engagements, discontents or preference in favour of the company; and that in case of non-payment they will be obliged to make good and restore to the said company, not only each particular sum paid at certain limited times, but also the whole, in the same manner, as if the said agreement had never been made betwixt them; leaving it to the discretion of the company, whether they will lay their actions against Manuel Fernando Cruz and his securities, or against themselves and their estates; under the condition they were in before the conclusion of this agreement; the benefit of actionem cessam being allowed them against the said Cruz and his securities, for the recovery of their just debts. In witness and confirmation of which we have granted these our letters, as usual in such cases, sealed with the ordinary seal of the court of justice, and signed by the secretary of the council. Translated in the Receit, 23<sup>d</sup> September 1644.

In the same manner all the other contracts were made and penn'd; the contents of which amounted in the whole to two million a hundred and twenty five thousand eight hundred and seven gilders, which were due from the farmers to the masters of the sugar-mills, and from those again to the company.

The chief, if not the only reason, why these agreements were resolved upon, was, (as we said before) the intolerable vexations and exactions put upon the masters of the sugar-mills by their creditors, who, unless these masters paid them at the rate of two or three per cent. interest per month, made immediate seizure of their negroes, oxen, coppers, and other necessities belonging to the sugar-mills; so that the masters of these sugar-mills being reduced to a necessity of paying such exorbitant exactions, or else to see themselves entirely ruined, began to defend their plantations and mills by force, so that things seemed to tend at that time to a general insurrection, if the same had not been prevented, by entering into those contracts; by which means the masters of the sugar-mills being freed from the oppressions of their creditors, and in lieu thereof now become debtors to the company, and time given them to employ their mills for the payment of their debts, at certain limited times, and that at the rate of one per cent. interest per month only, all pretensions and occasions of a revolt were thereby removed, at least for that time; the first term of payment being set out for a considerable time.

For what reason these agreements were made.

1643. To make this the more evident, these following heads deserve our particular observation: That the company and the merchants, being creditors of the masters of the sugar-mills, endeavouring at the same time to force them to the payment of their debts, by executions. This occasioned from the year 1647 to the time of the making of those contracts, such a confusion, as must needs have tended to the total destruction of the sugar-mills, and consequently of the merchants and company; which induced them to apply themselves to the great council, to find out some means, by way of discount, or otherwise, to put these debts into the company's hands.

The councillors of justice did not at first agree in all points to these proposals, but at their meeting on the 12<sup>th</sup> of August 1644, being better convinced of the matter, and that the company was sufficiently secured and benefited thereby, the next following day did not only approve of the same, but also were of opinion, that some things might be rather mitigated for the Advantage of the masters of mills and their creditors, than not to relieve them at this juncture; so that the conditions were the 10<sup>th</sup> of November 1644, agreed unto with the consent of the councillors of the court of justice and the finances.

Pursuant to these, the great council took care that publick notice should be given of these agreements made betwixt the company and certain private persons, by which every one was forewarned not to sell any thing upon credit to them, without the consent of the great council; and their creditors summoned to make good their debts within three weeks time, or else to be excluded from the benefit of the contract, 'till after the time therein limited was expired. From all which it is sufficiently demonstrable, with how little appearance of truth some have attempted to insinuate, that these contracts were prejudicial to the company, and had given no small occasion to the ensuing revolt of the *Portuguese*; when it is beyond all question, from what has been said before, that these were the only means to prevent those calamities, wherewith the masters of the sugar-mills, and the farmers or country planters, were over-whelmed all that time, who were forced to let their mills stand still, and leave the ground uncultivated; all which, as it tended to the utter destruction of the sugar-mills, so the company sustained an irreparable loss, viz. thirty eight pounds *per cent.* yearly in *Brasil*, and thirty seven pounds *per cent.* in *Holland*, which being seventy five pound *per cent.* did altogether arise from the use of the sugar-mills.

Besides this, there were not a few of those merchants that were creditors of the sugar-mills, that were considerably indebted to the company, who plading insolvency, by reason of the non-payment of their debtors, the company would have been considerable losers by them, unless by this way of discounting they had found means to recover those desperate debts. All which moved the great council to make a virtue of necessity, and with the advice of the masters of the sugar-mills and their creditors, and the approbation of the council of nineteen, to enter upon those articles; which could not be in any wise detrimental to the company; tho' some malicious persons have objected against them, that (supposing there had been no revolt) these masters would not in twenty years, nay, perhaps never have been in a condition to wrong the company, what they had laid out upon their account; when it is sufficiently known that the great council never paid one farthing of ready money for them on the account of the company; besides that for the satisfaction of the company, twenty five sugar-mills were engaged, which one with another, affording from two hundred and thirty to two hundred and fifty chests of sugar yearly; if the company had drawn but a hundred and forty or a hundred and fifty chests from each, the same would have amounted to four hundred and twenty thousand gilders; from whence it is evident, that not to include the sugar-mills, their coppers, oxen, and other Instruments thereunto belonging, the sum of two millions one hundred and twenty five thousand eight and sixteen gilders, being the total sum of the debt owing to the company by virtue of these contracts, might have been satisfied without much hazard; the *Portuguese* masters of the sugar-mills, being by this expedient left in the quiet possession of their mills, and eased from the oppressions of their creditors, and our hopes were not a little increased by the industry of the inhabitants of the country, who finding themselves now at ease, applied themselves with so much assiduity to the improvement of their plantations, for the better satisfying of their debts, that in 1645 there was such a fair prospect of a plentiful harvest of sugar, as had not been known in many years before.

But it seems as if the *Portuguese* out of an in-born hatred to our nation, who had conquered them, were resolved not to rest satisfied, 'till by underhand practices and plots they had undermined our government. Add to this, that many of them having involved themselves over head

1643:

Suspicion  
of trea-  
chery.

Reasons  
of the revolt  
of the *Portu-  
guese*.

1643:

T  
cil  
coun  
that  
for  
in *Br*  
dam,  
mill  
wher  
entre  
to g  
ringe  
from  
Vo

1643. and ears in debt, and seeing no way to satisfy their creditors, were become desperate, and more forward to run the hazard of an open revolt (in hopes of assistance from Portugal) than to undergo the unavoidable necessities of poverty; which made some of them frankly tell our people afterwards, that in case they were disappointed in their hopes of succours from the *Babia*, they would seek for aid in Spain or Turkey.

Towards the latter end of the year 1642, there were rumours spread abroad of a Plot contrived by the Portuguese against the state when they were disarmed, and their arms brought into the magazines, which however they got again under some pretence or other afterwards, they living very quietly among us, for fear, as I suppose, of our garrisons, and that they were not then sufficiently assured of succours from the *Babia*. But it will not be amiss to trace the true origin of this revolt.

The 13<sup>th</sup> December 1642, one John Fernandes Vieira, alderman of Maurice's-Town, appeared in the great council, count Maurice being present, where he told them, that he had been informed by certain Jews, how he and his father-in-law Beringel were suspected in Holland, of having sent letters by a son of the said Beringel to the king of Portugal, tending to the detriment of the state. He did not deny to have sent a letter by the said person to the king of Portugal, but containing no more than a recommendation of the said Beringel's person, to help him him to some employment under the king: This he offered to prove by his copy, which being produced, there was found nothing material in it, but a congratulation to the king upon his accession to the crown, and a recommendation of the said Beringel; Vieira further proposed, that he thought it absolutely necessary, for the safety of his estate, to have the Portuguese disarmed, as likewise the captains de Campo, with those under their jurisdiction, the Negroes, *Brasilians*, *Mulatts* and *Mamaluks*.

There was also a letter sent by the council of nineteen, dated 1<sup>st</sup> June 1642, to count Maurice, containing in substance, that one John van North, who had served for fourteen months in the quality of a cadet in *Brasil*, had declared to them at Amsterdam, that he had been a servant in a sugar-mill belonging to John Fernandes Vieira, where after a stay of two months, he was entreated by Francisco Beringel Labrador, to go with his son Antonio Dandrado Beringel, as an interpreter to Holland, and from thence to Portugal; which upon great

promises he accepted of, and they set sail on board the Ship called the *Love* from *Brasil* for Zealand, and afterwards from *Ulfsteden* went to *Lisbon*. He said, that this Antonio Dandrado Beringel, after a familiar conversation of three weeks, had told him that he was sent with a letter sign'd by John Fernandes Vieira, Francisco Beringel, Bernardin Kartwailho, John Biferro and Lewis Bras Biferro, in which they gave to understand to the king of Portugal, that they were well provided with men, money and arms, for the reducing *Brasil* under his obedience. The council added, that the king of Portugal had made the said Beringel a captain, for this piece of service, and that therefore they desired count Maurice and the great council to keep a watchful eye over them, being sensible what an aversion the Portuguese did bear to the Dutch.

At the meeting of the great council of *Brasil*, 16<sup>th</sup> February 1643, count Maurice assured them, that he had received intelligence, that some of the chiefest of the Portuguese had resolved to surprize our garrisons in the country, at Moribeca, St. Anthony, and some other places, and to put them to the sword, which was to be put in execution upon one of their saints days, when they used to meet in considerable Numbers. Those who had the chief management of this affair, had their dwelling-places in the *Vargea*, who had proposed to surprize likewise the *Recife*, not questioning that if they could make themselves masters of it, the other garrisons in the country would be easily reduced; and consequently the company not able to subsist long in *Brasil*, without soldiers and traffick.

Hereupon it was taken into deliberation, whether 'twere best to secure the heads of this rebellion immediately, or to delay it 'till a more convenient time, for fear of allarming the whole country by their Imprisonment: The last was resolved upon, because they did not think themselves as yet sufficiently assured of their designs, and did not question, but that by the secret intelligence count Maurice was to receive of their transactions; they might prevent them. It was however judged advisable to draw the garrisons out of the country into the *Recife*, which was strengthened with new palisades, and the old wooden battery repaired; a ship was also ordered with several great chaloups, the first on the sea-side, the others in the river, to defend the avenues of the *Recife* with their cannon. There were likewise divers letters sent by private persons, some without names, to count Maurice and the great



1643. council, confirming the traiterous designs of the *Portuguese*; among others, one Mr. *Van Els* sent a letter to count *Maurice*, dated at *Serinbaim* the 20<sup>th</sup> of *March* 1643, importing, that he had it from sure hands, that a certain *Mulat*, of the company of *Austin Hardojo*, being asked by certain inhabitants of that *Pregeſie*, what buſineſs they had thereabouts, had told them, that they had been to carry letters to ſome perſons living near the *Receif*, adding, that in a ſhort time they would ſee that place taken without any effuſion of blood, either of the *Dutch* or *Portugueſe*.

In December 1643, *Don Michael de Krafſto*, *Don Baſtian Manduba de Sonbo*, and *Don Antonio Ferdinandes*, three ambaffadors from the count *Sonbo* in *Angola*, arrived in the *Receif*, in the ſhip call'd the *Arms of Dort*; they had but one ſervant each, but brought along with them ſeveral negroes with golden collars, as a preſent to count *Maurice*, beſides a great number of other Negroes for the company.

*Arbelleſe*  
for the count  
of Sonbo  
admitted to audi-  
ence.

Being admitted to audience by count *Maurice* and the great council, they deſired in the name of their Maſter, not to ſend any aſſiſtance to the king of *Congo*, whom they feared would attack them before long, notwithstanding they were at that time both engaged in a war againſt the *Portugueſe*. They received for answer, that the council would write to Mr. *Nieuſland*, their director there, to interpoſe his authority and mediation, in order to maintain a good correſpondency, and remove all occaſion of conteſt betwixt the king of *Congo* and their maſter, they being both confederates of the States: The ſaid Earl ſent likewiſe a letter to count *Maurice*, in which he deſired leave to buy a chair, a cloak, ſome enſigns of war, ſome apparel, and ſuch like things. The great council writ alſo a letter, as well to the king of *Congo*, as to the count of *Sonbo*, exhorting them to peace, and ſent them the following preſents in the name of the company.

#### To the King,

A long black velvet cloak, with ſilver galloons.

A ſcarf edged with ſilver lace.

A velvet coat.

And a caſtor-hat with a ſilver hatband.

#### To the Count,

A red velvet elbow-chair, with gold fringes.

A large velvet cloak, with gold and ſilver galloons.

A ſcarf with a gold and ſilver lace.

A velvet coat.

And a caſtor-hat with a gold and ſilver hatband.

1643.

They were entertained with all imaginable civility, during their ſtay here: They were very ſkillful in playing with the backſword; in the management of which, they made moſt terrible poſtures and faces. They underſtood *latin* very well, and made ſeveral learned harangues in the ſame.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of *October* 1644, a certain Jew, *Freſch ſul-*  
called *Gaspar Francisco de Kunba*, with two others of the chief of the ſame fraternity, gave notice to the great council, that they had been credibly informed by ſome Jews, who converſed and kept frequent correſpondence in the country, that the *Portugueſes* were plotting againſt the *Dutch-Braſil*, telling the council the reaſons upon which they founded this ſuſpicion. The council, after having returned thanks to theſe elders for their care, reſolved to leave no ſtone unturn'd to diſcover the deſigns of the *Portugueſe*; and having received certain intelligence, that they expected ſome arms and ammunition to be brought them by ſea, they ordered the 12<sup>th</sup> of *October* 1644, the yacht called *Nieuwbouſe*, with a galliot and a challoop, to cruize along the coaſt of *Dutch-Braſil*, to obſerve what veſſels did approach the ſhore.

The 11<sup>th</sup> of *May* 1644, count *Maurice* left the *Receif*, in order to his return to *Holland*, after he had been eight years governor of the *Dutch-Braſil*. All the citizens and chief inhabitants, both of the *Receif* and *Maurice's* town, appeared in arms, making a lane from the old town to the water-gate, of whom, as he paſſ'd by, he took his leave with all imaginable demonſtration of kindneſs. At the gate he mounted on horſe-back, and being accompanied by the great council, the councilors of juſtice and all the military officers, as far as *Olinda*, he there once more took his leave of them in particular, the *Sieur Bulleſtraet* remaining only with him, being deputed by the regency to conduct him on board the ſhips deſign'd for his transportation. They did not ſet ſail from the *Red-Land* 'till the 22<sup>d</sup> of *May*, with a fleet of thirteen ſhips, on board of which were a good number of ſoldiers, leaving only eighteen companies for the defence of the *Dutch-Braſil*. Mr. *Bulleſtraet* return'd the 26<sup>th</sup> to the *Receif*.

On the 22<sup>d</sup> of *April*, not long before the departure of count *Maurice*, the commiſſion from the governors of the *West-India* company, according to a reſolution taken at their meeting the firſt of *July*

1642,

Count  
Maurice  
abdicates  
the govern-  
ment.

Takes his  
leave.

1643.

1642, concerning the government of *Dutch-Brasil*, and dated the 22<sup>d</sup> of May 1643, was read in the great council, by which the members thereof were to have the administration of the government 'till further orders. Accordingly count Maurice having appointed a day to invest them with the administration of the government, he ordered (with the consent of the said council) an assembly to be called on the 6<sup>th</sup> of May, of the counsellors of justice, of the magistrates, the ecclesiastical council and ministers of Maurice's Town; of the commanders in chief both by sea and land, the chief officers of the company, the officers of the militia, and the chief men among the *Jews*.

Count Maurice abdicates the government.

All these being at the appointed time met in the great hall of the *Stadtbuis*, he told them, that since their high and mighty offices the states, his highness the prince of *Orange*, and the council of nineteen, had been pleased to grant him leave, after a stay of eight years among them, in the quality of governor of the *Dutch-Brasil*, to return into *Holland*, he had called them together, to return them thanks for the many services, each in his station, had done to the company; as likewise for the obedience, fidelity and respect they had always shewn to his person; telling them, that from this minute he resign'd the government into the hands of the great council, requiring and desiring them, in the name of the states, the prince of *Orange*, and the council of nineteen, to shew them the same obedience, fidelity and respect they had done before; whereupon count Maurice having congratulated the council, and the rest there present done the same, he took his leave of them in the hall, and immediately after in the council-chamber, of the members of the great council, giving them most hearty thanks for their faithful council and assistance upon all occasions, and for the respect and deference they had always shewn to his person; telling them, that since this would be the last time of his appearing in their assembly, he had drawn up a memorial, which might serve them as a guide, for the better administration of the government; and that, if they thought it convenient, he should be ready to discourse with them, and enlarge further upon that subject. The members of the great council returned him their unfeigned thanks, wishing him a happy voyage, and good success in all his undertakings, and recommended themselves and the whole *Dutch-Brasil* to his care hereafter. Before the breaking up of the assembly, it was debated in the presence of count Maurice, which of the

members should have the precedence there as president, or whether the same should be taken by turns, the same being not determined in their commission: After several arguments *pro* and *con*, it was agreed, that things should remain, in respect of this point, in the same condition as had been usual before, in the absence of count Maurice, viz. for every one to keep his rank without any priority 'till further orders from the council of nineteen; to wit, first Mr. *Dirk Hamel*, then Mr. *Bullestraete*, Mr. *Kodde Vander Burgh*, &c.

The next thing the great council took in hand, was to inquire more narrowly into the designs of the *Portuguese* against the government; to effect which, it was resolved in January 1644, to send *Gilbert de Wit*, councillor of the court of justice, and captain *Dirk Hoogstrate*, then commander in chief in the *Cape of St. Austin*, to *Antonio Telles de Sylva*, then governor of the *Bahia*, with the following instructions, dated the 15<sup>th</sup> of the same month; to comply with the governor (after the delivery of their credentials) in the name of the great council, with a sincere promise and assurance of friendship, and good neighbourly correspondence. After this, they were to represent to him, that many of the subjects of the *Dutch-Brasil*, after having contracted considerable debts there, both with the company, and other inhabitants, did retire into the *Bahia*; wherefore they desired, that for the promoting of justice, they would either detain those bankrupts in prison, or at least give timely notice of their coming thither, to the *Dutch* government, whereby their subjects might be enabled to prosecute them at law: But their real errand was to be instructed underhand in the following points.

Enemies sent into the Portuguese-Brasil, and their instructions.

I. What forces the *Portuguese* had at that time in the *Bahia*, and the other southern provinces.

II. What number of ships.

III. What number of ships were expected there out of *Portugal*.

IV. How the negro's trade stood affected, and from what places they were brought thither.

V. Whether there was any commerce betwixt them and the inhabitants of *Bonas Aires*.

VI. In what condition their places were thereabouts; of all which they were to give the best account they were able to get, after their

Takes his leave.

1643. *their return to the great council, they were also charged by word of mouth, to make diligent enquiry who were the persons that underband encouraged the so much feared rebels of the Portuguese in the Dutch Brasil, and what aid or assistance they were to have from them; and to desire the governor not to permit for the future that such of the Dutch soldiers as deserted out of the Recife, and went by land to the Bahia, might from thence be transported into Portugal, but be stoped and sent back to the Recife.*

*Their arrival at St. Salvador.*

These envoys arrived safely the 8<sup>th</sup> of February 1644 in the Bahia, and dropt their anchor towards the evening near the city of St. Salvador, and the castle of St. Antonio, where two officers came on board them, to enquire from whence they came, and by whom, and to whom they were sent, in order to give an account thereof to the governor Antonio Telles de Sylva. The next following day they were complimented in the name of the governor by major Domingo Delgados, and captain David Ventura, who told them that he intended to send his chaloop with the first opportunity to fetch them ashore. About three a clock in the afternoon, the same officers with three or four more, came with the chaloop to fetch them; and they were no sooner landed but found several horses ready for them to mount upon, which they did, and were conducted up a high hill, all over covered with spectators, to the governor's palace. In the outward hall was a strong guard of soldiers, in the second several ensigns and other inferior officers, in the third apartment they met with nothing but captains and lieutenants, and in the fourth with colonels, general officers, some clergymen, and the governor himself; who after having received them at the door, desired them to sit down next to him, upon chairs set for that purpose. The envoys then began their harangue, in which they told him, that they were extremely glad to find him in good health at this time, when they were sent by the great council of the Dutch Brasil, to assure him of their good inclinations, to maintain a good correspondence and friendship with him, and of their hearty wishes for his majesty's, his own, and the government's prosperity; to preserve which, they were ready to contribute all that lay in their power. Then they told him that they had several things to propose to him, when he should think convenient to receive them; the rest of the discourse run upon mutual complements and news. After which, the envoys were again accompanied by the governor to the door of the apartment, where he ordered the beforementioned Domingo Delgados and David Ventura, to conduct them to a certain large

*Are admitted to audience.*

house finely furnished, in Bishops-street, and to entertain them at his charge; which though the envoys refused, alledging it to be contrary to the intentions of their masters, yet were forced to accept of the same, and were very magnificently entertained at supper.

The next morning about eleven a clock they went again to the palace, and after having desired a second audience, were received in the same manner as before. Every one being ordered to withdraw, besides the secretary of the governor; the envoys made their propositions to the last, which they delivered to him in writing in Portuguese, recommending the same to his consideration, as tending towards the maintaining a good and firm correspondence betwixt them. To which the governor gave this general answer, *That he should always endeavour to cultivate a good understanding and correspondence with us, pursuant to the strict and reiterated orders he had received for that purpose from the king his master. And that concerning the propositions made by them to him, he would assemble his council of war and justice, and afterwards impart to them his answer.* Then they were by Domingo Delgados reconducted to his own house, where they were very well entertained the same day at dinner, and the next by the governor himself.

The 17<sup>th</sup> they had another audience from the governor, who told them in very obliging terms, *that he had consulted the matter with his council, and could give them no other answer but what was contained in this letter,* which he delivered to them, and told them the contents thereof; whereupon our envoys told him, that since thereby a door was left open for rogues and vagabonds, they hoped he would at least order that the names of such as fled to the Bahia might be taken notice of, that the great council of the Dutch Brasil might not remain quite unsatisfied, whither they were fled; which he promised to do. After some further complements and mutual assurance of friendship, they parted for this time.

The 22<sup>d</sup> they took their leave of the bishop, and several other persons of note, unto whom they owed any obligations, and last of all of the governor himself, being conducted thither by many persons of quality and officers; they returned him thanks for the civilities and respect he had been pleased to shew them, wishing both him and his Portuguese majesty a long and happy reign, and victory against the *Cajicians*. The governor returned their complements, and conducted them out of the room, ordering several negroes to attend them down the precipice of the hill, upon which the city is built, with chairs; but the envoys choosing

1643.

*Their second audience.*

1643.

*Their return to the Recife.*

*The governor's letter.*

*Their third audience.*

*Report of the envoys to the council.*

1643.

choosing rather to go on foot, they were in the same chaloop they came in ashore, carried back under the sound of musick on board their yacht. The Portuguese officers after having taken their leave, returned to the city, and ours made the best of their way to the Recife, where they arrived safely not long after.

The letter delivered to them by the governor, was as follows.

*The Governour's Letter.*

*G*ilbert de Wit councillor of your court of Justice, and Dirk Hoogstraten commander in chief on the Cape of St. Austin, your lordships deputies, whom I received according to their quality and merits, have delivered your letter to me, and proposed such other matters as they were empowered to treat with me about. Though I endeavour nothing so much as to cultivate and maintain in the strictest manner, our neighbourly good correspondence, yet am I constrained at this time frankly to acknowledge, that it is not in my power to give your lordships any more satisfactory answer than this, in hopes that the many proofs you have had of my sincere inclinations, will serve as a plea with your lordships, to assure you, that I shall always be ready in all points depending on my government, to give the same proofs both of obedience and fidelity to the king my master, whose pleasure is, that the truce should be observed inviolably; and of my sincere intentions, and the esteem I have for your lordships friendship, desiring nothing more than that you furnish me with an opportunity of giving real demonstrations of my readiness to serve you; whom I recommend to the protection of God almighty.

Bahia, Feb. 14.  
1645.

Signed,

Antonio Telles da Silva.

Concerning the six points mentioned in their secret instructions, they made the following report to the great council.

*Report of the envoys to the council.*

**I.** THAT the Portuguese forces in those parts were generally esteemed to be less or more betwixt three and four thousand men, without the Brasilians and negroes. But that upon the most exact enquiry they could make, they had found them to be not above three thousand, including the Brasilians and negroes, and their garrisons both to the north and south, as far as Rio Janeiro. These consisted of five regiments, viz. three of Portuguese, under the colonels John Darauge, Martin Soares, and N. N. the fourth of Brasilians, under a Brasilian colonel, Antonio Philippo Camarao; and the fifth of negroes, under the com-

VOL. II.

mand of negro Henricio Dias. These two last regiments, amounting both not to above three hundred men, were divided in the garrisons to the north, about Rio Real on our frontiers; they being the scum and off-casts of all their territories, and consequently not to be quartered near the capital city, there having of late been some broils among them in the garrisons, whither officers were dispatched to compose them. The three Portuguese regiments consisting of about two thousand seven hundred men, kept garrison in St. Salvador, and the circumjacent forts, except two companies, one of which quartered about Rio Real, the other in the island Morro St. Paulo; and about one hundred fifty more, which were disposed in the captainships of Os Ilheos, Porto Seguro and Spirito Sancto; so that the garrisons of St. Salvador and the circumjacent forts, consisted in at least two thousand three hundred, each company consisting of one hundred men less or more, all chosen men and well clothed; four companies mounted the guard every night, one at the palace, at each of the two gates one, and the fourth in the water-forts without the city.

**II.** Of their naval strength they gave a very slender account, being more considerable in number than force, as consisting only in fifty small vessels and yachts, not in the least fitted for war; neither could they observe the least shew of preparations tending that way; their aim being only to protect their ships bound to the Portuguese coasts, against the insults of the Castilian and Denmark privateers, and the Turkish rovers. It was, as they said, upon this account, that, during our stay there, two stout Portuguese ships fit for war, manned with six hundred men, and provided with good store of ammunition, arrived in the Bahia, under the command of Salvador Correda-fa, with orders to go directly from thence to Rio de Janeiro, and to fetch all ships ready laden from thence to the Bahia, from whence they were to convoy these as well as such other vessels as they found ready there, to the coast of Portugal; for which reason also all the vessels which otherwise used to go according to their own convenience, were ordered to stay for the said convoy. That news was brought by the said two ships, that the king of Portugal had forbid the building of Caravels and other such like small vessels, instead of which they were to build ships of better defence against the insults of an enemy at sea. From whence the envoys said they supposed would arise this inconvenience to the Portuguese, that the freights and convoy money paid for the commodities transported from Portugal to the Portuguese Brasil, and for the sugar transported from thence to Portugal must encrease, and consequently would not be able to sell the last at the same price the Dutch did, considering especially that they must be

N

confi-

1643. considerable losers both in their interest and time, where they were forced to tarry for their convoys, whereas they used formerly to make the best of their way home.

III. They had observed, that though the inhabitants of the Bahia expected the coming of those ships at their first arrival, yet several vessels arrived there, both from the Portuguese coast and the islands before the rest.

IV. They concluded the negro trade to be very inconsiderable there, they having scarce ever heard it as much as mentioned; but because the price of a good negro did not at that time amount to above three hundred guilders, they supposed them pretty well stocked with them; those which were of late brought there being brought thither from Cape Verde and Arder. They further reported, that when on wednesday being the 8<sup>th</sup> of February, they entered the Bahia, they met two ships of good bulk, carrying about twenty guns each, and well mann'd going out, which upon enquiry were told them to be bound for Portugal, but could not learn to what harbour there, which together with some other reasons, made them suspect that they were intended another way, in which we found ourselves not deceived, when on the 22<sup>d</sup> of February, just as they were ready for their departure, they understood from Mulat Juliana, and of two monks, that these two ships were sent with men to Angola, for the security of the inhabitants of Masagao, who being but small in number, were sorely afraid to be set upon by the negroes of the country, and having desired the governor's assistance, who ordered those ships and the men to go in the night time, and to endeavour to reach Masagao unperceived by any, and without committing any hostilities against the Dutch. Whether and how far this might be true, time would shew, but they had all the reason in the world to believe, that it was upon their score of concealing this expedition, as well as some other matters from them, that immediately after arrival (though they were not informed of it till near the time of their departure) that no Dutch or Germans should appear, as much as in the sight of the envoys, much less discourse with them; which was observed with that strictness that they really imagined there had been no Dutch there; but found afterwards that they had been all (how many they knew not) carried on board the Portuguese vessels, to prevent their keeping any correspondence with us and our ships crew; to which end also, six centinels were placed in two boats lying near our yacht, during the time of our stay here, under pretence of protecting our vessel, but in effect to prevent any body from coming on board us, pursuant to the orders of the governor.

V. That the inhabitants of the Bahia and the other Portuguese captainships, had not the least commerce at this time with those of Bonas Aires. That immediately after the revolution in Portugal, those of the Bahia had attempted to go thither, but were treated as enemies by them; so that it was their opinion, the place would either soon, or was already totally ruined for want of commerce; all their livelihood consisting in the traffick from the coast of Brasil thither, which falling away, no silver could be transported thither from Peru; it being not probable that the Spaniards would run the hazard of passing along an enemy's coast, when they had a safer way to transport their treasures from the West-Indies.

VI. That they could not get the least certain information concerning the designs carried on betwixt some of the inhabitants of the Bahia, and those of the Dutch Brasil against the last; besides which they gave them a general relation of what they had been able to learn, concerning the condition of the city of St. Salvador, its inhabitants, governor, and some other matters relating to the country thereabouts.

The rumours which in 1640 were noised about concerning the treacherous designs of the Portuguese inhabitants against us, being for that time vanished into smoke, the same was revived, and their designs began to be discovered in February 1645, viz. That confiding in the promised succours from Bahia, they intended to rise in arms against us, looking upon this juncture as the most favourable for their purpose, since count Maurice with the greatest part of our fleet, and a good number of soldiers were returned to Holland, from whence no fresh supplies were come of late into Brasil. The great council not being ignorant of this, were indefatigable in their care, to leave no stone unturned to find out the ring-leaders of this rebellion, so as to charge them effectually with this crime, and find out sufficient cause for their commitment. They sent out several of their officers into the country, as spies, to sound the inclinations of the people, and whether they could meet with any one who incited the rest to an insurrection. The like he did on the other side of the river of St. Francis, and in Kamaron's camp, whither they had sent certain persons to investigate their designs, and to learn what preparations they made for war, and whether they were intended against Pernambuco, but were not able to find out any thing, upon which they could make any sure account. Being nevertheless sensible that those forewarnings were not altogether groundless, and knowing the Por-

tuguese

1643.

1643.

A letter from the great council to the West-India company.

Another revolt of the Portuguese.

ne  
af  
M  
w  
ga  
a  
dr  
joy  
Th  
fig  
win  
tha  
of  
H  
pan  
fort  
time  
cour  
maj  
into  
the  
the  
out  
in  
our  
troop  
The  
been  
by  
unde  
their  
bowe  
as  
part  
figu  
part  
much  
are  
ing  
judg  
cullen  
by  
the  
confi  
furnij

1643. *Portuguese* to be of so haughty a temper (besides the difference in religion) that they would scarce let any opportunity slip of withdrawing themselves from the obedience of their conquerors; they writ the 13<sup>th</sup> of February 1645 the following letter, concerning the designs of the Portuguese to the council of nineteen.

*A letter from the great council to the West-India company.*

Most noble and right honourable,

*A letter from the great council to the West-India company.*

**D**URING the government of his excellency count Maurice, there were already several of the inhabitants of this state entred into secret cabals to rise in mutiny against us, in hopes of assistance from the Bahia; their business was to insinuate into those that were well affected to them, after their good success in Maranhao, that our forces being considerably weakened by the strong detachments sent to the garrisons of Angola, St. Thomas, and others, a fair opportunity was offered them, to withdraw themselves from our obedience, and to enjoy their former liberty under their own king. They were not a little encouraged in their design, imagining the same might be carried on without any great difficulty, when they found that of late we had received no supplies either of meat or other provisions, or of soldiers from Holland, whereby the storehouses of the company here being exhausted, the garrisons of the forts were forced to be supplied from time to time with farinha and fresh meats out of the country, they judged, if they could once be masters in the field, they must of necessity fall into their hands; as it happened in 1640 to the Spanish garrisons in Portugal, who for the same reason were not in a condition to hold out against the Portuguese; being besides that feasible that unless we would too much weaken our garrisons, we had no sufficient number of troops left to appear formidable in the field. These and other such like insinuations have been frequently spread among the Portuguese, by those, who finding themselves most uneasy under our government, hoped for a change of their affairs, by changing their masters; which however wrought no considerable effect, as long as his excellency continued in the government, partly because we being forewarned of their designs, kept a watchful eye over all their actions, partly because our sea and land forces being much more considerable at that time than they are now, they had but little prospect of succeeding in their enterprize, which therefore they judged most convenient to defer till after his excellency's departure, which as it was sufficiently known before hand, so they were sensible that thereby our forces both by sea and land must be considerably weakened, and consequently would furnish them with a fairer opportunity of put-

ting their so long rejected design in execution; the more, because that many of the Portuguese who relying hitherto upon the authority of count Maurice, as the only means to keep the soldiers in awe, being now put in fear of the executions and exorbitancies likely to be committed by the covetous officers and rapacious soldiers, would be forced to join with them against us. After the departure of his excellency for Holland, the cabals have instead of divine things increased every day; they have been very diligent in getting information concerning the strength of all our garrisons, with an intent to carry on their designs before we could be reinforced with supplies of men and provisions from Holland; to effect which, they have by messengers sent to the Bahia, solicited for succours of men and arms, of which as it seems they have no small hopes. There is great reason to believe that the journey of Andrew Vidal from the Bahia hither, in August last, undertaken under pretence of taking his leave before his return to Portugal, in order to serve the king there, was founded upon no other motive than to inform himself most narrowly concerning the true state of affairs here, in order to give a verbal account thereof in the Bahia and afterwards in Portugal; as likewise to sound the inclinations of the inhabitants, and to animate such as he found well disposed for his interest, with hopes of speedy succours from the Bahia; we have since received secret intelligence that he has been present at several of these cabals. But though they were greatly encouraged with these hopes of good success, by reason of the diminution of our forces and scarcity of provisions, they were not very forward in venturing upon this enterprize, being sensible that their design having taken vent, we made all necessary preparations against them; besides that many of the Portuguese inhabitants, being beyond their expectation, well satisfied with the government of the great council, did rather chuse to live quietly and securely, than to engage in so dangerous an enterprize. So that things remained without any considerable alteration at present; and as matters stand now we are not able to find out sufficient cause to satisfy ourselves whether they proceed in the same design. Their chief design as we are credibly informed was laid against the Recife, which they intended to surprize, upon a certain day appointed for the sale of negroes, when the inhabitants of the country flocking thither in great numbers, they did not doubt but with the assistance of our own negroes, who are for the most part papists, to make themselves, masters of the place, not questioning but if this succeeded, the rest would soon be forced to yield. But in this they were prevented, by the strong guards we took care to post in the Recife on those fair days.

The



1643. The chief ringleaders, as they are specified to us, are John Fernandes Vieira, and his father-in-law Francisco Beringel, with several others, whom we would have committed to prison, if we could have had more certain information against them; but though we left no stone unturned to find out the truth, yet could we not meet with sufficient motives to induce us either to imprison them, or to proceed again to the general disarming of the inhabitants, we having received certain intelligence, that so soon as we should attempt it, we must expect no less than a general insurrection, which considering our own magazines and store-houses were so ill provided, and no sufficient force could be drawn out of the garrison to secure the open country, would have drawn after it very ill consequences for our nation, especially those living at some distance from our forts, who thereby, as we had reason to fear, might have been exposed to the danger of being massacred by the Portuguese. It is evident from the information given to your lordships in Holland, and transmitted to us, that the subjects of the king of Portugal themselves are encouraged and animated against us; wherefore it will be absolutely necessary to be very cautious, and to hasten the supplies we have so often requested at your hands. Upon the first information we received, that toward the south of the Recife the Portuguese intended to land some men or arms, we sent the 13<sup>th</sup> of October a yacht, the Enckhuysen with another galliot and chaloup to cruise thereabouts, but they returned after some time without being able to discover any such thing. The next intelligence we had was, that a fleet was equipping in the Bahia, to transport some forces, for the assistance of our rebellious subjects; to find out the bottom of this design, we thought we could pitch upon no better expedient than to send thither Mr. Gilbert de Witt and Dirk Hoogstraten with certain instructions, of which we have enclosed the copy, who set sail the 22<sup>th</sup> of the last month. Being further informed that a certain Portuguese captain with an ensign and three soldiers have been lately dispatched from the Bahia to our captainships, to endeavour to stir up our subjects to rebellion, with assurance of succours from thence; we have employed all necessary means to find them out and get them into our hands. We shall not be wanting in any thing, which according as occasion presents, may contribute to the preservation of this state.

Recife 13<sup>th</sup> February, 1645.

The 4<sup>th</sup> the great council were informed by letter from Inac Rasiere and captain Blewbeck, written at Parayba, that a rumour was spread thereabouts that Kamaron

chief commander of the *Brasilians* in the *Bahia*, was on his march from *Sertao* to *Siara*, to join with the *Brasilians* inhabiting thereabouts, to attack with their united forces the inhabitants of the captainship of *Rio Grande*. Whereupon the council sent orders to *Hans Vogel*, governor of *Serezippo del Rey*, to get intelligence and send them speedy word whether *Kamaron* with his camp were still in *Rio Real*; and if not, whither he had taken his march, or whither he intended to take it. They also sent word to the inhabitants of *Parayba*, that they should be very diligent in enquiring after the cause of this rumour, and send them intelligence accordingly. The 15<sup>th</sup> of May they received an answer from *Hans Vogel*, dated the 25<sup>th</sup> of April at *Serezippo del Rey*, wherein he told them that pursuant to their orders he had sent a serjeant with some soldiers to *Kamaron's* head quarters, about ten leagues from *Serezippo del Rey*, under pretence of looking for some deserters; who after their return reported, that his forces consisting of two hundred Portuguese and one thousand two hundred *Brasilians*, were still in the same place, busied for the most part in cultivating some plantations, *Kamaron* himself being then in the *Bahia*, to assist at the solemnity of their easter; from whence they conjectured, that the rumour concerning his march was only a fiction. But two days after the same rumour was renewed by two passengers coming from *Rio St. Francisco*, and being landed by one *John Hoen*, a master of a vessel near *Kandelaria*; but upon a more strict enquiry made by the council, the said master of the vessel declared, that on the eighth of the same month, when he left *Rio de Francisco*, there was no news of *Kamaron's* march.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of May 1645, a letter without a name was delivered to the great council by one *Abram Markado* a jew, subscribed only *plus ultra*. This letter being translated out of the Portuguese the same night, the contents thereof were, that three unknown persons gave them notice that a good body of troops were come from *Rio Real* into *Parayba*, with an intention to join with a discontented party there, and to surprize the Dutch forts; with advice to seize upon the person of *John Fernandes Vieira* their chief ringleader.

The letter is as follows,

*A letter of intelligence to the council.*

WE stand amazed you are so secure, when it is reported that the *Matta* of *Parayba* is full of soldiers, come thither lately from *Rio Real*, who consisting in a good number of negroes, mulats, and Portuguese, with  
Kamaron

1643. Kamaron at the head of them, began their march in the month of March, expecting now to be joined by other troops, which hitherto were stop'd by the overflowing of the rivers. Their aim is to encourage the inhabitants to take up arms, which done, they expect considerable succours from the Bahia, both by sea and land, wherewith they pretend to block you up in the Receif, intending to fix their camp either at Olinda, or in the Vergea, and quarter the soldiers in the Fregesies thereabouts. They boast that their forces are already considerably encreased by those who are indebted to the company, and other vagabonds, and threaten'd to massacre all such of your subjects as refuse to join with them. A certain person of note and reputation belonging to the same camp, has given us this information, in order to communicate it to your lordships to be upon your guard, which we do accordingly by these presents. The same person told us, that John Fernandes Vieira was the chief ringleader of this insurrection, who maintains the rebellious crew in the Matta, as they meet together, till a certain day appointed for their rendezvous, when they are with their joint forces to attack all the Dutch forts and out-guards at once. We were also told, that the said Vieira does not sleep in his house, and is always upon his guard; so try which, you have no more to do than to send some to take him, with his servants and factors; which if you could do they would be all amazed, and make an open confession, which may be done without the least bazard; for if you miscarry in the attempt, it will nevertheless not redound to your disadvantage. We conjure your lordships to take care of this poor nation, for fear they should be forced to join with the rebels against you. We judge it therefore absolutely necessary to undertake the business without delay, with all imaginable secrecy; for if they find themselves discovered, they will begin the game immediately; so that strong guards ought to be put in the outworks, and in the harbours of Kandelaria and the Receif. We advise your lordships to oblige the inhabitants forthwith to surrender their arms, to order all the masters of the sugar-mills, with their planters, to appear in the Receif, especially those of the Fregesies of Vergea, Garassu, St. Lorenzo, St. Amaro, Moribeca, de Cabo, Pojuka, and Serinhaim, with assurance that they shall not be molested for any debts there; and when they are come, to detain them till they see what is further to be done, under pretence of securing them against the attempts of the rebels in the country, by which means you will both secure the government, and oblige many private persons. The same method ought to be used with those of Parayba, where they may be detained in the fort, as well as those of

Vol. II.

Porto Calvo in that place. Thus if you can get the chiefest into your hands, the design will dwindle away to nothing. We beseech you not to send away any more soldiers before you have made a full discovery of the rebellion, and provide your forts with good garrisons; whither we would also have all the Dutch inhabitants to retire for fear of being massacred. We three being faithful subjects of your lordships, have now satisfied our consciences in proposing your remedy, which consists in the taking of Vieira, which must be undertaken with great secrecy and foresight, he being, as it is said, continually upon his guard. Your lordships will be sensible without our advice how much it concerns them, not to divulge to any, from whom they have received this information; and we assure you, that we will not fail to give further intelligence of what we are able to learn by way of letters; and one time or other, we shall make no difficulty to let you know, who these three faithful subjects are. If we had been present, we could have declared no more than we have done in this letter. Your lordships must take effectual care against their attempts without delay, the approaching feast being the time appointed for the putting it in execution. We have sent you immediate notice after it came to our knowledge: We advise you likewise to seize upon Francisco Beringel, Vieira's father-in-law, and Antonio Kavalanti; and in short, all the chiefest of the Vergens, and other places. Signed,

A. Verdade.

Plus Ultra.

Hereupon the great council called Paul de Linde, president of the council of justice, vice-admiral Cornelius Liebtbart, and lieutenant colonel Garfman, into their assembly, to consult unanimously what were best to be done at this juncture for the preservation of the Dutch Brasil; when by this, as well as several other letters and intelligences, they were forewarned of the approaching danger; and notwithstanding they were much in doubt, whether they ought to make any certain account upon a letter written without a name; yet considering all the circumstances of this, as well as several other informations, it was judged absolutely necessary to provide for the safety of the Dutch Brasil, against any attempt of an enemy.

I. By providing all the forts with meal for two months.

II. By giving immediate notice to all commanders of forts to be constantly upon their guard.

III. To write to John Listry, chief commander

O

commander

mander of the *Brasilians*, to keep his people in readiness with their arms in the villages, to be ready to march upon the first orders from the council, we being not in a condition to take the field without them.

IV. To send abroad their spies in all corners, even into the woods, to get intelligence whereabouts the enemies troops are, and to give timely notice of what they are able to learn to the council.

V. It was agreed, to summon *John Fernandes Vieira*, the chief ringleader of the intended rebellion, and his securities, *Francisco Beringel*, *Vieira's* father-in-law, and *Bernardin Karvalbo*, unto the *Receif*, under pretence of making a second agreement with him, which he earnestly desired; by which means they should secure his person, know the whole bottom of the *Portuguese* design, and consequently be the better able to prevent it. A certain broker called *Koin*, who solicited this agreement for *Vieira*, was prevailed upon to undertake this task, which he might do without the least suspicion; but the *Whit-tide* holidays put some stop to it for the present. With the same care the great council employed all possible means to get the other persons of the *Vergea*, suspected to have a hand in this rebellious design, into their hands, under some pretence or other, they being not likely to be taken by force, because they did not lodge in their mills and houses in the night time, and by day were so strictly upon their guard, that they could not possibly be surprized.

The 31<sup>st</sup> of May, vice-admiral *Liebart*, and *Henry Haus*, a lieutenant, offered to undertake the delivering of *John Fernandes Vieira* to the council, which they intended to effect, under pretence of giving him a visit, and going a fishing with him in the lake *Leois Bras Bijerra*.

Further  
advice con-  
cerning the  
in-surrec-  
tion.

The 9<sup>th</sup> of July, the great council received advice by a letter from Mr. *Koin*, governour of *Rio St. Francisco*, dated the 1<sup>st</sup> of June, that *Kamaron*, with a small body was passed the river *St. Francis*; therefore he desired some assistance of men, with suitable ammunition.

The same was confirmed by another letter, dated the 27<sup>th</sup> of June, with advice, that as yet no enemy had appeared within sight of the fort.

Frequent intelligence being likewise sent to the council, that in the *Malta* of *St. Lawrence*, and some other distant places, considerable numbers of soldiers from the *Babia*, of *Mulats* and *Negroes*, were gathering in a body, they sent several small bodies thither, under command of such as

were well acquainted with that country, 1643. who all unanimously reported, that they could meet with no soldiers, *mulats*, or any other vagabonds thereabouts.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of June, the director *Moucheron* sent further advice, that he had been credibly informed, by letters dated the 8<sup>th</sup> of the same month, from *Rio St. Francisco*, that *Kamaron* and *Henrico Dias*, with six companies of *Brasilians*, *Mulats*, and *Negroes*, were pass'd the said river; and that just as he was concluding his letter, two inhabitants of the *Algoas* had given him to understand, that some of them had been at their houses for some meal; the copies of which letters he sent to the council, who did now not in the least question, but that their aim was upon the *Dutch Brasil*, especially since they were forewarned by several letters from *St. Antonio*, that the inhabitants thereabouts seem'd to prepare for a revolt.

The council finding their project of taking *Vieira* by craft, not to succeed, because he and the securities of his father-in-law, *Francisco Beringel*, and *Bernardino Karvalbo*, could not be cajoled into the *Receif*, under pretence of renewing their former contract, and looking upon him as the chief ringleader of this revolt, they ordered *Joachim Denniger*, a lieutenant, with a good number of soldiers, to the mill and house of the said *John Fernandes Vieira*, to bring his person from thence to the *Receif*. Accordingly *Denniger* advanced with his soldiers towards the evening near the mills, which he surrounded, and about midnight unexpectedly entered both the house and mills, making a most strict search throughout all the rooms and corners, but to no purpose. In the morning he withdrew at some distance, but return'd the next night, when after having made another search, but in vain, he was informed by one of his *Turkish* slaves, and some *Negroes*, that neither *Vieira*, nor his father-in-law *Beringel*, had slept in their houses these last three weeks; that sometimes they came thither on horseback, but after a very short stay went their ways again. *Denniger* likewise search'd the houses of *Antonio Kavalkanti* and *Antonio Bijerra*, but to as little purpose as those of the former, being informed by their *Negroes*, that they had absconded for some weeks before.

In the mean while, the council sent divers parties abroad, under the command of *Hans Kainer*, *Slodiniski*, and *Cunraed Hill*, all which, after their return, agreed in this, that there were no enemies there as yet, especially not in the *Malta*, where they met with no body but those

The Re-  
sultion of  
the council  
thereupon.

Parayba  
secured.

A small  
camp near  
St. Law-  
rence.

1643.

view  
riber  
rep:

country, 1643.  
that they  
ults, or

Mouche-  
been  
lated the  
St. Fran-  
cias, with  
lats, and  
ver; and  
his letter,  
ad given  
them had  
neal; the  
the coun-  
question,  
Quich Bra-  
orewarned  
o, that the  
o prepare

ject of ta-  
ceed, be-  
his father-in-  
ardino Kur-  
the Receif,  
their former  
him as the  
they order-  
with a  
e mill and  
s Vieira, to  
to the Re-  
ranced with  
g near the  
and about  
both the  
most strict  
s and cor-  
the morning  
at return'd  
iving made  
was infor-  
laves, and  
ra, nor his  
ot in their  
that some-  
back, but  
eir ways a-  
the houses  
io Biserra,  
of the for-  
Negroes,  
ome weeks

il sent di-  
command  
rn, agreed  
o enemies  
the Matto,  
but those  
that

1643. that were employed in manuring the grounds.

The great council finding themselves altogether disappointed in their hopes of taking *Vieira*, resolved to secure immediately the persons of *Francisco Beringel*, *Vieira's* father-in-law; *Bernardino Karvalbo*, and his brother *Sebastian Karvalbo*, *Lewis Bai*, *Amaro Lopez*, and *John Pessoa*, being persons suspected to have a hand in the conspiracy, inhabiting the *Vergea*. In the more distant provinces were ordered to be seized

In *St. Amaro*, *Antonio de Bulbous*.

In *St. Antonio*; *Amador d'Arouja*; *Pedro Marinbo Falcão*; *Antonio del Rasto*.

In *Pojuka*; *Kornero de Morais*; father *Frey Lewis*; and *Francisco Dias del Gado*.

In *Serinbaim*; *John Albuquerque*, son-in-law of *Pero Lopez de Vera*.

In *Porto Calvo*; *Rodrigues de Barros Pimentel*.

In *Iguaraka*; *John Pimenta*.

In *Ilamarika*; father *Lawrence d'Alkumba*.

And in *Rio Grande*; *John Lestán Navarro*.

But it being most of all to be feared that the inhabitants of *Parayba*, who were much indebted, would revolt before all the rest, *Mr. Paul de Linge* was sent thither immediately in the quality of director, with full power to act both in that and the *Captainship of Rio Grande*, as he should find it most expedient for the company, with express orders to press 100 men out of the ships, with proportionable provisions, immediately after his arrival there, which were to be disposed in the fort of *St. Margaret*, both for its defence, and to keep the inhabitants in due obedience.

And considering that the scarcity of provisions was one of the main obstacles to be surmounted on our side, which as the case then stood, would more and more increase, unless we could remain masters of the field, from whence we drew most of our provisions, and to over-awe the discontented inhabitants, it was judged requisite, to form a small camp near *S. Lawrence*; and accordingly the two lieutenants *Huykquesloot* and *Hamel* were order'd thither with 35 men each, the first from *Iguaraka*, the last from *Moribeka*, as likewise captain *Wilschbut*, with 50 men more from the *Receif*; *John Lijtry*, commander in chief of the *Brasilians*, was likewise ordered to join them with all possible speed, 300 *Brasilians* under their own commanders.

The same day (being the 12<sup>th</sup>) after a view was taken of the fortifications of *Moribeka* town, the same were ordered to be repaired, and news being brought, that

*John Fernandes Vieira* had been seen in his mill the same night, the council endeavour'd with all possible care to have secured his person, but in vain; it being certain, that (according to the depositions made by his steward of the mill, called *St. John*, before the publick notary *Indik*, in the *Receif*, 21 Jan. 1647.) near six months before the breaking out of this insurrection, he had never slept one night in his house: And whenever he happened to be there in the day-time, he remained for the most part in a turret on the top of the house, from whence he could have a prospect at a great distance; if his business called him below, he put some body else there to keep the watch; who, if they saw but two or three persons come that way, gave immediate notice thereof to him; and if any *Dutch* in a body were discovered, he retired instantly into the adjacent woods. He had likewise placed some Negroes at a certain distance from the house, who were to give notice of the approach of any unknown persons that way.

The 13<sup>th</sup> *Sebastian Karvalbo* and *Antonio de Bulbous*, were brought in prisoners to the *Receif*, the rest who were sensible of their guilt, having escaped their hands; the first being examined the same night by the assessor of the court of justice, *Mr. Walbeck*, concerning the intended conspiracy, gave him the following account by word of mouth.

## HIS CONFESSION.

THAT he was one of those three, who a few days ago, had by way of letter given an account of an intended conspiracy in the *Vergea*, to the great council, the ring-leader thereof being *John Fernandes Vieira*, who, with the rest of his Portuguese accomplices, relied upon the succours promised them from the *Bahia*; with what he had judged most proper for obviating the same. That the whole design of this conspiracy was laid open to him by means of a certain writing, in form of an association, which was delivered to him by a Portuguese servant of the said *Vieira*, together with a letter, in which he desired him to subscribe the same, there being no more than two who had subscribed it at that time, viz. *John Fernandes Vieira*, and *Lewis da Costa Sepulveda*. The contents of this association were, that they promised to rise in arms against this state, and to sacrifice their lives and estates for the recovery of the *Dutch Brasil*, under the obedience of the king of Portugal. That indeed he had signed the said association, but given immediate notice thereof to *Ferdinando Vale* and a third person besides; and that he, together with *Mr. Vale*,  
bad

Parayba  
secured.

A small  
camp near  
St. Law-  
rence.

1643.

Sebastian  
Karvalbo  
brought in  
prisoner.

1643. had caused the beforementioned letter, directed to the great council, to be delivered to Merkado the physician. That the insurrection was intended to extend all over Dutch Brasil, but that the inhabitants of the Captainship of Parayba were most to be feared, as being most indebted, and consequently bearing an ill-will to our government. That their main design was to surprize one of our forts, on or near the sea-side, whereby they might secure themselves a place to receive succours from the Bahia; from whence they expected to be assisted with two men of war, and three or four frigates. That he had signed this association barely out of fear of Vieira, who had threatened those that should refuse with no less than death, and had caused several to be murdered upon that account.

His confession agreeing in all points with what *Ferdinando Vile* had deposed before, and being all that time forely afflicted with the gravel, he was dispensed with from any further examination.

The council being by this deposition of *Karvalho* fully convinced of the treachery of *Vieira* and his adherents, it was resolved to attempt once more the taking of the said *Vieira*, if perhaps he might as yet lurk somewhere or other near the *Recife*, and of his factor *Mor Manuel de Sousa*, engaged in the same design; as likewise of *Antonio Bezerra* and *Amaro Lopez*, both inhabitants of the *Vergea*, but in vain. Those who were sent upon that errand, bringing back no other satisfaction, than that they were not to be met with thereabouts, and that besides that, *Antonio* and *Manuel Kavalkanti*, *Antonio Bezerra*, *John Pessoa*, and *Cosmo de Krafte*, were the same day retired out of the *Vergea* to the *Matta*. The same day captain *Wiltsebut* was ordered to seize the publick notary, *Caspar Pereira*, dwelling in *St. Lawrence*, who was supposed to have drawn the beforementioned association; and it was resolved to send a pardon to *Antonio Kavalkanti*, and *John Pais Kaeral*, who having a great family at home, might thereby be prevailed upon to quit the party of the rebels, whereby we should both weaken that of the enemy, and get a further insight into their designs. *Antonio de Bulbous* being examined at the same time, ingenuously confessed that he had not the least knowledge of the conspiracy; *Sebastian Karvalbo* being, notwithstanding his former confession, detained prisoner upon suspicion till the 4<sup>th</sup> of *August*, was, at his request, dismissed by the great council, after having given sufficient proof that he was one of the three who writ the letter concerning the intended conspiracy to the council.

Karvalho  
discharged

The 14<sup>th</sup> of *June*, orders were given to all the inhabitants of the *Recife*, and those living upon the back of the river, to surround their dwelling places with palisadoes, under forfeiture of 200 gilders. And to render the companies the more compleat, and expose our men to as little danger as might be of being surprized by the enemy, all the safeguards were commanded to be withdrawn by Mr. *Haus*, near the *Recife*, and in *Serinhaim* by captain *Fallo*, who was likewise ordered to remove the garrison of *Huna* to another place of more strength. The better to supply the scarcity of provisions in the forts, which for want thereof might be in danger of falling into the enemies hands, orders were dispatch'd to the chief commanders, to seize upon what quantity of *Farinha* (or meal) they stood in need of for the use of their respective garisons among the inhabitants of the country, which they were to be paid for by the commissaries of the company. It was also thought necessary, that for the greater security of *Maurice's* town, the ditches of the fort *Ernestus* should be made larger, as likewise the *Quinqueregular* fort, which was put in execution by *Haus*, as vice-admiral *Lichtbart* took care to have two spy ships posted one betwixt the *Quinquangular* fort and the fort *Bruin*, the other beyond *Baretta*, to prevent any surprize on that side at low tide; it was also resolved not to let any ships or boats go out of the *Recife*, without a pass from the great council. The major of the city militia was ordered to keep the rest of his officers with the soldiery in readines against the 17<sup>th</sup>, to pass the review, the same day being also appointed to the garrison for that purpose; several new commanders were also chosen for the militia, instead of those that were ready to return into *Holland*. The same day *Paul Linze* set out on his journey into *Parayba*, being furnished with fifteen hundred soldiers for necessary occasions; and *Bernardino Karvalbo*, who had absconded for some time, had, at his request, leave granted him to come to the *Recife* to answer for himself.

The 15<sup>th</sup> *John Pessoa*, master of the sugar-mill *Pantello*, one of those that were ordered to be secured, desired leave also in a letter to the council, to appear before them, his flight being occasioned not by his guilt, but only fear, which was granted him, as well as the request of father *Lawrence Alcumba*, upon the same account.

On the 16<sup>th</sup> early in the morning, we received secret intelligence, that *Andrew Vidal*, at the head of 1000 *Portuguese*, and *Kameron* with d'Indeos *Rondelas*, and *Hen-*

1643.

The Recife  
strengthened  
with  
palisadoes.

1643.

Our camp  
removed to  
Mambeka.

The forti-  
fications of  
Maurice's  
town en-  
larged.

ry



1643. *ry Dias* with a body of arm'd Negroes, had posted themselves above *St. Anthony*, near the sugar-mill *Topekura*. The same day *John Karnero de Maris*, and *Francisco Dias del Gato*, both masters of sugar-mills in the district of *Pojuka*, ordered to be apprehended, were brought prisoners to the *Recife*, and *Amador da Rouje*, and *Pero Marimba Falkao*, inhabitants of *St. Anthony*, who had hitherto absconded, did ask permission to come to the *Recife* to answer for themselves, which was easily granted.

Our camp removed to Moribeka.

It was then taken into deliberation by the great council, whether, according to the last intelligences received of the enemies designs, it were not most expedient to remove our small camp from *St. Lawrence* to *Moribeka*, which after some debates, was agreed upon accordingly, thereby to secure the passage of the river *Sangea*, and consequently to remain masters of the country as far as the cape of *St. Augustin*, from whence both the camp and the *Recife* might conveniently be supplied, both with *Farinha* and cattle; whereas on the contrary, if the enemy should be possessed of it, he might (as had been done in the former wars) cut off all supplies coming from the south to the *Recife*.

Pursuant to this resolution, orders were sent to captain *Wilfcbut* to march immediately to *Moribeka*, to expect there the coming of the *Brasilians*, and some further succours: In the mean while, to post himself in the church, and to fortify the same against any sudden attack: And the aldermen of *Maurice's* town were ordered to buy up the necessary provisions, both of *Farinha* and cattle about *Moribeka*, for their use. A proclamation was also issued, commanding all the inhabitants of *Serinbaim*, *Pojuka*, *St. Antonio*, and *Moribeka*, without any exception, to repair well armed, both horse and foot, with all possible speed to *St. Antonio*, there to lit themselves for the defence of the open country, under the command of colonel *Gaspar Vander Ley*, and lieutenant colonel *John Heck*: Those that were not able to maintain themselves at their own charge, being to receive their provision from the company, like other soldiers: The said colonel and lieutenant colonel offering at the same time, to furnish fifteen hundred *Aquera's* or measures of *Farinha*, for the use of our garrisons, for ready money.

The same day the great council received a letter from *Antonio Kavalkanti*, (unto whom they had lately sent his pardon) in which he protested, that neither he nor the rest of the inhabitants of the *Vergea* were concerned in any cabals against the state, their flight being occasioned only by fear of

being imprisoned upon suspicion, raised against them by their enemies. The answer of the council was to this effect, That if he knew himself innocent, he should return to his mill, this being the only means to recover his former reputation.

The great council having great reason to suspect, that *Kamaron* would endeavour to bring the *Brasilians* under their jurisdiction over to his party, resolved, in order to secure them in their interest, to treat with *Lilyry*, their commander in chief, to persuade them, to send their wives and children into the Isle of *Tamarika*, under pretence of securing them against any attempts of the enemy, to which they might in all probability be exposed in the open villages; but in effect, to keep them as pledges of their fidelity.

The same day the council received secret intelligence from *Antonio d'Oliveira*, that the succours sent to the rebels from the *Babia*, consisted in a considerable number of *Portuguese*, under the command of the brother of *Kavalkanti's*, of four hundred *Brasilians*, under the command of *Kamaron*; three hundred *Indos Redeltas* from *Serica*; and fifty Negroes, under command of *Henry Dias*.

On the same 16th of June, Mr. *Slote-niski*, ensign of the guards, was sent abroad to be at the campaign, with eleven firelocks, and twelve *Brasilians*, who returning the 24<sup>th</sup> of June, gave the following account to the great council. That he took his way from the *Recife* directly to *St. Lawrence*, and from thence directly to the village of *St. Michael*; where being joined by his *Brasilians*, he marched thro' *St. Francisco* to *Kajura*, from thence to *Geyta*, and so further through the *Matta* to *St. Sebastian*, where all the inhabitants had left their houses. At *St. Sebastian* he passed the river *Topikura*, and coming to *John Fernandes Vieira's* park, met there with good able hories. The Negroes told him, they had orders from their master to fly from before the *Dutch*, but to furnish the *Portuguese* with what they desired. From thence he marched to *Antonio*, and in his way thither did light upon a house belonging likewise to *John Fernandes Vieira*, where he found about fifty or sixty sheep, with good store of poultry, intended for the use of the sick belonging to those rebels, or those come to their assistance from the *Babia*. They forewarned him not to advance too far, he being likely to meet some troops in the park belonging to the fathers of *St. Bento*; but coming thither found both the *Portuguese* and Negroes fled. From thence he marched to a house belonging to *Michael Fernandes*, who a-

1643.

Number of those sent from Bahia to the Recife.

EngenSloteniski, sent abroad, and his account.



1643. above three months before had been ordered by John Fernandes Vieira, to provide a sufficient quantity of *Farinha* for the use of the succours expected from the *Babia*; which he lately had transported from thence to *Pedro de Alkumba*, where was the rendezvous of two companies of the rebellious inhabitants, where the said Michael expected a good store of cattle, bought up by Vieira for their use, according to the information of a Negro, brought by *Sloteniski* to the *Receif*. Near the park of *Don Pedro d'Alkumba*, he met with the same Mulat who had shot captain *Waldeck*, and with two *Hollanders* who had committed murder, and were never pardoned. John Fernandes Vieira had promised to be with them against *Midsummer* day. From thence *Sloteniski* marched directly to *Vna*, and so further to *St. Luce*, but met with no body there except one monk, and so returned to the *Receif*.

On the 17<sup>th</sup> of June it was resolved by the great council, with the consent of the council of justice, to issue a proclamation for a general pardon, except some few ringleaders of the rebellion.

The proclamation was as follows.

A PROCLAMATION for a general pardon.

THE great council of Brasil makes known to every body, whom it may concern, that they being sensible, to their grief, how many of their subjects, having been misled by some of the ringleaders of the rebellion, have left their mills, wives and children for fear, as has been insinuated to them, of being disturbed, plundered, and killed by our stragling parties: We being willing to provide against it, and to contribute as much as in us lies, to the prosperity of our subjects, and their estates, have thought fit to publish their intention, to be, to defend and protect the inhabitants of the open country, against all evil intention'd persons to the utmost of their power. And to reduce those who have left their habitations, to obedience, and prevent their utter destruction, we promise our pardon to all such as shall within five days after sight of this our proclamation, make their personal appearance in the *Receif*, not excepting those who have been actually engaged in the said rebellion (unless they are among the number of the chief ringleaders) provided they leave the rebellious party, and return to their former obedience; and that they shall enjoy the quiet possession of their mills and lands as before, under our protection, under condition however, that they shall be obliged to take a new oath of allegiance to the state. Those on the contrary, who shall persist in their rebellion, or shall assist the rebels

under what pretence soever, are hereby declared enemies of the state, who have forfeited their lives and estates, whose persons and estates shall be liable to be prosecuted with fire and sword, &c.

This proclamation being immediately translated into the Portuguese tongue, was sent in the morning to *St. Antonio* and the *Vergea* to be published there; several copies were also distributed among the friars, in order to publish them from the pulpits, and cause them to be affixed to the church doors.

The 18<sup>th</sup>, good store of provision and ammunition was sent to the fort *Keulen*, and *Rio Grande*, and the garrisons of both these places forewarned to keep upon their guard. At the same time the proclamation of pardon was sent thither to be published; and *Antonio Parayba*, chief of the *Brasilians* in those parts, was summon'd to keep his *Brasilians* in readiness with their arms, whenever they should be commanded to give proofs of their fidelity to the company.

The 19<sup>th</sup> of June, two inhabitants of *Porto Calvo*, that were landed but the same morning in a small boat on the *Receif*, brought news to the great council, that *Kamaron*, at the head of the *Brasilians*, and *Henry Dias*, with his armed Negroes, consisting in seven companies, had posted themselves in the *Algoaz*, near the sugar-mill *Velbo*; that their number was increased since to four or five thousand men, by the conjunction of those who were passed the river *St. Francisco* through the *Malta*, and that they had begun to commit open hostilities; so that now the council had not the least reason to doubt any further of the design of the Portuguese. The commander of *Porto Calvo* sent word much to the same purpose, and that he prepared for a vigorous defence. The first effects of this insurrection broke out in the district of *Pojuka*, and considering that our whole force there consisted only in 30 men, under *Jacob Flemming*, a lieutenant, orders were sent him to retreat to *St. Antonio*, there to defend themselves with their joint forces. The first beginning of hostilities was made by those of the *Pojuka*, by seizing upon two boats, all the passengers of which they took prisoners, and slew them afterwards, except one seaman, who had the good fortune to escape. This done, the inhabitants both of the village and the open country, chose for their head *Tabatinga Amador d'Arravio*, whereby they cut off all communication with the cape *Auslin* by land, and all about to the south, besides that, the on the said cape could

1643.

Open rebellion begun in *Pojuka*.

1643.

reinforcement sent to *Tamarica*.

whereby de-  
have for-  
persons and  
with fire

mediately  
ague, was  
o and the  
eral copies  
friars, in  
e pulpits,  
the church

vision and  
rt Keulen,  
ns of both  
upon their  
proclama-  
to be pub-  
nion'd to  
with their  
commanded  
to the com-

abitants of  
ut the same  
the Receif,  
uncil, that  
Brasilians,  
Negroes,  
had posted  
the fugar-  
was increa-  
d men, by  
e passed the  
Matla, and  
t open ho-  
il had not  
urther of  
The com-  
ord much  
he prepa-  
e first ef-  
out in the  
g that our  
in 30 men,  
nt, orders  
i. Antonio,  
their joint-  
hostilities  
ojuka, by  
passengers  
and flew  
man, who  
pe. This  
he village  
their head  
r-by they  
the cape  
the fouth,  
said cape  
could

Open re-  
bellion be-  
gun in Po-  
juka.

1643. could not, but with great difficulty, be supplied with water from the river.

The 20<sup>th</sup> of June, a *Brasilian* arrived very early in the morning in the *Receif*; his errand to the council was, that he being sent by *John Blaar*, from *Porto Calvo*, with letters to the great council, was set upon by those of *Pojuka*, near *Kamboa*, who took from him the said letters, and kill'd his companion. For the rest he told them, that *Kamaron* was posted in the district of *Porto Calvo*, and that captain *John Blaar* was in the fort. A council being called to consider of the best means to secure the *Dutch-Brasil* against any attempts of the enemy, the first thing that fell in debate was, whether, according to the general advice of those of the inhabitants, who wish'd well to our government, it were not most expedient for our defence, to form a camp to make head against the enemy in the field; who, if once master of the open country, would force the inhabitants to join with him, and cut off our provisions, without which we could not subsist long. The next thing to be taken into consideration was, where to find forces for this camp, the garrisons being so weakly manned, as not to be able to spare any, and the body under captain *Wilschut* consisting only of one hundred and twenty men, besides the three hundred *Brasilians*, to be joined with him. Considering therefore that the whole force in the *Allegas*, consisted only of two companies under the command of *Muceron*, a number not any ways proportionable to the extent of so large a tract of ground; it was judg'd most convenient to make a virtue of necessity, and to draw them from thence to the *Receif*, as indeed they had been ordered before. But their way by land being cut off by the rebels of *Pojuka*, a vessel, which lay ready to go out a cruising, was ordered to *Porto Francisco*, with orders to *Muceron*, to embark forthwith those forces aboard her, without having any regard to the baggage; but the rest, which could not be put aboard the vessel, should be sent by land to *Rio Francisco*, to reinforce captain *Koin*, for the better defence of that place. Captain *Fallo* was likewise ordered to march with the garrison of *Serinbaim* to *St. Antonio*, it being not likely that the troops in *Serinbaim* should be able to make head there, after the coming of *Kamaron* into *Porto Calvo*, it being an inland country.

The same day forty new-listed soldiers were sent to *Tamarika*, under command of captain *Peter Scullin*, master of the sugar-mill *Harlem*; because this island was of the greatest consequence to us; and the garrisons of the fort *Orange*, and the town

of *Schop*, consisting each of one company, were very weak, and the armed inhabitants did not amount to above one company more.

The same day Mr. *Bas* and Mr. *Van de Voerde*, counsellors of the court of justice, were ordered to examine *Gaspar Pereira* the publick notary, concerning his drawing of the instrument of association; as likewise *John Kaviero de Maris*, *Francisco Dias Delgado* masters of sugar-mills, in the district of *Pojuka*, and *Sebastian Karvalbo*, concerning what they knew of the intended conspiracy.

*Karvalbo* declared a second time, at the house of lieutenant colonel *Haus*, that some days ago (he could not remember exactly which) a certain *Portuguese* servant, whom he knew not, did come to him in the name of *John Fernandes Vieira*, with a letter, in which the said *Vieira* desired him to sign the enclosed writing drawn in form of an association, to take up arms against the government, as soon as they should receive any succours from the *Babia*, which at that time was subscribed only by *John Fernandes Vieira* and *Lewis da Costa Sepulveda*; but, as he supposed, was to be carried to most of the inhabitants. He further declared, that he refused to sign the said writing upon the bare letter of *John Fernandes Vieira*, and the hand-writing being unknown to him, he sent both the letter and instrument of association back by the same lad that brought it, with his answer by way of mouth, that he could not subscribe it. Having more maturely weighed the matter, he sent the same evening to his friend *Fernando Vale*, to desire him to give him a meeting the next morning upon the hills of *Garapes*; which being done accordingly, it was agreed among them to give notice of this conspiracy to the great council, in a letter without a name. This letter, with the subscription of *plus ultra*, was writ by *Vale*, and about ten days after given him to read in a bakers house in the *Pont-street*, and afterwards given to *Abraham Mercado* the physician, who delivered it to the great council.

The same day, the 20<sup>th</sup> of June, the great council received a letter from Mr. *Ley* and *Hoek*, dated at *St. Antonio*, importing, that the whole *Fregezie* had taken up arms, and made sixteen or eighteen *Dutch* inhabitants prisoners; that they had fortified the church against those of *Pojuka*, whom they did not question to force from thence, provided they received any succours from the *Receif*. The council having taken the whole matter into serious deliberation, and considering with them-

1643.

Second con-  
fession of  
Karvalbo.

1643. selves, that, as the case then stood, they had no great reason to fear any rebellion in the north, in *Parayba* and *Rio Grande*, as long as our fleet remained near the *Red-Land*, and judging it highly necessary to bring the rebels in *Pojuka* to reason, and by their punishment to deter the rest from attempting the like; they ordered lieutenant colonel *Haus*, with a detachment of a hundred men, to march the next morning to *Meribeka*, there to join with captain *Wilschbut* and the *Brazilians*, and to continue their march to *St. Antonio*; from whence they were with their joint forces to go directly against the Rebels of *Pojuka*, to reduce them to obedience; it being otherwise to be feared that they would cut off all communication betwixt the *Receif* and the garrisons to the south. This expedition proved so successful, that the rebels were put to flight, and lieutenant colonel *Haus* made himself master both of the town and convent, forcing them to quit all the passes thereabouts; and forty prisoners were released, whom they had loaded with irons in the said monastery. But having received intelligence of the approach of *Kamaron* with his whole Body against him, he desired further succours from the great council to keep the field; but the garrison of the *Receif* being too much weakened already, they could send him no other reinforcement 'till the expected succours should arrive from *Holland*.

A. J. 62.

The 21<sup>st</sup>, it was resolved by the great council, to proclaim a general fast all over *Dutch-Brazil*, to be kept the 28<sup>th</sup> of June, to return thanks to God Almighty for the great mercy shewn to them on several occasions, but especially of late, in the timely discovery of the treacherous designs of their enemies, who intended to have surprised them when they were least aware of them.

Scheme of the Portuguese Plot.

The design of this conspiracy was laid thus by the *Portuguese*: They intended in the *Whitsuntide* holidays to make solemn rejoycings, with feasting, tournaments, and such like, on occasion of several weddings appointed for that purpose, unto which were to be invited all the chief men of *Dutch-Brazil*, both civil and military; whom, after they were flushed with wine, they intended to murder, in imitation of the *Sicilian vespers*, or the noted *Parisian wedding*; not questioning but that, when the heads of the *Dutch-Brazil* were cut off, the rest, when attack'd at once in divers places, would fall an easy prey into their hands. But being prevented in this bloody design for that time, *Midsummer-day* was pitcht upon, as most proper for the execution of it, when the ships were departed

out of the harbour of the *Receif*. For the *Portuguese* were not ignorant, that we having received no fresh supplies, especially of gun-powder, for a considerable time out of *Holland*, our magazines were but very indifferently supplied both with ammunition and provisions; and that consequently we must soon be reduced to great extremity, if they were masters of the field: They knew also, that all our ships, except two, were ready to sail with the first fair wind, being already fallen down to the *Red-Land*; thus being sensible of our weakness, the *Portuguese* propos'd to themselves no less than the conquest of the whole *Dutch-Brazil* at one stroke. But the whole design being discovered before *Midsummer-day*, it vanish'd into smoke, both sides betaking themselves to decide the matter by arms.

The *Portuguese* pretended not so much the Allegiance due to their king, as liberty of conscience; notwithstanding which, we have all the reason in the world to imagine, that this insurrection was undertaken not only with the knowledge, but also at the instigation of the court of *Portugal*, and of those of the *Babia*; it being very improbable, that *Kamaron*, *Henry Dias*, and the rest of the ring-leaders, should without the approbation of the king of *Portugal*, have attempted to attack us by open force. Besides this, *Mucheron* declares to have read in a *Portuguese* commission these words: *It is revolt and war undertaken for the honour of God, the propagating of the roman catholic faith, for the service of the king and common liberty*: He further adds, that he has heard several *Portuguese* say, that if they miscarried in their design of chasing us out of *Brazil*, to destroy all with fire and sword, thereby to bereave us of all future prospect of receiving any benefit from those lands; which done, they would retire with their wives and children to the *Babia*, or settle in some more remote place, where they might be secure against any attempts of the *Dutch*. There have indeed been some, who, considering the unsettled estate of the king of *Portugal*, and the odd fancy of his reign, have thought it very improbable, he should involve himself in a war with us, or have given his consent to this insinuation, but the event has sufficiently contradicted that opinion.

The 22<sup>d</sup> of June a letter was delivered to the great council, signed by *John Fernandes Vieira*, *Antonio Kavalkanti*, *John Pessoa*, *Manuel Kavalkanti*, *Antonio Bezerra* and *Cosmo de Castro Pajos* in which they complained, that they being a considerable time ago accused by the *Jews* of a treache-

ROUS

1643.

Pretence of the Portuguese.

The council debates the matter.

Good news out of Parayba.

A letter from the heads of the rebels to the council.

For the 1643.  
at we ha-  
specially  
ble time  
were but  
with am-  
to great  
s of the  
our ships,  
with the  
down to  
ble of our  
d to them-  
the whole  
the whole  
Admiral-  
h sides be-  
matter by

ot so much  
g, as liber-  
ing which,  
rld to ima-  
undertaken  
but also at  
f Portugal,  
being very  
y Dias, and  
should with-  
g of Portu-  
us by open  
declares to  
mission these  
undertaken for  
ating of the  
ervice of the  
urther adds,  
tuguese say,  
their design  
to destroy all  
to bereave us  
ing any be-  
done, they  
and children  
more remote  
ure against  
There have  
sidering the  
of Portu-  
reign, have  
should in-  
us, or have  
uation, but  
dicted that

as delivered  
John Fernan-  
John Pessoa,  
ezerra and  
they com-  
siderable  
f a treache-  
rous

1643. rous design against the government, had been great sufferers upon that score; that now they being informed by the same Jews that they were in danger of losing all their mills and lands, to be given to certain *Hollanders*, who were sent for, for that purpose, they desired that the time of five days appointed in the last pardon might be prolonged, as being too short for a business of such moment, and that the said pardon might be granted without exception; which they refusing to grant, they did hereby protest before God and all the *Roman catholic* princes, that they thought themselves innocent, and not in the least guilty of all those miseries which might ensue from this refusal hereafter.

The coun-  
cil debates  
the matter.

The 23<sup>d</sup> in the morning the council was assembled, to consider of the said letter; where after several harangues upon the present state of our affairs and the enemy's design against us, they were divided in their opinions, some being for granting a general pardon, without the least exception, as the case stood with us at present, when we were destitute of sufficient provision, ammunition and men; others maintained, that a letter which contained so many notorious untruths deserved not the least answer; others were of another opinion. Whilst they were thus debating the matter, letters were brought to the council, written by lieutenant colonel Haus from *St. Antonio*, that he was ready to attack the rebels of *Pojuka* the next day, not without hopes of good success, so that the council considering of what moment the event of this action was to their affairs, resolv'd to adjourn the said debate 'till the next day, when they hoped to know the issue of the whole enterprise.

The 28<sup>th</sup> of June, *Mucheron* arrived with his two companies in the *Receif*, from the *Allegas*, where it was resolved to dispose his own company in the *Quinqueregular* fort, of which, as a place of great consequence, he was made commander in chief; the other of captain *William Lambert* was put in the fort *Ernestus*.

Good news  
out of Pa-  
rayba.

By letters from *Paul Linge*, governor of *Parayba*, dated the 25<sup>th</sup> of June, we received advice, that the inhabitants thereabouts offered to give him fresh assurance of their fidelity, by taking a new oath of allegiance, and that he did not observe the least motion towards an insurrection.

*Jacob Daffine* master of the sugar-mill *Supapema*, who had been abroad with a good party, made his report to the council, that he had been at several sugar-mills, where he had met with about two hundred of the enemies troops divided into divers small bodies, composed of *Portuguese*,

Vol. II.

mulatts and negroes, under the command of *Amador de Araujo*, *Antonio de Crajo*, one *Taborda* and *Henry Dias*.

The 29<sup>th</sup> of June, by special commission from the council, *Balthazar Vander Veerden* examined *Antonio d'Oliveira*, concerning the design of the *Portuguese* form'd against our government. He declared, that about the beginning of this present June, being then at the house of *Sebastian de Karvalbo*, together with *Francisco d'Oliveira*, *Bernardin Karvalbo*, and the before-named *Sebastian de Karvalbo*, a certain *Portuguese* very well known to them all, delivered to him a letter, directed to all the persons there present, with another piece of writing unsealed, which he began to read; but finding the contents to be, that the underwritten persons promised to be, and declare themselves faithful subjects of the king of *Portugal*, and that *John Fernandes Vieira*, *Francisco Beringel*, *Antonio de Sylva*, and several more, whose names he would not look upon, had signed the same, he returned the said writing, and refused to subscribe the same, telling his son at the same time, *You ought rather to suffer your hand to be cut off, than sign this paper*; and so went his way immediately, not any one of all there present having subscribed their names at that time: He protested he knew not the hand-writing. After a more serious consideration, he thought it requisite to make a discovery of it, which he did accordingly within two days after, to *Matthew Reex*, desiring him to give an account of it to the great council; he declared further that the said writing was signed by above one hundred of the inhabitants.

Before-ex-  
amination  
and confes-  
sion of  
Antonio  
Oliveira.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of June one *Digos Lopes Leyte*, who was not long ago taken prisoner by the *Brasilians*, was examined by Mr. *Bullestrate*, *Dormont* and some other military officers. His confession was, that at the first beginning of the design of the *Portuguese* against this state, they had sent a letter to the governor of the *Babia*, *Antonio Telles de Silva*, to crave assistance from him, which if he refused, they would seek for aid in *Spain*; and if they did not succeed there, they would rather surrender themselves to the *Turks*, than endure any longer the ill treatment they met with from the *Hollanders*. That nevertheless he had heard many dire imprecations made against *John Fernandes Vieira*; that he deserv'd no less than the gallows, he having raised this rebellion for no other end, than thereby to free himself from the vast debts he owed to the company.

Digos  
Lopes  
Leyte ex-  
amin'd.

The same day it was agreed to send abroad a party of twelve soldiers and eight *Brasilians*, to fetch a good quantity of *Fa-*

rinba

Q

1643. *rinba* from *St. Lawrence*, who were put to the rout near that place, so that very few escaped. At the same time the council received the unwelcome news, that some of the inhabitants of *Iguarapu* had taken up arms against them.

In the beginning of *July* it was resolved to draw the fortifications of *Maurice's Town* into a narrower compass, and to add a new line with a breast-work. This task was performed by the negroes belonging to the inhabitants of *Maurice's Town* and the *Receif*, under the conduct of vice-admiral *Lichtbart*, who took care to have the same perfected, according to the model drawn by the engineer.

The same day advice was brought, that *John Lawrence Frances*, and *John Dias Leyte*, inhabitants of *Iguarapu*, made it their business to incite the inhabitants to an insurrection. Captain *Sluyter* sent also word from *Tamarika*, that about eighty men, and one hundred ten women and children, all *Brasilians* of the villages of *St. Michel* and *Nassau*, were come into that island for shelter, and that the *Brasilians* of *Otta* intended to do the like. The magistrates and chief *Portuguese* of *Goyana*, gave the council fresh assurances of their fidelity, provided they might in case of necessity be allowed to retire into the said island, which was granted, and thanks given them for their loyalty. The magistrates of *Iguarapu* advised, that *Vieira* had caused a declaration to be affixed in the sugar-mills of *Gonsalvo Novo de Lira*, which they had order'd to be torn down, and sent a copy of it to the council, assuring them, that they would take all possible care to keep the inhabitants thereabouts under obedience, tho' they found some of them much inclined to a revolt.

Fernandes  
Vale ex-  
amined.

At the same time *Fernandes Vale* was examined by *Mr. Vander Voerde* and *Mr. Bas*; he declared, that having received a letter from *Sebastian de Karvalbo*, to meet him the next morning upon the hills *Garapes*, because he had something to communicate to him, concerning no less than their estates, lives and honour; he without mentioning any thing of it to his wife or brother, went thither on horse-back, accompanied only by a boy; notwithstanding he happened at that time to be afflicted with the gravel; there he met *Sebastian Karvalbo*, with one boy only, who told him, that he having received a letter, with another writing, containing a project of an insurrection to be undertaken against the government, he thought it absolutely necessary, to give notice thereof to the great council; and that he desired him to write a letter accordingly to the council; he be-

ing pretty well versed in the *Dutch Tongue*. That *Vale* ask'd him, whether any body besides himself knew of the matter, unto which he answered, that his Brother *Bernardin* did, whose opinion was likewise to disclose it to the council; hereupon they returning each to their respective homes, *Vale* writ a letter in *Portuguese*, pursuant to the instructions he had received from *Karvalbo*, for whom the said letter was left to peruse in a baker's house, on a publick fair-day for the sale of negroes; after which he had sent the said letter inclosed in another, to *Dr. Markado*, desiring him to see the same carefully dispatch'd to the great council, without mentioning the contents thereof.

The great council receiving frequent intelligence, that the *Portuguese* from the *Babia* intended to send a fleet to the assistance of the rebels, it was resolved to send orders to the four ships, the *Amsterdam*, the *Blackmore*, the *North-Holland*, and *Groningen*, then at anchor near the *Red-Land*, in order to their return to *Holland*, to return forthwith to the *Receif*; the government standing in great need of their assistance, to prevent the conjunction of the forces from the *Babia* with the rebels. They received also letters from lieutenant colonel *Haus*, dated at *Pojuka* the 26<sup>th</sup> of *June*, assuring them, that he had granted passes to above two hundred persons that were returned to their duty; that two or three of the ring-leaders, excepted in the last pardon, sued for the same favour; and that he had caused one *Franko Godinho*, one of the chief of the rebels, taken by his people, to be hanged on the gallows he had erected himself; that *Amador d'Araouje* being gone from thence with a hundred and fifty men to the *Vergea*, to join with *Vieira*, he expected their orders whether he should follow him, he looking upon it as a faint to draw him from thence. He further told them, that with the *Brasilians* and their wives and children, he was above five hundred strong, and that unless they were soon supplied with provisions from the *Receif*, they should consume all the cattle thereabouts.

The great council sent an answer the same night to lieutenant colonel *Haus*, requiring him to grant free pardon to all who should desire it, not excepting the ring-leaders themselves, thereby to weaken *Amador d'Araouje* and his party. That with what forces he could spare in *Pojuka*, (after sufficient provision made for the defence of the garisons, according to their own discretion) he should march to the *Receif*, in order to attack *Vieira*, where they need not fear but to be able to subsist upon what the said *Vieira* had laid up for the use of the expected

1643.

The council  
recall  
their Ships  
from the  
Red-  
Land.

Captain  
Blair sent  
abroad  
with some  
troops.

1643.

Blair  
was  
from  
the  
of  
but  
be  
with  
both  
was  
stric  
hab  
prot  
ceiv  
brin  
also  
with  
out  
Verge  
and  
rebel  
rout,  
whol  
to the  
Th  
cil, w  
pecte  
ough  
it, w  
solve  
ting o

Tongue. 1643.  
ny body  
er, unto  
her Ber-  
kewise to  
pon they  
e homes,  
pursuant  
ved from  
etter was  
on a pub-  
es; after  
r inclosed  
iring him  
d to the  
g the con-

requent in-  
from the  
the assist-  
to fend  
erdam, the  
and Gronin-  
d-Land, in  
to return  
government  
assistance,  
the forces  
They re-  
ant colonel  
in of June,  
ed passes to  
at were re-  
or three of  
he last par-  
and that  
nbo, one of  
by his peo-  
ows he had  
d'Araonje  
undred and  
with Vieira,  
r he should  
as a faint to  
urther told  
their wives  
e hundred  
e soon sup-  
Receif, they  
reabouts.  
er the same  
, requiring  
who should  
aders them-  
dor d'Ara-  
what forces  
er sufficient  
of the gar-  
cretion) he  
n order to  
d not fear  
n what the  
use of the  
expected

1643. expected succours from the *Babia*, and the cattle belonging to the rebels.

But whilst lieutenant colonel *Blaar* was employed in securing *Pojuka* against their attempts, those of the *Vergea* strengthened themselves with all possible diligence; to further which, *John Fernandes Vieira* and *Antonio Kavalanti*, who stiled themselves the heads of this war, did not only affix their declarations round about *Maurice's Town*, and in *Iguarassu*, inciting the inhabitants to rebellion, by promising them considerable succours from the *Babia*, but their parties also, which they sent frequently abroad, forced those of the open country to take up arms, killing such as refused. The same was practised by *Amador d'Araonje* in *Pojuka*; so, that what with provisions, what with threats and force they got together a considerable body in the *Vergea*, we being not in a capacity to prevent it, because what forces we had were in *Pojuka*.

But judging it absolutely for our interest to stop as much as possible these proceedings, it was resolved to arm some of the lusty young fellows with firelocks, which they were furnished withal by the citizens, (there being none in magazines) and to join with them a detachment of the garrison, besides a hundred *Brazilians*, that were lately arrived under *Peter Potti*.

Pursuant to this resolution, captain *John Blaar* received orders to put himself at the head of three hundred men, with whom he was to march with all imaginable secrecy from the *Receif*; and by lying in ambush near the passes, to endeavour to intercept some of the enemies Troops, not questioning, but that out of the Prisoners, they should be able to learn where *Vieira* was posted with his main body, and of what strength both he and the succours from the *Babia* was reputed to be among them. He had strict orders not to molest any of the inhabitants, who were not in arms, but to protect them and their estates, and to receive those who sought for mercy, and bring them into the *Receif*. Orders were also sent to lieutenant colonel *Haus* to march with what forces could possibly be spared out of the garrisons to the south, to the *Vergea*, in order to join with captain *Blaar*, and endeavour to attack the heads of the rebels, which if they could once put to the rout, might be a means to quench the whole fire of rebellion, and to restore peace to the *Dutch-Brazil*.

The first of July it was debated in council, whether all such persons as were suspected to have a hand in the conspiracy, ought not to be granted to all that desired it, without exception. The last was resolved upon as conducting most to the quieting of the subjects minds.

The 2<sup>d</sup> in the evening, the council received advice from captain *Blaar*, that he was posted at *Mongioppe*, with an intention to attack the enemy, wherever he met them.

The 3<sup>d</sup> he marched to *Iguarassu*.

The 4<sup>th</sup> they received letters from lieutenant colonel *Haus*, from *St. Antonio*, importing, that after having left a garrison in *Pojuka* under lieutenant *Flemming*, and one hundred *Brazilians* in *St. Antonio*, he was ready to march to the sugar-mill *Velbo*, and from thence to *Moribaca*; where he would expect their further orders.

At the same time the inhabitants of *Goyana* having fortified themselves in a certain house, belonging to *Listry* their chief magistrate, they desired the council to furnish them with forty muskets, for the use of such among them as were unprovided with arms. Their request was granted, and positive orders sent at the same time to *Servaes Karpentier*, to take this opportunity to disarm all the *Portuguese*, either by fair or foul means; to effect which, he should keep the *Dutch* together in a body as much as possibly he could; his answer was, *he would endeavour to disarm the Portuguese by fair means, he wanting power to do it by force*. Besides which, he gave notice in his letter dated the 11<sup>th</sup> of July, that every thing remained quiet hitherto in *Goyana*, but that the *Brazilians*, (contrary to his express orders) claiming a prerogative to be commanded by none but their own officers, pursuant to a decree of the council of nineteen, had in their passages to *Tamarika* plundered several of the *Portuguese* inhabitants.

Most of the rebellious *Portuguese* had left their wives and children in their houses and mills, which as it tended to their no small conveniency, so some of the faithful *Portuguese* inhabitants did propose on the 3<sup>d</sup> of July to the great council, whether it would not be for our interest to oblige those wives and children to quit their houses and mills, and to send them after their husbands. Several reasons were alleged for it.

I. Because the rebels being encumbered with their families, must of necessity make greater consumption of *Farinha*, and other provisions, which would oblige them the sooner to alter their measures, and to change their places.

II. That thereby they would be much disheartened, for fear of a vigorous attack.

III. That they would not be able to march or to change their camp so conveniently as before, or to lurk in uninhabitable places.

IV. That by the removal of these women, who served them as spies by the help of

1643.

The condition of Goyana.

Captain Blaar sent abroad with some troops.



1643. of their negroes, we should take away all opportunity from them, to be informed of our designs.

All which reasons being well weighed, the following proclamation was published.

*A Proclamation for the removal of the rebels wives and children.*

**T**HE great council of Brasil, by the authority of the states general of the united provinces, his highness the prince of Orange, and the West-India company, make known unto every body, that whereas many of those, who have sided with the three head rebels, John Fernandes Vieira, Antonio Kavalkanti, and Amador d'Araouje, against this state, have left behind them their wives, children and families, which hitherto continue in their former dwelling places; we do by these presents strictly command all the wives and children, whether male or female, whose husbands and fathers are engaged with the rebels, to leave their respective houses within six days after the publication of this proclamation; and to repair to their respective husbands and fathers, or else to incur the penalties due to rebels; it being our resolution not to take the same into our protection; nay, to take away our safe-guards from all such of our subjects as shall be found to harbour or conceal these before-said wives, children, and their effects, unless the husbands and fathers of these wives and children shall within the limited time of six days, return to their dwelling-places, and sue for pardon to the council.

Thus decreed in the assembly of the great council of Brasil.

About this time near one thousand Brasilians, among whom were three hundred and sixty nine men, the rest women and children, being retired to the isle Tamarika, to shelter themselves against the rebellious Portuguese, Mr. Dermont counsellor of the finances, was sent thither in the beginning of July, as supreme director of the territory of Iguarassu, to secure that island, which was of so great consequence to the state, in our interest.

The 5<sup>th</sup> of July, a proclamation was issued against the three chief rebels, John Fernandes Vieira, Antonio Kavalkanti, and Amador d'Araouje, declaring their lives and estates to be forfeited, offering a reward for the apprehending of them, as follows.

*A proclamation for apprehending the three head rebels.*

**T**HE great council of Brasil, by authority of the states general of the United Provinces, his highness the prince of Orange, and

the West-India company, send greeting: Be it known by all, that whereas we are fully satisfied that John Fernandes Vieira, Antonio Kavalkanti, and Amador d'Araouje, setting aside their allegiance, have a considerable time ago entered into a conspiracy against the state, sending their letters throughout several Provinces of our jurisdiction, to excite our subjects to a revolt; that they have gathered and still are gathering forces to maintain their treacherous designs against this state, forcing our faithful subjects to join with them, threatening with death such as refuse to enter into this rebellion; nay, having caused several, as well Hollanders as Brasilians, to be murdered upon that score: That they have affixed and published declarations in several places, tending to the disquieting and disturbing the minds of the subjects of this state, with the name and title of governors of this war (whereas they ought to have stiled themselves faithless traitors) covering their villainous designs under the name of the divine majesty, besides many other misdemeanours, whereby they have rendered themselves guilty of high treason. It is for these reasons that we thought it our duty to declare the above named John Fernandes Vieira, Antonio Kavalkanti, and Amador d'Araouje, and by these presents do declare them enemies of this state, disturbers of the publick peace and our good subjects, rebels and traitors against their lawful magistrates; and to have forfeited all their privileges, rights, lives, and estates; and as such, we grant not only free leave to every one to apprehend or to kill the said John Fernandes Vieira, Antonio Kavalkanti, Amador d'Araouje, but also promise a reward of one thousand Charles's guilders, to such or such persons as shall do so signal a piece of service to the company, as to apprehend either of those persons, so as they may be brought to justice, and the like reward to any person who shall kill either of the said traitors, besides his pardon for any offence he may have committed before; and if he be a slave, his liberty, together with the reward. We also strictly command by these presents, all the inhabitants of this state, of what quality, degree or nation soever, that they shall not presume to assist the said rebels with arms, provisions, money, men, and ammunition, or harbour, conceal, or advise them in any respect, or keep the least correspondence with them, under pain of being declared traitors, and to be punished as such with the utmost rigour, &c.

Whilst the great council were thus endeavouring to quench the flame of rebellion, they received frequent intelligence, that besides the succours already come to the rebels from the Bahia by land, by way of Rio St. Francisco, they expected a considerable fleet from thence; it was resolved

Deputies sent to the governor of the Bahia.

Their instructions.

Arrives in the Bahia.

1643. to send once more some deputies to the governor *Antonio Telles da Silva*, to represent to him that *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias* being under his jurisdiction, their entering in an hostile manner into the *Dutch Brasil*, could not be interpreted otherwise than a breach of the truce concluded betwixt the king of *Portugal* and their high and mightinesses the states general.

Deputies  
just to the  
governor of  
the Bahia.

The persons pitched upon for this purpose were *Baltazar Vander Voerde*, counselor of the court of justice, and *Dirk Hoogstrate*, then commander in chief to the cape of *St. Austin*, who being looked upon at that time as a very loyal person, was sent for the 4<sup>th</sup> of July, leaving *Barent Van Tichlenborgh* to command in his absence. *Francis Krynen Springapple* was appointed their secretary, and *Gerrard Dirk Laet*, *Alexander Sylve*, and *Jacob Swearts*, to attend them as gentlemen.

Their in-  
structions.

Their instructions were, to lay open to the governor the true reason and occasion of this insurrection, and the ringleaders thereof, who would never have dared to attempt it without the hopes of succours, which were sent them by land through *Rio St. Francisco*: They were to search into his intentions as near as possibly they could, and to desire him to recal *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias* with their troops out of the *Dutch Brasil*, and to punish them according to their deserts. If they found the governor not inclined to give them due satisfaction, by recalling those troops either by publick proclamation, or sending some person of authority to bring them back, or by giving them some other real demonstrations of his sincere intention before their departure, they were to protest to, and to declare themselves innocent of all the damages, murders, and rapines as well against the *Hollanders*, as *Portuguese* and *Brasilians*, already committed or to be committed by those forces. They were to declare to the governor, that they would look upon it as an open breach of peace and act of hostility, of which they must give an account to their masters, who, without question would know how to make themselves amends for the damages sustained; and to protest once more, that the *Dutch* declared themselves innocent of all the miseries which must ensue from their taking up arms for their own defence, after their so reasonable request had been rejected.

Arrive in  
the Bahia.

Accordingly they set sail the 9<sup>th</sup> of July 1645, from the *Recif*, in the ship called the *Rœbuck*, and coming to an anchor the 17<sup>th</sup> in the *Bahia*, were in the name of the governor *Antonio Telles da Silva*, complimented aboard their ships by several

VOL. II.

*Portuguese* gentlemen, from whom they asked leave to come ashore, having several matters of moment to propose to him in the name of the great council of *Brasil*.

The next day being the 18<sup>th</sup> of July, about noon, lieutenant colonel *Andrew Vidal*, and captain *Pedro Kavalkanti*, with some other officers, came in a brigantine to fetch them to the palace; where, after the first complements, they delivered their credentials, telling the governor, that out of those he would understand that they were sent to treat with him of certain points, which they were ready to propose either now or whenever he should be disposed to receive them. The governor, after the usual return of complements and perusal of the credentials, told them, that he was ready to hear them whenever they pleased; whereupon they proposed,

Are admit-  
ted to au-  
dience.

That some *Portuguese* subjects of their high and mightinesses the states general of the *United Provinces*, have entered into a cabal, in order to take up arms and attack *Pernambuko*; to effect which, they have by certain letters solicited their fellow subjects to enter into a rebellion, and provided themselves with arms, in hopes of succours from abroad. That in the beginning of May, *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias* with their *Brasilians* and negroes, and some *Portuguese*, being on their march in an hostile manner to *Pernambuko*, *John Fernandes Vieira*, *Antonio Kavalkanti*, and *Anador d'Araonje*, with other *Portuguese* their accomplices had no sooner notice of their coming, but they absconded from their houses, gathered what forces they could, some by force, some otherwise, published their declarations, styling themselves governors of this war for the public liberty; all which they undertook upon hopes of being backt by foreign troops. That through God's mercy their masters did not want power to protect their faithful subjects, and to punish the rebels according to their deserts: But as they could not comprehend what it was that could induce these foreign troops to enter their territories in time of peace, in order to aid their rebellious subjects against them, so they were at a stand how to deal with them. That the great council as well as all the rest of the inhabitants, being too well acquainted with his excellency's extraction, exquisite knowledge in state affairs, and the good neighbourly correspondence he had always cultivated with our government, than to harbour the least thought that he should give the least encouragement to any of his subjects, to aid rebellious subjects against their sovereigns: That they were sensible he would use all

Their pro-  
position.

R

possible

1643. possible means to prevent it. It was for this reason that they were sent by the great council to give his excellency notice of the hostilities committed by Kamaron and Henry Dias, desiring that he would be pleased not only to command them not to assist the rebels with their troops, but also to retire out of Pernambuco and the other captainships under the Dutch jurisdiction; that so the rebels being disappointed of their assistance, might be sooner reduced to their former obedience, and our subjects enjoy the benefit of the truces stipulated betwixt his present majesty of Portugal, Don John IV. and their high and mightinesses the states general. All which, the great council of Brazil, highly recommended to his excellency's consideration, in a letter which was then delivered by the deputies to the governor, which is as follows.

*A letter from the great council to the governor of the Bahia.*

IT is sufficiently known to your excellency with what strictness the truce betwixt his majesty of Portugal and the high and mighty the states general of the United Provinces, has been observed in all its circumstances by the inhabitants of the Dutch Brasil, even according to the constitution of those of the Bahia and other places, who have of late passed through our captainships; neither have we ever received the least complaints upon that account, either from the king your master, or from your excellency; all which gave us sufficient reason to believe that you would not in the least consent that your subjects should attempt any thing contrary to the said truce. And though some of the Portuguese inhabitants, subjects of the states, laying aside their allegiance, have taken up arms and are risen in rebellion against this state, as soon as Kamaron and Henry Dias at the head of their Brasilians and negroes, besides some Portuguese, did without licence or the least encouragement from us, enter our territories, contrary to the law of nations, and joining with the rebels, exercised open hostilities against our subjects, not like soldiers but robbers and thieves; yet can we not be persuaded that those troops should have made this attempt by order or consent of his majesty of Portugal or your excellency, against us your confederates.

Thanks be to God we don't want means to bring our revolted subjects to reason, and to destroy those foreign troops; but to shew to all the world how ready we are to fulfil the reiterated command of our masters, to maintain inviolably the truce betwixt his majesty and them; and to remove all sinister in-

terpretations which might be made in foreign courts upon this head, as also to give sufficient opportunity to his majesty of Portugal and your excellency, to convince the world that you have neither consented to nor abetted this conspiracy, we in the name of their high and mightinesses the states general, his highness the prince of Orange, and the governors of the West-India company, have sent Mr. Balthazar Van Voerden, councillor of the court of justice, and Dirk Hoogstrate, commander in chief on the cape of St. Austin, as our deputies to you, with full power to propose these points to you, and to desire you forthwith to recall the said Kamaron, Henry Dias, and other leaders, with their troops, within a limited time out of our territories, either by publick proclamation, or such other means as your excellency shall think most forcible or expedient, and to punish them according to their deserts; and if they refuse to obey, to declare them open enemies to his majesty; it being impossible for us to conceive, how due satisfaction can be given without it to their high and mightinesses, to the prince of Orange, and the West-India company, which nevertheless we ought and do expect from your excellency.

Subscribed, Your excellency's  
Well-meaning friends,

On the side stood, Henry Hamel,  
A. Van Ballestraten,  
From the Receiv, P. J. Bas,  
July 7, 1640. J. Van Walbeck,  
and  
Henry de Mucheron.

The governor gave immediate answer to the deputies propositions, that he was so far from sending any succours to the rebels that he had not had the least knowledge of it. That the Brasilians and negroes were disbanded by his majesty's order, and that these as well as the Portuguese among them, that were come to the assistance of the rebels, could be in no great numbers, consisting (as he supposed) in some vagabonds, or others, who having committed misdemeanours in the Bahia, had taken this opportunity to shelter themselves, and flee from punishment, as it frequently happened that such like persons did come to the Bahia from Pernambuco, which nevertheless had given him not the least suspicion of the councils sincerity. He told them that he was extremely glad to understand the good confidence their masters reposed in him, of maintaining the truce concluded betwixt his majesty of Portugal and their high and mightinesses the states general, assuring them

1643.

Their se-  
cond audi-  
ence.

The gover-  
nor's second  
answer.

1643. them that he never should be prevailed upon to act contrary to it, for fear of hazarding his life. And that if he had any such intention, he did not want means to attempt it by the assistance of the *Brasilians*. But that he had never had any thoughts that way, notwithstanding he had been provoked to it by the *Dutch*, who since the truce had taken a *Portuguese* ship and carried it to the *Recefs*, which by the bravery of the *Portuguese* was delivered from the *Hollanders*, and they and the ship brought to the *Babia*; the *Dutch* mariners being dismissed without any punishment. He told them further, that he was not insensible what an opinion their masters entertained of his sincerity; and that he had reason to believe, that they had at this time as they had done before, sent their deputies chiefly to feel his pulse, to enquire into his strength, and to dive into his designs. That however, he would communicate the letter to his council, and give them a speedy answer, in order to their return home, pursuant to the request of their masters. Then the governor arising from his seat, the deputies took their leave and returned aboard.

The 19<sup>th</sup> in the morning they were sent for a shore by a lieutenant, and brought to the house of lieutenant colonel *Pedro Korea de Gama*, where they dined in company of *Andrew Vidal* and *Paulo de Kunba*. Towards the evening they were again conducted to the palace, where the secretary desired them to tarry a minute, because his excellency was busy with closing his letters; after some stay they were introduced to the governor, who told them, that he had understood the contents of the letter, which he found altogether agreeable to the propositions made to him the day before by way of mouth by them, which consisted chiefly in two points.

First, the good opinion their masters had of his sincere intention, in maintaining a good correspondence with them, in order to maintain the truce betwixt his majesty and the states general, and the confidence they had of his not being concerned in the rebellion, either by encouraging or assisting the same. Wherefore he desired they would continue in the same sentiments, because he never had made the least infraction of the said truce, neither ever thought of any thing like it, nor suffered any of his subjects to act contrary to it; notwithstanding, said he, the *Hollanders* have broke the same in several respects, viz. in their expeditions against *Angola*, *St. Thomas*, and *Marinbo*; by the plundering of *Pedro Cesar Mines*, who had

been basely used during his imprisonment, 1643. not like a man of quality, being forced to shelter himself among the woods after his escape. They had also taken a *Portuguese* ship in his own harbour. Neither did the inhabitants of *Pernambuco* want reasons of complaint as well as the other captain-ships; he had understood out of several letters from thence, how the *Jews* were always busy in forging accusations against them, which were taken for truths; and when the *Portuguese* had thereupon absconded themselves out of fear, the *Tapoyers* or mountaineers were armed against them, among the rest they had caused a poor hermit to be hanged. The great council had always given him sufficient proofs of their suspicion, the last embassy being intended to no other purpose (as captain *Heogstrate* could testify) than to dive into his designs and strength. Thus it was reported and believed, that *Andrew Vidal* and *Paulo de Kunba*, with several other officers, were sent by him into *Pernambuco*, though they saw them here before their eyes.

Upon the second point, concerning the troops said to be sent to *Pernambuco*, he gave for answer, that they must be some *Brasilians* and negroes lately disbanded, who were of little account, as we were sensible ourselves: That if a few *Portuguese* were among them, they must be supposed to be criminals who were fled from justice; that he was not unwilling to call them back by proclamation, but feared that he should be but slenderly obeyed, by a sort of people who could not be kept in obedience within his own jurisdiction. That to satisfy our request, and to remove all reasons of complaint, he intended to send his deputies shortly to *Pernambuco*; all which he had more clearly expressd in his letter to the great council, wherewith he would, according to the request of our masters, dispatch us with all imaginable speed.

The deputies replied, that their masters had never entertained any suspicion of his excellency, neither had they given any orders to dive into his designs; but always had a favourable opinion of his firm adherence to the truce, as might be evidenced by Mr. *Andrew Vidal*, who during his stay with them, had liberty to go where he pleased, without any attendance but his own. That what he objected concerning the accusations of the *Jews* was of no moment, the same being never hearkned to, the intended insurrection being discovered by persons of unquestionable credit. That *John Fernandes Vieira*, *Antonio Karvakkanti*, and others their adherents, had always been protected

A reply of the deputies.

1643. protected against any false accusations, and had free access to all the counsellors of the court of justice, and those of other colonies, as well as the chiefest among the *Dutch*, so that they had no reason to abscond out of fear for the *Tapoyers*, who never were intended to be employed against them. That they did not know of any hermit that was hanged by them, but remember'd that in an engagement with *Amador d'Aracaje*, such a one was shot by the *Brazilians* as he was ringing the bell to give the alarm.

They further told him, that tho' they had no orders to treat with his excellency upon any other points than those that concern the rebellion, they could easily make it out before all the world, that *Angola* and the other places were conquered according to the rules of war, without the least infraction of the truce, it having been expressly stipulated, that the war should continue in those parts till the same was published there. The *Brazilians*, Negroes and *Portuguese* were come in considerable numbers into our territories, not like disbanded soldiers, but well armed, and their coming was not unexpected, but well known to the rebels; but the council was not so much concerned for their number, as to be satisfied under whose authority they had taken up arms against them, that they might deal with them accordingly. But however it was, they desired his excellency to believe, that their masters would be extremely glad to understand his good inclinations, that thereby the effusion of humane blood might be saved; intreating him to send his deputies forthwith with the necessary instructions.

The governor promised to send his deputies soon after their return to *Pernambuco*, telling them, that as he thought himself secure of the good neighbourly correspondence of their masters, so he was resolved to continue in the same on his side. What he had proposed for the rest, had been only by way of discourse, not with an intention to enter into a dispute concerning the legality or illegality of it; tho' it appear'd very odd to him, that they should assist his master at home, and at the same time wage war with him in other parts, under pretence that the peace was not published there; and what had passed with *Pedro Caesar de Mines* was a thing not justifiable in his understanding.

After the usual compliments he arose from his seat, telling them, that he would send the letter directed to the council to them aboard the next day, and so our deputies returned aboard their ship. The 20<sup>th</sup> in the morning the secretary of the

1643. governor came aboard our vessel, with the governors letter to the council, which he delivered to the deputies, requesting in his master's name, to send him a translation of the letter from the council to the governor out of the *Dutch* into the *Portuguese*, subscribed with their own hands; which they did, and having delivered the same to the secretary, he took his leave and returned ashore.

Our people set sail the same day about noon from the *Babia* to *Pernambuco*, where they arrived the 28<sup>th</sup> in the afternoon before the *Receif*, and gave an account the same day of their negotiation to the great council, unto whom they also delivered the letter written by *Antonio Telles da Silva*, and directed to them. The contents of which are as follows.

*The governours letter to the council.*

1643. *MR.* Balthazar Vander Voerden, coun-  
cellor of justice, and captain Dirk Van  
Hoogstrate, commander in chief on the Cape  
of St. Austin, your lordships deputies have  
delivered your letter to me, in which you are  
pleased to give me notice of the revolt of some  
of your subjects against you. I received this  
news as I ought to do, and should not have  
been able to receive it without the greatest  
surprize and discomposure of mind, if I had  
not been assured in my conscience, that your  
lordships did not in the least imagine, that  
this insurrection could derive its source from  
our government; and, tho' I could upon this  
occasion enter upon a long recital of the pro-  
ceedings of my government, tending from its  
beginning till now, to a sufficient justification,  
in the eyes of all the world, and of the greatest  
kings and princes of christendom, that the said  
good correspondence has been maintained as  
strictly on our side, as the same is pron.<sup>d</sup>  
in your lordship's letter: But rather than  
give the least occasion of disgust or difference,  
by enlarging myself upon those heads, in which  
your subjects have expressly and manifestly vio-  
lated the truce concluded and ratified betwixt  
the king my Master, and the States General  
of the United Provinces, I will sacrifice the  
same to the interest of our common neighbour-  
hood, rather than to enter upon a particular account  
of these miscarriages, in the expedition of An-  
gola, at a time when the States General did assist  
the crown of Portugal with their naval force,  
when our ambassadors residing in the Receif,  
were told, that these troops were not intended  
to be employed against any of his majesty's  
barbours, but in the West-Indies, tho' at the  
same time they were embarked for the conquest  
of Angola. The same may be said of the tak-  
ing of the isle of St. Thomas, and the city  
Luy de Mapanha, and the seizing of a Por-  
tuguese

They take  
their leave.

Tel, with 1643.  
il, which  
uesting in  
ranslation  
the gover-  
Portuguese,  
is, which  
ne same to  
e and re-

day about Their re-  
uko, where turn to a  
noon be Recif.  
ccount the  
o the great  
delivered  
es da Silva,  
contents of

council.

erden, COM- The green  
n Dirk Van nor's letter  
on the Cape to the coun-  
eputies have aik  
which you are  
evolt of some  
received this  
ould not have  
the greatest  
nd, if I had  
ce, that your  
imagine, that  
s source from  
uld upon this  
l of the pro-  
ding from its  
justification,  
of the greatest  
that the said  
maintained as  
ne is proned  
rather than  
or difference,  
ads, in which  
manifestly vio-  
latisht betwixt  
States General  
I sacrifice the  
neighbourhood,  
icular account  
dition of An-  
neral did assist  
r naval force,  
in the Recif,  
ne not intended  
his majesty's  
es, tho' at the  
or the conquest  
said of the ta-  
e, and the city  
ing of a Por-  
tuguese

1643. guese ship upon our coast, laden with su-  
gar from Spiritu Sancto. The commissary  
Greening was dispatch'd thither, under a pre-  
text of buying of Farinha, but in effect to  
sound my inclinations, as he himself confesses,  
when he says in a certain letter of his, I  
was sent thither with this commission, but  
rather to feel his pulse and try his friend-  
ship, than that we were in want. The un-  
faithful dealings of the directors of Angola  
in the capitulation with the governor Pedro  
Cesar de Mines; the razing of our fort Ara-  
val in Bengo; the base treatment put upon  
the said governor, being a person of quality,  
and a general of his majesty's, are matters  
altogether inconsistent with the rules of war,  
nay, with humanity itself, and contrary to the  
practice not only of the more civilized nations  
of Europe, but also the Barbarians them-  
selves. Of the same stamp was the answer  
given by your council to our ambassador, who  
urging a cessation of arms in the kingdom of  
Angola, was answered, that the same had  
no dependency on our jurisdiction, quite con-  
trary to the sincere intentions always observed  
by me in all our transactions with you; for  
no sooner did your lordships make complaints  
to me against one captain Augustino Conda-  
go, and one Domingo de Rocha, who ha-  
ving carried away a barge with sugar, had  
brought her into the harbour of our city, I  
sent back the said vessel immediately, and put  
the captain in prison till he was sent over to  
his majesty. And that time being informed,  
that two soldiers living under my jurisdiction,  
whose names were John de Campos, and  
Domingo Velho Sigismundo, had commit-  
ted some injuries in your captainship of  
Pernambuco, I caused them to be hanged im-  
mediately, looking upon it as a duty not to be  
dispensed with by me, for the maintaining of our  
mutual good correspondence: All these before-  
mentioned infractions having never been able  
to make me forgetful of the reiterated orders  
of his majesty, viz. To improve the effects of  
the peace and alliances made betwixt him and  
the States General, to our both sides satisfac-  
tion: I must at the same time confess, that  
looking upon myself as a soldier, (abstracted  
from the consideration of the interest of the  
state, and the duty of a subject) I thought I  
ought not to take tamely so many affronts,  
and to let slip so many fair opportunities of  
doing myself justice; much beyond what can  
be supposed to arise from the conjunction of a  
few unarmed Portuguese, a few discontented  
Negros, and some rebels, whose protection can-  
not, as I said before, come in any competi-  
tion with the several opportunities and provo-  
cations pass'd by on our side before, for the  
common interest; and that consequently our  
government cannot as much as be conceived to  
be the hidden cause of this rebellion, as your

VOL. II.

lordships themselves are pleas'd to confess; 1643.  
neither would I have enter'd upon a recital  
of those particularities, if I had not thought my  
self oblig'd both in duty and affection, to give  
this satisfaction to you. To give you the true  
account of the absence of Henry Dias, you  
must know, that one night he left his guard  
in Rio Reael, and pass'd over to your side;  
Don Antonio Philippo Kamaron, captain  
of the Brasilians, being sent after him, and  
not returning, I judg'd that they were gone  
towards Mocambo, to attack the Palmairas  
of Rio St. Francisco, which made me (to  
avoid all suspicion of being concerned in any  
thing that might tend to the breach of peace)  
send two jesuits to persuade them to return,  
but in vain, they refusing to obey, either for  
fear of punishment, or that they were already  
engag'd with the rebels, (as I now am apt  
to believe they were) so that I have heard  
nothing from them since, except what I have  
understood out of your lordships letter. The  
Portuguese under your jurisdiction have sent  
to me the reasons which mov'd them to this  
insurrection, imploring my assistance, as sub-  
jects of the king my master; they told me,  
that they stood in fear of being sacrificed to  
the fury of four hundred Tapoyers, sent for  
that purpose from Rio Grande; to avoid  
which, and dreading your lordships anger,  
awaken'd against them by the false accusa-  
tions of the Jews, (the most perfidious and  
irreconcilable enemies of Christendom) had  
rather chos'n to expose themselves to a most  
miserable flight, leaving behind them their  
wives and children, than to endure the hard-  
ships of a tedious imprisonment. I could  
scarce have imagin'd, that you could be so  
far mis'd by the fictions of a people so much  
despised by all other nations, as to be persua-  
ded by them, that certain persons were sent  
from hence into your territories, who have  
been seen here by your deputies. And tho' I  
am apt to persuade myself, that some of the  
Portuguese would, as the case now stands,  
be glad to embrace our protection, it being  
much more natural to be oppress'd by ones  
own king or prince, than by foreigners: Yet  
when I seriously reflect upon your lordships  
proposals made by your deputies, viz. to oblige  
captain Kamaron and Henry Dias, to re-  
turn to the Bahia, and to use all other pro-  
per means to bring the revolted Portuguese  
to reason; when I say, I seriously reflect up-  
on the publick calamities on one side, and  
how destitute I am of suitable means at pre-  
sent to satisfy your desires, I cannot but be  
infinitely concerned thereat; being sensible  
that these captains will not be brought over by  
persuasions; and wanting means to reduce  
them to obedience, who have now settled them-  
selves at so great a distance among the woods  
and forests. But as I am ready to conform  
S myself



1643. myself in all respects to your lordships desires, to convince you of the sincerity of the Portuguese nation, which is such, that no opportunity, tho' never so great of promoting their own interest, does ever stand in competition with what they think they owe to their confederates: I am willing to take upon me the office of a mediator, in order to endeavour to appease these troubles by my authority; for which end I intend to send to you with all possible speed, certain persons of known ability, with sufficient instructions and power, to the rebellious to return to their duty; which, if they decline, such measures may be taken as will force them to it; which, as I hope, may serve as the most effectual means to restore tranquillity to your dominions, and to cultivate the good opinion and correspondence betwixt us; which I wish God Almighty will be pleased to continue betwixt these two nations, by a perpetual tie of amity.

Bahia, July 19,  
1645.

Signed,

Antonio Telles da Silva.

Mr. Hoogstrate at the same time gave a secret verbal account to the great council, that soon after their arrival there, *Andrew Vidal*, captain *Paulo Kunba*, and *John de Sousa* came to them, the last of whom sat himself down near him, (Mr. Hoogstraten) enquiring secretly after his uncle *Philip Pays Baretto*, whether he was among the mutineers; to whom he gave for answer, that he was still in his mill. After which, the table-cloth being laid, *Sousa* was invited to stay at dinner with them, which he refused; because, as he said, he was upon the guard: Before dinner was ended *Sousa* came back, and after the table-cloth was taken away, invited Mr. Hoogstrate and *Kunba* to smoke a pipe with him in a back room, whither they went, but were followed by the secretary, Mr. *Springapple*. As they passed through a gallery, *Paulo de Kunba* took *Springapple* a little on one side; and in the mean while, *Sousa* told Hoogstrate with a loud voice, that he was surprized to hear that his uncle *Philip Pays* had not sided with the rest: Unto which Hoogstrate answered, *That he thought he did very wisely to keep himself quiet, because it was likely to turn to no account. That is your opinion*, reply'd *Sousa*, *but have a little patience; and, because I know you to have always been a friend to the Portuguese, I can assure you it will turn to a considerable account. And it is upon this score, I advise you, like a friend, to provide for your own safety and your family. You may rest assured, that if you will engage to do a piece of good service to the king my master, and*

Hoogstrate  
is tempted  
by the  
Portuguese  
*Sousa*.

to the governor, you shall want neither money, sugar-mills, places, nor preferments. Mr. Hoogstrate appearing somewhat discomposed at this discourse, told him, *That though he was not unwilling to do the king and governor what service he could, he did not know what sort of service he meant. Unto which, Sousa replied, I am sure you are able to do good service to the king; but then, says Hoogstrate, you must tell me how: That I will, answered Sousa, are you not governor on the cape of St. Austin? Unto which Mr. Hoogstrate said, Yes, I am; then, replied Sousa, all that is required of you, is, to surrender the said fort, with all its works, into the king's hands, that we may land our men thereabouts: If you will promise to do it, you shall have a very ample reward, and be made commander in chief of our forces. Mr. Hoogstrate gave for answer, that these were things of such a nature, as were not consistent with his oath and honour. Their discourse being interrupted at that time by the coming of another person into the gallery, *John Sousa* and *Paulo Kunba* went out another way. Mr. Hoogstrate told his secretary, Mr. *Springapple*, with a discomposed look, *What is the meaning of these dogs, do they take me for a traitor? He was going on to say more, when Sousa and Kunba returning into the gallery, took him aside, and told him, That he might be sure every thing should be performed that had been promised him; that if he wanted any money he should have it immediately, and for the rest, they would introduce him alone to the governor, to receive the confirmation of it from his own mouth. Mr. Hoogstrate reply'd, What you desire is not in my power to perform, if I would never so fain; because I am promised to have a commission of mayor immediately after my return, and then I shall certainly be employed in another place. During this parley, Mr. *Vander Voerde* entered the gallery in company with Mr. *Andrew Vidal*, who entertained him all the while the others were talking together, till Hoogstrate taking his opportunity as they were walking together, whispered Mr. *Vander Voerde* in the ear, *I wish I was well rid of them, to talk with you in private, for I know not what their design is; I am afraid they will either kill or detain me here. Mr. Vander Voerde would willingly have made a reply, but could not, by reason Sousa and Kunba, and Pedro Korre de Gama, (the last of which understood Dutch) were so near them; so that he thought it the safest way to dissemble, and to pretend as if they had been talking about some indifferent matter. Mr. Hoogstrate then told Sousa, that he had a great mind to pay a visit to Donna *Katharine de Melo*, mother-in-law***

1643. I  
v  
t  
o  
ag  
re  
ly  
to  
la  
vo  
ho  
fr  
the  
cer  
fol  
le's  
wh  
ing  
v-r  
Mr  
Kun  
he  
stay  
Sous  
a g  
pret  
conf  
ro  
ingl  
nor,  
turni  
when  
else,  
their  
telling  
for  
and  
four  
some  
hund  
tion,  
buko,  
and t  
stin;  
quest  
Sc  
of Pl  
Vidal  
vernor  
went  
fooner  
the g  
them  
busy  
some  
der Vo  
Mr. H  
a glass  
Mr. S  
underl  
go al

1643. law of Philip Pays *Souza*; he answered him, that he would ask the governor, who having given his consent, *Hoogstrate* went thitherward with *Souza*, and at his going out of the gallery, whispered *Vander Voerde* again in the ear, *They have catch'd a mackerel, for I intend to set the hypocrite to the life.* As they were walking along the street to madam de Melo's house, *Souza* and *Kunba* repeated their former discourse, endeavouring to encourage *Mr. Hoogstrate*, by hopes and promises of great reward, both from the king and governor, with whom they said he should confer in private concerning the point in hand, and that in the following manner.

After their return from madam de Melo's, to the house of *Pedro Korre de Gama*, where *Vander Voerde* expected their coming, *Kunba* was to go privately to the governor, to agree with him, that when *Mr. Vander Voerde*, *Hoogstrate*, *Souza*, and *Kunba*, should come to speak with him, he should by his secretary, desire them to stay a little while. In the mean while, *Souza* was to ask *Mr. Hoogstrate* to take a glass of wine with him, and under that pretence bring him to the chamber of the confessor of the governor, where they were to have this private interview. Accordingly, *Paulo de Kunba* went to the governor, whilst *Hoogstrate* and *Souza* were returning to *Pedro Korre de Gama's* house; when *Souza* entertained him with nothing else, but the probability of succeeding in their enterprize against the *Dutch Brasil*, telling him, that the governor stay'd only for the coming of *Salvador Korre de Saa* and *Benevides*, who were expected with four galleons from *Rio Janeiro*, besides some other ships; and that twenty five hundred men were designed for this expedition, besides those already in arms in *Pernambuco*, who were to be sent from the *Bahia*, and to be landed on the Cape of *St. Austin*; This is, said *Souza*, the governor's request to you.

Scarce were they returned to the house of *Pedro Korre de Gama*, when *Andrew Vidal* came and told them, that the governor was ready to receive them; so they went to the palace, where they were no sooner come within the antechamber, but the governor's secretary came to desire them to tarry a little, the governor being busy with closing some letters. So whilst some *Portuguese* were entertaining *Mr. Vander Voerde* near the window, says *Souza* to *Mr. Hoogstrate*, Come, shall you and I take a glass of wine in the mean while? Which *Mr. Springapple*, secretary of the embassy understanding, told him, that he would go along with them; but *Paulo de*

*Kunba*, and some other *Portuguese* taking him aside, kept him in discourse, whilst *Mr. Hoogstrate* was conducted by *Souza* into the confessor's chamber.

Within a few minutes after, the governor *Antonio Telles da Silva*, entering the room, saluted *Mr. Hoogstrate* very courteously, and setting himself in a chair near him, order'd the chamber to be lock'd, no body being present besides themselves but *Souza*. The governor then told *Mr. Hoogstrate*, that he had always taken a particular notice of his character, of his being a friend to the *Portuguese*, that he hoped he would continue in the same opinion, and would not refuse the offer made him by *Don John de Souza*, in the king's and his name; their intention being not to enter into a war with the *Dutch*, but only to repossess themselves of what of right belonged to the present king of *Portugal*, *Don John IV.* and that if count *Maurice of Nassau* had stay'd any longer in this country, he himself would have been instrumental in bringing this matter about. *Mr. Hoogstrate* answered the governor, that he should be glad to understand what it was he could serve him in; You have, says he, understood that from *Mr. Souza*, and I desire you to turn absolute *Portuguese*. *Mr. Hoogstrate* told him it was beyond his power, because immediately after his return, he should be provided with a majors commission, and consequently not be employed in the same place: Unto which the governor reply'd, You need not question any place of honour or profit among us, but it will perhaps not be convenient to discourse together upon this point at present, for fear *Mr. Vander Voerde* should suspect us: But I intend to send two ambassadors, (of which *Mr. Paulo de Kunba* is to be one) to your government, who shall be empowered to treat with you further upon this account. And, says he, giving his hand to *Mr. Hoogstrate*, rest assured in the name of the king my master, that whatever *Mr. Paulo de Kunba* shall promise you will be punctually observed and performed.

Then the governor took his leave, telling him that he would not detain him any longer, for fear of creating a suspicion in his colleague, and so retired into his own apartment. But *Mr. Hoogstrate* and *John de Souza* were no sooner return'd from thence, but the governor sent for the said *Mr. Hoogstrate* and his colleague *Mr. Vander Voerden*, to confer with them, concerning their proposals, made in the name of the council of *Dutch Brasil*: As they were walking thither, *Mr. John de Souza* told again to *Mr. Hoogstrate*, with a low voice, and why are you obliged to accept of the majors

1643.

*Mr. Hoogstrate's private interview with the governor.*

1643. majors commission? It is an easy matter for you to tell them, that you would rather continue governor of the place where you now are; and be satisfi'd that when you come among us, that you will not want any employment fit for a good soldier as you are. Mr. Hoogstrate being not a little moved with this discourse, was more desirous to get aboard their vessel, as soon as possible he might, to get an opportunity of communicating the whole matter to Mr. Vander Voerde; which he did accordingly, as soon as they were entered the cabin, the door of which he ordered to be lock'd immediately.

The Dutch debate, whether to employ the Tappoyers.

In the mean while, viz. the 5<sup>th</sup> of July, it was debated in the council of the Dutch-Brazil, whether for the security of the country, they should not want the assistance of the Tappoyers, under their king John Durey, dwelling in Rio Grande; who for that purpose had gathered a good body near Kunbau, especially since the Portuguese committed all manner of barbarities against the Dutch, and had summon'd the barbarians called Rondeles, from the Babia.

But considering the devastations which must needs ensue upon the march of those barbarous people in the flat country, it was thought convenient not to come to any certain resolution upon this point, 'till they had advis'd with lieutenant colonel Haus, to whom a letter was dispatched, immediately upon that account.

On the 7<sup>th</sup> of July, the said Mr. Haus sent word to the council, that he intended to march the same day from Moribeka, and after being joined with captain John Blaar, to attack the enemy at St. Lawrence; but by another letter of the 16<sup>th</sup>, written by captain Blaar, they were informed that the rebels continued very strong at St. Lawrence, expecting a certain reinforcement from the Matta, where they had forced the people to take up arms for them; desiring a succour of fifty men, to drive them from thence. Hereupon the council dispatched messengers both to Blaar and Haus, ordering them to join their troops, and to rout the rebels near St. Lawrence, on which in a great measure depended the preservation of the Dutch-Brazil.

Haus and Blaar ordered to march.

The 7<sup>th</sup> of the same month the council received also a letter from lieutenant Flemming, dated at Pojuka, in which he advertised them, that he had received certain intelligence, that Kamaron was marching against him, and that two companies were already come to the sugar-mill of Pikdora. Hereupon orders were sent him, that if he found himself not in a condition to keep the monastery for want of provisions, he should at the approach

Lieutenant Flemming ordered to retire to St. Antonio.

of Kamaron's troops retire to St. Antonio, the better to make head against the enemy. The same day ensign Harpsin marched with a detachment of ninety soldiers and thirty Brasilians, of the garrisons of the Recej and Kamarika, to Ajama and Jagoaribi, in quest of the rebels, but meeting with none returned about noon, and the same evening directed his march towards Haus.

The 8<sup>th</sup> of July the council having received advice from Haus that they intended the same day to march from the sugar-mill of St. John Ferdinando Vieira to attack the rebels at St. Lawrence, if they would abide his coming, it was resolved to send as many forces as possibly they could spare to his relief, considering that the preservation of the whole Dutch-Brazil depended on the success of this expedition; and accordingly two companies of foot, of Mueberan and Blaar were ordered to march thither, not questioning but that before their arrival Haus would be join'd by captain John Blaar; and in effect the next following day they received advice from Mr. Haus, that he was ready to join with the said Blaar.

The 10<sup>th</sup> of July, the council gave an account by letters to Haus, what intelligence they had received concerning the posture of affairs in St. Antonio and Pojuka, with orders to send as many firelocks and Brasilians as he could possibly spare to their relief, to keep the passage from St. Antonio to Pojuka and Sevenbain open; without which all communication betwixt them and the Recej would be cut off by the enemy. Two letters of John Fernando Vieira and Antonio Kavalcanli were the same day read in council, in which they complain'd of the severity of the two last proclamations, but were not thought fit to be answer'd; especially since Amader d'Araouje had about the same time retired from the pass of Pinderama.

Two days before, viz. that the council had received letters from Mr. Heck, dated the 25<sup>th</sup> of June, at Rio Grande, intimating that hitherto there had not happened any commotions in those parts, that however he had disarmed the Portuguese, and that the Tappoyers appeared to be well inclined to the government: Orders were sent him to cultivate a good understanding with the Tappoyers, for which purpose they sent some presents to John Durey their king, and that the council approved his disarming of the Portuguese. On the same day father Imanuel, Lewis Bras, Imanuel Ferdinand de Sa, Kaspar de Mendoza, Furtado and Jeronymo de Rocha, all Portuguese inhabitants of the Dutch-Brazil delivered their

1643.

1643: the thal... ren... the be... lea... we... flo... me... gues... and... aga... not... J... vert... 12<sup>th</sup>... ribi... fuge... with... proa... with... whe... mar... was... renc... orde... ly di... sue... poss... head... was... fions... mag... in a... had... al ca... while... foot... the c... gover... coun... Cape... with... receiv... tonio... ouje... chemi... new f... the ex... on to... d'Ara... thofe... the g... He... Carpe... maine... Haus... the r... Falka... the re... suffici... Voi...

The petition of the Portuguese refused.

The council found Haus.

The rebels seen before Haus.

Haus ordered to send relief to St. Antonio.

Revolt in Pojuka.

1643. their petition to the council, requesting, that the time of six days appointed by the last proclamation, for the wives and children of the revolted *Portuguese*, to leave the country, being expired, they might be allowed to stay in their habitations at least, 'till the ways, which at that time were rendred unpassable, by the overflowing of the rivers, were somewhat mended. But considering that the *Portuguese* rebels forced the inhabitants by threats and other unusual methods to take up arms against the government, their request was not granted.

The petition of the Portuguese rebels refused.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of July the council were advertised by letters from *Haus*, dated the 12<sup>th</sup>, that he had passed the river *Kapivari*, and marching thro' the *Matia* to the sugar-mills of *Arnao d'Ollanda*, had met with four hundred rebels, who at the approach of his troops were fled to *Moribeka*, with the loss of some of their men, from whence they might without any opposition march to the *Matia of Brasil*, and that he was ready to march directly to *St. Lawrence*, where he would expect the further orders of the council. They immediately dispatched their orders to him, to pursue and rout the flying rebels with all possible speed, before they could make head again, which done, he should fix his head quarters, in such a place where he was sure he might be supplied with provisions out of the adjacent country; their magazines being so exhausted, as not to be in a condition to supply his troops. *Haus* had already in some measure taken effectual care of this point, having in the mean while sent a reinforcement of one hundred foot, and a company of *Brasilians*, under the command of captain *Tallo*, to Mr. *Ley* governor of *Moribeka* and *St. Antonio*. The council also ordered the governor of the Cape of *St. Austen* to strengthen the fort with palisadoes; and at the same time received Advice from Mr. *Ley* from *St. Antonio*, that the rebels under *Amador d'Araouje* and *Pedro Marinho Falkao*, had posted themselves within sight of them, in the new sugar-mill, but as soon as he received the expected succours, he did not question to chase them from thence, *Amador d'Araouje* having in vain attempted to force those of *Pojuka*, to take up arms against the government.

The rebels flee before Haus.

He received also intelligence from Mr. *Carpenier* out of *Goyana*, that things remained in quiet there as yet: But whilst *Haus* was busy in making head against the rebels in the *Vergea*, *Petro Marinho Falkao* having declared himself head of the rebels of *Pojuka*, had gathered a body sufficient to block up the garrison of *St.*

Revolt in Pojuka.

*Antonio*, who had no other supplies of provision, but what they received from the circumjacent country; so that the council being sensible of the danger, sent immediately orders to *Haus*, to hasten to the relief of that place; who, accordingly directed his march the same night to the sugar-mill of *Lewis Bras*, leaving captain *Wilschut* with a company of soldiers, and all the sick, behind at *St. Lawrence*.

The council received also advice by letters from *Paul de Linde*, dated the 12<sup>th</sup> of July at *Parayba*, that things were as yet quiet thereabouts, but that with much ado he had hitherto kept the *Brasilians*, inhabiting the villages, from plundering the *Portuguese* inhabitants, who were extremely dissatisfied, because some of the *Brasilians* and *Tapoyers*, that had done them considerable mischief, were discharged out of custody. They ordered him to take all possible care to keep both the *Brasilians* and *Dutch* inhabitants, who were both for plundering the *Portuguese*, from doing any mischief to them; for which reason the council sent the following proclamation to be publish'd there.

#### A PROCLAMATION.

WE the members of the great council, having received frequent complaints, that many of the faithful inhabitants of the country, who lately have taken a new oath of allegiance to the government, are plundered and robb'd by the soldiers and volunteers; and being resolved to maintain them in the possession of their estates and goods, have for that reason granted them safeguards, and taken them into our peculiar protection; do hereby forbid all our officers and soldiers, as well as the other inhabitants under our Jurisdiction, to attempt to plunder any of the inhabitants, provided with such safeguards, or to endamage them any otherwise, either in their goods or persons, upon pain of corporeal punishment.

The 15<sup>th</sup> of July in the evening, the council was advertised by Mr. *Ley*, that the rebels had kill'd some soldiers of the garrison of *St. Antonio*, that were sent abroad to fetch some cattle from the sugar-mill *Gurapou*, and had so closely block'd up the place, that no provision could be brought thither; and as they were not provided with necessaries for above a few days longer, they were in the utmost danger of being lost. Lieutenant colonel *Haus* being expected the same evening with his troops at *St. Lawrence*, orders were dispatched thither for him to go either in person, or at least to send as many able soldiers as he could bring together, under

1643. the command of captain *John Blaar*, to the relief of *St. Antonio*, the council being of opinion, that the safety of the *Cape of St. Austen*, and of all the southern provinces, depended on the preservation of this place; for which reason, they also ordered captain *Falbo*, who was expected about the same time with a company of soldiers, and as many *Brazilians* at *Moribeka*, to march directly to *St. Antonio*, and to stay there 'till further orders; of all which they sent advice to Mr. *Ley*, and Mr. *Heck*. *Haus* having, pursuant to these orders, directed his march to *St. Antonio*, (notwithstanding the weariness of his soldiers tired by a tedious march) *Pedro Marinbo Falkao* had no sooner notice of his approach, but he raised the blockade of *St. Antonio*, and with his body of rebels gathered out of the three districts of *St. Antonio*, *Pojuka* and *Moribeka*, to the number of six hundred, joined with the rebels in the *Vergea* of *Moribeka*.

The blockade of *St. Antonio* raised.

The 17<sup>th</sup> of July the council were advertised by *Haus* in a letter dated at *Moribeka*, that having received a message from Mr. *Ley* and Mr. *Heck* out of *St. Antonio*, with advice, that in *Puerto de Gallinas*, two boats with ammunition were landed by *Pedro de Kunba*, he had sent thither captain *John Blaar*, and ensign *Hartstein*, with a good body of his ablest soldiers and *Brazilians*, he himself not being in a condition to follow with the rest, disabled by their late marches; for which reason he had put them into quarters of refreshment in *Moribeka*, where he would expect their further orders, as not judging his presence necessary at the *Receif*, now the enemies were fled before him.

Orders were thereupon dispatch'd to him by the council the 19<sup>th</sup> of July, to keep his head quarters in *Moribeka*, the better to keep a watchful eye over the rebels that were retired into the woods; and to be the nearer at hand to succour either *St. Antonio* or *Pojuka*, for which *Moribeka* lay very convenient; but if the enemy should become too strong for him, he should retreat towards the *Receif*. Advice also was sent him, That *Amador d'Araouje*, *Pedro Marinbo Falkao*, *John Pais*, and *Kabral*, were with the rebels they had gathered in *St. Antonio* and *Pojuka*, march'd the day before in the morning from *d'Ingenio Moreno Gardo*, to join their troops with those of *John Fernandes Vieira*.

The council likewise received several letters from *John Hoek*, *Rudolph Baro*, and *James Rabbi*, dated the 5<sup>th</sup>, 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> of July, concerning the present state of affairs in *Rio Grande*, and that they being threatened with an invasion by *Kamaron* on the south side, and by the *Brazilians* of *Siara*

and *Maranbaon* from the north, they had disarmed all the *Portuguese* and laid up their arms in the fort of *Keulen*. They had also by the advice of king *John Duwy*, taken into custody a certain *Portuguese* called *Antonio Vetello*, with his son, being accused by the said king *Duwy* of having had a hand in the murder committed upon the *Dutch* in *Siara*, and in the conspiracy of the rebels. They further complained of the ill practices of the *Portuguese*, who fought by all means possible to oppress the *Dutch* thereabouts; adding withal, that king *Duwy* was ready with his *Tappers* to fall upon the *Portuguese*, as soon as he received orders for that purpose, which had made many of the *Portuguese* fly out of *Parayba*.

About the same time, near one thousand *Brazilians*, viz. three hundred and sixty nine men, the rest women and children, being fled for shelter into the isle of *Iamarika*, where they were maintained out of the magazines, it was resolved the 21<sup>st</sup> of July by the council, to send thither Mr. *Liftry*, to take effectual care, to ease the company of that burthen, that they might be engaged to provide themselves out of their respective *Aldeas*. Things were as yet quiet about that time in *Iamarika*, *Goyana* and *Parayba*, by the good conduct of Mr. *Paul Vander Linze*, governor of the last. For as soon as the fire of rebellion began to break out in the *Vergea*, *Pojuka*, and in *Olinda*, the council being advertised that they ought to keep a watchful eye over those of *Parayba*, where several were suspected of being conscious of the design, they sent the 13<sup>th</sup> of July, *Paul de Linze*, one of the Assessors in the court of Justice thither, with an ample commission, to endeavour to keep the inhabitants in obedience, and to act for that purpose, as he should find it most conducing to the publick security. He was no sooner arrived there, but he made it his chiefest care to provide the forts with sufficient garrisons, ammunition and provisions, which he took from the ships then lying in the road, behind the *Red-Land*: He further took care to secure all the suspected persons, and summoned the rest to take a new oath of allegiance to the government, which they did accordingly.

The council used the same precaution in the district of *Pojuka*, in the *Vergea*, *Goyana* and *Goyana*, where they obliged such of the inhabitants as had not left their dwelling-places to take a new oath of obedience. But the late succours sent thither from the *Babia* frustrated all these endeavours.

On the 24<sup>th</sup> of July, Mr. *Ley* came with credentials from *St. Antonio* to the council.

1643.

Proposition made by Mr. Ley to the council.

1643.

unto  
I.  
men.  
ed t  
tion  
order  
the j  
Anto  
ed to  
count  
II.  
were  
their  
foldie  
discip  
III.  
advic  
Porto  
ble in  
IV.  
bodies  
in the  
the le  
force  
that t  
reinfor  
able to  
conver  
visions  
After  
was of

Their resolutions.

I. T  
Antonio  
be forced  
II. T  
and Ha  
men as  
the ser  
ders pe  
money.  
III.  
leaving  
ought t  
IV.  
hand fo  
vise wi  
of the p  
rison of  
ledged.  
Lieut  
ted the  
del Rey  
sent a c  
could ne  
guese or  
a single  
letters t  
He told  
troops v  
cisfo into  
Rey; an  
or carav  
2

Orders sent J. Haus by the council.

1643. unto whom he made the following propositions.

I. That whereas several young and able men, living near *St. Antonio*, had not lifted themselves pursuant to the proclamation issued for that purpose, they desired orders might be sent for all those living in the jurisdiction of *Maurice's Town* and *St. Antonio* in the open country, to be obliged to take up arms for the defence of the country.

II. To oblige all such young men as were not able to serve as volunteers, at their own charge, to lift themselves for soldiers, and to instruct them in martial discipline.

III. That perhaps it might not be unadvisable to draw the garrison out of *Porto Calvo*, to appear the more formidable in the field.

IV. To divide our land forces into two bodies, the better to maintain themselves in the open country; whereas now upon the least motion of the enemy, our whole force was obliged to follow them; and that the garrison of *St. Antonio* should be reinforced with such a number, as to be able to send abroad a good party, for the convenience of fetching the necessary provisions out of the country.

After mature deliberation, the council was of opinion as to the

Their resolutions.

I. That the young inhabitants of *St. Antonio*, *Pojuka*, and *Maribeka*, ought not to be forced to serve in the fort *St. Antonio*.

II. That they would empower *Mr. Ley* and *Heck*, to take as many of the young men as voluntarily offered themselves into the service for four months, at nine guilders per month, and one months advance money.

III. They were absolutely against the leaving of the fort *Porto Calvo*, but that ought to be defended to the utmost.

IV. What concern'd the dividing of their land forces in two bodies, they would advise with colonel *Haus*, but they approved of the proposed reinforcement of the garrison of *St. Antonio*, for reasons by them alleged.

Lieutenant *Haus Vogt*, by his letters dated the 18<sup>th</sup> and 27<sup>th</sup> of July, at *Seregipto del Rey* advised the council, that he had sent a detachment towards *Kamaron*, who could not get fight either of any *Portuguese* or *Brasilians*, but that they had taken a single *Portuguese*, who was charged with letters to be carried to *Rio St. Francisco*: He told them, that *Kamaron* with some troops was march'd through *Rio St. Francisco* into the captainship of *Seregipto del Rey*; and that three or four small vessels or caravans, with some troops under the

command of *Andrew Vidal*, were sail'd from the *Babia* to *Maranbaon* and *Siara*. He likewise sent the letters found upon the said *Portuguese* to the council, by which it appear'd, that the first foundation of this revolt had been laid among those of the *Babia*, or at least that they had been made privy to it, and that they had provided these succours. For among others, there was a letter from the bishop of that place, to a certain friar of the *Receif*, in which he told him, that he hoped to be with him before long; whereupon the *Fiscal* was ordered to examine the matter, in order to find out the bottom of this correspondence betwixt these two clergymen.

In the mean while the *Tapoyers* of *Rio Grande* (according to *Mr. Linge's* letter of the 19<sup>th</sup> of July) had murder'd thirty five *Portuguese* in the sugar-mills of *Kunba*, who being of the number of those that had rendered their arms, pursuant to the proclamation, this caused no small terror among the rest of the *Portuguese* thereabouts, and especially in *Parayba*, where they left their habitations, so that it being to be fear'd they would associate with the rebels, under pretence of self-defence, *Mr. Linge* desired a reinforcement of soldiers to keep the *Tapoyers* in awe. The council therefore commanded *Mr. Astellen* and captain *William Lambert* with his company of foot, besides twenty fusileers, and a detachment of fifty men out of the garrisons of *Parayba* and *Rio Grande*, to take care of the *Tapoyers*, and to conduct them to the *Receif*, *Jacob Rabbi* their commander was ordered to march along with them, and *Rudolph Baro* appointed to provide them quarters upon the road.

*Haus* having by this time sufficiently refreshed his troops, writ a letter dated the first of August to the council, in which he desired their orders to go in quest of the rebels, and to attack them before they could be reinforced with their expected succours; which being granted him, he attack'd them in *d'Ingemo* of *Baltazar Moreno*, with such success, that he beat them from place to place; 'till on the 3<sup>d</sup> of August they retired to their entrenchment upon a high steep hill, accessible only in one place. Notwithstanding which, he relying upon the bravery of his soldiers, and hoping thereby to put an end to the war, attack'd them vigorously in this advantageous post; but the rebels being superiour to him both in number and in the strength of their camp, his forces were repulsed with the loss of one hundred men, (some say five hundred) among whom was captain *Lor*. After this defeat, *Haus* being sensible that the enemy expected daily

a fresh



1643. a fresh reinforcement from the *Bahia*, required to the *Receif*, where he knew his troops were absolutely necessary for the defence of the place.

Two Portuguese  
convinced  
to death.

Rebellion  
in Serin-  
haim.

On the first of *August* *Gonsalvo Kabral de Kalkos*, was by the court of justice condemned to death, having at the instigation of *John Fernandes Vieira*, undertaken to head the rebels in the captainship of *Goyana*. The same fate attending one *Thomas Pais*, an inhabitant of *Tienpio*, who had endeavoured to raise some troops for the said *John Fernandes Vieira*. The same day the great council received advice out of *Serinheim*, (the letters being sent privately in the night time in a small boat down the river to the sea-side) that the rebels began to be very numerous thereabouts, that they were masters of the river, had flaved all the boats, and plundered *Ingenue Fermoza*, where they carried away the negroes, and kill'd the beasts belonging to the *Dutch*, but spared those of the *Portuguese*. The council being sensible that nothing but force would be able to reduce these rebels to their duty, and that they were from time to time reinforced from the *Bahia*, whereas the *Dutch* troops diminish'd daily, they resolved the first of *August*, to send Mr. *Balthasar Vander Voerden* councillor of justice to *Holland*, to represent to the council of nineteen there, the true state of the affairs of the *Dutch-Brazil*, and to solicit prompt succours. Accordingly the said Mr. *Vander Voerden* having taken his leave of the council, set sail the next day, with the rest of the ships that lay ready to sail for *Holland*, being instructed with sufficient power and credentials from the council; as follows.

Mr. Vander Voerden sent with a credential into *HOLLAND*.

Most noble, honourable, and most prudent lords.

Notwithstanding the rebels make not the least use of the royal authority, but cover their revolt with the cloak of godly liberty, we were always of opinion, that this rebellion of our Portuguese inhabitants has not only been undertaken with the consent of the king of Portugal, or at least of his governor of the *Bahia*, but also encouraged and fomented by his authority and conduct. For how can it be supposed that *Kamaron*, *Henry Dias*, and the other ringleaders, should have dared to attempt to attack us by force of arms without his approbation? It was likewise our constant opinion, (considering the present unsettled state of Portugal, and the alliance betwixt that king and the states of *Holland* against Spain) that he would be sure never to acknowledge the transgressions of the heads of the re-

billion, and the succours sent them, to have been done by his authority, lest the breach of faith and all its ill consequences might be one time or other laid at his door, 'till he thought himself sure in the entire conquest of the *Dutch Brazil*. Our guests has since proved more than too true, for *Antonio Telles de la Silva*, governor of the *Bahia* (as is evident from his answer to our letters here inclosed) denies to have had the least knowledge, much less any hand in the contrivance or the conduct of this conspiracy, laying the blame of this insurrection upon their ring-leaders, who refused to obey his orders; and offering to send certain commissioners to appease the fury of the rebels; and in case they should refuse to comply, to force them by the king's authority to lay down their arms. But how little agreeable this offer of putting an end to this rebellion, is to his real intention, is apparent out of the report made by Mr. *Vander Voerden* and captain *Dieterick Hoogstrate*, under-written by their own hands; in which you will find these express words of the governor: That the *Brazilians* and negroes were disbanded by his majesty of Portugal's particular order. The abstracts of the several inclosed letters sent from the *Bahia*, and taken from the messenger by our forces in *Seregippo*, will put it beyond all doubt, that several inhabitants of the *Bahia*, and among them the *Bishop* himself, had already in May last some knowledge of the intentions of *John Fernandes Vieira*, and his accomplices; add to this the depositions of captain *Dieterick Hoogstrate* subscribed by himself, concerning the propositions made to him in private, which he was managing the company's business there, in the quality of one of our deputies; which as it directly contradicts the governors answer to us, so it unravels the whole secret of his real intentions. And for as much as all these things are sufficient forewarnings to us, that the rebels will be constantly supplied from the *Bahia*, whereas we on the contrary must expect to be weaken'd more and more in every respect, we judged it absolutely necessary and requisite for the service of our state, to send to you the members of the council of nineteen, Mr. *Balthasar Vander Voerden*, councillor in our court of justice, to give you a verbal account of the deplorable state of our affairs here, in a more ample manner, than the same may be express'd in writing, not questioning, but your lordships will thereby be encouraged to send us a speedy and sufficient succour, to re-establish our affairs here, and to deliver your faithful subjects from the imminent danger that threatens no less than the ruin and loss of their lives and estates, and desiring you to give a favourable reception to the said Mr. *Balthasar Vander Voerden*.

Receif the 22 of Aug. 1645.

Immediate-

1643.

two  
Voe  
Bal  
nor  
fe  
then  
ship  
with  
vific  
nym  
man  
Soar  
grain  
ficer  
gal.  
the g  
ed in  
the in  
infir  
of P  
of P  
stop  
willi  
requ  
and  
Portu  
ders  
as it  
the D  
Korre  
guet  
fired  
the A  
guet

Portuguese  
for this in-  
action.

Infrastruc-  
ture of the  
Portuguese ad-  
miral.

The  
said ad-  
directly  
Perna  
thirty  
shore  
should  
the w  
before  
height  
pays b  
time.  
countr  
best p  
the mo  
thereat  
Taman  
fouth  
could n  
should  
Lagam  
to the  
standin  
should  
make  
linbas,  
place  
landed  
Vol.

1643. Immediately after the departure of the two beforementioned envoys, Mr. Vander Voerden and captain Hoogstrate out of the *Babia*, being the 20<sup>th</sup> of July, the governor Antonio Telles de Silva, ordered all the sea and land men that could be got together in haste, to be embark'd in twelve ships ready fitted out for that purpose; with necessary ammunition, arms and provision, for the intended invasion. Hieronymo Serrao de Payva had the supreme command over the fleet, as the colonel Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Nigreiros had over the land forces, both officers in the service of the king of Portugal. The orders given to the admiral by the governor, dated the 20<sup>th</sup> July, contained in substance, that the great council of the Dutch-Brasil having notified to him the insurrection of the Portuguese inhabitants of Pernambuco, he had judged it expedient to equip his fleet, in order to put a speedy stop to those disorders; because he was willing to comply with the said councils request, in respect of the sincere friendship and correspondency betwixt the crown of Portugal and them, which he had strict orders from his majesty to observe; whereas it is evident, that the great council of the Dutch-Brasil in their letter to Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides, of the 13<sup>th</sup> of August expressly declare, never to have desired any assistance from the governor of the *Babia*, against the rebellious Portuguese inhabitants.

The further Instructions given to the said admiral Payva were, that he should directly steer his course from the *Babia* to Pernambuco, keeping about twenty or thirty leagues distance at sea, from the shore; that coming to the tenth degree he should approach the shore, and if he found the wind to blow hard from the south, before he came to the before mentioned height, he should be very careful not to pass beyond the lands point in the night time. After having taken a view of the country, he should, with the advice of his best pilots, endeavour to land his men in the most secure place he could meet with thereabouts, either at *Una*, *Lagamar* or *Tamandare*; being three leagues to the south of the isle of *Alexo*. But if they could not make any of these harbours, they should enter at *Porto Doffer*, *Nambous* or *Lagamar* of *Marakaïpe*, lying two leagues to the north of *Alexo*. But if notwithstanding all their endeavours, they also should miss their aim in those places, to make themselves masters of *Porto de Galinhas*, and to land their men betwixt that place and *Barra Grande*. After they had landed their men, with the necessary am-

Vol. II.

munition and provisions, he should set sail to the bay of *Pernambuco*, in order to deliver with his own hands the governors letter to the lords of the great council.

Accordingly the said fleet set sail towards the latter end of July from the *Babia*, and in few days after arrived in the Bay of *Tamandare*, betwixt the rivers *Olina* and *Formosa*, about four or five leagues beyond *Alexo* and *Serinbaim*. They were no sooner come to an anchor there, but the colonel Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Nigreiros land'd the 28<sup>th</sup> of July one thousand eight hundred or two thousand landmen, among whom were many reformed officers well appointed, and great store of arms, ammunition, and other necessaries.

The first of August, towards evening, three ships with five small vessels appeared in sight of the *Recife*, steering their course to the north, whereupon the council dispatch'd their immediate orders to the two ships, the *Zoutlandia* and the *Zelandia*, to make all the sail they could after them, to observe what course they steer'd, and to prevent their landing of men. About the same time an advice-boat arrived from admiral *Lichtbart*, with letters to the council, intimating, that he had seen the said ships, and that he supposed their intent to be, to land some men on the south of the cape of *St. Austin*, for which reason he desired them to send him some ships, and grant him leave to take as many of the garrison of *St. Antonio* as he should judge necessary to attack the enemy; of all which immediate notice was given to the northern parts, to be upon their guard against any sudden surprise.

But the next following day those ships being got out of sight, several masters of small vessels, that had been near them at sea, reported, that they were heavy freighted ships, which by the strong north winds were forced near the shore, so that it was concluded that they had steered their course towards Portugal.

Immediately after admiral Payva set sail from the bay of *Tamandare*, and meeting with the fleet under the command of admiral Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides, which was latterly failed out of the port of *Rio Janeiro*, he returned with him into the said harbour, and on *St. Lawrence's* day with their joint forces sailed from thence towards the bay of *Pernambuco*.

The first news the council received of it was on the 11<sup>th</sup> of August, by a master of a small vessel called, *John Hoen*, bound for *Seregippo del Rey*, and by commissary *John Barentz*, with advice that they had seen a fleet of twenty eight or thirty ships off of

U

Una.

1643.

The Portuguese fleet set sail from the *Babia*.

Land their men.

A false alarm upon the Recife.

The Portuguese fleet sail to Pernambuco.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

1643.

Unc. or Rio Formosa, and that three of them had purified them, and discharged some of their guns upon them. Much about the same time they received letters from major Hoogstrate, from the Cape of St. Austin, and the fort Vander Dussen, intimating, that Andrew Vidal, Henry Dias and Paul de Kunba were landed at Una, and marching to Serinbaim, had made themselves masters of the place, where they had given quarter to the Dutch, but cut to pieces all the *Brasilians*.

The council advised the Receif.

The council hereupon took immediate care to send some ammunition and provisions to the said cape, having already, for the better security of that place, ordered Mr. Ley and Mr. Hoek, two days before, to leave the fort of St. Antonio, and to retire with the garrison to the cape of St. Austin, before they were enclosed by the enemy. That two ships, the *Deventer* and the *Elias*, which were in the harbour unlading their goods and provisions brought along with them for the service of the company, were ordered to be equipped immediately, in order to join with the other five ships that lay at anchor in the road, viz. the *Ulrecht*, the *Zaalandia*, *Ser Veer*, the *Zoutlandia*, and the *Golden-Dee*. The same Night advice of all what pass'd was sent to colonel Haus, with orders to be upon his guard, and to retire with his troops to the sugar-mill belonging to Mr. P'ek, or any other convenient place, from whence he might be able to maintain a communication with the Receif. Letters were also dispatch'd to Mr. Dermout in *Itamarika*, to Mr. Carpentier in *Goyana*, and Mr. de Linge in *Parayba*, to advertise them of the enemies arrival.

To supply the want of sea men, many labourers were impress'd aboard the ships, as were likewise thirty-five land soldiers of Moucheron's company, who had spoiled their fleet by their last long march; and out of the ship *Elias* were a thousand pounds of gunpowder, and out of the *Douchter* six hundred, sent a shore for the use of the garrison.

Not long after dinner time the enemies fleet, consisting of twenty-eight or thirty ships, appeared in sight of the Receif, where they cast anchor to the north of four of our ships and a yacht, which lay in that road; so that the next following night was spent in ballasting the two ships, the *Elias* and *Deventer*, and in fitting them for the sea. The next morning with break of day the Portuguese admiral who carried the white flag, sent Martinho de Rebeira and Balthazar de Castilho, as his deputies aboard the Dutch admiral Cornelius Lichtbart who brought four letters, viz. two

from the governor of the *Bahia*, Antonio Telles de Silva, the first dated the 21<sup>st</sup>, and the second the 22<sup>d</sup> of July, the third from the Portuguese admiral, Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides, and the fourth from Jeronymo Sarrao de Pavia, dated the 12<sup>th</sup> of August; besides another letter from the before-mentioned governor, directed to John Fernando Vieira, Anthony Kawalkanti, and the other heads of the Portuguese rebels.

Letters sent to the council.

Admiral Lichtbart carried the said deputies ashore, in order to deliver the letters to the council; which being translated, were read at the meeting of the council the 14<sup>th</sup> of August, as well those of the governor from the 21<sup>st</sup>, 22<sup>d</sup>, and 24<sup>th</sup> of July; as from Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides, commodore of the Portuguese fleets, and Jeronymo Sarrao de Pavia, who had landed Andrew Vidal with his men near Rio Formosa.

The first letter was as follows.

The first letter.

PURsuant to your lordships letter, and the propositions made in your behalf by your deputies, Mr. Balthazar Vander Voerden councillor of justice, and Dieterick Hoogstrate governor of the Cape of St. Austin, in which you requested the recalling of the troops under Henry Dias; I being desirous to fulfil my promise, sent to you in my answer by the most effectual means that I could possibly think of, have sent you the two colonels Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Negreiros (both persons of unquestionable conduct and prudence) to the captainship of Pernambuco, with full power and instructions, to reduce the revolted Portuguese to their due obedience, for which reason also I have sent a letter to the said rebels, to exhort them to the remembrance of their duty, and to lay down their arms. Which that it might prove the more effectual, I have sent thither sufficient force, which may be serviceable to your lordships, to reduce those that remain obstinate to reason, and to chase the rebellious troops out of your dominions. I hope that with God's assistance this may prove an effectual means to quench the fire of rebellion, to restore the peace of Brasil, and to increase the good understanding and friendship which has been established betwixt both these nations. We recommend you to God's protection, remaining,

Bahia, July 21, 1643.

Your lordships affectionate servant,  
Antonio Telles de Sylva.

The second letter of the said governor to the council runs thus,

The

1643.

I of a fish med board all swan quest ports for whoa subje least fam by on after of ea peña propo your proies

Bahia 22,

Be Don miral the co

W dours, signed of the and A with c major Benav ber of stablis happen tion, w the Ba gal. forts, a in the whole I thou ral w conjunc tainship dent co instrum dominio and I real de

1643.

*The second letter.*

I Have dispatched my orders to colonel Jeronymo Sarrao de Pavia, captain-major of our fleet (whicb I have sent to your assistance) to deliver these presents to you, immediately after the landing of the forces aboard the said fleet, and to offer in my name all the assistance he is able to give you, pursuant to my command and your lordships request. I am very ready to embrace this opportunity to give you these marks of my zeal for your welfare, especially in contributing what in me lies to the reducing of your revolted subjects to their obedience. Neither do I in the least question, but that by this expedient the flames of an intestine war will be quenched, beyond all hopes of being ever rekindled hereafter; and that I shall have the satisfaction of having been instrumental to answer the expectation of your lordships, pursuant to the proposals made to me upon that account in your behalf. So recommending you to God's protection, I rest

Bahia, July  
22, 1645.

Your lordships  
affectionate servant,  
Antonio Telles de Sylva.

Besides these he sent another letter by Don Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides, admiral of the Portuguese fleet, directed to the council of Dutch Brasil, as follows,

*The third letter.*

While I was endeavouring to satisfy the request made to me by your ambassadors, and busied in embarking the forces designed for your service, under the command of the two colonels Martin Soares Moreno and Andrew Vidal de Nigreiros, together with colonel Jeronymo de Payva, captain-major of the forces, Salvador Korrea de Saa Benavides admiral of this state, and a member of the council of transmarine affairs, established by authority of the king my master, happened to arrive by God's peculiar direction, with his fleet from Rio de Janeiro, in the Bahia, in order to conduct them to Portugal. But being desirous to redouble my efforts, as well in the conduct of his person as in the strength of his fleet, to render the whole the more serviceable to your lordships, I thought convenient to send the said admiral with the fleet under his command, in conjunction with the rest, to the revolted captainship, not questioning but that by his prudent conduct and authority, he will be very instrumental in restoring the peace in your dominions, according to our utmost wishes, and I live in hopes, that this may serve as real demonstrations of the good understanding

and friendship I am willing to cultivate betwixt these two states, both as a just friend and good neighbour. I recommend you to God's protection.

Bahia, July  
25, 1645.

Your affectionate servant,  
Antonio Telles de Sylva.

The chief contents of these letters tended to persuade the great council of the Dutch Brasil, that the governor of the Bahia had, pursuant to the request made by the deputies of the said council to him, sent certain land forces under the command of the two colonels Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Nigreiros, aboard the fleet commanded by Jeronymo Sarrao de Payva, in conjunction with the whole fleet of Rio de Janeiro, under the conduct of admiral Korrea, to assist them both by sea and land, as is evident from the words of the preceding letters: He also requested by his deputies, viz. captain Martinbo de Rebeira, and auditor-general Baltasar de Kastilho, that the great council would be pleased to acquaint the king his master with it, in a particular letter from them to his majesty.

What deserves our particular observation in his letter to John Fernandes Vieira, and the rest of the rebels is, that he calls them *the king's subjects, unto whom he has sent this succour for their defence*; yet with this restriction, in order to reduce them by all gentle means to their former obedience to the Dutch government. It being evident that the propositions made by our deputies to the governor Telles tended to no other purpose than to engage him to recall Kamaron and Dias, and such others as were come to join with the rebellious Portuguese, out of the Dutch Brasil, and in case of refusal to declare them rebels and enemies to the king of Portugal; but he directly contrary to the intention and request of the said council; had instead of recalling them, sent these forces to their succours; and instead of leaving them to the disposal of the council, had caused them to be landed in a remote place, where the said Kamaron and Dias were with their forces at that time. Neither was the council ignorant of their intention, in sending a fleet into the road of the Recife at this juncture; tending to no other end than to back the revolted rebels in their design, and to encourage the rest to take up arms against them.

The council was fully satisfied as to this point, when they received advice from the cape of St. Austen, that the garrison of Serinbaim had been forced to surrender to Andrew Vidal after his landing thereabouts.

Their

The contents of these letters.

1643. Their chief debate then turned upon this point, by what means this fleet might be removed from the road of the *Receif* and our coasts; considering that the whole naval force of the *Dutch* then ready to sail, consisted only in five ships, viz. the *Utrecht*, *Zelandia*, *Ter Veere*, *Zoutlandia*, and the *Golden Doe*, not very well manned, and but indifferently provided with ammunition, especially with gunpowder, and few soldiers could be drawn out of the neighbouring garrisons; whereas the *Portuguese* fleet consisted at least in eight or ten stout ships, the admiral being a two-deck ship, resembling at a distance one of their large galleons, so that the attacking of them appeared to be a hazardous enterprize. After mature deliberation it was unanimously resolved in the said council, to return thanks to the admiral *Salvador Correa de Saa Benavides*, for the offered succours against the rebels, and to tell him the reasons that obliged us to desire him to retire with his fleet out of our road, as will more at large appear out of the following letter: It was thought convenient to dispatch the said letter immediately, and whilst we staid for his answer, to use all possible diligence in equipping the two beforementioned ships, the *Deventer* and *Elias*; that if the *Portuguese* refused to comply with the councils request, we might be in a condition to attack them, and to drive their fleet from our coast, without which we saw but little probability to make our party good against the rebels, as long as they were backed by constant supplies from the *Bahia*. It was also taken into consideration whether it were not expedient to detain one of the *Portuguese* deputies till such time that *Jeronymo Sarrao de Payva*, should according to the request of the council, come ashore in the *Receif*; but this proposition was rejected, for fear of furnishing the *Portuguese* with a new pretence of staying in our road: Mr. *Gilbert de Wit* and *Henry Moucheron*, both members of the council of justice, being ordered to carry the said letter, they went aboard the *Portuguese* admiral the same evening, unto whom they delivered the following letter to *Salvador Correa de Saa Benavides*.

*A letter from the council to the Portuguese admiral.*

WE understand both out of your lordship's letter and those of the governor *Antonio Telles de Sylva*, delivered to us by captain *Martin de Rebeira*, and the auditor-general *Balthazar de Castilho*, as also by the verbal assurances given to us by them in your

1643. your behalf, that your coming with the fleet into our road is with no other design than to assist us with your authority and council in bringing the rebels to reason, for all which we return our hearty thanks to your lordship. But at the same time we cannot forbear to represent to you, that the coming with so considerable a fleet in this juncture, gives us no small cause of jealousy, not only because we never requested any such assistance, but also by reason that instead of recalling *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias* with their troops, the two colonels *Andrew Vidal* and *Martin Soares Moreno*, have under pretence of reducing the rebels to obedience, landed their men and ammunition without our knowledge, in a far distant place, and consequently for the defence of the revolted *Portuguese*; whereas (pursuant to his excellency the governor's promise to us) this reduction might have been much better obtained by a severe proclamation, to oblige them to return to the *Bahia*; or at least the before-mentioned colonels ought to have made their first addresses to us. These proceedings have, contrary to your lordship's intention, drawn this ill consequence after them, that many of the inhabitants imagining no otherwise than this fleet was intended for the assistance of the revolted *Portuguese*, have also begun to take up arms, in order to join with them; which obliges us to return our thanks to your lordship for the offered succours, desiring you would be pleased with all possible speed to retire with the fleet out of the road; which, as it will undeceive the inhabitants concerning the sinister interpretations of your lordship's intentions, so it will serve as an effectual means to keep them in quiet, which at this juncture will work upon us a singular obligation. What relates to your lordships request to take in fresh water and fuel here, being ill provided with both by reason of your sudden departure from the *Bahia*, we should be very ready to comply with it, were it not for the before alledged reasons, and the badness of the season, which would make it very tedious, which obliges us to beg your excuse for this time upon that account. His excellency *Antonio Telles de Sylva* having told us in his letter that he had ordered *Jeronymo Sarrao de Paiva*, immediately after the landing of the infantry under *Martin Soares Moreno* and *Andrew Vidal*, to give us in person a full account with what power he was instructed by his excellency, we desire your lordship to send the said *Jeronymo Sarrao de Paiva* without delay to us, to confer with him concerning the instruction he has received from his excellency, in relation to the sending and landing of these officers and land forces. For the rest, we refer ourselves to our deputies, councillors in our court of justice here, unto whom we desire your lord-

*A letter to the council from Rio Grande.*

1643. ship own them

Rece 13,

The fore-n exped junctio might ing the tire at

The *Portuguese* fleet have the road. whole the mo ing tha and th scarce b our de an acc ship, letter, to send *Receif*, to the g all the they di admiral could w after the tions, an the flag said *Jer* turn with *teif*, in in person after ma ceedings of the go the preter ing looke ders were oblige al meet wit for the f

The 2 verified b fort of S the gover enemies f forces nea bay of 7 Vol. II

1643. *ship to give full credit, proportionable to their own merits and the trust we have reposed in them. God protect your lordship.*

Signed by

Henry Hamel,  
A. Van Bullestrate,  
P. J. Bas,  
J. Van Walbeck,  
G. de Wit,  
J. Albrecht,  
Henry de Moucheron,  
J. Van Raesvelt,  
and  
J. Lichthart.

Receif, Aug.  
13, 1645.

This letter was pitched upon by the before-mentioned great council, as the best expedient at this juncture, till by the conjunction of the *Deventer* and *Elias*, we might be put in a probability of dislodging them by force, if they refused to retire at the council's request.

The Portuguese fleet leave the road.

The 14<sup>th</sup> by break of day we saw the whole Portuguese fleet under sail, and for the most part out of sight; and considering that the boats, which carried both ours and the two Portuguese deputies, would scarce be able to overtake them, and that our deputies in their return were to give an account to our admiral on board his ship, whether, pursuant to the council's letter, the Portuguese admiral had consented to send *Jeronymo Sarrao de Paiva* to the *Receif*, in order to open his instructions to the great council, which they had now all the reason to believe he would not, they dispatched immediate orders to our admiral *Lichtbart*, to make all the sail he could with the ships under his command after the Portuguese, to observe their motions, and to endeavour to come up with the flag ship, on board of which was the said *Jeronymo Sarrao*, to desire him to return with his ships to the road of the *Receif*, in order to confer with the council in person, concerning his instructions. But after mature deliberation, the whole proceedings of the Portuguese, and the letters of the governor of the *Babia* concerning the pretended reduction of the rebels, being looked upon as meer amusements, orders were sent to our admiral *Lichtbart*, to oblige all the Portuguese ships he could meet with to strike, and to treat them for the future like enemies.

A letter to the council from Rio Grande.

The 28<sup>th</sup> of August the council was advertised by letters dated the 20<sup>th</sup>, at the fort of *St. Magaret* in *Rio Grande*, from the governor of *de Linge*, that twelve of the enemies ships, after having landed some forces near *Tamandare*, were come into the bay of *Traikona*; and that according to

the deposition of a certain Portuguese prisoner from on board the said fleet, they intended to land likewise some men thereabouts, provided they might be joined by the rebels from the *Matta*; but if they failed to come, they would return to the *Babia*. Whereupon orders were sent to *Mr. de Linge*, to bring what forces he was able together, either of soldiers, *Tapoyers*, or *Brasilians*, to prevent their landing, and their conjunction with the rebels in that captainship.

The next thing under debate was, whether it were not convenient to send some ships under the command of admiral *Lichtbart* that way, to attack the Portuguese, after various consultations, it was agreed to stay till all the ships might be got ready for that service, to supply the want of seamen by good able labourers from the *Receif*, and so to render ourselves as formidable at sea as possible could be.

In the mean while the said admiral *Lichtbart* set sail the 1<sup>st</sup> of September with four ships and a yacht only, he himself being in the *Ulrecht*, but was forced by stress of weather (in which the *Zelandia* lost a mast) and for fear of the rocks, to come to an anchor not far from the Portuguese, who endeavoured to gain the wind of him. *Mr. de Wit* and *Moucheron* returned also with their boat, having not been able, by reason of the violent winds to overtake the Portuguese, but had put their deputies on board a small vessel to sail after their fleet.

The same day the council received letters from *Mr. Hoogstrate*, *Ley*, and *Heck*, from the cape of *St. Austin*, that the enemies had posted themselves in the sugar-mills *Salgado*, *Surbague*, and other places thereabouts; and because the Portuguese fleet, which had been seen off of the bay of *Traikona*, appeared again in sight of the *Receif* the same evening, it was thought expedient to order admiral *Lichtbart* immediately to go on board the *Ulrecht*, and with that and the ship *Ter Veere* and two smaller vessels, to keep a watchful eye over the Portuguese: Care was also taken to get the ship the *Overysfel* ready against next day, not questioning that when joined by this and the *Zoutlandia* and *Golden Doe*, which were sent abroad for intelligence, they should be able to cope with the Portuguese, or at least to force them out of the road. The next morning early the Portuguese fleet might be plainly discovered from the *Receif*, but our admiral was not able to stir by reason of the contrary winds; nevertheless the *Zoutlandia* and the *Ter Veere*, which came from the south a cruising, made all the sail they could to

The Dutch admiral sets sail from the Receif.

1643.



1643. escape the *Portuguese*, which they did, being much the nimbler sailors, and joined our fleet.

The 4<sup>th</sup> of September major Bayert and Mr. Volbergen, complained to the council, that Mr. Vierbergen count Maurice's steward, had made it his business to give it out, that they being impowered to cut down certain trees, and some part of the flabbling and gardens, for the better fortifying of the fort *Ernestus*, had transgressed their commission, in cutting down many of the great trees, with an intention, as he said, to ruin the whole plantation; whereas they declared, that they had been very careful in preserving as much as possible could be, all the largest cocoa-trees that stood not in their way; that by these rumours the rage of the populace had been raised to that pitch that they had much ado to appease them, they being for the cutting down not only of all the trees, but also for the pulling down of the whole palace of count Maurice; all which they desired to be registered in the publick records, to serve them for a legal defence in due time and place.

In the mean time our admiral *Lichtbart* being gone out in pursuit of the *Portuguese* fleet, met with them in the bay of *Tamandare*, consisting of seven ships, three smaller vessels, and four barks, the rest being sent laden with sugar to *Portugal*. He was not as yet joined by all the ships from the *Receif*; but being resolved not to let slip this opportunity of attacking the enemy, sent the 7<sup>th</sup> of September advice to the great council, that being come in sight of the enemies fleet near the bay of *Tamandare*, consisting in all of eleven vessels, he was resolved to attack them there, desiring them to send as many ships as possible they could immediately. Hereupon it was resolved to join the two ships the *Deventer* and *Elias*, with the *Unicorn* and *Leyden*, then lying ready in the road and bound for *Holland*, and such tenders as were at hand, and to send them forthwith to the admiral *Lichtbart*. Pursuant to these resolutions, the whole next following night was spent in manning the said ships, but were the next morning detained for some time by the contrary winds.

The same day orders were given to all the soldiers and inhabitants of the isle called *Antonio Vaez*, to provide themselves with baskets filled with earth; and palliades were planted from the point of the *Receif* next to the river, to the utmost point near the sea-side, and five great guns were planted upon a certain wreck, from whence they could command the sea-shore

as far as to the fort of five bastions.

The 8<sup>th</sup> of September, the *Dutch* admiral having ordered the red flag to be put up, boarded the *Portuguese* admiral carrying sixty guns and three hundred men: He behaved himself very valiantly, having posted himself at the entrance of his cabin with a flaming sword in his hand, wherewith he killed three or four, but having received several wounds, was at last forced to yield. The rest of the ships following the example of their admiral, had likewise boarded the *Portuguese* ships; but these seeing the flag taken down from the admiral (a dismal signal of her misfortune) they lost all hopes, and threw themselves headlong into the sea, to escape the fury of the fire and sword; whither being pursued by the *Dutch* in their boats, many perished before they could reach the shore. Above seven hundred *Portuguese* were killed in this action, besides a great number of prisoners, among whom was the admiral himself: Three ships were taken and sent to the *Receif*, the rest were set on fire, being not in a condition to be carried off, because they had cut their cables and were run ashore, where the *Portuguese* had planted some cannon upon batteries, which so annoyed our people, that fearing they might run aground within the reach of the enemies cannon, they set fire to them, and with much ado got their ships clear from among the shelves. After this engagement I returned to the *Receif* to take care of my affairs there, and the admiral sent an express in a fisher-boat, with the following letter to the council of the *Dutch Brasil*.

*A letter from the Dutch admiral to the council.*

NO sooner were the ships *Leyden*, the *yacht* and the *Doe*, arrived last night, near the point of *Tamandare*, but pursuant to the result of the council of war, it was resolved to enter the next morning within the bar, which was performed in the following order: First the ship *Utrecht* admiral, second the *Ter Veere*, third the *Zelandia*, fourth the *Overyssel*, fifth the *Zoutlandia*, followed by the *Doe* and *Leyden*, and the *yacht*, the *Unicorn*, the tenders being ordered to be at hand as occasion should require. Being come within the bar, we found the enemy seven sail strong, besides three small vessels and four barks; and that they had planted several pieces of cannon upon two batteries on the sea shore. We received a very warm salute both from their ships and batteries, and several volleys of small shot; notwithstanding which, the ship the *Utrecht* courageously laid the *Portuguese* admiral on board

1643.

The Dutch  
fight and  
worst the  
*Portuguese*  
fleet.

1643.

board  
the  
the  
well,  
guick  
the  
the P  
at p  
ed, a  
ships  
in the  
Leyd  
ing,  
And  
more  
streng  
will c  
Receiv  
more c  
recomm  
In buy

The  
in his  
gave th  
ment to  
Moreno

The Po

I T be  
I Rece  
that it  
Dutch  
did befo  
men: en  
surpriz  
cool bloo  
quaint y  
said eng  
white fl  
bay, at  
a bark  
day w  
be had  
Neither  
their kil  
ing not  
during  
fix that  
ing rece  
wounded  
ter with  
there a  
ship, bu

1643. board, after a short but sharp dispute took the ship and the admiral's flag: To be short, the rest of our ships behaved themselves so well, that soon after they forced the Portuguese to quit their ships; God be praised for this victory. Jeronymo Sarrao de Paiva the Portuguese admiral is our prisoner, and at present in my ship, being sorely wounded, whom I intend to deliver up to your lordships so soon as I shall come to the Recife; in the mean while, I intend to send back the Leyden and the Unicorn to morrow morning, according to your lordships directions. And so far as much as there is likely to be no more action hereabouts, the enemy having strengthened themselves near the sea-shore, I will with the first opportunity return to the Recife, where I hope to give in person a more ample account of the whole action; I recommend your lordships to God's protection. In haste,

From the ship the Utrecht, within  
the bay of Tamandare, September  
9, 1645.

Your lordships servant,

Cornelius Lichtbart.

The Portuguese admiral Sarrao de Paiva in his letter dated the 18<sup>th</sup> of September, gave the following account of his engagement to the two colonels Martin Soares Moreno and Andrew Vidal Negreiros.

The Portuguese admiral's letter to Andrew Vidal.

IT being the general discourse here in the Recife, which is likewise come to my ears, that it is reported by you there, how the Dutch admiral John Cornelius Lichtbart, did before the beginning of the last engagement enter the bay with a white flag, thus surprizing our people, killed many of them in cool blood. I thought myself obliged to acquaint you, that indeed two days before the said engagement, a yacht and a bark with white flags, appeared at the entrance of the bay, at which one of our small vessels and a bark shot three cannon shot. But that day when the admiral entered the said bay, he had put up both the Dutch and red flags. Neither is it true what had been said of their killing our men in cool blood, there being not one man slain aboard my ship, but during the heat of the engagement, five or six that had hid themselves below deck having received quarter, and a soldier sorely wounded ordered immediately to be looked after with all care imaginable. Neither was there a stroke given after the yielding of the ship, but every body treated and provided for

according to his quality and present necessity. The reason why so few had quarter given them was, because most leapt over-board, the sea men first, and then the soldiers, I being not able with sword in hand to keep them from chusing rather to perish in the sea than to stand in out aboard the ship. Two or three persons of note seeing me sorely wounded, freely gave me quarter, without knowing either my person, or being asked it by me, a convincing argument that they would not have refused the same to all the rest that would have begged quarter. I must confess myself so much obliged to the humanity and generosity of the admiral, that it is not to be express in writing. Besides that it is unquestionable that we first shot at them, both from our ships and batteries near the sea-shore. I have given you a true account of the whole matter, of which as I have been an eye witness myself, so I don't question you will give an entire credit to what I have written to you on this account. God protect you for many years.

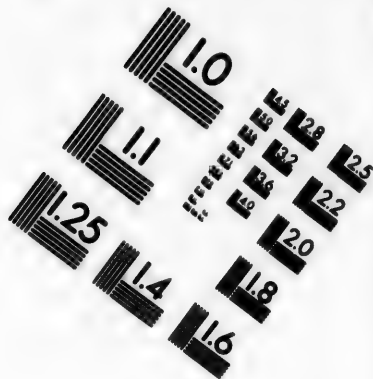
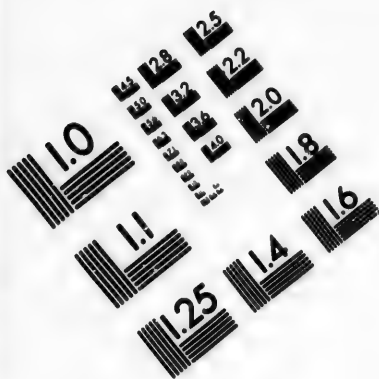
Recife, Sept. Jeronymo Sarrao da Paiva,  
18, 1645.

Andrew Vidal sent a letter in answer to this by one of our drummers (sent to the enemy upon some errand) dated the 20<sup>th</sup> of September as follows:

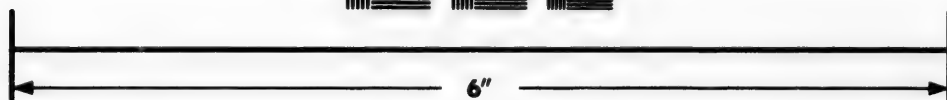
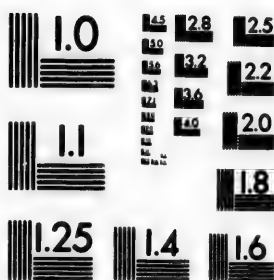
His answer to the admiral's letter.

WE are sufficiently satisfied by your lordships letter, that instead of being entertained according to your merits, you receive the same ill treatment with the rest of our countrymen, though considering that your case is different from the rest, you ought to have been treated in another manner, your lordship being come without the least intention of waging war against them (which they ought to have made due reflection upon) but only as you were going to convey some ships homeward, did at their own request, land our forces in that captainship, considering the ill usage and tyrannies our subjects have received at their hands, we are afraid we cannot promise your lordship a much better entertainment, of all which murders committed in cool blood, we have taken so circumstantial an account, that we are sure we shall be able to justify our cause and ourselves, both to the states of the United Netherlands and the rest of our allies; for we have fished up many of our Portuguese with bullets and stones tied to their legs and necks, some had the good fortune to be saved as they were swimming ashore, but many were burnt alive in the wrecks of the ships, the intention of these gentlemen being without question





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0 11.2 12.5 14.0 16.0 18.0 20.0 22.5 25.0 28.0 31.5 36.0 40.0 45.0 50.0 56.0 63.0 71.0 80.0 90.0 100.0

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

1645. question, by making so general a slaughter among their fellow christians, to cut off from us all hopes of returning home: of all which they will be obliged to give one day a severe account, both to God almighty and those who shall require satisfaction for it at their hands, it being our constant opinion, that they never will be able to justify their cruelties, and the mischief done to our people, either before God or the king our master. We hope your lordship will rest satisfied in this present condition, and put your trust in God and our king, who are still alive to demand a severe satisfaction from them. God protect your lordship.

From our quarters at St. John in the Vergea, Sept. 29, 1645.

signed  
Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

A certain lieutenant belonging to the enemy, called *Francisco Guemes*, came along with the same drummer, with a letter from the said *Andrew Vidal* directed to the great council, the contents of which were as follows.

Andrew Vidal de Negreiros's letter to the great council.

I Received your lordships letter at Iguaracu, wherein you seem to be extremely disgusted at the killing of some *Brasilians*, with their wives, by our soldiers; under pretence that the absolute command over them belongs only to you, which I cannot but be much surprized at, when I consider that your lordships in your proclamation, wherein you command not to give quarter to any Portuguese inhabitants (though natural subjects of the king my master) you alledge among other reasons, because they had received their birth and education in this captainship (which however was first conquered by the Portuguese kings at the expence of many of their subjects) whereas now you would impose this hardship upon the same inhabitants, to give quarter to those *Brasilians*, who not long ago have been maintained and instructed in the catholic faith, as being their vassals, and consequently not yours, but the king my master's subjects. Your lordships ought to remember, that you are not in possession of this country by right of succession, or any other legal pretension, but solely by force of arms. We desire your lordships to take effectual measures concerning the methods to be observed in the carrying on of this war, which we hope will be managed so by your prudence, as that quarter may be allowed to the inhabitants of our nation; if not, I shall be obliged to act as I find it most consistent with my honour, to take satisfaction for these injuries. We

1645. desire also to put a stop to the murdering of the women, children, and ancient people, in cool blood, as has been done lately at *Tihicupapo*, *Rio Grande* and *Parayba*. God protect your lordships.

From our quarters at St. John, September 29, 1645.

signed,  
Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

The great council returned with the consent of the members of the court of justice, and colonel *Garfinan*, an immediate answer to the said letter, wherewith they sent the said lieutenant in company of the drummer, back the same evening.

But we must look back to their proceedings: After *Andrew Vidal de Negreiros* and *Martin Soares Moreno* had landed their men, to the number of eighteen hundred or two thousand, the 28<sup>th</sup> of July 1645, with good store of arms and ammunition, near *Tamandare*, betwixt *Olina* and *Formosa*, they were soon after joined, not only by four companies which had taken their way by land from the *Babia*, but also by the troops under the command of *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias*, who had hitherto kept *Porto Calvo* blocked up by their forces. From thence they directed their march to the city of *Serinbaim*, and laid siege to the fort in which there was only a garrison of eighty Dutch soldiers and sixty *Brasilians*, commanded by *Samuel Lambert* and *Cosmo de Moucheron*. Two days after their arrival near *Serinbaim*, the enemy posted themselves in the *d'Ingenio* of *Daniel Hobn*; about which time *Henry Dias* was seen in *Serinbaim*, notwithstanding the Portuguese commanders *Andrew Vidal* and *Moreno* disowned to have any correspondence with them at that time: The said commanders had also sent the captain major *Paulo de Kunka* before to summon the said fort, which he did accordingly by his letter dated the 2<sup>d</sup> of August at the sugar-mill of *James Peres*, and directed to *Samuel Lambert*.

The summons sent to the fort of *Serinbaim*.

I Am come to this sugar-mill by special orders from *Martin Soares Moreno* and *Andrew Vidal de Negreiros* our governors, they being very busy at present in landing their men; they have sent me before to prevent all mischief that otherwise might happen betwixt you and us, and if in the mean while you will join your forces with ours, or retire with them to some other place, you may safely do it, I being ready to furnish you with passes for that purpose, the before-mentioned governors being

An account of their proceedings since their landing.



1645. being come with an intention to put a stop to the present insurrection. God protect you.

From the sugar-mill in St. Antonio, August 2, 1645.

Paulo de Kunha.

Two days after the before-mentioned commanders in chief sent another letter to Samuel Lambert, very little different from this.

*A second summons from the Portuguese commanders.*

WE suppose you not to be acquainted with the intention of our coming, which makes us to be the less surprized at your standing upon your defence. The great council of the Dutch Brasil have sent an embassy to our governor general by sea and land, Antonio Telles da Sylva, to desire his excellency to make use of his authority and forces to appease the insurrection in this captainship, which request being readily granted, in order to be serviceable to the council, and to free the Portuguese from the outrages they suffered in their houses and families, we were sent to land our forces near these sugar-mills of Rio Formosa; which having been done accordingly, and ready to march further into the country, we thought fit to acquaint you with our intentions, which in all probability may have reacht your ears, the same having been published in several places by our proclamations, of which we send you one, desiring it may be affixed on the church of Serinham. We desire you therefore to lay by your arms to remove all suspicion; not questioning but that we shall meet with a favourable reception on your side, as we on the other hand shall make it our main endeavours to restore tranquillity among the revolted Portuguese by all gentle means that possibly may be used; assuring you at the same time, that in case you refuse to concur with us in this design, you will cause no small displeasure to the great council of the Dutch Brasil. God protect you.

From the sugar-mill of Formosa, August 4, 1645.

Martin Soares Moreno,  
Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

The next following day Paulo de Kunha came in person before the place with a body of soldiers and boors, provided with arms from on board the fleet, and after having invested the place, cut off the water of the fountains and rivers from the besieged. In the mean while Rowland Carpenter and Daniel Hobn had been sent away with passes by the commanders of the Portuguese forces, who embarked their heavy cannon on board Carpenter's vessel, in order

Vol. II.

to carry it up the river Formosa. Within five days of the arrival of Paulo de Kunha, the whole force of the enemy appeared in sight of Serinham in battle array, and closely blockt up the fort. The Dutch garrison was inconsiderable in proportion of the enemies strength, who had so well guarded all the avenues leading to the place, that they were soon reduced to want all manner of necessaries, especially water. Besides this, many of the circumjacent inhabitants and volunteers went daily over to the enemy, who gave them an account of the condition of the fort; and notwithstanding they had sent several messengers to the Receif, they had heard nothing from the council for two months last past; so that being without all hopes of maintaining their post, they judged it more for the interest of the company to preserve the garrison, which might be serviceable in other places, where there was sufficient want of good soldiers, than rashly to expose themselves to the fury of the enemies sword: Accordingly Samuel Lambert, Cosmo de Moucheron, and La Montagny, who commanded in the fort, upon the second summons made by the enemy, entered the 6<sup>th</sup> of August into a capitulation with the Portuguese, of which Moucheron gave an account in person the 15<sup>th</sup> of August to the council, and delivered it the 20<sup>th</sup> of August to them in writing.

WE the Portuguese commanders make known to every body that we were sent into this country at the request of the great council of the Dutch Brasil, to appease the revolt and troubles arisen among the Portuguese inhabitants. But at our landing here, being informed that notwithstanding this request and our good intention, the Dutch had murdered many Portuguese in cool blood (it being evident that they had cut to pieces several Portuguese, who were inticed into a church for that purpose) and that they had formed a camp to oppose us, which ought to be a caution to us, not to leave any strong holds behind us, whilst we are marching towards the Receif, we have thought it necessary to enter into this capitulation, till such time that we may have the opportunity of concerting new measures with the great council, of which the articles are as follows:

I. The commanders Samuel Lambert and Cosmo de Moucheron shall have leave to march out of the fort and castle, with the garrison, with ensigns displayed, all their arms, matches burning, &c.

Y

II. They

*The fort of Serinham blockt up by, and surrendered to the Portuguese.*

1645. II. They shall be permitted to march along the road with their ensigns, and swords drawn, and shall be safely conducted by one or more captains, who also shall be obliged to provide them carriages and boats, for the transportation of their persons and goods to the *Recife*.

III. The *Portuguese* oblige themselves to restore to *Moucheron* all what has been taken from him, and belonged to him before the siege.

IV. They also oblige themselves to engage the inhabitants of the city as well as those of *Kumara*, to pass by all past injuries either by word or deed; and that such of the *Dutch* as are willing to continue there, shall be maintained in their possessions in the same manner as the *Portuguese* are; and shall enjoy the same privileges, and their own religion, provided they do not preach in publick, and pay due reverence to consecrated places. They shall be at liberty to traffick with the *Portuguese*, and call in their debts as before, neither shall they be obliged to take up arms against the states of the *United Provinces*.

V. The *Dutch* officers shall restore to the *Portuguese* all their *Brasilians*, with their wives and children, as being subjects of king *John IV.* whom God preserve; and what relates to their reception and entertainment, is to be left to the discretion of the chief commanders of the *Portuguese*.

Upon these conditions they shall be obliged to surrender the fort, with every thing thereunto belonging, this afternoon, but are permitted to provide themselves with necessaries for their journey, which they shall have liberty to perform at their own leisure.

signed,  
*Andrew Vidal de Negreiros,*  
*Alvaro Fregejo d'Albuquerque,*  
*Diogo de Silveira,*  
*Joões Laurezo,*  
*Freire Betenkor,*  
*Supplido Alouko de Verkofo,*  
 and  
*Sebastião de Guimares.*

Immediately after the surrender of the fort, *Moucheron* entered into a long discourse with the *Portuguese* commanders, about their proceeding, which he told them were far different from what the governor pretended in his letters, to wit, the appeasing of the revolt of the *Portuguese* inhabitants, according to the request of the great council. They answered him

1645. with tergiversations, telling him that they would be very careful not to act contrary to the peace establish'd betwixt the king his master and the states general. But it was not long before they began to lord it over the country, by taking such as were in the least suspected to them into custody, and taking an account of those of the *Dutch* that had married *Portuguese* women; nay they erected a court of Justice of their own, and forced *Moucheron* to sell his slaves for the fourth part of what they were worth. They had so little regard to the late articles, that they caused thirty *Brasilians*, part of that garrison, to be tied to the *Palisades*, where they were strangled; the *Portuguese* alledged in their behalf, that they had suffered death for certain crimes they had confessed themselves, tho' it is more probable they were made sacrifices to the discontented *Portuguese* inhabitants, that had made heavy complaints at the *Brasilians*. However, about thirty of them were spared, and bestowed upon the officers to carry their baggage, and their wives given to the inhabitants. The *Portuguese* made *Alvaro Fregejo d'Albuquerque* governor of the city and fort, and made one *Francis de la Tour*, a *French* deserter, captain over forty deserters, who had taken service among them.

They also raised three companies out of the *Portuguese* boors, or inhabitants, commanded by *Pedro Fregejo*, *Ignatius Ferrer* and *Immanuel de Mello*, which were put into *Serinbaim* for the defence of that place, where they also caused two *Jesuits* to be baptized, called *Jacquo Franco* and *Juac Navaro*. Most of the *Dutch* who had any possessions or sugar-mills thereabouts had safe-guards allow'd them, so that none, except two, who came to the *Recife*, left that captainship, of which they had sufficient reason to repent afterwards, being very ill treated by the *Portuguese*, as shall be shewn more at large hereafter.

The 15<sup>th</sup> of *August* in the afternoon, the garrison of *Serinbaim*, consisting of thirty two men (the rest having staid behind) arrived in a bark at the *Recife*; and their commander in chief appear'd the same day before the council, where he gave an account of the reasons that moved him to surrender the place, notwithstanding which he was ordered to be examined by a court-marshal, to answer the same: The ensign who had conducted the garrison to the *Recife*, delivered the same day a letter to the said council, from *Martin Soares Moreno*, and *Andrew Vidal*, dated the 8<sup>th</sup> of *August*, intimating that they were come into the *Dutch-Brazil*, by special command from the governor of the *Babia*, and exasperating

that they 1645.  
it contrary  
the king  
al. But it  
to lord it  
ch as were  
to custody,  
the *Daib*  
men; nay  
their own,  
6 slaves for  
ere worth.  
e late arti-  
ilians, part  
the *Palisa-*  
; the *Por-*  
that they  
crimes they  
it is more  
fices to the  
tants, that  
the *Brasili-*  
them were  
officers to  
wives given  
guise made  
governor of  
e Francis de  
captain over  
n service a-

panies out  
inhabitants,  
gnatius Fer-  
which were  
ence of that  
two Jews to  
co and Isaac  
ho had any  
abouts had  
at none, ex-  
elf, left that  
d sufficient  
ing very ill  
all be shewn

ernoon, the  
g. of thirty  
hind) arriv-  
their come  
me day be-  
an account  
which he  
y a court-  
The ensign  
to the Re-  
etter to the  
as Moreno,  
of August,  
into the  
and from  
an exaspera-  
ting

1645. ting the outrages, they said were commit-  
ted by the *Hollanders* against the *Portu-  
guese*. This letter had another enclosed  
from the said governor, dated the 30<sup>th</sup> of  
July, with a proclamation, to be publish'd  
in the captainship of *Pernambuco*, where-  
by all the inhabitants were summon'd to  
appear peremptorily before them, within  
the space of eight days, to receive their  
directions for restoring tranquility among  
them. The letter from *Martin Soares Mo-  
reno* and *Andrew Vidal* was as follows.

*A Letter from the Portuguese Commanders  
to the council.*

WHEN your lordships found your selves  
entangled by a dangerous conspiracy  
among the Portuguese inhabitants of this cap-  
tainship, you made your applications to *Anto-  
nio Telles da Sylva*, governor general of  
*Brasil*, desiring him to make use of the most  
effectual means he could to appease this rebel-  
lion. About the same time the inhabitants of  
this country by one unanimous voice implored  
his aid and protection against those many of-  
fences, plunderings, murders and ravishments  
of women they groaned under; being resolved  
with joint consent to arm themselves with  
sticks (the use of arms being taken away from  
them by their tyrannical governors) against  
those oppressions, and to defend their honour  
to the last gasp; not questioning but that *God  
Almighty* would take vengeance for the blood  
of so many innocent people. They represented  
to his excellency, that he was obliged by his  
station to assist them in this extremity, as they  
were his countrymen; but, if that should not  
be prevailing enough, reasons of state would  
induce him, not to force them to despair by de-  
nying them his aid; which if he did, it should  
be at the peril of his head, and that he must  
give a severe account of it before *God Almighty*,  
and others, if they should be constrained to  
beg that from a foreign power, which they  
could not obtain from their countrymen. The  
governor having taken all these pressing rea-  
sons into mature consideration, and in respect  
both of your lordships request, and the heavy  
complaints of the Portuguese, made it his chief  
care to find out the most effectual means (which  
your lordships seem'd to leave to his discretion)  
to appease this revolt. Being sensible that the  
revolt of the Portuguese inhabitants had taken  
deep root among them, and was likely to prove  
more universal against your government, he  
judged it most expedient, to send thither certain  
persons with such forces as he thought might  
either by their prudence, and, if that fail'd,  
by force of arms, restore the so much desired  
tranquility. It is upon this account, my lords,  
we are come to this place, in order to employ  
all our force and assistance, according to your

request, pursuant to the peace establish'd be-  
twixt these two nations, in regard of which  
we value not the expences we have been put  
to upon this occasion. But we scarce had set  
foot ashore, when our ears and hearts were  
struck with the doleful outcries of forty inno-  
cent catholic Portuguese, murdered in the  
church of *Rio Formoso*, whither they were  
enticed for that purpose, by those that were in  
your service, without the least respect of age  
or sex, the very babes being by the natives bar-  
barously murdered, as they were lying on their  
mothers breasts. Neither have the sighs and  
groans of many noble maids escap'd our ears, that  
were ravish'd in the *Vergea* and *St. Lawrence*,  
by the *Brasilians*, not to mention here what  
barbarities have been committed in *Pojuka*,  
where is the sight of many a hermit and inno-  
cent babe who were slaughter'd in a cave.  
Neither have they abstained from holy and  
consecrated places; they have cut to pieces the  
images of the saints, and strip'd the queen of  
heaven, the virgin *Mary*, our blessed lady, of  
all her apparel; things so enormous, and ne-  
ver heard of before, enough to create horror  
and astonishment in a generous heart. And  
notwithstanding your lordships had desired the  
governor general to interpose his authority, you  
did form a camp, which continues in the field  
to this day; and we being obliged by our orders  
to come to you upon the *Reccif*, we judg'd it  
not convenient to leave any armed power be-  
hind us, which in time might prove the occa-  
sion of great inconveniences to us; we shall  
endeavour to shew all due respect and kindness  
to your subjects, and carry the garrison of *Se-  
rinheim* along with us, 'till matters may be  
concerted betwixt your lordship and us, for the  
service of god and the state. In the mean  
while, we most earnestly desire a stop may be  
put to the outrages committed by your soldiers  
hitherto, to avoid all occasion of a rupture on  
your side; we protest on the other hand, in the  
name of *God* and *John IV.* the king our  
master, whom *God* preserve, as also in the  
name of the states general, whose power *God*  
encrease, that we desire nothing so much, as  
the continuation of the late establish'd peace,  
which shall be the guide of all our actions;  
of which we have brought along with us an  
authentick copy, to serve us as a sufficient jus-  
tification by all the princes of Europe. And that  
your lordships may be satisfied in the reality of  
it, we have sent you enclosed a copy of the pro-  
clamation publish'd by us, at our landing in  
in this captainship.

God preserve your lordships.

*Serinheim,* *Martin Soares Moreno,*  
Aug. 8, 1645. *Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.*

The before-mentioned proclamation runs  
thus:

Their

1645.

## Their PROCLAMATION.

WE the commanders in chief of the Portuguese forces, Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Negreiros, make known to all persons and inhabitants of the captainship of Pernambuko; that the great council of the Dutch-Brazil, having by a letter sent to the governor and captain general of Brazil, given advice of the revolt arisen among the Portuguese of this place; desiring to endeavour the appeasing of this rebellion by his assistance; for which purpose the said governor now having sent us with a sufficient force into this captainship, we command all the Portuguese, of what condition and quality soever, to appear peremptorily within eight days after the publication of these presents before us, in order to restore tranquility among them, pursuant to the request of the lords of the council of the Dutch-Brazil. We also hereby intreat the said lords, in the most friendly manner that can be, pursuant to the tenour of the strict alliance there is betwixt both these nations, to stop the further persecution of the Portuguese, or any other warlike executions; and that if any of their soldiers presume to act contrary to it, they may, upon complaint made thereof to them, be severely punished.

I Alexes Antunes have penned this proclamation, and I Franco Bravo Desembarquador have approv'd it.

Martin Soares Moreno,  
Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

The great council resolved to give a short answer to the said letter, and to refute the proclamation by another; and considering, that the origin and cause of all those troubles and misdemeanours were laid at the door of the council, they ordered the two councillors of the court of justice De Wilt and Moucheron, in conjunction with Mr. Walbeek assessor in the same court, to answer the same, and thereby to represent to the council of nineteen in Holland, that they were occasioned by the rebels and their adherents.

In the month of August the troops lately come from the *Babia* marched from *Serimbaim* to *Pojuka*, and so to the *Cape of St. Austin*, where being join'd by the forces under the command of *Kamaron* and *Dias*, and the inhabitants, they resolved (after our men had quitted *Pojuka* and the city *St. Antonio de Cabo*) to attack the fort *Vander Dussen* on the *Cape of St. Austin* from the land side; pursuant to which resolution they posted their troops all along both sides the river.

The Portuguese besiege the Cape of St. Austin.

2

The council in the mean while being forewarned of the enemies design, had ordered the 2<sup>d</sup> of August, Mr. *Adrian Bullstrate*, one of their own members, and admiral *Lichtbart*, to go thither with all speed, and to take effectual care that nothing might be wanting for the defence of the place. They were for that end to take a full view of the fort *Vander Dussen* and all its outworks, and to consider whether the redoubt upon the hill call'd *Nazareth*, and the battery at the entrance of the harbour might be repaired for the better defence of the fort. Accordingly Mr. *Bullstrate* and admiral *Lichtbart* left the *Receif* the 5<sup>th</sup> of August, and arrived the same evening in the fort *Vander Dussen*, where having executed their commission, Mr. *Bullstrate* returned the 9<sup>th</sup> of August to the *Receif*, where he gave the following account to the council.

That he left the *Receif* the 5<sup>th</sup> of August, in the morning about nine a clock, and came the same evening to the fort *Vander Dussen* on the *Cape of St. Austin*.

That the 6<sup>th</sup> of August, after forenoon sermon was ended he rid with the admiral, and some other officers, to the hill of the *Cape of St. Austin*; where having taken a view of the harbour, he found the stone-redoubt in a condition to be repaired, without any great charge, the cannon upon the batteries nail'd up, but the works towards the sea-side in pretty good order.

That he had ordered a draught to be made, to surround the redoubt with pallisadoes, to raise a battery within it, to build a guard-house, and to widen the ditches: He also had ordered a stone breast-work, (for want of wood) to be made on the back-side of the battery, with a row of Pallisadoes, and a guard-house; and that with the first fair weather, they should set on fire all the bushes and brambles on the said hill, and clear the ground round about the church *Nazareth*.

Upon view of the fort *Vander Dussen*, he had commanded the major *Hoogstrate* with all possible speed to put it in a good posture of defence, the admiral having already taken care to have it surrounded with pallisadoes. That on the 7<sup>th</sup> of August, having paid off the garrison, and those belonging to the artillery, he passed through very difficult ways to *St. Antonio*, where he likewise paid off the soldiery, visited the retrenchment, and put every thing in the best order he could.

That he had bargained with certain persons to repair the said redoubt on the hill call'd *Nazareth*, and the stone breast-work, the building of two guardhouses, and surrounding both the works with pallisadoes

Mr. Bullstrate and admiral Lichtbart sent to the Cape of St. Austin.

An account of their transactions.

1643.

1643.

liladoes, according to his draught, for nine hundred guilders, the whole to be compleated within three weeks time. Here it was he had the first notice of the landing of some forces from the *Babia*, near *Rio Formosa*, by the same fleet which the week before was seen off of the *Receif*: But not being able to get any sure intelligence, he had sent a messenger to lieutenant *Montangie*, then commander in *Serinbaim*, to give him a true account of the matter, and in what condition he and his garrison were at that time; encouraging him by fair promises, all communication by land being already cut off betwixt them. Here he also listed thirty eight volunteers that offered their service.

That the 8<sup>th</sup> of *August* he left the said place, and notwithstanding the badness of the weather, rid cross the hills of *Hegendos* to the sea-shore, where meeting with the admiral, they went together up the river *Sangado* with the tide, as far as *Calandaria*, where they staid for some time, and received the news, that in the last encounter betwixt colonel *Haus* and the rebels near that hill, above two hundred of the last, among whom were some officers, were slain, and about forty or fifty on our side. One *Melchior Alvares* came on purpose to tell them, that about three hundred of the revolted inhabitants were inclined to accept of a pardon, which he referred to the council.

That being ready to take horse in order to his return to the *Receif*, a certain soldier of our troops, that had been left behind, complained that he had been stripp'd stark naked by the servants of the ferryman of the river *Sangado*, who had wounded and beat him miserably. *Melchior Alvares* was ordered to take care of his wounds, and captain *Pistor* to go with twenty of his men in quest of these villains; who, coming to the ferry, beset the house, took the ferryman and his three sons prisoners, but the *Mulat*, who had committed the fact, escaped their hands.

That he pursued his journey on horseback towards the *Receif*, notwithstanding the violent rains, and not without great danger pass'd the river the same night near the fort *Amilia*.

That on the 9<sup>th</sup> of *August*, he was advertised by some negroes belonging to *Mojos Navarre*, whom he had sent with letters to *d'Ingenio Surjacque*, that an ambush had been laid for them near *Candelaria*, but the enemy durst not attack them, their negroes being all such as were taken prisoners, and afterwards made their escape to us.

Vol. II.

Major *Hoogstrate* sent advice by his letters on the 13<sup>th</sup> of *August*, to the council, that the garrison and volunteers of *St. Antonio* being safely arrived on the *Cape of St. Austin*, they were now about two hundred and eighty strong, viz. two hundred and seventeen soldiers and gunners, and sixty three volunteers. That immediately after our garrison had left *St. Antonio*, *Kamaron* and *Henry Dias* had posted themselves with their troops in the sugar-mill *Algodais*, near that place, where they expected to be join'd by *Martin Soares* and *Andrew Vidal's* forces, safely arrived from the *Babia*. That he expected every day to be besieged, and fear'd nothing so much as want of fresh water, the spring being cut off by the enemy.

Hereupon immediate orders were given by the council to send thither thirty barrels of water, some ammunition and provision, and what else should be requisite for a vigorous defence of the place, which was sufficiently provided before with soldiers. The next following day they received intelligence from Major *Hoogstrate*, *Mr. Ley*, and *Mr. Heck*, that the enemies troops had taken post in the sugar-mill *Salgado Zuvisique* and other circumjacent places. The council rely'd much upon the bravery and fidelity of the offices within the fort, from whom they promised themselves a very vigorous defence, they being all persons who had advanced themselves in their services, and were in expectation of better preferments, viz. Major *Hoogstrate*, *Caspar Vander Ley*, formerly a captain of horse, *John Hick*, and *Albert Gerritsen Wedda*, an old captain belonging to the company: But their unfaithfulness and covetous temper overbalanced all these considerations; for the said major *Hoogstrate*, commander in chief, with the consent of *Caspar Vander Ley*, and *Albert Gerritsen Wedda*, treacherously and villainously sold and surrendered the said fort to the *Portuguese* the 23<sup>d</sup> of *August* for the sum of eighteen thousand guilders, besides some other rewards promised them upon that account. They went over with the whole garrison to the enemy, who made *Hoogstrate* colonel of a *Dutch* regiment, raised out of these and other soldiers of several nations, that had deserted our service. Thus this strong hold was betray'd to the *Portuguese*, by a person who owed his whole fortune to our company.

*Martin Soares Moreno* gave the following account of the surrender of this fort to the governor *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, in his letter dated from the hill of *Nazareth*, Aug. 26, 1645.

Z

A letter

1645.

Advice from the Cape of St. Austin.



1645.

A letter to the governor of the Bahia, concerning the taking of the Cape of Puntael.

Sunday the 23<sup>d</sup> of this month, God Almighty, through his mercy, has put us into the possession of the fort of the cape of Puntael, which was besieged by Andrew Vidal de Negreiros: The next day we were rejoiced with the money sent to us by your lordship, and the wine presented to me in particular, part of which I have bestowed upon entertaining some of our friends, who are merry with me at this time.

We have made an excellent bargain, for besides the importance of the place, and its artillery, we have got the very flower of their soldiers; besides that, this will be like a signal to the rest to follow their footsteps.

John Fernand Vieira has raised on saturday last the sum of four thousand ducats for our use, though not without force, but it was very welcome to us at this time, when we were upon striking up the bargain for the better fortifying of this place, the harbour of which is not inferior to that of the Recife: But I will not trouble your lordship any longer with this point.

Not long after the surrender of the fort, a bark appeared in sight, sent to us by relief from the Recife. We sent captain [name] with a well arm'd bark out again, who took her with thirty five men, an good store of gunpowder and bullets, all which will prove very serviceable to us.

I kindly desire your lordship, that in case you send a messenger with this news to his majesty, captain Damian de Lankois may be employed upon that errand, it being very probable, that the king, besides a good present, will reward him with some honourable employment.

Last night we received advice, that the fleet under Jeronymo de Paiva was entered the bay of Tamandare; I am sorely afraid they will be attack'd by the ships sent thither from the Recife, notwithstanding we have desired him several times to come into our road.

Kapivara is gone from that place by land to the Bahia, perhaps he has given him notice that we are masters of the cape; if he thinks fit to bring his fleet to this place, he is safe, if not, it lies at his door. 'Tis discouraged here, that the ship the Bishop is missing, perhaps he has a fancy to convoy Salvador Korta some part of the way.

I cannot forbear to let your lordship know how much you stand indebted to major Dieterick Hoogstrate, and the rest of the commanders of the fort. We have promised to the first a commandery of Christ. I beg of your lordship to make my promise good to him in his majesty's name, as soon as possible may be, he being a person who will be ready to do

us all the further service he can. We have for the present engaged him with some presents of less moment, of which we shall give an account to you hereafter. Captain Vander Ley has likewise deserved well of us, and so have all the rest that had married Portuguese women: It is reported here that he is a person of note in his country: We have likewise promised to him a commandery of Christ, and a yearly pension for one of his sons: We hope your lordship will not refuse to make good our promise, because his sons are born of a Portuguese woman: The name of the eldest being John, and the youngest Caspar Vander Ley. The rest are at present at their habitations, as soon as they return we must engage them with some promises, of which we will give an account to your lordship. They are all of consequence to us, having married Portuguese women. I hope your lordship will be well satisfied with this piece of service, for John Fernand Vieira sometimes brings us more money in an hour, than the conquest of the cape costs us. He is at present in the Vargea among the Barbarians, and we in the fort on the cape, till we have got every thing in readiness. Kapivara is about three days ago gone by land, possibly he may be with you before the bark which carries this letter; I wish it may arrive in safety, and to your lordship a long life for the defence of this state. Signed

Martin Soares Moreno.

Martin Soares Moreno, and Andrew Vidal de Negreiros, had in the mean while sent seven or eight letters from the Cape of St. Austlin, dated the 23<sup>d</sup>, 30<sup>th</sup>, and 31<sup>st</sup> of August, and the 2<sup>d</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> of September, in which they advertised the admiral Paiva, that they were in possession of that cape, desiring him by all means to come with his fleet into that harbour. The first of the two last letters was thus written.

Letter from the Portuguese commanders to admiral Paiva.

MY LORD,  
WE are got now into the possession of the harbour of Nazareth, and that, as the saying is, without casting an anchor; which is the reason we intreat you likewise to come with your fleet thither, where you may careen your ships, and provide yourselves with fresh provisions, men, ammunition, and all other necessities, till such time we shall mutually agree in what is further to be undertaken for the service of God and his majesty. The enemy has hitherto but one ship of strength at sea, the rest being of no consequence; neither are they for engaging with you at this time, but endeavour to cut off your communication with the sea coast. My lord, you have

1645.

1645.



We have 1645.

the presents will give an  
n Vander  
us, and so  
ed Portu-  
that be is  
We have  
mandery of  
one of his  
not refuse  
his sons are  
the name of  
angelst Cas-  
return we  
promise, of  
our lordship.  
us, having  
hope your  
b this piece  
icira some-  
bour, than  
He is at  
Barbarians,  
ill we have  
ara is about  
libly be may  
carries this  
sely, and to  
eference of this

es Moreno.

Andrew Vi-  
mean while  
in the cap-  
h, and 31<sup>st</sup>  
of Septem-  
the admiral  
tion of that  
to come  
The first  
written.

manders to

ession of the  
that, as the  
bor; which  
ife to come  
may careen  
with fresh  
d all other  
ll mutually  
undertaken  
gistry. The  
of strength  
uence; nei-  
you at this  
ur commu-  
lord, you  
have

1645. have given so many proofs of your courage before this time, that this retreat will not abate any thing from the fame of your victories: On the other hand, you have to consider, that you are answerable for so many thousand lives of those that are in your fleet; wherefore we desire you once more to come hither with the fleet, and such officers as are under your command, where you will meet with a very kind and comfortable reception. But being sensible that it would be a gross error in us, to urge a matter so evident in itself, any further, to so great a commander as you, we live in hopes of your coming, where we intend, in the bay of Nazareth, to receive the blessed sacrament, which name we have given to the fort, having among other things found a mass book here, which is of no small service to us.

God preserve your lordship.

Puntael, the 2<sup>d</sup> of Martin Soares Moreno, and  
Sept. 1645. Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

The contents of the second letter to the same Admiral, are as follows:

YOUR lordship being already acquainted with our being masters of the Puntael (cape) we hope you will take the first opportunity of coming to us; the enemies having two squadrons of ships at sea, with one fire-ship, to force you from this coast, which has been discovered to us by a letter writ at the Recceif, and directed to the governor, and taken by us in a bark design'd for the relief of that place, of which we thought fit to give you immediate notice, that you might take your measures according to your wonted prudence. These Dutch gentlemen have, by their treacherous dealings, oblig'd us to have recourse to open force, and we desire your lordship to repay them in their own coin, with fire and sword, as they do to us. If you design to come hither, it must be done speedily, all delay being dangerous at this time. We have a true copy of this letter in our journal to serve for our justification hereafter.

God preserve your lordship.

Dated in the Puntael of the blessed sacrament, September the 6<sup>th</sup>, 1645.

Martin Soares Moreno, and  
Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

An account of the surrender of the cape of St. Austin, and of the further transactions betwixt us and the Portuguese, was sent in a letter by Caspar da Costa d'Abreu, from the said cape to his friend Domingos da Rocha, an inhabitant of the Bahia, which runs thus:

I Wish this letter may find you in good health, as I who am your faithful comrade desire; I am in a tolerable good condi-

tion in the Puntael of Nazareth, which after a siege of twenty days was surrendered to us at an easy rate, because those who commanded within the fort had Portuguese wives, and their estates thereabouts. The captain of horse was the most forward of all in surrendering the place; they have obtained what conditions they demanded, and a gratuity of four thousand ducats besides. We found in the fort three hundred Dutch, of their best troops, and twelve brass pieces of cannon, four of which were four and twenty pounders, and provisions for three months; so that if they had not come with us to a composition, it would have cost us abundance of men, whereas now we have gain'd the place with the loss of one single man, who was kill'd by a random cannon shot. We made ourselves masters of a bark, firing from the Puntael, before its surrender, in which was a gentleman with several hundred men that were going to the Recceif. This gentleman and another of Serinhaim (being both magistrates in their respective places) were delivered up to the inhabitants, who soon kill'd them, notwithstanding one was married with a Portuguese woman; for they having been heard to say, that they hoped to wash their hands in the blood of the Portuguese, the women were so much exasperated against them, that they soon dispatch'd them, according to their desires. The prisoners are for the most part detained at St. Anthony, in order to be sent to the Bahia; but many among them have taken service with us. We suppose the number of the dead and Dutch prisoners amount to near thirteen hundred: We have not seen the squadron under Salvador Korrea de Saa; we are afraid some misfortune has befallen him; some of our ships were cruising hereabouts, but within these three or four days none of them have appear'd on this coast. The Dutch have a fleet of twelve ships at sea, it is well if they don't venture a brush with us. The Recceif with all its forts are invested, Lawrence Karneiro is at Porto Calvo; the Jews report, that orders are come to take all the Dutch forces out of Rio Grande, Paraiba and St. Francis, in order to transport them to the Recceif. There is no great harmony betwixt the Jews and Dutch, the first pretending that the others intend to sell the country. Four of their head officers, which are our prisoners, are ordered to be sent to the Bahia, and among them their master of the artillery. The same day that we were become masters of Puntael, a bark arrived there from the Recceif with orders to keep it to the last extremity; we took the bark with good store of ammunition and provision, worth in all about fifteen hundred ducats.

Sept. the 5<sup>th</sup>,  
1645.

Caspar da Costa d'Abreu.

From

1645. From this and the following letters, it is apparent, that major Hoogstrate had laid the foundation of his treacherous design of betraying the cape of St. Austin to the Portuguese, long before; to wit, ever since he with Mr. Baltasar Vander Voorde was sent to the governor of the Bahia, Antonio Telles de Sylva. Thus a certain serjeant fold a redoubt near the city of Olinda to the enemy for three hundred gilders.

At the beginning of the siege of the cape of St. Austin, Andrew Vidal de Negreiros sent two letters to major Hoogstrate, Ley and Hick, by one John Guomes de Mello, dated the thirteenth of August; in the first of which the said Vidal complains of the ill treatment and murders committed upon the Portuguese by the Dutch; in the second he requests them to declare, pursuant to the promises made by Hoogstrate in the Bahia, for the king of Portugal, and to deliver the fort into their hands.

Two letters from Vidal to Hoogstrate.

The first was as follows:

I Am come this morning to the village of St. Antonio de Cabo, in hopes of receiving news from you and captain Ley. I give by these presents notice to you, that we are sent hither by order from the governor Antonio Telles de Sylva, with no other intention than to appease the troubles lately arisen in this country, pursuant to the request of the council, of which you are a sufficient witness. No sooner were we arrived at Tamandare, but we received many informations directly contrary to what we expected to meet with here; viz. That in Rio Grande thirty seven inhabitants had been murdered, many virgins deflower'd, and the image of the virgin Mary grossly misused by the Dutch; things so abominable in themselves, that it is scarce to be imagined so brave a nation should be guilty of such enormities. Whilst I am writing this letter, news is brought me, that the Dutch have caused many of the inhabitants of Goyana to be murdered, tho' I can scarce give credit to it; for supposing this to be true, we could not avoid giving assistance to these miserable people, tho' they were the most despicable of all nations, considering they crave our help, and are not only christians, but also subjects of the king our master, whom God preserve. Whilst the council was in expectation of the issues of the intended accommodation, they have surprized and killed many of the inhabitants, which obliges us, to require you in the name of God, of his majesty, his bigness and the states general, not to give any occasion for a rupture, but to maintain the late concluded peace to the utmost of your power, as we are ready on our side, to con-

cert all possible measures with the commander in chief of this place, which may tend to the tranquillity of both parties. The bearers hereof are captain John Guomes de Mello, and lieutenant Francis Guomes, who we desire may be dispatched back with all possible speed. God preserve you for many years.

August 13,  
1645.

Andrew Vidal.

The second letter was written thus:

The second letter.

YOUR promise made to us in the Bahia, and what has since been told by captain Ley to John Fernandes Vieira, and captain John Guomes de Mello, encourages us to proceed in our former design, not questioning but that both you and captain Ley will not in the least recede from the engagement you have been pleased to oblige us with, and to tie us to your service. We are come into this country at the head of three thousand chosen men, back'd by two squadrons of men of war well equip'd, one of which has not as yet appear'd on this coast, the other you have seen yourself pass by the other day. I hope this may serve as a means to set the poor miserable inhabitants at liberty; and as both they and we wish for nothing more than to see you embrace our side, that we may not want an opportunity to give you more evident proofs of our respect and affection towards you, so we desire you not to entertain the least sinister suspicion of us; we being ready (for the performance of which we by these presents give you our words) to accomplish in every point, what has been promised to you, by John Fernandes Vieira, and John Guomes de Mello. And I for my part assure you, that I will not fail to perform and agree to whatever you shall further demand upon this occasion.

The inhabitants of the place shall be provided with passports, and protected by us, in the same manner as the commander of Serinhaim, Carpenter, and some others were; and we expect the same at your hand. And that you may be sure whom to treat with upon this account, we have sent to you John Guomes de Mello, who is intrusted with the whole matter; which if you refuse to do, we must take such measures as we shall judge most expedient for us. In the mean while God preserve you for many years.

St. Antonio de Cabo,  
Aug. 13, 1645.

Your affectionate friend

and servant,

Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.

Major Hoogstrate, Mr. Hick and Ley, sent an answer to this letter immediately, containing

Hoogstrate  
answers  
this let-  
ter.

1645. containing in substance, that they were not in the least concerned in the outrages committed by the *Tapoyers* against the *Portuguese*, and seemingly refused to treat with de Mello. It runs thus:

*His answer to them.*

WE have received your letter sent by John Guomes de Mello, out of which we understand, that you are come to St. Antonio. We are extremely well satisfied, that the governor Antonio Telles da Sylva has undertaken to appease the tumults arisen in these parts, and don't question but that your presence will contribute much towards the accomplishment of it. The affronts and outrages you speak of by the *Tapoyers* and Dutch soldiers put upon the inhabitants, as they were committed solely against our will, so I can assure you, that no body, not so much as the least child, has been suffer'd to be misused upon our accounts, so that these complaints must not be made to us, but ought to be refer'd to the council. The treaty you propose with captain John Guomes de Mello, and lieutenant Francis Guomes, is beyond our province and power, so that we earnestly desire you not to use any further solicitations to us upon that account. So we kiss your hands, recommending you to God's protection. We rest

Your servants and good friends,

Caspar Vander Ley,  
D. Van Hoogstrate,  
John Hick.

Hoogstrate  
discovers  
these let-  
ters.

Major Hoogstrate took care to send these two letters, together with their answer to the council, with repeated assurances of their constant fidelity; whereupon the great council confirm'd Hoogstrate in his government, and exhorted Ley and Hick to persevere in their brave resolution, which they would in due time take care to reward with better preferments. This discovery of the enemies letters being look'd upon as an undeniable proof of Mr. Hoogstrate's sincere intentions, had such an influence upon the generality of the people, that there was scarce any body but what thought himself secure of his fidelity and duty. Nevertheless, as these temptations could not but raise some jealousy in the minds of the council, they thought fit to send colonel *Haus* to the *Receif*, to order him to the Cape of St. *Austin*.

The council in the mean while, being by *Vidal's* letters to Hoogstrate sufficiently convinced, that the intended recalling of the rebellious troops were nothing but amusements, sent immediate orders to their ad-

Vol. II.

miral *Lichtbart*, that for the future he should treat all the *Portuguese* ships he could meet with as enemies.

The 15<sup>th</sup> of August, colonel *Haus* being come to the *Receif*, propos'd to the council, that he judg'd it absolutely necessary for the service of the state, that since by the succours come from the *Babia* to the assistance of the rebels under Martin Soares *Moreno*, and Andrew *Vidal*, they were grown very strong and numerous, the troops encamped in the field should be drawn into the *Receif*, because they being besides the *Brasilians*, not above three hundred strong, they might easily be cut off in a place where they could not be seconded from the *Receif*, where they were wanting for the defence of that place, which being the capital of the whole Dutch *Brasil*, would in all likelihood be attack'd with the utmost vigour by the enemy.

Against this opinion many reasons were alledged too.

I. By so doing they must quit all the open country from whence they were now supplied with cattle and meal, which they stood highly in need of, till such time that they could receive new supplies from *Holland*, and that in such a case they must expect the enemy immediately at their gates.

II. That thereby the number of the enemy would be encreased, the inhabitants of the country being freed from the dread of our troops, would join with them against us.

III. That by so doing we must leave the *Tapoyers*, that had taken up arms at our request, and were to be joined by our troops near *Macchiape* or *St. Antonio*, to the enemies mercy. To this it was answer'd,

1. That as to the supplies of cattle and meal from the country, they should be in a much better condition to be furnished withal, when their forces could be sent abroad into all circumjacent parts of the country, whereas now they were forced to remain in one certain place. Besides that, we being masters at sea, might embark at any time a certain number of men, and land them where we found it most convenient, which would oblige the enemy, instead of besieging the *Receif*, to divide his forces for the defence of the country. What related to the increase of the enemies forces, by the accession of the *Portuguese* inhabitants of the country, was to be look'd upon as of no great consequence against us; it being more for our interest to see them appear as declared enemies than dissimbling friends; it being generally known, that their inclinations were bent for their countrymen, and that notwithstanding all

A a their

1645. their specious pretences, they mis'd no opportunity of giving intelligence to the enemy of what passed among us; whereas, if they were once declared enemies of the states, we should have a fair opportunity of seizing upon their cattle, provisions, and other moveables, for the use of the *Receif*; which being thus provided, would discourage the enemy from attempting to reduce it by famine.

What was alledged concerning the danger of the *Tapeyers*, was acknowledged to be of no small moment; but considering they had received no news as yet of their motion, it was not judged of such vast consequence as to be put in balance with the welfare of the whole *Dutch Brasil*, which depended in a great measure on the safety of these troops.

After mature deliberation of the whole matter, it was resolved, on the 15<sup>th</sup> of *August*, by the council, with the approbation of the members of the court of justice, that considering the danger the troops were exposed to, and that on their safety depended the preservation of the *Receif*, they should with all possible speed march thither, and that only fifty men should be left in the house of *de Wit*, under captain *Wiltscbut*, in order to command some part of the circumjacent country, and to serve as a retreat for our parties that should be sent abroad to fetch in cattle, and *Farinha*, or meal.

Pursuant to this resolution, colonel *Haus* went thither on horseback the same day, to put it in execution the same evening, if possible he could, or at furthest the next morning. But it seems colonel *Haus* was so neglectful, as to delay the march of these troops not only that afternoon, but also the whole next following day; and instead of retreating towards the *Receif*, tarried in the same sugar-mill, without having the least intelligence of the enemies approach; so that on the 17<sup>th</sup> of *August*, being surprized by the troops of *Andrew Vidal*, much more numerous than his, before they could betake themselves to their arms they were put to the rout. The council being advertized, that colonel *Haus* with his troops were attacked by the enemy in the sugar-mill of *Mr. de Wit*, they call'd the city militia to their arms, *Mr. Bullestrate* and *de Bas* went to the house *Bavista*, from whence, as being near at hand, they might give the necessary orders, according as they should receive advice from *Haus*: And twelve firelocks were posted in this house for the better security of the bridge cross the river. *Dieterick Hamel*, and the counsellors of justice, took care to look after the *Receif*. Immediately after, word being brought to the coun-

Colonel  
Haus put  
to the rout.

cil that colonel *Haus* had been overthrown, and was retired to the house of *de Wit* belonging to the sugar-mill, it was consulted, whether by any means they might be able to relieve him; and, tho' by reason of the weakness of the garrison, it was no easy matter to do it; nevertheless, it was resolved, with one hundred volunteers of the inhabitants, and one hundred and fifty soldiers, to attempt his relief. But before this could be put in execution, a certain *Brasilian* that had been present at the whole action, and having, by changing his clothes with a *Portuguese*, found means to escape to the *Receif*, brought the unwelcome news, that colonel *Haus*, with the forces under his command, had surrendered the house belonging to the sugar-mill, and themselves, upon promise of quarters, at discretion.

It was generally believed, that this misfortune was chiefly occasioned by colonel *Haus*'s own neglect, who did not, till it was too late, put the soldiers into a posture of defence, which was afterwards confirmed by the deposition of *William Jacobson*, late captain lieutenant of colonel *Haus*'s own company, made before the great council the 6<sup>th</sup> of *July*, 1646.

It was not till the night before our defeat, that colonel *Haus* received the first intelligences from a prisoner, a *Negro*, that the enemy with a strong body were broken up from *Moribeka*. The next morning, one of our safe-guards brought word to the colonel, that the enemy was passing the river; and soon after, the colonel's groom, who had been to water his master's horse in the said river, came in a full gallop, telling him likewise, that the rebels were passing the river, so that we soon after heard them fire upon our advanced guard, who retired immediately to the main body. Colonel *Haus* did not call the soldiers to their arms, or caused the alarm to be given, until the enemy came within sight of us, and charged our out-guard, when we first began to skirmish with them: But they charging us with their more numerous forces in the front, whilst *Kamaron* with his troops endeavoured to cut off our retreat to the *Receif*, which we were not able to prevent, by reason of the smallness of our number, *Haus* ask'd captain *Wiltscbut*, *Blaer* and *Lijtry*, *What was best to be done?* *Wiltscbut* answered, *You never ask'd our advice before, do what you think best.* Whereupon *Haus* ordered to retreat to the house of *Mr. de Wit*: Captain *Blaer*, who expected no quarter, being on the other hand for fighting our way through to the *Receif*. The house was bravely defended for

Colonel  
Haus sur-  
renders at  
discretion.

A further  
account of  
the defeat  
of colonel  
Haus by  
captain  
Jacobson.

erthrown, 1645.

the *Wit* be-  
s consult-  
might be  
by reason  
it was no  
s, it was  
unteers of  
and fifty  
But be-  
on, a cer-  
ent at the  
changing  
nd means  
the unwe-  
with the  
surrendered  
-mill, and  
arters, at

at this mis-  
y colonel  
ot, till it  
into a po-  
afterwards  
of *William*  
of colonel  
before the  
646.

re our de-  
d the first  
*Negro*, that  
were bro-  
next morn-  
ught word  
y was pas-  
the colo-  
water his  
came in a  
so that we  
n our ad-  
mediately  
us did not  
or caused  
the enemy  
arged our  
n to skir-  
ing us with  
the front,  
endeavour-  
the *Receif*,  
event, by  
r number,  
Blaer and  
e? *Wiltf-*  
our advice  
Whereupon  
house of  
o expect-  
ther hand  
o the *Re-*  
ended for  
four

Colonel  
Haus (ur  
renderer at  
discretion.

A further  
account of  
the defeat  
of colonel  
Haus by  
captain  
Jacobson.

1645. four hours, but at last powder and ball beginning to fail, because half a barrel of gunpowder (which was all they had left) blew up by accident, they surrendered at discretion to *Andrew Vidal*, under condition to have their lives saved, as well for themselves as the *Brasilians* among them, which agreement being signed by *Vidal*, and two or three more of the chief commanders of the *Portuguese*, was delivered to colonel *Haus*. Notwithstanding which, the *Brasilians* were cut to pieces by the inhabitants, with the consent of the *Portuguese* commanders, as soon as we had quitted our post in the house. The *Brasilian* women seeing their husbands murdered before their faces, dash'd most of their childrens brains against the walls, for fear they should fall alive into the hands of the *Portuguese*. All the *Dutch*, about two hundred and fifty strong, among whom were colonel *Haus*, captain *Blaer* and *Liftry*, were made prisoners of war, and were for the first four or five days kept in the sugar-mill of *Haag*, when *John Fernandes Vieira*, and many of the inhabitants solicited *Andrew Vidal*, to deliver the said prisoners up into their hands, with an intention to kill them, but *Vidal* refused to grant their request, and caused them forthwith to be sent by land to the *Babia*: They were indifferently well treated in their journey thither; but such as either by reason of sickness, or any other accident, were left behind, fell into the inhabitants hands, who cut them to pieces, and would have done the same with all the rest, had it not been for their convoy. After their arrival in the *Babia*, an account being taken of their names, they had certain quarters assigned them, and thirty-one pence halfpenny per week for their pay, and a measure of meal for every ten days.

They had liberty to walk up and down within the city where they pleased, except colonel *Haus*, captain *Wiltsebut*, and *Liftry*, who were confined to their lodgings, and durst not, without special leave, talk with any body. Colonel *Haus* was at last sent to *Portugal*, and *Wiltsebut* and *Liftry*, in June 1647, put on board a ship, with two hundred and thirty *Dutch* prisoners; about sixty of our men took service among them there, but they refused the natives of *Holland*.

The enemies being greatly encouraged by these successes, and their strength increasing daily by the great concourse of the *Portuguese* inhabitants, who in the captainships of *Parayba* and *Goyana*, which hitherto had remained in quiet, and engaged themselves to the government by a

new oath of allegiance, now also took up arms against us; so that it was thought convenient to recall our garrisons out of those parts.

But to return to the cape of *St. Auſtin*, after the surrender of which the garrison was carried to *St. Antonio*, where they were forced to deliver up their arms. Among the rest of our prisoners there, was *Jhuze Zeevers*, afterwards vice-admiral of *Holland* and *Wijlfrifland*, *Abraham Van Millingen*, and *John Broeckbujen*, both still living in *Holland*. Major *Hoogſtrate* address'd himself to them, endeavouring to bring them over to the *Portuguese* side, by the allurements of captain, lieutenant, and ensign's places, telling them, that it would now be in his power to promote them to much higher employments; but when he saw them refuse his offer, he swore they should repent it. At the same time he prefer'd three *Dutch* men, to wit, *Wijfel Smith*, formerly his lieutenant; *Alexander Bouckolt*, and *Claes Claefen*, a native of *Amsterdam*, to captains places; the last of these three being an intimate friend of *Zeevers* and *Broeckbujen*, told them, and confirmed it by many oaths, that he had taken service among them for no other end, than to get an opportunity of returning to us. They had also liberty given them to walk abroad, but not without a guard to keep a watchful eye over all their actions.

Not long after, the *Portuguese* provider *Mor* sent for *John Broeckbujen*, and after the first compliments were pass'd, told him, that if he would serve the king of *Portugal* in the quality of commissary-general, he should go along with him to the camp, where he should receive one hundred guilders per month, and be welcome to his table besides; and that if he refused his offer, and stay'd behind, he would be in danger of being murdered by the inhabitants. He reply'd, that being engaged by his oath to the company, he could not break it, though with the hazard of his life. And (said the provider) will you chuse rather to serve a company of mob than a king? We are just now upon the point of executing a design which is insaluble, and then you will begin to see that the king's cause is the justest, and will be crown'd with success for ever. Then he gave him a cup with brandy, of which after *Mr. Broeckbujen* had taken a good draught, he took his leave, and return'd to his comrades, unto whom he gave an account of what had pass'd betwixt them.

These had in the mean while been inform'd by some *Portuguese*, that this design was upon the isle *Iamarika*, and being certain that the council did not fore-

1645.

West be-  
cause of the  
garrison at  
the cape of  
St. Auſtin.

see



1645. see this danger, they were contriving all possible means to give them notice of it, but could not pitch upon any person fitly qualified for this undertaking. At last, *Isaac Zweepers*, by vast promises of reward, prevailed so far upon a *Dutch* trumpeter, call'd *Martin Stomp*, that he undertook to carry this piece of news in person to the council, and at the same time to request the releasing of the *Dutch* prisoners still remaining at *St. Antonio*. Every thing being agreed upon betwixt them, the trumpeter took his leave of Mr. *Zweepers*, and set out on his journey to the *Receif* about midnight, leaving his wife and children behind him. Mr. *Zweepers* and Mr. *Broekbusen* appear'd very well satisfied, but nevertheless were in their hearts not a little concerned for the issue of this enterprize.

A *Dutch* trumpeter discovers the enemies design upon *Iltamarika* to the council.

They would often call upon the trumpeter's wife to enjoin her silence, and ordered her, that if any enquired after him, to tell them that he was run away from her, in order to take service in the camp in the *Verges*.

Some days after they met with one *Peter Ritsiu*, formerly baker to the garrison of the cape of *St. Austen*; *Broekbusen* having a mind to feel his pulse, and finding him not averse to such a task, he at last with fair words prevail'd upon him to undertake the same journey the trumpeter had done before; that in case he should miscarry, which they much feared he might, the council might nevertheless be advertised of the enemies intended expedition against *Iltamarika*. The baker having desired a certificate from them, testifying, that he never had taken service among the *Portuguese*, prepared himself for his journey, which he intended to begin with the first dark night.

A baker sent upon the same errand.

The same night they were forewarn'd of a design against their lives, by a certain *Italian* call'd *Jacomo da Perugalbo*, so that *Zweepers* and *Broekbusen* guessing, not without reason, that some of the *Portuguese* had got scent of their sending away the trumpeter and baker, thought it not advisable to stay longer in this place, but to ask leave from colonel *Pedro Marinba Falkabo*, to go to the *Algodais*, where they could not want conveniency to go along with the rest of the prisoners, that were intended to be sent to the *Babia*, which was readily granted.

Is seized.

In the mean while, the baker having taken the first opportunity to set out on his journey, was met by two *Portuguese* in the fugar-mill *Trapicba*, who having found the beforementioned certificate about him, carried him prisoner to *St. Antonio de Cabo*, where being put to the torture, it made such a noise among the inhabitants, that

they all rise up in arms, protesting, they would not be satisfied till they had fetch'd *Zweepers* and *Broekbusen* from the *Algodais*, and cut them to pieces; for which purpose they also obtained seven soldiers from *Pedro Marinba*, and had certainly put it in execution if captain *Ley* had not opposed it; for as good luck would have it, they happened at that time to be in his fugar-mill, and the baker had stood it out bravely, without discovering the matter. The next morning captain *Ley* gave them a visit, telling them what had happened, and says he, to *Broekbusen*, What is your meaning by this? but he having no great confidence in *Ley*, denied every thing to the utmost.

But the 2<sup>d</sup> of October the whole design was likely to have been discovered by the imprudence of the beforementioned trumpeter's wife, who being got drunk, told some of her acquaintance, that her husband was gone to the *Receif*. She was carried a prisoner to the cape of *St. Austen*, where she was miserably tortured, but being a resolute woman, would not confess any thing: It was however major *Hoogstrate*'s advice, that the *Portuguese* ought not to keep the *Dutch* any longer in *Pernambuco*, but that all such as refused to take service among them, ought to be sent to the *Babia*. Accordingly all the *Dutch* prisoners then about the cape and *St. Anthony*, were sent to the *Algodais*, where every one was ask'd by colonel *Pedro Marinba*, whether they would take service under the king of *Portugal*, and such as would not, should be sent forthwith by land to the *Babia*, a tedious journey; besides, that they ran the hazard of being murdered by the way. Many took service for fear, but *Zweepers* and *Broekbusen* being ask'd again, whether they were not willing to serve the king, they answered, they would rather die than bear arms against their own nation.

The 5<sup>th</sup> of October, all the prisoners under a convoy, both of soldiers and boors, were carried from the *Algodais* to *Pojuka*. But scarce were they come thither, when *Zweepers* was ordered to be sent back to the cape of *St. Austen*, where he was put to the rack, to extort from him a confession concerning the trumpeter's journey to the *Receif*, who, as they supposed, had discovered their design upon *Iltamarika*; but not being able to bring him to make the least discovery, they sent him, after an imprisonment of five weeks, to the *Babia*.

In the mean while Mr. *Broekbusen*, with the rest of the *Dutch* prisoners, had been forced to travel day and night till the 28<sup>th</sup> of November 1645, when they came to a castle call'd *Tapiao*, on the sea-shore of the

*Babia*,

1645.

1646.

A letter intercepted by *Zweepers* and *Broekbusen*.

The trumpeter's journey discovered.

Are committed to prison.

suffer for want of victuals.

Are provided with victuals.

*Zweepers* tortured.

The *Dutch* prisoners come to the *Babia*.

Have audience of the governor.



ing, they 1645.  
had fetch'd  
e *Algodais*,  
ch purpose  
s from *Pe-*  
y put it in  
ot opposed  
ve it, they  
his sugar-  
out brave-  
tter. The  
them a vi-  
pened, and  
your mean-  
great confi-  
ning to the

whole design  
ed by the  
oned trum-  
drunk, told  
her husband  
was carried  
uslin, where  
but being a  
confess any  
*Hoogstrate's*  
ught not to  
*Pernambuco*,  
take service  
t to the *Bas-*  
*sch* prisoners  
*Anthony*, were  
very one was  
*mba*, whether  
the king of  
ot, should be  
*Babia*, a te-  
they ran the  
by the way.  
t *Zweers* and  
whether they  
ing, they an-  
ie than bear

prisoners un-  
s and boors,  
is to *Pojuka*.  
hither, when  
back to the  
as put to the  
onfession con-  
y to the *Re-*  
ad discover-  
a; but not  
ake the leath-  
er an impris-  
*Babia*,  
*Broekbusen*, with  
s, had been  
till the 28<sup>th</sup>  
y came to a  
shore of the  
*Bakia*,

1645. *Babia*, about half a league from the city of *St. Salvador*, after a dangerous journey: They were carried in ten boats to the city, on that side where it is best fortified, the *Portuguese* being not willing to let them have a fight of the fortifications on the land side, Mr. *Broekbusen* was by order from the governor *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, made a prisoner in a citizen's house, and the soldiers disposed into quarters. The next day they heard the drums beat up for volunteers, every one being invited to serve the king of *Portugal*, of what nation soever, except the *Dutch*.

1646. The next following year, on the 18<sup>th</sup> of January 1646, *Zweers* and *Broekbusen* intercepted a letter writ by *Hoogstrate* to *Hondius*, concerning several transactions to be communicated to the governor, of which captain *Ley* having got scent, gave immediate notice thereof to the governor the first of February, who threatened them with no less than the gallows, sent them to a loathsome prison; with strict orders that no body should be permitted to speak with them, nor that pen, ink, or paper, should be allowed them; nay, whilst the clerk was setting down their names, a captain came and told them from the governor, that they were the traitors who kept correspondence with the *Dutch* in the *Recess*; and ordered that a sentinel should be set at the prison door, to keep the inhabitants from laying violent hands upon them; for as they were carrying to prison, they made a horrible noise, crying, *To the gallows with these impostors and traitors*. They remained five whole days in this prison, without any victuals or drink, till being almost spent with hunger and thirst, they got leave to write to the governor, representing to him their deplorable condition; who gave immediate orders that victuals should be given them for the future: The *Portuguese* keeper being afraid, that if they should give them plenty of victuals at first, it might turn to the danger of their lives, was so cautious, as to send them no more than each a piece of bread well dipt in wine at first, and after some hours, such another, but something bigger, till by degrees their stomachs were restored to their former digestive faculty.

The last day of February the governor gave publick audience (which is done three times every year) for the releasing of those that are prisoners on the king's account. Upon this occasion a free access was likewise granted to our people to the governor. They passed thro' the anti-chamber, lined on both sides with his guards, into the room of audience, adorned with damask hangings of divers colours: Here they found the go-

VOL. II.

1646. vernor sitting in an elbow chair, on the right-side of which stood the royal throne, raised four steps higher from the ground than the governor's seat, which was surrounded upon the floor with very fine tapestry. Just behind him stood his secretary, and some halbardiers; on both sides sat several counsellours and lawyers, their heads covered, and behind them the officers of the army, all uncovered. The governor, as soon as he saw our prisoners, gave them a sign to come nearer, which they having done accordingly, Mr. *Broekbusen* upon his knees, spoke to him thus: *We suppose your lordship not to be ignorant, that now for a whole month we have been detained in a miserable prison; without being conscious of any crime committed against you, unless it were, that we have detained the letter your lordship knows of; if in this we have committed a fault we beg your lordship's pardon.*

And (replied the governor) supposing you had done such a thing in Holland? Upon which *Broekbusen* answered, *That his lordship would be pleased to remember that it was no more than a private letter, and not directed to his lordship*; the governor after having paused for a little while, gave immediate order for their discharge; from that time they had liberty given them of walking abroad, but were fain to carry themselves very swimmingly, for fear of the inhabitants, who kept a watchful eye over them.

The 7<sup>th</sup> of May, *Isaac Zweers* and *John Broekbusen* were carried on board a yacht called the *St. Francis*, in order to be conveyed to the isle of *Terceira*; and as they were the first *Dutch* prisoners that were sent to that island, every body looked upon it no otherwise than a pretence to throw them over board after they were come at sea. Here they met with worse treatment than before, being forced to stand to the pump during the whole voyage, and yet were ready to be starved, notwithstanding the sea-men caught more fish than they could consume. At last the 28<sup>th</sup> being arrived in the road near *Terceira*, they saw within an hour after a *Dutch* ship coming to anchor near them; they called to the ship till the master sent some of his people aboard them, unto whom they made their complaints, and understanding that the master was a native of *Nieuwendam* called *Martin Peter Honing*, they began to be a little cheerful, tho' the *Portuguese* would not allow them to go aboard the *Dutch* ship. But the 29<sup>th</sup> being left alone with the steer-man and only one boy in the vessel, they found means to go in spite of their keepers, aboard *Martin Peter Honing*, who promised to see them delivered. The same afternoon *Moor* the governor of this

B b

thi

The trans-  
action was  
never dis-  
covered.

Are com-  
mitted to  
prison.

Suffer for  
want of  
victuals.

Are pro-  
vided with  
victuals.

*Zweers*  
and *Broek-*  
*busen*.

The Dutch  
prisoners  
came to the  
*Bakia*.

Are dis-  
charged.

Are sent to  
*Terceira*.

1646. this and the adjacent islands, residing in *Terceira* sent for *Zweers* and *Broekhusen*, and told them that he had received a letter from the governor *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, in which he desired him to detain them prisoners in the castle for a twelve month; but that he did not think himself obliged to follow his directions, he having no other dependance but on the king, who being not concerned in this war, his orders were to send all the prisoners brought thither to *Portugal*; that they might rely upon it, and for their present sustenance, till a ship should be ready to go, ordered them nine rix dollars.

And from  
terrace to  
Portugal.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of June they met with a master of a French vessel, who offered to carry them without any reward to *Portugal*, which they willingly accepted of: Here they met with many of their fellow prisoners, who had imagined no otherwise but that the *Portuguese* had thrown them over board. They continued here till the 10<sup>th</sup> of September, when Mr. *Zweers* and *Broekhusen* embarked themselves at *Lisbon* aboard a man of war called the *Prince Henry*, and at last, the 4<sup>th</sup> of December, after a thousand dangers and miseries, which they had sustained since their departure from the *Dutch Brasil*, arrived safely in the *Maese*.

Arrive  
safely in  
Holland.

But we must return towards the *Receif*. The unexpected defeat of colonel *Haus*, put all the inhabitants of the *Receif* under a great consternation; but the council left no stone unturned to put the place with all the adjacent forts, in a condition to make a vigorous defence, in case it should be attacked by the enemy; and that every thing might be performed with the best order that could be, *Peter Bas* was constituted commander in chief in the *Receif*. Admiral *Lichtbart* was to take care of the batteries, and artillery thereunto belonging; *Henry Moucheron* was made commander in *Maurice's town*; all their thoughts being now bent upon the defence of these places, which before they judged out of danger.

Prepara-  
tions in the  
Receif.

The stables and out-houses for the use of the negroes, as likewise the walks and gardens belonging to count *Maurice's* house being no small impediment to the fort *Ernestus*; it being to be feared that under favour of these houses and trees, the enemy might unexpectedly surprize the fort and *Maurice's town*, and the inhabitants earnestly requested the pulling down of those stables, out-houses and trees, and what else might prove dangerous to the place; orders were given to Mr. *Valbergen* and major *Bayert*, commanding in the fort *Ernestus*, to see the same put in execution, with as little damage to the house as possi-

bly could be. The houses near the fort *Bruin* were likewise ordered to be pulled down, and the horn-work belonging to it, to be levelled at the request of the citizens. Many negroes were also employed under the conduct of major *Beck* and the captain of the city militia, to break down all the houses in *Maurice's town*, which lay too near the new retrenchments. All *Portuguese* prisoners were ordered to be distributed in the ships, and several volunteers who had committed many outrages in the country, and were detained in custody, were taken into service for three months. A rumour being spread abroad that 18 of the enemy were come into the *Affagados*, a company of citizens were got in readiness to assist them, but it proved not true.

The same day the ship called the *O-range-tree* arrived near the *Receif*, being come out of the *Maese* the 21<sup>st</sup> of May with thirty-five foldiers for recruits. The watches were so disposed, that in *Maurice's town* Mr. *de Wit* and *Raelfield* (besides the ordinary offices) and in the *Receif* Mr. *Aldrick* and *Valbergen* should go the rounds.

The ship  
the O-  
range tree  
comes from  
Holland.

*Baltazar Dortmund*, governor of *Itamarika* sent advice to the council the 17<sup>th</sup> of August that *Kavalkanti* was with some troops come to *Iguaraku*, and had summoned the *Brasilians* to join with him in four days, under forfeiture of their lives.

The 19<sup>th</sup> the citizens presented a petition, shewing the necessity of having the house of count *Maurice* pulled down, as hindring the prospect from the fort *Ernestus*, and if once possessed by the enemy, they might from thence annoy both the fort and the *Receif* itself with their cannon. But the council having advised with Mr. *Walbeck*, admiral *Lichtbart*, *Aldrick de Wit*, *Raelfield*, *Moucheron* and *Valbergen*, thought fit not to agree to it for that time, being in hopes that it might be made useful for their defence. Mr. *de Wit* and *Hamel* were commanded to go from hence to each house in *Maurice's town*, and to take an exact account of what negroes were able to bear arms, and to furnish them with musquets, and pikes; the same charge was given to admiral *Lichtbart*, and captain *Baribolomeu Van Collen*, for the *Receif*. All the sick that were in a state of reconvalescency in the castle were likewise ordered to be armed for its defence.

The citi-  
zens peti-  
tion for the  
pulling  
down of  
Maurice's  
house.

Negroes  
armed.

At the same time an answer was sent to Mr. *Dortmund*, with orders to draw as many *Brasilians* as possibly he could into the isle of *Itamarika*, and to provide him self with as much cattle and meal (*farinha*) as he was able to get out of the adjacent places; but that if he found himself not in a condition to maintain the whole island,

or

the fort 1646.

be pulled  
ing to it.  
the citizens.  
yed under  
the captain  
own all the  
ch lay too  
All Portu-  
be distri-  
volunteers  
ages in the  
n custody,  
ree months.  
that 18 of  
ffagados, a  
readiness to  
ue.

led the O-  
eif, being  
of May with  
The watch-  
urice's town  
es the ordi-  
Mr. Aldrich  
unds.

honour of Ita-  
ncil the 17<sup>th</sup>  
e with some  
ad had sum-  
with him in  
their lives.

ated a peti-  
having the  
d down, as  
the fort Erne-  
the enemy,  
both the fort

cannon. But  
th Mr. Wal-  
rick de Wit,  
gen, thought  
time, being  
e useful for  
Hamel were  
each house  
an exact ac-  
le to bear  
h musquet;

as given to  
Baribolome  
All the sick  
alefency in  
to be an n-

was sent to  
draw as n  
ld into the  
ide him self  
(farinha) as  
lacent pla-  
elf not in a  
hole island,  
or

1646. or the city of *Scobop*, he should retire into the fort *Orange*, where he might be supplied by sea, and consequently make a vigorous defence. Mr. Carpenter was likewise forewarned to be upon his guard, and to retire in time into the isle of *Itamarika*, with his soldiers and *Brasilians*, if he found the inhabitants ready to take up arms against him.

The 19<sup>th</sup> at night a party went abroad to get intelligence, but met with no enemy. Some negroes were also sent towards the enemies quarters to know their strength. The same evening the council received a letter by lieutenant *Francis Meades* from *Andrew Vidal*, in which he testified his readiness still to maintain the peace, complaining at the same time of outrages committed by our soldiers, as may be seen out of the following letter.

*A letter from Vidal to the council.*

WE have sent you advice before by lieutenant *Manuel Antonio*, of our arrival in this captainship, by orders from the governor *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, and at your own request, in order to restore tranquillity here by the most effectual means we could devise. We also did represent to your lordships the many innovations and unaccountable proceedings which had reached our ears, by the lamentable cries of several noble ravished virgins, and the doleful complaints of the inhabitants of *Rio Grande*, where forty persons of note together with a priest, and the other day two more in the *Salinas* were murdered in cool blood. I can scarce mention without horror (and the respect every one ought to have to sacred places forbids me to particularize) the outrages committed against the images of saint., and especially that of the mother of God, and sacrileges committed by your soldiers: All which considerations, together with that we found you in a warlike condition, with your troops in the field, natural rights of self defence established by the constant custom of war did teach us, not to leave an armed power behind our backs, which upon occasion might have proved fatal to us, before we could come to a resolution in conjunction with your lordships, what measures were best to be taken for the re-establishment of that tranquillity which was the only aim of our coming into these parts; according to which we have regulated ourselves in our march towards the *Reccif*, till we come to the town of *St. Antonio de Cabo*, where having caused *John Fernandes Vieira* to be taken into custody, under a guard of twelve soldiers, we were surprized at the vast numbers of inhabitants, children, women, and religious men, who to shelter themselves from the outrages and robberies committed against

1646. them by captain *Blacr* in the *Vergea*, came to seek for shelter among us. They gave us an account how that the said captain not satisfied with having plundered their houses, had carried away three of the noblest ladies of the country, after they had been grievously disgraced before; the inhabitants being exasperated by these violences, did (against our will) leave our camp so suddenly, that whatever haste we made to march after them, we could not overtake them before they were engaged with some of your troops, in the sugar-mill of *Isabel Gonçalves*, which they intended to have set on fire, had it not been for our men, who were forced to interpose betwixt them and your soldiers, to their no small danger and our loss, as being exposed to the volleys of your small shot, which consisted for the most part of bullets cut in pieces and made four square. As the hostilities committed daily against our troops, afford fresh occasions of revolt among the inhabitants, so we cannot but lay before your lordships the late proclamation and ratification of peace betwixt us, protesting now and for ever in the name of God, *John IV.* our king, as also in the name of the states general and all our allies, that your lordships will not let things come to a rupture, and not give us new cause of acting offensively, or to declare war against you. We cannot longer dissemble our opinion, that the reiterated complaints of the inhabitants, may at least in some measure serve for an excuse, if not a justification of the proceedings of *John Fernandes Vieira*, concerning whom we are sufficiently satisfied that his first intentions were only to afford protection to some innocent persons threatened with destruction; which though it was in his power to do, yet did he retire from place to place with his forces, in hopes of avoiding any engagement, till forced thereunto by necessity, he was constrained to repel force by force. We beg of your lordships to take this letter into serious consideration, being of so much consequence, to our both sides safeties; for it seems as if heaven itself were offended at our proceedings.

God preserve your lordships.

*Andrew Vidal de Negreiros.*

*From de Ingenio of St. John Baptist de Venies, Aug. 19, 1645.*

An answer from the council was sent the next following day by the same lieutenant.

*The council's answer.*

OUT of our answer to your letter dated at *Scrinheim* the 8<sup>th</sup> of august, you may sufficiently see that the protestations made both by the governor *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, and by yourself, concerning the maintaining of the

1646. *the peace betwixt his majesty of Portugal and the states general of the United Provinces, were never looked upon by us as sincere, or to be relied upon, since your actions did in no wise agree with your words. The treacherous proposals made to one of our deputies, to betray one of our best strong holds into your hands; the landing of so formidable a force in our territories without any knowledge, under pretence of a misinterpreted sense of our letter to his excellency; the coming with a strong fleet into our road; the taking of the fort of Serinhaim; the slaughter of so many Brasilians our subjects in cool blood; the summons sent to the cape of St. Austia for a surrender, nay the attacking and surprising of our troops, who were forced to keep in the field, for the bridling of our rebellious inhabitants; all these, we say, cannot by any unbiass'd persons be looked upon otherwise, than manifest infractions of the said treaty, and open hostilities. We on our side can without the least contradiction to truth positively declare, that our armament was not in the least intended against his majesty of Portugal, but against the rebels and their adherents; which we were compelled to, when we saw many armed troops to penetrate into our territories cross the river St. Francisco. The surprising of some of our barks in the Salgados; the taking of the house Marecape, and making our safeguards prisoners there, as well as at Cambao, and several other places; the gallows that were erected on purpose to terrify our inhabitants into a compliance with the revolted party; the killing of three of the said inhabitants of Pojuka in cool blood, and the surprising of several of our soldiers and Brasilians sent to St. Lawrence to fetch farinha; the plundering of the houses and shops of several tradesmen in the country, with many such like violences committed by the revolted party; and what is the worst, before ever we appeared in arms, but endeavoured by proclamations of pardon and of maintaining them in their possessions, to divert the danger; all these actions, we say, will not admit of any other interpretation but of open hostilities.*

How can it be supposed that in the station we are, we could after all those provocations and slights of our kind offers, desist any longer from drawing the sword? Whatever in the mean time has been transacted contrary to the custom of war, has been done without our knowledge and intention, being occasioned by the treacherous dealings of the rebels, and consequently to be looked upon as deserved punishments, rather than the consequences of a just war; besides, that neither his excellency Antonio Telles da Silva, neither you nor any body else, has any legal power to call us to an account concerning the government or punishment of the subjects of the states general,

no more than the king of Portugal is answerable to us for what is transacted upon that account in his kingdom or other dominions.

Notwithstanding which we would have you not in the least lay the before-mentioned crimes and violencies at our door, we are so far from having encouraged or commanded the Tapoyers to kill the Portuguese inhabitants in Kunhao, that for these several years last past we have endeavoured to prevent it; for having, by the ill treatment they had received from the Portuguese, been exasperated against them, they were for killing most of the inhabitants of that captainship, and had actually put it in execution, had we not interposed our authority, and ordered our garrisons to take them into their particular protection. What you say of ravishing of women, is not only beyond our knowledge, but even beyond whatever we heard of before, having taken all imaginable care to prevent such violences by our proclamation, published for that purpose. It is known to all the world that we afforded our peculiar protection to the women of de Ingenio, of St. Arnout d'Orlanda, and what concerns the taking of the ladies by captain John Blae, was, as we are informed, done with no other intention, than to exchange them for his wife, or at least to keep them as hostages for her, he having received intelligence that she was very ill treated by you at Serinhaim. The rebels themselves made the first step towards those robberies and rapines that have been committed by our soldiers since; which however cannot come into balance with those cheats, frauds and rapines, wherewith those rebels have defrauded and robbed their creditors of their debts and goods; notwithstanding which we have by granting safeguards and otherwise done all what in us lay to prevent the same.

The late murder upon the person of the Sallinhas was committed the 17<sup>th</sup> of August, without our knowledge, to our great dissatisfaction by the flying Brasilians, who being enraged at the killing of their men, women and children at Serinhaim, without any distinction of age or sex, took this opportunity of revenging themselves. You may easily guess that the papers dispersed by Antonio Kavalkanti at Iguaracu, have also contributed a little to this enterprize.

Of the bullets mentioned by you to have been used in the last encounter, we have more reason to complain than you, it being our constant order not to recede from what is the custom of war in these cases.

The courtesy shewed in saving and receiving our soldiers, we are ready to acknowledge, and to return upon the like occasion, desiring you would send us back your resolution upon this point by the same drummer.

It being evident from what has been acknowledged, that all the past misfortunes ought to be

Preparation against the Enemies coming to the Relief.

In Maurice's Town and other forts.

1645. be imputed to the rebels, unto whom we endeavoured by all requisite means to restore tranquillity and peace; but they persisting in their rebellious designs, deserve rather condign punishment than the least excuse at your hands. For which reason it is that we protest before God and the whole world, against the proceedings of his excellency Antonio Telles da Sylva, and what else has been committed by yourself contrary to the treaty concluded betwixt his majesty of Portugal and the states general of the United Provinces; not questioning but that upon the receipt of these presents, you will retire with your forces to the Bahia, and thereby put an end to the further violation of the said treaty. Thus expecting your answer, we rest, sir,

Receiv. Aug.  
20, 1645.

Yours, &c.

Preparation  
tion a-  
gainst the  
Enemies  
coming to  
the Re-  
ceiv.

The same night word being brought that some of the enemies troops were advanced to Olinda, notice was given to all the circumjacent forts, to prepare for a vigorous defence, and two batteries ordered to be raised on the back-side of the dwelling-place of the negroes, from whence they might command the avenues to the Receiv along the river-side. Several volunteers lately come from the flat country, were incorporated into one company under the command of secretary Hamel, as captain, and Jeronimo Holman their lieutenant: Two advanced guards were placed, one betwixt the fort Bruin and the triangular fort; the second betwixt the last and count Maurice's plantation: Part of the bridge of Boavista was broken down, to hinder the enemies passage that way; and considering the importance of the triangular fort, a detachment of twenty six soldiers out of several companies was ordered to reinforce the garrison there. The same care was taken for the security of Maurice's Town, Antonio Vaez, the fort Ernestus, the quinquangular fort, and all the rest.

Major Bayeri was ordered to have the remaining walls of count Maurice's tables pulled down, because they hindered the prospect from the fort Ernestus; and Henry Vermeulen was commanded to employ thirty negroes in clearing the plantation of count Maurice and the ditches from all rubbish; and the before-mention'd Bayer, ordered to remove the pallisades from the said gardens, and to put them round his fort. The engineer Pisseer had orders given him to set a row of pallisades on that side of the fort of Ernestus, where it fronts the before-mention'd gardens, and to extend them five rods into the river. And this fort being not sufficiently stored with heavy cannon, commissary Stiebt was to carry thither

VOL. II.

two great pieces, then planted at the bridge-foot, and instead of them to place there two culverins; likewise the entrance of the channel of Maurice's Town was flopt by a double row of pallisades. The members of the council, in conjunction with those of the court of justice, took another view of the suburbs of Maurice's Town, to consult whether it were best to maintain or to desert that post, but the resolution thereof was deferred till the next day. Two great cannons were planted in the Syquanquar-Fort, to command the river-side; and in consideration that the hornworks belonging to that fort, required a considerable number of men for their defence, the governor of the fort was ordered to have the same levelled by his Brasilians and soldiers, and one hundred negroes; and the woods betwixt the said fort and the Afogados, were ordered to be cut down by the Brasilians belonging to the fort, when it was also resolved to draw the fortifications of Maurice's Town into a narrower compass, and to repair the walls round the Receiv; so that by the indefatigable care of the council, all the fortifications both of the Receiv and the other adjacent places, were put into such a good posture of defence, that the enemy, tho' very strong, durst not attempt any thing thereabouts for that time. Mr. D rimand had drawn near 1400 persons into Itamarika, 700 of which being women and children, he desired some supplies of provisions, but for the rest, had put the island in a good posture.

Mr. Linge, by his letter dated in Parayba the 22<sup>d</sup> of August, sent advice to the council, that after notice given him of the defeat of colonel Haus, he had judged it most convenient to remove the garrison and inhabitants of Fredericia into the forts; that however the Portuguese were pretty quiet as yet, notwithstanding his whole force consisted not in above four hundred soldiers, one hundred inhabitants, and fifty Brasilians, among whom were a good number of sick and maimed men; and that the Tapoyers had slain about twelve or fourteen labouring countrymen. Major Hoogstrate, Ley and Heck, had not long before given notice to the council, that they had burnt all the houses, but especially the magazine and church without the fort, for its better defence, and that the enemy had posted themselves on the hill of the cape, and on the southern island.

On the 25<sup>th</sup> of August, upon another review of the fortifications of Maurice's Town, the same were ordered to be brought forth with to perfection.

The same day the council received letters from Mr. Linge, by the way of Itamarika, dated

1645.



1645. dated the 15<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> of August, in Parayba, that William Barents had sent him advice from Kunbaa the 14<sup>th</sup> of August, that he and Rudolph Bawn had a troop of Tappoyers ready for our service, every thing being very quiet thereabouts; but that the said Tappoyers had carried away all the cattle belonging to Peter Farcharson, which had occasioned no small scarcity of fresh flesh thereabouts.

It was also judged absolutely necessary by the council, to take into their serious consideration the present condition of the forts in Rio St. Francisco and Seragippo del Rey, which being provided but with slender garrisons, and all communication cut off betwixt them and the Receif, and in great danger of being lost; it was judged absolutely necessary, after the defeat of colonel Haus, to endeavour the preservation of them, and consequently of the whole Dutch-Brazil, by removing them from thence to the Receif.

To accomplish this with all imaginable security, Mr. Walbeck was deputed by the great council to the council of war, to know their opinion, by what means these garrisons, as well as that of Porto Calvo, might be with safety brought to the Receif, or whether, considering that they would be forced to leave their cannon behind them, they should be ordered to defend themselves to the last extremity, in hopes of receiving speedy succours from Holland for their relief.

The council of war, having well weighed the whole matter, unanimously agreed upon the following resolution.

*The resolution of the council of war.*

**T**HAT it was their opinion, considering the capital city was in danger for want of a sufficient garrison, the garrisons of the before-mention'd forts, which in all probability could not make any long resistance, ought to be taken from thence with as much ammunition and cannon as could be done, and carried to the Receif. But in regard that the fort of Porto Calvo lay pretty deep into country, where the river was very narrow and shallow, the garrisons of Rio St. Francisco, and Seragippo del Rey, were to pass that way in order to join them, and that they should bury or break their cannon.

By order from the council of war, Aug. 24, 1645.

Signed,  
Kornelis Bayer,  
Albertus Oosterman,  
L. Van Harkema,  
John Denning,  
Samuel Lambartz.

Henry Advocat.  
Frederick Pistoer.  
capt. Haelmeister.  
Rene de Mouchy.

Accordingly two barks, with the ship Zelandia, were ordered for the execution of this enterprize, to Rio St. Francisco.

The last day of August, one of the captains of these two barks return'd, and gave an account, that he being advanced into the river of Rio St. Francisco, within a league of the said fort, he received so warm a salute of small shot from a Portuguese vessel full of firelocks, that he was forced to return, without being able to penetrate any further up the river; that the other bark being discouraged thereat, durst not venture to go to Seragippo, but that they thought fit to retreat back with the ship Zelandia; he further added, that it would be very difficult to put this design in execution, unless they were provided with some galliots and yachts well armed.

Pursuant to this advice, the council ordered the yacht called the *Sprew*, with three other barks thither, to join with the ship Zelandia, for the more effectual execution of this design.

They set sail from the Receif the 2<sup>d</sup> of September, captain William Lambartz commodore. He return'd with the said yacht, and the Zelandia, the first of October, to the Receif, where he gave the following account of his expedition to the council.

We came the 22<sup>d</sup> of September within a half league of the fort of St. Maurice, where we met with a bark, which at the discharge of one of our cannon, sail'd away before us up the river. As we were in pursuit of her, we espied another small vessel, in company of the bark belonging to John Hoek, both full of soldiers: We saw the first of these two run ashore, and the soldiers landing, who skirmish'd with an opposite party for the defence of the vessel: Our yacht under favour of our cannon, boarded the said vessel, with an intention to set it on fire; but finding it laden with the baggage of our soldiers, fell to plundering first; and soon after espied a boat with a white flag, making all the sail they could towards them: Major Pappenheim, late commander of the fort of Rio St. Francisco, and Mr. Hoek, were in this boat, being sent by the enemy to let us know, that if we set fire to the vessel, he would cut all the prisoners with their wives and children to pieces, so that we desisted from it. They gave us an account, that the said fort had been forced to surrender three days before, for want of wood and provisions, after a siege of twenty six days: That the Portuguese having taken a serjeant with four soldiers of the garrison of Seragippo, had killed the soldiers, and sent the serjeant back with a convoy of two hundred men, to fetch the garrison of Seragippo, which had

Consultations about removing several garrisons to the Receif.

1645.

Some ships sent to Rio St. Francisco under William Lambartz.

He gives an account of his expedition.

The garrisons of the three forts forced to surrender.

Are carried to the Bahia.

Two Portuguese kill all the Dutch in their service.



the ship 1645.  
execution

f the cap-  
and gave  
nced into  
within a  
d to warm  
Portuguese  
was forced  
penetrate  
the other  
durst not  
that they  
n the ship  
t it would  
gn in exe-  
with some

council or-  
rew, with  
n with the  
ual execu-

f the 2<sup>d</sup> of Some ships  
ariz com- sent to Rio  
said yacht, St. Fran-  
October, to cisco under  
following William  
council. Lambart.

er within a He given  
r. Maurice, an account  
which at the of his ex-  
fail'd away pedition.

ere in pur-  
small vessel,  
ing to John  
ye saw the  
nd the fol-  
with an op-  
the vessel:  
ur cannon,  
n intention  
laden with  
l to plun-  
ied a boat  
e sail they  
enheim, late  
Francisco,  
at, being  
w, that if  
ld cut all  
d children  
it. They  
d fort had  
ys before,  
ns, after a  
the Portu-  
with four  
ippo, had  
e serjeant  
dred men,  
po, which  
had

1645.

had not above four days provision left, from thence. That about eight days before the surrender of the fort, colonel Haus, captain Listry, and captain Wilschut pass'd by that way in their journey to the *Babia*, whither they, pursuant to their capitulation, were to be carried with the rest of the prisoners, and from thence to *Portugal*; and so further to *Holland*, without any other loss except their baggage, being for the rest indifferently well treated. They further added, that the *Portuguese* not long ago detach'd two hundred men to the island of *Melchior Alvares*, in hopes to cut off the retreat of our men, and to prevent their excursions, but came too late, our people being retired before. That the enemy had likewise made themselves masters of the fort dos *Ajagados*, where Mr. Bullestraete being made a prisoner, was now on his way to the *Babia*. Captain Lambartiz hearing this account, thought it his best way to retreat towards the mouth of the river, where having spent two days in refitting his ships, he returned the first of October to the *Receif*.

The garri-  
sons of the  
three forts  
forced to  
surrender.

Are carri-  
ed to the  
*Babia*.

The same ill success attended us at *Seregiippo* and *Porto Calvo*; for the council having sent a bark with provisions to their relief, the same, contrary to her orders, came to anchor before *Rio St. Francisco*, where being seized by the enemy, the garri-son of *Seregiippo* being thereby disappointed in their hopes, were forced to surrender after they had spent all their provisions. After this misfortune, there was not the least probability left of saving the garri-son of *Porto Calvo*, which lying deep into the country, the river was not navigable thereabouts by reason of its narrowness; and that the enemy was master of the field on both sides, so that they were likewise obliged to surrender for want of necessaries. The garri-sons of these three forts, were contrary to their capitulation, (by virtue of which they were to be conducted to the *Receif*) carried prisoners to the *Babia*; but those that could not follow the rest, by reason of sickness, or otherwise, were cut to pieces by the *Portuguese*.

The Portu-  
guese kill  
all the  
Dutch in  
their ser-  
vice.

Many of the soldiers belonging to these as well as other garri-sons, and of the troops under colonel Haus, dreading the danger of the land-journey to the *Babia*, did take service among the *Portuguese*; but captain Nicholas Nicholson being sent with sixty four of these *Dutch* to prepare an ambush for some of our forces, took this opportunity to join with us, which exasperated the enemy to that degree, that they disarm'd all the *Dutch* that had taken service there, and murdered them in cool blood; the like they did with the *Dutch* inhabi-

taints that had staid behind in the country. 1645:

In the mean while the captainship of *Parayba*, through the good conduct of their governor Paul de Linge, remained in obedience, at least in outward appearance, 'till the 25<sup>th</sup> of August 1645, when the inhabitants, having received intelligence of the defeat of colonel Haus, and the surrender of the *Cape of St. Austin*, and being at the same time encouraged by the succours of five companies, and good store of arms, sent to them by Vidal from *Pernambuco*, they began also to take up arms, with an intention to cut off the communication be-  
tween the garri-son in the Monastery of *St. Francisco*, as the inhabitants of *Fredericia*, (a place of no strength) and the forts near the sea shore; but Mr. Linge shrewdly sus-  
pecting their design, did with consent of the rest of the officers there, order all the citizens with their effects, and the before-  
mentioned garri-son to withdraw within these forts, to prevent their being surpris'd by the *Portuguese*, and to serve as an addi-  
tional strength for the defence of the forts; for which reason also the *Brasilians* inhabit-  
ing with their families in those parts, were  
commanded to intrench themselves under the cannon, which served for outworks to them. The enemy finding themselves by the conjunction of these forces, disappointed in their design of making themselves  
masters of *Parayba* by force, had recourse to their wonted artifice, not questioning, but they might have the same success in purchasing the forts of *Parayba*, as they  
had had at the *Cape of St. Austin*. To en-  
compass which, they sent in September 1645, one Ferdinand Rodrigo de Bulbaus, clerk of the court of justice of *Parayba*, with a let-  
ter directed to the commander in chief, Paul Vander Linge, offering him the sum of 19000 gilders, if he would surrender the said fort into their hands. But this message had not the desired effect, the messenger being by order from Mr. de Linge taken into custo-  
dy and hanged the next day; of which he sent notice to the council the 16<sup>th</sup> of  
September. In the mean while, (according to Mr. de Linge's letter from the 6<sup>th</sup> of Sep-  
tember) five companies more of the ene-  
mies troops, making in all about three  
hundred Men, were arrived in *Parayba*,  
which being join'd by the ablest of the in-  
habitants, had posted themselves near *Ti-  
bery*, where they had published by procla-  
mation, for every one to repair to his sugar-  
mill, under pain of forfeiting the same.

Result is  
Parayba.

Their mes-  
senger  
hanged.

The Passage betwixt the *Ajagados* and the *Quinquangular-Fort*, where the cattle belonging to the *Receif* were kept at pasture, being much infested by the enemies parties, one of which had taken good part of

1645. of it, a small wooden fort was ordered to be erected in the most convenient post, for the security of the meadows thereabouts.

Sometime before, viz. the 26<sup>th</sup> of July, orders were sent from the council to *Servaes Carpenter*, to disarm the inhabitants of *Goyana*, who thereupon petitioned the said council to be excused from surrendering their Arms, considering that thirty seven *Portuguese* of *Kunbau*, who had been disarmed, were murdered by the *Tapoyers*, and that they were daily in fear of the same treatment, 'till they were further removed from their borders. The council answered, that the murder committed upon these *Portuguese* had been done without their knowledge, and contrary to their orders; that in case they persisted in their allegiance, they had nothing to fear from the *Tapoyers*, whilst they were under their protection; neither ought they to imagine that the disarming of them, was done with an intention to leave them a prey to the *Tapoyers*, but for our own security, and to furnish them with a plausible excuse not to join with the rebels, whenever they should be prompted therunto by them. At the same time they repeated their orders to *Mr. Carpenter*, not to desist from disarming those of *Goyana*, notwithstanding their petition to the contrary, but that he should be very careful, that neither the soldiers, nor *Brazilians* of *Marni* might be burthensome to them. The council also deputed *Mr. Astelle* and captain *William Lambartz*, with letters to *John Dwy* and *Karakara*, the first king, and the second commander in chief of a troop of the *Tapoyers*, with presents to all the rest of their commanders, in order to engage them to join with us, they having complained of their not having been presented, like as *John Dwy* was before; accordingly the said *Mr. Astelle* and captain *William Lambartz* having taken their leave the 28<sup>th</sup> of August of the council, took shipping for *Parayba*, in order to go from thence to *Kunbau* to treat with the *Tapoyers*.

The Members of the Court of Justice and the council of war, in conjunction with the magistrates, having represented to the great council the absolute necessity of having the houses in *Maurice's Town* pull'd down and laid level with the ground; an order of the said council was publish'd the 29<sup>th</sup> of August by beat of drum, enjoining the inhabitants to pull down such houses, within the space of two days, and in case of failure, every body to be at liberty to break down the same for his use; the house of *Mr. Rechteren* only excepted, which was to be converted into a redoubt, for the defence of the adjacent plain. The same

day *John Denninger*, lately lieutenant to colonel *Haus*, succeeded captain *Blaar*, now a prisoner with the enemy, in his command; and many negroes offered to serve the company under a captain of their own choosing.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of August, captain *William Lambartz*, with part of his forces return'd to the Recef from *Parayba*, where he gave the council an account of his negotiation: That not without a great deal of trouble they at last obtained two hundred *Tapoyers* from their king *John Dwy*, who pretended that he dreaded an incursion from one of his neighbours, who in the absence of his troops might perhaps kill him with all his family, and demanded at the same time, that all the *Portuguese* might be killed in *Parayba*. That he marching with these *Tapoyers* into the said captainship of *Parayba*, they actually slew all the *Portuguese* they met with in their way, to the number of one hundred persons, and plunder'd their houses; and as soon as they found him prepared to appease them, one half of them, with what negroes and other booty they had got, return'd home; but continuing his march with the rest thro' *Goyana* towards the Recef, the *Tapoyers* did no sooner understand, that they were likely to meet with some opposition by the way, but they followed the footsteps of the rest homewards; so that he was forced to retire with all speed to the fort of *St. Margaret* in *Parayba*, from whence he returned by sea to the Recef. Hereupon the council dispatched some letters the 16<sup>th</sup> of September for *Rio Grande*, directed to king *John Dwy*, *Jacob Rabbi* and *Rudolf Baro*, exhorting them to join their arms with ours, for our mutual defence, and to chase the *Portuguese* that were on their march thither, from thence.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of September 1645, *Jeronymo Serrao da Paiva*, late admiral of the *Portuguese* fleet, (made prisoners in the late sea engagement in the bay of *Tamandare*) appeared before the council, where being examined concerning the designs of the governor of the *Babia* in sending a fleet, and landing his forces in the Bay of *Tamandare*, as likewise concerning the fleet under the command of *Salvador Correa de Saa*, he refused to give any other answer, or to make the least confession, except that he was sent with the said fleet and forces to offer his assistance to appease the revolt arisen among us. He desired also leave to send a letter by a drummer to the colonels *Martin Soares Moreno* and *Andrew Vidal*, about the exchanging of his person, and some other *Portuguese* Prisoners, which was granted.

Some

Deputies  
sent the  
Tapoyers

The ju-  
ces of  
their ne-  
gotiation.

The To-  
poyers a-  
jert.

Company  
of fusileers  
erected.

The ex-  
tra Por-  
tuguese  
admiral  
examined.

1645.  
 lieutenant to  
 Captain Blaaz,  
 my, in his  
 offered to  
 gain of their

tain William  
 cees return'd  
 here he gave  
 negotiation:  
 deal of trou-  
 hundred Ta-  
 Duwy, who  
 an incurion  
 who in the  
 perhaps kill  
 d demanded  
 ne Portuguese

That he  
 into the said  
 actually flew  
 with in their  
 hundred per-  
 atics; and as  
 ed to appease  
 ith what ne-  
 had got, re-  
 g his march  
 towards the  
 sooner under-  
 to meet with  
 but they fol-  
 homewards;  
 with all speed  
 in Parayba,  
 sea to the Re-  
 il dispatched  
 member for Rio  
 on Duwy, Ja-  
 shorting them  
 for our mutu-  
 Portuguese that  
 from thence.

45. Jeronymo  
 l of the Por-  
 in the late sea  
 mandare) ap-  
 ere being ex-  
 ns of the go-  
 s, or to make  
 t he was sent  
 to offer his  
 old arisen a-  
 eave to send  
 colonels Mar-  
 Vidal, about  
 n, and some  
 which was

Some

1645. Some of the citizens having conceived a jealousy, as if their pressing circumstances and the need they stood in of present relief, had not been sufficiently represented to the council of nineteen in Holland, it was thought fit by the council to communicate the contents of the two last letters to them for their satisfaction.

The 19<sup>th</sup> of September, about noon, our whole fleet retired from the bay of Tamandare into the road of the Recife, with two men of war, and two small vessels taken from the enemy; where I was arrived long before, having left them, immediately after the engagement. The same night *Servaes Carpenter* who died the day before, was interr'd. The same day the yacht call'd the *Doe*, and one of the small vessels taken from the enemy, and call'd by us the Recife, were sent out a cruising to the Cape of St. Austín, to prevent the enemies receiving any supplies by sea thereabouts.

Company  
 of Fusiliers  
 erected.

The council being sensible that the enemy made it their chiefest endeavour to drive away their cattle, and to prevent them, by strong parties from fetching of wood and fishing, a company of fusiliers was order'd to be erected out of other companies, who were to be commanded by captain *Renbagh*, and to serve as a constant guard against the enemy's flying parties. The 21<sup>st</sup> of September, the following proclamation of pardon for such as had taken service with the enemy, was publish'd.

#### A PARDON publish'd.

THE great council of the Dutch-Brasil being made sensible, that many of their subjects being fallen into the enemies hands, have either for fear of being killed or transported, and out of other considerations, taken service among the enemies troops, and considering that most of them have been inveig'd by their commanders, and perhaps are in a fair way of repenting of their error, have thought fit, by these presents to grant our pardon to all such as shall return to our service, for all past offences; with our promise, that they shall receive the advantage of the same station they were possess'd of among us before; and such as are willing to return to their native country, shall have passports granted them for that purpose; from the benefit of which pardon, are however excepted *Dirck Hoogstrate*, and the other traitors, who being commanders of forts, have treacherously delivered up the same to the enemy.

By this time the enemy had block'd up all the avenues by land, leading to the Recife, in hopes to reduce us by famine, having posted both all the Portuguese forces sent to their aid from the *Babia*, and the

1645.  
 rebellious troops, from the city of Olinda to the *Baretta*, in the form of a half-moon; and made about half a league from the fort of *Affagados* an entrenchment provided with six pieces of heavy cannon, brought hither from *Porto Calvo*; but durst not attack us by force, knowing we were prepared for their reception.

Mr. *Dortmund* having by his letters represented to the council, the necessity there was of sending one of their members to provide for the security of *Itamarika*, and to keep the *Brasilians*, (consisting of 1500 men, women and children) by his authority in their duty against the solicitations of *Kamaron*, who left no stone unturn'd to bring them over to his side; they desired Mr. *Bullestrate* to take upon him this province; who accordingly the 23<sup>d</sup> of September, set sail thither in the ship the *Deventer*, and returning the 29<sup>th</sup> of September to the Recife, gave the following account to the council.

Mr. Bulle-  
 strate sent  
 to Itama-  
 rika.

He arrived about noon at the entrance of the river *Maria Farinha*, where being informed by *John Vos*, master of a bark, that the enemy had twice attack'd the city of *Sboppe*, and continued before it still, he went into a challop, with five or six seamen to the fort *Orange*, but was no sooner espied by the garrison, but they desired him not to come nearer, they being still smartly engaged with the enemy upon the hill, and doubtful of success: Whereupon he sent two seamen, with a letter to Mr. *Dortmund*, who being encouraged by the reward of two reals, brought an answer from him the same night, intimating that the enemy, had been forced to retire.

An account  
 of his pro-  
 ceeding.

The 25<sup>th</sup> of August, by break of day, he went in a challop to the city of *Sboppe*, and finding that the enemy, what with the brave resistance made by the garrison, what with fear of this ship, had abandon'd not only the city, but also the whole island, he ordered the fortifications to be forthwith repaired, and to be put into a good posture of defence.

For the enemy perceiving, that it was in vain to attack us upon the Recife, sent great part of their forces, embark'd in 8 boats and a bark against *Itamarika*, the 20<sup>th</sup> of September; where having surprized, and vigorously attack'd our forces posted on the hill near the city, (our deserters making the first attack) that they the third time made themselves masters of it, forcing our troops to retreat into their entrenchment of the church.

The Portu-  
 guese at-  
 tack Itama-  
 rika.

About three days after, viz. the 23<sup>d</sup>, Mr. *Bullestrate*, as we told you, arrived in the ship *Deventer*, to give the necessary orders for the defence of the place; and to keep the *Brasilians* in awe, he brought along with

D d him

1645. him some volunteers chosen from among the citizens, the garrison of the *Receif* being so weak as not to be readred useless by any further detachments; besides that there were 400 *Brasilians* capable of bearing arms at *Itamarika*. He was charged by the great council, and the members of the council of war, to watch above all things for the defence of the fort *Orange*, which was to be maintained to the last, if they were not able to keep the whole island on the hill.

Mr. *Bullestrate*, after his arrival there, found it absolutely necessary to preserve likewise the city of *Schoepe*, from whence the said fort must be supplied with wood, its situation being such, as that so long as we were masters at sea, we could maintain a correspondence betwixt the said fort and city; for which purpose also, the yacht call'd the *Golden-Doe*, had her station appointed betwixt the fort *Orange* and the hill, to maintain the passage of the river between both. But to return to the siege of the city: The enemy made three vigorous attacks upon the entrenchment on the hill, but was repulsed with the loss of 150 kill'd; tho' a barber, who after the fight deserted them, made their loss amount to 450. *Kamaron* and *Hoogstrate* were wounded, and we had only 15 kill'd and 16 wounded. The *Brasilians* lately transported thither, from the villages of *Goyana*, *Iguaracu*, and other places, behaved themselves to a miracle upon this occasion, tho' it must be allowed, that the arrival of Mr. *Bullestrate* did not a little cool their courage, which made them abandon the island in the night, betwixt Sunday and Monday.

Abandon  
it again.

Further  
consultations  
about  
the safety  
of *Itama-  
rika*.

The 2<sup>d</sup> of *October* the great council entered upon a second debate concerning the preservation of *Itamarika*, they having received certain intelligence, that the enemy had undertaken the last expedition against that island, upon hopes of being seconded therein by certain persons of our party, with whom they kept a secret correspondence; and tho' they were in the dark upon whom in particular to fix the intended treachery, yet did they think it conducing to the safety of that so important place, to remove captain *Sluyter* with his company from thence, and in their stead to send thither the company commanded by captain *William Lambartz*, and to entrust him with the supreme command of all their forces there, which was put in execution accordingly the next day. The entrenchment round the church and the fort *Orange*, were also ordered to be strengthened with palisadoes; and the first, pursuant to the advice of *Garstman* and *Dortmund*, I ordered to be surrounded with a counterfence, within the

compass of which a company of *Brasilians* were lodged, with their wives and children, and the rest to be employed in the defence of the fort *Orange*; so the redoubt which commanded the place, from which the fort was supplied with water, was ordered to be repaired against a sudden attack, with which the fort could not long subsist, hold out against an enemy.

Letters were about the same time delivered to the council, dated the 5<sup>th</sup> of *October*, by Major *Anstijn de Magerbaas*, sent by *Andrew Vidal*, to treat about the exchange of prisoners; he told them, that since admiral *Serraes de Paiva*, had by two several letters solicited his release, he desired that the same might be exchanged for other soldiers, or be ransomed by *Antonio Telles da Sylva*, governor of the *Bahia*. He desired also that a cartel might be agreed upon for the exchange of the soldiers; and that in the mean while such of the *Portuguese* inhabitants, as were prisoners with us, might be released for reasonable ransom, which was not accepted of by the council.

In the mean while, (pursuant to the letters from the commander in chief of *Rio Grande*, and *John Hoek* of the 6<sup>th</sup> of *October*) *Jacob Rabbi*, with a small troop of *Tapoyers* and *Brasilians*, in conjunction with 30 *Dutch* inhabitants, made themselves masters of the seat of *John Lestian*, with the slaughter of 15 *Portuguese*. But they had not the same success at *Fernandes Menda's* house in *Poti-gi*, which being defended by 50 *Portuguese*, they were repulsed with some loss.

The enemies finding themselves disappointed in their design of gaining *Parayba* by treachery, did again apply all their care to block up all the avenues leading to the *Receif*, in hopes of reducing it by famine. This occasioned many skirmishes, in which the *Brasilians*, who got the greatest part of their provision out of the country, did a considerable mischief to the *Portuguese*; who for their greater security built a fort in *Pernambuko* (as they likewise did in the *Vargea* of *Parayba*) near the sugar-mill of *George Huomo Pinio*, but slightly fortified, and not able to hold out against any vigorous attack. In *Rio Grande* the *Tapoyers* plaid the matters over the *Portuguese*; for as we told you before, that according to their custom they entered the said captainship in *July* 1645, when being informed of the rebellion of the *Portuguese* in *Pernambuko*, they out of an in-born hatred to that nation, attacked the 16<sup>th</sup> of *July* some of them in the sugar-mill of *Kunbae*, and killed every soul of them, the *Dutch* inhabitants thereabouts not being strong enough to prevent it. From thence the *Tapoyers* marched to *Monpobu*, *Goyana*, and

1645.

Vidal solicited the  
exchange  
of prisoners.

Fifty  
Portuguese  
killed by  
the *Tapoyers*.

The *Tapoyers* clear  
Rio Grande of the  
*Portuguese*.

An account  
of the ene-  
mies for-  
ces.

*Brasilians* 1645.  
children, the defence  
subt which  
the fort  
ordered to  
back, with-  
ing subfist,

time deli-  
th of Oñ-  
ies, sent by  
e exchange  
t since ad-  
two feveral  
he defired  
aged for o-  
by Antonio

*Babia.* He  
t be agreed  
ldiers; and  
the Portu-  
gers with us,  
ole ransom,  
the council.  
e to the let-  
chief of Rio  
of Oñtober)  
of Tapoyers  
ith 30 Dutch  
natters of the  
laughter of  
not the same  
ouse in Poti-  
b Portuguese,  
ofs.

elves disap-  
ing Parayba  
ly all their  
ues leading  
ucing it by  
skirmishes,  
ot the great-  
f the coun-  
chief to the  
ter security  
they like-  
ayba) near  
Pinto, but  
to hold out  
Rio Gra-  
vers over the  
ou before,  
they entred  
645, when  
of the Por-  
ked the 16<sup>th</sup>  
ear-mill of  
them, the  
not being  
rom thence  
y, Goyana,  
and

1645. and *Palefi*, places belonging likewise to  
*Rio Grande*, where finding a body of *Portu-  
guese* entrenched with pallisadoes in the  
nature of a *Palanka*, they forced them in  
conjunction with some *Brasilians*, to sur-  
render, under condition that their lives  
should be saved, provided they did not  
give any further occasion of disturbance.  
But some of the *Portuguese* flying after-  
wards into *Parayba*, the *Tapoyers* looking  
upon this as a breach of the late treaty,  
did with the beforementioned *Brasilians* a-  
gree to put the rest to the sword where-  
ever they met with them, which they did  
accordingly, the *Brasilians* exclaiming a-  
gainst the tyranny committed upon thirty  
or forty of their comrades, who by  
*Andrew Vidal's* order, were tied to pallisadoes  
in *Serinbaim* and strangled, which had  
this good effect, that *Rio Grande* for that  
time was entirely purged of the rebellious  
crew, except some few who escaped their  
hands. Their estates and cattle were af-  
terwards disposed for the benefit of the  
company, and others their creditors, which  
furnished the publick magazines with good  
store of flesh, at a very seasonable time.  
The *Portuguese* being sensible that we drew  
considerable supplies of provisions from  
that country, endeavoured to prevent it  
by sending several bodies of their troops  
thither, but were always forced to retire to  
*Parayba*, whither they carried as much  
cattle along with them as they could.

According to the deposition of captain  
*Nicolas Nicholson* (who came over to us the  
12<sup>th</sup> of November, as we shall see anon) the  
four companies of Dutch quartered in the  
*Vargea*, were as follows.

The company of *Nicolas Nicholson*, 63  
men, and among them 23 musquets.

The company of *Alexander Buckball*, of  
43 men, among whom 36 musquets.

The company of captain *Anthony*, who  
was mortally wounded in a late engage-  
ment, consisting of 36 men, and among  
them 32 musquets.

The company of *John de Wilt*, of 40 men,  
but miserable wretches, and among them  
only 12 musquets.

Besides these they had two other Dutch  
companies in *Goyana*, one commanded by  
*George Peterson* of 17 men, all pikes, the  
other by *La Cour* of 19 men, likewise most  
pikes. They had also two more in *Paray-  
ba*, one under the command of captain *Peter  
Gendre* of 19 men, most pikes; the se-  
cond by *Edward Verfman* of 20 men, among  
whom was but one musqueteer: So that the  
whole number of these eight companies, a-  
mounted to no more than 257 men; their  
colonel was *Hoogstrate*, and *Francis la Tour*  
late alderman of *Serinbaim*, major, a pro-

1645. felt enemy to the *Hollanders*. Most of the  
*Dutch* prisoners were put under a necessity  
of taking service with the enemy, being  
otherwise in danger of being murdered in  
their way to the *Babia*, as it happened to  
42 prisoners taken at the cape of *St. Au-  
stin*, who were all slain in the sugar-mill  
*Konjan*, near *Serinbaim*. He further de-  
clared, that the enemies forces in the *Vergea*,  
consisted of about 700 men sent from the  
*Babia*, divided into nine companies, well  
armed with musquets and firelocks. That  
besides these, they had about 100 men, ga-  
thered from among the *Portuguese* inhabi-  
tants, they having forced all the young men  
from the fouth of *Huma*, as far as *St. Law-  
rence* to take up arms; some being armed  
with firelocks, others with musquets they  
had taken from us; they were for the most  
part mulats, and an undisciplined rabble,  
commanded by *John Fernand Vieira* as co-  
lonel, and *Anthony Dias* (who came from  
the *Babia*) their major. Their captains most  
in esteem among them were, *Simon Mendes*,  
*Domingos Fagundes*, and *John d'Albuquerque*.  
*Kamaron* commanded 100 *Brasilians* armed  
with blunderbuffes, and *Dias* 200 negroes  
(among whom 50 were ours) provided with  
very good guns; besides some *Tapoyers*.  
Each soldier had for his daily allowance,  
a pound of meat, and about a pint of farin-  
ha or meal, and 12 gilders per month; a  
captain 120 gilders, an ensign 42, a ser-  
geant 21, and a corporal 15 gilders per  
month. But they only paid the Dutch  
troops with ready money, the account with  
the *Portuguese* from the *Babia* being made  
up but once a year. They were at that  
time busy in raising of a fort with four  
small bastions and a powder house, be-  
twixt *Bierbrom's* sugar-mill and *Casa de Sa-  
brodo*, upon each of which were to be  
mounted three pieces of cannon, eight  
pieces having been brought for that pur-  
pose from *Porto Calvo*, among which were  
five of metal. Round about this fort the  
soldiers from the *Babia* had their quarters  
assigned them, except the company com-  
manded by *John de Magebais*, which was  
quartered in the *Baretta*, with four Dutch  
companies, viz. the Dutch that were in the  
sugar-mill of *Bierbrom*, and those com-  
manded by captain *Peter Kavalkanti*, and  
*Anthony Jaconio*, and two or three compa-  
nies of the *Portuguese* come from the *Ba-  
bia*, in the sugar-mill *Brito*; the rest being  
*Portuguese*, *Mulats*, and other idle fellows  
they had forced to follow them from the  
fouth. These were armed for the most part  
with firelocks and musquets, the rest with  
pikes, *Andrew Vidal*, *John Fernand Vieira*,  
and major *Hoogstrate*, were at that time in  
the *Casa de Sabrodo*; all these consisted not

in

The Tapoyers clear  
Rio Grande of the  
Portuguese.

Vidal de-  
clares the  
exchange  
of priso-  
ners.

First  
Portuguese  
killed by  
the Ta-  
poyers.

An account  
of the ene-  
mies for-  
ces.



1645. in above 600 men. About the sugar-mill of *John de Mendance* were quartered three companies, two at the house of *Sebastian Karvalho*, and two more in the sugar-mill of *Mengao*. The rest were posted in the *Salinas*, *Baretta*, and the city of *Olinda*. Some of *Kamaron's* troops were in the sugar-mill of *Van Scholl*, and in the house of *John Kordero de Mendoje*, upon the bank of the river, being their advanced guard; *Henry Dias* with his troops had his post in the house of *Mr. Luffelen*. The redoubts belonging to the city of *Olinda*, were manned only with 17 soldiers.

In November the great council received intelligence, both by letters from *Paulo de Linge* out of *Parayba*, as also by several deserters, that the enemy had sent 400 men, 200 of which were soldiers, the rest inhabitants, from *Rio Grande* into *Parayba*, to make themselves masters of the open country, or at least to drive away the cattle; whereupon it was resolved, with consent of colonel *Garjman*, to endeavour to hinder the execution of the enemies design.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of November, captain *Nicholas Nicholson*, a native of *Amsterdam*, came, as we told you before, over to us to the *Receif*. He was among other prisoners of the cape of *St. Austen*, carried from thence to *St. Antonio*, where he took service among the *Portuguese*, but with no other intention than to desert them upon the first opportunity; he being intrusted with a captain's commission, to command a company of *Dutch* soldiers forced to list themselves from among the prisoners they had taken, was ordered, at the recommendation of *Hoogstrate*, and *Albert Genitz Weddo*, with the approbation of *Vidal* and *John Vieira*, to lye in ambush for some of our people in the *Salinas*, with a detachment of 60 men, out of the four *Dutch* companies in their service; and four more companies were ordered for a reserve, to assist him upon all occasions. The supreme command of the whole body being committed to him, he approached as near as he could with his *Dutch* to the fort *Bruin*, where he took the opportunity to pass the river by break of day, and to go with them (they being all willing to follow) over to us to the said fort. Captain *Nicholas Nicholson* had the command over the said company confirmed to him by the council, they being all willing to enter into their service: But the enemy had no sooner notice of it, but they disarmed all the *Dutch*, and under pretence of sending them to the *Babia*, caused them to be murdered by the way, with their wives and children.

The 2<sup>nd</sup> of November, the council had received advice from *Mr. Linge* from *Parayba*,

that *Andrew Vidal* had entred that captainship with 200 men, and that *Kamaron* had by letters strongly solicited *Peter Petty*, to desert our service with his *Brasilians*; but had received a smart refusal, the council sent him two pieces of fine linnen cloth as a reward of his fidelity. For it ought to be observed, that the *Portuguese* when they first began to take up arms against the government, did with letters and great promises, tempt the *Regidors* or commanders of the *Brasilians* to join with them, but they were so far from hearkening to them, that they sent all the letters written upon that account, both by *Kamaron* and the rest of the rebellious ringleaders, without opening to the council, thereby to avoid all suspicion of keeping any correspondence with the enemy, *Peter Petty* being a near kinsman of *Kamaron*; and ever since that time they have behaved themselves so well upon all occasions, and have done such considerable mischief to the *Portuguese*, by plundering and killing them, wherever they could meet with them, that we had not the least reason to mistrust the sincerity of their intentions.

The said *Mr. Linge* did also send word (November the 4<sup>th</sup>), that the enemy had attempted nothing as yet; and from November 14, that a party of 300 of our people being joined by some *Brasilians* of *Parayba*, had engaged 800 of the enemies troops, whom after a smart engagement they put to the rout, with the slaughter of a good number of their men. The *Brasilians* being encouraged by this success, did over-run all the flat country, and meeting with a good number of *Portuguese*, who were merrymaking upon *St. Martin's* eve in the sugar mill of *Andrew Dias de Tigeireda*, they attacked them so furiously, that after a slender resistance they put them all to the sword, even the son of the said *Tigeireda* himself, and a priest, without giving quarter to any body, except to a very beautiful maiden; who though almost distracted at the death of her father, and some of her other relations, that lay wallowing in their own blood, had such a powerful influence upon the hearts of these *Barbarians*, that they brought her a prisoner safely to the fort of *Parayba*.

The 21<sup>st</sup> of November towards the evening, 360 soldiers (20 of whom were taken from the *Receif*) set sail in small boats to the bay of *Traican*, and continued their march the same night, under the command of lieutenant *Berge*, justice *Hoek*, and the receiver-general of *Pernambuko*, towards *Kunbaos*, in order to attack the enemy that were lately come into *Rio Grande* from *Parayba*; but these enemies having got some intel-

Captain  
Nicholas  
Nicholson  
deserts the  
enemy.

The Dutch  
defeat the  
Portuguese.

Advice  
that all  
the Dutch  
were killed  
by the Por-  
tuguese.

Four com-  
panies of  
soldiers re-  
jected.

The Ten  
years  
many  
Portuguese

The Dutch  
attack  
Portuguese  
near  
Kunbaos  
out

1645. in  
A  
w  
th  
w  
th  
w  
to  
th  
tr  
  
fer  
ca  
fir  
str  
ta  
gr  
of  
ha  
de  
tic  
ter  
pin  
wh  
ce  
ma  
th  
lan

de  
the  
and  
wa  
cer  
ker  
ter  
hin  
all  
wh

con  
the  
mo  
pun  
cup  
Nid  
pit

Por  
the  
on  
the  
the  
and  
Hol  
on  
giv  
Gol  
son  
nyb  
ted  
Sta  
by



1645. intelligence of our designs, were retired from *Kunkao* to a retrenchment among the bogs, which being accessible but in one place, they so warmly saluted our forces that would have forced them from thence, with their shot, that they were obliged to retreat with the loss of some dead and wounded, to the castle of *Koulen*, partly to refresh their men, partly to prevent their penetrating deeper into the council.

The 4<sup>th</sup> of December it was resolved to send the ship the *Overyffel*, and the yacht called the *Sprew*, towards the *Babia* a cruising, to get intelligence of their naval strength thereabouts, and to endeavour to take some prizes. The 5<sup>th</sup> of December the great council sent for all the commanders of the *Brasilians*, to inform them, that they had received considerable supplies of powder, ball, and all other sorts of ammunition, by the ship called the *Swan*, with letters from *Holland*, that they were equipping a considerable fleet for their relief, at which the *Brasilians* were extremely rejoiced; the *Portuguese* commanders having made it their business to persuade them, that no such thing was expected from *Holland*.

The same evening a *Brasilian* deserter declared, that all the *Dutch* were killed by the rebellious inhabitants, and their wives and children made slaves. The same thing was confirmed by a negro deserter, concerning captain *Bockholt*; who having taken service with the enemy, and being afterwards suspected by them, had caused him to be murdered, as they had done with all the rest of the *Dutch* in their service, who were slain in their way to the *Babia*.

The 7<sup>th</sup> of December it was resolved in council, to erect four companies of fusiliers, the same being found by experience to be more serviceable at this juncture, for which purpose the companies of colonel *Garfman*, captain *Jurian Remberger*, captain *Nicolas Nicolson*, and captain *John Taylor*, were pitched upon before all the rest.

In the same month of December, a certain *Portuguese*, *Gasper Goncalves*, was taken by the *Brasilians* in the island of *Itamarika*, sent on purpose to persuade the *Brasilians*, that the *Dutch* intended to deliver them up to the *Portuguese* for a certain sum of money, and they to retire with their effects into *Holland*, which caused no small commotion among the *Brasilians*, who began to give credit to the relation. And because *Goncalves* had spread this rumour abroad some time before the arrival of *Caspar Honnybousje* (who the 28<sup>th</sup> of August was appointed commander in chief of the *Brasilians* of *Itamarika* instead of *Lisby* taken prisoner by the enemy) he was hardly put to it how

Vol. II.

to remove this jealousy from among them. *Jacob Rabbi*, pursuant to his letters of the 11<sup>th</sup> of December, was about the same time preparing to enter 80 leagues further into the country towards the *Tapoyers*, to solicit their assistance: He at last came to *Oyeye*, son-in-law of king *Duwy*, who promised, in case those of *Siara* would send their troops to us, he would endeavour to raise as many of his vassals as he could; but king *Duwy* excused himself under pretence that many of his troops died by sickness in the *Sartan*.

The night before the 27<sup>th</sup> of December, the enemy had by means of a boat, fastened two puppets with fire-works to the ship called the *Swan*; but being discovered as soon as it took fire, was soon quenched without doing any damage to the vessel, which made the ships to be constantly upon their guard for the future.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of December two such puppets found by two soldiers in a small boat near the fort *Bruin*, were presented to the council. This boat, which questionless was sent on purpose to fasten these puppets to some ship or other, being discovered by the centinels, the men quitted the boat, leaving the said puppets behind them.

Mr. *de Lange*, by his letters dated the 30<sup>th</sup> of December from the fort *St. Margaret* in *Parayba*, advised, that a certain negro who had deserted the enemies quarter of *St. Andrew* had declared, that the enemy had built two large barks in order to transport 300 men in each, in order to attack *Peter Potty* commander of the *Brasilians* in his entrenchments. That *Kamaron* had been near three weeks in *Parayba*, the enemies troops consisting thereabouts in 16 companies; but that they had many sick among them for want of provisions, and that they had drawn all their forces out of *Rio Grande*.

The 6<sup>th</sup> of January 1646, *Peter Bas* one of the members of the great council, did by order from the said council, set sail with the two ships the *Lichtbart* and the *Receif* and a bark called the *Blue-Boar*, towards the captainships of *Parayba* and *Rio Grande*. His instructions were, to consult with Mr. *Linge* commander in chief in *Parayba*, and the rest of the officers there, how to put the intrenchments and other works of the *Brasilians* into a posture of defence. From thence he was to go to *Rio Grande*, there to take an exact account both of the real estates and chattels of such *Portuguese*, as by reason of their being engaged with the rebels, were forfeited to the company; he was also to use his endeavours to have those goods which were upon that account concealed or embezzled, restored for the benefit of the said company. He was also

E c

ordered

1645.

The Portuguese endeavoured to fire the Dutch ships.

Mr. Bas's commission.

1645. ordered to act in all other respects, but especially in providing for the security of the captainship and the fort, as he found it most consistent with our present interest, and to exhort the inhabitants to remain steadfast in their duty, and not to neglect the cultivating of the grounds and breeding of cattle.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of January, *Peter Dunkerke* arrived from *Parayba*, where he had been a cruising before the *Receif* in the ship *Hamel*; he brought a letter from Mr. *Linge*, dated in the fort *St. Margaret*, the 11<sup>th</sup> of January, who sent also one Mr. *Steinbuisen* to the council, he having deserted the enemy when they began to kill the *Dutch* in their service. This *Steenbuisen* brought advice to the council, that *Kamaron* with 500 well-appointed soldiers, was marched out of *Parayba* into *Rio Grande* to be master of the field there; and consequently to keep our garrisons from being supplied with cattle and farinha from thence. He further added, that the enemy were in want of meat, oil, and other necessaries; but that the inhabitants flattered themselves, that for want of provisions, we should shortly be obliged to surrender our forts into the hands of the *Portuguese*. This being likewise confirmed by Mr. *Linge*'s letter dated the 10<sup>th</sup> of January, a council was called against the 13<sup>th</sup> of January, *Dirk Hamel*, and Mr. *Bullestrate* being present, both members of the great council, besides the assessor *Walbeck*, as likewise lieutenant colonel *Garfman*, Mr. *Raetsfeld*, Mr. *de Witt*, *Alrich*, *Volbergen*, and *Sams*, in order to deliberate concerning the present exigency, considering, that in case we should, by the enemies being masters of the field, be bereaved of the supplies of cattle and farinha of *Rio Grande*, at a juncture when *Itamarika* and *Parayba* are closely beset by their troops, it would be next to an impossibility to maintain ourselves in the possession of the *Dutch Brasil*, till the arrival of the expected succours from *Holland*. It was therefore taken into consideration, whether this captainship might be best secured by a powerful diversion, or by endeavouring to drive him from thence. But being sensible that the enemy were so powerful near the *Receif*, *Parayba*, and *Itamarika*, as not to be attack'd in any of these places, without exposing the whole *Dutch Brasil* to an imminent danger, it was resolved, that in order to attempt the relief of the captainship of *Rio Grande*, Mr. *Dortmund* should be ordered to send 60 soldiers under the command of captain *Welling*, and 100 *Brasilians*, in the barks sent him for that purpose, from *Itamarika* to *Rio Grande*: At the same time orders were dispatch to Mr. *Linge*, com-

An account of the enemies' design.

Consultations held hereupon.

Their resolution.

mander in the fort *St. Margaret* in *Parayba*, to send the same number of soldiers under lieutenant *Bresman*, and of *Brasilians* to *Rio Grande*, to join with the rest that were to rendezvous there. These forces consisting of 120 soldiers and 200 *Brasilians*, set sail the 19<sup>th</sup> of January for *Rio Grande*, and were thought sufficient to oppose the enemies designs on that side.

Mr. *Dortmont* and *William Lambartz*, by a letter dated the 15<sup>th</sup> of January, gave notice to the council, that they had sent a body of 60 soldiers and 100 *Brasilians* abroad, as far in the *Aldea* by *Oubus*, and from thence to the sugar-mill *Arraripe*, but did not meet with any enemies in that part of the country, tho' they had several guns discharged at them from among the woods; so that they return'd to *Itamarika* by the way of *Tapasima*.

Mr. *Linge* not long after sent advice by his letter dated the 22<sup>d</sup> of January, at the fort of *St. Margaret* in *Parayba* to the council, that *Peter Potty* with 150 *Brasilians* had attack'd the enemy 400 strong in the *Aldea* of *Magrebe*, and put them to flight with the loss of 20 killed, and many wounded, whereas they lost but one *Brasilian*.

The 29<sup>th</sup> of January it was resolved in council, to bring the ships the *Elias*, *Orange-Tree*, *Deventer*, *Omlandia* and the *Swan*, into the road of the *Receif*, to be ready upon all occasions, in case the enemy should again appear at sea.

Mr. *Bas*, pursuant to his letter from the castle of *Keulen* in *Rio Grande*, dated the 23<sup>d</sup> of January, could not, by reason of a tempest, land his forces at *Kunbao*, in order to join them with those under captain *Rbineburgb*; but was forced to land his forces the 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> near *Peringi*. In the mean while *Kamaron* having found means to break in through the *Matla*, had surprised many of the inhabitants in their *Fazendas*, and kill'd them without distinction of age or sex: He had since posted himself with his forces, consisting of 400 soldiers, as many *Brasilians*, and 80 *Tapoyars*, under the command of *Antonio Jacomo Besterro*, at a house of *Henry Hamme* in *Mompabou*, to cut off the provisions from us. Our forces consisting of about 1000 soldiers, *Brasilians* and *Tapoyars*, march'd the 23<sup>d</sup> of January to a house of *John Lefsun Navarre*, to attack the enemy, and to force them to quit the captainship of *Rio Grande*. Besides these *Jacob Rabbi* and the sons of king *Duwy*, were the 19<sup>th</sup> past, by the fort *Keulen*, at the head of 60 *Tapoyars*, and were daily follow'd by others, that came to our assistance. Mr. *Bas* solicited also some supplies of provisions, of which they stood in great want, there being above 1500 *Brasilians*

The Portuguese defeated.

Mr. Bas gives an account of his proceedings.

1643. Consultations held hereupon.

Their resolution.

Colonel Garfman sent to Rio Grande.

1643. *filins*, men, women and children, lodged under the castle. He desired also some money, ammunition, linen and silks to present to the *Brasilians* and *Tapoyers*; all which, together with some pieces of red-cloth, was sent him by the council.

According to this advice, it being much to be feared the enemy would scarce stand the brunt in *Rio Grande*, but retire into *Parayba*, it was taken into serious consideration the 29<sup>th</sup> of *January*, whether it would be advisable, in case the enemy should be forced by our troops, or voluntarily retreat into *Parayba*, to pursue them thither, and thereby endeavour the recovery likewise of that captainship: But considering that by reason of the weakness of our garrisons, we were not in a condition to send any further succours from the *Receif*, *Itamarika* or *Parayba*, without running a manifest hazard to our troops there; whereas, on the contrary, the enemies did not want opportunity to relieve theirs from the adjacent places of *Parayba*, and that we lived in daily hopes of succours from *Holland*, it was judged the best way, that the welfare of the whole *Dutch-Brasil* ought not to be put to the hazard by such an enterprise as this.

Accordingly orders were sent to Mr. *Bas* and the rest of the commanders of our troops there, to act with all imaginable caution, and rather than expose our men, in following the enemy into *Parayba*, to be contented with the recovery of the captainship of *Rio Grande*.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of *March*, colonel *Garfman* was by special order from the council sent a second time with some Troops to the captainship of *Rio Grande*, to inform himself, whether any troops of the enemy were posted in that captainship, and in what number; his instructions were, that so soon as he had received intelligence of the enemy, he should, with what forces he was able to bring together, endeavour to stop their progress. But if he found himself not strong enough to oppose them, he should send speedy advice thereof to the council, that they might send him speedy succours, and that he was to take all imaginable care not to engage the enemy, before the arrival of the said succours. But if he found the enemy already so strongly entrench'd as to be master of the country, without any hopes of forcing them from thence, the defence of the fort *Keulen* should be his chiefest care, as likewise of the *Brasilians*, with their wives and children, and since, in case the said fort of *Keulen* should be in danger of being attack'd by the enemy, it would be of ill consequence, to have these women and children enclosed within the fortifica-

tions, for fear of want of provisions, he was strictly ordered to transport them in time, to some place of security, such as *Siara*, or the like, where they might be able to subsist, and be secure against any attempt from the enemy. He was ordered also in his return to the *Receif*, to take *en passant* (if it could be done without inconvenience) a view of the fortifications of *Itamarika* and *Parayba*, in order to give an account of their condition to the council.

But to return to Mr. *Bas*: According to his letters dated the 30<sup>th</sup> of *January* from the fort *Keulen*, captain *Rhinebergh* had with his body made six several attacks upon the enemy, who was retired from *Mompabou* and *Kunbao* into a bog, without being able to force their entrenchments; we lost about 100 kill'd and wounded in this action, and retreated to the house of *John Leytan* with order to get some cattle, which was very scarce thereabouts, our forces feeding most upon fishes, which they caught by the help of two large nets; 28 of our wounded men were brought to the *Receif*, with advice that notwithstanding this unsuccessful attack on our side, the enemy were retreated into *Parayba*. Mr. *Bas* also solicited some fresh supplies of men and Ammunition, in order to pursue them into *Parayba*, but the resolution upon this head was defer'd 'till they should hear further from Mr. *Bas*. The 7<sup>th</sup> of *February* it was resolved by the council with the approbation of admiral *Liebtart* to equip the *Hollandia* and the *Swan* together with the yachts, the *Flight*, the *Hamel*, *Bullestrate* and *Lichtbart* for cruising. By letters from Mr. *Linge*, dated the 11<sup>th</sup> of *February* at the fort *Margaret* in *Parayba*, the council was advis'd, how that, according to the deposition of a negro deserter, *Kamaron* was come with all his troops into the city of *Parayba*, with an intention to attack our forts on that side; an answer, with what was thought necessary for this present purpose, was immediately sent back in a bark by the council. By another bark sent by Mr. *Bas* from *Rio Grande*, they were advertis'd, that he lay still encamped with his troops near the house of *John Leytan*, where with much ado he could get provisions for them, the enemy being still posted at *Momguappe*, and guarding all the avenues into the country; that he had sent several spies abroad, to get intelligence concerning the present posture of the enemy. The 17<sup>th</sup> of *February* the ship the *Swan* and the yacht call'd *Bullestrate* were order'd to go out a cruising; the 18<sup>th</sup> the yacht the *Flight*, and the 20<sup>th</sup> the ship *Hollandia* set sail for the same purpose. The ship the *Overyssel* was also

1645.

The Dutch attack the enemy, without success.

The Portuguese defeated.

Their retreat.

Colonel Garfman sent to Rio Grande.

Advice from Mr. Linge.

1645.

1645. also ordered to go out, to serve for a spie ship on the coast of Parayba.

The 21<sup>st</sup> of February the council received a letter from Mr. de Linge, dated the 18<sup>th</sup>, in the fort of St. Margaret, intimating that he had heard nothing since of the enemy. Yet that he wish'd the forces he had sent to Rio grande might be returned with all convenient speed, to make use of them for the defence of his forts, in case of an attack. The 24<sup>th</sup> of February a party under command of captain Killion Taylor and captain Nicholas Nicholson, were sent abroad towards the island of the Barette to get some prisoners, but they return'd the 20<sup>th</sup> to the Receif, having met with no body except with a man, at a considerable distance. Another party which had taken their way towards Olinda and Bracco de St. Jago, but with the same success, the enemy having only shewn himself at a distance, as they were returning to the fort Bruin. The 27<sup>th</sup> of February the enemy appeared with a strong body in the Salinas, but being saluted by some cannon-shot from the fort Bruin, retired without attempting any thing.

In the mean while, according to Mr. Linge's letter, from the 2<sup>d</sup> of March, three barks with soldiers were arrived in Parayba from Rio Grande, so that the rest, under the command of Mr. Bas, being 500 in number, might be hourly expected at the Receif. He further advised, that he had seen no enemy of late, but being informed that a considerable body lay encamp'd in a valley near the village of Magarebbe, he had ordered thither 120 soldiers, and 100 *Brasilians*, to beat up their Quarters, and to get some prisoners. In effect the 4<sup>th</sup> of March, he, with his troops consisting in 500 Men, arrived from Rio Grande at the Receif, and the 5<sup>th</sup> of March gave the council an account of his expedition.

The 9<sup>th</sup> of March in the night, the enemy appeared in three bodies near the fort Prince William, and gave us several volleys of small shot, but being answered with our cannon retired immediately. The same day a party of 50 men were sent abroad under lieutenant Mos to get intelligence; being met by two companies of the enemy, a sharp encounter ensued, our forces retiring without any considerable loss, under the fort Wardenburgh, and the enemy retreated at the discharge of some of our cannon. By letters from Mr. Linge, dated the 8<sup>th</sup> of March at fort St. Margaret in Parayba, the council received the unwelcome news that the enemy in Rio Grande had by a pretended flight drawn the 5<sup>th</sup> of March lieutenant John de Vael with 48 soldiers, who were too eager in the pursuit of them, into an ambush, where they had kill'd 30 of

them, tho', according to the report of some deserters that were present at the engagement, not without considerable loss also on their side; *Kamaron*, *Andrew Vidal* and some other *Portuguese* officers of note were also present. About the same time 15 *Brasilians* surpris'd five men, six women and eight children, in an entrenchment seven leagues above *Iguaracu*, called *Papeku*.

In the mean while the *Tapoyers*, who according to their custom, come once a year, about midsummer, from among the mountains, some hundreds strong, into the captainship of Rio Grande, were, after they had carried away all the horses and mares they could light on, retired to the hills; a thing very fortunate for us, for without it our garrisons would not have been able to subsist there. Provisions growing every day scarcer in the Receif, it was agreed the 6<sup>th</sup> of March by the council, to send the *Brasilians* raised in Rio Grande with a company of fusileers to *Itamarika*, to ease our magazines of that burthen, whilst they might provide themselves with *farinha* roots in that island. Much about the same time the two majors *Bayer* and *Pijoor*, appear'd before the council, intimating, that being informed that the citizens began to murmur at their staying at home, pretending that they were sufficient to guard the forts; for which purpose, as it was reported admiral *Lichbart* had offered 300 men, they were come on purpose to offer their service, and were ready to take the field with those few forces they had left in the garrison; tho' they at the same time protested, that they were of the same opinion, which had been approved some days before, to wit, that this undertaking, by reason of their small number, would be full of danger, and yet not answer the end of bringing provisions into the Receif. Admiral *Lichbart* being thereupon ask'd whether he had made any such offer, he declared not to have spoken any thing like it, his ships being so ill mann'd, that he could spare no men for any other service.

The night before the 13<sup>th</sup> of March, the enemy appear'd both on the other side of the river and the dike leading to the fort Bruin, discharging their musquets and blunderbusses at our sentinels, but upon the first salute from the cannon of the fort retired. The same they did near the fort of *Affagado*. The same evening betwixt nine and ten a clock they made an attack upon the wooden fort, built betwixt the *Affagados* and the *Quinquangular-Fort*, for the defence of the plain, which they continued 'till one a clock, cutting down some palisades, and bringing great store of dry reeds, in order to set it on fire, but in vain,

being

Parties sent abroad without success.

News from Parayba.

Several skirmishes.

1645.

Proposit. ons about the taking of the field.

Great store of *farinha* roots brought to *Itamarika*.

Ships sent out a cruising.

The *Portuguese* raised a wooden fort near the Receif.

1645. being forced to retreat with the loss of some of their Men; on our side two were kill'd, and four or five wounded, among the last was lieutenant *Casper Ferdinand van Grol*, who received two dangerous wounds. The next morning the broken palisadoes were repaired, and another row ordered to be set beyond the first, and footangles to be laid betwixt both. The 17<sup>th</sup> of March the bark call'd the *Parayba* coming from *Siara*, brought advice, that the *Brasilians* were gone from *Siara* to *Kameji*, having refused to return to *Rio Grande*, for fear they should be call'd to a severe account there for the murder of several inhabitants, committed by them before.

By the same bark Mr. *Linge* sent advice from the 14<sup>th</sup> of March, that the enemy had appeared of late in a considerable body near the northern fort, but was retired now, but whether to *Rio Grande* or *St. Andre*, he was not able to tell. They had spoil'd all the *farinba*-root fields in the *Aldeas* *Magarebbe*, and thereabouts; so that the *Brasilians* being for the future to be furnished with provisions out of the magazines, he desired a supply of wine and oil: Immediately advice hereof was sent to *Dorimund* commander in chief of *Itamarika*, and some ammunition, besides 1000 gilders in ready money. The same sum was transmitted to Mr. *Linge* in *Parayba*, and a barrel with oatmeal, a pipe of wine, a hog-shead with oil, and another fill'd with dry peas, besides good store of ammunition. He was also ordered to send the *Brasilians* back to *Rio Grande* for defence of that captainship, and to get intelligence whether the enemy had directed his march thither, in order to oppose his designs.

Good store of *farinba* roots brought to *Itamarika*.

Ship sent out a cruising.

In the mean while admiral *Lichtbart* (pursuant to his letter of the 21<sup>st</sup> of March to the council) had embark'd some soldiers and *Brasilians* in *Itamarika*, and taking his course to the north-entrance of the river, was got up as far as to the isle of *Tapevo*, from whence they had brought back a great quantity of *farinba* roots, for the use of the *Brasilians* in *Itamarika*, and of the magazines there.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of March it was resolved, with the approbation of admiral *Lichtbart*, to send the following ships a cruising before the *Babia*; the *Ulyssingen*, the *Ter Veer*, and the yachts, the *Greyhound*, the *Heemfede*, *Sprew* and *Bullestrate*; and on the 6<sup>th</sup> of April the *Swan*, the *Zouteland*, the *Flight*, and the yacht the *Lichtbart*, were ordered to go a cruising before the *Cape of St. Austin*, and set sail the 10<sup>th</sup> of April accordingly.

The 31<sup>st</sup> letters were brought to the council, dated the 25<sup>th</sup> of March in *Rio Grande*, intimating, that *Paulo de Kunba*

VOL. II.

and *Kamaron* were entred *Kunba* with 800 men, among whom were 300 musqueteers, to carry away the cattle from thence to *Parayba*.

But, according to colonel *Garfman*'s letters to the council, upon his arrival, which was the 4<sup>th</sup> of April, the enemy were already retired out of *Rio Grande*, without undertaking any thing against our people, who consisting only in 400 soldiers and 300 *Brasilians* lay encamp'd near the house of *John Leston*, yet they carried off some cattle.

About the same time they received letters from Mr. *Linge*, that the enemy had made several false alarms near the forts, without attempting any thing. And in effect in June, they did not appear any more thereabouts.

In the year 1646, the 5<sup>th</sup> of April in the night, *Jacob Rabbi* was at the instigation of lieutenant colonel *Garfman*, near *Potosi*, about three leagues distant from the cattle of the same name, villainously shot with two bullets, as he was going home from one *John Miller*'s house, where he had been entertained that evening in company with colonel *Garfman*. *Rabbi* had a considerable time before (as he had declared to his friends) suspected the treachery of *Garfman*, and was for that reason just upon his departure out of *Rio Grande*, in order to shelter himself among the *Tapoyers*. The council repented this villainy to the highest degree, since, considering that this *Jacob Rabbi* was in great esteem among the *Tapoyers*, and his wife a *Brasilian*, it was to be feared, that this would exasperate both the *Tapoyers* and *Brasilians* against us. So that *Garfman* returning the 19<sup>th</sup> of March to the *Receif*, after he had given an account of his expedition to the council, was by their particular order, the 24<sup>th</sup> of March, taken into custody, and sent on board the *Hollandia*, major *Bayert* being ordered in the mean time to supply his place. This *Jacob Rabbi* a native of *Germany*, had been employ'd by authority of the states general, his highness the prince of *Orange*, and the company, to engage and keep the *Tapoyers* in the interest of our government, in which commission he had acquitted himself so well, that he brought these *Tapoyers* several times, out of the mountains (their habitations) to our assistance. His dwelling-place was in the fort *Keulen* in *Rio Grande*, where he had married a *Brasilian* woman. *Casper Honybousse*, commander of the *Brasilians* in *Itamarika*, being slain in the last engagement in that island, Mr. *Vincent van Drillenbergh*, was, at their request, constituted their commander by the council.

F f

The

News from colonel Garfman.

1646. Jacob Rabbi treacherously killed.

Garfman cured.

of some 1645. engage- also on and some ere also *Brasilians* eight leagues

who ac- a year, moun- the cap- ter they d mares hills; a outhout it able to g every reed the fend the a com- ease our self they nba roots ame timz appear'd being in- surmur at that they

Proposit- ons about the taking of the field. for which ral Lich- ere come and were ew forces ' they at- ly were of approv- t this un- all num- id yet not ions into ng there- any such ken any mann'd, any other

March, other side o the fort and blun- upon the e fort re- ne fort of twixt nine ack upon e *Affaga-* or the de- continued me pali- e of dry t in vain, being

The Port- tuguese a- tack a second fort near the Receif.



1646. The 17<sup>th</sup> of April, some papers were delivered to the council, which had been dispersed by the enemy, to debase our soldiery; in return of which, they sent abroad their summons, upbraiding such of their subjects as were in the enemy's service, with treachery, and exhorting them to return to their duty. It was also agreed to publish a copy of a letter delivered by the Portuguese ambassador at the Hague to the states general from the king his master; with the answer of the states to the said letter: For since the king of Portugal in this letter did disown the war, and the proceeding of Antonio Telles da Silva, and his sending of his troops into the Dutch-Brazil, they did not question but by this means to open the eyes of the Portuguese inhabitants, not to flatter themselves with vain hopes of assistance from Portugal; besides, that we were in hopes thereby to sow the seeds of mistrust betwixt them and the Portuguese commanders from the Bahia.

The 24<sup>th</sup> of April, two Portuguese companies commanded by captain Lawrence Kerner and Peter Kavakanti, consisting of about 40 men each, marched from the Vargea and the city of Olinda to Iguarassu.

They were headed by Vidal and Hoogstrate in person, who having got intelligence that admiral Lichtbart and John Nicuhoff were gone to Itamarika, to get some farinha roots. The 25<sup>th</sup> of April, as they were marching from Iguarassu, a certain German chirurgeon, named Christopher Mars, who was formerly taken prisoner by them, happening to stay somewhat behind, whilst he was piling, was surprized by one of our parties near Tapasino. Upon examination by Mr. Walbeck, he declared, that not long ago there were nine companies of the enemies forces quarter'd in the Baretta, the city of Olinda, and in the mills of Bierboom and Brito; each company consisting of betwixt 40 or 50 men. That there were five companies more, much of the same strength, posted in the Salinas, and Henry Dias with 200 mullets and negroes in Gaspar Cox's house, but they had then no forces in the Vargea.

That after Nicholas Nicholson was come over to us with his troops, Martin Soares Moreno had caused 260 Dutch, both soldiers and inhabitants, (among whom were six women and two children) to be killed by a company of the country militia, in the woods of Tabatinga, betwixt Sibero and Doriba, in their way to the Bahia, besides those killed by his order in other places, amounting in all to 300.

By this time there began to be great scarcity of meat in the Recife, notwithstanding which, the garrisons in the outworks, as

well as the *Brasilians* in Itamarika, with 1646. their wives and children, were to be supplied from thence; and the farinha roots being either all taken up before by our own people, or else destroy'd by the enemy, in the island Itamarika: To supply this pressing necessity, it was resolved by the great council, to send a detachment of 400 men in barks to St. Lawrence de Praja or Tujukapa, to fetch mandinka or farinha roots from thence. This detachment was composed out of these following troops.

Out of captain Nicholas Nicholson's company 9 men.

From the Zynguangular-fort 25.

From the Affogados 25.

Out of the company of captain William Lambartz 50.

Volunteers from Itamarika 30.

*Brasilians* 150.

The 29<sup>th</sup> of April the council was, by letters from Itamarika, advertised, that our forces being sent abroad to fetch some farinha, had chased the enemy out of two or three entrenchments; but they retiring into another, surrounded with a deep ditch, they were there also with more courage than conduct attack'd by our troops, being forced to retire with the loss of 16 kill'd and 26 wounded, among whom was captain William Lambartz: The enemy had likewise not a few kill'd on their side. Mr. Dortmund, commander in chief of Itamarika, therefore desiring to be supplied with meal, his magazines being quite exhausted, the council sent thither the first of May, 20 barrels with meal, two with oatmeal, two with dry pease, besides a pipe of wine and brandy, and 1000 guilders in money, for the use of the *Brasilians*.

The 3<sup>d</sup> of May the council received advice by a letter dated the 2<sup>d</sup> of May from Mr. Dortmund, that the enemy had carried away ten Negroes, four belonging to the company, the rest to one Mr. Sculin, and four other men from Itamarika; and that the *Brasilians* there had been so far debauched by their intregues, that they retired into a wood, and being twice summoned to rejoin our troops, had refused so to do. That at last, Mr. Apirissius, (Minister of the *Brasilians*) having been sent to reduce them to their duty, either by persuasions or threats, his arguments were so prevailing, that they return'd quietly, alledging for their excuse, that they were forced to fly thither for want of subsistence. Hereupon Dortmund desired fresh supplies for his magazines, that a person of authority might be sent thither, and that another company might be put in place of that of captain Vosterman, his men being ready to revolt.

One Mars  
taken pri-  
soner.

His depo-  
sition.

1646.

Mr. Bul-  
strate sent  
to Itama-  
rika.

An account  
of his pro-  
ceedings.

Motion of  
the *Brasili-  
ans* ap-  
pealed.



1646.

Mr. Bulle-  
strate sent  
to Itamar-  
rika.

To remove all these obstacles, it was resolved immediately to dispatch thither Mr. Bullestrate, a member of the great council, who was to agree with certain private persons, to provide our garrisons with fish, and to act in every thing there; as he should find it most expedient for the service of the company.

Accordingly Mr. Bullestrate set sail the 4<sup>th</sup> of May, in the yacht the *Greyhound*, and arrived the same day in the afternoon in Itamarika, where having executed his commission, he return'd the 10<sup>th</sup> of May to the *Recife*, and gave the following account to the council: That he had taken a view of the city of *Sboppe*, and the fort *Orange*, both which he had ordered to be strengthened; as also, to fortify the old brick-house, formerly the *Stadthouse*, with pallisades, against any sudden attempt; that he having call'd before him all the commanders of the *Brasilians*, had represented to them that we were in daily expectation of a powerful succour from *Holland*, exhorting them to remain steadfast in their duty, and to keep their soldiers under the best discipline they could; he had also presented their commander with cloth for a suit of clothes, and the rest with some wine and money, which they very thankfully accepted: He had *En Passant* taken a view of the plantations of *Conrad Pauli*, where he had found about 160 cocoa-trees cut down by the *Brasilians*, being forced by famine to feed upon the fruit; the like they had done in several other places; that he had endeavour'd to treat with several private persons for a certain quantity of fish to be delivered at the *Recife*; but could meet with none that would accept his offers; they alledging, that most of their negroes being either run away or taken by the enemy, they did catch no more fish but what they could readily sell in the island, without the charge of salt and transportation; that he had likewise propos'd to the commander in chief of the *Brasilians*, to give them for the future money instead of meal; and that they were to be furnished with three nets to catch fish for their own use; that the commander promis'd to propose it to the rest, and gave him some hopes that they would accept of the said offer.

To supply the present want of provisions, which began to be scarcer and scarcer every day in Itamarika, Parayba, Rio Grande, and the *Recife*, by reason that the expected supplies from *Holland* were not as yet arrived, and we were closely block'd up by land; it was thought fit to give all imaginable encouragement to the fishing trade; for which purpose the two members of the great council, Mr. Hamel and Mr. Bas, or-

dered the 7<sup>th</sup> of May, to buy up as much yarn as possible could be got to make fishing nets of, which afterwards stood us in good stead.

A certain *Portuguese*, who had committed manslaughter in *Angola*, and was fled from thence to the *Recife*, having accused John Vieira d'Alagoas, he was by order from the council taken into custody.

This *Portuguese* declared, that the said Vieira had delivered to him a certain piece of parchment, written in characters, and a box, wherein were several other papers, in order to carry them to the enemy, which parchment and box he produced in the presence of the members of the council. John Vieira denying the matter, was put to the rack, but continued resolute in his denial; till at last, the key of these characters being found among his papers, and a certain Jew having deciphered these letters, it appear'd, that he had given an account of the whole posture of our affairs to the enemy, with directions how to make themselves masters of the *Recife*; so that finding himself discovered, he confess'd that he had written and delivered these cyphered papers to the *Portuguese*, and was executed the 29<sup>th</sup> of May.

The magazines being by this time almost exhausted, there being scarce provisions left for a few weeks, it was propos'd by the council to the majors, *Boyer* and *Piskoor*, that considering it was not advisable to exasperate the soldiery at this juncture, by retrenching their allowance of bread and other eatables, whether instead of a pound of meat, they might not be prevail'd upon to take six-pence, by this means to preserve that small store of flesh they had left, which these two majors undertook to propose to the soldiers, not without hopes of succeeding in their project, and that nobody might be excepted from bearing his share in the publick calamity, it was ordered that the loaves which used before to weigh a pound and half, should be reduced to one pound weight, and that each citizen and others depending on the company, nay the members of the great council themselves, should have an allowance only of two loaves per week; the same was to be given to all seamen, captains, lieutenants and ensigns; but the rest, from the serjeant to the common soldier, should have three pounds of bread allow'd them per week.

Mr. Linge advis'd from the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, out of *Paraiba*, that the enemy had not attempted any thing against the forts, and that a party of *Brasilians* was gone abroad towards *Tapoa*, in hopes to take some prisoners. Much about the same time the council received advice, that colonel Garf-

John Vi-  
eira ac-  
cused  
John Vi-  
eira ac-  
cused  
John Vi-  
eira ac-  
cused

Is ex-  
tended.

Orders  
concerning  
the allow-  
ance of  
bread.

1646.

The Dutch  
go out for  
some time  
to the  
westward  
of success.

William

William

was, by  
that our  
some fa-  
of two or  
iring in-  
p ditch,  
age than  
, being  
16 kill'd  
was cap-  
emy had  
de. Mr.  
Itamar-  
olled with  
exhausted,  
of May,  
outmeal,  
e of wine  
money,

ceived ad-  
May from  
d carried  
g to the  
ulin, and  
and that  
far de-  
they re-  
ice sum-  
eused fo  
tes, (Mi-  
n sent to  
by per-  
s were fo  
etly, al-  
ey were  
istance.  
supplies  
of autho-  
that ano-  
g ready

Mutiny of  
the Brasili-  
ans ap-  
peared.

To

1646. *man*, without orders from the council, had endeavoured by some presents, to draw the *Tapoyers* into *Rio Grande*, under pretence of keeping them at hand, to enter into a confederacy with the new members of the great council that were expected from *Holland*.

The council being not a little surprized at this undertaking, since by the coming of the *Tapoyers* into that captainship, they should be disappointed of a considerable part of those supplies they received from thence; they sent word to *Rudolph Barro* to leave no stone unturned to draw the *Tapoyers* by fair means back to their habitations, but that if they would send some of their commanders to the *Receif*, all imaginable satisfaction should be given them concerning the murder of *Jacob Rabbi*; and the more to engage *Barro* to do his utmost, a present of wine, brandy, and some toys, was ordered to be sent him. For as the case then stood, it was absolutely necessary for us to remain masters of *Rio Grande*, till the arrival of the succours from *Holland*; the vast numbers of *Brasilians* that were fled to *Itamarika*, having consumed all sorts of provisions there to that degree, that that island could not only not send any supplies to the *Receif*, but most of the women and children of the *Brasilians* must be supplied out of the magazines there; so that *Rio Grande* was the only place left from whence they received a considerable quantity of *Farinha* and cattle, which in some measure abated the scarcity of provisions in the *Receif*, and by the prudent conduct of the council, was the chief means that the place continued in tolerable good health till the arrival of the succours, which without it, it would in all humane probability have been impossible to be done; and no question but this captainship might for a considerable time after, have furnished the garrisons to the south with necessities, had it not been for the following accident.

The expected succours from *Holland* being detained by the winter season and contrary winds, the *Brasilians* of *Gojana*, who with their wives and children had sheltered themselves in *Itamarika*, were reduced to the greatest extremity for want of food; for after they had consumed all what the island could afford for their subsistence, and all the avenues by land being block'd up by the enemy, they had no other supplies but what they received from our magazines: These being now exhausted to such a degree, that each citizen had but one pound of bread allowed him *per week* (which however at that rate would not hold out above fourteen days longer) the council was under an absolute necessity to have it proposed to the *Brasilians*, to retire with

their wives and children (in all about 1200) to *Rio Grande*, where they might subsist some time upon what the country afforded. Accordingly they writ to Mr. *Dortmund* the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, and sent Mr. *Walbeck* thither in person, to persuade the *Brasilians* to send at least 500 women and children, with a certain number of their men, to *Siara* and *Rio Grande*, there being at that time in all near 1500 *Brasilians*, men, women and children in that island, among whom were only 500 fit to bear arms, under the command of *Caspar Honybouse*, who had each scarce a pound of bread allow'd them *per week*.

Provisions, as I told you before, growing daily scarcer and scarcer, by reason the succours from *Holland* were detained beyond all expectation, by contrary winds; a general council was call'd, where the three numbers of the great council Mr. *Hamel*, Mr. *Bullestrate* and Mr. *Bas*, being present, as likewise admiral *Liechbart*, and the two majors *Beyert* and *Pijstor*, the following points were taken into debate.

First of all, the sending of the *Brasilians* from *Itamarika* to *Rio Grande*, being look'd upon as unavoidable, immediate orders were given to get the necessary transport vessels ready for that purpose. It was also taken into consideration, whether it were not feasible to gather a sufficient force out of the forts, who in conjunction with the *Brasilians*, might attack some place or other, from whence to provide ourselves with *Farinha*; but to this it was objected by the majors *Beyert* and *Pijstor*, that the garrisons of the forts could not be weakened by any detachment, without running a great hazard; besides that it was a hard matter to pitch upon any place where there was any store of *Farinha*, the enemy having either consumed, spoiled or carried it away before; so that we must expose our men to an apparent danger, without a sure prospect of interest; for, supposing we should be successful, the quantity that might be got, would not be sufficient to maintain our garrisons for any considerable time. It was however agreed to take an exact account of all the garrisons, to see whether upon an occasion something might be undertaken for the service of the state. Accordingly these two majors, *Beyert* and *Pijstor*, having presented a list of these forces the next day to the council, it was concluded that no troops could be spared out of the forts, except it were out of the *Affagados*, but they were but few in number. At the same time it was resolved to send captain *Niger* with his company of *Brasilians* to *Rio Grande*, and the *Omlandia* and *Greybound* yacht were ordered forthwith to sail

1646.

Consultations about the scarcity of provisions.

1646.

Further debates about the attacking of the enemy.

The council of *Rio Grande* to the Dutch.

1646. *faü* to *Iamarika*, to transport the *Brasilians* to *Rio Grande*.

*Further details about the attacking of the enemy.*

The 30<sup>th</sup> of May the council, the admiral, and two majors, entered into a second debate, whether it were possible to attack the enemy, and in what place: Against which it was alledged, that their chiefest force was at present in the *Vergea*; but supposing it was not, no *Farinba* was to be got there, because they were supply'd with it themselves from far distant places. That the *Farinba* fields nearest to the *Receif* were about *St. Lawrence*, at least five leagues from thence; that the nearest *Farinba* fields to the south were about *St. Antonio* and *Moribeka*, where by reason of the strength of the enemy, and the great distance from us, there was no probability of encompassing our design; and that the *Farinba* fields to the north were likewise at such a distance from the sea-side, as could not in any likelihood answer our expectation. It was further taken into consideration, whether some forces might not be spared in *Iamarika*, but it was carried in the negative, because since the *Brasilians* were ready to depart for *Rio Grande*, it was not advisable to expose the rest of our troops there to a hazard. After serious deliberation, what forces possibly could be raised out of the forts, (their places being in the mean while to be supplied by the inhabitants) it was found that the *Affugados* could furnish about 70 or 80 men, the quinquangular fort, and *Maurice's* town the same number, and that of *St. Antonio Vaez* about 50. But, considering that the city militia of the *Receif* consisted only of six companies of 70, or at the most 80 men each, and that they were obliged to be upon the guard every night there (the place being without a garrison) if a considerable number of them should be employed in the forts, this must needs expose the capital place, which the enemy chiefly aimed at, to an imminent danger. The seamen being not above 250 in all, could likewise not be employed in that service, unless we could leave our ships quite unmann'd and useless. So that after many arguments on both sides, it was agreed to chuse the securest way, and according to the orders of the council of XIX in *Holland*, to expect the succours from thence with patience, and in the mean while to provide for the security of our forts.

The same day the council received letters from Mr. *Walbeck*, that some of the *Brasilians* of *Iamarika* had deserted, a rumour being spread among them, that we intended to leave them to the mercy of the *Portuguese*, which had put all the rest into a great consternation, but that Mr. *Dor-*

VOL. II.

*mund* had convinced them to the contrary. Mr. *Walbeck* and *Dortmund* had in the mean while represented to the *Brasilians*, that they being many in number, and consequently very ill provided for at this juncture, whether it were not best for them to go for some time to *Rio Grande*. They were at first averse to his proposals, for fear of being deserted by us, nevertheless the urgent necessity of providing for their sustenance, and to shew their compliance with the governments orders, were so reconciled with them, as to resolve to go to *Rio Grande*, provided they might be furnished with convenient transport-ships, provisions, and some ammunition for their defence, and fifty men of regular troops. Mr. *Dortmund* having again solicited for provisions, some were sent (sufficient for fourteen days) immediately, with some gunpowder, bullets, and other ammunition.

Accordingly above 1200 *Brasilians*, most women and children, whose husbands and fathers had been slain in our service, embarked aboard the *Omlandia* and some yachts, a pound of salt-cod fish being allow'd to each for the whole voyage without bread. At their arrival in *Rio Grande* they were so emaciated by famine, that they appear'd more like dead carcases than living bodies, and laid hold of every thing they could meet with to satisfy their greedy stomachs, so that in a little time they consumed all the *Farinba* that was left there.

Mr. *Linge*, by his letters from the 25<sup>th</sup> of June sent advice to the council, that there appear'd no enemy at that time in *Parayba*, but that ten *Tapoyers*, vassals of king *John Duiwy*, being come into *Rio Grande*, had shewn themselves extremely dissatisfied at the murder of *Jacob Rabbi*, whereupon it was resolved to reconcile their king to our interest by the following presents:

200 guilders in ready money.  
1000 Ells of *Osnabrugh* linnen cloth.  
100 gallons of *Spanish* wine.  
Two casks of brandy.  
40 gallons of oil, and a barrel with powdered beef.

The *Brasilians* in garrison in the fort, the *Bruin*, the *Quinquanguar*, and some other forts, being dissatisfied at their being detained there for eight months last past, petitioned the council the 12<sup>th</sup> of June, to be sent back into *Rio Grande*.

The opinion of the two majors being ask'd thereupon, they advised, that considering they did no extraordinary service there they might well be spared; so that it was resolved the 14<sup>th</sup> of June in council, to pay them their arrears, and to send them

G g back

1646.

*The Brasilians resolve to leave Iamarika.*

*Presents sent to king John Duiwy.*

*The Brasilians depart from the forts near the Receif.*

1646. back to *Parayba* and *Rio Grande*, to inhabit their villages as before.

In the *Quinquangular* fort, the company of *Immanuel Barros* was order'd to keep guard instead of the *Brasilians*, who were commanded to depart the 20<sup>th</sup> of *June*. The 11<sup>th</sup>, 12<sup>th</sup>, 13<sup>th</sup> and 14<sup>th</sup> of *June*, the enemy shot in the night-time very fiercely against the fort *de Affagados*, a redoubt call'd *Kirk*, and the house *Boavista*.

The 15<sup>th</sup> of *June* it was propos'd to the council by admiral *Lichtbart*, and the two majors, *Beyert* and *Pistoor*, to beat up the enemies quarters in the house of *Immanuel Kavalkanti*, and in the *Baretta*, with the following troops.

The company of captain *Killian Taylor*, 40 men.

The company of captain *Nicholas Nicolson*, of 70 men, which were to be joined by captain *de Niger* with 30 men out of the fort *Frederick*, with lieutenant *Mos* from the fort *Ernestus* with 10 men, and lieutenant *Katnar* from the fort *Prince William* with 20 men.

In all 200 men.

A project  
to beat up  
the enemies  
quarters.

About 100 volunteers were supposed to be raised from among the citizens, under the colonel *Walbeck*, and *Immanuel Baros* with his Negroes, consisting in 50 men, these joined with the other 200, would make up a body of 350 men, to be commanded in chief by major *Pistoor*, and to be conducted by sea by admiral *Lichtbart* to their landing place, viz. the regular troops to the south of the *Baretta*, and the Negroes upon the island on the north-side, from whence they might break thro' the marshes to the *Affagados*, and so further to the house cross the river, where they were to make a false attack, whilst the troops landed at the *Baretta*, assaulted them from before; the admiral, with his transport vessels, to lay ready all this while to receive them, and to secure their retreat upon all occasions. This proposition being approved of by the council, partly to animate our soldiers, partly to get at least some provisions for the sick, it was resolv'd to be put in execution the next day, but the wind proving contrary, and afterwards the tides being unseasonable for the convenient landing of our men, this project was laid aside, especially when instead of 100 volunteers, scarce 25 offered themselves for this service, notwithstanding the council gave them all imaginable encouragement, by promising them to receive the same treatment as the other servants of the company had, in case they should be wounded or come to some other misfortune.

Is laid  
aside.

In the mean while, the enemy having been informed by some of our deserters,

that by the departure of the *Brasilians* from *Itamarika*, the garrisons there were much weakened, they thought fit to lay hold of this opportunity, to land such a force there, as should be beyond our power to drive from thence. The 15<sup>th</sup> of *June*, with the break of day they surprized our spy ship there, call'd the *Sprew*, with several barks and boats at the entrance call'd *Pasfoos*, (*Markers*) they got three prisoners, the rest escaping with the loss of two of their comrades kill'd.

The ship before *Tapasima* was set on fire by our own people, leaving the galliot, that lay hard by, to the enemy, after they had taken out all her men, who went aboard the yacht call'd the *Golden Doe*, lying before the north entrance. They landed with about 2000 men in chalops and other transport vessels, and *Andrew Vidal* and *John Ferdinand Vieira*, writ the same night the following letter to Mr. *Dortmund*, commander in chief of *Itamarika*, which they sent by a boy they had taken prisoner in the *Sprew*.

#### Their letter to Mr. DORTMUND.

Most honourable and most brave,

YOU are doubtless not unacquainted with the resolution of the inhabitants of this country to retrieve their former liberty; to effect which they neither want power nor any other means; but their chief aim being to encompass their design without effusion of blood, we thought fit to let you know that we are ready to attack you in this island with all our forces, unless you will prevent it by a treaty. For being sensible that you are past'd all hopes of relief, we were willing to advise you to treat with us, according to the custom of war, used in such cases; that, in case hereafter things should fall out contrary to your expectation by the fury of the conquering sword, you may not lay the fault thereof at our doors; for which reason it is, that we offer to you and the rest of the commanders there, all their arrears due to them from the company. Whereupon we expect your answer to-morrow.

From our head quarter,  
June 25, 1646. *Andrew Vidal de Negreiros*,  
*John Ferdinand Vieira*.

The 17<sup>th</sup> of *June* the council received advice from Mr. *Dortmund* of their landing, desiring prompt succours, without which he would not be in a condition to maintain the island against them. It was therefore taken into debate, whether it were possible for us to bring together such a force, as without much hazard might be able to force the enemy from thence, but 'twas carried in the negative.

For

1646.

1646.  
Confulta-  
tion about  
the relief  
of Itama-  
rika.

The Por-  
tuguese  
land on  
Itamarika.

Whether  
the fort on  
the hill  
was to be  
defended.

Some gun-  
ners turn'd  
traitors.

1646.

Consultations about the relief of Iamama.

For it was alledged, that without manifest danger, not above 200 foldiers could be taken out of the forts of the *Receif*, which number was not sufficient to attack the enemy, who had already entrench'd himself there, with hopes of success: And, considering that these forces must be transported thither by sea, we wanted ships (there being at that time not above two barks at the *Receif*) both to convey them thither, and to cut off the communication with the continent to the enemy. Besides, that at least fourteen days provisions were required for this expedition, in case the enemy should stand his ground, which at this juncture was not to be done, unless we would leave the magazines of the *Receif* quite empty; there being then no possibility of attempting its relief, the next thing under consideration was, whether the entrenchments on the hill might be defended or not? Against the maintaining of it was objected; that without fresh supplies of provisions this fort could not hold out a week, especially since the enemy, by cutting off the pipes of the spring that furnished them with fresh water, would soon put them under a necessity of coming to surrender; when it was evident, that they might post themselves betwixt the fort of *Orange* and this hill, and consequently prevent their receiving any supplies from thence.

Whether the fort on the hill was to be defended.

Besides that the hill being of a considerable compass, was the more difficult to be mention'd by our forces, the fort itself being irregular, and but slightly fortified on that side, especially where the old church-wall, making up part of the courtain, would not be proof against the enemies cannon, and consequently expose the whole fort, with the garrison, to the mercy of the enemy: So that it being beyond all dispute in the enemies power to cut off all communication with the fort *Orange*, it was unanimously resolved and ordered, to leave the said entrenchments, and to retire with the garrison, and what provisions and ammunition they had, into the fort *Orange*, before their retreat was stop't by the enemies troops; it being past all doubt, that in case they could maintain themselves in that fort, they could at all times, if they were masters of the field, recover the hill and the whole island.

Some gunners turn'd traitors.

The council were the more forward in coming to this resolution, because they had received certain information, that the enemy, who knew the importance of the fort *Orange*, had gain'd some of the gunners and volunteers of the fort by presents, who had engaged to assign them a place where it was easiest to be attack'd, whereabouts they were to charge the cannon with gun-

powder only, to facilitate their attack: Two of the gunners were hang'd the 23<sup>d</sup> of *June* for this treachery, the rest made their escape to the enemy. For the better preservation therefore of this fort, our people left the entrenchments upon the hill the 21<sup>st</sup> of *June*, where the enemy posted a strong body of their troops immediately after. The council likewise ordered the yacht the *Heemfede*, to cruise in conjunction with the *Golden Doe*, before the north entrance of the island, to keep open free communication for us with our garrison, and to prevent the enemy from receiving any succours that way; and at the same time some provisions were sent thither for the use of the garrison.

But whilst things were thus transacting with various fortune, tho' for the most part to our disadvantage, and the so long expected succours from *Holland* not arriving, the want of necessaries encreased more and more every day in the *Receif*, to such a degree, that whatever was found fit for sustenance, either in the publick magazines, or with private persons, was apply'd to the common use; which however amounting to no more than one pound of bread a week for each single person, many died for hunger; their legs beginning to swell first, which was the forerunner of certain death: Cats and dogs, of which we had great quantities, were look'd upon as dainties at that time; and you might see the Negroes digging the half-rotten bones of dead horses out of the ground, and to gnaw them with incredible eagerness; neither was the want of fresh water less insupportable, by reason of the heat of the climate, and the constant use of salt meats, all springs that were dug being brackish. The poor slaves, who had the least share of what was left, look'd so ghastly and wild with their eyes and jaws sunk, as appear'd terrible to the most undaunted men. At last (notwithstanding all the care taken by the council) things came to that pass, that the allowance of one pound of bread per week was fain to be taken away from the inhabitants, and allotted the soldiers; who, by the enticements of the *Portuguese* beginning to desert apace, had two pound of bread allow'd them, as long as there was any left; but when all was spent, and no remedy was to be found against this lingering evil, it was proposed by the council, and unanimously resolved, rather to die bravely than to starve, and to fight their way through the enemy. The foldiers were to lead the van, the women, children, sick, and other unable people to keep in the middle, and the members of the great council, with the inhabitants to defend the rear: The *Jews*

1646.

Whether the hill was to be defended.

Great famine in the Receif.

were

For



1646. were above all the rest in a desperate condition, and therefore resolved rather to die with sword in hand than be burnt alive, which is their doom in *Portugal*.

But when we were just reduced to the last gasp, all horses, cats, dogs, and rats being consumed, and a few quarters of *Farinha* sold at the rate of betwixt 80 or 90 gilders per quarter, which however could not suffice for above two days longer, on the 22<sup>d</sup> of *June*, (a day never to be forgotten) we saw two vessels with *Dutch* colours making all the sail they could towards the *Receif*: They had no sooner cast there anchors, and giving us the signal by the discharge of three guns each, that they came from *Holland*; but you might have read in all our faces the sudden joy we conceived at this relief in our last extremity:

The *Receif* relieved.

There was no body that could stand upon his legs for want of bread, but did crawl to the harbour where you might hear the cries of the people weeping for joy at a great distance. These two ships, call'd the *Falcon* and *Elizabeth*, were freighted for the chamber of *Amsterdam*, and had left the *Texel* the 26<sup>th</sup> of *April*; they brought us the welcome news, that we might hourly expect the whole convoy. The captain of the *Elizabeth* told me himself, that having a very fair wind one day, he said to his crew, *I am sure they are in great extremity at the Receif, God send us fair wind and weather to relieve them in time*, which happened thus accordingly. The captains were each presented with a golden medal, with the following inscription; *The Falcon and Elizabeth did relieve the Relief*.

Mr. Bas sent to I-tamarika.

The 23<sup>d</sup> of *June*, Mr. *Bas*, a member of the council was sent to *Iamarika*, to assist in the defence of the fort; by his letters of the 28<sup>th</sup> he advised, that the enemy continued still in his post on the hill, and that he had sent abroad some spies to get intelligence. The 7<sup>th</sup> of *July*, the said Mr. *Bas* return'd to the *Receif* with the companies commanded by captain *Blewcock* and *Cunrad Held*, leaving the two companies of *Reinard Sikkema* and *Dignus Bysterman* there in garrison. The enemy had some days before, after having blown up the fort on the hill, and set fire to their camp, left the island, carrying along with them all the cannon, and among them two brass ones. For when they saw that we were reinforced with several ships from *Holland*, they did not think fit to abide there till we should stop their passage back by our vessels; neither were they insensible, that without being masters of the fort *Orange*, they could not promise themselves the possession of the island, the south entrance being commanded by the

said fort, and the north passage by our yachts.

The 29<sup>th</sup> of *June*, the council received advice from our head quarter at the house of *John Leflan*, in *Rio Grande*, that two sons of king *John Duwy*, with 23 *Tupoyers*, were sent thither by their father, to assure our people of his good inclination and service; but they refused to come into the fort *Keulen*, before they had spoken with *Rudolph Baro*, who had been sent for upon that account. About this time several merchants set out some privateers, but as this could not be done without great charge, and there were but few ships at sea of the *Portuguese*, this turn'd to no great account, and consequently continued not long. A very odd accident happened to me much at the same time: For some of the labourers, who were employed to unload a vessel belonging to the company, were got so drunk, that they had kill'd a man, and hurt several others, by letting a pipe of wine fall upon them: I went thither to prevent any further disorder, but was no sooner entered the ship, when on a sudden I found the silver galleons upon my coat turn black, and myself bereaved of my sight, which however I recovered by degrees in a few days after, the cause of which I attributed to the strong exhalations of the wine, that had been closed up for a considerable time before. Much about the same time a difference arose betwixt the officers of the army and the city militia, about the chief command of the head guard in the *Receif*, which the city officers laid claim to.

But to return to our so long expected succours.

The reiterated letters from the council of the *Dutch Brasil* to the states general, and the directors of our company, wherein they presented their dangerous condition to them, had had such an influence upon the first, that they advised the directors of the company, to send us a reinforcement of 5 or 6000 men, and a good fleet; for which purpose they sent them 25 companies of their regular troops, and gave leave for the raising as many more, as in all amounted to 4000 land soldiers, besides seamen and volunteers.

This fleet consisting of a good number of brave ships, was ready to set sail in *November* 1645, but by reason of a sudden and hard frost, were detained in the road of *Ulyssingen*, till *February* 1646. One Mr. *Bankert*, admiral of *Zealand*, had the chief command of this fleet, and at the same time the following five gentlemen, who were appointed members of the great council of the *Dutch Brasil*, and were to relieve the old ones, were sent to their stations there;

1646.

An author sent to the author.

A fleet of ships in Holland for the relief of Brasil.

1646. to

Some ships arrive from Holland, at the Receif.



1646. to wit *Walter Schonenberg* president, *Micael Van Goch* Penionary of *Vlyssingen*, *Simon Van Beaumont* fiscal of the city of *Dori*, *Henry Hacks*, and *Mr. Trowens*, two great merchants of *Amsterdam*, and *Mr. Heremite* a lawyer of *Dori*, their secretary. One *Sigismund Shoppe*, formerly under count *Maurice*, and who had commanded the land forces of *Dutch Brasil*, was now sent in the quality of commander in chief of these forces; he was a most experienced captain, and who always kept a strict discipline among the soldiers.

Never did any fleet sent from *Holland* to *Brasil* meet with so many unfortunate accidents as this, during the six months they were at sea. For within two days after they had left the *Dutch* coast, they were forced to cast anchor in the *Downs* opposite to *Newport*, where they lost two of their ships by stress of weather. After a stay of three days, the winds being somewhat allayed, the squadron under *Mr. Van Goch* set sail again, but was two days after again forced into *St. Helens* in the isle of *Wight*: Three days before their arrival a rich *Dutch* ship, valued at two millions of livres, then lately come from *Brasil*, was lost among the rocks, so that of 300 persons, no more than 30 were saved. Here they were detained by foul weather and contrary winds seven weeks, when another *Dutch* ship coming from *Brasil*, chanced to cast anchor near them, and told them, that their countrymen in the *Receif* were drove to the last extremity; nay, that perhaps the place was surrendered by this time, they having no more than two months provisions left at the time of his departure. Hereupon it was resolved to continue their voyage with the whole fleet, notwithstanding the winds were against them; but on the coast near *Portland* were again overtaken by a violent storm, in which they saw a *Scotch* ship with 200 persons in her perish. The fleet under *Mr. Van Goch* came with much ado to an anchor behind a rock, where they staid till the fierceness of the tempest being allayed, they prosecuted their voyage. But scarce were they got through the channel, just as they were entering the *Spanish* sea, but a difference arose betwixt *Mr. Van Goch* and *Mr. Beaumont* about the flag, the *Zelanders* (in a council of war held for that purpose) allotting the precedence to *Mr. Van Goch*; whereas the *Hollanders* pretended the same to belong to *Mr. Beaumont*; but *Mr. Van Goch* persisting notwithstanding to claim the precedence, *Mr. Beaumont* gave a signal to the *Holland* ships to follow him, and so bid adieu to *Mr. Van Goch*, who after a troublesome and tedious voyage, in which he lost many of his men by sickness, and e-

specially by the scurvy, he arrived the 14<sup>th</sup> of *July* with his ship in the road of the *Receif*, being the first of the five new lords of the council that arrived in the *Dutch Brasil*. The 31<sup>st</sup> of *July* 1646, the ship the *Bluecock*, and the *Vlyssingen* of *Zealand*, came likewise to an anchor there; in the first came *Mr. Trowens*, and in the last colonel *Sigismund Shoppe*.

The 6<sup>th</sup> of *August* the said colonel gave an account to the members of the council, how pursuant to their orders, he was advanced with 450 men as far as the fort of *Olinda*, to discover the countenance of the enemy, and to take some prisoners; that they had made a shew of attacking us, but after some slight skirmishes retired, and with a body of their troops marched thro' *Bracer de St. Jago*, to cut off our retreat; but our people forced them to retreat again with the loss of several of their men killed and wounded; whereas we had but one wounded during the whole action, besides colonel *Shoppe* himself, who received a slight hurt on his leg.

The 8<sup>th</sup> of *August* the *Arms* of *Dori*, and in it *Mr. Beaumont*, arrived before the *Receif*, he was conducted the next day with all imaginable respect to the *Receif*.

The 12<sup>th</sup> late in the evening *Mr. Walter Schonenberg*, president of the new council, and *Henry Hacks*, arrived in a bark from the north in the *Receif*, where they were received by all the citizens and soldiers in arms; they had been forced to leave their ship called the *Middleburg*, before the north entrance of *Iamarika*, as likewise the *Dolphin*, laden with provisions on account of the chamber of *Zealand*, both which were seen the 30<sup>th</sup> of *July* off of *Olinda*, but being forced back by contrary winds, the last of these two did not come to an anchor near the *Receif* till the 13<sup>th</sup> of *August*.

The same day a certain negro deserter coming to the *Receif*, brought information that the enemy intended to erect a fort on the pass of the *Baretta*, to prevent our excursions into the open country; whereupon it was resolved, with unanimous consent of *Mr. Schonenberg* and the whole council, as likewise with the approbation of colonel *Shoppe* and admiral *Lichtbart*, to prevent the enemies design by fortifying and maintaining the said pass, as being the only inlet we had left for the recovery of the whole *Dutch Brasil*, all the other passes being so strongly fortified by the enemy, as not to be attempted without great hazard.

Accordingly the said colonel *Shoppe* marched the same night with all the forces he could bring together, ordering the boats laden with materials for the intended fortifications, to follow him the next tide.

H h

The

More ships  
arrive  
from Hol-  
land.

Colonel  
Shoppe  
marches  
to the Bar-  
ta.

More ships  
arrive  
from Hol-  
land, at  
the Receif.

VOL. II.

1646. The colonel at his arrival having soon chased the enemy from thence, and possessed himself of the house of the *Baretta*, sent for immediate orders to the council, to know whether he should continue in that post all night; who, with the approbation of the new president *Schonenberg*, dispatched Mr. *Bullestrate* thither immediately to take a view of it, and to make his report accordingly; he returned the 14<sup>th</sup> against night, and reported to the council, that he had found the work there very far advanced already, and the fortifications in such a state, that they would soon be in a posture of defence against any attempts from the enemy.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of August *Rudolpb Baro*, who, as we told you, was sent with some presents to *John Dawy* king of the *Tapoyers*, brought a letter from the said king dated the first of July, to the council, wherein he thanked them for their presents, and desired they would be pleased to send him some iron weapons, he being then in war with the *Pojuku's*, and that after he had humbled them, he would march with all his forces against the *Portuguese*.

By this time the president *Walter Schonenberg*, and the other members of the new great council being arrived at the *Receif*, and having delivered their commissions from their high and mightinesses the states-general, his highness the prince of *Orange*, and the council of *XIX.* constituting them joint governors of the *Dutch Brasil*, the late members of the said council, to wit, *Henry Hamel*, *Bullestrate*, and *Peter Bas*, ordered all the colleges and other persons of note to be called together, to be present at the installment of the future lords of the council.

Accordingly all the members of the court of justice, and of the finances, next the magistrates and commissaries of *Maurice's town*, then the ministers and church council, together with the sea and land officers, the heads of the *Jews*, and last of all the factors and book-keepers of the company, being assembled, Mr. *Walbeck* told them in the name of the council, that Mr. *Henry Hamel*, Mr. *Bullestrate*, and *Peter Bas*, had called them together, to lay down in their presence the reins of the government, and to surrender the same to Mr. *Schonenberg* and the rest of the lords appointed by their high and mightinesses, by his highness the prince of *Orange*, and the council of *XIX.* for the supreme management of the government of the *Dutch Brasil*; returning them their hearty thanks for the services each in his respective station had done to the government, and for their constant fidelity during these intestine commotions, exhort-

ing them to persevere in the same obedience to the new council; whereupon the new president and other members, having received the congratulations, first of the old council, and then of the other colleges, they from thence forward transacted every thing by their own authority, tho' they in all affairs of moment took the advice of the said members of the old council, during their stay in *Brasil*; for which purpose they desired them the 20<sup>th</sup> of August, to appear every day at eight a-clock at their assembly, and to assist them with their counsel for the better management of the affairs of the company. The 19<sup>th</sup> of August Mr. *Trowens* died late at night.

The 3<sup>d</sup> of September was appointed for a general muster of all the forces in garrison in the forts near the *Receif*. Mr. *Heck* and commissary *Zweers*, were ordered to take a review of those in the fort *Ernestus*, *Wardenburg* and *Boavista*. Mr. *Beaumont* and *Moucheron* in the fort of *Anthony Vaez* and *Maurice's Town*, Mr. *Van Goch*, *Hamel*, and *Alrich* at the *Receif*, and of those belonging to the artillery. Mr. *Raetzfeld* and *Croewanger* at the *Baretta* and adjacent quarters. Mr. *Volbergin* and commissary *Strick* in the forts *William* and *Frederick Henry*. Mr. *Bullestrate* and *de Witt* in the fort *Bruin* and the land and sea fort.

The 4<sup>th</sup> of September, a pardon being agreed upon by joint consent of the old and new council, the same was the 6<sup>th</sup> day sent by a drummer to the enemy, with a letter to the *Portuguese* commanders from the *Babia*, desiring them to withdraw their forces.

The 10<sup>th</sup> of September being appointed for a review of the militia of the *Receif* and *Maurice's Town*, the same was found to consist of 700 men; they received the thanks of the old council for their faithful services during the present intestine war, and then returned their thanks to them for their prudent management of the government.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of September the letters written by the *Portuguese* colonel the 11<sup>th</sup> of September, in answer to ours of the 6<sup>th</sup>, were read in the great council, filled with untruths and fictions of their own invention. They pretended that they were prevented by the inhabitants from retiring to the *Babia*, besides that they wanted transport vessels, their ships being detained in the bay of *Tamandare*, and that they must expect the king's orders for that purpose.

They took also a great deal of pains to magnify their strength. The 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> of September several letters were dispersed abroad by the *Portuguese*, directed to justice *Daems*, to *Matthew Bek*, *Baltazar de Fonseca*, *Duarte Sarayva*, *Caspar Francis da Co-*

sta,

The members of the old council surrender the government.

1646. *Jo*, being all merchants, and written by John Fernand Vieira, in which they again exaggerated their own number, and spoke very despitably of ours, threatening, that in case they should be forced to quit the country, they would destroy all with fire and sword, as they had already done in some parts of Parayba. The contents of these letters were as follows.

*A letter from Vieira to some merchants in the Dutch-Brasil.*

Experience has without question convinced you sufficiently of the reasons that moved us to undertake this war, and the success we have met with is an ample testimony that God was pleased to inflict this punishment upon our enemies, for the many outrages committed against the inhabitants of this country. This is however in a great measure to be attributed to the general consent of the said inhabitants, who having now forced themselves from the tyrannical yoke of their oppressors, ought to exempt from me, who, tho' unworthy, am appointed the chief manager of this war, to be back'd in so brave a resolution. I would not have you be ignorant of our strength, which, in comparison of yours, exceeds all that can be said upon that head; I will only tell you that as by our quitting the captainships of Parayba and Goyana, we are considerably encreased in number, so it is most evident from thence, that the inhabitants chose rather to lose their possessions, than to endure any longer the indignities that were put upon them, which was the true cause of their insurrection, and not (as it is given out among you) because they were unable to satisfy their creditors; because they left more than what would have paid their debts. But if it should happen so, that the said inhabitants should not be able to maintain themselves by force of arms, they are resolved to lay all the other captainships desolate in the same manner.

Having therefore well weighed the reasons which seem to promise us a good issue of this war, I thought myself obliged as a friend, to advise you that that party is back'd by reason and the unanimous resolution of many thousands; for, I can assure you, we are at least 14000 strong besides the negroes and Tapoyers, dispersed in several places from Rio Grande as far as Rio St. Francisco. Kamaron commands 600 musqueteers, Henry Dias 800 negroes, 200 Minos and 700 Tapoyers; and those of the Sertan are at our devotion; whenever we are pleased to call for them; but above all the rest we have God on our side. We are not ignorant, that before the arrival of Mr. Sigismund Shoppe your whole force consisted not in above 600 men, and that the succours come along with him do not a-

mount to above 1200 more; most of which are boys, and the rest either dead or sick. You see I am well acquainted with your strength, having kill'd and taken prisoners about 2600 of your best soldiers, and 500 Brasilians, besides the wounded that were carried to the Receif; when our troops had no other arms than pointed sticks and clubs. These are blessings from heaven, for if we were able to perform these things without powder and ball, what may not be expected from our forces, now they are strengthened with good troops, and provided with sufficient arms and ammunition? All which I confirm to you upon my word, to be nothing but the real truth, and had it not been in respect of those colonels sent from the Bahia, and of his majesty of Portugal, I had by this time been master of the Receif, or some of the forts, or at least I might have done much greater mischief: But if matters are not brought to a happy conclusion, I am resolved to act like a desperate man, and not to leave any sugar-mills, cattle or negroes in the country, but will rather turn all to ruin and destruction, before we will be compelled to submit again to your obedience.

As these presents may serve as a warning to you, so, I hope you, and the rest of the merchants will not delay to enter with us into such articles of agreement, as may be most conducive to the preservation of your Possessions; for I would have you call to mind that there are many ingenios (mills) reduced at present to such a state, as not to be likely to be in a condition to be used these ten years next to come. The Vargoa is in no better condition than Parayba and Goyana, and the cattle (without which the mills cannot subsist) destroyed in most places.

Colonel Sigismund Shoppe, I suppose, pretends to keep the field against us, as he did in the last war, but he will find himself egregiously mistaken, because the inhabitants will not be of his side, for if I should hear of one that was, I would cause him to be hanged immediately. You alledge that we are vassals of the company, but when was ever any conquered nation treated thus as we were, worse than the vilest slaves, of which you are sensible as well as we; so that being forced to break our chains, we don't owe you any further obedience. If we had not been in hopes of this opportunity, we would long before have implored the assistance of the king of Spain or France; and if those had fail'd us, to have had recourse to the Turks and Moors. I desire you not to throw away this letter, because experience will convince you of the truth of it; and that we shall pursue the same methods here, as we have done in other places; wherefore I would have you not give credit to any body, except to those that come in person from those places; I having told them nothing but the bare truth, which

you

1646. you will find in effect thus: In the prosecution of this war, I hope you will consider, what is most for your interest, in which I am ready to serve you; for tho' your governors don't direct their letters to me, 'tis I that have the chief management of this war, and under my command the power of the colonels came from the Bahia, extending no further, than over those troops they have brought along with them. A Royal de bon Jesus September 11 1646.

On the 10<sup>th</sup> of this Month, the before-mentioned colonels having sent an answer to a letter directed to them from your council, by one of our captains; several ensnaring questions were ask'd him concerning the present war, which he perhaps not answering according to their expectation, they replied more like drunken cowards than soldiers; if they will be pleased to come out and tell me these things, I will try whether their swords are as nimble as their tongues are, and teach them what respect is due to the messengers of those persons who have the supreme command here. This I write to you at present, but shall not fail in due time to make my words good by the sword, of which your people feel the daily effects as often as they dare to come out of their forts. Pray be not deceived, for Brasil is not allotted to you; not questioning but that God will bless our arms, and if we happen to die, we shall lose our lives in the defence of our holy religion and liberty; and all those that have refused to accept of our offers, will pay for it with the loss of their lives, possessions and debts.

A Royal, Sept.  
12, 1646.

Signed,

John Fernand Vieira.

The 14<sup>th</sup> of September a man of war, call'd the *Ter Veer*, equipped by the chamber of Zealand, (aboard of which was colonel *Hinderfon*) arrived before the *Receif*, after a voyage of 14 weeks. The 24<sup>th</sup> of September the enemy caused some pamphlets to be dispersed, promising in very haughty terms a general pardon, and a composition of their debts, in case we would leave the island. The 27<sup>th</sup> of September colonel *Shoppe* returned with some troops from *Goyana*, by the way of *Itamarika*; I had not met with any enemy, but had found all the sugar-mills burnt in the first place, but the sugar-reed and farinha fields in a pretty good condition; we received afterwards further information, that the sugar-mills of *Goyana*, were not quite burnt down. The 27<sup>th</sup> of October a conference was held betwixt the old council and Mr. *Van Goch*, unto whom they imparted their advice concerning several matters relating to the state of the *Dutch-Brasil*, and especially to the planting of the *mandioka* or *farinha* roots,

Colonel  
Shoppe  
returns  
from Co-  
yana.

A confe-  
rence be-  
twixt the  
old council  
and Mr.  
Goch

and the killing of cattle, which they advised to be done with great circumspection, *Brasil* being not able to subsist without a considerable number of oxen, which were continually employed in carrying of sugar-reeds, wood and other necessities to the mills.

For the planting of *farinha* roots they proposed *Itamarika*, *Rio Grande* and *Parayba*, which countries were thought sufficient to supply their present occasions; provided it were done before the season was elapsed.

In the mean while colonel *Shoppe* having made several, but for the most part, unsuccessful attempts upon the enemy; our forces were thereby so diminished, that we were not in condition to make head against the *Portuguese* near the *Receif*; which made our council take a resolution to endeavour the recovery of *Rio St. Francisco*, the execution of which being committed to the management of colonel *Hinderfon*, proved more fortunate for us, he meeting with little resistance thereabouts.

Accordingly the 24<sup>th</sup> of October the following ships; count *Eano* admiral, *Loanda* vice-admiral, the *Arms* of *Dort* rear-admiral, the *Bluecock*, the *Watchful-Dog*, the *Greyhound*, *Eagle*, the *Star*, *Heemstede* and the *Flight*, with eight barks, set sail under the command of admiral *Lichtbart*, and colonel *Hinderfon* to the south. The 17<sup>th</sup> of November the council received advice, that our troops under colonel *Hinderfon* were safely landed at *Korassippa*, and marching from thence to *Rio St. Francisco* and the fort *St. Maurice* had met with no opposition from the enemy, who had begun to raise the said fort. That they had been seconded by the small vessels, which had followed them up the river, which our forces had passed, and were marched to *Seregippe del Rey*, having left some behind to repair the fort; and that four *Portuguese* had requested their pardon, which was promised them. Whilst our forces were employed thereabouts, I was ordered thither to take care of the necessary provisions (of which there was great plenty) for our troops; having accordingly caused my cargo to be embarked aboard a ship call'd the *Brownfish*, *Francis Frantz* master.

I set sail the 24<sup>th</sup> of November. We were carried with a brisk gale as far as the mountains call'd by our people the *Saddle-bills* from their shape, the coast all thereabouts being white sand downs. About half an hour after sun-set we saw our selves off of the Bay of *Tamandare*, and from thence continued our course with a fair wind, which in two days after brought us happily to the entrance of that great river, which

1646.

The Dutch  
attempt  
the recovery  
of  
Rio St.  
Francisco.

Admiral  
Lichtbart  
dies.

Mr. Nieu-  
hoff in  
danger of  
being  
drowned.

Mr. Nieu-  
hoff order-  
ed his  
batteries

our  
neces-  
sary  
goods  
were  
over-  
men-  
died  
they  
their  
our  
of  
the  
exte

1646. is so broad at the beginning that a fix-pounder can scarce reach cross it; it falls with a very soft current into the sea, its waters being low in the winter, but encrease in the summer, perhaps by reason of the snows that are melted by the heat of the sun. About 50 leagues from its mouth is a great cataract or water-fall, surrounded by a great many islands; the sea at its entrance meeting in tempestuous weather with the current, are so boistrous, that they strike terror into the stoutest mariners, and carry away great pieces of the continent along with them. We entered the said river, but were forced to cast anchor immediately after sun-set, for want of an east wind to carry us higher up, which commonly begins to blow thereabouts at three in the morning. The country appeared very pleasant on both sides, and we saw abundance of wild beasts near the river-side, and several huts made of straw. We were detained near 24 hours upon a sand-bank, which after we had passed, we came at last to the village called *Penedos*, situate upon a high hill; here we landed with our boats, and found a few houses which were rebuilt by our people, the rest being burnt by the enemy before their flight. In the fort was formerly (in the time of the *Portuguese*) a church, which we turn'd into a magazine; it was surrounded with a goodly wall, the river passing by it on the north-side, where the hill is very steep.

Admiral  
Lichtbart  
dies.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of November admiral *Lichtbart* was seized with a sudden and violent illness, occasion'd by his drinking too much cold water, after he had over-heated himself before; he was carried into a boat with three soldiers under the command of an officer, lower down the river, but soon after lost his senses, and in my presence expired. The next day his corps being put in a coffin was carried aboard the *Golden-Star*, being conducted by the chief officers there present, and four companies of soldiers to the river-side, who gave three salvo's with their muskets, as did the cannon from the fort and ships, in order to his interment at the *Receif*.

Mr. Nieu-  
hoff in  
danger of  
being  
drowned.

Towards evening as I was going aboard our ship the boat overturned by the swiftness of the current, and had I not been a good swimmer, I had infallibly been drowned; the master threw out a great cable over-board, by the help of which, and God's mercy I got safely into the ship. The soldiers in the mean while scower'd the country, and brought 700 oxen, (of which there was great plenty) and 300 calves into our quarters, having been at pasture in one of the adjacent Islands of the river, under the guard of some soldiers; they were not extraordinary fat, but tolerable good meat.

The soldiers huts were for the most part 1646. planted on the north-side of the hill, which being composed of branches and leaves of trees took fire accidentally the 3<sup>d</sup> of December, with such fury, that in a quarter of an hour the whole quarter was in a flame, notwithstanding that the alarm was given immediately, by the beating of drums and the sounding of trumpets; some soldiers that were then swimming in the river, lost all their cloaths by this accident. It was well it happened by day; for if it had been in the night it would have put us under a great consternation, it being generally reported, that it had been done by treachery.

There was at that time a plentiful crop of tobacco upon the circumjacent fields, but was not quite fit for reaping, which must be done at a certain season, before the low grounds overflow'd. The colonel desired me to provide those who had lost all, with new cloaths, and to deduct it out of their pay; but I told him, that I being only a factor, could not do it without special order from the council, some having but little pay due to them. The 25<sup>th</sup> of December we received intelligence that the enemy began to appear in a considerable body, whereupon the companies of captain *Cousin*, *Scbut*, *Gyfeling*, *la Montayne*, and of a *Brasilian* captain, call'd *Tomee*, were sent in quest of them, with orders to set their stables on fire, and bring the cattle to our quarters. The next following Monday word was brought us, that our troops were so narrowly enclosed by the enemy, that it was feared scarce one of them would escape with life. Whilst we were in a great consternation, not knowing what resolution to take, a *Brasilian* brought us the unwelcome news, that our whole body was routed and dispersed, and captain *Scbut*, *Cousin* and *La Montayne*, kill'd upon the spot. He had scarce finish'd his doleful relation before a *German* foldier, who had escap'd the fight, by his bleeding wounds and his words gave us a confirmation of what had been told us before, with this addition, that captain *Gyfeling's* lieutenant, *La Montayne's* ensign, and one *Kilmet*, belonging to captain *Scbut*, had fought their way through the enemy, with about 30 soldiers, and would soon be here. This mishap was chiefly attributed to the fool-hardiness of our troops, who contrary to colonel *Hinderfon's* command, having at once discharged all their muskets against the enemy, fell in pell-mell, without any regular order, with sword in hand upon the enemy, which the enemy perceiving, retreated back and drew them into an ambush. Towards night we saw several soldiers miserably wounded with darts come to our quarters, some who had

li thrown



1646. thrown away their arms, were forced to cast lots for their lives, the misfortune of which fell upon a *Dutchman* and a *Brazilian*, who being tied to a stake to be shot to death, were however pardon'd by the colonel. Captain *Gyseling's* lieutenant, who came without his arms to the fort, was sent immediately to the *Receif*, where his sword was broke over his head, and he declared incapable of serving the company for the future, notwithstanding he had done them faithful service for seven years last past.

By this time I was sent for to the *Receif*, so that after having taken my leave of the colonel and Mr. *Dames*, I embarked on board the *Bat* the 16<sup>th</sup> of *December*, and we were the same evening with a fair wind and stream carried to the mouth of the river. It being a fine moon-light night we catch'd abundance of *Zaggers* as we call them, a fish of a very good taste, and continued our course with a brisk gale: Not far from the rivers mouth we met with four of our ships, who told us they were to fetch provisions, but in case they could not, were to return forthwith to the *Receif*. The 18<sup>th</sup> we advanced but little, the ships being not out of sight of us, near the rivers mouth, but did catch more fish than we were able to eat. The 20<sup>th</sup> we were likewise becalmed, and we perceived the moon to be half eclipsed for the space of two hours. The next following day we failed to near to *St. Antonio*, that we could see them walking along the sea-shore. Towards night we discovered *Porto Calvo*, about 30 leagues from *Rio St. Francisco*. We were often becalmed, but caught abundance of *King's-fish* and *Codds*, and saw fires in many places along the coast. The 24<sup>th</sup> of *December* we came so near to the cape of *St. Austin* that we discovered five ships and seven row-barges in the harbour; we might have reached some of those that went ashore with our shot, had it not been for the sand-bank which hindred our nearer approach. About noon we came before the *Receif*, but it was so foggy that we could scarce discover the water fort, nevertheless we ventured in, and I got ashore immediately, with an intention to give an account of the state of affairs in *Rio St. Francisco* to Mr. *Schonenburgh*, being conducted thither by colonel *Shoppe*, who happened to meet me immediately after my landing.

The 27<sup>th</sup> of *October* the enemy had laid two ambushes in the way to the fort *Prince William*, beyond the redoubt *Kik*. They did not stir till towards noon, when perceiving a company of our soldiers marching along the dike, they fired so briskly upon them, that they killed 11, wounded 12, and took three prisoners; yet not with-

out the loss of some on their side.

In the mean while the *Tapoyers* being much exasperated at the murder of the before-mentioned *Jacob Rabbi* their commander, had left our party; the council did what they could to appease them, imprisoned and banished *Garjman* the author of it, and confiscated his estate, notwithstanding which, the *Tapoyers* could not be prevailed upon to join with us as before.

The 18<sup>th</sup> of *November* Mr. *Van Goch* entered into a conference with the members of the old council, whether it might not be feasible to embark what forces we were able to spare on board our great ships, and to attempt to make a powerful diversion to the enemy by attacking them in some place or other. But those of the old council having represented to him the danger of this enterprize if it should miscarry, whilst they were blockt up in the *Receif*, the further debate thereof was deferred till the next day. It was then proposed, upon second thoughts, that in case we could bring all our forces together, something of moment might be undertaken without manifest hazard, whereby to oblige the enemy to withdraw his forces from the *Receif*; but Mr. *Van Goch* apprehending no small danger in case we miscarried, they came to no resolution for that time.

It being found by experience that all our promises of pardon had proved ineffectual, it was proposed by Mr. *Van Goch* the first of *December*, whether it were not most expedient to give no quarter for the future; unto which it was answered, that very seldom quarter had been given by us, and few prisoners were taken, and that the enemy had likewise killed most of our people that were fallen into their hands, but they judged it not convenient to refuse quarter to all without distinction, which would induce such of the inhabitants as had remained quiet hitherto, to betake themselves likewise to their arms.

The 23<sup>d</sup> of *November* we laid an ambush for the enemy near the fort of *Assagados*, who being by some few sent out for that purpose, engaged in a skirmish, and pursuing our men with great eagerness under the cannon of the fort, were set upon by those lying in ambush, who killed and wounded many of them.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of *December* the corps of the late admiral *Lichtbart* was interr'd, one company of the city militia, and two of soldiers appearing in arms upon that occasion, gave him three salvoes with their musquets.

The 30<sup>th</sup> of *December* the *Eagle* yacht brought letters to the council, dated in *Rio St. Francisco* the 4<sup>th</sup> of *December*, intimating, that in an island a little above the fort

1646.

The *Tapoyers* leave our party.

Debate concerning an enterprize against the enemy.

Shoppe returns from Goiana.

Consultations concerning the state of *Parayba*.

Another bout refusing of quarter.

New from *Rio St. Francisco*

Mr. Nieuhoff's return to the *Receif*.

The enemy lay an amb.



1646.

much before-  
mander, did what  
prisoned of it, and  
standing prevailed

Goch en-  
members of  
it not be-  
were a-  
ships, and  
version to  
some place  
council ha-  
her of this  
philt they  
further de-  
next day,  
thoughts,  
our forces  
might be  
ard, where-  
draw his  
Van Goch  
in case we  
olution for

that all our  
ineffectual,  
the first of  
most expe-  
ture; un-  
feldom  
and few pri-  
enemy had  
that were  
y judged it  
to all with-  
duce such of  
quiet hi-  
likewise to

an ambush  
Alfagados,  
ut for that  
, and pur-  
ness under  
t upon by  
killed and

s of the late  
compa-  
of soldiers  
ation, gave  
quets.  
agle yacht  
dated in  
mber, inti-  
above the  
fort

The Tapa-  
yers leave  
our party.

Debate  
concerning  
an enter-  
prise a-  
gainst the  
enemy.

1646. fort, one colonel *Rebellis* was arrived with 200 men from the *Babia*; and that they expected another reinforcement; as well from thence as from the *Vargea*; that our people being sent higher up the river, had attackt some of the enemies troops, but they made their escape to the other side, leaving their arms and clothes behind them.

1647. The 2<sup>d</sup> of January 1647, colonel *Shoppe* who had been with 300 fusileers in *Goiana*, returned to the *Recife*, giving an account that he had taken a view of all the rivers thereabouts, but met with no enemy.

The 5<sup>th</sup> of January the council received an account of the beforementioned action in *Rio St. Francisco*, viz. Five companies of our forces being sent to *Orambou*, to beat up the enemies quarters; they met with a body of 100 men, whom they attackt and put to flight; but soon after our forces were attackt by a much stronger body, who put them to the rout, with the loss of 150 men; of our officers one captain was killed, and five taken prisoners, viz. captain *Samuel Lambart*, *La Montagne*, *Gerrit Schut*, *Kilian Taylor*, *Daniel Koon*, and three lieutenants, *Joost Koyman*, *Anthony Baliart*, *Jeronymus Hellemen*, and one ensign.

The 8<sup>th</sup> of January Mr. *Van Goch*, in the name of the new council, advised with those of the old, that it being resolved among them to send for a considerable number of their forces out of *Parayba*, in order to gather a body of troops for some important design, they desired to be informed concerning the present condition of the said captainship; and whether the city of *Parayba* and *St. Andrew* might be defended by a small garrison; whereupon those of the old council replied, that the town of *Fredricia* had no fresh water but what they must fetch at a miles distance, and consequently might be cut off by the enemy; the same thing might be done at the passage leading to the river-side; besides, that there was no fortifications belonging to the place but the monastery, which was of no great consequence, and the *Guarte Domai-ges* church, which had been fortified by the enemy in this war. As to *St. Andrew* it was no more than a sugar-mill about four hours distant from the city of *Parayba*, situate upon the bank of the river; that the communication of this place with the fort of *St. Margaret* might easily be cut off by the enemy, as being likewise about four leagues from thence, but it might be relieved from the water-side, and yet not without great difficulty. Mr. *Van Goch* told them he would make his report thereof to the council.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of January the council received advice, that the enemy were with a strong body of troops entred *Parayba*, and advan-

cing very near to the sugar-mill of *St. Andrews*, had in the night time surpris'd some *Dutch* and *Brasilians*, to the number of 50 men, women and children, of which they had killed some, and ript up the womens bellies.

The 13<sup>th</sup> of January some pamphlets were again dispersed by the enemy, containing in substance, that since the inhabitants of the *Recife* were now beyond all hopes of further relief, it would be their surest way to come to an accommodation; for they resolved to venture all before they would lay aside their design; but if all failed they would destroy the whole country, and so leave it: They exhorted them not to be deceived by the insinuations of those who belonged to the company, and called them rebels; they being no more to be stiled so than the *Dutch* themselves, who had asserted their liberty against *Spain*.

The 17<sup>th</sup> of January four negroes belonging to one *Iaac de Ralssier*, who had been taken prisoners some days before in *Parayba*, came over to us into the *Recife*, and brought advice, that the enemy, after having tarried but a little time in that captainship, where they had killed five *Dutch* men and some *Brasilians*, were retired from thence.

The 22<sup>d</sup> of January early in the morning, the enemy began to batter the wooden fort near the *Baretta*, from a battery on the bank of the fourth side of the river which he continued the whole day, but desisted at night; the garrison having been reinforced about noon with five companies of soldiers, and some provisions; because Mr. *Hamel*, one of the members of the old council, did represent to Mr. *Van Goch*, that tho' the fort itself was so inconsiderable, as scarce to be worth the trouble of defending it by a good garrison, yet at this juncture, when the enemy had made his first attempt upon it, it would not be advifeable to desert it, for fear of giving encouragement to the enemy to attack the other forts; but that on the contrary, as long as they did meet with a brave resistance here, they would not be so forward to attempt others; especially since we had the conveniency of relieving them with boats at high-water, with low-tide by land by the way of the sandridge; and that we might annoy the enemy with the cannon from our yachts in his trenches, as we had done that day. About the same time a map was ordered to be made, shewing the true situation of the *Recife*, with the turnings and windings of the adjacent rivers and marshes, as far as the *Baretta*, for the better instruction of the council.

The 24<sup>th</sup> of January in the morning, news was brought that the enemy had raised the

1647.

Advice  
from Pa-  
rayba.

The wood-  
en fort bat-  
tered.

Raise the  
siege.

1647. siege of the fort of the *Baretta* the night before, and carried off all their cannon, being sensible that as long as they could be annoyed from the sea-side, and we be able to reinforce them daily with fresh troops, they could promise themselves but slender success: But besides that our people were to struggle against the enemy and famine, they were frequently troubled with desertions, many of our soldiers, nay even to the sergeants and other officers, who begun to despair of our ease, running over to the enemy, even at that time when the before-mentioned ships the *Faulcon* and *Elizabeth* were in sight of the *Receif*.

Now the members of the old council began to prepare in good earnest for their return to *Holland*, they had already in December 1646, solicited Mr. *Schonenburgh* president of the new council, to order some ships to be got ready to transport them thither, and the *Vlyssingen* had been appointed for that purpose; but the same being not as yet returned from cruising, they applied themselves the 25<sup>th</sup> of January 1647, to Mr. *Van Goch*, and told him, that whereas according to their commission, one of them should return after the expiration of three years, they had continued in *Brasil* these six years, Mr. *Kodde* having indeed been ordered to return about that time, but his place not being supplied by another, he died before his departure: That they had for these three years last past, solicited their return, and had two years ago received promises of being relieved by others; which had not been performed till within these few months, to the great prejudice of themselves and their families: Mr. *Van Goch* promised them to take effectual care to have the ships got ready, and to send for the ship the *Vlyssingen*, in order to their return home. At the time of the accession of the new council to the government, and the departure of *Henry Hamel*, *Adrian Bullestrate*, and *Peter Bas*, late members of the great council, the following forts remained still in the possession of our *West-India* company.

The fort *Keulen* at the mouth of *Rio Grande*, provided with 28 brass and one iron cannon.

The redoubt of *St. Antonio*, on the north-side of the river of *Parayba*, with six iron pieces of cannon.

The fort *Reslangues* in an island of the same name within the river *Parayba*, with four brass and five iron pieces of cannon.

The fort *Margaret* on the south side of the river *Parayba*, with 14 brass and 24 iron pieces of cannon.

The fort *Orange* in the isle of *Itamarika*, with 6 brass and 7 iron pieces of cannon.

*Nassé*: *Senhora de Conceitiao*, an old battery upon the hill of *Itamarika*, with two brass and eight iron pieces of cannon.

The redoubt called *Madame de Bruin*, three iron pieces of cannon.

The fort *Wardenburgh*, alias the *Triangular Fort*, betwixt the *Bruin* and the *Receif*, the first provided with four brass and five iron pieces of cannon; the last with 14 brass guns.

The *Land Fort*, alias *St. John's*, with 11 iron guns.

The *Water Fort*, at the mouth of the river of the *Receif*, with seven brass guns.

The fort *Ernestus*, with 5 brass and 3 iron pieces of cannon, and the battery with five brass and two iron pieces of cannon.

The *Receif*.

*Maurice's Town* upon the island of *Anthony Vaz*.

The fort *Frederick Henry*, alias the *Quinquangular Fort*.

The redoubt of *Stone* near this fort.

The redoubt *Kiik*, betwixt the fort *Frederick Henry* and the fort *Prince William*.

The fort *Prince William* upon the river *Affagados*.

The forts then in possession of the *Portuguese*, and taken by them from the *Dutch*, are these;

*Seregipto del Rey*, *Rio St. Francisco*, and *Porto Calvo*, being reduced by famine, were rased by the *Portuguese*, being sensible that our people could not maintain themselves there without erecting of new ones, which was not to be done without a vast charge. Near the point of *Tamandare*, the place where the *Portuguese* from the *Babia* first of all landed their men; and where afterwards their fleet was beaten by ours, the enemy laid the foundation of a fort for the security of that harbour, where ships of great burden might safely ride at anchor.

The 23<sup>d</sup> of January, Mr. *Beaumont* was sent by the new council to confer with the late members concerning the present condition of *Rio St. Francisco*, and what was best to be done there: They answered him as before, that the fort as it was now, could do but little service, and that therefore it would be worth our consideration, whether the proposals made by them in writing, might not now be put in practice. The said Mr. *Beaumont* further proposed, whether it would not be requisite to erect an earthen redoubt for the defence of the *Receita*; unto which those of the old council replied, that considering the vast charge and the small benefit which could be expected from it, the same might be more conveniently built in some place or other, to facilitate our passage into the open country. *Beaumont* was of opinion, that there-

A conference about  
Rio St.  
Francisco

And the  
Baretta.

The members  
of the  
old council  
solicit  
their re-  
turn.

A cat-  
astrophe of the  
forts in the  
hands of  
the Dutch.

The Receif  
closely  
blockt up.

The Portu-  
guese re-  
build a  
fort.

A mira-  
ble specta-  
cle.

1647. by the enemy would be prevented from advancing to the fort *Frederick Henry*; but the old members told him, that notwithstanding we had now a fort on the *Baretta*, we could not hinder the enemies coming upon that island near the fort, unless we would keep a considerable force there for that purpose; that we need not fear their transporting any cannon thither, because their retreat might be cut off at high tide; neither could they from thence do any mischief to the *Receif*, it being evident, that the shot of our biggest cannon in the fort *Frederick William* could not reach the said island. The same evening Mr. *Van Goch* and *Hack*, came to tell the members of the old council, that the *Hollandia* and *Ulyssingen* would be ready in a little time, in order to conduct ther. to *Holland*, the *Ulyssingen* being ordered for. hwich to return from the *Babia*, whither she was sent a cruising.

By this time the enemy had block'd us up so closely in the *Receif*, that on the land side we durst scarce look without the gates; and a certain *Portuguese* had prepared us a worse entertainment, having invited all our chief commanders abroad to his daughters wedding, during which time the enemy were to have surprized the city; but this design being timely discovered by some *Portuguese* and *Jews*, miscarried.

About the 15<sup>th</sup> of *October*, the *Portuguese* began to rebuild the fort *Bon Jesus*, as it is call'd by them, but by us *Altena*, on the other side of the river. We had some notice of it by deserters, but could not discover the truth of it, because they kept us from advancing that way by their cannon, and the place was surrounded on all sides with woods; but as soon as they had caused them to be cut down, we discovered it both by sight and the roaring of their cannon, which thundering incessantly against the city, caused such a consternation, as is not easy to be express'd, most people sheltering themselves in vaults, to avoid the fury of the enemies cannon. Of this I saw a most miserable spectacle in a certain young lady, a niece of the late admiral *Liechbart*, who being come to visit one of her acquaintance, lately married, had both her legs shot off by a cannon bullet, which at the same time kill'd the new married woman upon the spot. At the outcry of these miserable wretches, I ran thither instantly, my house being just by, where I was an eye-witness of their misery, the poor young lady grasping my legs with such an agony, that she could scarce be pull'd off with all the strength I had; it being a most doleful spectacle for me to see the floor covered with the legs and arms of these miserable wretches; the poor young lady died like-

VOL. II.

wife within three days after. It was not long after that I narrowly escaped the same misfortune; for whilst I was talking with some of the inhabitants of the city, as I was going the rounds, two of them were kill'd by a cannon bullet, and another had both his hands shot off as he was lighting his pipe. Nay we were forced to remove all the ships out of the harbour for fear of being sunk. Colonel *Shoppe*, in the mean while, had made himself master of and destroyed *Taperika*, 2000 *Portuguese* only having saved themselves by flight; but by the many unsuccessful encounters we had with the *Portuguese*, our forces decreasing daily, whereas theirs encreased, colonel *Shoppe* was ordered to command colonel *Hinderfon* to leave *Rio St. Francisco*, and to join him in *Taperika*; but this stood us but a little stead, being not long after obliged to leave likewise *Taperika* for the relief of the *Receif*. All our force consisting of about 1800 men, being now come to the *Receif*, (where they had not provisions for above seven months left) it was several times taken into consideration, what was best to be done at this juncture. Colonel *Shoppe*, with some other officers, were of opinion not to hazard an engagement, our forces being so much inferior to the enemy, but to stay for a more favourable opportunity; but it was carried by the majority to venture a general salley for the relief of the *Receif*, the chief command thereof being given to colonel *Brink*, because colonel *Shoppe* was not as yet cured of his wounds he had received in a late encounter. Our forces marched towards evening as far as *Guerapes*, a place fatal to us the year before by the defeat of our people, the fields thereabouts being as yet covered with their bones. The *Portuguese* no sooner perceived us to be upon the march, but they left the fort *Altena*, of which we having got notice, possess'd ourselves of it immediately, and thus drew the thorn out of our foot. But the 16<sup>th</sup> of *May* prov'd the most fatal of all we had seen for many years before in *Brasil*. For though our forces attack'd the enemy with bravery, and maintained the fight with great oblinacy for some time, yet the enemy, flush'd with their number and late success, with 2500 of the best men, at last forced our men to give way, and afterwards to fly, being pursued by 150 *Portuguese* horse; so that both in the fight and flight, we lost above 1100 men, among whom were colonel *Brink*, and almost all the rest of our commanders: We lost also 19 colours, and all our cannon and ammunition we had carried along with us. It was not till five days after before leave could be obtained to bury our dead,

K k

which

The Receif  
closely  
block'd up.

The Portuguese  
re-build a  
fort.

A miserable  
spectacle.

A general  
salley made  
by the  
Dutch.

Are routed.

1647. which began to corrupt and stink most nauseously, by reason of the burning heat of the sun. This was the last effort we were likely to make in the field; all our future care being for the preservation and defence of the *Receif*, unless we should be supplied with fresh succours from *Holland*; but the same arriving but slowly, most people began to fear, that in case God Almighty did not send us some unexpected relief, we should be at last forced to leave that place likewise to the mercy of the enemy: The great council laying the fault of our late misfortunes upon the council of war, and these again upon them, alledging, that the soldiers were ill provided for, and wanted

their pay. As for myself, being sensible that things would be worse and worse every day, I thought it the safest way for me also, to desire a passport for my return to *Holland*, which at last, with much ado I obtained, and so prepared every thing for my voyage. But before I leave *Brasil*, I ought to give you a short account of the products of the said country.

The captainship of *Pernambuco* and *Brasil* in general, being not only well stored with cattle, but also with several sorts of herbs, trees and fruits, we will give you a short view of them, and begin with the *Mandioba*, and its root, call'd *Mandioka*, *Mandioba* unto which the *Brasilians* stand chiefly ip- root.



debted for their sustenance. The most parts of *America* are ignorant hitherto of wheat or any other grain, instead of which nature has furnished them with a certain shrub, the root of which dried and powdered, and afterwards boil'd and bak'd as we do our bread, is the common food of the inhabitants of *America*. This shrub grows in vast plenty every where, being by the *Brasilians* called *Maniba* and *Mandioba*, and its root *Mandioka*. There are divers kinds of it, distinguished by the *Brasilians* by different names, but the root is in general called *Mandioka*. Their leaves are small, green and long, pointed at the end, which grow upon large stalks or branches, each of which

has five, six, or seven leaves, growing in a cluster, resembling a star, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Manikoba*. The stock or stem is distinguished by certain knots, not above an inch thick, but generally six, sometimes seven foot high, from whence sprout forth several branches, which producing again lesser stalks, bear the before-mentioned leaves: It bears a small flower of a pale yellow colour, and of five leaves only, with small stalks within, which at last turn to seed. The root *Mandioka* resembles our parsnip in shape, being two or three foot long, and about a man's arm thick, but grows thinner towards the bottom. Its outward rind resembles that of a hazel-tree, but

1647. sensible  
orfe eve-  
y for me  
return to  
h ad I  
thing for  
Brasil, I  
t of the

and Bra-  
ell stored  
i forts of  
ve you a  
with the  
Mandioka, Mandioka  
chiefly ip-  
root.



rowing in  
d by the  
or item is  
not above  
ometimes  
out forth  
ng again  
mentioned  
of a pale  
nly, with  
t turn to  
bles our  
three foot  
ick, but  
om. Its  
afel-tree,  
but

1647. but its substance is white, affording a milky sharp juice, which is pernicious to beasts. This shrub grows in dry, barren and sandy ground, its nature being so averſe to moiſture, that they are obliged to plant it only in the ſummer months, where it is moſt expoſed to the ſun. For this purpoſe it is, that the inhabitants cut down the woods on the hills and in the plains, which they burn, and ſo prepare the ground for the production of this root: Theſe fields are by the *Braſilians* called *Ko*, by the *Portugueſe* *Roza*, or *Chokas*, and by our people *Roffen*. Theſe fields are turn'd up into ſmall round hills like mole-hills; the *Portugueſe* call them *Montes de Terra Cavada*, or *Hollowed Hills*; the *Braſilians* *Kujo*. Theſe hills they make about two foot and a half aſunder, each being about three foot in circumference, and half a foot high, that the rain-water may be carried off with the more eaſe. In each of theſe hills they commonly plant three ſmall takſ of this ſhrub, of about nine, ten inches, or a foot long, without leaves, notwithstanding which they grow and ſoon bear freſh leaves, and in time produce new roots, which cannot be tranſplanted, becauſe no ſooner are they taken out of the ground, but they begin to putrify and ſtink. After theſe takſ have been about ten days in the ground, they begin to bud and produce as many freſh takſ as they have knots; each of theſe takſ is about a finger long, from whence ſprout forth many leſſer ones of a purple colour. The fields muſt be three or four times a year cleared of the weeds, which grow in great plenty amongſt it, and choak it up before it comes to its full growth. The ſmall takſ and leaves of theſe ſhrubs are mightily infeſted by the *Pifmires*, and like- wiſe coveted by the wild-goats, oxen, horſes and ſheep, for which reaſon they are very careful to fence theſe plantations with ſtalks and branches of trees: The bees, coneyſ, and ſome other *Braſilian* creatures are mighty fond of the root, which takes no harm, tho' the ſhrub be ſtrip'd of all the leaves, provided the root itſelf be not touch'd. This root does not come to its full perfection till a year after the planting of the takſ, tho' in caſe of neceſſity they may be drawn in ſix months, but afford but little *Farinba*. Each ſhrub produces two, three, four, nay ſometimes twenty roots, according to the goodneſs of the ground, and after they are come to full maturity, will keep two or three years under ground; but it is much more ſafe to take them up at the years end, for elſe many of them will rot; nay, if the ſeaſon happens to prove very wet, they muſt of neceſſity be drawn tho' they are but half ripe.

The root, after it is taken out of the ground, will not keep above three days, but ſtinks, take what care you can; for which reaſon they ſeldom draw more at a time than they can make immediately into *Farinba* or meal. That kind of *Mandioka*, commonly called *Mandibuka*, grows faſter and ripens ſooner than any other, and affords the beſt *Farinba*; it thrives beſt in ſandy and hot grounds. But that kind which is moſt generally uſed is called *Mandikparata*, and grows indifferently in all grounds. The *Farinba* is prepared thus: The root after it is taken out of the ground is purged from its outward rind by a knife, and waſh'd in fair water: Then the end of the root is held cloſe to a wheel of about four or five foot diameter, which being covered round the edges with a copper or tin plate full of ſharp ſmall holes, not unlike a nutmeg-grater, and the wheel being turn'd round continually, grates the ſaid root into ſmall particles, which fall into a trough underneath. The wheel is by the *Braſilians* called *Ibecem Babaca*, and by the *Portugueſe* *Roda de Farinba*, or the flower wheel; the trough the *Braſilians* call *Mukaba*, and the *Portugueſe* *Koche de rater Mandiboka*. But the poorer fort are ſain to be contented with a hand-grater, called *Tapiti*. The root thus grated is put into a bag, made of the rinds of trees, about four inches wide, called by the *Portugueſe* *Eſpremeouro de Mandiboka*. This bag with the root is put into a preſs, and all the juice preſt out, (it having a venomous quality) which is by the *Braſilians* called *Maipoera*, or *Muni- puera*, and by the *Portugueſe* *Açoa de Mandioka*, i. e. *The water of Mandioka*. The next thing to be done is to beat the root through a ſieve, called by the *Braſilians* *Urupema*; and then to lay it upon a copper plate, or earthen pan, over the fire, and to ſtir it continually with a wooden ſpoon or ſpatle till it be quite dry. This pan or veſſel the *Braſilians* call *Vimovipaba*, and the ſlice *Vipucitaba*. The *Farinba*, before it is quite dry, is called by the *Braſilians* *Vitinga*, and by the *Portugueſe* *Farinba Relada*; but when it is completely dried and fit for keeping, the *Braſilians* call it *Viata* or *Viccia*, and the *Portugueſe* *Farinba Seca*, or dry meal; or *Farinba de Guerra*, war-meal, becauſe it is moſt uſed in time of war. For the more it is dried the better it keeps, but never keeps good above a year, the leaſt moiſture being apt to taint it; which is the reaſon, that both the *Portugueſe* and we, in imitation of the *Braſilians*, bake biſkets of it upon a grate iron, with hot coals underneath, for the magazines.

The juice *Manipuera*, which is preſs'd out

1647.

How the  
Farinba is  
prepared.



1647. out of the root *Mandioka*, put into a vessel, gets in two hours time a white settlement at the bottom, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Tipioka*, *Tipiaka*, and *Tipiabika*: This dried, affords a very white meal, called *Tipiocui*, which bak'd into cakes as before, call'd by them *Tipiacika*, taste as well as wheaten bread. This juice is also boil'd to pap, and eaten, and serves likewise instead of starch or paste. The *Portuguese* take this pap, mix it with sugar, rice, and orange flower-water, which they make into a conserve of a delicious taste; they call it *Marmelada de Mandiboka*. The juice *Mandiga* or *Manipuera*, is of a sweetish taste, which is the reason the beasts covet it, but commonly die soon after they have drunk of it, it being pernicious, nay mortal, both to man and beast. If the juice be kept twice 24 hours it produces worms, called by the *Brasilians* *Tapucu*; yet it has been found by experience, that this juice loses its pernicious quality after it has stood 24 hours, there being many of *Brasilians* who boil and drink it without any harm. The root *Mandioka* is likewise immediately after it is taken out of the ground, sliced in pieces, and laid in fresh water for four or five days, when it begins to be soft, it is called *Puba*, or *Mandiopuba* and *Mandiopubo*. This the wild *Brasilians*, inhabiting the deserts and woods, roast in the ashes and eat; because it is done without much trouble. The same *Mandiopuba*, roasted before the fire, is called *Kaarima*, which being afterwards beat to powder with a wooden pestel in a mortar, they call *Kaarimaciu*; of this they make a pap with boiling water, which seasoned with some *Brasilian* pepper, or *Nbambi* flowers, affords a very good dish, especially with the addition of some fish or meat, when it is called *Minguipiinga* by the *Brasilians*, who look upon it as one of their best dainties. It is also very wholesome, for this *Kaarima*, and the flower *Tipiaka*, boil'd in orange-flower-water, and sugar, to the consistency of a syrup, affords a very good antidote. They make also a kind of starch of the flower called *Kaarima*, which they call *Minguapomonga*; as likewise very fine cakes, by mixing it with water, butter, and sugar. There is a kind of meal prepared from the dregs of the *Mandioka*, or *Mandiopubo* root, thus steeped in water, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Vi-puba*, and *Viabirurn*, and by the *Portuguese* *Farinha Fresca*, or fresh flower, and *Farinha d'Agua*, or water flower. It is very well tasted, but will not keep above 24 hours. But if you make it up with water into balls or rolls, and let them dry in the sun, they will keep good for a considerable time: These they call *Viapua* and *Miapetika*. The

1647. *Tapoyers*, and almost all the other *Brasilians* prepare it thus, and afterwards mix it with another meal, called *Viata*, which affords it a more agreeable taste.

The *Mandioka* root is likewise prepared thus: After it has been cleaned and cut in thin slices, they beat it with a wooden pestel, and squeeze the juice of it out with their hands only, which being dried, they call *Tina* and *Mixakuruba*; another way of preparing the *Mandioka* root is, to cut it into pieces, of about two fingers long, and two inches thick, which without being squeezed, is exposed to the sun, and afterwards beat to powder in a wooden mortar, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Tipirai*, by the *Portuguese* *Farinha de Mandioka crua*, or the flower of raw *Mandioka*: The pieces before they are beaten to powder are very white, and may be used instead of chalk. Out of this flower they make very good white bread and biscuits, call'd *Miapeta*, the last of which are chiefly used in the camp, because they will keep a great while.

Out of the root *Apimakaxera*, the *Brasilians* boil a certain pleasant liquor not unlike our whey, call'd by them *Kavimakaxera*. The same root, chaw'd and mixed with water, furnishes them with another liquor they call *Kaon Karazu*. The cakes made from the flower of this root, laid in a cask with water, till it ferments together, affords them likewise a sort of strong and very good beer.

All these different kinds of *Mandioka* roots, if they be eaten fresh prove mortal to mankind, except that call'd *Apimakaxera*, which roasted, may be eaten without danger, and is of a good taste. But all sorts of beasts, both wild and tame ones, don't only feed upon the said roots and leaves, without the least hurt, but also grow fat with them, notwithstanding that the juice of both is mortiferous as well to men as beasts. The *Negroes* and *Brasilians* bruise the leaves of the *Mandioka* in a wooden mortar, which being boil'd, they put oil or butter over it, and eat it like as we do our spinach; this is sometimes done by the *Portuguese*, likewise and the *Dutch*, who make a kind of sallot of the same leaves. The *Brasilians* prefer the bread made of the *Mandioka* root before ours, but it is not so natural to the *Europeans*, it being, if used in a great quantity, pernicious to the nerves and stomach, and corrupts the blood. About three bushels of this meal, (at the rate of two gilders per bushel) will suffice a strong labouring man for a whole month, and a piece of ground planted with this root, produces four times the quantity, as if it had been sown with wheat. There is a certain kind of *Mandioka* root call'd *Pi-tinga*,



ther *Brafi*- 1647  
wards mix  
*iaata*, which

le prepared  
and cut in  
wooden pe-  
it out with  
dried, they  
other way of  
s, to cut it  
s long, and  
hout being  
s, and after-  
den mortar,  
by the *Por-*  
*rua*, or the  
e pieces be-  
er are very  
d of chalk.  
very good  
d *Miapeta*,  
used in the  
great while.  
*va*, the *Bra-*  
quor not un-  
*Kavimakax-*  
and mixed  
h another li-  
The cakes  
root, laid in  
nts together,  
f strong and

of *Mandika*  
be mortal to  
*piamakaxera*,  
without dan-  
But all forts  
ones, don't  
and leaves,  
so grow fat  
at the juice  
l to men as  
*filians* bruise  
wooden mor-  
put oil or  
s we do our  
one by the  
*Dutch*, who  
same leaves.  
made of the  
t it is not  
t being, if  
cious to the  
s the blood.  
eal, (at the  
will suffice  
ole month,  
d with this  
quantity, as  
There is  
call'd *Pi-*  
*tinga*,



The and Fruit of  
Passion



Papaya

Indigo

Fruit of  
Passiflora

Fruit of  
Passiflora

Kaeo or  
Herba  
viva.

Kalabassia.

The tree  
Imaraku.

1647. *tinga* by the *Brasilians*, the flower of which cleanses and heals old ulcers. This root is likewise found in the isle of *St. Thomas*, and in those of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and others thereabouts, and in most parts of the continent of *America*; the inhabitants of which call it *Tuka* and *Kassave*, and those of *Mexico* *Quaukamoib*, and the bread which is made of the flower, *Kazabis*, *Kazabi*, or *Kakavi*. The *Mandioka* root is originally the natural product of *Brasil*, and from thence transplanted into other parts of *America* and *Africk*. Its flower furnishes all the inhabitants of *Brasil*, as well the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, as the natives and negroes with bread, which next to wheat is the best of all, so that our soldiers would rather chuse to have their allowance in *Farinha*, than wheaten bread out of the magazines. Since the war in 1645, the price of the *Farinha* was risen to three or four gilders per bushel, which, as it tended to the utter destruction of the sugar-mills, so by special orders from the great council of the *Dutch Brasil*, all the inhabitants of the open country were enjoined, under a severe penalty, to plant a certain quantity of *Mandioka* yearly, in proportion to their abilities, by which means the price of the *Farinha* was so considerably abated, that three bushels were sold for two shillings ready money, at the *Receij*, and for less in the country.

Kaaoe or  
Herba  
viva.

*Brasil* produces a certain herb call'd *Kaaoe* by the *Brasilians*, by the *Europeans* in *Latin*, *Herba viva*, because it seems to shrink when you touch it, and so it does likewise about sun-set; its seed has been transmitted into *Europe*, where it grows to its full perfection.

Kalabasses.

The *Kalabasses* are a kind of pompions, their rind, if dried, being so thick and strong, as to serve for materials for cups, porringers, and such like utensils. But what is most surprizing is, that they always grow of a different shape, some being long, others round, others oval, some thick before, others at the end. They blossom and bear fruit once a month, the blossom being yellow, mix'd with green; the pulp is white at first, but turns to a violet colour; they are of a tolerable pleasant taste, but very unwholesome, by reason they are too astringent.

The tree  
Imaraku.

The tree call'd *Imaraku* by the *Brasilians*, is of a middle size, its trunk round, and its bark grey, covered with small thistles of the same colour. Its branches sprout forth on the top, with broad leaves of an oval figure, edged likewise with small thistles or thorns. There is also another kind of *Imaraku*, much larger than the former, call'd *Kakabu* by the *Brasilians*, and *Kar-*

Vol. II.

don by the *Portuguese*. This sprouts forth first of all in the form of a large octangular leaf, upon which grow crosswise many thorns; this produces other leaves of the same kind, each being three, nay sometimes six foot long, and of the thickness of a man's arm. By degrees the first leaf turns into a woody substance, of a greenish colour, but somewhat spongy; those leaves that grow next to this stem are instead of branches, which produce other leaves. The stem bears only one large white flower, the fruit of which is of an oval figure, and of about twice the bigness of a hens-egg, of a dark brown colour, and fit for use. This tree grows to a great height. There is also another kind of *Imaraku*, being altogether the same with the former in respect of its largeness, blossom and fruit, except that its leaves are of a triangular figure.

What the *Brasilians* call *Pako Kaatinga*, *Pako Kaatinga*, the *Portuguese* commonly call *Canodo Mato*, or wild reed or canes. The stem or stalk is like that of other canes, about an inch thick, containing a white marrow or pith, of a sweetish taste, on which grow leaves of eight or nine inches long, and three inches broad, shaped like a tongue, smooth and pale green on one, and covered with a white woolly substance on the other side. The fruit of which is not unlike a pineapple, about ten inches long, growing on the top of the stem; it is divided into several partitions, which opening by degrees, a pale grey flower appears betwixt each, containing underneath twenty or more grains of a black shining seed. The stalk chew'd draws the rheum from the head, and breaks the stone in the bladder. It is look'd upon as an excellent remedy against the involuntary emission of the seed throughout *Brasil*, and cures it in eight days time.

All over *Brasil*, but especially in the isle of *Ilamarika*, grows a certain tree call'd *Kasjui* or *Kasjou*, bearing a fruit of the same name. Its leaves are dark green, broad and round, interspersed with many small veins. It bears two different blossoms and fruits. The white blossom which appears in the lower branches, produces a juicy spongy fruit like an apple, of a very cooling and astringent quality: But the red blossom on the top a kind of chestnut. The *Brasilians* draw no small advantage from this tree; out of the apples they make a very good cyder, call'd by them *Kasjouwy*, which is sourish, but if mix'd with sugar, makes it as pleasant as *Rbenish* wine, and has this excellency; that tho' it soon seizes the head, yet it passes off without any harm. The other fruit they eat like as we do our chestnuts.

Among the products of the *West* and *East-*

L 1

1647. *East-Indies* is a tree call'd *Papay*, by the *Javanefes* and *Dutch*, and *Pinguacu* or *Ma-moeira* by the *Americans*; and sometimes intituled with the name of the *Melonree* by our people, by reason of the resemblance of its fruit to our melons. This tree is of two different kinds, to wit, the male and female. It grows and perishes again in a short time; its trunk being so spongy that it may be cut as easy as a cabbage stalk; the leaves it bears are very large and broad, not unlike our vine leaves, growing on long stalks; and the top of the tree, and covering the fruit, which hangs in a knot, and is green at the first, but turns yellow at last, resembling in shape a pear, but of the bigness of our small melons, unto which its pulp resembles both in colour and taste, when come to maturity, but whilst they are green, they are boil'd with meat, and give it a tart taste.

*Chili Lada*  
or *Brasil*  
pepper.

The red pepper, known by the name of *Brasil pepper*, and call'd *Chili Lada* by the *Brasilians*, grows on knotty stalks of about five or six foot high; the rind being a dark green, distinguished with white rings, from whence shoot forth small crooked branches of a hands breadth in length, bearing a small white flower, which produces a green husk, and turns red by degrees as it ripens, with a certain seed within it, being as hot and biting upon the tongue as the common brown pepper, and so does the husk. In the *East-Indies* they preserve it, and call it *Acizar*, and use it raw in their fish sauces. In *Brasil* they cut two or three of these husks whilst they are green in slices, and mix them with oil and vinegar, or some limon juice, to acuate their appetite, but it is too hot for those that are not used to it, which is allayed by a good quantity of salt. This kind of pepper grows likewise in the *East-Indies*, in the island of *Java*, in *Bengala*, and several other places. I have seen it also in some of our gardens in *Holland*. There is another shrub which grows frequently in the *East-Indies*, not unlike this in shape and bigness, which bears a yellow flower; it is call'd *Halika Kabus* by the *Arabians* or *Alkekengi*, and sufficiently known in these parts. The flower produces a small bladder which contains the fruit and seed, they are not so big as ours. The *Indians* and *Chinese* mix it with a certain fruit call'd by them *Poma d'Oro*, *Tamatas* by the *Portuguese*, and *Melanfana* by the *Italians*; they also eat it with *Chili Lada* or *Brasilian* pepper. The *Portuguese* cut the *Poma d'Oro* and the husk of the *Brasilian* pepper in thin slices, which being mix'd with oil and vinegar, they eat as a sallat, and look upon it as a proper remedy to cut the rough flegm of the stomach, a distemper very

common in those parts. The *Brasilians*, as well as the *Dutch*, chew this pepper for the same purpose, but it is very burning upon the tongue.

The sugar canes or reeds, call'd by the *Brasilians* *Viba*, are the product both of the *West* and *East-Indies*, but grow in great plenty throughout all *Brasil*, but especially in the captainship of *Pernambuko*. They are of two different kinds, one bearing small, the other larger leaves. The last, which is accounted the best, sprouts up into a long stem of the thickness of a child's arm, the leaves growing all on the top in a cluster, being of an oval figure, and a dark blue colour. The rind is distinguished by certain joints or knots; the other kind bears small leaves from the top to the bottom. The sugar-canes are propagated from their small sprouts, which being put in the ground like our vines, grow up to the height of twelve foot, if they are planted in good soil, and are kept free from weeds. Six months after they have been planted, a brown seed appears on the top, then it is fit to be cut; for if they stand longer in the ground their juice diminishes, dries up, and turns sour. The juice, if taken immediately after it is drawn, causes a looseness. The low grounds are much more convenient for the planting of sugar-reeds than the hills, especially near the river side, where the banks are often over-flown by the stream. There are a certain kind of winged worms, call'd *Guirapeakoka* by the *Brasilians*, and *Pao de Galinha* by the *Portuguese*, which are great enemies to the sugar-canes, especially in moist grounds, where they gnaw and consume the roots. The sugar, which is the product of these canes, is not procured without a great deal of toil and labour, in which for the most part are employed slaves, under the tuition of certain overseers, appointed by the masters of the sugar-mills, who were for the most part *Portuguese*, the *Dutch* being hitherto not arrived to the utmost perfection in that art. In the captainship of *Pernambuko*, many fine *Ingenbo's* or sugar-mills, with their adjacent plantations were erected for this purpose, amounting in all to above 100 in number, and the labourers, negroes, and other *African* slaves thereunto belonging, to near 40000. The whole yearly product of sugar of the *Dutch Brasil*, is computed to be betwixt 200000 and 250000 chests.

In the year 1642, one *Gillin Vonant Indig.* brought some indigo seed from the *American* islands into *Brasil*, who having certain lands assigned him near the small river *Mercera*, and being provided with all other conveniences by the special command of

the

*Sugar-*  
*cane's* or  
*reeds.*

*Indig.*

*Fertility*  
of *Brasil*.



1647. the great council, erected several plantations for the producing of *Aniel* or *Indigo*: But it being found by experience, that the pisimires consumed most of the leaves, the said Mr. *Venant*, by employing many labourers and negroes, to destroy these pisimires with burning and digging, at last so well cleared the ground, that the *Indigo* came to its full perfection, several patterns of which were sent into *Holland*. Mr. *Venant* having made an agreement with Mr. *Christopher Eversbettel* to instruct him in the most necessary points relating to the coagulating the indigo, he was treating with the great council concerning certain grounds for the planting of indigo, so that there was a fair prospect of bringing this design to a considerable perfection here, if the same had not been prevented by the intestine war.

The wild *Aniel*, which grows in *Brasil* in great plenty, has a great resemblance to the true indigo in outward appearance, but affords no good colours. Some pretend to have seen also a kind of wild cochenille in *Brasil*, and the ground would produce good store of cotton, but that the inhabitants draw much more profit from the sugar-plantations.

Some ginger is likewise planted in *Brasil*, but not in such quantities as to be transported to other parts, no more than the *Mecbaconna*, *China* and some other medicinal roots; and the *Herba de Cubra* or *Herba de Nossa Senhora*, which is look'd upon as an infallible remedy against the gravel; and the root call'd *Paquoguanba*, which is the universal medicine of the *Brasilians*. There are also many transplanted hither from other parts, as ginger, tobacco, rice, cotton, turkey-wheat, *Aniel*, or indigo, and the sugar-reeds were first of all transported by the *Portuguese* from the *Canary Islands*. The fruits in daily use among the inhabitants, are *Ananas*, *Bananas*, *Mangaba*, *Akaju*, *Ara-kou* great and small, *Guajaba*, divers kinds of *Murukuja*, *Ibapiranga*, *Mazaxanduba*, *Akaja*, *Araliku*, *Guitakori*, *Biringela*, *Mama-on*, *Coco-nuts*, and several sorts of Indian figs. The roots chiefly in use, are the *Bataias*, *Nbambi* and *Umbi*, and the *Indian* acorns, call'd *Tembi*, which are of a delicious taste.

Fertility  
of Brasil.

The whole country of *Brasil* is extremely fertile and pleasant, being watered by many rivers and standing waters, most of which arise from the hills, and pass through spacious plains, the last of which are clayey and marshy grounds, (call'd *Vargeas* by the *Portuguese*) which produce all sorts of fruit: but especially sugar-canes in great plenty. Their meadows and pasture grounds do not appear so pleasant in the summer as

in the rainy season, when they are very green; wheat and rye grow soon rank here, which is occasion'd partly by the nature of the soil, partly by the heat of the sun; to prevent which they never let their grounds lie fallow, and manure them with sand instead of dung. The same must be observed with all other foreign seeds here, that require to be kept a considerable time under ground. In *February* and *March* (which is the rainy and winter-season of this climate) they sow their seeds, and that towards evening, not by day time, or about midnight. They take great care not to plant any thing too deep under ground; for whatever is planted beyond the sun-beams, seldom produces any fruit, which our people have learned to their cost. There is a remarkable difference betwixt the seeds and fruits which are produced on the hills, and those of the marshy grounds, as to their time of ripening; tho' the coco and palm-trees are transplanted here without the least regard to their age, bigness, or the season, and grow very well. Most of their own trees and shrubs bear flowers and fruits throughout the whole year, so that at one and the same time, you enjoy the benefit of the spring, summer and winter; the like is observable in the vines, citron, limon, and other trees, brought by the *Portuguese* from *Angola* into *Brasil*, and in several roots, pot-herbs, and other fruits, transplanted thither by the *Dutch*. Those who covet ripe-grapes throughout the whole year, do only prune their vines at divers times, which produce a fine grape, and a wine as sweet as molasses. The worst is, that they are much infested by the pisimires, which suck all the juice, and leave nothing but the husks to the owners; several other sorts of trees have been transplanted thither from *Holland*, which thrive extremely, and bear very good fruit.

The standing waters of *Brasil* are for the most part covered on the surface with green shrubs and herbs, that they appear rather like land than water, and feed both land and water fowl. At the entrance of most of their rivers, (where you meet with vast quantities of oysters and crabs) the country is so overstock'd with a certain kind of a tree call'd *Guaparaba* or *Mangle* by the *Brasilians*, that they render it impassable for travellers. In sho., the whole *Brasil* is well stored with trees, shrubs and useful woods, there being scarce a place, either in the vallies or rising grounds, which are clayey, or among the hills, which don't produce something that is useful, and that in such plenty, that the *Portuguese* after their first arrival here, were forced to cut their way through these trees with incredible

*Brasilians*, 1647.  
copper for  
burning

*Sugar-*  
cane or  
reeds.

'd by the  
both of the  
in great  
especially  
They  
bearing  
The last,  
or out up  
a child's  
the top in  
re, and a  
distinguish-  
the other  
top to the  
propagated  
being put  
row up to  
are plant-  
free from  
have been  
in the top,  
they stand  
diminishes,  
vice, if ta-  
, causes a  
much more  
sugar-reeds  
river side,  
own by the  
d of wing-  
by the *Bra-*  
the *Portu-*  
the sugar-  
reeds, where  
pts. The  
these canes,  
deal of toil  
part are  
in of cer-  
matters of  
most part  
erto not  
in that  
*Nambuko*,  
ills, with  
ected for  
to above  
negroes,  
belong-  
arly pro-  
is com-  
250000  
*Venant Indigo*.  
e *Ameri-*  
g certain  
all river  
all other  
mand of  
the

1647. ble pains and charge. The hills furnish also great store of wood, which is of a very good scent, and is used by dyers; as for instance the *Brasil* wood, which is from hence transported into *Europe*.

*Brasil*  
wood.

The stem or trunk of this tree is knotty, of a very agreeable scent, and sometimes two or three fathoms thick: Its leaves are dark-green, and small, thorny at the end, and grow on small stalks; the bark, which is about three inches thick, is generally taken from the trunk, before it is fitted for sale: It sprouts from its own root, and produces neither blossom nor fruit. Most of these trees grow about 10 or 12 leagues from the sea-side, where they cut them down, take off the bark, and carry them upon waggons to the sea-shore, from whence they are transported into *Europe* for the use of the dyers chiefly; the *Brasilians* call this tree for its excellency's sake, *Ibirapitanga*. After the *Dutch* had conquered part of *Brasil*, they found great store of this wood ready cut and fitted for use by the *Portuguese*, who sold it to the *Dutch* company; since which time it was cut down promiscuously by the *Portuguese* as well as the *Dutch*, and such vast quantities of it were transported in 1646, and 1647, that the members of the great council of the *Dutch-Brasil*, Mr. Henry Hamel, Bullestrate and Codd, being made sensible of the destructive methods that were made use of in cutting this wood, which must in time have tended to the utter extirpation of these trees, did by their proclamation regulate these abuses. They have another kind of very fine wood in *Brasil*, called by the *Portuguese*, *Pao Santo*, as likewise those call'd *Guayba*, *Vio Wood*, *Massaranduba*, cedar, and divers others woods fit for cabinet-work. The tree call'd *Tataiba* by the *Portuguese*, the wood of which the *Portuguese* call *Pao Amarello*, affords a yellow colour for the Dyers. The bark of the tree *Araiba* is of an ash-colour, but boil'd in water gives a red tincture. The tree *Jakauranda*, or *Jaturiba*, or the white-cedar, as well as several other Trees, furnish the inhabitants with materials for building, being very hard and durable. The *Brasilians* make also matches and a kind of hemp out of the bark of some trees.

The Timbo or Tibo.

The most barren places of *Brasil* do produce a certain kind of trees without leaves, which they call *Timbo* or *Tibo*; out of these they make hoops, by reason of their flexibility, and the bark serves the ship-carpenters instead of hemp.

Their fuel.

The *Brasilians* light their fires by striking two pieces of wood, of the trees *Karaguata Guacu* and *Imbaiba* together, as we do with our flint-stones and iron. The first

is a tree of an admirable nature: Its stem grows 14 or 15 foot high, which being come to its full perfection, bears yellow flowers on the top, and abundance of large long and thick leaves. Out of the stem they make sticks to hang their mattresses on, the leaves afford the fishermen stuff for yarn to make nets of; and out of the leaves issues a certain unctuous liquor, which serves instead of soap. The trees and woods of *Brasil* are never seen to be covered all over with leaves at a time; but whilst some cast their leaves, you see others bring forth new ones; nay, sometimes one tree is half covered with leaves, and bare on the other side. *Brasil* likewise abounds in shrubs and reeds, some of which creep along the grounds, whilst others twist themselves up to the top of the highest trees, which affords a very agreeable spectacle at a distance, and a pleasing shadow to men and beasts, tired with the heat, hunting, or any other exercise.

Among other fruits, *Brasil* produces very fine oranges of divers kinds; the other vegetables, which besides the *Mandika* root, serve for the sustenance of the inhabitants, are rice, millet, *Patatas*, *Ananas*, *Bananas*, melons, pumpions, water-melons, cucumbers, beans, figs, *Bakewas*, *Marakuya*, *Man-gavas*, *Arataku*, *Ape*, cabbages, radish, lettuce, purslain, parsley, chervil, carrots, &c.

Nothing is so much in request among the *Brasilians*, as the *Akaja*, a kind of wild apple, which furnishes them both with food and drink, being very juicy; so that this tree seems by kind nature to have been planted here for the peculiar comfort of the inhabitants: It spreads its branches round about in a great compass, but does not grow to that height as many other trees in this country: Its wood, which is very solid, is very fit for the building of ships, from whence issues a very clear gum in the summer-season. Its leaves, which are red, resemble those of our walnut-trees, especially when they first sprout forth in the spring, but are of a much finer scent, which they never lose but by being distill'd. The blossom is a flower consisting of five small leaves, which grow to the number of about a hundred in one cluster; each of these flowers has a stalk, with a small head in the middle. At their first coming out, which is in *September*, they are very white, but turn soon after to a rose colour; they are very odoriferous, and fill all the circumjacent grounds with their agreeable smell. This tree bears a double fruit, viz. an apple, and a chestnut: The apple is of an oval figure, very juicy; its pulp spongy, full of kernels, and of a tartish taste. The juice taints linen with a certain

1647.

The Akaja.

Palm-tree.

1674. certain colour, such as we call iron-molds; which is never to be taken out, but returns as often as these trees stand in blossoms; it is of a whitish colour after it is first prest out, and tartish, but changes both its colour and taste by fermentation, and becomes very strong. The rind of the apple, which is very thin, is white mixt with red. The chefnut, which grows on the top of the apple in the shape of a lambs kidney, is covered with a thin skin, over which grows a thick ash-colour'd shell, full of a hot, sharp and burning oil, which bites the tongue; To correct which, they roast the chefnut in the ashes, break the shell with a hammer, and eat the pith or kernel, which tastes better than a common chefnut, and will keep good for several years. The *Brasilians* are so fond of this fruit, that they often fight for it; then they encamp among these trees, and remove not 'till they have consumed all thereabouts, unless they are forced thereunto by the enemy. They number the years of their ages by this tree, because it bears fruit but once a year, which ripens towards the latter end of *December* or in *January*, there being none to be found on the trees after *February* in *Pernambuco*. About the time the sun returns back from the tropick of *Capricorn*, it commonly rains in *Brasil*, which the inhabitants call the rains of *Akojix*, for, if the same happens to be moderate, they promise themselves great plenty of this fruit. The chefnuts are hot in the second degree; if eaten raw with wine and salt, they taste like walnuts, but if roasted or preserved with sugar, they are of a delicious taste. The oil which is taken out of the shell, is an excellent remedy against the hair-worm; it is hot in the third and fourth degree, and frequently applied to cancers and other malignant ulcers. The gum, powdered and taken in a convenient vehicle, opens the obstructions of the womb. The juice of the apple furnishes them with good cyder.

There are many sorts of palm-trees to be met with in *Brasil*, some of which grow wild, some are planted and cultivated by the inhabitants. Among the first the palm-tree call'd *Pindava* by the *Brasilians*, which grows very tall, claims the preference, of which there are whole woods to be seen in the open Country. In the more remote and unfrequented places, grows a certain palm-tree called *Karanatbam* and *Anasbekairi* by the *Brasilians*, and by an *Arabic* word among the *Portuguese*, *Tamar*, or date, which this fruit resembles. The tree grows as high as a common date-tree, its wood is red and very solid, but of no great use. The bark is grey, which from the ground upwards to a certain part of the tree is distinguish'd by

Vol. II.

many scales, which are largest at the bottom, and small by degrees, 'till about the middle of the tree they quite disappear; these scales being nothing else but the remnants of the branches, which fall off by degrees, as the tree grows higher; and continue only towards the top, spread round about the stem, like the *African* date-tree, but much finer. Each of these branches is about two or three foot long, flat on two sides, and cover'd with small thorns, they grow to a vast thickness. At the end of each branch grows one single leaf, which is very large and green; pleated like a fan, and about the middle divided into several other leaves, like those of the common date tree; each of these last is about two foot long. Betwixt those branches, on which grow the leaves, spring forth other branches of four or five foot in length; and these again are full of other white sprouts, which bear flowers, with three pale yellow leaves; these produce a fruit of the bigness of an olive, which is green, bitter and not eatable, but turn black when they ripen, which is in *February*. The *Brasilians* call this fruit *Tirade*, and eat it raw; but our people never took any fancy to it. With the leaves they cover their huts, and make baskets of them. The palm-tree call'd *Pindava* by the *Brasilians*, has instead of the bark a white and rough wooden substance, which contains a spongy sulphurous substance, out of which the *Brasilians* prepare a strong lee. This tree is for the rest but of small use, being rather esteem'd for ornaments sake, by reason of its height and fine spreading branches, which however furnish the inhabitants with leaves to cover their huts, and to make baskets of; the *Portuguese* plant them near their walks and arbours, and round their churches. The leaves of this tree do not hang downwards like those of the coco-tree, but stand upright. Just by these leaves sprout forth certain branches, on which hang bunches of flowers, which produce the fruit, resembling in shape and bigness one of our largest hen-eggs, being sharpat the end, and fasten'd to the bunch on the other like the pine-apple. The outside is of a green yellow colour, inclining to a chefnut; being composed of a hairy substance like that of the coco-nuts, but not near so thick, scarce exceeding in thickness two egg-shells. Under this shell is an insipid saffron yellow pulp, which however is used by the negroes, who eat it with *Farinha*. Within this pulp is a hard nut, of an oval figure, not unlike the coco-nut, of the same thickness, but without holes; it contains a pith or kernel, as white and big as a walnut, but is not near so sweet as the coco-nut; they are eaten both by the natives and strangers, who are furnished

M m

with

Its stem  
ch being  
s yellow  
e of large  
the stem  
crests on,  
for yarn  
leaves if-  
ich serves  
woods of  
d all over  
some cast  
forth new  
s half co-  
the other  
arubs and  
along the  
selves up  
which af-  
at a di-  
men and  
ating, or

duces very  
other ve-  
lioka root,  
habitants,  
Bananas,  
s, cucum-  
uja, Man-  
radish, let-  
trots, &c.  
among the  
l of wild  
with food  
that this  
have been  
omfort of  
branches  
but does  
any other  
which is  
ilding of  
clear gum  
s, which  
nut-trees,  
forth in  
her scent,  
distill'd.  
g of five  
number  
er; each  
a small  
rft com-  
they are  
to a rose  
and fill  
their a-  
double  
at: The  
icy; its  
of a tar-  
with a  
certain

Oranger.

The Akojix.

Palm-  
tree.

1647.

1647. with them throughout the whole year, and call'd by the *Brazilians Inajamira*, i. e. the small coco-nut. The kernels of these nuts furnish them likewise with a white cooling oil, which is used instead of our oil of roses, and when fresh drawn mix'd among their filets, but when decay'd, in their lamps. The shell affords an oil of the same nature, but not altogether so cooling. Out of the top of the tree flows a fine and odoriferous gum, used here instead of *Gum Arabick*; they also pick a certain pith or marrow out of the top, which has a taste like our walnuts, and when eaten with bread and salt is accounted very nourishing.

Coco-trees.

There also grow coco-trees in *Brazil*, call'd by the natives *Inajaguacuba*, and the fruit *Inajaguacu*. They are very different from the just now mentioned *Pindava* tree, their trunk or stem being seldom straight, but commonly crooked, sometimes from 7 to 14 foot thick, and 50 foot high; it is without branches, having only 15 or 20 leaves round the top, each of 15 foot long. They have also good store of the common date-trees both male and female. The vast quantity of pismires wherewith *Brazil* abounds, are great enemies to all the products of their grounds, which they endeavour to destroy by fire and water; it is farther to be observed, that some fruits as well as creatures, which are accounted venomous in *Europe*, are commonly eaten in *Brazil*, as on the other hand certain things are poisonous there, which are not in *Europe*. For they have a kind of frogs and some fishes which are extremely poisonous; whereas a certain sort of great pismires and adders, toads, worms and wild rats are eaten by the natives, without any harm.

The food of the *Brazilians*.

The most universal food of the *Brazilians*, is the flour made of the *Mandioka* root, called by them *Vi*, and *Farinha de Mandioka* by the *Portuguese*, as has been shewn more at large before. They feed also upon the flesh of several wild beasts and birds, crabs, craw-fishes, fruits, herbage; their meat whether boiled or roasted they eat half raw. They boil in earthen pots called *Kamu*, which they make themselves. Their flesh they roast thus; they dig a hole in the ground, the bottom of which they cover with leaves of trees, and upon them lay the meat to be roasted, which being covered with the same leaves, they throw sand or earth upon them. Upon this they light a good fire, which they continue till they think it sufficiently roasted. If they hit it right it eats very well, exceeding in goodness all other roasted meats, they call it *Biaribi*. Their fishes whether roasted or boiled they eat with *Inquitaya*, that is, salt and pepper. They boil their crabs or craw-

fishes without salt, and eat them with *Inquitaya*. Small fishes they wrap in leaves, and roast them in the ashes. They take the flour of the *Mandioka* root with their 3 hindermost fingers of the right hand, and so throw it into the mouth; in the same manner they do with beans and such like things; they eat often both day and night, they having no set times for their meals, without the least noise, or any drink, which they reserve till after they have done. They seldom use any spoons, but instead of that their fingers, or some oyster-shell or other serves their turn. The flesh of several wild beasts is much in esteem among the *Brazilians*; as for instance, that of the greater and lesser wild-boars; they have a bunch like a camel on their backs, and are very good food, as well as the flesh of the river pigs, called *Kapiverres* by the *Portuguese*, which is of a very agreeable taste,

Their drink.

The most general and most wholesome liquor used among the *Brazilians*, is their river or fountain water, which by reason of its coolness is a great refreshment to such as are tired by the heat, or the fatigues of other exercises; this is chiefly to be understood of their spring-water, which, though used here in great quantities, never causes any griping in the guts, or other inconveniences in the bowels, but on the contrary occasions a good appetite, and is soon evacuated by sweating.

The waters of the rivers *Paray* and *Paratybi*, are accounted a good remedy against the stone and gout, which is the reason that many arrive to the age of above 100 years, who drink nothing but those waters, and are never troubled with any of those distempers; for those who are advanced in age are as nice in the different tastes of those waters, as the *Europeans* in their wines; and they look upon those as indiscreet who use the waters without distinction. For, since most of their springs arise among the high eastern hills, they receive no addition either from the snows or any metallic bodies, and being well digested and purged from their dregs by the heat of the sun-beams, they are very clear and wholesome; tho' it must be confess'd that in the winter months some waters, by reason of the rains, are not fine and cool as during the summer-season. The negroes make sometimes a nasty mixture of black sugar and water only, without the least fermentation, which they call *Garapa*; this as it is very cheap, so both men and women sit at it for 24 hours together, spending their time in drinking, singing and dancing, but seldom quarrel, unless they have conceived some jealousy of one another. Sometimes they add to it some leaves of the *Akaju*-tree, which by reason

1647.

son of their hot quality make it the more heady. The *Portuguese* and *Dutch* frequently made a kind of forbette of water, sugar and lemons. Others pour water upon certain herbs, others put a lemon only in water. But besides these, the *Brazilians* know how to make wines or cyder out of several roots and fruits, which they drink at their merry meetings; especially of the *Bakovas*, *Ananas*, *Mangaba*, *Janipaba*, *Karaguta*, &c. For tho' the vines here bear grapes 3 times a year, nevertheless are they not sufficient to furnish them with wine. They make a kind of cyder, called by them *Koti*, of the apple *Akaju*; these they stamp in a wooden mortar and squeeze the juice out with their hands; which after it is settled they strain; it appears at first like milk, but turns to a pale colour in a few days; its taste is tartish, and apt to seize the head if drunk in any quantity; after some time it turns sour, and makes very good vinegar. The wine or liquor called by the *Brazilians* *Apy*, is made two different ways: First, the slices of the root *Aipimakakara*, a kind of *Mandioka*, are chewed by old women till they are as fluid as a pap, which they call *Karaku*; this they put into a pot, and boil it with a good quantity of water, stirring it continually till they think it fit for expression, which done, they call it *Kaviaraku*, and drink it luke-warm. Or else they take the same root purged and sliced in thin pieces, which they stamp and boil with water as before, which produces a whitish liquor, not unlike our butter-milk or whey; they drink it likewise warm, its taste being agreeable enough; they call it *Kacimakaxera*, tho' both kinds are generally comprehended under the name of *Apy*. The liquor called *Pakeby* is made out of the fruit of the tree *Pakobete*. What the *Portuguese* call *Vinho da Millo*, is a liquor called *Abaty* by the *Brazilians*, and made of barley or *Turkey* wheat, called *Maiz* by the *Indians*; the liquor *Nandi* has also derived its name from that excellent fruit called *Nana* of *Ananas*, being the strongest of all their wines or cyders. There is another sort of liquor called *Vinho da Batatas* by the *Portuguese* because it is made of the root *Bataias*: The natives call it *Jetici*. Thus the liquors called *Beutingui* and *Tipiaci* are both made out of the *Farinha* of the *Mandioka* root, viz. of the *Beju* and *Tepioja*.

The *Brazilians* are also great admirers of *French* or *Rhenish* brandy, called by them *Kacitata*, and swallow it very greedily as often as they can come at it. They are no less fond of tobacco, the herb of which they call *Peima*, and the leaves *Petimaoba*. After they have dried the leaves in the air, they lay them before the fire, to render

them the more fit for cutting. They smoke in pipes made of the shell of the rut *Pin-doba*, or of the *Urukuruba*, *Jocara*, *Aqua*, or such like; to wit, they cut a hole in one end of the shell, take out the kernel, and after they have polished them, put a wooden pipe or a piece of reed in the hole. The *Tapoyers* use very large pipes made of stone, wood or clay, the holes of which are so big that they contain a handful of tobacco at a time. Sometimes the *Brazilians* make use of our *European* pipes, called by them *Amrupetunbuaba*, and *Broken Katunbaba* by the *Portuguese*, and *Katgebouw* by the *Dutch*. Whenever the *Tapoyers*, especially those inhabiting the villages, descended from the *Tapoyers* called *Kariri*, prepare the liquors *Akavi* and *Apy*, it is done at the same time; then a day being appointed for a general merry meeting, they meet early in the morning at the first house in the village they belong to, where they consume most of the liquor, and make themselves merry with dancing; this done they go to the next house, where they play the same game, and so from house to house, till nothing be left or they can drink no longer. When they find themselves overcharged with liquor; they spew and fall to drinking again, and thus he who can spew and drink most, is accounted the bravest fellow of the company.

On the coast of *Brasil*.

On the north-west coast of *Brasil* are several considerable salt-pits: That near the house called the *Desert*, is about three or four leagues distant from the river *Aguarama*, of which one branch extends to the east, and discharges its water in this salt-pit with a spring-tide, which is here commonly with the new-moon. It is about 550 paces from the sea-shore, and receives no other water but from the river *Aguarama*. There is no bay or harbour near it, but only a flat sandy bottom for about half a league distance from the shore, where you may anchor at three fathom deep. The land-wind which constantly blows on this coast, commonly ceases towards evening, so that the vessels take the opportunity of the night to load salt. This salt-pit produces every month a certain quantity of salt, provided they be careful to shut their sluices as soon as the same is filled with water, for else they are in danger of losing what they had got before, by the next high-tide. To the east of this salt-pit are the famous rocks called *Baxos*, which at low-water may be seen from thence; they extend about three leagues deep in the sea; but don't begin till about a league from the shore, betwixt which and the rocks there is a passage, where you have ten foot depth at low-water. It ebbs here with the lowest tide about eight foot, and

1647.

Salt-pits.

a west-



1647. a west-south-west-wind raises the water to the highest.

About five or six leagues to the west of the house called the *Desert*, is the great salt-pit *Karwaratama*, which receiving its water from the sea, and being detained by sluices, produces very good salt in three weeks time. Five leagues further to the west is the river *Marilouva*, the second in rank in those western parts, but has not above twelve foot water at high-tide. On its east point, not above half a league within the mouth, is a very convenient salt-pit: These salt-pits are computed to be manageable with the assistance only of 10 or 12 negroes, 10 christians, and about 30 *Brazilians*, and to afford 2000 tuns of salt *per annum*, which may be transported from thence into the other parts of the *Dutch Brasil* in small barks, during the summer season. About half way betwixt *Rio Grande* and *Sicara*, as likewise in *Siara*, near the river *Wapanien*, are likewise several *Saltua's* or salt-pits.

Traffic of Brasil.

The chief traffick of *Brasil* consists in sugar, *brasil-wood*, and such like; as also in tobacco, hides, preserves, ginger, and cotton, which grows wild here, some indigo was likewise planted there before my departure; but among these, the sugar and *brasil-wood* are staple commodities. For since the tobacco began to be transported into *Holland* from the *American* islands, the planting of it was neglected in *Brasil*, where labourers wages being excessive high, they could draw much more profit from the sugar, of which, according to computation, betwixt 20000 and 25000 chests were yearly made only in the sugar-mills of the *Dutch Brasil*, if the harvest proves very good.

The peopling of Brasil.

The inhabitants of *Brasil* may at present be divided into free-born subjects and slaves; and these again consist of divers nations, both natives and foreigners. The free inhabitants of *Brasil* were the *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, and *Brazilians*, the last the natives of the country. But the *Portuguese* did not only surpass all the rest, at least ten to one in number, during my abode in *Brasil*, but also were in possession of all the sugar-mills and lands, except what was possess'd by a very few *Dutch*, who had applied themselves to sugar-planting, but were for the most part ruined by the intestine war, being forced to leave all behind them in the country: Besides those of the free inhabitants, who made it their business to manure the grounds, there were many merchants, factors, and handicrafts men: The merchants sold their commodities generally with vast profit, and would have questionless been rich men, had they not vented their goods upon credit to the *Portuguese*, who were re-

Free inhabitants of Brasil.

solved never to pay them, as the event has sufficiently shewn. The handicrafts men were able to get three, four, five, nay six guilders a day, so that many returned very rich to *Holland*. Those that kept publick houses and chandlers shops were likewise great gainers here, and carried off abundance of ready money. The officers in the company's service whether civil or military, were likewise punctually paid, which made many who had lived in the country before the beginning of the civil war, and had served the company before, take service again, who were all entertained according to their respective qualities and former stations.

Among the free inhabitants of *Brasil* that were not in the company's service, the *Jews* were the most considerable in number, who had transplanted themselves thither from *Holland*. They had a vast traffick beyond all the rest, they purchased sugar-mills and built stately houses in the *Recife*. They were all traders, which would have been of great consequence to the *Dutch Brasil*, had they kept themselves within the due bounds of traffick.

The Jew.

The slaves of *Dutch Brasil* were either negroes or natives of the country; the last of which were either bought in *Maranbaon* being prisoners of war, or from the *Tapoyers*, who likewise had made them captives, and otherwise, according to their custom, would have put them to death. For it being resolved immediately, at the first entrance of the *Dutch* in *Brasil*, that none of the natives should be made slaves (except they were either bought from the *Tapoyers* or brought from *Maranbaon*) the *Brazilians* were settled in certain villages to enjoy their own liberty under certain limitations, and permission was given them to assist the *Portuguese* in the management of their mills and grounds, for certain wages appointed for that purpose; by which means many *Alencas* or villages were filled with *Brazilians* in *Parayba* and *Rio Grande*, who during the time of our government enjoyed the sweets of a perfect liberty.

The slaves of Brasil.

Vast numbers of negroes of divers nations were entertained in the *Recife*, and the open country, for the manuring of the ground, and working in the sugar-mills of the *Portuguese*, which could not be done without them, by reason of the extremity of the heat of the climate, and the incredible toils they are fain to undergo; so that in my time near 40000 negroes were employed in the sugar-mills betwixt *Rio Grande* and *St. Francisco*. Most of these negroes are brought hither from the kingdoms of *Congo*, *Angola*, and *Guinea*; a black thinning skin, flat nose, thick lips, and short curled hair, is their chief beauty. The lustiest and most

Negroes.



event has 1647.

casts men  
, nay fix  
rned very  
t publick  
likewise  
bundance  
the com-  
military,  
nich made  
ey before  
had serv-  
ice again,  
g to their  
ations.

*Brasil that The Jew.*

, the *Jews*  
nber, who  
ther from  
ck beyond  
-mills and  
if. They  
ve been of  
*Brasil*, had  
due bounds

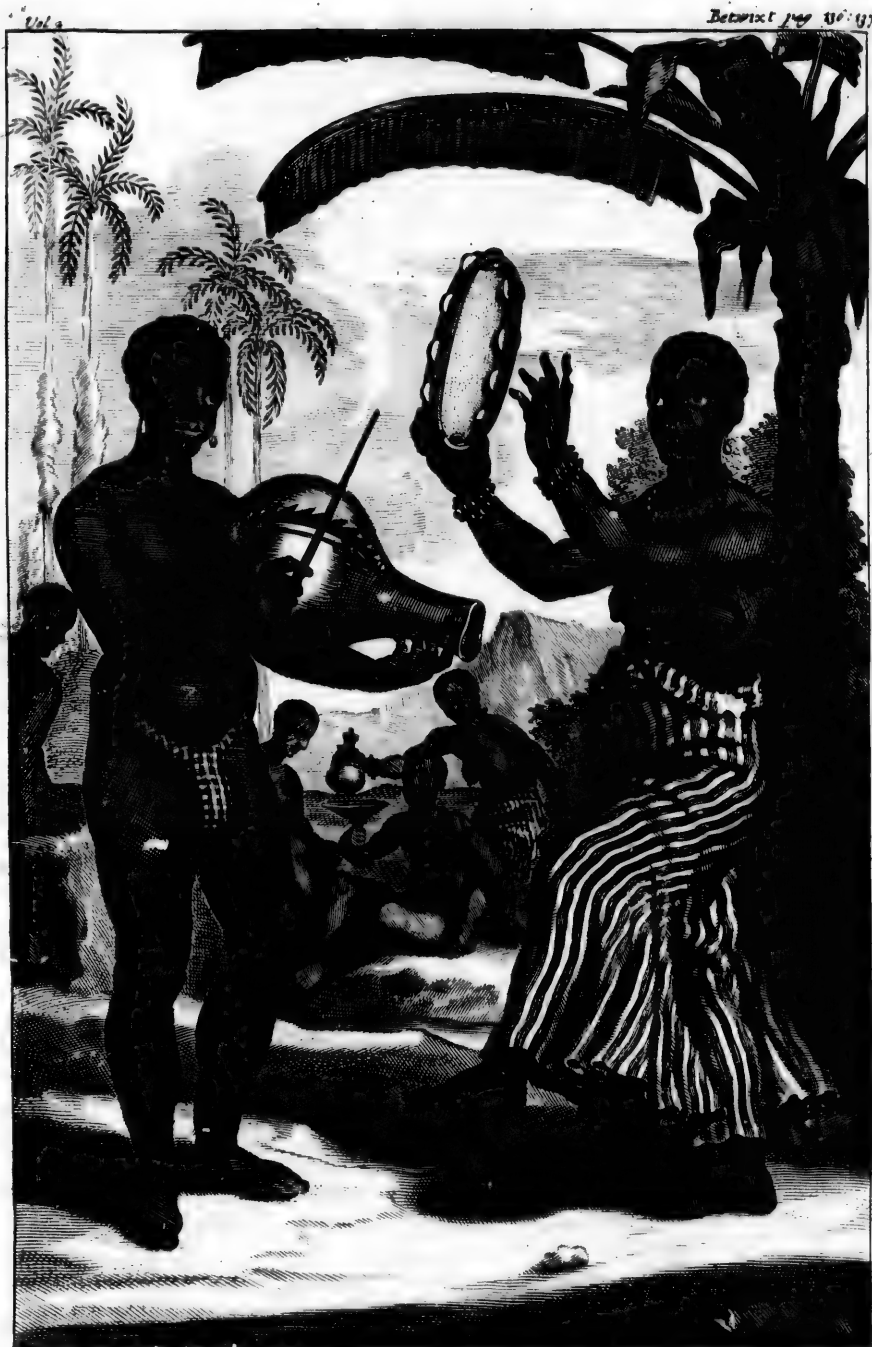
re either ne- *The fleet*  
y; the last *of Brasil.*

*Maranbaon*

n the *Tapo-*  
m captives,  
eir custom,  
For it be-  
the first en-  
hat none of  
ves (except  
the *Tapoyers*  
the *Brasilians*  
enjoy their  
ations, and  
ift the *Por-*  
ir mills and  
pointed for  
many *Ali-*  
*Brasilians* in  
during the  
the sweets

livers nati- *Negroes.*

if, and the  
ing of the  
gar-mills of  
ot be done  
e extremity  
the incre-  
go; so that  
s were em-  
Rio *Gran-*  
ese negroes  
ngdoms of  
ck shining  
hort curled  
lustiest and  
most



*Negros Playing upon Kalabasses .*

1647. most laborious used in time of good trade, to be sold in *Brasil* for 70, 80, or 100 pieces of eight, nay sometimes for 1400 or 1500 gilders, but these understood something more than ordinary: But when trade began to decay, they were sold for 40 pieces of eight. There was scarce a *Hollander* of any substance but what had several of these slaves. They are most miserably and beastly treated by the *Portuguese*, though at the same time it must be confess'd that it is absolutely necessary they should be kept under a strict discipline; for they are full of rogueries, superstitious to the highest degree, and forerers: They would often pretend to tell us what ships were at sea from *Holland* for *Brasil*, tho' they were yet on the other side of the line, and how to recover stolen goods. I remember I happened once to be at a friend's house of mine, when I saw an old negro enter the kitchen, who came thither to cure a negro slave of his illness, which he told us was occasioned by witchcraft. He made the patient rise from his chair, and taking a piece of wood from the fire-hearth, he ordered him to lick three times with his tongue that end which was burning hot with the glowing coals. The same end of the wood he afterwards extinguish'd in a basin of water, and rubb'd the coals in it, till it turn'd as black as ink. This he ordered the sick negro to drink off at a draught, which he did accordingly, and was immediately seized with a slight griping in the guts. This done he rubbed both his sides, and taking hold with his hand of a piece of flesh and fat above the hip, he made an incision there with a knife he pull'd out of his pocket, of two inches deep, out of which he drew a bundle of hair and rags, with a little of the black water that was left he washed the wound, which soon after was healed, and the patient cured. They are very dextrous at swimming and diving, and will fetch a single piece of eight from the bottom of the sea, where it is very deep. They are also excellent fishermen, and get a great deal of money by it. They tie three or four great pieces of wood together, this they manage with one oar, and upon it go a good way into the sea, where they catch great quantities of fish with their hooks, and so return. It happened in my time, that a certain negro, who was very expert in fishing, was sold three times in a little while; this he took so much to heart, that the next time he went thus out a fishing, he tied a stone to his leg and drowned himself. Another negro having conceived a hatred against his master cut his throat, cut out his tongue, and made a house-of-office of his mouth, according to his own con-

VOL. II.

feccion; he was broke alive upon the wheel, which he endured with an incredible obstinacy. A negro woman was brought to bed in my time of a child, the hair and skin of which were not black, but red. I saw also a young lad born from negro parents, whose skin was white, and his hair and eye-brows the like, but curl'd, with a flat nose like the other negroes. Sometimes I have seen old negroes with long grey beards and hair, which looks very fine.

The natives of *Brasil* consist of divers nations, distinguished by their proper names, *liana* to wit, the *Tubinambos*, *Tobajaras*, *Petignaras* and *Tapujas*, or *Tapuyers*, or *Tapoyers*. The three first use one and the same language, and differ only in the dialect; but the last are subdivided into several nations, differing both in manners and tongue. The *Brasilian* men, which lived among us and the *Portuguese*, are middle-sized, strong and well made, with broad shoulders. They have black eyes, a wide mouth, with black curl'd hair, and a flat nose; the last of which is not natural to them, but the parents, looking upon it as a great beauty, squeeze their childrens noses flat, whilst they are very young. They paint their bodies, and some likewise their faces with divers colours; they have generally no hair about the mouth, tho' some have black beards. Their women are likewise of a middle stature, well limb'd, and not ill-featur'd; they have likewise a black hair, but are not born black, but by the heat of the sun-beams, acquire by degrees a yellow brown colour. The *Brasilians* come soon to maturity, and arrive to a great age, and that without distempers; they also seldom become grey, which is likewise observable in many *European* inhabitants here, who come to the age of 100 or 120 years. This must be chiefly attributed to the temperature of the climate, which is such, that in former times many *Spaniards* that laboured under some lingering distemper, whether in *Spain* or the *East-Indies*, used to come to *Brasil* to partake of the benefit of that excellent air and water; 'tis true, most of the children of foreigners are troubled with lingering sicknesses, so that scarce one in three arrives to a state of manhood; but this must not be attributed to the air, but rather to the bad nourishment. Few cripples or crooked people are to be met with among the *Brasilians*, they being generally very strait and nimble, which is the more admirable, because they never do their children up in swathing cloths, except their feet, looking upon it as unwholesome.

Before the *Dutch* got footing in *Brasil*, the *Portuguese* had made all the natives their slaves, and look'd upon it as the greatest

N n

piece

1647. piece of policy quite to extirpat: them, which they did so effectually, that where is about 100 years ago, the captainships of *Rio Grande* alone could raise 100000 fighting men, scarce 300 were to be met with in 1645 and 1646, which had created a mortal hatred in the *Brazilians* against the *Portuguese*; tho' it must also be confess'd, that the late war and some epilemical distempers did sweep away many of the natives. The remainders of them liv'd in certain *Aldens* or villages assigned them for that purpose, where they had their plantations; besides which they served the *Portuguese* in their sugar-mills for a certain monthly pay, which furnished them with clothes and other necessaries. Their huts are made only of wooden stalks, covered with palm-tree leaves. They can't endure the yoke of slavery, nor any toil, especially the *Tapoyers*; they live very quietly among one another, unless they get drunk, when they sometimes sing and dance day and night. Drunkenness is a vice belonging to both sexes here, of which they are so fond, as to be past remedy, tho' this

occasions often quarrels and other enormous vices among them. They are likewise much addicted to dancing, which they call *Guan*; they have several ways of dancing, one of which is call'd *Urukapi*; they commonly sing whilst they are dancing. The children divert themselves with divers sorts of games, one is call'd *Kurupirara*, another *Gualbipaie*, and a third *Guaibiquaibuku*. They will sleep sometimes a whole day and night, and would not stir then if they did not want victuals. Near their hammocks they keep a fire day and night, in the day to dress their victuals, in the night to allay the rawness of the air, which here is colder than in most parts of *Europe*, because day and night is almost of an equal length here throughout the year.

The inland *Brazilians* of both sexes, go <sup>their</sup> quite naked without the least covering. But those inhabiting nearer to the sea-shore, who converse with the *Dutch* and *Portuguese*, wear only a shirt of linnen or callicoe; tho' in my time, some of the chieftest among them began to take a pride to cloth themselves after the *European* manner. The wife



constantly follows her husband wherever he goes, even in the war. He carries nothing but his arms, but the poor woman is loaden like a mule or sumpter-horse. For besides a great basket which is tied to her back, (call'd by them *Patigna*) she has an-

other upon her head, with all the household stuff in it, or a great basket with flower; besides which several other smaller vessels hang on both sides, wherewith they take up water for their drinking. The child is carried in a piece of callicoe, which is fastned

enormous 1647.  
wife much  
call Guan  
ing, one of  
commonly  
the children  
of games,  
Gualbipaie,  
They will  
night, and  
ot want vi-  
they keep  
y to dress  
y the raw-  
der than in  
and night  
e through-  
n sexes, go  
Their  
ering. But  
sea-shore,  
and Portu-  
or callicoes;  
esest among  
cloth them-  
r. The wife



the household  
flowers;  
ller vessels  
ey take up  
ild is car-  
n is fastned  
to

1647. to her, and hangs down from her right shoulder. It lies there with its legs wide open, one being stretch'd cross the mother's belly, the other over her shoulder. After all this, she carries a parrot or ape in one hand, and leads a dog in a string with the other. Thus they proceed on their journey, without any farther provision except a small quantity of *Farinha*; the hedge or open fields serve instead of inns, which furnish them with necessary food, as the rivers and springs with drink; and so does the tree call'd *Karagata*, which contains always some rain-water within the hollowness of its leaves, to the great relief of travellers, who in some barren places, do often not meet with a river or spring for 12 leagues together. Towards night they hang their hammocks on trees, or else fasten them to stalks neatly; they make a fire to dress their victuals, and against the rain defend themselves with palm-tree leaves. When they are at home, the husband goes commonly in the morning abroad with his bow and arrow, to shoot some wild beast, or catch birds, or else to the sea-side, or next river a fishing, whilst the women are employed in the plantations; some women go abroad with their husbands and carry home the prey. The wild beasts are caught by them in a different manner; some they kill with arrows, others they catch in pits dug for that purpose, and covered with the leaves of trees, under which is hidden some carrion, the scent of which draws them to the pit; this they call *Petaku*. They make also certain wooden traps, and use divers other ways of catching the wild beasts, each of which they distinguish by their proper names. To catch birds they use three sorts of snares or nets, call'd by them *Jukana*; the first sort catches the birds by the feet, this they call *Jukanapirara*; the second entangles them by the neck, which they call *Jukanajuprara*; the third ensnares their bodies, call'd by them *Jukanapitereba*. They kill the fishes with arrows, or catch them with fishing hooks, their baits being commonly worms, crabs, or some small fishes. They bait the water where they intend to fish, with the leaves of *Japikai*, or with *Tupotiana*, *Tinguy*, or with *Tinguiri*; sometimes with the fruit call'd *Kururuape*, the root *Magui*, or the bark of the tree *Anda*, which make the fish swim on the surface of the water like dead, when they take them with a kind of a sieve, call'd by them *Urupema*, made of cane or reed, which they call *Uruguiboandipia*. Their sea-fish they catch with iron hooks, the bait being some carrion; they go a good way into the sea, only upon three pieces of wood fastened together, which they call *Igapeda*, and the

*Portuguese Jangada*; the wood is commonly of the tree *Apiba*.

The *Brasilians* are not burthened with much household-stuff, their hammocks being their chiefest care in this kind; they call them *Ini*, are wrought of cotton like net-work, of about six or seven foot long, and four broad. When they are going to sleep, they fasten them either to two beams of their huts, or else in the open air to two trees, and some distance from the ground, for fear of some obnoxious creatures, and to avoid the pestiferous exhalations of the earth. The *Tapeyers*, call'd *Kariri*, have very large hammocks, of 12 or 14 foot long, which contain four persons at a time. The *Portuguese* women make some very fine hammocks, wrought with divers figures in them. In lieu of dishes and cups they use the *Kalabassick*, cut in the middle, which are painted without with a certain red colour, call'd *Uruku*, and within with black. Their cans, cups and mugs, are likewise *Kalabasses* of divers kinds, call'd *Kuite*, *Jaroba*, and *Kribuka*. One of the biggest of these *Kalabasses* hold 30 or 35 quarts; this the *Brasilians* call *Kuyaba*, but when cut thro' the middle it is called *Kuipeba*. The poorer sort make certain knives they call *Iluque*, of stone, as also of cane, which they call *Taquoaquia*, but the better sort use *Dutch* knives. Their baskets they make of palm-tree leaves, they call them *Patigua*; they have also some made of reed or cane, these are with one general name call'd *Karamemoa*. They make also large broad baskets of reeds and branches twisted together: These they call *Panaku*, and are chiefly used for the carrying of the *Mandioka* root. In their journeys they always make use of the *Patigua*, but the *Panaku* is used by the slaves and negroes in the *Receif* for the convenience of carriage.

The arms of the *Brasilians* are only bows, arrows, and wooden clubs. Their bows, which they call *Guirapara* and *Virapara*, are made of very hard wood, called *Guirapariba* and *Virapariba*: The bow-strings are made of cotton twisted, and by them call'd *Guirapakuma*; the darts they call *Uba*, and are made of wild cane. The points of these darts are either of wood hardened, or of fish teeth call'd *Jacru*, or of bones or cane well sharpened; some have several points, others but one.

Being not in the least acquainted with arithmetic, they compute the number of their years and age by the chestnuts which grow on the fruit *Akaju*, which chestnuts they call *Akaguakaya*, as likewise *Akajuti* and *Itamabara*, of which they lay one by every year, this tree producing fruit but once each season, viz. in December and January.

1647.  
Their bins  
hold stuff

Their way  
of account-  
ing their  
age.



1647. *nuary*. They begin the computation of their years with the rise of a certain star, call'd by them *Taku*, or the *Rain-star*, which is always there in *May*; they also call the year by the same name.

Their religion.

The most barbarous of the *Brasilians* inhabiting the inland countries, scarce know any thing of religion, or an almighty being. They have some knowledge remaining of a general deluge, it being their opinion, that the whole race of mankind were extirpated by a general deluge, except one man and his own sister, who being with child before, they by degrees re-peopled the world. They know not what God is, nay, they have no word expressing the same, unless it be *Tuba*, which signifies as much as something most excellent above the rest; thus they call the thunder *Tubakununga*, i. e. a noise made by the supreme excellency, for *Akununga* implies as much as a noise. They are unacquainted with heaven or hell, tho' they have a tradition among them, that the souls don't die with the bodies, but that they are either transplanted into devils or spirits, or else enjoy a great deal of pleasure with dancing and singing in some pleasant fields, which they say are behind the mountains. These fields are enjoyed by all the brave men and women, who have kill'd and eaten many of their enemies; but such as have been idle, and never did any thing of moment, are tortured by the devil, unto whom they give many names, viz. *Anbanga*, *Jurupari*, *Kurupari*, *Taguaba*, *Temoti*, *Taubimama*. They have however some sort of priests among them whose business is to sacrifice, and to foretell things to come; these are especially consulted when they are to undertake a war or journey; they call them *Paye* and *Pey*. They dread spirits to the highest degree; they call them *Kuripira*, *Taguai*, *Macabara*, *Anbanga*, *Jurupari*, and *Marangigona*, tho' under different significations: For *Kuripari* implies as much as the God of the mind or heart. *Macabara* the God or patron of travellers; *Jurupari* and *Anbanga* signify the devil; *Marangigona* implies as much as the *Manes* or remainders of the soul after death, which are so much dreaded by the *Brasilians*, that some of them upon an imaginary apparition of them, have been struck with sudden death. They don't perform any worship or ceremony to those spirits, except that some pretend to appease their wrath by certain presents they fasten to certain stakes fix'd in the ground for that purpose. Some of the *Brasilians* acknowledge the thunder for the supreme being, others the *Lesser Bear* in the firmament, others some other stars. The *Potiguaras*, a nation a-

mong the *Brasilians*, are accounted such forerers, that they bewitch their enemies even to death: They call this manner of witchcraft *Anhamombikab*. The *Brasilians* that lived among the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, did in some measure follow the christian doctrine, but so coldly, that few, when they come to an advanced age, shew much zeal for it; because the fundamental articles of our faith are not easily imprinted in them, unless in their tender years, and when they are remote from their parents. However several of the *Dutch* ministers, viz. Mr. *Dorelaer*, and after him Mr. *Thomas Kemp*, have had good success in: converting many of the *Brasilians* in the *Aldeas* or villages where they preached, the last of these two being well versed in the *Brasilian* tongue. Neither were *Dionysius Biscearia*, an honest old *Castilian*, and *Johannes Aprius*, less remiss in performing their duty to instruct these infidels. There were likewise three *Dutch* schoolmasters among them, who taught their young people to read and to write, but these were forced to leave their *Aldeas* or villages during the last intestine commotions raised by the *Portuguese*.

Many distempers which are common in *Europe* are unknown in *Brasil*: They use nothing but simple remedies, and laugh at our compositions. They are very dextrous in applying their remedies, especially their antidotes: They draw blood by suction with horn cups, by scarification, or opening a vein; instead of a lancet they use the tooth of a lamprey, call'd by them *Kakaon*, without which no body stirs abroad. So soon as any one of their acquaintance is fallen ill, they all meet, each offering his remedy, which he has found good by his own experience: Then they begin to cut and slice the most muscular parts of the body, either with the thorns of the tree *Karnaiba*, or with fishes teeth, till they have drawn as much blood as they think fit, and for that purpose suck the wounds with their mouths, by which means they pretend to draw all ill humours from the affected part. Vomiting they procure by means of the leaves *Karnaiba*, which being twisted together, they force down the patients throat. When all these pretended remedies prove ineffectual, they proceed to no others; but after some consultation, quite despairing of his recovery, knock him on the head with their clubs, looking upon it more glorious to be thus bravely delivered from their misery, than to expect death till their last gasp. They exercise as much barbarity upon the dead carcases of their friends as of their enemies; upon the first out of love, against the last out of revenge; for they tear them to pieces with

their



1647. their teeth, and eat the flesh like a dainty bit.

Their child bearing.

The *Brasilians* women are extremely fruitful, have very easy labours, and rarely miscarry: For no sooner is a woman delivered, but up she gets to the next river, and without any farther help washes herself there: In the mean while the husband keeps the bed for the first 24 hours, and is made as much of as if he had been lately brought to bed. The mothers lament the death of their infants with howling and crying for three or four days.

How they welcome their friends.

They receive their friends after a long journey with open arms and tears, and beating their foreheads against their breasts, in remembrance of the misfortunes they have undergone during their absence. Tho' the *Brasilians* were always supposed to be descended from the race of men-eaters, yet by their conversation with us and other nations, many of them have laid aside their barbarity, and are become as affable and civilized as most of the *European* nations.

The Tapoyers.

The *Tapoyers* inhabit the inland country of *Brasil* to the west of these countries in the possession of the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, betwixt *Rio Grande* and the river *Siara*, as far as *Rio St. Francisco*. They are divided into several nations, distinguished both by their language and names: For the *Tapoyers* bordering upon the utmost confines of *Pernambuco*, are called *Kariri*, under their king *Ceriankejou*; the next to them the *Karirivau*, whose king was *Karapoto*; then the *Kariryon*, and so farther the *Tararyou*; the last of which were best known unto us, *Janduy* or *John Dwoy* being their king; tho' some of them lived under the jurisdiction of one *Karakara*. Divers were govern'd by other kings, viz. *Prityaba*, *Arigapagn*, *Wabafewojng*, *Tsering*, and *Dremenge*. Those under king *John Dwoy* inhabit to the west beyond *Rio Grande*, but change their habitations pretty often: About *November*, *December*, and *January*, when the fruit *Kajou* begins to ripen, they come towards the sea-side, because little of it is to be met with in the inland countries. The *Tapoyers* are very tall and strong of body, exceeding both the *Brasilians* and *Dutch* both in strength and tallness by the head and shoulders. They are of a dark brown colour, black hair, which hangs all over their shoulders, they only shaving it on the forehead as far as to the ears. Some are shaved according to the *European* fashion; the rest of their bodies they keep without hair, even without eye-brows. Their kings and great men are distinguished from the vulgar by the hair of their heads and their nails; the first their kings wear shaved in the shape of a crown, and

Vol. II.

have very long nails on their thumbs; but the king's relations or other officers of note, wear long nails on all their fingers, except their thumbs; for long nails is accounted a peculiar ornament among them. The *Tapoyers* are very strong; prince *Maurice* being one time in a humour to try their strength and skill in fighting with a wild bull, caused one to be brought within his outward court, which was surrounded with palisadoes, in order to engage two *Tapoyers* appointed for that purpose.

There was a great concourse of people to see this spectacle, when on a sudden two *Tapoyers* (the rest with their wives being only spectators) came in stark naked, without any other arms but their bows and arrows. The bull saw them no sooner enter, but he made towards them, who being extremely nimble, avoided the strokes he made at them with great dexterity, and in the mean while so gall'd his flanks with their arrows, that the beast roar'd most terribly, and being all in a foam, set upon them with all his vigour, which they avoided by retiring every foot behind a tree that stood in the middle of the court, and from thence continued to pierce his sides with their darts, till finding the beast begin to languish by the loss of blood, one of the *Tapoyers* got upon his back, and laying hold of his horns, threw him upon the ground, and being seconded by his comrade, they both kill'd the bull, roasted him under ground, with a fire above it, according to their custom, and feasted upon the meat, with the other *Tapoyers* there present.

The *Tapoyers* of both sexes, from the king to the common fellow, go quite naked, only that the men hide their privities, by tying the yard in a little bag or net made of the bark of trees; this they close up with a small ribbon call'd *Takogaynbaa*; when they want to piss they untie it, and are more cautious in exposing their privities, than some of the *Europeans*: In the same manner do the rest of the *Brasilians* inhabiting the inland countries. The women of the *Tapoyers* cover their privities only with a handful of herbs, or a small branch of a tree, with the leaves on them: This they thrust barely under a small cord or rope which is fastned round their middle like girdles: In the same manner they cover their backsides, but so carelessly, that both before and behind, great part of both is exposed to view; they change it every day. The men wear also a kind of garland made of the feathers of the bird *Guara* or *Kaninde*, upon their heads, from which certain feathers of the tail of the bird *Arara*, or *Kamud*, hang down behind upon the back; some only

1647.

Their sitting.

Their sitting.

O o

tie

1647 *habit of y Tapoyars*

tie a cotton string round their hands, in which some red or blue feathers are fastned behind; this they call *Akanbuaçaba*. They have also cloaks made of cotton-thread, and woven like a net; in each of the holes they stick a red feather of the bird *Guara*, and intermix them with black, green, and yellow feathers of the birds *Aakukaru*, *Kazinda*, and *Arara*, which lie as close together as fish scales: There is a kind of cap on the inside of this cloak, which with the rest covers the head, shoulders, and the body, somewhat below the middle, so that it is worn both for ornament and conveniencies sake, it being proof against the rain; they call these cloaks in their tongue *Guara Abuku*. They also fasten certain combs of birds with wild honey to their foreheads, these they call *Aguana*.

If their fathers or mothers die, they pull every hair out of their heads; they have holes in their ears so big, that you may thrust a finger into them; in this they wear either a bone of an ape call'd *Nambipaya*, or else a piece of wood, wrapt up in cotton-thread. The men have holes in their under lips, in which they wear either a crystal, smaragd or jasper, of the bigness of a hazel-nut: This stone they call *Metara*, and if it be green or blue, *Meta-robi*; but they are most fond of the green

ones: They have also holes in their cheeks on each side of the mouth; in these the married men wear a piece of wood of the bigness and thickness of a good goose-quill: Sometimes they wear a stone in it call'd *Tembekoareta*: In the holes of their nostrils, some have also such like sticks of wood, which they call *Apiyati*: Their bodies are all over painted with a certain juice of brown colour, squeezed out of the apple *Janipapa*; this is even used among the women and children. Besides this, they stick feathers of divers colours with wild-honey or mastick to the skin of their bodies, which make them appear at a distance like large birds; this they call *Akamongui*. Thus they adorn their arms with garlands made of red and yellow feathers of several birds, call'd *Aguamiranga*; sometimes they mix corals among them, which they call *Arakoaya*. They make also a kind of bracelets of the rind of the fruit *Aguay*; these they wear round their legs, and make a noise when they are dancing. Their shoes are made of the bark *Kuragua*, and call them *Miapakabas*. Some nations of the *Tapoyers* use no bows or arrows, but throw their darts with their hands, but the *Kariri* have bows. Their clubs are made of very hard wood, are broad on the top, and full of teeth or bones, well sharpened

at



1647. at the end. Round the handle they wind a piece of callicoe, or some other stuff, and at the end a bush of feathers of the tail of the bird *Arara*; such another bush is fastened round the middle; they call them *Airabebe* and *Jairabebe*. Their trumpets which they call *Kanguenka*, are made of mens bones; but those called *Nbumbugaky*, which are much larger, are of horn; they have also another sort made of cane, called *Membrapara*. The *Tapoyers* are not so good soldiers as the rest of the *Brasilians*, for upon any smart encounter they trust to their feet, and run away with incredible swiftness. They neither sow nor plant, not as much as the *Mandioka* root, their common food being fruits, roots, herbs, and wild beasts, and sometimes wild honey, which they take out of the hollow trees. Among all other roots they are extremely fond of a certain kind of wild *Mandioka* root, which rises up to the height of a small tree. Its stem and leaves resemble the other *Mandioka* root, but it is not near so good; the inland *Brasilians* call it *Cuguaçuremia*, but those inhabiting near the sea-shore *Cuamandiiba*.

They eat also mens flesh; for if a woman happens to miscarry they eat the child immediately, alledging, that they cannot bestow a better grave upon it than the belly, from whence it came. The *Tapoyers* lead a kind of vagabond life, like some of the *Arabians*, though they always remain within their certain bounds, within the compass of which they change their habitations according to the different seasons of the year; they dwell for the most part among the woods, and live upon hunting, in which perhaps they excel all other nations; for they will shoot a bird flying with their arrows. So soon as a woman has conceived, she abstains from her husband; after she is brought to bed, she goes into the next wood, where she cuts the child's navel-string, with a shell, boils it afterwards with the after-burthen, and eats them both. She washes her self and the child every morning and evening, neither does her husband keep her company, as long as she gives suck, unless he has but one wife. If a woman be discovered to have had an unlawful commerce with another man, her husband turns her away, but if they are catch'd in the act, he may kill them both. The mothers take extraordinary care that the nuptials of their daughters are not consummated 'till after they have had their monthly times, which they give notice of to their physicians, and these to the king, who then gives them license to go to bed with the bridegroom, who pays his acknowledgment to her mother,

for the care she has taken of her daughter. If a young maiden be marriageable, and yet not courted by any, the mother paints her with some red colour about the eyes, and thus carries her to the king, who orders her to sit down near him upon a carpet, and blows the smoke of tobacco in her face. After which he thrusts his yard into the woman's privities, and if any blood comes forth, he licks it up, which is esteem'd a singular honour among them. For the rest of the *Tapoyers*, are the worst of all the other *Brasilians*, being ignorant of any thing that relates to God or religion; neither will they receive any instruction of that kind. They have certain priests or rather force-ers, who pretend to foretell things to come, and to raise spirits, which they say appear to them in the shape of a fly, or any such like insect: When these spirits disappear, the women make most horrible cries and lamentations, in which consists the main point of their devotion. They avoid night journeys, for fear of serpents and other venomous creatures, neither will they set on a journey 'till the dew be dried up by the sun-beams. Several nations of the *Tapoyers*, especially those under king *John Dwey*, liv'd always in a good correspondence with the *Dutch*, unto whom they afforded at divers times considerable assistance; tho' they did not submit to their jurisdiction, but were governed by their own kings. King *John Dwey* had 60 children by 50 wives, tho' sometimes he had not above 14 wives at a time; these *Tapoyers* having a mortal hatred to the *Portuguese*, used to kill them wherever they could meet with them. And thus much may suffice concerning the manners, way of living, cloaths, &c. of the natives of *Brasil*; I will now proceed to give you an account of my voyage back into *Holland*.

Being sensible, as I told you before, that things grew worse and worse every day with us here, I with much ado got leave to depart, and accordingly the 23<sup>d</sup> of July 1649 I went aboard the ship call'd the *Union*, mann'd with 80 sailors, under the command of captain *Albert Jants*, a native of *Groningen*. We set sail the same day in company of the *Blue-Eagle*, and a yacht call'd the *Brasilian*. We left the city of *Olinda* to the south-west in the evening; the 25<sup>th</sup> we were under 3 degrees 6 min. with a north-north-east course, we sail'd that day about 28 leagues. The next day we pass'd the line, with very fair weather and wind; we continued our course without any remarkable accident 'till the 1<sup>st</sup> of August, when about noon we found our selves under 2 deg. 46 min. having sail'd 29 Leagues in the last 24 hours. The same evening

1647.

1649.

The author's return to Holland.

1649. we saw the first time the north-pole star, after we had pass'd the line. The 2<sup>d</sup> of *August* we sail'd 23 leagues with a fresh gale, and found our selves under the 11<sup>th</sup> deg. 13 min. We continued this our course with a fair wind, 'till the 16<sup>th</sup> of *August* when we were becalmed, we did not advance above 60 leagues that day, being under the 26 deg. we found it exceeding hot. The 20<sup>th</sup> of *August* we had but a slender south-east wind, we found our selves under 29 deg. 45 min. we were much troubled with heat, for want of the cool winds, that the knives in the cabin were so hot, that nobody could hold them in his bare hands, nor any one could touch the deck of the ship with his hands or feet. We continued our course thus 'till the 29<sup>th</sup>, when being under 38 deg. 46 min. we made about eight leagues that day. The 3<sup>d</sup> of *September* being under the 40<sup>th</sup> deg. 18 min. we espied a sail which we found to be a vessel bound for *Virginia*. Towards evening we were forced to stay sometime for the *Brasilian* yacht, she having lost one of her masts. The next following day in the morning we discover'd the island of *Corfu*, whither we directed our course.

The Flem-  
ming  
Islands.

*Corfu* and *Floris* are two of the nine islands, the *Dutch* commonly call the *Flemming Islands*. The biggest is *Tercera*, being about 16 leagues in compass. It is very rocky, but fruitful, producing a considerable quantity of oxen, and abounding in canary and other birds. Here is a spring that turns wood into stone, and several hot-springs, in which you may boil an egg. The ground seems to be full of concavities, which is the reason of the many earthquakes here, which over-turn and destroy houses, men and beasts. The island call'd the *Peake* has a rock which reaches to the very clouds, and which as some suppose, may be parallel'd for its height to the peake of the *Canary Island* itself. Betwixt the coast of *Brasil* and the said Islands, the compass bears due south and north. We were gone eight degrees farther to the west, than we intended. About noon we found our selves under 40 deg. and 34 min. We continu'd our course without any remarkable accident, 'till the 16<sup>th</sup> of *Sept.* when we supposed our selves to be not far from land, which we discovered the same evening to the north north-east of us. The 17<sup>th</sup> we were becalm'd, and catch'd more fish than we were able to eat. The 18<sup>th</sup> we discover'd the *Isle of White* to the north of us, whereabouts one of our ships was separated from us; not long after we saw the point of *Dover*. The 19<sup>th</sup> we pass'd by *Dunkirk* and *Ostend* with a brisk gale, and about noon safely arriv'd in the road of *Flussingen*. I got imme-

The an-  
chor ar-  
rives at  
Flussin-  
gen.

diately ashore, and after having refreshed myself for five days, I went to *Middleburg*, where I likewise continued five days. From thence I continued my journey over *Dort*, *Rotterdam*, *Delft* and *Harlem* to the famous city of *Amsterdam*, from whence I undertook this *West-India* voyage 1640. From *Amsterdam* I went to *Zwell*, the birth-place of my father *John Nieuhoff*, and so to *Ben-then*, my native countrey, where I met with my parents in good health, after so many fatigues of a tedious voyage; whilst I was at *Benhem* my father died 1651, the 15<sup>th</sup> of *May*, in the 85<sup>th</sup> year of his age, being lamented by all, by reason of his good qualifications.

Some troublesome people laid the loss of the *Dutch-Brasil* at the door of the members of the great council, viz. *Henry Hamel*, *Adrian Bullestrate* and *Peter Jande Bas*, who left *Brasil* 1647. It was alledged that the before-mentioned contracts made with the *Portuguese* had given them great opportunity of a revolt; for which it was said the said members had received great sums of money; but it being evident that the succeeding members of the great council having taken cognizance of that affair before their departure, Nov. 6, 1646, and in *March* 1647, they were fully cleared of these accusations, the same having been transacted by special orders of the council of *XIX.* in *Holland*; besides, that the revolts which were about the same time in agitation in *Angola*, *Africa*, and the island of *Ceylon* in the *East-Indies*, where no such contracts were made, do sufficiently testify that the foundation of this intestine war was laid in *Portugal*, long before the contracts were set on foot. What is more surprising is, how the *Portuguese*, considering we were pretty well provided with forts and garri-sons, durst think of such an attempt; but the reason is plain, for what they wanted in strength or otherwise, they were supplied with from the *Bahia*.

The motives that induced the *Portuguese* to this revolt, were the recovery of their liberty, the difference of their language and manners from ours; but especially of religion, which our people endeavoured to establish in *Brasil*; these with some other concurring circumstances, such as our present weakness and the disposition the states were in at that time, to be fairly rid of *Brasil*, gave them sufficient encouragement for this attempt. It has been the opinion of some, that the first sparks of this rebellion might soon have been quenched by seizing some of the heads of the *Portuguese* faction; but it being apparent from the records, that nothing was left unattempted upon that account, tho' without any

He arriv'd  
at Ben-  
them.

Reasons  
why *Brasil*  
was not  
sufficiently  
supplied by  
the *Dutch*.

What in-  
duced the  
*Portu-  
guese* to re-  
bel.

1649. any considerable success, the same cannot be imputed to the neglect of the government; the true reasons of the loss of *Brasil* were the slender garrison, and the inconsiderable number of *Dutch* inhabiting there; nothing being more obvious, than that a conquered country must be maintained, either by a sufficient military force, or strong colonies; the last of which was the constant practice of the ancient *Romans*, who besides this back'd them with good armies to keep the conquered nations in obedience. Another way of establishing themselves in a conquered country, tho' a very barbarous one, was introduced by the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* in *America*, who by destroying the ancient inhabitants, and planting colonies of their own, saved themselves the charge of keeping many forts and garrisons for their defence. Neither of these was sufficiently observed by the *Dutch*, after their conquest of the *Dutch-Brasil*; for according to their agreement made with the *Portuguese*, the last were left in the entire and quiet possession of all the sugar-mills, plantations, and grounds thereunto belonging, whereby the *Dutch* subjects were in a manner excluded from getting any considerable footing in the open country, especially, since such of the sugar-mills as happened to fall into the companies hands, by forfeiture or otherwise, were sold promiscuously to both nations, and commonly at such excessive rates, that the *Dutch* durst seldom venture upon them; the taxes laid upon every thing belonging to the sugar-mills, and upon the sugar itself, being so great, that little profit was to be reap'd from thence, unless the sugar sold at a very dear rate; whereas on the contrary, we ought after the example of the *Spaniards*, to have endeavoured to draw our subjects into *Brasil*, by the granting of considerable immunities of honour and other advanta-

ges. The military force of the *Dutch* in *Brasil*, was likewise not duly regarded; for whereas according to a just estimate made in 1641, by count *Maurice*, 7076 men were absolutely requisite to maintain the *Dutch* garrisons there, the states of *Holland* instead of following his directions, did after the conclusion of the ten years truce with *Portugal*, order the great council of the *Dutch-Brasil*, to reduce their forces there to 18 companies of 150 men each, and tho' several remonstrances were made upon that head to the contrary, the truth of which was verified by the event; yet the succours sent from *Holland* arrived so slowly, that after my departure things grew worse and worse every day, and the *Dutch* had lost all their strong holds 1654. For the *Portuguese* began to blow up the *Receif* by sea, with 16 ships, and to besiege it by land 1653, in *December*, with such success, that our people being constrain'd by hunger, and the garrison refusing to fight, were forced to surrender the place with all its circumjacent forts to the enemy; since which time the *Portuguese* have remained in the entire possession of *Brasil*, the same being confirmed to them by the peace made the 6<sup>th</sup> of *Aug.* 1660, betwixt *Portugal* and the states of the united provinces, in which, among others these following points were agreed upon.

That the crown of *Portugal* shall be obliged to pay to the states the sum of 80 tons of gold, either in ready money or sugar, tobacco or salt, or else assign the said money upon the *Portuguese* customs.

That the places taken on each side should remain to those, who were then in possession of them.

And that a free trade should be allowed to the *Dutch* in *Portugal*, *Africa* and *Brasil*, without paying any more customs than the native *Portuguese*.



Mr. JOHN NIEUHOFF'S

REMARKABLE

VOYAGES

AND

TRAVELS

TO THE

EAST-INDIES.

1653.

The au-  
thor's de-  
parture to  
the East-  
Indies.

**A**FTER a short stay in my native country, I resolv'd to take a view of the *East-Indies*, and accordingly embark'd at *Amsterdam*, on board the ship call'd the *Calf*, carrying 24 guns, under the command of *Cornelius Just*. The 23<sup>d</sup> of *August* 1653, we set sail from the *Texel*, in company of four ships more, viz. the *Peace*, the *Lamb*, the *Golden Drake*, and the *Nacden*, steering our course towards the north of *Ireland*, not thinking it safe to pass thro' the channel of *England*. The 24<sup>th</sup> we steer'd our course north by west, under 54 deg. 46 min. toward evening we cast anchor at 13, and in the night found 17 fathom water. We continued the same course the 25<sup>th</sup>, under 55 deg. 59 min. 23 fathoms water, and from thence farther till the 29<sup>th</sup>, under 28 deg. 24 min. Then we took a north-east course with a brisk gale. The 30<sup>th</sup>, with break of day we discovered at about 6 leagues distance *Helland*, lying at the northern point of *Scotland*, and found ourselves about noon under 60 deg. 3 min. latitude, and 18 deg. 49 min. longitude. The 1<sup>st</sup> of *September* we were under the latitude of 62 deg. 40 min. and 19 deg. 2 min. longitude: We steer'd our course with a brisk gale to south-west by west, betwixt the *Fairo* islands and *Helland*. The 4<sup>th</sup>, being overtaken by a violent storm, we lost sight of one of our

ships call'd the *Lamb*, under 60 deg. 11 min. We continued the same course till next day, when about noon we discovered the isle of *Kilda*, under 59 deg. at 6 leagues distance to the south-west of us, the island lying to the west of *Scotland*. Thus we pursued our voyage for the most part with stormy weather till the 13<sup>th</sup>, when we lost our small sail at the prow of the ship: We found ourselves about noon under 50 deg. 1 min. the weather continuing very stormy, but on the 17<sup>th</sup>, under 46 deg. 27 min. all our rigging was torn to pieces by a violent storm, in which we got out of sight of all our company. The 19<sup>th</sup> we descried two sail which we guess'd to be our own, as one of them prov'd afterwards to be the *Lamb*. The 20<sup>th</sup> we continued our course with a brisk wind to the south-west, and under 43 deg. 25 min. discovered the *Cabo Finis terræ*, or the point of the lands end of *Spain*, at about 5 leagues distance as we supposed. The same evening we met with the ship the *Lamb*, which as the master informs us, had lost sight of the ship the *Peace*, in the last storm, and had her main-mast and all her sails brought by the board. Thus we sail'd forward with a strong gale till the 30<sup>th</sup>, when we found ourselves under the 30 deg. 20 min. and discovered the *African* coast about five leagues to the south-west of us, with a variable wind. The 2<sup>d</sup>

1653.

The ship  
Kilda.

of



FF's

S

L S

C S.

der 60 deg. 11 165  
same course till  
we discovered  
deg. at 6 leagues  
of us, the island *Thule*  
*Killa*. Thus we  
most part with  
<sup>h</sup>, when we lost  
of the ship: We  
under 50 deg.  
uing very stor-  
46 deg. 27 min.  
pieces by a vi-  
got out of sight  
19<sup>h</sup> we descried  
to be our own,  
wards to be the  
inued our course  
south-west, and  
covered the *Cabo*  
of the lands end  
es distance as we  
ing we met with  
h as the master  
of the ship the  
nd had her main-  
ght by the board.  
with a strong gale  
und ourselves un-  
d discovered the  
gues to the south-  
e wind. The 2<sup>d</sup>  
of

S<sup>t</sup> ANTHONY



S<sup>t</sup> VINCENT



S.<sup>t</sup> ANTHONY



S.<sup>t</sup> VINCENT



1653.



The isle of  
St Vin-  
cent.



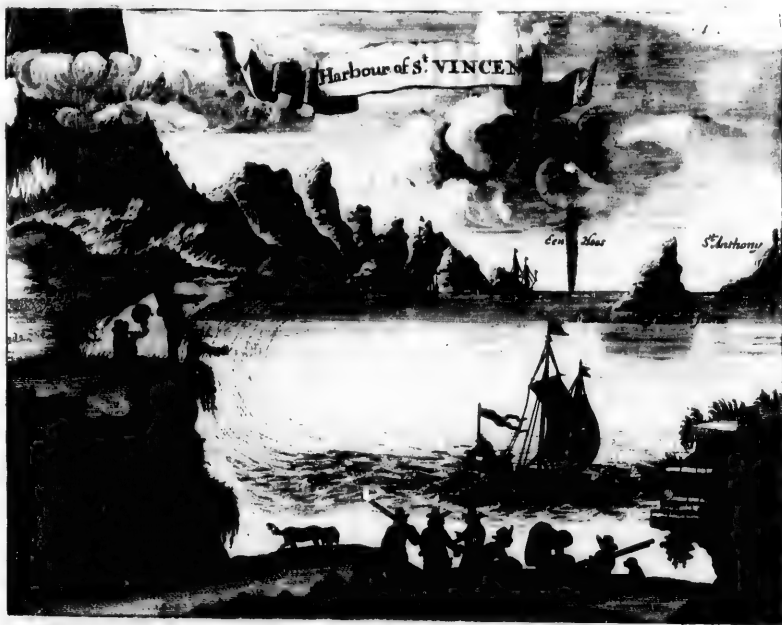
pla

1653. of October, we continued the same course under the 28 deg. 51 min. of latitude, and 57 deg. of longitude; all along the isle of *Lancerotta*, one of the canary islands, we descried a ship, but were not near enough to see what she was. The next day we found ourselves about 40 leagues to the north north-east of the islands *Fretevanture* or *Forteventum*, under 27 deg. 45 min. and sail'd thus in 24 hours, 40 leagues among the *Canary* islands. The 7<sup>th</sup> a brisk north wind carried us near 20 leagues forwards to the 19 deg. 14 min. In the evening we found but 14 fathoms water, and a small bird settled upon our ship, tho' we judg'd our selves above 100 leagues from land. The 9<sup>th</sup> we were under 17 deg. 41 min. and towards evening saw land to the south-west of us. The 10<sup>th</sup> with break of day we discover'd the isle of *St. Vincent*, one of the salt islands, about five leagues to the south-west; we steering our course south-west, betwixt this island and that of *St. Anthony*. About noon we cast anchor in the bay of *St. Vincent* at four fathom water, in a sandy bottom, and provided ourselves the same day with a whole boat full of fresh water and seven goats; I went in another boat to

The isle of  
St. Vin-  
cent.

the isle of *St. Anthony*, to fetch some fresh provisions, but could get none. The 15<sup>th</sup> our ships crew catch'd 10 tortoises, and those of the *Drake* as many. The 18<sup>th</sup> I was sent ashore to complement the governor of *St. Vincent*, who received us very kindly, and furnish'd us with an ass to carry us back to the harbour. All this while we catch'd abundance of fish; and the 20<sup>th</sup> sent some on shoar with some toys, which they exchanged with the inhabitants of *St. Vincent*, for oranges, limons, bekoras and pompions. The same day the ship the *Rose*, bound for *Brasil*, came to an anchor in the same bay. Mr. *Wilsbut* the elder, commander in chief of the land-forces, came on board us, being much surpris'd to meet with me there. Being by this time provided with as many necessaries as we were able to get, we were ready to set sail, but were detained by contrary winds 'till the 25<sup>th</sup>. The isle of *St. Vincent* is a rocky and barren island, affording nothing but a little grass for the sustenance of wild goats. It is about five leagues in circuit, under the command of a *Portuguese* governor, who was then a *Malabar*, one born of a christian father and a negro mother.

1653.



The inhabitants here are negroes, transplanted hither from several parts to catch wild goats, the skins of which they send to Portugal, and the flesh they can't consume they

1653. they throw away. They lead a wretched life without women. All their water is brackish, and of a taste like salt-peter, except what they gather at the foot of the highest rock in bags of goat-skins, which being always covered with clouds on the top, sends a considerable quantity of rain water down to the bottom by small natural channels. The governor's residence is on the other side of the great rock, not far from the sea-shore, near 3 leagues from the harbour. His officers live in huts cover'd with tortoise-shells, among trees, the shadow of which defends them against the excessive heat of the sun-beams: I went in company of some belonging to our ship, up to the top of the highest rock to take a view of the country; my companions stay'd about half way, but I with much ado got to the top, where I had a full prospect of the island, but lost my hat by the violence of the wind, and was forced to lay upon my belly, for fear of tumbling down the precipice. The inhabitants relate a ridiculous story of a king's daughter turn'd into a serpent here. As I was coming down and met with the rest of my companions in the place where I left them, we saw at some distance a great number of crows, which made us hasten thither, and found them busy in picking the flesh of a living tortoise which was turn'd upon her back; we found above 300 eggs within her, which one of our company kept for his own use, but the flesh was carried on board for the use of the sick.

The island of St. Anthony.

The island of *St. Antony* lies at about 3 leagues distance, just opposite to *St. Vincent*. On the foot of the east-point of this island, is a small sandy bay, fit for small vessels only, call'd by the *Portuguese*, *Et Pracaden Siniao*, whereabouts are about 30 huts inhabited by *Portuguese* and negroes, who sustain themselves most by fruit; of which they had no great store formerly, but of late years they have great plenty, which were transplanted thither by the industry of the *Portuguese*; the isle being full of high barren rocks. The vines bear here twice a year, as well as most other fruit-trees; they abound in wild-fowl of all sorts, but especially in wild-goats. We found the heat so excessive about noon, that it was insupportable: At our first arrival, they refused to supply us with refreshments, but after some time they began to be more pliable, and furnish'd us with what fruits we wanted.

The salt islands.

These islands commonly call'd the *Salt Islands*, being ten in number, are thus call'd from the great quantity of salt they produce, and lies about 160 leagues from the *African* coast, being first discovered by the *Portuguese* 1572, who inhabit there to this day.

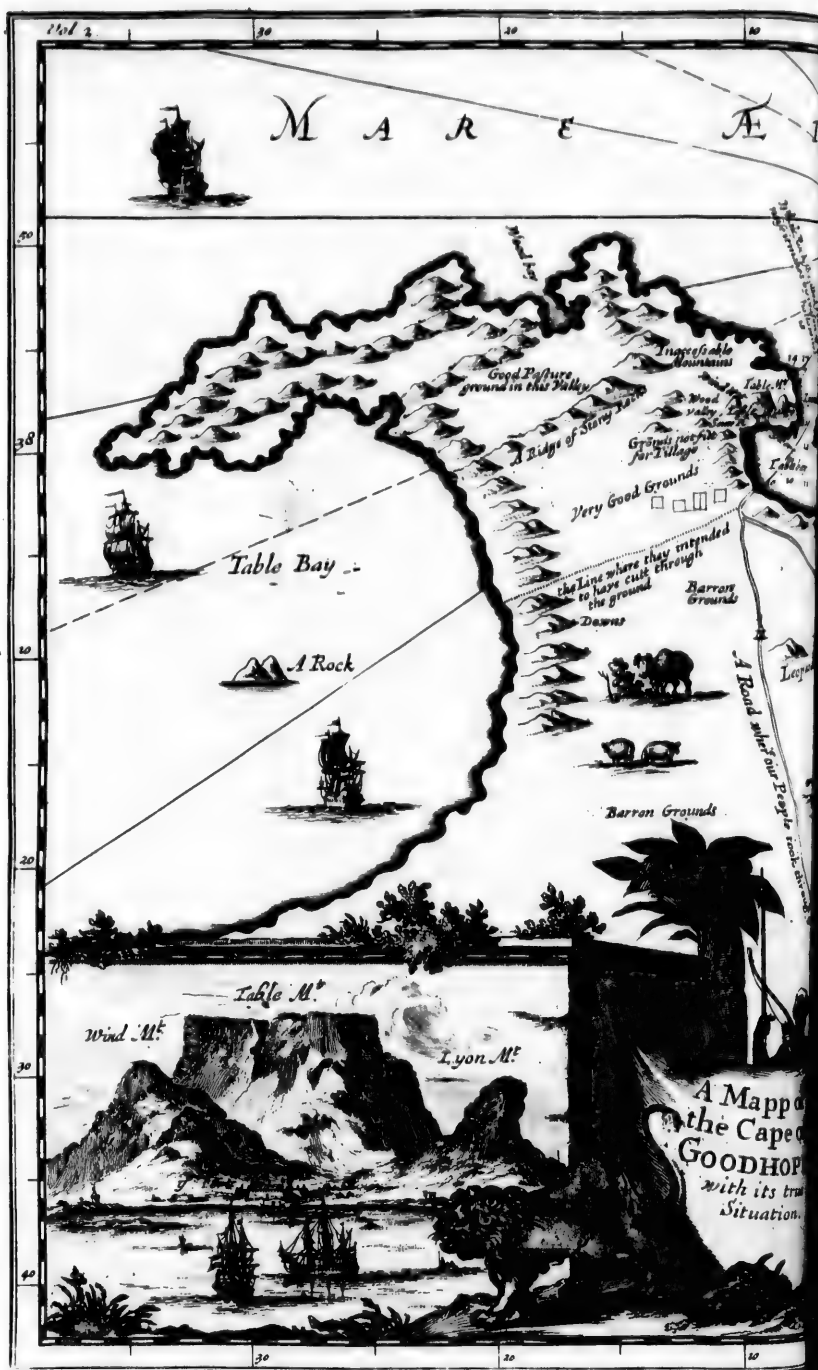
We set sail again the 26<sup>th</sup> with a moderate north-north east wind, and pass'd by the *Illa Blanco* or *White-island*; so call'd from its white colour, being the last of the ten, under 15 deg. 11 min. At first we had a brisk gale, but were soon becalm'd, and advanced very little that day and night. The next following day we had a more prosperous wind, and discover'd land the next morning, at about 10 leagues distance, under 14 deg. 16 min. The 3<sup>d</sup> of *November*, we advanc'd no more than 3 leagues, because the wind slacken'd under the 8 deg. 11 min. Thus we continued our course, but very slowly till the 18<sup>th</sup>, when we found our selves under 5 deg. being forced much farther to the east than we expected: We were continually afflicted with calms till the 1<sup>st</sup> of *December*; so that oftentimes we did not make above 3, 4 or 6 leagues a day, and without meeting with any thing remarkable, found our selves under 2 deg. 15 min. The 8<sup>th</sup> in the morning we pass'd the line, and the next day were under 50 min. southern latitude, and under 353 deg. 10 min. longitude: Here we were overtaken by a violent *Travado* from the east, with violent storms and rains, which much endamaged some of our small sails, being about noon under 1 deg. 37 min. We often saw small black clouds, which in an instant increased prodigiously, and were the certain fore-runners of tempests. For the rest we had favourable wind and weather all this month, and found our selves under 33 deg. 52 min. of southern latitude, and under 358 deg. 36 min. longitude, the sun setting 14 deg. 3 min. north-east; in the mean while our ship's crew began to be much afflicted with the scurvy for want of fresh water. The 1<sup>st</sup> of *January* we sail'd with a moderate gale under 34 deg. 58 min. about 39 leagues in 24 hours. The 3<sup>d</sup> we pursued our course east to the north, under 35 deg. 38 min. latitude, and 6 deg. 29 min. longitude: The 6<sup>th</sup> we continued the same course with a very brisk gale under 35 deg. 4 min. till the 22<sup>d</sup>, with strong winds and tempestuous weather; when in the morning under 31 deg. 36 min. we discovered land at about 3 leagues distance, to our no small satisfaction; we found 58 fathoms water and a rocky bottom; and in the afternoon 55 fathom sandy ground; we were forced to return deeper in sea, and in the afternoon approached nearer the shoar, but were forc'd to turn back again into the main. The next day about 7 or 8 leagues from the continent, we found a sandy bottom at 80 fathoms depth, and saw abundance of birds; we had very misty weather for some time, during which we lost the *Drake*. The 25<sup>th</sup> towards evening we got sight again of the

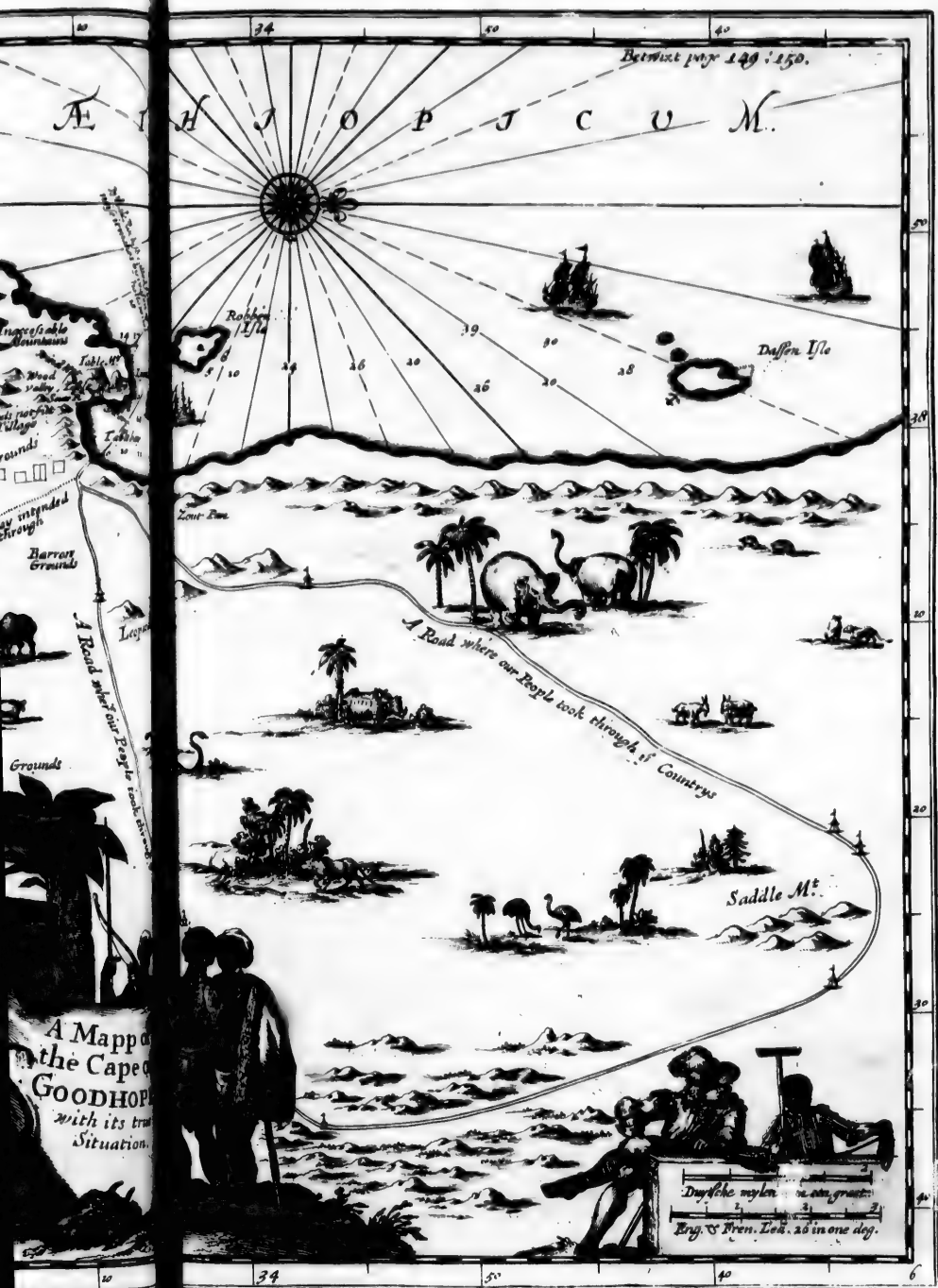
1653.

*Drake*



1653.  
with a moderate  
and pass'd by  
d, so call'd  
the last of the  
first we had  
calm'd, and  
and night.  
a more pro-  
and the next  
distance, un-  
of November,  
leagues, be-  
r the 8 deg.  
our course,  
when we found  
forced much  
pected: We  
calms till the  
times we did  
gues a day,  
ing remark-  
deg. 15 min.  
s'd the line,  
min. south-  
deg. 10 min.  
rtaken by a  
with violent  
endamaged  
about noon  
en saw small  
nt increased  
in fore-run-  
we had fa-  
this month,  
deg. 52 min.  
358 deg. 36  
14 deg. 3  
while our  
slicted with  
er. The 1<sup>st</sup>  
oderate gale  
9 leagues in  
our course  
deg. 38 min.  
gitude: The  
with a very  
till the 22<sup>d</sup>,  
tuous wea-  
ler 31 deg.  
bout 3 lea-  
tisfaction;  
nd a rocky  
55 fathom  
to return  
noon ap-  
were forc'd  
The next  
the conti-  
at 80 fa-  
e of birds;  
ome time,  
The 25<sup>th</sup>  
gain of the  
Drake





1653. Dr

und  
to f  
tinu  
till  
of  
leag  
with  
deg  
choo  
tisha  
espe  
hand

*Violent  
journey.*

Our  
able  
fore  
conf  
that  
him  
he w  
week  
land  
which  
and  
when  
were  
of Fe  
der 3  
36 de  
overt  
we w  
which  
lence  
we pu  
under  
cover  
stance.  
a leag  
thoms  
sea ag  
rocky  
the sh  
ile Ma  
west o  
league  
30, 3  
a leag  
we did  
(Rabb  
to put  
above  
tain, a  
a brisk  
Table  
thoms  
met w  
master  
the C  
chaloe  
condu  
8 of c  
about  
fo mu  
Vo

*They ar-  
rive in the  
Table  
Bay.*

1653. Drake about 7 or 8 leagues from the shore, under 32 deg. 38 min. without being able to fathom the bottom of the sea. We continued this failing to and from the shoar till the 28<sup>th</sup>, but could not make the *Cape of good Hope*, tho' we advanced within a league of the land among the rocks, not without great danger, being then under 32 deg. 58 min. we were therefore oblig'd to choose the main again, to our great dissatisfaction, being so disabled by the *scurvy* and especially the *scurvy*, that we had scarce hands enough left to manage our ship: Our surgeon was a *German* by birth, a very able person, but never used to the sea before, was so much surpris'd at it, that he confess'd he never had seen the like, and that few of them would recover; but I told him, that in case we could make the cape, he would find a remarkable alteration in a weeks time, as soon as they touch'd the land, and receiv'd suitable refreshment, which accordingly proved true. The 29<sup>th</sup> and 30<sup>th</sup> it was very tempestuous weather, when we lost sight again of the *Drake*; we were forced to keep the open sea 'till the 2<sup>d</sup> of February, when we found our selves under 34 deg. 39 min. southern latitude, and 36 deg. 32 min. longitude. The 3<sup>d</sup> being overtaken by a storm from the south-east, we were forced to leave the shore again, which continued the next day with such violence that we lost our main-sail. The 4<sup>th</sup> we pursued our course with a brisk gale under 33 deg. 40 min. when we again discovered land at about 6 or 7 leagues distance. Towards evening we came within a league of *Dassen* (*Doe Island*) at 60 fathoms depth, but were forced to put to sea again, the shore being all along very rocky here: Thus we made to and from the shore 'till the 8<sup>th</sup>, when we saw the *Table Mountain* about 9 leagues to the south-west of us, and the isle of *Dassen* 2 or 3 leagues to the N. W. we found hereabouts 30, 36 and 40 fathoms water, about half a league from the shore in a sandy bottom; we did all we could to make the *Robben Island* (*Rabbit Island*) but being becalm'd, were fain to put to sea again. The 9<sup>th</sup> we were not above 2 or 3 leagues from the *Table Mountain*, and about noon being favour'd with a brisk S. W. wind got happily into the *Table Bay*, where we cast anchor at five fathoms depth in a sandy bottom. Here we met with the galliot the *Fix*, *John Zymentz* master. Mr. *Rietbeck*, Dutch governor of the *Cape of good Hope*, sent us immediately a chaloop with fish on board, and a pilot to conduct us into the harbour. We had lost 8 of our ships crew in this voyage, and had about 40 sick, besides which the rest were so much afflicted with the *scurvy*, that un-

Violent  
scurvy.

They ar-  
rive in the  
Table  
Bay.

less we had received some seasonable re-  
freshments, we could scarce have held it out  
much longer. I went immediately a-shore  
in company of the captain *Cornelius Just*,  
and brought back good store of mustard-  
leaves which were dress'd for the ship's crew.  
Much about the same time the fiscal came  
a-board us, to forbid all commerce with  
the *Hottentotes* or natives, and to carry a  
shore, without special leave from the gover-  
nor; we were also supply'd with more fresh  
water, which is very good and easy to be  
got thereabouts. The 12<sup>th</sup> we saw the ship  
the *Drake* making the bay, but was forced  
to cast anchor behind the *Robben Island*,  
by reason of the violence of the wind; we  
were then busy in fishing, but the wind  
blowing hard from the land side, could catch  
none. The 14<sup>th</sup> the tempest being some-  
what allay'd, we approach'd as near the  
shore as we could; when we got sight of  
the top of the *Table Mountain*, which is ve-  
ry often covered with small clouds, a cer-  
tain preface of tempestuous weather. The  
same day we went to our former employ-  
ment of fishing, and catch'd as much in one  
draught as the chaloop was able to carry,  
the governor having 14 wheelbarrows full  
for his share. They were for the most part  
mulletts, which swim in shoals along the  
shore of this bay. It was not 'till then the  
*Drake* came into the harbour, having lost  
20 of her crew and 50 sick, and the rest  
being so much disabled by the *scurvy*, that  
according to their own confession, if it had  
lasted thus 14 days longer, they must have  
left the ship to the mercy of the wind and  
sea: We were all this while very busy in  
fishing as often as the weather would per-  
mit; but the 19<sup>th</sup> it blew so hard, that we  
were forced to make use of all our Anchors.  
The 22<sup>d</sup> we spent in providing ourselves  
with fresh water and fuel, the last of which  
our carpenters cut down near the banks of  
the *Sali-River*. The 23<sup>d</sup> I, in company  
of some others, went cros the mountain as  
far as the *Fresh-River*, to see whether we  
could meet with some wild-fowl, we saw  
some negroes with about 300 head of cat-  
tle, but at the first sight of us they retired.  
The fields hereabouts were all covered with  
white lilies and tulips; we saw also abun-  
dance of partridges. Being informed that  
a *Rhinoceros* was fallen into the boggs, the  
governor *Rietbeck* sent some fusiliers thi-  
ther to kill him, but the musquet ball not  
being able to penetrate his thick hide, they  
were forced to cut a hole in it first, and so  
to shoot it to death; the horn is preserv'd  
there to this day, and sometimes used instead  
of a cup. The 1<sup>st</sup> of March we had very  
fair weather, notwithstanding which, few of  
our ship's crew were fond to go on shore,  
every

The ship  
the Drake  
enters the  
bay.

They take  
a view of  
the coun-  
try.

A Rhinoc-  
eros  
kill'd.

1653. every thing being there at an excessive rate; as for instance, a quartern of *Arack* was sold for six-pence; of brandy for twelve-pence; a water-melon about the bigness of a coconut for half a ctown. The next day being informed that a whale was got on shoar in the *Salt-River*, the governor and his lady, our master of the ship and I, went thither to see it, it was a very large one; we got upon the back of it, whilst the trumpet sounded merrily, and the negroes were buſied in cutting great pieces of the flesh which they buried in the sand in order to eat them. The 6<sup>th</sup> the governor sent some of his soldiers to the *Hottentots*, to endeavour to exchange some of their cattle for copper, tobacco-pipes and such like baubles, but they retired at first sight. The 9<sup>th</sup> it was very calm and fair weather, which made most of our crew go on shore to wash their linen, having received orders to be ready to sail the next day; for which reason also good store of cabbage and two sheep were brought a board, a slender provision for such a number of men, but it was impossible to get more for that time. During our stay here, we fetch'd daily two sacks full of cabbage and mustard-leaves, which being boiled with bacon, was served twice a day, this being the best refreshment we were able to get. The *Cape of Good Hope* is situate under 34 deg. 20 min. southern latitude, which jets out into the sea like a demi-island being to the north joined to the continent by a strait neck of land, with a bay on each side, very convenient for anchorage. The *Table Bay*, which has borrow'd its name from the *Table Mountain*, is about 4 leagues in compass, so that a whole fleet of ships may safely enter, or go out with any wind, except the north-west wind. Near the shore of this bay, upon the banks of the *Fresh-River*, the *Dutch East-India* company has erected a quadrangular fort, call'd the *Good Hope*, well provided with artillery and a good garrison, in which, at this time, Mr. *Rietbeck* was commander in chief; and had his habitation there, with a well-planted garden of about 15 acres round about it. Upon the banks of the *Salt-River* is likewise a small redoubt. Behind the fort of *Good-Hope*, all along the banks of the river, are many fine plantations or gardens, which produce cabbages and such-like herbage, being cultivated by certain *Hollanders* who have settled there, and pay only a small annual acknowledgment to the governor for the use of their grounds, which are for the most part clay, and consequently fruitful, tho' in some parts they are likewise rocky and sandy. Near the sea-shore is great store of small wood, tho' the natives assure us, that deeper in the

country they have trees of a vast bigness. Their gardens produce likewise olives, oranges, apricocks and peaches; the fields grafs and some herbs and flowers; nay, they would bear very good wheat, rye, rice, and barley, were they manur'd as they ought to be. Their field herbs are great and small, some with knotty roots, houseleek and some other pot-herbs, besides tulips and white-lilies, &c. They have also here a certain root which the *Hottentots* roast and eat instead of bread, and sometimes make flour of them; some taste like our potatoes or chestnuts, tho' they have others that are much sweeter, not unlike our anniseed. The *Dutch* have planted many thousands of vines on a hill adjacent to the fort, they bear very plentifully, but the wine is of a crab-like taste. The worst of all is, that the winds which arise from the clouds in the mountains, blow in the summer, especially about July, with such violence, that they tear up all by the roots, at which time it is very dangerous landing at the cape. For the rest the air is very wholesome here, being always clear, and neither too hot nor too cold. Their winter is in June and July, when it freezes sometimes, that you may see ice of the thickness of the back of a large knife. In October, November, and December, there blows always a south wind, which produces a cool air, as the north wind does in *Holland*; and in this season they are troubled with violent rains, which however render their ground very fruitful.

This country likewise abounds in all sorts of wild and tame creatures: They have here birds they call *Pinguwys*, *Flamingos*, *Antenayas*, *Alkatraces*, *Faylons*, *Gavoytoys*, *Garagians*, &c. The *Pinguwys* are short legged, and may soon be taken, but are not to be forced from their nest without a good stick, because they will bite and defend themselves there to the utmost. They abound also in partridges and pheasants, geese, quails, crows, sparrows of divers kinds, rock-ducks with yellow necks, teal, wood and water snipes, and a kind of demi-ducks; there is also a sort of black birds here of the bigness of a small goose or large duck, call'd by us cormorants, wild peacocks, blue, white and black cranes. The white ones are indifferently large, the black ones of the bigness of our sea-gulls, living for the most part in the marshes; they have a kind of reed-birds with red necks and legs, monkeys, hawks of divers kinds, ravens, magpies and very large ostriches, which can reach with their long necks a man on horse-back. They are gray, and run with their wings spread as swift as a horse; they live upon herbs, but sometimes devour likewise stones, copper and iron. They

have

The Cape  
of Good  
Hope.

Table Bay.

The fort.

The Pingu-  
wys.

The Fla-  
mingos.

Sea Cow.



1653. have likewise certain birds not unlike our geese, which lay eggs without yolks, as big as a common goose egg. They are so full, and taste so much like fish, that they are not eatable. Another kind of geese they have somewhat less than ours, tho' their legs are larger, with grey spots all over their bodies; they are not to be tam'd, because they kill any other bird that comes within their reach.

The Pingu-  
wys.

Formerly the sea-shore used to abound with certain birds call'd *Pinguwys*, both black and white; their skin is very hard, and are of the bigness of an ordinary goose. They live both upon land and in the water; they have a fin on each foot, which makes them swim very swiftly after their prey the small fish, which is the reason their flesh is of a rank taste, and scarce eatable, unless it be seven times boil'd in fresh water, and afterwards fry'd with butter; they make their nest, and lay their legs in hollow places in the sand.

The Fla-  
mingos.

The *Flamingos* is a very fine bird, resembling a crane, but with a crooked bill. They are pale red, tho' some of their feathers are half white and half black, but the uppermost feathers which cover the rest, are of a rosy colour.

Their oxen are very fat and thick set, with long crooked horns, tho' some have their horns bent back close to the neck; others have no horns at all, they are generally a foot and a half taller than our oxen. Among other creatures they have here those they call *Sea Cows*, being much bulkier than an *European* ox. They are without horns, but have long ears and round eyes, with a short tail, thick legs and feet like an elephant. They have no hair upon their bodies, but prodigious large teeth. They feed upon grass, which they find in the marshes near the lakes, where they duck under water as long as they please, so that they are seldom to be seen or catch'd. The flesh is like other beef, but somewhat coarser; when it is salted, it appears and keeps like the ordinary *Dutch* salted beef.

They have likewise here what they commonly call *Iron Pigs*, with long spikes, which by drawing the skin together, can shoot at those that come too near them with such force, as to wound them mortally. A dead lion was once found here, with such a spike sticking in the breast, which had questionless caused his death. The skin is hung up, and to be seen in the fort to this day. They abound also in hares, wild goats and rabbits; and deeper in the country they have tygers, lions, wolves, leopards, *Rhinoceros's*, deer, cows, calves and rock-does. They have plenty of sheep, which the inhabitants exchange for copper, tobacco, to-

bacco-pipes, and such like baubles. They bear no wool, but hair like our goats; their legs are long, and the tail consists of one long and thick piece of fat, which weighs sometimes 20 pound and above.

On this cape is also a certain creature call'd a *Jackal*, being betwixt a fox and a dog, with grey hair; it roars frightfully in the night time, being very greedy after men's flesh, so that it will dig sometimes ten foot deep to come at a dead carcass: It is said to be the most quick-scented of all creatures, and by its scent to discover any carrion that is near at hand to the lion. Among others, they have likewise a certain wild beast in shape and bigness like an elephant, but with two horns on the top of the nose; its tail is likewise like that of an elephant, but has a bush of black hair on the head where it joins to the neck, with two straight and round horns, with short mouse-coloured hair all over the body. On the top of the *Lions Mountain*, (so call'd from its resemblance to a sleeping lion) are great numbers of baboons, which are so unlucky, that they will sometimes with stones, force those who ascend the mountain to turn back. However, most of your ravenous beasts, such as lions, leopards, wolves, jackals and tigers, are but rarely to be met with near the sea-shore, where they are almost rooted out by the inhabitants; a certain reward being set for every one that kills any of these beasts, of which several skins hang up in a gallery of the fort. They have also sea and land tortoises in great quantities, and the woods furnish them with plenty of honey, which the bees hide in the deepest hollowness of the trees. Neither are they without dogs, which are commonly of a red colour, and have short tails.

There is here a certain kind of fish call'd by the *Dutch* the *Hottentots* fish, because the *Hottentots* are very dextrous in taking them. They are very fine fishes, and taste like our cods. Formerly they used to catch abundance of seals, but now most of their fishes are unknown to us. In the *Table Bay* are also whales in abundance, but they are too lean to afford any considerable quantity of oil. Near the sea-shore you meet with the fish call'd by *Latines* *Torpedo*, by the *Greeks* *The fish* in the same sense *Naroe*, by the *Spaniards* *Hugia*, and by the *Dutch* *Krack Fish* or *Lazy Fish*, not because of its laziness in swimming, but of its hidden qualities, which as is reported, consists in this, that when it finds itself in distress, it sends forth a certain juice, which seizes the fishermen with a cramp in all their limbs. The inhabitants here are call'd *Hottentots* by the *Dutch*, by reason of their stammering.

The men here appear for the most part naked,

1653.

The Jack-  
als.

The Hot-  
tentots fish.

The fish  
Torpedo.

The Hot-  
tentots and  
their ba-  
bits.

1653. naked, having only a kind of a cloak made of doe, sheep, or rabbit skins sowed together, hanging from their shoulders down to their buttocks, fastned under the chin with a ribband, with the rough side outward in the summer, and the same turn'd inside in the winter. When they are travelling they wear over this another cloak with the rough side outwards. Their shoes are made of *Rhinoceros* skin without any heels, tied together on the middle of the feet with two leathern straps. In the night time, or in rainy weather, they wear caps of lamb skins with the woolly side inwards. Their privities they cover with a piece of tiger's skin or such like, which is tied behind with two leather strings. In their hair, which is shaved in some places of the head, they twist small copper plates, horns, and pieces of coral. The women wear cloaks of lamb skins like the men, with the rough side inwards, tho' somewhat longer; besides which they cover their bellies and buttocks, as also their privities, with another four-square skin. On their heads they wear caps of doe, sheep, and rabbit skins, tied round about with a broad sheep-skin strap. Their shoes are the same with the men. Such men or women as are rich in cattle, grease not only their bodies and faces, but likewise their cloaks and caps with suet, but the poor wear no cloaks at all; so that greasiness is among them both an ornament and a token of riches. In both ears they wear strings of coral, each weighing commonly four ounces; about their necks copper beads, round the arms they wear an ivory ring, and a strait copper ring about their wrists. When the women go abroad, they commonly have an empty leathern bag hanging down from their shoulders, in which are only some baubles, but if they have a young child it is carried in this bag. They wear stinking guts twisted twice or thrice round their legs for an ornament, or else dried guts, which serve them as a defence against pricking of thorns, and make a rattling noise when they are dancing and merry making. The men wear them likewise about the neck, and hang their tobacco-pipes and other toys in them.

*Their arms.* The arms chiefly used among the *Hottentots* are javelins, being sticks of 3, 4, or 5 foot long, pointed at the end with a sharp broad piece of iron; these they make themselves, and use them with great dexterity. They have also some bows and arrows, but are as yet quite ignorant of the use of fire arms. When they go abroad they carry this javelin, call'd by them *Affagaye* in one, and an ostrich feather, or a small stick with a wild cat's tail on the end, in the other hand, wherewith they defend themselves against the gnats and other insects.

The *Hottentots* are very nasty and awkward in eating, for they are ignorant of any thing that relates to cookery, but devour raw pieces of flesh or carrion, as greedily as dogs. The guts themselves they swallow down without washing or dressing, after they have only squeezed them a little. For want of carrion they eat dead stinking fish, such as they meet with near the sea-side, mussels and such like. They kill no cattle except it be rendered usefule by sickness or age, except it be a sheep against a wedding dinner. The flesh of sea-dogs or rabbits is a dainty with them, which they devour either quite raw without cleansing, or sometimes broil it a little upon coals. They cut and eat the bacon of dead whales which happen to be cast ashore with great eagerness; nay they drink the oil which is drawn from thence by the heat of the sun, like water. Some bury pieces of this bacon in the sand for their future use. However their best and daily food are certain roots, not unlike our large potatoes, which the women dig up near the rivers and in some other places, those they eat either broil'd or boil'd. They are very eager after our wheat or rice bread which is baked there, and willingly exchange it for cattle.

Their chief drink is water, or milk which their cattle affords them. 'Tis incredible how fond they are of brandy or *Spanish* wine, but a small quantity makes them drunk, when they baul out fearfully, and are very unruly.

Those inhabitants near the cape are of a brown olive colour, like the *Mulats*, which however is not their natural complexion, but acquired by art, for they broil certain herbs with grease, wherewith they besmear their bodies and faces to make them swarthy, it having been found by experience, that a girl, which was carried into the fort immediately after she was born and brought up there, proved of the same complexion with the best of our *European* women. They are of opinion, that in case they don't frequently besmear themselves thus from that time of their birth, they shall be subject to the dropsy, a distemper to which many of the *Africans* are most subject, as the *Abissines* have one thigh swell'd twice as thick as the other. Upon the arrival of our ships on the cape, they get into the cook's room, and with the fat and black of the kettle, besmear their hair and faces to make them shine the better; this being look'd upon as a great piece of beauty among them, tho' it makes them smell very rank, especially if they put grease into the gashes which they make in their skin for that purpose, when you may smell them at 100 yards distance.

*Their constitution and habit of body.* They are generally lean, short and ugly, yet

1653. yet  
goo  
flat  
ally  
hea  
of  
wo  
mer  
of v  
chin  
but  
be a  
him  
ally  
bell  
very  
very  
so fe  
cuts  
fit fo  
sea-v  
ciall  
breas  
they  
ward  
the w  
hang  
their  
force  
of the

1653. yet  
goo  
flat  
ally  
hea  
of  
wo  
mer  
of v  
chin  
but  
be a  
him  
ally  
bell  
very  
very  
so fe  
cuts  
fit fo  
sea-v  
ciall  
breas  
they  
ward  
the w  
hang  
their  
force  
of the  
The  
bluffs  
they  
know  
howe  
and w  
appe  
Hotten  
not al  
of att  
house  
being  
fort,  
and o  
they  
son, h  
for th  
terior  
to del  
withst  
in my  
upon  
want  
broug  
saw i  
were  
they  
and v  
emple  
ctor,  
was s  
terpre  
Vo

1653. yet they have black quick eyes, and very good white teeth. Their noses are somewhat flat, tho' not always, and the lips, especially the uppermost, very thick. Their foreheads are broad but wrinkled, and the hair of the men is curl'd and short like lambs wool, but very nasty and greasy. The women have thicker hair than the men, the last of which pull out all their hair upon their chin. The men have very well made legs, but slender calves, and are so nimble as to be abl. to out-run a strong bull, and stop him in his full career. The women especially have very fine and small feet, with flat bellies and round buttocks; their hands are very well shaped, but their fingers and nails very long. The mens privities or yards are very large, but have only one stone; for so soon as a male child is born, the mother cuts out the right stone to make it the more fit for running, and afterwards gives it some sea-water and tobacco. The women, especially those that are married, have long breasts which are always bare, and when they are suckling their infants, hang backwards over their shoulders. The inside of the womens privities are so relaxed that they hang out. Their chiefest riches consist in their cattle, which they never kill but when forced thereunto, either by sickness or age of the beast.

They stammer much in their speech, and bluster out their words like a turkey-cock; they make use of no letters, neither do they know what writing and reading is; some however have been taught to speak, read and write *Dutch*, which shews them to be apprehensive enough. For the rest of the *Hottentots* are so very stupid, that they are not able to form to themselves the least idea of attacking or defending a strong hold; a house of brick, such as is proof against fire, being as profitable against them as the best fort, for if you enclose them in a house, and only shut their doors and windows fast, they are as safe here as in the strongest prison, having not the least sense to open them for their deliverance, in which they are inferior to beasts, which commonly endeavour to deliver themselves from bondage. Notwithstanding the *Hottentots* are so stupid, and in my judgment, the most wretched nation upon earth, there are some among them that want not cunning, especially if they are brought up to it; an instance of which we saw in our time in two young fellows, who were carried from hence to *Batavia*, where they were instructed in speaking, reading and writing of *Dutch*. One of them was employed as a servant by the general director, *John Maai Zuicker*, and after some time was sent back to the cape to serve as an interpreter there. I met with him at my first

VOL. II.

return from the *East-Indies*, among the *Hottentots*, and ask'd him whether he would not rather be with us where he lived much better? he told me, he would rather be with his own countrymen. I understood afterwards, that this fellow had proved the occasion of great mischief and differences among the *Hottentots*, and that several had been kill'd in the quarrel on both sides. At last he fell again into the hands of the commander of the cape, who banish'd him to the *Robben Island*, where he died. Theft they punish with a bastinado, and so they do murder, not out of any regard to God Almighty, but for custom's sake. They talk of one *Hunumma*, who has the disposal of rain and fair weather, but they pay no adoration to him.

Marriage is in pretty good esteem among them, tho' a man marries as many wives as he pleases. The maid, as soon as she is betrothed, performs the oath of fidelity in the following manner: The mother cuts of the first joint of her daughters little finger, which is tied to her future husband's finger, this they bury, and afterwards kill a cow for their wedding dinner. The maids are distinguish'd from the married women by green twigs which are twisted round their legs; these are taken off at the wedding day, and instead of them the dried guts of the cow kill'd for the wedding dinner put on; these when they dance make a noise, which seems very agreeable to them.

'Tis true the *Hottentots* are the most barbarous upon earth; notwithstanding which, I can't agree with those that will not allow of any religious worship among them; it being the opinion of all learned men, that no nation is so barbarous but what has something of religion, be it true or false. For they adore the moon with unusual outcries; and it is not improbable but that they pay the same devotion to the sun, because they follow its course as much as is possible, by changing the pasture of their cattle; for when the sun comes to the tropick of *Capricorn*, it has been observed that they feed their cattle on the south-east side of the rivulet, but when the sun returns to the tropick of *Cancer*, they go to the north-side; if it happens to rain very hard, they shelter themselves in their huts, seem to be fearful, and don't creep out till it be fair weather. Then they begin to be very merry, lifting up their heads and eyes to heaven, which is interpreted by us as a kind of thanksgiving; for when they are asked why they hide themselves during the rain, they answer, that the *Great Captain* being incensed against them, does punish them with this element, which he knows to be contrary to their nature. By this *Great Captain* they question-

R r

less

1653. less understand the supreme Being; for if you speak to them of God, they are unwilling to hear it, and punish such among them as make use of it; alledging that it is not sufficient to express the glory of the supreme Being. If you talk of the devil they point to the ground. Concerning the resurrection, they are of opinion, that those that die near the cape, shall arise again behind the mountains: But perhaps all this they may have learned from the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*. They frequently skirmish with one another, commonly for the convenience of pastorage, so that sometimes six or seven are left dead upon the spot.

Divers nations of the Hottentots.

The *Hottentots* are divided into several nations, known by different names. Those inhabiting near our fort are by the *Dutch* call'd *Capemen*, but in their own tongue *Cbouriequa*; they are the most cunning of all the rest, by their frequent commerce with the *Dutch* and other *Europeans*; they live for the most part upon roots, fish and mussels. Somewhat deeper in the country live those commonly call'd *Tobacco Thieves*, because they used to steal the tobacco out of the fields, which is the reason the *Dutch* plant no more tobacco there; in their own tongue they are call'd *Korrochoukon*. There is another fort call'd *Chemakwa*, much more potent and richer than the *Capemen*, yet don't approach in power to the *Cockukas*, who living still deeper in the country, are accounted many thousand strong, and have vast herds of cows and sheep; they were then under the jurisdiction of two captains, the first call'd *Odojey*, the other *Monomana*. The first of these two had married the sister of our interpreter's wife in the fort, and being invited thither by Mr. *Rietbeck*, the governor, he at last, after much enquiry concerning his quality, for fear of demeaning himself, gave him a visit. They rid out together a hunting, when *Odojey* had the misfortune to be set upon by a fierce lion, who certainly would have torn him to pieces, had not his followers kill'd the lion with their javelins; however he did not escape without being sorely wounded on the neck, the flesh was all torn from one of his shoulder blades, and his face all miserably maul'd: Being judged past recovery, the governor offered him his own surgeon, but he would not accept of him, trusting more to those of his own nation; tho' the skill of these surgeons among the *Hottentots* reaches no farther than to cure a green wound, which they scarce ever perform without leaving a great dent or seam. They carry their remedies about them, and commonly have a parrot or some such creature (not unlike our mountebanks) along with them. Their herbs they keep in tortoise shells, but the roots, claws, teeth, and

horns of beasts (these being the ingredients of their physical preparations) are fastned to a string, which they in the same manner as our tooth-drawers hang about the neck.

There is another nation of the *Hottentots* call'd by the *Dutch* *Sardiniamen* or *Saldanbas* (from a bay of that name) the natives call them *Krijegoekwa*. Some of the *Hottentots* relate, that to the north-east of those call'd *Cockukas*, there is a potent nation dwelling in stone-houses, that they are not black, and governed by the same laws as we are. Some suppose them to be a people inhabiting the mountains of the moon, but considering they are said to understand gold and silver, and to agree in many other things with the *Europeans*; our people judge them to be a colony of the *Portuguese* that have transplanted themselves thither from *Mozambique*. The *Dutch* have several times attempted to find out a passage thither by land, but without success, having always been forc'd to turn back for want of water. They also talk much of two other nations call'd *Ileukunqua* and *Groeman*. The *Hottentots* or inhabitants here are not subject to one head, and what reverence they pay to their captains, is more out of custom than any sense of duty; they have no fix'd habitations, but lead a vagabond life like the ancient *Scythes* and *Arabians*, carrying their wives and children along with them. They are not very desirous of gold and silver, unless some few that converse with the *Dutch*, and know the convenience of buying from them what they stand in need of; for otherwise copper is in the greatest esteem with them. Boats they have none, being extremely fearful of water, and therefore venture seldom farther than to their knees. They are of a very lazy temper; most of their traffick consists in cows and sheep, which they exchange for copper and corals; but after the bargain is struck, they expect an additional present of tobacco, pipes and brandy, which has been introduced among them by foreigners. The seamen do also sometimes swap with them for ostrich feathers, and small tortoise shells call'd *Harego*. It is to be admired how they should make so much account of copper, which they daily tread under their feet, it being certain that very good copper mines are to be found hereabouts. The *Dutch* have at divers times attempted several land journeys into the country; as for instance, in the year 1660, when they discovered two nations, viz. the *Ilunba* and *Namakkawa*; they supposed to have not been very far from the *Portuguese*, because they thought to have heard a cannon shot at a distance. The inland country swarms with wild fowl, such as wild geese, ducks and teal, but they are so shy as not

1653.

1647.

The Table Mountain.

Table Bay.

Robben Island.

1647. to come within reach of a gun, which is the reason that the governor's huntman sets up small huts of green boughs, from whence he shoots them, this being the only way to come at them. Among the mountains are abundance of rocks, and some of them contain fresh water in their concavities. Several of our people as they were going one day up the mountains to take a view of the circumjacent country, found a certain rock-stone of four fathom long, and one and a half broad, being hollow in the middle, of the depth of a quarter of a yard, where they met with good store of fine fresh water. Here are oltriches of an extraordinary bigness; they are so swift as to outrun a horse when they set up their wings, and thus by the help of the wind are forced forward, no otherwise than a ship under sail. Their large legs and feet are a great addition to them, by the help of which they trot on with such a force and nimbleness that like a horse running down a hill, they are scarce to be stopt. The same way of setting up their wings has been observed in the tame swans. But before we leave this cape, I will give you a short account of the *Lions Mountain*, the *Table Mountain* and *Table Bay*, as likewise of the *Robben Isle*.

The Table Mountain.

There are two very high mountains near this cape, viz. the *Table Mountain* and the *Lions Mountain*. The first is so call'd from its flatness on the top like a table, being about two leagues high, but small in circumference, and for that reason of very difficult access. It is divided from another adjacent mountain, call'd the *Devil's Mountain* by a vast cliff. Towards the sea-side it is bare, without any grafs or trees, but on the land-side you see very agreeable woods, with many tall strait trees fit for building; and towards the foot abundance of lesser trees for fuel. Among the rest are a great store of wild almond-trees, but the fruit is very bitter; and if we may believe the *Hottentots*, poisonous; wild pine-trees are here likewise in abundance, they grow very tall, but bear nothing but a husk.

Table Bay.

The *Table Bay* is situate under 34 deg. and some min. about 5 leagues more to north, this being the most southern point of *Africa*. It is a very fine bay, thro' on the south-side of the *Robben Island* are some rocks call'd the *Whale*; a large ship may anchor in this bay, from 9 to 7 fathom water, but yachts at 4 or 5 fathom in a good sandy ground. There is however no trusting to a single anchor, by reason of the blustering south-east winds which blow often here.

Robben Island.

At the entrance of the *Table Bay* you see the *Robben Island*, thus call'd from the vast quantity of *Sea Robben* (*Sea Rabbits*) which

are found here. It is not very high, and about two leagues in circumference. In the towns some rabbits have been put by the inhabitants which thrive very well. The ground produces a certain herb in great plenty; it has yellow leaves almost like cowslips, which fatten the sheep exceedingly.

To the north-east of the *Robben Island* lies the *Dassen Island*, under 34 deg. 33 min. It has got its name from the vast numbers of *Dassen* (*Does*) which formerly were found there, but are of late years much diminish'd. It is about a league in compass, and produces likewise many sea rabbits and *Pinguwys*. It is inhabited by four families only with their slaves, whose chief employment it is to breed pigs and poultry, and to draw oil from the sea-rabbits, which they sell to the inhabitants living in and near the fort. Before the bay of *Saldanba* are several small islands, where those of the *Dassen Island* have their liberty of fishing and hunting; they catch vast quantities of partridges, mullets and other fish. The two chief rivers of this cape are the *Salt* and *Fresh Rivers*. Besides these there is another rivulet, which arising from among a neighbouring wood, exonerates itself in the *Salt River*. It is not above 12 or 14 foot broad, but very deep. Not far from the source of this, arises another rivulet among the marshes near the *Wood Bay*. It runs south-east thro' the downs, (which extend as far as *Cabo falso*) and disembogues itself into the sea.

No place in the world is more subject to storms than the *Cape of Good Hope*, so that it would be impossible for ships to abide here, had not nature provided against these inconveniencies by the several commodious bays that are here. Among those the bay of *Saldanba*, commonly call'd *Sardinia*, is none of the least consequence, where ships may ride safely at anchor without the least danger, and were it not for the want of fresh water, it might claim the preference before the *Table Bay* itself. The winds blow generally throughout the year very hard here, but especially the south-east wind, which blows from *October* to *April* (call'd the *South-East Monsoon*) and tears so terribly thro' the cliff, (betwixt the *Table* and the *Devil's Mountain*) that except the country and ground were very smooth and hard here, it would be impossible for any ship to ride it out; from *April* until *October*, the north-west wind blows with not much less violence, (call'd the *North-West Monsoon*) but yet not altogether so fierce as the south-east wind, there its violence is more observable on the land-side of the cliff. The main difference betwixt these two winds here is, that the south-east wind always produces dry weather, whereas the north-west wind brings rains,

1653.



1653. rains, which are very pernicious to the fruit.

By what signs to discover the nearness of the cape.

So soon as you come near the sight of the cape, under the 34 deg. of southern latitude, you meet with certain signs and tokens, by which you may discover whether you are far from land or not. I don't much wonder that some of the ancient authors who have given us an account of the *Indies*, affirm, that when they were at a loss to find out whether they were near land or not, they used to let fly some birds, and according to their flight, to direct their course. Tho' this is out of date now, yet certain it is, that the birds are the best guide as to those who sail to the *East-Indies*: For at a great distance from the cape, whilst you are yet in the open sea, you meet with a peculiar kind of small sea-gulls, which foretell you your approach to this cape. But as these come abroad sometimes above 100 leagues or more at sea, they are but uncertain fore-runners, but when you see another kind of large spotted sea-gulls appear, by those that are acquainted in these seas call'd *Cape-Birds*, with speckled wings, you may hope to see land in a very short time, and if you meet with some turtle doves, this puts it beyond all doubt. If you find anchorage at 40 or 50 fathoms depth, in a white sandy ground mix'd with red, you may conclude yourself to be upon the sandridge of the cape d' *Aguillas*, tho' you see no land. If you come to the west of the *Cape of good Hope*, you will find, besides the aforementioned *Cape-Birds*, certain hollow roots growing among the rocks in the sea, the leaves of which swim upon the water; the *Portuguese* call them *Trombas*, and they are to be met with in vast quantities in the *Table Bay*, just under the fort, which the chaloups and boats are very careful to avoid, they being so entangled together, that there is no breaking thro' them with oars: It is likewise found in the seas of *Japan*, and in great esteem among the inhabitants, who make pickles of these leaves, and use them as the *Europeans* do cucumbers, or the *Indians* their *Astjar*.

The *Hottentots*, a barbarous generation, were so ill-natur'd at that time, that they would not exchange an ox or any other sort of fresh provisions with us, nay they made the spring or places where we used to fetch our fresh water, muddy; we fell rough upon some of them, but they being much stronger than we, pelted us with stones and made us retire; I was at that time with a gun upon the *Table Mountain*, but could not come time enough to their assistance; but the next day several of us went well arm'd to give them another visit, and to fire at them in case they pretended to make any

opposition, but they no sooner discovered our arms, but fled with wife, children, and their cattle.

After we had stay'd there about three days ashore, we set sail the 13<sup>th</sup> of *March* from the cape, steering our course westward, in hopes to get sight of the ship the *Drake*; but not meeting with her, we chose the open sea, and advanced about 60 leagues from the *Table Bay*, under 34 deg. 20 min. southern latitude: We continued our voyage with pretty good success till the 18<sup>th</sup>, when about noon we found ourselves under 38 deg. 26 min. southern latitude, and 33 deg. 27 min. longitude. The compass shew'd due south and north. The two next following days proved very rainy and blustering, and the 27<sup>th</sup> it thundered and lightened very hard, with strong winds and much rain, which ending at last in a violent storm, oblig'd us to take in all our sails, under 39 deg. 20 min. southern latitude. The 1<sup>st</sup> of *April* we found ourselves far to the north, being forced by the stream, and the weather continued windy and rainy, as it had been ever since the 27<sup>th</sup> of *March*; we found ourselves then under 39 deg. 21 min. of latitude, and 95 deg. 30 min. of longitude, and had sail'd 36 leagues in the last 24 hours. The same night the winds began to rise to that degree, that we were fain to take in our main sail, which continued to the 3<sup>d</sup>, when the compass was changed to 15 deg. N. W. The 7<sup>th</sup> we sail'd 44 leagues with a moderate gale, under 38 deg. 13 min. The rains and strong winds continued till the 13<sup>th</sup> in the morning, when it began to clear up, and sail'd that day and night 46 leagues under 36 deg. 30 min. latitude, and 98 deg. 42 min. longitude. Then it began to be blustering weather again. The 15<sup>th</sup> we found the rising of the sun at 24 deg. N. W. this being the first time since the 4<sup>th</sup> of the last month, by reason of the strong weather. About noon we were under 35 deg. 14 min. of latitude, and 104 deg. 40 min. longitude; having sail'd 34 leagues in 24 hours. Towards evening it began to be calm, but continued not long, the winds and rains infesting us by turns, till the 1<sup>st</sup> of *May*, when we found ourselves under 12 deg. 18 min. latitude, and 124 deg. 46 min. longitude: We then proceeded in our voyage with a good brisk gale till the 3<sup>d</sup>, when in the night we were overtaken with a violent *Travado* with thunder and lightning, which continued till the next following day. The 6<sup>th</sup> of *May*, early in the morning, we descried the coast of the isle of *Sumatra*, about 4 or 5 leagues from us, and to the leeward a sail under 5 deg. 22 min. In the night the wind blowing from the land-side, we were forced to take

1653.

Their departure from the cape.

The Impe-rial Island.

The Princes Islands.

1653. take we also ally light about da wear und fail' a lea to th fath selve poin at ab next east the 2 where day. 17 de theic utmo 4 or 5 becaln vanc'e Java Islands betwix Travado der 60 distance fight o tent to becalm at 30 here ve we were isle of Java with al us from to us, a soon after, the we were next fol several came ab but by r could no forced to depth, w The 28<sup>th</sup> forced f the lulo Pulo mod di to the fet sail a not reach city of an ancho of Rotter VOL.



1653.

take our course to the south. By the 9<sup>th</sup> we had not advanc'd above 6 or 7 leagues along the coast of *Sumatra*, being continually pester'd with *Travadoes*, thunder and lightning; all our endeavours were to get above the flat point of the straits of *Sunda*. The 12<sup>th</sup> we had pretty fair wind and weather, and about noon found ourselves under 6 deg. 5 min. In the afternoon we sail'd forward with a moderate gale, within a league and half of the forementioned point to the N. N. E. of us, where we found 16 fathom water. The next day we found ourselves about three leagues from the said point. The 14<sup>th</sup> we saw the *Imperial Island*, at about three leagues distance, and the next following day discover'd to the south-east to east, about 5 or 6 leagues from us the *Princes Islands*, under 60 deg. 45 min. where we were becalm'd all the rest of the day. The 17<sup>th</sup> we found ourselves under 17 deg. 10 min. about two leagues from these islands, and toward the evening saw the utmost point of land of the isle of *Java*, at 4 or 5 leagues from us; the 18<sup>th</sup> we were becalm'd again, and the following day advanc'd within two leagues of the point of *Java*; and 2 or 3 leagues of the *Princes Islands*. We endeavour'd to have pass'd betwixt them, but were prevented by a *Travado* from the east. The 20<sup>th</sup> being under 60 deg. 41 min. we were at 6 leagues distance from the said islands, and kept in sight of them the 21<sup>st</sup> and 22<sup>d</sup>, with an intent to pass by them on the 23<sup>d</sup>, but being becalm'd came to an anchor the same night at 30 fathoms depth; the stream did run here very strong to the S. W. The 24<sup>th</sup> we were directly opposite N. N. E. to the isle of *Java*, and the same evening, a boat with all sorts of refreshments came aboard us from thence, which was very welcome to us, after so tedious a voyage: We came soon after to an anchor at 30 fathoms water, the stream running so strong here, that we were forc'd to remain here this and the next following day; during which time, several other boats with fresh provisions came aboard us. The 26<sup>th</sup> we set sail again, but by reason of the violence of the stream could not advance far, so that we were forced to cast anchor again, at 25 fathoms depth, where we continued all the next day. The 28<sup>th</sup> we set up our sails again, but were forced soon after to cast anchor, having the *Iulo* (the isle) *Baly* to the N. E. Great *Pulo modi* to the E. and the lesser *Pulo modi* to the S. of us. Towards evening we set sail again, but whatever we did could not reach the road of the so long wish'd-for city of *Batavia*, being forced to come to an anchor about half a league from the isle of *Rotterdam* at 11 fathoms water. The 30<sup>th</sup>

VOL. II.

we put up our sails once more, but with no better success, being oblig'd to cast anchor again, which put us in mind of what betel us lately on the *Cape of good Hope*, where we met with the same ill success before we could double the cape. However, the wind turning fair in the afternoon, we arriv'd the same afternoon about four a clock, (after a very tedious voyage, in which we had many sick) before the city of *Batavia*, where we cast anchor at four fathoms and a half depth. The next day I went ashore, and took up my lodgings in that famous city, at one Mr. Gerard *Uffens*, till further orders. In the mean time I was very curious in taking an exact view of this city and the circumjacent country: Whilst I tarried at *Batavia*, an embassy was sent from the general director *John Maczruicker* and the other directors of the *East-India* company, to the *Cham of Tartary*, who some few years before had conquered the most potent empire of *China*, to treat about a free commerce betwixt the two nations, which had several times before been attempt'd and fought for by the *Dutch*, but was as often refus'd by the *Chinese*. *Jacob de Keijser* and *Peter de Goyer* being appointed ambassadors, two yachts, viz. the *Kaukerk* and *Bloemendaal*, man'd with 90 men, and provided with several fine presents for the emperor were got ready for their transport, and I was order'd to go aboard the *Bloemendaal* in the quality of steward.

The ambassadors embark'd the 14<sup>th</sup> of July 1655, and set sail the same day from the road of *Batavia*. The 4<sup>th</sup> of September they arriv'd in the city of *Kanton*, and the 4<sup>th</sup> of May 1656, in the city of *Nanking*, and the 16<sup>th</sup> of July at *Peking*. After some stay there, they return'd the 21<sup>st</sup> of November to *Nanking*, to *Kanton* the 28<sup>th</sup> of February 1657; and came into the road of *Batavia* the 21<sup>st</sup> of March, where they gave an account of their negotiation to the *Dutch* council of the *Indies*: Of all which I have given you an ample account in my *Chinese* voyage, publish'd first in *Low Dutch*, and since translated into several other languages, and printed at *Amsterdam* for *Jacob Meurs*, with many cuts and draughts of places, living creatures, fruits and other remarkable things.

After my return from thence, eight ships were order'd to be equip'd and laden for *Holland*, viz. the *Pearl*, *Prince William*, the *Orange*, the *Crowned Lion*, *Achilles*, *Malacca*, the *Ulysses* and *Hector*. The command in chief of this fleet was conferr'd upon Mr. *Koenes*, then first director of the council of the *Indies*, who embark'd aboard the *Pearl* of 700 tons, man'd with 180 men, and provided with 26 guns. At his

S f

1653.

They arriv'd at Batavia.

Mr. Nieuhoff sent to China.

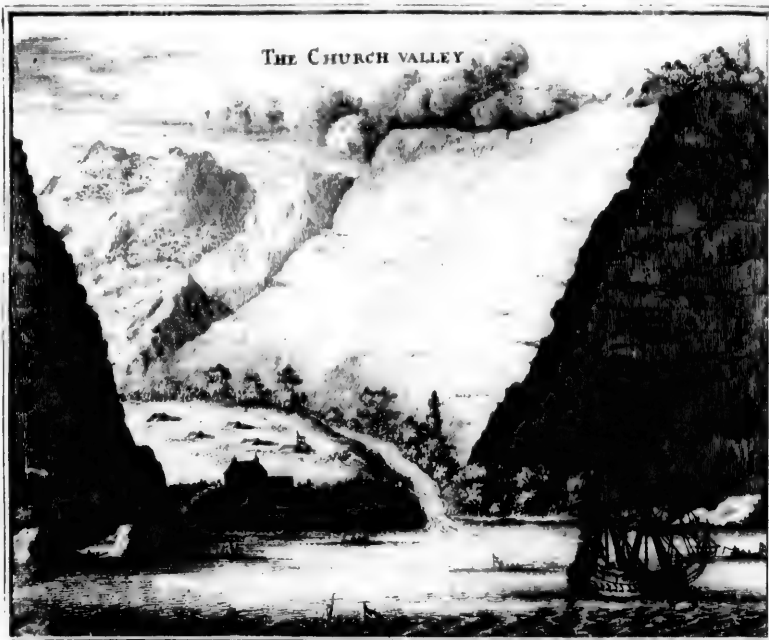
1658.

1658. request I went aboard along with him in the *Pearl*, which carried the flag, in order to my return into *Holland*, tho' my appointed time was not expired here. We set sail the 22<sup>d</sup> of *December*, and the last day of *March* 1658, arrived safely without any remarkable accident, (except that we met with some *Travados*, which foundly tost our ship) at the isle of *St. Helens*.

He returns  
from Bata-  
via towards  
Holland.  
Arrived at  
St. Helens.

The isle of *St. Helens*, is situate under 16 deg. 15 min. of southern latitude, at a great distance from the continent, lying at least 350 leagues from *Augusta*, the next place of all. It is very surprising to conceive so small an island at so vast a distance at sea, round about which there is scarce any anchorage, by reason of the vast depth of the seas. It is about seven leagues in circum-

1658.  
The  
St. Helens.



ference, covered all over with rocky hills, which in a clear day may be seen 14 leagues at sea; the valleys being stor'd with all sorts of trees: So that tho' this island is not very large in its compass, yet it comprehends a large tract of ground by reason of those hills. It has many fine valleys, among which the *Church-Valley* and the *Apple-Valley* are the most remarkable. In the *Church-Valley*, you see to this day the ruins of a chapel, formerly belonging to the *Portuguese*; the whole valleys are planted with lemons, oranges, and pomegranate-trees. At that time the island was destitute of inhabitants, but since the *English* have made a settlement there. After the *Portuguese* left it, a certain hermit, under pretence of devotion, used to kill great numbers of wild goats here, and sell their skins, which the *Portuguese* having got notice of, they

removed him from thence. At another time certain negroes with two female slaves were got into the mountains, where they encreased to the number 20, till they at last were likewise forc'd from thence. The valleys are excessive hot, but on the hills it is cool enough: tho' the heat is much tempered by the winds and frequent rain showers, which fall sometimes several times in a day; which, with the heat of the sun-beams, renders the soil very fruitful. It abounds in fine and cool springs, which fall down from the tops of the hills, the water being as clear as crystal, and exonerating itself at last into the sea, it is very pleasant to behold the seamen at their arrival here, to drink, wash and bath themselves in these spring waters. Most of the fruits and beasts which are produced here in great plenty, have been first brought hither by the *Portuguese*.

They de-  
part from  
St. He-  
lens.

Arrive in  
Holland.

1658. legs  
which  
granu-  
throug-  
wife, t-  
winter  
which  
neither  
such a  
fuel.  
goats a  
ficult t  
rocks.  
the *Pa*  
admira  
ones, a  
aforem  
partrid  
are her  
so soon  
fly from  
so that  
come a  
done, y  
bour,  
whence  
them, i  
pany.  
ous crea  
All abou  
of sea-g  
the sea a  
several  
a most e  
fine whi  
by the h  
its great  
seas here  
as mack  
be catch  
depth, l  
nail ben  
please;  
fels are  
tities nea  
ficiently  
vided wi  
could go  
*May*; W  
without  
fight of  
arrived h  
my lodgi  
whom as  
I had th  
health.  
sons of  
to take  
and othe  
with me.  
After  
*Holland*,  
here and

1658. *luguse*; as for instance, orange-trees, (of which you may see whole woods) pomegranate-trees and others, which bear fruit throughout the whole year. Here are likewise, mustard-leaves, parley, purslin, wintercress and other such-like herbs, which are very good against the scurvy; neither is this island destitute of trees, but such as are not fit for timber, but only for fuel. It abounds likewise in beasts; wild goats are here in vast numbers, but very difficult to be taken, by reason of the many rocks. Tame hogs were brought hither by the *Portuguese*, which have multiply'd to admiration, but are degenerated into wild ones, and are not easy to be kill'd for the aforementioned reason. Thus it is with the partridges, wild pigeons and peacocks, which are here in vast plenty, but are so shy, that so soon as they see any one approach, they fly from one hill to another cross the valleys, so that you must be an hour before you can come at them again, which when you have done, you are in danger of losing your labour, for they return commonly from whence they came. The only way to catch them, is to go abroad with a good company. It produces no ravenous or poisonous creatures, except large spiders and flies. All about the island you see vast multitudes of sea-gulls, which feed on the fishes in which the sea abounds. Here you meet likewise with several colours fit for dyers, especially with a most excellent red colour, and with very fine white salt, made out of the sea-water by the heat of the sun-beams. By reason of its great distance from the continent, the seas hereabouts are covered with fishes, such as mackarel, carps, &c. They are not to be catch'd with nets by reason of the vast depth, but with a hook, or only an iron nail bent, you may catch as many as you please; craw-fish, crabs, oysters and mussels are likewise to be found in vast quantities near the sea-shore. After we had sufficiently refresh'd our selves here, and provided what necessaries we thought fit, or could get, we left this island the last day of May; We continued our former course, and without any remarkable accident, came in sight of Holland, and the 6<sup>th</sup> of July 1658 arrived happily at Amsterdam. I took up my lodgings at my brother Henry Nieuhoff's, whom as well as most of my other friends, I had the good fortune to find in good health. Many of the most curious persons of that place came daily to see me, to take a view of the *Chinese* characters, and other draughts I had brought along with me.

After I had tarried for three months in Holland, and dispatch'd my business both here and in Zeland, I delivered the journal of

my late voyage into *China* to my brother, in order to have it review'd and printed, at the request of several persons of quality; with an intention to take a second voyage to the *East-Indies*, with the first fair opportunity, which was soon after offered me by the directors of the *East-India* company. 5 ships lay then ready for the *East-Indies* under the command of Mr. *Adrian Aelmonde*, viz. the *Arnhem*, burthen 500 tuns, with 40 guns and 430 men, *John Ymenz* master; the second the *Pearl* and three yachts; I was ordered aboard the first. We set sail all together from the *Ulle* the 22<sup>d</sup> of Dec. 1658. The ship the *Arnhem* at her entrance into the sea, struck upon the sands and was in some danger of being stav'd, and another ship run foul upon her, by which she lost part of her gallery; but by God's singular mercy, we got clear again the next high tide, and continued our voyage with the rest.

The 16<sup>th</sup> of March 1659, we arrived safely at the Cape of Good Hope, where we cast our anchor. The 22<sup>d</sup>, the *Pearl* with the other three yachts came likewise to anchor in the same bay. The first thing we did was to take care of our sick, of which we had not very many, but 12 died in the voyage; we went every day ashore to fetch fresh water, fuel, and what provisions we were able to get; sometimes we catch'd good store of fishes. One day several of us went ashore to shoot some wild fowl; but advancing pretty high up the Table Mountain, we unawares espy'd a sleeping lion, at no great distance from us, which made me soon retreat, telling my companions it was dangerous to awake a sleeping lion, who were glad as well as I, to make the best of their way backwards.

After a stay of 14 days at the cape, we set sail again, and with a much more prosperous gale, than I had in my last voyage, arrived safely on the coast of *St. Java*, where just as we got sight of that island, Mr. *Adrian Aelmonde* died, to our great grief; his corps was carried to *Batavia*, where it was honourably inter'd.

The 18<sup>th</sup> of July 1659, we came to an anchor before the city of *Batavia*, after a voyage of about 7 months; during which, there happen'd scarce any thing worth taking notice of. After I had delivered up the merchandises under my charge, and my accounts: I took a turn to the western coast of *Sumatra*, viz. to *Jambe* and *Padang*, which produce abundance of pepper, some gold and salt-peter, and returned the 10<sup>th</sup> of December to *Batavia*.

Not long after I was ordered on board the ship *Henrietta Lovijia* bound for *Amboyna*, Gerard Gerardson a native of *Flushing* master,

1658.

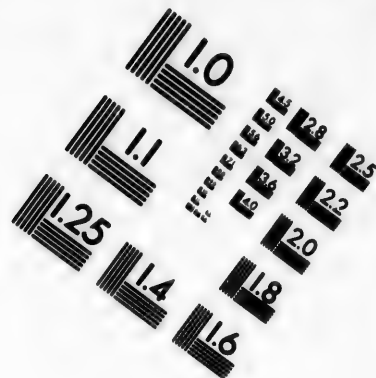
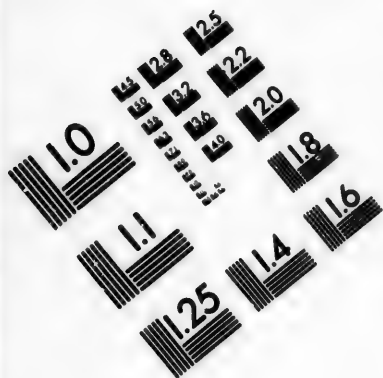
Nieuhoff's second voyage to the East-Indies.

1659. Arrives at the Cape of Good-Hope.

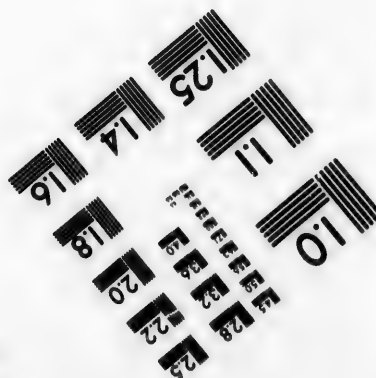
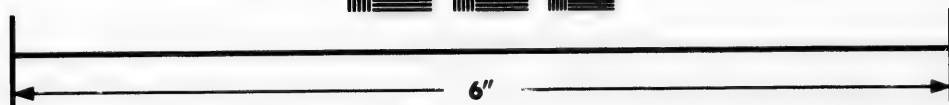
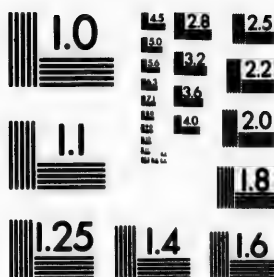
His leaves the Cape.

His arrival at Batavia.





# **IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25  
28 30 32 35

10 01



1659. master, laden with rice and provisions. We set sail from *Batavia* the 23<sup>d</sup> of Dec. 1659, and in a month after got among the rocks near the point of *Bimaer*, being forced thither by a whirlpool, which turn'd our ship within the compass of three times the length of the ship, as swift as the nimblest horse could run; we were within a few yards of having been struck against a rock, but had the good fortune to escape without much damage, and after some *Travadoes* at last got into the road of *Amboyne*, not without great difficulty, by reason of the swiftness of the stream there, and cast anchor at 36 fathoms depth. We were very kindly received by Mr. *Jacob Hustard* the governor of *Amboyne*, a man of singular probity and conduct. After the ship was unladen, and I had delivered my cargo, the governor and I resolved to take a tour in the small circumjacent islands. Among the rest we visited the island of *Buero*, where the inhabitants made us heartily welcome after their way, and drank to us merrily in cups made of the leaves of trees.

The isle of *Bouro* or *Buero*, is situate about 24 leagues off *Amboyne*, being near 30 leagues in compass. The sea, especially on the south side, of a vast depth, from

whence the shore rises by degrees, and surrounds the whole island like a steep wall. The south wind produces both high and low water here. In the island of *Buero* are mountains which reach to the very skies: Near the bay of *Tamaboo* are high mountains of the same name, the blue tops of which penetrate thro' the clouds, and may be seen at 28 leagues distance at sea; tho' it be very difficult to distinguish them from the clouds. The bay of *Tamaboo* is surrounded with these mountains. Hereabouts you see neither houses, huts, nor inhabitants, but only woods and wildernesses. A certain river exonerates itself into this bay, the banks of which are on both sides full of green trees. On the north-east side of the isle *Buero*, in another bay, called the bay of *Kayelle*, which in some places is two leagues broad. The sea-shore of this bay is very pleasant, by reason of the many woods and wildernesses. Here you see great store of green ebony wood-trees, but the wood is somewhat knotty. Within the marshy grounds, adjacent to the middle of the bay, is a whole wood of trees as hard as iron, and of a reddish colour; the *Dutch* call them *Lary* trees.



The constitution of this island. The island *Buero* is very fertile and abounding in trees near the sea-shore. It produces *Coco* and *Bananas* trees, *Pynany*,

green ebony wood-trees, potatoes, beans, *Kajang* (a certain kind of pease) millet or indian-wheat, tobacco, lime-trees, and di-

vers

1659. vers  
cive  
liar  
whic  
whol  
and  
man  
is, th  
In  
beast  
the 7  
monf  
dog,  
and g  
hound  
with  
twice  
those  
the in  
as a d  
circum  
big as  
jaw-bo  
throat,  
part of  
and 2 l  
are cov  
dle par  
forth tw  
They a  
thick, a  
the wild  
spring f  
of an in  
smooth  
the end,  
as if it w  
On the  
the follo  
*Wainir*,  
*ra*, *Licie*  
The eigh  
1653, bu  
with all  
revolte  
the jurisi  
the year  
four smal  
nient hab  
in this illa  
It was na  
king of T  
purvant  
*Dutch*, ob  
bay of *Kay*  
bout 14 v  
on: Their  
and some  
and for th  
grounds, a  
the trees a  
fields, gar  
time. They  
Vol. II

1659. vers sorts of herbs. In the mountains are civet-cats, and the inhabitants have a peculiar easy way of taking the civet from them, which they sell very cheap. In short, the whole country is full of fertile grounds and pleasant woods, and is watered with many fresh water rivers; the worst of all is, that it is much subject to earthquakes.

In the isle of *Buero* lives, among other beasts, a certain strange creature, which by the *Indians* is counted among the number of monsters. It is of the bigness of a large dog, or of a roe-buck, of a dark brown and gray colour, the hair like our gray-hounds; the head and mouth like a hog, with small eyes and ears, the tail curls twice or thrice, and the legs and claws like those of a roe-buck. The flesh is both by the inhabitants and strangers look'd upon as a dainty, and as good as venison. The circumference of its mouth and jaws is as big as a large calf's head, with very strong jaw-bones; on both sides backwards to the throat, are about 12 teeth, but in the fore-part of the undermost jaw-bone, 6 teeth and 2 large ones in the upper part, which are covered by the mouth. From the middle part of the undermost jaw-bone issue forth two large teeth which pierce the mouth. They are a foot long each, about an inch thick, and somewhat crooked like those of the wild boar. Out of the upper jaw-bones spring forth two horns, on each side one, of an inch thick, a quarter of a yard long, smooth like teeth, and turn'd like a hook at the end, which makes it appear at first sight as if it were armed with 4 horns.

On the north-east of the isle of *Buero* are the following villages, *Waiselonga*, *Fogi*, *Wainite*, *Tamabou*, *Palmatte*, *Hokonima*, *Bara*, *Liciela*, *Waisamma*, *Ilai*, and *Romaitte*. The eight first of these villages were in 1653, burn'd to the ground by the *Dutch*, with all their boats, the inhabitants having revolted against them. This island is under the jurisdiction of the king of *Tarnate*. In the year 1660, the *Dutch* built a fort with four small bastions, provided with convenient habitations for the use of the garrison in this island, to keep out those of *Makassar*. It was nam'd *Mandarbaa*, after the then king of *Tarnate*. The natives of *Buero* are pursuant to their capitulation made with the *Dutch*, obliged to inhabit round about the bay of *Kayelle*, where they are possess'd of about 14 villages under the *Dutch* protection: Their houses are neatly built of cane, and some have convenient apartments; and for the improvement of the adjacent grounds, are obliged to cut down and burn the trees and woods, and to turn them into fields, gardens and orchards. Before that time, they lived only in wretched huts built

VOL. II.

along the sea-shore among the woods. They are very black, and like most of the inhabitants of the other neighbouring islands, almost naked both men and women, having only a piece of stuff to cover their nakedness from the waste down to the knees; but girls and boys till they are twelve years old, go quite naked. A young fellow that has a mind to marry a certain maid, may soon obtain her, by making a small present of eatables, or any other thing of no value to her parents. As soon as a woman is brought to bed, she goes straight to the next river, where she washes both her self and the child, and so returns to her usual employments, in the mean while the husband is attended and made much of in the wife's stead. They bemoan their dead neighbours and friends with lamentable out-crys, but after the corps is buried, they dance, sing, feast and make merry. Their graves are made of brick-work, with stones and clay, to preserve them against the wild-beasts. The common food of the natives is *Zagow*, millet, rice and dry'd fish. They are for the most part mahometans, tho' some retain much of paganism, and adore the crocodiles. In the year 1650, one *Madira* governor for the king of *Ternate* in the isle of *Amboyna*, having taken up arms against the *Dutch* in *Amboyna*, the inhabitants of *Buero*, as well those under the king's as *Dutch* subjection, join'd with *Madira* with so much obstinacy, that they chose rather to die than to leave *Madira*; and in 1652 kill'd four sea men belonging to a vessel call'd the *Goose*, who ventured too far into the woods. Mr. *Arnold Flaming van Outshorn* being, 1652, sent with a strong squadron of ships to *Batavia*, and from thence to *Amboyna* and *Buero*, to bring the inhabitants to reason; having understood their barbarous proceedings, burn'd all their boats, and the before-mention'd villages. The king *Mandarbaa* came along with him in person, having before concluded a peace with the *East-India* company at *Batavia*.

After we had taken a full view of this island, we returned to *Amboyna*, where the governor gave a splendid entertainment to the chiefest officers of the company, and some of the courtiers belonging to the kings of *Amboyna*. After dinner we play'd together, and they seem'd so well satisfied, that it might easily be seen there was a good correspondence betwixt them and the company at that time. In the mean while my ship having been loaden with 160 tons of cloves and some other commodities, I took my leave from Mr. *Hustard* the governor, and the 3<sup>d</sup> of May directed my course back towards *Batavia*. Under the government of this Mr. *Hustard* were at that time all the

T t

Molucc

1659.

The author's departure from Amboyna

sur-wall. 1657. a and ro are ies: moun-ops of l may; tho' is sur-abouts inhabi-ces. A is bay, full of the of the bay of leagues The Bay of is very ods and store of wood is marshy the bay, as iron, call them



beans, millet or and divers

1659. *Molucco* islands, whose business it is to keep a strict eye over them, for fear they should export cloves. But before I quite leave the isle of *Amboyna*, I will give you a description of its situation, and what else is worth our observation there.

The isle of *Amboyna*. The isle of *Amboyna* or *Amboyne* is by some numbered among the *Molucco* islands, because it produces great store of cloves like the *Molucco* islands. It is situate under 3 deg. southern latitude, about 24 leagues from the isle of *Banda*, and consequently nearer the coast of *Malacca*, than any of the *Molucco* islands. It is 24 leagues in circumference, being divided almost in two parts, by a vast bay or rather gulph. It has a very fine bay where ships may ride safely at anchor near the shore; about two leagues within this bay, is the *Dutch* fort called *Victoria*. It appears like two islands joined together by a neck of land. About 60 or 70 years ago, there were 57 goodly villages or great plantations, inhabited by *Indians* and christians, (some of which were of good strength,) but many of them have been laid desolate, or at least are much decay'd by the intestine wars.

The village *Way*. Among the rest *Way* was a very fine plantation on the north-side of the island, half a league from the sea-shore, built upon a rock, and defended by a good breast-work; notwithstanding which, it was 1630 surpris'd by one *Kimelaba*, the inhabitants were christians. Near this village are abundance of clove and *Zagoe* trees, and all along the sea-shore are several other plantations of less note, all well provided with clove and *Zagoe* trees. The village of *Way* has this convenience, that it is well provided with fresh springs, a thing of the utmost consequence in those hot countries.

The village *Noussanive* was situate upon a river on the west-side under the cannon of the fort *Victoria*, being divided into three plantations. The country thereabouts abounds in clove-trees; the plantations of which extend as far as to the utmost point of the western cape, and on the other side, as far as *Ayer Kabouba*: The king or captain of this district used to be formerly president of the council of *Amboyna*.

The village of *Hutoe* is very ancient, and built near the sea-side, under the redoubt belonging to the *Dutch* company, being the capital of the whole district of *Hutoe*.

*Wawami*. *Wawami*, the head village of all, lies above a league from the sea-shore, upon a hill near an *English* mile high, unto which leads but one passage, which in the midst is defended by strong pallisadoes, and the top of the hill (which is of an oval figure) by a stone wall. Betwixt the hill and the fort

slides along a pretty river. Formerly this was a noted place of retreat for the inhabitants, who used to shelter themselves here.

The village *Moufala* is built upon a mountain about a league and a half high, being so strong by nature, as to be counted impregnable; notwithstanding which, it has been reduced by the victorious arms of the *Dutch East-India* company, under whose jurisdiction they now live.

The following plantations or villages were in 1630, under the jurisdiction of the *Dutch East-India* company.

The district of *Rosfenive* which comprehends *Rosfenive*, *Amaboefoe* and *Hattoe*. *Rosfenive* had in 1630, one *Andrew Rosfenive* for their king or captain; *Amaboefoe* one *Dominges Costa Makkake*, *Poeta* and *Hattoe*, one *Lessemesse*. These villages were better inhabited than most of the rest, the inhabitants making profession of the christian religion, yet not without some mixture of *Mabometanism*, except those of *Amaboefoe*, whose captain was a good christian, and lived much better than the rest; which shews that the chief defect lay in their kings; for *Andrew Rosfenive* was none of the best livers, tho' he could very artificially play the hypocrite; he had no wife but many concubines; and tho' he was often admonish'd to marry, he continued obstinate in the same course, which gave great scandal as well to the inhabitants as to the other kings and captains. The common people of this town were always more ready for the service of the company than those of the other villages. For the villages *Rosfenive*, *Amaboefoe* and *Hattoe* are obliged to supply and manage one half of the governours *Korrakoren*, (or small vessels of war) as the villages of *Kielang*, *Nakko* and *Hattela* are bound to supply the other half.

*Kielang* was one of the most considerable villages on the south-side of the mountain of *Layimor*, not far distant from the sea shore, but of no great strength. Near it are very good springs and great store of clove-trees. Under the district of *Kielang* are the villages of *Kielang*, *Nakko* and *Hattela*. In the year 1630, *Manuel de Silva* was king or captain of *Kielang*, but surrendered the government to his eldest son; he was a very good natur'd honest man, and had the second place in the *Dutch* council. *Anthony Pays* was captain of *Nakko*, and *Anthony Lopes* of *Hattela*, they were all three very good christians.

Under the district of *Ema* are the villages *Oekorilla*, *Lewary* and *Routon Lafary*; *Manuel* was captain of *Oekorilla*, *Simau* of *Ema*, and one *Anthony Routon* of *Lafary*. These are obliged to furnish a *Karrakore* of four *Nadjes* for the service of the company.

They

merly this 1659.  
the inhabi-  
ves here.

in a moun- Mouila

gh, being  
unted im-  
ch, it has  
rms of the  
der whose

or villages  
tion of the

h compre- Roscaire

utice. Ros-  
o Roscaire  
aboelee one  
and Hat-  
ages were  
e rest, the  
the christi-  
ne mixture  
Amaboelee,  
stian, and  
which shews  
kings; for  
best livers,  
y the hypo-  
oncubines;  
d to marry,  
ume courle,  
l to the in-  
and captains.  
wn were al-  
of the com-  
lages. For  
and Hatloe  
age one half  
r small ves-  
elang, Nak-  
pply the o-

considerable Kielang

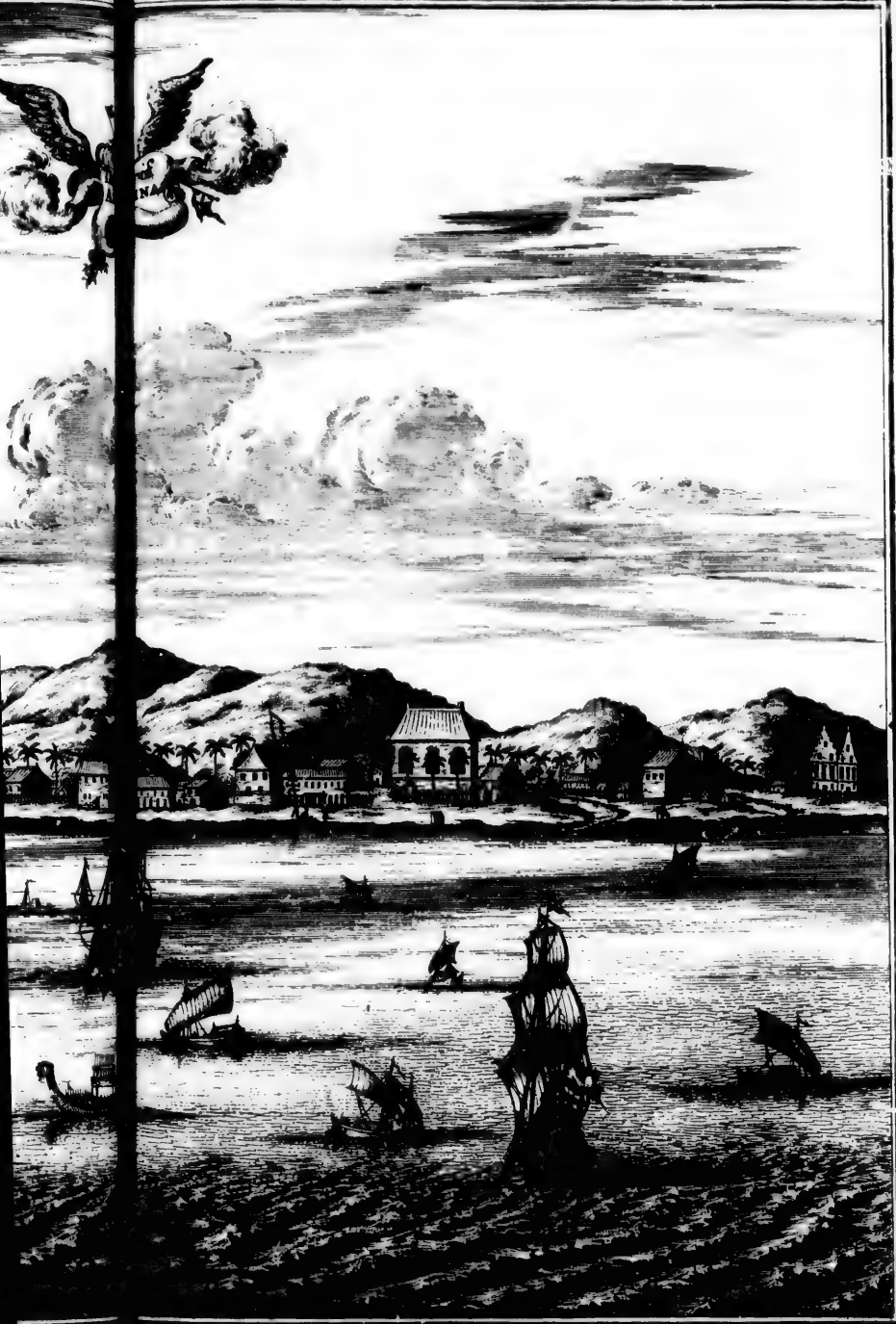
the mountain  
om the sea  
n. Near it  
at store of  
of Kielang  
to and Hat-  
el de Silva  
but surren-  
est son; he  
man, and  
ch council.  
Nakko, and  
y were all

the villa- Ema

on Lafary;  
n, Simau of  
of Lafary.  
arrakere of  
company.  
They









Soya.

Haive.

Halou.

Poutz.

Oettoma-  
ry.

T  
fe  
ce  
tr  
lag  
T  
N  
pr  
wi  
tri  
kin  
and  
An

ery  
Ka  
fol  
fre  
hea  
ire  
Me  
dyk  
the  
othe  
fiste  
who  
Am  
and  
Kor  
selve  
chief

T  
Kif  
chris  
jos;  
Adas  
P  
ing  
tains  
nuel  
Cber

T  
three  
bedie  
kum,  
Don  
was a  
time  
pany  
and g  
christi  
dren  
do.  
jos, a  
lages  
Affel  
of the  
stout  
and a  
yet u  
They  
the tv

1659. They are very honest and faithful, and profess themselves of the tribe of *Olitymas*, except *Routon Lafary*, which belongs to the tribe of the *Olifivas*.

*Soya.* To the district of *Soya* belong the villages of *Abosen*, *Oeriettoe* and *Amantelloe*. These are obliged to find a *Korrakore* of 4 *Nadjos*, are pretty ready in the service, and profess all christianity, and so does the king with all his *Orangkys*: They are of the tribe of the *Olifivas*. *Laurenzo de Sylva* is king of *Soya*, *Anthony Abosen* of *Abosen*, and *Jeronymo Tcholopoe* of *Oeriettoe*, and *Amantelloe*.

*Hative.* Under *Hative* belong the villages *Taviery*, *Hokkonaloe* and *Mardykka*; they furnish *Korrakore* with 4 *Nadjos*. They are good soldiers and christians, and their heads come frequently to the communion. Their chief heads are *Laurenzo Marcus* captain of *Hative*, *Pedro Antonio* of *Taviery*, *Laurence Mendos*, chieftain of *Hokkonaloe* and *Mardykka*. The inhabitants of *Mardykka* are the remnants of the *Portuguese*, and some other slaves set at liberty: 1630 they consisted of 100, or 120 men fit to bear arms, who did considerable service to the state of *Amboyna*; they were very good christians and faithful, and furnish'd an extraordinary *Korrakore* of 4 *Nadjos*; they accounted themselves to be of the tribe of the *Olifivas*, their chieftain was then *Anthony de Costo*.

*Halou.* To *Halou* belongs the village *Hative-Kichileet*, they are pretty well peopled, and christians, and furnish a *Korrakore* of 4 *Nadjos*; *Diego Paty* was captain of *Halou*, and *Adam Marano* of *Hative-Kichileet*.

*Pouta.* *Pouta* has only two small villages belonging to it, viz. *Kapa* and *Cbery*; their captains were *Stephen Terjera* of *Pouta*; *Manuel Lopes* of *Kapa*, and *Andrew Pardis* of *Cbery*.

*Oettomary.* The inhabitants of *Oettomary* did revolt three times, but were in 1626 reduced to obedience by the then governor Mr. *Gorkum*, they were then under the tuition of *Don Pedro de Oettomary* their captain, who was a very honest person, and ever since that time they have adhered faithfully to the company. They are generally stout soldiers and good christians, for they frequent the christian congregations, and add more children to our schools than the other villages do. They furnish a *Korrakore* with 4 *Nadjos*, and are of the *Olifivas*. The four villages of *Ouriem*, *Larik*, *Wakkasive*, and *Affelon* stand likewise under the jurisdiction of the company; they are all blacks and stout fellows, they belong to the *Olifivas*, and acknowledge *Hitteo* for their captain, yet under the protection of the company. They furnish a *Korrakore* of 4 *Nadjos*. Thus the two villages of *Alang* and *Lillebay* be-

long to the company: The inhabitants are christians, except 3 or 4 families at *Alang*. Of the last, one *Salvador* was captain, and of *Lillebay*, *Bastiaen Kasbango*. The inhabitants are likewise of the tribe of the *Olifivas*.

These six villages are obliged to furnish the *Dutch East-India* company with a great quantity of cloves; to wit 300 *Babar per annum*; vast numbers of clove trees having been planted hereabouts, about 1630, which are come to full perfection since, and produce vast store of fruit. Thus 1636, the planting of clove trees was so far encouraged on the south-side of this island, that each family was obliged to plant, at least, ten trees every year, the ground being very fit hereabouts for this purpose; they were also not negligent in planting coco and other fruit trees. *Kamariay*, *Seriwawan* and *Kayrato*, are three villages near the sea-shore; the inhabitants are absolutely devoted to the service of the company, and appear sometimes with an *Orangay* at the head of them at the fort. They adhere to those of *Mardykka*, and belong to the *Olifivas*.

Near the point of the bay are four villages, *Quelipapoety*, *Amassee*, *Marykque*, and *Savoukque*. The first furnishes a *Korrakore* with 3 *Nadjos*, the three last a *Korrakore* of 4 *Nadjos*. In the village of *Amassee* lived at that time two young lads, sons of the *Orangkay*, who formerly had been hostages with the *Dutch* governors for seven years, but now were got into the government of these villages, and seem'd well inclin'd to the company's interest.

The ile of *Amboyna* has many high and steep mountains, call'd *Gounen* by the natives, which have several fair villages built on the top, and are irrigated with very clear and fresh-water springs. The vallies serve for walking-places, by reason of the many fine trees that are planted there, as the mountains serve the inhabitants for a shelter against their enemies in time of war, being for the most part inaccessible. There is a certain rock here, call'd the *Elephants Rock*, from its shape and bigness, from whence issues forth a rivulet as clear as crystal, which slides gently thro' the adjacent verdant plain, whence is a very pleasant walk up to the rock.

However the air of *Amboyna* is none of the wholesomest. There rages in this and the rest of the *Molucco* islands, a certain distemper, both among the natives and strangers, which by its symptoms resembles altogether the *French* pox (for which reason the *Dutch* call it the *Pox of Amboyna*) except that this is communicated without any carnal conjunction. In the face, arms and legs, nay all over the body, appear certain crusty boils, which

1659. which either turn scirrhous, or if they come to a suppuration, a slimy, tough but sharp matter issues from thence, resembling in all its circumstance the *French pox*, except that they are not so painful, neither corrode the bones. This disease is attributed to a peculiar constitution of the climate and the air, and the excessive use of sea-fishes, and coco nuts called *Zago*, and of the liquor called *Saguaveer*. At first this distemper is easy enough to be cured, but if it takes root, not without great difficulty. They commonly apply the same remedies as we do in the *French pox*, in the spleen and dropsy: to wit, the decoctions of chicca, farsiparilla, and guajacum, and purge them soundly betwixt whites.

Its constitution.

The isle of *Amboyna* is pretty fertile; it produces millet, tobacco, coco-nuts, potatoes, pinang, oranges, lemons, citrons, sugar, bamboo canes, and several other fruits. Some places here afford likewise nutmegs, but in no great quantity, neither have they so good as those in the isle of *Banda*, neither do they grow wild here, but the trees are planted in orchards. Neither are they destitute of divers sorts of beasts, especially roe-bucks and hogs, and have great store of fishes, but the chief products of *Amboyna* are cloves, which grow wild here; they are called *Nagalen* (nails) by the *Dutch*, from their shape, being flat on the top and sharp at the end: They call them also *Geroffel nagelen*, perhaps from the *Greek Karyophyllon*. In the *Molucco* islands they call the cloves *Caampe* or *Chanpe*, in the isle of *Java* *Sianke*, and in *Malacca*, *Synken* or *Thinka*; the *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Turks*, and most of the *Indians*, call them *Kalafur*.

The clove-tree.

The clove-tree grows up in form of a pyramid, its branches sprouting forth close together. This tree is of the bigness of our cherry-trees, but in the whole resembling most to a large laurel-tree, the leaves being very near of the same shape; the bark on the stem is of a greyish colour like that of the olive-tree. In the midst of each leaf is a large vein which sends forth many lesser branches; these leaves grow on long stalks, sometimes single, but for the most part in clusters; those that grow near the extremities of the branches are of a purple colour, but the rest dark green, if they are rubbed betwixt your hands they scent as strong as the cloves themselves, and so do the branches. On the extremities of these branches grow certain sprouts which produce certain buds, and those again flowers, sometimes 10 or 20 in a knor, which at last produce the fruit, which are tough whilst they are growing, but hard when come to maturity. At first they are green, then appear of a pale red colour, as if the trees were covered

with scarlet, affording a very agreeable sight to the beholders, because there is often more fruit than leaves on the trees. The blossom is white at first, not unlike our cherry blossom, each leaf of the flower having three small streaks, then they turn green, afterwards red, and last of all dark yellow inclining to black. They resemble in shape a nail, with a small hollowness in the head, in which remains a thin skin which falls off as soon as it is touched. The cloves are very hard of substance; when they see more blossoms than leaves, they foretel great plenty of fruit; the blossoms smell much finer and stronger in dry than in rainy weather, and the first is looked upon as the most fruitful, it being common in a dry season to see more blossoms than leaves, though even in such a season the clove-trees don't hit always alike, for every third or fourth year it is observed that they don't bear so plentifully as otherwise, just as if the tree at that time did remit its vigour spent the preceding years. The cloves are gathered once a year, viz. from the middle of *September* or beginning of *October* till *February*, this being the best summer season here. Some are gathered, the rest beat down with canes like flails; but this last way is not so safe as the other, for unless they be very careful, they bruise the tender sprigs of the tree, which renders it the less fruitful the next following year, tho' the season be never so good. Before they begin to gather, the ground under the tree is cleared of weeds, that they may not lose part of the fruit. What cloves are left upon the trees grow very large as they ripen, much bigger than the rest, but are not so fit for use. The next following year they drop from the tree, and though they are not so aromack as the others, they are used for seed, and produce new trees, for which reason they are called the mother-cloves; for after they are dropt upon the ground they will take root, and in 8 or 9 years time it will come to the perfection of a good tree, and prove as fruitful as the rest; but if these sprouts be transplanted once in two or three years, they will bear more and better fruit. They say the clove-tree will hold good 100 years; the fruit immediately after gathering is dark yellow inclining to black, but if dry'd turns quite black, and if they dip them first in sea-water it preserves them from being worm eaten. Thus prepared they are laid up in store-houses and are transported to other places, where they are picked and the stalks taken from them, which are sold separately. The *Dutch* call these stalks *Nagelruis* (the rubbish of cloves) and the *Portuguese* *Baston*. Cloves are hot and dry, of a bitterish biting taste, but especially when they



ble sight 1689.  
 en more  
 he blof-  
 ur cher-  
 r having  
 n green,  
 x yellow  
 in shape  
 he head,  
 ills off as  
 very hard  
 blossoms  
 plenty of  
 finer and  
 her, and  
 oft fruit-  
 on to lee  
 n even in  
 it always  
 r it is ob-  
 tifully as  
 time did  
 ng years.  
 viz. from  
 ng of Oc-  
 best sum-  
 mered, the  
 dails; but  
 other, for  
 bruise the  
 renders it  
 year, tho'  
 fore they  
 r the tree  
 y not lose  
 e left up-  
 ey ripen,  
 are not so  
 year they  
 they are  
 ey are u-  
 trees, for  
 mother-  
 upon the  
 n 8 or 9  
 perfection  
 ruitful as  
 nsplant-  
 they will  
 y say the  
 ars; the  
 is dark  
 y'd turns  
 n first in  
 ng worm  
 id up in  
 o other  
 he stalks  
 eparate-  
 e gelgruis  
 ortuguese  
 of a bir-  
 en they  
 are

mo  
dry  
star  
cert  
war  
ter,  
the  
felle  
weig  
was  
put  
are  
trac  
drav  
roun  
wee  
a vu  
of g  
the  
who  
affor  
and  
are g

the  
leave  
fues  
arom  
dicin  
disti  
water  
and  
gaini  
*riber*  
prese  
draw  
boile  
voca  
chew  
maki  
are n  
appe  
clove  
ener  
vine

*Royal*  
*disc.*  
T  
com  
dear  
ba,  
ther  
spro  
call  
such  
*Moll*  
celle  
pals  
for  
two  
and  
of t  
nefs,  
trees  
V

1659. are dry'd. They seem to consist of a gummy sulphurous substance, with a strong drying and attractive quality; as for instance, when the *Indians* are to deliver a certain quantity of cloves, they put in the warehouse, where they are, a tub full of water, which is in a short time attracted by the cloves, to the no small benefit of the seller, it being observable that the cloves weigh as much the heavier as the water that was put there weighed before. The *Dutch* put this likewise often in practice. Some are of opinion that the cloves by their extraordinary drying and attractive quality, draw all the moisture of the ground round about the tree to that degree that no weeds or grass can grow there; but this is a vulgar error, the bareness of these spots of ground being not to be attributed to the cloves, but to the owners themselves who weed and keep them clear, thereby to afford the more nourishment to the trees, and not to lose part of the fruit when they are gathering or beating them from the trees.

'Tis true, the clove-trees are planted for the fruit sake, nevertheless the blossoms, leaves, sprigs, nay the gum itself that issues from the tree, are not destitute of an aromatical virtue, and afford very good medicines; the *Indian* and *Portuguese* women distil out of the green cloves and leaves, a water and a spirit which is very odoriferous and cephalick; and an excellent remedy against the palsy, called by the natives *Beribery*. Against the same distemper they preserve also the cloves with sugar, and draw an oil both of cloves and leaves. Cloves boiled in milk are accounted a great provocative, they are very cordial, and if chewed take away a stinking breath. They make a pickle of the green cloves, which are not so hot as the rest, and provoke the appetite. Persons of quality put green cloves in vinegar, which is a great strengthener of the stomach. The *Indians* call the vinegar *Atzjar*.

Royal  
cloves.

There is another kind of cloves but not commonly known, being very scarce and dear. The *Indians* call them *Tvinka Papaba*, or curled cloves, tho' they might rather be called ear-cloves, because they sprout forth like the corn ears. The *Dutch* call them *Royal Cloves*, because they are in such high esteem among the kings of the *Molucco* islands, not so much for their excellent taste and scent (in which they surpass all others) but for their scarcity's sake; for if we may believe them, no more than two such clove-trees are as yet found out, and that in the isle of *Makjan* only: One of these two trees exceeds the other in bigness, but both are like the common clove-trees, except that they are much taller, and

Vol. II.

the cloves bigger and of a different shape from the common clove, as may be seen by the draught.

In the island of *Ceylon* are likewise abundance of wild clove trees, but bear no fruit. It is credibly affirmed that in former times the inhabitants of the *Molucco* islands were ignorant as to the use of the cloves, till some *Chinese* coming that way found out their goodness, and from thence transported them to *China*, and so farther to the *Indies*, *Persia*, *Arabia*, and other parts. The islands *Ternate*, *Makjan*, *Mosier* and *Batsjan*, did likewise in former days abound in clove trees, but pursuant to an agreement made with the kings of the islands some years ago, the same have been rooted out.

In the isle of *Ambony* grows likewise the wild palm, or *Zagou* tree, otherwise called *Papedo*. This tree resembles the other palm or coco trees, the leaves hanging downwards on the branches, the lowermost of which perish commonly: This tree bears but one fruit, which is of no use. The inhabitants make bread of the pith of the young trees; for on the top of the tree grows a certain head like a cabbage, in which is inclosed a certain white flower called *Zagou*, and the bread made of this flower *Zagou manda*. This flower they mix with water, and let it rise a little, then they put it in earthen pots, put burning coals all round about it, and so bake it. This bread, whilst it is new, tastes very sweet, and is of a very agreeable scent, but soon grows dry, and is brittle and shining like glass. They also mix this *Zagou* with water, and boil it like pap, into which they squeeze one or two lemons, and so stir it about with a stick: it is very cooling, and of an agreeable taste. They eat it with a stick, which they put into the pap, and turn it round, till a sufficient quantity of the pap, which is very glutinous, almost like turpentine, adheres to the stick, and so put it into the mouth. Out of these young trees they draw, like out of the coco-trees, a liquor; they cut one of the branches near the top, and in a hole made for that purpose, put a piece of hollow *Bamboo* cane, (which in these parts are used instead of tubs, pails and mugs) thro' which in a short time, issues forth a great quantity of liquor as sweet as honey, call'd by the natives *Zagouweer* or *Zagouwer*, but is somewhat harsher than the liquor drawn from the true coco-tree.

Wild palm  
tree called  
Zagou.

In the isle of *Ambony* they put a certain bitter root, call'd by a general name *Onbat* into this liquor, which preserves it for some time, for else this *Zagouweer* turns quickly as sour as vinegar, and is then used for such. They distil also a certain liquor of it call'd *Arak*. This *Zagouweer* is the

U u common



1659. common drink, and sold in publick houses for a farthing a glass, but used in great quantity, proves very obnoxious to the nerves, especially whilt you are hot, when it must be taken with great precaution, else it will infallibly cause the gripes in the guts and palsies, call'd by the natives *Beribery*, which leaves a paleness in peoples faces for ever after. Sometimes they can draw 30 quarts of this liquor in 24 hours out of one single tree. In the isle of *Java* there are likewise some of these *Zagou* trees, but the liquor is, as far as I know, not valued at *Batavia*. They draw the liquor out of these trees till they die, and I was told that there was some of these trees in the woods of *Amboyna*, which will give as much liquor in 24 hours, as a man is able to carry away upon his shoulders. Some other islands belong to the isle of *Amboyna*, to wit, the adjacent large country of *Ceram*, the isles of *Manipa*, *Quelang*, and *Amblau*.

The isle of *Amboyna* is divided into two parts; one of which is under the jurisdiction of the *Dutch East-India* company; the other under the king of *Ternate*. Unto the company belongs the country of *Laitimor*, where is the fort of *Victoria*, and the wooden fort *Wantrou*, and on the pass of *Bagoale*, the redoubt call'd *Middleburg*. The three islands *Homa*, *Honoma*, and *Nausalant*, which produce great quantities of cloves: The whole coast of *Hittoe* with the redoubts, the *Amsteldam* at *Hila*, the *Rotterdam* at *Larike*, and the *Leoden* at *Hittoe* and *Lama*; and several small wooden forts at *Ouriën*, *Lebebeu*, *Ceil*, and *Way*. Under the king's jurisdiction are the country and coast of *Ceram*, the isles *Amblau*, *Manipa*, *Bonoa*, and some others.

The fort *Victoria*, (the staple of the company here) lies five leagues deep in the country, being defended by four bulwarks, a good ditch, and a considerable garriſon, with suitable provisions and ammunition. During my stay here, there was a large crocodile in the ditch, which did vast mischief to the wild fowl belonging to Mr. *Hustard* the governor, who took great delight in them. Some soldiers and others were ordered to place themselves whereabouts they supposed the crocodile had his lurking place, but could not meet with it; till at last the crocodile on a sudden leaped towards the secretary of the governor, whom he had certainly devoured, had not the rest that were near at hand, with sticks and half pikes kill'd the beast immediately, which was extraordinary large. Round about the castle live several *Dutch*, *Chinese*, and other nations. Within and without the fort is a church, where divine service is held both in the *Dutch* and *Malacca* tongue.

The men wear large whiskers, but little hair upon their chin; they only cover themselves with a flight piece of stuff round the buttocks and belly. The women tie their hair up in many knots: He that intends to marry a young maid, buys her from her father for money; but if she proves barren, the marriage is null and void: In former ages the natives were a most barbarous people, men-eaters and pagans. Now a-days they are for the most part *Mabometans*, the rest are *Christians*, some *Roman Catholics*, such as were converted by the *Portuguese*, others professing the *Protestant* religion, which was first introduced there in 1647. The *Dutch* have erected schools in all the villages to instruct the youth in reading and writing, and in the fundamentals of the christian religion. The natives are generally brave, but very deceitful and treacherous; they are naturally addicted to laziness, and are so obstinate, that they chuse rather to die than to leave their ancient customs. They make use of certain small vessels in time of war. They are very swift in their motion, and managed by *Pagagen* or oars. They call these vessels *Korrakore*, and are shaped like a dragon, the head representing the forecattle, and the tail the stern. They have also some lesser boats call'd *Pavas*. Their houses are built of *Bamboo* canes and *Zagou* trees; they sleep likewise in bedsteads made of *Bamboo* canes, or sometimes upon mats only.

Their weapons are bows and arrows, half pikes, javelins, scimeters, targets and firelocks, all which they manage with great dexterity, as well as the darts. They have also a kind of hollow pipes, out of which they shoot great numbers of small poison'd arrows; the wounds made with them prove commonly mortal, unless the poison be removed immediately by cutting it out.

The women of *Amboyna* are very lascivious, and extremely desirous of the christians; if they find themselves disappointed in their expectation, or that they are left by their gallants, they have a way of infecting them with a certain poison, the operation of which is so slow, that they die a lingering death, neither can they cohabit with any other woman, unless they receive proper antidotes from the same woman that poisoned them. Many *Chinese* live in *Amboyna*, tho' for the most part among the *Mabometans* at *Hittoe*, *Lochoe*, and in *Ceram*. In the year 1636, at the request of king *Hittoe*, three or four *Chinese* were permitted to settle under him, with this limitation however, that they should pay the usual taxes to the *Dutch* receiver-general of *Amboyna*; afterwards one *Chinese* was allow'd to live in each village, to provide them with

1659.  
Manners  
and cus-  
toms of  
the Am-  
boyne.

Courts of  
justice in  
Amboyna.

1659. d  
fl  
cu  
to  
to  
pu  
th  
at  
gr  
dw  
M  
lon  
cou  
just  
cou  
Mo  
ven  
of  
one  
ry;  
relat  
T  
the  
com  
p  
tants  
coun  
clerk  
nativ  
head  
they  
with  
vil an  
lages  
out th  
Th  
the ch  
gover  
libera  
as the  
nagem  
their i

Their me-  
pos.

And  
Ma  
Law  
Sim  
Law  
Dieg  
Ant  
diuers.  
Don  
Salv  
Sim  
John  
Step  
Ped  
Feri  
In fi  
subject  
under  
which  
habita

How Am-  
boyna came  
under Ter-  
nate.

Amboyna  
under  
civile ju-  
risdiction.

The fort  
Victoria.

1659. distill'd *Arack*. About the year 1636, the slaves belonging to the *Dutch* had got a custom to run away from their masters, and to shelter themselves among the *Mabometans*, but several being punished with death, pursuant to a proclamation published for that purpose, the rest were so terrified thereat, that no such thing was heard of for a great while after. Certain negro christians dwelt likewise in *Amboyna*, commonly call'd *Mardikers*.

Courts of justice in *Amboyna*.

There are three courts or councils belonging to the *Dutch* in *Amboyna*; first the court martial, secondly the civil court of justice, and thirdly the great council or council of state.

The court martial used to meet every *Monday* and *Thursday*, composed of the governor, the head factor, and under factor of the company, a captain, a lieutenant, one of the eldest sergeants, and a secretary; these took cognizance of all matters relating to the soldiers and garrisons.

The civil court of judicature was kept in the town, consisting of four officers of the company, of four of the chiefest inhabitants, and of four or five *Orangkays* of the council of state; besides which they had two clerks, one a *Dutchman*, and the other a native of *Amboyna*, and two attendants. The head factor in the castle was president here; they took cognizance of, and gave sentence with the governor's approbation, in all civil and criminal cases, neither had the villages any right of exercising of justice without them.

The council of state, or the *Orangkays* of the chamber, who in conjunction with the governor, and his councillors, were to deliberate concerning all publick affairs, such as the equipping of *Korrakoren*, or the management of a war against an enemy, had their seats appointed thus.

*Andrea*, king of *Rosfenive*.

*Mannel*, the old king of *Kielang*.

*Laurentz de Sylva*, king of *Soya*.

*Simaon Ema*, captain of *Ema*.

*Laurenzo Marcus*, captain of *Hative*.

*Diego Pati Halloe*, captain of *Halloe*.

*Anthony da Costa*, captain of the *Mardikers*.

*Don Pedro*, captain of *Vetomoery*.

*Salvador Paty Alang*, captain of *Alang*.

*Simon Baguala*, captain of *Baguala*.

*John Barkabessier*, captain of *Way*.

*Stephen Tercera*, captain of *Pouta*.

*Pedro Antonio*, captain of *Tacieri*.

*Fernando Lavabalai*, captain of *Rosfenive*.

In former ages the island of *Amboyna* was subject to its own kings, till it was reduced under the obedience of the kings of *Ternate*, which according to the relation of the inhabitants happened thus:

Many years ago reign'd a king in *Ternate* call'd *Babou*, son of *Chieroen Diamelou*, who having been the first that introduced *Mabometism* there, was in great esteem with the *Mabometan* priests, who to this day pay a great veneration to his memory. In the mean while, some differences being arisen betwixt the villages of *Warnalete* and *Makatit*, belonging to the district of *Warnolela*, and the last being unable to cope with those of *Warnalete*, they underhand sought for aid by king *Babou*, who having granted their request, sent a good fleet of *Korrakoren*, under the command of his councillor *Samarou*, to the cape of *Saragi*, betwixt *Erang* and *Lissidy*, where they came to an anchor; the inhabitants of *Cambello*, who as well as those of *Erang* and *Lissidy*, had submitted to king *Babou* against those of *Makatit*, advised the inhabitants of *Warnalete* to go to meet *Samarou*, and to purchase his favour by some presents, which being done accordingly, they all attack'd, in conjunction with *Samarou*, those of *Makatit*, and forced them to submission; but *Samarou*, not thus satisfied, reduced all the circumjacent islands under his king's obedience; so that this island owed the loss of its liberty to the intestine divisions of its inhabitants; *Samarou* returning home victorious, was receiv'd with great demonstrations of affection by king *Babou*, who in reward of his service, honour'd his son *Robobongy* with the title and dignity of *Salabakkum* or Stadtholder of these conquer'd countries, having before been dignified with the title of *Kimelaba*, which his successors in the stadtholdership have retained ever since, tho' it be certain, that not *Kimelaba* but *Salabakkum* signifies a stadtholder in their tongue. After the death of *Robobongy*, his eldest son *Adja* succeeded him in the stadtholdership, who was succeeded by his brother *Bassi Frangi*. After him came *Frangi*, who for his treachery was beheaded by *Sabadiin* of *Loubou* his brother's son. *Leliatte*, son to *Bassi Frangi*, then thrusts himself into the government without consent of the king, and following the footsteps of his predecessor, receiv'd the same reward. He was succeeded in the stadtholdership by *Madira*, son of *Sabadiin*, the seventh in order, our company having made use of all their interest with *Hamfia*, king of *Ternate*, to procure him that dignity, in consideration of the singular kindnesses they had received from his father. But they soon found themselves mistaken in their choice; for this *Madira*, of the antient race of the *Temogolo's*, of which *Samarou* was the first, rebell'd 1650, against the king, and with the assistance of the inhabitants, made himself master of several strong holds; to wit, *Amblau*

*Madira rebels against the king of Ternate.*

How *Amboyna* came under *Ternate*.

1659. *bleu, Manipa, Lifidy, Hatua* the lesser, *Af-  
saboudy, Laala* and *Nouffatelo*, plunder'd all  
that oppos'd him, and kill'd about 80 per-  
sons belonging to the *Dutch* company. One  
*John Pays*, captain of *Haturce, Tawiro* and  
*Houkonalo*, living near the fort of *Amboyna*,  
was shrewdly suspected to have had a hand  
in this conspiracy, which *Simon Kos* (who  
commanded in the absence of *Arnold Out-  
shorn* at *Amboyna*) having got notice of,  
secured him in the fort till the arrival of  
Mr. *Outshorn*, when the war broke out with  
great violence on both sides.

How the  
Portuguese  
became mas-  
ters of  
Amboyna.

The *Portuguese* made themselves masters  
of *Amboyna*, 1546, in the following man-  
ner: At the time when *Anthony Galvan* was  
governor of *Ternate*, a great fleet of small  
vessels belonging to the island of *Java*,  
*Banda, Macassar* and *Amboyna*, was sent to  
the *Molucco* islands to fetch cloves; *Galvan*  
being advertis'd thereof, and fearing lest  
they should by this means spoil the spice  
trade of the *Portuguese*, armed about 25  
*Korrakoren*, with 40 *Portuguese*, and 400  
auxiliaries; these, under the command of  
*Jacob Supi Azevedi*, admiral of the sea *Mo-  
lucse*, steer'd their course towards *Amboyna*,  
where meeting with the *Indian* fleet, they  
attack'd and routed them, taking many of  
their ships, with good store of great can-  
non, and a considerable sum of ready mo-  
ney; *Azevedi*, willing to improve this op-  
portunity, landed in *Amboyna*, the inhabi-  
tants of which being terrified at their last  
defeat, did for the most part submit to the  
*Portuguese*, and receiv'd such laws as they  
thought fit to prescribe to them; which done,  
*Azevedi* loaden with glory and spoils, re-  
turn'd as a conqueror to *Ternate*. After that  
time, the *Portuguese* used always in their  
voyages from *Malacca* to the *Molucco* i-  
slands, and in their return from thence, to  
provide themselves with fresh water at *Am-  
boyna*, till 1603, this island was taken by  
the *Dutch* from the *Portuguese*, who got a  
vast booty there, tho' the *Dutch* are not  
very fond of living in *Amboyna*, being a  
place of no great plenty.

We set sail, as I told you before, the 3<sup>d</sup>  
of May from *Amboyna*, and with a brisk and  
prosperous gale arriv'd the 29<sup>th</sup> before *Ba-  
tavia*.

No sooner was our ship unloaden, but I  
received orders to go aboard the ship *A-  
chilles*, *John Vander Werven* master, to *Ja-  
pan*. Every thing being got in readines for  
our intended voyage, I took my leave  
from the directors of the company, and  
the 28<sup>th</sup> of July set sail with 15 ships  
more, Mr. *John Vander Laen* being comma-  
ndore, with orders to sail to *Teywan*, to at-  
tack the city *Makao*, (a populous place,  
and defended by a garrison of 600 men) and

to observe *Koxinga*. But scarce were we  
come within sight of the isle of *Anyam*,  
when we were overtaken by so terrible a  
tempest, that I can safely affirm, I never  
saw the like in my life, and that it is past  
my skill to express it; the waves rising  
sometimes to that height, that the very tops  
of our masts could not be seen, the winds  
sometimes falling flat upon our ships, and  
pressing them down flat under the abyss, so  
that we expected every moment to be swal-  
low'd up by this merciless element, espe-  
cially when we saw the yacht *Gorkum* (in which  
was *Francis Langman*, formerly my com-  
panion in our *China* voyage) in a moment  
perish before our eyes, without the least pos-  
sibility of saving one man. At last, how-  
ever thro' God's infinite mercy the fury of  
the winds began to allay, when with much  
ado we got with our ships, which were much  
damag'd by the storm, into the harbour of  
*Teywan* the 20<sup>th</sup> of September. The season for  
our intended voyage to *Japan* being past,  
as forced against my will to unload my ship  
here, and the design against *Makao* being  
laid aside for that time, because *Koxinga* was  
abroad with a powerful force: We set sail  
with the whole fleet for the islands call'd  
*Piskadores*, and came the 3<sup>d</sup> of October to an  
anchor in the *Church-Bay*: Here I received  
orders to prepare myself for a voyage into  
*Persia*, aboard the ship the *Leerdam*, loaden  
with sugar, which I did accordingly.

The islands call'd *Piskadores* or fisher-  
islands, and by the *Chinese* *Pebu*, are situate  
under 23 and 24 deg. northern latitude, a-  
bout 12 and 13 leagues from the isle of  
*Teywan*. They have several good har-  
bours, and two commodious bays, where  
ships may ride safely at anchor at 8 or 9  
fathoms water. At the entrance of this bay  
are the ruins of two ancient stone forts, one  
built by the *Dutch*, the other by the *Chi-  
nese*; and betwixt both is another fort. The  
country thereabouts is not hilly, abounds  
in grafs, yet pretty strong. It contains ma-  
ny populous villages; these islands being all  
well stor'd with inhabitants, with fat cattle,  
especially cows, and birds of all sorts, espe-  
cially with an incredible number of fine large  
cocks. During the rainy season they gather  
fresh water in cisterns or ponds, but in dry  
weather the water is saltish here. The coun-  
try produces likewise potatoes and many  
other fruits in abundance, and here are al-  
ways to be seen great numbers of *Chinese*  
vessels, which come some for fishing, some  
for traffick. At the entrance of the *Church-  
Bay*, stands to the north-side a *Chinese* Pa-  
gode, where is very good anchorage, and a  
convenient place for shelter to those that  
are bound to *Teywan*, there being no other  
safe harbour for great ships hereabouts. The  
islands

1659.

A mil-  
lennial  
storm.

1659.

Return to  
Teywan.Nieuhoff  
sent to  
Koxinga.Koxinga's  
45/207.

Vol.

1659. islands *Piskadores* are many in number; two are the most famous; one call'd the *Piskadore* or *Fisher Island*, the second *Pebou* or *Pebu*.

The fourth-east side of the *Fisher Island* is so bare, that it produces not a tree; to the west of it is another small island, and the passage betwixt both so shallow, that a yacht is not able to pass that way. To the south of this lies another island, call'd by the Dutch the *Troublesome Island*, because there is no anchorage for ships here. About a league from thence to the west is a rocky island, or rather two small rocky islands, divided by so many rocks, that there is no passage or anchorage near them.

Return to  
Teywan.

After we had dispatch'd our business here, we set sail again for the island of *Teywan*, Mr. *Conjet* was at that time governor of this isle, who having not without reason conceiv'd a jealousy at the vast number of ships and men, the *Chinese* had brought together in the river of *Quincen*, or in the isle of *Ey* and *Queymuy*, on the coast of *China*, I was dispatch'd thither the 31<sup>st</sup> of October with the two yachts the *Graveland* and *Mary*, with express orders, to demand from *Koxinga* whether he was for peace or war, and not to tarry longer than ten days for a categorical answer. I carried aboard the vessels to take care of them, whilst my colleague went to speak with *Koxinga*: Our limited time being near expired, I went ashore in a boat, ordering our vessels to be upon their guard. The banks of the river were so crowded with people, that I had much ado to pass thro' them; by good chance I met with a *Chinese* who understood *Portuguese*, who was so complaisant as to go along with me to the place, where my colleague and his attendants lodg'd; but they being gone abroad to see *Koxinga* muster his forces, I was oblig'd to take the same way; we address'd ourselves to him, desiring a speedy and positive answer, the time of our stay being expired. He gave us for answer, that being at present busy in mustering his forces, he would give us his resolution to-morrow, in a letter directed to the governor of *Teywan*, which he did accordingly: In this letter he told him, that he had not the least thoughts of any war against the company, but that he would cultivate a good correspondence with them. To remove all occasion of jealousy, he sent several merchant ships to *Teywan*, which however did not remove the suspicion they had conceiv'd of him there, especially after we on the 22<sup>d</sup> of December gave a verbal account of his vast preparations in the fort of *Teywan*. His letter was as follows.

Vol. II.

KOXINGA's letter.

1659.

BEING at a great distance from you, I could not but receive your letter with a more than ordinary satisfaction, which I perus'd more than once, to inform myself the better of your intentions. You mention some false rumours, but at the same time seem to give credit to them. In my father *Yquam's* time, the Dutch possess'd themselves of a certain place in the isle of *Teywan*, with his consent for the convenience of trade, which I have not in the least interrupted, and therefore judge you to be oblig'd to me upon that score. I have of late years been so deeply involved in a war with the *Tartars*, that I have had no leisure to trouble my head with an inconsiderable island that produces nothing but grass: It being not my custom to disclose my designs, but rather if I aim at the east to point to the west; how can you suppose to be inform'd of them by rumours? The reason why so few of our ships come to that island, is, because they cannot trade thither with any profit, the customs being so heavy. It was but this year the *Tartars* made a strong invasion into the low lands of *China*, in hopes to put an end to the war with one blow, but they were so bravely received, that they were forced to retreat with the loss of 100 of their commanders, and a great number of their men; we then retired into the islands of *Ey* and *Queymuy*, in hopes to draw them thither, and so to catch them in the trap. Concerning your complaints of having been treated in a hostile manner in the island of *Piskadores*, if it be really so, it has been done without our knowledge. I sent back an immediate answer, together with your presents, to the letter sent to me from *Batavia* four years ago; by which I understand, that you intended us but a very slender satisfaction, for the *Jonckeh* or ships, and the loading and money aboard them detained by you, notwithstanding which, I did not think fit to urge this business any further, for fear of occasioning a rupture betwixt us; it shall be my endeavour, as soon as the *Tartarian* war is brought to a conclusion, to encourage trade as much as possible may be, and don't question but you will on the other hand contribute to it, as far as lies in your power.

Given in the 14<sup>th</sup> year, the 19<sup>th</sup> day of the 10<sup>th</sup> month of the reign of king *Indick*.

After the reading of *Koxinga's* letter, it was resolved by the majority of voices not to engage in a war against *Koxinga*; most being of opinion, that at this juncture he would not undertake any thing against the company, tho' the governor Mr. *Conjet* was of a contrary sentiment, which proved too true afterwards. Thus all the thoughts of

X x

war

1659. war being laid aside, the continuation of commerce with him being judged, as indeed it was, to be of more present advantage to the company, all the ships there were ordered to their respective places, and I among the rest, set sail aboard the ship the *Leerdam*, loaden with sugar for *Gamroa* in *Perfia*.

The before-mentioned islands, *Ey* and *Queymuy*, are high rocky islands; the city of *Eymny* is situate upon a high hill, pretty deep in the country, being surrounded with a stone wall, without which you see the ruins of an ancient tower, and a *Chinese* Pagode or temple.

The city of *Queymuy* lies upon a river at a pretty distance from the sea, being the capital of the isle from whence it has borrowed its name. It has very large suburbs, which begin on the river side. Not far from thence, deeper into the country, is a strong castle, defended by a very high wall, formerly the residence of *Koxinga*. The country round about is rocky, and not very fertile, except that the valleys afford a little grafs for cows; for the rest, the inhabitants feed most upon fish, and some live by traffick.

It was not long before the *Chinese*, being forced by the *Tartars* to quit the continent of *China*, and *Koxinga*, strengthened with near 25000 fugitives, and about 500 vessels, they resolved to shelter themselves in the two before-mentioned islands of *Ey* and *Queymuy*, and finding himself in a condition to undertake something against us; he embark'd 20000 of his best men aboard a great number of *Chinese* *Joncken* or vessels, and the 30<sup>th</sup> of May 1661, appeared within a league of the fort *Zelandia* in the isle of *Teywan*, steering his course directly to the shore, where his countrymen, living in that island, were ready to receive him, with their carts and other necessities; and soon after, posted a considerable number of his vessels betwixt the fort and the redoubt call'd the *Province*. This put our people under no small consternation, they being not provided either with vessels or forces, to encounter so formidable a power. However captain *Pedel* and *Aldorp*, the first with 240, and the second with 200 men, were sent out to endeavour to prevent the enemies landing, and 4 ships, viz. the *Heitor*, the *Graveland*, the *Finch*, and the yacht *Mary*, were ordered to fall upon their fleet, which was put in execution immediately. About 60 of the *Chinese* *Joncken*, each with 2 great guns in the fore-castle, came up with our vessels, but were so warmly received, that two of them were sunk. and the rest so much disabled, that they were all glad to retire, except six only, which kept close to-

gether, and shot so furiously upon us, that they seem'd all to be on fire; the *Heitor* took fire by an accident, and so together with the *Joncken* that lay aboard her, blew up into the air. The other three ships, notwithstanding this fought it out bravely, and killed above a 1000 *Chinese* besides those wounded in the engagement. The yacht *Mary* was also set on fire, but was saved by the indefatigable care and labour of the seamen. On the land-side captain *Pedel*, having divided his forces into two bodies, and exhorted them to stand it out bravely, gave the enemy a very warm salute with his firelocks, which kill'd many of them as they were landing; notwithstanding which, they were so far from giving ground, as we flattered ourselves they would have done, that they sent whole showers of arrows among our people, and at the same time sent a strong detachment to the right, which taking compass round a hill, attack'd us in the flanks, which so terrified our soldiers, that they threw down their arms, and wading thro' the water got into a pilot's boat, and so ashore, leaving the captain with 19 men only, to the mercy of the enemies; upon which, immediate orders were sent to captain *Aldorp* to retire with his forces to the fort; the enemy landed without any farther opposition, and in 4 hours time cut off all communication betwixt the redoubt, the province, and the fort, and betwixt this and the open country; most of the inhabitants afterwards joining with them against us. *Koxinga* being soon informed of our present condition, in very ignominious terms summon'd the fort, threatening to put all to fire and sword if we did not surrender immediately. It was then taken into consideration, whether, considering the enemy had cut off all communication with the redoubt the *Province*, and his great strength, it were not advisable to treat with *Koxinga*, and to offer the surrender of one of the forts, provided we might preserve a free trade, rather than to lose all; which being agreed upon, and at our request a passport granted for that purpose by *Koxinga*, we sent *Thomas Yperan*, head factor of the fort, and Mr. *Leonardus* the fiscal, as our deputies to him, to salute him in the name of the governor and the council, and to wish him success in all his undertakings, provided they were not intended against the interest of the company. In their letter they told him, that they could have wish'd to have seen him in another posture here, and that they were surprized to find him in arms, without the least declaration of war, that if he had any real cause of being offended, they were ready to give him satisfaction, and to cultivate a good understanding with him. The deputies

*Koxinga* attacks *Teywan*.

The Dutch endeavour to prevent his landing.

Engagement betwixt the Dutch and *Chinese*.

1659.

1659.

The deputies received into the camp.

The Dutch.

The *Chinese* cabin.

Deputies sent to *Koxinga*.

The bad with er di their as the contr or de was again ibis Chin Hood it fr by pe engag



1659. ries had exprefs orders, that in case Koxinga would not hearken to any accommodation, without the furrender of both the forts, they fhould treat no farther, and tell him that the company was in a condition to revenge this injury. With thefe instructions they went the 3<sup>d</sup> of May to Koxinga's camp, which was then about 12000 ftrong, and bufy in the fiege of the redoubt Province. They were armed with three different forts of weapons; the firft with bows and arrows, which they manage with great dexterity; the fecond with fcimeters and targets only, wherewith they cover themfelves, and fo break in upon an enemy, when they are feconded by their pikemen, whofe arms are backwords and pikes of three or four foot long, with broad and fharp irons at the end.

The deputies received into the camp.

The deputies were at their firft entrance into the camp, received by one of their chief commanders, and conducted into a fpacious tent, where they ftay'd till Koxinga was at leisure to admit them to audience. Whilst they ftay'd there, feveral of the enemies troops march'd by their tent, and as far as they could perceive, the fame at feveral times, to make the greater oftentation of their ftrength. Koxinga was in the mean while employed in combing his black fhining hair, a great ornament among the Chinefe, which done, the deputies were introduced into his tent, which was all hung with blue, he himfelf feated in an elbow chair, behind a four fquare table; round about him attended all the chief commanders clad in long robes without arms, and in great filence, with a moft awful countenance. On both fides towards the door, his life-guards were placed in very good order. The deputies addrefs'd themfelves to him in low Dutch, and delivered their letter, which being tranflated into the Chinefe, Koxinga answered.

#### KOXINGA'S ANSWER.

THAT he was fenfible that the good correfpondence the Dutch Eaft-India company had hitherto cultivated with him, as well as with all the other Indians princes, was no longer durable than they found it confiftent with their own intereft; which always ceafed as foon as they found their account in it; that it was contrary to his cuftom to divulge his thoughts or defigns, yet he could not diflemble that it was by reafon of the war he was engaged in againft the Tartars, he had not taken poffeffion of this ifland, which as it always belonged to the Chinefe, fo it was not injuftice that now they flood in need of it themfelves, they might relake it from foreigners, who were only fettled there by permiffion. That he was not come there to engage in a war with the Dutch, but only to

take poffeffion of his own. That he was willing they might take away all that belonged to them, that they might demolifh the forts and carry away their cannon; for which purpofe he was ready to lend them as many of his fhips and men as they wanted, notwithstanding they had fo lately attacked him both by fea and land, when he had given them fufficient proofs of his ftrength. He told them further, that they were very proud and haughty in pretending to defend fo inconfiderable a fort (meaning the redoubt the province) with fo fmall a force againft his numerous army, which he threatned to deftroy, fo as not to leave one ftone upon another: He boasted that if his forces were united he was able to conquer heaven and earth; concluding, that they muft take a very fhort refolution.

Our deputies gave for answer, That fince the Dutch had left the Pifkadore iflands; this ifland was furrendred into their hands by contract; but that if he (Koxinga) had any pretensions upon the company, they were ready to treat about it, and give him fatisfaction. But after feveral contefts, finding him quite averfe to hearken to any accommodation, unlefs they could furrender all, they departed, protefting that the company would fhew their refentments in due time, and fo fet up the red flag.

Before their departure from the camp they had obtained leave of Koxinga to go through the fort the Province in their return home; here they found things in a very indifferent pofture, and the fort not in a condition to hold out above a week longer, all their powder and ball being fpent, there being not enough left to withftand an affault: This, with the weaknefs of the place, induced the deputies to confent that they might capitulate with the enemy, provided they could get liberty to transfer the garrifon into the fort.

The deputies arrived the fame day in the great fort, where having given an account of their tranfactions, the governour Conjel and the reft of the commanders feeing all the communication betwixt them and the redoubt the Province, nay with the whole ifland entirely cut off by the enemy, were at a great lofs what to refolve upon at fuch a juncture as this: After mature deliberation, the only hopes they had left was, to defend the fort Zelandia till fuch time they could be relieved from Batavia, which confidering the northern Monzon, might perhaps take up a whole twelve months time. However it was refolved to defend this fort to the laft extremity, notwithstanding the redoubt the Province had been forced to furrender, the garrifon with all the cannon being fallen into the enemies hands, who had made them prifoners of war.

1659.

The deputies leave the camp. Come into the fort the Province.

Arrive at the great fort.

Resolved to defend this fort to the laft.

To



1659.

They leave  
the city.The Chi-  
nese batter  
the fort.The Chi-  
nese re-  
pulsed.

To prepare themselves for a more vigorous defence, all that were able to bear arms were taken into the fort, and the city set on fire, which however could not be executed so speedily, but that the enemy preserved some ware and other houses, by timely quenching the flame, which served them for places of shelter. Soon after they began to batter the fort with 28 pieces of cannon, but their cannon as well as their men being exposed to our shot, we plied them so warmly with cartridges, and other such like materials, that the streets thereabouts were all covered with the dead carcases of the *Chinese*, and the rest were forced to shelter themselves in the by-lanes, leaving their cannon to our mercy, some of which were rendered unserviceable. On the other side of the fort 6000 *Chinese* advanced boldly under our cannon, and attacked our works hand to hand, but were beaten back with great loss to an adjacent hill; upon which the besieged made avigorous rally, and nailed up all their cannon. It was then propoed to make a general sally, but considering the disproportion betwixt us and the enemy, who were advanced under our cannon, it was judged too dangerous, for fear, if we should miscarry, the enemy might force their way at the same time into the fort. The next day the besieged made another sally, and carried off a six pounder into the fort. The enemy finding all his attacks unsuccessful, kept the fort close blockt up, and in the mean while made the open country feel the effects of his rage; they made all the *Dutch* inhabitants, especially the ministers and schoolmasters, prisoners, because as they pretended, two certain ministers had under hand encouraged their parishioners to kill all the *Chinese* living among them, not questioning but the rest would follow their example; but as it commonly happens in things of this nature where many are privy to a design, this had been discovered by some out of fear, or hopes of reward, for which the ringleaders suffered a most miserable death, being crucified by the *Chinese*, and their crosses erected in their respective villages.

A Dutch  
ship taken  
by the Chi-  
nese.The Dutch  
design to  
carry off a  
Chinese  
ship.

Some *Dutch* sea-men had no better success, for 13 of them being taken in a *Dutch* ship by a *Chinese* vessel near the *Piskadore* islands, these were put on board a *Chinese* vessel mann'd with 30 men, who were to carry them to *Koxinga's* camp. So soon as the *Dutch* sea-men came within sight of the *Dutch* fort, they resolved to fall upon the *Chinese* (not above one half of them being above deck at a time) and so to carry off the ship the next following night; but a *Frenchman* belonging to our ships crew, whether out of fear, or hopes to recover his liberty, did betray their design to the *Chi-*

*nese*, who immediately gave the signal to some other ships near them to come aboard, which being done accordingly, they made them all prisoners, and forthwith sent them to *Koxinga's* camp, where they had their noses, ears, and hands cut off, and in this miserable condition were sent into the fort for a terror to the rest; they were committed to the surgeon's care, who performed his part so well, that not one of them died.

1659.

Miscary.

Among the rest of the *Dutch* prisoners taken by the *Chinese* in the open country, was one Mr. *Hambrocock* a minister; this man was sent by *Koxinga* to the governor of the fort, to persuade him to a surrender, upon condition, viz. that they should depart safely with all that belonged to them and the company; but if he refused, he might have a sufficient occasion to repent it at leisure; and that *Koxinga* would revenge himself upon the *Dutch* prisoners: With these instructions Mr. *Hambrocock* came into the castle, being forced to leave his wife and children behind him as hostages; which being a sufficient argument to him that in case he did not succeed in his negotiation, they must expect nothing but death at *Koxinga's* hands, yet was he so far from persuading the garrison to a surrender, that he encouraged them to a brave defence in hopes of relief; and as a farther encouragement, assured them that *Koxinga* had lost many of his best ships and soldiers, and began to be weary of the siege, fearing lest we should hold it out till we received succours from *Batavia*.

A message  
sent from  
Koxinga  
to the be-  
sieged.

Mr. *Hambrocock* having made an end of what he had to propose, the council of war left it to his choice, whether he would rather stay with them or return to the camp, where he could expect nothing else but present death, every one entreated him to stay; he had two daughters within the castle, who hung about his neck overwhelmed in grief and tears, to see their father ready to go where they were sensible he must be sacrificed to the rage of a merciless enemy; he represented to them, that having left his wife and two other children as hostages in the camp, nothing but present death could attend them if he returned not; and so untwisting himself from his daughters arms, and exhorting every body to a resolute defence, he returned to the camp, telling them at parting, that he hoped he might prove serviceable to his poor fellow prisoners.

Koxinga's  
messengers  
return.

He gave an account to *Koxinga* of his negotiation, and that the besieged were resolved not to treat, unless they were to remain in possession of the castle, which was not at all relishing to *Koxinga*, who now began to be afraid of an uproar; the inhabitants having slain several of the *Chinese*, which

1047.

which  
having  
spread  
hand  
to re-  
flect  
foster  
ingly  
in a  
carcass  
ked,  
ried 50  
only th  
others  
tho' th  
childre  
tho' fo  
use of  
the cor  
happen  
man, b  
unities  
ry jeal  
howeve  
tulation  
slain we  
Mr. Ar  
many foWhile  
the Dut  
invasion  
of the c  
get thir  
how mat  
immedia  
board th  
under th  
long, aft  
This une  
into no f  
ged our  
fence th  
very har  
some men  
increasing  
choole th  
the besie  
a month  
Urke being  
of Formosa  
from wh  
our streng  
ces, they  
cause they  
more formThe besieged  
make a  
sally.Howeve  
by makin  
enemy fr  
stroy the  
appointed  
some ship  
ning to fl  
our men  
in their b  
Vol. II

1645.

The Dutch  
presence  
excited by  
Koxinga.

which exasperated him to that degree, that having caused indolently a rumour to be spread abroad that the prisoners did under hand encourage the inhabitants of *Formosa* to rebel, he ordered all the *Dutch* male prisoners to be slain, which was done accordingly; some being beheaded, others killed in a more barbarous manner. The dead carcasses after they were stripped quite naked, were to the number of 500, thus buried 50 and 60 in a hole; of all the rest, only the supervisor of the country with 25 others, were saved and carried to *China*, tho' they even did not spare the women and children, many of whom were likewise slain, tho' some of the best were preserved for the use of the commanders, and the rest sold to the common soldiers: Happy was she that happened to fall to the lot of an unmarried man, being thereby freed from the importunities of the *Chinese* women, who are very jealous of their husbands. They were however afterwards, pursuant to the capitulation, sent back to *Batavia*. Among the slain were Mr. *Hambrocock*, Mr. *Mus*, and Mr. *Arnold Winshaim*, three ministers, and many schoolmasters, who were all beheaded.

Whilst these things were transacting here, the *Dutch* in *Batavia* had got notice of this invasion by the *Mary* yacht, which in spite of the contrary season had found means to get thither, and to give them an account how matters stood with us. Ten ships were immediately got ready with 700 soldiers aboard them, which set sail in June 1661 under the command of *Jacob Kou*, and not long after arrived at the isle of *Formosa*. This unexpected relief as it put the enemy into no small consternation, so it encouraged our men to make a more vigorous defence than ever; and tho' the wind blew very hard, these ships found means to land some men and ammunition; but the winds increasing more and more, were forced to choose the main, to the no small grief of the besieged, and did not return till about a month after; when the ship called the *Urk* being forced upon a rock on the coast of *Formosa*, was split, and her men saved, from whom the enemy having understood our strength, and some other circumstances, they began to be better satisfied, because they had imagined this succour much more formidable than really it was.

However the besieged took a resolution by making a vigorous sally to dislodge the enemy from the city of *Zelandia*, and to destroy their ships. The 16<sup>th</sup> of September was appointed for this enterprise, but whilst some ships were engaged, the wind beginning to slacken, the rest could not come up; our men endeavoured to attack the *Chinese* in their boats, but being exposed to their

shot, without being able to do them much harm, ours had the worst on't, some of the boats being overset, others sunk, the rest saving themselves by flight. Two of our ships got upon the sands and were both set on fire. In this sea engagement the *Dutch* lost about 130 men, but the enemy a great many more; however this unfortunate action put a stop to the intended sally, and orders were sent to the garrisons of the two northern forts, to withdraw into the castle, the garrison of which was considerably diminished by the many skirmishes, in which the enemy got but little advantage, and lost many of their best men; which put a check for some time to their design, especially when they understood that we had sent all women, children, and other useless persons to *Batavia*, the better to enable us to make a vigorous defence.

Much about the same time the governor received letters from the *Tartarian* stadtholder of *Hocksieu*, who requested some ships and forces, to drive the remaining forces of *Koxinga* out of the country, promising to come afterwards with his whole power to the relief of *Formosa*. Hereupon *Jacob Kou* was sent thither with five ships well provided with men and ammunition; but being overtaken by a storm, lost all his anchors near the *Piskadores*, which obliged him to send back three of his ships to the island of *Teywan*: With the other two he returned to *Batavia*, where he met with but an indifferent reception.

The besieged finding themselves by this disaster bereaved of a considerable number of men and ammunition, began to despair of holding it out much longer; so that many deserted, and among the rest a certain serjeant, who gave *Koxinga* not only an account of our weakness, but also encouraged him not to let slip this opportunity to force us to a surrender. *Koxinga* having well weighed the matter, attacked us with his whole force more vigorously than ever, and in January 1662 raised three batteries, mounted with 28 great cannon, upon the sandy grounds near the fort; the *Dutch* foresaw the danger that must needs ensue from this near approach of the enemy's batteries, and did all that they could, either with cannon or firelocks, to disturb them in their works, but these not hindring, their men continued to batter the walls till they had made a breach; then they made two several attacks, but were as often repulsed with great loss, the ground being all over covered with dead carcasses. This disaster taught them to be more cautious, and so instead of storming, they continued to fire incessantly their guns with such a fury that they laid a whole redoubt level with the ground,

1659.

The Dutch  
wasified.

The Tar-  
tars pro-  
mise suc-  
cess.

1662.

The Chi-  
nese renew  
the attack  
against the  
fort.

Are repul-  
sed.

1662. so that our men finding it no longer tenible, nailed up the guns, and laid some barrels with gunpowder under it, which blew up a considerable number of *Chinese* into the air. *Koxinga* himself was in danger of having been among them, had he not been forewarned by the before mentioned serjeant, who told him that it was too dangerous to venture himself in a place so lately left by the enemy. Here *Koxinga* raised a large battery upon a rising ground, from whence he hoped to lay the body of the castle level with the ground. The *Dutch* on their side were not idle to do what possibly could be expected for their defence, with cannon shot, granados and otherwise; they raised their breast-works, and put great packs of linnen and stuffs into the breach, notwithstanding which the enemy played incessantly upon them, and against night had made so large a breach as was judged sufficient to make a general assault. Then it was the besieged began to deliberate what was best to be done in this exigency, whether, since there was no longer abiding in the castle, they should make a sally and force their way to the enemy, or whether they should abide the assault: The most were for a capitulation, there being not the least hopes left of making a sally with any success, and to resist the whole force of the *Chinese* in a place without defence, exposed to the enemies shot, was looked upon no less than to sacrifice themselves to their enemies; these considerations were so prevailing at last, that it was unanimously agreed to capitulate, and to surrender the castle upon articles; this was put in execution immediately, a truce of five days being agreed on for that purpose, at the expiration of which, after great contests it was agreed, *That every thing belonging to the company should be delivered up to Koxinga. That all the inhabitants, soldiers and prisoners, should have free liberty to retire to Batavia with all their moveables, for which purpose they should be provided with suitable conveniences.* Thus the besieged after having endured a siege of nine months, with the loss of 1600 men, returned to *Batavia*, where the governour and members of the council of *Formosa*, after all the hazards and incredible fatigues they had been forced to undergo, were put in prison, and their goods confiscated; the governour himself being not long after condemned to a perpetual imprisonment in the isle of *Ey*; but was at the intercession of his highness the prince of *Orange*, and by orders from the directors of the *East-India* company in *Holland* discharged, and returned to his native country 1676. Since we have had frequent occasion to speak of the island of *Formosa*, I will give you a short account of it.

The Dutch defend themselves to the utmost.

The fort of Zelandia surrendered.

The isle of *Formosa* is situated under the 23 deg. 30 min. northern latitude. It is of an oblong figure, being not very broad in proportion to its length, which is 125 leagues. It is full of hills, but intermixed with many fertile vallies, producing great store of grafs, and watered by many fine rivers. The country produces abundance of rice, but especially sugar, vast quantities of which are exported from thence. Most of the *Indian* fruits are to be seen here, of which more hereafter, as also several sorts of *Dutch* fruits, herbs, and roots, transplanted thither from *Holland*, as peaches, apricots, and such like; cows, oxen, hogs, wild goats, hares, and rabbits, but especially stags are here in great plenty, but the last are somewhat of a lesser size than those of *Europe*, and without horns; the inhabitants catch vast numbers of them merely for their skins sake, the flesh being not esteem'd here, except their tongues. They have also great store of elks here, which being very strong they use in their carts instead of horses or oxen. One time the master of our ship and I being invited to dinner at his sister's that was married to a native of *Formosa*, they sent us a carr drawn by bufflers; the master of the ship who understood better how to govern the ship than those beasts, would needs supply the carr-mans place, but prickt the bufflers so unmercifully (according to the custom of the country) that they run away with us: for some time we kept steadfast in the carr, which overturning at last, threw us at a great distance, but to our great good fortune, without any considerable harm; we walkt the rest of the way on foot, leaving the ordinary carr-man, a native of *Formosa*, to recover the bufflers, which he did at last, and brought them home. Neither do they want partridges, wild pigeons, and other wild fowl; there are also tygers and bears to be met with, but I never heard of any other ravenous wild beasts here. The mountains are full of brimstone, which questionless occasions so many earthquakes, unto which this isle is much subject. Some are of opinion that these mountains contain likewise gold and silver, some essays of this nature having been made with good success, but it was never attempted to dig for it. This island is destitute of good harbours for great ships, which are forced to ride at anchor in the road of some isles about twelve leagues, from thence. The country is very populous, for besides the natives of *Formosa*, above 25000 *Chinese* forced out of *China* by the *Tartars*, have at several times settled themselves here.

The natives of *Formosa*, especially the men, are of an olive colour, fat, strong, well-limbed and nimble, some being able

Native of Formosa

Their clothing.

Their food.

The women manage the ground.

1662. to out-run a wild boar or stag; they leap upon the back of them and so cut their throats. The mountainers are of a lesser size. The women are not altogether so large as the men, but very strong bodied, and are clothed after the same fashion; they have black shining hair, which they tye together in a knot on the top of the head.

*Their climbing.*

The men throughout the summer appear for the most part quite naked, but those who do not, especially in the winter, wear a kind of silk or callico cloth, which they wrap about their bodies, and button it under the arms; the womens hags somewhat lower down below the knees. Stuffs made of dogs hair are in great esteem with them. They cut off the dogs hair, like as we do our sheeps wool spin and weave it afterwards. They are generally very friendly and faithful to the *Europeans*, and don't easily break a contract; they are very apprehensive, and will give a good judgment of matters; many of them were already converted to the christian religion by the industry of the ministers and schoolmasters, which were planted almost in every village, there being no small hopes that the whole island would in a little time have embraced christianity, had not the conquest of *Koxinga* overturned this good design.

*Their food.*

Their bread is made of several roots, but rice is in the greatest esteem; tho' they sow no more than for their own use, and that scarce sufficient. Their drink is here, like all over the *Indies*, water, though they prepare likewise a strong liquor of rice in the following manner: They just parboil the rice and then beat it to a pap, then several old women chew a certain quantity of rice, which they spit out into a vessel, and mix it with the rest, to make it ferment. After they have put it into earthen pots, they pour water upon it, and after they have covered it very well, set it to ferment for two months, till it is well settled and clear, this produces a very strong liquor, which will keep good 20 years, and grow stronger every year. When they go abroad into the fields, they take of this liquor along with them to drink, and the settlement for their food; most of the rice here being consumed in these liquors.

*The women manage the ground.*

Contrary to the custom of most other nations, the women cultivate the grounds here, and manage the rice, sugar, ginger, and other fruits of the earth; the men being employed in nothing but hunting and warlike exploits, unless they be very old, when sometimes they will give a helping hand to the women in the field. At leisure time the women catch crabs, oysters, and shrimps, which they much admire.

The men are mighty eager in hunting.

Whole villages join together, and surround a great tract of ground, where they kill all they meet with, and divide it, few of the wild beasts escaping their hands at that time. They also catch wild boars and stags with snares fastned to canes; which the wild beast no sooner touches but one or other of the legs is entangled in the snare, where they kill it immediately. They have also certain cane darts of six foot long, with several bent hooks at the one, and a bell at the other end, this they throw at the stags or other wild creatures, which being fixed in the body they trace it by the found of the bell till it begins to lose its strength by the loss of blood, and so kill it.

Their houses are but one story high, but very large, built of cane, with many doors looking to all four corners of the winds, and sometimes more; they always raise their houses three or four foot high from the ground, looking upon it otherwise as unwholesome.

*Their houses.*

Their houses are adorn'd with painted callico hangings, with wild boars and stags heads; with bows, arrows, clubs, pickaxes, and other warlike instruments, but especially with the skulls and bones of their enemies, which they look upon as the chiefest ornament of their houses: They eat and drink for the most part out of wooden vessels, or such as are made of bamboo-canes, but have some earthen pots to dress their victuals in, and for some other particular uses.

*Their tents.*

This isle has no king or general governor, each village being a kind of a petty common-wealth; their government consists of twelve persons, which must be at least 40 years of age, and are chosen out of the chiefest among them; they continue for life; all their power consists only in consulting what is most expedient for the common good, the result of which is proposed to the assembly of the whole village, who receive it with a great deal of sedateness, and after the breaking up of the assembly they debate among themselves what is best to be done; if they approve of the proposition made to them, it has the force of a law, if not, it is of no consequence. They are also much addicted to follow the directions of their prophetesses or the priests; at a certain season of the year, they are obliged to go quite naked for three months, otherwise (say they) we shall want rain. At another certain time they are debar'd from wearing silk or other fine cloths, or if they do, their council has power to strip them of them, and to tear them to pieces before their faces, unless they redeem them by a certain number of stags-skins, rice or strong liquor. Corporal punishments are unknown

*Their government.*

under the  
It is of an  
oad in pro-  
25. agues.  
The  
Forma  
d with ma-  
eat store of  
fine rivers.  
nce of rice,  
ies of which  
t of the In-  
which more  
s of Dutch  
planted thi-  
pricots, and  
wild goats,  
ly stags are  
It are some-  
of Europe,  
tants catch  
or their skins  
d here, ex-  
also great  
very strong  
of horses or  
our ship and  
s sister's that  
ormosa, they  
the master  
etter how to  
easts, would  
but prick  
according to  
that they run  
ve kept sted-  
tning at last,  
to our great  
considerable  
way on foot,  
a native of  
s, which he  
ome. Nei-  
ld pigeons,  
also tygers  
never heard  
ts here. The  
b, which que-  
nquakes, un-  
t. Some are  
contain like-  
s of this na-  
ood success,  
g for it. This  
arbour for  
ride at an-  
about twelve  
ntrey is ve-  
tives of For-  
raced out of  
several times

pecially the  
fat, strong,  
being able  
to

*Nat. Form.*



1662. unknown to them; besides this prerogative of consulting and punishing, they are upon the same level with the rest.

*Age in high esteem among them.* Age is the only thing in extraordinary respect among them; this they shew in giving way, either in the streets or at table, to their elders, who are also first served, and speak before the rest.

*Their marriages.* The men never marry before 50 years of age, but the women as they are marriageable. The natives of *Formosa* don't suffer their hair to grow below their ears, before they come to the state of manhood, when they let it grow as long as it can. If a young man has a mind to marry a certain maid, he sends one of his friends with the ordinary marriage presents, which are commonly a *Chinese* suit of cloths, bracelets of twisted reeds, some broad rings of iron or brass, and such like baubles of an inconsiderable value; if the maid accepts of the presents, the match is made. Whilst they are young they don't dwell together in the same house, which is not allow'd of 'till the husband be 50 years of age. But as soon as the young married man has an inclination to meet with his wife, he comes privately into her hut, which is commonly in the field, and lays himself down in the place where she commonly sleeps, where she comes to him, but is sure to fend him away again early in the morning. All the children begot betwixt them, before both the husband and wife be arrived to the age of 37 years, are kill'd; for after the woman is sure she is with child, one of their she priests lays the big bellied woman upon her back, and squeezes her so long with her hands and feet till she miscarries, not without great hazard and pains, which they willingly undergo, because they reckon it a great sin to keep any children, begot before that time, alive, but preserve them carefully afterwards. The mother keeps the infant close by her till it be two years old, when it is sometimes permitted to see the father. Their marriages are as soon dissolv'd as they are contracted, and that upon very slight occasions; but if the husband parts from his wife without any reason, he loses his marriage presents, but in case of adultery, or that the woman is out-rageous, his marriage presents must be restored unto him; the women enjoy the same prerogative, both parties being afterwards at liberty to marry where they please, which sometimes happens twice or thrice a year. They make no great account of fornication, provided it may be done in private, but are very cautious of committing incest.

*Justice.* Here are no courts of justice, every one being at liberty to take satisfaction against

him. If a man be robb'd, and knows who the thief is, he goes straight to his house and fetches either by fair or foul means as much from thence as he thinks will sufficiently repay his loss, which however occasions great disputes, nay murder. He that has kill'd another lies for it till he has given satisfaction to the deceased's kindred, which consists commonly in some hogs and stagskins, then he may return unmolested. Adultery, when discovered, is commonly made up with two or three hogs, according to the ability of the cuckold-maker, which done the cuckold lives both with him and his wife in good correspondence. Sometimes one or more villages engage in war against one another, and surprise those that work in the field, whom they kill, and carry their heads and what booty they can get, to their houses; this they often do in the night time; if they have had good success, they rejoice after their return home, with eating and drinking to great excess. Those who have behaved themselves well in such an expedition, are esteemed before the rest.

Their weapons are long and broad shields, instead of targets, wherewith they cover their bodies, short and broad scymeters which do great execution, darts pointed with iron; they have also bows and arrows, but use no firelocks. As far as ever I could learn, they have no writings or books; their pagan idolatry is transmitted from the parents to their children by word of mouth; they believe the world to have neither beginning nor end, and that the souls of such as have done well, shall be rewarded hereafter. As soon as they are dead, the friends erect a kind of scaffold before the door of the house, where they place the dead carcass surrounded with small standards; near by they set a vessel with water for the soul to bath it self in, and to wash away all its sins; as for instance, to have brought children into the world before 37 years of age; to have worn rich cloaths in the forbidden season; to have catch'd oysters, crabs and such like insignificant things; but murder, man-slaughter, adultery, fornication, theft, and such like horrid crimes, they look upon as small trespasses only, which may be expiated by a certain quantity of rice, stagskins and strong liquors.

They have several Gods, but adore two in particular; when it thunders they say the great man is angry with his spouse, and for that reason refuses to send them rain, for which reason they adore his spouse; the other they say, is of a malicious nature, and therefore adore him, for fear he should hurt them. They have no other but female priests, they sacrifice pigs, stags and fruits; during which the she priests cry out, and fall

1662.

1662. fall all fell ten The par with asce they walf ple. fortu hallo in fo nativ they so p till tain casses ous friend drink gethe after, was t Formo pany duced of the chief who ad able to much voyage Alter Decemb month before anchor, chief di pany. The leja or city, is or dem kingdon some of far as Sa der upon kingdon The kin ranns tal lemy, th There a ages Ma of land which y which c channels streights on the e the other Vol.

1662. fall into extasies afterwards, with tremblings all over their bodies, as if they were possessed by an evil spirit, and then they pretend the idol discovers his secrets to them: The standers by, which are for the most part women, in the mean while get drunk with strong liquors. These female priests ascend to the top of their temples, where they expose themselves quite naked, and wash their bodies in the sight of the people. They pretend to foretel good or ill fortune, to banish the devil, and to purge unhallowed places. It was formerly a custom in some certain villages, that if any of the natives lay sick, past all hopes of recovery, they used to tie a rope about his neck, and so pull him up and let him down again, till they had cured his distemper by a certain death. They dry their dead carcasses over a fire, which occasions a nauseous scent, whilst the kindred, relations and friends pass away the time with eating, drinking and dancing for several days together. The dry'd corps is kept two years after, and then buried in the house. This was the ancient government of the isle of *Formosa*, but since the *Dutch East-India* company has got footing there, they have introduced other laws among them, and instead of their councils, constituted one of their chief men as supervisor in every village, who administered justice, and was accountable to the governor of the island. Thus much of *Formosa*, 'tis time to return to our voyage.

After we had left *Teywan*, the 11<sup>th</sup> of December, we arrived the 30<sup>th</sup> of the same month without any remarkable accident, before the city of *Malacca*, where we dropt anchor, and found Mr. *John Wits* to be chief director there for our *East-India* company.

The kingdom of *Malacca*, otherwise *Maleja* or *Maleca*, thus called after its capital city, is situate upon the same tract of ground or demi-island, which comprehends the kingdoms of *Martevan*, *Quedam*, *Pera* and some other countries extending it self as far as *Sumatra*, the streights of which border upon it to the west and south, as the kingdoms of *Pan* and *Jobor* do to the east. The kingdom of *Malacca* is by some historians taken for the *Golden Chersonese* of *Ptolemy*, tho' at present it is no demi-island. There are some who affirm, that in former ages *Malacca* was join'd by a streight neck of land to the isle of *Sumatra*, instead of which you see now a branch of the ocean, which divides it self into two navigable channels; the first of which is call'd the streights of *Sinkapura*, because it borders on the east side of the cape of that name; the other is call'd the channel of *Saban*,

VOL. II.

from an island that lies to the west of it. This country extends for about 64 leagues in length, all along the sea-coast, beginning at the island of *Cambilan* or *Zabilan* as far as the isle of *Beitan*, its utmost boundary on that side, or rather it ends in the cape of *Sinkapura*, 20 leagues from *Malacca*.

Its capital city is likewise call'd *Malacca*, its capital being the same, in former time call'd *Ta-kela*; it lies under 2 deg. 30 min. of northern latitude, opposite to *Sumatra*, in a bay at the ascent of a hill, on the west-side of the river *Muar* (otherwise call'd *Gaze* and *Tyga* and *Krosant*, or as the *Dutch* express it *Krisjorant*) which having its rise deep in the countrey, divides the castle from the city, and washing its walls, falls with a rapid current into the sea. Cross this river is a strong bridge built of stone, with several arches: This city is very large in compass, being not many years before surrounded with a wall of square stones and bastions, by the *Dutch*. It is very populous, the houses being built very close, tho' it has some very broad and handsome streets, which are planted on both sides with trees. In the midst of the city is a hill with a very fair church dedicated to *St. Paul*, on the top of it, where divine service is perform'd in *Dutch*: The steeple, church and monasteries founded here by the *Portuguese*, are much decay'd. Most of the houses here are built of strong bamboo canes, which are very durable in dry weather, tho' there are also some stone houses here; they are generally not very large, and low, provided with small apartments and slenderly furnish'd.

The city of *Malacca* was in 1610 taken by *Albuquerque* the *Portuguese* general, in the following manner: One *Manuel*, an *Arabian*, or rather *Mabometian*, by birth, being at that time king of *Malacca*, entred into a league with *Albuquerque*, which he soon broke after, putting all the *Portuguese* to the sword. *Albuquerque* soon after appeared before the city, and attack'd it unexpectedly, whilst the king and his courtiers were feasting at the wedding of his daughter; the *Portuguese* set fire to one end of the city, notwithstanding which, the inhabitants defended themselves like desperate men, even the women untilling the houses, and giving what assistance they could for the defence of the place; but at last the *Portuguese* having fought their way thro' the arm'd elephants, they entred the city, forcing the king to fly into the wilderness, where he died. They got a vast booty and above 200000 crowns in money. The *Portuguese* were very careful to fortify the town by a strong castle, and built several fine churches and monasteries; they

Z z

had



1662. had five parochial churches, and monasteries in great numbers. Among the rest, the jesuits had erected a noble college here, with magnificent apartments; they were very liberal, and received all strangers travelling to those parts. There was a church here dedicated to our lady, where they say *Xaverius* preached often, and performed great miracles. Upon a high hill, within the city, the capuchins had a monastery; whilst the *Roman* catholics were in possession of it, it was erected into a bishoprick, under the archbishop of *Goa*. Not many years before the *Portuguese* made themselves masters of it, it was no more than a village, but by the *Javanese* made a city.

Malacca  
attack'd by  
the Dutch.

The *Dutch* admiral *Corelius Matchief* 1605, appeared with 11 ships and 1300 soldiers before the city of *Malacca*, where at the time *Don Furiado de Mendoza*, a brave soldier, was commander in chief: The first thing he did was to sieze upon 4 ships that lay in the road; afterwards he set fire to the suburbs, and batter'd the place for two or three months, which occasioned great famine and mortality within the city. But the *Portuguese*, who were sensible of the importance of this place, sent a considerable fleet from *Goa* to their relief, which engaging with ours, a small fight ensued, in which the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* lost two ships each; at last the *Portuguese* finding the *Dutch* resolv'd to board them, retired under the castle, but were so closely pursued by *Matchief*, that he ruin'd their whole fleet, consisting of 16 galleots, 14 galleasses, and 14 smaller vessels, with 3000 men on board them.

The Dutch  
take Ma-  
lacca.

The king of *Jobor* besieged the city of *Malacca* in 1606, with 60000 men, the *Portuguese* having maintained themselves there till 1640, when the *Dutch* after a siege of six months made themselves masters of it; after the *Portuguese* had been in possession of it 130 years. The *Dutch* found here besides a vast booty, a great cannon which carried a shot of 64 pounds weight, since which time the *Dutch* have left no stone unturn'd to stock this city with all sorts of necessaries as well as with inhabitants, both *Dutch* and *Indians*. The origin and progress of *Malacca* is this, described by *Barros* and some other historians.

The origin  
of Malacca.

The foundation of *Malacca* was laid about 250 years before the arrival of the *Portuguese* in the *Indies*. About that time *Sangsefinga* reign'd in *Sinkapura*, situate under 30 min. of northern latitude, and in the neighbouring country of *Java*, one *Paravisa*, who at his death left two sons under the guardianship of his own brother, their uncle; but he having found means to murder the eldest, usurp'd the throne; at which

some of the noble *Javanese* being highly disgusted, did with *Paramisora*, their late king's youngest son, fly to *Sinkapura*, where they met with a kind reception from *Sangsefinga*, but it was not long before *Paramisora*, in combination with his *Javanese*, murder'd *Sangsefinga*, and put himself in possession of his kingdom. The king of *Siam* being highly exasperated at the treachery committed against *Sangsefinga*, his vassal and son-in-law, forced the *Javanese* to quit the country, who being now obliged to seek for a new habitation, settled themselves near the river *Muar*, where they built a strong hold, call'd *Pagopago*; besides the *Javanese*, *Paramisora* was follow'd by 2000 others, such as they call *Cellati*, who live upon fishing and robbing; but tho' they had been very instrumental in resettling him in *Sinkapura*, he did not think fit to receive them within the body of his new built city; which made them settle their colony about three or four leagues from the river *Muar*, not far from whence *Malacca* now lies; where they join'd with the inhabitants, who were half savages; since which time their language is call'd the *Malaga* language. But when they began to be streighten'd for room, some of them settled themselves about a quarter of a league from thence, on a hill call'd *Bitan*, surrounded with a large plain: *Paramisora* being taken with the conveniency and pleasant situation of this place, abandon'd *Pagopago*, and transplant'd his colony near this place, which afterwards was call'd *Malacca*, i. e. a banish'd person, in memory of the exiled *Javanese*; and in process of time, all the traffick of *Sinkapura* was transfer'd to *Malacca*. *Saquan Dorja*, son of *Paramisora*, succeeded him in the kingdom, and having submitted himself as a vassal to the king of *Siam*, reduced the whole country of *Sinkapura* to the east, as far as *Puto* on the isle of *Zambilan*, which lies west of *Malacca*, a tract of land of forty leagues in length. The successors of *Saquan Dorja* found means to shake off by degrees the yoke of the king of *Siam*, and to make themselves sovereign kings, especially after they were by the *Perjians*, and those of *Surat*, brought over to the mahometan religion. The king of *Siam* 1502, about 9 years before the *Portuguese* became masters of *Siam*, did attack the king of *Malacca* with a fleet of 200 sail, aboard of which were 6000 soldiers, under the conduct of *Laofanava Privan*, his admiral and governor of *Ligoor*, but his fleet was miserably scatter'd by a tempest, and many of his ships fell into the hands of the mahometans by treachery.

The harbour of *Malacca* is one of the finest in all the *Indies*, being navigable at low water all the seasons of the year, a conveniency belong-

1662.

1662. below  
It is  
for  
bers  
gal,  
Siam  
Indie  
fessio  
its tr  
stone  
Mala  
Japa  
and S  
est cit  
Before  
sters c  
thithe  
month  
taking  
staying  
cessity  
with a  
ever d

Great pos-  
sage thro'  
the  
streights  
of Malacca.

All  
viz. of  
ing and  
to wit  
and o  
those c  
must p  
*Sinkap*  
as I tol  
to take  
sing tha  
but the  
fish'd th  
able im  
sick the  
cing but  
upon as  
all prec  
*Cbina*,  
ing islan  
da, *Java*  
places.  
them w  
chandise  
jang and  
of tin, y  
by the f  
*Malacca*  
the coast  
*Surat*, an  
bring hit  
lain, dar  
rhubarb,  
great an  
which ch  
cense, st  
unwroug  
and whi  
quick-silv  
from Ca

1662. belonging scarce to any other in the *Indies*. It is most conveniently situated for traffick, for there you may to this day see vast numbers of merchants ships coming from *Bengal*, *Coromandel*, *Banda*, *Java*, *Sumatra*, *Siam*, and in short from all parts of the *Indies*. Whilst the *Portuguese* were in possession of it, this city was very famous for its traffick and riches in gold, precious stones, and all other rarities of the *Indies*; *Malacca* being the key of the *China* and *Japan* trade, and of the *Malacca* islands and *Sunda*. In short *Malacca* was the richest city in the *Indies*, next to *Goa* and *Ormus*. Before the *Dutch* had made themselves masters of *Malacca*, a ship was sent every year thither from *Portugal*, which setting out a month before their *East-India* fleet, and taking its direct course thither, without staying in any place, except in case of necessity, used to freight there, and return with a richer cargo than any other ship ever did.

Great passage thro' the Straights of Malacca.

All the ships that came from the north, viz. of *China*, *Japan*, *Siam*, *Cambodia*, *Tonking* and *Manilla*, and are bound for the west, to wit to the coast of *Coromandel*, *Bengale*, and other places thereabouts, as likewise those coming from the west to the north, must pass thro' the Straights of *Malacca* or *Sinkapura*, and consequently by *Malacca*, as I told you before. The *Portuguese* used to take 10 per cent. custom of all ships passing that way, whereby they got vast riches, but the *Dutch East-India* company has abolished this, looking upon it as an unreasonable imposition, and are contented to traffick there. *Malacca* is a countrey producing but very little it self, but must be look'd upon as the staple of the *Indies*, whither all precious commodities are brought from *China*, the *Molucca* and other neighbouring islands, from *Bengal*, *Coromandel*, *Banda*, *Java*, *Sumatra*, *Siam*, *Pegu* and other places. The island of *Sumatra* furnishes them with gold, pepper and other merchandises; from *Ligoor*, *Pera*, *Queda*, *Outjang* and *Salang* they have vast quantities of tin, which is brought up those places by the factors of the company, and sent to *Malacca*, from whence it is transported to the coast of *Coromandel*, to *Bengal*, *Persia* and *Surat*, and sold for ready money. The *Chinese* bring hither vast stores of silk and porcelain, damasks, brocados, sattins, musk, rhubarb, iron, saltpeter, fine silver, pearls great and small, ivory and *China* fans, which they exchange for pepper, frankincense, stuffs of *Cambaya*, coral wrought and unwrought, painted callicoos of *Palakatte*, and white callicoos of *Bengal*, cinnabar, quick-silver, and such other drugs as come from *Cambaya*. The island of *Java* sup-

plies them with rice, oxen, sheep, flocks, flesh and pork; in short, there is such a vast traffick and concourse of merchants here, that from thence probably it got the name of the *Golden Obergonefus* among the ancients; *Malacca* being certainly the richest harbour that can be seen; for formerly, and even to this day, the merchants were so rich here, that they used to compute by no less than by bars of gold, of which a vast quantity is found near the rivers and in the mountains to the west, to wit, on the famous rivers *Kelan*, and *Peren* or *Peragab*. The mahometans living along the coast, used formerly to trade hither with linen and some other commodities, but not so much of late years, neither is the pepper trade so considerable here now, as in former days, since the *Dutch East-India* company have settled their factories on the eastern coast of *Sumatra*, which produces great quantities of pepper. However, ships are sometimes detained here for a considerable time, by reason of the contrary *Monzon* or season winds.

Formerly they had no other coin but what was made of tin at *Malacca*, being of great weight, but little value; or rather they exchanged their commodities for gold and silver by weight; but now they coin both gold and silver, a piece of eight being worth commonly two gilders 11 stivers. They have two sorts of weights, viz. the great and small bar: The great bar consists of 200 *Kattys*, each *Katty* containing 26 *Tayls*, or 384 ounces *Portuguese* weight, a *Tayl* being a ounce and a half: The small bar comprehends likewise 200 *Kattys*, each *Katty* comprehending 22 *Tayls*. According to the computation of others, a bar of *Malacca* contains 200 *Kattys Aelshyns*, or three *Chinese Pikol* each *Pikol* computed at 122 pound weight, making altogether 366 pound weight. The great bar or weight is made use of when they weigh pepper, cloves, nutmegs, mace, white and red sandals, indigo, allum, eagles-wood and civet; with the lesser weight, quick-silver, copper, leaf-gold, oil of nutmegs, benzoin, camphire and such like commodities. The city of *Malacca* is inhabited by many *Dutch*, but for the most part by *Mestices* and *Kastices*, some *Chinese*, *Pagans* and *Jews*, for the conveniency of traffick.

The *Malayars* or natives of *Malacca* are tawny, with long black hair, great eyes and flat noses; they deduce their origin from the *Javaneze*, but their eyes are quite different, they are for the most part naked, wearing only a piece of stuff wrapt about the middle, with their arms and legs naked. Their only ornament being gold bracelets and earrings set with precious stones. The women

1662.

1662. women wear silk cloaths and short skirts, embroidered with gold and precious stones, some of which are twited in their locks, which are very long. The women are extravagantly proud here, expecting more reverence than any other Indian women. There is also another peculiar sort of men in Malacca, called by the Dutch *Kakerlakken* (from a certain monstrous creature in the Indies of the same name) who are blind by day, and can only see by night. They can tell money, work, and do any other thing in the dark, which they cannot do by daylight, which they pass away for the most part in sleeping, and seldom rise 'till sunset. In shape and proportion of their limbs, as well as by their complexion, they resemble the Europeans, having commonly grey eyes; whereas all the eastern nations have black and dark brown eyes. Their hair is inclining to yellow, and of such a length among the women, that it reaches down to their hips; their feet are bent inward. The same kind is likewise found in some other places of the Indies, and in Africa.

The language used at Malacca is called the *Malaya* tongue, from the natives of the country, being very famous throughout the East-Indies. For the general concurrence of so many nations, different in their languages, has put them upon a necessity of compiling a certain language, composed of the best and choicest words of all the rest, which therefore is accounted the neatest and most agreeable of the East-Indies, which is the reason that not only the neighbouring, but also far distant nations that trade with Malacca, are desirous to learn it, and look upon it as a great accomplishment. For the better encouragement of this language, and the benefit of their officers and factors, the Dutch East-India company has caused a dictionary both in the *Malaya* and Dutch tongues to be publish'd. Most of the *Malayers* are either christians or mahometans, tho' there are likewise some pagans and Jews settled at Malacca, for the convenience of commerce. The coast of Malacca is a flat or marshy country, and consequently not extraordinary wholesome; but deeper in the country are many hills and wilderesses, which are plainly discovered at sea. It produces but little for the sustenance of life, except what is brought forth in gardens, and what grows among the mountains, where you meet with some rice and pease; the defect of which is supply'd by vast numbers of small vessels, which come every day from *Bengal* and *Sumatra*, and bring thither rice, and other eatables. However, they are pretty well stored with such fruits as commonly grow

in the Indies. The fruit *Durions* grow here much better and larger than in any other part of the Indies: They have likewise *Ananas*, *Jambos*, *Mangoes*, *Karambolas* and *Papajas*; they have whole woods of coco-trees. Here grows a certain tree call'd the mourning-tree by the Portuguese, because its flowers close up in the night-time. Here you may meet also with cinamon trees, but not very many, neither do they approach in goodness to those of Ceylon. But of *Kalamback* or *Aloe* wood and *Benzoin* they have great plenty. Here are to be found some Indian fruits, peculiar only to this place, but no pears, apples, plums, cherries, or any such like European-fruits. Oxen, cows, sheep and horses are likewise very scarce here, which are brought thither a great way out of the country, and are seldom very fat. Formerly the country hereabouts did abound in wild beasts of all sorts, such as tygers, elephants, &c. which were so ravenous, that they used to break in the night-time into the houses of the inhabitants, who for their better security, used to sleep upon trees; but since it has been so well peopled by the Dutch, this sort of wild beasts are but seldom heard of.

Just by Malacca is the cape or point of land call'd *Rabado*, and the cape of *Barcelai*, being a very high mountain near a point of land. Not far from Malacca is a very large mountain call'd *Madian*, which by reason of the vast quantities of salt-petre it contains within its bowels, 1646, did break out with such a terrible noise and earthquakes, as if the day of judgment was at hand.

*Sinkapura* lies on the most southern point of all Asia, about half a degree to the north of the line, and 20 leagues from Malacca. This cape has imparted its name to the streights of *Sinkapura*. The country of *Sinkapura* had before Malacca was built its own kings, and was the chiefest place of trade on this coast, being much frequented by the Chinese merchants, and those of *Cambaya*. The mountains near the streights of *Sinkapura* bearing the same name, produce most excellent diamonds. About *Sinkapura* is a certain nation, which with their whole families live always at sea in their small vessels; they are called *Saletes*, live upon fishing, and are subject to the king of *Jor*. About two leagues beyond the streights of *Sinkapura* is the river *Jabor*, at the entrance of which you see two mountains, or rather high islands shaped like sugar loaves; one is four times bigger than the other, lying N. N. E. as you enter the river, and the other N. E. On the other side of the river you discover a high hill, tho' the south-side of the river is a champaign country.

There

Kakerlak-  
ken.

The Mala-  
ya tongue.

Their reli-  
gion.

The coun-  
try.

1662.

1662. TH  
this  
The isle of  
Rocks.

The king-  
dom of Jor  
or Johor.

Cape Ro-  
chado and  
Barcelai.

The moun-  
tain Ma-  
dian.

*Sinkapura*

The dip-  
sition of  
the inha-  
bitants.

Their cli-  
mate.

of a  
Por  
of R  
A  
ano  
the  
Isan  
pret  
point  
of M  
fouth  
like  
to w  
or J  
the k  
will  
of Jo  
The  
debt  
by fo  
Gobor  
Malac  
dom  
on Pa  
bor or  
very l  
in 16  
left o  
immed  
Jabor  
built,  
Jabor  
buildin  
admir  
pieces  
taken  
from M  
of the  
Jor re  
half da  
near the  
try, ab  
big as  
Ananae  
alio gro  
fiers, co  
sorts of  
sea-mon  
The  
very la  
proud  
ction is  
faces, c  
which t  
Bel, b  
ornamen  
The  
ving or  
membe  
The ri  
Vol.

1662. There is 10 fathom water at the mouth of this river.

*The isle of Rocks.* To the south of Malacca is a small isle, of about half a league in compass, by the Portuguese call'd *Ilha das Pedras*, or the *Isle of Rocks*, and has very good fresh water.

About half a cannon shot from the city, another small island call'd *Malacca*, and by the Portuguese *Ilha das Naos*, or the *Ship Island*. Two leagues from Malacca is a pretty large isle call'd *Septa*. That vast point or tract of land on which the country of Malacca or Malaya lies, being the most southern of all the *East-Indies*, comprehends likewise several other kingdoms and cities, to wit, *Patany*, *Paban*, *Pera*, *Queda*, *Jobor* or *Jor*, *Ligoor*, and farther to the north the kingdom and city of *Tanassery*. We will give you a short account of the kingdom of *Jobor*, *Putany*, *Ligoor* and *Paban*.

*The kingdom of Jor or Jobor.*

The kingdom of *Jor* or *Jobor* stands indebted for its name to its capital city, call'd by some *Goer* or *Goera*, and *Joor* or *Gabor*. It is situate at the very streights of Malacca, bordering in part upon the kingdom of Malacca, and on the other side upon *Pan* or *Paban*. The antient city of *Jobor* or *Jor* (call'd in some maps *Guar*) was very large and magnificently built, but was in 1603 destroyed by the Portuguese, who left only a few houses standing, which were immediately inhabited again. The king of *Jobor* caus'd in 1609 another city to be built, somewhat higher up the river above *Jobor*; this he call'd *Batusabar*, towards the building of which, the Dutch under their admiral *Peter Verkoeven* contributed 3000 pieces of eight, out of the booty they had taken from the Portuguese ships coming from *Makao*, near the cape *Rachado*. Most of the chief inhabitants of the old city of *Jor* retired from thence to *Batusabar*; a half day's journey from whence is *Sedalli*, near the sea-side. It is a very fertile country, abounding in lemons, and citrons as big as a man's head, *Bananaes*, *Batataes*, *Ananaes*, and other Indian fruits. They have also great store of pepper, cinnamon, bufflers, cows, stags, wild boars, and divers sorts of monkeys and birds, besides some sea-monsters.

*The disposition of the inhabitants.*

The inhabitants are naturally brave, but very lascivious, liars, great dissemblers, and proud beyond measure. Their complexion is inclining to a light blue, with broad faces, crooked noses, and very black teeth, which they acquire by chewing the weed *Belet*, black teeth being accounted a great ornament among them.

*Their clothing.*

The common people go quite naked, having only a piece of stuff to cover their members, which hangs down to their toes. The rich and better sort wear a kind of

Vol. II.

jackets made of blue, green or red callicoe, or what colour they please; they are shaped like our shirts, with wide sleeves, are open before, and reach only to their knees. They have also two silken strings of the same colour with the jacket, one serves for a girdle, the other for a head-string. They paint their nails yellow, and the greater quality they pretend to the longer they wear their nails. The richer sort commonly wear a poniard on their side, enriched with precious stones. Their king has many other petty kings, his vassals, under his jurisdiction. The king of *Jor* or *Jobor* in 1606 attack'd the city of Malacca with 60000 men, which shews him to be a potent prince, and in the taking of the city of *Jor*, the Portuguese got 1500 brass pieces of cannon; in 1608, *Ratipont* the then king of *Jor*, being about 30 years of age, came aboard Dutch fleet with 30 of his wives, he had three gold chains set with precious stones about his neck, and his poniard was likewise enriched with sapphires and diamonds, valued at 50000 gilders. The inhabitants are one half Mahometans, the other Pagans: 1609, one *John de Paratuan* was king of *Jor*, he was styled the *Great King*, being likewise king of Malacca, and *Raya Sybrang*, i. e. prince of the other side of the river. In 1611, the king of *Azem* sent back the brother of the king of *Jor*, with a fleet of 36 ships, and a convoy of 2000 men, with abundance of cannon and ammunition, in order to assist in the rebuilding of the city of *Jor*. It was generally reported, that the king of *Azem* having given his sister in marriage to him, did intend to set him upon the throne, instead of his brother, who then reigned.

*Linga* is an island under the jurisdiction of the king of *Jobor*, who has a governor there; it produces abundance of *Zagu*, but no rice; in 1606 it had about 3000 inhabitants.

The kingdom of *Pan* or *Paban*, is by the Portuguese call'd *Paon*, and by others after the *Arabians* *Phaan*; it being a custom among the mahometan *Arabians* to pronounce *pbe* instead of *p*. To the north it borders upon the kingdom of *Patany*, and adjoins to that of *Jobor*, as well as to the streights of Malacca. The city of *Paban* is situate about a league from the sea-shore, being inhabited only by the nobility, the common people dwelling in the suburbs. It is not very large, but surrounded with a wall made of the trunks of trees joined close together, of about four fathoms high, strengthened on each corner with a bastion, but not fill'd with earth. The streets are enclosed on both sides with hedges of reeds, and planted with coco and other trees, resembling rather some gardens adjoining to one another in the suburbs, than

A a a

a well

1662. a well regulated city, the houses being generally of reed and straw, only the king's palace is of wood. The river of *Paban* is very broad, but not navigable by galleys except at high water: The country round about is very low, and produces about 300 bahars of pepper; as likewise *Palo de Aquila* or eagle wood, *Kalamback* wood and camphire, but not so good as that of *Bornee*, gold (but very coarse) nutmegs, mace, *Sapan* wood, diamonds, *Pedro de Porco*, or hogs stones, which are accounted a greater antidote than the bezoar stone. Deeper into the country are abundance of elephants. The inhabitants are the greatest impostors in the world. The king is tributary to the king of *Siam*, but after *Albuquerque* had conquered *Malacca*, he sent his deputies to *Paban*, to oblige that king to promise fealty to him. At *Paban* great quantities of baskets are made and sold, they are better than those made in *Java*, but not so good as the *Portuguese*. They also cast great guns here of 3000 pounds weight. The inhabitants are partly mahometans, partly pagans. Their king who reigned in 1612, had married the youngest sister of the queen of *Patane*. The two sisters having not seen one another in 28 years, the queen of *Patane* sent to the king of *Paban*, to desire leave for her sister, his spouse, to come to see her, which the king refusing, she laid an embargo upon all the ships laden with rice, and bound from *Siam*, *Campaja*, *Lugor*, and other places to *Paban*; and immediately sent a fleet of 70 ships, on board of which were 4000 men, with strict orders to bring along with them the queen of *Paban*, whether the king were willing or not; but it was not long before the king of *Paban*, with the queen his spouse, and two young children, being forced by famine and a revolt among his subjects to leave the country, came to visit the queen of *Patane*, where they met at first but with a cold reception, not one of all the queen's court giving the king of *Paban* as much as one visit, but caused all his dogs to be kill'd, he being not able to keep them any longer. Some days after matters began however to look with a better face; for the 1<sup>st</sup> of *August* the queen of *Patane* invited the king of *Paban* to a most sumptuous feast, where she diverted him with several *Indian* women dancers. The king of *Paban* returned not long after with his queen, the sister of the queen of *Patane*, into his country, but carried away with him no presents to make him amends for the charge he had been at, having spent almost all he had. The king of *Paban* who reigned in 1607, was then about 40 years of age, and his son had married the daughter of the king of *Queda*.

The kingdom of *Patane* or *Patany*, having derived its name from its capital city, borders to the south upon *Paban*, being situate upon the same eastern coast, to the north upon *Siam* and the kingdom of *Lugor* or *Ligor*; these two kingdoms being incorporated into one. The city of *Patane* is situate under 7 deg. 56 min. of northern latitude, not far from the sea, and surrounded to the land-side by bogs. The harbour is about half a league from the city, which is about half a league in length, and very narrow, fortified with high wooden pallisado's put close together, according to the custom of these countries. The houses are artificially built of wood and canes, and very lightsome. The suburbs are likewise much longer than broad, and are encompass'd on the backside by a pleasant rivulet. The royal palace and court where most persons of quality live, are environ'd with pallisado-work, in the nature of a *Palanck*; the mahometan church is a stately edifice of brick-work, gilt very richly within, and adorned with pillars, curiously wrought with figures. In the midst close to the wall is the pulpit, carved and gilt all over, unto which the priests are only permitted to ascend by four large steps. They have also several temples dedicated to their *Pagan* idols, among which three excel the rest. When the *Dutch* in 1602 settled first here, they saw in one of those temples belonging to the subjects of the king of *Siam*, a gilt statue resembling a man, but of the bigness of a horse, with one hand down and the other upwards. On each side stood a very large dragon gilt, with two stone statues, to wit, a man on the one, and a woman on the other side, with their hands lift up to heaven. The same they saw in the second, with this difference only, that one half of it was only gilt, the other painted red. In the third was one in the same posture, with a gilt streak cross the breast; and behind the altar of the great idol, was another lesser statue resembling a man, with a large horn in the forehead; this idol their priests say, represents the great God.

The climate is very temperate and wholesome here, notwithstanding it lies near the line. Their summer begins in *February*, and continues nine months, viz. till the end of *October*, during which season they have two different winds, to wit, by day from the sea, and by night from the land-side. In *November*, *December* and *January* is their winter, when it blows and rains so violently from the north-east, that there is no stirring for ships out of the harbour till *February*, when the wind turning to the east the rains cease, and the fair season returns. The country

1661.  
The houses of Patane.

How they catch the elephants.

The constitution of the inhabitants.

Temperature of the air.

166. counting in  
elf of  
Anan  
pome  
liar K  
ing tr  
month  
tho' th  
before  
with b  
rice: T  
but ca  
other  
and wi  
tures,  
as ours  
elephan  
(which  
doves a  
The w  
mong t  
men to  
when th  
bury th  
hometan  
laja are  
neither  
eat it.

The elephants are caught on a ride on a into the as soon he engaged entangled elephant legs, and useful for his teeth in China.

The flocks of crabs the fame that are are likewise

The natives are coloured very proper never appear a train of so affable among them are no fol exercises, co but more of arms. The men which ren their wives mitted to They have



166.

country of *Patane* is very fruitful, abounding in rice and many other fruits, the chiefest of which are the *Durians*, *Mangestans*, *Ananas*, *Lancrats*, *Ramboutans*, *Pisangs*, pomegranates, oranges, lemons, and a peculiar kind of lemons, call'd *Gibol Lemons*, being transplanted hither from *China*. Each month here produces its peculiar fruits, tho' those of certain months are preferable before the rest. The grounds are plowed with bufflers or oxen, which they sow with rice: They also plant good store of pepper, but cannot sell it so cheap here as in some other parts of the *East-Indies*. The woods and wildernesses are stock'd with wild creatures, such as hares, rabbits, (but not so big as ours) stags, wild boars, tigers, bufflers, elephants, apes, monkeys, geese and ducks, (which lay eggs twice every day) and turtle-doves as finely coloured as the best parrots. The wild hogs do incredible mischief among the rice, which obliges the countrymen to watch in the field in the night-time; when they shoot or otherwise kill them, they bury their carcasses under ground; the mahometans (for such those of *Patan* and *Malaya* are) being forbid the use of hogs flesh, neither will they permit any body else to eat it.

How they catch the elephants.

The elephants, as I am credibly inform'd, are catch'd in the following manner: They ride on the back of a tame large elephant into the woods, whom they let loose there; as soon as he meets with a wild elephant he engages him, and whilst their snouts are entangled, some come from behind the wild elephant and twist a rope round his hind legs, and so keep him either to render him useful for the wars, or else kill him for his teeth sake, which are in great esteem in *China*.

The sea hereabouts produces great store of craw fish, oysters and tortoises; and the same drugs, metals, and precious stones, that are found in the kingdom of *Paban*, are likewise to be met with here.

The constitution of the inhabitants.

The natives of *Patane* are of an ash-coloured complexion and well shaped, but very proud and conceited; the richer sort never appearing abroad without a great train of servants. They are however very affable and civil in conversation, as well among themselves as to strangers; but they are no soldiers, nor inclined to warlike exercises, courage being none of their talent, but more taken with pleasures than the use of arms. Their clothing is none of the best. The men are extremely addicted to venery, which renders them jealous above measure, their wives and daughters being not permitted to see their nearest and best friends. They have an antient custom since enacted

into a law, that to check that enormous vice of sodomy, the men are obliged to wear constantly two or three small bells made of gold, silver or lead, betwixt the prepuce and the glans, or head of the yard. Adultery is a capital crime with them, especially among the great officers and nobles of the kingdom; the father of the person that has committed the crime, or if he be not living, the next of kin is obliged to supply the place of executioner, but the miscreant has the liberty to chuse what kind of death he pleases. Notwithstanding this severe punishment, adultery is very frequent among them, by reason of the extraordinary lasciviousness of the women, who are very desirous, and love to wallow in pleasures. Fornication betwixt two unmarried persons is not look'd upon so much as a trespass. Nothing is more common than if any foreign merchants come to *Patane*, to ask them whether they don't want some women for their conveniency, and there is no want of young handsome women who offer their service, out of whom each may take his choice, and agree with her as he best can, as to what he is to allow her per month; which done, she immediately repairs to his lodgings, where in the day time she serves for a chamber-maid, and in the night for a bedfellow; and during this agreement, the man must be as careful to avoid the commerce of other women, as she is on her side, unless he will expose himself to manifest danger. At parting the man pays her her wages, and so they are both free; and if he has a mind to change, he need not look far for one, it being a custom among the nobles here to entertain many female slaves, whom they let out for such a use, and gain great profit by them. For the rest the natives are naturally lazy and idle, living for the most part upon fishing, and some handicraft trades; the best is, that they can be contented with a little, drink scarce any thing but water, and have a natural aversion to strong liquors. Almost all the traffick and other business is in the hands of the *Chinese*, who either themselves or their factors, continually trade betwixt this and the circumjacent countries, such as *Siam*, *Ligor*, *Kamboja*, *Kouchinchina*, *Makassar*, *Paban*, *Jambi*, *Jabor*, *Baniam* and other both inland and maritime places, whither they transport all sorts of *Chinese* commodities from *Patane*, as porcelain pots, pans, kettles, and iron work of all sorts. The chief riches of the natives consist in their lands and slaves, who live upon a small allowance of rice and fish; but the foreign merchants transport thither abundance of rich merchandizes.

From



1662. From *Bengale* and *Malacca* they send clothes to *Patane*; from *Java* sandel wood; from *Borneo* camphire, slaves, wax and bezoar-stones; from *Siam* the inhabitants of *Patane* are furnished with gold, rice, salt and lead; from *Siampa* and *Camboja* with slaves, cotton, *Kalamback*, and the finest aloes-wood; from *Cbina* with white and yellow silk,

1662. gauzes, damasks, sattins, porcelain, iron and copper; from *Japan* with scimeters, copper, and such like commodities. Many things are also transported hither that are bought up in other places by foreigners; as from *Amboyna* and *Banda*, nutmegs, rice and cloves; from *Timor* sandel-wood; from *Jamby* and *Andragny* pepper, which they

Their traf-  
fick.



fetch likewise from *Champor*, *Libor*, *Paban*, *Mordyllion* and *Ligor*: *Pegu* supplies *Patane* with abundance of precious stones; there are also many things exported from thence by the foreign merchants; those of *Labor* and *Paban* provide themselves here with rice, salt, oxen, fowls and other eatables; those of *Malacca* transport the bezoar stones; those of *Borneo* iron, steel and copper; the *Siamese* all sorts of clothings and pepper; the *Chinefe* pepper, camphire, white and yellow sandel-wood, skins, ivory, bufflers horns, and such like; the *Japanese* stags skins, tin, lead and silk.

The country of *Patane* is much more powerful in shipping than *Jabor*, *Paban*, or any of the circumjacent kingdoms: They are governed by a king, who as well as the king of *Malaya* is tributary to the king of *Siam*; their usual yearly tribute consisting of a flower wrought with gold, some fine cloths, velvets and scarlets; the king's chief counsellors are called *Meniary*.

This kingdom was in 1602 under the government of a queen, after the decease of her husband, she being then but 15 years of age. Her name was *Pratie*, she used to keep constantly within the court among her ladies of honour, of whom she had a great number; she did not allow them to marry, but connived at their amorous intrigues. Wherever she went abroad to take the air, (which indeed happened but very seldom) she was mounted on a very fine elephant, and attended by 2000 nobles and great officers, all clad in her deceased royal spouse's liveries, with his coat of arms upon them. Before they returned, she gave them always a splendid entertainment, and so came with the same cavalcade back to her court. The country of *Patane* is so populous, as to be able to bring 180000 armed men into the field; the city and suburbs of *Patane* alone being able to furnish 10000 men.

Divers languages are in vogue, viz. the *Malayan*, *Siamese*, *Patane* and the *Chinefe*; but

The use of  
Ding Ding.

A diffi-  
culty  
of inhabi-  
tants.

1662. but  
mo  
of  
son  
all  
the  
ing  
bro  
cor  
pun  
ing  
his  
the  
flain  
two  
ing  
at th  
for I  
mira  
ful a  
king  
at fea

set far  
Ding  
cellen  
to the  
over  
the hi  
nuary  
ing, f  
mong  
a certa  
is a pa  
could  
covered  
was rec  
bout it  
much v  
of which  
The fr  
rocks,  
the In  
conven  
may ric  
it has  
used for  
draught  
It is  
of wild  
swim o  
feed up  
neverthe  
than any  
a certai  
Shuies E  
rex, the  
are also  
oyfters,  
ned to  
fometim  
The  
us to ta  
Vol.

1662.

but the first is most used here, as well as in most other parts of the *Indies*. The king of *Palane* married his daughter to the eldest son of the king of *Jabor*, (he having six in all) who with his youngest brother lived at the court of *Palane*; but the youngest being engaged in an illegal commerce with his brother's spouse, he kill'd them both, according to the custom of the country, which punishes adultery with death; notwithstanding which, the king of *Palane*, to revenge his daughter's death, caused his son-in-law, the eldest son of the king of *Jabor* to be slain; *John de Paratuani*, and *Regia Sabrang*, two brothers, and both kings of *Jabor*, being not without reason, highly exasperated at this proceeding, sent one *Magat Mangsor Hoch* their ambassador, along with admiral *Jacob Heemskerck*, to solicit a powerful aid from the states-general against the king of *Palane*, but the ambassador dying at sea put a stop to that design.

The Isle of  
Ding Ding.

Having dispatch'd my business here, we set sail the next day to a certain island call'd *Ding Ding*, abounding in fuel and most excellent fresh water. It lies about 30 leagues to the north of *Malacca*, being covered all over with very tall trees, which grow on the hills. We arrived here the 10<sup>th</sup> of *January* 1661, and immediately after our landing, fell to the cutting down of trees; among the rest we endeavoured to pick out a certain kind of trees, the wood of which is a pale red, but to our great amazement could meet with none, till at last we discovered our error, to wit, that the pith only was red, but all the other wood round about it of a different colour. This wood is much valued by the *Indians* for its beauty, of which they make many curious pieces. The fresh water which runs down from the rocks, claims the preference before any in the *Indies*; and this isle has likewise the convenience of a good bay, where ships may ride safely at anchor. On the east-side it has another bay call'd *Cox Bay*, where we used sometimes to catch as much fish at a draught, as our chaloop was able to carry.

Is destitute  
of inhabitants.

It is destitute of inhabitants and all sorts of wild creatures, except wild boars, which swim over thither from the continent to feed upon a certain root that grows there, nevertheless it abounds in water-fowls more than any other place of the *Indies*: Here is a certain kind of birds call'd by the *Dutch* *Schuis Birds*, being of the bigness of a *Storrex*, the head being without feathers. Here are also great quantities of tortoises and oysters, the last of which are often seen fastened to the branches of trees, which hang sometimes above, sometimes under water.

The clearness of the water having invited us to take a turn at swimming, I found

Vol. II.

something sticking to one of my legs, which when I look'd upon, I found to be a sea-apple, and struck it off; but the sting remaining in the flesh occasioned a great inflammation and pain, which was not appeased till a considerable time after the sting was taken out.

1662.

After we had provided ourselves with what this place could afford us, we set sail again the 14<sup>th</sup> of *January*; as we were failing the same day along the coast of *Sumatra*, our trumpeter catch'd a stone-bream of about three feet long, which appearing very fine to the eye, we ordered the cook to dress it for the table of the cabin. We were all so greedy, that when it was brought in, we ask'd the cook whether he was sure he had kept none behind, which he took so ill, that he answered us, whether we look'd upon him as a thief? But it was not long after dinner, before all those that had dined in the cabin, were seized with such a giddiness in their heads, that they were not able to sit upright; I was the first who cry'd out, *We have certainly eat a poisonous fish*; but our surgeon having no proper remedies aboard, we sent our chaloop to the ship the *Leerdam*, from whence being furnished with vomits, we were by the frequent use of them, after a sickness of 14 days restored to our former health. During our sickness our best diversion was, that being inform'd how the cook was as sick as any of us, we were convinced, that notwithstanding his great pretence of honesty, our suspicion was not ill grounded, which verified our old proverb, *That the cook is commonly the last who dies for want of victuals*. Two cats that had eaten the bones of this fish died soon after, tho' some tobacco-water had been given them to occasion a vomiting, but none of us died, some few however were troubled with a lingering distemper afterwards.

They leave  
it.

Apollonius  
sea-bream.

It is not easy to imagine what could be the reason of this disaster, the sea-bream being otherwise a fish both toothsome and wholesome, unless we supposed this bream to have fed upon some poisonous fish, such as those call'd by the *Dutch* *Seaquallan*, which are very poisonous in those hot countries; for if they touch but your flesh, they cause an immediate inflammation; their flesh is as soft as gelly; they are of the bigness of a trencher, or somewhat lesser, have red and purple spots on their backs, and eight teats below on their bellies: At certain seasons of the year, the seas about *Toutekorin*, and near other places on the coast of *Malabar*, are so full of them, that they are obliged to desist from fishing. But before we proceed farther in our voyage, it will be requisite to give you a short account of the isle of *Sumatra*.

Reason of  
the poison  
of this fish.

B b b

The

1662. The large and most potent island of *Sumatra* is by some authors call'd *Somatra*, *The isle of Samatra and Zamatra*. Its situation is to the south-west just opposite to *Malacca*, about eight leagues from the continent, the great isle of *Java*, lying to the south of it. Its extent is from the 5<sup>th</sup> degrees of northern latitude, near the gulph of *Bengala*, to the south south-east, to the 7<sup>th</sup> degree of southern latitude, as far as the streights of *Sunda*, beyond the coast of *Malacca*, comprehending a vast tract of ground of 12 degrees from the south to the north, amounting to 130 leagues. Its whole length is 195 leagues, its breadth 50, and the whole circumference 360.

It is divided  
in many  
kingdoms.

This isle was formerly divided by some into four, by others into 10 kingdoms, among which *Pedir*, *Pazem*, *Acem*, *Kampar*, *Menangkabo*, *Zunda*, *Andragide* and *Auru* were the chiefest. Some there are who mention no less than 30 petty kingdoms, viz. *Daya*, *Lambry*, *Acem* or *Acen* or *Acin*, *Biar*, *Pedir*, *Lide*, *Pirada*, *Pacem*, *Bara*, *Daru*, *Arkat*, *Irkan*, *Rupat*, *Pury*, *Gaka*, *Kamper*, *Kapokan*, *Andragery* or *Andragide*, *Jamby*, *Palimbang*, *Tana*, *Malayo*, *Sakampan*, *Tulumbavan*, *Andaloz*, *Piraman* or *Pryaman*, *Tiko*, or *Tikoww*, *Barros*, *Quincel*, and *Manakapa*, all which borrowed their names from their respective capital cities; and in ancient times were govern'd by their own kings. But in process of time, many of these were swallowed up in the kingdom of *Acin*, the most potent in this island, having under its jurisdiction the kingdoms and cities of *Pedir*, *Pazem*, *Daya*, *Barros*, *Pasman*, *Pryaman* and *Padang*, and consequently the greatest part of the isle of *Sumatra*, besides the kingdoms of *Queto* and *Pera* on the continent. All the other kingdoms and cities of *Sumatra* were conquered by foreign princes. This the southern parts of *Sumatra*, viz. *Sillabar*, *Dampin*, *Liampon*, *Palimbang*, *Jamby* and some others, acknowledge the king of *Bantam* their sovereign, or else the *Mataram* of *Java* for their protector. Some will have the isle of *Sumatra* to be the same the ancients called *Taprobang*, tho' in my opinion that name belongs more properly to the isle of *Ceylon*.

Not many years ago one of the chiefest cities of *Sumatra* was *Palimbang* or *Palem-bang*, situated near the western coast of *Sumatra*, which on 24 November 1659, was laid in ashes by the Dutch admiral and general *John van der Laen*, because the inhabitants had about two years before surprised by treachery two of their yachts call'd the *Jakkatra* and the *Watchman*, and miserably murdered the whole ships crew; and in the next following year had cut to pieces two other Dutchmen that were sent ashore,

from aboard the vessels the *Nicoport* and the *Leerdam* (lately come from the *Texel*) to serve as interpreters, their heads being by special order from the *Orangkay's* put upon lances, and exposed to the view of their comrades that were in the boats.

To revenge so barbarous a murder, a fleet of eleven ships set sail from *Batavia* the 19<sup>th</sup> of October 1659, under command of *John Vander Laen* admiral, and *John Truyfman* vice-admiral, viz. the *Orange*, admiral, the *Postilion*, the *Molucco*, the *Arms of Batavia*, and the *Charles*; three galleots, to wit, the *Apple-tree*, the *Hour-glass*, and *Hammehiel*; and the chaloops, the *Crab*, the *Tronk*, and the *Flying Dear*, mann'd with 600 seamen and 700 land soldiers. The 30<sup>th</sup> they arrived without any remarkable accident in their passage before the river of *Palimbang*, where they met with the yachts the *Bloemendabl*, the *Koukerk*, and the *Cat*, and with the chaloops the *Cony*, and the *Koe-long*, that were cruising thereabouts. The same day they got sight of a Chinese vessel taking its course towards *Jamby*, which they detained till they had entered the river, and on the 3<sup>d</sup> of November sent her in company of the chaloop the *Tronk* to *Jamby*. They entered the river in the following order. First the *Arms of Batavia*, next the *Postilion*, then the yacht the *Bloemendabl*, aboard of which was the admiral, having left the *Orange* at the entrance of the river; the yacht the *Koukerk* vice-admiral, the yacht the *Cat*, the large chaloop the *Crab*; after these came the three galleots, the *Hour-glass*, the *Apple-tree*, the *Hammehiel*; the ships the *Charles* and the *Molucco*, brought up the rear; the other chaloops were ordered to attack the admiral ship. The 3<sup>d</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> of November was spent by the Dutch to enter the river, the 9<sup>th</sup> in the night time they were unexpectedly attacked by some of the inhabitants of *Palimbang*, in which engagement we had four or five wounded, the commanders not being time enough upon their guard. The 10<sup>th</sup> they were advanced betwixt the isle of *Cambira* and the opposite shore, within sight of the city of *Palimbang*, where they discovered three of the enemies forts; the first called *Bamagangan*, situate on the western point of the river of the isle of *Cambara*, the other two upon its east point, opposite to the other, they were called *Matapoura* and *Menapoura*. At our first appearance the enemy kept close within their works, which gave us the more encouragement to penetrate higher up the river with our ships. But several large floats, upon which houses filled with combustible matter were built, being laid in the stream, captain *Jurian Paulson* was ordered with some boats and the yacht the *Hour-glass*,

1662.

A fleet of  
Dutch  
ships just  
to Palim-  
bang.

They at  
rice before  
the river  
of Palim-  
bang.

Cambira  
in sight  
the city.

The inha-  
bitants of  
Palimbang  
murder  
some Dutch.

and 1662.  
Texel) being  
y's put  
view of

der, a *A fleet of*  
*Batavia* Dutch  
mmmand *ships just*  
d John *to Palan-*  
*bang.*

Orange,

the Arms

alleots,

fs, and

e Crab,

n'd with

i. The

markable

river of

e yachts

the Cal,

the Koe-

s. The

esse vessel

which they

river, and

company

. They

g. order.

Position,

aboard of

st the O-

ver; the

the yacht

ab; after

the Hour-

ebiel; the

brought

were or-

The 3<sup>d</sup>

the Dutch

ight time

t. some

in which

wounded,

ough up-

were ad-

z and the

he city of

d three of

ed Bama-

int of the

other two

the other,

Menapon-

he enemy

ch gave us

rate high-

But several

illed with

being hid

aulson was

yacht the

four-glaji,

# Directions

V. II.

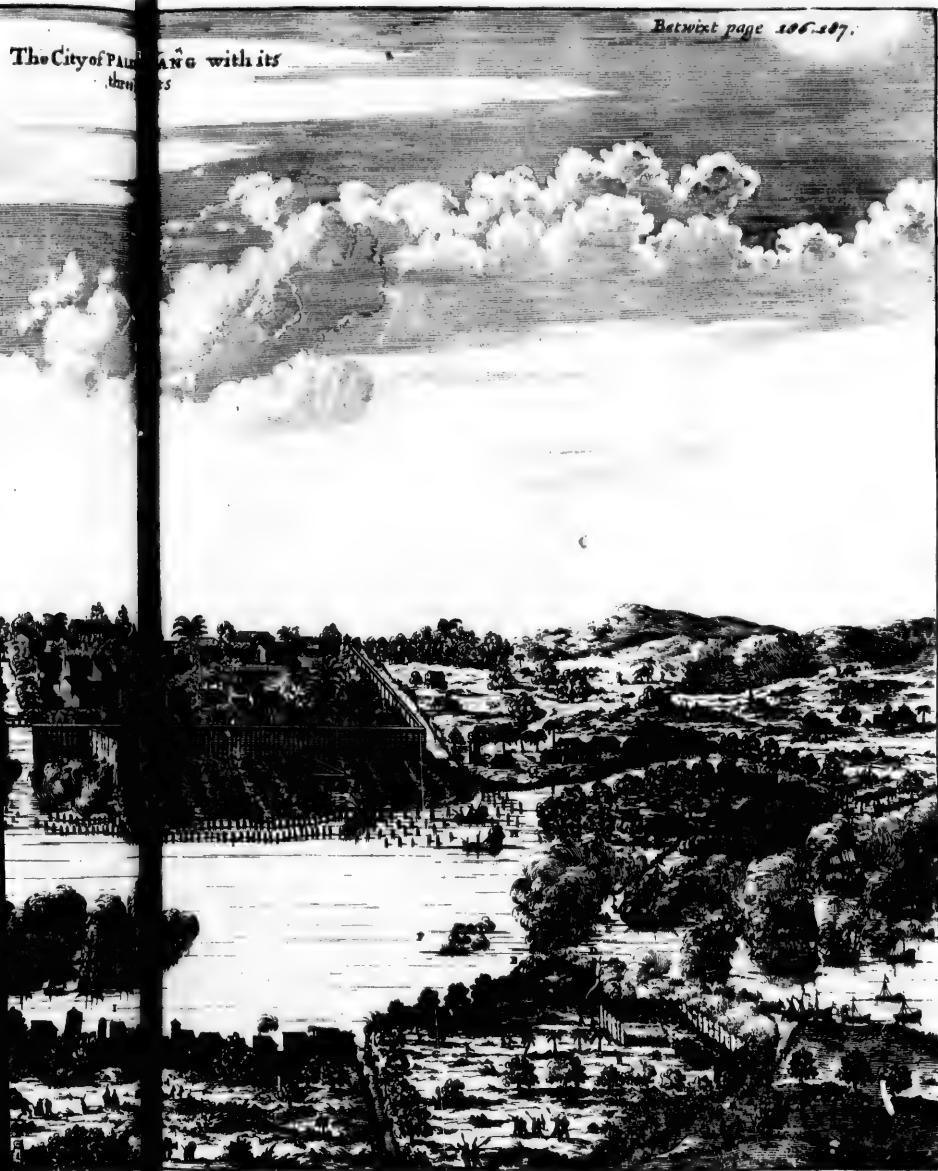
The City of PALM ANG with its  
three

- A. *Fort Almaguilla*
- B. *Fort Almaguilla*
- C. *Fort Candore*
- D. *A Ferry Engine*
- E. *A Chain of River*
- F. *King's Palace*
- G. *Quarters of 5 Moorish Priests*
- H. *Two Statues of Deities & Watchmen*
- I. *Quarters of 5 Churches & Priests*
- K. *Our People's Land*
- L. *A Valley made by 5 Javanese*
- M. *of Royal Palace*
- N. *Common of a very large size called their Idol*
- O. *A Shore Bulwark*
- P. *of Kings by the Ship*
- Q. *Very large tree Enguins*



Between page 106-107.

The City of PALEMBANG with its  
Christians



H. a.



*He*  
th-  
bein  
who  
tach  
as v  
the  
of l  
the  
ny d  
us f  
riou  
cess  
on f  
par  
hou

*The fort*  
Rumyan-  
gan di-  
taken.

dab  
ed  
thor  
the  
shot  
selv  
22 i  
diat  
fide,  
long  
tion  
oufly  
the  
oufly  
our

*Fire en-  
gines of  
the enemy.*

T  
large  
with  
ble  
up a  
the y  
the C  
ry,  
the A  
fire,  
help  
assist  
ble c  
force  
soon  
taki  
and  
gen,  
who

*The fort*  
Mathapou-  
ra taken.

T  
wife  
ra, w  
non,  
into  
then  
the d  
ry ar

*The ifle of*  
Cambara  
taken.

pani  
fame  
attac  
aman  
thelc

1662.

Burn the  
magazine  
here en-  
gines.The fort  
Bamagan-  
gan at-  
tack'd.Fire en-  
gines of  
the enemy.The fort  
Matapou-  
ra taken.The isle of  
Cambara  
taken.

*Hour-glass*, to take a view of them, to cut their cables, and set them on fire, which being put in execution accordingly, the whole fleet advanced forward in order to attack the fort of *Bamagan*. But as soon as we came within cannon shot of the fort, the enemy gave us a very warm salute out of his great cannon, from the forts both on the east and western points, tho' without any considerable loss on our side, which gave us sufficient encouragement to fire most furiously upon the first fort, with such success, that we set their magazine of powder on fire, which blew up with it the greatest part of the fort, and all the circumjacent houses; hereupon the yachts the *Bloemendabl*, the *Koukerk*, and the *Cat*, were ordered to anchor within pistol shot from the shore, from whence we so grievously gall'd the enemy, both with our great and small shot, that at last we landed, and made ourselves masters of the fort, where we found 22 iron and brass cannon, which we immediately turned against the enemy to the land side, and continued in arms all the night long, which proved no unnecessary precaution, for the enemy attacked us most furiously not long after, in hopes of regaining the place, but were repulsed most courageously, with the loss of only one man on our side.

Then the enemy sent four or five very large fire engines, being floats of timber with wood on houses filled with combustible matter on the top of them, which took up almost the whole breadth of the river, the yachts the *Bloemendabl*, the *Koukerk*, and the *Cat*, had much ado to escape their fury, being forced to cut their cables; but the *Molucca* yacht had her fore-castle set on fire, and was with much ado saved by the help of many boats that were sent to her assistance, without receiving any considerable damage; so that these fire engines were forced down the river by the current, and soon after vanished into smoke. At the taking of the fort 30 *Javane* were killed, and among them the old *Quevy*, *Tommagen*, *Nadapen Radia*, with his two sons, who were buried the next day.

The 11<sup>th</sup> early in the morning we likewise attacked and took the fort *Matapoura*, where we found only four pieces of cannon, the enemy having thrown four more into the river, which we brought out from thence afterwards; the remaining part of the day was spent in shipping in what artillery and ammunition we had got; eight companies of soldiers were likewise landed the same afternoon in the isle of *Cambara*, to attack the fort there, but to their great amazement found this strong hold left by these cowardly wretches; we found here 12

pieces of cannon, some of which they had likewise thrown into the mud, but were recovered by our people, and carried aboard our vessels, with a small quantity of ammunition. Whilst these things were transacting in sight of the garrison of *Palimbang*, they had found means to set fire to the yacht the *Watchman*, which they burned; and in the evening those that had deserted the fort under favour of a violent rain, did three several times attempt the recovery of it, in which engagement we had two killed and six wounded, and were forced to stand to our arms all the rest of the night. The 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> were spent in embarking all the cannon and ammunition we had got in the 3 beforementioned forts, which done, it was resolved in a council of war, forthwith to attack the *Chinese* quarter, and so to make ourselves masters of the city before the enemies could recover themselves from the fright they were put in by the loss of their forts: As we were passing by the city we received the same salute we had before from the forts, but without any remarkable harm, or the loss of one of our vessels.

The city of *Palimbang* was fortified with vast trunks of trees put close together, upon which were planted a vast number of great cannon, so that it seemed impossible to be taken by so small a number, being besides this invironed with a deep and miry ditch. We were hard put to it how to find a safe landing place, till at last our admiral having espied at the uttermost point of the fortification a small rivulet, which led up to a place where we perceived very little or none of the enemy's fire, we landed thereabouts with all our forces, and advancing boldly to the very gun-holes of the enemy, they threw their granados through them into the city, which setting the adjacent houses on fire, the enemy were so terrified thereat, that they quitted their post, and thereby gave opportunity to the admiral *Vander Laen*, to Mr. *Truyisman*, and captain *Harman* to break thro' the fortifications into the city by three several ways. Here they met with a brave opposition from the inhabitants, who, according to the custom of these nations, under the found of their *Amock*, fell courageously upon these three bodies, of whom they killed 18, among which were a lieutenant, an ensign, and a sergeant, but not without a much greater loss on their side; the violent rains obliged the Dutch admiral to reconduct his men on board the vessels that night, but the next morning they landed again, and entered the city in the same place, where a doubtful engagement ensued, till the inhabitants being at last forced to give way, were beat out of the place, and retired into the open country.

1662.

The forti-  
fication of  
Palim-  
bang.Attacked  
by the  
Dutch.

And taken.

1662. country. The first thing that was sacrificed to the fury of the flames, was the royal palace, after it had been despoiled of all its riches, and a vast train of artillery, which the king and his cowardly subjects left a prey to the Dutch, after they had for some time defended themselves, and fought hand to hand against them; but the admiral Vander Laen having laid two of their chief or *Quey Nabey*, dead at his feet, the rest were so terrified thereat, that they fought for their safety in their heels. It is worth taking notice of that these *Indians* seemed to have paid a peculiar reverence to their great cannon, which we found covered with scarlet cloth lined with ram-boutins, and so perfumed with incense that the smell thereof stuck a great while after to our fingers. All the artillery and cannon being taken out of the city and from the ramparts, the admiral ordered likewise the fortifications and adjacent houses to be laid in ashes; we found 15 of 21 of our people that were prisoners among them, in the prison on both sides of the royal palace, miserably murdered and mangled by these barbarous wretches, among which was *Jacob de Groot*; one Dutch boy only who was not put in irons, had the good fortune to escape their hands by a timely flight, the remaining six they had carried along with them: To revenge as much as possible this barbarity, all that remained of the city, was after the cannon and all the other booty we got were carried aboard our vessels, set on fire and destroyed, the 16<sup>th</sup> of the same month.

About the same time the enemy sent one of his before-mentioned fire engines, of a vast bigness, down the river; it consisted of 20 wooden houses erected upon floats of timber, which almost extended from one side to the other. But no sooner had the Dutch got sight of this engine, they sent out their long boats well mann'd, who took care to protect our ships against it, and after it was passed by them, set it on fire in sight of the enemy, which consumed both the engines and a good number of houses standing on the banks of the river. The 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> our people were still busy in embarking the booty, artillery and cannon, and a day of thanksgiving was appointed to be kept throughout the whole fleet for this victory against the 23<sup>d</sup>. In the mean while we advanced higher up the river, to try whether we could meet with some vessels or plantations that way, but saw nothing of any moment. Mr. John Vander Laen and John Truysman also writ a letter to the Pangerang or governor of Palimbang, which was dispatched thither the 23<sup>d</sup> by a Chinese prisoner and an old woman.

John Vander Laen general, and captain

John Truysman, commanders in chief of the Dutch forces now in the river and the country of Palimbang, sent this letter to the Pangerang and all the chief counsellours of the country of Palimbang.

#### A letter sent to the PANGERANG.

Notwithstanding our last success, we could not but put your bigness in mind of the most abominable murder committed by your subjects upon so many innocent persons in the service of the Dutch East-India company: which barbarous act, tho' it was highly resented by the governor, general, and council of the Indies residing at Batavia, yet to shew their inclinations to continue in peace with your bigness, did at that time for the preventing the effusion of human blood, require and actually demand a reasonable satisfaction for these unheard of barbarities: To accomplish which, they caused certain propositions to be made by John Truysman to your bigness, with strict orders to insinuate to your bigness all such reasons as might conduce towards the accomplishment of that end, which we don't question would have been sufficiently convincing to your bigness, had not your evil counsellours misguided you, and thwarted your good intentions. But seeing you slighted these conditions, and were very backward in giving due satisfaction, the great God of heaven and earth being highly displeased at your conduct, did so direct the heart of the before-mentioned lord governor and his council, as to have recourse to arms, being the only remedy left them, ordained by God almighty to protect the just cause of their subjects. The great God of heaven having been pleased to bless their undertaking, for the due punishment of your malicious subjects, they are however willing to let your bigness know, that the hostilities committed against you and your subjects, were undertaken with no other intention, than to revenge the innocent blood of their subjects, and to procure an honourable and reasonable peace; the said governor and his council being always more inclined to peace than war, if your bigness is of the same sentiment we expect to hear from you either by your letter in answer to this, or by your deputies, it being our resolution to tarry for that purpose in your bigness's territories, and these presents shall be a sufficient passport to those whom your bigness shall be pleased to send to treat with us. Given aboard the *Bloemendaal* the 20<sup>th</sup> of November 1659.

signed,  
John Vander Laen,  
John Truysman.

The 25<sup>th</sup> our ships went further up the river, and got sometimes sight of three or four lighters, which served for ferry boats; and

Fifteen  
Dutchmen  
found mur-  
dered in  
the city.

The ene-  
my's fire  
engine un-  
derwent  
total.

1662.

1662. and I  
timber  
because  
shot, &  
the in-  
houses  
20<sup>th</sup> b  
till no  
Goyer  
by, for  
by the  
pulleys  
John  
ders;  
eatable  
at that  
dogory  
lately  
dance  
not long  
had be  
his high  
to the  
captain  
answer  
their le  
which b  
Peter G  
out of t  
This  
by the P  
ders in c  
Sittia Ba  
men fam  
The P  
John M  
Dutch E  
those of P  
that his  
and that  
least cont  
by the said  
Mr. John  
Bauwa,  
as to the  
gerang  
the Pang  
ter, send  
make wa  
Pangeran  
John Van  
wa to be u  
limbang  
Pangeran  
Vander L  
The 2  
standing  
together  
special o  
day we l  
of the m  
being fer  
temper o  
Vol.

The Dutch  
fleet got  
higher up  
the river.

1662. and some few houses built upon floats of timber; the lighters could not be taken, because they came not within reach of our shot, and afterwards sheltered themselves in the small rivulets among the weeds: The houses were set on fire, and some returned the 20<sup>th</sup> before the fort where we lay at anchor till next day. In the mean time Peter de Goyer director of the Dutch factory of Jamby, sent the 11<sup>th</sup> of November from thence by the chaloop the *Trank*, 75 capons, 100 pullets, and five goats, for the use of Mr. John Vander Laen, and the other commanders; this being all he was able to get, all eatables being extremely scarce thereabouts at that time, because the *Pangerang* of *Adrogory* and the young king of *Jobor*, had lately tarried three months, with an attendance of 2000 persons in these parts; and not long ago abundance of cattle and fowls had been killed for the wedding feast of his highness's daughter, who was married to the young *Patiuan*. The admiral and captain *Truytman* received not long after an answer from the *Pangerang* of *Jamby* to their letter dated the 20<sup>th</sup> of November, which being enclosed in another from Mr. Peter Goyer dated the 26<sup>th</sup>, was translated out of the *Malayan*, and runs thus.

This letter is sent from a sincere heart, by the *Pangerang* of *Jamby* to the commanders in chief *John Vander Laen* and *Daman Sittia Bauwa* (meaning captain *Truytman*) men famous for their prudence and courage.

The *Pangerang* having understood that Mr. John Maetzuicker governor general of the Dutch East-Indies, has sent 18 ships against those of *Palimbang*, has thought fit to declare, that his sentiments agree with the governor's, and that he is ready to approve all without the least contradiction, what shall be undertaken by the said Mr. John Maetzuicker, assuring Mr. John Vander Laen and *Daman Sittia Bauwa*, that he will stand firm to this as well as to the other promises made by him the *Pangerang* before. Pursuant to this resolution the *Pangerang* did upon the receipt of the letter, send *Zitta Antacca* with some troops to make war upon those of *Palimbang*. The *Pangerang* also forewarns and commands *John Vander Laen* and *Daman Sittia Bauwa* to be upon their guard, because those of *Palimbang* are near at hand; this being all the *Pangerang* commands at this time to *John Vander Laen* and *Daman Sittia Bauwa*.

The 27<sup>th</sup> all the houses that were yet standing near the fort of *Manjapoura* were together with the fort itself, set on fire by special order from the admiral, and the same day we lifted a great piece of ordnance out of the marshes in the isle of *Cambara*. And being sensible that either out of an obstinate temper or out of despair the *Pangerang* of

*Palimbang* would scarce send any deputies or answers to ours of the 20<sup>th</sup>, we resolved to leave that river; and accordingly with the next tide set sail and returned thro' the branch of the river call'd *Banjarmassum* in order to burn all the houses and plantations we should meet with; but having spent 5 days, viz. to the 3<sup>d</sup> of December in coming down the said river; we met at its entrance with the ship the *Orange*, which joining with the rest, we continued our voyage the 4<sup>th</sup>, and arrived with the whole fleet and our forces the 9<sup>th</sup> in the afternoon, in the road of *Batavia*. Our booty consisted chiefly in 75 pieces of great, and 142 lesser cannon, some of which were of iron. We found no pepper here, but great store of rice and *Padie*, all which was consumed by the fury of the flames, as likewise a vast number of small vessels, among which were the king's pleasure boats, of which there was a vast number; some few were carried away by our people, to be kept in remembrance of this action.

The kingdom of *Acbin* is situate in the most northern part of the isle of *Sumatra*. Its capital city bears the same name, being situate in a plain upon a pleasant rivulet, about half a league distant from the seashore. The royal place, which lies in the very center of the city, is very large, of an oval figure, surrounded with a ditch, and in some places defended by very large pieces of ordnance; the ditch is guarded by palisadoes, in which are seven gates. On the left side of the river is a fort to defend its entrance, and several other redoubts are erected in the marshes, round about the city of *Acbin*, for its defence. The air seems to be much more wholesome here than in the southern parts of the isle. The houses which are covered with reeds are built upon posts, so that you must enter them by several steps, the reason of which is, that at certain seasons the waters rise to such a height, that the whole city is overflown by it. The chiefest riches of the king of *Acbin* consist in gold, jewels and elephants; he entertains a great number of concubines which serve both for his bed and his guards in the antichambers; besides which, he maintains a good number of eunuchs, who attend his person. Four *Sabandars* or nobles have the chief management of the government under the king. This kingdom was in 1663 governed by a queen, who, as it was reported, had an inclination to be married to a *Hollander*; but the council of *Batavia*, for weighty reasons would not consent to the match. The inhabitants of *Acbin* were always renowned for their courage and conduct beyond all other neighbouring nations, and have not only extended their conquests

1662.  
The Dutch have the river

Arrived at Batavia.

The kingdom of Acbin.

1662. quests over the circumjacent countries of *Sumatra*, but also made themselves masters of the kingdoms of *Queda* and *Pera* on the continent of *Malacca*; nay, they frequently have besieged the *Portuguese* in the city of *Malacca*, they having always been declared enemies of that nation.

*Sillebar*. On the western coast, not above 4 leagues to the south of the line, is within a bay, upon a very large river, a certain place call'd *Sillebar*, being furrounded with craggy mountains and vast woods; tho' the country thereabouts is very fertile in pepper; it belongs to the king of *Bantam*. On the same western coast is a very large Bay, the shore of which is all over woody, as the bay of *Sillebar*, is furrounded with mountains; tho' the shore its self is very green and pleasant. Immediately after you come to the bay, you discover a small point of land, behind which lies the town of *Sillebar*.

*Tikouw*. A few leagues to the south of the line, is likewise the city of *Tikouw*, a place very slightly built, and some leagues from thence to the north, is the town of *Passaman*, at the foot of a high mountain.

*Barros*. *Barros* is also situate on the western coast of *Sumatra*, about a league from the seashore, upon a considerable river, betwixt *Passaman* and *Acbin*. The country hereabouts produces pepper, camphire and benzoin. Hereabouts are likewise *Sinkel*, *Labo*, and *Daya*.

*Pedir*. *Pedir* lies ten leagues to the east of *Acbin*, with a high mountain betwixt both; the country, which was formerly a kingdom, is indifferently fruitful of rice and other fruits. Further to the east, on the inward coast of *Sumatra*, are *Pacem*, *Dely*, *Aru*, *Kampar*, *Andripouro*, *Jamby* and *Palimbang*. *Andripouro* is situate under 3 deg. 30 min.

*Padang*. *Padang* lies on a very pleasant river, whither a considerable number of *Indian* vessels resort. The *Dutch* divide the coast of *Sumatra* into the outward and inward coast. The inward coast is by the *Javaneze* call'd the western coast, as the outward coast is the northern coast, where is the kingdom of *Acbin*.

*Unwholesomeness of the climate of Sumatra*. The climate of *Sumatra*, is, by reason of its situation under the line, extremely unwholesome, especially for strangers, and in the rainy season, when scarce a day passes but they are afflicted with sudden showers, storms, thunder and lightnings, which soon after end in a calm. Besides, that the heat of the sun-beams draws up the nauseous vapours of the standing waters, which infect the air, and produce malignant fevers, and other lingring distempers. This is most visible on the western coast of *Sumatra*, and especially in *Tikouw* and *Prya-*

man, where the air is equally obnoxious to the inhabitants and foreigners, which makes the *Dutch* inhabiting there, look bloated and very pale. In the *Devil's-Isle*, and near the river *Indapura* the air is so poisonous, that it kills men and beasts as soon as they set foot on shore; and if they happen to escape by returning immediately, they certainly die soon after.

The isle of *Sumatra* is full of pleasant woods, craggy high mountains, agreeable valleys, fruitful plains, very fine rivers and large bays affording great store of fish; besides that, the marshes and pools are stock'd with young oak-trees, the bark whereof gives the waters a red tincture. The chief rivers here are, the *Acbin*, *Andrigiri*, *Jamby*, *Palimbang*, *Manancabé*, *Banjarmassum*, *Sillebar*, *Indapura*, and *Pryaman*, all which have derived their names from their respective adjacent cities, or these from them. The waters of the river *Indapura* are red for two leagues at sea, which proceeds from the great quantity of young oak trees growing in the marshes, the bark of which imparts a red dye to the river; for which reason also the water is very unwholesome to drink.

The soil produces rice in abundance, and all other sorts of *Indian* fruits, such as *Bananas*, potatoes, coco-nuts, oranges, limons, tamarinds, sugar, honey, ginger, but especially pepper, of which a great quantity is transported from thence into foreign countries. Some years ago many plantations of pepper were destroy'd by the soldiers upon the outward coast of *Sumatra*, which were since replanted, yet in many places cotton-trees have been planted in their stead. The same coast also produces camphire, the most durable of all others, which differs from the *Japoneze* camphire in this particular quality, that whereas in this, the scent is in the wood; the camphire of *Sumatra* contains it in its own substance, without imparting the least share thereof to the wood. This island affords likewise white benzoin, *Kalamback* or aloes-wood, eagles-wood, and fandelwood. The forests here feed divers kinds of wild beasts, viz. elephants, bufflers, tygers, stags, rhinoceroses, wild boars, apes, monkeys and serpents; the rivers, lakes, and ports abundance of fishes; in some you meet with crocodiles. The woods are full of wild fowl of all sorts, and the country abounds in tame fowl. They have bats here of an exceeding bigness. It is very remarkable, that the island of *Sumatra* is the only one throughout the *East-Indies*, that has bears. The mountains here afford gold, silver, copper, tin, iron and brimstone. The outward coast of *Sumatra* especially, has very rich

Earth-ol.

The language of the inhabitants and their manner.

their diet.



1662. rich gold mines, but they are neglected for the most part. However the queen of *Acbin* drew 1000 pounds weight out of one mine, and the *Dutch East-India* company 300 in the year 1665: They also produce smaragds, hyacinths and other precious stones. On the top of the fiery mountain *Balubam*, is a certain spring of sulphurous liquor like oil; and the like is seen in several other parts of this island, to sweat out of the earth or rocks, not unlike a *Petroleum*: The *Indians* call this liquor *Minjab Tunnab*, *e. i.* earth-oil. This is in such esteem among the inhabitants, that the king of *Acbin* has prohibited the exportation thereof under pain of death; so that what is carried away by the *English* or *Dutch*, is brought on board by stealth. It has a very strong scent, but not nauseous; its virtue is extraordinary in curing lameness, call'd by the *Indians* *Beribery*, if the affected parts be only bathed or anointed with it. This island has a certain kind of reed, which grows near 300 fathom high, and twists its self round the trees. They make hops of it.

The most general language here is the *Malayan*, tho' they use likewise several others. They maintain certain schools for the young people to be instructed in reading and writing. The inhabitants of *Sumatra* are large of stature, black and brown of complexion like the *Javanese*. The women are well shaped, and of a fairish complexion, with very white teeth; they make no account of chastity, nor look upon it as a disgrace to expose themselves for money. For the rest, this nation is extravagantly proud and ill-natured, which sets so high a value upon itself, as to despise all foreigners; they are very treacherous, and make very little account of their faith, if they find it consistent with their interest. Every body here is like all the mahometans, does marry as many wives as he is able to keep, one however has the precedence before all the rest: Women of any quality are seldom seen to walk along the streets. In the inland country lives still the remainder of the ancient men-eaters, call'd *Bataches* or *Batatas*, who not only devour strangers, but likewise kill their own fathers and brothers, if grown very decrepid, and eat them.

Both rich and poor are continually chewing the leaves of *Beibol*, mixt with thyme and *Areka* or *Fausel*. Their bread is made of rice, of which they make also a dainty pap, and cakes, and eat them with oil. They feed likewise upon fish, flesh and herbs. Their ordinary drink is water; besides which, they use *Arack* distill'd of rice and coco-nuts, and palm wine. The inha-

bitants of *Sumatra* are very moderate in their diet, like all the rest of the *Indians*.

Most of the inhabitants, especially the poorer sort, go naked to the middle, where they have only a piece of stuff wrapt about them to cover their privities; both sexes go without shoes or stockings. The richer sort wear a kind of coat of silk or callico, after the mahometan fashion; a linnen cloth wrap'd about their heads two or three times, serves them for a cap.

They pay a more than slavish submission and obedience to their kings, not so much out of inclination as fear; their princes or governors are stiled *Pangerang*.

They punish the least trespass with great severity, by cutting off their hands and feet. Capital crimes are punish'd after the most dreadful manner that can be invented. In former ages the kings used to surrender the miscreant to the men-eaters, who after they chop'd of their hands, arms and legs, threw pepper upon the trunk of the body and devoured it.

Most of the inhabitants living near the sea-coast are mahometans now, whereas formerly, both those inhabiting the sea-shore and the inland country were pagans, of which there are still a great number in the countries remote from the sea.

The isle of *Sumatra*, but especially the kingdom of *Acbin*, are places of great traffick, whither resort merchants from all parts of the *Indies*, as the *Chinese*, *Malayans*, *Javanese*, christians and mahometans. There are certain places on the western coast of the isle, which are in confederacy, and under the protection of the *Dutch East-India* company, unto whom they are obliged to sell all their pepper and gold at a certain rate. These are *Pryaman*, *Indapoura*, *Padang*, *Tike* and *Barros*. They had also settled a factory in 1665 at *Andragiry*, but the quantity of pepper and gold to be transported from thence was so inconsiderable, that it did not turn to account. The chief commodities of *Sumatra* are, pepper, gold, tin and camphire. The western coast affords *Pedro Porcos*, which are sold at 200 crowns per piece. *Jamby* and *Palimbang* are the chiefest places for pepper, where the *English* have likewise their factories, and are much esteemed by that king. The foreigners import commonly pieces of eight, callico, *Chinese* gold, iron wire, steel, woollen-cloth, quilts of *Suratte*, silks, salt and such like commodities, which they exchange for those before-mention'd. Thus much of *Sumatra*.

We continu'd our voyage without any remarkable accident, 'till the 3<sup>d</sup> of February, when we pass'd by *Punte Gala*, and arriv'd the next day at *Colomba*, both cities belong.



1662.

Pas by  
cape Co-  
moira and  
Koylang.

Palipat-  
nam.

Pas by  
Goa.

Come to  
Wingur-  
la.

The queen  
of Gol-  
conda goes  
to visit  
Mahom-  
met's  
tomb.

belonging to the island of *Ceylon*. Having soon dispatch'd our business here, we set sail again the 9<sup>th</sup>, and the 12<sup>th</sup> came within sight of cape *Comarin* and the city of *Korlang*, steering our course along the coast of *Malabar*, where we met with the ship the *Phoenix*, in the road of that city, to load pepper, which done, it join'd with us, to continue its voyage to *Persia*.

Over against the isle of *Baypin* we met with 15 or 16 sail under the command of Mr. *Adrian van der Meyden*, who was sent thither to attack the fortrefs of *Palipatnam*; we went immediately aboard the *Ulieland*, where we paid our respects to the admiral, who enjoyn'd us, to send all our land and sea men ashore, to assist at the taking of this fortrefs; which being done accordingly, and the *Dutch* forces marching in good order to the attack, they found, to their great astonishment, that the enemy had deserted the place, and left only one old woman and a boy behind them; thus we became masters of this strong hold, without striking a blow. However our design upon the city of *Cranganor* was laid aside for that time, after we were thoroughly informed concerning its condition, and that we were not sufficiently provided for such an attempt. So we proceeded on our voyage again the next day, and the 5<sup>th</sup> of *March* pass'd by the bar of *Goa*, where we found several *Dutch* ships under commodore *Roothbaes* a cruising, which kept the harbour of *Goa* block'd up. The 6<sup>th</sup> we came to an anchor in the road of *Wingurla*, where we met several of our men of war, which had been a cruising before *Goa*, and were come hither to refresh themselves: We saw likewise here the *Bantam* yacht, which was sent on purpose hither to carry the queen of *Golconda* to *Mocha*, (a city of *Arabia*, situate on the *Red-Sea*) she being to go from thence to *Medina*, to visit *Mahomet's* tomb, and to make a present of great value there. Her guards, which had conducted her 80 leagues as far as *Wingurla* consisted of 4000 men, all mounted on fine bright *Persian* horses, well accoutred. They had long coats of mail, on the shoulders of which were imbroider'd serpents-heads in imitation of the ancient *Romans*; they had fine polish'd helmets on their heads, being for the rest arm'd with bows and arrows, and some of them with very long beards. At the head of them rid two trumpeters, who sounded the trumpet by turns. All the persons of quality that attended her, were likewise mounted on very fine horses, with a footman on each side of the horse's head, who held the bridle. The Queen herself and all her ladies, were carried in *Palakins* covered on the

top, to keep themselves from being seen by any body; and before them were led several camels cover'd with rich furnitures. On one of these was mounted a kettle-drummer, who with a hammer beat cross-ways, as we do in *Europe*; the drums, of which one hung on each side of the camel, being somewhat sharp at one end like our bee-hives. The commodore *Roothbaes* and M. *Santoliet* (director for the *Dutch East-India* company at *Gamron*) were gone to meet and compliment the queen about two leagues from the town; who, whilst she tarried here, dictated several letters in divers languages to her secretaries; she sent soon after to know whether the ships were ready to sail, and being answered they were, she came immediately aboard the yacht, but finding her much less in bulk than the other ships she lay lying at anchor in the road, she was not very well satisfied, till being told by Mr. *Roothbaes* and *Santoliet*, that the yacht was most proper for her purpose, by reason of the shallowness of the shore of the red sea, she seem'd to acquiesce in their judgment. Near the sea-side a tent was set up, and from thence a passage covered all over with callico to the chaloop, in which was likewise a tent, as also in the yacht, to prevent her being seen by the ship's crew. She gave a very fine present of gold and diamonds to the commodore Mr. *Roothbaes* and Mr. *Santoliet*. The captain of the yacht who carried her to *Mocha*, did not return from thence, but went along with her, being, as we suppose, turn'd mahometan; because the yacht was reconducted by the boatwain.

*Wingurla* is no more than a large village, situate on the sea-shore of the kingdom of *Golconda*, under the 15 deg. of northern latitude. The *Dutch East-India* company have built a very fine house here of stone and plaister work, because all ships bound for *Persia*, are obliged to come to an anchor here, to provide themselves with fresh water and fuel, which they buy here at a very low rate, the place scarce affording any thing else.

After we had left *Wingurla*, we came the 6<sup>th</sup> of *April* before that famous city of *Persia* call'd *Gamron*, and anchored at six fathoms water. I went ashore the same day to give notice of our arrival, and to make the necessary preparations for unlading our ship, which being done, I apply'd myself to have it laden again with all possible expedition; and our cargo being for the most part gold and silver coin, we might soon have been ready to sail again, had we not been oblig'd to stay for some other commodities till the 2<sup>d</sup> of *June*, when we set sail again from thence, and Mr. *James Williamson*, director for the company in *Persia*, took

1662.

1662. t  
b  
A descrip-  
tion of that  
city.

Its boujes.

Streets.

Scarcity of ter,  
earth  
fresh wa-  
ter.

1662. took this opportunity to go along with us to *Batavia*, the time of his stay in *Persia* being expired.

A description of that city.

The famous city of *Gamron*, the only sea-haven of *Persia*, is situate on a flat sea-shore, just at the entrance of the *Persian Gulph*, at the foot of a barren sandy mountain, producing neither grass nor trees; it lies betwixt two castles, under the 27 deg. of northern latitude: This city was built out of the ruins of the castle and city of *Ormuz*, the destruction of which proved the rise of *Gamron*. It is to the sea-side defended by three stone bastions, on which are mounted good store of iron cannon. But on the land-side it is only surrounded with a stone wall, which is much decay'd, because they fear as it seems nothing from thence. The houses here which are built after a very antique manner, like most of the *Persian* houses, stand very close together, having each a square turret, which mounts to a considerable height above the whole structure, having on each side several holes for the free passage of the wind and air; in these turrets they sleep every night during the summer season. The best of their houses are built only of loom, which being form'd in four square pieces, and dry'd with the sun, become as hard as stone, and keep out the rains and winds. They whiten them on the outside with lime made of burnt mussel-shells, but their back and our-houses are covered only with the leaves of palm-trees, and are miserable huts, scarce fit to defend the inhabitants from the injuries of the season.

Streets.

The streets here are both narrow and short, with many turnings, and are covered by the houses on both sides, which are almost join'd together on the top; notwithstanding which the heat is so excessive here, that they are scarce passable. They are not paved with stones, but only with earth beaten close together, which being continually watered to allay the heat and dust, becomes by degrees as hard as a stone. Both the *English* and *Dutch* have their factories here near one another, each being distinguish'd by their respective flags; the *Dutch* is built close to the water-side, being a goodly structure, and very convenient for the unloading of vessels.

Scarcity of fresh water.

The city of *Gamron* affords no fresh water, which must be fetch'd by the slaves in earthen vessels or sheep skins early in the morning (to keep it the cooler) from the mountains, which are near three leagues distant from thence, which makes the fresh water so scarce here, that most people of fashion will rather present you with a cup of wine than water, there being no pools or basins here where any fresh water is to be met with, but during the rainy season. Nei-

Vol. II.

ther does the country produce any thing but palm-trees; notwithstanding which there is great plenty here of every thing, where-with they are supplied from *Persia* and other places. The common drink of the inhabitants is water, tho' they also are provided with good *Persian* wines; they are very strong, and of a high red colour, but as sweet as canary wine: It grows about *Schiras* and *Yezd*, and is transported from thence in large flasks and casks. They have also *Arack* distill'd of coco-nuts and rice. They make likewise a mixture of water, lemons and sugar, but if drunk in too great a quantity occasions the bloody flux.

The air of *Gamron* is from the beginning of *May* till *September* more unwholesome than in any place of the *East* or *West-Indies* that ever I saw, so that there is no abiding here for foreigners, except in *December*, *January*, *February* and *March*. The natives of any quality being more used to the air, will continue something longer, viz. till *May*, when they retire to their country houses, which are for the most part built among the mountains, near some river or other, at 10 or 12 leagues from the city: Here they spend merrily what they have got by traffick in the winter, leaving the management of their city houses to their slaves till *October*, the usual time for ships and foreign merchants to come to *Gamron*. The heat which is most excessive here obliges them to sleep upon leather, or with the lower parts of their bodies in water; or in the turrets, which are on the top of their houses; some cool themselves with pouring rose-water down the neck; such ships as are obliged to stay in the port during the summer season, must be covered all over with sails, otherwise the planks would split asunder, the pitch and tar rising up in bubbles as it were a boiling; so that no body dare walk bare-footed upon the deck. Those who venture to continue during the hot season at *Gamron*, commonly get for their pains an ague of a very malicious nature, which if it does not kill, at least seldom quits them, but leaves such relicks behind, as at last brings them to their graves. The cause of this excessive heat seems to me to be the situation of the place, at the foot of a barren mountain facing the south, so that the sun-beams by their refractions against the mountains are redoubled in their strength, especially if it be considered that the wind here during the summer season blows for the most part from the south, and consequently from the same corner, from whence the sun-beams exert their utmost strength. For immediately after *March* is past, the winds turn commonly to the west and south-west, which are sometimes so stifling that they

D d d

1662. they kill men and beasts. The *Arabians* call this wind *Elbamudi*, i. e. fish-winds, and the *Persians* *Badesambour*, because it chokes on a sudden such as it touches. It is very observable, that the dead carcasses of such as are kill'd by it, if touch'd with the hands, are as unctuous as grease or oil, and appear as if they had been dead a month ago. This wind continues here in *May*, *June*, *July* and *August*, as likewise all about *Musfil* over against the old *Nineve*, and near *Bagdat*, but those who are upon the water, even in boats in the river, never feel the effects of this wind, tho' they are quite naked.

Traffick of  
the inhabi-  
tants of  
Gamron.

Most of the inhabitants of *Gamron* are merchants, who trade to several cities situate upon the branch of the *Euphrates*, such as *Bassora*, *Sciras*, *Isfaban*, *Tauris* and *Smyrna*. Once every year, to wit, in *October*, the caravans, consisting of several thousands of men and beasts, arrive here from the east, viz. from *Babylon*, *Turky* and *Persia*, with all sorts of merchandizes laden upon camels, dromedaries and asses, which they exchange for *East-India* wares. The staple commodities of *Gamron* are cloth of gold, tapestry and pearls, which they take near the island of *Babrain*, as likewise fruits of all sorts, plumbs, raisins, currans, nuts, dates, oranges, citrons, pomegranates, peaches, &c. They abound likewise in herbs, which are brought thither from other places, especially from the isle of *Kikmis*, not above three leagues from thence. They have also good store of most excellent *Persian* wine, which is brought thither from *Sciras* and *Yezd* in large fasks, pack'd up in casks. They sell also abundance of the best rose-water, which is here in greater plenty than in any other place that ever I saw. There is at certain times such a vast confluence of merchants and ships at *Gamron*, that they want money to buy their commodities; in such cases they write to their correspondents at *Lar*, *Sciras*, *Isfaban* and other *Persian* cities, who if they have ready cash, are sure to buy good bargains at such a juncture. Most of the merchants that resort to *Gamron* are *Persians*, *Armenians* and *Indians*, living in *Persia*. And were it not for the unwholsomeness of the air, abundance more would come from other places, who now stay at home, and rather chuse to buy from the merchants that bring their commodities from *Gamron*.

Disposition  
of the in-  
habitants.

The women here, like as in most other eastern countries, are seldom seen abroad, but dwell in separate apartments, where the men live with them for some time, and in the mean while lay aside all other business. The women who expose themselves for money, sit in the evening upon benches at the doors, with lanterns in their hands, where

every man is free to chuse such a one as he likes best. The inhabitants here are generally very brown. The poorer sort go for the most part naked, only with a piece of stuff wrap'd round the middle; in the summer season some appear quite naked, others only in their shirts. The rich clothe themselves very magnificently after the *Persian* fashion, tho' there are yet some few who retain their antient dress with gold, silver, and iron rings on their hands, ears and noses. The common people make use of dates instead of bread or rice; for it is observable, that the ordinary food of the *Indians* all along that coast, from *Bassora* to *Sindi* is dates and fish, dry'd in the air. The heads and guts of the fishes they mix with date stones, and boil it altogether with a little salt-water, which they give at night to the cows, after they come out of the field, where they meet with very little herbage. They abound also in hares, sheep, pigeons and partridges; but as for tame fowl, tho' they have great store of them, they are not much esteem'd, because they have a brackish taste. The sea, especially that of *Solda* and *Sardin*, furnishes them with vast plenty of excellent fishes, and among the rest with very fine oysters, but they are so little regarded by the inhabitants, that if you have a mind to some of them, you must bespeak them of the fishermen on purpose. Preserv'd fruits of all sorts are here in great abundance; the rich merchants, but especially the *Persian* governor, living in great luxury and pomp.

About a league to the east of the city is a famous sepulchre of a *Banyan* saint, buried there some hundred years ago, under a tree call'd *Arvor das Rais*, i. e. root-tree by the *Portuguese*, or *Lul* by the *Persians*, which he planted here sometime before his death. The inhabitants call this tree the *Tree of the Banyans*, either from its first planter, or because the *Banyans* have founded a *Pagod* or *Pagan* temple under it, and a *Caravansera* or inn for the conveniency of passengers. This tree has spread its branches at a considerable distance round about, and encreases every year to that degree, that its branches, which indeed all descend from one trunk, but by degrees take root again, encompass a space of 550 feet. Under this tree both inhabitants and foreigners shelter themselves against the heat of the sun when they are walking abroad, and entertain one another. Over the sepulchre itself is built a small *Pagode*, in which you see burning lamps hanging day and night under a canopy of silk. The ground all round about is paved with bricks, and adorned with convenient benches and seats neatly kept, where every body is at liberty to take his repose

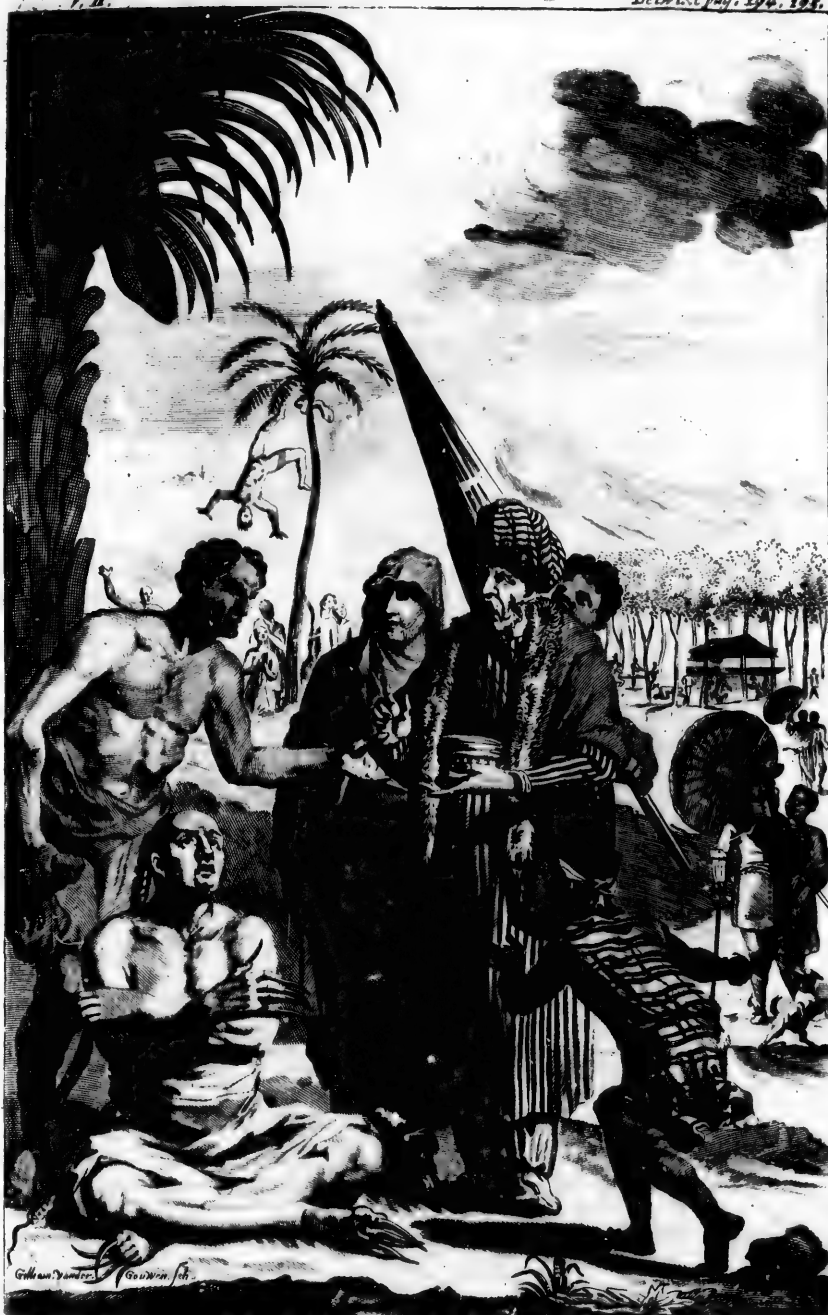
1662.  
Their  
clothing.

Diet.

Sepulchre  
of an In-  
dian saint.

h a one as 1662,  
 e are gene-  
 go for the *Their*  
 ee of stuff *clothing*.  
 unmer fea-  
 ners only in  
 selves very  
 shion, tho'  
 etain their  
 and iron  
 ofes. The  
 ates instead *Dint*.  
 vable, that  
 s all along  
 is dates and  
 ds and guts  
 ate stones,  
 little salt-  
 ight to the  
 the field,  
 le herbage.  
 p, pigeons  
 e fowl, tho'  
 ey are not  
 e a brackish  
 of *Solda* and  
 lt plenty of  
 e rest with  
 so little re-  
 if you have  
 ust bespeak  
 pose. Pre-  
 ere in great  
 but chieci-  
 ing in great

of the city *Sepulchre*  
 an saint, bu- *of an In-*  
 ago, under *duan saint*.  
 e. root-tree  
 he *Persians*,  
 e before his  
 his tree the  
 om its first  
 have found-  
 der it, and  
 veniency of  
 its branches  
 about, and  
 ree, that its  
 scend from  
 root again,  
 Under this  
 ners shelter  
 e sun when  
 ertain one  
 elf is built  
 ee burning  
 nder a ca-  
 ound about  
 igned with  
 eatly kept,  
 o take his  
 repose



Goggs of Benjan Saints

1662. re

Indian  
Saints.

77  
m  
fa

A set of  
Bramins.

lo  
ma  
of  
the  
M  
for  
ba  
sh  
the  
TH  
but  
por



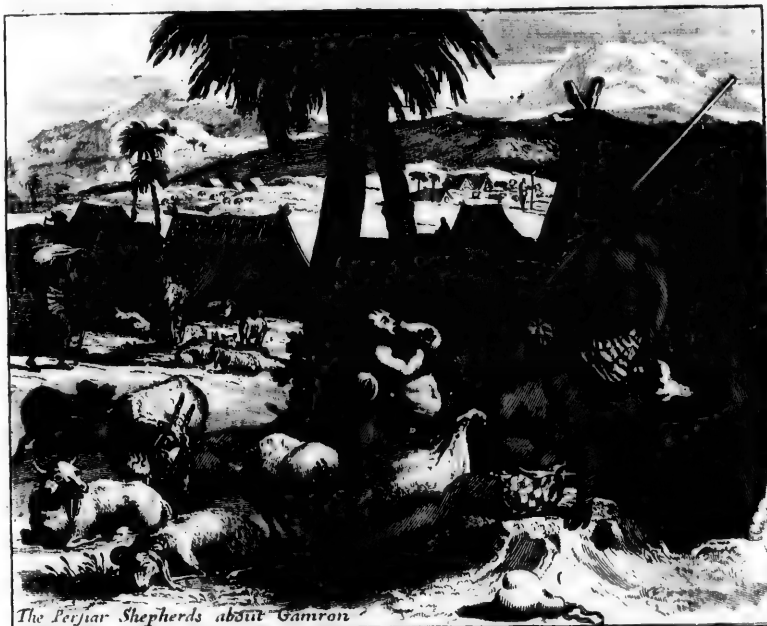
The

9 or  
Som  
year  
they  
a ro  
a tr  
their  
heac  
not  
g'in

1662. repose under the agreeable shadow of this tree. Here the *Indians* come in great numbers to offer their sacrifices, especially the *Siogs*, call'd by others *Goegys*, *Giogbi*, and *Joegbi*, and *Fakirs* by the *Arabians* and the *moors*. There are a certain sort of *Banyan* fairs (or at least pretend to be such) belonging to one of the four sects of the *Bramins*, viz. the sect of *Cenrawagbi*, of *Samarath*, of *Bijnou*, and the fourth the sect of *Siogs* or *Goegys*. You see them sitting on the highways with their legs across, as the *Mahometans* do; they never pare their nails; some have locks of hair hanging down their backs of four or five feet long, others never shave their heads or beards, which makes them appear more like devils than men. They have no dwelling places of their own, but in the night-time they sleep in the porches of their temples, on dunghills and

corners of the streets, or perhaps in some cave or other hole. They always appear naked, having only a piece of cloth wrapt about the middle. The *Indian* women resort to them in great numbers out of devotion, to touch the extremities of their fingers, or to kiss their privy members in a most humble posture, which they admit of, without shewing the least sign of sensibility thereat, for if they should do otherwise, they would be look'd upon as unfit for that holy feat. They never cast their eyes upon any body, but draw them in a most frightful manner upwards, as if they were afflicted with convulsions. They lead a most severe and miserable life, constantly mortifying their bodies by some strange and unnatural penances they lay upon themselves. Some retire into caves and cellars, where they continue in their devotions sometimes

1662.

Indian  
paints.A sort of  
Bramins.

The Persian Shepherds about Camron

9 or 10 days, without eating or drinking. Some walk both day and night for several years together without sitting; and when they intend to sleep, hang themselves with a rope about their middle to the branch of a tree. Others carry both their arms all their life-time strait upright above their heads, so that in process of time they are not able to bend themselves downwards again. In this posture they continue day

and night throughout the year quite naked, without the least fear of being scorched by the sun, or stung by the gnats, which they won't as much as remove with their hands. Nay they sleep with their arms in the same posture, a thing which needs must be very painful at first, and at last makes their arms thus distorted and bereaved of their usual nourishment to hang down behind their backs. There are innumerable sorts of other pen-  
tents;



1662. tents, some always lifting up their eyes against the sun, others fixing them constantly upon the ground, without ever looking upon or speaking a word to any body living. They besmear their nauseous bodies with ashes, and their greasy hair and faces with fandel-wood and saffron, but especially with cowdung mix'd with ashes; during our stay at *Gamron* we went several times to refresh ourselves under the tree; the common custom is to carry some wine and sweet-meats along with one, and as for dates, almonds, nuts, and other fruits, they are to be sold there.

The governor of Gamron.

The *Persian* governor residing at *Gamron* lives in great splendor; the king sends every year certain commissioners thither to take an account of the governor's conduct; he commonly meets them at some distance off the city unarm'd, and if they find him to have transgress'd his commission, they cut off his head, otherwise he is regal'd with a present of clothes, and so they enter the city, where they pass their time together in feasting for some days. The governor of the city did in our time meet the commissioners with some armed bands, and thus conducted them into the city.

Persian posts.

The posts which go from *Gamron* to *Isfahan* are wonderful expeditious in their journeys; they are appointed by the governor of *Gamron*, after he has made sufficient trial of their nimbleness, which is done by running with the rising of the sun, to an appointed place till sun-set; a certain horseman being appointed to ride along with them, and to take care they don't rest by the way: After they have perform'd this trial, the governor presents them with a suit of clothes and with the title of runners. So soon as any stranger of fashion arrives at *Gamron*, some or other of the inhabitants is ready to offer him his service, to attend him in the quality of a porter, or as a servant to show him the way; they are sure to wait at your lodgings every morning, and follow you all day long wherever you go, for a very slender allowance.

Shepherds near Gamron.

I had the curiosity to take a view of the shepherds and their huts, with their flocks of sheep and goats; for which purpose, by the help of my guide, I went some leagues deep into the country, where I found them feeding their sheep in a very barren ground; these shepherds, who have no other household goods but a slight coat, commonly manage a flock of 500 sheep and goats. Their huts they set up at pleasure in the open fields, they having no certain grounds appointed them, but like the *Arabians* change their places according to the best convenience of pastorage; and tho' the grounds betwixt the city and the moun-

tains are very barren, yet are the sheep and goats here very good, an evident sign that a small matter is sufficient to feed them. These fields extend from the city to the mountains, which surround them at some distance from thence. They have some sheep of an extraordinary bigness, with two horns on east side of the head. Their he-goats have long curl'd hair, of which they make camlets. Some have such long ears that you may tie them together. *Persia* affords great quantities of tann'd goat and sheep skins. Thus much of *Gamron*.

A little to the right of the harbour of *Gamron*, you may see the isle of *Ormuz*, at the very entrance into the *Persian* gulph, as likewise the islands of *Queixome*, *Kejem* and *Lareck*, of which we will give you a short description.

Some put the island of *Ormuz* under 25 deg. 30 min. of latitude, and 22 deg. 45 min. of longitude; others under 26 deg. 4 min. and some others under 27 deg. and 30 min. northern latitude. The isle of *Ormuz* is by some taken for the same, which by the ancient authors, as *Pliny*, *Pomponius* and *Dionysius*, is call'd *Ogyris*, and by *Ptolemy* *Vorccbia*; it is situate in the *Persian* gulph, about two leagues distant from the continent of *Persia*, having the province of *Caramania* to the east, *Arabia felix* to the south and west, being divided from them only by the streights of *Babarem*, and the continent of *Persia* to the north; it is very near triangular; its largest side which faces the N. N. E. extending from S. E. to the N. W. from the chapel of *St. Lucie* to the point of land where the castle of *Ormuz* is, being the nearest to the continent, where formerly the *Portuguese* had a fort call'd *Comoran*, built just opposite to the castle of *Ormuz*, which therabouts is not above a league distant. The second side extends from the same chapel, viz. from the S. E. to the S. S. W. as far as the cape *Karu*, and so further to the W. S. W. and the W. and makes the basis of the triangle. The third and smallest side begins at *Karu*, and ends at the before-mentioned castle; it faces the country of *Mogofiban*, a name commonly given to the *Persian* coast on that side, which is about two leagues from the isle. Its whole circuit is about three leagues.

The western part of the island extending along the sea-shore, where the mountains end, is call'd *Karu*, where you see a few houses scattered up and down belonging to the moors: At *Turumbake* are a greater number of these houses, but as wretchedly built as the former, except some few formerly belonging to the *Austin* friars, where they used to divert themselves some times. Near to them is a fine fish-pond surrounded

1662.

1662. e  
Mountains.

Self-man-  
tain.

F  
plain  
their  
in,  
only  
the  
rain-  
much  
pool  
in go  
from  
The  
with  
gans  
mife  
the  
chap  
fee g  
and  
which  
ables  
the  
zeal  
devo  
ous  
V

the sheep and  
 sign that  
 feed them.  
 city to the  
 em at some  
 have some  
 s, with two  
 Their he-  
 which they  
 ch long ears  
 ther. *Perfia*  
 and goat and  
*Gamron*.  
 harbour of  
 of *Ormuz*, at  
*Perfian* gulph,  
*Kejome*, *Kejem*  
 I give you a

mus under 25  
 22 deg. 45  
 27 deg.  
 the ile of Or-  
 fame, which  
*Pomponi-*  
*gyris*, and by  
 te in the *Per-*  
 s distant from  
 g the provin-  
*Arabia felix*  
 to divided from  
*Babarem*, and  
 the north; its  
 west side which  
 from S. E. to  
 of *St. Lucie*  
 castle of *Ormuz*  
 continent, where  
 a fort call'd  
 to the castle  
 is not above  
 side extends  
 from the S. E.  
 the cape *Karu*,  
 W. and the W.  
 triangle. The  
 at *Karu*, and  
 castle; it faces  
 same common-  
 on that side,  
 from the ile.  
 ee leagues.  
 and extending  
 the mountains  
 you see a few  
 belonging to  
 are a greater  
 as wretchedly  
 some few for-  
 n friars, where  
 es some times.  
 ond surround-  
 ed

1662. ed with very fine trees, and a large cistern  
 for rain-water.

*Mountains.* The whole island is divided by a ridge  
 of mountains, extending from the east to  
 the west, behind which there is nothing to  
 be seen but white and barren hills, produc-  
 ing nothing except very good white salt.  
 Among the rest there is a mountain here  
 called *Kuykastaron*, or the *Mountain of the*  
*Dead*; on the top of which the *Portuguese*  
 had built a chapel call'd our *Lady of the*  
*Rock*; which chapel is observed to rise  
 higher and higher, because the salt, salt-  
 petre, and brimstone, which are contained  
 in the bowels of this mountain, encrease  
 daily in quantity. The inhabitants visit  
 this chapel with a great deal of devotion,  
 unto which they have made a pretty easy  
 ascent by cutting steps out of the rock,  
 which otherwise is very steep. Near the  
 mountain, where the chapel stands, is ano-  
 ther, which runs upwards in form of a py-  
 ramid. It is composed of one entire mass  
 of the best and whitest salt that can be seen,  
 and appears at a distance like a mountain  
 covered with snow. Not far from hence is  
 a chapel called *St. Lucy*, built behind the  
 ruins of some old towers, where former-  
 ly the kings of *Ormuz* used to keep their  
 brothers prisoners, after they had bereaved  
 them of their eyes. About half ways be-  
 twixt this and the city, was another chap-  
 el dedicated to *St. Lucy*, with some hon-  
 oures about it, whither the inhabitants of *Or-*  
*mus* used to retire during the summer sea-  
 son, as likewise to some others built near  
 the sea-shore of reed only, and covered with  
 palm-tree leaves.

From this chapel to the city is a large  
 plain, where the inhabitants used to have  
 their cisterns to gather and keep rain-water  
 in, which were always locked up; for not  
 only hereabouts, but also all over the island  
 the ground is brackish, which makes the  
 rain-water which is kept in these cisterns  
 much better than what is gathered from the  
 pools or ponds; yet does it not come near  
 in goodness to the fresh water that is brought  
 from the continent or the ile of *Queixome*.  
 The remaining part of this plain is taken up  
 with the graves of the mahometans, pa-  
 gans, and jews, which are buried here pro-  
 miscuously without any difference; some  
 of these tombs are covered with a kind of a  
 chapel, but open on all sides. Hither you  
 see great numbers of mahometan, pagan,  
 and jewish women, of all ages and degrees,  
 which come to bring their offerings of eat-  
 ables in flat small dishes, to the souls of  
 the deceased. And some of these are so  
 zealous as to pay their constant visits and  
 devotions to the tombs of some of their pi-  
 ous men or saints, that are in great reve-

VOL. II.

rence among them, and their tombs sumptu-  
 ously adorned.

Not far from this plain is another extend-  
 ing from the mountains to the city, called  
 by the moors by a peculiar name, *Ardemira*,  
 i. e. *The prospect over the plain* (in the same  
 sense as the *French* say *Belvidere*) where the  
 mahometan courtiers, and other officers of  
 the king used to keep their tournaments and  
 running at the ring on horseback. This  
 plain extends to the west as far as the sea  
 shore, the way that leads to *Karu*, from  
 whence the city has the fairest prospect.

Behind the mountains, being the S. S. W.  
 and the W. S. W. part of the island, called  
*Turumbake*, is the fairest of all, tho' its com-  
 pafs is less betwixt the mountains and the  
 sea than that part beyond the mountains.  
 Here you see a country seat of the old  
 queen of *Ormuz*, adorned with walks of  
 palm-trees, and two large cisterns or ba-  
 sons, called from the place the *Ponds of*  
*Turumbake*, besides several lesser ones.

Their water is the wholesomest and fresh-  
 est of the whole island. There is another  
 great basin belonging to this seat, which is  
 continually supplied with water out of three  
 adjacent ponds and a small brook; this wa-  
 ter is not near so salt as that which is kept  
 in the ponds more to the E. and N. N. E.  
 where the sun turns the water into solid salt.  
 This country seat was already in a decay-  
 ing condition 50 or 60 years before my  
 coming here, having only a few apartments  
 left, wherein the king of *Ormuz* used to  
 lodge during the summer season; *Turum-*  
*bake* had at that time not above 15 or 20  
 huts built of reed close together, like a  
 small village, and covered with palm-tree  
 leaves, after a wretched manner. Most of  
 the houses of this island are built after the  
 same manner, notwithstanding which, the  
 inhabitants of *Ormuz* retire thither with their  
 families in the summer, being taught both  
 by tradition and experience, that the open  
 country air is much more wholesome dur-  
 ing the hot season, than the city air.

On the north side of this ile lies the city  
 of *Ormuz*, which before it was subdued by  
 the *Portuguese* was very populous; foreign-  
 ers flock'd thither daily from *Perfia*, the  
*East-Indies* and *Europe* itself, for the conveni-  
 ency of traffick. To be short, the city of  
*Ormuz* was the most famous and richest tra-  
 ding city of the world, before the *Portuguese*  
 had found out the passage by sea to the  
*East-Indies*, being inhabited and frequented  
 by the *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Abyssines*, *Arme-*  
*nians*, *Tartars*, *Turks*, and other mahome-  
 tans; besides the *Italians*, *French*, *Dutch*,  
*English*, *Poles*, and other *European* nations.  
 It was much inhabited by the *Portuguese*,  
 but very few *Spaniards*, because the first

Ecc

would

1662.

*Ardemira*

*Turum-*  
*bake.*

*Side moun-*  
*tain.*

1662.

*Th. 16. 4*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

*Orma.*

1662. would not permit them to go thither by sea, and the *Turks* stop their passage by land, betwixt the *Mediterranean* and the *Persian* gulph; some few dwelt there under the name and protection of some other nations. The natives of *Ormuz* are all mahometans, but of different sects, some being called *Kiays*, belonging to the sect of *Hali* son-in-law to *Mabomet*, whose doctrine is followed by the *Persians*; others are called *Sunni's*, following the doctrine of *Mabomet*, *Ojmar*, and *Ojman*, as the *Turks* do; the king himself is of this sect; besides which, divers sorts of pagans, as *Banjans*, *Cambojans*, &c. inhabit here.

The city of  
Ormuz in  
the Portu-  
guese  
times.

The city of *Ormuz* whilst under the jurisdiction of the *Portuguese*, and before the *Persians* made themselves masters of it 1619, was a very stately, rich, and magnificent place, of which the inhabitants used to boast, *That if the world were a ring, Ormuz must be considered as the diamond*. For after the *Portuguese* had conquered this city, they were very careful in adorning it from time to time with most magnificent structures, to such a degree, that all the iron belonging to their windows and doors were gilt; and it was the common opinion in those days, that if they had remained masters of it till now, they would have turned them into massy gold. They had built a stately church upon an eminency, dedicated to the virgin *Mary*, with an adjacent hospital called the *Misericordia*. Next to this was the exchange or custom-house, called by the *Persians* *Bencksal*, this was a fine edifice, surrounded with galleries on the out side. They had likewise several monasteries, amongst which those of the *Austin* fryars and *Carmelites* were the chiefest. There is yet to be seen a very high steeple, a most noble piece of architecture, exceeding in magnificence all others of this city; the mahometans call it in the *Arabian* tongue *Alkoran*; on one side of the castle stood formerly a famous *Mosque*, which the *Portuguese* caused to be demolished, as being too near the castle, which proved the occasion of the most inveterate hatred against the *Portuguese*, not only among the moors inhabiting there, but likewise among the *Persians*, their king *Tabamaj* or *Tabamas*, grandfather to *Schabab Awas*, having been the founder of it. No sooner was this city fallen into the hands of the *Persians*, but she was by them deploiled of her ancient glory, and most of her inhabitants, many of whom were killed in the siege, the rest fled for shelter to some other place. All the churches, houses, and other publick edifices, were laid level with the ground, except some few shops in the *Bazar* or shopkeepers street. The *Dutch* ships which un-

Under the  
Persians.

loaded there, and returned commonly empty from thence, used to make it their practice at that time to ballast their vessels with the finest marble stones, the remnants of the stately structures of this city, and would questionless by degrees have taken all that was left, had not the *Persian* governor there prohibited the exportation of them under a severe penalty. For the *Persians* whose intention was to lay the foundation of the greatness of *Gamron* upon the ruins of *Ormuz*, did remove all the best stones from thence, which they made use of in their best buildings at *Gamron*. The fortifications of the city of *Ormuz* in the *Portuguese* times, in 1619, were but in a slender posture, the ditch about the castle being filled up with dirt, having scarce 6 foot of water; besides that, it was not spacious enough for the garrison. Their commanders in chief, who were removed from thence every year, had according to the custom of the *Portuguese*, but a slender share of knowledge in martial affairs, the governor at that time being an ancient man, not trained up in the wars, and not provided with experienced engineers and gunners.

The old four-square castle was built on the utmost northern or north-west point of the land of the isle, where it approaches nearest to the *Persian* shore, two sides of it being washed by the sea, the other two facing the city; betwixt which and the castle is a very fair square of about 300 feet long, from whence you have a fine prospect into the sea. This castle, whilst in the possession of the *Portuguese*, was not very large, being defended only by four bastions, which as well as the cortines, were built with a kind of small flint-stones mixt with mortar and sea-water; so that they were not proof against the thunder of the great cannon. The ditch was likewise very shallow, though it might have been made deeper without any great cost, by reason of the nearness of the sea, which waters it on two sides. In this condition was the castle of *Ormuz* under the *Portuguese*, of which the *Portuguese* boasted that it was impregnable. After the *Persians* had made themselves masters of it, they were very careful to repair the old fortifications, and to add some new ones, especially on the point of the ditch, they made a half-moon, the cannon of which commanded the plain and a gallery; since which time they keep it always in a good posture of defence, and maintain a considerable garrison there, under the command of the governor of *Ormuz*, who residing for the most part at *Gamron*, appoints a deputy for this place, who has his residence in the palace formerly belonging to the kings of *Ormuz*.

1661.

1662.  
The bar-  
bour.

Scarcity of  
water.

The

1662. The harbour of this island is a certain bay, made by two points of land that jett out on both sides; upon one of these capes stands the castle, on the other the *Portuguese* had built a church, dedicated to our *Lady of Good-Hope*; but this point turns somewhat nearer towards the city, so that the harbour where the largest vessels, galleys, and smaller vessels used to cast anchor, lies opposite to the north-east part of the city, betwixt the two monasteries built by the *Portuguese*, one of which belonged to the *Carmelites*, the other to the *Austrian* friars. The tide where this bay is deepest rises at high water, near four foot high above the foundations of the houses; notwithstanding which, at low water the shore is dry for above 200 paces; and 150 paces farther the water is not 3 feet high where it is deepest, so that the largest vessels are obliged to cast anchor at 600 paces from the city, and the galleys at 500, which renders this harbour very unsafe, especially if a storm arises from the east, which often forces the ships ashore; nay, this harbour would be much more dangerous, were it not for the nearness of the continent, which covers it on the N. and N. E. side, and the isle of *Queixome*, which lies to the N. N. W. of it, and breaks the violence of the raging waves. Some tell us of two different bays belonging to the isle of *Ormus*, which afford a safe harbour to ships, the one to the east, the other to the west, being divided by a neck of land which jetteth out betwixt them a considerable way into the sea.

Scarcity of water. The whole island is destitute of water, except what some standing pools or ponds afford, which is always brackish, tho' some more than others; some, especially such as are near the sea-side, being tolerably fit for use; for the farther they are from the mountains, the less they participate of the salt. It does sometimes not rain in *Ormus* for three years together; the only springs of fresh water they have being in the royal gardens. *Ferra Gutka* who reigned in 1596 in *Ormus*, found out a spring with fresh water in *Turumbake*. Not far from thence near the sea-side, arises a salt water spring from among the rocks, called by the *Persian* inhabitants *Abdarmon*, i. e. medicinal water, which has a purging quality, and cleanses the bowels from all impurities. Here you see abundance of people drink the waters at a certain season of the year, when they have a mind to be satisfied whether their bowels are thoroughly cleansed, they cut a piece of an orange or citron, and if immediately after they go to stool, they reckon themselves sufficiently purged. 'Tis true, there are three springs here, which all

1662. having their rise among the mountains, afford water sufficient for three rivulets, but it is as brackish as the sea water itself. Thus several brooks are to be seen to the S. E. among the mountains which carry a very clear water, but so stocked with salt, that in the summer, when these rivulets are dry'd up, you see vast lumps of salt, which cover the banks on both sides. The vast quantity of salt which is to be met with all over this island, being in some places burnt up and blackned by the violence of the sunbeams, affords a dreadful sight at a distance. They have also a kind of salt clay, out of which they make earthen vessels.

The whole isle is nothing else but a barren vast lump of salt, which scarce affords either grass or trees, except what is brought forth by force in the royal gardens in the plains, neither does it afford any thing for the sustenance of human life. It has however some few trees in certain places, but bear no fruit except dates, and another small fruit growing on thorn bushes with green leaves; another kind of these thorn bushes they have with a pretty large stem, and small red leaves. In the opening of the rocks you see now and then a large green and well spread tree, notwithstanding several have positively asserted that this isle did produce neither tree, herbs, nor grass. The mountains are full of rock salt, which is very transparent, and contain likewise a considerable quantity of brimstone. In some winters the salt is washed by the rains down from the mountains, which afterwards is again coagulated by the sun, which is the only made use of here, for the rock salt being of too corrosive a nature, does consume the meat instead of preserving it. The *Dutch* transport abundance of salt from hence to the *East-Indies*. The isle also affords a certain kind of white plastering called by the inhabitants *Guecke*, and another that is red of the same kind, but not so good as the white. They have also a certain way of preparing dung for plaster-work, which they perform in the following manner: They take the uppermost part of an old dunghill away, the rest they make up in balls, and let them dry in the sun. This done, they burn them to ashes with fire; the ashes they beat for a considerable time upon an even piece of ground, and immediately after mix it for use, for, if they let the ashes be cold, or keep them only two or three days, they are not fit for their purpose; but this prepared and used keeps the water out of any place for many years. There are scarce any other stones to be met with here but flint-stones, of which the greatest part of the fortifications of the castle are composed. There is also a kind of black

1662. black glittering sand to be found here, which the *Portuguese* used to transport from thence to their factories in the *East-Indies*. No barley or oats is to be seen here. Their cattle they feed with a peculiar sort of pease or beans, which they grind, and afterwards steep in water, being otherwise too hard to digest. Of these they give a certain quantity every night to their horses. But in the morning they give to each horse 2 pounds of black sugar, mixt with a pound of butter and some flour, which they make up into balls; then they wash the horses mouth and teeth, because this mixture sticks very close to their teeth and gums; in the day time they feed them with some herbs which they draw out of the ground with roots and all, and cleanse them very well from all impurities.

Sinking  
wood.

In the bay and all along the coast of the isle of *Ormuz*, they fish for wood, of which they find great store in the bottom of the sea, but not very large. This wood is by the violence of the currents of the rivers arising from among the mountains of the continent of *Persia* (which is not above two leagues distant from hence) torn off and carried to the shore of *Ormuz*; a thing most surprising, and contrary to what is observed of this kind in other islands lying near the continent, or some other great islands, whether the adjacent rivers force abundance of wood, which however always swims on the surface of the water, and commonly is found rotten, whereas the wood upon the coast links to the bottom, and is not quite rotten, but affords the inhabitants great store of fuel, which has induced some to believe that this wood did grow under water.

On the *Persian* coast you meet also with certain kind of light porous stone under water, not unlike our pumice stones; especially near those places where subterraneous fires are; which makes these stones to be always white, in which they differ from the common pumice, which are either blackish or grey; they are found here in such prodigious quantities, that they build their houses of them, because they mix very well with the mortar, by reason of their spongy substance, and very light; and when well cemented with the mortar, resist the violence of the winds, which blow here exceedingly about the change of the seasons, better than any other stones. Some are of opinion that these stones were cast out by a burning mountain, which seems not improbable, there being on the back side of a neighbouring mountain found vast quantities of these stones, as black as coals. The reason why those on the sea shore are white, seems to be because they have for many years, nay, for many ages past, been scou-

red by the water of their impurities; the inhabitants call them *Sancbmay*, i. e. *Rock-Fish*, because as many as are taken away grow again in a little time, and furnish them with materials for building. They report that in former ages this island did burn for seven years together, of which they shew the marks to this day; the earth upon the mountains being red, and in the vallies spongy like ashes or quick lime; besides that the whole island is subject to frequent earthquakes. The mountains are all over covered with salt, and the grounds are full of salt-petre. As often as the wind blows from the south-west, there arises so violent a stink of brimstone from the mountains, as infects the whole air. The heat is more intense at *Ormuz* than at *Gamron*, for it continues at least five months, viz. from *May* till *September*, and sometimes till the beginning of *December*; in the winter season the heat is somewhat allayed by the dew which falls all the night long, but in the summer the nights are so excessive hot, that it would be impossible for the inhabitants to abide here, if by several ways they did not assuage in some measure its violence. For on the tops of the houses they set certain wooden vessels like bathing tubs, big enough to contain two persons at a time, in these they sit and sleep all night in the open air with the water up to their necks. The cause of this intolerable heat is attributed chiefly to the nature of the soil, which is not only sandy, but full of salt-petre, which occasioning a continual loss of spirits, the inhabitants are forced to repair in some measure this defect, by continually keeping themselves in cold water, notwithstanding it be none of the best here; all the water that is brought hither from *Bandel Kongo*, or the isle of *Queixome*, being taken out of ponds, and consequently not purified from its dregs for want of motion; which is sufficiently demonstrable by its colour which is like milk, and its sediment which is sometimes two or three inches thick at the bottom of the vessel it is kept in. During the violence of the hot season you may see people of both sexes and all ages, flock to the city walls; but the *Europeans* seldom venture at swimming in the sea, the water being so excessive salt that it excoriates their bodies; but they allay the excessive heat of the nights by wetting their quilts and pillows with cold water. It is farther observable, that the winds are so changeable here, that you may in a quarter of an hours time remarkably feel their different effects; some by opening, others by obstructing the pores of your bodies. During the summer season the winds blow for the most part E. and S. E. or W. S. W. but seldom from the

1662. four  
som  
sing  
wat  
chan  
keep  
T  
ter,  
wine  
are  
a spi  
all o  
a cer  
is dr  
this  
hou  
licen  
every  
each  
The  
gover  
cende  
that r  
adjace  
their  
or pri  
race o  
ba, or  
tremel  
extend  
where  
layain  
founda  
mus o  
his suc  
ceeded  
third i  
Lax K  
embrac  
Katkob  
Katkob  
suspect  
made h  
from v  
married  
that cas  
mud, he  
but was  
enemy.  
9<sup>th</sup>  
king in  
tum wa  
fadin Ab  
king of  
ter, his  
of Keys  
long afe  
matter o  
of Keys  
fadin, he  
received  
usurper  
whom he  
Vol.



1662. south, the last of which is not so unwholesome as the rest; and what is more surprising is, that this wind always cools the water contained in any vessels, but not the chambers or rooms where the water is kept.

Their Drink.

The drink of the common people is water, those of the better sort drink Spanish wine, or Persian wines of *Sbiras*, but these are very scarce and dear. They distil also a spirit of rice and fugar here, as well as in all other parts of the *Indies*. They have also a certain kind of drink call'd *Tari*, which is drawn from a tree, and as sweet as musk; this is the ordinary liquor sold in public-houses, who pay a considerable tax for their licenses to the king. This liquor is brought every day to town in casks on horse-back, each horse carrying one on each side.

Origin of the Isle of Ormus.

The isle of *Ormuz* was in ancient times govern'd by its own kings or princes, descended from the race of these great kings that ruled all over *Arabia*, *Persia* and the adjacent countries. The first famous in their histories, was a certain *Arabian* Emir or prince, call'd *Mabamed Dramku*, of the race of the ancient kings that ruled in *Saba*, or *Arabia Felix*. This prince being extremely desirous to conquer new dominions, extended his conquests to the *Persian Gulph*, where he landed with a great fleet from *Kalayate*, a city of *Arabia Felix*, and laid the foundation of a city call'd *Ormuz* or *Harmus* on the coast of *Persia*. He left for his successor *Solyman* his son, who was succeeded by the following kings. *Isa* the third in rank, son of *Solyman*; the fourth *Lax Kari* son of *Isa*, who left the court and embraced a private life. The fifth was *Katobad* his son; the sixth *Isa II.* son to *Katobad*, the 7<sup>th</sup> *Mamud* son of *Isa II.* who suspecting *Mir Xabadin Molong* his nephew, made him a prisoner in the castle of *Guti*; from whence he escaped to *Seugon*, and married the daughter of the governor of that castle. The 8<sup>th</sup> *Xaranta* son of *Mamud*, he engaged in a war against *Molong*, but was slain in an engagement with his enemy.

9<sup>th</sup>, *Mir Xabadin Molong* was declared king in his stead; his daughter *Sed Alkatum* was married to *Emir*, or prince *Seyfadin Aben Azar*, his brother *Aly's* son, king of the isle of *Keys*, who dying soon after, his son *Seyfadin* obtained the kingdom of *Keys*. *Mir Xabadin* dying likewise not long after, his Vizier *Xarcar* made himself master of the kingdom of *Ormuz*; and those of *Keys* having at the same time deposed *Seyfadin*, he fled to *Ormuz*, where being well received by the inhabitants, he besieged the usurper *Xarcar* in the castle of *Karcan*, whom he kill'd, and thereby became ma-

Vol. II.

ster of the whole kingdom. After *Seyfadin* had well settled his affairs here, he undertook an expedition against those of *Keys*, of whom he kill'd many, and made some of their chief men prisoners. From thence he went to the isle of *Gerun*, (since call'd *Ormuz*) where he caused all his prisoners to be slain upon a certain mountain, which from thence was call'd *Kay Kajaron*, i. e. The mountain of the dead. He returned at last victorious to *Ormuz*, where he spent the rest of his days in Peace. The 11<sup>th</sup> was *Xabadin Mamud*, son of *Isa II.* who succeeded his uncle in the kingdom. The 12<sup>th</sup> *Emir Rohnadin Mamud*, *Xabadin's* nephew, son of *Hamud*, who was very victorious, and extended his conquests as far as *Saba*, a province of *Arabia Felix*. He reign'd 35 years, and died 1278.

He was succeeded by his son *Emir Sayfadin Nocerat*, but was soon after forced by *Emir Kodbadin Tbabantam* and *Emir Moezbadin Fulad*, or *Pulad*, to fly the kingdom, and to seek for shelter, together with his mother, by sultan *Gebaladin Suraget Mex*, governor of *Kernon*, by whose assistance he was restored to his kingdom: But being a second time vanquish'd, by his brother *Emir Kodbadin* was forced to save himself by flight in a small bark, in the isle of *Queixome*. In the mean while, king *Seyfadin*, who had assisted *Kodbadin*, having caused him to be murdered, the soldiers conceived such a hatred, against this *Seyfadin*, that they instantly recall'd *Emir Sayfadin Nocerat*, chased away *Seyfadin*, and restored him to the throne. Notwithstanding which he was not long after murdered, by his two brothers, *Emir Majaud*, and *Emir Turkonxa*, together with his two sisters, *Bibi Banek*, and *Bibi Neyty*, after he had reign'd 12 years, viz. 1290.

*Majaud* the murderer of his Brother, succeeded him in his throne, being a very courageous but cruel man, which brought upon him the hatred both of the nobility and common people, of whom he caused many to be killed. This made them implore the assistance of *Emir Babadin Ayas Seyfin*, formerly a slave only of king *Nocerat*, but now governor of *Kalayate*, a sea-port of *Arabia-Felix*; who forced *Majaud* to fly to *Kernon*, and from thence into *Syria*, where he died, after a reign of three years. He was succeeded by *Babadin Ayas Seyfin*, who caused two brothers of *Majaud* to be beheaded, for endeavouring to restore him to the kingdom.

About that time a great swarm of *Turkes*, came out of *Turkestan*, conquered a considerable part of *Persia*, and by their frequent inroads, into the kingdom of *Ormuz*, forced the inhabitants to seek for shelter.

F f f

at



1662.

at the command of their king *Azaez*, in the isle of *Queixome*. Whilst they were roving about in the neighbouring seas, to find out a place where to fix their habitations, they happened to light upon a certain island, 2 leagues from *Queixome*, where meeting with a very ancient man, living just on the point of the isle, a fisherman by trade, he advised their king, to settle there. The king approving of his counsel, sent to the king of *Keys*, the proprietor of this, and all the other islands in the *Persian Gulph*, to desire him to sell him the said isle, for a certain sum of money, which being granted, he settled there a colony of his subjects, 1300, and gave it the name of *Ormus*, after his native country. His successors afterwards extended their conquests over a great part of *Arabia* and *Persia*, and over the *Persian* sea, as far as *Bajora*; and maintain'd themselves in the possession of it, till this island was conquered by the *Portuguese*. This king died 1312, in the 22 year of his reign.

Some historians give us the following account of this and the succeeding kings of the isle of *Ormus*.

After this king had settled his new colony, he surrendered the government, to *Emir Ayzadin Gordonxa*, son of *Salbor*, and *Bibi Zeineb*, a nephew of the ancient king of *Ormus*, and retiring to *Kalayatte* in *Arabia*, there finish'd his days in peace. *Gordonxa* was engaged in war with the king of *Keys*, because he had intercepted some ships coming from the *East-Indies*, his dominions; *Ormus* he vanquish'd, and forced him to fly his dominions; but the king of *Keys* returning soon after, found means to make *Gordonxa* his prisoner, under pretence of an interview concerning a peace betwixt them; and *Bibi Sultan*, *Gordonxa's* spouse, committed the administration of the government to *Malek Guaya Hadin Dinar*, son of her husband's brother *Xamxa*; scarce five months were expired, before the king of *Keys* came to *Ormus*, with *Gordonxa* his prisoner, where he was joyrully received by his subjects, except *Dinar*, who being used to rule, would not submit to *Gordonxa*, but forced him to retire to the castle of *Minab*, on the continent of *Persia*. Notwithstanding which, *Dinar* being sensible what affection the people bore to *Gordonxa*, and fearing his return, he thought it his safest way to retreat in time to the kingdom of *Makron*, betwixt *Persia* and the country of *Send* or *Ind*. After which *Gordonxa*, once more return'd to his kingdom, where he died 1318.

He was succeeded by his son *Emir Mobarjadin Bararon Xa*, who together with his brother, was by *Emir Xabadin Issuf* his general put in prison; *Issuf* afterwards

mounted the throne, but was engaged in a war immediately after, with *Emir Xa Kodbadin*, brother to the imprison'd king: *Dinar* came likewise with a strong flying army, to his assistance, from *Makron*; but finding *Issuf* too strong for them both, he entred into a confederacy with him; and *Issuf* after having caused the imprison'd king, his mother, and one of his brothers to be slain, forced *Kodbadin* to retire to *Kalayatte*, with *Bibi Mariam*, the spouse of *Ayas Ceyfin*. But *Kodbadin* afterwards returned unexpectedly to *Ormus*, with a considerable force, and having made *Issuf* his prisoner, he put the crown upon his head, and caused him, his wife and his two sons, to be killed; after which he likewise made himself master of *Keys*. It happen'd that *Kodbadin* being abroad a hunting on the continent, 1345, *Rud Xur Nofomadin*, in the mean while got himself proclaim'd king of *Gerun* or *Ormus*; but finding most of the inhabitants averse to him, he quitted the country. However it was not long before he return'd with a great power, and having gain'd *Homer Sojadin*, *Kodbadin's* general, to join with him, he forced *Kodbadin* to fly to *Kalayatte*. He had scarce stay'd here a year, when word was brought him, that *Nofomadin* was dead, and that by his last will, he had enjoined his sons, *Xembe* and *Xady*, to throw themselves at the feet of *Kodbadin*, and to surrender the crown to him; but finding that the two young men, instead of performing their father's will, had seized upon the kingdom; he attack'd them and regained the crown of *Ormus*. He died 1347, in *Nakelstan*, a province of *Mogestan*.

He was succeeded by *Turonxa* his son, (who writ the lives of the kings his predecessors, both in verse and prose.) He vanquished *Xembe* and *Xady*, and died 1378, after he had reigned 30 years. After him his eldest son *Mazud* obtained the crown of *Ormus*, who was succeeded by *Xabadin*, the second son of *Turonxa*; after whom reign'd *Salgar*, *Turonxa's* third son. Under his reign, *Sofi Hbalila* conquered all *Persia*, even to the continent, directly opposite to the island of *Gerun*, or *Ormus*, which escaped his hands for want of shipping; but *Salgar* lost all that he was possessed of on the continent. For the rest he reigned in peace, as did his successor *Xauwes*. Him succeeded *Seyfadin*, who reigned 1507, when the *Portuguese*, after they had discovered the passage by sea to the *Indies*, first set footing in the isle of *Ormus*, under the command of *Alfonfus Albuquerque*, the king being then yet in his minority, was under the protection of one *Aiar* or *Kogear*, his father's slave, a brave but cunning man,

1662.

1662.

The Portuguese came first into the Persian gulph.

1662. whose chief aim was to let the young king bear the title of king, but to keep the administration of affairs in his own hands. *Albuquerque* being not ignorant of it, look'd upon this as a favourable opportunity to bring the city of *Ormuz*, under the power of *Emanuel*, the then king of *Portugal*, or at least to make it tributary to him, by erecting a fortress near it, by which means he might clear the *Persian* gulph of all the *Turkish* and other Mahometan vessels trading to the *Indies*, and consequently entail that whole trade upon *Portugal*. He was about that time, with six stout men of war well mann'd, cruising in those seas; but thinking it below himself at such a juncture as this to lie privateering at sea, he steer'd his course the 20<sup>th</sup> of *August* 1507 towards the *Persian* gulph, and passing by the cape *Rosalgat*, came to an anchor before *Kalayatte*, (a noble city, and the first on that coast under the jurisdiction of the kings of *Ormuz*) to provide himself with fresh provisions. The inhabitants dreading the name of the *Portuguese*, which was then already become famous throughout the *Indies*, entered into a confederacy with him, upon such conditions as *Albuquerque* was pleas'd to prescribe them. From thence he set sail for *Kuratie*, another city belonging to the kings of *Ormuz*, on the *Arabian* coast. Here the inhabitants being of a different opinion with those of *Kalayatte* chose rather to defend themselves by force, than to submit to *Albuquerque*, tho' with very ill success. For *Albuquerque* having landing his men, so vigorously attack'd the city, that the garrison after some resistance were forced to leave it to his mercy, which he burnt to the ground, with all their ships he found in the harbour. In the same manner he made himself master of the *Makate* and *Orfasan*, two strong and well fortified places belonging to the king of *Ormuz*; and from thence directly taking his course to *Ormuz* it self, the chief aim of this expedition, he sent word to king *Seyfadin* and *Atar* the protector, that *Emanuel* king of *Portugal* having taken a resolution, out of an hereditary hatred to the mahometans, the declared enemies of *Christianity*, to make war against them, which should not end but with the total conquest of either side, he was come to tell them, that if they were ready, according to the example of several other *Asiatick* and *African* kings, to pay his master a certain yearly tribute, he would leave them in the quiet possession of the island, but if they refus'd to acknowledge the king of *Portugal* for their lord, he was come to denounce them war, which was not to end but with their total total destruction.

The Portuguese came first into the Persian gulph.

The king being forely frightned at the last success of the *Portuguese*, and dreading the same fate, thought it his best way to cajole *Albuquerque* with fair words into a belief of his sincere intentions of peace; but at the same time, by the advice of *Atar*, fought to gain time, and to delay his positive answer, till the expected auxiliaries from the continent of *Persia* were arrived. No sooner had he received these supplies but he altered his note, and in plain terms sent word to *Albuquerque*, that the kings of *Ormuz* were not us'd to pay, but to receive tribute from foreigners; that in case the *Portuguese* would be contented with the same privileges of trading other nations enjoy'd there, they should be welcome; but that if they once came to hostilities, they should be convinced to their cost, what difference there was to fight with well appointed *Persians* and *Arabians*, and with an undisciplin'd rabble of *Moors*. By this time *Atar* the protector had got above 20000 men together, part of which he embark'd aboard the merchant vessels then in harbour there, which he posted in a line along the shore, to prevent the enemies landing, whilst he with the men of war put to sea with an intention to attack *Albuquerque* in the rear, so soon as he should be engaged with the merchant men: But *Albuquerque*, instead of attacking the merchant ships, came up with *Atar's* fleet, and engaged them so furiously, that that in a short time he sunk many of them, and burnt the rest, with a great slaughter of men on the enemies side, whereas the *Portuguese* lost not above ten men during the whole engagement. King *Seyfadin* being sensible that the loss of his fleet must of necessity draw that of the whole island after it, sent immediately his deputies to *Albuquerque* to treat of peace; they were kindly received by the *Portuguese* general, who gave immediate orders, that the fire which had seized by this time upon the merchant ships, should be extinguish'd immediately, and the next day a peace was concluded betwixt them upon these following conditions.

That *Seyfadin* king of *Ormuz*, and all his successors, submit themselves to, and shall acknowledge the king of *Portugal* their protector, and pay him an annual tribute of 15000 *Serafs*.

That *Albuquerque* shall have liberty to pitch upon a place, such as he judges most convenient for the erecting of a fortress, for which purpose he shall be supply'd with ready money, and other necessities by the said king.

Accordingly *Albuquerque* apply'd himself with all imaginable speed to the building of the fortress, but many of the gentlemen volunteers,

1662.

1662. volunteers and other *Portuguese*, looking upon it as a great hardship to spend their time here in slavish drudgery, whilst they miss'd their opportunity of getting a rich booty at sea from the *Moorish* ships, (the main intent of their voyage) began to murmur, and at last, with the consent of their captains, embark'd themselves aboard their men of war, and in spite of *Albuquerque* return'd to the *Indies*. He was vex'd to to the soul to see himself thus disappointed in this great design, but being forced to comply with necessity he follow'd the rest. But some years after he being sent from the king of *Portugal* in the quality of viceroy of the *Indies*, he did, after the conquest of *Goa* and *Malacca*, bring it to perfection in the following manner.

He caus'd 1577, 22 men of war, and a good number of merchant ships to be equip'd at *Goa*, and to have it rumour'd abroad, that he intended to go with this fleet to *Aden* (a city at the entrance of the *Redsea*) to prevent those of *Ormus* to conceive any jealousy of this equipment. But no sooner was he come to *Makate* but he changed his course, and steer'd directly for *Ormus*, where his arrival caus'd an incredible fear both in the king and people. For *Azar* being dead since, and king *Seyfadin* poison'd by *Noradin*, governor of the city, his brother *Toro* or *Torunxa* had usurp'd the kingdom from his children. *Noradin*, who had both by this act, and before heap'd so many obligations upon this new king, got thereby the sole administration of the government into his own hands, and daily appear'd in publick with a strong guard, consisting most of his own kinsfolks. Those that bore the chiefest rank among these were three brothers, among whom was one *Hamades*, *Noradin*'s chief favourite, a man of about 35 years of age, bold, prudent and very ambitious, and resembling in every respect the late decess'd protector *Azar*. He took effectual care by placing his creatures in all places of trust, whereby he establish'd himself in the management of the government, so that not only *Noradin* but also *Toro* himself durst not attempt to act contrary to his sentiments. From hence it was, that tho' the league with *Portugal* had been kept inviolably hitherto, the *Portuguese* had been civilly receiv'd there, and the yearly tribute punctually paid, yet was the power of *Hamades* so prevailing, as to have constrained *Toro* to accept of the *Persian* tributant sent him by *Ismael Sopbi*, an evident sign that *Hamades* his inclinations were rather for the *Persians* than *Portuguese*. *Albuquerque* being not ignorant of what pass'd at *Ormus*, resolv'd, by delivering king *Toro* from the slavish submission impos'd up-

on him by his subjects, to confirm him absolutely in his fidelity and interest to the king of *Portugal*; for which purpose he surrounded the whole island with his fleet, to take away from them all hopes of relief, and immediately sent word to the king, that he was come thither with no other intent than to enter upon a new league betwixt the kings of *Portugal* and *Ormus*.

King *Toro* being not a little surpriz'd at the unexpected appearance of so great a fleet, dispatch'd immediately his deputies to *Albuquerque*, to treat with him concerning the conditions of it; *Albuquerque* demanded, that besides the annual tribute to be paid to the king of *Portugal*, liberty should be given him to build a fortress, and a factory house to secure the trade of the *Portuguese*; and king *Toro* being willing enough to grant what he desired, the league was confirmed by a solemn oath on both sides. But *Hamades*, who soon foresaw that the building of this fortress would tend to the no small detriment of his authority, left no stone unturn'd to prevent its accomplishment, which *Albuquerque* being soon aware of, he caus'd this ambitious favourite to be kill'd. After his death, the *Portuguese* meeting with no other obstacle, the fortress was soon after brought to perfection; king *Toro* readily furnishing them with materials and other necessities. The next care of *Albuquerque* was, how to remove all the opportunities of a future revolt among the inhabitants of *Ormus*; for which purpose, after having taken the oath of fidelity from king *Toro*, he removed all the great cannon out of the city, and sent about 30 persons of the royal family, who had their eyes taken away before, and were maintain'd at the king's charge from thence to *Goa*, where they were to be provided for by certain persons appointed for that purpose by *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*. *Albuquerque* having thus settled the affairs of *Ormus* return'd to *Goa*, where he was no sooner arriv'd but dy'd. The *Mahometans* call this *Albuquerque* *Maland*, because he was born at *Melinde* in *Africa*, call'd by them *Maland*.

It was not long before king *Toro* refus'd to pay the usual tribute to the *Portuguese*, alledging that they did not defend him against the violences committed by *Mekrin* his vassal prince, of the island of *Babaren*, who hinder'd the ships from coming to *Ormus*. *Sequeira*, then governor of the *Indies* for the king of *Portugal*, sent here 17 seven men of war (aboard of which were 400 *Portuguese* soldiers) to the assistance of king *Toro*, under the command of *Anthony Correa*, which were join'd by 200 barks of the king's, mann'd with 3000 *Persians*, under the

1662.

1662. the  
brou  
conf  
4000  
i/b  
arm  
but  
the  
the  
Bard  
pay  
By  
conv  
circu  
and  
gue  
over  
bitan  
and  
cept  
kill'd  
tugue  
of Ba  
impr  
of the  
resist  
ing th  
tired  
to the  
city of  
ceffivel  
chief a  
having  
of the  
call'd  
and in  
the son  
king be  
league  
which h  
bute of  
tugal:  
reitor  
taken fr  
the Por  
their cu  
dicature  
an intro  
it almo  
reign'd  
Kafirux  
Ferragu  
great in  
dow of  
Mogofar  
fure, wi  
for answ  
desires as  
dens at  
Spring of  
having  
he was n  
pect tion  
Vol.

1662. the conduct of *Xaraf* his admiral. *Mokrin* brought together an army of 12000 men, consisting of three thousand *Arabian* horse, 4000 *Persian* archers, and the rest of *Turkish* firelocks, and some of his own subjects, arm'd only with scimeters and javelins; but being overthrown and slain in battle, the isle of *Babaren* fell into the hands of the king of *Ormuz*, who gave it to one *Bardadi*, under condition that he should pay him an annual tribute of 40000 *Serafs*.

By this time *Sequeira* being sufficiently convinced, that the king his master was circumvented in his share of the customs and other taxes, appointed certain *Portuguese* commissioners to have a watchful eye over them, which so exasperated the inhabitants, that king *Toro* in 1521 revolted, and caused all the *Portuguese* at *Ormuz*, except such as fled into the fortrefs, to be kill'd; the same treatment received the *Portuguese* at *Kurialte*, *Soar*, and in the island of *Babaren*, who were either all slain or imprison'd. Then he attempted the taking of the fortrefs, but meeting with a brave resistance from the *Portuguese*, and dreading their return with a good fleet, he retired with all his subjects and their effects to the isle of *Queixome*, and set fire to the city of *Ormuz*, which burnt four days successively. But not long after *Xaraf*, the chief adviser and promoter of this revolt, having received intelligence of the coming of the *Portuguese* fleet, and fearing to be call'd to a severe account kill'd king *Toro*; and in his stead put *Mamud Seba*, one of the sons of *Seyfadin*, upon the throne. This king being but 13 years of age, made a new league with the *Portuguese*, by virtue of which he was oblig'd to pay an annual tribute of 20000 *Serafs* to the king of *Portugal*: The inhabitants of *Ormuz* were to restore to the *Portuguese* all that they had taken from them; in consideration of which, the *Portuguese* were not to intermeddle with their custom-house, or other courts of judicature. In the year 1550, the *Turks* made an inroad into the isle of *Ormuz*, and laid it almost desolate. The king who in 1566 reign'd in *Ormuz* was call'd *Siafrusia* of *Kahruxa Gialadin*; and in 1580 reign'd one *Ferraguixa*, who tho' very antient, had a great inclination to marry *Bisatme*, the widow of *Rex Bradadin*, his late governor of *Mogostan*, thereby to be master of her treasure, which was very great; she gave him for answer, *That she would comply with his desires as soon as he had perfected his new gardens at Tarumbake, and found out a new spring of fresh water*; both which the king having found means to effect in a short time, he was nevertheless disappointed in his expectation by the crafty widow. He that

Vol. II.

reign'd in *Ormuz* in 1606 was *Xaque*, i. e. 1662. prince *Ajo*, or as some call him *Ajofia*, i. e. king *Ajo*.

For tho' the *Portuguese* by the conduct of *Albuquerque*, had got into the possession of the island of *Ormuz*, ever since 1507, nevertheless the succession of their kings from father to son, was kept inviolable under the protection of the crown of *Portugal*; for no sooner did the king of *Ormuz* die, but the inhabitants set another of the royal family, tho' not without the consent of the *Portuguese* governor upon the throne, who was oblig'd to take the oath of fidelity to the king of *Portugal*, after which he was invested with the crown and scepter by the said governor, who conducted him in great pomp to the royal palace, and afterwards gave him all the demonstrations of respect and honour, tho' at the same time he durst not stir from the island without his approbation.

The antient kings of *Ormuz* were masters of vast territories on the continent of *Persia* and *Arabia*; and among the rest of the countries of *Lar* and *Mogostan* in *Persia*, the last of which is commonly call'd the *Persian* coast, and the country of *Lar* being a mountainous country of very difficult access, serv'd them as a bulwark against the *Persians*. For after these had once taken from the king of *Ormuz* the country of *Lar*, and what else they were possess'd of on the continent of *Persia*, (whose example was followed by the *Arabians*) the isle of *Ormuz* was bereaved of its chief defence, and exposed to the insults of the *Persians*.

It was the custom of the antient kings of *Ormuz*, in order to secure to themselves the quiet possession of the throne, to confine their next kinsfolks, or such as had any pretensions to the crown, with their wives and children, where they were well entertain'd, and kept till the king thought fit to dispose of them otherwise. They also used to blind their brothers, and others descended of the royal line, because it was a fundamental law amongst them, that no blind man could sway the scepter. It was performed thus; they made a copper basin red hot, which they, immediately after it was taken out of the fire, held frequently close before the eyes of him that was to be bereaved of his eyesight; which without any farther application, had the desired effect, without giving the least blemish to the eyes in outward appearance, which look'd as clear as before. Some will have it to have been done with a red hot iron.

The kings of *Ormuz* possessed vast treasures in former ages; the customs they received from all goods exported and imported

G g

ed

1662. ed there, amounting to an immense sum yearly, which empower'd them to extend their conquests on the continent of *Persia* and *Arabia*, which they afterwards lost again by their own neglect. For whilst they themselves were drowned in voluptuousness, they left the sole management of affairs to their favourites, who encreasing in pride as they did in riches, at last left them nothing but the bare royal name, whilst they acted in the government at their own pleasure, disposing of the treasury and all other matters of moment, as it suited best with their own interest, whereby both the power of the kings and the strength of the kingdom being weakened, they were no longer able to cope as before with their enemies, and at last were forced to yield themselves tributaries to the *Portuguese*, who were afterwards, viz. in 1622, chased from thence by the *Persians*, with the assistance of the *English*, under the reign of their king *Schach Abbas*, which happened in the following manner.

The *Portuguese* at *Ormuz* had no sooner been advertised of the taking of the fort of *Queixome* (situate upon the point of the island of the same name;) but they sent deputies in the name of the king of *Ormuz* and of *Goazi* to the *Persian* Chan of *Sciras*, to come with them to an amicable composition, but with such evident marks of fear, that the *Persians*, who had lately received advice of a powerful incursion made by the *Usbeck* and *Nogayan Tartars*, and consequently would have rested satisfied with the conquest of the isle of *Queixome*, being sensible thereof, resolved not to let slip this opportunity of plundering as it were en passant the city of *Ormuz*. Accordingly the Chan of *Sciras*, without tarrying any longer in the island of *Queixome*, embark'd about 40000 *Persians* and *Arabians*, under the conduct of *Emanculibey* his lieutenant, in some barks, who coming before the city of *Ormuz*, found it deserted by the *Portuguese* and most of its other inhabitants, but met with a prodigious quantity of merchandise, which they either could or would not bring into the castle. The *Persians* seeing themselves thus masters of the city without striking a blow, and finding that under the protection of the houses they might open their trenches, without any considerable danger from the cannon of the castle, fell to work without delay, and soon carried them on to the foot of the ditch, which being dry on that side, they pass'd without much opposition. Then they attack'd the bastions of *St. James*, which they undermin'd and made themselves masters of it in a few days; the garrison all this while not making one salley, but were forced to surrender the place the 3<sup>d</sup> of May, after a siege

of ten weeks. They consisted of 400 men, regular troops, besides women and children, which were some days before sent to *Mafkate*. The *English* had the chief hand in making the conditions for this surrender, which were,

*That all the soldiers should have their lives granted them;*

*And that all such as were willing should be transported to Mafkate in two English ships appointed for that purpose*, which was strictly observed by the *Persians*; they made the king of *Ormuz* and *Goazil*, with their families, prisoners, and seized upon their whole treasure, which in pearls and gold amounted to above two millions, besides a vast booty of precious stones, and other riches belonging to the inhabitants, and 300 pieces of cannon, all which fell to the *Persians* share, who lost a great number of men in the siege of this fortress. The *Portuguese*, before they surrendered the fort, took care to make all the cannon useless by nailing of it up. The king of *Ormuz*, with some other *Arabians* of note were carried prisoners into *Persia*, together with the beforementioned *Goazil Raia Noradina*. This last was a young lord, a subject of the king of *Spain*, a very handsome person, and well versed in the *Persian* and *Arabian* histories. He had at the beginning of the siege offered 100000 crowns in ducats and *Xeraphins*, to the *Persians*, to be transported to *Mafkate* or *Goa*; and the unfortunate king of *Ormuz*, had likewise made an offer of his whole treasure to the *Portuguese*, to obtain the same favour, which was refused by the *Portuguese*, notwithstanding they were both vassals of the king of *Portugal*, which has given no slender cause of suspicion to some, as if the *Portuguese* had invited the *Persians* thither, when they sued for peace to them in the isle of *Queixome*. The *English*, in consideration of this service, had the moiety of all the customs and other revenues granted them by the *Persians*. The chief reason of the loss of the fortress of *Ormuz*, is attributed to the revolt of the garrison in the *Portuguese* fort of *Queixome*, who in spite of *Ruy Freira* their governor, surrendered it to the *Persians*. It was also alledged, that if the governor of the *Portuguese* fortresses of *Ormuz*, had, according to the advice of the other commanders, filled the ditch betwixt the city and the fortress with water, by opening the sluices, the *Persians* would have found it a much harder task to have approached so near to the bastion of *St. James*.

Before the *Portuguese* had discovered the passage by sea to the *Indies*, all the *Indian* commodities were brought into *Europe* by the way of *Ormuz*, whither they were first transported

Conquest of  
Ormuz by  
the Persians.

The isle of  
Baharen.



1662. transported out of all parts of the *Indies*, and from thence thro' the *Persian* gulph, and along the river *Euphrates* to *Bassora*, which city lies upon the confluence of the two great rivers the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. From *Bassora* they were by land carried by camels to *Bagdad*, a city upon the *Tigris*. From hence they travelled with their merchandizes in caravans thro' the deserts of *Syria* to *Aleppo*, being a journey of forty days; and from *Aleppo* to *Tripolis* in *Syria*, bordering upon the mediterranean (only three days journey) from whence they were transported by the mediterranean into all parts of *Europe*. From hence it is evident, that *Ormus* in former ages was the staple of all the *Indian* commodities. But since the discovery of the sea passage to the *East-Indies* by the *Portuguese* by the cape of *Good Hope*, this way of transporting the *Indian* commodities by land is laid aside, tho' even to this day, certain *Indian* merchandizes, but especially *Persian* silks, are brought from *Ormus* by land by the caravans, this island by reason of its situation, at the entrance of the *Persian* gulph, and its two harbours, lying very commodious for traffick and shipping from the eastern parts of the world. After the city of *Ormus* was fallen into the hands of the *Persians*, most of its traffick and the staple of the *Indian* commodities was from thence transferred to *Gamron*, a city upon the *Persian* coast, built upon the ruins of *Ormus*. We will now proceed to a short description of the islands of *Babaren*, *Queixome* and *Kesem*.

The isle of Babaren.

Among a great number of other islands in the *Persian* gulph, and under the jurisdiction of *Persia*, one of the chief is the isle of *Babaren*, or *Babrem*, called by *Strabo* and *Pliny* *Tilos*, and is by some taken to be the same island, called *Ichbar* by *Ptolemy*. It is situate in the streights of *Bassora* or the *Persian* gulph, betwixt *Bassora* and the isle *Gerun*, or *Ormus*, about 60 leagues distant from each, near the *Arabian* coasts, over against the harbour of *Katifa*. This island abounds in water, but is brackish, the best of all being found in certain ponds or pools in *Nanyab*, in the midst of the island; next to which that which is taken out of the sea is in most esteem, which is performed in the following manner.

There are certain springs of fresh water arising in the bottom of the sea, at three fathoms and a half deep. Near the city of *Manama*, certain divers go early in the morning in boats, about three musket shot deep in the sea from the shore, and dive to the bottom of the sea, fill their earthen or leathern vessels with the water that issues from the springs, and so come up again and return to the shore; this they do with

a great deal of dexterity and nimbleness. 1662. These springs are supposed to have been formerly on the shore, not far from the sea-side, which since that time have been swallowed up by the inundations of the sea, occasioned by earthquakes. This isle is very fertile, abounding in fruits of all sorts, but especially dates. But all the rice (which together with the dates, is the general food of the inhabitants;) is from the *Indies* transported to *Ormus*, and from thence into this island, which is famous throughout the *Indies*, by reason of the pearl fishery here, Pearl fish. 173. from whence the king of *Persia* draws a vast revenue yearly, as may be gathered from thence, that after this island was fallen into the hands of one *Bardadin*, (who succeeded *Anthony Korrea Mokrin*, a vassal of the king of *Ormus*) he promised to pay a yearly tribute of 40000 *Serafs*. Besides this, the pearl trade here produces yearly at least 500000 ducats in ready money, not to reckon 100000 ducats more, which are shared betwixt the *Persian* governor and the other officers: For there is a great resort of merchants to this place, which come hither from all parts of the world to buy up pearls, and to transport them to the *Indies* and other places, the best and most precious pearls in the world being found near this island of *Babaren*, and the isle of *Ginjar* or *Gisfar*, which both in bigness and roundness, far exceed those found near the other islands of *Latif*, *Lafen*, *Barebator*, *Zezirafibar*, *Alul*, *Seran*, *Djud*, *Daas*, *Emergoenon*, *Ancovi*, *Serecho*, *Delmesialmas*, *Sirbeniaft*, *Aldane*, *Festebuatich*, *Cherizorn*, *Dibi*, *Sarba*, *Agiman*, *Ras*, *Emelgovien*, *Rafagiar*, *Davin*, *Rafaelchimes*, *Sirkorkor*, *Kafab*, *Konzar*, *Melenderadi*, *Lima*, *Debe*, *Cborf*, *Cbelb*, *Sarar*, *Suet*, *Meftar*, *Garajat*, *Teuji*, *Golaf*, *Furgatile*, *Sam*, *Gameda*, *Bacha* and *Jadi*. All which afford pearls, but they are not exactly round. Near *Mafkate*, about 33 or 34 leagues from *Ormus*, are likewise very good pearls to be found.

The pearl fishery near *Babaren* begins sometimes in *June*, but generally in *July*, and continues till the end of *August*. About 200 barks go abroad together, viz. 100 belonging to the isle of *Babaren*, 50 to *Pilfar* and 50 to *Nibely*; their rendezvous being commonly near *Katar*, a sea port of *Arabia*, six leagues south of *Babaren*. The pearls taken here exceed all the rest in goodness, beauty, and weight, tho' not in bigness. They catch them by means of a stone, which by its weight is let down 12 or 18 fathom under water. They sell the pearls by *Karats* and *Abas*, three of which make one *Karat*; and by *Matikals*, or *Mitgals*, each of which contains 42 *Karats*; the small pearls are sold by *Mitgals*. Besides this general fishery



1662. fishery near Katar, which continues for two months, there are several other particular fisheries, near Nibely, Babaren, Julfar, Makate, Teude, and Rozalgate, in the Persian gulph, which though not of so great consequence as the first, yet are commonly greatly beneficial to the owners. As they take up the oysters they open them, when the pearls drop out. It is generally believed that these pearls are progenerated by the May dews, during which month the oysters rise up to the surface of the waters, and opening themselves, receive a small quantity of dew, which being coagulated, afterwards produces these pearls. Certain it is, that if these oysters are opened before June, the pearls are soft and pliable like pitch. Most of the inhabitants of the isle of Babaren are Arabians, but the garrison consists of Persians, under the command of a vizier sent thither by the king of Persia. Formerly this isle was under the jurisdiction of the kings of Ormus, and in 1602 taken from them by the Portuguese. But when the Persian sultan of Xiras had laid siege to the Portuguese fortrefs of Comoran, he made himself master of Babaren. The king of Persia alledging that he had not taken it from the Portuguese, but from a vassal of the king of Ormus, who was his vassal; so that ever since 1602 the Persians have been in possession of it.

The isle of  
Queixome  
Kechmiche.

The isle of Queixome, or Queixume, or Queixome, otherwise called Kechmiche, and by the inhabitants Brokt, lies close to the continent of Persia, being separated from it only by a small branch of the sea: It has about two leagues in circuit, and is three leagues distant from Ormus. Its two chief places are Arbez and Homcal, where the king of Ormus at the time when Albuquerque first appeared hereabouts, had strong garrisons. The other places of note are Lapbt, the best harbours of this island, Darbaga not far from the Lapbt, Chau, and Sirmion, or Sermion. It bears plenty of corn, but especially barley, without which the inhabitants of Ormus, who are supplied from hence with it for their horses, could scarce subsist there. Here is also a most excellent spring of fresh water; to secure which the Persians had erected a fort hard by for fear of the Portuguese, who were then as yet masters of Ormus. If we may believe some historians, this island was not inhabited in ancient times; partly by reason of the frequent earthquakes that happened there, partly by reason of the vast numbers of serpents and other venomous creatures, which infected both air and some trees, so as to render the island uninhabitable. Among these trees is one called Baxama or Baxana, the fruit of which is so poisonous, that the

least taste of it kills in an instant, and its shadow is so pestiferous, that it kills those who abide there in less than a quarter of an hour. The root of this tree is in several other parts esteemed as the greatest antidote that can be, but here it is mortal, as are its leaves, and fruit called Rabuzit.

The Portuguese in 1622 conquered this island from the Persians, and on the point opposite to Ormus erected a fort, fortified with a wall, and surrounded with a broad and deep ditch, but the wall was very slight, being sustained from behind only by some loose earth. In short it was a place of no defence, without any great cannon, neither in a condition to bear the weight of them. It had three ponds within its precinct, being chiefly built by the Portuguese, for that purpose, because the inhabitants of Ormus, were from thence supplied with water. Scarce had the Portuguese finished this fort, but the Persians out of the country of Lara in 1622, besieged it by land, as the English did at sea; the Portuguese commander Ruy Freira de Andreada defended himself bravely for some time, and killed many of the Persians, who would have bought it perhaps at a dear rate, had not the English threatened to bring their great cannon against it, which obliged the garrison who were not provided with them, to capitulate, and to surrender the fort upon honourable conditions, which were not performed on the enemies side. There are some others who have given the following account of the occasion of this siege.

The king of Persia had 1612 taken the isles of Queixome and Babaren, and the fortresses of Bandel and Moxtan on the continent, from the king of Ormus, which he refusing to restore, the king of Portugal sent his express orders to Ruy Freira, that in case the king of Persia would not restore the isle of Queixome and the fortresses of Bandel, he should declare war against him, and erect a fort on the point of the isle of Queixome. Accordingly Ruy Freira de Andreada, who in the beginning of June 1620, came to Ormus, caused a fort to be built on the point of the said island, surrounded only with a slender wall made of stone and clay, or loam, being scarce to be compared in strength to some private buildings: The Persians with the assistance of the English having erected a small battery against it, did play upon the fort with their cannon, which did strike such a terror into the garrison that they refused to stand the brunt any longer, but forced Ruy Freira to capitulate. For Emanbulican governor of Schiras being just then come with 5000 men to Bandel or Gamron, he sent part of his forces under the command of Emanbuli-

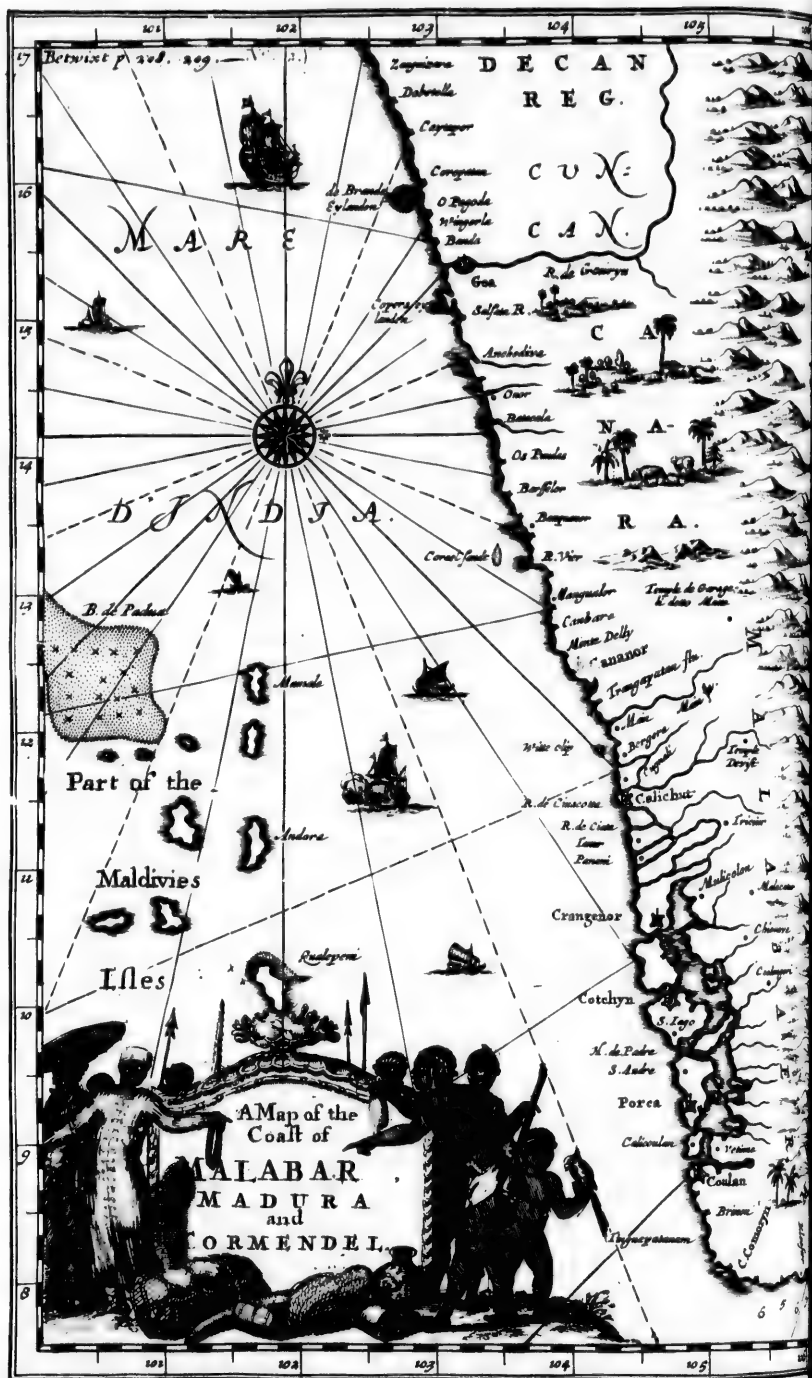
by

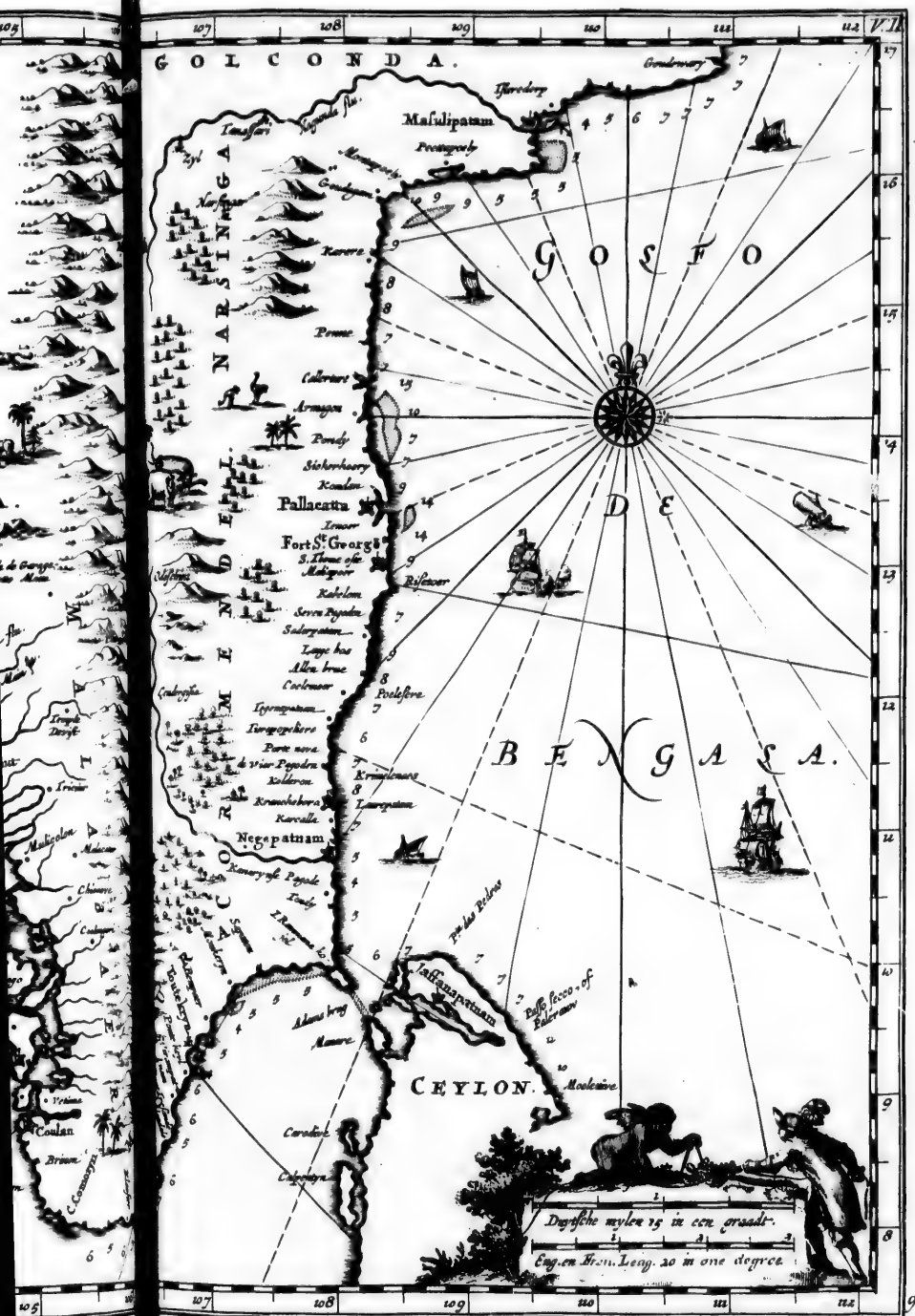
it, and its 1662.

kills those  
arter of an  
several o-  
st antidote  
tal, as are  
it.

quired this  
n the point  
t, fortified  
th a broad  
very slight,  
ly by some  
place of no  
on, neither  
t of them.  
ecinct, be-  
se, for that  
s of Ormus,  
with water.  
ed this fort,  
trety of La-  
as the En-  
commander  
ded himself  
ed many ot  
ught it per-  
the *English*  
unon against  
cho were not  
late, and to  
rable condi-  
ed on the e-  
others who  
count of the

2 taken the  
nd the fort-  
n the conti-  
t, which he  
*Portugal* sent  
that in case  
restore the  
s of *Bandel*,  
him, and e-  
ille of *Quei-*  
*de Andrea*  
June 1620,  
to be built  
surrounded  
of stone and  
to be compa-  
e buildings:  
of the *Eng-*  
tery against  
n their can-  
terror into  
o stand the  
*Ruy Freira*  
n governor  
e with 5000  
sent part of  
f *Emanenti-*  
bey





1662. bey

*W* Ru  
furr  
from  
ion  
the  
rabi  
from  
the  
hom  
lies  
eted  
bia  
was  
ral,  
bark  
head  
Frei  
of fi  
ledg  
ly be  
not i  
than  
life,  
The  
Emer  
sian  
his p  
then  
Portu  
were  
them  
of Or  
the P

*The isle of*  
Jack.

Th  
from  
the ill  
of Ke  
and vo  
reside  
pany  
garden  
wild b  
numbe  
here se  
is now  
Ormuz

Afu  
ron, w  
and w  
the co  
Ceilon  
Coroma

*They came*  
to Ponto  
Gale in  
Ceylon.

all tha  
me for  
of Cey  
ster of  
myself  
with fi  
of the  
Punto  
comm  
besiege  
Vor

1662. *key to the siege of the fort of Synxome, Ruy Freira, as I told you, being forced to surrender, had obtained certain conditions from the English for himself and the garrison, among which the chiefest was, that the whole garrison as well Portuguese as Arabians (the last of which were come thither from Zulfia upon the coast of Arabia, under the command of Emir Alikamai Zemur Mabomet, and had done signal services by sallies and otherwise) should be safely conducted to Maskate, a city on the coast of Arabia belonging to the Portuguese; but this was but ill performed by the Persian general, who before the Portuguese were embarked, caused all the Arabians to be beheaded, in spite of the protestations of Ruy Freira, who accused the English with breach of faith, but these excused themselves, alledging that these Arabians having formerly been subjects of the king of Persia, it was not in their power to prevent it: No more than 20 out of 250 Arabians escaped with life, who were hid by the English seamen. The commander in chief of these Arabians Emer Genedin being brought before the Persian general, was by his orders stabbed in his presence by Xarial his son-in-law, and then governor of Mogostan; but the Portuguese garrison consisting of 200 men, were by the English instead of conveying them to Maskate, set on shore in the isle of Ormus, from whence they got safe into the Portuguese castle.*

*The isle of Jarek is situate three leagues from the coasts of Arabia, to the south of the isle of Ormus, and to the east of the isle of Kechmeche. It is destitute of inhabitants, and very small in compass, the Dutch who reside on the behalf of the East-India company at Gamron, have planted there only a garden near a certain pond, whither the wild boars and stags which are here in great numbers, come to drink; they also keep here some tame fowl for their recreation. It is now time we should leave Gamron and Ormus, and proceed on our voyage.*

*After we had taken in our lading at Gamron, we set sail from thence the 2<sup>d</sup> of June, and with a favourable gale passed along the coast of Malabar, towards the isle of Ceylon; for before you come to the coast of Coromandel, you are obliged to sail round all that vast tract of land. I had letters by me for the governor of Punto Gale, a city of Ceylon, which I delivered to a certain master of a small vessel, without going ashore myself. After we had provided ourselves with fresh water here, that the rendezvous of the Dutch ship was appointed to be at Punto Pedro, where Mr. Rijklof van Goens commanded a body of troops in order to besiege the city of St. Thomas, whither we*

*They come to Punto Gale in Ceylon.*

also directed our course. But whilst the great train of artillery was embarking, and the troops ready to go on board for this expedition, we received intelligence that the Portuguese had sold the city of St. Thomas to the Jentyves or Pagans, which made us also alter our measures; and I went to Jafeneapatnam to dispatch my business.

*The city of St. Thomas is situate under 12 or 13 deg. 30 min. of northern latitude, 26 German miles from Nagapatnam, one and a half off the river Ganges near cape Komorijn, and a days journey or five German miles to the south of Paliakatte, on the coast of Coromandel, close to the sea-shore. The city of St. Thomas was otherwise called Kalamina, and by the natives Meliapor, which name the Portuguese changed into that of St. Thomas, in honour of that apostle, which name it retains to this day, not only among the christians, but also the Turks and Indians. Meliapor signifies in their language as much as a peacock, intimating that as this bird is the most beautiful of all others, so this city did in beauty excel all the rest of the east. Some will have the city of St. Thomas or Meliapor, to be the same called Mapura by Ptolemy. This city was quite desolate when the Portuguese first came there, who rebuilt it in 1545, since which time it has encreased to that degree, that not many years after she was accounted one of the finest cities in all the Indies, both in respect of the magnificence of its building, and the number of rich inhabitants. It is fortified with stone wall, strengthened by several bastions; and had under its jurisdiction above 300 villages and towns. It is one of the richest sea ports of all the East-Indies, its situation being in the midst of all the best harbours of those parts, which renders it the more convenient for the East-India trade. Whilst this place was in the hands of the Portuguese, it was at first incorporated with the diocese of the bishop of Cochín, but afterwards erected into a bishopdom, under the jurisdiction of the archbishop of Goa. They had a church here dedicated to St. Francis, belonging to the Capuchins, and two others, one dedicated to St. John, the other to the virgin Mary, where the Mabometans and Pagans were instructed and baptized. In the suburbs was the church of St. Lucy, and in the city the monastery of Charity and Lazarus, besides three others. The jesuits, of whom there was a considerable number here, had a goodly college within the city, wherein the children of the Portuguese and of the chief Malabars, were instructed in the fundamentals of the christian religion. Next to this college was a very large parish inhabited by christians, such as were by the jesuits converted*

1662.

*The city of St. Thomas.*

H h

verted



1662. verted from paganism and mahometanism, of which 120 were baptized in 1604. Here you see also the famous church of *St. Thomas*, this apostle, as the *Portuguese* pretend, being buried here; his sepulchre is shewn to this day on the top of a mountain near a city, over which they have built a small chappel, which may be discovered at some distance at sea. Close to this college upon a pretty high hill is a chappel, which as they say, was *St. Thomas's* usual sleeping place. The jesuits to shew their reverence to this place, have adorned that part of the chappel where *St. Thomas* used to say his prayers, with gilt iron steps.

St. Thomas's chapel.

Here you see also a stone cross, which they say is the same that in the apostles time did fall from heaven; for which reason they have covered it with an arch, as they have done with the adjacent springs, which arising from a rock is covered by another arch resting upon four columns. The whole chappel is likewise adorned with many ornaments, and the wood of the chappel being looked upon as a precious relic, is frequently set in gold and carried away by the devout pilgrims.

We continued our course along the coast till we came to *Negapatnam*, where we were to unload part of our cargo.

Negapatnam.

*Negapatan* or *Nenapatnar* is composed of *Naga*, which in the *Malabar* tongue signifies a serpent, and *Patnam* or *Patan* a city, because round about this place used to be seen a certain kind of very venomous serpents called *Cobros Capellos*, i. e. *Head-serpents*. It is situate under the 9 deg. 45 min. and the adjacent cape under 11 deg. of northern latitude; beyond the rocks of *Romanankir*, over against the isle of *Manar*, just opposite to *Tripalikorin*, three leagues from the city of *Tranguabar*, and about 39 leagues from the cape *Comorin*, at the beginning of the coast of *Bijnagar* and *Coromandel*. This city as well as its castle call'd *Ragu*, acknowledge the *Portuguese* for its founders, the castle being built for their better security against the attempts of the *Naik* or *Neyk*, lord of the circumjacent country. They had several goodly churches here, and a very fine monastery belonging to the *Franciscans*, which was maintained at the charge of the chiefest of the inhabitants. There are to this day remaining divers fine churches and other large structures, with spacious apartments and galleries according to the *Portuguese* fashion. Next to the jesuits college stood the church of *Tranguabar*. The city is pretty well fortified with defensible towers, surrounded with a good mote: It is very populous in proportion to its bigness, but most of the inhabitants are of a tawny complexion, be-

ing generally either *Mestices*, i. e. such as are born of a *Portuguese* father, and a the blackamoor; or *Kajlices*, i. e. such as their fathers were blackamoors and their mothers *Portuguese* women. It is also inhabited by *Banyans* and *Mahometans*, who are the chiefest traders here.

This city was the 23<sup>d</sup> of July 1658, surrendered to the *Dutch* by composition. For Mr. *John Vander Laen* then commander in chief of the *Dutch* forces in those parts, did pursuant to his orders from Mr. *Rijklof van Goens* admiral general of the *Dutch* fleet, set sail from *Jajenepatan* in the isle of *Ceylon*, on friday the 19<sup>th</sup> of June, to *Punto Pedro*, where he cast anchor in the evening, and found the yachts *Workum*, the *Morning-star*, *Manar*, *Waterpafs*, *Narjapour*, the galliot the *Amsterdam*, and the challoop *Japara*, ready to join him; but the *Pidgeon* yacht was run aground, and the *Workum* was fain to stay behind, having lost 3 of her anchors. He took care to provide the fleet immediately with as much meat and other refreshments as the place would afford; and on the 20<sup>th</sup> was likewise join'd by the yachts the *Goes*, the *Pidgeon*, and the *Workum*; next day Mr. *Lucas Vander Dussen* took a review of the land forces, which consisted of 500 men, divided into 11 companies, besides the sea-men. Mr. *Vander Laen* having summoned all the captains aboard the admiral's ship, where he gave them the necessary directions how every one should behave himself in his post at their arrival before *Negapatan*.

Surrendered to the Dutch.

The 21<sup>st</sup> of July the fleet set sail from *Punto Pedro*, and arrived the 22<sup>d</sup> early in the morning in the road before the city of *Negapatan*, where he met with the yachts the *Pipelen*, the *Nassipour*, and a *Danish* challoop. Mr. *Vander Laen* ordered to be set up the white flag in the yacht *Vander Goes*, and sent Mr. *Lucas Vander Dussen*, with 3 captains and an interpreter in a challoop, and credential letters to *Cajpar Alphonso de Karvalbo*, the *Portuguese* governour of *Negapatan*, and his council, to summon the said city to a surrender upon honourable conditions. About noon Mr. *Vander Dussen* returned; and gave an account to the admiral, that the *Portuguese* governour and his council, refused to admit any of the company, except himself and the interpreter; that he was very civilly received, and admitted to appear before the council, where he had made use of all the arguments he thought might induce them to surrender, desiring that they would send aboard the admiral their plenipotentiaries to treat about the conditions. They desired time till the next morning to consider of the matter, and that the admiral would be pleased to send another

The Dutch came before Negapatan.

Summe the city.

such as 1662.  
 and a she  
 as their  
 mothers  
 ited by  
 re the

8, fur-  
 n. For  
 nder in  
 rts, did  
 kof van  
 b fleet,  
 of Cey-  
 o Ponto  
 vening,  
 : Morn-  
 vjapour,  
 challoop  
 the Pul-  
 ne Wor-  
 ng lost 3  
 provide  
 ch meat  
 e would  
 e join'd  
 and the  
 der Duf-  
 , which  
 11 com-  
 . Vander  
 ptains a-  
 he gave  
 w every  
 post at

ail from  
 early in  
 e city of  
 e yachts  
 e cha-  
 o be fet  
 der Goes,  
 with 3  
 challoop,  
 bonjo de  
 of Ne-  
 the said  
 e condi-  
 ffen re-  
 e admi-  
 and his  
 e com-  
 preter;  
 and ad-  
 , where  
 ents he  
 render,  
 ard the  
 at about  
 e till the  
 ter, and  
 to send  
 another

Sarasin  
 ed to the  
 Dutch.

The Dutch  
 come to join  
 Negge-  
 tan.

Sarasin  
 the city.

The King of Siam  
 1. a French frigate  
 2. a French frigate  
 3. a French frigate  
 4. a French frigate  
 5. a French frigate  
 6. a French frigate  
 7. a French frigate  
 8. a French frigate  
 9. a French frigate  
 10. a French frigate



Belmont P. 229. 220.



The Portu-  
guese  
send depu-  
ties to  
treat.

Their de-  
mands.

Condition  
agreed up-  
on betwixt  
them and  
the Dutch.

the  
into  
by  
their  
zes  
of  
live  
T  
shal  
ligh  
cert  
adm  
be d  
the  
swor  
A  
men  
the  
their  
hout  
of b  
the  
be p  
the  
in o  
the

T  
to c  
orna  
exerc

1662. another chaloop to morrow, because the *Jenivres* or natives did stop the passage of their boats at the mouth of the river. Accordingly the 23<sup>d</sup> Mr. *Vander Dussen*, with two ensigns return'd to *Negapatan* in the same chaloop, with a white flag, and brought back from thence *Manuel Karvalbo* a jesuit, *Lewis de Quintal* Parfire and *Diego Berijero* two captains, and *Antonio d'Almeida* a lieutenant, instructed with credentials and full power from the *Portuguese* governor, to treat about the surrender of the city to the *Dutch East-India* company upon reasonable terms. The conditions proposed by them were these; that a church should be allow'd to such *Portuguese* as were willing to remain there, with as many priests as were requisite.

The Portuguese send deputies to treat.

That the inhabitants should have liberty to retire to *Bengal*, and that they might carry along with them all what belong'd to the poor.

Their demands.

After some contests on both sides, it was agreed to surrender the place upon these following conditions.

Conditions agreed upon between them and the Dutch.

That the city of *Negapatan* belonging to his *Portuguese* majesty, should be surrendered on Wednesday the 24<sup>th</sup> of July, to the *Dutch East-India* company, with all its territories, cannon, ammunition or arms, as likewise the keys of the magazines and other store-houses thereunto belonging.

That immediately as many soldiers of the *East-India* company shall be admitted into the city, as shall be thought requisite by them and the *Portuguese* governor, for their mutual security; and all merchandizes or what else may belong to the crown of *Portugal*, shall at the same time be delivered without the least fraud.

The *Portuguese* garrison now in the city shall march out with beat of drum, matches lighted and bullets in their mouths, to a certain place to be appointed by the *Dutch* admiral Mr. *Vander Laen*, where they shall be disarm'd, except that the officers even to the ensigns shall have liberty to retain their swords.

All the inhabitants, whether clergy or laymen, married or unmarried, shall be left in the free possession of all their goods, except their arms, as well moveable as unmoveable, houses, gold, silver, merchandizes, slaves of both sexes, till the last day of *October*, of the same year; against which time they shall be provided with convenient shipping, at the charge of the *Dutch East-India* company, in order to carry them to *Goa*, or further to the north, if they please.

The clergymen shall then be at liberty to carry along with them all the church ornaments, or what else belong'd to the exercise of the divine worship, except the

bells, as likewise all the moveable goods belonging to them.

1662.

The laymen, soldiers and merchants, may, without the least exception, transport all their moveables, money, gold, silver, jewels, slaves of both sexes, and all their merchandizes, provided the same don't belong to the king of *Portugal*.

The day of their departure being come, the *Portuguese* shall have their swords restored to them.

*Gaspar Alfonso de Karvalbo* the *Portuguese* governor, shall be transported to what place he shall think fit.

Accordingly the 24<sup>th</sup> about noon, seven companies of *Dutch* soldiers, one of *Bandaesers*, and one of *Lasfaryns*, under the *Modier* of *Negombo*, took possession of the gates of the city, at which time the *Portuguese* drew off from the bastions, and proclamation was made immediately, not to molest, much less rob the inhabitants, under pain of death.

Mr. *Vander Laen* himself was received by the *Portuguese* governor, who was not very well at that time, at the entrance of one of the gates, where he had the keys of all the city gates deliver'd to him. From thence he went to take a view of the bastions, and after having given the necessary orders, he commanded the inhabitants to appear the same afternoon in the court of the *Stadthoufe*, in order to be disarm'd, pursuant to the last agreement. They were no more than 670 strong, divided into 17 companies, consisting of *Portuguese*, *Mestices* and *Topasses*, being all inhabitants, not in the king of *Portugal's* pay. Their artillery consisted in 28 brass, and 53 iron pieces of cannon small and great, their ammunition in 8000 pounds of gunpowder, lead, and other things of this nature in proportion; besides which, there were ten large and eight small bells in the town.

The Dutch take possession of the City.

Much about the same time the *Dutch* appeared before the city, the *Kapado Negape*, or general of the *Neyk*, or lord of the country came to lay siege to it; but understanding that the *Dutch* were got into possession of it, he desired to be admitted into the city to confer with them, concerning the sudden surrender of it. His request being granted, he took a great deal of pains to persuade the *Dutch* that both the city, and all the *Portuguese* ought immediately to be deliver'd to the *Neyk* his master, to make satisfaction for what they stood indebted to him; but this request was civilly refused by Mr. *Vander Laen*, who told him that he was very ready to cultivate a good understanding with the *Neyk* and his subjects, but that both in point of conscience, as he was a christian, and in honour he could not re-

cede

1662. cede from the articles of the surrender. By this time the hour approaching when the inhabitants were to be disarm'd at the stadthoufe, he invited the Kapado to go along with him, which he courteously accepted of: The inhabitants earnestly intreated Mr. Vander Laen to permit them to be transported to Bengal instead of Goa, unto whom he gave for answer, that he would intercede for them in writing with the Dutch admiral general Vander Goens. The 25<sup>th</sup> publication was made by beat of drum, that every one, without any exception of persons or quality, should deliver forthwith all his arms at the stadthoufe, unless they would be excluded from the benefit of the capitulation; which was punctually perform'd the next day, which was spent altogether in receiving their arms.

In the mean while the Neyk's army had so inclosed the city, that we began to have some scarcity of provisions; and the Dutch living at Tranquabar, a Danish colony, began to be sorely afraid of being attack'd by Wardaraje Purnal, who, as it was given out, was sent for from the countrey of Tanjaor, by the Neyk, to chastise those of Tranquabar; the governor of which, Esbeck Anderson, had promised to cruise before the bar of Negapatan, with three stout yachts well mann'd, instead of which he had sent only one small chaloop; so that the inhabitants fearing the worst, fled daily with their best moveables into the fort of Danesburgh. The 17<sup>th</sup> the Kapado Negapa, sent by the Neyk with an *Ola* or letter from Maniegul, appeared in the city of Negapatan, where he delivered the following letter to Mr. John Vander Laen.

*A letter from the Neyk to Mr. Vander Laen.*

THE 16<sup>th</sup> day of the year Welenby. I Asfy Para Neyk send to the Dutch commander Moor this letter; by which I would have them to understand, that the Portuguese inhabitants of Negapatan have for these 12 years last past not pay'd their usual taxes, but are run much behind. It is for this reason I sent my army to attack them in the city of Negapatan, to demolish its fortifications, and after the inhabitants were reduced under my obedience, to grant them liberty to live as before, under my jurisdiction; having always lived in a good correspondence with the Dutch East-India company, I desired their assistance by sea; but now I am credibly informed, that you have made an agreement with the Portuguese of Negapatan, who have deliver'd the city into your hands, which is very displeasing to us; if you had a mind to maintain a good understanding with us, you ought first to have given us

notice of it, and obtained our consent; but now you must surrender the city to us, therefore send one of your deputies to treat with me, and he shall be honourably received, and receive all the satisfaction that may tend to the maintaining a farther good correspondence betwixt us. If you do otherwise, you will have occasion to repent it; but as I know you to be persons of wisdom, I don't question but you will surrender the city to our people; in witness of which I have sent our Kapado Negapa with this letter.

Unto which Mr. Vander Laen sent this answer.

*Mr. Vander Laen's Answer.*

THE *Ola* or letter deliver'd to us by your bigbness's envoy Negapa, I received with all imaginable respect, under the discharge of three pieces of ordnance; out of which having fully understood your bigbness's intentions, I am obliged to tell your bigbness, that the Portuguese having surrendered to us the strong city of Negapatan, without making the least opposition, and under certain conditions, agreed on betwixt both parties; we are bound by our duty, as christians, to observe punctually in all respects the said articles, it being unquestionable that without any injustice to your bigbness, we have power to annoy the Portuguese, our enemies, wherever we can meet with them, which makes us live in hopes that the friendship establish'd betwixt your bigbness and the East-India company will not suffer the least detriment upon this account. What has the undertakings of the said company not long ago against the Portuguese in the countrey of the Neyk of Madura and in other neighbouring countries and kingdoms, which were never interpreted to their prejudice, makes us believe that your bigbness will not be displeased with the advantages obtained by us against the Portuguese, which as they tend to no other end than to increase our trade in your bigbness's dominions, so they must in time turn to your own advantage. In the mean while we have communicated your bigbness's sentiments, by two several yachts sent for that purpose, to the directors of Jafenepatan, from whence we hourly expect an answer, which we don't question will be to your bigbness's satisfaction.

In the mean while the Kamerapanijk the adviser of this siege was fallen in disgrace with the Neyk.

The 30<sup>th</sup> Mr. Vander Laen received letters from Rijklof Goens, dated the 29<sup>th</sup>, with the ratification of the capitulation, with orders to send the Portuguese, to the number of 150, according to their request, to Bengal, where they were likely to do them

d  
but now 1661.  
erefore send  
ne, and he  
receive all  
maintain-  
etwixt us.  
occasion to  
persons of  
surrender  
of which I  
with this

sent this

ver.

us by your  
ceived with  
discharge of  
which having  
tions, I am  
the Portu-  
strong city  
least oppo-  
agreed on  
by our du-  
ually in all  
unquestion-  
ur highness,  
aguelic, our  
with them,  
the friend-  
ness and the  
the least de-  
has the un-  
not long ago  
ntrey of the  
neighbouring  
re never in-  
us believe  
pleased with  
st the Por-  
to other end  
r highness's  
urn to your  
ile we have  
timents, by  
rpose, to the  
nce we bour-  
n't question  
n.

ijk the ad-  
in disgrace

ceived let-  
e 29<sup>th</sup>, with  
n, with or-  
the number  
est, to Ben-  
to do them  
the



The City of PELLAGATA with its  
CASTLE



City of PELLIATA w. 316  
CAG E .

77 11  
Berwick Pag. 29. 24.



Y  
t  
t  
t  
i  
R  
t  
c  
t  
t  
t  
i  
d  
i  
w  
Z  
c  
h  
r  
n  
t  
p  
c  
o  
f  
V  
t  
l  
t  
o  
f  
f  
d  
k  
i  
l  
g  
f  
l  
t  
t  
t  
o  
n  
o  
h  
n  
t  
M  
t  
f  
N  
1  
m  
k  
c  
i  
t  
T  
p  
t  
B  
m  
Y

1662. the least mischief, and they might soonest rid their hands of them. As to what concerned the difference with the *Neyk*, he advised to endeavour to compose the matter by the means of some presents; but if that would not succeed, to make his forces to retire deeper into the country; in the mean time to give all the courteous entertainment to his deputies, and to assure them, that he intended in a few days to be with them in person, to adjust all matters in question betwixt them and his highness; but if he committed any hostilities against the city, to stand upon the defensive, and to protest in writing against his proceedings. In the mean while the *Neyk's* forces continued in their camp, which extended to the very ditch of the city; and as it increased daily in number, so it occasion'd great scarcity within. The 1<sup>st</sup> of August, Mr. *Vander Laen* was inform'd that the commander in chief of the *Neyk's* forces before *Negapatan* had received a letter from the *Neyk*, directed to Mr. *Van Goens*; and in the afternoon three persons were sent into the city, to give notice of the said letter and some presents, which they desired might be received with all imaginable demonstrations of respect. In compliance with which Mr. *Vander Laen* commanded immediately captain *Wajb* with his company, and the *Modlier* of *Negombo* with his *Laskarins*, to post themselves in good order without the gates of the city, in order to receive the presents with all imaginable respect, under the discharge of three pieces of cannon. They kept their post till evening, without seeing any body, when a certain person belonging to the *Neyk's* camp came privately to the *Modlier*, and told him in the *Singalese* language (for fear of being understood by others) that there was no *Ola* or letter, nor any presents sent from the *Neyk*, the whole being only a stratagem contriv'd on purpose to draw some of our forces without the gates into an ambush, which they had been disappointed in, by our forces not stirring from the gates, upon which the *Modlier* and captain *Wajb* return'd with their troops into the city, and the *Neyk's* forces retired back into the country. This *Neyk* besieged *Negapatan* a second time, 1660, in September, but the *Dutch* garrison making a vigorous sally, in which they kill'd 400 of his men, they came to a composition for that time; notwithstanding which, he appeared before it again in the next following year.

The country hereabouts bears such great plenty of rice, that abundance of it is transported from hence to other places. But they have great numbers of lewd women and idle fellows here.

Vol. II.

Not far from the city is a *Pagode*, with a stone steeple, call'd *Tzina*, the pinnacle of which reaches to the very clouds; the inhabitants believe that it was built by the devil, and that in one night. In the suburbs to the north, which are of magnificent houses, there are likewise many *Pagodes* or pagan temples, wherein you see many idols of a terrible aspect, made only of clay. Thus far concerning *Negapatan*.

From hence we pursued our voyage towards *Paliakatte*, and saw the lofty and most ancient *Pagode*, call'd *Tyripapeliri*, which stands within the precinct of a fort at a little distance from the sea-shore, and of which I had the curiosity to take a full view. It is an ancient structure, the front of which is adorned with many statues artificially cut in stone. It is surrounded by a wall with a gallery on the top of it, over which are placed a great number of large coffins, which rest upon statues of divers figures, some representing a horse, others somewhat else. The walls are made of large blue stones, which are brought thither a vast way out of the country, and most artfully joined together. The *Indian Pagodes* or temples seldom have any light but what comes through a hole in the frontispice; notwithstanding which I ventur'd in, and found several lamps burning there; by the light of which I ascended by a pair of stairs of wood, to the top of the temple, from thence to take a view of the circumjacent country. But scarce was I come to the stairs-head, when I saw myself in an instant surrounded by thousands of bats that were striving to get out thro' the hole in the frontispice, so that I was glad to get away from this unwelcome company, which, to avoid the brightness of the sun-beams, shelter themselves by day in these dark lurking holes.

We soon set sail again, and coasted it along the shore, which is flat and sandy here, till the 15<sup>th</sup> of June, when we arrived at *Paliakatte*, where I delivered our whole cargo of gold and silver we had taken in *Perisa*, to the director *Lawrence Pit*.

The *Dutch East-India* company has a strong fort here, with four bastions of stone work, call'd *Geldria*, of which they have been possess'd ever since the year 1619. Without the castle is a plantation or town, which to the land-side is defended by an earthen wall, which is but indifferently kept, but the houses within are very close and well built. It is inhabited partly by *Hollanders*, partly by *Jenivoes* or pagan natives, the last of which live for the most part upon trade with painted and white calicoes and linen. The rice which grows in this country in great plenty, is as well as all

1662.

The Temple of Tzina.

The temple of Tyripapeliri.

They come to Paliakatte.

The fort of Geldria.

1662. other sorts of grains brought weekly to market here. The fort is on one side wash'd by a river, which swells very high in the rainy season, when the merchandizes may be unloaden here by the help of lighters. But in the summer season the river being quite dry'd up, the goods are forc'd to be carried ashore on their backs. This river abounds in fish in the winter-time, most of which die in the summer, which makes the inhabitants catch them before that time, and dry them in the sun, and so transport them to other places. The north Monzon begins here in October, and holds all the November and December, with such violence, that the ships can scarce ride in the road. January the Monzon changes, and the winter season returns.

As to the city of Paliakatte, its inhabitants are for the most part *Mestices* and *Kastices*; *Mestices* are such whose parents were married such foreigners; as for instance, when an *Hollander* marries an *Indian* woman, or an *Indian* man a *Dutch* woman; but the children of the *Mestices* are call'd *Kastices*. Thus many of the natives, especially of the *Tbioles* have married *Dutch* women, as on the other hand, several *Hollanders* are married to women of the *Tbioles*, from whence is come a numerous off-spring of *Mestices* and *Kastices*. Many *Bramans*, *Banyans* and *Panekayers*, or *Tbomists* and *Jews* live here, of great traffick; for every month comes hither the *Kasila* or caravan of *Agra*. The *Banians* and *Jews* are the chiefest of all the traders here, this city being a place *Golconda*, *Suratte* and *Cambaia* by land; both *Christians* and *Mahometans* bring to this place their merchandizes from the *Red-Sea*, the *Persian Gulph*, from *Suratte*, *Goa*, *Malabar*, *Sumatra* and *Malacca*. There is great plenty of fish at *Paliakatte*, and a neighbouring country furnishes them with all other sorts of provisions.

They leave Paliakatte. After we had dispatch'd our business here, we pursued our voyage towards the great city of *Masulipatnam*, where we were to load wood and other materials for the building of our fort at *Paliakatte*. We set sail the 20<sup>th</sup> of July, and came to an anchor before *Masulipatnam* the 22<sup>d</sup>, I went ashore the same evening to take care of our loading, which consisted for the most part in timber and other materials for building, besides some callicoes, which took us up till the 14<sup>th</sup> of August, when we were ready to set sail again. In the mean while I had sufficient leisure to take a full view of the city of *Masulipatnam*. It lies near the sea-shore, upon a branch of the great river *Kisna*, a few leagues from *Negenapatnam*, being surrounded on all sides with water. It is closely built and well peopled, it being

A description of this city.

the only place of traffick in callicoes, indigo, diamonds, and other precious stones, in the kingdom of *Golconda*. To the land-side, north-west of the city, is a standing pool, over which is built a bridge of 2000 paces long, in the midst of which stands a house for the conveniency of the passengers to repose themselves there. This bridge rests upon very thick posts, which are covered with shells of 12 or 14 feet long, without any leanings on either side. Most of the inhabitants are *Pagans* and merchants. The *Persian Mahometans* have here likewise a mosque built of white stone, after a very antique fashion, in the very center of the city. The houses are all of wood cover'd with pantiles, the king having expressly forbid the building of stone houses, for fear of encouraging his subjects to revolt; who, tho' *Pagans*, wear white callicoe vests and turbants like the *Moors*. They use rice instead of bread, and drink commonly water; they have also great plenty of all sorts of fishes, ducks, geese, and tame and wild fowl. Both the *Dutch* and *English East-India* companies have each a house here, with their respective flags on the top of them. The *Franciscans*, who are all *Portuguese*, have here a Monastery over against the city; on the continent is a village, where the governor has a country-seat, where he diverts himself sometimes.

The river of *Kisna* arises very deep in the country, and exonerates itself with one branch about five leagues below the city of *Masulipatnam* into the sea, where it is but shallow, but the other turns to *Masulipatnam*, which is much deeper. This river is not join'd to the city by a bridge, but they pass it in boats; it has plenty of fishes, as likewise crocodiles; it swells sometimes to such a height during the rainy season, that you may pass in boats thro' the streets of the city, but in the summer season it is so shallow, that near the city it is scarce four foot deep. About half a league to the west is a champaign country, and on the east-side the country is planted with palm and syry trees, behind which you may discern the tops of the mountains. We left *Masulipatnam*, and the 29<sup>th</sup> return'd to *Paliakatte*, where meeting with several sorts of commodities that were wanting at *Batavia*, I made all the haste I could to have the ship loaded; but when we were almost ready to depart, the yacht call'd the *Parroket* arrived in the road, with advice, that the ships the *House of Zwieteren*, the *Sea Horse*, the *Exchange*, the *Stadthouse of Amsterdam*, the *Rising Sun*, and the *Encresing Moon* were at sea, being sent from *Holland* with men and all sorts of ammunition, to assist in the expedition against the coast of *Malabar*.

1662.  
Its bridge.

The river  
Kisna.

The Dutch  
lay a siege  
against the  
coast of  
Malabar.



1662.  
 stones, the land-  
 standing  
 of 2000  
 stands a  
 passengers  
 is bridge  
 are co-  
 feet long,  
 le. Molt  
 merchants.  
 e likewise  
 er a very  
 ter of the  
 d cover'd  
 expressly  
 s, for fear  
 olt; who,  
 vests and  
 se rice in-  
 only wa-  
 of all forts  
 e and wild  
 igh Eaji-  
 ouse here,  
 he top of  
 e all Por-  
 ver against  
 a village,  
 eat, where

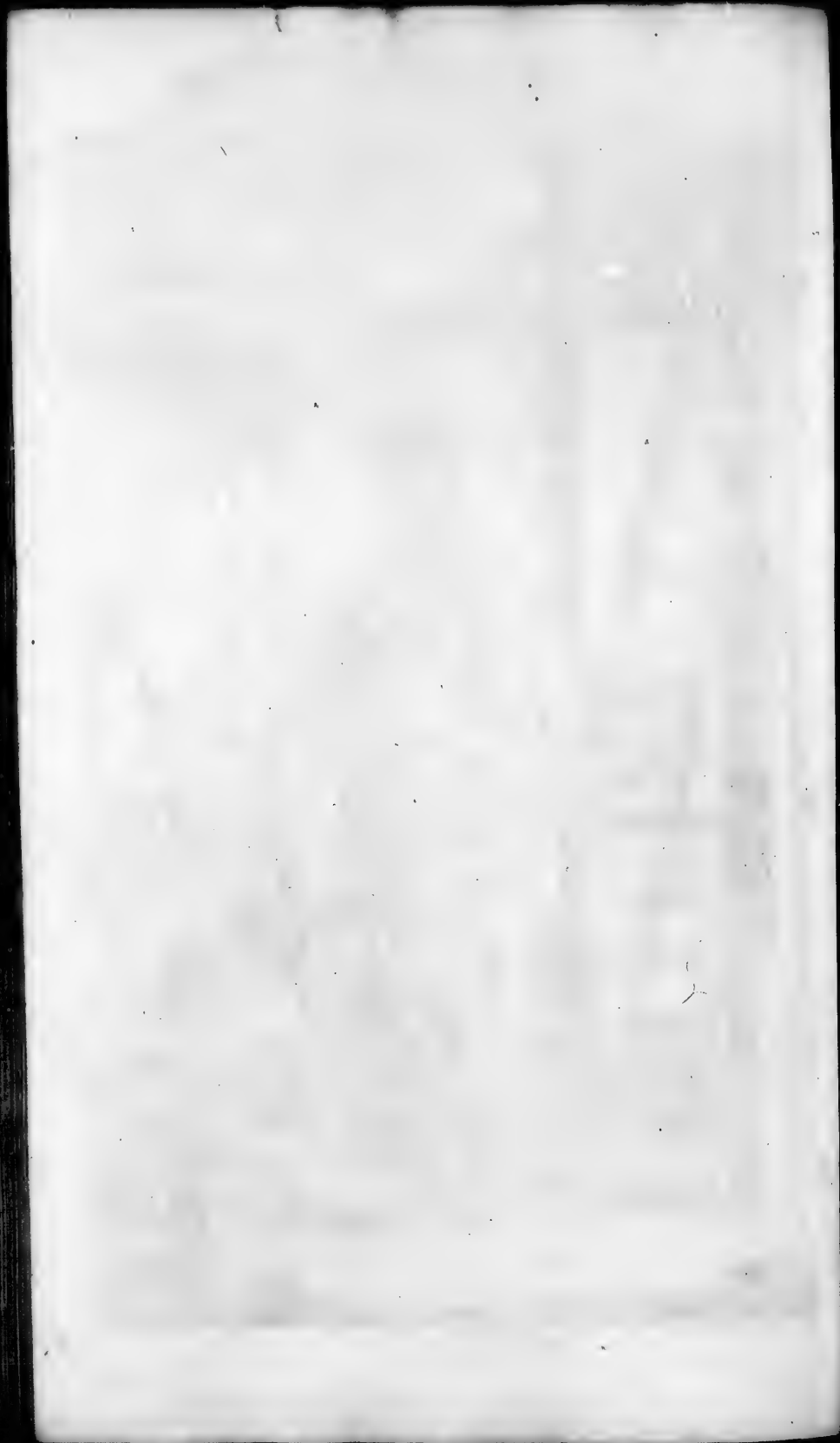
y deep in  
 f with one  
 the city of  
 re it is but  
 Masulipat-  
 his river is  
 , but they  
 of fishes,  
 sometimes  
 ny season,  
 the streets  
 season it is  
 it is scarce  
 league to  
 y, and on  
 anted with  
 th you may  
 . We left  
 n'd to Pa-  
 veral forts  
 ing at Ba-  
 uld to have  
 vere almost  
 d the Par-  
 dvice, that  
 e Sea Horse,  
 Amsteldam,  
 ing Mon  
 olland with  
 n, to assist  
 aft of Ma-  
 labar.



A Mestice Wooman

How canoe scalp.







1. *Johnston of Ship Director*
2. *Mythologia*
3. *St. Francis*
4. *St. Thomas*
5. *repar*
6. *Mr. Storer*
7. *Thames water Channel*
8. *Gates of City*





fures,  
 to joi  
 had u  
 of Sep  
 dezvo  
*Punto*  
 fresh  
 the 7<sup>th</sup>  
 were c  
 great  
 comm  
 went  
 only,  
*Maues*  
 on the  
 were t

*Their fleet*  
*meets at*  
*Manepara.*

the 1  
*Worf,*  
 not on  
 the wh  
 ded w  
 expedi  
 came v  
*ber* to  
 south  
 remain  
 ing ou  
 bringin  
 be to  
 battle  
*groes* h  
 in half  
 they fir  
 out an  
 warmly  
 to cut  
 them f  
 carpent  
 the buff  
 employ  
 way to  
 vanced  
 into a  
 leading  
 where v  
 cause th  
 in draw  
 along t  
 time ke  
 advance  
 guard,  
 them;  
 but afte  
 In the  
 ed us,  
 which v  
 the *Neg*  
 faving t  
 of them  
 flight.  
 accident  
 compan

*Come be-*  
*fore Ko-*  
*ling.*

1662. *labar.* This soon made us alter our measures, every one having received orders to join the said fleet, so that after we had unladen our ships, we set sail the 10<sup>th</sup> of September for Colombo, the general rendezvous of our fleet. We stop'd at *Pedro Ponto*, where having provided ourselves with fresh water and fuel, we came to an anchor the 7<sup>th</sup> of October before *Colombo*, where we were employed among the rest to take the great train of artillery aboard of us. The commodore *Roodbaes* in the mean while went out before the rest with seven ships only, ordering the rest to follow him to *Manepara*, one of the seven seaport villages on the coast of *Madure*, where all our ships were to meet, which we did accordingly on the 15<sup>th</sup> of November. Mr. *John vander Werf*, Mr. *Symonson*, and myself, were made not only supervisors, but also treasurers of the whole train of artillery: Being provided with every thing requisite for such an expedition, we set sail from thence, and came with the whole fleet the 7<sup>th</sup> of December to an anchor, about two leagues to the south of the city of *Kolang* or *Koulang*. The remaining part of the day was spent in landing our soldiers and other necessaries, and bringing the ships as close as possible could be to the shore. The 8<sup>th</sup> we march'd in battle array into the country, and the *Negroes* had thrown up a small redoubt within half a league from the city, from whence they fir'd thick upon our yachts, but without any great loss, yet they ply'd us so warmly near the shore, that we were forced to cut our way thro' the woods to attack them from behind. Immediately all our carpenters were set to work to cut down the bushes and trees, whilst the seamen were employed in levelling the grounds to make way for our artillery. After we were advanced a little way into the wood, we came into a small plain, to the left of which, leading to the sea-side, we saw a stone-house, where we halted a little to take breath, because the seamen had been hard put to it, in drawing the cannon thro' the deep sand along the sea-side. The enemy at the same time kept within his strong hold, but as we advanced farther they charged our vanguard, who were order'd to break in upon them; they bravely stood the first brunt, but afterwards retreated again to their fort. In the mean time our cannon having join'd us, we prepar'd for a general attack, which was carried on so vigorously, that the *Negroes* deserted the fort, in hopes of saving themselves by flight, but were most of them either kill'd upon the spot or in the flight. A strong party of them happen'd accidentally to fall in with captain *Polmans* company of firelocks, who were sent thro'

Their fleet  
meets at  
Manepara.

Come before  
Kolang.

the woods to attack the fort from behind; 1662.  
here you might have seen them fight like desperate men, the engagement was very terrible considering the number of men on both sides; at last they were overcome with above 100 kill'd and as many wounded on their side; we had no more than three kill'd, but a great many wounded, who were sent aboard the ships to be taken care of. We found two iron pieces of cannon in this fort, which we nail'd up, and beat the carriages in pieces: After we had placed guards in all convenient posts thereabouts, the soldiers repos'd themselves under the shadow of trees; but within two hours after we continued our march to the city of *Kolang*, passing all the way by a great many fine plantations, surrounded on all sides with walls, the road betwixt them being very narrow. As we advanc'd to the city, the enemy fir'd briskly upon us from a small fort near the water-side, where they had set up the *Portuguese* standard, but perceiving us notwithstanding this to march undaunted towards the walls, their hearts began to fail, and betaking themselves to flight, left the city to our mercy, which we took without the least resistance. All the officers and soldiers, each according to their respective qualities, had their quarters and posts assign'd them; we rested the next day, but every one being animated by the last success in taking so considerable a city without opposition, long'd for action, so that before the morning the whole body being put in battle array without the water-gate, the chief minister of the camp, Mr. *Baldens*, made a short but very fervent speech, and the commanders exhorted them to fight courageously for the honour of their country and religion; which being joyfully accepted by the soldiers, who promised to hazard all for the service of the company, the drums and trumpets began to sound the march. Mr. *Nbrand Goffeled* commanded the van, and commodore *Roodbaes* the rear, being both persons of known bravery; Mr. *Rücklof van Goens* commanded the main battle; we carried some field pieces along with us to serve us upon occasion. We were forced to march thro' narrow ways, where scarce four could march a-breast, and finding that the enemy gall'd us from an adjacent small fort, some companies wheel'd to the right, and the rest to the left, whilst the seamen undauntedly approach'd with their scaling ladders, and mounting the walls, took the fort with little resistance. We found here no more than two iron pieces of cannon ready charged; notwithstanding all this they skirmish'd briskly with our foremost troops as they were advancing beyond the fort, but gave way by degrees and retreat-

Kolang  
taken.



1662. ed to the royal palace, where they made another halt, and engaged our troops a second time, but with no better success; for being once seiz'd with a panick fear, they soon gave ground, and left the place to our mercy, which we plunder'd and destroy'd. They had however in the mean while attack'd our rear several times, because our heavy cannon could not come up soon enough with us, by reason of the narrowness of the way; the enemy making use of this advantage, attack'd us very furiously, but were bravely repuls'd by the help of our field pieces, which being charged with small shot, were discharged among them with such success, that many of them remained dead upon the spot: and by this means we kept them so long in play, till we received a seasonable reinforcement, when they betook themselves to their heels, and left us absolute masters of the field. In the mean while our troops were advanced to the river, where they made themselves masters of another fort, in which they found 2 brass and 10 iron pieces of cannon. In a certain *Pagode* next to the royal palace, call'd *Matta del Reyne*, we found a great chest with gunpowder, which being set on fire, in an instant blew up and destroy'd this ancient structure, covered on the top with brass. Then our troops beat the country both to the right and left, burning and destroying all they met with. In an instant we saw whole woods in a flame, the *Bambo* canes making a most terrible noise, and burning like brimstone, a miserable spectacle to the enemy, who from the other side of the river, saw the flame consume in an instant, what had cost them many years labour. *John Piccard* my nephew, a captain lieutenant, and *William van Teylingen* were sent with some chaloups up the river *Arwick*, to pursue the flying enemy on that side, but these took another way; most of them wading thro' the river, where they could not come near them with their chaloups. Mr. *Piccard* then landed his company on the other side, where he set 40 houses on fire, which occasion'd a fresh consternation among the flying enemy. After we had thus ravaged the country, we return'd to the before-mention'd *Pagode*, where our troops repos'd themselves for a while, and the same evening return'd conquerors to the city of *Koulang*. The 12<sup>th</sup>, all the ships carpenters were sent for ashore to cut down the trees that stood upon the city walls, and orders were given for breaking down part of it, and to bring it into a narrower compass, which was put in execution immediately. About the same time the natives sent some deputies to sue for peace; by what we were inform'd, that at the time

of our arrival there were not above 30 true born *Portuguese* in the city, who fled immediately, and that the *Negroes*, who were near 800 strong, having had some notice of our design near 15 days before, had resolv'd to kill all the *Hollanders* they met with except a few, whom they intended to preserve to send them aboard their galleys, but the scene was altered; in the mean while we continued with breaking down and removing, which had almost proved fatal to the ship the *Sea-Horse*, which happened to take fire, and was in great danger of being burnt by the violence of the flame, had not the seamen quenched the fire.

By this time it being resolv'd to prosecute the career of our victories, the commodore *Roodbaes* with eight ships sail'd towards the city of *Cranganor*, to block up the entrance of that river, the rest being to follow with all convenient speed. The 19<sup>th</sup> I went on board the commissary *James Borchorst*, with whom I had some earnest business, but scarce was I come thither, but on a sudden there arose such a tempest, that with much ado I could get ashore again, for the wind arose first from the land-side with most violent rains, but soon after chop'd about with such violence, that it tore roots of trees out of the ground, and untied abundance of houses. By this sudden change of the wind, our whole fleet consisting of thirty ships great and small, were in no small danger of being shipwreck'd. The ship the *Stadtboufe* was driven among the rocks, where having lost her rudder, she gave the signal of being in utmost distress, but no body durst venture to bring her off. The ship the *Achilles* was likewise forced from her anchors among the rocks, but by good fortune happened to cast anchor again, not far from the *Stadtboufe*. The ship the *Erafmus* was also got adrift, and was in great danger of running upon the shelves; several of our small craft were beaten to pieces by the sea, and many others much endamaged. The ship the *Stadtboufe* continued in great distress all that day and night, striking several times against the rocks, but next morning the fury of the tempest being somewhat appeas'd, we sent out some boats to her assistance, which brought both her and the *Achilles* safe from among the rocks into the open sea. So that at last, thro' God's mercy, all our great ships escap'd the danger of this storm without any considerable damage, except what was in their rigging, which however fell most upon the smaller vessels.

The 24<sup>th</sup> the garrison of the conquered city of *Koulang*, consisting of 663 men, both soldiers and mariners, under the command of captain *Cox*, and *Henry Walling*, being provided

1662.

*Cruel do  
sign of the  
Negroes.*

1662.

provi  
intend  
Goens  
the 1  
Crang  
low w  
while  
boufe  
till fu  
Stadtb  
had go  
again  
form'd  
good  
but wh  
they l  
as we  
lang th  
The 2  
change  
sent us  
desire  
refus'd  
here fe  
ferr'd t  
ing da  
vernor  
a prefer  
cepted.  
shore,  
one of  
re,  
into da  
diers in  
should  
by bre  
a leagu  
ter fail  
hear th  
ships ly  
which c  
day abo  
the entra  
next day  
and our  
another  
sition, ex  
of his g  
ganor, b  
We h  
ral place  
sponden  
tre. The  
two tuns  
and soon  
with all  
an unde  
kept the  
and river  
our tren  
short tin  
cannon  
this whil  
Vol.

*The Dutch  
lost near  
Cranganor.*

1662. provided with all necessaries, during our intended stay before *Cranganor*, Mr. *Van Goens* set sail the same day with the ships the *Walnut-tree* and the *Ulieland* towards *Cranganor*, commodore *Goske* being to follow with the rest; we were in the mean while busy with refitting the ship the *Stadtboese*, and I stay'd ashore with Mr. *Goske* till such time that the gunpowder of the *Stadtboese* and several other ships, which had got wet in the last storm could be dried again; about the same time we were inform'd, that the negroes had receiv'd a good sum of money to fight against us, but when they perceived we were in earnest, they left the *Portuguese* in the lurch, who as we told you before, left the city of *Koulang* the same afternoon, when we landed. The 29<sup>th</sup> we set sail in the ship the *Exchange* to follow the fleet; by an express sent us from some of the *Malabars*, we were desired to stay till the next day, which we refus'd, it being not our business to tarry here for matters which might well be deserv'd till another time. The next following day we pass'd by *Kalkoulang*, the governor of which came aboard of us, with a present of fresh provisions, which we accepted. The 31<sup>st</sup> we coasted it along the shore, where we cast our anchor, because one of our yachts approach'd so near to the shore, that we feared she would run herself into danger, which made us detach 20 soldiers in a boat to their relief, if occasion should require. The 1<sup>st</sup> of January 1662, by break of day we found ourselves within a league of the city of *Cochin*, and soon after sail'd so near the shore, that we could hear the centinels speak. We saw five ships lying in the road, the foremost of which carried *English* colours. The same day about noon we came into the road, at the entrance of the river *Pallipport*, and the next day having embark'd our men in boats, and our ammunition with two field pieces in another, we landed them without any opposition, except that the enemy discharg'd some of his great cannon against us from *Cranganor*, but without any loss on our side.

The Dutch  
land near  
*Cranganor*.

We had posted our forces in three several places, the better to cut off all correspondence betwixt the enemy and the country. The next following day we brought two tons of rice, and two brass guns ashore, and soon after our whole train of artillery, with all other necessaries requisite for such an undertaking. For some time we had kept the place block'd up both on the land and river side, but now we began to open our trenches with such success, that in a short time we carried them on under the cannon of the city, the garrison being all this while not idle on their side, but endeavoring

VOL. II.

vouring to hinder our approaching by their continual fire out of their cannon and firearms, which they did with such dexterity, that they kill'd many of our men in the trenches; among the rest, a certain soldier had his arm and shoulder shot off at once, notwithstanding which, Mr. *Van Goens* order'd him to be dress'd, which the surgeon did accordingly, who told me at the same time, that since he must infallibly die, he would give him something that might ease his pain; I ask'd the poor wretch how he did, he answered me without any alteration in his countenance, *Pretty well, I don't find it very ill, tho' he died in a few hours* &c. Fourteen days after we had carried our trenches to the body of the place, during which we had several smart skirmishes with the enemy, it was resolv'd to venture a general assault; pursuant to this resolution, I was sent with two servants to confer with commodore *Goske* and Mr. *Roodbaets*, concerning the most convenient place the assault was to be made in. I was sometimes to wade up to the middle in water, and met with captain lieutenant *Piccard*, who had the advanced guards. He forewarn'd me not to approach too near the city, from whence they fir'd without intermission, but I was forc'd to venture at all, being oblig'd to be with the admiral general again the next morning. I went close under the walls of the place, the centinels ask'd me in *Portuguese*, *who was there?* I answered in the same language, *a friend*, and so escap'd the danger. Mr. *Goske* and *Roodbaets* had been before inform'd concerning the condition of the place by a certain *Negro*, and where it might be most conveniently assaulted, of which they having given me a circumstantial account, I return'd forthwith, and was with the admiral by next morning, who thereupon resolv'd to assault the city, and as he left me said, *To-morrow the city shall be ours*. So soon as every thing was prepar'd for the intended assault, I went on board the fleet to keep a watchful eye over the ships, which were of the utmost consequence to us all.

In the mean time our forces mounted the breach, and assaulted the town with great fury under the favour of the smoak of their cannon and fire arms, which by the wind was forced toward the city; I saw from on board the ships the smoak approach nearer and nearer to the place, which I looked upon as a good omen on our side; the enemies defended themselves with a great deal of bravery for a considerable time, but our men pushing on the assault with the utmost vigour, they were at last forced to give way, and to leave us masters of the city. Mr. *Polman* and *Schuilenburg*, two of our

K k k

captains;

1662:

Confessions  
about  
the as-  
saults.

1662. captains, were dangerously wounded, 80 common soldiers were killed in the assault, and a great many more wounded. The loss of the enemies side was much greater, 200 Portuguese being slain during the action, besides a great number of negroes, who were all thrown into the river, and carried back and forwards several times by the tides, a most terrible spectacle to behold. For we found the taking of this place to be another piece of work than that of Koulang, and we were upon the point of founding the retreat, had not the commanders by their own example animated the soldiers to do their utmost; it being almost surprising how with so small a force we were able to attack and conquer so strong a place as this. After the city was plundered it was laid level with the ground, except one stone tower, which standing upon the river, was preserved entire, and a garrison put into it for the security of the river.

*To laid desolate.*

*A description of this city.*

This city of Cranganor (for there is another on the coast of Malabar, nearer to the sea shore) lies about four or five leagues to the north of the city of Cocbin; being the capital city of a kingdom of the same name, bordering to the north upon Cocbin and to the south upon Koulang. It was very famous among the Indians, by reason of its antiquity; being situate upon the banks of a river, about a league from the sea shore, defended by a wall of earth, and a stone breast work; which had seven bastions and the wall of earth three more. At the point near the river is remaining to this day a strong stone tower for the defence of the river, which served instead of a bulwark on that side; on the other point was a small fort which commanded the river, and all ships going out or in. Several goodly stone houses were in this city, and among the rest a church, excelling all the rest; on the opposite side of the river, towards the side of Cocbin, is the redoubt called Pallipport, built for the better defence of the river; upon a long island called Baypin extending to the river of Cocbin. The royal palace is not far from hence, in a very pleasant country; the king then reigning being a prince of great bravery, and well versed in military affairs, in the flower of his age.

*The redoubt Pallipport.*

*Cocbin taken by the Dutch.*

After the taking of Cranganor, it was concluded by the majority of voices to attack likewise the famous city of Cocbin, not questioning but that the fame of our late victories would open us likewise a way to the conquest of this place, before the enemies of this could recollect themselves from the fear they were in at that juncture. Accordingly we decamped from thence, and set down before Cocbin, our forces as in the last siege were again posted in three several

places, from whence the attacks were to be carried on against the city; Mr. Isbrand Goltz had his post assigned him near the sea shore; Mr. Koonin upon the bank of the river; and the admiral general's quarter was betwixt both. But the garrison of Cocbin was not so much frightened as we had flattered ourselves, but made a brave resistance. We did all we could to persuade the negroes that we were not come hither with an intention to hurt them, but the Portuguese, our enemies; but in vain, for they all appeared in arms against us, and several times attacked us like madmen, throwing themselves in among our ranks, tho' they were sure to die in the attempt, and thrusting themselves upon our swords and pikes, not like men, but rather like wild boars or enraged bears. Not far from the royal palace was a very large Pagode, where the negroes had fortified themselves: Our men, notwithstanding their fury, attacked them in this advantageous post with so undaunted a courage, that they chased them from thence with the loss of 400 negroes, and many more wounded. The old queen would fain have hid herself in a corner on the top of the Pagode, but was found out, and brought a prisoner by captain Henry Rede into our camp. But after we had spent near two months in the siege, the waters beginning to rise more and more every day, which filled up our trenches to the middle, and our forces by the several losses we had sustained in divers engagements and attacks, and thro' the garrisons we had been obliged to put in the conquered places, being considerably diminished in number, it was thought most expedient to raise the siege for this time, and to return with a greater force against next spring. Accordingly we decamped without any noise, and in one night got all our men, artillery, and ammunition aboard, without being perceived by the enemy, who were not sensible of our departure till next day about noon, as looking upon our motion only as a feint to draw them out of the town into an ambush. But when they found how matters stood, they discharged all their cannon round the walls, unto which we gave no answer for that time, but delayed it till a more convenient opportunity. The next thing the enemy had to do was to slight our works and trenches, which they did immediately, and to cut down all trees and edifices which they had found to be an obstacle to them during the siege, they also took effectual care to have their fortifications repaired and strengthened, as not questioning but that we should give them another visit with the next fair opportunity, in which they found themselves not deceived.

1676.

*The first raised.*

*The first raised.*

After

1662.

*The author comes to Koulang.*

*The city of Koulang.*

*A description of Koulang.*

After our landing such place to be made by Mr. Nieuhoff of ships their company went aboard by the Koulang rector of it was the forti a good man and could direct I arrived where I pairing to longed to service; tend to the queen ing principle puty, to most content to a confession. The first the taking the queen concluded upon place and her, for the damages sum of money pany, who chase a person be at the. The city lon and Koulang bearing the sea shore of deg. of north leagues (Linchin. It is or 20 foot urbs which by the Portuguese Koulang is of which is Koulang, the first the ordinary residence the possession nearer to St. Paul and nastery, and steeples. Either Portuguese as many R than seven was the sum

1662.

After the raising of the siege of *Cochin*, our land forces and ships were ordered to such places where their presence was judged to be most necessary at the present juncture, Mr. *Nybrand Gotske* sailed with a squadron of ships to *Batavia*, and the rest steered their course to other places thereabouts; I went aboard the ship the *Exchange*, and passed by the city of *Kalkoulang*, in my way to *Koulang*, where I was appointed chief director of the company: At the same time it was thought convenient to strengthen the fortifications of *Kalkoulang*, and to put a good garrison into it under captain *Polman* and several other commanders, till we could dispose our forces in more convenient quarters.

The author comes to Koulang.

I arrived at *Koulang* the 7<sup>th</sup> of *January*, where I gave immediate orders for the repairing the castle, and such houses as belonged to those that were in the company's service; and settling every thing that might tend to the re-establishment of traffick with the queen of *Koulang*, and other neighbouring princes, unto whom I was sent as a deputy, to treat with them concerning the most convenient methods, and to enter into a confederacy with them for that purpose.

Treaty sent to the queen of Koulang.

The first treaty that was set on foot after the taking of the city *Kalkoulang*, was with the queen of *Koulang*, which was soon concluded upon these conditions; that her palace and great guns should be restored to her, for the rebuilding of which, and other damages sustained, she was to have a certain sum of money to be paid her by the company, whose interest it was, rather to purchase a peace upon reasonable terms, than be at the charge of a war.

A description of Koulang.

The city of *Kolang*, or *Koulang*, or *Koulon* and *Koylang*, the capital of a kingdom bearing the same name, is situate upon the sea shore of the coast of *Malabar*, under 9 deg. of northern latitude, about 13 *French* leagues (*Lincol* says 24) to the south of *Cochin*. It is fortified with a stone wall of 18 or 20 foot high, and 8 bastions; its suburbs which are very large and stately, are by the *Portuguese* called *Colang China*. For *Koulang* is separated into two bodies, one of which is called the *Upper* or *Malabar Koulang*, the other the *Lower Koulang*; in the first the king and queen kept their ordinary residences; the last was formerly in the possession of the *Portuguese*, as lying nearer to the sea side; here the friars of *St. Paul* and the *Franciscans* had each a monastery, adorned with stately chapels and steeples. Besides which there were four other *Portuguese* churches here, dedicated to as many *Romish* saints; they had no less than seven goodly churches, among which was the famous church built many ages ago

1662

by the Christians of *St. Thomas*, which was left standing, after we reduc'd the place into a narrower compass; in this church is the tomb of a certain great *Portuguese* captain, who was governor of *Koulang* 60 years. The houses of the inhabitants were very stately and lofty built of freestone; among which the stadhous surpass'd all the rest; it was two stories high, and had very curious stone steps on each side. But the castle, the residence of the *Portuguese* governor, surmounted all the rest in magnificence; this I took up for our own lodgings, it lies very near the sea-side, at one end of the city, being cover'd on the top with cocon-leaves, as likewise two of its turrets, the third being tiled with pan-tiles. Just upon the sea-shore is another four-square tower, where I set up the company's flag on the top of a mast. In the midst of it is a very lofty edifice, which the *Portuguese* used for a chapel, which I order'd to be made up into divers convenient chambers, and to be fitted for the use of the company's officers. This castle is the strongest the *Portuguese* ever were masters of on the coast of *Malabar*, being built some hundred years ago, by the famous engineer *Heitor de la Casa*.

This city, as I told you before, was drawn into a less compass by the *Dutch*, which they fortified on the land-side with two half and one whole bastion. Most of the churches and other publick edifices were pull'd down, except the castle, *St. Thomas's* church, and some monasteries, which remain'd standing within the said precinct. Behind most of the houses here are very pleasant gardens, planted with *Cocoas*, *Mangoes* and other *Indian* fruit trees; and about the city you see very fine basins cut out of the rocks, unto which you ascend by steps. They have also some ponds with fresh water, their water being else for the most part brackish and full of salt-peter. The air is very wholesome in this country, which is low and full of rivers, which afford a convenient passage from hence to *Kalkoulang*, *Cochin* and *Cranganor*; and is accounted the best both for fruitfulness and its pleasant situation in all the *Indies*. This part of the country affords abundance of pepper, which twists itself round the trees; the fruit is gather'd in *January* and *February*. The harbour is very convenient for small vessels, but not for great ones, because the south wind blows directly upon the shore, and forces the waves with great violence thither; they call it *Coydanel*. Near the sea-side you see great store of stone-like rocks, but they lie loose upon the sand, and are frequently wash'd away by the sea. About a league to the west of *Koulang*, the great river *Eguick* disembogues into the sea.

The

After

1662. The Dutch were once before masters of the city of *Koulang*, till the Negroes took the opportunity of murdering captain *Henry Glunning* their governor there, as he was taking a walk without the gates, and afterwards massacred all the Dutch; since which time the Portuguese got into possession of it. On the side of *Koulang China*, along the sea-shore, the jesuits had built a great village for the *Parvoes*, a poor sort of *Malabars* living upon fishing, where the governor of the king of *Travankor* and Prince *Baryette Poole* kept their residence, which are about a mile in circuit, and surrounded with an earth wall, with some points like bastions, on which are mounted good store of great cannon, which command the roads, without which there is scarce any access to them. If we may believe the *Malabars*, the *Maldivoe* islands, which lie about 60 leagues deep in the sea, just over-against the palace, were formerly part of the continent and torn from thence by the sea; and as a confirmation of their opinion, shew certain rocks betwixt the shore and these islands, upon which they assure us stood at that time a goodly church. The best houses are built along the river-side, with very good gardens, stock'd with all sorts of trees, fruits, flowers and herbs, but especially with citrons, which grow here not on trees, but shrubs; their houses are seldom above two stories high, their stairs within of stone, their rooms above stairs are pav'd with green and yellow four square stones, the ceiling of which is commonly of *Indian oak*, some being finely carved, others painted. They commonly have an arbour or summer-house belonging to each garden, which is commonly near the river-side, where they spend generally their evenings, and divert themselves with angling.

The river  
*Kalchan*.

The mouth of the river *Kalchan* or *Mangar*, upon which this place is built, is a very large bay, where yachts of 300 tons may come close to the shore and unload, being 28 feet deep at high water; but of very difficult entrance, if the winds be not favourable, because they blow the waves directly upon the shore. In the midst of this bay you see three vast rocks laying all together in a ridge. During the rainy season this river frequently overflows the neighbouring country, and carries away a great deal of the adjacent grounds; these violent rains are occasion'd by the clouds, which gathering among the tops of the mountains, break out into sudden storms and tempests. The country is flat and marshy hereabouts, and the air not altogether so wholesome as at *Koulang*.

By this time the season for action draw-

ing near, and every thing being prepar'd for a vigorous expedition, the siege of *Cochin* was resolv'd upon the second time; for which purpose Mr. *Jacob Hufart*, one of the member's of the great council of *India*, with captain *Peter de Pon* and *Henry Van Rade* set sail the 25<sup>th</sup> of October 1662, with 11 ships from *Batavia*, Mr. *Van Goens* being ordered to follow with three more, with all imaginable speed. No sooner had they landed their men, but they began to form their attacks, notwithstanding they found the place much strengthen'd by some additional fortifications, since the last siege, and put them so to it, that the besieged being enclosed on all sides, and beyond all hopes of relief, were forced to capitulate, and to surrender the city, after a siege of three months; after the Portuguese had (with the consent of the king of *Cochin*) been in possession of it above 150 years. The Portuguese had not long before forc'd *Momadavil*, the lawful king of *Cochin* to leave the city, in whose stead they had set up an aunt of his of the house of *Godarne*; but whilst our forces lay before *Cochin* the dethron'd king stay'd with me at *Koulang*, in order to his solemn coronation after the taking of the place. I had taken all imaginable care to have his room hung with tapestry, and furnish'd with other moveables, the best the place afford; he came often to visit us, being commonly clad in white callicoe, with his hair tied in a knot on the top of his head, rings on his fingers, and a gold chain hanging down before him. He spoke the Portuguese and *Malabar* tongues, and was of a pleasant conversation. But scarce a few days were pass'd, when finding himself not very well, he desired to go to the Queen of *Koulang* for his diversion; which I was very unwilling to grant, being sensible that his person being committed to my care, I might be call'd to an account by his subjects, who much esteem'd him, if any sinister accident should befall him; but at his reiterated instances, and the earnest request of the queen of *Koulang*, who was an excellent good natur'd person, and engag'd her word to bear me harmless, I conducted him thither, but he found no considerable alteration in his health, for when not long after a yacht was sent to *Koulang* on purpose to fetch this prince to the camp before *Cochin*; he was so very weak that he would fain have avoided going thither, but there being positive orders given for his coming, I sent him my *Palakin* or letter, and conducted him with some of our officers aboard, but before he could reach *Cochin*, his sickness encreas'd to that degree, as to put an end to his life. His brother

1662.

Siege of  
*Cochin*.

L. 1.  
rehab'd.

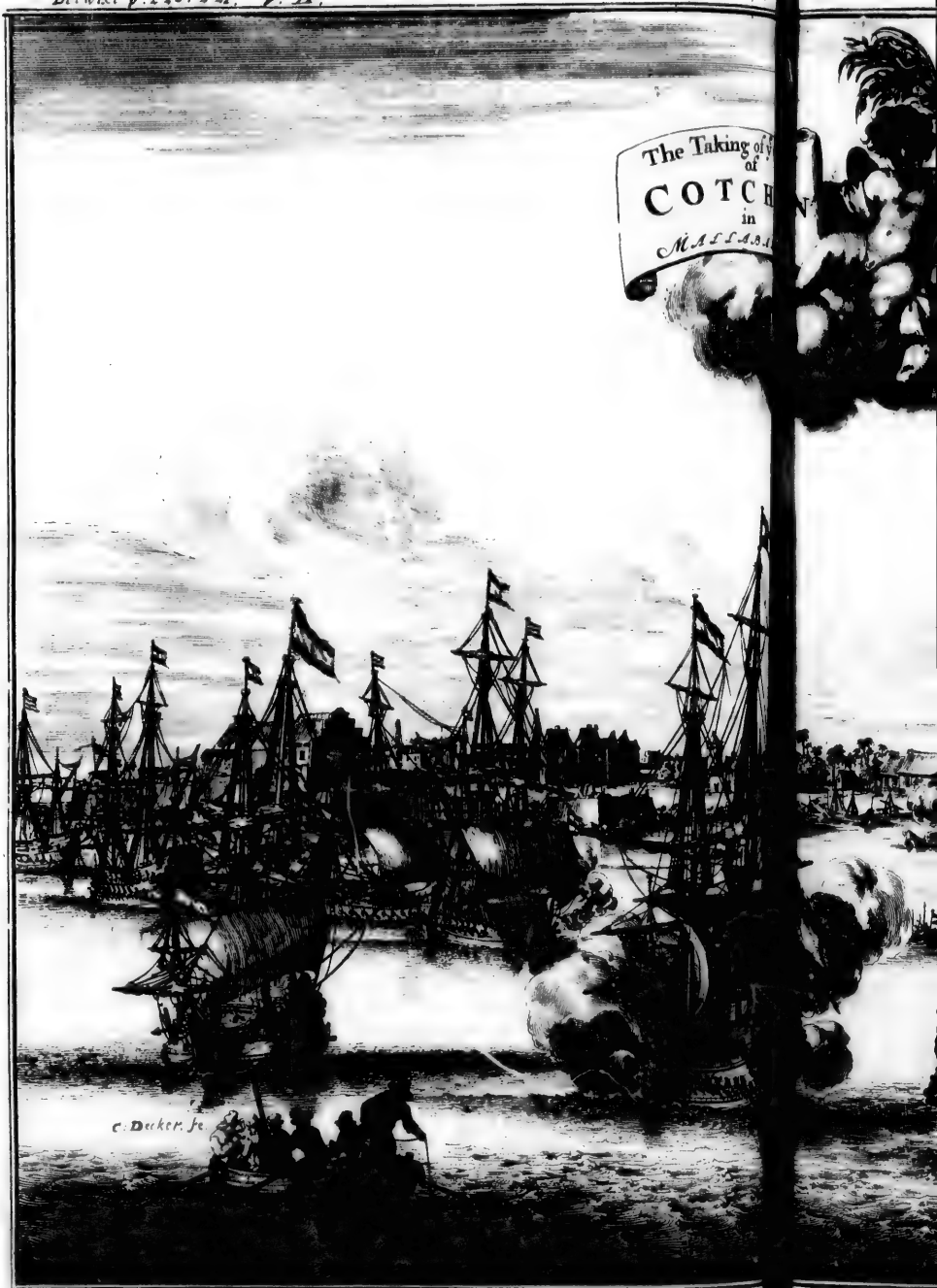
Momadavil king  
of *Cochin*.

Died aboard.  
As found  
ed by his  
brother.



repar'd 1662.  
of Co-  
time;  
rt, ore  
l of In-  
Henry  
1662,  
n Goens *Street of*  
more, *Cochin.*  
ner had  
egan to  
ag, they  
n'd by  
the last  
the be-  
and be- *Is for*  
d to ca- *render.*  
after a  
*Portuguese*  
*Cochin*)  
o years.  
e forc'd  
*Cochin* to  
had ser  
*Godard me;*  
*Cochin* the  
*Koulang,*  
after the  
all ima-  
ang with *Momda-*  
r move- *vil king*  
he came *of Cochin.*  
y clad in  
n a knot  
his fin-  
own be-  
*quefe* and  
pleasant  
ays were  
ot very  
Queen of  
th I was  
fible that  
y care, I  
his sub-  
any fini-  
ut at his  
t request  
s an ex-  
engag'd  
conduct-  
consider-  
when not  
*Koulang* on  
camp be-  
that he  
ther, but  
for his  
or letter,  
our of- *Dist.*  
ld reach *to reach*  
that de- *to reach*  
His bro- *ed by the*  
ther *brother.*





The Taking of  
of  
**COTCH**  
in  
*MASSACHUSETTS*

C. Decker, Jr.

the Taking of  
of  
COTCH  
in  
Massachusetts



1662. ther, wi  
ing the  
the takin  
elin, by  
of gold.  
India co  
kept his  
a place b  
call'd by  
his guard  
belonging  
the cattor

The city of  
Cochin. The c  
call'd Co  
capital o  
and inde  
It is situat  
tude, 4 o  
lang, exte  
river Kou  
Mangar.  
two differ  
lying abo  
sea-shore  
cina, or .A  
cause it lie  
Dutch it is  
the king k  
upon the l  
peopled, a  
structures  
stom of the  
commonly  
distant from  
of the same  
gether in the  
had for tific  
bulwarks, a  
edifices, ch  
suburbs tow  
goodly chur  
shore the mo  
stin Fryers,  
wise their f  
built, with  
the place b  
guise. But  
the Dutch,  
desolate, an  
stone, basti  
ditch, so th  
pregnable.  
St. Paul bei  
stones, ex  
height as bo  
with all th  
where divin  
to the tenet  
houses here  
the breadth  
the laths by  
windows on  
others of c

1662. ther, who was aboard the same yacht, being the next heir to the crown, was, after the taking of the city, crowned king of *Cochin*, by the *Dutch*, his crown, which was of gold, having the cypher of the *East-India* company, engraven on one side. He kept his residence not far from *Cochin*, in a place situate in a very pleasant country, call'd by the *Dutch* *Malabar Cochin*, had his guards, musician, and all other things belonging to a royal court, according to the custom of that country.

The city of *Cochin*, by the *Portuguese* call'd *Cochin*, and generally *Kakochin*, is the capital of a kingdom of the same name, and indeed of the whole coast of *Malabar*. It is situate under 10 deg. of northern latitude, 4 or 5 leagues to the south of *Koulang*, extending along the bank of the great river *Koulang* or *Koleban*, or *Mangat* or *Mangar*. Some authors make mention of two different *Cochins*, viz. the *Old Cochin*, lying about a league and a half from the sea-shore; the *Portuguese* call it *Cochin Dacima*, or *Arabia*, i. e. the *Higher Cochin*, because it lies higher up the river; by the *Dutch* it is call'd the *Malabar Cochin*, where the king keeps his residence; being situate upon the banks of a river, and pretty well peopled, and adorn'd with several goodly structures and *Pagodes*, according to the custom of the *Malabars*. The other *Cochin*, call'd commonly the *New Cochin*, is scarce a league distant from the sea, just at the entrance of the same river; it was for many years together in the possession of the *Portuguese*, who had fortified it with a stone wall, and several bulwarks, and beautified it with several fine edifices, churches and monasteries. In the suburbs towards the land-side were several goodly churches, and a little nearer to the sea-shore the monastery of *St. John*. Here the *Austin Fryers*, *Franciscans* and *Jesuits* had likewise their several convents, all magnificently built, with very pleasant gardens and walks, the place being inhabited only by *Portuguese*. But since this city was conquer'd by the *Dutch*, the greatest part of it was laid desolate, and the rest fortified with regular stone, bastions, curtains and a very broad ditch, so that it is now look'd upon as impregnable. Among other steeples, that of *St. Paul* being magnificently built of square stones, exceeded all the rest as well in height as beauty, which is since demolish'd with all the other churches, except one, where divine service is exercised according to the tenets of the reform'd religion. The houses here are cover'd with tiles of about the breadth of a hand, and are fastned to the laths by small hooks. Some make their windows only of a kind of lattice-work, others of canes very artificially twisted to-

gether; others make use of large shells in which the pearls grow, these they flave and flatten, and make windows of them, as we do of glass.

After we thus had made our selves masters of the greatest part of the *Malabar* coast, and had taken all imaginable care, to re-establish the commerce in those parts, it was judg'd necessary for the better obtaining of this end, to enter into strict alliances with the kings and princes of the adjacent countries; for which purpose Mr. *James Hughtart*, chief councillor of the *Indies*, of *Ceylon* and the *Malabar* coast, having sent me the necessary instructions and credentials, I provided my self with all things requisite for such a journey, and the 21<sup>st</sup> of January 1664, embark'd aboard a small vessel, with one serjeant, several soldiers, an interpreter, and divers mariners, which carried us up the river, as far as to the city of *Kalkilang*, where we arriv'd safely the next day. So soon as I had provided my self with a convenient lodging, I gave notice of my arrival, by our interpreter to the king, who soon after returned in company of a *Residoor* from the king, to fetch me to court. Accordingly I and Mr. *Willing*, who resided there in the quality of under factor of the *East-India* company, were introduced by the said *Residoor* into the kings presence, whom we found surrounded with a good number of courtiers, that constantly attend his person. After the first ceremonies and compliments, such as are usual in this place, were passed, I surrender'd my credentials to the king, who received them with a great deal of respect and seeming satisfaction. After he had perused them, he gave orders to one of his *Residoors*, one of his chief favourites to treat with me concerning such points as I should propose to him, tending to the maintaining of a good correspondence betwixt us and them, and to make his report to him. This prince had the character of a very sincere person, which appeared both in his countenance and actions; but leaves the chief management of all affairs of moment, to the beforemention'd *Residoor*, who knows how to make his advantage of it. After I had treated with the *Residoor*, as far as my commission would give me leave, I desired to be dismiss'd, under pretence of fetching new instructions, which being granted, I took leave of the king, and with Mr. *Willing* pursu'd my journey to *Porka*, whither I had sent a serjeant with six soldiers before. But at our arrival there, being inform'd that the king of *Porka* was ten days before gone to his palace call'd *Kudda Malair* or *Koramallur*, or *Koramallo*, about ten leagues distance from hence, I

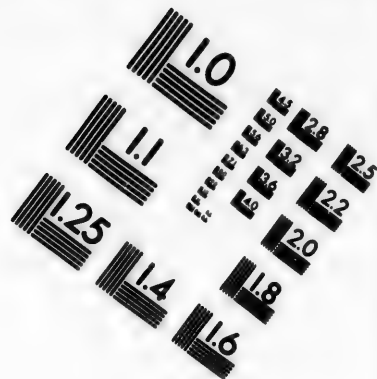
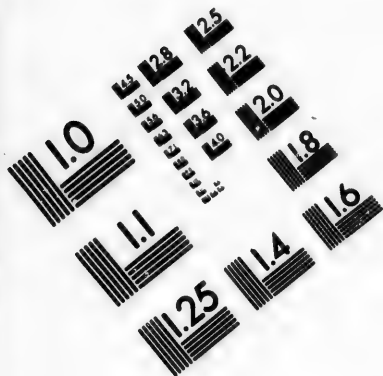
1662.

The author sent to treat with divers *Malabar* Princes.

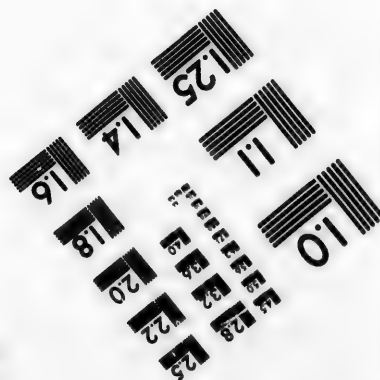
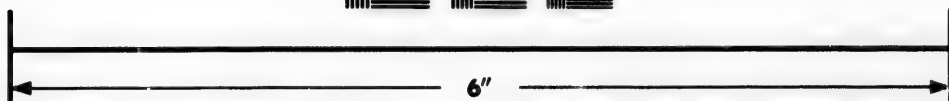
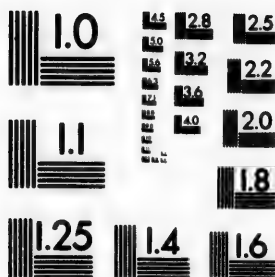
His audience of the King of *Kalkilang*.

Departs from *Porka*.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



18 20 22 25  
28 32 36 40  
44 48 52 56  
60 64 68 72  
76 80 84 88  
92 96 100 104  
108 112 116 120  
124 128 132 136  
140 144 148 152  
156 160 164 168  
172 176 180 184  
188 192 196 200  
204 208 212 216  
220 224 228 232  
236 240 244 248  
252 256 260 264  
268 272 276 280  
284 288 292 296  
300 304 308 312  
316 320 324 328  
332 336 340 344  
348 352 356 360  
364 368 372 376  
380 384 388 392  
396 400 404 408  
412 416 420 424  
428 432 436 440  
444 448 452 456  
460 464 468 472  
476 480 484 488  
492 496 500 504  
508 512 516 520  
524 528 532 536  
540 544 548 552  
556 560 564 568  
572 576 580 584  
588 592 596 600  
604 608 612 616  
620 624 628 632  
636 640 644 648  
652 656 660 664  
668 672 676 680  
684 688 692 696  
700 704 708 712  
716 720 724 728  
732 736 740 744  
748 752 756 760  
764 768 772 776  
780 784 788 792  
796 800 804 808  
812 816 820 824  
828 832 836 840  
844 848 852 856  
860 864 868 872  
876 880 884 888  
892 896 900 904  
908 912 916 920  
924 928 932 936  
940 944 948 952  
956 960 964 968  
972 976 980 984  
988 992 996 1000

10 01  
02 03 04 05  
06 07 08 09  
10 11 12 13  
14 15 16 17  
18 19 20 21  
22 23 24 25  
26 27 28 29  
30 31 32 33  
34 35 36 37  
38 39 40 41  
42 43 44 45  
46 47 48 49  
50 51 52 53  
54 55 56 57  
58 59 60 61  
62 63 64 65  
66 67 68 69  
70 71 72 73  
74 75 76 77  
78 79 80 81  
82 83 84 85  
86 87 88 89  
90 91 92 93  
94 95 96 97  
98 99 100 101  
102 103 104 105  
106 107 108 109  
110 111 112 113  
114 115 116 117  
118 119 120 121  
122 123 124 125  
126 127 128 129  
130 131 132 133  
134 135 136 137  
138 139 140 141  
142 143 144 145  
146 147 148 149  
150 151 152 153  
154 155 156 157  
158 159 160 161  
162 163 164 165  
166 167 168 169  
170 171 172 173  
174 175 176 177  
178 179 180 181  
182 183 184 185  
186 187 188 189  
190 191 192 193  
194 195 196 197  
198 199 200 201  
202 203 204 205  
206 207 208 209  
210 211 212 213  
214 215 216 217  
218 219 220 221  
222 223 224 225  
226 227 228 229  
230 231 232 233  
234 235 236 237  
238 239 240 241  
242 243 244 245  
246 247 248 249  
250 251 252 253  
254 255 256 257  
258 259 260 261  
262 263 264 265  
266 267 268 269  
270 271 272 273  
274 275 276 277  
278 279 280 281  
282 283 284 285  
286 287 288 289  
290 291 292 293  
294 295 296 297  
298 299 300 301  
302 303 304 305  
306 307 308 309  
310 311 312 313  
314 315 316 317  
318 319 320 321  
322 323 324 325  
326 327 328 329  
330 331 332 333  
334 335 336 337  
338 339 340 341  
342 343 344 345  
346 347 348 349  
350 351 352 353  
354 355 356 357  
358 359 360 361  
362 363 364 365  
366 367 368 369  
370 371 372 373  
374 375 376 377  
378 379 380 381  
382 383 384 385  
386 387 388 389  
390 391 392 393  
394 395 396 397  
398 399 400 401  
402 403 404 405  
406 407 408 409  
410 411 412 413  
414 415 416 417  
418 419 420 421  
422 423 424 425  
426 427 428 429  
430 431 432 433  
434 435 436 437  
438 439 440 441  
442 443 444 445  
446 447 448 449  
450 451 452 453  
454 455 456 457  
458 459 460 461  
462 463 464 465  
466 467 468 469  
470 471 472 473  
474 475 476 477  
478 479 480 481  
482 483 484 485  
486 487 488 489  
490 491 492 493  
494 495 496 497  
498 499 500 501  
502 503 504 505  
506 507 508 509  
510 511 512 513  
514 515 516 517  
518 519 520 521  
522 523 524 525  
526 527 528 529  
530 531 532 533  
534 535 536 537  
538 539 540 541  
542 543 544 545  
546 547 548 549  
550 551 552 553  
554 555 556 557  
558 559 560 561  
562 563 564 565  
566 567 568 569  
570 571 572 573  
574 575 576 577  
578 579 580 581  
582 583 584 585  
586 587 588 589  
590 591 592 593  
594 595 596 597  
598 599 600 601  
602 603 604 605  
606 607 608 609  
610 611 612 613  
614 615 616 617  
618 619 620 621  
622 623 624 625  
626 627 628 629  
630 631 632 633  
634 635 636 637  
638 639 640 641  
642 643 644 645  
646 647 648 649  
650 651 652 653  
654 655 656 657  
658 659 660 661  
662 663 664 665  
666 667 668 669  
670 671 672 673  
674 675 676 677  
678 679 680 681  
682 683 684 685  
686 687 688 689  
690 691 692 693  
694 695 696 697  
698 699 700 701  
702 703 704 705  
706 707 708 709  
710 711 712 713  
714 715 716 717  
718 719 720 721  
722 723 724 725  
726 727 728 729  
730 731 732 733  
734 735 736 737  
738 739 740 741  
742 743 744 745  
746 747 748 749  
750 751 752 753  
754 755 756 757  
758 759 760 761  
762 763 764 765  
766 767 768 769  
770 771 772 773  
774 775 776 777  
778 779 780 781  
782 783 784 785  
786 787 788 789  
790 791 792 793  
794 795 796 797  
798 799 800 801  
802 803 804 805  
806 807 808 809  
810 811 812 813  
814 815 816 817  
818 819 820 821  
822 823 824 825  
826 827 828 829  
830 831 832 833  
834 835 836 837  
838 839 840 841  
842 843 844 845  
846 847 848 849  
850 851 852 853  
854 855 856 857  
858 859 860 861  
862 863 864 865  
866 867 868 869  
870 871 872 873  
874 875 876 877  
878 879 880 881  
882 883 884 885  
886 887 888 889  
890 891 892 893  
894 895 896 897  
898 899 900 901  
902 903 904 905  
906 907 908 909  
910 911 912 913  
914 915 916 917  
918 919 920 921  
922 923 924 925  
926 927 928 929  
930 931 932 933  
934 935 936 937  
938 939 940 941  
942 943 944 945  
946 947 948 949  
950 951 952 953  
954 955 956 957  
958 959 960 961  
962 963 964 965  
966 967 968 969  
970 971 972 973  
974 975 976 977  
978 979 980 981  
982 983 984 985  
986 987 988 989  
990 991 992 993  
994 995 996 997  
998 999 1000 1001  
1002 1003 1004 1005  
1006 1007 1008 1009  
1010 1011 1012 1013  
1014 1015 1016 1017  
1018 1019 1020 1021  
1022 1023 1024 1025  
1026 1027 1028 1029  
1030 1031 1032 1033  
1034 1035 1036 1037  
1038 1039 1040 1041  
1042 1043 1044 1045  
1046 1047 1048 1049  
1050 1051 1052 1053  
1054 1055 1056 1057  
1058 1059 1060 1061  
1062 1063 1064 1065  
1066 1067 1068 1069  
1070 1071 1072 1073  
1074 1075 1076 1077  
1078 1079 1080 1081  
1082 1083 1084 1085  
1086 1087 1088 1089  
1090 1091 1092 1093  
1094 1095 1096 1097  
1098 1099 1100 1101  
1102 1103 1104 1105  
1106 1107 1108 1109  
1110 1111 1112 1113  
1114 1115 1116 1117  
1118 1119 1120 1121  
1122 1123 1124 1125  
1126 1127 1128 1129  
1130 1131 1132 1133  
1134 1135 1136 1137  
1138 1139 1140 1141  
1142 1143 1144 1145  
1146 1147 1148 1149  
1150 1151 1152 1153  
1154 1155 1156 1157  
1158 1159 1160 1161  
1162 1163 1164 1165  
1166 1167 1168 1169  
1170 1171 1172 1173  
1174 1175 1176 1177  
1178 1179 1180 1181  
1182 1183 1184 1185  
1186 1187 1188 1189  
1190 1191 1192 1193  
1194 1195 1196 1197  
1198 1199 1200 1201  
1202 1203 1204 1205  
1206 1207 1208 1209  
1210 1211 1212 1213  
1214 1215 1216 1217  
1218 1219 1220 1221  
1222 1223 1224 1225  
1226 1227 1228 1229  
1230 1231 1232 1233  
1234 1235 1236 1237  
1238 1239 1240 1241  
1242 1243 1244 1245  
1246 1247 1248 1249  
1250 1251 1252 1253  
1254 1255 1256 1257  
1258 1259 1260 1261  
1262 1263 1264 1265  
1266 1267 1268 1269  
1270 1271 1272 1273  
1274 1275 1276 1277  
1278 1279 1280 1281  
1282 1283 1284 1285  
1286 1287 1288 1289  
1290 1291 1292 1293  
1294 1295 1296 1297  
1298 1299 1300 1301  
1302 1303 1304 1305  
1306 1307 1308 1309  
1310 1311 1312 1313  
1314 1315 1316 1317  
1318 1319 1320 1321  
1322 1323 1324 1325  
1326 1327 1328 1329  
1330 1331 1332 1333  
1334 1335 1336 1337  
1338 1339 1340 1341  
1342 1343 1344 1345  
1346 1347 1348 1349  
1350 1351 1352 1353  
1354 1355 1356 1357  
1358 1359 1360 1361  
1362 1363 1364 1365  
1366 1367 1368 1369  
1370 1371 1372 1373  
1374 1375 1376 1377  
1378 1379 1380 1381  
1382 1383 1384 1385  
1386 1387 1388 1389  
1390 1391 1392 1393  
1394 1395 1396 1397  
1398 1399 1400 1401  
1402 1403 1404 1405  
1406 1407 1408 1409  
1410 1411 1412 1413  
1414 1415 1416 1417  
1418 1419 1420 1421  
1422 1423 1424 1425  
1426 1427 1428 1429  
1430 1431 1432 1433  
1434 1435 1436 1437  
1438 1439 1440 1441  
1442 1443 1444 1445  
1446 1447 1448 1449  
1450 1451 1452 1453  
1454 1455 1456 1457  
1458 1459 1460 1461  
1462 1463 1464 1465  
1466 1467 1468 1469  
1470 1471 1472 1473  
1474 1475 1476 1477  
1478 1479 1480 1481  
1482 1483 1484 1485  
1486 1487 1488 1489  
1490 1491 1492 1493  
1494 1495 1496 1497  
1498 1499 1500 1501  
1502 1503 1504 1505  
1506 1507 1508 1509  
1510 1511 1512 1513  
1514 1515 1516 1517  
1518 1519 1520 1521  
1522 1523 1524 1525  
1526 1527 1528 1529  
1530 1531 1532 1533  
1534 1535 1536 1537  
1538 1539 1540 1541  
1542 1543 1544 1545  
1546 1547 1548 1549  
1550 1551 1552 1553  
1554 1555 1556 1557  
1558 1559 1560 1561  
1562 1563 1564 1565  
1566 1567 1568 1569  
1570 1571 1572 1573  
1574 1575 1576 1577  
1578 1579 1580 1581  
1582 1583 1584 1585  
1586 1587 1588 1589  
1590 1591 1592 1593  
1594 1595 1596 1597  
1598 1599 1600 1601  
1602 1603 1604 1605  
1606 1607 1608 1609  
1610 1611 1612 1613  
1614 1615 1616 1617  
1618 1619 1620 1621  
1622 1623 1624 1625  
1626 1627 1628 1629  
1630 1631 1632 1633  
1634 1635 1636 1637  
1638 1639 1640 1641  
1642 1643 1644 1645  
1646 1647 1648 1649  
1650 1651 1652 1653  
1654 1655 1656 1657  
1658 1659 1660 1661  
1662 1663 1664 1665  
1666 1667 1668 1669  
1670 1671 1672 1673  
1674 1675 1676 1677  
1678 1679 1680 1681  
1682 1683 1684 1685  
1686 1687 1688 1689  
1690 1691 1692 1693  
1694 1695 1696 1697  
1698 1699 1700 1701  
1702 1703 1704 1705  
1706 1707 1708 1709  
1710 1711 1712 1713  
1714 1715 1716 1717  
1718 1719 1720 1721  
1722 1723 1724 1725  
1726 1727 1728 1729  
1730 1731 1732 1733  
1734 1735 1736 1737  
1738 1739 1740 1741  
1742 1743 1744 1745  
1746 1747 1748 1749  
1750 1751 1752 1753  
1754 1755 1756 1757  
1758 1759 1760 1761  
1762 1763 1764 1765  
1766 1767 1768 1769  
1770 1771 1772 1773  
1774 1775 1776 1777  
1778 1779 1780 1781  
1782 1783 1784 1785  
1786 1787 1788 1789  
1790 1791 1792 1793  
1794 1795 1796 1797  
1798 1799 1800 1801  
1802 1803 1804 1805  
1806 1807 1808 1809  
1810 1811 1812 1813  
1814 1815 1816 1817  
1818 1819 1820 1821  
1822 1823 1824 1825  
1826 1827 1828 1829  
1830 1831 1832 1833  
1834 1835 1836 1837  
1838 1839 1840 1841  
1842 1843 1844 1845  
1846 1847 1848 1849  
1850 1851 1852 1853  
1854 1855 1856 1857  
1858 1859 1860 1861  
1862 1863 1864 1865  
1866 1867 1868 1869  
1870 1871 1872 1873  
1874 1875 1876 1877  
1878 1879 1880 1881  
1882 1883 1884 1885  
1886 1887 1888 1889  
1890 1891 1892 1893  
1894 1895 1896 1897  
1898 1899 1900 1901  
1902 1903 1904 1905  
1906 1907 1908 1909  
1910 1911 1912 1913  
1914 1915 1916 1917  
1918 1919 1920 1921  
1922 1923 1924 1925  
1926 1927 1928 1929  
1930 1931 1932 1933  
1934 1935 1936 1937  
1938 1939 1940 1941  
1942 1943 1944 1945  
1946 1947 1948 1949  
1950 1951 1952 1953  
1954 1955 1956 1957  
1958 1959 1960 1961  
1962 1963 1964 1965  
1966 1967 1968 1969  
1970 1971 1972 1973  
1974 1975 1976 1977  
1978 1979 1980 1981  
1982 1983 1984 1985  
1986 1987 1988 1989  
1990 1991 1992 1993  
1994 1995 1996 1997  
1998 1999 2000 2001  
2002 2003 2004 2005  
2006 2007 2008 2009  
2010 2011 2012 2013  
2014 2015 2016 2017  
2018 2019 2020 2021  
2022 2023 2024 2025  
2026 2027 2028 2029  
2030 2031 2032 2033  
2034 2035 2036 2037  
2038 2039 2040 2041  
2042 2043 2044 2045  
2046 2047 2048 2049  
2050 2051 2052 2053  
2054 2055 2056 2057  
2058 2059 2060 2061  
2062 2063 2064 2065  
2066 2067 2068 2069  
2070 2071 2072 2073  
2074 2075 2076 2077  
2078 2079 2080 2081  
2082 2083 2084 2085  
2086 2087 2088 2089  
2090 2091 2092 2093  
2094 2095 2096 2097  
2098 2099 2100 2101  
2102 2103 2104 2105  
2106 2107 2108 2109  
2110 2111 2112 2113  
2114 2115 2116 2117  
2118 2119 2120 2121  
2122 2123 2124 2125  
2126 2127 2128 2129  
2130 2131 2132 2133  
2134 2135 2136 2137  
2138 2139 2140 2141  
2142 2143 2144 2145  
2146 2147 2148 2149  
2150 2151 2152 2153  
2154 2155 2156 2157  
2158 2159 2160 2161  
2162 2163 2164 2165  
2166 2167 2168 2169  
2170 2171 2172 2173  
2174 2175 2176 2177  
2178 2179 2180 2181  
2182 2183 2184 2185  
2186 2187 2188 2189  
2190 2191 2192 2193  
2194 2195 2196 2197  
2198 2199 2200 2201  
2202 2203 2204 2205  
2206 2207 2208 2209  
2210 2211 2212 2213  
2214 2215 2216 2217  
2218 2219 2220 2221  
2222 2223 2224 2225  
2226 2227 2228 2229  
2230 2231 2232 2233  
2234 2235 2236 2237  
2238 2239 2240 2241  
2242 2243 2244 2245  
2246 2247 2248 2249  
2250 2251 2252 2253  
2254 2255 2256 2257  
2258 2259 2260 2261  
2262 2263 2264 2265  
2266 2267 2268 2269  
2270 2271 2272 2273  
2274 2275 2276 2277  
2278 2279 2280 2281  
2282 2283 2284 2285  
2286 2287 2288 2289  
2290 2291 2292 2293  
2294 2295 2296 2297  
2298 2299 2300 2301  
2302 2303 2304 2305  
2306 2307 2308 2309  
2310 2311 2312 2313  
2314 2315 2316 2317  
2318 2319 2320 2321  
2322 2323 2324 2325  
2326 2327 2328 2329  
2330 2331 2332 2333  
2334 2335 2336 2337  
2338 2339 2340 2341  
2342 2343 2344 2345  
2346 2347 2348 2349  
2350 2351 2352 2353  
2354 2355 2356 2357  
2358 2359 2360 236

1662. resolv'd to go thither. We were forced to go by water through several channels and rivers, the country thereabouts being full of both, like the province of *Holland*, which affords scarce any passage by land, but by the dikes, all the rest being rice fields, cuttously planted with trees on all sides.

We were forc'd to have our *Manfool* (vessel) drawn through a narrow sluice, which open'd us the passage into a large lake, which to the north is about two leagues broad; from thence we enter'd into a channel of about a league in length, its entrance is somewhat narrow and so full of flags, that there was scarce room enough to manage our oars. At the end of this channel you see very pleasant rice-fields, which extend to the foot of the mountain, and are flock'd with prodigious quantities of wild and water fowls. The inhabitants hereabouts have a certain way to drain their fields, which makes them bear rice all the year round; so that whilst they are sowing and planting in one field, in another the rice is half ripe, and in another its come to its full maturity, which renders this country both very fruitful and populous. The mountains produce some pepper, but in no great quantity. This part betwixt the channel and the mountains is water'd by a very fair and large river, beautified on both sides with many fair houses, gardens and trees, which afford a very agreeable spectacle to those that pass by that way, the houses being all built among small groves. After we had spent several hours in coming up the river, we in the afternoon cast anchor before the court of the king of *Porka*, situate upon the right side of the said river, near a village inhabited by christians of *St. Thomas*, who enjoy great privileges here. As we were passing up the river, not far from the court, we saw a large crocodile sunning himself upon the sandy bank; I order'd our soldiers to fire at him, which they did, but he escap'd under water. This creature was used to fet upon the people as they pass'd by that way, and consequently much dreaded by them. The king of *Porka* was at this time rebuilding his palace, in which they say he had already bestow'd 20 years; it was but an odd old fashion'd piece of structure, surrounded with walls of earth and a dry ditch; I sent our interpreter to notify our arrival, and to provide us a lodging, who being return'd, we scarce had set a foot ashore, but the chief *Refidoor* of the king came to conduct us to court, where he introduced us into his presence. After the usual compliments I deliver'd him my credentials, which he receiv'd with extraordinary marks of respect, ordering the *Refidoor* to entertain me till he had read and

Has audience of the king of *Porka*.

consider'd of them. In a little while after he return'd with some of his attendants into the same apartment, where he ask'd me whether I had any other commission to treat with him, and I answering that I had, he declared to me, that his indications had been always for us, even whilst we appear'd in arms on that coast, though at the same time he was not insensible, that some had endeavour'd to persuade us to the contrary, but that time and opportunity should discover the good sentiments he had for us. He told us farther, that he had caused the flags of the *English* and some other nations to be taken down, and the *Dutch* flag to be set up, for which they threaten'd him with an open war, in his own territories, and refused to quit the country, which made them to be look'd upon but with a very indifferent eye by all the neighbouring princes. Having afterwards given him a farther account of the occasion of my coming, he told me that he should be very glad now he was convinc'd of the intentions of the company, which were agreeable to his, to speak with Mr. *Huffart* himself: I return'd for answer, that the company was sensible of his favourable sentiments to them, and had always put a great value upon his person, inviting him at the same time to *Cochin*, to visit Mr. *Huffart*, the last of which he modestly declined, alledging that for several reasons he could not come to *Cochin*, but that if Mr. *Huffart* would come either to *Porka*, or any other place under his jurisdiction, he should be very ready to treat with him concerning such matters as tended to their mutual advantage. The king farther ask'd me, whether I desir'd an account of my negotiation in writing, which I having accepted of, he said it should be sent to my lodgings, and at my departure conducted me in person to the door of his apartment, from whence the *Refidoor* carried me to his lodgings, and treated us with all sorts of refreshments, a very welcome entertainment to some of my attendants, who had not met with the like since the beginning of our journey. Towards the evening the *Refidoor* brought me the writings, with whom whilst we were taking a view of the court, I had abundance of discourse concerning the intended treaty.

This palace of the king is a four square structure of about 40 paces in the square, in the midst of which is a court, about which the apartments (of which there is a great number) are built; they are all four square, their chief ornaments within being the carving of leaves and other work in all sorts of fine wood; in some of these lodgings you see fine cisterns for the convenience of bathing; you ascend to them by

1662.

1662.

The author gave a full and true account of *Porka*.

Has audience.

Palace of the king of *Porka*.

1662. by certain broad stone steps, like our grave-stones. In one of these lodgings is a very large basin, surrounded with such stones, which are about 20 feet broad, and a foot and a half thick, which have been brought thither with incredible pains and charges, a great way out of the country. The palace it self is cover'd with small tiles of a hand broad, the windows being made either of twisted canes or shells, which transmits the light.

After my return from thence to Koulang, I went farther to Cocbin, to give a verbal account of my transactions to Mr. Hufart, who thereupon order'd me to go once more to the court of the king of *Porka*, in order to set matters there upon a sure foundation; accordingly I set out the 3<sup>d</sup> of February, with some of my former attendants from Cocbin to the king of *Porka*'s court, where within an hour after giving notice of my arrival, one of the king's *Refidoors* came to introduce me to the king, whom that time I found in a most magnificent array, (after the *Malabar* fashion) in the midst of his courtiers. After the usual respect paid, I deliver'd to him my credentials, which he having received, he order'd all his attendants and my interpreter among the rest to withdraw, because he had a mind to discourse with me alone in *Portuguese*, which he understood very well. I told him that I was sent on purpose by my masters to his majesty, to assure him of their friendship, and to pay the money stipulated by the last treaty, which sum, though it much exceeded the value of the thing receiv'd, yet notwithstanding all this my masters had thought fit not to recede from what had been promised in their name. The king gave for answer, that it never had been a custom to weigh the pepper at Cocbin, (which I had desired should be done) and that therefore he hop'd the company would not introduce any novelties in his territories; assuring us withal, that he would be ready to assist the company and their officers upon all occasions, besides several other assurances too tedious to be inserted here. I soon understood his meaning, to wit, that he would not have the pepper trade transferr'd to Cocbin, which was a matter of no great consequence, so I did not insist any longer upon it, but agreed, that the pepper should be receiv'd and weigh'd at *Porka*; assuring him, that the company had never had the least intention to impair any body's right, as his majesty might easily be convinc'd as well by this as several other transactions and treaties made lately with other kings and princes. The king appeared to be highly satisfied thereat, desiring that a factor might be sent

thither forthwith, to buy and receive the pepper; which I having promised to the king, he order'd the *Refidoor* to receive the money, and granted me leave to depart.

The next following day, just as I was ready to depart, a *Refidoor* come to my lodgings, which was an old chapel, and presented me, from the king, with several refreshments, according to the custom of the country, and knowing this *Refidoor* to be a person in great esteem with the king, I requested his favour in behalf of the company, which he promised to do.

The king then reigning at *Porka* was a person of 30 years of age, very stoutly and well made. He was adorn'd with many jewels of diamonds and rubies, which he wore on his hands, arms and ears, according to the *Malabar* fashion. He is a most absolute prince, acknowledging no superior, every foot of the country being his own, and at his disposal. Justice is administered here with extraordinary severity, especially on the account of theft, which makes this crime scarce ever to be heard of here, of which I saw the following instance myself; whilst I was paying the money to the before-mention'd *Refidoor*, I was call'd away to the king, and seeing above 50 persons in the same room, I charg'd one of my attendants to take care of the money; the *Refidoor* having taken notice of it, laugh'd heartily, and told me, *You need not give yourself that trouble, no body will dare to touch the money, tho' it was untold and unguarded, for we know scarce what thieves are*, which surpris'd me not a little, knowing that the *Malabars* in general are the errantest thieves in nature.

The kingdom of *Porka* or *Porkab*, otherwise *Perkatti*, has borrow'd its name from its capital city; it borders to the north upon the kingdom of Cocbin, to the south upon that of *Kalkoulang*, it has *Takken Berkenker* to the north-east, and the sea to the west, being about 12 leagues in length; its capital city is *Porka* or *Porkab*. Another of the chief cities is *Koramallur* or *Koramallo*, situate upon the same river with the cities of Cocbin and Koulang. The kings of *Porka* were in ancient times great idolaters, who worship'd at least 900 idols, unto each of which daily sacrifices were offer'd, and visits made them about six or seven a clock in the morning till twelve at noon. It was not till the year 1590, that the *Romish* religion was openly profess'd here with consent of the king. Tho' many years before, the Christians call'd of *St. Thomas* liv'd in these parts. This king granted considerable privileges to the jesuites; such as the building of churches with crosses on the top of them, and the necessary bells, near unto which no

Pagodes,

The author  
gives a short  
and true  
description  
of the court  
of *Porka*.

His audience.

Departs  
from  
thence.

The king  
of *Porka*  
and go-  
vernment.

Theft un-  
der that  
trouble, no  
body will  
dare to  
touch the  
known in  
*Porka*.

The king-  
dom of  
*Porka*.

Palace of  
the king  
of *Porka*.

1662. Pagodes, Jewish synagogues, or Mahometan mosques were to be erected; they had also liberty to baptize as many as were willing to embrace the christian religion, all which was punctually observ'd. The king of *Porka* who reign'd 1599, was call'd *Nambrale* or *Nambrane*, which implies as much as the high priest in the *Malabar* tongue. In the year 1640, one *Siam Baalsbery Vaubaar* reigned over *Porka*. They claim a superiority over the king of *Cochin*, against whom they waged heavy wars in former ages; but nowadays the kings of *Porka* are under the jurisdiction of the *Dutch East-India* company, being forc'd thereunto by their victorious arms; the chief strength of the king of *Porka* consists in his small frigates, of which he has 500, and are made use of, when the fields are overflown with water; formerly the *Portuguese* were masters of the pepper trade here, with the king's consent; but finding that they intended to fortify themselves in several places, he engaged in a war against them, which lasted three whole years. The *Dutch* never came to *Porka* till 1642, under the reign of *Siam Baalsbery Vaubaar*, being then not above 24 years old; they were very kindly receiv'd by him, a treaty being concluded betwixt them at that time, by which the *Dutch* had the pepper trade granted to them. This part of the country is very fruitful, but unwholesome, most of the inhabitants being afflicted with thick swell'd legs, occasioned by the drinking of brackish water; blindness is also a common distemper here, which by some is ascrib'd to their feeding so much upon hot rice. Most of the inhabitants live by husbandry, tho' during the rainy season, most of the rice fields hereabouts, as well as all along from the cape *Comarin*, as far as *Pokare Biarbar*, lay under water. This country produces also a considerable quantity of pepper yearly, which is for the most part bought up by the *English*, who have had a factory here many years ago. Deeper into the country live abundance of christians, who were formerly converted by the *Portuguese*, these buy up the pepper in the country, which they are oblig'd to deliver to a certain merchant, appointed for that purpose by the king.

The author goes to Marten.

From hence we went to the king of *Marta* or *Marten*, the capital city of the same name, three leagues to the south of *Cochin* upon the same river. I and Mr. *George Henry Willeng*, under factor of *Koulang*, got on horseback early in the morning, and arriv'd at 10 a clock before noon at *Carnopely*, where we took up our lodgings in a house near the river side, which the *Dutch East-India* company some years before had

purchased from the king. It is pretty large, but not very convenient, being built according to the *Malabar* fashion, with abundance of corners and inlets oddly contriv'd: The gardens are well planted with palm-trees, for the use of the house. I had no sooner given notice of my arrival, but I was sent for to the king. After the usual compliments to be paid to the *Malabar* kings, I deliver'd the following *Ola* (letter) from Mr. *Huflart* to the king.

James Huflart councillor of the Indies, governor and director of the isle of Ceylon, and the *Malabar* coasts, sends his *Ola* to the king of Marten.

Illustrious prince,

Nothing could be more welcome to me, than *Admiral* to understand at my first arrival in *Huflart's* these parts, that your majesty had always liv'd in a good correspondence with our company. To shew your majesty what an extraordinary value we set upon your friendship, we have sent Mr. John Nieuhoff captain of *Koulang*, in order to enter with you into a more strict league and friendship. We hope your majesty will give him entire credit, in what he shall propose to you, which I shall be ready to acknowledge upon the like occasions.

God preserve and give your majesty a long and a happy life.

Cochin  
2 Feb. 1664.

James Huflart.

After which I gave the king a more particular account of my commission, unto which he answer'd, that he would consider of it till the next day; accordingly I was sent for at the appointed time, when I found the king surrounded with a great number of his courtiers, and among the rest some mahometan merchants; he order'd immediately two of them, and one of his captains, who was in great esteem with him, to treat with me concerning the propositions made on behalf of the company; but as I was sufficiently inform'd that most of the mahometan merchants here drove considerable traffick to *Cananor*, to the no small prejudice of our company, I did not think fit to treat with them, if possible I could avoid it, which made me to tell the king, that I had no commission to treat with the mahometan merchants, but with his majesty; that the company at present offer'd peace to the whole coast of *Malabar*, in which, if his majesty was desirous to be included, and to enjoy the benefit of a flourishing trade, he might himself treat with me, but if not, grant me leave to depart. The king after a little pausing, desired that my propositions might be drawn up in writing, which I did accordingly: Our demands were,

1662.

1662.

The king's  
don of  
Marten.

be  
ho  
wid  
of  
the  
an  
kin  
lod  
gav  
ing  
the  
long  
tell  
ly t  
don  
their  
com  
bliss  
done  
and  
to t  
this  
tions  
ges  
last  
defin  
was n  
were  
goro  
chan  
king  
degre  
the k  
ed, c  
mom  
upon  
woul  
not,  
fet w  
T  
very  
tendi  
the f  
and  
moun  
upon  
capit  
ten,  
anoth  
derate  
we b  
for th  
which  
anoth  
call'd  
posse  
mon  
not u  
petty  
Vo

1662. To forbid the importation of amfon, the peeling of the wild cinamome, and the exportation of pepper.

These propositions the king order'd to be read aloud in our presence, which the mahometan merchants endeavour'd to oppose with all their might; and the greatest part of the day being spent in messages betwixt the king and us, by the *Residoors*, who gave an exact account of all what pass'd to the king, he gave leave for us to return to our lodgings, and order'd us to attend him again the next day. But early in the morning a certain person of quality, who bears the second rank in that kingdom, came along with the before-mention'd captain, to tell us, that what we desired, was absolutely to the prejudice of the king and kingdom, which I endeavour'd to put out of their heads, by telling them, that we were come with no other intention, than to establish a free commerce with them, as we had done with most of the other *Malabar* kings and princes before, and which would turn to their great advantage; notwithstanding this they were for making several alterations in each point, and five or six messages pass'd betwixt the court and us; at last they ask'd what quantity of pepper we desired yearly? We answer'd them, that it was no matter about the quantity, since we were for buying all. This point was vigorously oppos'd by the mahometan merchants, who said would have persuaded the king to reserve part of it for them; but by degrees we overcame all these difficulties, the king having granted us all we demand'd, except the peeling of the wild cinamome, which we did not so much insist upon, being a thing uncertain whether it would quit the cost to the undertakers or not, because it was in the kings power to set what price he pleas'd upon it.

The kingdom of Marten.

The kingdom of *Marta* or *Marten* is very near as big as that of *Kalkolang*, extending to the north as far as *Porka*; to the south it borders upon the *Indian* sea, and to the east it is surrounded by high mountains, and wash'd by the same river, upon which *Cochin* and *Koulang* lie: The capital city is likewise call'd *Marta* or *Marten*. But to the south near the sea-shore is another city call'd by the inhabitants *Panderatoutte*, and *Pesse* by the *Portuguese*; here we built a House by the king's consent, for the convenience of the pepper trade, which is always weigh'd here. There is another city belonging to this kingdom call'd *Podigabo* or *Maulikara*. This king possesses some parts of the countrey in common with the king of *Kalkolang*, a thing not usual on this coast, where are so many petty kingdoms, that it requires no small

Vol. II.

time, to distinguish and know them from one another. The country is well peopled here, abounding in pepper, pease and beans, and the fields near the river-side in rice and salt-pits. The king is a sovereign prince; he that then reign'd being of about 60 years of age, very large of body and a stern countenance; upon his head he wears a bonnet of scarlet cloth lined with callicoe; he keeps constantly 1200 negroes in pay; his residence is at *Carnapoly*, a place surrounded with an earthen wall of 20 foot high, but appeared much decay'd at that time. This kingdom has long ago been inhabited by christians, which however were forced to live there 12 whole years without a church, viz. till the year 1581, when the king then reigning, not only gave them liberty to build a church, but also to cut wood in the adjacent forests dedicated to the pagan idols. He also gave permission to his subjects to turn christians, and the jesuits had full power granted them to exercise the church censure, and to inflict it upon those that were baptiz'd by them. The said church was dedicated to *St. Andrew*, because it was finish'd upon that saints day.

Upon the banks of the same river, where the kingdom of *Marten* lies, is also the kingdom of *Batyma*, with its city call'd *Katyapery*. It is commonly reported in these parts, that the kings of *Batyma* made a law, by which a man was empower'd to kill any woman that should refuse him a kindness.

By this time our negotiation being brought to an entire conclusion, I offer'd the usual presents to the king, which he order'd to be taken by him who bears the second rank in the kingdom, who as well as several others of his courtiers having been very instrumental in promoting the treaty, we thought fit to engage to our party by some small presents. At last we were appointed to attend before the court in the open air, where the king first, and I afterwards sign'd the treaty with our own hands, in the presence of a great multitude of people, that were flock'd thither on purpose to be spectators of this ceremony. This done I took my leave of the king and his chief courtiers, and the same evening went aboard our vessel, which about a league from thence did ride at anchor in the river. A certain lord commanding over the countrey here, a vassal of the king of *Marten*, came on purpose to meet and compliment us and presented us with some fowls, *Py-sang* and other refreshments, of whom I likewise took my leave and return'd to *Koulang*, where I arriv'd the 9<sup>th</sup> of February,

Whilst I was negotiating with the king  
M m m of

1662.

The author leaves Marten.

Returns to Koulang.

1662. of *Porka*, the king of *Kalkalang* sent for me to his court, where he presented me with a very fine *Brocade* silk gown, made according to the *Indian* fashion, testifying his joy for the good success we had had in our negotiation with his neighbour; I return'd my hearty thanks to the king for this and other favours I had receiv'd at his hands, and went back again to the king of *Porka*.

*Is presented by the king of Kalko-  
lang.*

But to return to *Koulang*; no sooner was I arrived the 9<sup>th</sup> of Feb. at *Koulang* but the queen of the same name, sent the next day her chief captain to receive the customs and cannon she pretended to be due to her by virtue of the late treaty; I was willing to surrender the cannon, according to our agreement, but could not consent to the other; and in the mean while we were preparing our *Manfo* (vessel) for a voyage to the king of *Travankoor*'s court, the *Residoors* of the king of *Goenre* and *Barriette* *Pule* desir'd an interview with me, whom I gave a meeting accordingly in company of Mr. *Cber de Venne*, book-keeper of the *Dutch East-India* company. We saw above 300 negroes all in a body, who with one voice cry'd out for the customs, which made me, after many debates and disputes, tell them, that I would go home, with an intimation to return the next day to them, provided they would desist from these things, that were not granted them by the treaty, nor were ever likely to be granted, and so return'd to *Koulang*.

The 12<sup>th</sup> of February, I embark'd at nine a clock in the evening for *Atingen*, where the king of *Travankoor* kept his residence then, being come thither some days before. With break of day we found our selves near the village of *Mappul*, about five leagues to the east of *Koulang*, but not daring to approach the shore with our vessel, we were forced to hire an *Indian* boat, which carried us safely ashore, notwithstanding the violence of the waves that rowed against the shore. We travell'd for about a league along the sea-side, till we came to a large river, which carried us in three hours rowing to the court; here we understood that the king was just then ready to go to *Kalkalang*, I gave immediate notice of my arrival to his majesty, who sent for me by one of his *Residoors*; he met us on the stairs-head, with many of his courtiers; where I presented him with the usual respect, the letter, with some presents, which he receiv'd and caused the letter to be read aloud before all there present, telling me, that he would forthwith let me know his intention, and that in the mean while I might take a walk into the garden of the castle, with some of his *Residoors*; and discourse with them farther in

*Goet to  
Atingen.*

a certain grove, which he pointed at with his fingers. Accordingly I begun to talk more at large, concerning my propositions, with the four *Residoors*, who were for treating with me immediately upon the subject in hand, which I told them I had no orders to do, my business being to treat with the king in person. They having given the king an account of what I said, brought me word, that his majesty, in a matter of such consequence could not take a resolution till next day, desiring me to have patience till then, and presented us with *Pyjant* and some other refreshments. On the western-side of the palace is a pleasant house at the foot of a hill, in the midst of a very pleasant grove, from whence there is a prospect into a very fruitful valley full of rice-fields, hedg'd in with palm-trees; this place was assign'd us for our lodgings, our host appearing to be a very honest man, but so mistrustful withal, that when we were going to supper, he refused to let us have dishes or any other utensils; their soldiers being exasperated at this usage, the whole house began to be in an alarm, and I enquiring the reason, could get no other answer from him, than *That the devil and his ill fortune wou'd him a shame, when they brought such lodgers into his house*, desiring us at the same time to look out for another lodging. With much ado I persuaded him, that we were no such fellows as he imagin'd us to be, and so at last with the help of a little money, he let us have what we had occasion for.

The next day, being the 14<sup>th</sup> of Feb. about eight a clock in the morning the king sent for me to court again by a negro, where we met the before-mention'd four *Residoors* at the gate, ready to receive us, we went together into the garden, where I caused a carpet to be spread under the shadow of some trees, as they did their *Indian* mats; and being seated, the chiefest of the *Residoors* told me, *That his majesty was not a little dissatisfied at our burning the royal palace of Koulang, and that he had given him orders to treat of that as well as the other subject with me. That the letter sent to admiral Hufart had been written with no other intention, than to treat concerning the pretensions of prince Gondormo, and that therefore they would be glad to hear what instructions I had about that matter.* As I thought it not for our purpose to tergiversate in the matter, I told them bluntly, that *Gondormo* might thank himself for his misfortunes; for that when our fleet and forces, about two years ago appear'd near *Cochin*, to attack the *Portuguese* our enemies, the *Dutch* admiral had set up a white flag, to shew his willingness to treat with the

queen



ated at with 1662.  
gun to talk  
propositions,  
re for treat-  
on the sub-  
n I had no  
to treat with  
iving given  
id, brought  
in a matter  
take a reso-  
me to have  
ted us with  
ments. On  
is a pleasant  
the mid of  
hence there  
il valley full  
palm-trees;  
ar lodgings,  
very honest  
l, that when  
e refused to  
er utensils;  
ed at this u-  
to be in an  
eason, could  
h, than *That*  
*him a shame,*  
*into his house,*  
look out for  
ado I per-  
such flows  
at last with  
let us have  
14<sup>th</sup> of Feb.  
ning the king  
by a negro,  
ation'd four  
to receive us  
arden, where  
d under the  
did their In-  
the chiefst  
at his majesty's  
burning the  
that he had  
at as well as  
the letter sent  
concerning the  
no, and that  
hear what in-  
ter. As I  
to tergiver-  
them bluntly,  
myself for his  
our fleet and  
appear'd near  
our enemies,  
a white flag,  
eat with the  
queen

1662. queen of *Cochin*, which *Gondormo* had not only prevented, but also attack'd our forces, and oppos'd and still did oppose all our designs tending to the re-establishment of the government of *Cochin* upon its true foundation. I further told them, that, when about two years ago, I had the honour to see his majesty at *Kalikali*, I assured his majesty that we had conquer'd *Cochin*, and were engaged in an everlasting alliance with *Monta Davila*, their legal sovereign; and that therefore *Gondormo* need not flatter himself with the least hopes of his re-establishment. Of this they gave an account to the king, who soon sent them back with another proposition, to wit, whether he might not be admitted as a second or third person in the kingdom? To make an end at once of this dispute, I ask'd them whether they did acknowledge *Monta Davila* lawful king? They answer'd they did? I demonstrated to them, how unreasonable it was, to demand that one who had set up against his legal sovereign, should be receiv'd in such a station in the same kingdom, and considering the ill consequences which must needs ensue from thence, I told them it was in vain to say a word more of it. This made them insist no more upon the business of *Gondormo*, they only told us, *That we had best be upon our guard*, *Gondormo and his three brothers being resolv'd to live, and to be buried in the kingdom of Cochin*. I answer'd him carefully, that I had travel'd thro the greatest part of that kingdom; and that I was sure there was room enough for 100000 of them. I assured them farther, that his majesty of *Travankoor*, had been always in great esteem with our company, that they never doubted of his friendship, notwithstanding he seem'd to bear so great a share in *Gondormo's* business; that I was sent thither on purpose to enter into a more strict league with him, in the same manner as had been done with several other kings his neighbours. Whilst they were debating this matter, an envoy arriv'd from the queen of *Koulang*, with a letter, in which she complain'd, that she had not receiv'd any share of the customs, nor were the cannon restor'd to her; the *Residoor* ask'd me what the meaning of it was, and whether we would do less than the *Portuguese* had done? I answer'd him, if we should follow the footsteps of the *Portuguese*, we must be guilty likewise of the same enormities, in murdering, plundering, &c. things not customary among us, the intention of our company being to maintain every one in his right, and to establish a free commerce without interruption; and these, said I, are the main contents of my commission, according to which I am to

treat with all the kings and princes of the coast of *Malabar*. After several other debates, finding them full of tergiversations, I roundly told them, that I found them very backward in what had been propos'd; that for my part, I had done all what I could to procure a peace, but that they seem'd to be rather inclinable to war; and finding them somewhat puzzl'd by their silence, said, that if as yet they could find out any expedient, to compose matters upon reasonable terms, I should be willing to hearken to them, and that, if it was for a yearly present, or a sum of money, once for all, they should have it. The king being inform'd of this resolution, sent me word back, that in a thing of this nature, in which several others besides himself were concerned, he must take some leisure to advise, which done, he would send one of his *Residoors* to *Koulang*, to treat further of the matter. I insist'd upon having all things dispatch'd here, but the *Residoors* telling me, that they durst not urge it any more to the king, for that time, I was fain to acquiesce, and to defer it till our next meeting at *Koulang*, tho' I very well foresaw that this negotiation would meet with no small difficulties, unless something more were granted than had been offer'd hitherto. About the same time the before-mention'd queen, sent me underhand word, that she was very inclinable to a farther treaty, but that it could not be done till the king of *Travankoor* was gone, which as it was no unwelcome news to me, so I desired the *Residoor* whom she sent to me, to use his utmost interest with her majesty to bring it to pass, being sensible that it was the intention of my Masters to live with her in a good correspondence.

The country about *Attingen* has hitherto not been describ'd by any that I know; it abounds in pepper, of which a great quantity is brought thither out of the circumjacent parts. The ancient race of the kings of *Travankoor* owed its origine to *Attingen*, but for want of male heirs, one of the princes of *Cochin* was placed in that throne; the king who then reign'd, being descended from the *Cochin* race of *Ram-merankail*, and elected king of *Travankoor*. The ground where the pepper grows, is hereabouts strong and red, which makes the pepper not full so large here, as in the valleys about *Koulang* and *Cochin*. On the descents of the hills you see very pleasant rice-fields, cut out like steps, and water'd from the top by small rivulets. The king and queen's palace are directly opposite to one another, with some rice-fields betwixt them.

The next following day about 10 a clock

1662.

1662. clock in the morning, I was call'd to court again, where the king told me in person, that it would be better to reassume the treaty at *Koulang*, which I being fain to be satisfy'd with, I took my leave of his majesty and the *Refidoors*, who offer'd me a present from the king, according to the custom of the country, which I accepted off, and went directly to the river-side, where we found our boat, and sailing down the river, came just before sun-set to *May-pule*, where I was met by the resident of *Tengepatnam*, whom I had given notice of my coming that way. The next following day, viz. the 16<sup>th</sup> of February we reim-bark'd our vessels, and steer'd our course by sea to *Koulang*, from whence I immediately dispatch'd our interpreter to *Pule de Margaty*, to inform himself where the queen of *Goenree* at that time kept her court; he return'd the next day with advice, that a month before she was gone deeper into the country, to a place call'd *Peretaly*, about four days journey from thence.

The king-  
dom of  
Travan-  
koor

The kingdom of *Travankoor* (thus call'd from its capital city) begins at the cape of *Comory* or *Comorin*, and extends all along the sea-coast as far as *Koulang*, comprehending a tract of ground of 20 or 24 leagues in length; the famous village of *Paru*, belonging to the queen of *Sing-naty*, being only in the middle of the coast it borders upon the kingdom of *Madure*, and to the west upon the countries of *Peretaly* and *Kotarkery*. It has several considerable villages which are inhabited by the moors, such as *Tengepatnam*, *Kuletture*, *Koritypatnam* and *Allage*. About the year 1544, above 30 villages, inhabited by the *Makao*s, who live for the most part upon fishing, and by the mahometans, were upon this coast. But the chief cities lie deeper in the country, which is of a great extent all along the mountains to *Naynar*, near the cape of *Comorin* and toward *Travankoor*, in all 29 great cities and villages. About a league and a half to the north of the cape *Comorin* is the city of *Kotale* or *Kokatti*, a place of great traffick; the populous city of *Siminitira* and *Matadavalur*, famous for its bigness, being surrounded by six or seven other towns; *Verrage* is not above a quarter of a league distance from *Kotale* and *Tatikury*, the two most considerable places of the whole country. *Kal-kolang* is a very large city, being a league and a half long, upon the confines of the *Neyk* of *Madure*. It is situate upon a high hill, 3 leagues from *Tengepatnam*, and 12 from *Koulang*; being on one side strengthen'd by inaccessible mountains, on the other by a wall, the undermost part of which is of stone, the uppermost of brick-work, in all

24 foot high; the royal palace stands at the west end, being surrounded by a stone-wall. On the east-side you see the ruins of an old castle, built on the top of a hill, fortified with a triple wall. The city of *Kal-kolang* is the chief residence of the king, who constantly keeps a garrison of 10000 negroes here, to secure it against the *Neyk* of *Madure*, whose power is much dreaded here. It is a very fertile country, abounding in pepper, rice and other grains. It also produces wild cinnamon, the best, the whole coast of *Malabar* affords, but it wants several things requisite for the convenience of life. One of the chiefest rivers which water this country, is the river *Mannikorin*, it exonerates itself into the sea, near cape *Comorin*. The king of this country is by some stiled the *great king*, because he possesses larger territories than any other of the *Malabar* kings. He is served in great state, and maintains abundance of commanders, whom they call *Mandigals*, and many counsellors, call'd *Pullas*. Some ascribe to him a superiority over neighbouring princes, but of this I am convinced to the contrary by my own experience; it is true they reverence him, as a potent king, but pay him no obedience. Others will have him to be a vassal of the king of *Nar-singa*. The whole country is well stock'd with people, who appear very well cloth'd according to the *Malabar* fashion.

The 18<sup>th</sup> of February, I set out from *Koulang* in company of Mr. *Siewert Baker*, for the kingdom of *Goenree*. But scarce were we come to *Kaligoli*, but one of the *Refidoors* told us, that the queen of *Goenree* was a month ago gone into the country, and would not return very quickly, by reason of a certain religious ceremony, she was obliged to perform there, before her return; I desired a guide, because I had something of moment to communicate to the queen, but they excused it, telling me that the ways were so rocky and impassable, that it would be impossible for me to get thither, it being five tedious days journey to the country of *Peretaly*, bordering upon the territories of the *Neyk* of *Madure*. Being made sensible that this journey could not be undertaken without great difficulty and charge, I thought it most expedient to leave a letter with the *Refidoor*, to be deliver'd to the queen, the contents of which were as follows.

His letter to the queen.

THAT I was come hither to offer a small present to her majesty, and to enter into a strict and everlasting alliance with her; but I was so unfortunate, as not to meet with her

1662. *her majesty, I liv'd however in hopes, that she would not be backward in entering into a general league, which the company had lately concluded with all the Malabar princes; to accomplish which as we should be ready to contribute every thing on our side, so we did not question, but that her majesty would be pleas'd to let us know her sentiments by the bearer of this letter.*

Whilst I tarried here, I understood that the *Residoor* of the king of *Travankoor* was arriv'd the 20<sup>th</sup> at *Koulang China*, and had notified his arrival by our *Petangatin Thome Bottoncho*, desiring to confer with me, concerning certain matters commanded him by the king his master, since my departure from thence. The place appointed for our interview, was the church of the christians of *St. Thomas* in *Koulang China*, where I was present at the appointed hour, but finding them to trifle away the time in altercations and tergiversations; I was ready to mount on horse-back again, in order to return to *Koulang*, which when they perceiv'd, they desired me to stay and give them another meeting, which I agreed to do. At last, after abundance of contests, the following agreement concerning the shares of the customs, the importation of amson and the exportation of pepper, was made betwixt the *Dutch East-India* company, by their deputy *Mr. John Nieuhoff* on one, and the kings of *Marten*, *Singnaty*, *Goenree*, *Travankoor* and *Barrigetta Pule* on the other side.

#### Articles of agreement.

I. **N**O body shall import, sell or exchange any amson into these countries, except the *Dutch East-India* company.

II. No body, without any exception, shall be permitted to export any pepper or cinamome out of this country, or to sell them to any body, except to the said company.

III. A certain price was settled, betwixt both parties, and what share each should have in the customs, whereby all former pretensions and exceptions should be annulled.

February  
21, 1664.

Sig'n'd in the court  
Matta del Reyne.

In my return from *Koulang*, in the road leading to *Matta del Reyne*, I found guards posted upon all the cross roads, which made me enquire of *Matta del Pule* chief commander of the negroes, what the meaning or it was, who told me with a sorrowful countenance, that the prince *Barrigetta Pule*, had caused one of the queen's *Residoors* to be slain by his soldiers, who had

also laid about 80 houses in ashes, and cut down many palm-trees. That they had been sent to besiege him in his castle, but that at the intercession of the king of *Travankoor's Residoor*, who had promised that the said prince should be call'd to an account by the king his master, they had delay'd the execution of it for three days; but he much fear'd he should scarce withhold them much longer, from taking a direful revenge of him. He was very inquisitive concerning our late transactions with the king of *Marten*, but I excus'd the matter, telling him only, that I hoped it would be brought to a conclusion, to both sides satisfaction.

The 22<sup>d</sup> I sent a letter by *Mr. Sebastian Ferdinandi*, our interpreter, to the queen of *Singnaty*, in which I gave her an account of what had been transacted betwixt the *Residoor* of the king of *Travankoor* and myself. In the mean while the king's and prince's soldiers were come to blows, several being kill'd and wounded on both sides. Whereupon the prince finding himself besieged in his castle, sent one of his most trusty servants to desire assistance, and some powder and ball for his master, which I thought fit to refuse, for weighty reasons; for whatever may be the opinion of those who think it a maxim of state to fish in troubled waters, I was too well acquainted with the perfidiousness of the *Malabars*, who make not the least account of faith or leagues, unless they are forced to it, than to put the least confidence in them.

In the mean time the beforementioned *Residoor* of the king of *Travankoor* not appearing at the time and place appointed for the removing of some remaining differences, I sent him the following letter, by *Topaes Nicolaes da Costa*.

The captain of *Koulang* sends this letter with his service, to *Narrano Poly*, *Residoor* of *Travankoor*.

The author's letter to the *Residoor* of *Travankoor*.

**P**Ursuant to our mutual agreement, I came to *Koulang China*, in order to bring the treaty begun before to a happy conclusion. But your bigbness did not perform your promise, neither had I the least account since, how the queen of *Singnaty* was likely to relish our transactions. And as the nature of the thing would admit of no delay, I saw myself obliged to send my interpreter to the queen of *Singnaty*, and *Topaes Nicolaes da Costa*, to the *Goenree* and *Barrigetta*, to be inform'd concerning that point. They bring me for answer, that the said queen pretends to the customs

N n n

without

Trouble  
raised by  
Barrigetta  
Pule.

1662. without the least diminution, which is not in my power to agree to. As I am sensible, that I have left nothing unattempted, which might reasonably and honestly be expected from me, for the terminating of these differences, but all in vain, I have nothing left to do, but to protest once for all, according to the strictest rules of justice, in the name of the whole company, against your Narrano Poly, and your transactions, and all others who take part with you, that we will, and hereby declare our selves innocent, and guiltless of all the troubles and miseries of a future war.

Koulang Feb.  
26, 1664.

John Nieuhoff.

In the mean while I had given an account of the whole matter to Mr. *Hustart*, desiring him to come in person, and to endeavour by his presence to put a happy conclusion to the negotiations. He sent me an answer dated *Cochin* the 24<sup>th</sup> of February, intimating that he had intended to set out from thence within two days after, of which he order'd me to give notice to the king of *Travankoor*, and queen of *Singnaty*, which I did accordingly by an express sent with letters to both their majesty's. The 27<sup>th</sup> the *Residoor* of *Travankoor* sent me word by *Topaes Nicolaes de Costa*, that he was willing to treat with me once more about the customs, but that no body except the queen must be privy to the matter; for which reason he could cause a quite different rumour to be raised among the people; but considering with my self that the negroes, who are in great esteem here, might get scent of the matter, and that (as the king had told me himself before) several persons in the first rank were concern'd in the customs, I did not look upon this underhand treaty as advantageous for the company; which made me write to the *Residoor*, that I was willing to contribute all what in me lay, towards the composing of the differences betwixt us, provided it could be done in the same nature as with the other *Malabar* princes, who had not refus'd to read the treaties in the presence of their subjects, to shew that their words were altogether consonant to their deeds. I receiv'd an answer the same evening, in which the *Residoor* desired an interview with me in *St. Thomas's* church the next day. Accordingly I went thither on horse-back with Mr. *James Cher de Venne*. After many contests on both sides, we agreed at last, and the *Residoor* promised to return to morrow to finish the treaty. About this time I receiv'd a letter from the queen of *Singnaty*, in answer to that I had sent her before; as follows.

Another  
interview  
with the  
*Residoor*  
of *Travankoor*.

The queen of *Singnaty's* letter to the author.

I Receiv'd and saw the contents of the letter sent to me from Mr. John Nieuhoff, captain of *Koulang*, concerning the proposed treaty; I will find word in the Month of March to *Kottekkery*, where we will meet together, and I shall be ready to rectify what my plenipotentiaries shall agree to. For which reason I order'd this letter to be written to captain John Nieuhoff.

The next day the *Residoor* of the king of *Travankoor* came to *Koulang*, who was receiv'd by us with all imaginable respect; he began among other things to renew his former discourse about the prince *Gondorma*, upon which it was agreed to delay the last conclusion of the treaty till the coming of Mr. *Hustart*, who was expected every day at *Koulang*.

The 2<sup>d</sup> of March with break of day, the vice-roy of the king of *Travankoor*, call'd by them *Gorsepe*, the chief commander of the negroes, call'd *Matta de Pulo*, and my self, set out for the court of the queen of *Koulang*, which was then kept at *Calliciere*. We arriv'd there about two a clock in the afternoon, and as soon as notice was given of our arrival, we were sent for to court, where, after I had deliver'd the presents, and laid the money down for pepper, I was introduced into her majesty's presence. She had a guard of above 700 soldiers about her, all clad after the *Malabar* fashion; the Queen's attirement being no more than a piece of callicoe wrapt round her middle, the upper part of her body appearing for the most part naked, with a piece of callicoe hanging carelessly round her shoulders. Her ears, which were very long, her neck and arms were adorn'd with precious stones, gold rings and bracelets, and her head cover'd with a piece of white callicoe. She was past her middle age, of a brown complexion, with black hair tied in a knot behind, but of a majestick mein, she being a princess who shew'd a great deal of good conduct in the management of her affairs. After I had paid the usual compliments, I shew'd her the proposition, I was to make to her in writing; which she order'd to be read twice, the better to understand the meaning of it, which being done, she ask'd me, whether this treaty comprehended all the rest, and whether they were annull'd by it; unto which I having given her a sufficient answer, she agreed to all our propositions, which were accordingly sign'd immediately. This done, I recommended Mr. *James Cher de Venne*, who was to succeed me at *Koulang*, to her majesty, desiring her to acknowledge

1662.

The author  
goes to the  
court of  
*Koulang*.

1662. knowledge  
in a good  
ny, by  
korin, w  
desired  
Mr. *Hu*  
the read  
took a ge  
she prefer  
clination  
one of th  
but it be  
be fitted  
when I  
*stari's* co  
golden b  
honours,  
since my  
my heart  
not to w  
pany.  
two a cl  
in throu  
*Hustart*  
with two  
bowed fr  
paid a vi  
where I  
negotiati  
our facto  
fatisfied,

Arrives to  
*Koulang*.





1662. *Her Majesty's Audience with the Queen of Koulang*

1662. knowledge him as such, and to continue in a good correspondency with our company, by whom I was order'd to go to *Toutekorin*, which she promised to do. I then desired leave to depart, because I expected Mr. *Huflart* every hour at *Koulang*, which she readily granted, and at the same time took a golden bracelet from her arms, which she presented me as a token of her good inclinations to the company. She order'd one of the *Residoors* to fasten it to my arm, but it being too streight, she caused it to be fitted for me, she having once before, viz. when I first gave her notice of Mr. *Huflart's* coming, presented me with another golden bracelet, for which and all other honours, I had received from her majesty, since my residence at *Koulang*, I returned my hearty thanks, desiring her once more not to withdraw her favour from the company. Thus I return'd to *Koulang*, about two a clock in the night, where I was let in through one of the gates, the admiral *Huflart* being the day before arriv'd there with two ships, the *Erasmus* and the *Nieuwenboven* from *Batavia*. The next morning I paid a visit to the admiral at his lodgings, where I gave him an ample account of my negotiations, and other matters relating to our factory here, wherewith he was highly satisfied, and gave me some farther orders

about certain matters to be transacted before my departure.

About the same time the viceroy of the king of *Travankoor* came back to the city of *Koulang*, to compliment the admiral, and to consummate the treaty. The admiral sent him afterwards several presents, and let him know, that if the king his master did give any assistance of men or arms to prince *Gondormo* against *Cochin* and the company, he must expect to be treated as an enemy; he return'd for answer, that he was sure his master would not do it, but always maintain a good correspondency with the company, upon which he was dismiss'd, and left *Koulang* the same night, as did the admiral soon after, who set sail for *Cranganor*, leaving the commodore *Bitter* behind him, who with his wife and family was come aboard the ship the *Nieuwenboven* to load pepper here. His wife being very desirous to see the queen of *Koulang*, I caus'd her to be carried thither in my *Palankin*; the queen receiv'd her very courteously, being extremely well pleas'd with the sight of a *Dutch* woman; and many of the *Malabars* were so curious as to peep into the *Palankin* to see her; they being no less surpriz'd at the sight of the *Europeans* than we were at them. Commodore *Bitter* having by this time got his full cargo, set sail again for *Batavia*.

1662.

The viceroy of Travankoor comes to Koulang.



1662. *Batavia*, as I did the 11<sup>th</sup> to the court of *Gonree*, and so to the prince *Baryette Pule*, where I introduced Mr. *Cherde Venne*, who, as I told you before, was to manage the affairs of the company after my departure; they receiv'd him very civilly, and promis'd to maintain an everlasting correspondence with our company. At parting, prince *Baryette Pule* presented me with a golden bracelet curiously wrought, and the viceroy with a silken suit of cloaths, and so I return'd very well satisfied to *Koulang*, where I prepar'd for *Toutekorin*, for within four days after, viz. the 12<sup>th</sup> of *March*, having first surrendred all my accounts, and what also belong'd to the company, and given the best instructions I could to Mr. *James Cherde Venne*, taken my leave of the chiefest officers belonging to the company, I set out for *Toutekorin*, after a stay of two years at *Koulang*, considering that my appointed time was near expiring, and I had settled our traffick at *Koulang* upon a good foot. I could have been very glad to have stay'd the remainder of my time here, for which purpose I sent a letter to *Colomba*, but the chief director of *Toutekorin* being order'd to *Persia* upon some urgent business, I was forc'd to supply his place. And upon this occasion I think it not amiss to give the reader an account of what I have observ'd most remarkable during my stay on the coast of *Malabar*, together with the products, beasts and inhabitants of this country.

Limits of  
the coast of  
*Malabar*.

Its direct-  
ion.

The coast of *Malabar* is properly called that tract of ground where the *Malabar* tongue is us'd, beginning 50 leagues to the south below *Goa*, and extending to the south to the cape *Comorin*, under 7 $\frac{1}{2}$  degree of northern latitude, about 80 leagues along that coast. On the west-side it borders upon the *Indian* sea, and to the east it is surrounded by a ridge of high mountains, which divide it from the coast of *Coromandel*. It is commonly divided into five kingdoms, viz. *Cananor*, *Calicut*, *Cranganor*, *Cocbin* and *Koulang*, unto which some add the kingdom of *Porka*, *Tanakor* or *Tanor*, *Koulang* and *Travankoor*; not to mention here the petty kingdoms of *Kota*, *Mountingua*, *Badara*, *Chambaya*, *Marta*, *Materie*, and several others among the mountains. It is situate almost in the midst betwixt the line and the tropick of *Cancer*; which makes the days here excessive hot, notwithstanding which, it is a pleasant, extraordinary fertile and healthful country. It is full of very fine springs, pools, rivers and channels, even as far as the mountains, but most towards the sea-side; in which it resembles the province of *Holland*, being scarce passable without boats; tho' most of

their rivers are shallow, and consequently unfit for ships of burden. Here grows a great store of the best pepper, exceeding all the rest in goodness; formerly the inhabitants us'd to exchange the pepper with the foreign merchants for silver, gold, amition and other commodities; but since the *Dutch East-India* company have made themselves masters of the kingdoms of *Cranganor*, *Cocbin* and *Koulang*, and forc'd the *Portuguese* from thence, they have by entering into several leagues with the neighbouring princes, got the monopoly of pepper on that coast into their hands, and have so well provided the three before mention'd places with strong fortifications and garrisons, that they are look'd upon as impregnable. Besides this, the country of *Malabar* is full of cocotrees, especially in the marshes, where these trees thrive better than in any other place in the *Indies*, there being some trees here of 95 and more foot high. They drive a considerable trade with the oil and bark of this fruit, neither do they want wood fit for the building of houses and ships. The air is very pure here, and very cold in the night time, during the three months of *January*, *February* and *March*; and when the nights are very foggy, which questionless occasions the cold, the days being excessive hot. The winter begins here in *April*, or at the most in *May*, and ends in *September* or *October*, with thunder, lightnings and storms: This season produces the most fruits, by reason of the warm rains. Then begins the summer season, which continues till *April* or *May* with intolerable heat, and commonly without any rains, which renders the sandy grounds so hot, that they cannot pass over them with their bare feet, but are forced to make use of a certain sort of shoes, call'd by them *Siripous*. Every morning about nine or ten a clock, the land wind blows from the *East*, and immediately after sunset the west wind from the sea, both which contribute much towards the cooling of the air, as well here, as in all other adjacent islands. What is most observable is, that the land wind never reaches above ten leagues in the sea; an observation which has never been known to mis. The seasons here are quite of a different nature from ours, for whilst during the summer months every thing is dried up in the hot climates of *Europe*, here the fruits appear most florid and green, because this is the winter season in *Malabar*, where it rains continually for six months, during which time you not as much as see the least glimpse of the sun, but in the other six months it never rains. During the months of *October*, *November* and *December*, they are much afflicted with dreadful storms. There is another thing which

1662. is m  
furni  
ter on  
cation  
which  
whilst  
which  
bar, t  
during  
well-f  
Thus  
rin, th  
May,  
whilst  
side ha  
and rai  
other f  
The  
cane, c  
some a  
any cel  
ver loc  
housho  
they be  
doors ar  
out floo  
cover'd  
built oth  
ing to th  
don't ap  
common  
within o  
of the midd  
square, v  
bout it,  
tops of th  
their hou  
court-yar  
ditches, an  
court-yar  
lers, who  
more con  
within, be  
on their j  
pany goes  
are comm  
with a m  
some grea  
palaces ar  
some havi  
ference.  
ings in w  
their hous  
lish'd woe  
seen many  
pear to h  
Some tell  
ing into  
his admira  
ver *Gange*  
*Euphrates*  
tries desol  
tion to *Ta*  
Vol. II



1662. is most surprizing here, that when it is summer on the coast of *Malabar*, it is winter on the coast of *Coromandel*. This is occasioned by the mountains call'd *Gate*, which stop the passage of the winds; for whilst on the east-side of these mountains, which extend all along the coast of *Malabar*, they have great heats and droughts during their summer season, those on the west-side have their winter with violent rains. Thus on the south-side of the cape *Comorin*, they have their summer during *April, May, June, July, August and September*, whilst at the same time, those on the north-side have their winter, it being very stormy and rainy on one, and fair and calm on the other side at the same time.

1662. Their ordinary houses are of bamboo canes, cover'd with leaves of coco-trees; some are plastered with carving, without any cellars, garrets or windows. They never lock up their houses, because their household-stuff is not worth stealing, unless they be persons of an eminent rank; their doors are so low, that you cannot enter without stooping, tho' they have also some houses cover'd with lead, copper and tiles, and built otherwise and well fitted up, according to their fashion; their private buildings don't approach in height to ours, they commonly have two or three apartments within one another; within the compass of the middlemost of these apartments is a small square, with some small galleries round about it, which receive the water from the tops of the houses. At the entrance of all their houses, whether rich or poor, are court-yards surrounded with high walls and ditches, and one of strong pallisadoes. These court-yards are for the reception of travellers, who eat, drink and sleep here, with more conveniency than if they were lodged within, being ready at all times to proceed on their journey when the rest of the company goes. Their royal palaces and pagods are commonly built of stone, surrounded with a mud wall, on which are mounted some great cannon. Most of their princely palaces are erected in large ponds or lakes, some having a league and a half in circumference. They have most excellent carvings in wood, with all sorts of images in their houses; their ceiling is of a plain polish'd wood; among the marshes are to be seen many ruins of old houses, which appear to have been built many ages ago. Some tell us, that *Alexander* the great coming into those parts, after he had order'd his admiral to enter by the way of the river *Ganges* the sea, and from thence by the *Euphrates* to *Babylon*, had laid these countries desolate; others ascribe this devastation to *Tamerlane*.

VOL. II.

1662. The *Malabars* eat and drink sitting upon the ground, after the *Mabometan* fashion, almost like our taylors. Their cups, dishes and spoons are made of coco-nuts; people of quality have them made of metal. Instead of bread they use nothing but rice; besides which, they feed upon flesh, fish, spices, fruits, milk and eggs. They drink abundance of water, as likewise the juice of the coco-trees; some of which give 30 quarts of this liquor in 24 hours, but if they are drain'd too much, the trees perish. They also distil a spirit call'd *Arack* out of this liquor, but it is not near so good nor wholesome as our brandy. When they drink they don't touch their lips with the cup, but pour the liquor from above into the mouth; some eat neither flesh nor fish, but live purely upon the products of the ground.

They use amfion very greedily. They take the quantity or the bigness of a pea, this they either mix with *Arack*, or chew it alone, sometimes till they fall asleep; they pretend that this makes them have very pleasant dreams of the *Elysian* fields and such like. When they are to attack an enemy, they take a good quantity of it, which makes them fall on like enraged wild beasts, and the virtue of the amfion being gone, they don't remember what has past, which shews that it is very obnoxious to the memory. Some have accustomed themselves to use amfion every day, some every two or three days; and before I knew the effects of it, I have been often surpriz'd, that they should be so forgetful in such matters as I had treated with them of before. The queen of *Koulang* asking me once among other things, what was the reason the *Dutch* were more active and perseverant than the *Malabars*, who were generally fickle and unsettled, I laid the fault upon the use of the amfion, telling her withal, that the *Malabars* should imitate the *Dutch*, and drink wines, which used with moderation, did acuate the understanding, made the spirits active, and often discovered the truth.

Among these several sects of the *Malabars*, that of the *Brahmans* is most revered, and maintains a peculiar manner of living. They are generally very wise, ready, active, modest and charitable, and strict observers of their promises. They betake themselves to divers employments at pleasure; some are soldiers like the natives, and wear the same clothes, except that they are distinguish'd from them by the cord they wear round their middle, and abstain from flesh. Others are priests, whose business it is to offer sacrifices to their idols, no other sect being admitted to that service.

O o o

Some

1662. Some also encrease traffick, and tho' they grow very rich, yet observe the same rules of living. Some there are among them who addict themselves to natural philosophy and other sciences, but especially to astronomy, others to physick and pharmacy. They eat neither flesh nor fish, nor any other living creature, and drink nothing but water; nor do they ever eat before they have washed and bathed themselves; which done, they only cover their privy parts, and for the rest eat naked. They are forbidden to eat any thing but what is prepared by one of their own sect; which makes them commonly be their own cooks; for they rather chuse to die than eat any thing touch'd by one of another sect; whereas all the others are at liberty to eat what is dress'd by a *Brabman*. They never (no more than all the other *Malabars*) touch the brim of the cup when they drink, but pour it from above into the mouth. They wear a white turbant upon their heads, red shoes, and a callicoe coat, which reaches down to their ankles. Over this they have another large white piece of stuff, which they wrap three times round their bodies, which they draw thro' betwixt their thighs, and tie it together behind upon their buttocks in a knot. They wear about the middle a girdle or scarf of fine white callicoe, as their turbants are, and over the shoulders a piece of colour'd callicoe or silk, as the *Europeans* do their cloaks. They also have long hair, with pendants in their ears. But that which distinguishes them from all the other *Malabars*, is a cord of fine cotton thread, which they wear next to their skin, and is put about them first of all in their temples with a great deal of ceremony, and not without a considerable charge, which is the reason you cannot do a greater injury to a *Brabman* than to tear this cord, which he is obliged to purchase again, if he will pass for a true *Brabman*; and if any of them is to undergo any corporeal punishment, his cord must first be taken from him, which is likewise done if any of them happen to transgress the rules prescribed to their sect. As they pass along the streets in their white callicoe clothes, they tell such as they meet that they are *Brabmans*, because the cord by which they are chiefly distinguish'd is worn next to their skin, and consequently not to be seen; when they are to take an oath, they lay the hand upon it. The *Brabman* women have holes in their noses, in which they hang gold and silver rings, pearls and precious stones, as well as about their legs and in their ears, where they have silver and gold plates set round with precious stones. The wives of the *Negroes*, of the *Moncoris*, and the other *Malabars*,

are not permitted to use these ornaments. They also wear bracelets from their wrists up to their elbows, some of gold and silver, others of glass and tortoise-shell curiously engraven and enamell'd. These women are generally handsome and well-featured, some of them being not inferior in complexion to the *Portuguese* or the brown *Dutch* women. They marry very early, sometimes before they are quite 7 or 8 years old; for the boys and girls are permitted to sport together till they come to be in good earnest; but they take great care not to mix themselves with another sect. The men are allow'd to marry twice, tho' no more than one woman at a time. Be they never so poor, they will be sure to keep their rank, and to oblige such as meet them to pass by with making a bow, in token of their reverence. Those among the *Brabmans* who have lifted themselves among the *Negroes*, are in the same degree with them, except that they observe more austerity. The *Brabmans* are in great esteem with their kings, who keep some of the chiefest always near their person, to advise with them in all matters of moment. Those of the first rank among the *Brabmans*, as well as other *Indian* persons of quality, have commonly a numerous attendance; some of whom carry their umbrellas, others a silver basin full of *Betel*; others one full of water; some are carried in palankins or chairs.

The *Brabmans* have, under pretence of *Feast of the Brabmans*, introduced a feast, which furnishes them with a certain opportunity of being revenged of their enemies. It is a custom among the *Malabar* kings once every year, viz. at the time of the new-moon in *October*, to remember the blessings they suppose they have received from their Idols, by a solemn sacrifice, which is perform'd by setting certain houses on fire, such as are appointed by the *Brabmans*: This is commonly perform'd in the night time, without the least fore-warning given, so that sometimes not only the house, but also the inhabitants, with all their goods are burnt, no body daring to quench the flame. This they call *The sacrifice of fire and blood*.

There live many of the *Banjans* of *Cam- Several baya* in *Malabar*; these have also *Brabmans*, sorts of *Brabmans*, who are in great esteem among them; the *Brabmans* of *Malabar* are allow'd to frequent their temples. The *Banjans* themselves lead as austere a life as their *Brabmans*, but they are of an inferior degree, nor can they intermarry with them. In the kingdom of *Calicut* is a certain sort of *Brabmans*, who despise all images, and live in chastity after the 20 or 25<sup>th</sup> year of age. They

Divers sorts of inhabitants.

The Nayar.

1662. They are so averse to the female sex, that as often as they stir abroad, some body cries out aloud before them *Poo, Poo, i. e.* keep back, keep back, to let the women know they must keep out of sight. These don't wear the cord twisted of cotton thread, neither do they abstain (like the other *Brabmans*) from flesh, fish or wine; but to preserve their chastity eat daily a certain quantity of the pulp of the fruit *Karusa*, being taught by experience, that the same has a quality of checking the venereal appetite. Neither do they bury their dead bodies like the other *Brabmans*; some strew themselves all over with ashes, and are enclosed day and night in iron cages, which are so small, that they can scarce sit upright in them. Others burn or scald certain parts of their bodies, whereby they suppose to gain the Affections of the common people. Thus far of the *Brabmans*.

Several sorts of inhabitants.

For the rest it is to be observed, that the inhabitants of the coast of *Malabar* may be divided into foreigners and natives; the foreigners are properly those call'd commonly *Malabars*, being a colony of *Arabians*, who have fix'd their habitations there many ages ago, near the sea-side chiefly. The natives are pagans, divided into *Brabmans* or *Braments*, *Bramos* or *Bramen*; into the *Nairas* or *Nayros*, and into the common people call'd *Moncoris* or *Pouleas*, and otherwise *Parvas*. They are also divided into five several degrees; the first are the royal families, among which the house of *Gondormo* is one of the most illustrious; the second is the sect of the *Brabmans*, or of the priests. The third is the military order or nobles, call'd the *Nayros*; the fourth comprehends the merchants, and the fifth the *Parvas* or fishermen.

The Nayros.

The *Nayros*, as I told you, are descended of noble families, and brought up to the war. They appear with a shield on their left-arm, which they carry aloft, and with a naked sword in the right-hand. They are very haughty, and at first pretended to dispute the rank with the *Portuguese*, which occasion'd no small disturbance, 'till the difference was agreed to be decided by a single combat betwixt a *Portuguese* and a *Nayros*, in which the last being worsted, the *Nayros* ever since were forced to give way to the *Portuguese*; but all the other *Malabars* must give place to the *Nayros*. They are generally well proportion'd, tho' of a brown or olive colour; they take a singular pride in having long ears, which they perform by art; they bore holes thro' the ears of both boys and girls, which they fill up with palm-tree leaves roll'd together; these rolls they make bigger and bigger by degrees, 'till the holes are

1626. extended to the utmost reach the holes can bear, and hang down to their very breasts: This is accounted one of their chiefest pieces of gallantry, and they adorn them with gold, silver and jewels. Tho' the *Nayros* are from their infancy train'd up in arms, and are very bold and brave, they are nevertheless very civil and meek in their conversation, according to the custom of that country; notwithstanding which they are mightily addicted to robbing upon the high-way, and will kill the travellers unawares, unless they be well upon their guard. This is the reason why the mahometan *Malabars* dwelling in this country, whenever they are travelling from one place to another, take one of these *Nayros* along with them, who is their conductor for a certain piece of money, to the next place where they take another, and by this means may pass without any danger thro' a thousand of *Nayros*, tho' their conductor should be an old decrepit person, or only a boy. These *Nayros* are strict observers of the times, which are neglected by the common people, for they will not converse with any of the inferior orders, except the *Brabmans*; nay, if any of the vulgar fort happen only to touch a *Nayros*, as he passes by, he will make his servant that carries his meat after him, to throw it down upon the ground; nay, if they do enter their houses, or only touch the doors and walls, they will not eat there for fear of being defiled. However the *Nayros* are not altogether so nice in these points, as the *Brabmans*. For the rest, they are not much inclined to vice, sodomy and incest; nay, the boys and girls, tho' they converse together daily, and that without cloths, you shall seldom observe in them either in word or action, any thing that savours of uncleanness. The *Nayros* scarce ever laugh, and that not but upon extraordinary occasions; and if they see others laugh they will look downward. Those *Nayros* who are watching at the town gates, and serve for conductors to travellers, are the poorest of all, yet will they rather follow this employment than a trade, which they look upon below their quality. They apply themselves from their infancy to the use of arms, and frequently fight together with swords and targets, which renders them infinitely active at that sport. They are the best wrestlers in the world, and are very nimble on foot. They attack their enemies quite naked, their privities being only covered. Their arms are bows, arrows, javelins, swords and shields; these are very large, which they use with the utmost dexterity to cover their bodies. On the hilt of their swords they have small plates of metal, which

1662. which makes a noise when they are fighting, and serves to animate them. Since the Portuguese and Dutch have got footing there, they have also learn'd the use of fire-arms to that degree, that they will turn right and left, and give a volley of shot with the same order as the Europeans do.

Their marriage.

One *Nayros* is not allow'd more than one Wife at a time, but the women in this point have got the start of the men, they being permitted to have three husbands at once; except that a woman of the sect of the *Brabmans* that is married to a *Nyros* is not allow'd more than one. Each of these three husbands contribute their share towards the maintenance of this woman and her children, without the least contest or jealousy. As often as any of them comes to visit her, he leaves his arms at the door, a sign that neither of the other two must come in, for fear of disturbing the first. From hence the poorer sort reap this benefit, that they have the use of a wife, yet contribute only the third part towards the maintaining of the family; tho' on the other hand this carries along with it a great inconveniency concerning the inheritance of their children, which they recompense in some measure, by making the sister's children the heirs of their uncles. The *Nayros* employ the common people in the country and other drudgeries, but in their houses they make use of none but *Nayros* (or gentlemen) tho' very poor, who are willing to serve them for their bread. The vulgar sort are all clad after the same manner, being quite naked except that they have a small girdle round their waste, on which they hang a piece of callicoe, or perhaps of the bark of a tree, or a few leaves to cover their privities. The women wear a kind of vestment of callicoe, which reaches down to their knees, and have very long hair; whereas the men are obliged to cut their hair close, except one tuft which they keep on the crown of their head. All the *Malabars* have black teeth, occasion'd by the continual chewing of the leaves of *Betbel*: Black teeth are in great esteem among them, because those that don't chew *Betbel*, are considered here as of a mean extraction. The *Malabars* are said to be much addicted to sorcery, who are able to kill people as they pass by or at least throw them into a lingering distemper. They are extremely covetous, and will venture at any thing for a small gain. The women are generally unchaste, the young women about 17 or 18, being obliged by custom to dispose of their maidenheads, for no body cares to marry a maiden here, but such as have been best beloved, soonest meet with a husband. The *Malabars* have great store

1662. of great artillery, muskets and pikes; nay, their arms were in more esteem than those of the Portuguese, only they did not know the art of hardning their armour: They now make very good and strong gun-barrels and gun-powder. The children of the *Nayros* are from the seventh year of their age exercised in arms, and train'd up to the wars; but every one betakes himself to one peculiar kind of arms, it being their opinion, that they cannot excel in the use of all. They anoint the limbs of their young children every day with a certain oil, to make their joints pliable; for when they forced to fly, they put their greatest confidence in the agility of their bodies, and will in an instant turn back upon their enemies, and attack them in the rear; besides, that in their flight they throw their javelins backward with great dexterity, and as soon as they have thrown their darts, they know how to shelter themselves behind their shields.

Tho' the *Nayros* in general are very good soldiers, yet there is a certain kind among them call'd *Amokos*, who are esteemed above all the rest, being a company of stout, bold and desperate bravadoes. They oblige themselves by most direful imprecations against themselves and their families, calling heaven to witness, that they will revenge certain injuries done to their friends or patrons, which they certainly pursue with so much intrepidity, that they stop neither at fire nor sword, to take vengeance of the death of their master, but like mad men run upon the point of their enemies swords, which makes them be generally dreaded by all, and makes them to be in great esteem with their kings, who are accounted the more potent, the greater number they entertain of those *Amokos*; tho' this their fool-hardiness is chiefly attributed to the excessive use of the amfion. You see the streets of all the towns on the *Malabar* coast full of *Nayros*, with their arms always about them, tho' many of them dwell in the country, and a good number are kept near the king's person. Most persons of quality here maintain some of those they call *Janguys*. If a quarrel happens to arise betwixt a *Nayros* and another *Malabar*, the king allows the latter a guard of another *Nayros*, and as long as he stays with him, they dare not fight, the first aggressor being guilty of high-treason; for persons of the chiefest rank, if they will be admitted in the number of the *Nayros*, must have the king's peculiar leave for it, and are afterwards distinguish'd by a gold ring they wear on the right arm, or by a buffler's horn. The *Nayros* frequently hunt the tigers, some apply themselves to philosophy, but especially

es; nay, 1662.  
han those  
or know  
r: They  
gun-bar-  
en of the  
r of their  
'd up to  
s himself  
eing their  
the use  
of their  
a certain  
for when  
greatest  
r bodies,  
upon their  
rear; be-  
ow their  
exterity,  
eir darts,  
elves be-

are very *The Amo.*  
tain kind  
e esteem-  
npany of  
s. They  
inprecac-  
families,  
will re-  
ir friends  
y pursue  
hey stop  
engeance  
like mad  
enemies  
generally  
to be in  
o are ac-  
number  
his their  
o the ex-  
he streets  
st full of  
ut them,  
buntrey,  
e king's  
re main-  
ys. If a  
Nayros  
ows the  
ros, and  
dare not  
ulty of  
chiefest  
ne num-  
e king's  
ards di-  
wear on  
n. The  
s, some  
but ef-  
pecially





Gilliam's drawing. Goussier's sketch.

A Malagasy Man and Woman

1662. peci  
or a  
fort  
very  
nake  
ly a  
roun  
their  
their  
bove  
red f  
a foc  
The  
out o  
sting  
have  
in a p  
shiel  
fwo  
a jav  
wom  
as the  
distr  
girls.  
the l  
other  
one a  
shoul  
she in  
mann  
of an  
ed w  
again  
blood  
inferi  
ous,  
any t  
when  
to the  
for if  
he wo

The com-  
mon peo-  
ple of Ma-  
labar.

The  
Monco  
Pario  
they a  
Nayre  
above  
of diff  
the fe  
these  
coast  
rowin  
Their  
mann  
them  
out t  
gion,  
bands  
For i  
comm  
daug  
vas,  
are o  
V



1662. pecially astronomy, but never to traffick or any handicraft trade. They eat all sorts of meat, except cows flesh, and are very fond of pork. They go above half naked, with bare heads and feet, having only a large piece of white callicoe wrapt round their middle, which reaches down to their knees, and is drawn thro' betwixt their thighs, and tied together behind above their buttocks. They wear also a red silken scarf, with a fringe of about half a foot long, being half gold and half silk. They let their hair grow very long, without ever cutting it, by which they are distinguish'd from the common people; they have a way of tying it very neatly together in a puff on the crown of their heads. Their shield they carry on the left arm, and their sword in the right hand; some have also a javelin, musket or pike. The *Nayros* women are clothed after the same manner as the men, so that there is not the least distinction to be seen betwixt boys and the girls, till the breasts begin to appear in the last. They are forbid to marry any other person but of the same rank, and but one at a time; and in case a *Nayros* woman should marry another, except a *Nayros*, she instantly forfeits her head; in the same manner, if a *Nayros* should marry a woman of another tribe but a *Nayros*, he is punished with death. This they have provided against, because they would not have their blood mixt with strangers or those of an inferior rank, of which they are so cautious, that they will not as much as suffer any to approach them; for which reason, when they walk abroad, they cry out aloud to the common people, *Popoite*, keep back; for if any of these should touch a *Nayros*, he would certainly ruin him.

The common people of Malabar.

The common people of *Malabar* call'd *Moncois* or *Poulias*, or otherwise *Parvas* or *Parivas*, are a wretched sort of slaves; they are blacker and much uglier than the *Nayros*, neither must their ears hang down above three inches at most. They are again of different kinds, for those inhabiting near the sea-shore, are properly call'd *Moncois*; these are all fishermen, and all along the coast of *Malabar* are employed at sea in rowing and otherwise for certain wages. Their wives and daughters perform all manner of drudgery by land, and expose themselves for money to the first man, without the least distinction of quality or religion, without the least fear from their husbands, who are well enough pleas'd at it. For it is to be known, that there are no common strumpets here, but the wives and daughters of these *Moncois*, and of the *Tivas*, who are handicrafts men; for the rest are obliged to contain themselves within

Vol. II.

their own tribes. The common people are often put to a great nonplus when they happen to meet a *Nayros* at the corner of a street, when they are fain to stand aside till they are pass'd by. There is another kind among the vulgar sort, call'd by some *Tivas*, whose employment is to draw the liquor from the coco-trees: The rest are handicraft and husbandmen. But these intermarry with one another, notwithstanding there is some difference in their rank, for the husbandmen claim the first, and the *Tivas* or handicrafts men the second degree, the *Moncois* or fishermen are the last.

Those call'd *Parivas* or *Parvas* live in the villages near the sea side; some of these live near the coast, and in the isle of *Markar*, where, as well as near *Touletorin*, betwixt the cape *Comorin* and the isle of *Ceylon*, they live upon pearl fishing; they are a stubborn generation, more addicted to laziness than labour; they live chiefly upon pearl and oyster fishing, being the best divers in the world, unto which they are accustomed from their first infancy. Whilst the men are abroad at sea, the women and children are employ'd in gathering of pearl dust near the shore. They are a cowardly and deceitful sort of people, lying and deceit being so customary among them, as not to be look'd upon as a sin. They are great admirers of the ecclesiastical laws, it being a strict custom among them, not to punish a crime, if the transgressor confesses it and promises amendment. The *Parvas* were formerly all *Pagans*, but being sorely oppress'd by the *Mahometans*, they rebell'd against them, and with the assistance of the *Portuguese*, shook off the yoke, which proved the opportunity of their conversion to the *Romish* religion.

For finding themselves daily more and more oppress'd, by the advice of one *John de Cruis* (a native of *Malabar*) they sent their deputies to *Cochin*, to crave assistance against the mahometans, offering at the same time to be baptized. The *Portuguese* receiv'd these *Pantagitini* (being then their magistrates) very courteously promising them immediate succours against their enemies, which had so powerful an influence upon these deputies, that to shew their gratitude, they receiv'd baptism immediately, and took upon them the surname of *De Cruis*, which name is retain'd by many of the *Parvas* to this day. After the *Parvas* had rid their hands of the *Moors*, with the assistance of the *Portuguese*, and got the pearl fishery again into their hands, many thousands of them, at divers times and places, embraced the christian faith; and under the viceroyship of *Stephen Gamma* the *Portuguese*, viz. about 1500, above

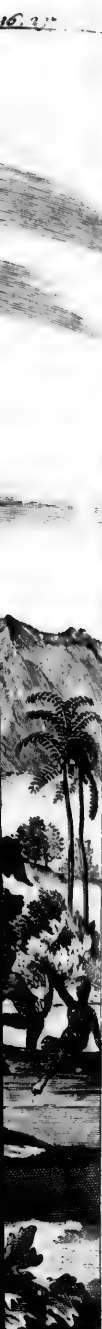
P p p

20000

1662.

The Parvas.

How they were converted to the Roman faith.



1662. 20000 *Parvas* received baptism; but for want of good ministers, who understood the *Malabar* tongue (few of the *Portuguese* clergy being willing to settle here) they soon return'd to their pagan superstitions, having scarce any thing left among them but the name of christians, till *Francis Xavierius* (who arrived in the *Indies* 1540, and went by the name of the great and holy father) being inform'd by *Michael Vas* of the miserable condition of the *Parvas*, resolv'd to go thither from *Goa*, to re-establish the decay'd state of christianity among the *Parvas*. Accordingly he set out from *Goa* (after a stay of five months there) in the beginning of *October* 1543, in company of *Francis Manfilla*, who was come along with him out of *Portugal*, and two novices of the college of *Goa*, who understood the *Malabar* tongue. After his arrival at the east end of that coast, near the cape *Comorin*, finding that his young interpreters stood him but in little stead, he found out this expedient; he call'd together such of the natives, as he knew to be well versed in the *Portuguese* tongue; among those he chose certain persons, who join'd with those two he had brought along with him from *Goa*, translated the chief articles of the christian faith, the ten commandments, with a short explication, a general confession of faith, and some other such like necessary matters into the *Malabar* tongue. Then he began to preach to them according to the capacity of his auditors, explaining to them the chief duties of a christian, the glory of heaven, and the punishment of hell, with the reason, why some deserve heaven, and the other hell. He explain'd afterwards to them the sign of the cross, and began to unfold to them the mystery of the holy trinity, of which they had been quite ignorant before, and made such a progress among them, that whereas at his coming thither he found not above 2500 demichristians, at his going away he left near 40000 good christians behind him. *Xaverius* himself in his letter dated the 12<sup>th</sup> of *Jan.* 1554, speaks of the vast increase of the christians in those parts, saying thus:

King, you may guess what a great number of these poor people were reduced back to the flock of Christ from thence, that my arms and hands used to be tired with baptizing, sometimes whole villages at a time. My strength and voice have often failed me, by reason of the frequent repetitions of the articles of faith.

The *Romanists* tell us, that besides these, *Xaverius* converted ten towns betwixt *Bringen* and *Permanel* (and six or seven more near *Bengala* and *Ramanankoris*.) This they say he performed by his miracles, by healing the sick, casting out demons, and rais-

ing the dead from their graves. He raised 1662. a certain young man, the son of a poor widow, who was choak'd in the mud, from the dead. The same he did to another young man, the son of a person of quality in the city of *Puvicale*, and to a young maid. Another woman in labour, being reduced to the last gasp, he deliver'd without the least pain, as soon as she had received baptism. By his miracles he converted a whole village at once, near *Toutekorin*; so that both christians and pagans used to have their last recourse to him in their sicknesses, many of which he restored by reading the gospel over them; as may be seen more at large in the life of *Xaverius*, of *John de Lucenas*, and other *Roman* authors.

But whatever success *Xaverius* had in converting the *Parvas* and others to the christian religion, certain it is, that he brought no more than one *Brahman* over to the *Romish* faith, tho' he bestow'd much time and pains in speaking to them. And among the *Parvas* themselves are many to this day, who adhere so deeply to their pagan superstitions, that they make but little account of christianity. However, those that have ever since persevered in the *Romish* faith, are from time to time furnish'd with and instructed by the *Portuguese* priests; who ever since 1685, when we made ourselves masters of *Toutekorin*, lived about a league or two from the town in the country, whither they carry their children to be baptized. They are very obstinate in their religion, which extends no farther than the knowledge of the christian faith, our father, the ten commandments and an *Ave Mary*, but they follow blind-fold the directions of the *Portuguese* priests, carry *Pater Nosters* and a rosary constantly about them, and use the sign of the cross on their foreheads and breasts, like as the *Roman* catholics do. The *Dutch* ministers of the protestant religion, have several times attempted to introduce the reformation into the churches of the *Parvas*, both before and since we were masters of *Toutekorin*, but all in vain; for tho' we caused the word of God to be preached in the *Portuguese* tongue, the *Parvas* durst not venture to come to church for fear of the *Roman* priests living among them. These *Parvas* declared to *Xaverius* and *Michael Jassus*, in those days, that whilst they were yet involv'd in darkness of paganism, the devil used to appear to them in most frightful shapes, so that they durst not stir abroad at night, or go a fishing, unless in great companies. He us'd to enter into the bodies of the living, and declared he would not leave them, till they had erected

temples

1662. *Return to paganism.*

*Are reconciled to the church by Xaverius.*

1662. temp  
brace  
ver  
vesti  
ing v  
ig c  
lgion  
and t  
the if  
Al  
merch  
come  
lie, t  
their f  
maint  
out th  
a goi  
some  
by onc  
ransac  
passeng  
captain  
for th  
the cre  
credibil  
tho' th  
authori  
or quan  
mong v  
Malaba  
number  
always  
then th  
the boo  
out any  
friends  
good b  
knowin  
the merc  
habits;  
ver to b  
chants  
bonnet  
heads, f  
about it  
Mundu  
with go  
shave t  
wear a  
inches b  
kind of  
They co  
handker  
and hide  
shave th  
long, li  
rest of t  
and wear  
broider's  
they go  
a silk ve  
the merc  
silver ha

1662.

temples for him. But since they had embraced the christian religion, the devil never had appear'd either in their houses or vessels, tho' they freely went abroad a fishing without any company. *Xaverius* having exhorted them to persevere in their religion, set out from thence to *Makarara* and the adjacent places, and so further to the isle of *Ceylon*.

The Mahometan Malabars.

All the *Mahometan Malabars* are either merchants or pirates; if any foreigners come into the harbours where these pirates lie, they endeavour to engage them into their service; which if they accept of, they maintain them and their families throughout the whole winter; when they are just a going to engage an enemy, they take some *Betel*, by which they swear to stand by one another; if they take a prize, they ranfack the ship, and all the mariners and passengers before they come ashore; the captain and other officers take the best part for themselves, the rest is divided among the crew. These poor wretches endure incredible fatigues and miseries at sea, and tho' they have no head that has any legal authority over them, they seldom fall out or quarrel, a thing scarce to be believ'd among us. Several of the richer sort of the *Malabars* equip certain vessels, with a good number of soldiers and galley slaves, which always keep at sea, except that now and then the captain comes ashore to dispose of the booty, which the merchants buy without any regard, whether they belong to friends or foes, provided they can have a good bargain; the *Mahometan Malabars* knowing no other preference but riches: the merchants are distinguish'd only by their habits; both these and the corsairs being never to be seen without arms; but the merchants wear their hair short, and have a bonnet of red scarlet cloth upon their heads, sometimes with a handkerchief rowl'd about it like a turbant, which they call *Mundu*, and are commonly embroider'd with gold and colour'd silk. They half shave their beard, but without whiskers, wear a silk or callicoe vest, reaching three inches below the middle, and under that a kind of drawers hanging down to the knees. They commonly carry a silk or callicoe handkerchief flourish'd, in which they tie and hide their purses. The corsairs never shave their heads, but wear their hair very long, like the women, which they like the rest of the *Indians*, tie together in a knot, and wear one of these flourish'd and embroider'd handkerchiefs over it; for the rest they go quite naked, except that they wear a silk vestment down to their knees; both the merchants and corsairs have knives with silver hasts, on which hang all sorts of toys,

such as tooth-picks and the like, all curiously wrought.

The corsairs shave their beards, but leave whiskers, which in time grow excessively, that so one may tie them together behind. These, as well as all the *Malabars* use no shoes. Their women are clad like the men, neither do they wear any other ornament upon their heads but their hair, but have pendants in their ears, and rings on their fingers and toes. They wear a slight callicoe coat, reaching only to the middle, and under it a silk or callicoe vestment, from the middle down to their knees; they walk bare-footed like the men. All the *Malabars* are of a middle size, and very hairy upon the breast and other parts of their bodies. The women are very well featured, but small of stature. Their men undergo incredible fatigues at sea, and tho' they are *Mahometans* they use the *Malabar* tongue, and pay allegiance and taxes to the several kings of the *Nayras*, under whom they live, which is commonly near the sea shore. Their priests never meddle with any thing except marriages, and what relates to their temples. They are clad in white, after the *Arabian* manner; besides which, they have a certain kind of religious men, call'd *Abedallen*, or ministers of God, who vow poverty, and beg in the country: You may see sometimes 30 or 40 of them together, tho' they travel not above two or three at a time, and sometimes one alone.

The country of *Malabar* was formerly under the subjection of one potent prince, *Sarama Perimal*, who at the persuasion of some *Arabian* merchants that traded thither, having embraced mahometism, became so great a zealot of that religion, that he resolv'd to leave his kingdom, and to undertake a pilgrimage to *Meccha* and *Medina*, to visit *Mahomet's* tomb: And having no children, divided before his departure the whole country, betwixt his chief favourites and courtiers, to wit, the country of *Cananor* to his Esquire; to his sword-bearer, who was his darling favourite, *Calicut*; to his scepter-bearer *Cochin*; and to another *Koulang*, unto which he annexed the title of kingdoms, and gave several other countries to others of his friends. Upon his sword-bearer, who had *Calicut* for his share, he bestowed the title of *Zamory* or *Zamorin*, or emperor, and to have a preeminency above the rest: For *Zamorin* signifies in the *Indian* tongue as much as an emperor, being otherwise express'd by the word *Tambarana*, i. e. God, which is the reason that all the other *Malabar* countries follow the religious ceremonies of those of *Calicut*, as being the chiefest kingdom of *Malabar*.

1662.

1652. *Malabar*. From hence it is, that the *Zamorin* claims the preheminance before all the other *Malabar* kings, he having alone the prerogative of coining. The two next in rank were the kings of *Koulang* and *Cannor*; besides which, many other petty princes on the coast of *Malabar* claim the title of kings, tho' they are not really so, nor enjoy the prerogative of coining. The *Zamorin*, or king of *Calicut* lost a considerable share of his lustre, after the coming of the *Portuguese* into those parts, with whose assistance the king of *Cochin* freed himself from all subjection formerly due to the kings of *Calicut*, and soon after arrived to that pitch of greatness, that they thought themselves not in any wise inferior to the *Zamorins*, and waged continual war against them. Nevertheless most of the petty *Malabar* kings, and the *Nayros* are vassals of the *Zamorin*, and never speak of him but with a great deal of reverence, except the king of *Cochin*; and the king of *Koulang* being the most remote of all, pays the *Zamorin* less respect than any of the rest: However, all the kings of *Malabar* are sovereigns in their own dominions. The *Malabar* kings never marry, but maintain a concubine of a noble family, who lives commonly in the same palace; if they happen to disagree, another is taken in her place, tho' they are so modest as seldom to change their bedfellows.

The sons born from these concubines are not regarded as king's children, neither do they succeed in their territories or estates, but are heirs only to their mothers, except what money the kings are pleased to bestow freely upon them, to make them live with the more lustre among other gentlemen: But the king's sisters sons inherit their dominions. These sisters don't marry no more than the kings, but are at liberty to chuse a gallant, such a one as they like best. If they have three or four sons, and two or three daughters, the eldest son succeeds the king his uncle, and the other brother after him. After their decease, the succession goes to the eldest son of the king's second sister, and to his brothers afterwards. After their decease, the sons of the other sisters are the next heirs to the crown, so that the succession descends from the brothers to their sisters sons. If it happens that the king's sisters bear no sons, the chief man of the kingdom elect a king who is next of kin, but for want of such a one, chuse whom they please. When the king's sisters are arrived to age of maturity, viz. to their 13 or 14 years, they pitch upon one of the nobility whom they like best; unto whom, after they have made him considerable presents, they send word

that he is chosen to get her maiden-head, and to get her with child. The young noble man accosts her the first time with a great deal of respect and ceremony, and after having tied a very fine jewel about her neck, he diverts himself in private for some days with her, and so returns home: If she proves with child, it is well, if not, she commonly chuses some *Brabman* or other to try his strength whether he can get her with child. When a *Malabar* king dies, the corps is burnt three days after. All his subjects, from the next successor to the meanest child, have themselves from head to foot, leaving no hair, except what is on the eye-brows and eye-lids. They are also obliged to abstain from the use of *Betel* for the space of 13 days, and if any one should be found to chew *Betel* during that time, they cut off his lips. During these 13 days they dare eat neither fish nor flesh, and the fishermen are forbidden to fish upon pain of death. Considerable alms are given to the poor out of the king's coffers, and the *Brabmans* are provided with victuals at the publick charge. After the expiration of these 13 days, every one is at liberty to eat what he pleases, except the new king, who is tied to the same rules for a whole year after; during which time, he must neither have the hair of his head or of his body cut, nor pare his nails: He is obliged to say certain prayers every morning, and must eat but once a day. Some time before dinner he bathes himself, which done, he must forbear to cast his eyes upon any body till after he has taken food. Towards the latter end of this mourning year, his next successor in the kingdom, the other princes of the royal blood, and other persons of the chiefest quality attend the new king, and pay their homage to him, in the presence of many thousands; at which time the new king declares his next successor, and the others each in his degree; which done, he confirms the lords there present in their respective places and offices. He that is declared the next successor to any new king, is oblig'd from that time not to appear at court as long as the king lives; but those princes who are to succeed him may continue there. Before the above-mentioned 13 days are expired, the new king has not the least authority in the kingdom, which they take for a general maxim here, to see whether any body else will lay claim to the succession: But, after the expiration of this time, the great men of the kingdom, and chief officers of state, engage the new king by a solemn oath, to maintain the laws made by his predecessor, to pay his debts, and to endeavour the recovery of the territories lost under

1662.

Barbari of the Malabar king.

A peculiar way of taking an oath.

und  
1662. he  
up  
ny  
whi  
set i  
strev  
of c  
turn  
man  
grea  
Duri  
dece  
vern  
who  
fury,  
or di  
be in  
so the  
dates  
to the  
males,  
esteem  
himself  
twisted  
Nayro  
of the  
vulgar  
or *Po*  
only ju  
all suc  
refuse  
certain  
affairs  
arises b  
strange  
makes  
meets,  
immed  
unless t  
a prese  
consequ  
decided  
ordinar  
or the  
crime b  
to the  
sons but  
case of  
when th  
lemn o  
oil, or  
iron; f  
swarm  
ing the  
the who  
hurt; b  
generall  
kings or  
punishm  
tain pla  
stakes l  
must no  
Vol



1662.

under the reigns of his predecessors. Whilst he takes the oath he lays his right hand upon an oil cask, in which are set up many lighted wicks, and with a drawn sword, which he holds in his left, touches a jewel set in gold within the cask. This done, they strew rice upon his head with a great deal of ceremony, and certain forms of prayers, turning their faces to the sun. In the same manner, all the princes of the blood, and other great men swear fealty to the new king. During the first 13 days after the king's decease, the sole administration of the government is lodged in the lord chancellor, who has also the management of the treasury, without whom the king cannot take or dispose of the publick money, unless it be in case of the greatest necessity. It is also the chancellor who puts the king's mandates in execution. The first in rank next to the king are those call'd by them *Kaimales*, then the *Brabmans*, who are in great esteem in those courts, the king of *Calicut* himself being of that sect, and wearing the twisted cord. After the *Brabmans* come the *Nayros*, or military order, the true off-spring of their ancient nobility; then come the vulgar or common people, call'd *Moukois*, or *Pontias*, or *Parvas*: The king is the only judge here, before whom are brought all such as have committed any crime, or refuse to pay their debts: In his absence certain great men of the court determine all affairs of any moment; but if a difference arises betwixt two or more *Moukois* or any strangers, he that thinks himself aggrieved, makes his complaint to the next *Nayros* he meets, who is obliged to do him justice immediately, without receiving any reward, unless the plaintiff will voluntarily give him a present: This holds in matters of small consequence, for all matters of moment are decided before the king in person. Their ordinary punishments are imprisonments, or the loss of a joint of a limb; if the crime be capital the malefactor is thrown to the elephants. They have no other prisons but what are in the royal palaces. In case of any difference betwixt two *Pagans*, when the truth is to be verified by a solemn oath, they put one hand into boiling oil, or else lay hold of a piece of red hot iron; sometimes they swim cross a river swarming with venomous creatures; it being their opinion, that if they have spoke the whole truth, they shall not receive any hurt; but the trial with the hot iron is most generally received. When the *Malabar* kings or their governors intend to inflict a punishment upon the inhabitants of a certain place, they surround it with wooden stakes like an enclosure, out of which they must not stir, neither may they buy or

A peculiar way of taking an oath.

sell, or have the least communication with others, till the same be removed again under pain of death. This is sometimes done also before the doors of private persons.

All the *Pagans* here, as well *Brabmans* as the *Nayros* and *Moukois*, burn the carcasses of their deceased friends; tho' this was more universally practis'd before the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* introduced and settled the christian religion here. They take peculiar care to provide in their life-time as much fine scented wood and other precious drugs as they think requisite for the burning of their bodies to ashes, which is afterwards divided among their relations and friends, who preserve them, and at their festivals mix them with water, and paint their faces with them. When a *Brabman* happens to die, his widow is obliged, as a demonstration of her affection towards her deceased husband, to burn herself; this is commonly done under the noise of several musical instruments, to suppress the doleful outcries of the dying person, and in the presence of their next kindred. However they may excuse themselves as to this point if they please, but then they are branded with infamy, their hair is cut off close, which they must not let grow to any length again; they are excluded from the society of other women, nor are allow'd to marry again. Notwithstanding which, many chuse rather to dispense with these disadvantages than to burn themselves. The wives of the *Nayros* are not obliged to this custom, tho' there are not wanting instances, that they have thrown themselves into the flames which consum'd their husband's carcass; the men are not engaged to mourn for their wives, except that they are forbidden to marry again.

The marriages of the richer and better sort are celebrated here with a great deal of solemnity. The first thing they do after matters are agreed betwixt them, is to repair to the *Pagode* or temple, where the priests perform certain ceremonies; after this, the friends and relations of the new married couple, both men and women, lead the bride for 15 days consecutively to the bridegroom's house, where they are entertain'd at his charge; most of the women singing and playing upon flutes, small drums, and other musical instruments; the bride and bridegroom are placed together very richly attir'd, especially with jewels, to such an excess, that they have been computed to amount sometimes to 200000 crowns. The room is hung with fine silk hangings interwoven with gold; and among other things, a plate with *Bebel* offer'd to every one there present; nay, even to those that are strangers; towards

1662.

Their funeral.

Their marriages.

1662. the evening the women reconduct the bride to her house. At the expiration of the 15 days, the bride and bridegroom are mounted on an elephant richly accoutred, so as to face one another; the elephant is led by a *Nayros*, and surrounded by the friends and relations on foot; thus they are conducted thro' the whole city, and are sure always to stop at the doors of any of their nearest kinfolks, relations or particular friends, who present them with *Betel*, fruits and sweet meats, and anoint the head of the elephant with sweet scented waters; they are very careful not to miss any of their friends houses, for if any such thing should happen, they would look upon it as a signal affront. When they come to the *Pagode* they dismount, and after they have tarried there for some time, return to the bride's house, where the marriage is consummated, each of the guests being obliged to present the *Nayros* that led the elephant with a coco nut.

They begin their new year in *September*, but have no fix'd day, which they regulate according to the decision of the astrologers and conjurers, who pretend to find out by their art the very hour which is likely to be the most fortunate for the beginning of the year. All those that are above 15 years of age cover their faces that day, for fear of casting their eyes upon any thing; thus they are led by children to the temple, where uncovering themselves, they fix their eyes upon what object they find directly before them; if this happen to be an idol (which their temples are full of) they have a peculiar veneration for it, they look upon it as a good omen that the next year will prove prosperous to them.

*Their custom.* All over *Malabar* they use a peculiar language call'd by them *Malkama*. Paper they have none, but instead of it write upon the leaves of the wild coco-trees, with an iron pencil or pen; which contain not only their religious ceremonies, but likewise the whole series of their most ancient histories. These leaves they cut all in the same shape of the breadth of two inches, and two hands length; of these they lay together as many as they think fit, and put a small stick thro' them on the top; which done, they fasten the stick on both ends to the leaves with a pack-thread, which they loosen as often as they have occasion to peruse them. Each of these leaves is call'd *Ola* by the *Malabars*. They exceed all the *European* writers in swiftness, which they perform with that dexterity, as to turn their faces frequently from the leaves, and to entertain others with talking whilst they are writing. The *Malabar* tongue is very

1662. difficult to be learn'd, by reason of its multitude of words, one and the same thing being express'd by different terms; nay, each day throughout the year is distinguish'd by a peculiar name. Several *Portuguese* Jesuits have attempted to give us an insight into the *Malabar* tongue, and among the rest father *Gaspar Aquilar*. They have their peculiar letters, which are very ancient, and resembling the *Syriack* characters.

The inhabitants of *Malabar*, as we told you before, are either natives, or descended from foreigners; the last of which being first come thither out of *Arabia*, are *Mahometans*, as the natives are *Pagans*. Some are of opinion, that all the kings of *Malabar* follow one and the same religion, but that their subjects are divided into 18 several sects; but, as far as ever I could learn by the most exact enquiry I was able to make, all the natives of *Malabar*, as well *Brabmans* as *Nayros* and *Moukois*, perform their religious worship in the same manner; for they adore their idols, and the sun, as they rise in the morning. In their temples you see a golden cow, or some other image, unto which they pay their devotions; which is the reason that neither the *Brabmans*, *Nayros* nor *Moukois* will kill this beast, but pay such reverence to it, that they paint the walls of their houses with its dung mix'd with water; thus, when the king of *Calicut* is to bathe himself, fifteen marks with cow-dung in their silver basons, plaister the rooms with it thro' which he is to pass twice aday. Their chief God they call *Parabramma*, with three sons near him, in remembrance of which the *Brabmans* wear a cord twisted of three threads on their bare skin. They not only worship man, but, as I told you, the beasts also, and erected temples for them, exceeding in magnificence those of the ancient *Romans*. There is one temple dedicated to the ape, the gallery of which is supported by 700 marble columns. Besides the cow they pay likewise a godly veneration to the elephant, it being their opinion, that the souls of men transmigrate into those beasts. They have many books, which contain an account of their religious ceremonies, much resembling the ancient *Greek* and *Roman* fables. The priests and *Brabmans* keep these books from the sight of the vulgar, these being their oracles, unto which they have recourse for their prophecies, to blind these poor wretches, as has been confess'd by some converted *Brabmans*. They make however much more account of religion than the *Nayros*; for they daily provide (at the king's charge) a considerable quantity of boil'd rice in their temples.

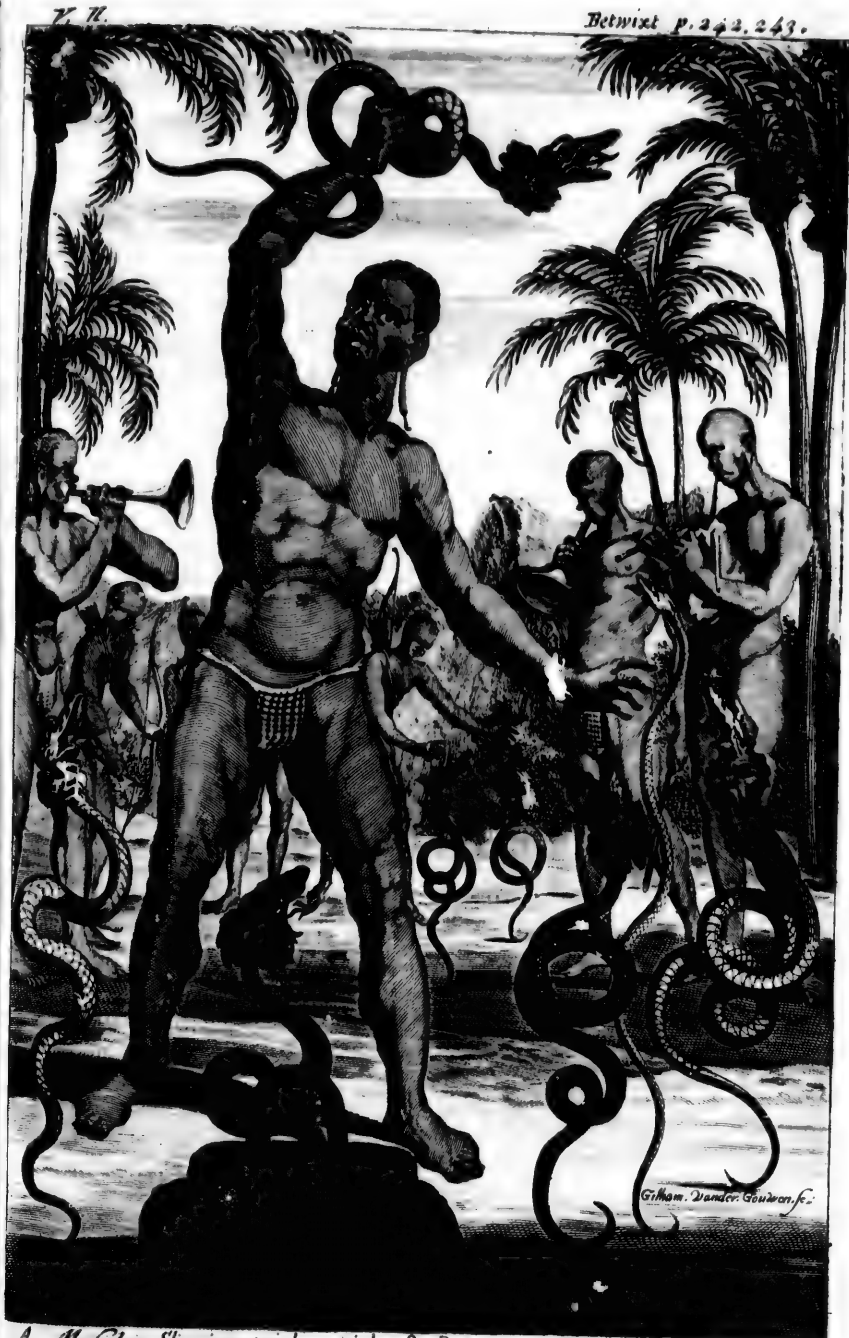
A Malabar



its mul- 1662.  
e thing  
; nay,  
distin-  
al Por-  
ve us an  
and a-  
They  
re very  
ck cha-

we told  
descend-  
which be-  
bia, are  
Pagans.  
kings of  
eligion,  
into 18  
I could  
was able  
as well  
perform  
manner;  
fun, as  
temples  
other i-  
r devo-  
ther the  
kill this  
it, that  
es with  
hen the  
fifteen  
bafons,  
hich he  
ef God  
ons near  
e Brab-  
threads  
ly wor-  
e beasts  
exceed-  
ancient  
ated to  
ported  
the cow  
tion to  
n, that  
o those  
which  
us cere-  
nt Greek  
d Brab-  
ight of  
s, unto  
prophe-  
as has  
Brab-  
n more  
s; for  
arge) a  
in their  
temples,

*Their reli-  
gious man-  
ship.*



A Malabar Shewing tricks with Serpents.

temp  
poor,  
ask  
ignom  
tinual  
and th  
bells,  
other  
the *M*  
are na  
above  
becaus  
their  
of the  
with  
once  
mutter  
are di  
treys,  
days,  
deal of  
for the  
two or  
is that  
*ros* co  
king, w  
dow,  
*Betbel*  
among  
jects th

The  
*ros*, pay  
which t  
God to  
You me  
carry se  
for their  
on the  
these se  
long, o  
bove ar  
and bul  
these *M*  
a certain  
pents se  
twist th  
ner, and  
fles, w  
with su  
another  
the spec

*The Mal-  
icans.*

On t  
tains of  
the chri  
nation  
pretty  
from *M*  
the defe  
*Curtius*,  
these m  
tion'd  
tion of  
having

1662. temples, which is distributed among the poor, or given to any body else that will ask for it, this being not look'd upon as ignominious among them. They keep continually burning lamps in their temples, and their prophets are almost cover'd with bells, which when they dance and make other awkward postures make a great noise; the *Monkoi* have their own temples, which are natively kept; they don't frequent them above once a month, viz. at the new moon, because they can spare no more time from their daily labour: At the entrance, each of them is presented with some ashes mix'd with water. The *Nayros* go commonly once a day to their temples, where each mutters out a short prayer; these temples are disposed throughout the whole country, and are most frequented at certain days, when they repair thither with a great deal of devotion; some for 20 or 30 leagues, for they have their appointed feasts, but two or three before all the rest. The chiefest is that of the new-years day, when the *Nayros* come to pay their reverence to the king, who receives them standing at a window, and throws a certain quantity of *Betel* to each, and some gold and silver among them, as well as the rest of his subjects that appear there.

The *Malabar* kings, *Brabmans* and *Nayros*, pay likewise their devotions to serpents, which they consider as evil spirits made by God to torment mankind for their sins. You meet here with certain vagabonds who carry serpents in a basket, with some bran for their food, hanging on a stick, carried on the shoulders of two fellows; some of these serpents are six, seven or nine foot long, of a grass green colour, and not above an inch thick; some are very large and bulky, with grey spots; so soon as these *Malabar* vagabonds begin to play upon a certain instrument like a bagpipe, the serpents set themselves upright upon their tails, twist themselves in a most surprizing manner, and soon after raise their fins or bristles, which are near the head, and fall on with such fury, as if they would tear one another to pieces, to the no small terror of the spectators.

The Mal-  
leens.

On the tops of the high rocky mountains of *Malabar* (on the foot of which live the christians of *St. Thomas*) dwells a certain nation call'd the *Malleens*, they have a pretty good tillage about 13 or 14 leagues from *Madura* call'd *Priata*. According to the description given us by *Plutarch* and *Curtius*, and the resemblance of their names, these may not unlikely be the same mention'd by them as the most warlike nation of all the *Indians*, *Alexander* the great having receiv'd a mortal wound as he was

1662. attacking one of their cities. Now adays they don't inhabit any cities, towns or villages, but only certain enclosures in the valleys betwixt the rocks; their houses are built of canes very low, and plaister'd up with loom or clay. Some of them live in the woods, these make their houses of wood, which they remove from tree to tree, to secure themselves against the elephants and tygers. The first they catch in holes cover'd with the branches of trees, with some earth on the top; they also cultivate the ground, but in a very slender manner, tho' their valleys would be very fruitful if they were duly manag'd. They have but one wife at a time, who goes abroad a hunting with them, or wherever they go, whereas the *Pagan Malabars* marry generally several women. They chiefly differ from the other *Malabars* in their complexion, are just and honest, good natur'd, charitable, without deceit; for the rest, courageous, ingenious and cunning; they pretend to converse with the devils, only out of curiosity to know the event of things; the custom of the other *Malabars* and *Indians*, who hurt others by their forceries, being unknown to them. They pay a great deal of deference to the sepulchres of their ancestors, and if they happen to be defiled, they look upon it to be an ill omen. Upon their festivals they wear a long gown, with a turbant, as the *Malometans* do; but at other times they go half naked, like as the other *Malabars* do. They have holes in their ears and noses, in which they hang gold rings and jewels; a custom common also to the *Pagan Malabar* women, who look upon this as their chief ornament, especially to wear such things in one of their nostrils. At their feasts and festivals, the maidens play upon rush-pipes and small flutes and drums; theft is a thing unknown among the *Malabars*, every one living in his house in a profound security, with open doors; sometimes the inhabitants of a whole enclosure transfer their habitations to another. Part of the *Malabars* acknowledge the king of *Turbula*, part the king of *Pugnati Perimal* for their superiors, unto whom they pay some yearly tribute, yet with the entire preservation of their liberty, they being govern'd by their own laws, under captains or judges of their nation, call'd by them *Arley*, each of them has commonly 5000 or 6000 under his district; besides which, each enclosure is govern'd by its own judge, call'd *Pandera*, unto whom they pay strict obedience.

Before 1599, when they began first to be instructed in the *Romish* religion, by the assiduity of the then archbishop of *Goa*, they were all pagans, but since that time, a good

1662. a good number of them have embraced christianity; eight of their best men, among whom were three *Pandaras*, with their whole families, first received baptism, who being follow'd by many others, a church dedicated to St. Michael was built in the village of *Priata*. Before their conversion they had no temples erected in honour of their idols, neither did they sacrifice with feasting, dancing and such like ceremonies, but each family had its domestick god, unto whom they paid their devotions. They are much more esteem'd among the *Malabars*, than their common people, neither are they look'd upon as unclean by them, no more than the christians of *St. Thomas*, if they happen to touch a *Nayros*; they keep scarce any commerce with the neighbouring nations, even not with the *Thomists* themselves, who live at the foot of the same mountains. Their weapons are the same as the rest of the *Malabars* use, viz. a bow and arrows pointed with a broad iron. They use also scimeters or hangers, and a peculiar sort of fire arms, such as are no where else to be seen among the *Malabars*. On the foot of the mountain inhabited by the *Malabars* call'd *Karakara*, bordering upon the kingdom of *Karanarata*, stands a church belonging to these *Thomists* or christians of *St. Thomas*, dedicated to *St. Austin*, because the inhabitants owe their conversion to certain fryers of that order.

Products  
of Mala-  
bar.

Coco-tree.

*Malabar*, as I told you before, is a country abounding in divers sorts of fruits, such as the *Indies* commonly afford, of the choicest of which we will give you a short description here.

All along the sea-shore of *Malabar*, and the rivers near the sea-side, the *Indian* palm or coco-tree, grows in sandy and brackish grounds; the *Malabars* call it *Tenga*, the *Brabmans* *Mado*, and in the *Malabar* tongue it is call'd *Kalappa*. Its trunk, which is of an ash colour, rises sometimes to the height of 95 feet; such I have several times measured my self near the city of *Koulang*; it has commonly 16 inches diameter, tho' sometimes it is so thick, as scarce to be grasped by a man; and is of the same thickness from the bottom to the top; the wood is spongy, and the pith as white as paper. However the trunk does not grow up strait, but is jointed, without any branches, but only on the top, where commonly sprout forth 16 or 18, and in a very large tree sometimes 28, which bear green large leaves like reeds, being about a finger's length broad, and about two foot long. The root of this tree is very small in proportion of its bigness, and does not reach deep under ground, but creeps just under its surface, so that it seems next to a mira-

cle, how these high trees are able to withstand the fury of the wind. The fruit, call'd commonly coco-nuts, after the *Portuguese*, who call them *Cogno* and *Cocoe*, grow at the ends of the branches, about 6, 8, or 10 in a bunch; a bunch weighing some times from 60 to 100 pounds weight; each ripe nut exceeds the bigness of a lusty man's head, being of a triangular figure, and cover'd with a double peel; the first is an inch thick, consisting of many threads, extending length-wise round the fruit; the outside is of an ash colour, but inwardly inclining to red; the next peel is hard and brown, which contains the peel. Before they are ripe, they are of a pale yellow colour, and afterwards turn dark green, having at one end a bush of small leaves, resembling our turnep leaves. The pith is white, inclining to yellow, about an inch thick, and to the second peel, the remaining hollowness being fill'd with liquor, and containing according to the bigness of the unripe nut, a pint of liquor, which in the ripe one diminishes by degrees, and encreases the bulk of the peel. This liquor is good to drink, the pith is sweet, and of no ungrateful taste, only a little flat. The blossom, which is not unlike that of the chestnuts, appears at the ends of the branches which produce the fruit, which ripens in three months time. The pith dried, may be kept and transported like chestnuts; if it be powder'd and mixt with sugar and cinnamon, it tastes very well, augments the seed, and is a strong provocative. When the *Nayros* are to gather the nuts, they climb with most wonderful nimbleness to the tops of these high trees, where they cut off as many branches as are ripe, and let them fall down upon the ground. Besides the fruit, this tree affords also a certain liquor, call'd by them *Sury*, and by the *Europeans* palm-wine: When they are to gather this liquor, they only cut off one of its branches, from whence issues the liquor, which falls into a vessel of bamboe, hung under it for that purpose; if they draw too much liquor at a time, the branches turn brown, and the tree produces no more nuts. These trees being planted in a streight line, the *Nayros* lay sticks reaching from one to other, by which means they get to the branches, where they have fasten'd the vessel that receives the liquor. This liquor, whilst fresh is very good to drink, and will inebriate like wine; but if kept in the sun, turns to vinegar in an hours time. But tho' they take never so much care of it, what is gather'd about noon, will turn by night, taste sourish the next day, and turn quite to vinegar the day after that. The liquor

which

1662. which  
so str  
from  
great  
becom  
it, w  
the o  
Arack  
of th  
They  
has be  
which  
ments  
vineg  
a kind  
a sma  
contai  
to ma  
too m  
whiter  
chang  
a suffi  
and it  
comes  
where  
not li  
sugar,  
tle to  
out b  
If you  
you m  
with t  
(to sep  
must  
if you  
you n  
noon,  
about  
night,  
gather  
than t  
it is fr  
whey,  
raisins  
The t  
ber in  
the bu  
to cov  
make  
(some  
dark  
cups  
and fo  
hairy  
the r  
easily  
which  
island  
quant  
vessels  
the vo  
tree,  
the fa  
Vo

1662. which distils from the young trees, is not so strong and spirituous as that gather'd from the old ones, but the first affords a greater quantity. After this liquor has been kept 24 hours, they distil a spirit of it, with the addition of a small quantity of the oil of clove; this is by the *Indians* call'd *Arack*, and by some *Tula* or *Mype*. Out of this liquor they prepare vinegar, thus: They put the vessels in which the liquor has been gather'd, in lime 15 days, during which time it ferments, casting gross sediments to the bottom; the clear is very good vinegar. Out of the same sugar they make a kind of liquor call'd *Jagra*. They put a small quantity of lime in the vessel which contains the liquor, as much as is sufficient to make it turn red; for if you put in too much lime, the liquor turns whiter and whiter, but if you put too little, it does not change its colour. The liquor thus mix'd with a sufficient quantity of lime, must be boil'd and stirr'd continually with a spoon, till it comes to the consistency of red sugar; where it is to be observed, that if there be not lime enough added, it will produce no sugar, but if too much, part of it will settle to the bottom, which must be taken out before you can boil it into a sugar. If you intend to make white sugar or *Jagra*, you must take care to pour the liquor mix'd with the lime out of one pot into another (to separate the superfluous lime) which you must repeat three times; as for instance, if your liquor be gather'd in the morning, you must pour it into another vessel by noon, and repeat the same a second time about two a clock, and a third time before night, and then boil it. What liquor is gather'd in the night-time keeps longer than that gather'd in the day-time. Whilst it is fresh, its taste is not much unlike our whey, unto which the inhabitants add some raisins, and make it taste like *Spanish* wine. The trunk of the coco-tree is used for timber in the building of houses and ships, the branches and leaves to write upon and to cover houses with, as also by the basket-makers. Out of the hard shell of the nuts (some of which are of a pale, others of a dark brown colour) they make drinking cups and other vessels, which they polish, and sometimes are edg'd with silver. The hairy substance, call'd *Kayer*, is used by the rope-makers; these ropes don't rot easily: They also make matches of them, which burn very fiercely. In the *Maldiv* islands (where these trees are found in vast quantities) they sometimes equip whole vessels out of the coco-trees; the body of the vessels being made of the trunk of a tree, without any nails or other iron-work; the sail and ropes of the hairy substance, the

VOL. II.

provisions consisting of the liquor and kernels of the coco-nuts, their drinking and other vessels being made of the shell, and their hammocks, quilts and other implements of the leaves. In short, this tree furnishes the *Indians* upon occasion, with all that is necessary for their subsistence, being very fruitful in marshy and low grounds, but bears not so great a quantity of fruit, neither so big in the mountainous countries. The coco-tree is in its prime from the 25<sup>th</sup> to the 30<sup>th</sup> year, and affords the most fruit and liquor; from the time it begins to bear, the ripe fruits fall off, and others grow continually in their stead, but when it begins to grow old, the fruit grows lesser and lesser. This tree will continue till it is 100 years old; when the small branches and leaves begin to turn yellow, it is an infallible sign of its decay. It is produced out of the kernel of the coco-nut; these the *Indians* put into the ground till they begin to sprout, then they make as many holes as they intend to plant trees, and of such a depth, that the tops of the leaves don't reach beyond the surface of the ground; then they throw a handful or two of sand (unless it be in sandy ground) and half a handful of salt in each hole, upon which they put the kernel, which they cover with the same ground they had taken out of the hole before, and every other day water them, till they are sure the nuts have taken root. They plant them with the point downwards, out of the opposite part of which at first shoot forth two or three broad leaves, after which comes the right leaves, and soon after the small sprouts, which fall off as new ones succeed, till the tree comes to its full growth. The young tree commonly begins to bear in the fifth year after its planting; great care is taken that the horse-flies don't spoil the young trees. This is a kind of worm not unlike our hornets, with two sharp horns, but not so big; this worm gets to the pith of the tree, which he consumes till the tree dies, unless he be taken out in time, at which the *Malabars* are very dextrous, and then the tree will recover. It has been observed that this tree in the third year after its planting, has its branches in their perfection, and from that time the branches begin to fall off. Those branches are at that time about five or six yards long, tho' the stem on which they grow is not above two foot high, and about a foot in circumference. Every month you see commonly a new branch come forth, and then the old ones fall off, but in the summer and dry seasons they fall off more frequently than in rainy weather; these branches come to their full growth in

R r r

three



1662. three months. I caused above 4000 coco-trees to be planted near *Koiland*, but most of them came to nothing, being not carefully look'd after by my successors. There are divers kinds of this tree, which are distinguish'd by the fruit, but especially by the watery substance found within the shells of the nuts.

*Malabar* produces prodigious quantities of wild cinnamon trees, but the cinnamon is neither in smell nor in goodness comparable to that which grows in the isle of *Ceylon*; this island, and that of *Floris* being the only ones where the true cinnamon grows. The *Portuguese* call this wild cinnamon *Canella de Mato*, i. e. *Wood-Cinamon*, the *Malabars* *Larva* or *Babona*, as also *Kaunema*, i. e. *Sweet-Wood*, from the word *Kau*, which in their language signifies wood, and *Nema* i. e. sweet, the *Malayans* *Kais Manis*, the *Zingalese* or inhabitants of *Ceylon* *Kurudo* or *Kurundo*, and the *Arabians* *Querfaa* and *Qyerfe*, as also *Kerfak*. Before the *Dutch* got into possession of *Ceylon*, they used to transport this cinnamon, but since that time they make no account of it. The tree is of the bigness of our orange tree, less or more, but not large as the cinnamon trees in *Ceylon*. It has abundance of branches, leaves not unlike the laurel leaves, but broader, of a paler colour, with three distinct veins. The blossom is white, almost without any scent; the fruit not unlike the wild olives, first green, afterwards inclining to red, and when ripe, black shining. It has also a kernel not unlike the wild olive, which is covered with a pulp like the same, out of which issues a kind of green oily liquor, of the same scent as the laurels, biting and bitterish upon the tongue. The rind of this tree (or the cinnamon it self) is thick, without any remarkable taste, tho' the small sprouts or tacks are somewhat bitter, yet don't come near to the cinnamon of the isle of *Ceylon*.

Oil of cinnamon and volatile salt.  
Out of the rind of the root they prepare a kind of volatile salt, which they call camphire, swimming upon the surface of the water of a yellow colour, clear, strong and well scented, sharp upon the tongue, and very penetrating, being so volatile, that if exposed to the air, it evacuates immediately. This camphire is exceeding white, excelling the common camphire in its scent; the particles of this camphire are insensibly mix'd with the oil, whilst yet warm, immediately after its distillation; but as soon as the oil begins to cool, they adhere to one another in divers shapes, and settle to the bottom. This camphire is very volatile, and so fiery that it takes fire in an instant, and leaves not the least impurity behind, after it is consumed. The oil ap-

proaches very near both in smell and taste 1662. to the camphire, and is so volatile, that if some of it be dropped upon woollen stuffs, even of the nicest colours, it evaporates immediately, without leaving the least spot behind. It is also very combustible, burning with a white and blue flame; if put upon the fire, it evacuates in a instant, and turns into a white smoak, which is very apt to take fire. This oil mixt with gunpowder, will set it on fire by degrees, yet not till a great part of the oily substance be evacuated. If mix'd with sulphur or salt-peter, or with both, it will take fire immediately and consume the sulphur and salt-peter, remaining without the least alteration. If you put the oil upon the fire, and receive the flame which evaporates from thence, in a thick cloth, a white kind of salt will settle in it, which is the camphire itself. This oil will also in time separate some of those camphirous particles, which falling to the bottom, render the oil more clear and pure. The oil drawn out of the *Malabar* cinnamon, is clear, transparent, yellowish and well scented, swimming upon the water; whereas out of the common cinnamon of *Ceylon*, besides that oil which rises on the top of the water, another is also drawn, which sinks to the bottom. The oil distill'd from the leaves is thin at first, turns yellowish by degrees, and transparent, and of a greenish colour at last, being very sweet, but sharp at last, having something of cinnamon; it sinks to the bottom of the water.

The oil made out of the rind of the root, with its volatile salt (the camphire) is endow'd with greater virtues. It is a sovereign remedy against all lameness, if applied outwardly, and gives immediate ease in the gout; it may also be taken inwardly with very good success, being a great remedy against malignant fevers, a great sudorifick, expelling the wind, procuring an appetite in the stomach, and consuming the stone both in the kidneys and bladder, and is good in the cough, and many other chronick distempers; to be short, it is the most universal remedy made use of there by the *Dutch* in their hospitals. The camphire is very proficuous in all distempers in the womb, promotes the monthly terms, and is a great sudorifick, being used in all respects like the common camphire. The oil distill'd out of the bark of the tree, is an excellent remedy in all distempers of the stomach, and in the cholick, proceeding from a cold cause; the water of cinnamon is cordial; the oil of the leaves is good against the cholick, if applied outwardly to the belly, and helps lameness.



and taste 1662.  
e, that if  
ien stuffs,  
vaporates  
least spot  
le, burn-  
; if put  
tant, and  
very apt  
gunpow-  
s, yet not  
stance be  
r or salt-  
e fire im-  
phur and  
e least al-  
n the fire,  
rates from  
e kind of  
camphire  
e separate  
es, which  
e oil more  
out of the  
ansparen-  
ming upon  
e common  
oil which  
another is  
e bottom.  
es is thin  
grees, and  
colour ar  
rp at last,  
it sinks to

ind of the  
amphire) is  
*Incise.*  
It is a fo-  
ness, if ap-  
ediate ease  
en inward-  
ng a great  
s, a great  
procuring  
consuming  
d bladder,  
many other  
t, it is the  
e of there  
The cam-  
tempers in  
terms, and  
in all re-  
ire. The  
he tree, is  
tempers of  
proceeding  
cinnamon  
is good a-  
twardly to



The  
Dyng

A Branch with Cocoa Nuts



Cocoa Nuts

In  
grow  
Zua  
and  
Verumbet.  
bians  
the  
grow  
it is  
with  
of th  
what  
being  
porte

On  
St. C  
Cobbi  
cr.

certain  
physic  
and b  
and A  
Flux a  
count  
tea M  
disfor  
Angels  
Macer  
spreads  
ing big  
seven  
permo  
of a da  
liev'd,  
only a  
farthing  
taste th  
stone,  
closed  
two di  
forth in  
that wh  
trees, e  
and flat  
the big  
pointed  
stalk, o  
a kind  
end. T  
that of  
thick ro  
rind of  
ash-colo  
taining  
turns y  
gent.  
grounds  
near it.  
is in v  
well as  
bars an  
and ma  
molt for  
loosenet  
The In

1662. In the woods of Malabar about Kananor, grows a certain shrub in great plenty, call'd *Zua* by the Malabars, at *Surate Dekan*, and *Cachora* by the Canarins; by the Arabians and Persians *Zerumbet*, and *Zeruba* by the Turks. If planted or sow'd, it will grow also in many other places. By some it is reckoned a kind of ginger, and not without reason, its leaves resembling those of the ginger, only that they are somewhat larger, as is also the root, which being cut in pieces and dried, is thus transported into foreign parts.

The tree call'd Macre or Macre of Malabar. On the coast of Malabar, in the isle of *St. Cruce*, belonging to the kingdom of *Cochin*, near the river *Manatle*, grows a certain tree call'd *Macre* by the *Brabman* physicians, by the christians there *Makuyre*, and by the Portuguese *Arbore de las Canaras* and *Arbore Sancto*, i. e. the *Tree of the Bloody Flux* and the *holy Tree*. The saints of this country have this saying of it; *Kura Sancta Macre Nistusa garul*: i. e. *Macre was discover'd to mankind for their benefit by the Angels*. *Galen*, *Dioscorides* and *Pliny* call it *Macer*, and *Avicenna Talisjar*; this tree spreads its branches in a large compass, being bigger than our elm-tree. Its leaves are seven foot long, and two broad, the uppermost side of a pale, and the undermost of a dark green colour. It is generally believ'd, that this tree produces no fruit, but only a kind of seed, of the bigness of a farthing, thin, yellowish, resembling in taste the kernel of an almond or peach-stone, cover'd with a white skin. It is enclosed in a kind of a bladder compos'd of two different peels. This bladder comes forth in the middle of the leaf, resembling that which in *May* sprouts forth on the elm-trees, except that it is somewhat broader and flatter. The leaf of this bladder is of the bigness of other leaves, but not so much pointed at the end, and narrow towards the stalk, of a deep yellow colour, cover'd with a kind of curl'd down from the stalk to the end. The root of this tree is not unlike that of the *Siene* palm-tree, with large and thick roots spread at a great distance; the rind of those roots is thick, rough, of an ash-colour without, but white within; containing a juice like milk whilst fresh, but turns yellow; when dry it is very astringent. This tree delights in few but sandy grounds, and kills all other trees or shrubs near it. The rind of the root of this tree is in vast esteem among the *Malabars*, as well as among the *Chinese*, *Javanese*, *Malabars* and all *Bengale*; being look'd upon and made use of in their hospitals, as the most sovereign remedy in the world, against looseness and all manner of bloody fluxes. The *Indian* physicians, as well *Brabmans*,

1662. *Canarins*, as *Malabars*, cure with this rind whilst fresh, powder'd and mix'd with butter-milk, the bloody flux; some infuse half an ounce of the rind, dried and powder'd in a quartern of whey for 12 hours, which they give the patient twice a day, viz. in the morning and evening, immediately after they give the patient rice to eat, boil'd without salt or butter, and after that a chicken boil'd in the decoction of rice flour. If the distemper be very urgent, they add some *Opium* for the strengthening of the stomach; and to stop vomiting, they mix a little maltich with this rind, and give it in mint water. They tell you that a small quantity of this rind, excels much in virtue a considerable number of the *Myrobolan* rinds, or of *Areka*; nay, they prefer it before the *Koru* of *Malabar* itself. The fruit, or rather seed, expels all sorts of worms, and dissolves the stone in the kidneys, being look'd upon likewise as a great preservative both against the stone and cholick. Besides the tree *Macer*, other trees grow here very different in kind, but agree in virtue with the *Macer* tree.

The first of these two is by the *Malabars* The tree call'd *Kuradipala*, or *Kuro*, and *Koru* by the *Canarins*, by the *Brabmans* *Kura*, and by the Portuguese the *Malabar* shrub, its use having been first shewn them by the *Malabars*. This tree or shrub is not unlike a small orange tree, especially as to its leaves, except that the vein in the middle of the leaf, out of which come 8 or 9 on both sides, is somewhat thicker. The blossom is yellow, and without the least scent. *Garcias* says this tree is somewhat less than a common crab-tree, its leaves like a peach-tree, with a white blossom. It has a pale green and smooth bark, out of which, if cut with a knife, issues a milk-like juice, more viscous than that which comes forth out of the *Macer* tree, bitterish of taste; the *Malabar* physicians assign it a cooling quality. This tree affords an infallible remedy against all kinds of bloody fluxes, provided the gross ill humours have been purged away before, without which the patient will soon have a relapse. The *Malabars* (according to *Garcias*) prepare a compounded water out of the root, unto which they attribute great virtues against the bloody flux; they take 8 ounces of this root well beaten to powder, and infused in whey, and the liquor of boil'd rice, unto this they add the seeds of purfley, black cummin and coriander, each an ounce and a half; of the *Myrobolan* rind 7 drachms, and fresh butter 2 ounces; this they distil, and mix a quartern of this distill'd water with half a quartern of *Arack*, and give it the patient. They apply this water also in form

1662. form of a clyster in the night time, by reason of the excessive heat of the days in those parts. Inwardly they commonly give it twice a day, viz. in the morning about six a clock, and in the afternoon about two. Their diet is rice mix'd with fat, and chickens boil'd in the decoction of rice, which they call *Kaeje* in their language, but the use of wine is absolutely forbidden, unless it be in an inveterate bloody flux, to keep up the spirits. Some give only the juice of the shrub whilst green, of which they give a quarter and a half in the morning, and as much in the evening; and to take away the bitterish taste, allow the patient to drink a little whey after it. In case of necessity they mix some *Opium* with it. It is also a good remedy to strengthen the stomach, and to stop vomiting, if taken in mint water, or mix'd with some mastich powder'd. The root taken inwardly with the decoction of rice, or applied outwardly is very good against the piles. The decoction of the leaves, and those of tamarinds, make an excellent fomentation for swell'd legs, held over the hot iteam, and a cloth dip'd in the same decoction is with good success applied in the looseness and dropsy.

The third sort of those vegetables which are us'd here against the bloody flux, is call'd by the *Malabars Pavate*, and *Vasa Veli* by the *Brabmans*, and *Canarins*, and *Arbor contra las erysijelas*, i. e. the Tree against the *St. Anthony's Fire*. It is a shrub not above 8 or 9 foot high, with a few branches and leaves, resembling the small leaves of orange-trees before they come to their full growth, green on both sides; the blossom is white and small, the seed round, in bigness like to that of the mastich-tree; dark green at first, which turns black as it ripens. The stem and tacks are of an ash-colour, the root either without scent or taste, except that it is somewhat bitterish.

Among the fruit trees of *Malabar*, that which the inhabitants call *Jambos*, and the *Portuguese Jambeiro*, must not be pass'd by in silence. The *Malabars* and *Canarins* call the fruit *Jambali*, the *Arabians Tusa Indi*, the *Turks Alma*, and the *Persians Tufat*. It is the common opinion, that this was first of all for the pleasantness of its blossom, and excellency of its fruit, transplanted from *Malacca* (where it is found in great plenty) into all the other parts of the *Indies*. There are two kinds, resembling one another in most respects, except in their fruit, which is somewhat different. Both are not unlike, as well in shape as bigness to our *European* apple-trees, and will grow without much cultivating in any ground, and bear fruit within 5 years; they take root very deep, a thing seldom observ'd among

the *Indian* trees. These trees are of a pleasant aspect, spreading their branches to the height of a good plumb-tree. The bark, as well of the tree as of the branches, is of an ash-colour and smooth; the wood brittle; the leaves also resemble those of the plumb-tree, but are somewhat more pointed at the end, being a palm in length, and not unlike the iron point of a long pike or lance. The upper side is dark, and the undermost pale green, with a strait vein in the middle, which sends out divers others on both sides. The blossoms are both for scent and colour like our roses, but inclining more to a purple colour; the first is of the bigness of a large pear, or of a goose egg, or rather bigger. They are of two sorts; one of which is a dark red, inclining to black, generally without stones, excelling the other in taste; the other is pale red, has a longish white stone of the bigness of a peach-stone, cover'd with a white rough skin; this, tho' inferior to the former, yet is of a most pleasing taste. Sometimes the first is absolutely red, and these are of a purple colour, and smell like a rose; the fruit is cover'd with so thin a peel, that no knife can separate it from the pulp, which is accounted cold and moist; and so are the blossoms, notwithstanding which they are very well scented, and for that reason in high esteem among the inhabitants. The fruit is commonly eaten before dinner, or at the beginning of a meal; neither are they useless in physick, both the fruit and flowers preserved, being preferred in violent burning fevers; having besides their cooling quality, a certain virtue of comforting the spirits. This tree may well be accounted among the number of those, which by the excellency of their fruit, and the agreeableness of their flowers, surprizes the beholders; for, whilst you see one side of the tree bare of leaves and blossoms, the other is stor'd with fruit, which last, till the other side begins to renew its leaves; so that in one and the same tree you see a continual spring and autumn at once. Thus you never can cast your eye upon this tree but you meet there either with blossom or fruit; and as the blossom drops underneath on the ground (which is frequently cover'd with those purple colour'd flowers) others come forth in their stead; and whilst some of the fruit are ripening, others are to be gathered. The best way to gather their fruit is to shake the tree, then they fall with ease; but if you endeavour to pull them off, the tacks are apt to break.

The fruit *Karkapuli*, call'd *Kerkapoli* by the *Canarins*, is in shape and bigness like an orange; they are green at first, afterwards

1662.

1662. terw  
whit  
In th  
and  
finge  
T

Koldam  
Pall.

tall,  
fome  
mans  
ille o  
and u  
being  
looker  
much  
fore it  
with  
powde  
rice, i  
tite of  
as the  
good  
and o  
ply the  
to the  
where  
wives  
bed, to  
plenty  
dried,  
There  
ing a r  
of a ch  
footen  
those of  
the bar  
knife, if  
comes f

The use of  
also leaves  
among the  
Malabars.

The  
among  
give no  
men w  
leaves  
boil wi  
an easy  
it, add  
it stand  
next me  
the pati  
him to  
bout to  
after he  
the chick  
mastich  
him to c  
smallest  
minish t  
ing to th

There  
of the b  
quite so  
tacks of  
it has no  
rapio after  
Vol. I

Karkapuli



1662. terwards turn yellow, and when ripe, white, of sweet taste, but a little tartish. In the centre of the pulp lies the seeds, flat and long, of the bigness of a joint of a finger, and are of a dark brown colour.

The tree which bears this fruit is very tall, call'd *Kodlam Pulli* by the *Malabars*, sometimes *Otta Pulli*, and by the *Brabmans Danabos*, by the inhabitants of the isle of *Ceylon Chorakas*; the fruit is eaten, and used in physick among the *Indians*, being accounted an excellent remedy against looseness, especially if occasioned by too much venery. Besides which, the fruit before it is quite ripe, or the juice of it mix'd with butter-milk, or the fruit dried and powder'd mix'd with butter-milk and boil'd rice, is excellent good to acute the appetite of the stomach. This juice also, as well as the dry fruit powder'd, is accounted a good remedy against the dimness, cataracts, and other infirmities of the eyes; they apply the juice, mix'd with some other herbs, to the nail of the great toe, on that side where the defect of the eye is. The midwives give it to women lately brought to bed, to expel the after-birth, and produce plenty of milk for suck. This fruit, when dried, is transported to foreign countries. There is another kind of this tree, bearing a round fruit and sweet, of the bigness of a cherry, call'd *Karkapuli* by Mr. *Dinshoben*; this tree is call'd *Karue Choraka* by those of *Ceylon*, i. e. *sweet Choraka*; out of the bark of both of these trees, if slit with a knife, issues a gum call'd *Gutta*, but that which comes from the *Kanka Choraka* is the best.

The use of aloe leaves is very frequent among the *Malabars*, a purge they boldly give not only to children, but also to women with child. They take of the aloe leaves 3 ounces cut very small, these they boil with two drachms of black salt over an easy fire, and after they have strain'd it, add to it an ounce of sugar, and so let it stand the whole night in the air. The next morning about six a clock they give the patient this decoction cold, ordering him to abstain from sleep, and to walk about to promote its operation; three hours after he hath taken it, they give him a little chicken broth, with a few grains of mastic in it, and an hour after that allow him to eat, and to take a little wine of the smallest sort. They either increase or diminish the dose of the decoction, according to the constitution of the patient.

There grows in *Malabar* a certain fruit of the bigness of a hazle nut, but is not quite so round and white; it grows on the stalks of a certain shrub which they sow; it has no peculiar use in physick, tho' *Serapio* ascribes to it a virtue of augmenting

Vol. II.

the seed, and promoting the birth in women; the same the *Malabars* do to this day, who call the fruit *Chevique lenga*, and in some places *Kurkas*, and those of *Cambaiak Karpata*. If *Garcias* may be credited, this is the same fruit described by *Serapio* by the broken name of *Habel-culcul*, whereas it should have been *Hab-alcul*, which signifies as much as the seed of *Culcul*.

The tree call'd *Kumbulu* by the *Malabars*, and *Bon-Varo* by the *Brabmans*, grows very tall, with a trunk of that thickness, that a man can scarce grasp it. The leaves are a span, and two or three inches long, and two palms broad, woolly at the end of the stalks, which are round, long and thick; at the extremities of the stalks, which sprout forth out of the branches, grow certain yellow flowers in clusters on short stalks, consisting of five round and thick leaves. After these comes a fruit that's like a pear, full of juice, the pulp being of a yellowish colour, and a sweetish taste, but the juice when press'd out is deep yellow. They are green at first, next of a pale yellow, and turn reddish at last; in the centre of the fruit is a white smooth stone, shap'd like a pear, with a small kernel in it. The decoction of the root, mix'd with a little rice, is a good remedy against the ague, which often follows the gout or rheumatism. Taken in butter-milk, or mix'd with the oil of *Sirchalem*, it expels the wind, and eases the pain; and the juice of the leaves taken with butter-milk, is good against the cholick.

The tree call'd *Ganjibi* by the *Malabars*, and *Schivanni* by the *Brabmans*, grows in sandy grounds a great height and thickness, so that a man can scarce grasp the trunk, which as well as the branches has a bark of an ash-colour without, but green within. The leaves hang on long, round and green stalks, being above a span in length, and two palms broad, of an oblong figure. The blossoms fastened to stalks which are pale green, sweet, round and thin, each flower consisting of no more than three, and seldom of four leaves. After these comes the fruit, which is of a triangular figure, flattish, and of a green colour, hanging on long and green stalks, the seed being triangular, and the pulp very substantial; the decoction of the root is used against the gout, and apply'd to the affected part.

Of the tree *Palega* there are two kinds; one is call'd *Palega-Pajaneli* by the *Malabars*, and the other barely *Pajanel*. The *Palega-Pajaneli*, called *Davandiku* by the *Brabmans*, is very tall, with a trunk enough for a man to grasp, having an ash-coloured bark, as well as the branches, which grow straight upright, of a considerable thickness.

S 11

1662.

Chevique  
Lenga.

The tree  
Ganjibi.

The tree  
Palega-  
Pajaneli.

1662. The leaves hang on stalks, which shoot forth both out of the stem and branches of the tree. On the extremities of the branches grow certain clusters of flowers shap'd like bells, consisting of six thick leaves; whitish or pale yellow within, and streak'd with red on the out-side, the scent of which is offensive to the nostrils. The fruit which follows the flowers is about three spans long, of the breadth of a hand, and an inch thick, with a dark green peel. The pulp juicy and tender at first, but grows hard at last; the seed is very flat. The bark of the tree powder'd and mix'd with wine, applied to a wound, or broken bones, heals them. The decoction of the root is good against the dropsy; and the leaves, whilst yet very young, mix'd with *Malabar* saffron, cures all sorts of ulcers, if apply'd to them outwardly.

The second  
kind of  
*Pajaneli*.

The second kind of the *Pajaneli*, called *Davandiku* by the *Brabmans*, is likewise a very tall tree, whose branches shoot forth upright to a great height; it delights in sandy grounds: The root spreads at a great distance, having a thick ash-coloured rind. The trunk is of that thickness, that a man can scarce grasp it, of a brittle wood, with a dark ash-coloured bark: The flowers are like the former, shap'd like bells, but have no more than five leaves. The fruit is the same: Of the juice of the leaves, and that of the fruit *Kareka*, or *Mirobolans* mix'd together, the *Malabars* make a black dye to dye their mourning cloaths with. The decoction of the rind of the root dispels hard tumours if they be fomented with it.

Of the tree *Pala*, called *Santeru* by the *Brabmans*, there are four kinds; 1. *Pala*; 2. *Kuruta Pala*; 3. *Kadaga Pala*; 4. *Kaikotten Pala*: The first kind, called only *Pala*, is a high tree growing in sandy places, and spreading its branches into a great circumference: The root, which has a dark yellow rind, reaches very deep into the ground, and contains a milky juice: The trunk is two or three fathoms thick, the bark of an ash-colour, as is likewise the bark of the branches. The leaves grow four or five together, on stalks of an oblong figure, and towards the stalks full of a milky substance; the flowers grow in clusters, having five whitish leaves of a strong scent, but offensive to the brains. The fruit which comes immediately after the blossom, do likewise hang in clusters on small stalks, being green husks of about two spans length, but small and flat, full of a milky juice or substance, as is the tree itself, which produces fruit but once a year, viz. in *January*.

The second kind of *Pala* is by the *Malabars* called *Kuruta Pala*, by the *Brabmans* *Kudo*, being a tree from six to twelve foot

high, the trunk about the thickness of a foot, with an ash-coloured bark, as well as the branches. The leaves come forth out of the branches with their stalks, being of an oblong figure, and pointed at the end. The flowers grow on the extremities of the small stalks, are white, and bigger than those of the first kind, and have five long leaves. The fruit grows likewise in clusters, being of an oblong figure, dark green at first, and as they ripen turn yellow. The husk contains five, six or seven seeds. The tree bears fruit all the year round, but most in the rainy season. The bark of the tree beaten to powder, and taken in warm water, is good against the loose piles, but if taken in milk stops the bloody flux.

The third kind of *Pala*, called *Kadaga Pala* by the *Malabars*, and *Alego-Kugo* by the *Brabmans*, is no higher than the *Kuruta Pala*, and delights in sandy grounds. The root does not go so deep underground as that of the *Pala*, the bark is of a dark brown colour; the trunk is of a foot circumference like the second kind, but the leaves and blossom being also like the same. It bears long husks like the *Pala*, but are somewhat thicker, of a green colour, a span long, and full of a milky liquor. The bark of the trunk beaten to powder, and taken in butter-milk, stops the looseness; and the rind of the root, taken in the same manner, cures the bloody flux. The decoction of the seeds is given in burning fevers, and kills the worms. The fourth kind, called *Kaikotten-Kala*, is very near the same with the third.

There are two kinds of the tree called *Parva* by the *Malabars*; the first they call *Tindaparva*, and the second *Anaparva*, and the *Brabmans* *Bendarli*. The *Tindaparva* grows to a great height in sandy grounds, having a thick whitish root with a soft rind: The trunk is so thick that a man can scarce grasp it with his arms, having an ash-coloured bark as well as the branches, which underneath the bark are of a dark brown colour. The leaves which are long, and pointed at the end, hang on short stalks, as do likewise the flowers, consisting of four pale green and pointed leaves. The fruits are a kind of round berries, with a very thin peel, green at first, afterwards inclining to white, and turn red as they ripen. In the peel is enclosed a round kernel. The root beaten to powder and taken inwardly, is a sovereign remedy against epileptic fits; and the decoction of the leaves dispels all pain, if the affected parts be well fomented with it.

The tree *Kavalkan*, as the *Malabars* call it, and *Bankar* by the *Brabmans*, grows in

stone

1662. Stone is very deep that his ath- The into figure ed at green small green forth ther, thick beans round These This viz. in mong Of

The tree  
Amulam.

in Ma or Kua the Br Pee A to a g branch root w many of a g very th The le sprouts are gen smooth both si eft to t the rest not un The b forth c of a wh ing five flowers turn wh happen continu tom, l come f in clus pretty goes: B rind is but wh green, tartish tants. large s year, of it th

1662. stony and sandy grounds; its root, which is very thick, and covered with an ash-coloured but softish rind, stretching very deep underground. The trunk is so thick that a man can scarce grasp it with both his arms, covered with a thick bark, of an ash-colour without, and pale green within. The wood is also white, and may be drawn into thread. The leaves are of an oblong figure, a span and 2 or 3 inches long, pointed at the ends, hanging on long round and green stalks: The flowers consisting of five small leaves sprout out in clusters, with green and hairy stalks. The fruit comes forth in bunches, three, four, or five together, being of the shape of an egg, with a thick and hard rind, containing nine or ten beans of the length of a finger each, but round and smooth, with a double peel: These beans, when roasted are good food. This tree bears blossom but once a year, viz. in May, and is not used in physick among the Malabars.

The tree  
Ambalam.

Of the tree *Ambalam* there are two kinds in Malabar; one is simply called *Ambalam*, or *Koduko Ambado*, (i. e. *Sweet Ambado*) by the *Brabmans*; the other, *Kai Ambalam*, or *Pee Ambalam*. The tree *Ambalam* grows to a great height in sandy grounds, with its branches not spreading, but upright. The root which is very large, stretching with many twigs under ground. The trunk is of a great circumference, covered with a very thick bark; the wood being very soft: The leaves hang on small green stalks or sprouts, in bunches of five together; they are generally as long again as they are broad, smooth and soft, and of a light green on both sides. Those leaves which are nearest to the small twigs, are not so large as the rest, of an agreeable scent, and tartish, not unlike the rind of the *Indian Mangoes*. The blossom or flower do likewise come forth out of small and green sprouts, are of a whitish colour, shaped like stars, having five or six leaves. The buds of these flowers are round, and green at first, but turn white before they open; which when it happens, the leaves fall from the tree, which continues bare as long as it stands in blossom, but as the fruit grows, new leaves come forth by degrees. The fruit grows in clusters, being of an oval figure, and pretty hard, not unlike to the *Indian Mangoes*: Before they come to maturity their rind is dark brown, and full of sour juice, but when they begin to ripen turn light green, and at last yellow, of an agreeable tartish taste, and are eaten by the inhabitants. In the midst of the fruit is a very large stone. This tree bears twice every year, viz. in January and May. The root of it thrust into the matrix stops the super-

fluous monthly times. The bark powder'd and taken in butter-milk is good against the looseness, and so is the juice mix'd with rice. The decoction of the wood is a good remedy against the involuntary emission of the seed, and the juice of the leaves mix'd with that of the fruit infill'd into the ears, eases the pain in those parts.

The second kind of the *Ambalam*, *Kai Ambalam*, or *Pee Ambalam*, as the *Malabars* call it, and *Kaduko Ambado* by the *Brabmans*, resembles the first in a great many respects, except that its leaves are less, and so are the fruit, being somewhat rounder, and the taste a mixture of sour and bitter, which is the reason they are never eaten. *Kai Ambalam*, or *Pee Ambalam*, signifies in the *Malabar* tongue as much as *Wild Ambalam*, and *Kaduko Ambado* among the *Brabmans*, as much as the *Bitter Ambado* from its taste.

The tree called *Agaty* by the *Malabars*, and *Agasto* by the *Brabmans*, runs up to the height of ten or twelve yards, the branches growing strait upright: The trunk is so big in circumference that a man can scarce grasp it, having a very soft wood, and the pith much tender. If an incision be made into the bark, a certain watery substance distils thence, which turns to gum afterward. The leaves come forth out of small and green sprouts or buds, being near a span and a half long, and growing two and two on long green stalks. The flowers consist of five small leaves, and grow in clusters on stalks of a pale green colour. After the blossom come thin, strait and green husks, of about a span in length, and an inch in breadth, having a thick peel, in which are enclosed certain beans, not unlike in taste to, but somewhat smaller than, our *French* beans, being white at first, but turn pale green by degrees, and are very good food. This tree bears fruit twice or thrice in the rainy season, and indeed the whole year round, but not so frequently in the summer. The juice of the bark of this tree, either by itself, or mix'd with honey, is an excellent remedy against all the inflammations of the throat and mouth. The juice of the leaves taken into the nostrils like a liquid snuff, cures the quartan ague.

The tree call'd *Appel* or *Nalla-Appella*, by the *Malabars*, and *Karo-Nervoloe* by the *Brabmans*, has a very thick and hairy root, the rind of which is of a satiron colour. The circumference of the stem is of five or six palms; the branches growing directly upright: Its wood is white, but the peel dark red. The leaves sprout forth out of the branches in small green and square buds, the stalks being round, very short, and of a pale green colour, commonly two and two together. The

1662.

The tree  
Katambalam.

The tree  
Agaty.

The tree  
Appel.

1662. leaves are of an oval figure, round near the stalk, and pointed toward the end. The flowers grow in clusters, consisting of four round white and small leaves each. The fruit are round berries, having a round stone in the middle; are pale green at first, but when ripe turn black. The tree bears but once a year. The root of this tree powdered and taken in water, stops the looseness, and boiled in sea-water and applied outwardly, appeases the pain of the gout. The decoction of the leaves is a good remedy against the pain of the belly and stomach, occasioned by wind; the same effect has the oil drawn out of the root, if anointed on the painful part; this oil is yellow and transparent, of an agreeable scent, and a piquant bitterish taste.

S. hageri.  
Kottam.

The tree call'd *Schageri Kottam* by the *Malabars*, and *Sabali* by the *Brabmans*, seldom exceeds the height of six foot, and delights in sandy grounds: Its stem is of the thickness of a man's arm, the root red within, and black on the out-side. The leaves sprout forth out of the twigs and hang on round, and green stalks; they are very large, and pretty long, broad towards the stalk, and pointed at the ends; the upper-side dark green, and the undermost side of a pale green colour. At the very extremities of the small twigs grow the flowers in clusters on small stalks, consisting of four or five great leaves, of a white and pale yellow colour. The fruit is in shape like an *European* pear, dark green at first, and when ripe, turns black; it is of a sweetish taste, and eaten by the *Malabars*. The juice of the leaves boil'd with sugar, and taken inwardly, strengthens the liver, and stops the looseness.

Kolinit.

The tree call'd *Kolinit* by the *Malabars*, and *Schebara Punka* by the *Brabmans*, does not grow above two or three foot high, its stem being not above three or four inches thick, the branches spreading round about it. The wood of the stem is very hard, and the green bark which covers it of a piquant bitterish taste. The leaves come forth out of small and green sprouts, hanging on very small stalks; they are of an oval figure, round at the ends, and somewhat pointed towards the stalks, of a sharp and bitter taste: The blossom is like our bean blossom, having each four leaves: The fruit is a kind of a small, smooth, and long husk, yet not above two or three inches in length, are green in the beginning, and dark red at last, having within them certain beans, which are green at first, and black at last. This tree produces fruit twice a year, once in the winter, and once in the summer. The root powdered and boiled in milk, or the juice of the coco-

tree, is a good remedy against the falling-sickness.

There are four kinds of fig-trees in *Malabar*, call'd by one general name *Alu*; the first they call *Atty-Alu*, the second *Itty-Alu*, the third *Arealu*, and the fourth *Peralu*. The fig-tree *Atty-Alu*, call'd *Roombadoe* by the *Brabmans*, grows to a great height, spreading its branches at a good distance. The trunk is of that thickness, that a man cannot well grasp it; the fruit is round, but flat, and lesser towards the stalk, and somewhat hairy and rough, not unlike our figs. Before they are ripe, they are green and full of a milky juice, but turn red when ripe, and are not so juicy. Within the pulp, you see small kernels like those in our figs, and as soon as they are ripe, the pismires get into them. These figs are the only ones that are eaten by the *Malabars*, and eaten raw when ripe are accounted good against the looseness. If the inhabitants may be believed, these trees are produced out of the feed of the fruit, after it is eaten by the ravens, and discharged again with their dung.

The second sort call'd *Itty-Alu*, and *Areka* *Itty-Alu* *Goli* by the *Brabmans*, is the smallest of all the four kinds, its trunk being to be graft by any ordinary man. It bears a small and round fruit, which is green, whilst not come to maturity, and full of a milky juice, but when ripe turns yellow. It has also abundance of kernels, like the first kind.

The tree of the third kind, call'd *Arealu*, *Arealu* and *Bipaloe* by the *Brabmans*, is as tall as the former, spreading its branches very loftily, at a good distance: The trunk is of such a thickness, that two men can scarce grasp it: The fruit is like that of the *Itty-Alu*, small and round, and not forced, as that of the *Atty-Alu*. These *Pagans* have dedicated this tree to their idol *Vijnu*, who they say was born under this tree, and took of its blossoms: For this reason it is, that they surround it with a stone wall, and worship it. The christians call it the *Devil's-tree*.

The fourth sort call'd *Peralu*, and *Vadboe* by the *Brabmans*, exceeds all the others in height; for which reason the *Brabmans* have given it the name of *Vadboe*, i. e. large. The fruit is much the same with that of the *Atty-Alu*, but very round, and of a very high red colour, being covered with a kind of a *Lanugo* or woolly substance when they are ripe.

Of the tree call'd *Paniti* by the *Malabars*, are likewise four different kinds, viz. *Pariti*, *Bupariti*, *Kadupariti* and *Schem-Pariti*. The tree *Bupariti*, call'd *Valli-Kari-Kajoesi* by the *Brabmans*, is a very high tree, with very lofty branches, growing in

1662.

The tree  
Bupariiti.

the shape of a crown round the tree, which is never infested with any insects. The leaves resemble in shape a man's heart, of the bigness of the palm of a man's hand, somewhat pointed at the end, of a lovely green on the upper-side, and a pale green on the other. The flowers are of the shape of bells consisting of several white leaves; after these comes a certain round spongy fruit, which emits a gummy liquor, if an incision be made with a knife. For the rest, the tree produces flowers all the year round.

Pariti.

*Pariti*, or the tree of the second kind, call *Karikaprefi* by the *Brabmans*, grows to the height of 18 foot, the trunk being however within the compass of a man's grasping. The flowers are like those of the *Bupariiti*, only somewhat lesser; and after these come certain round sponges, covered with a *Lanugo* or hairy substance. The blossom bruised and mix'd with women's milk, and infused into the ears, cures the head-ach.

Kudapariiti.

The tree *Kudapariiti* of the third sort, called *Kapussi* by the *Brabmans*, runs to the height of 12 foot, tho' its stem is not above two palms thick. The flowers are likewise like bells, of the same shape and colour as the precedent, only that they are a little lesser, and inclining to green. The spongy fruit are three corner'd, pointed at the top, and within distinguish'd by three skins in as many different concavities, each of which contains three or four seeds enclosed in a thick white *Lanugo* or woolly substance: This tree is never without blossom throughout the whole year. The leaves bruised and mixed with cow's milk, and apply'd outwardly to the head, procures sleep, and consequently cures the head-ach. The fruit bruised and taken inwardly in water stops the bloody flux. The fourth sort is very near the same with the third.

Chavanna Mandaru.

Of the tree *Mandaru* are likewise four different sorts, viz. *Chavanna Mandaru*, of which two bear the same name; *Velutta Mandaru*, and *Kanfchenapou*. The first call'd *Chavanna Mandaru* by the *Malabars*, and *Tambido Mandaru* by the *Brabmans*, grows up to the height of 24 foot, spreading its branches far round about. The trunk is not above a foot thick. The leaves hang on very short stalks, being even in two at the upper-end, like goats feet, whence the *Portuguese* have given them the name of *Pee de Capra*. The flowers have five leaves of an oval figure, among which the largest and broadest is rounder than the rest, white on the outside, and of a purple colour within; the other four are more oval, of a pale red colour without, but high red within; two of those four, viz. those next to the

Vol. II.

biggest leaf are on the inside whitish towards the bottom, but the other two all over of a rose-colour within; from which rose-colour the *Malabars* have given the name of *Chavanna Mandaru* to this tree. In some of those leaves you see streaks as red as blood, which they say are the remnants of the blood of St. Thomas, who preach'd the gospel on the coast of *Malabar*, and in the isle of *Ceylon*. After these come certain flat, long and smooth husks, of the length of seven or eight inches, in which are enclosed flat and long beans, which at first are ripe, but afterwards turn dark red. This tree produces flowers all the year round, but in the rainy season in greater plenty. The flowers preserved with sugar, are used with good success for a laxative, as we do with our rose-sugar. The second sort of the *Chavanna Mandaru* is a very tall tree like the first, with such like branches, a trunk of the same thickness, and the same leaves, only somewhat larger. The flowers have five oval leaves of a purple colour, both in and outside with white streaks. The husks of this tree are the largest of all the four kinds, being two spans long, an inch thick, flat and smooth; the beans are the same both in shape and colour as the first; and this tree blossoms at the same time, and in the same manner. The flowers of this tree eaten raw are laxative; the bark, flowers and fruit bruised together and mix'd with the liquor of the decoction of rice, is a sovereign remedy to bring to maturity, and to open all sorts of tumors. The bark chew'd cures the tooth and head-ach.

The third sort, call'd *Velutta Mandaru* by the *Malabars* and *Dove Mandaru* by the *Brabmans*, is not above six foot high, and an arm thick; the leaves are cloven like those of the first, but the flowers white without the least scent, having five round leaves. The husks are not so big as those of the others, viz. not above four or five inches long, and an inch thick, for the rest flattish and smooth. The beans are long and round, of a yellowish colour, neither so big nor so red as those of the *Chavanna Mandaru*. This tree blossoms two or three times every year, but chiefly in the rainy season. The flowers bruised and mix'd with some pepper, and applied outwardly to the head cures the head-ach; and if you wash yourself with the decoction of the root, it lays all sorts of itching of the skin.

The fourth sort called *Kanfchenapou* by the *Malabars*, and *Kanfjanu* by the *Brabmans*, is a tree which runs up to the height of 12 foot or more, with lofty branches, but the stem is not above half a foot thick.

T t t

1662.

The tree  
Mandaru.Velutta  
Mandaru.Kanfche-  
napou.



1662. The leaves are cloven like the rest, but not so big, very strong scented if rubb'd betwixt your fingers, especially in the night-time: The flowers consist also of five leaves, of a pale yellow colour, without the least scent. The husks are the same with those of the *Chavanna Mandaru*, very smooth on the outside, but somewhat hairy whilst very young. The beans are small, in shape and colour resembling those of the *Velutta Mandaru*. The tree bears flowers twice or thrice a year, but most plentifully in the rainy season. The decoction of the root taken inwardly, is a good remedy against the worms and inflammations of the liver, and the piles. The bark powder'd disperses tumors, cleanses the wounds, and is an excellent narcotick.

The tree  
Nilikamaram.

The tree call'd *Nilikamaram* by the *Malabars*, and *Arwali* by the *Brabmans*, grows up to the height of 24 foot, tho' its trunk be no bigger than a man's arm, which as well as the branches, are covered with a black bark. The leaves sprout forth out of thin and round twigs, with very short stalks; they grow two and two together, of an oval figure, and very small, being dark green on the upper side, and light green on the other side. Every night the leaves close up like tulips; the flowers grow on small twigs in clusters, consisting of six very small leaves. It bears a round, but flattish fruit, of a pale green colour when ripe, and somewhat transparent; the pulp being likewise green and very juicy, of an agreeable astrigent taste: In the midst is a stone, distinguish'd into six different concavities, each of which contains a small triangular seed or small kernel. The fruit is much used by the *Malabars*: The water distill'd from this fruit cools the liver, and dry'd and power'd, and mix'd with four coagulated milk, stops the bloody-flux.

Odollam.

The tree call'd *Odollam* by the *Malabars*, and *Uro* by the *Brabmans*, grows to the height of 18 foot, its trunk being so thick as scarce to be encompass'd by a man with both his arms, with crooked branches. The wood of the stem is very soft, and the pith red, the bark of an ash colour, bitter and very hot upon the tongue. The leaves grow scattering upon the twigs and long stalks, are of the shape of a tongue, thick, smooth, dark brown on the upper-side, bitter and biting upon the tongue. The flowers grow in clusters like cornets, on long, thick, and green stalks, having five very white and pointed leaves. It bears a kind of ground-apple, with a green and smooth rind, under which is a white pulp of a waterish taste. The stone which is in the midst, is shap'd like the heart of a man, of a pretty large size, with two ker-

nels within it. Some will have this tree to be the same which the *Indians* call *Mongas*.

1662.

Nuroti.

The tree call'd *Nuroti* by the *Malabars*, and *Kaitu* by the *Brabmans*, rises up to a great height, its branches spreading very lofty round about it: The trunk is so big as scarce to be grasped by a man; the wood white, with a thick bark, which is green without and red within. The leaves are scattered here and there on the twigs with short, round and green stalks, of the length of a span, and the breadth of four or five inches, of an oval figure, pointed at the ends, not unlike the laurel leaves. The flowers sprout forth six or seven together out of the extremities of the small twigs, consisting of three rows of small leaves. The first row makes up a star of five small pointed and dark brown hairy leaves. The second row contains five round and small leaves of a rose-colour, and the third or outermost row, five pointed green leaves. The fruit grows on short and thick stalks, being of an oval figure, having a rose colour'd rough peel, and within a large yellowish stone, containing 10 or 12 kernels of an oleaginous substance. This tree produces both flowers and fruit in great plenty all the year round: From the kernels or seeds an oil is drawn, which has an anodyne quality, and applied outwardly, cures all sorts of scurfs and itchings: The same oil, mixed with a certain fruit, the *Malabars* call *Paleo*, kills the corns in the feet, if applied to the affected part.

Of the tree call'd *Kaniram* there are four several kinds: One is call'd *Kaniram* only; the second *Karakanimam*, and the third and fourth *Vallikaniram*. The tree call'd *Kaniram*, and by the *Brabmans*, *Karo*, grows up to a great height, with lofty and far spreading branches. The root is very thick, exceeding bitter, and covered with a yellow rind. The trunk is of that thickness as scarce to be grasped by two men, having a dark ash colour'd bark. The leaves, which are of an oval figure, are very broad in the middle, and pointed towards the ends, of a bitterish taste and an odd scent, growing two and two over against the other: The flowers sprout forth in clusters, having each five or six pale green and pointed leaves. No sooner begins the blossom to bud, but the tree loses all its leaves, instead of which new ones come soon after. It bears a kind of round and smooth apple, which is green at first and turns yellow afterwards, two, three, four or more hanging together on short stalks. The pulp, before they are ripe, is white and insipid, but when ripe, bitter with a thick rough peel. It blossoms in the

summer.

1662. sum-

ter. which the same in to antid inwar taken is a ferpe tugue Th rises with ing ro bove ash-co wife of ends, and th an astr ers gro in a c fented eight le in and gre, b ing tw is of no This call it, very ta spreadi is of th by a m colour v ter aftr The lea good w of a spa inches; shining, and bit tremitie pale gro rous fee three ro root are again as pointed cond row in the th yellow. oval figu come to yellow w of no ag four fec other fid are com milky su

Manjap-  
meram.

Champa-  
kam.



1662. summer, and brings forth fruit in the winter. In the pulp are round but flattish seeds, which are also very bitter. The juice of the leaves taken in the decoction of the same leaves cures the head-ach, but if used in too great a quantity is mortal, the only antidote against which is man's dung taken inwardly. Two or three of those seeds taken every day for two years successively, is a preservative against the biting of the serpent, called *Cobra de Capelo* by the Portuguese.

The tree called *Manjapumeram* by the Malabars, and *Pariataku* by the Brabmans, rises up to the height of 18 or 24 foot, with very thick and lofty branches spreading round about it, but the stem is not above the thickness of an arm, having an ash-coloured bark: The leaves hang crosswise over one another, being pointed at the ends, the uppermost side of a dark green, and the other of a light green colour, of an astringent and bitterish taste; the flowers grow on stalks which stand upright five in a cluster, are very agreeable and sweet scented, having six, seven, and sometimes eight leaves each, of a whitish colour both in and outside. The fruit is of an oval figure, but flat, of a green colour, containing two round and flattish seeds. This tree is of no use among the Malabar physicians.

This tree *Champakam*, as the Malabars call it, and the Brabmans *Champo*, is a very tall tree, with many lofty branches spreading at a good distance: The trunk is of that thickness as scarce to be grasp'd by a man, with a thick bark of an ash-colour without, and soft within, of a bitter astringent taste. The wood is white: The leaves are of an oval figure pointed a good way towards the ends, of the length of a span, and the breadth of four or five inches; the uppermost side dark green and shining, the other side light green, bitter and biting upon the tongue. At the extremities of the small twigs sprout forth pale green flowers, of a quick odoriferous scent, having oval leaves placed in three rows within one another. In the first row are about eight leaves, being as broad again as those of the second row, round but pointed at the ends; but those in the second row are more pointed still, and those in the third more than the second, and pale yellow. The fruit grows in bunches of an oval figure, with a thick rind. Whilst not come to maturity it is green, but turns pale yellow when ripe, being sharp of taste, and of no agreeable scent: Within are three or four seeds, round on one, and flat on the other side; within those seeds, when they are come to their full perfection, is a thin milky substance enclosed in a skin of a pur-

ple colour, and within it a black stone. 1662. The tree, if not too old, blossoms twice a year; out of these flowers they distil a good cordial water.

The tree call'd *Elengi* by the Malabars, and *Vavalli* by the Brabmans, grows up very high, with many far-spreading branches: The trunk is of that thickness, that two men can scarce well grasp it, with a dark brown and rough bark, containing a milky liquor within. The wood is full of the same juice, and will keep a great while under water, but not very long in the air. The leaves grow on small round and green stalks, being of an oval figure, but pointed at the ends. The flowers have pale green stalks, growing five or six in a cluster, of a white colour, consisting of 16 leaves of an odoriferous scent. The Malabars make nosegays of them. The fruit is shap'd like an olive, green at first, but turns yellow and red by degrees: The pulp is yellow and mealy. The Malabars eat this fruit, which has two oval but flat and dark brown stones within. This tree bears flowers twice a year, out of which the Malabars distil a well-scented water, which is look'd upon as a great cordial, and revives the spirits. The fruit bruised and taken inwardly in warm water, promotes the birth.

Besides these there also grows here *Cassia Fistula*, called *Konna* by the Malabars, and *Bajo* by the Brabmans; and *Tamarinds* call'd *Balam-Pulli*, or *Maderam-Pulli* by the Malabars, and *Sinza* by the Brabmans. The coast of Malabar produces likewise *Cardamom*, *Berbergy* ginger, and some aloes; as also bezoar-stones, salt-petre, honey, lacca, and cotton; to be short, this country abounds in all sorts of Indian trees and fruits.

The woods afford vast plenty of birds of all kinds, and among the rest most excellent peacocks, the flesh of which is very white and well tasted. No place in the world abounds more in all sorts of water-fowl, and there are a great many birds here so tame, and so plentiful, that you may kill them with a stick, the reason of which is, that as the Pagans adhere to the opinion of *Pythagoras*, concerning the transmigration of the soul; so they won't kill any living creature, which makes all sorts of wild creatures multiply here, almost in infinitum. The flesh of their hogs (of which they likewise have great plenty) is also excellent good; but above all, tame fowl is so prodigious cheap here, that you may buy a very good pullet for two-pence, and thirty eggs for the same price. I remember I had once bought up 300 pullets against the arrival of our ships, which being put in the old church of *St. Thomas*,

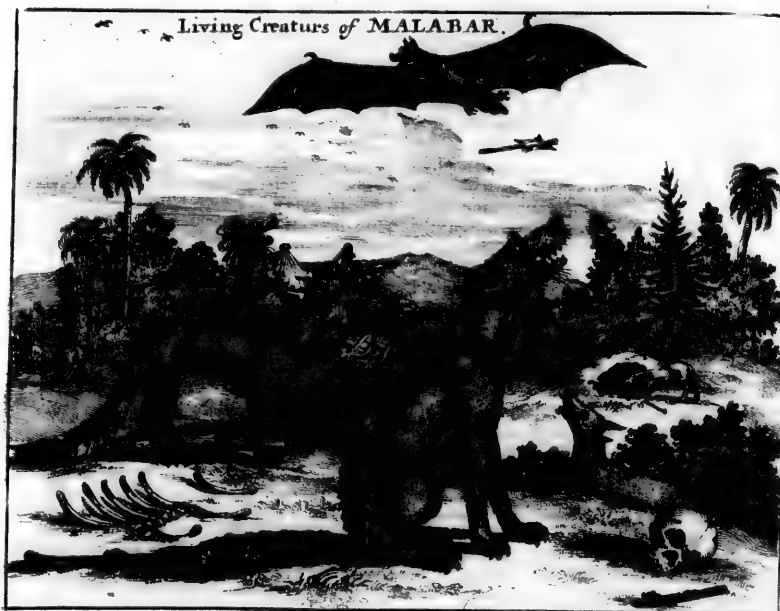
Plenty of  
fowl.

W.C.

1662. we found all dead one morning; we could not guess at the cause of this disaster, till a certain *Malabar* told us, that it could not be otherwise, but that a *Cobre Kapel* (a very venomous serpent) must be hidden in the place; whereupon strict search being made we found the serpent under a heap of old wood, which was no sooner removed,

but the serpent set herself upright upon the tail, spitting fire and flame, so that no body durst approach her, till one of our soldiers kill'd her with his sword. Of venom there is also great plenty.

They have likewise bats of divers kinds; *Bats*, and among the rest a certain sort of that bigness, that their wings when extended are



as long as man can stretch with both his arms together. They have red heads and necks, black bodies, and are shaped like a fox. They are extremely nimble, and having very sharp teeth do a great deal of damage to the fruit. Their wings are bare, like those of our bats, unto which are fastened their legs and tails, so that they can neither walk nor stand; to recompence which defect they have a kind of a hook, of the thickness of a finger on each wing, wherewith they fasten to the branches of the trees: You see here vast multitudes of them in the woods, so that it is no difficult thing to kill them; but whatever you kill, remains hanging among the trees: They are naturally so fierce that they are not to tamed; for if taken alive, they will bite their own wings and flesh as far as they can reach; I once had the curiosity to set two of these creatures a fighting, which they did with such fierceness, that they both remained dead upon the spot. They will

drink of the liquor of the coco-tree till they are drunk; they commonly bring forth two young ones at a time, and that generally in the hollow of trees; the *Malabars* eat the flesh, which has no agreeable taste.

Here you meet also with *Jackalls*, as our *Jackall* people call them, being not unlike a large fox, of the bigness of an ordinary peasant's dog, of a red grey colour, but thinly covered with hair. They assemble in the night in whole troops, and approaching (especially about the new-moons) to the villages or plantations, make a hideous noise, like the outcries of women or men; they are very greedy after mens flesh, and will scratch the dead carcases out of the graves, unless they be well covered with stones: They are scarce ever to be tamed. The *Malabars* eat the flesh of these *Jackalls*. And thus much of the co st of *Malabar*.

After, as I told you, we had set sail the 12<sup>th</sup> of March from *Koulang*, the wind turn'd against us the same evening, but about eleven

1662. ven a  
the l  
the sh  
weath  
to the  
main  
wards  
land-w  
de win  
league  
ourself

Come over  
again?  
Tenge-  
potnam.

Come to  
Toukeo-  
rin.

The seven  
suspects of  
Makure.

Their in-  
habitants.

till the  
the chief  
of *Madra*  
to obfer  
in respect  
government  
under the  
in seven  
is *Toukeo*  
*Alendale*  
paer or  
of six m  
Mr. *Van*  
take one  
of this c  
queen the  
my acco  
presence  
place the  
land to  
habitants  
lages am  
souls, vi  
*Mannapa*  
*ranpatnar*  
2800, in  
besides th  
morin, w  
number:  
stately ch  
especially  
but are no  
the *Port*  
Some of  
come to  
lages, wh  
numbers;  
Vol. I

1662. ven a clock at night we set sail again with the land wind. The 13<sup>th</sup> we kept along the shore with a gentle breeze and very fair weather; but the wind turning soon after to the E. S. E. we were forced to chuse the main sea, but made to the shore again towards evening, and took the benefit of the land-wind. The 14<sup>th</sup> there being but little wind we advanced no farther than 12 leagues from *Koulang*; and the 15<sup>th</sup> finding ourselves off of the city of *Tengepatnam*, we gave the signal by a cannon shot for the resident Mr. *Kock* to come aboard us, which he did accordingly; and after I had discoursed with him of what I had in commission to tell him, we continued our voyage, but being towards evening overtaken by a tempest, were forced to come to an anchor. The 16<sup>th</sup> early in the morning the winds being somewhat laid we set sail again, but by reason of the contrary winds were forced to return towards *Pulon*, near the cape of *Comorin*, where the Portuguese have a small church dedicated to St. *Martin*. The 17<sup>th</sup> we made this cape, but the winds continuing still against us, it was not till the 18<sup>th</sup> that we could reach *Toutekoriin*, the chief among the seaports of the coast of *Madure*. Here I tarried for some time to observe the interest of the company, both in respect of their traffick hither, and in the government of the inhabitants, who live under their jurisdiction along the sea-coast, in seven large villages, the chief of which is *Toutekoriin*, the other six are *Manapara*, *Alendale*, *Wiranypatnam*, *Pommekiel*, *Baypaer* or *Vaypaer*, and *Bempaer*. After a stay of six months here, I received orders from Mr. *Van Goens* to return to *Koulang*, and to take once more upon me the government of this city, being very well known to the queen there; accordingly having surrendered my accounts to Mr. *Lawrentz Pii*, in the presence of captain *Van Reede*, I left this place the 19<sup>th</sup> of May 1665, and went by land to *Koulang*. The number of the inhabitants of the before-mentioned seven villages amounted in 1664 to above 20000 souls, viz. in *Toutekoriin* about 3000, in *Manapara* 4000, in *Alendale* 800, in *Wiranypatnam* 900, in *Pommekiel* or *Punikael* 2800, in *Baypaer* 700, and in *Bempaer* 800; besides those inhabiting on the coast of *Comorin*, which amounted to a considerable number: All these villages are adorn'd with stately churches, built by the Portuguese, especially those of *Manapara* and *Bempaer*, but are now in a decaying condition, since the Portuguese have been chased thence. Some of the *Romy*s priests now and then come to say mass in the neighbouring villages, whither the people flock in great numbers; tho' to speak truth, they are

Vol. II.

more heathens than christians. *Toutekoriin* 1662. consumes yearly abundance of foreign commodities, by reason of the great numbers of inhabitants living along this coast, who must be provided from abroad with most things they stand in need of; *Toutekoriin*, otherwise *Tutukuriin*, or rather *Tutukury*, *The village of Toutekoriin*, or *Totokury*, is now, as we told you, the chief of all those seaports, being an open place, but beautified with stately stone buildings. It has three large churches built by the Portuguese, which are to be seen at a great distance at sea, the countrey round about being flat and low. In one of these the reformed exercise their religious worship: Besides which the convent of the *Franciscans* is lately fitted up for the same use.

The Dutch East-India company have a factory here, managed by a merchant as chief governor; by a factor as his deputy; two or three assistants, and a military officer, under whose command are some soldiers, but the *Nayk* of *Madure* will not allow them to erect any fortifications: During my stay here, I begun to erect a brick-wall round the garden, but finding the *Jenives* to look with a jealous eye upon it, I desisted; yet I took care to repair the house of the company, and set their flag on the top of it, which might be seen a good way at sea.

This place was taken by the Dutch from the Portuguese 1658; without much resistance. In the road of *Toutekoriin*, is good anchorage at five fathom water in a sandy bottom.

Three small leagues from *Toutekoriin* near the rocks of *Remanekor*, not far from the kingdom of *Narsinga* lies the village of *Punikael*, where the Portuguese formerly had a fort, and a garrison of 40 men. Two leagues from thence there was a Pagan temple of the *Brabmans* call'd *Trichanduri*, against which and the priests thereof the Portuguese would frequently utter very injurious words, which so exasperated the inhabitants, that they entered into a league with their neighbours, viz. the *Badagas* of *Narsinga*, in order to drive the christians thence: Accordingly, having with a great deal of secrecy got together a body of 6000 men, and received certain intelligence that the Portuguese in the fort were but ill provided with gunpowder (the chief terror of these *Barbarians*) they march'd directly to *Punikael*, the Portuguese being not a little surprized at so unexpected a sight, were put to the greatest nonplus that could be, being in want of ammunition, and no great account being to be made upon the *Parvas* (the christian inhabitants) as being not trained up to military affairs, but living upon

Come over against Tengepatnam.

Come to Toutekoriin.

The seven seaports of Madure.

Their inhabitants.

The village Punikael.

War betwixt the inhabitants and the Portuguese.

U u

upon

1662. upon fishing and swimming: These being sensible of their inability to resist the enemy, no sooner heard of his approach, but they began to betake themselves with their moveables to their boats which lay near the shore, which the *Badagas* endeavouring to prevent, some retired to unpassable places, others to the sea-side, whilst others were exposed to the mercy of the enemy, and with most dreadful outcries implored the assistance of the *Portuguese* in the fort.

About that time a certain priest, named *Anthony Kriminalis*, who was come some days before thither to take care of the christians there, seeing this miserable spectacle, applied himself to *John Ferdinando Korrea*, governor of the fort, remonstrating to him, that since they were not in a condition to oppose the enemy, to endeavour to bring things to an accommodation; but the governor answer'd, that it was against the glory of his king to submit in the least respect to those *Barbarians*; *Kriminalis* made what haste he could to return to his flock, which he met in the church where he had preached the same morning, and led them to the sea-shore, endeavouring as much as he could to see them embark in their boats, whilst he refused to enter himself, being resolved to stay ashore, and to expect the utmost fury of the *Barbarians*, who were advancing apace, and with their arrows had already kill'd several of the *Portuguese* and others, among whom was the interpreter of *Kriminalis*, who was shot by his side, notwithstanding which he remained immovable in his resolution, and wringing his hands up to heaven, fell upon his knees; the first troop of the *Badagas* pass'd by without doing him the least harm, except that they took his hat, and so did the second, but one of the third troops (consisting of *Mahometans*) run a lance into his left side, whilst others let fly their arrows at him, and thinking he had been kill'd came to take his cloaths, which he, being yet alive, gave to them, and so retreated into the church, with an intention to spend the small remainder of his life at the foot of the altar; and being follow'd by the *Badagas*, he there received a second thrust, and soon after a third, which put a period to his life: They afterwards cut off his head, which together with his bloody cloaths they carried in triumph to their temple of *Trichbanduri*; the trunk of the body was afterwards buried by the christians.

Not far from *Punikaal* or *Pommekiel*, lieth a great village call'd *Putanam*, and so further up the coast *Bembar* or *Bempaer*, *Kalekure*, *Beadal*, *Nianankor*, or rather *Romanankoris* and *Kanbameira*; next you see *Negapatnam*, the first frontier of the coast of

*Coromandel*, but one of the chiefest towns of this coast is *Periapatan*, situate near the rocks of *Romanankoris* being the capital city of the *Maravas*, who inhabit the mountains, a barbarous generation, living only upon robbing; the jesuites that formerly belonged to the church of *Periapatan*, did endeavour to reclaim them in some measure from their barbarity, but most of them soon return'd to their old way of living. There is another village seated on the other side of the rocks of *Romanankoris*, directly opposite to *Negapatnam*, the inhabitants of which are all christians. All along the sea-coast are about 30 villages, among which, besides the before-mention'd, are the chiefest, *Trichbandar* or *Trekandar*, *Kallegrande* and *Cberakalle*.

The inhabitants of those places are very black and strong; they are deceitful and cunning, make but little account of their wives, but generally keep two or three harlots, by whom they have sometimes 16 or 18 children. The men wear nothing but a single piece of callicoe wrap'd about their middle, and another piece about their head, which they call *Romare*. The ordinary women commonly wear painted callicoe, those of fashion are adorn'd with gold rings and bracelets when they are abroad, but are very nasty at home. They tie their hair up in a truss behind, like those of *Malabar*, for the rest they have very good features. They live upon meat and rice, but drink nothing but water, from the sea-shore; they live by pearl fishing and catching of fish, by weaving and shipping, there being some who drive a considerable trade with the painted callicoes to *Kalpentien*, *Kolomba* and the *Malabar* coast. They have abundance of callicoe and linnen weavers here, and great numbers of people are employed in painting of callicoes, which they do very artificially. This trade was in great request whilst I was here, because I used to give all imaginable encouragement to them; the inhabitants are govern'd by judges of their own, who are chosen every year by the chief director of the *Dutch* company there, whom they stile the *Captain of the Seven Sea-ports*. Each village has the privilege to propose four, out of which the *Captain* chuses two, who swear fealty to the company; all civil causes are transacted in their respective villages, but criminal matters are decided at *Toutekorin* in the council of nine, whereof the *Captain* is president. The remaining *Portuguese* pay no taxes to the *Dutch* company, but to the *Nayk* of *Madure*; however, this tax is paid with the approbation of the chief director, who al-

1662. lots ev  
substat  
payme  
which  
and ca  
inhabit  
ed in  
rily de  
which  
to him  
fire tha  
whom  
time fo  
the *Nay*  
ficers w  
to him  
ling hin  
ling to  
fill'd wi  
well acc  
token o  
richly e  
ven leap  
*Portugu*  
under th  
ten, a va  
to whom  
taxes; a  
deeper i  
in the w  
them beff  
One of  
to fall o  
his nose  
*Parvas*, t  
and to r  
treymen.  
one of t  
whose no  
and so fen  
having a  
they mar  
near *Tou*  
*Parvas* w  
arm'd, an  
than num  
ragiously,  
field, wit  
men; a g  
to the sea-  
but were f  
tempest fr  
pers'd, th  
them since  
having ma  
pc. ts, came  
promising  
*Moors* hac  
for them  
casion of  
them bein  
ment, oth  
that at las

Bravery of  
Anthony  
Krimina-  
lis.

Men  
and  
of the  
habitant.

Their  
clothing.

Wart be-  
twixt the  
Parvas and  
Moors.

Gover-  
ment.

Is killed.

1662. lots every one his share according to his substance; those who are backward in their payment, must expect speedy execution, which is done by the soldiers of the *Nayk*, and causes frequent quarrels betwixt the inhabitants and the soldiers, as it happened in my time; when the *Nayk* peremptorily demanded the tax from the *Parvas*, which they were not able to pay, I sent to him a serjeant with some soldiers, to desire that he would send a commissioner with whom they might treat, and obtain some time for the payment thereof; upon which the *Nayk* having sent one of his great officers with a body of horse, I remonstrated to him the impossibility of the matter, telling him that the seven seaports were willing to make a present of two silver dishes fill'd with ducats to his master, which was well accounted of, and the *Nayk*, as a token of his satisfaction, sent me a scarf richly embroidered with gold. These seven seaports were formerly (before the *Portuguese* fleets appear'd in these parts) under the government of the king of *Martien*, a vassal of the queen of *Tengauzy*, unto whom they were forc'd to pay many taxes; at which time the *Parvas* lived deeper in the country, and us'd to serve in the wars to such princes as would pay them best.

Wart be-  
twixt the  
*Parvas* and  
*Moors*.

One time a certain *Parvas* happening to fall out with some *Moors*, these cut off his nose and ears, which so exasperated the *Parvas*, that they resolv'd to take up arms, and to revenge the quarrel of their countryman. To begin the fray, they took one of the *Moors*'s merchants prisoners, whose nose and ears they likewise cut off, and so sent him home. Hereupon the *Moors* having assembled a body of 30000 men, they march'd to, and pitch'd their tents near *Toutekoriin*; on the other hand, the *Parvas* were not above 5000 men, and well arm'd, and trusting more to their bravery than number, fell upon the *Moors* so courageously, that they made them quit the field, with the slaughter of 7000 of their men; a great number of them being forc'd to the sea-shore, saved themselves in boats, but were scarce got to sea, when by a strong tempest from the S. W. they were dispersed, that no news was ever heard of them since. After this victory the *Parvas* having made themselves masters of these seaports, came to a composition with the queen, promising to pay her the same taxes as the *Moors* had done, which being impossible for them to perform, this proved the occasion of unspeakable miseries; some of them being imprisoned for want of payment, others sold for slaves to that degree, that at last they resolv'd to shake off the

yoke, cost it what it would: The *Portuguese* who 1490 appear'd first thereabouts with their ships from *Cochin*, having at that time traded there for 40 years before, and consequently their strength at sea, being not unknown to the *Parvas*, they sent their deputies to *Cochin* to implore their protection, and to promise their obedience, and that they were ready to embrace the christian faith. The *Portuguese*, willing to improve this opportunity, came with their fleet 1533 on that coast, and having made themselves masters of the seaport towns, the *Parvas* received baptism all on one day. However they met with great opposition afterwards from those on the coasts of *Coromandel* and *Malabar*, encouraged underhand by the *Parvas*, till at last matters were adjust'd thus, that the *Portuguese* should remain masters of the coast, that the *Parvas* should pay them a certain annual tribute, according to their ability, and that all the chief men on that coast should have their share in the pearl fishing, which was to be perform'd on a certain day. After all, the *Nayk* of *Madure* having found means to get into the possession of this country, left the *Portuguese* in the full possession of their jurisdiction over the *Parvas*, and of the free exercise of their religion, in which state it continued till the year 1630, when the king of *Portugal* having sent thither a governor, to clip the wings of the *Romish* clergy, who were grown too powerful there, this occasion'd new troubles; for the *Parvas* being a zealous kind of people, and for the most part at the devotion of the priests, they were divided into two factions, during which intestine commotions the clergy did not forget to improve their authority, and to enrich themselves at the expence of their flock, but the *Jentyves* or *Pagans* also began to encrease to such a degree, that being become formidable to the *Parvas*, they often forc'd them to shelter themselves against their forces in the neighbouring islands. Since that time the *Parvas* acknowledged the jurisdiction of the *Portuguese* governor; each village has two judges, who are changed every year, they keep courts twice a week, and in conjunction with the *Petangiins* (who are hereditary officers) decide all controversies of less moment; they raise the taxes, and are accountable once a year to the people for all their transactions; whilst the *Portuguese* were masters here, the *Jentyves* or *Pagans* durst not exact more taxes from the *Parvas* than was agreed for, unless they would see them go with wife and children to the neighbouring islands, from whence they did not return till they had obtain'd some considerable

1662.



1662. *Parvas* having left off that custom, the *Jentyves* improve it to their advantage, and force them to pay three times as much as they used to do formerly.

The kingdom of the *Nayk* of *Madure*, under whose jurisdiction the seven before-mentioned sea-ports are, borders to the west upon the kingdom of *Travankor* to the east upon the sea, and to the north-west upon the country of the *Nayk* of *Tanjaor* or *Tanjawer*, betwixt the coast of *Malabar* near the cape *Comorin* and *Coromandel*; its whole extent being along the whole eastern gulph or coast opposite to *Ceylon* from the cape *Comorin* (where the coast of *Malabar* ends) to the town of *Bemper* or the river *Ullon*, a tract of 75 leagues in length, and 30 in breadth. The sea-shore, commonly call'd the *Pearl-Coast*, from the many pearl-banks that are hereabouts, extends from south to north in length, and in some places about half a league deep into the country. The capital city and ordinary residence of the *Nayk* is *Madure*, five days journey to the north of *Koulang*; being adorn'd with many most magnificent *Pagodes*, or pagan temples, which have very high turrets gilt on the top. Along the coast of *Madure* neither grass or herb, or plant is to be seen, except thistles and house-leek; it having been found by experience, that the coco-trees would not thrive here no more than several other *Indian* trees; notwithstanding which they are sufficiently provided with all manner of necessaries from the circumjacent country, as well as from abroad, by the way of *Toutekorin*; besides that, the sea-shore abounds in hares and partridges, the first of which resemble our rabbits, their flesh being tough, yet in taste like our hares. The flesh of the partridges, which have red legs and round bills here, is of an agreeable taste.

They have here mice as big as cats, which dare not approach them, for if they be pursued, they will settle upon a chair or chest, and sitting upright, fight and bite like dogs: They are in colour and shape like the *European* mice, except that they are without hair, and have a rough skin like an elephant. They will dig underneath the doors, and do considerable mischief to the merchandizes in the warehouses.

There is also here another sort of mice, red and much lesser than the first, but so fierce, that they will make the cats run before them.

This country also produces serpents, and divers other sorts of venomous creatures. One morning, as I was rising, I found the skin of a serpent sticking to one of the posts of my bedstead, which she had

cast there the night before, without being perceived by me or any body else. In 1662, *October*, *November* and *December*, the western winds blow with such violence, the sand from the adjacent mountains to the shore, that you are not able to open your eyes. Much rain falls deeper in the country, and near the cape *Comorin*, but never at *Toutekorin*, instead of which a thaw falls every night, which is very cold, and consequently, by the sudden alteration of the weather, very unwholesome; the winds being sometimes so excessive hot here, as if they did blow out of a fiery furnace; as long as these winds last, the inhabitants dare not go abroad into the fields for fear of being overwhelm'd by the sand.

The *Nayk* of the kingdom of *Madure* is master of several considerable counties, each of which are govern'd by a peculiar governor; besides which, there is one governor-general, who has the chief management of the whole kingdom, who ruled all our time the country, which was called *Boomalapelles*; besides the governors, each village has two judges, who are much respected by the inhabitants. The *Nayk* to secure himself of the fidelity of his governors, detains always their wives and children in a certain castle call'd *Zwela Baddy*, about seven leagues from *Madure*, under the guard of 300 eunuchs; neither are the husbands permitted to see them without peculiar licence from the *Nayk*, and are obliged to depart again in two or three days; some to avoid this inconveniency, content themselves with harlots. Most of the inhabitants of the country of *Madure* are *Jentyves* or pagans, (by some they are call'd *Badagas*) tho' some of them have been converted to the *Romish* faith by the *Portuguese*. The *Jentyves* are accounted good soldiers, yet much inferior to the *Malabars*, witness the wars the *Nayk* of *Tanigot*, tho' much inferior in power, wages against them.

There are three *Nayks* in this part of the *Indies*, viz. the *Nayk* of *Madure*, the *Nayk* of *Tanjaor*, by the *Dutch* call'd the *Tanjower* and *Tanjawer*, and sometimes *Taaver*, and the *Nayk* of *Gingi*, otherwise call'd *Cingie*, or *Cbengier*. The word *Nayk*, *Neyk*, or *Najeka*, signifies as much as a governor, vassal or viceroi, their predecessors having in ancient times been only governors of those countries they are now possessed of under the jurisdiction of the kings of *Vidia Najar* or *Bijnagar*, or *Narsinga*; but having revolted against their liege lord, each of them assumed the royal power and title. The *Nayk* of *Madure* had been for a considerable time in war with the *Nayk* of *Tanjaor*, and taken many places



out being  
elfe. In  
the west-  
ence, the  
ins to the  
open your  
the coun-  
but never  
thaw falls  
and con-  
ion of the  
the winds  
here, as if  
urnace; as  
nhabitants  
ds for fear  
nd.

1662.  
*Madure* is  
countries,  
a peculiar  
re is one  
chief ma-  
who ruled  
was called  
nors, each  
uch respect-  
ayk to fe-  
his gover-  
and child-  
ela Baddy,  
ure, under  
her are the  
without pe-  
are oblig-  
three days;  
y, content  
t of the in-  
*Madure* are  
y are call'd  
have been  
y the Por-  
anted good  
the Mala-  
of Tanigos,  
ges against

his part of  
*Madure*, the  
b call'd the  
sometimes  
, otherwise  
word *Nayk*,  
ch as a go-  
predecessors  
only gover-  
re now pos-  
ion of the  
r, or *Nar-*  
against their  
ed the royal  
*Madure* had  
in war with  
aken many  
places

- 1 *Toule Courry*
- 2 *Governors house*
- 3 *The Church*
- 4 *The House therunto belonging*
- 5 *St Paul*
- 6 *A Chappel*
- 7 *A Heap of Pearle Oyster shells*
- 8 *Marchants of divers Nations*
- 9 *The Pearle ship men*
- 10 *Governors Seat*
- 11 *Tents where all sorts of Provisions are Sold while the Pearle Fishery Continues*
- 12 *The Alt: called y<sup>e</sup> Bellegrate or Ratselgate*

The PEARLE FISH  
TOURNEY



The PEASANT FISHERY near  
TOURTE COURYN.



1662. place  
was re  
and t  
a grea  
dure  
a few  
from  
of M  
victor  
to me  
firing  
it was  
side, l

*The Pearl-Bank.* Betw  
seven  
are div  
for wh  
Pearl-  
perly  
sometim  
rocks,  
pearls,  
no bod  
about  
fathom  
they ca  
of thos  
under  
after w  
pearls a  
ral that  
pearl-ba  
whether  
maturit  
ber, wh  
clear he  
ced tha  
full perf  
appoint  
countre  
ther fro  
from A  
up their  
pearls.

*Pearl-fishing  
how per-  
form'd.* They  
shells co  
called  
(of the  
each of  
serve in  
nay for  
one after  
naked,  
thin wa  
ing dow  
their ha  
the oyft  
has alfo  
and 50  
the swi  
top, wh  
when th  
foot into  
Vol.

1662. places from him: At my time the war was renewed with more vigour than ever; and the *Nayk* of *Tanjaor* having gathered a great army, attack'd the *Nayk* of *Madure* so briskly, that he took from him in a few days all the places he had conquered from him before. The army of the *Nayk* of *Madure* being much disheartened by the victories of their enemies, the *Madure* sent to me, to *Koulang*, his chief governor, desiring assistance from the company; but as it was not our interest to engage on any side, I excused it as handsomely as I could.

The Pearl-Banks.

Between the coast of *Madure*, where the seven villages are, and the isle of *Ceylon*, are divers famous pearl banks by the sea, for which reason this tract is called the *Pearl-Fishery*. These pearl-banks are properly rocks of white coral stone, which sometimes are covered with sand; on these rocks, the oyster-shells, containing the pearls, are fastened, but in what manner no body knows. Some of those banks are about 12 or 13 fathoms, and others at 15 fathoms distance from the shore, so that they can scarce be seen from thence: Some of those banks are five, six or seven fathom under water. The oysters live six years, after which time the shells open and the pearls are lost; of which I have seen several that were shown me by the divers. These pearl-banks are search'd every year to see whether the shells are come to their full maturity: This is commonly done in *October*, when the weather is calm, and the sea clear hereabouts. After they are convinced that the said oysters are come to their full perfection, the time of pearl-fishing is appointed and proclaimed throughout the country, so that the merchants resort thither from the other part of the *Indies*, nay, from *Arabia* and *Turkey* it self, who let up their tents near the sea-side, to buy the pearls.

Pearl-fishing boats perform'd.

They fish for pearls, or rather the oyster-shells containing the pearls, in certain boats called *Tonnis*, being about 28 foot long, (of these you shall see 3 or 400 at time,) each of which has 7 or 8 stones, which serve instead of anchors, and 5, 6 or 7, nay sometimes 8 divers, who are to dive one after another. These divers are quite naked, being covered only with a kind of thin wastecloth; they have each a net hanging down from the neck, and gloves on their hands, wherewith they are to pick the oysters from the rocks; each of them has also a stone of about a foot in length, and 50 pound weight, to make him dive the swifter: This stone has a hole on the top, wherewith it is fasten'd to a rope; when they are going to dive, they set their foot into a kind of a stirrup, laying hold

VOL. II.

with their left-hand of the rope, the other end of which is held by one in the boat, stopping their nose with the right-hand to hold in their breath, and so go to the bottom; where they are no sooner come, but they give a signal, by pulling the rope, for those in the boat to pull up the stone.

This done, to work they go, and scraping the shells from the rocks, fill their nets, and then pull again the rope, when those in the boat draw up the nets first, and soon after the divers, who are succeeded continually by fresh ones. These divers can hold their breath four times as long as other people; they are obliged to dive from 3 fathoms to 15, being not able to hold their breath any longer. These boats commonly go to sea every morning by break of day, with the land-winds, and return in the afternoon with the sea-winds. Those who equip those boats, hire both the divers and the rest of the boat's crew at a certain price *per diem*, like as we do our day-labourers. All the oyster-shells are brought ashore, and there laid up in a great heap, till the pearl fishery is over, which begins immediately after *October*, and continues all the *November* and *December*, which makes the oysters smell very strong, and sometimes occasions distempers. The pearl-fishing being over, a wooden house is erected for the company and the *Nayk*, where each receives his share, the boats being obliged to fish one day for the *Nayk*, and another for the company; and these take care that they be not disturbed in their fishing, the governor and two judges being every day near the sea-shore, to decide such differences as arise betwixt them. At last the oyster-shells are opened in the before-mention'd house, in the presence of certain commissioners; every oyster-shell does not contain pearls, nay, the most are either without any, or have at least very small ones: On the other hand, some shells contain five, six, seven, nay eight pearls apiece. Some of these pearls are found in the liquor, some in the flesh of the oysters, others, but few, are fasten'd to the shells, of which last I keep several by me. The pearls being all taken out of the shells, are put into sifts of different holes, and according to their different sizes are sold to the surest bidder: The pearl-dust is bought and sold by the *Dutch*. They stew and eat the flesh of these oysters, but it is somewhat rank and hardy, not comparable in taste to our *English* oysters. They give the pearls a glance by rubbing them with salt and powder'd rice. Out of the shells *dust* they make a very fine mortar.

They have two sorts of pearl-dust, the old and the new: The new pearl dust is

X x x

search'd

1662.

1662. search'd after daily by the women among the dirt and rubbish of the oysters: The old pearl-dust is dug out upon the very brink of the sea-shore, dirt, sand and all, sometimes six, seven or eight foot deep; this they let dry altogether in the sun, and by degrees the dust being blown away by the wind, the black pearl-dust remains behind, which they bring to those in small parcels, who have given them some money beforehand. This pearl-dust being the worst of the two, and of no great value, these poor wretches can scarce get a half-penny a day for their labour, a wretched gain indeed, but sufficient to keep them from starving in this country.

The horns  
of Siankos

Besides the pearl-oyster, they also catch on this coast certain horns call'd *Siankos* by the inhabitants, being in shape long; round and thick, and very white; out of these they make bracelets and thumb-rings, which they make use of in drawing their bows, being valued much beyond Ivory. This product of the sea is found at 8 or 12 fathom depth, in a tract of the sea of about 10 leagues in length, from the coast of *Vyraamdes Laam* to *Ilba Dooe*. They begin to fish for it in the middle of *December* till the middle of *May*, when the sea hereabouts beginning to be unclear, the divers cannot without great danger go to the bottom. Among these sea-horns they now and then, (tho' scarce once in 100 years) meet with one they call the *King's-Horn*, being not to be distinguish'd from the rest, except by the opening, which is on the contrary side, being red within and green without; they are said to swim before the rest, which follow them like their king; for which reason it is, that the kings of *Golconda*, and several other *Indian* kings are accounted out of one of these horns, which makes them to be in great esteem here, especially among the *Jentyves*, who will sometimes give 800 reals for such a horn. Whilst I was hereabouts, a certain fisherman dream'd that he had taken a king's-horn, which he telling to one of his comrades, they agreed, that they would go immediately to try, and divide the booty; accordingly they did, and he who had dream'd the night before, catch'd a king's-horn, but refusing to give to his comrade his share, they went before the judges, who were obliged to decide in favour of the dreamer, the other having no witnesses to prove his bargain. I bought the same horn afterwards for 170 reals, and was offered 20 reals gain immediately after, by one of the judges. These *Siankos* are sold at a dear rate at *Bengal*, where they have a way of polishing them, that they shine with a most lovely white,

much beyond any ivory: They make bracelets and other ornaments of them.

As the fishing of these horns is one of the main subsistence of the inhabitants on this coast, so they must be carefully look'd after, that under pretence of fishing for them, they don't dive for oysters, for which reason certain people are maintained to watch them. I remember they once brought up a moorish boat belonging to *Kalitpatnam*, which under pretence of fishing for *Siankos*, had been found among the pearl-banks; when they came before me, I found upon a strict examination, that extreme poverty had enforced them thereunto, and so dismissed them for that time. Some are of opinion, that the pearl-dust dug on the sea-shore, has lain there ever since the isle of *Ceylon* and the *Maldivo* islands, were torn from the continent, when the pearl-shells were cast up by the floods here, and opening themselves, were confum'd by degrees, leaving the pearls under ground. The pearl-dust is gather'd by the men during those intervals, when they can't go a fishing, but when they are abroad at sea their wives and children do it in their stead. Abundance of divers are devour'd by the sharks, against which they pretend to defend themselves by certain incantations, notwithstanding they are christians.

After I had settled my accounts at *Toulé-koriin*, I prepared for my journey to *Koulang*, I prepared for my journey to *Koulang*, and accordingly as I told you, set out the 19<sup>th</sup> of *May* 1665, under a guard of some soldiers, and with an attendance of some porters to carry my baggage and provisions, there being no inns by the way, and in many places not the least thing to be got for money. We had scarce travell'd a day but were met by a troop of *Malabar* robbers, arm'd with bows and arrows ready to let fly at us: They had already laid hold of two slaves, who were carrying some *Persian* wine, but seeing the soldiers ready to discharge their firelocks among them, they thought it their best way to retire, and finding us continually upon our guard, quite to leave us at last. We pass'd that dreadful ridge of mountains call'd *Balligate*, extending 120 leagues in length, and is cover'd with a very fine red land, which being as light as dust, is in *October*, *November* and *December* blown by the continual strong west winds as far as the isle of *Ceylon*, a tract of at least 50 leagues; whence it is probable, that these mountains are not so high now as they were in former ages. When the sun casts its rays upon this red land, the reflection thereof appears most dreadful to the eyes in the sky, which seems to be all on fire. This high ridge of mountains

1662.

1662. mou-  
prizi-  
whil-  
rn, i  
June  
sum-  
of th  
cont-  
whil-  
lovely  
are g-  
winds  
fudden  
by th  
are o-  
sand t  
dered  
after.  
Ha-  
arrive  
abouts  
Purfa  
draw t  
compa  
with o-  
dered  
what e  
pull'd  
two fo  
out of  
dation  
1<sup>st</sup> of J  
imagina  
I went  
way of  
vernor  
of Koula  
best adv  
After  
my retu  
by so vi  
ed to le  
but the  
being m  
ney to A  
after I le  
The w  
continui  
ed, that  
then at  
the same  
with a co  
of Kalka  
with lette  
fer to th  
enterpriz  
without  
tiers, tha  
in his de  
ted into  
piced, wh  
tire; ho  
time in it

Come to  
Koulang.

Go to  
Cochin.

The moun-  
tains of  
Balligate



1662. mountains does likewise occasion most surprising alterations in the season; so that whilst on the north-side of the cape *Comorin*, it is winter during the months of *May, June, July, August, and September*; it is summer at the same time on the south-side of that cape; on one side you meet with continual tempests, thunder and lightning, whilst the other enjoys an agreeable and lovely season. About that time black clouds are gathering upon these mountains by the winds, which break out into very hard and sudden rains, occasioning great water floods, by the overflowing of the rivers, which are oftentimes thereby choak'd up with sand to that degree, that they are rendered unnavigable for a considerable time after.

Comes to  
Koulang.

Having at last passed the mountains I arrived the 25<sup>th</sup> of *May* at *Koulang*, whereabouts I found all the fields under water. Pursuant to the orders I had received, to draw the city of *Koulang* into a narrower compass, and to fortify it on the land-side with one wall and two demibastions, I ordered all the houses, churches, trees, and what else stood in our way to be cut or pull'd down; and 30000 stones, each of two foot long and one broad, to be cut out of the quarries; so that the first foundation of these fortifications being laid the 1<sup>st</sup> of *July*, the same was continued with all imaginable diligence. In the mean while I went in an inland bark to *Cochin*, by the way of *Kalkalang*, to confer with the governor *Kolfer* how to regulate the factories of *Koulang, Kalkalang* and *Karnopoly*, to the best advantage of the company.

Goes to  
Cochin.

After a stay of three days at *Cochin*, in my return to *Koulang*, we were surprized by so violent a tempest, that we were forced to leave the bark and to get ashore, but the next day the violence of the wind being much abated, we prosecuted our journey to *Koulang*, where I arrived the 4<sup>th</sup> day after I left *Cochin*.

The war among some of the *Indian* kings continuing as yet, it was generally reported, that the king of *Travankoor* (who was then at *Manjassi*, tho' the queen resided at the same time at *Koulang*) was marching with a considerable force to attack the fort of *Kalkalang*, whereupon I sent our factor with letters from our chief director *Mr. Kolfer* to the king, to know the reason of this enterprize: But he was forced to return without any other answer from his courtiers, than that the king being employed in his devotions, no body could be admitted into his presence till that time was expired, which was likely to hold for some time; however the army did remain all the time in its former camp, without commit-

ting any hostilities: In the mean while I had taken effectual care to provide for the security of *Koulang*, the walls advancing apace, and being in such forwardness, that we hoped in a little time to bring them to perfection; this being the only thing that stay'd me at *Koulang*; for as the time of my contract with the company began to come near a period, I began to make preparations for my return into *Holland*. But *Mr. Jacob Hufart* being gone to *Batavia*, and *Mr. Goens* put in his place, I happened to have some difference with him concerning the government of *Toutekoriin*, which rose to that height, that he ordered me immediately from *Koulang* to the city of *Kolombo* in the isle of *Ceylon*, leaving captain *Van Reele* governor of *Koulang*.

The season for sea-voyages (which must be exactly observed in these parts) being then expired, I was forced to travel for above 60 leagues along the sea-shore, with no small difficulty, there being no such thing as an inn to be met with hereabouts, or any other convenient lodgings, unless you meet with some charitable popish priest or other, who will receive you into his house, most of the inhabitants along this shore being *Roman Catholics*, who have here and there a small church. However, after some troublesome days journey I came safely to *Toutekoriin*, where I found the *Mary* yacht ready to transport me to *Kolombo*, where I arrived the next day, viz. the 18<sup>th</sup> of *Sept.* 1666, I stay'd here above a whole year; when I resolv'd to go aboard the *Brederoo* yacht bound for *Batavia*, where I landed the 20<sup>th</sup> of *August* 1667, without meeting with any thing remarkable at sea. I continued for three whole years at *Batavia*, without being engaged in the companies service, and in 1670 return'd thence into *Holland*. During those three years, I had sufficient opportunity to take a full view of the city, both within and without, in which I was so curious, as not only to make draughts of all its publick structures, but also of such plants and trees as grow in and about that city; tho' to confess the truth, the same could oftentimes not be undertaken without great hazard, as well from the wild beasts, as from the barbarous *Javanese*, so that I durst not venture far out of the town without a good guard; but before I proceed to give you a description of the living creatures, trees, fruits and plants, and of the city of *Batavia* itself, in the isle of *Java*, it will be requisite I should give you an account before-hand of the situation of this great island.

The isle known generally by the name of *Great Java*, to distinguish it from the *Lesser Java*, otherwise call'd *Bati*, lies six degrees

The author  
is sent to  
Kolombo.

Comes to  
Kolombo.

The isle of  
Great Java.

1662. degrees to the south of the line, directly opposite to the south-point of the isle of *Sumatra*, from which it is separated only from the straits of *Sunda*, where the same is not above four or five leagues over. To the north lies the isle of *Borneo*, betwixt which and this isle there is a convenient passage for small vessels; to the east it has the isle of *Bati*, or the *Lesser Java*, from which it is divided by the channel of *Balambuan*, and to the south by the main ocean. Its length from the straits of *Sunda* to the channel of *Balambuan*, viz. from E. to W. inclining however a little to the S. and N. is about 130 or 140 leagues; its breadth is very different, but the whole circumference is computed at 300 leagues: The north coast of *Java* has abundance of very commodious creeks, bays, harbours, and goodly towns, with many little islands near the shore. In former times the isle of *Java* had as many petty kings as there were cities, but now adays it is divided into two kingdoms only, the one of which is under the jurisdiction of the emperor of *Mataram*, the other under the king of *Bantam*. The first is in the possession of the eastern and greatest part of the isle, the other of the western and lesser part; for since the emperor of *Mataram* (call'd also the emperor of *Great Java* by the *Dutch*) had once found means to subdue his petty neighbours, he soon extended his conquests all over the eastern parts of this isle: The emperor who reign'd all the time of my being there, was a young prince named *Soujoubonnan Ingelaga*, the son of *Sulthan Mabomet*.

Unto one or other of these two potent princes all the rest are obliged to pay homage, tho' there be also as yet remaining some petty sovereignties along the sea-coasts, besides what belongs to the city of *Batavia*.

In the eastern parts of *Batavia* are the cities *Balambuan*, *Panarukan*, *Passarvan*, *Jcartan*, *Surabaya*, *Brandaon*, *Sydayo*, *Tubaon*, *Kajaon*, *Japare*, *Pati*, *Dauma*, *Samarang* and *Mataram*, the residence of the emperor of *Java*. To the west, near the sea are *Taggel*, *Charabaon*, *Dermayaon*, *Maukaon*, *Karavaon* and *Batavia*, of the coast of which we intend to give you a short but exact account. About 10 or 12 leagues from *Batavia* is the famous city of *Bantam*, where the *English* have a factory, and a considerable traffick.

The *Javanese* are a barbarous, proud, and fierce nation, of a brown colour, with flat faces, and thin, short, coal black hair, large eye-brows, and large cheeks. They boast themselves to be descended from the ancient *Chinese*, unto whom they resemble

in some respects, having very small eyes with large eye-lids. The men are very robust and strong limb'd, and well fitted for the war; the women are but small. The men wear a piece of callicoe wrap'd two or three times round their bodies; people of fashion have them with gold flowers or streaks. The women wear it from under their arm-pits down to their knees, all the rest bare. They marry sometimes two or three wives, and perhaps keep divers concubines besides, according to their ability. Lying and cheating is a daily practice with them. Those living near the sea-side are for the most part *Mabometans*, which was introduced there about 150 years ago. In the inland countries they are generally *Pagans*, abstaining from feeding upon any living creatures. When they are to consult about matters of moment it is done in the night time.

The isle of *Java* is very fertile, tho' a great part thereof be not known hitherto; it has very high mountains, reaching to the very clouds, witness the pepper mountain on the south-side of the land; it has likewise impassable forests and wildernesses; but to the north, betwixt *Batavia* and *Bantam*, is a very populous country, full of rice fields, and all sorts of tame and wild creatures; hereabouts also is salt and pepper to be found, but not so good as that at *Malabar*, besides most other sorts of *Indian* fruits, which are sold in great plenty at *Batavia*. They abound also in fish, are well stor'd with hogs, oxen, sheep and other tame beasts, the flesh whereof is of a very good taste; fowl both wild and tame they have in great plenty; but the woods have also large tigers, rhinoceros's and divers other wild beasts; in the rivers you see also often *Crocodiles*, call'd *Kaymans* by the *Indians*.

The air or climate of *Batavia* is in my opinion as temperate and healthy as any place whatever in the *Indies*; the east and west winds blowing all the year long along the shore, besides the ordinary land and sea winds. The seasons of the year run here in the same manner as in *Europe*, except that the sun passes twice a year directly over their heads; the most agreeable season begins in *May*, which continues with continual breezes from the east, and a very serene sky till *November*; when the winter season approaching it rains sometimes continually for three or four days without intermission, which fets all the low grounds under water, which however has this convenience, that it kills and washes away all insects, which else would prove very noxious to the fruits. This season ends about *May*, when the dark clouds beginning

Java has two kingdoms.

Cities of Java.

Manners and customs of the Javanese.

1662.

Their clothes.

Religion.

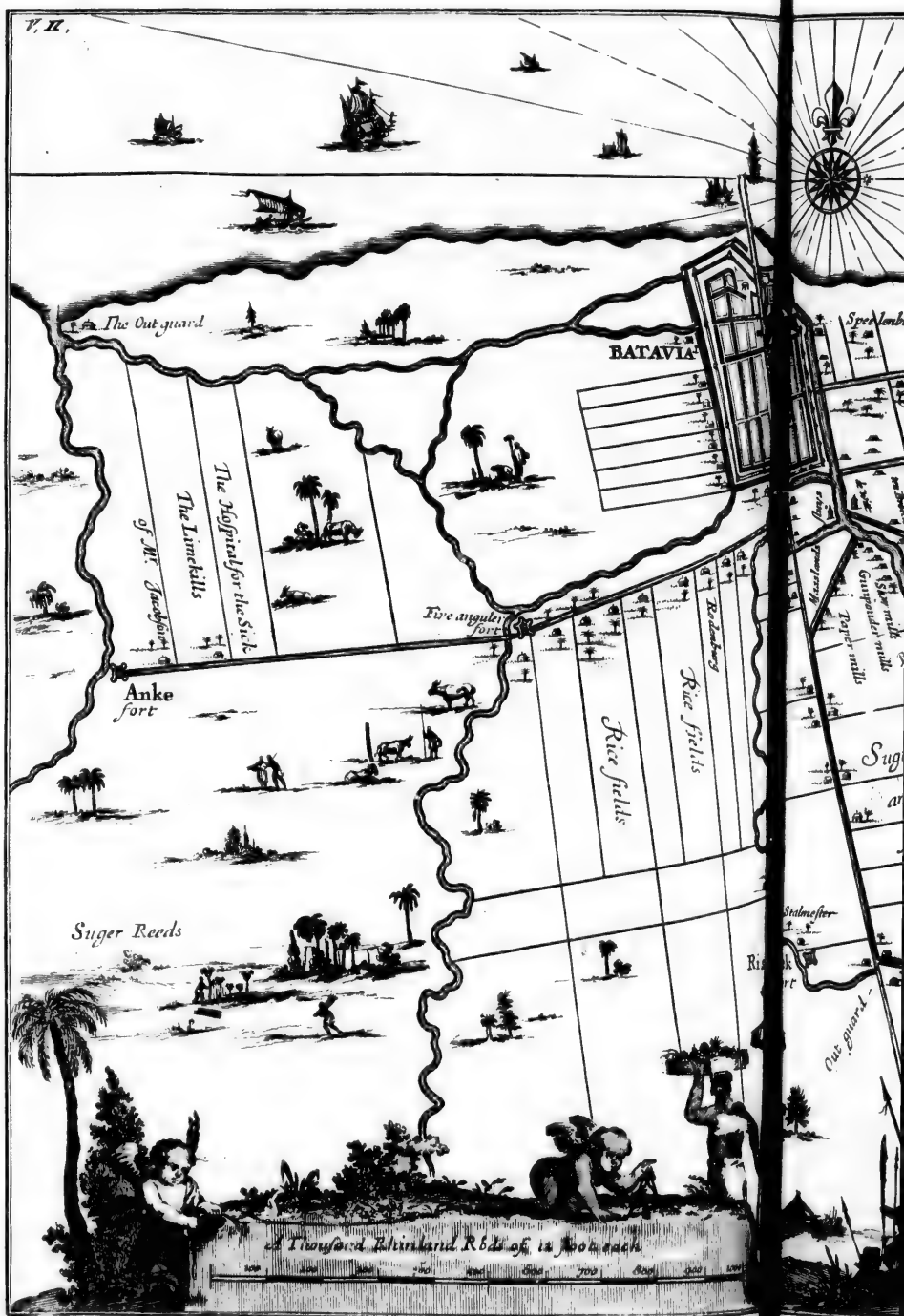
The fertility.

The air and season.

all eyes 1662.  
e very  
l fitted  
l. The  
two or *Their*  
ople of *clabun*.  
ers or  
under  
all the  
two or  
rs con-  
ability.  
ce with  
ide are *Religin*.  
ch was  
go. In  
lly Pa-  
on any  
consult  
e in the

tho' a *th ferti-*  
therto; *luy*.  
ning to  
moun-  
; it has  
rnesses;  
nd *Ban-*  
full of  
nd wild  
nd pep-  
as that  
s of *In-*  
plenty  
fish, are  
and o-  
is of a  
ne they  
ds have  
ivers o-  
see also  
the *In-*

in my *The air*  
as any *and/jes*.  
aft and  
g along  
and and  
ear run  
ope, ex-  
r direct-  
greable  
ies with  
d a very  
e winter  
nes con-  
hout in-  
grounds  
his con-  
es away  
ve very  
ends a-  
ginning  
to



The Out-guard

BATAVIA

The Hospital for the Sick  
The Lunatics  
of Mr. Jacobson

Anke  
fort

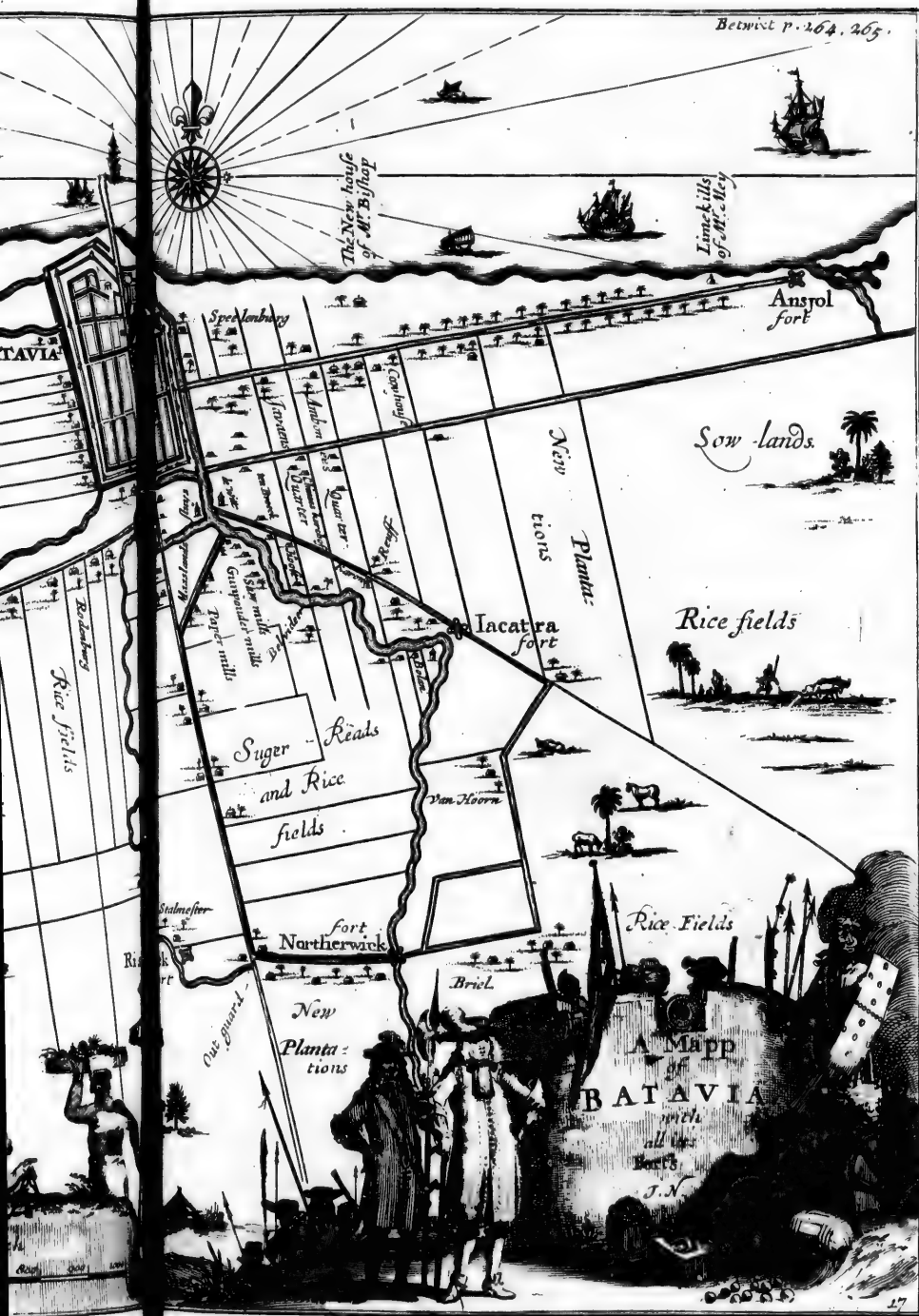
Five angular  
fort

Rice fields

Rice fields

Sugar Reeds

A Thousand English R 6 1/2 of 12 for each



1662. to diff  
renity  
violent  
here ;  
interm  
and lig  
and th  
June is  
In July  
in Septe  
ber affo



Batavia. The  
many y  
first esta  
and is no  
Kalakka  
tree, whi  
the frui  
ka. Th  
likewise  
by the I  
Not lon  
the Indi  
pen vill  
it was f  
lades o  
more pe  
wage w  
some or  
with ver  
avia lie  
Vo



1662. to dispe. the sky assumes its former serenity; in *December* the west winds blow so violently, that there is no going by sea here; in *February* it is changeable weather, intermix'd with sudden storms of thunder and lightning; in *March* they begin to sow, and this month produces some fruit; in *June* is the most agreeable time of the year. In *July* the sugar and rice begins to ripen; in *September* it is the best time, and the *October* affords them plenty of all sorts of fruits.

The happy temperature of the climate produces such plenty of all sorts of necessaries, that there are very few countries that can compare with this island; the pleasant river rising in the mountains divides itself into many branches, and waters the circumjacent country, and afterwards recollecting its channels, passes thro' the midst of *Batavia*, (which it divides in two parts) and there exonerates into the sea.



Batavia.

The city of *Batavia*, which got its name many years ago from the *Dutch* after their first establishment in those parts, was first, and is now by the *Javanese* and *Chinese* call'd *Kalakka*; from the fruit of a palm or cocotree, which grows very plentiful hereabouts; the fruit of which the *Javanese* call *Kalakka*. The *Indians* call it *Jacata*, derived likewise from a certain fruit call'd *Jaccas* by the *Indians*, and *Sebrookzak* by the *Dutch*. Not long before the *Mahometans* settled in the *Indies*, *Batavia* was no more than an open village, inhabited by *Pagans*; at first it was surrounded only with a row of palades of bamboo canes, but as it became more populous, the inhabitants began to wage war against the king of *Bantam*, and some other neighbouring princes, and that with very good success. The city of *Batavia* lies at 5 deg. 50 min. off southern latitude.

Vol. II.

at the north-side of the isle of *Java*, in a large but fenny plain before it to the south; it is surrounded with abundance of small islands, and to the north or land-side with woods and high mountains. It is divided into two parts by a river, is of a quadrangular figure, fortified with a wall of stone, and 22 bastions; the names whereof are *Amsteldam*, *Middelburg*, *Delft*, *Rotterdam*, *Hoorn*, *Enkhuysen*, *Vienna*, *Gelderland*, *Katzenelbogen*, *Orange*, the *New-gate*, *Hollandia*, *Dieft*, *Nassau*, *Zeeland*, *Utrecht*, *Friesland*, *Overysel*, *Groningen*, *Zewburg*, *Kuilenburg*, and the *Middlepoint*. The ditch underneath the wall was in the year 1670, surrounded with a quick-set hedge of thorns; it has four great gates, two whereof are very stately and artificially built by the famous *John Listing*, on the south-side; the first 1630, and the other 1657. The third gate

Y y

1662. gate is on the east-side call'd *Rotterdam*, and the fourth call'd *Utrecht* on the west-side. The city of *Batavia* is situate in a bay, extending to the east as far as the cape

of *Karvunt*, and to the west as far as the cape call'd the *Rough Point*, towards *Bantam*, which lies on the same shore, about twelve leagues from *Batavia*.

1662.



The harbour.

Both within and without this bay lie about 17 or 18 islands, upon which the violence of the winds and waves being broken and check'd, this renders the road of *Batavia* one of the safest harbours of the whole world, being able to contain above 1000 vessels at once; small vessels and barks lie commonly close under the banks of the river, where they may lie without anchors in a muddy bottom; the river is lined with stones on both sides as far as the boom, which is shut up every night at nine a clock, and guarded by a good number of soldiers, besides which, there is cut a channel out of the main river, for the reception of smaller vessels; no vessel passes the boom without paying a certain custom, every vessel that fetches salt pays a real, and those that carry stones two reals. The ditch without the wall is very broad and deep, and sometimes rises so high, that some of the lowermost streets without the city are laid under water; all the buildings of this city are well contriv'd, most even of the private houses having handsome gardens, well planted with fruit trees and plants and flowers, adorn'd with pearls, springs, pumps, &c.

All the streets of this city run in a straight line, most of them being 30 foot broad; and on both sides near the houses paved with bricks; there are eight streets, which are all well built and inhabited, among which the *Princes-Street* is the chiefest, beginning at the middle point of the castle, and running in a strait line to the town-house, having on each side a cross street. Next to this is the *Lords-Street*, beginning on the north-side over-against the castle, reaching in a direct line to the new gate. The first cross street on the east-side has got the name of *John Tirment*, who built abundance of houses in this street. The second is call'd the *Market-Street*, opposite to which lies the third call'd the *Petawins-Street*: The fourth is call'd the *Street of the Hospital*. As you come out of the castle at the first entrance into the *Princes-Street* is the *Princes-Lane* on the left-hand. These are on the east-side of the river; we will now pass over to the western side; the bank of which is planted with pleasant trees, and adorn'd with houses all in a straight line as far as the *Dist-Gate*. The first street on this side is call'd

as the 1662.  
rds Ban-  
e, about



rua in a *In fine*  
g 30 foot  
the houses  
the streets,  
abited, a-  
the chic-  
nt of the  
t line to  
th side a  
the Lord-  
side over-  
direct line  
street on  
John Tir-  
ies in this  
e Market-  
the third  
fourth is  
you come  
ance into  
ne on the  
st-side of  
er to the  
is plant-  
n'd with  
ar as the  
his side is  
call'd

V. II.



TYGERS GRAY  
BATAVIA.



Tygers Gray





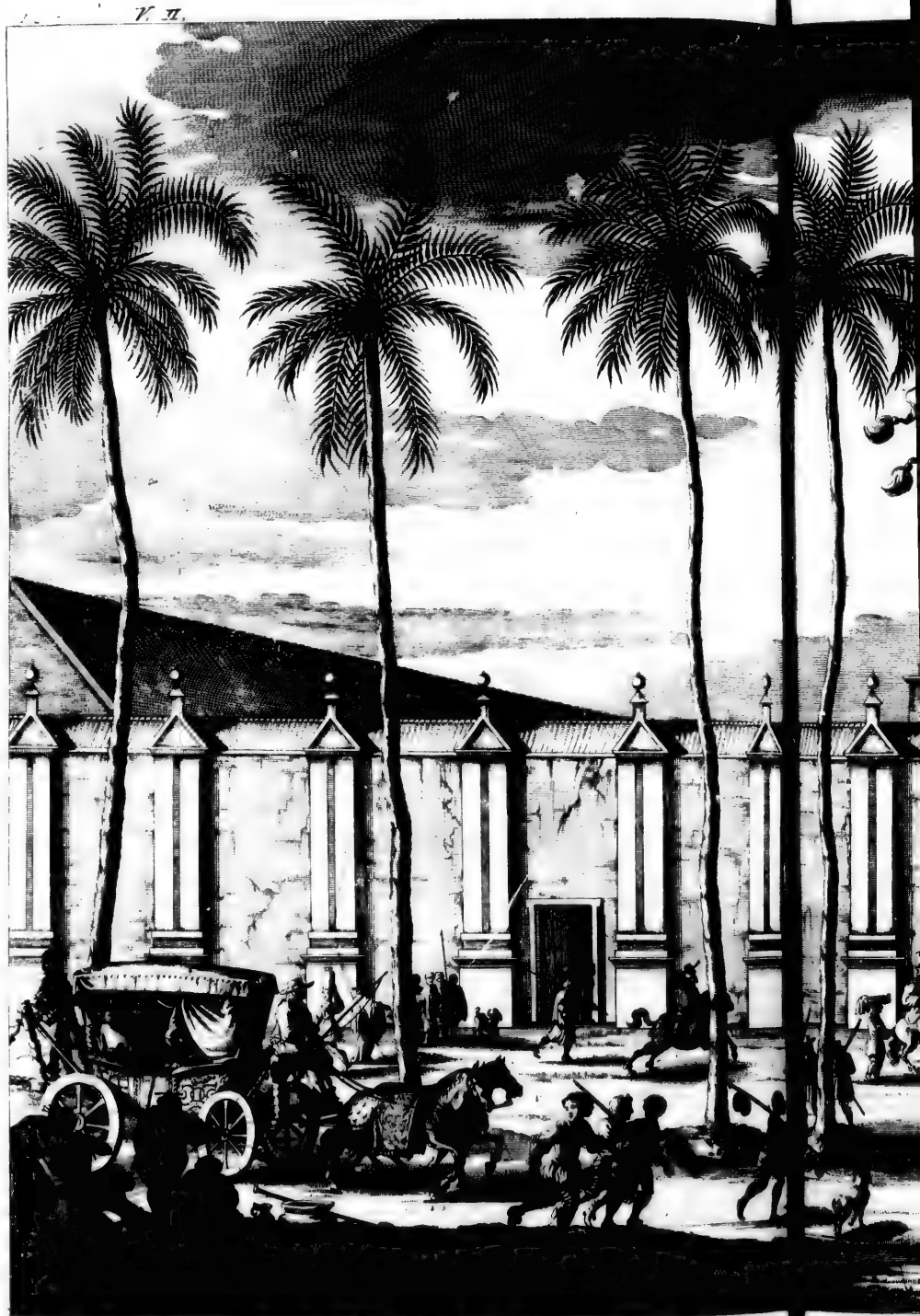










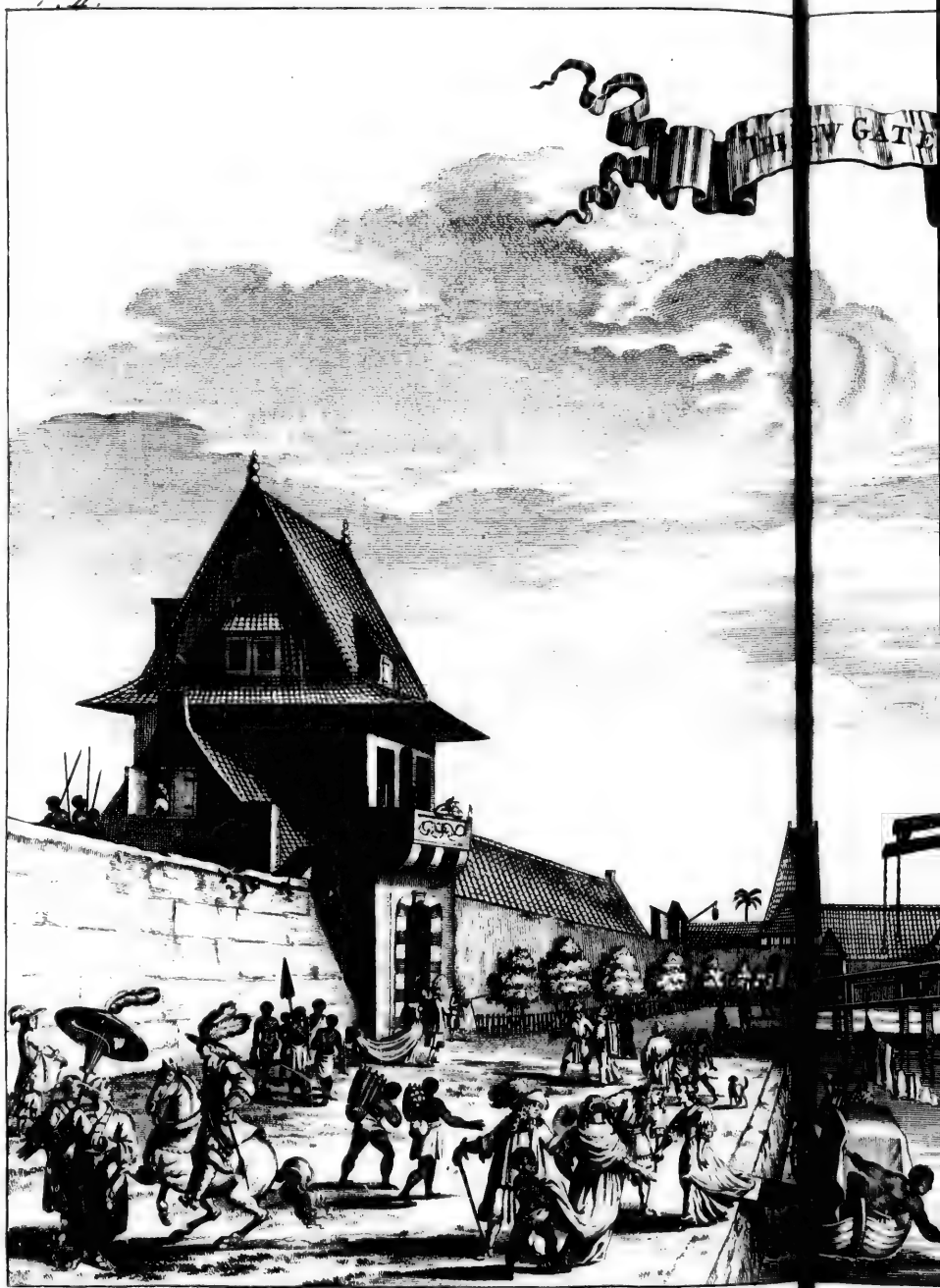












THE NEW GATE



cal  
 int  
 cro  
 wil  
 nin  
 it  
 Bu  
 vie  
 stro  
 riv  
 Ty  
 ple  
 iag  
 alio  
 tha  
 edg  
 tom  
 full  
 twe  
 is a  
 Gra  
 is al  
 next  
 four  
 crof  
 havi  
 Hrr  
 The  
 de  
 with  
 with  
 Burg  
 now  
 The  
 three  
 cerose  
 the t  
 three  
 cross  
 Gra  
 Wba  
 and  
 havi  
 whic  
 call  
 near  
 last  
 one  
 and  
 are  
 stain  
 tion  
 are  
 my  
 the  
 ent  
 thou  
 A  
 the  
 the  
 solid  
 the  
 with

The  
 hick  
 ings of the  
 city



1662. call'd the *Gentlemans-Street*, being divided into two streets by a gracht that comes cross it. The second street comes crosswise thro' this part of the city, beginning at the *Utrecht Bastion*, from whence it has got the name of the *Utrecht-Street*. But now we must look back and take a view of the *Burghwalls* or *Grachts* (being streets with water channels in them) of these there are no less than 15 among which the *Tygers Gracht* is the most stately and most pleasant, both for the goodliness of its buildings, and the ornament of its streets, which afford a very agreeable shadow to those that pass along the street; the channel is edged and lined with stones from the bottom, over which are four stone bridges, sustain'd by as many high stone arches, twelve foot broad each; beside which, there is a wooden bridge at one end. The inward *Gracht* behind the *Carpenters-wharf* (where is also the founding-house) has three bridges; next to this is the *Kaymans Gracht* with four bridges. The first *Gracht* which runs crosswise, is the city's *Inward Burghwall*, having only one bridge: Next to this the *Herb Gracht*, without any bridge at all. The *Sekons Gracht* extending from the *Middle Point* directly to the *Rotterdam-Gate*, with six bridges, and the *Inward Gracht* with one bridge only. These are all the *Burghwalls* and *Grachts* on the east-side; now we must come to those on the west-side. The first is the *Gentlemans Gracht*, with three bridges; the second is call'd the *Rhinoceroses Gracht*, having likewise three bridges; the third is the *City's Inward Gracht*, with three bridges. The first *Gracht* running crosswise to the north, is the *City's Inward Gracht*; the second faces the *Carpenters Wharf*, and is called the *Javaneze Gracht*; and the third is call'd the *Chinese Gracht*, having only one bridge. The fourth *Gracht* which runs crosswise, begins at the bastion call'd *Friesland*, and ends at the new bridge near the *Fish-Market*, having three bridges; last of all, the *City's Inward Gracht* with one bridge. These are all the *Grachts* and *Burghwalls* within the city, over which are laid 56 bridges, most of which are sustain'd by large stone arches, not to mention here the wooden draw-bridges which are over the *Gracht* without the walls. At my first coming to *Batavia* I lodg'd upon the *Tygers Gracht*, so that having sufficient opportunity to take a draught of it, I thought fit to insert it here.

The public buildings of the city

Among the public buildings of this city, the church call'd the *Cross-Church* claims the precedence, being built in 1640, of solid stone: In the midst of the church stands the steeple, being exceedingly beautify'd with iron-work. It has but one bell, which

is only rung before church-time; the stone edgings in the front of the church are artificially carved, and adorned on the top with *Cerberims*. But time which defaces all things, and the air, which is much sharper here than in *Europe*, has in a few years wrought a considerable change in this magnificent structure. The pulpit and seats of the chief men here are very finely wrought and adorned with iron-work and ebony-wood. The vestry is of the same workmanship. This structure is very light-some and lofty, within being adorned with five clear branches of brass brought thither from *Holland*. In the other part of the city, the foundation of the new church was laid during my stay there, and before my departure the brick-work was almost finish'd. In the year 1644, there was also a church built in the castle, of an octagonal figure, being very light within, and flat on the top; the floor covered with well polish'd white and blue stone neatly done: The glass of the *lathorn* on the top was of the best kind, and the pews of the church carv'd very artfully, and made of the best kind of wood the *Indies* afford.

The *Town-House* stands very near in the centre of the city in a spacious place, being built of brick in 1652. It is two stories high, and you ascend into the second by a pair of winding stairs. The great gate is exactly in the middle of the structure, artificially wrought, of the *Corinthian* order, over which is a balcony or gallery of stone, unto which you enter out of the upper-hall. When criminals are to be try'd, a scaffold is erected before the *Town-House*. The windows of this building are in proportion very high and lofty, finely glazed, and on the out-side guarded with iron-work. In this house the courts of justice are kept; here is the meeting of the *Schepers* or senators, as also of the masters of the hospitals, and of the overseers of other places; as also of the court for the direction of military affairs within the city. The inward court is enclosed with a high wall, and a double row of stone-pillars; here the officers of justice have their habitations, and the prison-keeper with his attendants on the west-end of it. It extends from the *Tygers Gracht* to the *Lords-Street*.

The hospital for the sick stands upon the bank of the great river, which runs through the city, betwixt the *New-Gate* and the *Dielt-Gate*. Here such as are sick, and have not wherewithal to provide for themselves, are entertained and cured, there being sometimes 200 or 300 to be seen here at a time, who are all provided with neat lodgings, beddings and other conveniences. In

The hospital for the sick

the

1662. The cross church

The Town House



1662. the out-houses are the apartments for the overseers and their servants, for the doctor, apothecary, surgeon, minister, cash-keeper, treasurer and others, who are to keep the house clean and look after the sick; all these are plentifully maintain'd by the company. Besides those before-mention'd, three persons of note belonging to the company are constituted overseers, who take their turns every week, and see that every thing be done as it ought to be, and especially whether any of them are recovered so far as to be fit for service. Behind it is a square enclosed with a high wall, and planted with trees, which serves for a walking place for those who are upon their recovery; and a door with a wooden bridge reaching a good way into the river, is also made for the taking of the fresh air of the river. The minister, who is appointed to visit the sick, says prayers every morning and evening, when a bell is rung; every Sunday there is a sermon, where all those that are able are obliged to be present.

Spin-  
House.

For the encouraging of virtue, and suppressing of debauchery in lewd women, a spin-house has been erected here, having no windows or prospect but only on the east-side towards the *Burgwall*, where certain iron-rails are made in the gate, with wooded shutters within, which are shut and

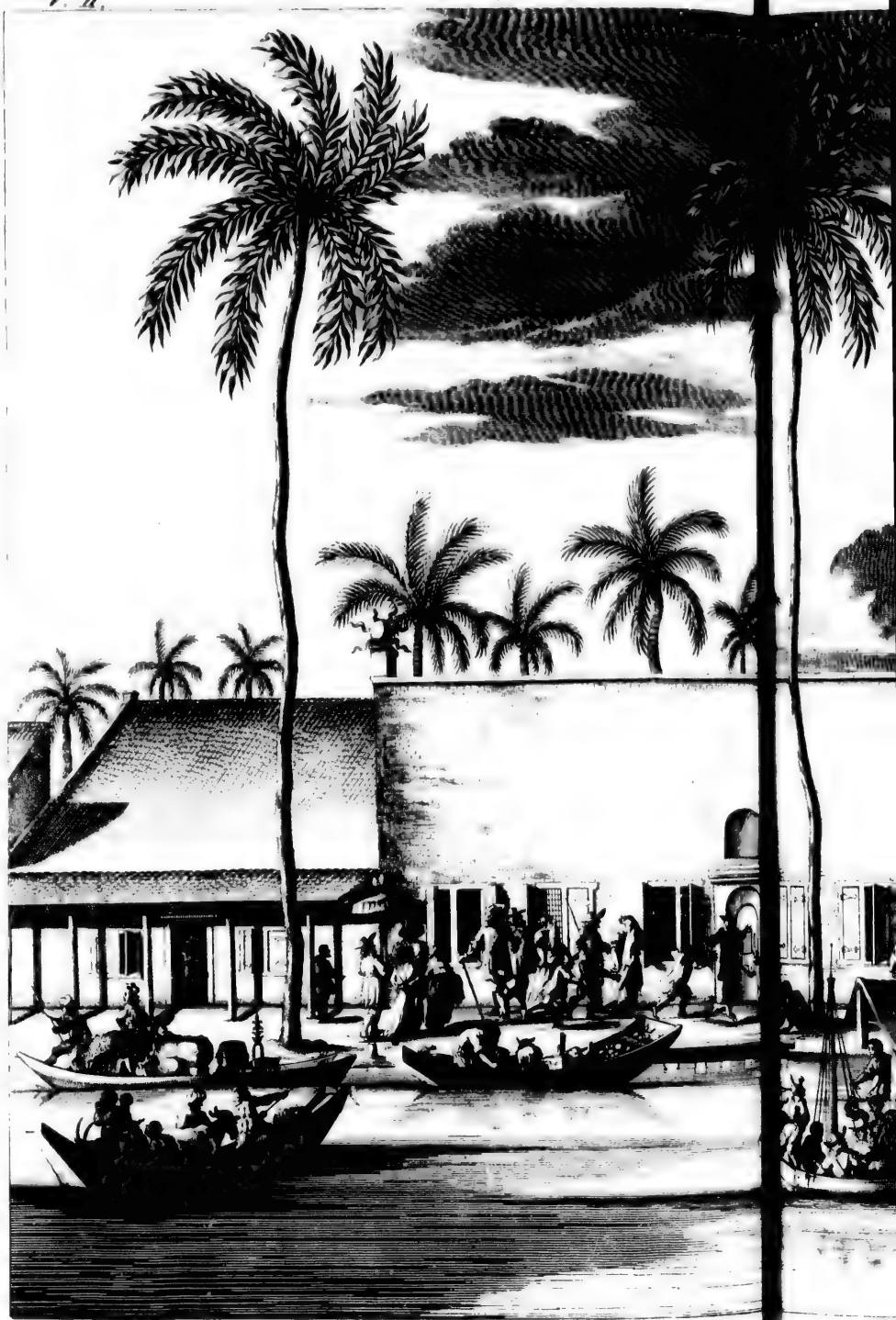
bolted as often as the overseer pleases. 1662. Here the women are reclaim'd from their lewdness by keeping them continually at work, under the tuition of a governess, whose business is to look after the House, and to set them their task, which if they miss to perform, they are sure to be scourged. For the rest, there two members of the senate constituted on purpose for the government of this house, whose business is to be present there every Sunday at the sermon that is held there, for the reclaiming those lewd creatures from their ill course of life. If they commit any misdemeanor which cannot be corrected by scourge, they are punish'd by the ordinary court of justice.

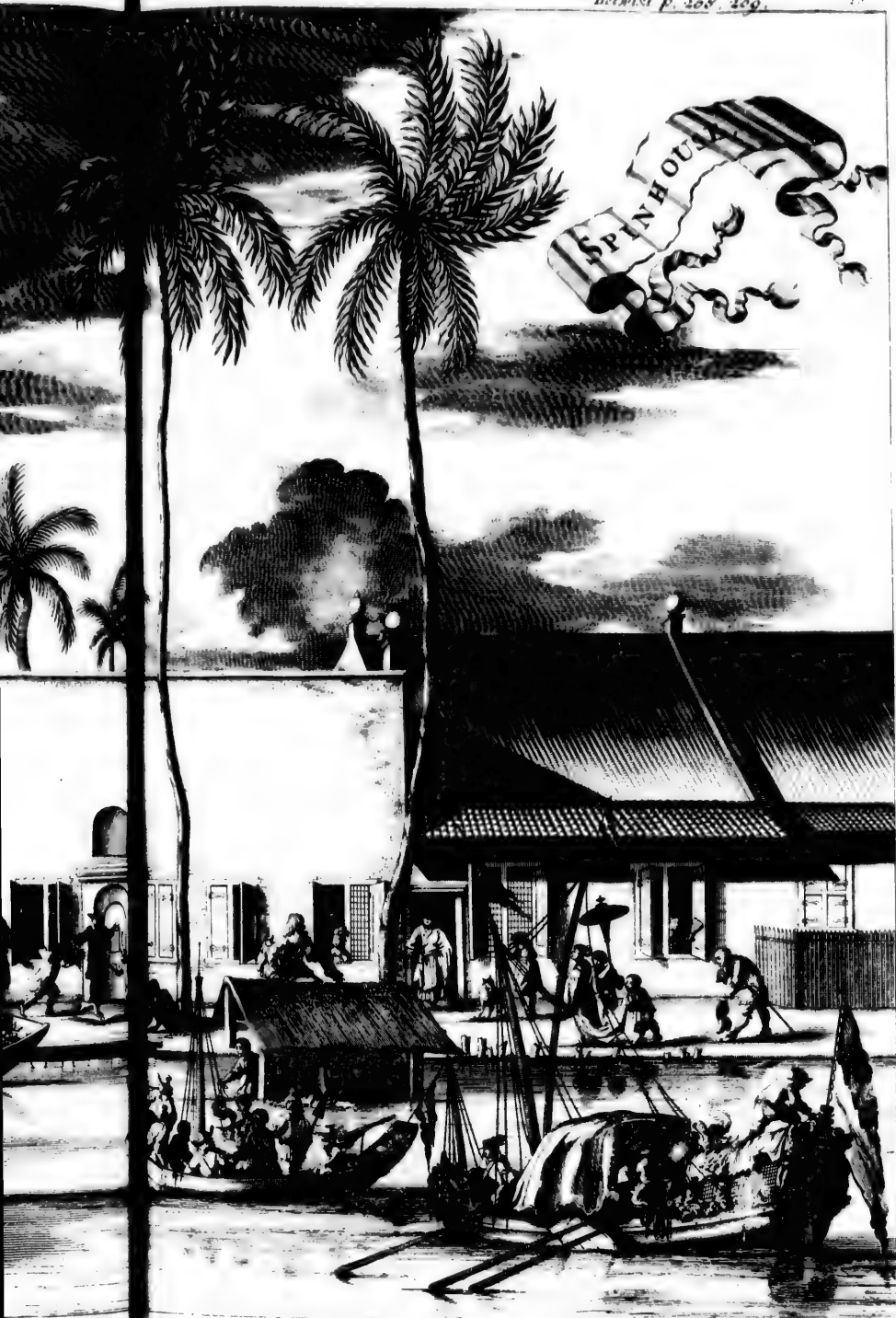
Upon the very brink of the river are built two slaughter-houses or flesh-halls, sustain'd by wooden piles, by which means they may with conveniency throw the excrements of the kill'd beasts into the river. They kill twice a week, each butcher having his peculiar stall, where he sells his meat at such a price as the magistrates shall think fit to set, tho' most of them find means to sell it as dear as they can. Whilst I was there beef was sold at the rate of four pence *per* pound, and pork at the same rate; but mutton being most esteem'd was sold dearer. All the beasts that are to be kill'd must



pleases. 1661.  
 om their  
 ually at  
 overness,  
 e House,  
 h if they  
 e to be  
 wo mem-  
 purpose  
 e, whose  
 ery sun-  
 , for the  
 om their  
 any mis-  
 tected by  
 ordinary

river are *Slaughter-*  
 sh-halls, *house or*  
 th means *fish-hall.*  
 the ex-  
 the river.  
 cher ha-  
 sells his  
 tes shall  
 em find  
 Whilst  
 of four  
 me rate ;  
 was sold  
 be kill'd  
 must















1662. must

upon  
cher  
But  
taxa  
jur'd  
of a  
to th  
to th  
O

*The hall  
for the  
sale of  
stuff*

whic  
stru  
cloat  
licoe  
other  
the C  
shops  
per r



*The city  
dables.*

On  
goodl  
horfes  
and p  
partiti  
the ho  
away  
place  
airy a  
one wh  
for th  
ing th  
benide  
Vo

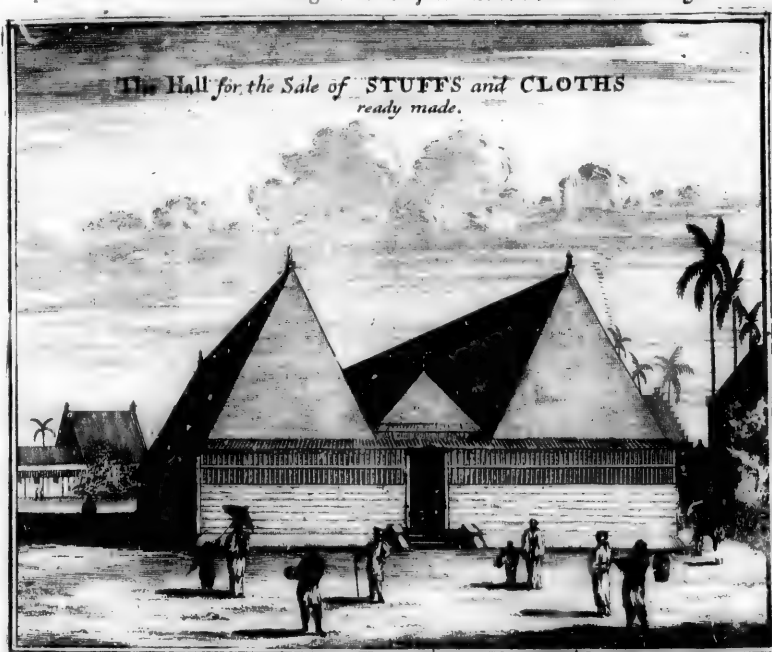
1662. must be taxed by the farmer of the excise upon cattle; according to which the butcher is obliged to pay the tenth-penny excise: But if the farmer should be extravagant in his taxation, the butcher who thinks himself injured, may appeal to the general judgment of all the butchers, who if they do not agree to the price set by the farmer, he is obliged to tax it himself at his own set rate.

The hall  
for the  
sale of  
stuff.

On the west-side of that spacious place which faces the *Town-House*, is a certain structure, in which are sold all sorts of cloaths ready made, as also stuffs and calicoes, white and painted, besides divers other commodities exposed to sale there, by the *Chinese*. These have here their peculiar shops, for each of which they pay 3 crowns per month. The whole building is of

wood, being divided into 5 walks or galleries, having shops on each side; and as many doors from without, which are kept open day and night, because the shopkeepers don't put up their commodities till very late at night, and lay them out again early in the morning, with a great deal of curiosity, to invite the buyers to give them a good price, at which the *Chinese* are very dextrous and quick, so that unless you be upon guard, you are over-reach'd before you are aware of it; however, these little shops have this convenience, that you may furnish your self here at an easier rate, and that all at once, with abundance of small things, which you can't buy so conveniently at the great shops where they will not be satisfied with a small gain.

1662.



The city  
stables.

On the east-side of the *Town-House* is a goodly structure, fitted up for stables for horses, being all of brick-work without, and provided with racks, mangers, and partitions, and paved with stones, so that the horse-dung may be removed and walk'd away with all imaginable convenience. The place where they manage their horses is very airy and well situated, having two doors, one whereof leads to the city's *Binne Gracht*, for the convenience of watering and washing the horses. In this stable are kept, besides the coach and cart-horses, above

Vol. II.

100 saddle-horses, that are managed daily by certain persons kept for that purpose. Their best horses are the *Arabian* and *Persian* horses, which they buy here at a high rate, 200 crowns being a common price for an indifferent *Persian* horse, the best being not to be got for money. It is worth observation, that the *Persians* train up and manage their horses without blows, whereas our managers are used to make use of whips and spurs, which makes them unfit for the due management of those horses. Abundance of horses are also brought to *Batavia*

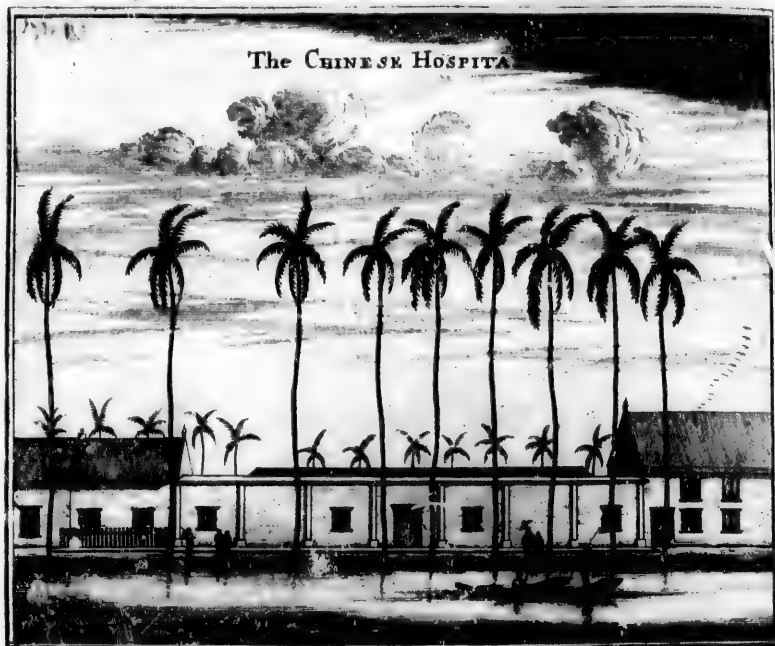
Z z z

via

1662. *via* from *Japara* in the isle of *Java*; but these are not comparable to the *Perjian* horses: Some of these however are very tractable, if well handled from the beginning, but many of them are broken mouthed before they come to *Batavia*: The natives being used to ride their horses with a

light hunting-bridle, they are apt to toss up their heads, when they are rid afterwards with a curb-bridle, to prevent which, our managers fasten a leather string to the girth under their belly, the other end of which being buckled to the bridle, makes them keep their heads steady.

1662.



The Chinese hospital for sick and aged persons.

On the *Rhinoceroses Gracht*, near the spin-house, is the *Chinese* hospital for sick and aged persons, built of brick, and divided into convenient apartments, and a pleasant court to walk in: It was built in the year 1640. In this house such as are sick and superannuated, and have not wherewithal to subsist, are received and maintain'd. For the maintenance of which a certain duty is laid upon marriages and burials; as also upon actors of plays, farces, and such like shews. And as, besides this, many of the rich *Chinese*, either by voluntary contributions or legacies, give great encouragement to this house; it is provided with a considerable revenue. The whole management of this house is committed to two *Hollanders*, and as many *Chinese*, who have a secretary to keep their accounts.

The hospital for children.

At the extremity of the west-end of the *Rhinoceroses Gracht*, you see the hospital wherein poor orphans are maintain'd and educated, being of brick, with convenient

lodgings for the servants of the house: It has hitherto no settled revenue, being maintain'd by the voluntary contributions of well-disposed people.

In the east-corner is the house wherein are lodged all the artificers belonging to the company, as carpenters, bricklayers, gun-founders, stone-cutters, glass-makers, turners, engineers, seal-cutters, pewterers, painters, &c. all which are disposed into their proper quarters, under the direction of three *Hollanders* appointed by the company. Besides the slaves belonging to the house, there is also a surgeon and a schoolmaster; the last of which is obliged to say prayers every night; at which all are obliged to be present under a certain forfeiture. In this house the surveyor-general has his lodgings, which are very handsome, and keeps two clerks under him. He oversees the workmen. In this house also are maintained such criminals as have been condemned to the chains, who are kept

The house of the artificers.

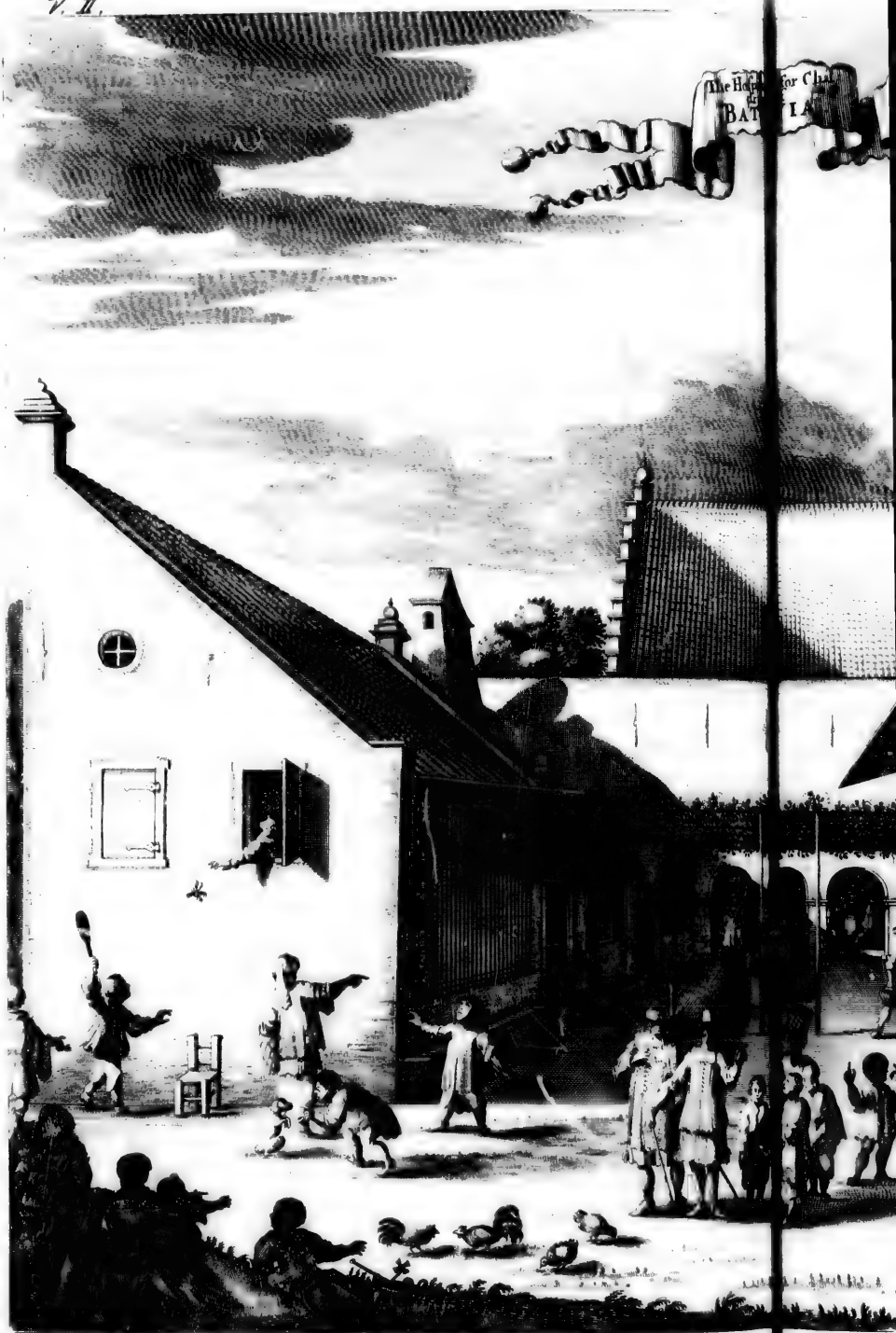


to tofs up 1662.  
wards with  
our mana-  
e girt un-  
of which  
akes them



house : It  
e, being  
atributions

wherein *The best*  
ing to the *of the ar-*  
yers, gun- *tifant.*  
kers, tur-  
ers, pain-  
into their  
ection of  
the com-  
ing to the  
on and a  
is obliged  
which all  
a certain  
veyor-ge-  
very hand-  
him. He  
ouse also  
have been  
are kept  
here





1662. here  
Every  
of the  
of flav  
which  
numbe  
had f  
house  
the dr  
scripti  
ing to  
ng of  
ufed o  
unload  
built a

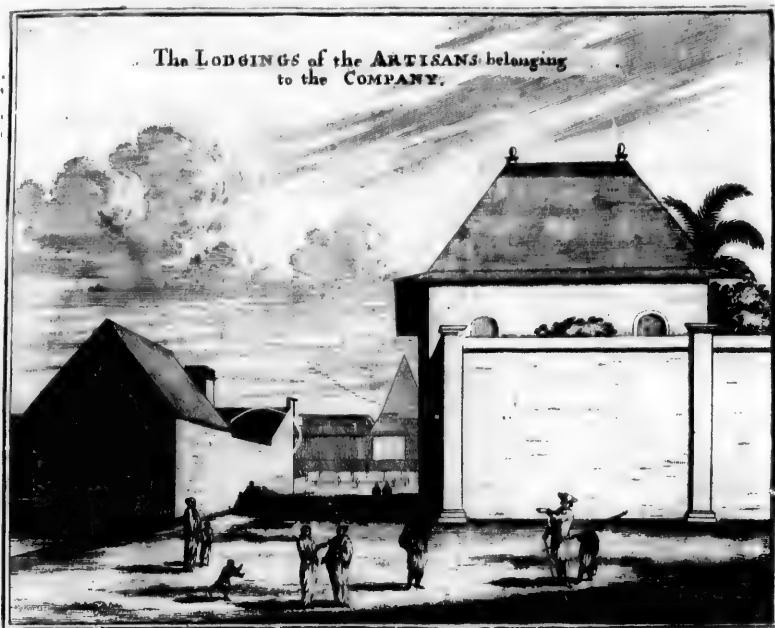


Not  
stion o  
ny's m  
having  
where  
was bu  
There  
the in  
other  
habita  
Th  
word  
signifi  
the b  
such

1662. here to hard labour, and well guarded. Every night at nine a clock, the doors of the house are shut up, and a guard of slaves is placed to prevent any disorders which might happen among so great a number of people of different callings. I had for some time my lodgings in this house; and here it was that I first made the draught, and afterwards made the description of *Batavia*. The wharf belonging to this house is only fitted for the building of small yachts and boats, such as are used only in the road for the loading or unloading of ships: But ships of bulk are built at the isle of *Ormuz*, about a league

to the west of *Batavia*, where are considerable magazines for ropes, and other implements belonging to ships, which are defended by certain fortifications.

The *Rope-Alley*, where they are employed in twisting ropes, is likewise in one corner of the city, opposite to the carpenter's wharf, being planted with large nut-trees, which afford an agreeable shade to the rope-makers. A little beyond it to the west you see the pack-houses of the company, wherein are laid up pepper, cinnamon, nutmegs, cloves, mace, &c. The overseer has a goodly habitation for his own use.



The magazine of rice.

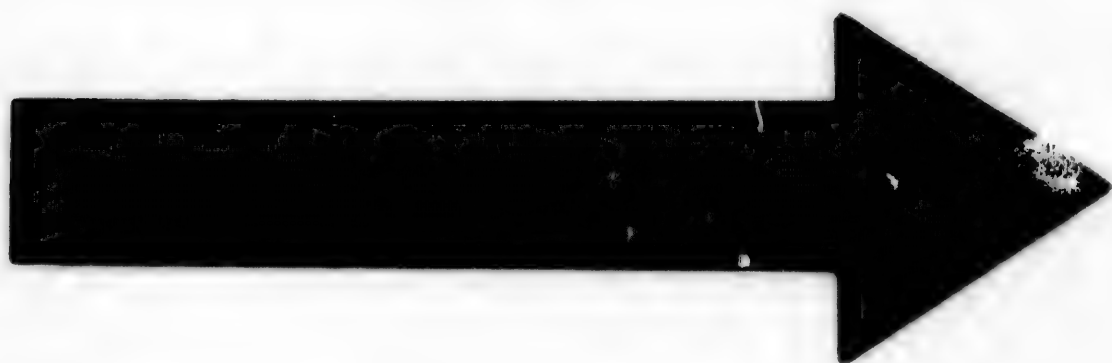
Not far from thence, viz. near the bastion call'd *Amsterdam*, stands the company's magazine of rice, a large structure, having a door looking to the water-side, where ships may be laden and unladen. It was built in my time 1670, of brick-work. There is a square enclosed with a wall at the inward wharf, where the receivers and other servants of the company have their habitations.

The *Pravwenbouse*, so call'd from the word *Praw*, which in the *Malayan* tongue signifies a boat or small vessel, stands upon the brink of the river, for convenience of such small boats as are built or refitted

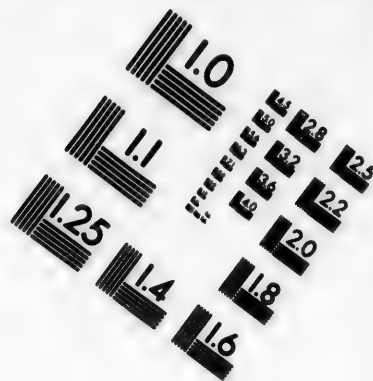
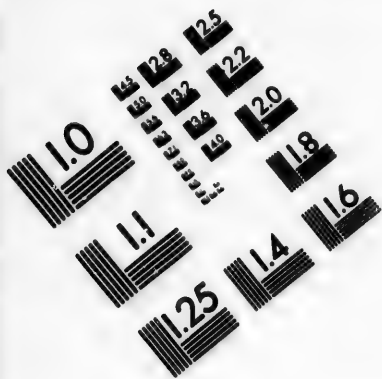
there; here several shipwrights, and a good number of seamen have their quarters, the last being obliged to be ready upon call, wherever they are ordered to row by the deputy governor, under whose tuition they are. On the east-side of the little wharf, the overseer has a small house. Having thus given you an account of the publick structures of this city, with such draughts thereof as time and opportunity would permit us to take, we will now proceed to the four great markets of *Batavia*, and begin with the fish-market.

The fish-market is on the western-side of the great river, being sustained by strong wooden

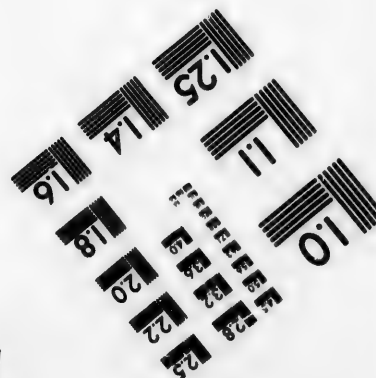
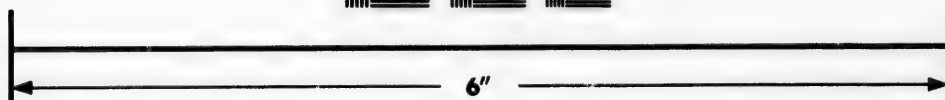
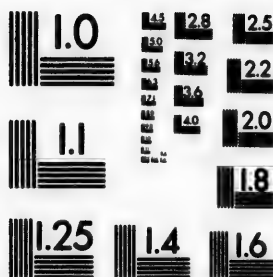
The fish market.







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

118  
20  
22  
25

10  
01

1662. wooden piles, and covered on top with pan-tiles. Opposite to it is the dwelling place of the *Alager* (or *Outroper*) where the fisher boats are oblig'd to stop, and their cargo is sold immediately by publick sale, to the fairest bidder; the fishmongers are generally *Chinefe*, each of which has his own stall, for which he pays two reals per month. The *Outroper* pays ready money to the fishermen for what they sell to these *Chinefe*, who allow him twopence in the crown, and are obliged to repay it at a set time. Here you may furnish yourself with sea, river, or shell-fish, according to your own pleasure, from 10 a clock in the morning till four in the afternoon; when the fishmongers leave their stalls here, and sell the remnants near the river-side behind the flesh-hall.

The rice or  
corn mar-  
ket.

The rice or corn market is adjoining to the former, or rather opposite to it at the

1662. north-end; being built after the same manner, except that it has no stalls or banks; here you meet with grains of all sorts which are sold here, according to the market price, by a certain small measure called *Ganting*, containing about 13 or 14 pounds of rice, which is commonly sold for sixpence. He that has the oversight of the market and measures, has a house at one end; his business among other things is to set the mark upon the measures and weights, which is done twice a year; viz. in *January* and *July*, at the town-house, in the presence of two *shepmen* or *aldermen*. They pay two-pence for each mark.

Near the new bridge, as you pass along the river-side to the *Crofs-Church*, is the fowl-market, where the *Mardikers* and *Toppassen* (a kind of negroes) sell all sorts of fowl in great plenty, so that you may buy an ordinary pullet for three-pence, but the



best sort are dearer. In this market you see many huts, in which they sell dried fish, eggs and coarse earthen ware.

The fruit  
market.

The fruit-market begins at the new-bridge, extending by the river-side to the *Middlepoint*. Here you meet with all sorts of fruits and herbs, sold by the *Chinefe* and *Negroes*, who pay the 10<sup>th</sup> penny excise.

From four a clock in the afternoon till night, this market is so crowded with people, that there is scarce any passing in it.

On the *Tyger's-Gracht* is the *Latin* and *Greek* school, the back-side of it reaching to the *Kaymans-Gracht*, with a lofty stone-gate. It has a very pleasant court, where the schoolboys may divert themselves at certain

The Latin  
and Greek  
school.

same man- 1661.  
 or banks;  
 all forts  
 o the mar-  
 easure cal-  
 13 or 14  
 monly sold  
 verlight of  
 a house at  
 cher things  
 afares and  
 year; viz.  
 own-house,  
 or alder-  
 each mark.  
 pass along *The foul*  
*ch,* is the *market*.  
 rs and To-  
 ll forts of  
 may buy  
 , but the

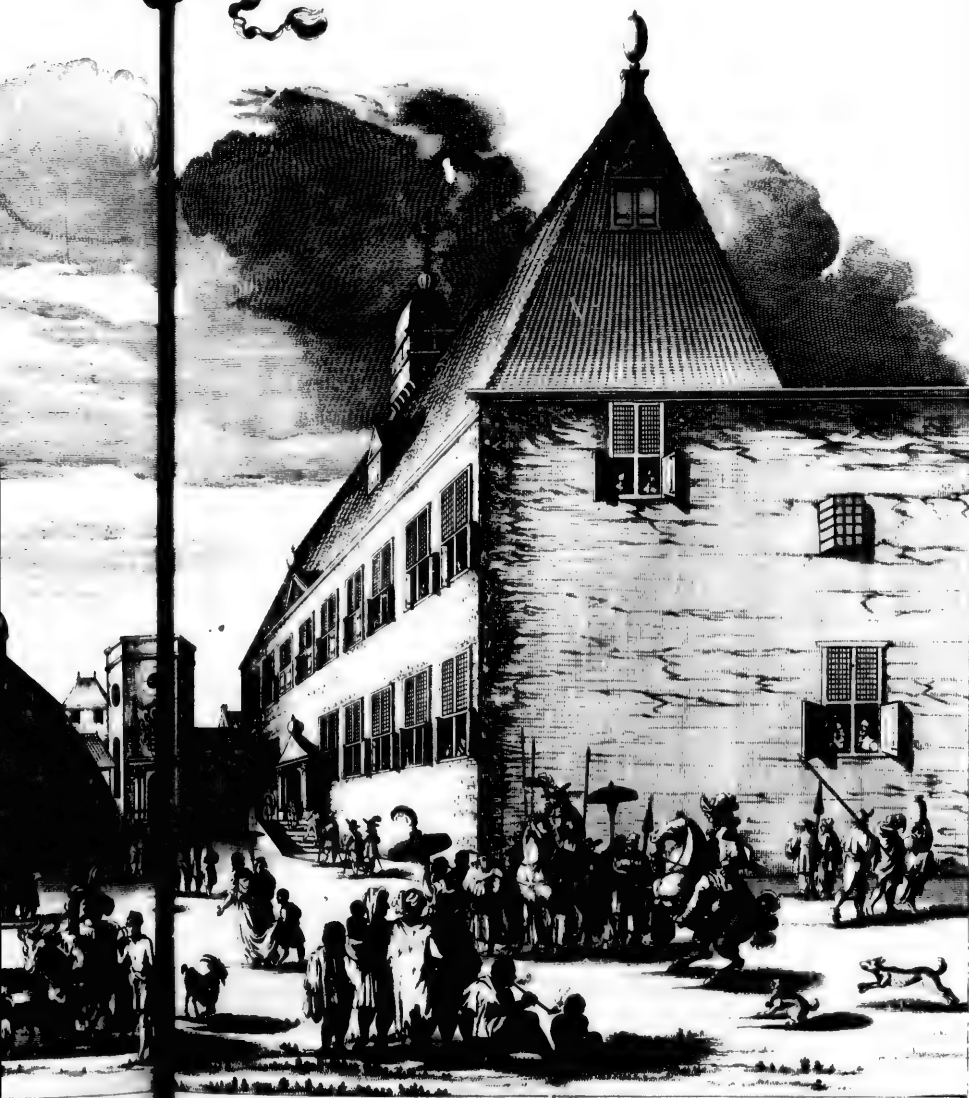


soon till  
 ith peo-  
 g in it. *The Latin*  
 and *and Greek*  
 reaching *school*.  
 y stone-  
 , where  
 elves at  
 certain



Between P. 27 & 28

OURS  
THE CASTLE

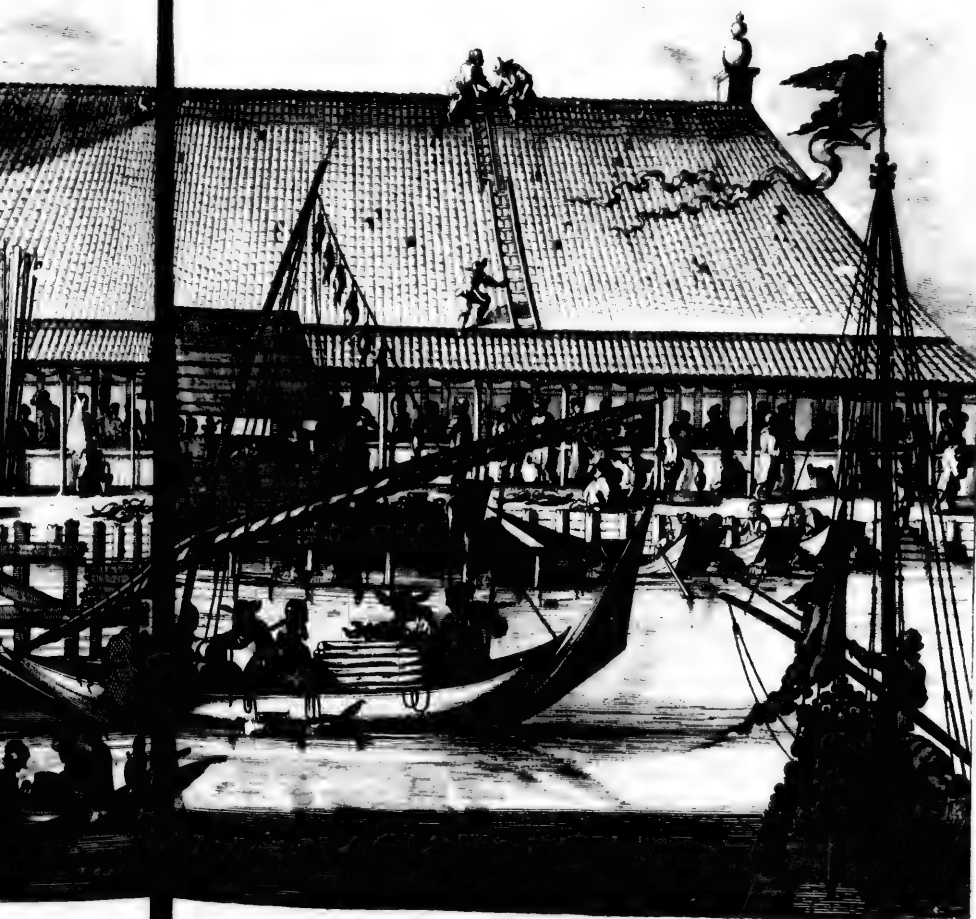












1602. cert  
matta  
this  
at Ba  
ple in  
of th  
are fo  
in th  
book  
Hatio  
ing t  
have

*The castle.*

Th  
level  
the D  
one f  
ther i  
the M  
On  
walls,  
which  
baltio  
face t  
west



It  
so lot  
in ho  
be fo  
lanth  
of it  
ship  
V

1662. certain times. The rector or head school-matter has a w<sup>h</sup> handsome house. Besides this school, there are divers other schools at *Batavia* for the instruction of young people in reading and writing; in which some of the natives, and especially the *Toppasses* are so ingenious, that they don't give way in that point to any other nation. What books are used here are brought out of *Holland*; but in the year 1667, a printing house was erected, and several books have been printed here with good success.

The castle.

The castle is a quadrangle, situate in a level ground, two bastions of which, viz. the *Diamond* and the *Rabbes* front the city, one facing the *Tyger's-Gracht*, and the other in a straight line thro' the *Lord-street* to the *Middlepoint* of the new-gate.

On the west-side the river washes the very walls, being enclosed by part of the city, which lies open on that side; the two other bastions call'd the *Pearl* and the *Sapphire* face the sea; the low grounds toward the west are well planted with gardens and or-

chards; the bastions, as well as the *Cour-tins* of the castle, are faced with white stone from the bottom to the top, and provided with watch-houses at convenient distances; the ditch is very broad and deep, being inclosed 1669, within a quick-set hedge, serving not only for an ornament, but also as an additional strength to the place, from whence they fire with advantage upon an approaching enemy.

In this castle the *Dutch* governor general of the *Indies*, and all the members of the council of the *Indies*, residing at *Batavia*, have their places of residence; as likewise the head factors who keep the accounts, and of what is paid to the servants of the company; and the general book-keeper, the secretary of the great council, the captain of the armory, the physician, chirurgion, and commander of the soldiery; all these I say, besides several others, have their fix'd habitations here. But the house or rather palace of the governor-general surpasses all the rest in magnificence.

1662.



It is built of brick, two stories high, yet so lofty, that the top of the roof surpasses in height all the other buildings, and may be seen a great way at sea; especially the lantern or turret, which stands in the midst of it, having instead of a weather-cock a ship of iron, very artificially wrought.

Vol. II.

The door is just in the middle, unto which you ascend several broad stone steps; in this palace is the council-chamber for the great council to meet in, and near it the secretaries office and chamber of accounts. The great hall is hung about with bright and well polish'd armour, ensigns, standards

A a a and



1662. and flags, which have been taken by the *Dutch* in several sea and land engagements; in this hall prayers are said every night, and here it is that the governor at certain times gives audience to all such as have occasion to represent their grievances to him. Behind it are pleasant walks planted with trees, among which a *Tamarind* tree of an excessive height, and standing in the center of the garden, affords a most agreeable sight. Out of this garden you pass thro' a little gate of the *Courtain*, by a small bridge to a summer-house, built upon piles in the midst of the water, from whence you have a very pleasing prospect, not only of the fortifications of the castle, but also of the rivers mouth, and the road where the great ships ride at anchor. At the eastern corner of this summer-house is a door leading thro' a gallery, to the before-mentioned chamber of accounts, which has a flat roof, convenient offices, and pleasant walks belonging to it; the floor is covered with a kind of grey-stone neatly done. In this apartment most of the book-keepers and clerks are boarded at a certain rate by the treasurer.

The houses of the members of the great council are on the south-side of the castle, the land-gate being in the midst of them.

The armoury is built much after the same manner as the chamber of accounts; it extends along the east-side of the *Courtain*, having separate apartments for sword cutlers, gunsmiths, and other artificers of that kind.

The governor of the sea affairs has his house on the north-side just opposite to it, and on the same side dwell the factors, physician, chirurgion and apothecary. Hereabouts stand also the magazines of flesh, bacon, wine, *Brunswick* mum, *Holland* butter, oil, vinegar, and divers other provisions; and under ground are made certain vaults for gunpowder and artificial fire-works. The castle has four avenues, and as many gates. The first and largest is call'd the *Landgate*, built 1636, where you see a stone-bridge, supported by 14 arches over the ditch, being 26 rods long, and 10 foot broad, paved with *Dutch* bricks set on edge. The *Watergate* faces the north, where is a large watch-house for the garrison, and some apartments on both sides for the overseers of the magazines and store-houses.

This was built 1630, according to the inscription. Besides these, two lesser gates are in the *Courtains* to the E. and W. which are scarce ever made use of, unless that some vessels laden with ammunition, and such like things, are generally unladen here. There is a small plain before the

*Rabbit* bastion, where the new lifted soldiers are exercised and taught the use of arms, by an officer appointed for that purpose. Not many years ago a wooden draw-bridge was built near the bastion call'd the *Sapphire*, by which means you may walk all round the city to the boom, where you must be ferried over.

Before my departure, a project was on foot of building a tower and steeple upon the *Rabbit* bastion, making some additions to the *Rotterdam* and *Utrecht* gates, and to enlarge the city to the E. and N. as far as to the turning of the great river, so that the north-side of the castle should front the bastion call'd the *Middlepoint*. Thus far of the city of *Batavia* itself, we will now take a view of its outside.

It is easy to be guess'd at, what moved the regents of this city to surround it with forts at such a distance, viz. to the E. as far as the river *Anjol*, and to the W. as far as the river *Dike*, along the bay of *Batavia*, and on the land-side to the S. by the forts *Northwijk*, *Riswick* and *Jacatra*; these serving the inhabitants of the flat country, as a defence against the incursions of the neighbouring barbarians, so that they may quietly enjoy the fruits of their labour; the country all about this city being well cultivated and stored with rice and sugar-reed fields, gardens and orchards, country-houses, brick and tile wharfs and sugar-mills, which are of great consequence to the city. To give all possible encouragement for the maruring of the ground, the main channel of the great river was ordered to be stop'd up 1659, instead of which two branches being made, one leading to *Riswick*, the other to *Jacatra*, these serve to lay the ground thereabouts under water upon occasion. One of these branches is to the W. brought into another channel, leading directly to the middle of the city, and being stop'd near the second bridge of the new gate by a dike and sluice. Here you see seven mills, one whereof is a corn-mill, four gunpowder-mills, one saw-mill for wood, and one paper-mill, which are driven by the force of the water; near it the millers have their habitations.

Before the dike, just at the entrance of the city is the place where they refine the brimstone; near this place 1658, a very strong sluice was built for the conveniency of bringing country commodities into the cities with less charge, but the same was ruin'd in a little time after by the force of the water.

Not many years ago, a certain contagious distemper began to rage at *Batavia*, which proving mortal to many, it was resolved, (to stop the infection) to build a

kind

1662.

kind of  
as were  
vided  
medies.  
Deijl-G  
the go  
citizens  
By t  
mills a  
washing  
the lat  
canes f  
are bef  
partly  
liberal  
I will  
word o  
forts:  
made  
and qu  
gular f  
Anjol,  
work.  
artiller  
or per  
garriso  
There  
the can  
the wh  
captain  
also the

Their ant-  
marks.



1662.

kind of hospital or pest-house, where such as were seiz'd with this evil, might be provided with lodgings, diet, and suitable remedies. This house, which has with it the *Deijl-Gate* near the road to *Arke*, is under the government of several of the richest citizens of *Batavia*.

By the east-side of the dike where the mills are, a house was built in 1609, for the washing and whitening of linen apparel, the latter being carried thither by bamboo canes fastened together. Without the city are besides these many other houses erected partly by the company, and partly by the liberality of some of the inhabitants, which I will pass by in silence here, and say a word or two more of their out-works or forts: All these lie in a flat even country, made of earth, surrounded with ditches and quickset-hedges, except the quinquangular fort call'd the *Riswick*, and the fort *Ansoel*, both which are faced with brick-work. They are all well provided with great artillery, and provisions for nine months, or perhaps for a whole year, as well as the garrison of the city of *Batavia* it self. There is a certain officer appointed to keep the cannon and other arms neat and clean, the which being under the over-sight of a captain of the artillery, who commands also the fire-workers, and has his habitation

upon the bastion call'd the *Diamond*. The garrison consists chiefly in foot, there being only a troop of horse, which serves as a guard to the governor-general, who are obliged to be upon the guard in their turns. These enjoy great privileges, are commanded by one of the best officers, and are obliged to appear every *Sunday* in their armour well polish'd, and with their pistols, carabines, and broad swords.

The inhabitants of *Batavia* consist either of the citizens, or such as are servants to the company, being of divers nations; among whom the *Dutch* exceed the rest both in riches and dignity, most places of honour and profit being in their hands.

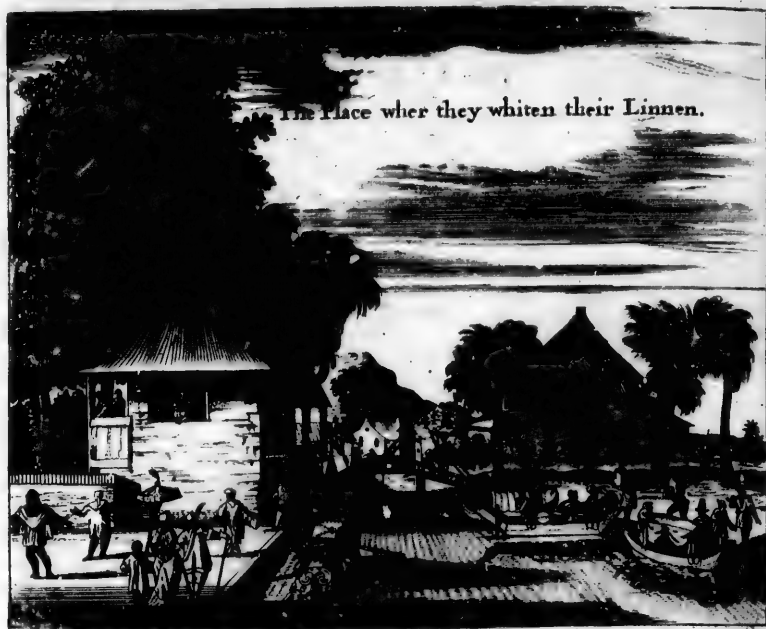
The *Chinese* drive here a considerable traffick, being more industrious than any of the other *Indians*; they deal much in fish, and cultivate most of the rice, reed and corn-fields; some also maintain themselves by fishing, but the chiefest upon merchandizing; they farm the excises and customs; but of late years some of the other nations have found ways to imitate them in their thriftiness and cozenings, at which they are great artists, which I know by my own experience. They live here according to the laws and customs of their own country, under the tuition of a *Chinese* governor, who manages all their affairs

1662.

The inhabitants.

Chinese.

Their out-works.



1662. *faïrs with the company. They are dress'd after their own fashion, in a coat with wide sleeves, either callicoe or silk, according to their abilities. They don't shave their heads here according to the Tartarian fashion, as they do now in China, but wear their hair long and neatly twisted. Their habitations are settled thro' the whole city, but live for the most part on the west-side, near the great river, and many of them on the east-side; their houses are low, with the roof cover'd over the first floor.*

*The Malaysians.*

*The Malaysians as they are not so much addicted to trading as the Chinese, live for the most part upon fishing; their boats are made after the Indian fashion, with large sails. They have also a governor of their own, who lives in the Rhinoceroses Gracht, whereabouts most of them have their dwelling-places. They wear light callicoes or silks, tho' some of their women of fashion use flower'd and strip'd silk; their hair, which is very black, they tie behind in a knot, but the men wear a piece of cloath about their heads. Those few merchants that are among them, are next to the Chinese, accounted the cunningest traders; the houses of the Malaysians are but very indifferently built there, being covered with leaves, and planted round with coco-trees. They have a custom of chew-*

*ing the Betel leaves continually, and take tobacco through sugar-canes lackered over with stone ball.*

*The Moors or Mabometans here maintain themselves almost in the same manner, and live near the Malaysians; some however drive a kind of pedling-trade, and sell coral and glass beads in the streets, some have small stalls in market-towns. A few of them merchandise, especially in free-stone, which they fetch in their vessels from the adjacent islands. They are clad after the Mabometan fashion.*

*The Amboyne inhabit a particular part of the suburbs, on the left-hand, as you come from Jacatra to the city, near the burying place of the Chinese; near it their governor (who has done great service to the company) has built himself a stately house, after the manner of the Amboyne. They live for the most part upon carpenters work, being extremely dextrous in building of houses of bamboo-canes, and have a peculiar way of splitting and twisting of canes in divers figures for windows, which afford a free passage to the air. The Amboyne are a courageous nation, of a dreadful aspect, with long black hair, and much inclined to munity; their chief weapons are cymeters, and shields of an oval figure, where with they know how to ward a blow*



A Melaya Captain

men.

and take 1662,  
ered over

ere main- The  
e manner, Moors  
e however  
and fell  
ets, some  
. A few  
y in free-  
eir vessels  
y are clad

cular part Amboy-  
d, as you nefe.  
near the  
ar it their  
service to  
a stately  
Amboynefe.  
n carpen-  
xtious in  
anes, and  
and twilt-  
windows,  
air. The  
ion, of a  
hair, and  
chief wea-  
of an oval  
w toward  
a blow



72

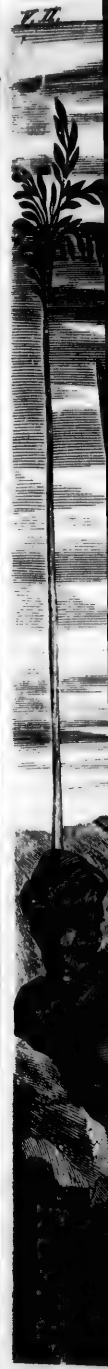
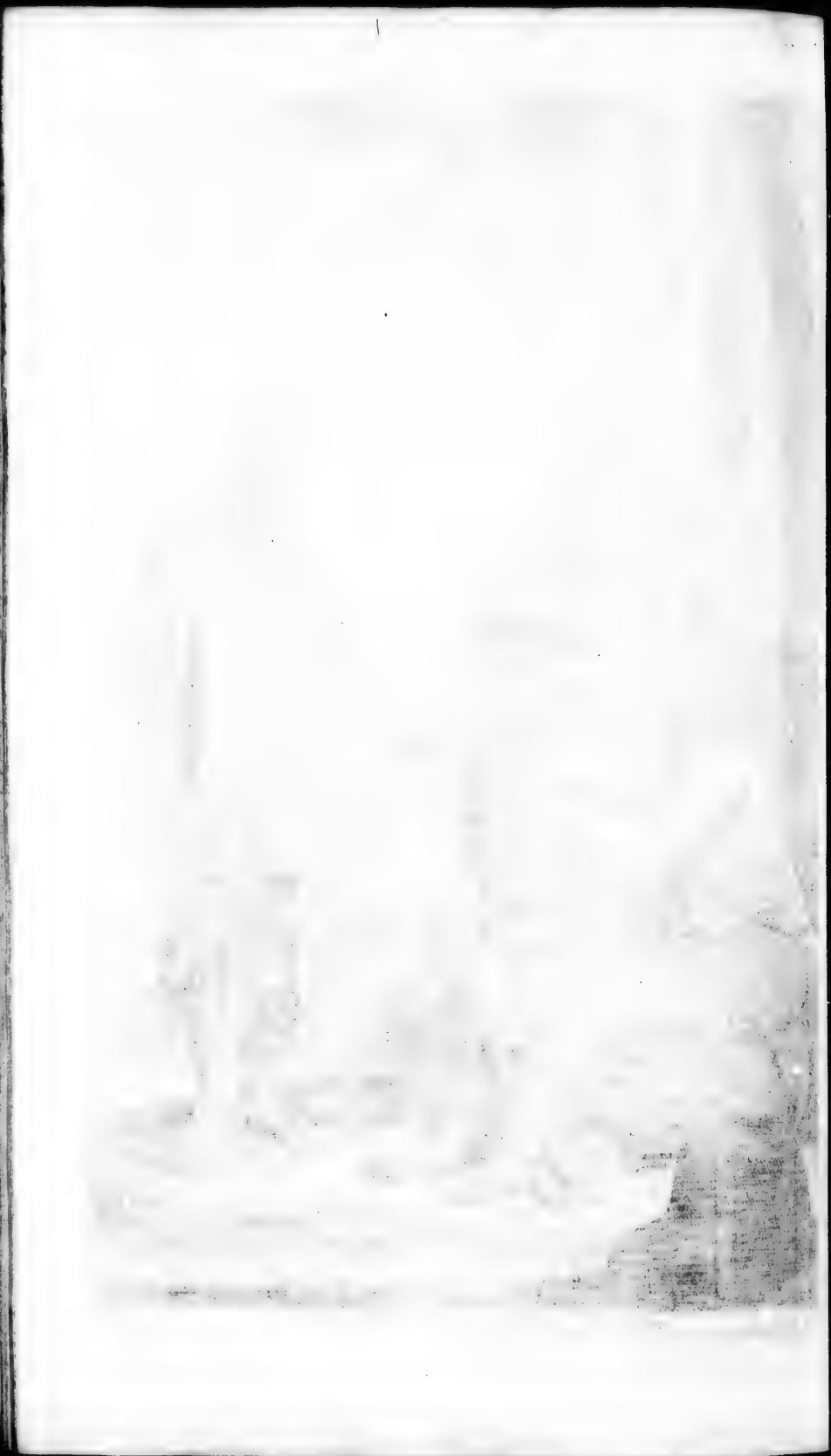
The hab





The habit of a Malayan and his Wife at Batavia







*A Souldier of Amboina.*





A Negro Pedler with his Wife.





*A Merchant of Java.*







*A Javanese Man and Woman.*







*A Topas or Mardick with his Wife.*

1662. a blow  
rows: 7  
several  
hanging  
and for  
have of  
them, a  
ders, t  
houses  
with lea  
drefs is  
The  
boo-car  
ing-pla  
are neat  
of coco  
with hu  
ing of  
used by  
their co  
go abra  
turn'd l  
moon, l  
the Fly  
for the  
vered fi  
wear a k  
their sw  
but go k  
neatness  
VOL.

Javanese.



1662. a blow, and to intercept their enemies arrows: The men wear a piece of callicoe wrapt several times about their heads, both ends hanging down, and adorned with flowers and some other ornaments. The women have only a piece of callicoe wrapt about them, and another piece round their shoulders, their arms being left bare; their houses are made of wooden planks, carved with leaves, indifferently high built: Their drefs is like that of the *Moors*.

*Javaneſe*. The *Javaneſe* inhabit in houſes of bamboo-canes, on the other ſide of the burying-place of the *Chineſe*, ſome of which are neatly built and cover'd with the twigs of coco-trees. Some maintain themſelves with huſbandry, and eſpecially with planting of rice, others with building of boats, uſed by the inhabitants for the carrying of their commodities to the city; they alſo go abroad a fiſhing, their boats which are turn'd like horns in the figure of a half-moon, being ſo nimble, that they call them the *Flying-Boats*. The *Javaneſe* men go for the moſt part naked, being only covered from the middle to the knees; ſome wear a kind of a ſcarf, whereon they faſten their ſwords; on the head they wear a cap, but go bare-footed. Their houſes excel in neatneſs thoſe of the reſt of the *Indians*.

Vol. II.

The *Mardijkers* or *Topaſſers* are a mixture of divers *Indian* nations, call'd *Topaſſers*, i. e. *Accommodators*, becauſe they will accommodate themſelves eaſily to the manners, cuſtoms and religion of ſuch as they live among; tho' ſome will have them derive their name from a precious ſtone call'd a *Topaz*. They live both within and without the city, the chiefteſt of which being merchants, who traffick in their own veſſels with the adjacent iſles, live in very ſtately houſes. The reſt live upon huſbandry, graſing and gardening, and have ſome artiſans among them; they have their own captains, who ſit in the council of war, and ſchool-maſters who teach their children to read and to write. Their drefs approaches near to the *Dutch* faſhion, but their breeches reach down to their ankles, and wear a kind of caps on their heads. Their women are clad like other *Indian* women. Their houſes are better built than thoſe of the other *Indians*, generally of ſtone, and cover'd with tiles, ſtately built and arch'd. Before their houſes they plant coco-trees, and all ſorts of *Indian* fruits and flowers, but the backſide they reſerve for the keeping of pigs, pigeons, fowl and other ſorts of poultry, which they bring to ſale in the market.

B b b b

The

1662. *Mardijkers or Topaſſers.*



1662.  
The fold-  
ers of Ma-  
kassar.

The chief arms of the soldiers of *Makassar* are certain poison'd arrows of a foot long, pointed at one end with fish teeth, and on the other with a kind of hard wood; when they are to go into the wars, they provide a good number of these arrows dipt a good while before in a poisonous liquor which they let dry upon them. This poison is the juice issuing out of the bark of a certain tree growing in the isle of *Makassar*, and two or three adjacent isles of the *Bougiffes*; it is of the height of a clove tree; its leaves resembling also those of that tree; the juice of which, while yet fresh, is mortal, and not to be cured by antidotes. These poison'd arrows the soldiers of *Makassar* don't shoot out of their bows, but thro' trunks, as we let fly at the birds in *Europe* with small earthen balls; with these they will hit any mark within four rods distance. This poison is so pernicious, and penetrates with that swiftness thro' the whole mass of the blood, and seizes upon the spirits, that the *Makassars* themselves know no remedy against it. The most approved remedy against it is man's dung, which taken immediately after the wound is given, causes a vomiting, and hinders the operation of the poison: I have known several of our soldiers cured by this remedy, tho' some others I have seen die not long after they had been wounded, notwithstanding the use of it, and others after two or three days. In the isle of *Makassar* grows a certain root, of a bitterish taste, which is look'd upon as a great antidote against this poison, and is often used as such by the *Dutch*; they chew the root, and lay it about the orifice of the wound.

Timorese  
soldiers.

The *Timorese* soldiers or inhabitants of the isle of *Timoor*, use swords of sandal wood, wherewith they can cut a man through the middle at one stroke: For in this isle, and the *Molucca-Islands*, and all along to the S. S. E. beyond the *Lesser-Java*, to the 10<sup>th</sup> deg. of southern latitude, grow whole woods of white and yellow sandal wood, call'd *Cbandava* by the inhabitants. The *Timorese* are very barbarous, but warlike; formerly they were all pagans, but of late years most are turn'd mahometans, and some *Roman* catholics.

Bougiffes.

The *Bokjes* or *Bougiffes*, who formerly inhabited divers isles near that of *Makassar*, are a warlike people, arm'd with cymeters, arrows, and shields, which they handle with great dexterity. They go for the greatest part naked, having only a piece of stuff about the middle down to the knees. The women are clad like the other *Indians*. After the *Dutch* became engaged in a war with the king of *Makassar*, these *Bougiffes*

fixt their habitations in and about *Batavia*, till the event of the war; their king having his residence near the out-guard, betwixt the forts of *Riswick* and *Northwick*, the queen being permitted to reside within the city; but after the *Makassars* were conquered by the *Dutch*, under the conduct of *Cornelius Spellman*, and a firm peace was settled with the neighbouring nations, both the king and queen had a house assign'd them in the *Lords-Street*. This house or palace extends to the brink of the river, with very pleasant walks, flower-gardens, and a most delightful vineyard, which in my time, 1676, bore vast branches of grapes. The gate facing the street is very neatly built, of the *Ionick* order, with a gallery on the top of it, and the apartments so spacious and well-contrived, that most of the *Indian* kings and their retinue might live here.

Among the foreign nations residing here, there may, according to computation, be raised 6720 fighting men, viz. 400 *Topassars* or *Mardiken* under two captains, within the city, besides 710 without the city, under three captains, making in all 1110; of *Regantiins* 70; *Ambonyse* 600; *Malayans* 201; *Chinefe* 1200; *Moors* 200; of the *Javanefe* in their quarter within the *New-Gate* 750; near the burying-place of the *Chinefe* 1500; in their quarter beyond the *New-Fort* 800; and of *Brasilians* beyond the fort 300. That this island is sufficiently fruitful, and able to maintain its inhabitants, is evident from the exportations that are made yearly thence to *Ambony* and other places: It is true no wheat grows here, but supposing the supplies that are brought of that grain from *Suratte* and *Japan* should be stopt, the defect thereof may very well be supplied with rice. The chief artificers here are *Dutch*, most of which live very well, and the *Chinefe* have many carpenters and bricklayers among themselves, who will work as journeymen. Their cabinet-makers have a way of joining the wood of their cabinets, so that the injuries are not to be seen. Others get a livelihood by selling of sugar-beer, cookery, and the sale of *Sury* or coco-liquor, and *Arack* or *Indian* strong-waters, of which they make punch, (as the *English* call it) a liquor that opens both the hearts and purges of the inhabitants. But the chief inns and taverns are kept by the *Dutch*, who pay, as well as all the other nations, two reals per month for their license, besides 70 reals excise of every pipe of *Spanish* wine they sell. The distillers of *Arack* are most *Chinefe*, who pay 50 reals excise for every chauldron or gosper per month.

The



Batavia, 1662.  
 ng ha-  
 rd, be-  
 twick,  
 e with-  
 rs were  
 ne con-  
 n peace  
 nations,  
 oufe af-  
 is houfe  
 ne river,  
 gardens,  
 hich in  
 ches of  
 is very  
 with a  
 apart-  
 d, that  
 retinue

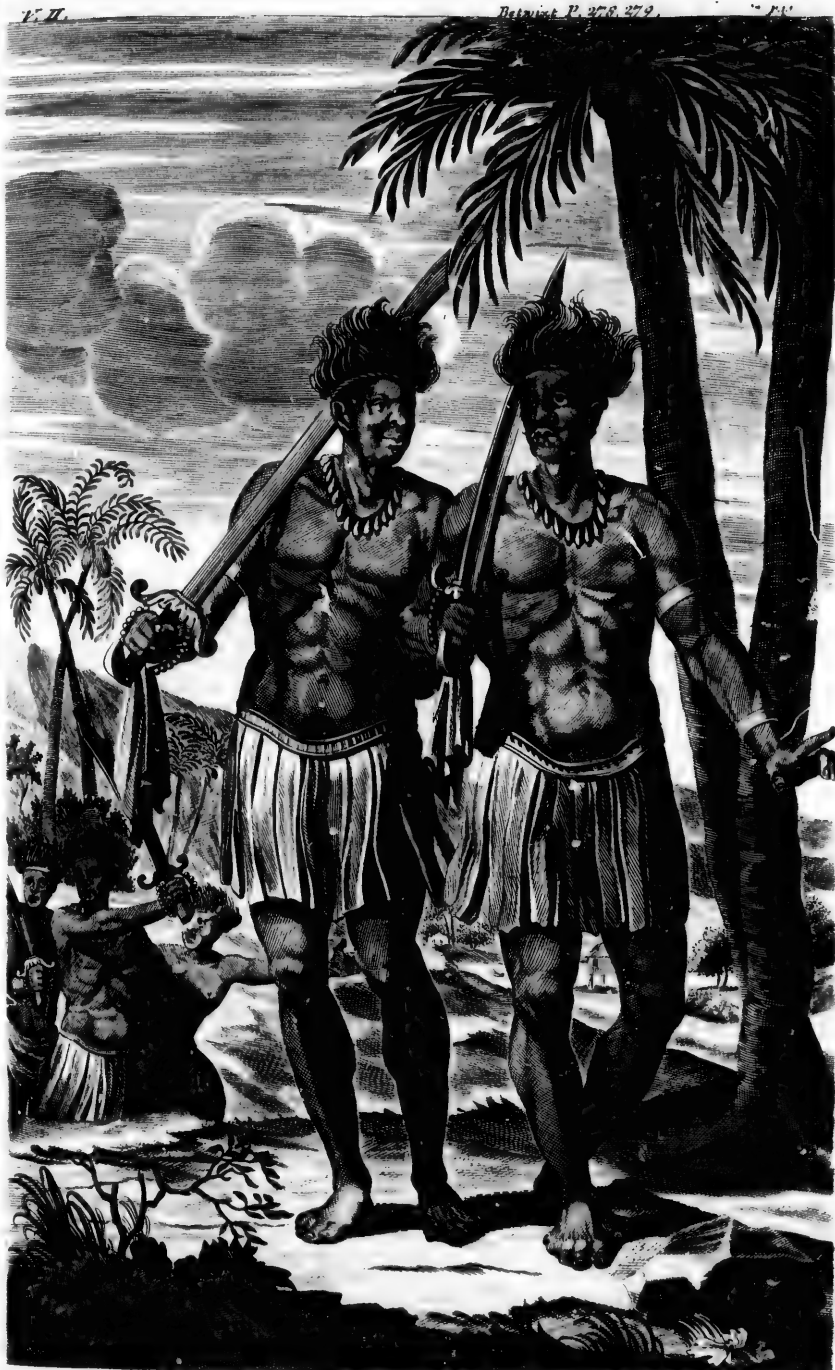
ng here, Number of  
 on, be foreigners  
 Topaf-  
 ia.  
 s, with-  
 ne city,  
 1110;  
 Malay-  
 00; of  
 ne New-  
 of the  
 ond the  
 beyond  
 iciently  
 inhabi-  
 ons that  
 d other  
 ere, but  
 ight of  
 should  
 ry well  
 artisans  
 ve very  
 carpen-  
 nelves,  
 heir ca-  
 ing the  
 he, in-  
 s get a  
 , cook-  
 -liquor,  
 of which  
 call it)  
 rts and  
 he chief  
 eb, who  
 ns, two  
 besides  
 Spanifh  
 rack are  
 keife for  
 th.



*A Makasser with his Wife as they are habited at Batavia* 33.

The





*Tymorian Soldiers.*







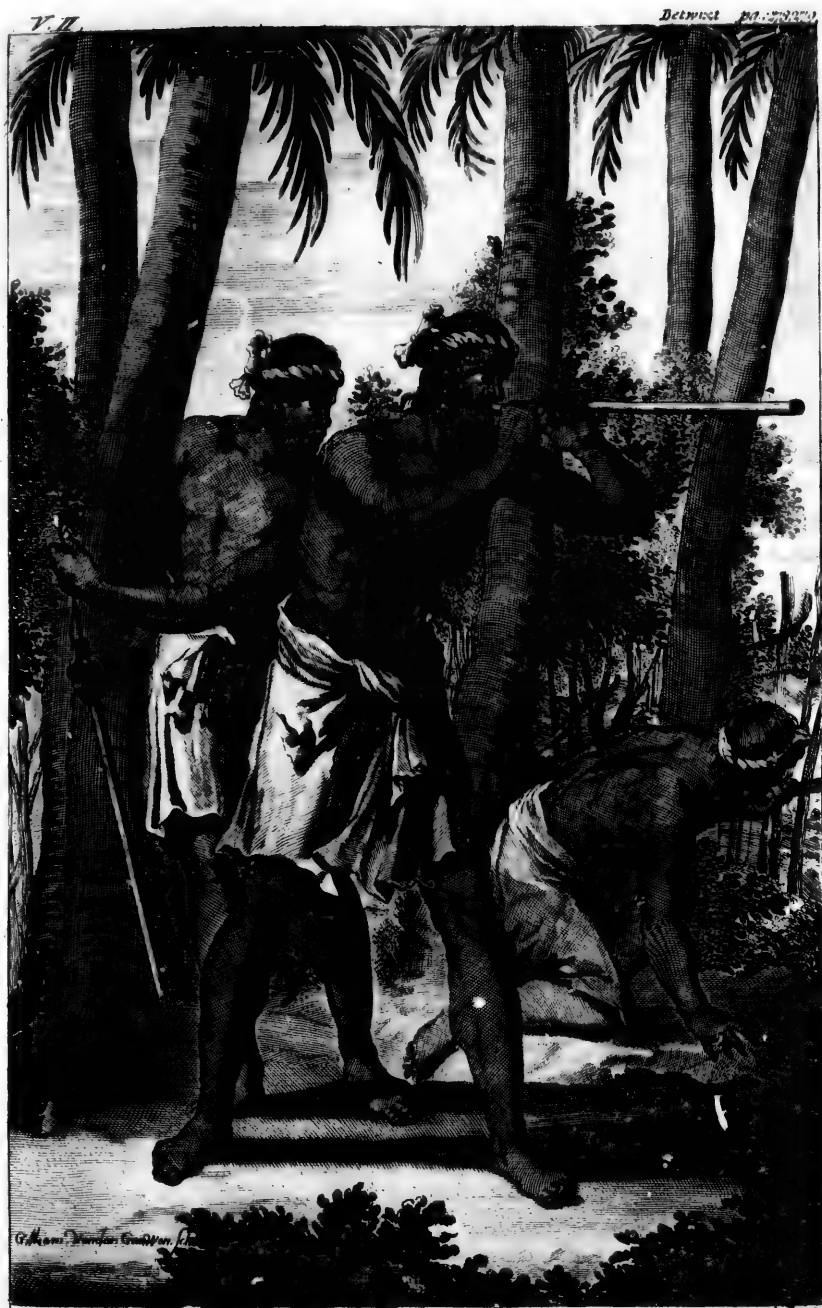
*A Bougis of Bokyes.*





William D.

Makay



*Makassar Soldiers who blow poisoned darts out of Trunks*

The go  
is settled u  
ted *Provin*  
peculiar e

The fir  
members  
which the  
presides,  
at that tim  
state are  
the palace  
is given ev  
of the peo

The fo  
of nine po  
commonly  
great cou  
great seal  
in a tower  
sword in  
tion; *Tb*  
castle of  
rally call  
are debat  
ting to th  
They all  
arising ab  
conjuncti  
the deter  
third part  
ceed 100  
His chief  
ineroachm  
tives of th  
vinces.

regiller o  
sembly,  
salary:  
money v  
which he  
keeper is  
and to fu  
pear befo  
silver-shi  
of the o  
three tab  
pay half  
council  
the town  
a week.

The  
the alle  
the bef  
times a  
and *Tb*  
noon.  
ed with  
every 6  
termin'  
(from v  
council  
betwix  
citizen.

1662. The government of the city of *Batavia* is settled upon the same basis as in the *United Provinces*, being administer'd by six peculiar colleges or councils.

The first and chief is compos'd of the members of the council of the *Indies*, in which the governor-general of the *Indies* presides, whose name was Mr. *Maetsuiper* at that time. In this council all affairs of state are transacted: Their chamber is in the palace of the governor, where audience is given every day to redress the grievances of the people.

The second college or council consists of nine persons, besides the president, who commonly is one of the members of the great council, and is the keeper of the great seal, representing a woman placed in a tower, with a balance in one, and a sword in the other hand, with this inscription; *The seal of the council of justice of the castle of Batavia*; this college being generally called the *Council of Justice*. Here are debated and decided all matters relating to the publick revenue and treasury. They also take cognizance of differences arising about customs. The president in conjunction with the council has a voice in the determination of civil causes, and has a third part of all the fines; but if they exceed 100 reals, he has only a sixth part. His chief business is to take care that no encroachments be made upon the prerogatives of the sovereignty of the *United Provinces*. The secretary is to keep an exact register of all things transacted in this assembly, without any other reward but his salary: He also has in his custody the money which comes from the fines, of which he must give an account. The door-keeper is to attend whilst they are sitting, and to summon such persons as are to appear before them: He wears a stick and a silver-shield on the left-side, with the seal of the council. The goal-keeper keeps three tables for the prisoners; who are to pay half a real for turning the key. This council assembles in the council-chamber of the town-house, twice, and sometimes thrice a week.

The third college or council consists of the aldermen or senators, chosen out of the best citizens. They assemble three times a week, viz. *Mondays, Wednesdays and Thursdays*, from 7 till 11 in the forenoon. At their election they are presented with 50 rixdollars, and with 100 more every 6 months. In this council are determin'd all the causes betwixt the citizens, (from whom however lies an appeal to the council of justice;) if any difference arises betwixt a servant of the company and a citizen, the last must be summoned before

this court; and no citizen is obliged to appear before the council of justice, but must be summon'd before this assembly first, and there answer for himself. This council issue their orders in relation to the publick structures, bridges and streets, yet not without the approbation of the great council. The president has the custody of the seal, and calls the assembly together when he thinks fit: He may peruse the register, and propose all matters to the council: He has a double voice, and is commonly one of the members of the great council. The *Landroft* or chief judge, has in this assembly a decisive sentence in criminal causes, and is allowed a third part of all the fines. This council consists of nine persons, among whom are two *Clunese*. They have also a door-keeper, who is called the city messenger, having a shield with the city's arms in it.

The fourth council consists of the overseers of the hospital of the orphans, being chosen out of the best citizens, except the president, who is generally a member of the great council. It consists of five members only, three whereof are citizens, the other two servants of the company: Their business is to provide for the poor-orphans, and to enquire into their condition, and what is left by their parents.

The fifth is the council appointed for the determination of matters of less moment; the president whereof is a member of the council of justice. They are to give licences for marriages, and not to permit men before they are twenty one, and maids before eighteen years of age, to marry; nor mahometans or pagans to marry with christians, nor any *Hollanders* with the natives that don't understand *Dutch*. They sit twice a week in the town-house, where causes of little moment are pleaded and soon decided.

The sixth council of *Batavia* is the council of war, in which the chief officer of the militia of the city is president. Here are determined all matters relating to the militia of less moment, which are brought before them by the city major; but matters of consequence are refer'd to the determination of the judge and court of the senators. They also meet in the town-house once a week.

All these courts have each their own secretary, clerks and waiters.

The ecclesiastical government of *Batavia* is administer'd by the ministers, church-wardens and overseers of the poor, who assemble in the vestry of the church upon the summons of their president, who is chosen every month. The ministers being chosen in, and sent hither out of *Holland*,

1662.

The government of Batavia.

The ecclesiastical government.

1662. are confirm'd here, and live in great esteem among the citizens.

The original and rise of Batavia.

Batavia, the capital city of all the Indies under the Dutch jurisdiction, has been frequently attempted by the natives or *Javanese*; for no sooner had the *Hollanders* in 1618. (after the taking of *Jacatra*, unto which they gave the name of *Batavia*) erected a fortress here, but the natives being encouraged by the *English* of *Bantam*, endeavour'd to drive them from thence. To effect which, the *English* persuaded them to erect a redoubt or great battery, upon which they planted their great guns, from whence they play'd so furiously upon the new bastion of the *Dutch* fort, that they were not able to bring it to perfection. *John Peterfon Koen*, the *Dutch* governor, having thereupon call'd together a council of war, it was resolv'd, that to hinder the further progress of the enemy, they should make a falley the next morning by break of day, in order to attack the redoubt, and the quarters of the *Chinese* and *English* at the same time. Accordingly our men were divided into three troops, commanded by *Peter Van Broek*, (afterwards governor-general of the *Dutch-Indies*) *Peter Van Dirks*, and *Peter Van Rey*, with these they attack'd the before-mentioned posts at once. The *Javanese* fought bravely at first; but seeing the *Hollanders* persisted in the attack, resolv'd either to flee or overcome, they retreated, leaving their strong hold to the enemy, who destroy'd all their work in a few hours. But being sorely gall'd by the fire of the city, they had not the same success at the new redoubt erected by the enemy near the river-side; so, that having endeavour'd, but in vain, to make a breach there, they were forced to retire with the loss of 15 men killed and 10 wounded. Besides this redoubt, the *Javanese* had another battery raised in the midst of the city, which being mounted with heavy cannon taken out of the *English* ships, did also considerable mischief to the besieged, who were day and night at work in raising batteries, and putting their fortifications in a state of defence; whereas the enemy being much superior in number, had had time enough to provide themselves with all things for this enterprise. In the mean while the *Hollanders* made a second attempt upon the redoubt near the river-side, but were repulsed with the loss of 7 or 8 of their men, and a lieutenant, whose head the *Javanese* carried in triumph on the top of a lance. The *English* then living at *Bantam*, would fain have revenged themselves upon the *Dutch* inhabitants there, for the damages their countrymen had received at *Batavia*, had they not been pre-

vented therein by the *Pangerang*. Whilst the *Dutch*, who were not above 240 fighting men strong in the fortress, were thus defending themselves against some thousands of the *Javanese*, (besides the *English*) an *English* squadron of 11 ships appeared in the road of *Batavia*, coming from *Bantam*; whereupon the governor of the fort, having recommended the defence thereof to *Peter Van Broek* the deputy governor, he went on board a man of war, with an intention to engage the *English*, but finding himself too weak, left what ammunition he could spare, in the castle, and so set sail for the *Molucca* islands, being pursued for some days by the *English*, but to no purpose; who after their return, came again to an anchor in the road of *Batavia*. Thus the *Dutch* were attack'd both by sea and land, yet did not lose their courage, but defended themselves with so much bravery, that the enemy thought fit to offer a truce, to settle, as they pretend, the preliminaries of a peace.

Hostages being exchange'd on both sides, the *Domnagon* or prime minister, the king of *Jacatra*'s brother demanded the sum of 4000 crowns from the *Hollanders*, which he said they had forfeited according to agreement, for having attack'd the *English* without the king's leave, and 4000 more for the letting them finish the new bastion, which he said was not comprehended in the said contract; after many debates and contests, certain articles were at last agreed on, which the *Dutch* (who wanted ammunition) were willing to sign; but the *English* finding those conditions against their interest (the *Dutch* being thereby permitted to remain in the possession of their fortress and habitations at *Bantam*) found out the following trick to break off the treaty; they so far prevail'd, first with *Peter van der Broek* the deputy-governor of the fortress, that he came out to meet the king of *Jacatra* at an appointed place, but no sooner appear'd there but he was taken prisoner, with those few that attended him, and laid in irons; being threaten'd with present death, unless he would prevail with those in the fortress to surrender it immediately; but finding the garrison resolv'd to defend the place, the *English* brought more of their heavy cannon ashore, in order to batter it with the utmost fury; at the same time they drag'd the deputy-governor, laden with irons and a rope about his neck, to the walls of the castle, threatening him once more with immediate death upon the spot, unless the garrison would prevent it by an immediate surrender; the deputy-governor was so far from being overcome by the fear of present death,

1662.

that faithful defence which and threw drag he to a cou ashan wards Dutch and relief, ble no condit all the English jewels first of king o mande trels o

The of del to the the Y hopes no for which Dommi a body deputy that w ingly catra, apartn with t prisoner rify'd with h with th ever b of Bat nor in to fur except tions, to, an ing th aim) b thro' findin booty having the J mainta name on the look' war, Koen, V

1662. that on the contrary, like a brave and faithful commander, he exhorted them to defend the place to the last drop of blood, which so exasperated some of the *Javaneſe* and *English* that stood near him, that they threw him backwards by the rope, and so drag'd him back to the council, all which he took patiently, and with so undaunted a courage, that some of the *English* being aſham'd of so barbarous an action, afterwards beg'd his pardon. By this time the *Dutch* having spent all their ammunition, and quite tir'd out with continual labour and watching, without any hopes of present relief, saw themselves under an indispensable necessity to surrender the place under condition, that the garrison and castle with all the artillery should be deliver'd to the *English*, and the merchandizes, money and jewels to the *Javaneſe*; it was sign'd the first of February 1619, by *Wyndurk Bama*, king of *Jacatra*, and the *English* chief commander on one side, and by those in the fortresses on the other side.

The *Hollanders* being now upon the point of delivering themselves and the fortresses up to their enemies, a sudden accident robb'd the *Javaneſe* and the *English* of all their hopes; for the *Pangerang* of *Bantam* had no sooner notice of this capitulation, in which he had no share, but he order'd his *Dommagon* or chief minister to march with a body of 4000 men to secure the *Dutch* deputy-governor, and the castle with all that was found in it for his use. Accordingly he march'd with all secrecy to *Jacatra*, and meeting with the king in his apartment, put his dagger to his breast with these words: *King, surrender yourself prisoner, or expect no quarter*, which so terrify'd the king, that he comply'd not only with his demands, but soon after retir'd with the queen into the mountains, without ever being heard of since. The *Dommagon* of *Bantam* having taken the deputy-governor into his custody, summon'd the fortresses to surrender, which those refus'd to do, except upon the before-mention'd conditions, which the *Bantameſe* refusing to agree to, and the *English* in the mean while (seeing they were like to be disappointed in aim) beginning to reimbarck their cannon, thro' contrivance of the besieged, these finding their enemies at variance about the booty, began to take fresh courage, and having in several attacks bravely repulsed the *Javaneſe*, were now so confident of maintaining the fort, that they gave it the name of *Batavia*; thus matters stood, when on the 25<sup>th</sup> of March 1619, their so long look'd for relief, consisting of 17 men of war, under the command of *John Peterſon Koen*, came from the *Molouque* islands in

VOL. II.

the road of *Batavia*: Within a few days after they landed 1100 men, divided into 12 several bodies, and edged on with revenge, attack'd the city of *Jacatra* with incredible fury, the *Javaneſe* defended themselves with great obstinacy for some time, but no longer able to endure our fire, they left their entrenchments, and look'd for their safety in an open flight, being closely pursued by the *Dutch*, who gave no quarter; this happened the 30<sup>th</sup> of March 1619, which day is yearly celebrated here in memory of this great action. This done, *Mr. Koen* sail'd with the fleet to *Bantam*, demanding the immediate restitution of all the prisoners; the *Pangerang* being at first unwilling to grant his demand, he began to thunder with his cannon into the city, which soon terrify'd him into a compliance. The *English* seeing themselves now quite out of all hopes of accomplishing their design, by the coming of the *Dutch* fleet, made the best of their way thro' the freight of *Sunda*, and those of *Bantam*, finding themselves forsaken by their confederates, thought it most convenient to give over their project.

The *Hollanders* having now their hands free, and seeing the situation of their new fortresses in so fertile a country, near a very advantageous bay, capable of containing 1000 ships with safety, resolv'd and gave immediate orders for the building of the city, under the cannon of the fortresses, the adjacent islands furnishing them with sufficient stone and mortar, and what else was requisite for this undertaking, being purchased from the neighbouring confederates. But the *Javaneſe* not being able to brook this rise and encrease of this new city, the *Mataram* (or *Javaneſe* emperor) 1629, laid close siege to it with 12000 men, under the conduct of the prince of *Madure*; and being advanc'd with their works within musket shot of the walls, they made several furious attacks in the night-time, but were as often repulsed by the fire of the besieged, who besides this made frequent sallies, and ruin'd their works, without giving them leisure to repair them. The *Javaneſe* being resolv'd to try all means to reduce the place, stop'd the current of the great river with piles run'd into the bottom, behind which they threw all the dead carcasses of men and beasts, which not only infected the water, but also the air, which occasion'd distempers among the besieged, who were forced to drink salt water for a considerable time, till at last by continual digging having found some springs of tolerable good water, they began to refresh themselves with less danger and more ease. The *Javaneſe* finding also this dis-

Cccc

figa



1662. sign to prove unsuccessful, had recourse again to force, and the 2<sup>d</sup> of October 1629, made a general assault on the south-side of the city, relieving their troops continually with fresh men, but were repulsed bravely without any considerable loss of the Dutch. At the same time they assaulted a small outwork or tower call'd *Maastrand-Waerberg*, defended only by 15 men, who defended themselves courageously, as that they were attack'd. At last, having spent all their powder and ball, they went to work with the tiles and bricks of the castle within; the *Javanese* being sensible of their want, advanced to the very foot of the walls, and having found means to bring a great rope round the building, were endeavouring to pull down the tower; but the besieged seeing themselves in extremity, made a furious sally upon the *Javanese*, who thought not fit to stand the shock, but soon retreated to their entrenchments, except a few that were slain upon the spot. The first of November 1629, about six hours after sunset, the *Javanese* set fire to their camp in three several places, and march'd off with all imaginable secrecy, after a siege of three months and three days. No booty worth mentioning was found there, but 800 men miserably murdered all on a spot; a miserable spectacle! occasion'd as we learn'd afterwards by the haughty courage of the prince of *Madure*, which happened thus: During the first siege of the castle of *Batavia*, the emperor of *Mataran* having sent a body of troops under the command of one of his best officers to the king of *Jacatra*, and the same returning unsuccessful, the prince of *Madure* spoke slightly of the matter, telling openly at court, *That if he had been sent with such troops, he would have carried the castle or died in the attempt.* The *Materan* being inform'd thereof, and resolv'd to try his fortune against *Batavia*, gave the supreme command of his army to the said prince, who proving unsuccessful, just as he was ready to march off with his troops, was order'd to be slain with all his followers, to verify his own words (as he said) that he would either carry the castle or perish in the attempt.

The *Javanese* lost above 30000 men in this unfortunate siege, notwithstanding which, those of *Bantam* in the year 1655, had a mind to try their fortune against the Dutch; who meeting them in the open field, this occasioned many skirmishes, in which the *Javanese* commonly had the worst, so that being pretty well tired with the war, and hearing of the approaching succours from the *Molucca* islands, under the command of *Arnold Ulaming*, they thought it

their best way to come to a composition with them, since which time they have not thought fit to come to any rupture, but maintain a good correspondence with those they know are able to cope with them; especially since they have strengthened their city with divers considerable outworks and forts.

The fort *Ansjol* on the sea-side, the fort *Aake* to the west-side, and on the *Quinquangular* fort, the *Riswick*, *Nootbwick* and *Jacatra* on the land-side. The fort *Aake* is built 1200 rods from *Batavia* to the east, near the sea-side just by the lime-kills, and faced with stone. The fort *Aake* lies about 500 rods from the city, more towards the land-side, being also a free quadrangular figure; hereabouts live abundance of farmers along the river, the grounds being very fertile here. Near it is the *Pest-house*. The fort *Jacatra* stands upon the bank of the river, not above 500 paces to the north-east of the city; from whence there is a strait and pleasant walk thither, planted on both sides with gardens and orchards. The *Chinese*, *Amboyne*, and some other foreigners have their habitations hereabouts. The fort of *Nootbwick* lies to the north of the city near the river, betwixt that of *Jacatra* and *Riswick*.

Without the city many of the citizens have very pleasant gardens and houses. Upon the great river without *Batavia* you see a house belonging to captain *Burghs*, built flat on the top after the *Indian* fashion, being surrounded with all forts of *Indian* trees. Upon the brink of the river is a pleasant summer-house. Without the city, near the great river, stands another house belonging to a rich citizen call'd *Strantwick*, belonging formerly to Mr. *John Maetzucker*, governor-general of the *Dutch Indies*: It is very airy and pleasantly built, with a very fine front, the gardens being well stored with trees and flowers of most forts.

Without the new gate, in a grove of *Chinese* pleasant trees, you see the tomb of a *Chinese* governor, named *Sequa*; being no more than a heap of earth raised above the surface of the ground, and enclosed with brick-work, plaistered white all over: In the midst you see a table, and upon it a cup, into which the *Chinese* put sometimes money, sometimes victuals, to appease the manes of the deceased.

The grounds about *Batavia*, and indeed of the whole isle of *Java*, are extremely fertile in all sorts of fruits the *Indies* afford; but what is most surprizing is, that divers plants, which in *Europe* grow on small and tender stalks, rise up here very thick, and with hard stalks; whereas

*Batavia besieged by the Javanese.*

*The outworks of Batavia.*

*Foot of river.*

*Tree.*

*Blue beans.*

1662. on the o and flower foil about brought from Sur plentiful

Holland and well perfection cabbage. been care plants for flux and gall, are they have gardens p bekabung red and radishes g than in B of them which are Chinese p create an alio is fou called Be request a vers; the the fruit Vines well culti vines have rain, then the journa parts fine very lush of Batavi all the ye ed in due pruned t days mor months l every vin three mo in the ye without t low, or salt-petre others; w would b inhabitia grapes, ounces; as the Sp All al a certain branches very ple rise up to French b trees. bud as l at the e

1662. on the other hand, divers sorts of beans and flowers grow in *Java* upon trees. The soil about *Batavia* is so rich, that the seeds brought hither out of *Holland*, *Persia*, and from *Suratte*, thrive extremely, and yield plentiful fruits.

*Holland* cabbages, if sown in due time, and well look'd after, come here to a good perfection, but if neglected they will not cabbage. Provident nature seems to have been careful in abundance of astringent plants for this climate, where the bloody flux and other distempers occasioned by the gall, are so frequent. Of trefoil or clover they have great store here; and in their gardens purslain, asparagus, endive, lettuce, bekabung, water-cresses, parsley, radishes, red and white beets, and such like: The radishes grow longer and better tasted here than in *Europe*, and there is a certain kind of them shorter but thicker than the rest, which are boil'd like our turnips. The *Chinese* pickle radishes, and use them to create an appetite to their victuals. Here also is found a certain kind of *Mandragora*, called *Bella Donna* by the *Italians*, in great request among the *Indians* in burning fevers; they pickle it in vinegar, and eat the fruit roasted in the ashes as a diet.

Vines are very plenty and good here if well cultivated; whether or by whom the vines have been translated hither is uncertain, there being no mention made of it in the journals of the voyages made into those parts since the year 1595. They grow very luxuriously upon the walls of the houses of *Batavia*, which bear fruit in a manner all the year round, provided they be pruned in due time; for 14 days after they are pruned the buds come out, which in 14 days more stand in full blossom, and in two months longer produce ripe grapes; so that every vine brings forth ripe grapes every three months, and consequently four times in the year. But they don't thrive so well without the city; whether the lands be too low, or not sufficiently purged from the salt-petre, I will leave to the enquiry of others; since it is certain, that vineyards would be of prodigious consequence to the inhabitants, there being vines here which bear grapes, each bunch weighing 16 or more ounces; and there are some grapes as big as the *Spanish Muscadine* grape.

All along the roads about *Batavia* grow a certain plant among the woods, with small branches not unlike the hops, which spread very plentifully upon the ground, or will rise up to a good height on stalks like our *French* beans, having leaves like our rose-trees. The flower comes forth out of a bud as large as our ordinary roses, pointed at the end; they are of a lovely sky blue

colour, and yellow in the middle, but the fruit being rank is not regarded.

The *Indian* beets grow in the gardens of *Batavia*, their leaves being not unlike our sorrel leaves, with a pale vein thro' the middle: They bring forth pursley flowers on green stalks; some are white, others a mixture of purple and green. The leaves and stalks when boil'd, are in taste like the *Indian Bajon*: All sorts of garden-herbs are in great request among the *Indians* here, because most of the *Indian* foreigners that come from *Suratte*, and the coast of *Coromandel*, feed for the most part upon fruits of the earth; for believing the transmigration of the soul, they will not eat the flesh of any living creature; for which reason also they abstain from red beans, or herbs of a red colour, as having a resemblance to blood; and for the same reason it is, that the *Indians*, tho' otherwise very ignorant, yet are very well versed in the knowledge of plants and trees. The *Malayans* call all pot-herbs or other eatable herbs *Seir*, but medicinal and poisonous herbs *Oubat*. About *Batavia* are to be found divers sorts of pot and other garden herbs; as red and white beets, parsley, divers sorts of lettuces, dill, fennel, asparagus, &c. And of fruits of the earth water-melons, pumpions, cucumbers, citruls, &c. And of pulse, all sorts of beans and peas, which grow up to a great height on stalks or trees.

The fruit call'd *Fokky-Fokky* by the *Indians* is shaped like a pear, sometimes near a yard long, and of the thinness of a man's arm: It contains abundance of small seeds, the rind being thin, but so smooth and bright, that you may see your face in them like as in a looking-glass: The leaves are green but rough, and as it were covered with a hairy substance: They grow up to a good height. This fruit is one of the best and most esteem'd of all the *Indies*, being of a delicious taste, and when boil'd with wine and pepper, not unlike our artichoke bottoms. They are frequently eaten both by the *Dutch* and *Indians*, instead of the *European* turnips, being look'd upon as very nourishing and easy to be digested; besides, that by their diuretick quality they are good against the gravel and stone. There is another wild kind of *Fokky-Fokky*, the fruits whereof are round, and when ripe turn yellow, but these are only food for the hogs.

In the plains of *Java* grows a tree, the fruit whereof the *Malayans* call *Jamboes*, and the *Dutch* sloes or small plumbs: This tree resembling in all respects our sloe or wild plumb-tree, the fruits being also of an astringent but not disagreeable taste: The fruit when ripe is yellow, and the juice

1662. juice thereof mix'd with *Champana* and rose water, is used against the inflammation of the throat. The juice taken inwardly is good against the bloody flux, and other bileous distempers. Thus this juice of the *Indian* fruit *Jangomas* is equivalent in its virtue to the *Acacia* of the antients, or to our *European* sloes.

Cubebes or Kumuk.

In the isle of *Java* only, viz. in the woods near the shore of the streight of *Sunda*, grows wild a certain fruit called *Cubebes* and *Qyabeb* by the *Arabians*, *Kumuk* by the *Javaneſe*, and by the rest of the *Indians*, except the *Malayans*, *Kubab Sini*, i. e. *Chinese Cubebe*, not because it grows in *China*, but because it is transported thither in great quantities. The tree which bears this fruit is both in leaves and branches not unlike to our apple-tree, but somewhat lesser. The fruit is round, smaller than pepper, of a dark brown colour, and if pinch'd with the nails, will emit a certain liquor like unto the cloves. This fruit is in so high an esteem among the *Javaneſe*, that they will not permit them to be transported, unless they are boil'd before-hand, to prevent their being transplanted into another place. They gather some of them before they are ripe; these are light, with a rough rind, within which is a small soft and whitish kernel. When they are ripe the rind is smooth, have a bigger kernel, and are much heavier than the others. Before they are quite ripe, they have an aromattick, biting, and bitterish taste, and when chew'd offend the brain: But the ripe ones are neither so sharp nor so bitter, and don't send so much of their offensive vapours up to the head; they are reckoned hot and dry in the third degree; are good to attenuate slime in the stomach and breast, expel wind, and correct the cold symptoms of the womb. Chew'd with mastick, they draw the phlegmatick humours from the head, and strengthen the brains. They are in great request among the *Javaneſe* and other *Indians*, who steep them in wine, and take them to raise their appetite to venery, and to warm the stomach. Three or four chew'd, disperse the vapours which occasion giddiness in the head, but care must be taken to spit out both the phlegm and *Cubebes*, and to keep the nostrils close while you are a chewing, that so the smell and scent of them may penetrate with the more efficacy, and affect more immediately the head.

Assafetida.

The *Javaneſe*, *Malayans*, and other *Indians*, use very frequently for the relishing of their saucers, a certain drug called *Hin*, by the *Arabians* *Altil*, and by the *Europeans* *Assafetida*, by reason of its ill scent. This shrub, out of the root of which

this juice is express'd, grows in *Persia*, betwixt *Gamren* and *Lara*. It is of two sorts; the first is not unlike our *Oſier*, out of the leaves and sprigs of which is squeezed the *Hin* by a press, and the juice afterward coagulated in the sun: The second sort is much stronger and worse scented, being the juice express'd out of the root of this shrub. This juice, and that of *Amſon* or *Opium*, are two of the chiefest commodities of the *Dutch* trade in the *Indies*. Our *East-India* ships bound to *Java* and other *Indian* ports, do always carry a considerable quantity of this juice from *Persia*, which they exchange with the *Javaneſe* for such of their country commodities as they have occasion for.

Both great and small *Cardamome*, (as the *Carthians* call it) called *Malignetus* by the *Indians*, grows likewise in the isle of *Java*. The small *Cardamome* grows on a stalk with small joints like reeds, (the leaves being also like theirs, and grow in clusters like them;) but the *Cardamome* seldom grows above two or three foot high, and the leaves rub'd betwixt your fingers, emit a very odoriferous scent. From the root first sprout forth in ears like the *Spicknard*, the flowers being of a pale colour, not unlike the orange-flowers. After these come certain husks, which contains these well-scented seeds, which are green, but in time turn of a dark vermillion colour. The *Cardamome* is a most excellent spice of extraordinary virtues, having an agreeable heat consonant to our nature, without leaving any heat behind it, which is the reason that it is chew'd without any addition. It promotes urine, and the monthly terms of the women; opens the obstructions of the spleen and liver, and procures a sweet breath. The great *Cardamome* grows plentifully in the woods of *Java*; the flowers grow on the stalk like the hyacinth; it differs from the small *Cardamome* in divers respects: It grows to the height of six foot, the leaves are larger, and the stalks not knotty like the reeds. The small *Cardamome* sends forth an ear from the root, and the husks are sometimes a finger long. However, the leaves and flowers are of the same scent in both, but the leaves of the great *Cardamome* are not only much larger, but also covered with a *Lanugo* on the under side. This shrub is very pleasant to behold, of a light green colour, with white flowers tip'd with purple red at the extremities.

The plant called by the *Malayans* *Moulit Bebek*, i. e. the *Ducks-Beak*, from its shape, grows in the gardens of *Batavia* on a somewhat longer stalk than the *Cardamome*, being a sempervivent herb; the leaves also differ from those of the *Cardamome*, being carved or edged in the circumference.

1662. The in  
against  
bileous  
good re  
the *M*  
of their

In th  
Indian  
Sunt.

grows  
semblan  
up to t  
hard, a  
the hen  
chofe o  
prickles  
leaf of  
ple col  
the fam  
oily: T  
duas, a  
The *M*  
falls ad  
ter the  
sawdust  
stone, a  
make a  
to the  
ceeding

Benzoin  
tree.

Nardus.

In th  
tree, o  
incision  
called *A*  
tree spr  
nefs of  
Abol  
plenty  
mong  
fish and  
relish.  
and ma  
is esteem  
nefs of  
tions o  
gar an  
serpent  
ly and

Amſon, or  
Opium.

*Amſon*  
*Indians*  
nothing  
uted b  
pecially  
engagi  
very u  
which  
cure r  
mate,  
vers,  
ing fro  
*Indian*  
*Amſon*  
fort of  
called

Pyzang.

Th  
as also  
V o

1662. The inhabitants use the juice of this herb against pustules and other exulcerations of a bileous nature; and steep'd in vinegar, it is a good remedy against the *St. Anthony's Fire*; the *Malayan* women lay it upon the heads of their children to corroborate the brains.

Indian  
Sarsel.

In the isle of *Java*, and adjacent islands, grows an odd kind of sorrel, having no resemblance to the *European* sorrel, growing up to the height of six foot, with a strong, hard, and three corner'd stalk not unlike the hemp; the leaves being also not unlike those of the hemp, beset with sharp small prickles. The flower has but one single leaf of a pale yellow colour, but of a purple colour below. The leaves chew'd have the same taste as our sorrel, but are more oily: The seed is thorny like that of *Carduus*, and of a cooling and drying quality. The *Malayans* eat this herb among their sallads; they also take the leaves, and after they have mix'd them well with the sawdust of sandel-wood upon a marble-stone, and a little coco oil and vinegar, make a cataplasm of it, which they apply to the head to cure the tooth-ach, proceeding from a hot cause.

Benjoin  
tree.

In the isle of *Java* grows likewise the tree, out of the bark of which, after an incision made, flows that well scented gum called *Benjoin* or *Benjuin*, being a shrub or tree spread into many branches, of the thickness of a man's arm.

Nardus.

About *Batavia* grows a plant in great plenty call'd *Nardus*, most in request among the *Javanese*, who used it in their fish and boil'd meat sauces, to give them a relish. They steep the *Nardus* in vinegar, and make a syrup of it with sugar, which is esteem'd a good remedy against the coldness of the bowels, and opens the obstructions of the spleen and liver. This vinegar and syrup cures also the stings of the serpents and scorpions, if applied outwardly and taken inwardly at the same time.

Amfioen, or  
Opium.

*Amfioen* or *Amfion*, as it is called by the *Indians*, and *Opium* by the *Europeans*, is nothing else but the juice of poppies, much used by the *Javanese* and other *Indians*, especially when they are upon the point of engaging their enemies. The *Amfion* is a very useful drug to the *Indians*, without which they would be at a stand how to cure many distempers in this hot climate, as the bloody flux, burning fevers, and such like distempers proceeding from the gall. The poorer sort of the *Indians* boil the leaves and sprouts of the *Amfion*, out of which they make a slighter sort of *Opium*, by coagulating the decoction called *Pouss*.

Pyzang.

The fruit called *Pyzang* or *Indian figs*, as also *Bachorvees* from the *Portuguese* word  
V o l. II.

*Bakovia*, are called *Pyzang* or *Banana's* by the *Malayans*, *Gedars* by the *Javanese*, *Thio* by the *Chinese*, by the rest of the *Indians* *Oucelli*, by the inhabitants of the isle of *St. Thomas* *Oucella*, and by the *Arabian* *Maus* and *Muza*. The stem or trunk of this tree grows up in long oval scollops to the height of 20 or 30 foot in six months time; its circumference being of four foot, but so soft, that you may cut it with a knife like a cabbage stalk. It spreads its branches very loosely, and bears leaves, some of which are a foot and a half broad, and five, six, or seven foot long; green on the uppermost side, but dark on the other side, with a thick vein through the middle. The fruit has an ear, the stalk a yellowish brown, is very pleasing to the sight, and shap'd like a cucumber, turning at the extremities towards one another as they hang on the tree: Before they are ripe they are of a parrot green colour, but when come to full perfection, yellow both in and outside. When the fruit is fit to be gathered the stem is cut down to the ground, and the fruit, which is green as yet, taken and hung up in the house, where it ripens and turns pale yellow in a few days. The rind is so thin, that it may be taken off without a knife. Neither the tree nor fruit produces any seed, but a very handsome flower of the bigness of an ostriches egg, which sprouts forth on the top out of large buds, and opens its leaves by degrees. Whilst the stem has fruit enough to nourish, the leaves fall off one after another: Out of the before-mentioned knot or flower comes forth a branch, on which grows the fruit in a cluster, sometimes 1 or 200 together, so that sometimes one branch is as much as a man can carry, and each stem or trunk brings forth no more than one cluster. There are divers sorts of these figs, distinguish'd by the inhabitants by different names, shapes and tastes; and they put them to various uses; some have a way of drying them in the sun, when they taste as pleasantly as the *Portuguese* figs: Of this kind I tasted at *St. Anthony*, one of the salt islands.

The *Dutch* fry them with butter and eggs, or with butter alone, and eat it for a dainty; thus dress'd they are accounted cooling, nourishing and opening. The fruit raw is very astringent, and consequently not to be eaten thus, because they are windy, and will create a nauseousness in the stomach; and sometimes will produce the bloody flux. However, they being of so agreeable a scent and taste, they are sometimes eaten raw, provided they are cut off the trees a good while before they come to full maturity; when the rind will remain  
D d d d green

1662.

1662. green, and the pulp by degrees acquires a very agreeable taste, not unlike our sugar pears: If you cut the fruit thro' the middle, you will see the figure of a cross within: The leaves of this tree are used like as we do our mats, to pack up goods with: And I remember, that in 1660, when I travell'd with Mr. James Hufart to the isle of Buro, the inhabitants served up their victuals in those leaves instead of dishes, and covered their meats with the same: They also used them instead of napkins to wipe their hands on: When one of our servants offered them a glass with liquor, they refused to take it; but instead thereof brought forth a leaf of a certain tree, which being accommodated for that purpose, they drunk out of it, telling us, that their cup needed no washing: The *Javaneſe* being of opinion, that the leaves of these fig-trees have a great virtue to extinguish the fire, they plant them near their houses, to make use of them in case of necessity. So soon as the stem or trunk is cut to the root, after the fruit is come to maturity, the root sends forth new ones, round about the old one, which coming to their full growth in a little time, and producing new fruits, the same may be had fresh all the year long. This tree grows without much trouble, and in such plenty, that for a penny you may buy a whole bunch; they grow best in a fat and mellow soil. Some will have this fruit the same, which by the spies of *Israel* were brought out of the *Land of Promise* into the camp of the *Israelites*: Others are of opinion, that these were the leaves where with *Adam* and *Eve* covered their nakedness: Others again maintain, that *Adam* eat of this fruit, which occasioned his fall, whence they call them *Paradise Apples*.

The Bam-  
boe.

The *Bamboe* grows all over *Batavia*, being strait reeds clove in two at the upper end, having no root fastened in the ground, but grows without the least portion of earth from the surface of the water, having on the bottom a thick knob, from whence sprout forth small twigs like threads, which being nourished by the air and thaw, bring forth leaves and flowers. Its flowers are very white, having five long leaves somewhat crumpled, not unlike the white lilies; they have also a very odoriferous scent, and a yellow seed within. The leaves sprout forth at the extremity of the twigs bending downwards, which bear long and narrow leaves. It is very surprizing both for its natural growth, and its most agreeable scent.

Button  
flower.

The flower called by the *Malayans*, *Bo-rago Soesan*, by the *Javaneſe*, *Bunbang Ungo*, and *Licubna* by the *Chineſe*, the *Portuguese* call *Fula de Batano*, i. e. the *Button*

flower, from its resemblance to a button. It grows in great plenty in the gardens, by reason of its pleasing purple colour, (which remains even after it is dried) but has no scent. It grows like our clover, except that the leaves grow cloſer to one another on thin brown stalks; The flower comes forth with green buds betwixt two leaves.

1662.

The white sweet briar, called *Boenga Da-du* by the *Javaneſe* and *Malayans*, and *Tyn-fou* by the *Chineſe*, bears leaves and flowers like our rose-tree, except that the flowers, which are very white, are not altogether so large, and have pointed leaves; they scent like our roses, but not altogether so strong. They say, that this tree was first transplanted from *Persia* near *Batavia* by the *Dutch*, when they first settled here: Out of the leaves of the flowers they distil rose-water, used in the same manner as our rose-water, for which reason they are very industrious to propagate this tree.

The white  
sweet-  
briar.

The tree which bears the fruit called *Jakka*, or *Jakkas* by the *Portuguese*, and *Nanka* by the *Javaneſe*, is one of the largest fruit-trees of the *Indies*, which delights in high and dry grounds, where it will grow up to the height of an oak-tree. The leaves are blue on the underside, but green on the other side, round and less than the leaves of our cherry-trees. It bears no flowers, the fruit growing out of stem and branches, of such a bigness, that one of them weighs sometimes nine or ten pounds, being commonly eight inches thick, and a foot and a half long: They are very pleasing to look upon, not unlike the pompions or large melons, but on the outside like the *Ananas* or pine-apples. The fruit is green at first, but after it is gathered and ripened, yellow: It has a thick rind, covered with a kind of three cornered thorny *Lanugo*, but don't prick. Within this rind you have certain divisions like as in a honey comb, which contain certain kernels or chefnuts larger than dates, enclosed in a yellow pulp, which is eaten. The kernel is generally of the bigness of a joint of a man's thumb, and two of them be sometimes found in one of these fruits if it be of the largest size; some are yellow, others white within; the harder the sweeter they are. The fruit is of an agreeable scent, yet of a rough taste, and if eaten raw create winds, but if roasted like chefnuts are well tasted, and a provocative to venery, for which reason they are frequently eaten by the common people. If you eat too much of this fruit it increases the blood, produces loosenesses, exulcerations in the bowels and bloody fluxes. In short, this fruit is very unwholesome by reason of its lusciousness, and

Jakka.



a button. 1662.  
rdens, by  
r, (which  
ut has no  
, except  
one ano-  
he flower  
wixt two

*oenga Da-*  
and *Tym-* *The white*  
*d flowers* *scut-*  
*briar.*  
flowers,  
together  
es; they  
gether so  
was first  
*tavia* by  
ed here:  
they di-  
manner  
on they  
this tree,  
it called *Jakia.*  
*use,* and  
the lar-  
delights  
e it will  
ree. The  
ut green  
than the  
ears no  
tem and  
one of  
pounds,  
, and a  
ry plea-  
ompions  
side like  
fruit is  
red and  
nd, co-  
thorny:  
his rind  
n a ho-  
kernels  
sid in a  
kernel  
int of a  
t some-  
if it be  
others  
er they  
scent,  
create  
re well  
y, for  
ten by  
much  
roduces  
els and  
is very  
fulness,  
and





The herb of the B... Cane

Indian Figs



1663. and is  
as it is  
being  
nag'd  
boil'd  
instead  
fortes;  
the oth  
than th  
pressing  
all over  
Ceylon,  
belt; I  
presente  
delicieu  
none at

This  
of Cam  
from th  
for its  
is call'd  
tavia in  
grow for  
no seed,  
the extre  
the stalk  
per side  
ends of  
produces  
of is lik  
and not  
stem are  
and full  
near the  
surrounde

The flower  
Kalliepri.  
The fl  
layani, K  
boa by the  
Batavia,  
tree, but  
leaves.  
green bu  
oily and  
feeds in t  
request f  
sometime

The r  
Arroz, or  
the flower.  
guese Ful  
Pusia P  
danga, al  
which is  
hot out o  
vine whi  
vines, w  
those of  
green as  
thick tha  
being su  
flower ha  
white win  
sprout su

Theap  
Jamboa

1662. and is commonly evacuated by stool just as it is eaten; the pulp about the kernels being so tough, that it is scarce to be managed with the teeth; the kernels are eaten boiled by the inhabitants with a little salt instead of rice. Of this fruit there are two sorts; one is call'd *Barka*, and is the best, the other *Papa* or *Girafol*, which is softer than the other; as you may perceive by pressing it with your fingers. They grow all over the *Indies*, but those of the isle of *Ceylon*, and the coast of *Malabar* are the best; I remember that the queen of *Signati* presented me with one, which was of so delicious a taste, that I could meet with none afterwards like it.

This flower is called by some the flower of *Camboja*, because it was transplanted from thence to *Batavia*, tho' others look for its original as far as *China*, whence it is call'd *Pakjaboa*. It grows all about *Batavia* in the gardens, on knotty trees, which grow sometimes twelve foot high. It bears no seed, but thick oily leaves, white on the extremities, but a pale yellow towards the stalk; some have red spots on the upper side. The flower sprouts far at the ends of the twigs in a broad knot, which produces several flowers, the scent whereof is like our *May* flowers, but stronger and not so agreeable. The leaves of the stem are long, pointed at the end, green and full of veins; the wood is grey, and near the top where the flower buds out, surrounded with many young sprigs.

The flower call'd *Katsjepiri* by the *Malayans*, *Korban* by the *Javanese*, and *Ambon* by the *Chinese*, grows in the gardens of *Batavia*, the tree being not unlike a palm-tree, but somewhat higher, and with larger leaves. The flowers sprout out of pale green buds, are well scented with thick, oily and snow white leaves, with yellow seeds in the middle. This flower is in great request for its pleasing scent, being sold sometimes for two-pence a piece.

The rice-flower is called by the *Portuguese* *Fulo di Arroz*, by the *Malayans* *Boingo Pissa Pria*, and by the *Javanese* *Pella Sindanga*, all in the same sense from its scent, which is like rice when it comes boiling hot out of the pot. It grows on a kind of vine which spreads its branches like our vines, with very fair broad leaves, like those of the quince pear-tree, and are as green as a leek. The branches grow so thick that the sun cannot penetrate them, being supported by bamboo sticks. The flower has single white leaves, streaked with white within, and in the middle a pointed sprout surrounded with small buds.

The apples called *Pompions* by the *Dutch*, *Jamboa* by the *Portuguese*, and *Tboe* by the

*Chinese*, grow scarce any where else in the *Indies* but in the isle of *Great-Java*, especially in the gardens of *Batavia*. This tree is produced by no other ways than either by laying off of the branches, like as we do our vines, or from the seed of the fruit; the first bears fruit the second year, but the tree which comes from the kernel or seed does not bear till the third or fourth year. The apples are of a gold colour without, and some of them red within; their taste being not unlike our cherries. Some are white and somewhat sweeter; they are very like oranges, both in and out side, except that they are five times as big, some weighing 10 or 12 pounds, and being 10 or 12 inches in circumference, so that one apple is sufficient for two or three at a time. They grow in clusters four or five together, on thin twigs supported by bamboo-canes, without which they would either break or hang down to the ground. The tree also grows like the orange-tree, except that the branches are somewhat thicker and closer, and the leaves broader. The blossoms have white leaves, with a yellow seed within, being of the bigness of our apple blossoms: The fruit continues almost all the year round, and after it is gathered will keep four or five months. It delights in a fat soil, and the ground must be kept clear of weeds near the stem.

Most and the best of the *Indian* fruits continue throughout the whole year, except few, among which that call'd *Man-gas* by the *Javanese*, and *Pas Ampelan* by the *Malayans* is one; the trees which bear this fruit are sometimes as tall, thick and well spread as the largest oak trees in *Europe*. The flowers which are white, sprout forth of certain small twigs growing on the branches, which produce such vast plenty of fruit, that when they begin to ripen, they are forced to support them with sticks. Their time of gathering is chiefly in *September* and *October*; tho' less or more they continue throughout the year. And most of the trees bear fruit but every other year. The fruit is something larger than a plumb; green at first, but when ripe of an orange colour; some are spotted, and being of the same colour on the inside are very pleasing to the eye, but somewhat crabby in taste. The inhabitants make divers relishing pickles of them; they boil them in a certain pickle, and make them as good in taste as the best *Portuguese* olives; others are pickled with vinegar and green pepper, and are used with roasted meats like our pickled cucumbers. They are also preserved with sugar for the use of the women; they have another way of taking off the rind and the kernel, the space of which they

The flower  
Stampin.

The flower  
Katsjepiri.

Arroz or  
rice flower.

Jamboa.

Man-gas  
or Man-  
gas.

1662.

they fill up with sugar, butter and eggs, and so make a delicious dish of them, very pleasing both to the palate and stomach. The fruit, if eaten in any great quantity after it is ripe, is very unwholesome, but moderately used, is good against the bloody-flux. The tree is produced out of the kernel, and does not bear till some years after, neither does it bear fruits for several years before it dies.

Mango-  
flan.

The fruit call'd *Mangostan* by the *Malayans* and *Manges Tanges* by the *Javaneze*, carries the bell before all the other *Indian* fruits, for its agreeable taste. It grows chiefly about *Bantam*, and in some places of *Malacca*. The tree which bears this apple, grows no higher than a plumb or mulberry-tree, having a straight stem of the bigness of a man's calf of his leg; with a rough bark, its branches growing up like those of the clove tree; both the leaves and branches affording a very agreeable sight. The apples hang at the extremities of the small twigs, each being cover'd with two leaves, of two palms in length, having abundance of veins; they are somewhat of a pale green on the outside, but light green on the inside. This agreeable fruit comes forth from a pale green bud, which opening produces the blossom, and these the fruit. On the top of the apple is a kind of a coronet, which opens as soon as it begins to ripen. The several points of this coronet has so many marks to direct you how many kernels are contained in the apple; which are sometimes six, sometimes eight; but those which have the most kernels, are generally the best. The fruit has a very thick rind, not unlike our granate apples, of a purple colour without and whitish on the inside; Its taste is somewhat crab-like, not unlike the rind of the granate apple, and somewhat inclining to bitter; the pulp which is round the inward kernels, is sometimes white, sometimes inclining to red, being exceeding pleasing to the palate, and not unwholesome for the stomach, notwithstanding its cooling quality, it being scarce ever known, that any body surfeited himself by the eating of this fruit, a thing otherwise very common to the cooling fruits of the *Indies*. These are accounted very proper even in agues, and have towards the bottom, about the stalks, three or four different rinds or shells. These are brought in such vast quantities from *Bantam* to *Batavia*, that you may buy many of them for six-pence, and I have seen several of them in the gardens about *Batavia*, one whereof bore fruit very plentifully, which makes me believe they would thrive very well hereabouts.

Indian Al-  
mond tree.

As far as I remember, there is scarce

1663.

any kind of fruit tree in the *Indies* which casts its leaves so as to remain bare except this tree, which as well as the fruit is call'd *Katopper*. The tree grows up very tall, with thick branches and leaves, which afford a very plentiful shade; it is in all respects like an elm-tree, except that its leaves are above a palm in length and very narrow, with yellow veins. The stem of this tree is very strait, out of which come forth the branches one above the other in due order. The fruit grows in clusters on the extremities of the twigs with the blossoms, which are small white flowers with a yellow seed, and many green buds not open'd yet near them: The fruit is enclosed in a hairy substance, which turns yellow, and shrinks as it ripens; within which is a hard shell, which contains commonly one, and sometimes two kernels. These are as sweet as almonds, being not unlike them in shape, and are eaten and used otherwise like almonds; the shell is so hard that you can scarce crack them with your teeth. There are divers sorts of them; some having a pale red shell, which are bigger, others a yellow one.

The *Javaneze Rottangs* grow in those countries wild, and are different in their kind; some would have them to be a kind of reed, because they grow sometimes with knots or joints; whereas otherwise they have no resemblance either in the stem or leaves to the cane or reed kind. This grows so fast, and twists its self sometimes so closely up to the very tops of the highest trees, that they die for want of air. They are much used in the *Indies*; however the best walking canes are brought from *Japan* and *Siam*. They bear also a kind of fruit of a brown colour like our earth-nuts, with a very thin rind, containing two kernels, which are white, but of an unpleasant taste, and therefore scarce ever eaten, except a small portion thereof next to the rinds which is well tasted. The *Chinese* make divers sorts of pickles of this fruit, in the nature of the pickled olives, and draw an oil from them, which is very good to heal wounds.

The tree and fruit call'd by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch Anrae*, is call'd *Sarborosia* by the *Malayans*. It grows in divers places of the *Indies*, to the height of an ordinary apple-tree, with rough leaves, which are green at first, but turn brown as the fruit begins to ripen, and grow directly opposite to one another, like those of the tree *Gojavas*, but are not so broad. It bears no blossom, the fruit coming forth of buds like the *Portuguese* figs, which has a rough rind, with pale green knots, not unlike the pine-apple; it comes to full maturity in three months time, when it is gathered, and kept



d  
lies which 1662.

re except  
it is call'd  
very tall,  
which af-  
in all re-  
that its  
and very  
e stem of  
which come  
e other in  
n clusters  
with the  
e flowers  
reen buds  
e fruit is  
which turns  
; within  
ains com-  
o kernels.  
being not  
eaten and  
ne shell is  
ack them  
vers sorts  
red shell,  
y one.

in those The Japa-  
at in their nest Rot-  
be a kind tangs.

times with  
wife they  
ne stem or  
d. This  
sometimes  
the highest  
air. They  
wewer the  
rom Japan  
of fruit of a  
ts, with a  
ncls, which  
taste, and  
pt a small  
s which is  
livers sorts  
nature of  
h oil from  
l wounds.

the Portu- The tree  
Sarborofia and fruit  
Anas.

vers places  
rdinary ap-  
n are green  
t begins to  
ite to one  
e Gojovias,  
o blossom,  
is like the  
ough rind,  
e the pine-  
ty in three  
ered, and  
kept







1662. kept till  
ken with  
rotten m  
pulp of  
scarce be  
tants ma  
to make  
of our w  
well bea  
fruit. T  
called A  
are leffer  
sembles  
above a p  
bigness o  
owed wi  
within, v  
more luf  
scent like  
comfortab  
held in g  
sprouts fo  
opening,  
bud, whi

*Dut-tree.* The d  
*Persia* ne  
sandy gro  
of late y  
of which  
*Moleib's*  
have infer  
time will  
in their fi  
have, like  
and the t  
towards  
is account  
sperm an  
*Persians*  
fruit, tha  
do bread  
hang in  
of a delic  
There is  
last of w  
also in t  
and long  
fame in  
bunch. on  
of the r  
ing after  
and thol  
off this  
it opens,  
one of v  
cluster of  
a way to  
the tree b  
They h  
male tree

*Wat.*  
*milons or*  
*Patekas.*  
The v  
*Indians,*  
almost in  
Vol.

1662. kept till it grows soft, that it may be broken with ones hands; within it resembles a rotten medlar, being full of seeds, and the pulp of so agreeable a taste, that one can scarce be satisfied with it. The inhabitants make many incisions in the bark, to make the tree bear the better, as we say of our walnut-trees, when the twigs are well beaten whilst they are gathering the fruit. There is another sort of these figs called *Aianone* by the inhabitants, which are lesser, as is likewise the tree, which resembles a shrub, with narrow leaves, but above a palm in length. The fruit is of the bigness of a *China* apple, yellow and shadowed with an orange colour, but white within, with brown seeds; they are much more luscious, and when cut open emit a scent like rose-water, being accounted very comfortable to the brains, and therefore held in great esteem. This fruit likewise sprouts forth out of long green buds, which opening, contain another round nut or bud, which produces the fruit.

Date-tree.

The date trees grow in great plenty in *Persia* near *Gamron*, and delight much in sandy grounds. Some of these trees have of late years been transplanted to *Batavia*, of which I saw a young one in Mr. *Peter Moleb's* garden, the draught of which I have inserted, but whether it will bear fruit time will shew. The date trees continue in their full vigour for many years; they have, like the coco-trees, very small roots, and the trunk is thicker near the top, than towards the root. The pith of the three is accounted excellent good to encrease sperm and an appetite to venery, and the *Persians* about *Gamron* are so fond of this fruit, that they eat it at their meals as we do bread, or the *Indian* rice. The dates hang in yellow shells on the trees, being of a delicious taste, especially if eaten green. There is a male and female date-tree, the last of which bears fruit only; they differ also in this, that the female has a thicker and longer stem, but the blossom is the same in both, and shoots forth in a great bunch or cluster on the top of the tree, of the thickness of an arm, which opening after some time produces the flowers, and those the fruit. The *Persians* cut off this knot from the male tree before it opens, which they cut into divers pieces, one of which they put into the knot or cluster of the female tree, (which they have a way to open) pretending thereby to make the tree bear greater plenty of fruit.

They have many stories of the male and female trees, tho' not worth the inserting here.

Water-melons or Patekas.

The water-melons, call'd *Batiek* by the *Indians*, as also *Patekas* or *Pateks*, grow almost in all the countries betwixt the two

Vol. II.

tropicks of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*, yet the nearer to the *Equinoctial* line, the better they are, and continue in vigour all the year round, except in the height of the rainy season. Some are white without, as at *Batavia*, but the red ones are the best; they have a thin green rind, which is soft and tender within. The pulp is bright, and so tender as to melt in ones mouth like sugar. The seeds are black, not unlike our pompanion seeds: The plant creeps with its stalks and leaves along the ground like the pompanions, and at their opening resemble our cucumbers. The fruit is sufficient for four persons to feed upon, and is, among all other fruits that are eaten raw, the most pleasant and harmless, tho' you eat ever so much of it. However, moderately eaten they are best, when they are very refreshing and acuate the stomach; whereas in too great a quantity they are obnoxious, and may occasion the bloody flux: They grow best in sandy grounds. I have seen some of them in the gardens of *Holland*, but the fruit has a watery taste.

Ananas.

The fruit called *Ananas*, by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, is called *Nuna* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, and *Unglay* by the *Chinese*. The plant which produces this fruit delights to grow in shady places and a fat soil: First shoots forth a stalk of an inch thick and a foot long, on which near to the ground grows the fruit, not unlike a melon, with a well colour'd rind, being of a pale red colour mixed with orange colour'd streaks, which towards the extremities are green. The fruit looks yellow within. They are sometimes five inches in circumference, and nine long, weighing perhaps five or six pounds. Below and round about the stalk come forth certain sprouts like house-leek or alocs, with 15 or 16 carved leaves of the same colour as the fruit, green in the middle, and of an orange colour about the edges. The *Ananas*, after it is come to its full perfection, is one of the most delicious fruits of all the *Indies*; but before they are well ripe, they contain a corroding poisonous quality, of which the ripe ones even have some remnants, and therefore ought not to be eaten in too great a quantity, unless you cut them into small slices, and by pouring some *Spanish* wine upon them draw out the sharp humour. Some use water instead of wine, notwithstanding which they often create a heat in the throat; but as they are diuretick, so they are accounted good against the gravel: But without being steep'd in wine or water, they would exacerate the palate of the mouth and the tongue, and cause a mortal bloody-flux. They have a way of preserving them with

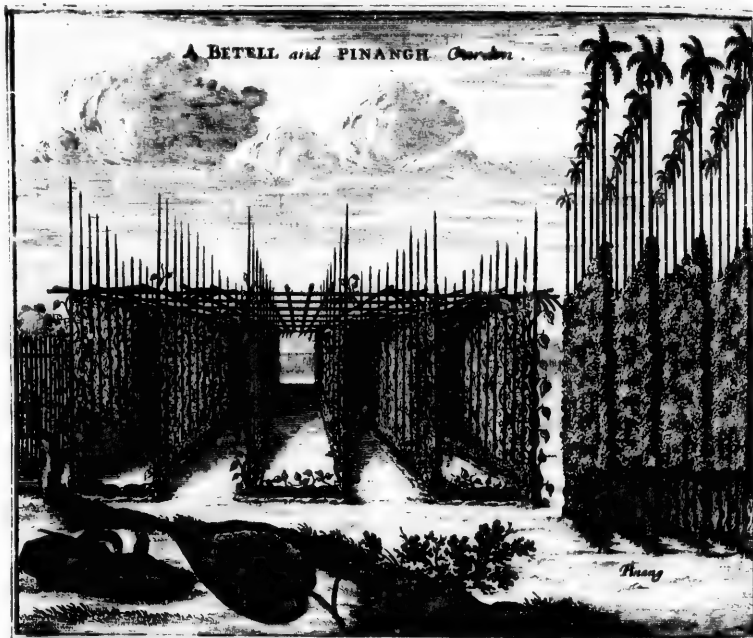
E e e e

sugar,

1662. sugar, and are thus transported frequently from the *West-Indies* into *Europe*. This fruit has so fragrant a smell, that when it is cut it fills the room with a smell like rose-water: In taste they approach next to our large strawberries, which being very inviting to the palate, makes one eat too much, and inflames the bowels, or occasions burning fevers, for which reason they ought to be eaten with caution. Those of the isle of *Ceylon* exceed the rest in taste; those growing near *Batavia*, and in other parts of *Java*, are not so fine. The fruits ripen in six months; when they are cut

from the stalks, which remain thus; or else they take the sprouts, and having cut them from the main stalk, put them thus without any root in the ground, which afterwards produce new plants. The fruit *Ananas* grows in most parts of both the *Indies*, and some are of opinion, that the first plants thereof have been transplanted many years ago from *Brasil* unto the *East-Indies*.

Among other *Indian* plants, which are beneficial to human kind, is that called *Betel* or *Betele* by the *Indians*, and *Siry* by the *Malayans*, *Sury* by the *Javaneze*, and *Lauben* by the *Chinese*, which is one of the



most inconsiderable ones. It resembles at a distance the black pepper, and runs up with its branches round trees, stalks, posts, or any other thing it meets with, like our hops, to a good height, delighting especially in a well dung'd soil, and shady places, and growing but slowly in the open air: It requires also a considerable heat, which is the reason that it is planted near the sea-side, and after all must be defended and covered against the cold night blasts, being so tender, that it can't bear the least cold. Both the branches and leaves are in all respects like those of the pepper; the leaves being sometimes six inches broad, and as many long, of a dark green colour, having

several veins thro' the length, and 5 or 6 crosswise; the stalks are an inch broad. The leaves have a spicy taste, very penetrant and somewhat astringent. They are so generally used in the *Indies*, as if the inhabitants could not live without them. They take a single leaf, and a small quantity of lime made of burnt oyster shells, then folding the leaf together, they put into it the lime, and a fourth part of the nut *Areka*, (or *Pinang*) which augments the astringent quality of the *Betel*, and draws the spittle: After they have chew'd it thus a while, the first spittle is red, like stagnated blood, which being pass'd, they swallow the rest. The first spittle taints the

1662. the li  
affected  
ted to  
who,  
seized  
create  
not u  
bing  
juice  
an af  
the st  
contai  
the u  
the va  
revive  
breath  
stems  
but n  
ornam  
and if  
it will  
chew'd  
spittle  
sons o  
greece  
is so f  
visit to  
is brou  
in pots  
The  
Pynang  
iru.

Pynang  
iru.  
happ  
are no  
origina  
coco-t  
especia  
drive a  
transpo  
to the  
In a f  
nuts.  
forth o  
gether  
leaves,  
confide  
and ev  
the nu  
ka by  
layans  
both si  
at first  
some  
these  
twigs  
lour,  
bunch  
on the  
This  
but th  
inches  
and m  
the le  
trees l



thus; or else  
ing cut them  
n thus with-  
which after-  
the fruit *Ana-*  
ch the *Indies*,  
e first plants  
many years  
ndies.  
s, which are  
that called  
and *Siry* by *Betel*.  
is one of the



Pynang  
tree.

and 5 or 6  
inch broad.  
very pene-  
They are  
as if the  
hout them.  
small quan-  
after shells,  
they put  
part of the  
gment  
and draws  
chew'd it  
s red, like  
as'd, they  
little taints  
the

1662. the lips with a pleasing red, as soon as it affects the brains, which is chiefly attributed to the *Areka*; and I have seen some, who, tho' used to chew this mixture, were seized with swooning fits: It never fails to create a giddiness in the head to such as are not used to it, which is soon cured by rubbing their gums with a little salt. The juice thereof, which is swallowed down, has an astringent and corroborating quality of the stomach, after the first spittle which contains the lime, is spitted out: It closes the upper orifice of the stomach, disperses the vapours arising from drunkenness, and revives the spirits. It corrects a stinking breath, cures the tooth-ach and scurvy, fastens the teeth and strengthens the gums, but makes the teeth as black as jet, an ornament much affected by the *Indians*; and if you chew too much of this mixture, it will loosen and corrode the teeth. *Betel* chew'd without lime, produces a green spittle, but with lime, makes it red; persons of quality mix some musk, amber-greece or camphire with it: The use of it is so frequent here, that no body pays a visit to another, but a small dish of *Betel* is brought immediately. Nice people spit in pots.

The ancient herbalists have placed the *Pynang* tree among the palm-trees, perhaps because its stem, leaves and branches, are not unlike the coco-tree. It owes its original to the kernel of the nut like the coco-tree, and grows all over the *Indies*, especially in the isle of *Ceylon*, where they drive a great traffick with these nuts, and transport them in prodigious quantities to the coast of *Madura* and other places. In a few years after it is planted it bears nuts. From underneath the leaves sprout forth certain twigs, which grow close together, and are full of small of small white leaves, emitting a most fragrant scent at a considerable distance, especially mornings and evenings. After these flowers come the nuts, called *Fausel* by the *Arabians*, *Areka* by the *Indians*, and *Pynang* by the *Malayans*: They grow very thick together on both sides of very strong stalks, being green at first, but turning yellow by degrees; some are of an orange colour. Some of these nuts grow not so close on tender twigs; others, which are of an orange colour, grow out of certain green hulks, in bunches like grapes; they are covered on the out-side with a hairy substance. This tree equals in height the coco-tree, but the stem seldom exceeds six or seven inches in thickness, neither has it so long and many branches as the coco-tree, and the leaves are shorter and broader. These trees look very oddly at a distance, being fo

thin of stem and almost without branches, so that they are beat by the wind on all sides, yet never break. The stem is spongy within, but the bark very hard, of which they make laths for the coverings of their houses, for which they are very useful by reason of their straightness. The fruit resembles an acorn, but is four bigger; however, when cleansed from the hairy threads, the nut scarce exceeds the bigness of a nutmeg, and looks like it within. The kernels are astringent, and good for the stomach. They make no other use of them but for chewing with the *Betel* leaves and lime, as we told you before. They cleanse the nuts from the hairy strings with a pair of scissors, and cut the nut if large in four, or else in two pieces; and this put into a leaf of *Betel*, and mix'd with a little lime, they chew so long as it will draw the spittle, and spit out what remains; but the old *Pynang* nuts with the *Betel* leaf will dissolve insensibly in the mouth. Such as are not used to the chewing of *Pynang*, especially if used before it is come to its full maturity, will certainly be seiz'd with giddiness in the head, and will fall down without sense or motion.

*Suryboa* is a certain plant which runs up close round the *Pynang* tree to a great height, and being planted in rows, afford shady and agreeable walks. The leaves and branches are like those of the *Betel* or of pepper: The fruit is not unlike in shape to the *Bengal* pepper, growing on small and green stalks of two fingers length: It is green and chequer'd, of the length of a palm, but scarce an inch thick, containing a white kernel with small seeds. These kernels are used with the *Areka* instead of *Betel*, being a pleasant chew. They cut them through the middle, and taking one half of the *Pinang* kernel likewise cut in the middle, they tie both together with a cotton thread, and with the addition of a small quantity of lime made of oyster-shells, use it like as they do the *Betel*; it has the same effects, and being not so common as the *Betel*, is more esteem'd among persons of quality.

*Dap-Daf* or *Dap-Dap*, is a very agreeable fruit both raw and dress'd, having a very pleasant taste, of a mixture of sweet and sour, and of a cooling quality. It grows out of the bottom of a stem of a tree, having very fine leaves, the flowers or blossom consisting of small red leaves. The fruit is inclining to red, mix'd with black spots of an oval figure, and ragged, bent a little at the end like a cucumber. It contains a white kernel of a delicious taste, being enclosed in a whitish rind. These trees bear fruit all the year long.

1662.



1662. long, and grow properly in the *Molucca* islands, from whence they have been transplanted into the gardens of *Batavia*, but do not thrive so well there as in their native soil, being much pester'd with aunts or pismires, which do incredible mischiefs to the fruits there. The tree whereof I took the draught at *Batavia*, was furrounded with rails, within which the ground was paved with stone, and a small cistern in it with water, notwithstanding which the fruit was so covered with pismires as scarce to be discerned.

Takkatak. The fruit call'd *Takkatak*, or *Boa Burun* by the *Malayans*, and *Kannekoni* by the *Javanese*, are by the *Dutch* called *Red-Currants*, from their resemblance to our currants, tho' in their qualifications they are very different. These berries grow on high trees with large leaves, not unlike the chefnut trees, and sprout forth in large buds in clusters, on the twigs of the trees, being of the same bigness as ours, but are of a four taste; notwithstanding which they are much coveted, and sold and used in great quantities at *Batavia*, in the same manner as we do our red-currants. They grow in the gardens about *Batavia*, and bear fruit every three months, but most in September.

Moringo. The tree call'd *Moringo* by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, *Ramony* by the *Malayans*, and *Kelor* by the *Chinese*, is found not only in all the gardens, but also before the houses: It has a white blossom, which sprouts forth from white buds, having a yellow seed within. The fruits grow several together, being enclosed in hard husks, not unlike our *French* beans, except that the husks are round and longer. So soon as they are ripe, they are gathered, and the twigs on the top being cut off, others sprout forth in their stead, which bear new fruit. The leaves are very smooth and thick, in taste not unlike the coco leaves in *Holland*, but not so biting and penetrant. They stew these leaves with meat, or eat them alone, as we do our spinage, being well tasted and cooling; the same they do with the husks, whilst they are young, but when old are tough; so that both the usefulness and pleasantness of this tree is a sufficient encouragement to the people to afford it a place in their gardens, especially since it wants no great industry to plant it, as growing out of a sprig of the tree planted only in the ground without any root, which in a few months begins to blossom and to bear fruit.


Torre. The tree called *Torre* by the *Malabars*, *Tary* by the *Portuguese*, *Rombang Juri* by the *Javanese*, and *Husk-Tree* by the *Dutch*, does not rise above the height of an or-

dinary apple-tree: It brings forth certain husks hanging strait down on thin stalks of about a quarter of a yard in length, and the thicknes of a little finger. The husks contain 8 or 10 small pease, which are eaten as well as the leaves, which are round and small, growing on small twigs, and the flowers, which are surprizing at first sight. They sprout forth out of green buds in the shape of a half-moon, with purple-coloured points, and streaks of the same colour within: From the innermost leaf come forth certain long and thin sprouts like fillets, with yellow hairy points; the stalk is green, but the beginning of the leaves of the flower are white, interspers'd with veins to the extremities, with a parrot-green colour intermix'd with some red, which affords a most agreeable spectacle to the eye: The inhabitants also make use of the leaves as a sovereign remedy against the stings of the serpents, in which case they squeeze them betwixt two stones, and mixing a little salt with them, apply them to the tumor, which give immediate relief.

The *Portuguese* have given it the name *Devil's-Folio di Inverno*, or *Devil's-Leaf*, or *Hellish-Leaf*, because it will over-run all places wherever it lights; the *Malayans* call it *Garrak*, and the *Javanese* *Klatte*; It has several physick virtues against divers distempers. There are two sorts, distinguish'd by their different colours, one having green leaves, and growing very fast, the other being brown and red, like the leaves of our red cabbages, and growing up to the height of 12 or 14 foot, with carved leaves hanging on very long stalks. On the top sprouts out a bunch of green buds, which opening by degrees, produce yellowish flowers; after which comes the fruit, not unlike a chefnut, containing a bean or kernel, which is very good food.

The plant or herb called the *Broad-Numerado* by the *Portuguese*, and *Bajan Dierdia* by the *Malayans*. The shape of the leaf which grows on the stalk of this plant chequered with various colours like a tulip, is altogether like our beetes, and used in the same manner, but is preferred for the beauty of its leaves, which are on the top, as an ornament of the gardens. There is another sort resembling in colour our red cabbages, and is frequently planted by the *Chinese*, who sell it in great quantities in the market of *Batavia*; it is of an agreeable taste, either boil'd with meat or stew'd by it self.

The tree which produces the *Javanese* cotton, is call'd *Kappok* by the *Malayans*, *Jerondo* by the *Javanese*, and *My* by the *Chinese*, grows up to the height of a great mat, spreading its branches directly

1602.  


thin stalks  
 in length,  
 The  
 leaf, which  
 are  
 small twigs,  
 surprising at  
 out of green  
 noon, with  
 stalks of the  
 innermost  
 thin sprouts  
 points; the  
 of the leaves  
 with veins  
 ot-green color  
 which affords  
 eye: The  
 the leaves as  
 e stings of  
 they squeeze  
 mixing a  
 them to the  
 relief.

At the name Devil's-  
 s-Leaf, or  
 ever-run all  
 the Malayani  
 le Klautt; it  
 ainist divers  
 orts, distin-  
 one has  
 very fast,  
 ed, like the  
 nd growing  
 foot, with  
 long stalks.  
 ch of green  
 es, produce  
 comes the  
 containing a  
 good food.

Broad-Nu-  
 Bajan Dier-  
 The bread  
 Name-  
 rado.

The shape of  
 of this plant  
 like a tulip,  
 and used in  
 served for the  
 on the top,  
 . There is  
 our red  
 nted by the  
 quantities in  
 agreeable  
 or stew'd by

1662. *strawways* on all sides. The bark of this tree is white, as far as the lowermost branches, but from thence to the top green; the flowers which are white come forth out of certain buds growing out of the branches; then come the fruits of the bigness of a hen's egg, pointed at the end, being green at first, but turn brown like a dried oak-leaf. These fruits hang on the middle and end of the branches, two and two together, seldom one alone. They open at last near the stalks, and produce the cotton-wool, which covers the seed, and extends its self when exposed to the air. The seeds are black, not unlike the brown pepper, but somewhat smoother. The cotton-wool is gathered in the *Indies* in *October* and *November*, wherewith they drive a considerable traffick all over the *Indies*, where they are used instead of feathers, to stuff their cushions, bolsters and quilts withal, feather-beds being unknown here, but is not long enough for combing, or for weaving: Great care is to be taken that no fire come near it, for if it takes fire it burns with such violence, that scarce any water can quench it. This tree grows wherever it is planted.

*Jambos.* The tree *Jambos*, as the *Indians* and *Javanese* call it, the *Portuguese* *Rojado*, the *Malayans* *Jambos Ramus*, and the *Chinese* *Sheapont*, affords a very agreeable entertainment to the eye, while it stands in full blossom. It grows up very regularly, in the shape of a pyramid, the branches growing in good order, neither entangled within one another, neither above one another. It rises to the height of a large pear-tree in *Europe*, and takes deep root. The leaves are long and green, at the extremities of the small twigs sprout out green buds, which produce flowers with leaves as red as blood, containing certain red fillets within: The fruits are of an oval figure, resembling in bigness and shape our sugar-pears, which grow in clusters 23, 24 or 25 together: Some are red, others white, but both of the same taste, tho' the white ones are reckoned the best. They smell very sweet, but are somewhat mellow: The stone which lies in the middle has a large but bitter kernel, which is never eaten. Abundance of these flowers which produce no fruit, fall from the tree upon the ground, which cover the ground underneath, and afford a pleasant sight. The stalks of the flowers are red, not unlike the sea-lion's, but not so long. These flowers have so pleasing and savory a taste, that they are used and eaten as a delicious salad. The fruit has a sweet, yet relishing rest, and allays the excessive heat of the stomach; if stew'd with sugar, and a little wine, they eat like

stew'd pears. The best I ever met with were in the isle of *Ceylon*, where they grow in great plenty. These trees are produced from the seed, and bear fruit in the 4<sup>th</sup> year, and three times in a year, so that they never are in want of this fruit throughout all the seasons: 'Tis generally believed that this tree, for his sweet scented flowers and well tasted fruit's sake, was transplanted from *Malacca* into other distant countries. There is yet another sort of *Jambes*, which grow in the isle of *Amboyna*, on trees no bigger than our cherry-trees, but they are not so well tasted; so that this tree is cultivated there rather for its blossom, which is red also, than the goodness of the fruit.

Among many other fruits, which if eaten raw, are crabbed and sour upon the tongue, we must not pass by in silence what the *Portuguese* call *Nelyka*, the *Malayans* and *Javanese* *Boa Malakka*, the *Chinese* *Sealy*, and the *Dutch* *Wild-Plum*: They grow in vast numbers on thin twigs, and are greenish of colour; the twigs have small green leaves growing close together. The fruit has a fourth taste, and is very cooling, for which reason it is in request by some, tho' generally no great account is made of it. They are in their prime in *August*, and are then to be sold in the market in *Batavia*.

The tree called *Canary* by the Malays, *Javanese* and *Chinese*, is an Indian oak-tree. Canary tree. It grows very high with lofty branches and very smooth leaves, interwoven with divers veins. The stem grows thick, and extends it self into several protuberances near the root. The rangers of the forests keep a watchful eye over these trees at convenient distances, when the acorns begin to fall, because the wild-boars appearing in great numbers, they shoot them ; so that during that season, the wild-boars flesh is sold at a cheap rate in the market of *Batavia*. The fruit is nothing else but an acorn or nut, produced out of a yellow blossom growing on small twigs. The nut or acorn is enclosed in a green shell, and next to that another, which is so hard, that you must break it with a hammer, if you will come at the kernel, which is as white as an almond, and of as good a taste, being covered by a thin skin.

In and near the city of *Batavia*, grows in the gardens a certain flower, both in scent and figure not unlike our camomile-flower, but whether it obtains the same virtue, is unknown hitherto. The *Topafes* call it after the *Portuguese*, *Fulo di Madra* i. e. *Mother-Flower*, because its leaves and the flower are somewhat like the *Matricaria*, and perhaps of the same kind. It

F f f f

grows

1662. grows about a foot high, with large carved leaves: The flower which is white, sprouts forth out of green buds, with double leaves carved at the ends.

The flower call'd *Four-Lights* comes forth out of small buds, being not unlike a single gilliflower, but of a bright red colour. It consists of four carved leaves, which have certain pleasant curls at the ends. The leaves are dark green on the inside, and pale green without, chequered with streaks which run all along to the point of the leaf, which has the shape of an heart. This flower is kept only for ornaments sake, but is soon faded.

Alli or water-flower.

There is scarce a lake or pool in this country, but what produces some flower or other; but the flower called *Alli* is found in great plenty all along the ditch or *Gracht* betwixt *Ansoj* and *Jacatra*. It is a pretty sort of a flower, which may be kept a pretty while in water: It comes forth out of long and large buds, is pale green without, and white within with yellow seeds. After it is opened, it is not unlike a tulip or lilly, except that the leaves are green on the out-side. Its virtues are unknown as yet, but is kept for ornament's sake.

White violet or Jar-ron.

The leaves of this flower growing close within one another like our violets, it has got the name of a white violet, scarce differing from it in any thing but the scent. It grows wild on certain shrubs without *Batavia*; when they are planted in the gardens, the stalks thereof are cut down close to the ground, when new stalks sprout forth, which bring flowers in great plenty. The inhabitants who call this flower *Jar-ron*, say it was brought hither from the isle of *Baly*. The *Malayans* call it *Benja Sufun*, the *Javanese* *Malati Rompah*, and the *Chinese* *Beleboa*. It much resembles the *Katsipiri*, but is not so strong of scent, tho' it has no scent at all, except in the morning, before the sun-beams have dry'd up the dew from its leaves. The leaves are pale green, in shape not unlike peach leaves, but something broader: The flower issues out of a pale green turned bud, of the bigness of a double daffadil, and is snow white.

Cotton of Bengale.

There is a certain sort of cotton which is transplanted from *Bengal* to *Batavia*, called by the *Chinese* *Algodan*, but by the *Malayans* and *Javanese* *Kapas* or *Kappas*; the tree bears flowers and fruit throughout the whole year. So soon as the flowers are gone, there buds out a knot, containing the cotton or wool: The leaves are carved in three places, being not unlike a certain herb the *Dutch* call *Duck-foot*. The flower is brown red, having within certain

pointed fillets. This cotton is fit for weaving.

The fruit called *Batsjan* by the *Javanese* *Malayans* and *Chinese*, is a kind of wild *Mangas* of so strong a scent, that you may smell it before all other herbs in the market. The tree which bears this fruit, is very delightful to the eye, and not unlike the *Mangas* tree, but the leaves are somewhat bigger than those of the almond-tree, of a dark green colour. The blossom is also like that of the *Mangas* tree, and yellow. The fruit is green, of the bigness and shape of a limon, within which grow certain almonds, which are much more taking to the eye than toothsom, tho' the smell is much more disagreeable than the taste, which is bitterish, and somewhat nauseous, and not comparable to the true *Mangas*, which is the reason they are not much planted near *Batavia*, but abundance of them are brought to market there from *Bantam*, in *October* and *November*.

About *Batavia* and all over the isle of *Marokko* grows a certain tree called *Marokko* or *Morukko* by the *Portuguese*, *Dap-Dap* or *Dadap* by the *Javanese*, *Darradap* by the *Malayans*, and *Ossensio* by the *Chinese*. Its leaves are like those of the poplar-tree, but as big again, smell very well, and grow on yellow stalks. These leaves being interspersed with many yellow veins, appear at a distance as if the tree were cover'd with flowers. The inhabitants lay these leaves over their pots, in which they have their boiled rice, the steam of which draws out from thence a very agreeable scent; but have no other use that I know of.

The plant call'd *Ratjiobank* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, *Bantoboa* by the *Chinese*, *Datura* by the *Turks* and *Persians*, *Duroa* by the *Indians*, and in a broken dialect *Dutter* by the *Dutch*, grows wild in the woods, almost all over the *Indies*; it seldom rises above the height or thickness of our red cabbages, the stalk being very like the same, but the leaves brown, pale, green and carved. It bears divers flowers, which open every morning, and close up again about noon; they are white within, and pale yellow without, some being near a palm in length, and of the figure of a bell, others carved at the extremities; after these comes the fruit, which has a pale green rind, cover'd with thorny prickles; they seldom exceed the bigness of our yellow palms, and contain yellowish seeds. Whether this plant has the virtue of intoxicating to a degree of madness for a certain time, as some would have it, I am not able to determine; but this I am certain of, that the *Topasses* and other negroes, who keep it in their gardens near

*Batavia*

1662. *Batavia* perly a The

The *layans*, a parrot forth th the *Bede* growing tops are other fr I know that, th from th boughs, in the to garden, e keep ti and are the bran wards, a see some tree.

Indian kit.

The fruit, ye amends lasting of oak. Th as may b in many building known leaves, w and bran veins of rough, f but are the bou unlike the feed its root the pleu of the in which to the of this deca inwardly seen pie as an ar and of a thickne to meet and mo this tree oak-wo ing har oak, be wor gainst t whole the out

Water-pumpions

The *Dutch* by the

1662. *Batavia*, look upon it as a fable. It is properly a kind of nightshade or henbane.

The trees call'd *Kananga* by the *Malayans*, *Javanese* and *Chinese*, bear leaves of a parrot green colour, above which comes forth the blossom; they are planted near the *Betel*, which winds about them; and growing to a great height, their lofty tops are conspicuous above most of the other fruitful trees in the gardens; as far as I know, they have no other use. Besides that, these trees are easily to be discerned from the rest by their crooked hanging boughs, they commonly set a little wind-mill in the tops to frighten the birds out of the garden, especially the great bats here, which keep their rendezvous in these trees, and are seen hanging with their claws to the branches thereof with their heads downwards, and that in such numbers, that you see sometimes more bats than leaves on a tree.

Indian ash.

The *Indian* oak-tree produces no eatable fruit, yet does its wood make a sufficient amend for this defect, being the most lasting of all, and as good as our *European* oak. This tree grows up to a great height, as may be seen by the long pieces of timber in many of the churches, and other lofty buildings of *Batavia*. This tree is sufficiently known by its large branches and broad leaves, which sprout forth out of the boughs and branches, being intermix'd with green veins of a pale brown colour, and somewhat rough, something resembling the fig-leaves, but are not carv'd; at the extremities of the boughs sprout forth certain flowers not unlike the hops, which produce acorns, the seeds from whence this large tree takes its root; the inhabitants use the leaves in the pleurisy: They take a certain quantity of the liquor contain'd in the coco-nuts, in which they boil some of these leaves, to the consumption of half the liquor, and this decoction they give the patient to take inwardly, which appeases the pain. I have seen pieces of this oak-timber as straight as an arrow, no less than forty foot long, and of 2½ foot diameter to the very top in thickness; and nothing more common than to meet with boards of this wood of three and more foot broad. The *Malayans* call this tree *Kyati*, from whence they call this oak-wood, *Kiaten-wood*; which is exceeding hard, and has the same veins as our oak, being very lasting, and not subject to be worm-eaten, being proof, especially against the mice, which sometimes will eat whole pieces of the timber within, tho' the out side appear very sound.

Water-pumpkins.

The fruit call'd water-pumpkins by the *Dutch* from their shape, are call'd *Katolas* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, and with a

broken name *Katilai* by the *Portuguese*. It is neither a tree, shrub, herb nor plant, but sprouts forth in the nature of small branches, from a small seed, and spreads to that degree, that it runs over the tops of the houses with its leaves and flowers. The *Indians* frequently lead them over their cisterns in which they bathe, being sustain'd by bamboo-canes to keep off the heat of the sun-beams. They bring fruits the whole years round, but especially in *April* and *August*. The flowers are like those of our pumpkins, and fade without producing any fruit. The fruit is of two sorts, one grows to the bigness of our ordinary pumpkins, but the other which is the best, scarce exceeds in bulk our cucumbers or melons. They are used in the same manner for salad. There is another sort of the length of a man's arm, but no thicker than a good walking-cane, the rind being full of spots; that of which I took the draught was 13 inches long and 3½ diameter, weighing 3½ pounds. When the gardeners have a mind to make this grow longer than their ordinary size, they fasten a weight with wire-thread to the extremities of it, which stretches it downwards to a prodigious length. The leaves and branches are like those of the pumpkins; the fruit green inclining to yellow on the rind without, but white within; as are also the seed.

If we should enter upon giving you an account of all the flowers that grow in the isle of *Java*, it would require an entire volume; among the chiefest and best is that flower call'd *Champakka* of *Siampakka* by the *Malayans* and *Indians*, and *Vinboa* by the *Chinese*. The tree which produces these flowers, grows up to the height of our moderate pear-trees or peach-trees, with large wrinkled leaves, intermix'd with many veins. The branches or boughs grow all in a strait line from the tree, and afterward turn upwards; they are generally so weak that no body can climb up to the tree, so that the flowers which grow on the top, must be taken down with bamboo-canes or reeds. These flowers are in great request among the *Indians*, for their odoriferous scent, and used in garlands: The scent is betwixt a rose and a violet, and so strong, that it may be smell'd in the houses, as the flowers are carried by in the streets; they are of two colours, viz. of an orange colour and green, not unlike the blossom of a *Spanish* orange-tree, but resemble in figure the *English* saffron. This flower is one ingredient of that famous ointment made by the *Indian* women call'd *Borbory*; they also adorn their hair among the rest with this flower. This tree also bears fruit, which grows out of the sprigs like bunches of grapes,

Champakka.



1662. grapes, and are of the same colour and bigness, but fit for nothing.

The great  
creeping-  
beans.

The branches which produce the beans, call'd by the Dutch the *Large Creeping-Beans*, are call'd *Katsjang Parang* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, and run up in many small branches to such a height, that their curl'd sprigs on the top grow beyond the pinnacles of the highest buildings. At the bottom they are of the thickness of a man's arm, and change their leaves and fruits, without any alteration to themselves; they bear fine green and thick leaves, intermix'd with small veins; the blossoms are of a purple colour, and before they open pointed at the end: The husks which contain the beans, are green like ours, having a purple colour'd string all round the husk. They are of divers sorts, among which these following are most in request.

Fabas de  
Moro.

The *Moors-Bean* call'd *Fabas de Moro* by the inhabitants, are very large, and run up to a great height; they commonly plant them near the *Pynang* trees, which serve them for supporters. The husks are about a foot in length, and an inch in breadth; they are chiefly used by the *Chinese* and *Javanese*, but neglected by the *Dutch*, by reason of their unfavourable taste.

Gondola.

The bean call'd *Gondola* runs up likewise to good height, affording a very agreeable shade; the leaves boil'd or stew'd are very cooling; the ranks don't hold above one year, tho' the beans will keep green three or four years; I did plant some of the large creeping-beans at *Koulang* about a summer-house, four or five of which yielded me near six bushels of beans.

Kadjang.

*Kadjang* as the *Javanese* and *Malayans* call it, and the *Chinese* *Petan*, is a kind of pease known by all the inhabitants of *Batavia*, which grow in vast plenty in the fields about *Batavia*. When they are ripe, they are gather'd and dry'd in the air. These pease are of the bigness of our vetches, which grow among the winter-corn, and grow with green shells at first, but turn black afterwards. Betwixt each two leaves sprouts forth a bud, which produces a flower, and this the pea. These peas are of great advantage to the ships in their return home, and when boil'd with bacon and well butter'd, are very good for the stomach. If you plant them in a pot, with earth and keep them well water'd, they will come in twice 24 hours, and make a good salad aboard a ship.

Makandou.

The tree, the fruit whereof the *Javanese* call *Makandou*, has very broad, thick and fine leaves, the blossom is long and white, after which comes the fruit *Makandou*, in all respects like a pine-apple,

except that it is not pointed at the end, neither so hard, but soft. Before it is ripe, it is green, but afterwards yellow, and almost insipid. The *Malayans* roast it in the ashes, and take it inwardly against the bloody-flux, asthma and pleurisy. In the isle of *Java* grows a certain tree with leaves like those of the ash-tree, and a knotty stem or trunk. It bears a fruit like unto our hazle-nuts, the kernels whereof, after they are taken out of the shells, are of no ill taste, yet a little astringent. The leaves apply'd to wounds and ulcers, cleanse them and render them fit for healing; a spoonful of the juice of the leaves is avowed remedy against the worms. Out of the stem grows a twig, but to no great height, which brings forth yellow flowers, like those of the nightshade; after these come the fruits, which before they are ripe are green, but afterwards red, and of a circular figure; if you squeeze them betwixt your hands, they send forth such an ill scent, that no *Asa Fetida* or *Segapenum* is comparable to it; for which reason the *Indian* women apply to the nostrils of such persons as are afflicted with fits of the mother: The *Indians* look upon them as not fit to be eaten.

In the woods of *Java* grows a certain shrub, call'd *Daulonta*, to the height of six foot, spreading its branches at a good distance, like our water-willow in *Holland*; and that in such vast quantities, that the *Chinese* are forced to root them out with fire and steel: The leaves are not unlike those of the *Balsamina*, and cover'd likewise at the ends. It bears clusters of flowers like coronets, not unlike those of the elder-tree; after which come certain berries that are very better, both the leaves and flowers smell like the camomile-flowers, and contain the same virtues: its decoction is excellent good against the cough, and nothing provokes the monthly terms of the women beyond this remedy.

The fruit *Mangam* is look'd upon by the *Javanese* as the greatest antidote in the world, even beyond *Bezoar*, *Malaise* nuts, &c. The tree which bears this fruit grows upon the graves of their kings, and the fruit is of the bigness of a coco-nut. Whenever the king of *Bantam* intends to give a mark of his particular favour to any of his particular favour to any of his great men, or some foreign minister, he first puts his drinking-cup upon this fruit, and then drinks to the person he intends to honour.

In the isle of *Java*, on the banks of rivers, but especially about *Bantam* grows a certain plant, the leave, whereof resemble altogether the horn of *Alce*, from whence

1662.

1662. the *Javanese* bar *Mangam* Tanda ro thereof a not under or in hollow on all sides and full of happen to shine prod *Javanese* roots and make pou they are n fire, which hot, which seems alth purges by kills the v The flou Tratty by boe by the e. The *Fla guese*, is ve commonly The stalk thom above the flower that it has as big again near the p grees turns the stalk. the same fl opening of most fragr their beaut fant colour by. They which bur flowers: S like the fl brim of a flat and cle being roun comes forth the leaves a husks or b hand, of a yellow feed beans, whic the *Faba* *Æ* husk being cut asunder discovers ab As these be they are en when ripe, hazel-nut wi like it in tast what phlegm the market c be a kind of

1662. the *Javanese* have given it the name of *Simbar Mangiram*, and the *Malayans* that of *Tanda rouja*; it has no root, but instead thereof a veiny knot or lump, which lies not under ground, but either upon stones, or in hollow trees, sending forth its leaves on all sides. This plant is sempervirent and full of juice, and if some of the leaves happen to rot by the rains, the next sunshine produces others in their stead. The *Javanese* use these leaves like as we do the roots and leaves of the white-lillies, viz. to make poultices of to apply to tumors; but they are not proficuous in the *St. Anthony's* fire, which shews that this plant is very hot, which its bitterish and biting taste seems also intimate. Taken inwardly it purges by stool, and applied to the navel kills the worms.

The flower called *Tratty*, or *Tongjong Tratty* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, *Tienboa* by the *Chinese*, and *Fulo de Franke*, i. e. *The Flower of the Lake*, by the *Portuguese*, is very large and fair, and grows most commonly in pools and standing waters. The stalk grows to the height of a fathom above the surface of the water, and the flower resembling our tulips, except that it has broader leaves, and is at least as big again. Some are of a purple colour near the points of the leaves, which by degrees turns pale yellow or white towards the stalk. Some are quite white, but of the same shape as the former. At the first opening of the buds, these flowers emit a most fragrant scent, and discover to us their beauty, which by reason of its pleasant colour attracts the sight of all that pass by. They sprout forth out of a green bud, which bursts open like those of the peony-flowers: Some of the leaves grow upwards like the flowers, being of the breadth of a brim of a hat, and bright green; some lie flat and close to the surface of the water, being round, out of the midst of which comes forth a stalk with the flower. After the leaves are fallen off come forth round husks or buds of the bigness of a man's hand, of a green colour, containing a pale yellow seed, and many small and yellowish beans, which lying bare in part, resemble the *Faba Egyptiaca* of *Dioscorides*, viz. this husk being flat on one side, is as if it were cut asunder in the middle with a knife, and discovers about 30 beans placed in a circle. As these beans grow to their full bigness, they are enclosed in a peculiar husk, and when ripe, resemble the green husk of a hazel-nut without the shell, and are not unlike it in taste, being very sweet, but somewhat phlegmatick; they are sold daily in the market of *Batavia*: It seems to me to be a kind of water-lilly, having broad and

VOL. II.

red leaves, and being the same both in the stalk and root, tho' it differs from our *Dutch* water-lillies, which are white or yellow, but are of a purple colour in the *Indies*: It also differs from ours in the fruit and husk. The leaves of this plant are steemed cold in the third degree, like our *European* water-lillies, wherefore also the *Dutch* here, after the example of the *Malayans*, give the decoction thereof in burning fevers, frenzies, bloody-fluxes and other hot distempers. There is also another sort, with pale purpled flowers; and a third also worth seeing. There grows also in the rivers and pools abundance of what is commonly called ducks-meat, being a food the ducks are mighty fond of, whereof the *Chinese* keep here great numbers. In the standing pools and rivers grows also the *Polamo Geylon*, or fountain-herb, and water-plantine, which if chew'd causes great burning in the throat and upon the tongue.

Nothing is more frequent in the *Indies* than to see the trees bear fruit all the year round; but the fruit called *Langzap* by the *Malayans*, *Kakasan* by the *Javanese*, and in a broken dialect *Lanfen* by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, is gathered but once a year, viz. in *February*. The trees which bear these fruits, hanging in bunches like grapes, in vast quantities, spread in a large circumference, with lofty branches, and pale green leaves like the lawrel leave, or those of the chestnut-tree, but are not carved. The fruits have a soft and yellow rind like our peaches, containing a white and sharppish liquor. They resemble most our yellow plumbs, but are inclining to red and white within, the pulp being divided by certain partitions, is of a somewhat astringent taste like our red currants, and so luscious, that one can scarce be satisfied with them; they are in great request here, being accounted very good to allay the heat of burning fevers: Each has commonly two or three kernels, from which you must suck the pulp, the kernels and skin being both bitter. The fruit sprouts out of small yellowish buds or knots, after the blossom. They grow in vast plenty in the isle of *Ambony*, and especially at *Gilelo*, where I have seen prodigious quantities of them brought to market. The isle of *Java* produces another sort of this fruit, called *Boa Rampi* by the *Malayans*, and *Kapandung* by the *Javanese*, differing from the former only in the outside, being for the rest the same in taste and virtue; for which reason they might well be call'd the *Javanese* *Lanfen*: These are ripe in *October*, and are brought out of the country to *Batavia*.

These purple plumbs are so called by *Purple* the *Dutch* from their colour, but by the *plumbs*.  
Gggg *Javanese*



1662. *Javanese Gapak*, and by the *Malayans* *Boka Gobok*: They grow in great plenty on trees of a moderate size; they are of a purple colour without, but white within, with red stones. They have a sourish taste.

Jambul  
lang

The fruit *Jambulang* is the same with our black-cherries, which is the reason the *Dutch* call it by that name here, but the *Javanese* *Duat*, and the *Malayans* *Kiungo*; tho' they are of an oval figure, and not of so agreeable taste, approaching to our great sloe; they ripen in *Autumn*. The tree which bears these fruits is also much taller than the black-cherry trees, and spread their branches at a great distance. The leaves are dark green, taper towards the stalk, and broader at the ends, being intermix'd with many strings or veins. The flowers have red leaves with small filets within: The fruit is brought to market at *Batavia* by whole large baskets full in the months of *September* and *October*. It is look'd upon among the inhabitants as a very good remedy against the bloody-flux.

Fulo de  
Sapato, a  
single and  
double shoe-  
flower.

The single shoe-flower is call'd by the *Portuguese* *Fulo de Sapato*, i. e. *Shoe-flower*, because the flower chew'd affords a juice, which is excellently good for blacking and beautifying of shoes. There are two sorts of it, which may be distinguish'd as male and female, like our peony-flowers. Out of the flower, which is darken'd, and not unlike our common roses, sprouts forth on the top a yellow stalk, at the end of which bud out leaves like a coronet, covered with a yellow wool: The leaves are green, and carved at the extremities like our nettles. These produce large buds containing the flower. They are astringent of taste, and consequently cooling: The water distill'd thereof is good in burning-fevers, and applied outwardly to the forehead procures sleep. There is also another kind of these flowers, with single leaves, of an isabella colour, which grow upon small trees like our sweet-briars: They spread their branches at such a distance, that they are frequently used for arbours; they also make baskets of the twigs. The inhabitants wash their heads with the decoction of these leaves, and when steeped in vinegar, use it against the looseness; they also apply it to bruises. These bushes or small trees require an excessive heat for their growth, which is the reason they commonly plant them against the east-walls here, as we do in *Europe* against the south-walls, for the exercise of heat. There is likewise a shoe-flower with double leaves not differing from the former, except in its leaves, and the coronet in the middle, which are both of a bright red colour like a ruby.

The flower  
Dukol.

The flower called *Dukol* by the *Javanese*,

*Bale Adap* by the *Malayans*, and *Fulo di Poca*, i. e. *Flower of the Bush*, by the *Portuguese*, grows every where in the hedges, to the height of 12 or 13 foot; it produces at the top a white leaf growing straight upwards, near unto which the flowers, which are of an orange colour, grow in clusters. The other leaves are dark green, with white veins running through the middle.

The fruit called *Boenga Tanjong* by the *Crab Malayans*, *Kombang* by the *Javanese*, *Kan-will-plumb* by the *Chinese*, and *Crab-Plumb* by the *Dutch*, grows on very high trees with wrinkled leaves. The flowers, which are very small and of an isabella colour, open every morning, and send forth a most fragrant scent, but close up again against sun-set. The fruit is of the bigness and shape of a hazel-nut, green at first, but turns yellow afterwards, and of an orange colour at last: The pulp which is of the same colour, grows about a brown stone, but being of a four taste, this tree is admired and planted chiefly for its flowers sake.

The fruit called *Karembolas*, and likewise *Kamozia*, *Karabelli*, *Chamarab* and *Bulanbach* by the *Indians*, grows in many places of the *Indies* on a tree, with a slender stem, twig and leaves, which is produced from the seed, and growing to the height of an ordinary cherry-tree, bears a flower of a pale blue colour, after which comes the fruit, which is green at first, but turns yellow, resembling in shape our pom-pions. Some of these trees (which is very strange) produce a fruit of so delicious a taste, that nothing can be beyond it; whilst others of the same kind bear a fruit so astringent and sour as can scarce be imagined; when they are cut in the middle, they represent in the inside a star. The leaves of the tree are green, not unlike the rose-tree leaves, but not carved and full of small veins.

The tree which produces the fruit called *Boca Bidara* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, and *Massam* by the *Chinese* and *Portuguese*, and by the *Dutch* *Prick-Plumb* from their thorny prickles, grows up to the height of our cherry-trees, with ash coloured leaves, with a triple vein. Its twigs are covered all over with almost invisible thorns or prickles: It produces fruit all the year round, in such plenty, that the twigs bend to the very ground. The fruit is of the bigness of a hazel-nut, of a dark green colour without, but white within, containing a stone of an isabella colour: The flowers are yellow, having no more than five leaves, with as many small stalks betwixt them. This fruit being of an agreeable taste, tho' somewhat astringent, is eaten raw, and very cooling. The tree grows

1662. grows with but has their garden. The root and *Malayans* *vanese* turn grows like of the big fers much and taste with white sprouts for ple colour nourishing too great.

Javanese  
Kampit.

Math-  
rooms.

Indian  
Saffron, or  
Borbori.

The p  
Borbori b  
i. e. *Saffr*  
*Kurkum* b  
*Radix C*  
leaves no  
bore, viz  
and inter  
stalk is th  
able heigh  
colour, a  
root. A  
like a che  
unlike our  
from yell  
name of  
boil and  
and look  
remedy i  
structions  
again th  
of the m  
of the w  
the yell  
the main  
*Borbori*  
anoint th

The Indian  
tree  
bushlike.

The L  
isle of J  
tain *Indi*  
*yans*. T  
not unlik  
and muc  
leek. I  
which sp  
fasten to  
thus till  
It has a  
small ap  
for which

1662. grows wild at some distance from *Batavia*, but has been of late years cultivated in their gardens.

The root called *Gadang* by the *Javanese* and *Malayans*, has got the name of a *Javanese* turnip among the *Dutch*, because it grows like our potatoes in the earth, and is of the bigness of our turnips, tho' it differs much from them both in its substance and taste. It bears dark green leaves, with white streaks or veins, betwixt which sprouts forth a twig with flowers of a purple colour. They are accounted very nourishing and wholesome, if not used in too great a quantity.

Here grow divers sorts of mushrooms or toadstools, called *Kulet* by the *Malayans*, and *Jawor* by the *Javanese*. Some are of a red, others of a pale green colour; they grow without any need out of the moisture of the earth. Some of them are used here like as in *Europe*, and are eaten with wine and sugar.

The plant, the root whereof is called *Borbori* by the *Javanese*, *Saffran di Terra*, i. e. *Saffron under Ground* by the *Portuguese*, *Kurkum* by the *Arabians*, and by the *Latins* *Radin Curcume* or *Curcume-root*, has its leaves not unlike those of the white-hellebore, viz. thick, long, and broad, smooth and interspersed with many veins. The stalk is thick, and grows up to a considerable height: The flower is of a purple colour, and the root resembles the gentian-root. After the flower comes the fruit, like a chestnut, containing a round seed not unlike our peas. The root contains a saffron yellow tincture, whence it has got the name of *Indian saffron*. The *Malayans* boil and eat them both with fish and flesh, and look upon them as the most sovereign remedy in the world, against all the obstructions of the liver, lungs and spleen; again the gravel and stone, the stoppage of the monthly flowers, and other diseases of the womb, but most especially against the yellow jaundice: This root is one of the main ingredients in that ointment, called *Borbori* by the *Javanese*, wherewith they anoint the whole body.

The *Indian* tree houseleek, grows in the isle of *Java*, on the *Mango* trees, and a certain *Indian* oak called *Kyati* by the *Malayans*. The shrub has long leaves, in taste not unlike our sorrel, but are more juicy, and much thicker, like our common houseleek. It has long round roots, out of which sprout forth certain threads, which fasten to the trees and stones, and grow thus till they come to their full perfection. It has a small white flower of an aromattick, smell approaching to the smell of citrons, for which reason the *Malayans* look upon

it as a great strengthener of the sinews and brains. The leaves and flowers made up into a conserve, are good against the cramp, and very cordial, like our borage-flowers. After the flower comes the fruit, of the length of a finger, and an insipid taste, containing seeds as big as our barley. This plant has a certain quality of resisting all putrefactions and poisons; for which reason the *Malayan* physicians prescribe it as an infallible remedy against poison'd wounds occasion'd by the poison'd darts and other weapons of the *Javanese*, which they poison with the blood of a certain serpent called *Gekko* by the *Dutch*.

The fields and woods of *Java* produce *Indian* a certain herb called *Veronica* by the *Europeans*, with a white flower; the *Malayans* and *Javanese* call it *Oribat Maita*, i. e. a Remedy for the eyes, because its juice allays the inflammations and defluxions in the eye. The same juice or the decoction of the herb, they also use against old coughs and consumptions: By reason of its diuretick quality, they also prescribe it for the gravel and stone, and the *Gonorvirentia*. The leaves bruised are also apply'd outwardly to ulcers, as having a singular drying quality.

The plant call'd *Kolkas* by the *Arabians* and *Moors*, has a very thick root, large broad leaves, and bears a red fruit growing in clusters, not unlike the *Arum*. It contains a slimy poisonous substance, for which reason the *Javanese* cut them in slices, and steep them three or four days in river water; after which they squeeze the remaining juice out by a press, and having laid the roots to dry, make a kind of meal or flour of it, of which they make cakes instead of rice. The *Malayans* and *Chinese* prepare them in the same manner. The bread made of these roots, which the *Javanese* of *Materan* were forced to eat 1629, at the siege of *Batavia*, for want of rice (their magazine of *Tengel* being destroy'd by the *Dutch*) occasioned a pestiferous bloody-flux in their camp; the *Chinese* and *Malayans* also boil these roots, but throw away the first decoction, and putting on fresh water, boil them again, and afterwards eat them with vinegar, oil of coco and pepper, as we do the red beat-root.

The *Indian* *Betony* tree has speckled leaves like our *Pulmonaria*. The flowers sprout forth like ears, sometimes a thousand in one ear, of a pale blue colour, like our rosemary-flowers. The decoction of this plant they account a good remedy against spitting of blood, the consumption and coughs, call'd *Sai-i-Haty*, i. e. the disease of the heart, by the *Malayans*, who comprehend the liver, lungs, and even the spleen, under,

1662. der the general name of the heart. The Indian women use the juice thereof as an antidote against the sting of serpents, scorpions, and such like venomous creatures.

Indian  
grass.

Java produces all sorts of grass, and among the rest, a peculiar kind, which has four ears crosswise on the top of the stalk, the leaves being for the rest like those of common grass. There also grows here another sort of grass, of the same kind with six or eight ears, which contain small seeds. The Malayan physicians prescribe the root and the grass itself for the bloody-flux, stoppage of urine, exulcerations and pains of the kidneys, and to promote the monthly times in women. Java produces likewise another kind of grass differing from the rest in the roots, which are three or four small knots, which when chew'd have a flavour like cloves, but are not so hot in the mouth.

The Indian  
primeprint.

The Indian primeprint has got its name from its resemblance to ours, in its leaves as well as flowers; tho' the leaves thereof have a more odoriferous scent than our primeprint, and the flowers, tho' the same in shape, yet differ in their colour from ours, those of the Indian primeprint being inclinable to a blue, whereas ours are as white as snow, but the berries of both are black. Like unto this is a certain shrub called *Alkanna* and *Henne* by the *Arabians*, and *Cibnnet* by the *Persians*, except that its leaves are somewhat less. The leaves of *Alkanna* are in great request throughout the *Indies*, to give their teeth, lips, but especially their nails, a red tincture, a thing much esteemed among the *Moors*. They prepare the tincture, by steeping the leaves after they have been rubb'd small upon a marble stone, in fair water mixt with a small quantity of lime; with this the *Turks* and *Persians* also die their horses tails. The leaves chew'd leave a piquant taste upon the tongue, yet without any sharpness. Both these shrubs are in high esteem among the Indian women, who use the decoction of the leaves in all diseases of the womb, and have an opinion that it keeps them young; and to confess the truth, they have a peculiar virtue (if boil'd in water) to cure the Indian gout or barrenness, called *Beribery*; it grows all over the *Indies*, and the *Malayans* call it *Sagandi*.

The Indian  
sage-tree.

The Indian sage-tree grows twelve foot high, whole woods of them being to be seen about *Batavia*; and if planted in the gardens, spreads its roots to that degree, as not to be easily rooted out again. The flowers are white, the leaves very long and of an agreeable scent. They cultivate the

trees in the gardens by pruning and cutting the roots and shoots at certain times, and by this means make it as good and as wholesome as our garden sage. The *Malayan* women use it against the distempers of the womb, mixt with the *Sagandi* and the *Daulontas*, wherewith they bathe themselves. The flowers are prescribed by the physicians to correct the cold humours of the brain and sinews, and by reason of their diuretick quality are very proper in the dropsy. Our garden sage as well as rosemary, are a kind of rarity here, the excessive heat of this climate being as unnatural to them, as the cold is with us in winter.

The Indian *Verbena* grows also in Java, being altogether like ours, except that the ears are somewhat longer and harder. They apply the flowers bruised to exulcerated legs, by reason of their drying quality, requisite in the healing of wounds especially at *Batavia*, where the moist and hot climate renders the cure thereof very difficult. A spoonful of the juice of the leaves taken inwardly, cures the cholick and bloody-flux; and the Indian women attribute to this plant a secret virtue against witchcraft.

In the woods of Java grows a certain kind of *Esula*, which shoots up to a great height, with a three corner'd stalk, sometimes of the thickness of a man's leg; it has abundance of thorny knobs, which being however not very hard, don't prick: The leaves grow at some distance from one another, being not unlike those of our houlseek; out of the stalk, (after an incision made) issues a milky yellow juice, of a sharp taste. This juice reduced to the consistency of an extract is administred in the dropsy, lameness and other distempers proceeding from cold; it purges both by stool and urine. This plant differs not either in shape or the manner of growing from that, which affords that yellow juice, call'd corruptly by the apothecaries *Gutta Genou*, and by the *Indians* *Lonan Cambodia*, because it is of the product of the kingdom of *Kambodia*.

In Java also grows a certain kind of *Mittum Solis*, resembling ours in its flowers, leaves and the stalk; but the fruit is much larger, and as hard as a stone, containing a mealy pulp. The *Portuguese* have given it the name of *Yerva da Rojarios*, the rosary herb, because the *Malayan* women use to make their rosaries of the fruit, and wear it about their neck instead of necklaces. Both the herb and fruit is proficuous in the distempers of the kidneys and bladder.

The fruit called *Boa Kamba* or *Kaman* by the *Javanese*, *Boa Binsel* by the *Malay-*

Boa Kamba  
ba Indi-  
an part.

1662. ans, and  
Dutch e  
its bign  
When r  
black fo  
the pulp  
are scare  
Batavia,  
tho' very  
brought  
ket ther  
tree grow  
brittle an

Rambu-  
jun or  
Rumpon-  
na.

Rambu-  
ans call i  
produces  
forth on  
in cluster  
the height  
purple c  
our chest  
the trees  
a pulp, c  
this a tit  
February  
bustan g  
former, a  
stance; k  
different  
is much

Romani  
Suzara.

The fi  
ans, Gan  
ni by the  
plumbs,  
inside is  
taste like  
so four  
yellow r  
pulp is l  
pickle an  
they are  
thing mo

5- Java  
tree  
age

The J  
(in the f  
Japan by  
Chinese,  
is not ab  
produce  
bella and  
with sma  
no sooner  
flowers f  
the top i  
leaves h  
containing  
co feed,  
out it, i  
ground.  
but to d

The tree  
Pany.

The t  
and Java  
Batavia,  
by reason  
VOL. I

1662. *ani*, and *Lafise* by the *Chinese*, is by the *Dutch* called the *Indian pear*, by reason of its bigness and resemblance to our pears. When ripe they are of a pale yellow with black spots, hollow within, with blue seeds, the pulp adhering close to the peel. They are scarce ever cultivated in the gardens of *Batavia*, by reason of their crabbed taste, tho' very agreeable to the eye; they are brought in great quantities into the market there, especially in *February*. The tree grows up to a great height, having a brittle and coarse wood and leaves.

*Rambutan* or *Rampellan* as the *Malayans* call it, is one of those fruits, which are produced without flowers, for this comes forth only out of a green bud. They grow in clusters on very small twigs of a tree, of the height of our cherry-trees, are of a purple colour, and resemble at a distance our chestnuts, whilst they are hanging on the trees. Within is a slender quantity of a pulp, of an acid agreeable taste, and in this a stone. They come to maturity in *February*. There is another kind of *Rambutan* growing on shorter twigs than the former, and being covered with a hairy substance; but tho' these two fruits are very different in outward appearance, their taste is much the same.

The fruit called *Sattara* by the *Malayans*, *Gandaria* by the *Javanese*, and *Romani* by the *Portuguese*, resemble our yellow plumbs, but are somewhat bigger. The inside is not unlike the *Mangas*, and in taste like the *Batfian*, yet not altogether so sour. They are green at first, but turn yellow mixt with an orange colour; the pulp is likewise yellow. The inhabitants pickle and use them like as we do olives; they are of no disagreeable taste, but something more hairy than the *Mangas*.

The *Javanese* flower called *Fiele de Japan* (in the same sense) by the *Portuguese*, *Benga Japan* by the *Malayans*, and *Quiboa* by the *Chinese*, delights in shady places; the stalk is not above a foot high, some of which produce white flowers, others of an isabella and purple colour, sprouting forth with small knobs between the leaves; and no sooner do the leaves of the lowermost flowers fall off, but others come forth on the top in their stead. The stalk, after the leaves have been cast, produces a bud, containing a black seed, as small as tobacco seed, tho' this plant will grow without it, if you put only a twig of it in the ground. These flowers have no other use but to divert the eye.

The tree called *Patty* by the *Malayans* and *Javanese*, grows in many gardens about *Batavia*, being cherish'd by the inhabitants, by reason of its spacious branches and fine

leaves, which afford an agreeable shade; it rises up to the height of an apple-tree, with thin branches, on which you see the fruit hanging on the stalks, three and three together, of a crabbed taste, and therefore not regarded; they resemble the pine-apple on the one side, and have a seed within. The leaves are of a lively green colour, and grow very close together.

The flowers called *marygolds* by our people, have got their name rather from their colour, than any other resemblance to ours. The leaves are dark green, like those of the apple-tree, but somewhat less: On the tops of the twigs sprout forth certain orange colour'd buds, which opening produce the orange colour'd flowers with four leaves, they have no other use than to please the eye-sight.

The huntman's tree is a kind of wild palm-tree, the stem whereof is covered with a grey rind or bark, twisted about as it were with circles. The leaves which are bright green, grow on long yellowish stalks, the lowermost of which turn yellow by degrees, and hang downwards; being for the rest very agreeable to the eye. The fruit is not near so big as the least coco-nuts, and has no other use, except that the inhabitants draw from it a certain syrup and sugar, which they sell to the neighbouring countries. The wood of the stem is very durable, provided it be kept from the air, and so hard, that they can neither saw nor cut it, but are forced to split it by pieces of wood in it; some of the *Indians* make their bows of the twigs of this tree; and the *Chinese* at *Batavia* make of the leaves and tender sprouts, fans to cool themselves with. The *Malabars* make use of the leaves instead of paper, which they know how to order with a great deal of dexterity; for the leaves being about three inches broad, and above a yard long, they make holes at one end of them, and so tie as many of them together with a string, as they have occasion for at a time. They write with an iron pencil, wherewith they know how to imprint and cut their characters on the uppermost surface of these leaves, as that they remain indelible. This they perform for the most part without keeping their eyes so close and earnestly upon them, as we do. These leaves are also very durable and will not easily putrefy, even in water; I have several letters writ to me upon these *Olen* or leaves by persons of great quality among the *Malabars*. This tree also yields a juice like the coco-tree, which if boil'd, tastes very sweet, and is apt to inebriate, but if not boil'd, turns sour immediately. But the chief use they make

H h h h

1662.

1662.

The huntman's tree

Rambutan or Rampellan

Romani or Sattara

Fiele de Japan

Patty

Kaman



1662. of it is, to boil it into sugar. This hunt-  
man's tree is none of the lowest rank a-  
mong the many kinds of palm-trees of the  
*Indies*, being much esteem'd and cultivated  
for its usefulness, especially in the isle of  
*Ceylon* and in *Javapatnam*, where you see  
whole woods of this tree.

The tree  
and fruit  
Biling-  
bing, or  
Blingbing.

About *Batavia* grows a tree of a most  
delightful aspect, with most pleasant leaves  
hanging downwards. The stem, which is  
very thick, and branches send forth small  
sprouts full of green buds or knobs, which  
produce red flowers, not unlike a small  
lilly; after which comes the fruit, grow-  
ing in clusters, resembling both in bigness  
and shape our small cucumbers, about the  
thickness of an inch, and a fingers length.  
They have a green rind, and within it a  
seed, not unlike that of the cucumbers,  
but somewhat more round. The *Malay-  
ans* and *Javanese* call this fruit *Bilingbing*  
and *Blingbing*. This tree is among the trees  
what the sheep are among the beasts, for  
they not only rob it of its flowers and fruit,  
but also of its leaves and rind, sometimes  
to the very root, as having their peculiar  
use in physick; so that this tree would  
make but a very slender appearance for the  
most part, were it not that provident na-  
ture did almost cover its stem and bran-  
ches with odoriferous flowers and well-  
tasted fruits. The fruit is very juicy and  
cooling, but somewhat astringent, for which  
reason it is seldom used alone, but in sauces,  
to give a good relish: The fruit is also  
preserved with sugar. Our physicians there  
prepare a syrup out of the juice, and prescribe  
it in the excessive heat of the liver and  
blood; and this syrup is also mixed with  
the decoction of the rice, before it is peel'd,  
called *Pady*, and given in fevers. This  
juice also quenches the thirst, and has one  
peculiar quality, that notwithstanding its  
astringency, it takes away that sour taste  
of divers other fruits which sets the teeth  
on edge.

The Indian  
dog's-  
tongue.

The herb call'd hound's or dog's-tongue,  
from its resemblance to ours, which bears  
the same name, is by the *Javanese* called  
*Suroe*, by the *Malayans* *Sudu-Sudu*, and by  
the *Chinese* *Kautsu*. The stalk is thick be-  
low, but grows thin towards the top. As  
you pull off the leaves, you see a milky  
juice drop out of it; of which two or three  
drops dropt into the ear, cures the ear-  
ach; as its use is only in physick, it ge-  
nerally grows wild.

Bitter-  
green.

The plant called bitter-green by our  
people, has got its name from its bitter  
taste: It grows in the gardens of *Batavia*,  
and creeps up to the next tree or stalk,  
almost like the branches of the cucumbers,  
but that it leaves are deeper carved, and

more pointed. The fruit is also not un-  
like a cucumber, yellow with green streaks  
and a thick rind, yellow within, with a  
red kernel. When it comes to its full  
perfection, it is marbled with an orange  
colour. The *Dutch* make no account of  
this fruit, by reason of its bitter taste; but  
the inhabitants use it in their sawce call'd  
*Karry*, and put the root and leaves in their  
ordinary drink, which preserves it for two  
or three days, whereas otherwise it would  
turn immediately. They cure the bitter-  
ness with sugar.

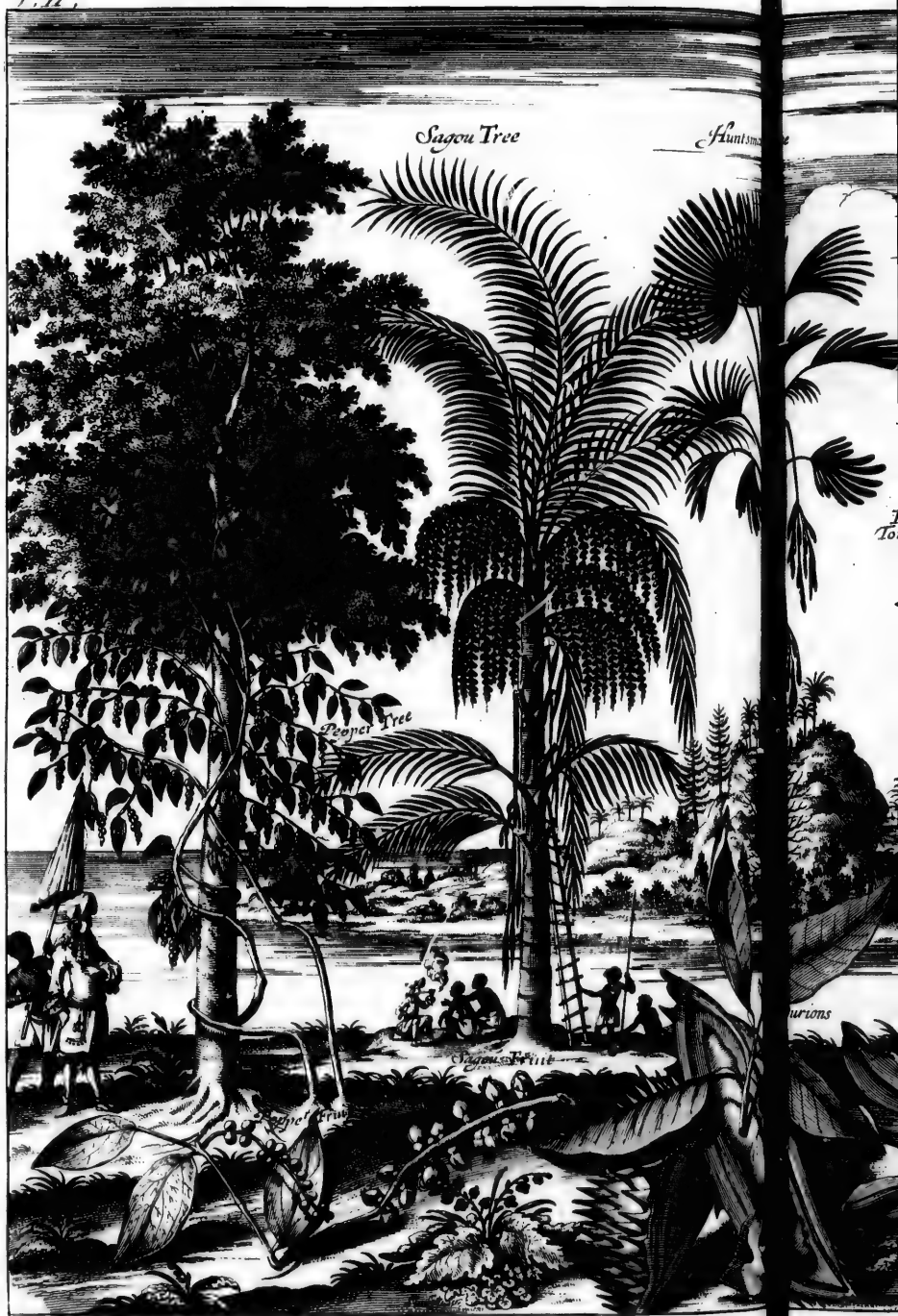
Among all the garden fruits, there is  
scarce any that exceed the *Durions*; 'tis  
true the scent of it is not unlike that of  
rotten figs, and consequently not very in-  
viting to search after the kernel, which  
makes amends for the smell, being of a  
luscious taste. The tree which produces  
this fruit, grows crooked, with abundance  
of branches, and very harsh leaves pointed  
at the ends, of a palms length, sometimes  
grey on the outside, but bright green on  
the other side. They are not inferior in  
height to the tallest trees of *Europe*. The  
fruit *Durions* grows in clusters on the  
thickest stends of the twigs, and sprouts forth  
out of a green bud, which growing big-  
ger and bigger by degrees, opens at last  
into an isabella colour'd flower, surround-  
ed on the out-side with hard leaves, like a  
rind: This flower produces a thorny fruit  
of the bigness of a melon, covered with a  
thorny rind, not unlike the fruit *Jaka*; it  
is green at first, but turns yellow. It has  
four partitions within, in each of which  
you see a stone like a peach-stone, of the  
bigness of a chestnut, containing a delicious  
sweet and white kernel. Before they take  
out the kernels they stamp the fruit un-  
der foot, to avoid being wounded by the  
thorny prickles. The *Durions* are always  
eaten raw, being reckon'd one of the  
wholesomest fruits in the *Indies*, if used  
moderately, but if in excess, inflame the  
blood, and raise pimples in the face. They  
seem to have an antipathy against the *Beibel*,  
because they will not grow near it, but die.  
They come to maturity in three months  
time, and chiefly in *October* and *November*,  
tho' I have seen them also in the market  
of *Batavia* in *August*, for they are to be  
had all the year round, but not in such  
plenty. They grow much about *Bantam*,  
whence they are brought to *Batavia*. The  
first that I saw was in the grounds of *Christi-  
an Chandelour*, near the great river of *Ba-  
tavia*; and since that I have met with them  
in divers other places thereabouts; so that  
this fruit thrives as well here as at *Bantam*,  
but no where better than near *Malacca*, where  
the *Durions* are of an excessive bigness.

also not un- 1662.  
green streaks  
thin, with a  
to its full  
an orange  
account of  
er taste; but  
sawce call'd  
eaves in their  
es it for two  
ife it would  
the bitter-

its, there is Durion.  
*Durions*; 'tis  
like that of  
not very in-  
ternel, which  
being of a  
ich produces  
h abundance  
aves pointed  
, sometimes  
ght green on  
t inferior in  
*Europe*. The  
ters on the  
sprouts forth  
growing big-  
opens at last  
er, surround-  
eaves, like a  
thorny fruit  
vered with a  
ruit *Jaka*; it  
low. It has  
ch of which  
tone, of the  
g a delicious  
ore they take  
the fruit un-  
d by the  
ns are always  
one of the  
dies, if used  
in flame the  
e face. They  
st the *Belbel*,  
it, but die.  
three months  
nd *November*,  
the market  
ey are to be  
not in such  
out *Bantam*,  
atavia. The  
ids of *Cbristi*-  
river of *Ba*-  
net with them  
outs; so that  
is at *Bantam*,  
alacca, where  
bigness.

The







Dogs  
Tongue

Blimbing

Blimbing Fruit

the .  
*neſe*, &  
 dance o.  
 or trees  
 will clim  
 elt trees  
 On the  
 the pep  
 that the  
 the leave  
 buds of  
 terſperſe  
 the cinn  
 ty, ſome  
 and long  
 and hot  
 come for  
 like tho  
 hang the  
 in large  
 as they  
 chiefest  
 the beſt  
 near *Ko*  
 quantiti  
 pepper  
 bears fr  
 it ripens  
 places  
 difference  
*Java* it  
 in *Nova*  
 green, b  
 the ſun  
 balls of  
 per is wi  
 is alſo a  
 alſo ma  
 the *Sage*  
 we have

*Will*  
*maius.*

The  
 a wild o  
 tain flow  
 of an o  
 least co  
*Malaya*  
*Taukio*.  
 the top  
 high.  
 are of a  
 lour'd  
 delight  
 able ſm  
 fore the  
 for whi  
 in the  
 this pl  
 ſpr.ad  
 wards

*Platber.*

The  
 by the  
 called

1662.

the pepper, called *Lada* or *Laden* by the *Javans*, and *Morifia* by the *Javanese*, grows on tender branches, with abundance of knots, and creeps up along stalks or trees like our hops. Sometimes they will climb to, and the pinnacle of the highest trees, and afterwards hang downwards. On the stalks or twigs of these branches the pepper grows in such thick clusters, that they are scarce to be discern'd from the leaves. These sprout forth out of the buds of the branches, being green and interperfed with veins, not unlike those of the cinnamon-tree, pecked at the extremity, sometimes of the breath of a hand, and long in proportion, of a bitterish taste, and hot upon the tongue: After the leaves come forth certain twigs or stalks not unlike those of the hazel-nut trees, on which hang the berries, like our red-currants, but in larger clusters; these berries turn black as they ripen. The pepper is one of the chiefest commodities in the spice-trade; the best grows along the coast of *Malabar*, near *Kaulang*, where I used to buy great quantities for the company's use. The pepper must be planted in a rich soil, and bears fruit within the year. In *Malabar* it ripens chiefly in *January*, but in other places sooner or later, according to the difference of the climate. In the isle of *Java* it ripens in *October*, and is gathered in *November* and *December*, and is then green, but turns black as it is a drying in the sun; after which it is made up into balls of 80 or 90 pounds. The best pepper is white, close and biting within: There is also a sort of long pepper. The *Indians* also make a pickle of green pepper. Of the *Sagon* tree, represented in the next print, we have treated before.

Will  
not.

The *Portuguese* have given the name of a wild onion, or *Sabollos de Matte*, to a certain flower, because its root resembles that of an onion, tho' for the rest it has not least congruity with it. The *Javanese* and *Malayans* call it *Hakung*, and the *Chinese* *Taukio*. This flower grows in a bunch on the top of a thin stalk, but near three foot high. They come forth out of red buds, are of a high red colour, with purple colour'd streaks of a palm in length; are very delightful to the eye, and of no disagreeable smell, especially in the morning before the dew is dry'd up by the sun-beams, for which reason they are much cherish'd in the gardens of *Batavia*. The leaves of this plant are above three foot long, and spread all round about, being pointed towards the extremities.

Potatoes.

The Roots of potatoes, called *Patattes* by the *Portuguese*, after the *Brazilians*, are called *Ubi Tora* by the *Malayans*, *Ubi* by the

*Javanese*, and *Hantsoa* by the *Chinese*. These roots grow in the ground on branches, with leaves not unlike the cucumber leaf; some of these branches bearing white, others blue flowers, shaped like bells. The *Chinese* cultivate these roots in the fields near *Batavia*, which must be well dung'd beforehand: They cut the ranks near the extremity, which they put into the ground, and let them grow for some time. Then they cover these ranks with rich earth, at a foot distance perhaps, into which the ranks send forth their roots, which come to maturity in a short time, and sometimes grow to the thickness of a man's arm, and a foot long. Some are red on the outside, and these are in greatest esteem at *Batavia*, but don't approach in goodness to those of *Brazil*, especially near *Rio St. Francisco*, where these roots are red both within and without. This root is frequently boil'd by the *Dutch* both with fish and flesh, excelling in taste and sweetness much our parsnip-roots or artichokes; they are also eaten raw with salt, oil and vinegar, like a salad, but are not so easy a digestion then: The best way is to roast them in the ashes, which makes them taste like chestnuts, and are good to stop the looseness, a symptom very frequent to those that inhabit near the line; for which reason this root is in great request here, and cultivated with a great deal of care, which makes them very cheap here; for you may buy as much for a half-penny as will suffice for a whole meal. In the isle of *St. Thomas* they use them instead of bread. They also make a kind of drink of them. They boil a considerable quantity of these roots in a kettle well cover'd, till they are soft or tender; then they stamp them well, and put them in a vessel with water, where they begin to ferment in twice 24 hours, when the vessel must be stopp'd up; which done, it turns clear, and as strong as good beer.

Besides the potatoes, there grows another root about *Batavia* called *Injames* by the *Portuguese*, after the *Brazilians*, by the *Javanese* and *Malayans* *Byra*, and *Siatfani* by the *Chinese*. It has a very fine green leaf, and interperfed with veins: The root has commonly five or six inches diameter, and is one foot and a half long, having a brown rind, but is white within. The flower is of a greenish colour. These roots are sold in the market of *Batavia* by the piece, weighing each 15 *Katty*, or thereabouts, a *Katty* being a pound and a quarter, according to our weight, so that 30 persons may dine upon one root. Its taste is however not near so good as the potatoes, and being of a hard digestion and very dry, they are not much look'd after by the

1662.

1662. the *Dutch*, but the natives are very fond of them.

Blue  
plumbs.

The tree which bears a kind of blue plumbs, spreads its branches very loftily, not unlike the mulberry-tree, except that its leaves are of a different shape. You see this tree frequently at one and the same time laden with flowers and fruit, both ripe and unripe: The wood is very tough, so that you may venture to climb up by the smallest branches. The flowers are of an agreeable scent, especially in the morning before the dew is gone. This fruit is not regarded at *Batavia*, because the markets are over-stock'd with them by the country people, who bring them in vast quantities thither out of the mountains; tho' for the rest it is of an agreeable taste, somewhat like the dates. They are rarely to be met with here in the gardens. This plumb comes forth out of certain buds, consisting of five white leaves each, and grows on the twigs like our oval plumbs. It is green at first, but turns to a dark red, but the pulp is white, within which are three stones. The *Malayans* and *Javaneſe* call these plumbs *Boa Soa*, or *San*, the *Chinese* *Theely*, and the *Portuguese* *Fruite de Manilha*, i. e. *Fruit of Manilha*. At *Batavia* I never saw but one tree, bearing at the same time flowers and ripe plumbs.

Oranges.

*Java* produces divers sorts of oranges, among which three are prefer'd before the rest, viz. the common ones, and those of *Japan* and *China*. The trees are much of the same height, but different in their leaves; those of *Japan* have broader leaves than the ordinary ones, and these again broader than those of *China*. They all are of a different taste, yet very agreeable. The *Javaneſe* oranges are the biggest and most juicy, but somewhat inclining to a sour taste; among the ordinary ones, some are exceeding sweet, others quite crab-like. The *China* oranges have a pleasant taste, betwixt sweet and sour, being prefer'd here before the rest, having a very thin rind: They are preserved with sugar, like the *Portuguese* figs, and thus transported all over the *Indies*.

Wild Jam-  
boes.

Tho' this fruit called the wild *Jamboe* by our people, and *Jamboe* by the *Malayans* and *Javaneſe*, has not the least resemblance to the *Jamboe* we have given a description of before, in outward appearance, because that grows upon high trees, with a most delightful blossom; whereas this grows upon a low tree not unlike our mulberries, without any blossom, but is produced out of certain green buds, not unlike the figs; yet are they the same in taste, and divers other qualities. Some of them are extremely well tasted, and quench the thirst. Some

are dark red, others white, mix'd with red, and that on the same tree, where they grow in clusters in such prodigious quantities, that they cover the very leaves and twigs, as if they had been spread over with a scarlet cloth. They are of the bigness of a sugar-pear. In *Ambeyna* they grow in such plenty, that you may see the ground under the trees covered with them, every one being free to gather them; one reason whereof is, that they being used there as we do our acorns, for the fattening of hogs, which the *Moors* and *Mahometans* abominate, they are not much regarded.

The weed call'd *Tobacco* by the *Malayans* *Tobacco*, and *Javaneſe*, after the *Portuguese*, grows in all parts of the *Indies*; the *Chinese* call it *Hun*. Tobacco being frequently used by the inhabitants, is consequently in great request, and carefully look'd after; that of *Ternate* being esteem'd the best, is most generally made use of at *Batavia*. They have a way of tying several leaves, weighing about two pounds together, with small twisted canes, each parcel of the best being commonly sold for six-pence; but you may buy also very good tobacco at *Batavia*, for two pence. In *Ambeyna* each family commonly plants as much tobacco in their garden as they have occasion for, not troubling themselves with any other plantations. About *Batavia* the plantations of tobacco are chiefly managed by the *Chinese* and *Javaneſe*, and this weed grows here and thrives extremely well, provided it be planted in a rich soil, when it will grow up to the height of eight foot, with leaves of 18 inches long and eight broad. The *Indians* don't take tobacco through pipes, but have a way of rowling one or more leaves (according as they are big) together, and lighting the same at one end, suck in the smoke as we do with our pipes. The women commonly take of the worst sort, and rowl up their leaves in a piece of dry'd *Pyſang*.

Among all the flowers of the *Indies*, that call'd *Fula Mogori* or *Mugri*, i. e. the *Flower Mogori*, by the *Portuguese*, *Kombans Malali* by the *Javaneſe*, and *Badiboa* by the *Chinese*, is more esteem'd by the inhabitants, which they plant with singular care upon long and well dunged beds, with little walks betwixt them: The stalk on which this flower grows, seldom exceeds two foot in height, and grows like briars: The leaves are smooth like the quince-pear tree leaves, the flowers exceeding white, consisting of four leaves, which seldom open, and imitate in their odoriferous scent our white-lillies, but are no bigger than the blossom of an apple-tree. The *Javaneſe* of both sexes wear these flowers upon strings on their



with red, 1662.

where they  
ous quan-  
eaves and  
over with  
the big-  
yna they  
may see  
ered with  
ner them;  
eing used  
fattening  
abometans  
garded.

Malayans: Tahan.

se, grows  
bine call  
ntly used  
ently in  
d after;  
e best, is  
Batavia.  
al leaves,  
ther, with  
f the best  
nce; but  
bbacco ar  
yna each  
h tobacco  
asion for,  
any other  
e planta-  
naged by  
this weed  
ely well,  
foil, when  
of eight  
long and  
t take to-  
a way of  
ording as  
hting the  
oke as we  
common-  
l up their

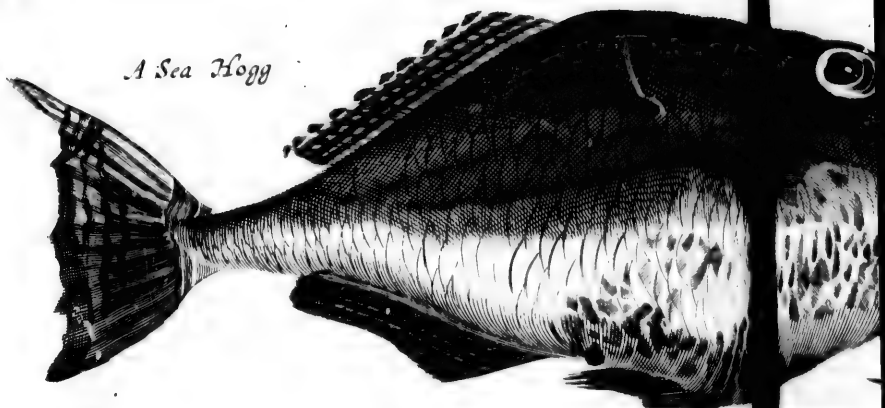
ndies, that Fala Mo-  
be Flower gori.

ns Malati  
the Gbi-  
habitants,  
care upon  
ttle walks  
hich this  
o foot in  
he leaves  
ee leaves,  
sisting of  
and imi-  
ur white-  
blossom  
of both  
rings on  
their

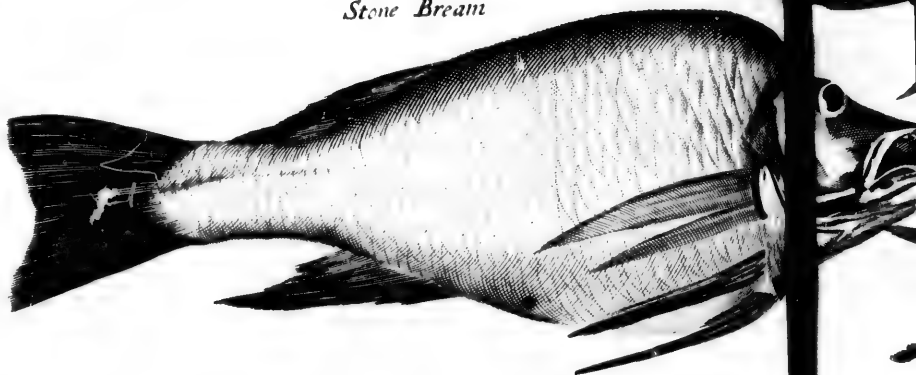


V. II.

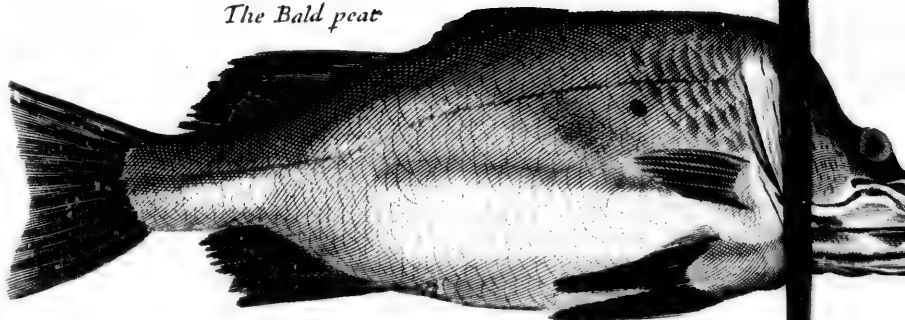
*A Sea Hogg*



*Stone Bream*

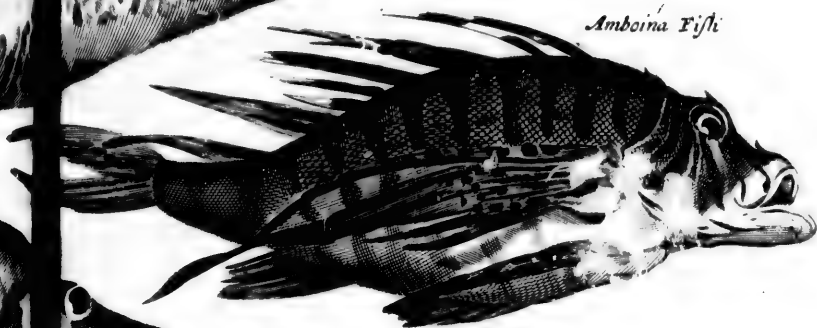


*The Bald peat*





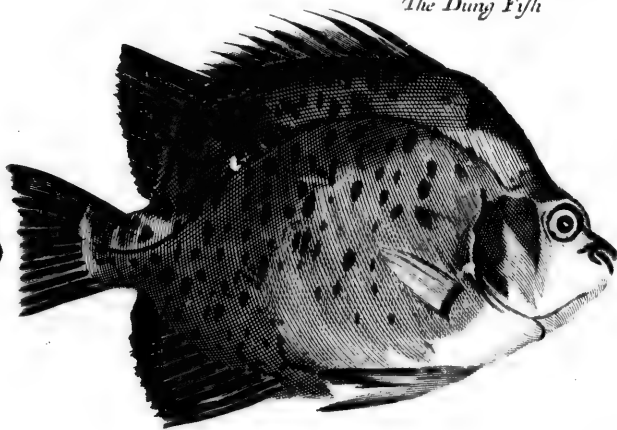
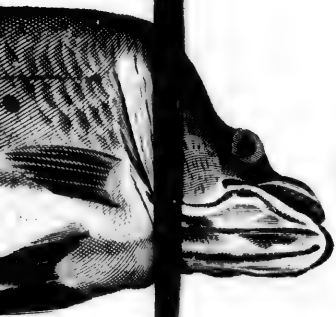
*Amboina Fish*



*The Indian Herring*



*The Dunny Fish*



1662. their  
certain  
I saw the  
flowers  
tied se  
with the  
upon the  
ter out  
a great  
much b  
koned  
They  
head-ach  
The  
this wa  
leaves  
the rho  
These  
year ro  
the flav  
The

Arvore  
da Noyte  
or the me-  
lancholy  
tree.

has' got  
its flow  
tinues n  
the Por  
Arvore  
Goa the  
Singadi  
the Ara  
Gul, an  
for its  
the fan  
from the  
another  
blossom  
of its  
for the  
lacca.

Benga  
Mera

The  
Malaya  
nese, at  
fine gr  
close  
not unl  
yellow  
er open  
behind  
pease,

Katfan.

grow  
Katfan  
only b  
Lak G  
in the  
in the  
stalks  
green,  
leaves  
our  
many  
sprout  
These  
and c  
Vo

1662. their festival days. I remember that at a certain tournament on horseback at *Japara*, I saw the *Javaneſe* thus adorn'd with theſe flowers, ſome of which had theſe ſtrings tied ſeveral times round above their ears, with the two ends hanging down before upon their breſts. They alſo diſtil a water out of theſe flowers, which they eſteem a great cordial in fainting-fiſts eſpecially, much beyond our roſe-water, it being reckoned equal with orange-flower water. They preſcribe it in burning-fevers, and head-achs, proceeding from a hot cauſe. The *Javaneſe* alſo waſh their faces with this water, to make them ſmooth. The leaves bruifed are a good remedy againſt the rheum or deluxions of the eyes: Theſe flowers grow in vaſt plenty all the year round, and are fold in the ſtreets by the ſlaves.

The tree called the melancholy-tree, has got its denomination from its opening its flowers not till after ſun-ſet, which continues no longer than the night time. Hence the *Portugueſe* have given it the name of *Arvore da Noite*, i. e. the Night-tree; at *Goa* they call it *Paraavaiako*, at *Malacca Singadi*, in the kingdom of *Dekan Pul*, the *Arabians* *Guart*, the *Persians* and *Turks* *Gul*, and the *Malabars* *Mogli*, i. e. trees, for its excellency's ſake; for which reaſon the ſame *Malabars* call the water diſtill'd from the flowers *Mogli-water*: There is another kind of this tree, which begins to bloſſom in the morning, and is bereaved of its leaves by night: Theſe trees grow for the moſt part about *Cochin* and *Malacca*.

The plant called *Boenga Mera* by the *Malayans*, *Kombang Merak* by the *Javaneſe*, and *Konkuſiou* by the *Chinese*, has very fine green leaves, growing on ſmall ſtalks, cloſe together. The flowers, which are not unlike our gilliflowers, are high red, but yellowiſh at the extremities; they no ſooner open, but drop off, leaving ſmall huſks behind them, which contain a kind of peaſe, but are not eatable.

Among ſeveral other ſorts of beans which grow and are eaten at *Batavia*, thoſe called *Katſian Goed* by the *Malayans*, and *Katſian* only by the *Javaneſe*, but by the *Chinese* *Lak Goetuin*, exceed the reſt. They grow in the fields all about *Batavia*, eſpecially in thoſe belonging to the *Chinese*: The ſtalks and huſks of theſe beans are pale green, and ſomewhat woolly, but the leaves are ſmooth, and reſemble thoſe of our *French* beans, being interſperſed with many veins. The bloſſoms are white, and ſprout forth out of green knobs or buds. Theſe beans grow almoſt all the year round, and conſequently are no ſmall advantage

Vol. II.

to the inhabitants of *Batavia*, affording 1662. very good food to the labouring men; as likewiſe for our ſhips, becauſe they will keep a great while at ſea.

The *Turkey* wheat, called *Maiz* by a general name among the *Indians*, and *Jangon* by the *Malayans*, *Javaneſe* and *Chinese*, grows in many places in the *Indies*, and in good plenty about *Batavia*; for they take the corn ſreſh out of the ears, and put it into the ground, which produces freſh corn in three months time. It is boiled and roaſted with the chaff, and look'd upon as a great dainty; ſome of this corn is white, ſome red. The *Indies* produce alſo rice, ginger, cotton, and ſugar in many places, figs, quince-pears, apples, lemons, beſides many other fruits.

Thus much concerning the trees, fruits and plants of the *Indies*, and of *Java* and *Batavia* in particular; we will now proceed to give ſome account of the living creatures of the *Indies*, and begin with the fiſhes.

The ſea-porpoife or hog-fiſh is about 15 or 16 inches long, and about ſeven in breadth. It has a very thick ſkin, and ſuch cloſe and hard ſcales, that ſcarce any inſtrument will pierce them, but when boil'd the ſcales come off with eaſe, and the ſkin is very ſoft. Their fleſh is very white reſembling the breſt of a boiled capon; the mouth is but ſmall in proportion of the reſt of the body, but is armed with two rows of white gliftering teeth, one above, the other below. Upon the back, which is brown, you ſee a ſharp fin of half a finger's length, which the fiſh can erect at pleaſure, and ſuch another is below near the navel; the other fins are not ſo ſtrong, of a pale blue colour. The belly is white, and gliftering like ſilver, but the ſides are mix'd with yellow, which by degrees, towards the back, turns into an aſh colour. It has large brown ſhining eyes, and when boil'd is of a very pleaſant taſte.

The *Amboyneſe* fiſh has got its name becauſe it is found chiefly in the rivers of *Amboyne*, but being very ſcarce, and of a very good taſte, is look'd upon as a dainty here. It is about a ſpan in length, ſomething like our perch both in ſhape and taſte. Its colour is inclining to brown, with blue ſtreaks under the head, the fins below the mouth are likewiſe blue, but thoſe on the ſides are green and ſpeckled. It is both a very wholeſome and toothſome fiſh, eſpecially with good ſauce.

The ſtone-bream is a moſt excellent fiſh, ſome of which are four foot long; they reſemble our breams, (which has begot them their name) but are much bigger.

1662.

The bald-  
pate.

ger. Their eyes are very large, with a large red mouth, as are also the fins and extremity of the tail. They are caught at sea with a hook, being not easily to be taken with the net, and are eaten either broil'd or boil'd. There is another kind, but not so good as the former, the flesh of which shrinks when they are cut, from whence some call them shrinkers.

The bald-  
pate.

The fish called baldpate has got its name from its head and neck, being without scales, whereas the rest of the body is covered with them. It is of a greyish colour, its mouth, which is very wide, being spotted with red. The eyes are large, yellow and starting out of the head: It is one of the best sorts of fish that can be eaten, of a very agreeable taste: It is taken both in the sea and rivers.

The sea-  
bleak.

Among the great variety of fish found in the *Indies*, most of which turn immediately after they are catch'd; there are however a few that will take salt like our herrings; such is the sea-bleak, a fish much of the bigness of a herring, but not so long and something broader: It is green on the back, but white on the belly, with a forked tail: The head is of a very odd shape, with a wide mouth and large eyes. They are catch'd in prodigious quantities, because they swim in vast shoals like the herrings, especially on the coast of *Malabar*, where they dung their rice-fields with them. They are of a tolerable good taste, but not so good as our herrings.

The third  
fish.

This fish is called third fish, because it delights in salty places, tho' otherwise it is of no ill taste, but is not regarded. It is very flat, about a span in length, and near of the same breadth. The belly is blue, and the body is full of brown spots.

The yellow-  
tail.

The fish called yellow-tail is in shape and bigness like a bream, with very sharp prominent teeth in the fore part of the mouth. The back all along to the tail is inclining to a yellow, and the tail very yellow, whence it has got its name. The belly is blue, inclining to a brown towards the forepart. It has red fins, and is catch'd with hooks at sea near the rocks: It is both a wholesome and toothsome fish.

The Kaelt  
fish.

The *Kaelt* fish, as our people call it, is a kind of pike with a large piked mouth full of teeth, and large bright eyes. The belly and tail is of a purple colour, but the back brown: It is very thick and plump, about a foot and a half long, swims very swiftly, and of a good taste, but somewhat hard.

Ravens  
fish.

The raven fish, has got its name from its mouth, like a bill under the head. It is about a span in length, red on the back and tail, but inclining to yellow on the

belly, and has two yellow streaks on each side, which vanish by degrees. It is a very firm fish, and very wholesome to eat, and is taken in salt waters.

1662.

The king's-fish has obtain'd his title from its excellent taste, being one of the best and most wholesome fishes of the *Indies*. Some are five foot long, and have long forked tails. The back and sides are full of brown spots, but the belly is white. They can open their mouths very wide, and are very greedy after carrion.

The rivers and standing pools afford also abundance of eels; they are generally black on the back, which turns pale towards the belly, and are full of blackish spots. It is the general opinion here, that they are a kind of water-serpents. There is another sort of a ruddy colour with yellow streaks, having a sharp head with very small eyes; some of them are a foot and a half long. They are eaten by none but the natives.


There is another kind of sea-eels, or rather water-serpents in the *Indies*, of about three foot long, of a brown colour, chequered with black spots like the skin of a serpent. The forepart of the body is slender, but is as thick again towards the tail. It has a long head and mouth with sharp teeth, but so small as scarce to be discerned. It delights in rocky places, and serves the natives for a dainty. This fish has one peculiar quality, *viz.* That those who kill or exenterate it, are commonly seized with a trembling, and sometimes with fainting, which however continues not long, which seems to intimate that this creature contains something of poison, which exerts its vigour at the time of its expiration.

The sea-cock is a fish of a very odd shape, more like a sea-monster than a fish. Some are about two foot long, very broad and thick; a great part whereof is nothing but head. On the back it has two long fins, but one longer than the other, and below three other very long fins; a forked tail of a brown colour, but is yellow on the belly. The skin is glittering like silver, and the fins on both sides are red: It is catch'd in salt-water.

The white-fish has a thick short head, a brown back, and blue belly inclining to yellow; it is of a tolerable good taste, and catch'd in prodigious quantities in the sea near the shore with nets, but is generally not much regarded.

The grunting fish has got its name from a certain grumbling noise it makes when it is taken; cros the back run along both sides two brown and one yellow streak; it is very plump, with little scales, not above

nd

ks on each 1662.  
It is a very   
o eat, and

his title *The key*  
one of the *fish*  
of the *Is.*  
, and have  
nd sides are  
ly is white.  
very wide,  
n.

ools afford *Est.*  
e generally  
is pale to  
of blackish  
here, that  
There is  
with yellow  
with very  
foot and a  
y none but

els, or ra- *The fish*  
, of about *est.*  
lour, che-  
e skin of a  
body is flen-  
ds the tail.  
with sharp  
to be dis-  
places, and

This fish  
That those  
commonly  
etimes with  
tinues not  
that this  
of poison,  
time of its

very odd *The fish*  
than a fish. *est.*  
very broad  
is nothing  
two long  
ther, and  
a forked  
low on the  
like silver,  
red: It is

hort head, *The white*  
clining to *fish*  
taste, and  
in the sea  
generally

name from *The great*  
kes when *ing fish*  
long both  
w streak;  
es, not a-  
bove



*The Sea Hogg*



*The Great Cock*



*An Calponte*



*Elephants Nose*



*Crooked back*



Between pag. 306 & 307.

*A Sea Louse*



*A Lamprey*



*Pen. Fish*



*James Everst*

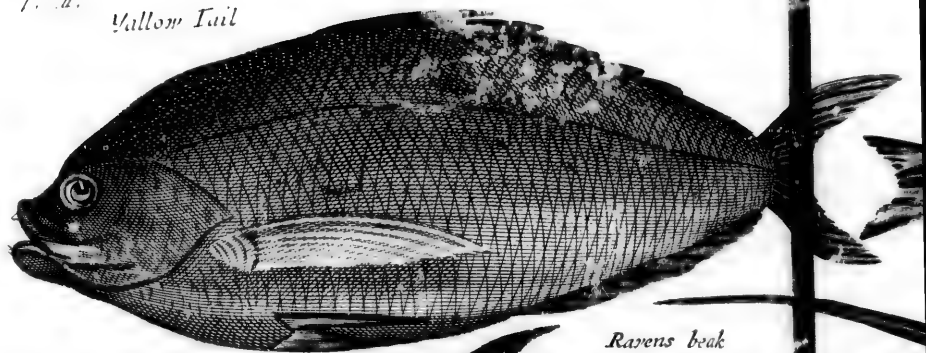




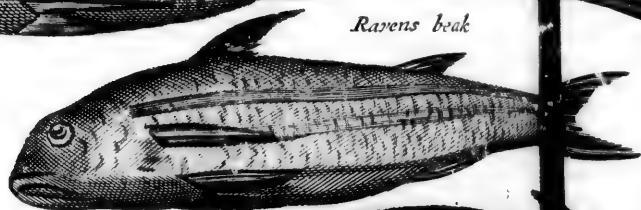


N. H.

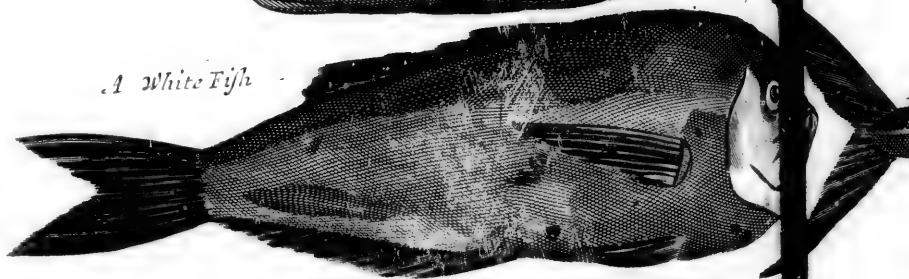
*Yellow Tail*



*Ravens beak*



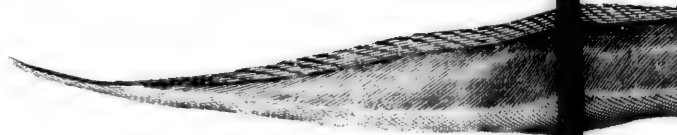
*A White Fish*



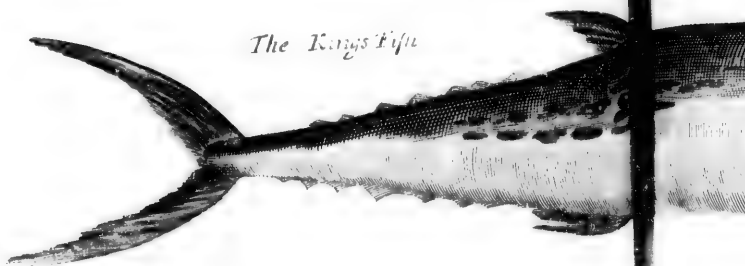
*The Indian pine*



*A Sea Cal*



*The Kings Fish*



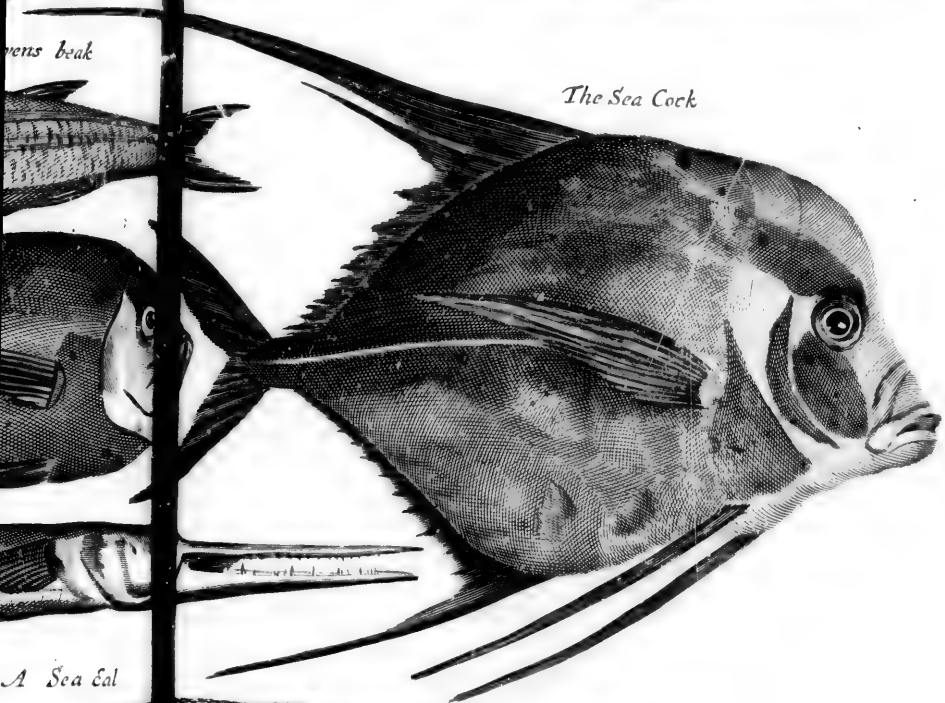
Bermist pag. 300, 307.

*The Grunter*



mens beak

*The Sea Cock*



*A Sea Eel*





1062. bove  
like

and

perc

The sea-  
beg.

no/ on  
gue/

mer,

inclu

the f

fish,

Another  
kind of  
grunting  
fish.

fish,

form

skin,

a br

The

knob

The

each

fish is

The sea-  
beg.

fish,

like a

many

gray

Batac

by the

The sea-  
beg.

above

and fa

It is b

on the

under

that c

are ve

pools,

Kabos.

ger th

foot l

wife s

colour

with b

short,

are we

The sea-  
beg.

with a

length

belly

brown

if the

it will

taste, b

tity.

taken

The sea-  
beg.

an odo

sharp

ted, w

middle

taken

not ur

1662. bove a span in length; the head not unlike a pope. It is of an agreeable taste, and eaten like as we do our popes or small perches.

The sea-hog.

The sea-hog or sea-porpoise called *Pixoporkas*, in the same sense by the *Portuguese*, is of a different kind from the former, this being not above a span in length, inclining to a green with blackish scales, the fins and tail of the same colour, but the eyes are yellow: It is a fresh-water fish, very plump and fat and well tasted.

Another kind of grunting fish.

There is also another kind of grunting-fish, so call'd for the same reason with the former; it is almost round, with a smooth skin, but full of knobs and spots; it is of a brownish colour streaked with black. The head is very thick, short, and full of knobs, with a large mouth and red eyes. The tail is also very round and short; on each side of the body is a red fin, and the fish is of a tolerable good taste.

The sea-louse.

The sea-louse is a strange kind of shell-fish, of above a foot in length. It appears like a round lump, with a large tail, with many legs on both sides. Its colour is gray inclining to green. It is caught near *Batavia*, but is seldom eaten, unless it be by the *Javanese* and *Chinese*.

The lamprey.

The *Lamprey* is a kind of an eelpoute, above a foot long, with a smooth skin, and fat like an eel, but of a different shape. It is brown on the belly, with yellow spots on the back, and has purple coloured fins under the belly. The head is not unlike that of a snail, with horns, and its fins are venomous. It is catch'd in ponds and pools, and eats best stew'd.

Kabos.

*Kabos* is a kind of an eelpoute, but bigger than the last; these being above two foot long and very fat. The skin is likewise smooth, without scales, of a brownish colour, but the belly is somewhat paler, with black spots. The head is thick and short, with the eyes in the forehead; they are well tasted.

The pen fish.

The pen fish is also a kind of eelpoute, with a smooth skin without scales; of the length of a foot, the back brown, and the belly of a pale blue colour. The fins are brown, very sharp and venomous, so that if the least part of it remains in a wound, it will scarce heal; the fish is of a good taste, but unwholesome if eaten in any quantity. It is likewise a fresh-water fish, and taken in pools and ponds.

The elephant-nose.

The fish called the elephant's-nose is of an odd shape, its undermost jaw being as sharp as a pin. The body is prettily spotted, with a broad streak running cross the middle. It is a very thick fish, which is taken in the sea, and in bigness and taste is not unlike our large finelts.

The fish called *Jacob Evertson*, is above ten foot long, weighing sometimes 400 pound. It is blue on the belly, and brown on the body, with many dark red spots near the head and tail. It has a large white mouth, with a short brown tail, and many fins turning up towards the back.

1662.

Jacob Evertson.

The fish crooked-back has got its name from its shape: It has a smooth skin without scales, a white belly, and yellow tail and fins. It is in great request all over the *Indies*, by reason of its agreeable taste; some are four foot long.

The crooked-back.

The horn fish is about a span in length or something more, with a large head, but a little mouth; half of the body being taken up with the head. The skin is very bright, the back bluish, the belly white, but the fins and tail yellow. The body represents it self in various colours, according to its several turnings.

The horn fish.

The fish called *Kneffsen*, is a bastard carp, about a span long, and pretty broad with thick scales. It is a well tasted fresh-water fish.

Kneffsen.

Their flounders are in shape and bigness like ours, except that they have teeth, wherewith they take hold of all they light on; they also are as well tasted as the *Dutch* flounders; they have here also turbut and soals, little different from ours both in shape and taste.

The flounder.

The *Klip* fish is a kind of fish with a smooth skin without scales, flat, broad, and of the bigness of our plaist: It is brown on the back, spotted with white, but very white towards the belly, with many streaks of various colours. The mouth and eyes are like those of the bream, and it is a well tasted fish.

The Klip fish.

The cod fish here is of the same size and colour with ours, except that it has very sharp fins on the back and the under part of the mouth jets out beyond the uppermost.

The cod fish.

The horn fish has got its name from the horn upon his head, and two more underneath, which being very brittle are also very poisonous, and if part thereof remain in a wound, will scarce admit of a cure; and if you happen only to be wounded by it, it will exulcerate immediately.

The horn fish.

The flat fish is about a foot long, with a smooth skin without scales, and a white mouth: It glitters all over like silver; on the back it has a small fin, and one more on each side. Underneath the belly, it has only one fin which is instead of the tail. It is a fresh-water fish, of a very good taste, but full of small bones, and therefore not much regarded.

The flat fish.

1662. The red-fish is a kind of a bream, of a dark red colour, as are likewise the fins; however the belly is blue, and has two yellow fins; it is very thick of body, and the head is sharp at the end, with a large mouth and yellow eyes, some are four foot long.

The bitter fish.

The bitter fish is of the shape and bigness of a carp, with large scales and red fins, and two black streaks round the tail. It is a fine well tasted fish, but being full of small bones, is not much in request.

The parrot fish.

The parrot fish has got its name from its mouth, which turns like the bill of a parrot. It is a foot long, and sometimes bigger. It is of a greenish colour, marbled or chequered towards the head with yellow. Both the fins and eyes are of a blue colour; the last very large and sprightly, and surrounded with a yellow circle. It has very large scales, and two rows of very hard teeth, wherewith they often bite off the hooks. This fish is very greedy after muscles and oysters, which it cracks to pieces to come at the fish. It is a very firm fish, and of a good taste.

Short nose.

The short nose is a fish like our had-dock, having a round body; it is yellow on the belly, and the fins are of the same colour. The mouth is just under the nose, which is very short; it is a well tasted fish.

The bone fish.

The bone fish is of the bigness and shape of our carps, but flatter, and has another head: It has large scales, and a forked tail; its taste is very good, but being full of small bones, is not much regarded.

The sand smelt.

The sand smelt resembles in colour and bigness a small whiting, and is round of body, and inclining to a yellow on the belly: It is a sea fish, and of an excellent taste.

The pock fish.

The pock fish is generally above a foot long, with a smooth skin, without scales; but being very bright, it varies in colour according to the various position of its body, appearing sometimes blue, then green, and soon after of a purple, or some other colour. It is a long fish, but not broad, not unlike a great smelt, with a forked tail, and teeth in its mouth. Tho' it is a well tasted fish, yet being full of small bones, is not eaten, except by the natives.

The Chinese fish.

The Chinese fish is round, and about a span long; the head is like an eel, with small eyes, and a long tail. It is green on the back, but white on the belly. It is a fresh water fish, and well tasted, but those catch'd in ponds are accounted unwholesome.

The pit fish.

The pit fish is no bigger than a large smelt, with a round body, full of green and yellow spots, and without scales. The

eyes, which they can draw in or out, are starting out of the head. On the back they have sharp pointed fins; they delight in muddy places, notwithstanding which they are well tasted; they are very nimble, and will leap a great way.

The mullet is a very fine fish, which being catch'd in particular places only, is dry'd in the sun, and transported all over the Indies. It is white of colour, chequered with blue and purple; it swims with great swiftness, and is so nimble, that it will not only leap over the net, but even over the fisher-boat. These fishes are of a dainty taste whilst in season, but at certain times they are pestered with worms, at which time they are neither toothsome nor wholesome.

Nothing more common than to give names to fishes in foreign countries from what they most resemble; whence it is, that the sea snipe has got its name from its mouth, which is like the bill of a snipe. Some of them are five foot long, with a head like that of a hog, and large bright eyes: On the back are large and sharp fins, reaching from the head to the tail, and full of spots.

Some korets are six or seven foot long, have large yellowish eyes, and a forked yellow and greyish tail, with yellow fins; under the belly, which is blue, inclining to green, and under the tail, are divers fins. They are very bright, and shine like silver, when they are catch'd at sea with hooks: They are very well tasted and not unwholesome, being sometimes a great refreshment to those ships that come to these parts.

This kind of fish has deservedly got the name of sea devil, by reason of its ugly shape; having the eyes on one side, and the mouth in the concavity below the head. Its tail is like that of a roach, with two teats on each side, pointed towards the end. The skin on the head is full of brown spots; some are near seven or eight foot long, but afford very coarse food.

The stip fish has a skin full of spots, is well tasted, and taken generally with hooks near the isle of St. Vincent.

The sea pigeon has got its name from the resemblance of its head to that of a pigeon, and of its breasts protuberating like those creatures. This fish is without scales, but not without divers spots. It is but rarely catch'd, and none of the best tasted.

The sea hedge-hog is justly so called from its sharp fins about the head and mouth, which is round, and has very large eyes. They can't swim very swiftly, and consequently would soon fall a prey to other fish, were it not that nature has arm'd them with these pointed fins against any attempt.

The

d  
or out, are 1662.  
On the back  
they delight  
nding which  
very nimble,

, which being <sup>the m.</sup>  
nly, is dry'd <sup>lit.</sup>  
over the In-  
acquired with  
h great swift-  
will not on-  
ven over the  
of a dainty  
certain times  
ns, at which  
he nor whole-

than to give <sup>the</sup>  
untries from <sup>sup.</sup>  
whence it is,  
ame from tis  
a snipe. Some  
h a head like  
ght eyes: On  
fins, reaching  
full of spots.  
en foot long, <sup>The herts,</sup>  
and a forked  
h yellow fins;  
e, inclining to  
re divers fins.  
ine like silver,  
a with hooks:  
not unwhole-  
at refreshment  
hefe parts.  
vedly got the  
n of its ugly <sup>The sea</sup>  
one side, and <sup>devil.</sup>  
elow the head.  
ach, with two  
wards the end.  
f brown spots;  
foot long, but

ull of spots, is <sup>the sea</sup>  
lly with hooks <sup>fish.</sup>

s name from the <sup>The sea</sup>  
t of a pigeon; <sup>pigeon</sup>  
ting like those  
out scales, but  
It is but rarely  
it tasted.

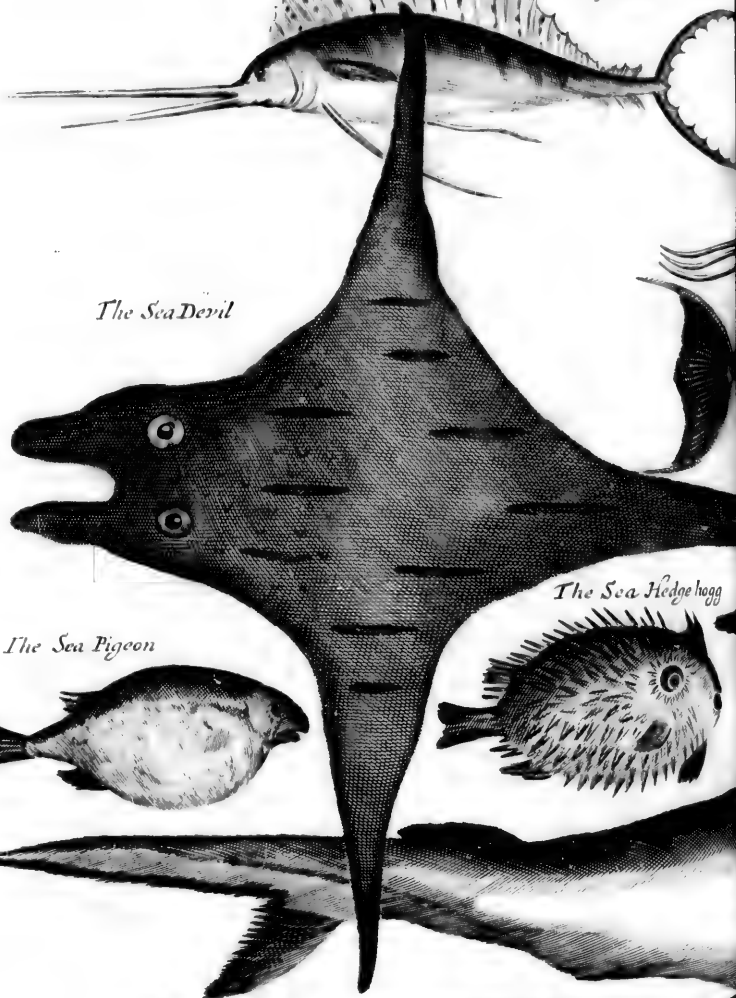
ustly so called <sup>The sea</sup>  
the head and <sup>hedge-hog</sup>  
has very large  
ry swiftly, and  
a prey to other  
has arm'd them  
gainst any at-

V. II.

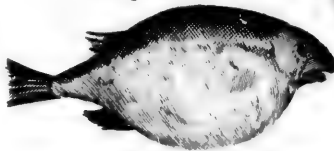
*Sea snipe*



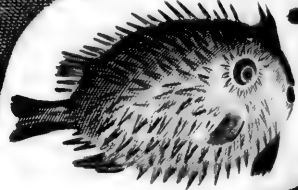
*The Sea Devil*



*The Sea Pigeon*



*The Sea Hedge hogg*



*A Sea Catt*



*The*



*The Sea*

*Schark*



*Sea Snake*



*The Sea Cretin*



*Botanist pag. 108, 109.*

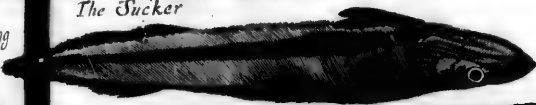
*Stip Fish*



*The Sea Eagle*



*The Sucker*



*The Sea Hedgehog*



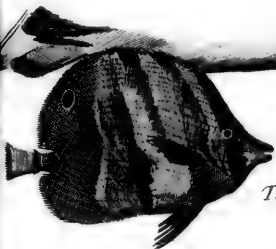
*The Sucker*



*Schark*

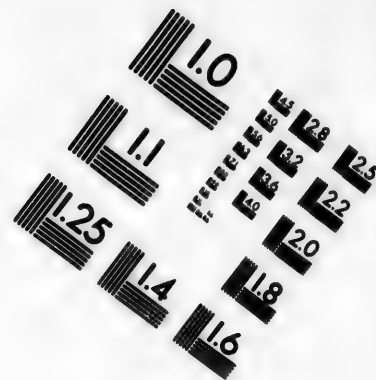
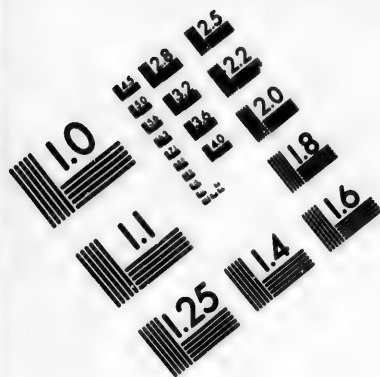


*The Soulders Fish*

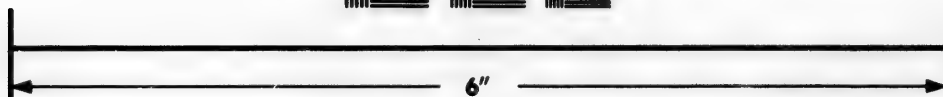
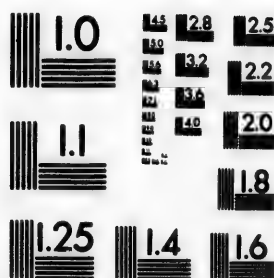








# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**



the  
The  
smo  
tect  
suck  
that  
thei  
shar  
then  
of b  
taste

So  
foot  
and  
some  
ed w  
near  
fish,  
a leg  
swim  
youn  
shark  
ther  
again  
vabl  
ways  
ly to

see in  
for in  
ceedin  
the b  
belly  
tail is  
dy, v  
it sw  
ever,  
seven  
like t  
good

TI  
of br  
to th  
a pal  
fins l  
eyes.  
dies,

TI  
It ha  
like  
a roa

TI  
lengu  
molt  
on w  
large  
but i  
of th  
which  
dry t  
plais  
the fi  
Vo

1662.

The jack.  
1662.

The suckers are represented at length in the cut, tho' there are some much bigger. They are blue, with bright yellow eyes, a smooth skin without scales: They have no teeth, but broad lips, wherewith they will suck, and adhere so close to other fish, that they will rather be kill'd than let go their hold. They will stick so close to the shark, that they are often catch'd with them. They are eaten sometimes for want of better food, but are but of an indifferent taste.

The shark.

Some sharks are eight, ten, or fourteen foot long: Their skin is rough and sharp, and they have a double row of teeth, and some three or four rows, which are covered with the gums. Their eyes lie forward near the mouth. It is a very pernicious fish, which oftentimes bites off an arm or a leg of those that divert themselves with swimming. The sharks bring forth their young ones alive, which follow the she-shark wherever she goes, and in bad weather creep into her belly, and come out again after the storm is over. It is observable that certain fishes of a foot long always swim after the shark, which are plainly to be seen in still weather.

The sea cat.

The sea cat, (the draught whereof you see in the cut) is a very odd creature, both for its colour and shape. The eyes are exceeding large in proportion to the body, the back is of a purple colour, and the belly blue, with divers purple spots. The tail is in comparison of the rest of the body, vastly large, and pale red, wherewith it swims, it being destitute of fins. However, just on the front of the head, it has seven fins, which stand out straight forward like those of the shrimps. It affords very good food, especially if dry'd in the sun.

Soldier-fish.

The klip-fish, or soldier-fish, is a kind of bream, but sometimes grows not above to the length of a span: It is flat and of a pale colour: On the back it has sharp fins like a perch; a sharp tail, and yellow eyes. It is one of the best fish in the Indies, of a very delicious taste.

The sea eagle.

The sea eagle is an odd kind of fish: It has a tail like a roach, with large fins like wings, a thick head, and tastes like a roach.

The sea cat.

The sea cat is a round fish of a span in length, of a very odd shape; the hindermost part of the body being an oval lump, on which hangs the head. It has long and large eyes, a smooth skin, inclining to blue, but brown upon the belly. The entrails of this fish contain a certain gum, out of which the Chinese make their ink. They dry this fish in the sun, as the Dutch do the plaice; and they are in great request among the Indians, tho' they are of no easy digestion.

Vol. II.

The leaping fish is so called, because they leap and play continually upon the surface of the water. They are of the bigness of a herring, and are without fins on the back, from the head to the tail. They have a knotty head, and the body of a greyish colour, with black spots; but toward the belly they begin to be white. They look very fiercely before they begin to leap. They are sea fishes, and of a very good taste, especially broiled.

Pampus.

The fish Pampus is above a foot long, and about a span in breadth; for the rest in colour and shape, not unlike our plaice, with a smooth skin: The eyes stand on both sides, and the mouth straight forward. It is a well tasted fish, especially if dry'd and eaten as the Dutch do their plaice.

Peyxe Kok.

Peyxe Kok, i. e. the Fish Kok, so called by the Portuguese, because when taken it makes a noise or sound like Kok. It is taken near the isle of St. Vincent, and is but an indifferent fish.

The blower.

The blowers are huge fishes which appear now and then in the open sea. They have got this name from their drawing in of the water, and spouting it out again with great force into the air.

The white fish.

The white fish is about the bigness of a whiting, with a round hanging belly, a straight back, and turn'd up mouth: Its tail is forked, it has one large fin upon the back, and abundance of small ones betwixt the belly and the tail. It is full of streaks all over the body, and on the mouth it has two long teats: It is of a very good taste.

Five-finger-fish.

The five-finger-fish has got its name from five black spots on each side, resembling the prints of fingers. Its length is about a foot and a half, with a small head, large mouth, and brown pointed fins towards the tail. It is of a shining blue colour mix'd with purple, without scales. It is of a pretty good taste, and taken in the sea all over the Indies.

Karappa, or round fish.

Karappa, or round-fish, is not unlike a whiting, of a very good taste: It has but a small head and tail, but a pretty bulky belly. Below it has some fins not unlike those of an eel.

Flying-fish.

Some of the flying-fish are near as big as corvette, of a blueish colour on the back, but inclining to a brown towards the tail. They have large eyes, and large yellowish fins, and resemble in shape our smelts: They are of an agreeable taste, but not easy to be catch'd, except when they fly against the sails, which they frequently do, and so fall upon the ships deck.

The fork-tail.

The fork-tail is a long and round fish, with a very long forked tail, whence it tail has got its name. Its head is not unlike

K k k k

that

1662. that of a herring, with a long teat on the top of it, and two more below near the mouth, like those of the shrimps, but larger; they keep them close to the body when they are swimming. They are of the bigness of a mackerel, but of no extraordinary good taste.

*Seals.* Some seals here are a foot long, of the same colour as ours, and as well-tasted; but their heads are strangely shaped, the mouth turning quite to one side, as well as their eyes.

*Bonites.* The bonites are not unlike the corettes, but with lesser fins and blue streaks, which vanish by degrees towards the tail. The back is of a dark brown, and the belly white, the eyes blue, surrounded with a yellow circle. Some are a foot and a half long, and very bright when first taken, which is done without much difficulty, because they follow the ships, and are very greedy after a bait. They eat best if they are salted a little before they are broil'd.

*The sword-fish.* The sword-fish has a very odd head, not unlike that of an owl, with a very wide mouth: The skin is hard, the back grey, the belly white without any scales. On each side of the sword, which is above five foot long, are 27 teeth: Their whole length, including the sword, is generally 25 foot long, and so thick, that scarce two men can grasp them. Near the eyes they have two nostrils, through which they draw the water in and out.

*Siap Siap.* The fish called *Siap Siap* by the *Javanese*, is a river fish in great request among the *Javanese*, and is taken in considerable quantity near *Batavia*.

*The pyed-fish.* The pyed-fish has got its name from its colour; its tail and fins being brown, spotted with pale blue spots: It is about a foot long, and pretty thick, without scales. The eyes, which are yellow, are surrounded by a blue circle; underneath the throat hangs a crop extending it self to the tail: It has a little mouth, and on each side a yellow fin. It is in great esteem among the inhabitants, and well tasted, but contains a certain venomous matter, which must be carefully taken out when it is gutted.

*Five-eyes.* The five-eyes have got their name from five black eyes, enclosed in yellow circles, which are in the fins near the tail. They are smooth and yellow without scales, pretty thick with a small head and sharp nose, which turns over the mouth, near which they have two red fins; they are catch'd in the rivers and are well-tasted.

*Sea-bats.* The sea-bat has got its name from its resemblance to a bat: It has two yellowish wings streak'd with three blue streaks; a long tail, thick head and large mouth. By its taste it seems to be a kind of thorn-back.

The gudgeons of *Java* are of the length of a finger, but scarce an inch thick. They are speckled with pale blue, and other colours without scales; they have small forked tails, are catch'd in the rivers and are exceeding well tasted. There is another kind of them taken in the sea, in such prodigious quantities, that they fill a whole canoe full for eight or ten pence, and fatten their ducks and geese with them.

The *Indian* carps are taken in the rivers, being not in the least different from ours either in shape or taste.


The sea-monster is an odd kind of fish, having a knobby star of eight tacks upon the head, and upon that a certain excrescence resembling a bishop's mitre: From the sides of the head issue two fins of the same length with the body of the monster. It has a very dreadful wide mouth, and very broad tail, wherewith it guides it self in swimming.

They have divers sorts of shrimps and creafishes in the *Indies*; and of the latter sort, a certain kind which have teeth like a saw on the back; some of them are of that bigness as to weigh six pounds, of a delicious taste, and very wholesome, being accounted good for such as are troubled with the asthma, or spit-blood. The sea-shrimps are a salt-water fish, the biggest of which are near a span in length, and have shells like ours, of a fallow colour with a red fork'd tail. Out of the head come forth divers fins, on which hang two small thin horns. They are very well tasted, and five or six are sufficient for one man's meal. The river-shrimps are about the bigness of our sea-shrimps, of a blue colour, with a small head and thick body. Out of the head come two long fins, as fine as a thread. Their shell is not so hard as the former, neither are they so well-tasted. The rivers here afford also abundance of creafishes, which are taken in holes among the ysters. They are better tasted than our lobsters.

The sea-star is an odd shaped fish with five branches or tacks like a star: They are of a pale red colour, an inch thick, covered with a knobby skin, underneath which are many small bones: They have a hole in the middle, through which they draw their sustenance: They are never to be seen at sea, except in calm weather, and are taken and kept rather for curiosity's sake than any other use.

The sea-crabs are of about the bigness of a span, of a most curious colour, the shell being speckled with yellow spots; besides which they have three purple spots enclosed within white rings. Their claws are yellowish towards the body, afterwards white.



d  
of the length 1662.  
thick. They   
and other co-  
have small <sup>For got</sup>  
e rivers and  
here is ano-  
sea, in such  
sell a whole  
, and fatten  
gm.  
in the rivers, <sup>Carp.</sup>  
at from ours

kind of fish, <sup>The sea-</sup>  
at tacks up- <sup>maulster.</sup>  
certain ex-  
pp's mitre:  
ssue two fin  
body of the  
eadful wide  
wherewith it

shrimps and <sup>Shrimps</sup>  
of the latter and crea-  
ve teeth like <sup>fishes.</sup>  
them are of  
pounds, of a  
me, being ac-  
troubled with  
e sea-shrimps  
est of which  
d have shells  
with a red  
d come forth  
vo small thin  
ted, and five  
man's meal.  
he bigness of  
lour, with 2  
Out of the  
ne asa thread.  
the former,  
ed. The ri-  
nce of crea-  
holes among  
tasted than

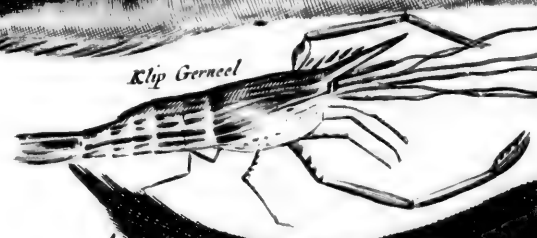
pped fish with <sup>The fish-</sup>  
r: They are <sup>fish.</sup>  
h thick, co-  
rneath which  
have a hole  
h they draw  
never to be  
weather, and  
or curiosity's

t the bigness <sup>Generals</sup>  
s colour, the <sup>or lab-</sup>  
w spots; be- <sup>fishes.</sup>  
purple spots  
Their claws  
y, afterwards  
white,

The Five Spot



Klip Gerneel



A Sea Batt

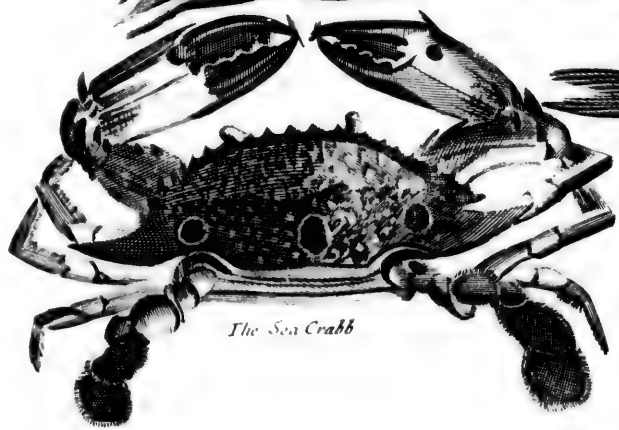


Hen Fish

The Sea Cat



Pitt Fish



The Sea Crab

River Shrimp



*The Five eye*

*The Sea Shrimp*

*Dearest page 140*

*A Sea Bat*

*Land  
Crabb*

*The Pide Fish*

*The Sea Cat*

*Pitt Ey*

*The Soft Fish*

*River Shrimp*



1662. white  
purp  
tain  
the  
crab  
half  
spot  
of a  
eyes  
mer,  
the h  
very

*Explan.*  
T  
quite  
swift  
two  
pecia  
wife  
close  
marb  
a pu  
small  
yellow  
nefs,  
anoth  
nefs  
disting  
which  
and h  
licious  
out  
an in  
sea-cr  
and  
best  
crabs  
a cen  
grou  
oyste

*Notes*  
*and others.*  
T  
but  
both  
fort  
peop  
they  
two  
pale  
them  
same  
as th  
cles.  
the  
the  
all  
stew  
leme

*Purple-*  
*points*  
A  
the  
lop  
big  
win  
the  
low

1662. white, and at the extremities of a high purple colour; their eyes are fixt upon certain small tacks an inch breadth without the head. There is also a kind of blue-crabs, some of which are a foot and a half long: They are of a purple colour spotted with white; the claws are blue, and of a purple colour towards the body; their eyes are fixt upon small tacks like the former, and stand a fingers length without the head. They are a salt-water fish, and very well-tasted.

*Lobsters.* There is another kind of lobsters not quite so big as the former, which run very swiftly: Their eyes stand likewise about two inches breadth without the head, especially whilst they are running, but otherwise can draw them back, and lay them close under two fins. Their bodies are marbled with divers colours, the claws of a purple colour; behind they have two small round and blue shells edged with yellow. Some are of a considerable bigness, and of a very good taste. There is another sort of sea-crabs, of the same bigness as the blue-lobsters, but easily to be distinguished from them by their colour, which is inclining to green, with red claws, and by their taste, which is exceeding delicious, these being the best sort throughout the *Indies*. Their eyes stand likewise an inch's breadth without the head. Some sea-crabs here cast their shells, and during a certain season of the year abide under ground till they grow again. The *Indian* oysters are prefer'd before those of *Europe*.

*Muscles and oysters.* The muscles of the *Indies* are like ours, but somewhat bigger; the shell is brown both in and outside. There is another sort of muscles called tail muscles by our people; these are of a greenish colour; they have on that end where they open, two sharp horns, and on the other end, a pale yellow tail, wherewith they can fasten themselves in the mud. They are of the same taste, and used like ours, as well as those we commonly call *St. James's* muscles. Of oysters they have also several sorts, the biggest adhere to the rocks, some to the roots and tacks of the trees; they are all of a very good taste; and are either stew'd with spices, or eaten raw with lemon-juice and pepper.

*Purple snails.* Abundance of purple-snails are found in the islands overagainst *Batavia*: The scallop or shell is of a yellow colour, of the bigness of a good citron, with curious windings at one end. Within this shell is the snail, which is round, plump and yellow, streak'd with black. They are boil'd

and eaten by the *Chinese*, who have a way 1662. of polishing the shells, and pick out of the middle of the snail a certain purple colour'd substance, which they use in colouring and making of red ink. There is also another kind with green shells, streak'd with black, white within, and of the bigness of a child's head: The snail is of the same colour, and is not ill tasted. Another sort has a shell pale-red, marbled with white, and curiously twisted, of the bigness of an orange: The snail is of the same colour, and is eaten as we do our periwinkles, but is of a hard digestion.

The *Quallen* are a certain product of the sea, of a mucilaginous substance, without head or tail, or entrails; they commonly are of the bigness of a trencher, and sometimes less. They have purple edges all round them, wherewith they swim. In the midst is a certain white spot, (which is sometimes blueish) wherein perhaps their vituals are contained. If they are forced ashore, they are dissolved. The *Chinese* have a way of distilling a certain *Arack* or strong-water out of them, which is excessive hot, sharp and unwholesome, causing exulcerations in the body. For if this substance happen to adhere to the bare skin of a man in swimming or otherwise, it burns with violence, and raises blisters immediately.

The *Dorades*, by some called sea-breems, *The Dolphins.* are a kind of dolphins. They have long and sharp fins on the back, and a very long tail; underneath the belly they have three fins, the last of which extends as far as the tail. Some are 4 or 5 foot long, and rather broad than thick. They eat tolerably well, if salted before they are dress'd, but are of a hard digestion: They are sometimes taken with the hook, being not easily caught with the harpiron, by reason of their nimbleness, which is such, that they will leap sometimes five or six foot high above the water, after the flying-fish.

The *Indies* afford excessive large thorn-backs, some of which are as big in circumference as a moderate table, and will suffice to dine forty people. They have vast long tails, but are of the same colour with ours, and of the same taste, but are hard of digestion, but the young ones are much better. Their fins, which are very large, are of a purple colour. All fish with scales cast their spawn; but those without scales bring forth their young ones alive.

Indian and Javanese birds and four leg'd beasts.

In the isles of *Sumatra*, *Banda*, and the other adjacent *Molucca* islands, is to be found *The Bird Emu.*

1662. found a certain bird, called *Emeu* or *Eme* by the inhabitants, and *Casuaris* by the Dutch. He walks constantly with his head straight upright, when he is above five foot high, and about three in length from the breast to the tail. The head is in proportion of the body, but small, very smooth, and of a dark blue colour. Before, on the neck, hang two red teats or bags. The eyes are large and fierce, behind which are the ear-holes, and almost at the extremities of the bill two nostrils; and from the midst of the bill to the crown of the head, grows a hard yellow substance, like a cockle-shell, especially in the males. They have very long and gross legs, covered

with a yellowish rind, their feet are thick, knobby, and without spurs, instead of which, they have on the forepart three long horny claws, in which they differ from the ostriches, whose feet are cloven both before and behind. They are covered all over with feathers, or rather with plumes of a dark red mix'd with black. Those upon the breast and thighs, grow two and two together, but those on the tail are much longer and stronger. Underneath the feathers, which grow on both sides, are hidden certain pens, which serve them in running, for these birds are scarce able to raise themselves from the ground. They are exceeding greedy, devouring every thing



they meet with, even to iron and burning coals, all which they evacuate backwards without any alteration; nay, they sometimes throw out what they have eat, not till a year after, without the least sign of any digestion: For the rest they live upon herbage. Their strength consists in their legs and feet; and run so fast that no man can overtake them, and when exasperated, kick with their feet backwards and sideways like a horse. They lay greenish eggs upon the ground among the shrubs, scarce so big as our hen-eggs, speckled with dark green spots; the yolks thereof are eaten by the inhabitants. They have neither tongue nor tail.

Among the several sorts of flitter-mice or bats, that which by some is called a flying-cat, may well challenge a place; its head, tail, nay the whole body and bulk resembling to a cat. It differs from the bats in this, that whereas they hang on certain tacks, this hangs on its claws, and hides its self within its wings: The hair brown red, except on the back, where it is black. Betwixt the fore and hindermost legs grows two skins, a little hairy on the outside, which serves them for wings. There is also a sort of flying-apes, these have very sharp teeth and claws, and very lively eyes.

In

1662.  
The ban-  
n's bird.

Dente or  
Dodars.

Parra-  
quits.

The mar-  
lin.

In  
with  
The  
the t  
but v  
a bag  
The  
rings  
very  
On t  
stand  
and  
In  
a cer  
nants  
nefs  
key,  
them  
very  
but  
eyes

T  
the  
yell  
and  
The  
wool  
spea  
diff  
T  
V



their feet are  
purs, instead  
part three  
differ from  
cloven both  
covered all  
with plumes of  
Those up-  
two and two  
il are much  
neath the fea-  
les, are hid-  
in run-  
able to raise  
They are  
every thing

1662.

The hunter's-bird.

In some parts of the *Indies* you meet with a certain bird call'd the hunter's-bird. The breast and whole body is black, but the tail grayish; the head is dark yellow, but without feathers; below the neck hangs a bag, not unlike those of our turkeys: The bill is distinguish'd by certain twisted rings, by which they discern their age, every year producing one like our oxes horns. On the top of the bill grows a horny substance; they are look'd upon as a rarity, and fold at a dear rate.

Dronthe or Dodaers.

In the isle of *Mauritius* you meet with a certain bird call'd *Dronthe* by the inhabitants, and *Dodaers* by the Dutch. In bigness it is betwixt an ostrich and a large turkey, and has also some resemblance to them in his feathers and tail. His head is very large, not unlike that of a cuckow, but covered all over with a skin. The eyes are large and black, the neck crooked

and very thick: The bill is very long, thick and pale blue, except towards the extremities, the uppermost whereof is blackish, and the undermost yellowish, but both sharp and bent. He is very thick and round of body, covered with soft grey feathers, like those of the ostrich; the belly and hindmost part are so thick as to touch almost the ground, which is the reason he is easily catch'd. On both sides he has certain pens instead of wings, of a pale yellow colour, and instead of the tail five curl'd plumes of the same colour: His legs are short and thick, with four large claws. The meat, especially that of the breast, is fat and toothsome enough, and three or four of these creatures afford a meal for 100 persons. In his stomach is sometimes found a certain porous hard stone.

1662.



Parraquets.

The parraquets are of a green colour, of the bigness of a sterling; their bills are yellow, the neck red mix'd with green, and the wings yellow at the extremities: They are found in vast numbers in the woods, and are easily tamed and taught to speak. There are divers sorts of them of different colours.

The martins.

The martins here are as big as our mag-pies.

pies, of a black colour with a yellow bill, and a yellow tuft upon the head. The midst of the wings is white, the feet yellow, with large crooked claws. The *Javaneze* are great admirers of this bird, and teach him to whistle and speak, which he does as distinctly as a man, but with somewhat a rough voice. There is another sort of them not so big as these; they are found all

L 111

1662. all over the *Indies*, and feed upon rice and other fruits of the earth.

Crows.

The *Indian* crows are pale blue, in shape betwixt a heron and stork. The head and neck is somewhat of a darker colour, with a curl'd tail and sharp bill. They live most in wildernesses, and fly (as they say) sometimes as far as *Europe*, under a certain leader, who flies sometimes before and sometimes behind.

The bird  
Rubus.

The bird *Rubus* is of the bigness of a starling, with a blue bill and legs, the back and tail red, and white and black wings. The head is green, and in his tail he has two large feathers, like the *Paradise* bird.

Bats.

In divers parts of the *Indies* are very large bats, exceeding in bigness our cats. In the isle of *Java* are some of the ordinary sort, no bigger than a pidgeon; they live in the woods, and are accounted a dainty by the *Javaneſe*. In the night-time they will get sometimes into the chambers, if the windows be left open, and draw blood from such as are asleep there.

Gwira.

There are two sorts of the bird called *Gwira*, they are both white, mix'd with some brown feathers. One sort has a red belly, and the other a blue tail, with one very long feather in it.

Porro.

The *Porro* is a long, but slender bird, of a span in length, including the bill and tail. The bill is somewhat crooked, and the tail like that of the bird *Gwira*. His feathers are blueish, mixt with yellow, and his feet very small. He feeds upon pismires.

Cormo-  
rants.

In *Java* you meet often with cormorants, not unlike our geese, except that they are much bigger; underneath the bill hangs a large bag, which they can extend and draw together at pleasure, and in it keep such fish as they have swallow'd. Their feet are like those of the swan, and their bills are crooked towards the extremities. They are so greedy after prey, that they rush out from among the flags with such violence, that they are easily taken by that means. They swallow oysters with the shells, and keep them in their bags till they open, when they spew them out again and pick out the oyster. They are frequently found in the isle of *Din Ding*, and soon discovered by their noise.

Ducks.

All over the *Indies* you meet with ducks in great numbers, resembling ours both in bigness and taste. They are generally dark yellow, with a black bill and legs, large bellies, and tufts on their heads. But whereas the *West-India* ducks have hanging bellies, these carry them more upright. By reason of the excessive heat they are not easily brought to sit upon their eggs, which are generally laid under hens, or so-

mented in horfeding or ovens. Their meat is very wholesome, provided they are well fed.

1662.

The wide-bill has got his name from *Wia*. his bill, which reaches up on both sides to the eyes: He is scarce of the bigness of a pidgeon, of a pale black colour, with black wings, and underneath the eyes and bill white. They are brought to market in great quantities at *Batavia*, their meat being well tasted.

The strand bird is a kind of snipe of the bigness of our wood-cocks. Their feathers are green mixed with black, they are fold in great numbers at *Batavia*, and in taste are not unlike our wood-snipes.

The *Indian* turtles are not altogether so big as ours, and of a yellowish colour mix'd with grey: They have a black feather in each wing, and the tail is black and white; under the neck they are somewhat brighter, and the breast almost red. They are taken in great quantities in the rice-fields, and are fat and well-tasted.

The *Indian* geese are much finer and larger than the *European* geese, resembling rather our swans, their necks being excessive long, of a yellowish colour, but their bills black. Along the back, upon the wings and tail they have dark grey feathers mix'd with some light ones, but on the belly they are white. They have not so shrill a voice as our geese, but differ not in the least from them either in shape or taste, their feet being likewise red. They have both wild and tame ones.

In divers places of the *Indies* are great quantities of birds of prey, as eagles, hawks, kites, and such like, which do prodigious mischief both among the wild and tame fowl, and are of such strength, that they carry sometimes a young pig away and devour it in the woods or among the rocks. There is a certain bird of prey here, which you see moving in the air without moving its wings; and another called *Jin* by the *Chinese*, exceeding all the rest in nimbleness: It is greenish on the back, but white on the belly. The eyes are quick and red, and the bill yellow, bent like a hook at the end. Their feet are likewise yellow, arm'd with long and very sharp claws.

The *Koey* is a kind of a heron, but much exceeding ours in beauty, being yellow before and green in the hindmost part. On the head he has a delicious plume, spreading all over the neck. The young ones eat tolerably well, but the old ones are tough and taste much after fish.

*Kolibry* is the least of all the birds, being no bigger than a horse-fly: it has a very sharp bill, wherewith it sucks its sustenance out of the flowers, though some are

1662. of o  
all t  
wing  
geon  
fouth  
or co  
injur  
no b  
whit  
well  
grain  
or a  
In  
bers  
stles,  
geon  
longe  
noise  
a cor  
grou  
by co  
selve  
hollo  
set,  
chea  
T  
rope,  
the b  
claw  
they  
good  
T  
our  
with  
head  
mon  
nam  
In  
fants  
whit  
T  
terf  
bills  
suck  
at p  
colo  
red,  
are  
the  
som  
have  
T  
W  
gint.  
bign  
spou  
ple  
sem  
mo  
or  
cio  
bro  
The  
rot

1662. Their meat they are well

name from both sides of colour, with the eyes and their meat

snipe of the their feathers, they are fold and in taste

together so with colour a black feather is black they are some almost red, in the taste.

ch finer and resembling being excellent, but their back, upon the dark grey feathers, but on they have not, but differ in shape the red. They

ies are great eagles, hawks, prodigious and tame that they and devour. There which you moving its by the Chinese, leness: It is white on the and red, and hook at the yellow, arm'd

heron, but being yellow hindmost plume, The young the old ones fish.

birds, be- it has a its suste- form are of

1662. of opinion it feeds upon the dew. It has all the colours of the rain-bow, and its wings are not unlike those of the pigeons or ducks: It builds a nest to the south under the branches of orange, limon, or cotton-trees, to defend itself against the injuries of the north winds: Its eggs are no bigger than peas. There is another which sings exceeding fine, but is not so well colour'd; it weighs not above 24 grains, and is catch'd by throwing hot or any thing else upon it.

In the woods of Java you see vast numbers of birds not unlike our quails or thrushes, but of the bigness of our wild pigeons; their bills are however somewhat longer than those of our quails, and their noise is very different. They are of so cold a constitution, that if expos'd on the cold ground, they are in danger of perishing by cold; for which reason they hide themselves, cover'd with their wings in the hollows of trees, immediately after sunset, and at sun-rising come forth again and begin to chirp with a great deal of cheerfulness.

The Indian quails resemble those of Europe, are brown on the back and blue on the belly: they have a yellow bill and four claws, viz. three before, and one behind; they don't make any noise, but are very good meat.

The rice-bird is of the bigness of one of our pullets, but something longer leg'd, with brown feathers on the body, a red head, and very large claws; they live among the rice, whence they have got their name, and eat very deliciously roasted.

In many parts of the Indies are also pheasants with long and pointed tails; some are white on the breast and about the eyes.

They have prodigious numbers of butterflies of various colours; they have long bills, which they can stretch out when they suck the juice of the flowers, or draw back at pleasure. Some are of a most delicious colour, intermix'd with blue, white and red, beyond what can be express'd. They are generally of the bigness of the palm of the hand, when their wings are spread; some have larger wings than others, and have two small feathers on their heads.

The Indian wood-pigeons are of the bigness of our tame pigeons, with brown spots on their backs; a white belly, purple colour'd breast, and red feet; they resemble entirely our turtle-doves, or common pigeons; live generally in the woods or in the rice-fields, and are a most delicious food; when they are tamed they will breed in our houses.

The Lory bird is a bird as big as a parrot, but of a much finer colour, with a

lofty round breast, cover'd with yellow feathers. The wings are green, the head black and shining, with a yellow bill. The Indians give sometimes 30 crowns for such a bird, because they will learn and speak several languages, and are very tame: There is another with large and long tails, sometimes three quarters of a yard long, these are blue on the back, and yellow under the belly, and commonly call'd Kak-kataws or Indian ravens. Another kind there is, which is white all over, except a yellow tuft on the head, which they set upright, when they are vexed. They have also some resemblance both in shape and bigness to our magpies or blackbirds; these imitate a man's voice much more distinctly than the parrots: They are of a blueish colour, mix'd with dark blue spots and streaks, they have a yellow tuft on the head, which is black, and as smooth as velvet.

The Yelumbers are as big as our larks, with a thick bill and red feet; their feathers are yellow, chequered with grey, they are catch'd in prodigious numbers, and sold in the markets of Batavia, being look'd upon as a dainty.

The rice-sparrows are no bigger than our ordinary sparrows, and of the same colour, except that their bills are somewhat thick, with a few black feathers near the tail, and some white ones underneath on the belly; their feet are blue. They are found in such prodigious quantities, that the inhabitants are scarce able to preserve the rice from being devour'd by them.

These birds properly called parrots, are no bigger than our larks, but have a very fine green head and wings; the back underneath the wings is of a high red colour, the breast light green, and the tail of a most agreeable colour: They are found in the woods in great numbers, feed upon rice and fruits, but will not speak, being kept only for their feather's sake.

The Indian pullets are generally white, with long red tails, and their feet almost cover'd with feathers, and a bright red comb on the head. They are not much bigger than our largest tame pigeons, but very well tasted. They were first transported to Batavia from Siam. They have also a kind of tame fowl with black feathers, legs and flesh, which however is not ill tasted, and accounted very wholesome: Another kind there is that have hair instead of feathers, others have their feathers turn'd towards the head, in lieu of declining backwards.

About Batavia and many other parts of the Indies abundance of herons are to be seen in the low grounds; they are in bigness

Birds like quails or thrushes.

The quail bird is scarce.

Turtle.

Gau.

Quail.

Rice-bird.

Pheasant.

Butter-fly.

Wood-pigeon.

Kak-kataws.

Kolibry.

1662.

The Yelumber.

Rice-sparrow.

Parrot.

Pullet.

Heron.

1662. nests the same with our herons, with long gray feathers and black wings; they are generally seen near the water-side, where they are looking for their prey, but build their nests in trees; the meat is tough, and tastes much after fish.

The jumpers.

The jumpers have got their name from their continual motion from branch to branch: They are of the same bigness with our blackbirds, and will whistle like them; they have a black head, wings and tail, but are white on the breast and belly; I have seen them kept at *Batavia* with a chain to one leg for diversion sake, and they feed them with boil'd rice. They are easy to be tamed.

Stock doves.

The stock-doves are in shape and bigness like our pigeons, but of a much finer colour; the neck and breast is green, the rest of the body purple colour'd, and the tail and wings blue with a white edge. They are catch'd in great numbers in the woods near *Batavia*, and eat very well roasted.

The goldfinches or linnets.

The goldfinches here are very agreeable for their fine colour'd feathers, being for the rest no longer than our linnets or goldfinches; their bill is pale red, the head white, the back and wings blue, the belly red, and the tail dark blue. They are taken in prodigious quantities near *Batavia*, and sometimes kept in cages: They feed upon rice.

Scorpions.

At *Batavia* you see often large scorpions of a quarter of a yard long; but those of a lesser size are so frequent, that you can scarce move a stool, bench, chest, looking-glass or picture, without being in danger of being stung by them, unless you be very careful to avoid them. The small ones are about a fingers length, composed of many joints, of the thickness of a goose-quill. They are yellow, speckled with brown streaks; before they have two claws, with two sharp pinchers; their tail is long, and lies turn'd upon the back, at the end of which is the sting, where-with they poison such as they touch. They have eight long legs, not unlike those of a creafish. The sting of a scorpion is accounted mortal, unless prevented in a little time; tho' some are of opinion that the scorpions in the *Indies* are not so venomous as those of *Italy* and *Spain*. A scorpion bruised to death, or stifled in oil, and apply'd to the wound, draws out the poison. They say that a radish sliced and laid upon a scorpion, kills him in a minute: They have also another story, viz. that the scorpion is sometimes so pester'd with the pisnires, that he stings himself to death in the head with his tail, and so becomes a prey to the pisnires.

The thousand-legs are about five or six inches long, of the thickness of a man's finger, of a ruddy colour, and composed of many joints and bones. They have two claws or pinchers, wherewith they wound as dangerously as the scorpions; occasioning such violent pain, as is almost unspeakable: The cure is perform'd by lifting them in oils like as with the scorpions, and they are generally found like them, in holes, and behind old chests or benches.

Both the *East* and *West-Indies* produce snakes of divers sizes and colours: Among others they have a certain sort in the isle of *Java*, not exceeding a foot in length, which are frequently met with in the fields among the grafs: They have others with large shining scales on the back, and their eyes so bright, that in a sun-shiny day you see them at a great distance; others are so full of spots, that they are terrible to behold. Besides these, they have another kind of snakes much lesser than the field snakes; these dwell in houses, and feed upon flies, ants and other insects. They will stick so close to a wall or roof, as if they were immovable, but no sooner perceive their prey, but they shoot down all on a sudden to catch it. The tail of a snake separated from the body, will grow to it again. These snakes are not in the least pernicious, and will pass over the bare faces of persons sleeping in their chambers, without doing the least harm.

In the woods of *Java*, as likewise in the fens and pools is found a certain sort of snakes, or rather a kind of crocodile call'd *Lagoen* by the *Indians*; it resembles altogether a crocodile, except that it is less, being not above five or six foot long, whereas the crocodiles are from 15 to 20 foot: The *Javanese* however affirm, that those in the mountains are much larger. They have a knobby green skin, but the meat is white, like that of our rabbits, and very well tasted. They have a long head, wide mouth, and a tail as long as the whole body; each leg has four paws arm'd with sharp and long claws.

In the woods of *Java* are certain flying snakes, or rather drakes, they have four legs, a long tail, and their skin speckled with many spots; their wings are not unlike those of the bat, which they move in flying, but otherwise keep them almost unperceived close to the body. They fly nimbly, but can't hold it long, so that they fly from tree to tree at about 20 or 30 paces distance. On the outside of the throat are two bladders, which being extended when they fly, serve them instead of a sail; they feed upon flies and other insects: The *Javanese* don't in the least ac-



and

out five or six 1662.  
of a man's fin-  
d composed of  
They have two  
they wound as  
s; occasioning  
it unspcakable:  
lifting them in  
ons, and they  
hem, in holes,  
ches.

Indies produce  
lours: Among  
rt in the ile of  
pot in length,  
th in the fields  
ve others with  
back, and their  
shiny day you  
s, others are so  
terrible to be-  
have another  
than the field  
fles, and feed  
insects. They  
or roof, as if  
no sooner per-  
hoot down all  
The tail of a  
dy, will grow  
are not in the  
over the bare  
their chambers,  
n.

likewise in the  
a certain fort  
d of crocodile  
; it resembles  
t that it is less,  
x foot long,  
from 15 to 20  
r affirm, that  
much larger.  
skin, but the  
our rabbits,  
y have a long  
il as long as  
has four paws  
laws.

certain flying-  
they have four  
skin speckled  
s are not un-  
they move in  
em almost un-  
y. They fly  
long, so that  
t about 20 or  
outside of the  
ch being ex-  
them instead of  
and other in-  
the least ac-  
count

1662. count them poisonous, but handle them  
just like the common snakes, without the  
least danger.

The frogs here are about the same big-  
ness with ours; of a dark yellow colour,  
with brown spots: They are sold daily in  
the markets of *Batavia*, the *Chinese* ac-  
counting them a dainty, but eat only the  
hindermost parts. There is another sort  
of frogs in *Java* near as big as a rabbit,  
but are not eaten. They make a noise  
like the bellowing of an ox.

The fire-flies have got their name, be-  
cause they appear in the dark shining like  
a light, and are catch'd by means of a fire  
or candle, through which they will fly till  
they are taken. They are about an inch  
broad and long, and sometimes bigger:  
The head, which is brown, has two small  
horns; the neck is red, but their hard  
wings brown, underneath which they have  
two softer wings, which they make use of  
in flying, and then it is you discover that  
shining substance, which is contained in a  
black bladder on their backs, which they  
hide with their wings whilst they are not  
a flying. In the rainy season they dwell  
in prodigious numbers among the trees,  
and draw their chief sustenance from the  
blossom. There are divers sorts of them.

The horse-flies here are a most pernicious  
insect, which sting most furiously.  
They are about two inches broad and long,  
of a brown colour, with a yellow streak  
along the body. They build their nests  
very curiously on the roof or rafters, as the  
wasps do on the sprigs of trees: In these  
they lay their eggs and hatch their young  
ones. They feed upon fruits, and emit  
a most nauseous scent after they are kill'd.

The *Kakkeriakken* are so called by a cor-  
rupted name from the *Portuguese* word *Ka-  
kalakkas*, because their eggs are both in  
colour and smoothness like to the *Lacca*.  
They are much of the same bigness with  
the horse-flies, of a brown colour, with  
two long horns on the head. They both  
run and fly very nimbly, and are very per-  
nicious, there being no chest or trunk so  
strong, but they will gnaw through it.  
They are also to be found in ships, tho'  
newly built, in their way from *Europe*, es-  
pecially at the time of their passing under  
the line; when the lice die, these begin to  
appear; and in their return, as soon as  
they are pass'd the line again, and the lice  
appear, these begin to vanish by degrees.  
They are very pernicious to paper, linen,  
and woollen cloaths.

The *Jakalat* is a mischievous insect, but  
only in the lower parts of the houses, its  
delight being in moist grounds.

About *Batavia* you find a kind of lo-  
custs of a finger's length, but no thicker  
than a pen or goose-quill, distinguish'd by  
divers joints. They walk upon six feet,  
and have two small horns. The locusts  
here are however of divers kinds; some  
are yellow on the belly, with brown wings,  
and two horns on the head; they can leap  
a great way, and fly together in great num-  
bers. There is another sort of the same  
shape, but green, and of a finger's length.  
These come sometimes in such prodigious  
swarms, that they darken the sky as they  
pass by, and devour all in those parts  
where they settle, so that the inhabitants are  
often obliged to change their habitations  
for want of subsistence, as it has happened  
frequently in *China* and the isle of *Ta-  
jowak*.

The blister-drawers are so called, be-  
cause when they sting they raise blisters.  
They are of divers sorts, different both in  
colour and bigness, but commonly of the  
length and breadth of a finger. They have  
very large eyes, and delight in marshy  
places. They are most frequent at *Bata-  
via* in *October* and *November*.

There is here a kind of hornets that have  
a certain claw like a pincher on the head,  
wherewith they pinch to that degree, that  
they will not let go their hold unless you  
cut off their heads. They are of divers  
sorts, bigness and shape, some being above  
five inches long, of a dark brown colour;  
they have double wings, the uppermost  
are hard, the undermost soft; the last they  
make use of in flying, the others being on-  
ly for the defence of the undermost ones.  
They feed upon herbs, and the fruits of  
certain trees, which they know how to  
choofe among all the rest.

Of ants or pismires there are in *Java* Ants or  
and throughout all the *Indies* prodigious  
quantities of divers sorts; some of them are  
above a finger in length, of a ruddy colour,  
inclining to black, some with, others with-  
out wings. They are very pernicious to  
the fruits of the earth; and even in the  
houses scarce any thing can be preserved  
against them without a great deal of care.  
It is observable, that an ant meeting another  
with something in her mouth, will give  
way to her, if she be not loaden her self.

The gardens about *Batavia* are extreme-  
ly pestered with caterpillars; they are  
about 5 inches long, with long brown horns  
standing upright on their heads. The  
head and whole body is yellowish, but the  
wings inclining to a green spotted with yellow.  
They feed upon herbs and leaves  
like the locusts.

This insect has got its name from the knot-  
ty composition of its body, which, as well  
M m m

1662.  
Locusts.

A kind of  
Spanish  
flies.

Hornets.

Ants or  
pismires.

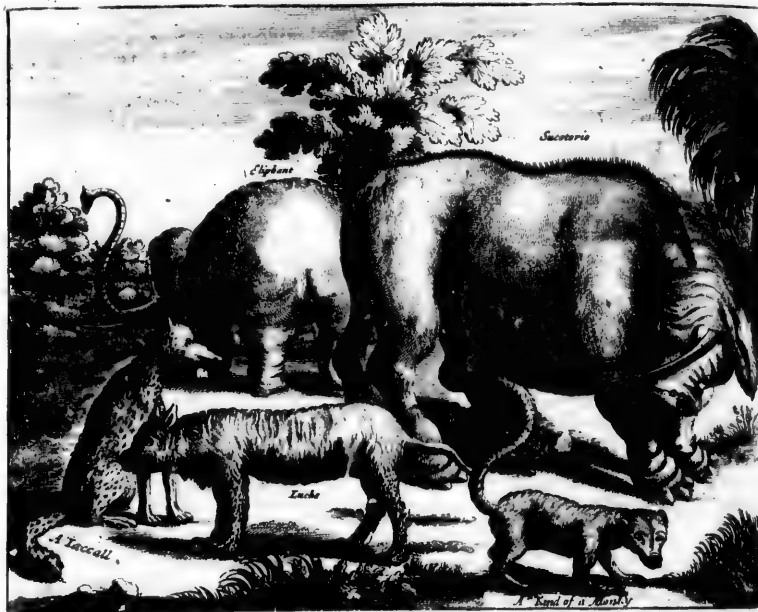
Catter-  
pillars.

Schran-  
kels or  
Kribes.

1662. as the feet is of a pale-green colour. It has two fore legs covered with a hard shell like a crab or crawfish. It seems to be a kind of locust, and feeds upon greens, but can neither fly nor run very fast. There is another kind with a monstrous head and neck, and a thick body, on the hindmost part of which are two small pins like thorns. The two fore-feet are enclosed in a hard shell and of a very odd shape; it has two

wings, but can scarce fly, by reason of the weight of its body.

There are many sorts of spiders in the Indies, and of a very different bigness; some are above four inches long, and have very thick legs; others have eight feet, a thick speckled body, and round head with brown eyes. These have two teeth bent like hooks, wherewith they bite fiercely. I have seen toothpicks made of these teeth.



The lynx.

The lynx is a fierce creature, of the bigness of a large dog, and in shape seems to participate both of that and a cat. He is of a brown colour chequer'd with red, with black streaks; his tail is very short, and the ears very black; he lives upon prey, and is extremely nimble.

Sukotyro  
or Suco-  
tario.

The *Sukotyro*, as the Chinese call it, is a very odd shaped beast; it is of the bigness of a large ox, with a snout like a hog, two long rough ears, and a thick bushy tail. The eyes are placed upright in the head, quite different from other beasts: On the side of the head, next to the eyes stand two long horns, or rather teeth, not quite so thick as those of the elephant: It feeds upon herbage, and is but seldom taken. Of the jackal we have given a description before.

Oxen with  
bunches.

On the Cape of Good-Hope, but especially in the isle of Madagascar, are certain

oxen with bunches upon their necks and shoulders, which being nothing but fat, is melted and used by the inhabitants like butter; but these oxen have not so great a quantity of suet about their kidneys as ours. The cows of this kind frequently bear two or three calves at a time.

The macassar-fox has got his name from the isle of Macassar, where he is most found. He has an excessive long bushy tail, which stands upright, flat feet, long claws, and short ears, just as he is represented in the cut.

There are divers sorts of apes and monkeys distinguished by peculiar names. Some are very small, others middle sized, and others as big as a boy of eight years of age; such a one I saw my self once at Batavia. In many parts of the Indies, where the inhabitants think it a crime to kill any living creature, they multiply to a prodigious degree, and are very tame: They

The fig-  
mure-eater  
or anti-  
bear.

Stags.



and

by reason of the 1661.  
of spiders in the  
different bigness;  
s long, and have  
ave eight feet, a  
round head with  
e two teeth bent  
ey bite fiercely.  
le of these teeth.



their necks and  
nothing but fat,  
inhabitants like  
ave not so great  
their kidneys as  
kind frequently  
at a time.  
got his name from  
he is most found,  
bushy tail, which  
long claws, and  
resented in the cut.  
ts of apes and  
y peculiar names.  
ers middle sized,  
oy of eight years  
aw my self once  
rts of the *Indies*,  
hink it a crime  
e, they multiply  
nd are very tame:  
They

1662. They live for the most part in woods, and feed upon fruits. Some are green with a long beard and large eye-brow, like an ancient man: Some, call'd *Cicatic* by the *Indians*, have long bushy tails, for which reason they are reckon'd by some among the fox kind. There is another sort call'd *Saragofe*, with long tails, which they carry straight upright. Another sort are called death's heads by the *Dutch*, from their pale faces. The *Suri* monkeys are in bigness and shape not unlike a squirrel, but of a yellow colour; they have short and round ears, large eyes, and a large bushy tail, wherewith they can cover the whole body: They can leap at a great distance from tree to tree, and guide themselves with the tail so exactly, that they seem to fly.

1662. There is a certain sort of monkeys or apes that are not in the least mischievous; they are no bigger than a rat, but have a long tail, which they carry upright. They have a green, soft and woolly hair, somewhat inclining to a grey about the eyes, and a little white on the feet. They have short ears, a sharp mouth and brown nose, the feet being like those of an ape; but these are very scarce. Those call'd *Sangwayns* are likewise of the bigness of a rat, and very nimble; their face, hands and ears are black, and the rest of the body of a chestnut colour, except that they have some dark yellow hair along the back; they have very long tails, feed upon fruits, and are very diverting.



The pig-mire-eater or anti-bear.

Stags.

The pig-mire-eater or anti-bear, is so call'd, because he feeds chiefly upon ants: There are three several sorts of them; the first is of the bigness of a young hog, the second somewhat lesser, and the third like a cat, but longer. They are all of a rusty colour like a fox, with a long sharp mouth, small ears, and a head like that of a pig.

Abundance of deer or stags are found in the forests of the *Indies*, they are easily to be tamed here, so that they will feed among the cattle. They are generally

red, speckled with white, and much of the same bigness as ours. They have large ears, long legs, and are white underneath the belly. The horns of the male are wrought towards the head, and brown and very hard towards the extremities. Their flesh is very well tasted. With the deer-skins a great traffick used to be carried on in the isle of *Tayouan*, whilst the *Dutch* were masters of it; for they used to take many thousands of them only for the skin's sake, which were sold to the *Japonefe*; and scarce to preserve any part of their

1662. their flesh, except the tongue, which is accounted a dainty here.

*See iron.  
pig or  
porcupine.*

About *Batavia*, and in the woods of *Java* are abundance of iron-pigs or porcupines. They grunt like hogs, and are covered with certain painted pens or pegs like iron, whence they got their name: They are of different sizes, some of the bigness of a good large dog, but somewhat longer, and more short leg'd. They are generally brown, with a grey tuft on the head, and a mouth like a hare, with two great teeth both below and above, like a horse, the two fore-feet like those of a deer, and the hindmost like a bear. The pens or pegs are very sharp, a foot long, and chequered with black and white. When they are at rest, they lay them close to the body, but if they are vexed, they can, by contracting themselves, cast them forth with such strength, that they kill man or beast: Thus some years ago, a dead lion was found at the *Cape of Good-Hope* with a porcupine's pen sticking in his body, wherewith he had doubtless been killed. In the winter they retire into holes, where they remain without either eating or drinking. They feed upon herbs and roots, and cast their pens as other creatures do their hair. In the stomachs of some of these animals grows a certain stone, which by reason of its sudorifick quality is accounted very good in pestilential fevers; just as the stone found in the *Vesica Bilearis* or gall-bladder of the wild boars, is reputed the most sovereign remedy in that distemper called *Morderi* by the *Javanese*, and as much dreaded among them as the plague in *Europe*, because it commonly kills in a few hours time.

*Tame and  
wild boars.*

There are several sorts of hogs in the *Indies*, some with, but the most without any hair; hogs flesh is accounted wholsomer and better than beef or mutton, and is by the *Chinese* prescribed even for sick persons. The wild boars feed upon what roots or fruits they can meet with; and I remember that I saw a considerable number of them swim cross the water in the isle of *Dingding* near *Malacca*, to look after provisions. In the gall-bladder of the *Indian* wild boars, grows a certain porous stone, called thence *Piedra da Puerco*, i. e. hog's stone by the *Portuguese*; it is sudorifick, and expedient in malignant distempers; they steep it in wine for twelve hours, and give the infusion to the patients; or they give the quantity of 25 grains powdered in wine. Women with child must be cautious of it, because it makes them miscarry, it being a general opinion among the *Malayan* women, that they can

procure their monthly times, with only holding this stone in their hands.

1662.

The *Javanese* sheep are much of the same bigness as ours, some being white, others pyed white and red, with short legs and little or no wool. Their meat is not so good as the *European* mutton, pork being much prefer'd before it here. The sheep have sometimes teats hanging below their throats like some of our hogs, others have such long ears that you may tie them together underneath the throat. Others have tails of 20, 30 or 40 pounds, being one lump of fat, which eats best boil'd. Some have a plain hair like our goats, others a curled wool like our sheep, and are milked like cows.

The goats here are not near so big as the sheep, nor is their flesh so well tasted, tho' the kids in some parts of the *Indies* afford excellent good meat. Some are white, some pyed, and have generally long hair. Others have very long ears, and horns standing upright on the head. In some places they bear three or four young ones at a time: They make cheese of their milk.

The *Bouffles* are bulkier and stronger than an ordinary ox; they have no hair, their flesh is very good, but not so juicy nor so digestible as beef, for which reason it is most used among the slaves, and other labouring people. Their horns lie close to the head; some of them are black, and, when polish'd, are very useful for several things to be made out of them. The tame bouffles are used in the sugar-mills, plough and cart: They guide them by means of a chain drawn through their nostrils: Their milk is accounted very wholesome. The wild bouffles that live in the forests are very fierce, and not easy to be taken.

Many places of the *Indies* afford oxen and cows, the flesh whereof, as well as the milk and butter, are very good; some are red, others white, others pyed, and of several other colours. Some have horns standing upright on the head, others crooked horns like ours; and others long ears hanging downwards: However, the beef is much better in some places than in others. It is generally eaten fresh, because it will scarce take salt well in this hot climate, and is not to be kept above three or four days. They bring a certain kind of oxen from *Suratte* to *Batavia*, not much bigger than a large dog; they look very fierce, notwithstanding which they are used in small carts to draw children, or any other odd thing.

The horses here are of different sorts and colours, some black, others of a che-

1662. nut  
The  
chic  
Wes  
but  
Per  
Sur  
in t

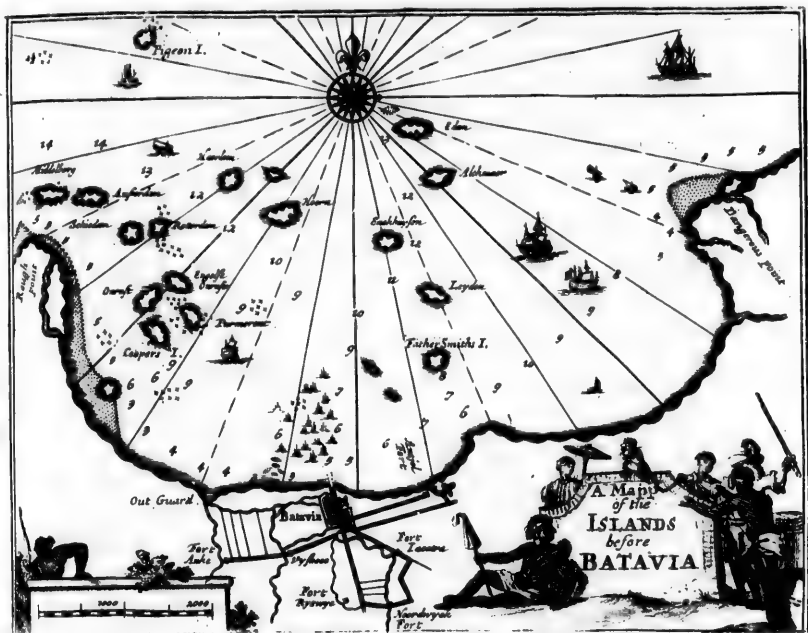


Ev  
voya  
Bata  
with  
to th  
Ruig  
most  
from  
Pro  
dam,  
Roll  
Hoor  
we  
chor  
Ilan  
Pole  
agai  
of a  
as w  
pany  
V

1662. nut colour, and others white and grey. The *Javanese* horses are not very tall, but thick and well-set, like the *Norwegian* or *Westphalian* horses, very strong and hardy, but are not near so high-spirited as the *Persian* horses that are transported from *Suratte* to *Batavia*, and excel all the rest in swiftness, courage and beauty. The

Indians carry on their wars for the most part with foot soldiers, and preserve their horses for the draught and travelling.

Thus much of the isle of *Java* and the city of *Batavia*: We will now proceed to give an account of our return into *Holland*.



The author's return into Holland.

Every thing being got ready for our voyage, we weigh'd anchor in the road of *Batavia*, the 17<sup>th</sup> of *December* 1670, and with the land-wind, pass'd betwixt the isles to the south of *Batavia*, situate betwixt the *Ruigenboeck* or *Rough-Point*, and *Karowan*, most of which have borrow'd their names from some places or other in the *United Provinces*; as the *Coopers-Isle*, the *Schiedam*, *Amsterdam*, *Middleburg*, *Purmerent*, *Rotterdam*, the *Pigeon-Island*, the *Harlem*, *Hoorn*, *Enckbuisen*, *Edam*, *Almar*, &c. we came the same evening to an anchor near the isle call'd the *Men-eaters Island*, near which the ship call'd the *South-Pole* struck upon the sands, but got off again. Here a general review being taken of all the persons on board the ships, such as were found to be indebted to the company, were sent back to continue in the

Vol. II.

service 'till they had discharged their debts.

Then we set sail again, and had the 19<sup>th</sup> the point of *Bantam* to the west of us, and *Pulo Paly* to the north; but being becalm'd were forced to come to an anchor at 15 fathom water. The 20<sup>th</sup>, having received some refreshments by the *Golden-Lion* from *Bantam*, we set sail again, but the calm obliged us to come to an anchor again at 15 fathom. The 21<sup>st</sup> we continued our voyage, and had the 23<sup>rd</sup> the point of *Java*, call'd *Krakketou* to the east-south-east, at 23 fathom water. The commodore having, by the usual signal of the white flag, summon'd all the commanders of ships aboard him, to know whether they were provided with what was necessary for so long a voyage; the *Golden-Lion* was sent back, and we had the north point of the *Princes Isle*, west to the north; and the 25<sup>th</sup> the south-point about four leagues from us.

N n n n

About

1662. About noon the commodore went aboard and took a view of all the ships under his command, and in the afternoon set sail again: We met with several fierce but short travadoes or storms, at 7 deg. and 41 min. southern latitude. The 31<sup>st</sup> we had another most violent travado at 9 deg. 54 min. but continued not long.

*Isle of  
Mony.*

The first of January one of our ships crew died, and we got sight of land to the south-east, which we found to be the *isle of Mony*, and that we were 64 leagues to the south-south-west of the *Princes Isle*, being forced thus far to the east by the tide; we were at the latitude of 10 deg. 29 min. The 2<sup>d</sup> we had the said *isle* to the south-east, and found its situation to be 52 min. more to the north than it is placed in the maps. The 3<sup>d</sup>, we were within four leagues of the said island, at 11 deg. 15 min. Hereabouts one of our ships crew was found dead in his cabin. The 6<sup>th</sup> we were at 13 deg. 40 min. and the 9<sup>th</sup> at 14 deg. 17 min. The same day Mr. *Dirk Indiik* died of a long and lingering distemper: As he had been factor and fiscal at *Suratte*, and was accounted very rich, his goods were all sealed up in the presence of the commodore and the other commanders. The next following day we made 32 leagues, and so continued our voyage with a prosperous gale till the 19<sup>th</sup>, when we found our selves at 20 deg. 54 min. of latitude, and at 105 deg. 14 min. longitude. The 26<sup>th</sup> the commodore having by the usual signal summon'd the chief officers aboard him, to adjust the difference in the compasses, and the same being found only 1 degree 33 minutes, no alteration was made therein.

The 2<sup>d</sup> of February we were at the height of 29 deg. overtaken by a most furious tempest, with thunder and lightning from the west, and had frequent travadoes till the 4<sup>th</sup>, and for many days after had very changeable weather, sometimes good, sometimes bad. The 26<sup>th</sup> with break of day we found 112 fathom depth, but saw no land: About noon we found our selves at 35 deg. 17 min. steering our course westward, the weather being very fair, we saw divers whale-fish sporting in the water, and some sea-birds, which together with the colour of the water, was a sufficient sign that we were not very far from land. The next day we found seven fathom water without seeing the land.

*They dis-  
cover land.*

The 28<sup>th</sup> very early in the morning we discovered land to the north-north-west of us, at 45 fathom depth, and the next day after sun-rising at 38, being then within three leagues of the shore, which appeared hilly and white. About noon

we were at 34 deg. 36 min. the weather cold and fair. The first of March we found our selves at 35 deg. and steering our course to the south-east in sight of the land, which was very hilly to the north-east, found 65 fathom depth at night, in sight of a mountainous shore. The 4<sup>th</sup> we still saw land at 48 fathom water, and in the evening at 20.

The 6<sup>th</sup> before sun-set, we saw the famous point of the *Table-Bay* of the *Cape of Good-Hope*, where we cast anchor before the fort, at eight fathom water. Here we met with three ships, viz. the *Crown'd-Peace*, the *Damiata*, and a yacht bound for the *Indies*; and heard the good news that the commodore *Jbrand Gofke* did come to the cape, the last 2<sup>d</sup> of February, and thence continued his voyage with three ships the 24<sup>th</sup> for *Holland*. Our commodore being then sick, he sent one to the commander in chief of the cape, named Mr. *Hakkus*, to notify his arrival, and the next day went ashore himself.

The 8<sup>th</sup> the *Mary Yacht* arrived at the cape from the *isle of Madagascar*, having on board the marquis de *Mondeverguin*, a French governor of *Madagascar*, and the other adjacent places under the French jurisdiction. He was a person of 70 years of age, and of a goodly aspect. He sent word to Mr. *Hakkus*, commander in chief of the cape, that he should be glad to come ashore, provided he might be sure of a reception suitable to his quality: However, he set sail again on a sudden, without coming ashore, perhaps by reason of the rumour that was then already spread abroad of a war betwixt *France* and the *Dutch*.

The same evening the ship called the *Spanbroeck* came into that road from *Ceylon*, with advice, that the *Cingalese* had taken up arms under their king *Radya*, and we were in the mean while not idle to provide our selves with what necessities we could get for the prosecution of our voyage, till the 17<sup>th</sup> of March, when the commodore summoning all the officers aboard him, told them, that he intended to set sail the next Sunday, viz. the 22<sup>d</sup> of March, without staying for the two ships we left behind, and a war betwixt us and the *French* being then much talk'd of, he ordered every body to be upon his guard, and to prepare for a vigorous defence in case of an attack.

The 20<sup>th</sup> was spent in letting the sea-men go ashore in their turn.

The 21<sup>st</sup> the goods of the before-mentioned Mr. *Indyck*, deceased were exposed to publick sale, and 13 diamonds, besides four more of an extraordinary bigness,

with

1662. with  
cealed  
the fa  
comm  
use of

The  
having  
ships,  
Count  
they v  
set wa  
from

The  
board  
the c  
3 deg  
that e  
to the

Fre  
the if  
fight  
witho

Th  
in five  
the co  
officer  
what

Th  
the 2  
steering  
with a

Th  
min.  
2 deg  
with

Th  
nal as  
only  
the o  
in ho

Th  
our f  
called  
meat

on th  
findin  
judg  
we i

T  
stabil  
still  
cont

V  
13<sup>th</sup>  
pass  
cou  
coar

Th  
cha  
to  
rati

with

with

with

with



the weather 1661.  
of March we  
and steering  
sight of the  
to the north-  
at night, in  
The 4<sup>th</sup> we  
rator, and in

saw the fa- Arrive  
f the Cape of the Cape  
anchor before Hope.  
er. Here we  
the Crown'd-  
racht bound  
e good news  
d Go'ske did  
of February,  
ge with three  
Our commo-  
one to the  
cape, named  
rival, and the

arrived at the The mar-  
scar, having 22<sup>nd</sup> de  
underverguin, a Monde-  
car, and the verguin  
the French ju- arriv'd at  
of 70 years the Cape.  
ct. He sent  
nder in chief  
be glad to  
fight be sure  
uality: How-  
den, without  
reason of the  
ly spread a-  
ance and the

p called the  
ad from Cey-  
Cingalese had  
king Radya,  
while not idle  
ation of our  
b, when the  
he officers a-  
he intended  
viz. the 22<sup>d</sup>  
for the two  
war betwixt  
much talk'd  
be upon his  
vigorous de-

ing the sea-

before-men-  
were exposed  
onds, besides  
ary bigness,  
with

1662. with some bezoar-stones, being found concealed in a private pocket in his breeches, the same were sealed up, seized by the commodore as contraband goods, for the use of the company.

The 22<sup>d</sup> after dinner, the commodore having given the signal to sail, to the five ships, the *Peace*, the *Arms of Veer*, the *Count of Breda*, *South-Pole* and *Spanbroeck*, they weighed their anchors, and after sunset were about two leagues and an half from the *Table-Bay*.

The 23<sup>d</sup>, a consultation being held aboard the commodore about regulating the compass, and the same being fix'd to 3 deg. to the west we found our selves that evening at 33 deg. and about 18 leagues to the south-east of the *Table-Mountain*.

From hence we steer'd our course to the isle of *St. Helens*, of which we got sight the 12<sup>th</sup> of April, at 16 deg. 44 min. without any remarkable accident.

The 13<sup>th</sup> with sun-rising we were within five or six leagues of the said isle, when the commodore summoned again all the officers aboard him, in order to consult what course they should take towards the *Ascension* island.

The 24<sup>th</sup> we were at 4 deg. 32 min. and the 27<sup>th</sup> at 16 min. of southern latitude, steering our course north-west to the west with an easterly wind and brisk gale.

The next following day we were at 15 min. of northern latitude; and the 29<sup>th</sup> at 2 deg. 38 min. having been much pestered with sudden storms and travadoes.

The 14<sup>th</sup> of May the 2<sup>nd</sup> gave a signal as if they had seen land, but it proved only a refraction of the sun-beams through the clouds. The sea hereabouts seem'd in the night-time all on fire, a thing usual in hot weather.

The 24<sup>th</sup>, at 25 deg. 29 min. we found our selves in the *Kroos* or *Cross-Sea*, (so called from a kind of water-creffes or ducks-meat that floats in prodigious quantity upon the surface of the water) and the 25<sup>th</sup> finding these sort of herbage encrease, we judg'd our selves to be more eastward than we intended.

The 30<sup>th</sup> at 26 deg. 15 min. our comfortable *Mans Timmer* died, and we were still much pestered with these *Creffes*, which continued the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> of June.

We continued the same course till the 13<sup>th</sup>, when it being agreed to fix the compass 4 deg. more to the west, we took our course north to the east, towards the *Dutch* coast.

The 15<sup>th</sup> being a foggy day, we discharged every hour a mulquet, as a signal to the ships to prevent their being separated from one another.

About midnight the commodore sent for me, and in the presence of the master of the ship, *Henry Span*, the first chirurgion, and the minister, told me, that finding himself very ill, he was resolv'd to make his last will, which he did accordingly, recommending his affairs, and what he had of the companies in his hands, to our care.

About six in the morning he sent for me again, with an intention to make some alterations in his testament, but before the clerk could finish it, he expired, without signing of it. We took care to summon immediately the council of war, where every thing being settled for the prosecution of our voyage, we discovered land the 29<sup>th</sup> to the north-east at 115 fathom water.

The 30<sup>th</sup> we found our selves over against the isle of *Fulo*, and understood by one of their fisher-boats, that the peace continued betwixt *France*, *England* and *Holland*, and that 14 days before, 11 stout ships pass'd that way.

Having provided our selves with some cods, which we bought or exchanged at the rate of two pence a piece, we gave the signal by a cannon shot, to our convoy, which we expected to meet us hereabouts.

The first of July meeting a boat betwixt *Fulo* and *Hiland*, we charged the master thereof with the body of our deceased commodore, in order to his burial in *Hiland*: He had six crowns given him for his pains and charges, with a promise of six more, after we had received certain advice, that he had well discharged his trust. About noon our two convoys, the *Middleburgh* and *Leyden* came up with us, and after the usual salute, brought us fresh orders from the company.

The 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> of July, several of our seamen, and among the rest, the quartermaster died of the dropy, an usual distemper to those that return from the *East-Indies*, and many more falling sick daily for want of provisions; the rest were hardly put to it, especially in our ship, which being leaky, four men were continually employed at the pump.

The 5<sup>th</sup> we advanced bravely with a very cold wind and air.

The 6<sup>th</sup> it was fair weather, and we had 18 fathom water.

The 7<sup>th</sup> it proved cold and rainy, at 16 fathom: The same evening the ship called the *Arms Vanter Veer* left us, and soon got out of sight.

The 8<sup>th</sup> of July we got sight of the *Dutch* coast, and the ship *Spanbroeck* having taken its course towards the *Spaniards-Gate*, we were forced to lie by till four in the

1662.

The com-  
modore  
died.

The isle of  
Fulo

Two letters  
the Cape  
of Good  
Hope.

Got to St.  
Helens  
the 12<sup>th</sup>.

Two ships  
the 14<sup>th</sup>.

So the  
British  
voyage.

1662. the afternoon, when with turning of the tide, we made the *Texel*, where we came to an anchor the same night.

*They arrive in the Texel.*

The 9<sup>th</sup> Mr. *Silvius*, Mr. *Bekker*, and Mr. *Schagen* came aboard us, three directors of the company; who having given the necessary orders for the unloading of our vessels, and taken the diamonds belonging to the company into their custody, discharged the ships crew from their service; and I embark'd in a boat for *Enkhuysen*, and arrived at *Amsterdam* the 11<sup>th</sup>. Count *Maurice of Nassau* happening to pass at the same time through *Amsterdam* in his way over *Zealand* to *Cleves*, he sent for me; and I having shew'd him my ob-

servations and draughts of *Brasil* and the *East-Indies*, he engaged me to meet him the next day again at dinner, at the house of Dr. *William Pijp*, where I took my leave of the said earl, he being just upon his departure.

Some days after I appeared in the assembly of the directors of the company, unto whom having given a satisfactory account of all my transactions, they return'd me thanks; and as a mark of their satisfaction, bestow'd upon me another factor's place; so that accordingly I undertook my third voyage to the *East-Indies*, in the ship called the *Arrow*, before the expiration of the year.

1662.

*Nieuhoff gives an account to the company.*

*The third sea and land voyage of Mr. JOHN NIEUHOFF aboard the Arrow to the isles of Majotte, upon the African coast of Mosambique, extracted from his own journals, and brought over and deliver'd by capt. Reiner Klacson to his brother Henry Nieuhoff.*

MR. John Nieuhoff having embark'd aboard the *Arrow*, they pass'd by the French coast the 18<sup>th</sup> of December, and the 1<sup>st</sup> of Jan. 1672, at 29 deg. by the Canary isles, about three leagues off of *Teneriff*, where they met with the *Lion* bound for the *East-Indies*. They continued their voyage with a prosperous gale, without any remarkable accident; and passing the 4<sup>th</sup> of Feb. the line, and the 16<sup>th</sup> the high islands of John Christian de Akonga at 36 deg. 36 min. southern lat. arriv'd the 8<sup>th</sup> of April within sight of the Cape of Good-Hope, at 33 deg. 30 min. lat. and cast anchor in the Table-Bay the same night. Here they met with seventeen vessels, thirteen of which were bound from the *East-Indies* for Holland, and accordingly set sail the twenty forth. The ship the *Arrow* had aboard her a large chaloop or boat, which being taken to pieces before they left *Amsterdam*, was now set together again, for its more convenient passage along the shore of *Sofala*, *Mosambique* and the island of *Majotte*.

*They come to the Cape of Good-Hope.*

*They leave the Cape of Good-Hope.*

In this chaloop (unto which they gave the name of the *Bow*) they embark'd, and in company of the *Arrow* and another small vessel called the *Goldfinch*, bound for the isle of *St. Maurice*, having aboard Mr. *Huigens*, governor of that isle, set sail

the 30<sup>th</sup> of April. The 6<sup>th</sup> of June being at 36 deg. 3 min. latitude, the *Goldfinch* steer'd her course towards *St. Maurice*, leaving the *Bow* and *Arrow* to prosecute their voyage towards the isle of *Madagascar*, which they got first sight of the 20<sup>th</sup>. They kept along the coast which was high and rocky, and near a large point of land found 20 fathom water at a league distance from the shore, and near it a long sand-bank. They were then at 24 deg. and being, by reason of the land wind, obliged to advance sometimes nearer the shore, sometimes to keep off at sea; they at last cast anchor at 30 fathom, whereas three leagues from the shore, they could find no bottom. The *Bow* afterwards follow'd the *Arrow*, but kept closer to the shore.

The twenty second they discover'd a small isle not above half a league from the shore, where the *Arrow* cast her anchor at 17 fathom; they went a fishing, and brought back along with them two canoes belonging to the inhabitants, loaden with coco-nuts and water-limons. The *Bow* being failed before, and come to an anchor in the bay of *St. Austen* near a small isle, the *Arrow* followed her thither, and found at the mouth of the river two white points of land jetting out into the sea.

1672. The board went they only s howev of fif The in the receive to cat any : dagafo some M the fir to me Th was a fight at 3 le 100 f next of the Th white ancho where at lea by a l bank, water. southe James ancho a stou the f Goa is lesser afterw tuguej .tain c three had her, a ver

The fit fa to the The Mad half ancho entree with not herea the p ing a boff Mak gasea T



1672. The inhabitants brought some fruits aboard us, and Mr. *Hugo* and Mr. *Nieuboff* went ashore the next day, to see whether they could traffick with them, but could only exchange a few slaves with them; however Mr. *Nieuboff* catch'd abundance of fish at the mouth of the river.

The second of *July* the *Bow* sail'd within the mouth of the river to refit, having received some damage; they endeavour'd to catch some *Tortoisés* but could not take any: About noon the captain of the *Madagascariens* came aboard us to exchange some slaves; and the seventh the *Bow* in which was Mr. *Nieuboff*, and the *Arrow* separated, the first some leagues to the north, but were to meet again at the island of *Majotte*.

The 14<sup>th</sup> the *Bow* after 17 leagues sail was at 16 deg. 56 min. latitude within sight of the continent of *Mosambique*, and at 3 leagues distance from the shore, found 100 fathom water near a sand-bank: The next day they came within 1½ league off of the isle of *Paimibris*.

The 18<sup>th</sup> at 16 deg. 15 min. they saw white downs, and in the evening cast anchor near a sand-bank at 18 fathom, whereas at the stern of the ship there were at least 60 fathoms. The 20<sup>th</sup> they pass'd by a large bay, cover'd with a great sand-bank, which at low water has six fathom water. The 22<sup>d</sup> they pass'd betwixt the southern islands of *Mosambique*, named *St. James* and *St. Joris*, where coming to an anchor at nine fathom, they met here with a stout *Portuguese* ship at anchor behind the fort, having aboard the governor of *Goa* lately come from *Portugal* with three lesser vessels. The *Arrow* coming likewise afterwards to an anchor here, divers *Portuguese* officers came aboard us, to buy certain commodities, and about the same time three other *Portuguese* ships, one of which had the governor of *Mosambique* aboard her, arriv'd here from *Sojola*. It prov'd a very tempestuous day.

The first of *August* the *Bow* and *Arrow* set sail again, steering their course eastward to the isles of *Madagascar* and *Majeleyn*. The 10<sup>th</sup> they got sight of the shore of *Madagascar* at 15 deg. 53 min. and about half a league from a round mountain cast anchor at ten fathom water. The *Bow* entred the river, and discovered two boats with masts, and divers canoes, but could not come up with them. As the wind hereabout turns every 24 hours thro' all the points of the compass, so it is easy sailing along this coast. The 12<sup>th</sup> Mr. *Nieuboff* in the *Bow* sail'd towards the isles of *Makandari* and *Magelagie*, taking a *Madagascarian* slave along with him.

The 15<sup>th</sup> the *Bow* and *Arrow* met again,

but had not been able to traffick much: 1672.

They saw nine boats with four square sails pass in sight of them, and in a small river met with another boat, that furnish'd them with eight pullets, and told them, that farther to the north they might meet with fresh provisions enough. So they set sail again, and after five days came to a large bay, where they cast anchor at seven fathom. Here they were told, that it was a plentiful coast, and that *Magelagie* and the islands of *Makandari* were farther to the east. The 22<sup>d</sup> they came within a league of an island, where they cast anchor at 11 fathom. The 24<sup>th</sup> Mr. *Nieuboff* sail'd in the *Bow* up the river *Magelagie* and returning the 26<sup>th</sup> reported, that this was the river upon which *Magelagie* stood, a populous and plentiful place; that he had seen there an *English* ship, that had bought slaves there to be carried to *Barbadoes*, besides several other *Moorish* vessels trading in slaves. Hereupon Mr. *Hugo* and Mr. *Nieuboff* went thither, and return'd the 30<sup>th</sup>.

About two leagues into the country you see a high ridge of land. The 31<sup>st</sup> Mr. *Nieuboff* carried certain commodities ashore, but could not agree about the exchange, the inhabitants offering very little, and holding their slaves at sixteen crowns a piece: however the second of *September* Mr. *Hugo* and Mr. *Nieuboff* went ashore with some cloves, for which the king had offered some money before, but return'd unsuccessful, and the *Madagascariens* (a very malicious generation) having besides this spoil'd the ponds where we used to fetch our fresh water, they set sail again for the river *Marigande*, where they cast anchor the ninth on the east-side of the cape, and met with good fresh water on the west-side of the bay. Mr. *Hugo* and Mr. *Nieuboff* had the good fortune to exchange some of their commodities with the king of the place, and brought back 22 slaves, 13 cows, some sheep and other provisions, of which they stood in great want. The 22<sup>d</sup> it being resolv'd to sail 36 or 40 leagues farther to the North; Mr. *Nieuboff* sail'd before with the *Bow* to discover the lands and rocks, and came into the *Young Man's Bay*, where there is 10, 12 and 15 fathom water. Hence continuing their voyage, they came the 27<sup>th</sup> about noon to the point or cape of *Parmira* near one of the five islands at 13 deg. 13 min. The 29<sup>th</sup> they were near the cape of *Konquijo*, where they saw some fisher boats. The middlemost of these islands is a high, steep and unaccessible rock, which may be discovered a great way at sea. Some of the fishermen having shew'd them where their king kept his court, Mr. *Nieuboff* set sail thither in the *Bow*, leaving the

0000

Arrow

1672. *Arrow* in the bay, and in company with the ships mate, and some few seamen went ashore, in hopes to exchange some of his commodities; but on the 7<sup>th</sup> the *Arrow* was much surprized to see the *Bow* making towards them, and with two cannon shot to give the signal of distress. They sent out their boat to meet them, which returning with the master of the *Bow*, gave an account, that Mr. Nieuhoff being gone ashore with some of the company in the bay of *Antegoa*, or *Ant Ofy Sambo*, by some styled the *Murderers Bay*, to traffick, was not returned, and that therefore the *Bow*, after a stay of three whole days, had weighed her anchors, and set sail again without them. It was concluded on all hands, that the *Bow* ought to return thither, but Mr. Hugo alledged that having at first no more than six months provisions, they would be in great danger of being starved, if they tarried any longer here, he insisted upon returning to the cape first, which they did accordingly, and set sail the same afternoon at 25 and 30, and again at 20 and 25 fathom water. In the evening they pass'd near a great sand-bank south to the west, and north to the east, of the biggest of the three islands near the cape of *Koaquis*, about three leagues from the said isle, and the northern point and the great isle of *Nausby*.

This was the end of Mr. John Nieuhoff, who had spent so many years in viewing the *West* and *East-Indies*, and consequently deserved a better fortune. What Hugo alledged, concerning their scarcity of provisions, was indeed true enough; but on the other hand, it is unquestionable, they needed not to have bestow'd much time in looking after him. The *Bow* and *Arrow* prosecuted their voyage, and on the 8<sup>th</sup> found themselves at 12 deg. 40 min. latitude, having the west cape of *St. Sebastian*

1671. six leagues to the north-east. The next following day they came in sight of a small isle full of trees, about three leagues from the cape of *St. Sebastian*, near which place being toss'd to and fro by tempests and contrary winds, they were reduced to that extremity, that they were forced to live upon a spoonful of rice 24 hours: So that after having suffer'd a great deal of misery, and the loss of many of their men, both the *Bow* and *Arrow* return'd to the Cape of *Good-Hope* the 17<sup>th</sup> of December, where Mr. Hugo met but with an indifferent reception, and the master of the *Bow* was cashier'd for having not tarried longer near the place where Mr. Nieuhoff went ashore. The first of Jan. 1673, the *Bow* and *Arrow* being provided with sufficient provisions, set sail again, the first for the bay where they had left Mr. Nieuhoff, the second for the isle of *St. Maurice*, whither she was to carry Mr. Hugo. After their parting at sea, no news was heard of the *Bow* for a long time after, till at last it was discovered that the ships crew mutinied and sold the vessel to the *French* at *Mosambique*; so that it remains uncertain, whether any of them had any intelligence concerning Mr. Nieuhoff. At the request of his brother, Mr. Henry Nieuhoff, the directors of the chamber of *Amsterdam* dispatch'd, the 2<sup>d</sup> of May 1676, the yacht called the *Voorhout* from the Cape of *Good-Hope* to the place where Mr. Nieuhoff went ashore; which returning to the said cape the 20<sup>th</sup> of September with 250 slaves, brought no farther account than that they had seen the king of the place, and that he had declared to them, that he knew nothing of the matter; so that it is very probable that Mr. Nieuhoff and his company were at their first landing massacred by the barbarous inhabitants.

The next 1671.  
at of a small  
pages from  
which place  
mpests and  
aced to that  
ced to live  
rs: So that  
eal of mife-  
en, both the  
the *Cape of*  
where Mr.  
t reception,  
as cashier'd  
ear the place  
ore. The  
and *Arrow*  
provisions,  
bay where  
second for  
he was to  
parting at  
Bow for a  
as discover-  
ed and fold  
*Ambique*; so  
ther any of  
cerning Mr.  
his brother,  
ctors of the  
h'd, the 2<sup>d</sup>  
d the *Vor-*  
*lope* to the  
inc ashore;  
ape the 20<sup>th</sup>  
brought no  
ey had seen  
he had de-  
nothing of  
robable that  
were at their  
e barbarous

---

THE TRUE  
**TRAVELS,**  
**ADVENTURES**  
AND  
**OBSERVATIONS**  
OF  
Captain *JOHN SMITH,*  
INTO  
*EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA and AMERICA,*  
From *Anno Dom. 1593, to 1629.*

---

THE

To the RIGHT HONOURABLE

**WILLIAM** Earl of **PEMBROKE**,

Lord Steward of his Majesty's most Honourable Household;

**ROBERT** Earl of **LINDSEY**,

Great Chamberlain of ENGLAND;

**HENRY** Lord **HUNSDON**,

Viscount **ROCHFORD**, Earl of **DOVER**;

AND

All your HONOURABLE FRIENDS and WELL-WILLERS.

MY LORDS,

**S**IR *Robert Cotton*, that most learned treasurer of antiquity, having by perusal of my general history, and others, found that I had likewise undergone divers other as hard hazards in the other parts of the world, requested me to fix the whole course of my passages in a book by it self; whose noble desire I could not but in part satisfy; the rather, because they have acted my fatal tragedies upon the stage, and rack'd my relations at their pleasure. To prevent therefore all future misprisions, I have compiled this true discourse. Envy hath taxed me to have writ too much, and done too little; but that such should know how little I esteem them, I have writ this, more for the satisfaction of my friends, and all generous and well disposed readers. To speak only of my self were intolerable ingratitude; because, having had so many co-partners with me, I cannot make a monument for my self, and leave them unburied in the fields, whose lives begot me the title of a soldier; for as they were companions with me in my dangers, so shall they be partakers with me in this tomb.

For my *Sea-Grammar* (caused to be printed by my worthy friend Sir *Samuel Saltonstall*) hath found such good entertainment abroad, that I have been importuned by many noble persons, to let this also pass the press. Many of the most eminent warriors, and others, what their swords did, their pens writ: Though I be never so much their inferior, yet I hold it no great error to follow good examples; nor repine at them will do the like.

And now, *My most Honourable good Lords*, I know not to whom I may better present it, than to your lordships, whose friendships, as I conceive, are as much to each others, as my duty is to you all; and because you are acquainted both with my endeavours and writings, I doubt not, but your honours will as well accept of this, as of the rest, and patronize it under the shadow of your most noble virtues, which I am ever bound in all duty to reverence, and under which I hope to have shelter against all storms that dare threaten.

5

Your Honours to be commanded,

JOHN SMITH.

THE TRUE  
**TRAVELS,**  
**ADVENTURES**  
 AND  
**OBSERVATIONS**  
 OF  
 Captain *JOHN SMITH.*

## CHAP. I

*His Birth; Apprenticeship, going into France; his beginning with ten shillings and three pence; his service in the Netherlands; his bad passage into Scotland; his return to Willoughby, and how he lived in the woods.*

**H**E was born in *Willoughby* in *Lincolnshire*, and a scholar in the two free-schools of *Alford* and *Louth*. His father anciently descended from the ancient *Smiths* of *Crudley* in *Lincolnshire*; his mother from the *Rickands* at *Great-Heck* in *Yorkshire*. His parents dying when he was about thirteen years of age, left him a competent means, which he not being capable to manage, little regarded, his mind being even then set upon brave adventures, sold his satchel, books, and all he had, intending secretly to get to sea, but that his father's death stay'd him. But now the guardians of his estate more regarding it than him, he had liberty enough, though no means, to get beyond the sea. About the age of fifteen years, he was bound an apprentice to *Mr. Thomas Sendall* of *Lyn*, the greatest merchant of all those parts; but because he would not presently send him to sea, he never saw his master in eight years after. At last he found means to attend *Mr. Peregrine Bertie* into *France*, second son to the right honourable *Peregrine*, that generous lord *Willoughby*, and famous soldier; where coming to his brother *Robert*, then at *Or-*

VOL. II.

*leans*, now Earl of *Lindsey*, and lord great chamberlain of *England*, being then but little youths under tutorage: His service being needful, within a month or six weeks they sent him back again to his friends, who when he came from *London*, they liberally gave him (but out of his own estate) ten shillings to be rid of him; such oft is the share of fatherless children: But those two honourable brethren gave him sufficient to return for *England*. But it was the least thought of his determination, for now being freely at liberty in *Paris*, growing acquainted with one *Mr. David Hume*, who making some use of his purse, gave him letters to his friends in *Scotland* to prefer him to king *James*. Arriving at *Roan*, he better bethinks himself, seeing his money near spent, down the river he went to *Harver de Grace*, where he first began to learn the life of a soldier. Peace being concluded in *France*, he went with captain *Joseph Duxbury* into the *Low-Countries*, under whose colours having served three or four years, he took his journey for *Scotland*, to deliver his letters. At *Ancusan* he embark'd himself for *Letbe*, but as much danger, as shipwreck and sickness could endure, he

P p p p

had

SMITH.

had at the holy isle in *Northumberland* near *Berwick*. Being recovered, into *Scotland* he went to deliver his letters. After much kind usage among those honest *Scots* at *Ripswich* and *Bromwich*, but neither money nor means to make him a cottier, he returned to *Willoughby* in *Lincolnshire*; where within a short time, being glutted with too much company, wherein he took small delight, he retired himself into a little woody pasture, a good way from any town, invironed with many hundred acres of other woods: Here by a fair brook he built a pavillion of boughs, where only in his clothes he lay. His study was *Machiavil's*

*Art of War*, and *Marcus Aurelius*; his exercise a good horse, with his lance and ring; his food was thought to be more of venison than any thing else; what he wanted his man brought him. The country wondering at such an hermit, his friends persuaded one *Seignior Theodora Polaboga*, rider to *Henry Earl of Lincoln*, an excellent horseman, and a noble *Italian* gentleman, to insinuate into his woodish acquaintance, whose language and good discourse, and exercise of riding drew him to stay with him at *Tatterfall*. Long these pleasures could not content him, but he returned again to the *Low-Countries*.

## CHAP. II.

*The notable villany of four French gallants, and his revenge; Smith thrown overboard; Captain La Roche of St. Malo relieves him.*

*A notable villany of four French gallants*

THUS when *France* and the *Netherlands* had taught him to ride a horse, and use his arms, with such rudiments of war, as his tender years in those martial schools could attain unto; he was desirous to see more of the world, and try his fortune against the *Turks*, both repenting and lamenting to have seen so many christians slaughter one another. Opportunity casting him into the company of four French gallants well attended, fawning to him the one to be a great lord, the rest his gentlemen, and that they were all devoted that way; over-persuaded him to go with them into *France*, to the duchess of *Merceur*, from whom they should not only have means, but also letters of favour to her noble duke, then general for the emperor *Rodulphus* in *Hungary*; which he did, with such ill weather as winter affordeth; in the dark night they arrived in the broad shallow inlet of *St. Valleries sur Soame* in *Picardy*: His French lord knowing he had good apparel, and better furnished with money than themselves, so plotted with the master of the ship, to set his and their own trunks ashore, leaving *Smith* aboard till the boat could return, which was the next day after, towards evening: The reason he alledged was, the sea went so high he could come no sooner, and that his lord was gone to *Amiens*, where they would stay his coming; which treacherous villany, when divers other foldiers and passengers understood, they had like to have slain the master, and had they known how, would have run away with the ship.

*A curialue was forced to sell his cloak to pay for his passage. One of the foldiers, called*

Coming on shore he had but one curialue, was forced to sell his cloak to pay for his passage. One of the foldiers, called

*Curzianvere*, compassionating his injury, assured him that this great lord *Dupreau* was only the son of a lawyer of *Mortagne* in base *Britany*, and his attendants *Curjell*, *La Nelie* and *Monferrai*, three young citizens, as arrant cheats as himself; but if he would accompany him, he would bring him to their friends, but in the interim supplied his wants: Thus travelling by *Diepe*, *Cadebeck*, *Humpbla*, *Pount-demer* in *Normandy*, they came to *Caen* in base *Normandy*; where both this noble *Curzianvere*, and the great prior of the great abbey of *St. Stephen* (where is the ruinous tomb of *William the Conqueror*) and many other of his friends kindly welcomed him, and brought him to *Mortagne*, where he found *Dupreau* and the rest, but to small purpose; for Mr. *Curzianvere* was a banished man, and durst not be seen but to his friends; yet the bruit of their cozenage occasioned the lady *Collumber*, the baron *Larshan*, the lord *Sbalghe*, and divers other honourable persons, to supply his wants, and with them to recreate himself so long as he would: But such pleasant pleasures suited little with his poor estate, and his restless spirit, that could never find content to receive such noble favours, as he could neither deserve nor requite: But wandering from port to port to find some man of war, spent that he had, and in a forest, near dead with grief and cold, a rich farmer found him by a fair fountain under a tree: This kind peasant relieved him again to his content, to follow his intent. Not long after, as he passed thorough a great grove of trees, between *Pountersan* and *Dina* in *Britany*, it was his chance to meet *Curjell*, more miserable than himself: His piercing injuries had so small patience,

*Here he encountered one of the thieves.*

*The nobility of the Earl of Plover.*

*As when man all of the precincts in using him overheard.*

*A ship-rail sea-fight.*

*Here he encountered one of the thieves.*

as was in a when inha they ly pa that the actor himl as of was cour Play his o Baro in E ed th St. A bread of 2 place wail Ray Nan rumd caule his v in th Gafel Mon the c fallest for I and grew about Mar man

A d

B capt unto man gave and ed gave anot was mac a h clea aga muc



urelius; his ex-  
his lance and to  
be more of  
what he want-  
The country  
nit, his friends  
adora Polaloga,  
in, an excellent  
dian gentleman,  
a acquaintance,  
discourse, and  
m to stay with  
these pleasures  
ut he returned

thrown over-

ing his injury,  
and Dupreau was  
of Mortagne in  
ants Curjell, La  
young citizens,  
but if he would  
bring him to  
sterim supplied  
by Diepe, Co-  
r in Normandy,  
rmandy; where  
and the great  
Stephen (where  
William the Con-  
his friends kind-  
ht him to Mor-  
au and the rest,  
r. Curzianvere  
drift not be seen  
bruit of their  
ady Collumber,  
l Shafgebe, and  
ons, to supply  
to recreate him-  
such pleasant  
is poor estate,  
ould never find  
le favours, as  
requite: But  
t to find some  
had, and in a  
f and cold, a  
a fair fountain  
afant relieved  
follow his in-  
pen thorow  
een Pouterjon  
his chance to  
than himself:  
small patience,

The noble-  
ness of the  
earl of  
Plover.

An inho-  
man all of  
the provin-  
tials in  
refling  
him over-  
board.

as without any word they both drew, and in a short time Curjell fell to the ground, where, from an old ruinated tower, the inhabitants seeing them, were satisfied, when they heard Curjell confes what had formerly passed; and that how, in the dividing that they had stolen from him, they fell by the ears amongst themselves, that were actors in it; but for his part, he excused himself to be innocent as well of the one, as of the other. In regard of his hurt, Smith was glad to be so rid of him, directing his course to an honourable lord, the earl of Plover, who during the war in France, with his two brethren, viscount Poomory, and Baron de Mercy, who had been brought up in England; by him he was better refurnished than ever. When they had shewed him St. Malo mount, St. Michael, Lambal, Simbreack, Lanion, and their own fair castle of Tuncadeck, Gingan, and divers other places in Britany (and their British Cornwails) taking his leave, he took his way to Raynes, the Britains chief city, and so to Nants, Poyters, Rochel and Bourdeaux. The rumour of the strength of Bayon in Bisky, caused him to see it; and from thence took his way from Leskar in Bicarne and Paw in the kingdom of Navarre to Tolouza in Gascoigne, Bezors and Carcassone, Narbone, Montpellier, Nimes in Languedock, and thorow the country of Avignon, by Arles to Marfilles in Provence, there imbarcking himself for Italy; the ship was enforced to Tolonne, and putting again to sea, ill weather so grew upon them, that they anchored close about the shore, under the little isle of St. Mary, against Nice in Savoy. Here the inhuman provincials, with a rabble of pilgrims

of divers nations going to Rome, hourly cursed him, not only for a hugonot, but his nation they swore were all pirates, and so vilely railed on his dread sovereign queen Elizabeth, and that they never should have fair weather so long as he was aboard them; their disputations grew to that passion, that they threw him over-board, yet God brought him to that little isle, where was no inhabitants, but a few kine and goats. The next morning he espied two ships more riding by them, put in by the storm, that fetched him aboard, well refreshed him, and so kindly used him, that he was well contented to try the rest of his fortune with them. After he had related unto them his former discourse, what for pity, and the love of the honourable earl of Plover, this noble Britain his neighbour, captain La Roche of St. Malo, regarded and entertained him for his well respected friend. With the next fair wind, there sailed along by the coast of Corsica and Sardinia, and crossing the Gulf of Tunis, passed by cape Bona to the isle of Lampadosa, leaving the coast of Barbary till they came at cape Rosuta, and so along the African shore for Alexandria in Egypt. There delivering their freight, they went to Scandaroone, rather to view what ships were in the road, than any thing else; keeping their course by Cypres and the coast of Asia, sailing by Rhodes, the Archipelagus, Candia and the coast of Græcia, and the isle of Zefolonia. They lay to and again a few days, betwixt the isle of Corfu, and the cape of Otranto, in the kingdom of Naples, in the entrance of the Adriatick sea.

Capt. La  
Roche re-  
lieves him.

### CHAP. III.

*A desperate sea-fight in the Streights; his passage to Rome, Naples, and the view of Italy.*

A despe-  
rate sea-  
fight.

BETWIXT the two capes they met with an *Argosie* of Venice; it seemed the captain desired to speak with them, whose untoward answer was such, as flew them a man; whereupon the *Britaine* presently gave them the broad-side, then his stern, and his other broad-side also, and continued the chase, with his chase-pieces, till he gave them so many broad-sides one after another, that the *Argosie* sails and tackling was so torn, she stood to her defence, and made shot for shot; twice in one hour and a half the *Britaine* boarded her, yet they cleared themselves; but clapping her aboard again, the *Argosie* fired him, which with much danger to them both was presently

quenched. This rather augmented the *Britaine's* rage, than abated his courage; for having reaccommodated himself again, shot her so oft betwixt wind and water, she was ready to sink, then they yielded; the *Britaine* lost fifteen men, the twenty, besides divers were hurt, the rest went to work on all hands; some to stop the leaks, others to guard the prisoner that were chained, the rest to rifle her. The silks, velvets, cloth of gold and tissue, pifters, chicqueens and sultanies, which is gold and silver, they unloaded in four and twenty hours, was wonderful, whereof having sufficient, and tired with toil, they cast her off with her company, with as much

much

much good merchandize as would have freighted such another *Britaine*, that was but two hundred tons, the four or five hundred.

To repair his defects he stood for the coast of *Calabria*; but hearing there was six or seven galleys at *Messina*, he departed thence for *Malta*; but the wind coming fair, he kept his course along the coast of the Kingdom of *Sicilia*, by *Sardinia* and *Corfica*, till he came to the road of *Antibo* in *Peamon*, where the set *Smith* on shore with five hundred chicqueens, and a little box God sent him, worth near as much more. Here he left this noble *Britaine*, and embarked himself for *Legborn*, being glad to have such opportunity and means to better his experience by the view of *Italy*; and having passed *Tuskany* and the country of *Siena*, where he found his dear Friends, the two honourable brethren, the lord *Willoughby* and his brother cruelly wounded in a desperate fray, yet to their exceeding great honour. Then to *Viterbo* and many other cities he came to *Rome*, where it was his chance to see pope *Clement VIII.* with many cardinals, creep up the holy-stairs, which they say, are those our saviour *Christ* went up to *Pontius Pilate*, where blood falling from his head, being prick'd with his crown of Thorns, the drops are marked with nails of steel, upon them none dare go but in that manner, saying so many *Ave-Maries* and *Pater-Nosters*, as is their devotion, and to kiss the nails of steel: But on each side is a pair of such like stairs, upon which you may go, stand, or kneel, but divided from the holy-stairs

The popes  
holy-stairs,  
brought  
from Jeru-  
salem,  
whereon  
(they say)  
*Christ*  
went up to  
*Pontius*  
*Pilate*.

by two walls: Right against them is a chapel, where hangs a great silver lamp, which burneth continually, yet they say the oil neither increaseth nor diminisheth. A little distant is the ancient church of *St. John de Lateran*, where he saw him say mass, which commonly he doth upon some *Friday* once a month. Having saluted father *Parsons*, that famous *English* jesuit, and satisfied himself with the rarities of *Rome*, he went down the river *Tiber* to *Civita Vecchia*, where he embark'd himself, to satisfy his eye with the fair city of *Naples*, and her kingdom's nobility; returning by *Capua*, *Rome*, and *Siena*, he passed by that admired city of *Florence*, the cities and countreys of *Bolonia*, *Ferrara*, *Mantua*, *Padua* and *Venice*, whose gulf he passed from *Malamoco* and the *Adriatick-Sea* for *Ragouza*, spending some time to see that barren, broken coast of *Albania* and *Dalmatia*, to *Capo de Istria*, travelling the main of poor *Slavonia* by *Lubbiano*, till he came to *Grates* in *Styria*, the seat of *Ferdinando*, archduke of *Austria*, now Emperor of *Almania*, where he met an *Englishman* and an *Irisb* jesuit, who acquainted him with many brave gentlemen of good quality, especially with the lord *Eversbaugbt*, with whom, trying such conclusions, as he projected to undertake, preferred him to baron *Kijell*, general of the artillery, and he to a worthy colonel, the earl of *Meldrich*, with whom, going to *Vienna* in *Austria*, under whose regiment, in what service, and how he spent his time, this ensuing discourse will declare.

#### CHAP. IV.

*The siege of Olumpagh; an excellent stratagem by Smith; another not much worse.*

The siege  
of Olum-  
pagh.

AFTER the loss of *Caniza*, the *Turks* with twenty thousand besieged the strong town of *Olumpagh* so straitly, as they were cut off from all intelligence and hope of succour, till *John Smith*, this *English* gentleman, acquainted baron *Kijell*, generall of the archdukes artillery, he had taught the governor, his worthy friend, such a rule, that he would undertake to make him know any thing he intended, and have his answer, would they bring him but to some place where he might make the flame of a torch seen to the town; *Kijell* inflamed with this strange invention, *Smith* made it so plain, that forthwith he gave him guides, who in the dark night brought him to a mountain, where he shewed three torches equidistant

from the other, which plainly appearing to the town, the governor presently apprehended, and answered again with three other fires in like manner; each knowing the others being and intent; *Smith*, though distant seven miles, signified to him these Words: *On Thursday at night I will charge on the east, at the alarm salley you; Eversbaugbt* answered, *he would*, and thus it was done: First he writ his message as brief, you see, as could be, then divided the alphabet into two parts thus,

A. b. c. d. e. f. g. h. i. k. l.  
1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.

m. n. o. p. q. r. s. t. v. w. x. y. z.  
2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2.

The

hem is a cha-  
lamp, which  
y say the oil  
meth. A lit-  
h of *St. Jobu*  
im say mafs,  
on some *Fri-*  
aluted father  
b jefuit, and  
ities of *Rome*,  
er to *Civita*  
himself, to fa-  
cy of *Naples*,  
returning by  
affayed by that  
ties and coun-  
antua, *Padua*  
ed from *Ma-*  
for *Ragouza*,  
that barren,  
*Dalmatia*, to  
main of poor  
he came to  
of *Ferdinando*,  
rperor of *Al-*  
glifhman and  
ed him with  
good quality,  
fbaught, with  
as, as he pro-  
him to baron  
y, and he to  
of *Meldritch*,  
a in *Austria*,  
what service,  
this enfuing

An excel-  
lent phra-  
feign.

The first part from *a*. to *l* is fignified by fhewing and hiding one link, fo oft as there is letters from *A* to that letter you mean; the other part from *m* to *z*, is mentioned by two lights in like manner. The end of a word is fignified by fhewing of three lights, ever itaying your light at that letter you mean, till the other may write it in a paper, and anfwer by his fignal, which is one light, it is done, beginning to count the letters by the lights, every time from *A* to *m*; by this means alfo the other returned his anfwer, whereby each did underftand other. The guides all this time having well viewed the camp, returned to *Kijell*; who doubting of his power, being but ten thoufand, was animated by the guides, how the *Turks* were fo divided by the river in two parts, they could not eafily fecond each other. To which *Smith* added this conclufion; that two or three thoufand pieces of match faftened to divers fmall lines of an hundred fathom in length, being armed with powder, might all be fired and fretch'd at an inftant before the alarm, upon the plain of *Hjynaburg*, fupported by two ftaves, at

Another  
fratagem.

each lines end, in that manner would feem like fo many mufketeers; which was put in practice, and being difcovered by the *Turks*, they prepared to encounter thefe falfe fires, thinking there had been fome great army; whilst *Kijell* with his ten thoufand being enter'd the *Turks* quarters, who ran up and down as men amazed, it was not long ere *Eberfbaught* was pell-mell with them in their trenches; in which diftracted confufion, a third part of the *Turks* that befieged that fide towards *Knoufbruck*, were flain, many of the reft drowned, but all fled. The other part of the army was fo bufied to refift the falfe fires that *Kijell* before the morning put two thoufand good foldiers in the town, and with fmall lofs was retired; the garrifon was well relieved with what they found in the *Turks* quarters, which caufed the *Turks* to raife their fieve and return to *Canizza*; and *Kijell* with much honour was received at *Kerment*, and occafioned the author a good reward and preferment, to be captain of two hundred and fifty horfemen, under the conduct of colonel *Volto* earl of *Meldritch*.

## CHAP. V.

*The fieve of Stoll-weiffenburg; the effects of Smith's fire-work; a worthy exploit of earl Rofworme; earl Meldritch takes the bafhaw prifoner.*

A General rumour of a general peace, now fpread it felf over all the face of thofe tormented countries; but the *Turk* intended no fuch matter, but levied foldiers from all parts he could. The emperor alfo, by the affiftance of the christian princes, provided three armies, the one led by the archduke *Matthias*, the emperor's brother, and his lieutenant duke *Merceur* to defend *Low-Hungary*; the fecond by *Ferdinando* the archduke of *Styria*, and the duke of *Mantua* his lieutenant to regain *Canizza*; the third by *Gonzago*, governor of *Higb-Hungary*, to join with *Georgio Bufca* to make an abfolute conqueft of *Transilvania*.

Duke *Merceur* with an army of thirty thoufand, whereof near ten thoufand were *French*, befieged *Stoll-weiffenburg*, otherwife called *Alba Regalis*, a place fo ftrong by art and nature, that it was thought impregnable. At his firft coming, the *Turks* filled upon the *German* quarter, flew near five hundred, and returned before they were thought on. The next night in like manner they did near as much to the *Bemers* and *Hungarians*; of which fortune ftill prefuming, thinking to have found the *French*

The Siege  
of Alba  
Regalis.

quarter as carelefs, eight or nine hundred of them were cut in pieces and taken prifoners. In this encounter monfieur *Grand-vile*, a brave *French* colonel, received feven or eight cruel wounds, yet followed the enemy to the ports, he came off alive, but within three or four days died.

Earl *Meldritch*, by the information of three or four christians (efcaped out of the town) upon every alarm, where there were greateft afsemblies and throng of people, caufed captain *Smith* to put in practice his fiery dragons he had demonftrated unto him, and the earl *Van Suleb* at *Comora*, which he thus performed: Having prepared forty or fifty round-bellied earthen pots, and filled them with hand gun-powder, then covered them with pitch, mingled with brimftone and turpentine, and quartering as many mufket-bullets, that hung together, but only at the center of the divifion, fluck them round in the mixture about the pots, and covered them again with the fame mixture; over that a ftrong fcarcloth, then over all, a good thicknefs of towze-match, well tempered with oil of linfeed, camphire and powder of brimftone: Thefe he fity placed in flings, graduated fo near as

Q q q q

they

much worfe.

ly appearing  
prefently ap-  
in with three  
each knowing  
*Smith*, though  
to him thefe  
I will charge  
you; *Eber-*  
d thus it was  
ge as brief,  
vided the al-

k. l.  
1. 1.

v. w. x. y. z.  
2. 2. 2. 2. 2.  
The

Vol. II.

they could to the places of these assemblies. At mid-night upon the alarm, it was a fearful sight to see the short flaming course of their flight in the air, but presently after their fall, the lamentable noise of the miserable slaughtered *Turks* was most wonderful to hear: Besides, they had fired that suburb at the port of *Buda* in two or three places, which so troubled the *Turks* to quench, that had there been any means to have assaulted them, they could hardly have resisted the fire and their enemies. The earl *Rosworme*, contrary to the opinion of all men, would needs undertake to find means to surprize the segeth and suburb of the city, strongly defended by a muddy lake, which was thought unpassable.

*A worthy exploit of earl Rosworme.*

The duke having planted his ordnance, battered the other side, whilst *Rosworme* in the dark night, with every man a bundle of fedge and bavons still thrown before them, so laded up the lake, as they surprized that unregarded suburb before they were discovered: Upon which unexpected alarm, the *Turks* fled into the city; and the other sub-

urb not knowing the matter, got into the city also, leaving their suburb for the duke, who, with no great resistance took it, with many pieces of ordnance; the city being of no such strength as the suburbs, with their own ordnance was so battered, that it was taken by force, with such a merciless execution, as was most pitiful to behold. The *Bashaw* notwithstanding, drew together a party of five hundred before his own palace, where he intended to die; but seeing most of his men slain before him, by the valiant captain, earl *Meldritch*, who took him prisoner with his own hands; and with the hazard of himself saved him from the fury of other troops, that did pull down his palace, and would have rent him in pieces, had he not been thus preserved. The duke thought his victory much honoured with such a prisoner; took order he should be used like a prince, and with all expedition gave charge presently to repair the breaches, and the ruins of this famous city, that had been in the possession of the *Turks* near threelcore years.

*Earl Meldritch takes the Bashaw prisoner.*

## CHAP. VI.

*A brave encounter of the Turks army with the christians; duke Merceur overthroweth Asian Bashaw; he divides the christian army; his noblenes and death.*

**M**Avomet the great *Turk*, during the siege, had raised an army of sixty thousand men to have relieved it; but hearing it was lost, he sent *Asian* bashaw, general of his army, the bashaw of *Buda*, bashaw *Amaroz*, to see if it were possible to regain it: The duke understanding there could be no great experience in such a new levied army as *Asian* had, having put a strong garrison into it, and with the brave colonel *Rosworme*, *Culnits*, *Meldritch*, the *Rhine-Grave*, *Vaban* and many others, with twenty thousand good soldiers, set forward to meet the *Turk* in the plains of *Girk*. Those two armies encountered as they marched, where began a hot and bloody skirmish betwixt them, regiment against regiment, as they came in order, till the night parted them: Here earl *Meldritch* was so invironed among those half circular regiments of *Turks*, they supposed him their prisoner, and his regiment lost; but his two most courageous friends, *Vaban* and *Culnits*, made such a passage amongst them, that it was a terror to see how horse and man lay sprawling and tumbling, some one way, some another on the ground. The earl there at that time made his valour shine more bright than his armour, which seemed then paint-

*A brave encounter of the Turks army with the christians.*

ed with *Turkish* blood; he slew the brave *Zanzack Bugola*, and made his passage to his friends, but near half his regiment was slain. Captain *Smith* had his horse slain under him, and himself fore wounded; but he was not long unmounted, for there was choice enough of horses that wanted masters. The *Turk* thinking the victory sure against the duke, whose army, by the siege and the garrison he had left behind him, was much weaken'd, would not be content with one, but he would have all; and left the duke should return to *Alba Regalis*, he sent that night twenty thousand to besiege the city, assuring them, he would keep the duke or any other from relieving them. Two or three days they lay each by other, entrenching themselves; the *Turks* during the duke daily to a set battle, who at length drew out his army, led by the *Rhine-Grave*, *Culnits* and *Meldritch*, who upon their first encounter, charged with that resolute and valiant courage, as disordered not only the foremost squadrons of the *Turks*, but enforced all the whole army to retire to the camp, with the loss of five or six thousand, with the bashaw of *Buda*, and four or five zanzacks, with divers other great commanders, two hundred prisoners, and nine pieces

*Duke Merceur overthrows the Asian Bashaw.*

of or  
as it  
valley  
duke  
retire  
*Asian*  
Here  
suppl  
the e  
on bo  
wants  
discon  
selves  
retirin  
rear t  
ing of  
*Regalis*  
with  
and re  
The  
duke  
*Caniz*  
and t  
of ho  
would

The  
Mo  
mu

The  
edge  
of  
Caniz.

**T**H  
of C  
an ex  
hail,  
ans w  
artille  
so co  
them  
and tw  
rable  
they  
them,  
had to  
death  
*Merce*  
and t  
yond  
best  
troop  
princ  
again

*Earl Mel-*  
*drich over-*  
*throws the*  
*Asian*  
*Bashaw.*

**T**H  
hard  
free  
coul  
easil  
ever



got into the  
for the duke,  
took it, with  
the city being  
suburbs, with  
battered, that  
such a mercilefs  
ful to behold.  
drew together  
before his own  
die; but fee-  
before him, by  
Meldritch, who  
own hands; and  
oved him from  
that did pull  
have rent him  
was preferred.  
ory much ho-  
took order he  
and with all  
ntly to repair  
of this famous  
offession of the

*Earl Mel-  
drich takes the  
Bafhaw pri-  
soner.*

of ordnance. At that instant appeared, as it were another army coming out of a valley over a plain hill, that caufed the duke at that time to be contented, and to retire to his trenches, which gave time to *Affan*, to reorder his difordered fquadrons: Here they lay nine or ten days, and more fupplies repaired to them, expecting to try the event in a fet battle; but the foldiers on both parties, by reafon of their great wants, and approach of winter, grew fo difcontented, that they were ready of themfelves to break up the leager; the bafhaw retiring himfelf to *Buda*, had fome of the rear troops cut off. *Amaroz* bafhaw hearing of this, found fuch bad welcome at *Alba Regalis*, and the town fo ftrongly repaired with fo brave a garrifon, raifed his fiefge, and retired to *Zigetum*.

The duke underftanding that the archduke *Ferdinando* had fo refolutely befieged *Caniza*, as what by the lofs of *Alba Regalis*, and the *Turks* retreat to *Buda*, being void of hope of any relief, doubted not, but it would become again the chriftians. To the

furtherance whereof, the duke divided his army into three parts. The earl of *Rofworme* went with feven thoufand to *Caniza*; the earl of *Meldritch* with fix thoufand he lent to affift *Georgio Bufca* againft the *Transilvanians*, the reft went with himfelf to the garrifons of *Strigonium* and *Komara*; having thus worthily behaved himfelf, he arrived at *Vienna*, where the archdukes and the nobility with as much honour received him, as if he had conquered all *Hungaria*; his very picture they efteemed would make them fortunate, which thoufands kept as curioufly as a precious relique. To requite this honour, preparing himfelf to return into *France*, to raife new forces againft the next year, with the two archdukes, *Matthias* and *Maximilian*, and divers others of the nobility, was with great magnificence conducted to *Nurenburg*, there by them royally feafted, (how it chanced is not known,) but the next morning he was found dead, and his brother-in-law died two days after; whole hearts, after this great triumph, with much sorrow were carried into *France*.

*Duke Merceur divides his army.*

*Duke Merceur and his Brother-in-law die fuddenly.*

## C H A P. VII.

*The unhappy fiefge of Caniza; earl Meldritch ferveth prince Sigifmundus; prince Moyfes befiegeth Regall; Smith's three fingle combats; his patent from Sigifmundus, and reward.*

*Merceur over-  
noblenefs and*

lew the brave  
his paffage to  
regiment was  
his horfe flain  
wounded; but  
for there was  
wanted ma-  
victory fure  
by the fiefge  
behind him,  
not be content  
all; and left  
*Alba Regalis*, he  
nd to beliege  
uld keep the  
ieving them.  
ach by other,  
*Turks* daring  
who at length  
*Rhine-Grave*,  
pon their firt  
refolute and  
not only the  
is, but enfor-  
retire to the  
fix thoufand,  
four or five  
reat comman-  
nd nine pieces  
of

*To be  
copy  
page of  
Caniza.*

THE worthy lord *Rofworme* had not a worfe journey to the miferable fiefge of *Caniza*, (where by the extremity of an extraordinary continuing tempeft of hail, wind, froft and fnow, the chriftians were forced to leave their tents and artillery, and what they had, it being fo cold, that three or four hundred of them were frozen to death in a night, and two or three thoufand loft in that miferable flight in the fnowy tempeft, though they did know no enemy at all to follow them,) than the noble earl of *Meldritch* had to *Transilvania*, where hearing of the death of *Michael*, and the brave duke *Merceur*, and knowing the policy of *Bufca*, and the prince his royalty, being now beyond all belief of men, in poffeffion of the beft part of *Transilvania*, perfuaded his troops, in fo honeft a caufe, to affift the prince againft the *Turk*, rather than *Bufca* againft the prince.

*Earl Mel-  
drich ferve-  
th the prince  
Sigifmundus.*

The foldiers being worn out with thofe hard pays and travels, upon hope to have free liberty to make booty upon what they could get poffeffion of from the *Turks*, were eafily perfuaded to follow him whitherfoever. Now this noble earl was a *Transil-*

*vanian* born, and his fathers country yet inhabited by the *Turks*; for *Transilvania* was yet in three divifions, though the prince had the hearts both of country and people; yet the frontiers had a garrifon amongft the unpaffable mountains, fome for the emperor, fome for the prince, and fome for the *Turk*: To regain which fmall eftate, he defired leave of the prince to try his fortunes, and to make ufe of that experience, the time of twenty years had taught him in the emperor's fervice, promifing to fpend the reft of his days, for his country's defence in his excellency's fervice. The prince glad of fo brave a commander, and fo many expert and ancient foldiers made him camp-mafter of his army, gave him all neceffary relief for his troops, and what freedom they defired to plunder the *Turks*.

The earl having made many incurfions into the land of *Zarkam*, among thofe rocky mountains, where were fome *Turks*, fome *Tartars*, but moft bandittoes, renegadoes, and fuch like, which fometimes he forced into the plains of *Regall*, where is a city, not only of men and fortifications, ftrong of it felf, but fo environed with mountains, that made the paffages fo diffi-

*Earl Mel-  
drich makes in-  
curfions to  
discover  
Regall.*

cult, that in all these wars no attempt had been made upon it to any purpose: Having satisfied himself with the situation, and the most convenient passages to bring his army unto it. The earth no sooner put on her green habit, than the earl overspread her with his armed troops. To possess himself first of the most convenient passage, which was a narrow valley betwixt two high mountains; he sent colonel *Veltus* with his regiment, dispersed in companies to lie in *Ambuscado*, as he had directed them, and in the morning to drive all the cattle they could find before a fort in that passage, whom he supposed would fall, seeing but some small party to recover their prey; which took such good success, that the garrison was cut off by the ambuscado, and *Veltus* seized on the sconces, which were abandoned. *Meldritch* glad of so fortunate a beginning, it was six days ere he could with six thousand pioneers make passage for his ordnance. The *Turks* having such warning, strengthened the town so with men and provision, that they made a scorn of so small a number as *Meldritch* brought with him before the city, which was but eight thousand. Before they had pitched their tents, the *Turks* sallied in such abundance, as for an hour they had rather a bloody battle than a skirmish, but with the loss of near fifteen hundred on both sides. The *Turks* were chafed till the cities ordnance caused the earl to retire. The next day *Zachel Moyses*, general of the army, pitched also his tents with nine thousand foot and horse, and six and twenty pieces of ordnance; but in regard of the situation of this strong fortress, they did neither fear them nor hurt them, being upon the point of a fair promontory, environed on the one side within half a mile with an useless mountain, and on the other side with a fair plain, where the christians encamped, but so commanded by their ordnance, they spent near a month in entrenching themselves, and raising their mounts to plant their batteries; which slow proceedings the *Turks* oft derided, that their ordnance were at pawn, and how they grew fat for want of exercise, and fearing lest they should depart ere they could assault their city, sent this challenge to any captain in the army.

That to delight the ladies, who did long to see some court-like pastime, the lord *Timbashaw* did defy any captain, that had the command of a company, who durst combat with him for his head: The matter being discussed, it was accepted, but so many questions grew for the undertaking, it was decided by lots, which fell upon captain *Smith*, before spoken of.

Truce being made for that time, the rampires all beset with fair dames and men in arms, the christians in batalia; *Timbashaw* with a noise of hautboys entered the field well mounted and armed; on his shoulders were fixed a pair of great wings, compacted of eagle's feathers, within a ridge of silver, richly garnish'd with gold and precious stones, a *Janizary* before him, bearing his lance, on each side another leading his horse; where long he stay'd not, ere *Smith*, with a noise of trumpets, only a page bearing his lance, passing by him with a courteous salute, took his ground with such good success, that at the sound of the charge, he passed the *Turk* throw the fight of his beaver, face, head and all, that he fell dead to the ground, where alighting and unbracing his helmet, cut off his head and the *Turks* took his body; and so returned without any hurt at all. The head he presented to the lord *Moyes*, the general, who kindly accepted it, and with joy to the whole army he was generally welcomed.

The death of this captain so swelled in the heart of one *Gruado*, his vowed friend, as rather enraged with madness than choler, he directed a particular challenge to the conqueror, to regain his friend's head, or lose his own, with his horse and armour for advantage, which according to his desire, was the next day undertaken: As before upon the sound of the trumpets, their lances flew in pieces upon a clear passage, but the *Turk* was near unhorsed. Their pistols was the next, which marked *Smith* upon the placard; but the next shot the *Turk* was so wounded in the left arm, that being not able to rule his horse, and defend himself, he was thrown to the ground, and so bruised with the fall, that he lost his head, as his friend before him, with his horse and armour; but his body and his rich apparel were sent back to the town.

Every day the *Turks* made some sallies, but few skirmishes would they endure to any purpose. Our works and approaches being not yet advanced to that height and effect, which was of necessity to be performed; to delude time, *Smith* with so many contradictory preuading reasons, obtained leave, that the ladies might know he was not so much enamoured of their servants heads, but if any *Turk* of their rank would come to the place of combat to redeem them, should have his also upon the like conditions, if he could win it.

The challenge presently was accepted by *Bonny Mulgro*. The next day both the champions entering the field as before, each discharging their pistol, having no lances, but such martial weapons as the defendant

appointed.

*Moyes*  
be siegth  
Regal.

Regal of  
sallied  
-14 tab.



at time, the <sup>Three fa-</sup>  
r dames and <sup>ble an-</sup>  
batalia; Tur-  
boys entered  
armed; on his  
of great wings,  
within a ridge  
with gold and  
fore him, bear-  
another leading  
ay'd not, ere  
mpets, only a  
ng by him with  
a ground with  
e found of the  
horow the fight  
l all, that he  
ere alighting  
t off his head  
y; and so re-  
ll. The head  
es, the gene-  
and with joy  
generally wel-

so swelled in  
vowed friend,  
hefs than cho-  
challenge to  
his friend's  
his horse and  
n according to  
y undertaken:  
the trumpets,  
on a clear pas-  
thorhed. Their  
marked *Smith*  
next shot the  
left arm, that  
horse, and de-  
o the ground,  
that he lost his  
him, with his  
body and his  
o the town.  
e some fallies,  
hey endure to  
ad approaches  
at height and  
to be perform-  
with so many  
asons, obtain-  
ight know he  
l of their ser-  
of their rank  
combat to re-  
also upon the  
win it.  
is accepted by  
day both the  
s before, each  
ing no lances,  
the defendant  
appoint-

## of Capt. JOHN SMITH.

337

appointed, no hurt was done. their battle-axes were the next, whose piercing bills made sometime the one, sometime the other to have scarce sense to keep their saddles; specially the christian received such a blow, that he lost his battle-axe, and failed not much to have fallen after it, whereat the supposed conquering Turk, had a great shout from the rampires. The Turk prosecuted his advantage to the uttermost of

his power; yet the other, what by the readiness of his horse, and his judgement and dexterity in such a business, beyond all men's expectation, by god's assistance, not only avoided the Turks violence, but having drawn his faulchion, pierced the Turk so under the culets, thorow back and body, that altho' he alighted from his horse, he stood not long ere he lost his head, as the rest had done.

### CHAP. VIII.

*Georgio Busca an Albane, his ingratitude to prince Sigismundus; prince Moyfes his lieutenant, is overthrown by Busca, general for the emperor Rodulphus; Sigismundus yieldeth his country to Rodulphus; Busca assisteth prince Rodol in Wallachia.*

THIS good success gave such great encouragement to the whole army, that with a guard of six thousand, three spare horses, before each a Turk's head upon a lance, he was conducted to the general's pavilion with his presents. *Moyfes* received both him and them with as much respect as the occasion deserved, embracing him in his arms, gave him a fair horse, richly furnished, a schimitar and belt worth three hundred ducats; and *Meldritch* made him fergeant major of his regiment. But now to the siege, having mounted six and twenty pieces of ordnance, fifty or sixty foot above the plain, made them so plainly tell his meaning, that within fifteen days two breaches were made, which the Turks as valiantly defended as men could; that day was made a darksome night, but by the light that proceeded from the murdering muskets, and peace-making cannon, whilst their slothful governor lay in a castle on the top of a high mountain, and like a valiant prince asketh what's the matter, when horror and death stood amazed each at other, to see who should prevail to make him victorious: *Moyfes* commanding a general assault upon the sloping front of the high promontory, where the barons of *Budendorfe* and *Oberwin*, lost near half their regiments by logs, bags of powder, and such like, tumbling down the hill, they were to mount ere they could come to the breach notwithstanding with an incredible courage, they advanced to the push of the pike with the defendants, that with the like courage repulsed, till the earl *Meldritch*,

*Becklesfield* and *Zarvana*, with their fresh regiments seconded them with that fury, that the Turks retired and fled into the castle, from whence by a flag of truce they desired composition. The earl remembering his father's death, battered it with all the ordnance in the town, and the next day took it; all he found could bear arms, he put to the sword, and set their heads upon stakes round about the walls, in the same manner they had used the christians, when they took it. *Moyfes* having repaired the rampires, and thrown down the work in his camp, he put in it a strong garrison, though the pillage he had gotten in the town was much, having been for a long time an impregnable den of thieves; yet the loss of the army so intermingled the fowre with the sweet, as forced *Moyfes* to seek a further revenge, that he sacked *Versatio*, *Salnos* and *Kupronka*, and with two thousand prisoners, most women and children, came to *Eisenberg*, not far from the prince's palace, where he there encamped.

*Sigismundus* coming to view his army, was presented with the prisoners, and six and thirty ensigns; where celebrating thanks to Almighty God in triumph of those victories, he was made acquainted with the service *Smith* had done at *Olumpagh*, *Stoll-Weissenburg* and *Regal*; for which, with great honour, he gave him three Turks heads in a shield for his arms, by patent, under his hand and seal, with an oath ever to wear them in his colours, his picture in gold, and three hundred ducats yearly for a pension.

Regal af-  
sailed  
-54 1667.

The pa-  
tent.



**SIGISMUNDUS BATHORI** Dei gratia, dux Transilvaniae, Wallachiae, & Vandalorum; comes Anchar, Salsford, Growenda; cunctis his literis significamus qui eas lecturi aut audituri sunt, concessam licentiam aut facultatem Johanni Smith, natione Anglo generoso, 250. militum capitaneo sub illustrissimo & gravissimo Henrico Volda, comite de Meldri, Salmariae, & Peldoiae primario, ex 1000 equitibus & 1500. peditibus bello Ungarico conducti-  
one in provincias supra scriptas sub auctoritate nostra: Cui servituti omni laude, perpetuaque memoria dignum praebuit se seerga nos, ut virum strenuum pugnantem pro aris & focis decet. Quare è favore nostro militario ipsum ordine condonavimus, & in sigillum illius tria Turcica capita designare & deprimere concessimus, quae ipse gladio suo ad urbem Regalem in singulari praelio vixit, multavit, atque decollavit in Transilvaniae provincia: Sed fortuna cura variabilis ancepsque sit, idem forte fortuito in Wallachiae provincia, Anno Domini 1602, die mensis Novembris 18, cum multis aliis etiam nobilibus & aliis quibusdam militibus captus est à domino Bascha electo ex Cambia regionis Tartariae, cujus severitate adductus salutem quantam potuit quaesivit, tantumque effecit Deo omnipotente adjuvante, ut deliberaverit se, & ad suos commilitones reverteretur; ex quibus ipsum liberavimus, & hac nobis testimonia habuit ut majori licentia frueretur qua dignus esset, jam tendit in patriam suam dulcissimam: Rogamus ergo omnes nostras cbarissimas, consinitimos, duces, principes, comites, Barones, gubernatores urbium & navium in eadem regione & ceterarum provinciarum in quibus ille residere conatus fuerit, ut idem permittatur capitaneus libere sine obstaculo omni versari. Haec facientes pergratum nobis feceritis. Signatum Lesprizae in Misnia die mensis Decembris 9, Anno Domini 1603.

Cum privilegio pro-  
priae majestatis.



**SIGISMUNDUS  
BATHORI.**

**U**NIVERSIS & singulis, cujuscunque joci, status, gradus, ordinis, ac conditionis ad quos hoc praesens scriptum pervenerit, Gulielmus Segar, eques auratus aliis dictus Garterus principalis rex armorum Anglicorum, salutem. Sciatis, quod ego praedictus Garterus, notum, testatumque facio, quod patentem superscriptum, cum manu propria praedicti ducis Transilvaniae subsignatum, & sigillo suo affixum, vidi: Et copiam veram ejusdem (in perpetuam rei memoriam) transcripsi, & recordavi in archivis, & registris officii armorum. Datum Londini 19 die Augusti, Anno Domini 1625. Annoque regni domini nostri CAROLI Dei gratia Magnae-Britanniae, Franciae & Hiberniae regis, fidei defensoris, &c. primo.

GULIELMUS SEGAR, Garterus,

RI Dei gra-  
e, & Vanda-  
venda; cunctis  
auditi sunt,  
hanni Smith,  
capitaneus sub  
da, comite de  
rio, ex 1000  
rico conducti-  
autoritate no-  
aque memoria  
num pugnan-  
vove nostro mi-  
figillum illius  
ere concessimus,  
m in singulari  
ana cura varia-  
502, die mensis  
captus est à do-  
lutem quantam  
& ad suos com-  
ut majori licen-  
us ergo omnes  
urbium & na-  
fuerit, ut illu-  
cum nobis jure-  
003.

The first  
English.

SIGISMUNDUS BATHORI, by the grace of God duke of Transilvania, Wallachia and Moldavia, earl of Ancebad, Salford and Growenda; to whom this writing may come or appear. Know that we have given leave and licence to John Smith an English Gentleman, captain of 250 soldiers, under the most generous and honourable Henry Volda, earl of Meldrieub, Salmaria and Peldoia, colonel of a thousand horse, and fifteen hundred foot, in the wars of Hungary, and in the provinces aforesaid under our authority; whose service doth deserve all praise, and perpetual memory towards us, as a man that did for God and his countrey overcome his enemies: Wherefore out of our love and favour, according to the law of arms, we have ordained, and given him in his shield of arms, the figure and description of three Turks heads, which with his sword before the town of Regal, in single combat he did overcome kill, and cut off, in the province of Transilvania. But fortune, as she is very variable, so it chanced and happened to him in the province of Wallachia, in the year of our lord 1602, the 18<sup>th</sup> day of November, with many others, as well noble men as also divers other soldiers, were taken prisoners by the lord bashaw of Cambia, a country of Tartaria, whose cruelty brought him such good fortune, by the help and power of Almighty God, that he delivered himself, and returned again to his company and fellow soldiers, of whom we do discharge him, and this he hath in witness thereof, being much more worthy of a better reward; and now intends to return to his own sweet countrey. We desire therefore all our loving and kind kinsmen, dukes, princes, earls, Barons, governors of towns, cities or ships, in this kingdom, or any other provinces he shall come in, that you freely let pass this the aforesaid captain, without any hindrance or molestation, and this doing, with all kindness, we are always ready to do the like for you. Sealed at Lipswick in Misenland, the ninth of December, in the year of our Lord 1603.

*With the proper privilege  
of his majesty.*

SIGISMUNDUS  
BATHORI.

UNDUS  
HORI.

TO all and singular, in what place, state, degree, order or condition whatsoever, to whom this present writing shall come; I William Segar, Kt. otherwise garter and principal king of arms of England, with health. Know, that I the aforesaid garter, do witness and approve, that this aforesaid patent, I have seen, signed and sealed, under the proper hand and seal manuel of the said duke of Transilvania, and a true copy of the same, as a thing for perpetual memory, I have subscribed and recorded in the register and office of the heralds of arms. Dated at London, the nineteenth day of August, in the year of our Lord 1625, and in the first year of our sovereign lord Charles, by the grace of God, king of Great-Britain, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c.

WILLIAM SEGAR.

#### CHAP. IX.

*Sigismundus sends ambassadors unto the emperor; the conditions re-assured; he yieldeth up all to Balsa, and returneth to Prague.*

conditionis aa  
s alias dictus  
raditus garte-  
e prædicti du-  
silem (in per-  
morum. Da-  
CAROLI  
c. primo.

g, Garterus,

Balsa having all this time been raising new forces, was commanded from the emperor again to invade Transilvania, which being one of the fruitfullest and strongest countries in those parts, was now rather a desert, or the very spectacle of desolation; their fruits and fields overgrown with weeds, their churches and battered palaces, and best buildings, as for fear, hid with moss and ivy; being the very bulwark and rampire of a great part of Europe, most fit by all christians to have been supplied and maintained, was thus brought to ruin by

them it most concerned to support it. But alas, what is it, when the power of majesty pampered in all delights of pleasant vanity, neither knows, nor considers the labour of the ploughman, the hazard of the merchant, the oppression of statesmen, nor feels the piercing torments of broken limbs and inveterate wounds, the tollsome marches, the bad lodging, the hungry diet, and the extreme misery that soldiers endure to secure all those estates; and yet by the spite of malicious detraction, starve for want of their reward and recompences,

compences; whilst the politique courtier, commonly aims more at his own honours and ends, than his countries good, or his prince's glory, honour or security, as this worthy prince too well could testify. But the emperor being certified how weak and desperate his estate was, sent *Busca* again with a great army, to try his fortune once more in *Transilvania*. The prince considering how his country and subjects were consumed, the small means he had any longer to defend his estate, both against the cruelty of the *Turks*, and the power of the emperor, and the small care the *Polanders* had in supplying him, as they had promised, sent to *Busca* to have truce, till messengers might be sent to the emperor for some better agreement, wherewith *Busca* was contented. The ambassadors so prevailed, that the emperor re-assured them the conditions he had promised the prince at their confederacy for the lands in *Silesia*, with 60000 ducats presently in hand, and 50000 ducats yearly as a pension. When this conclusion was known to *Moyes*, his lieutenant, then in the field with the army, that would do any think, rather than come in subjection to the *Germans*, he encouraged his soldiers, and without any more ado, marched to encounter *Busca*, whom he found much better provided than he expected; so that betwixt them, in six or seven hours, more than five or six thousand, on both sides, lay dead in the field. *Moyes* thus overthrown, fled to the *Turks* at *Tamesware*, and his scattered troops, some one way, some another.

*Busca* in  
*Transilva-*  
*nia* over-  
thrown  
*Moyes*.

The prince understanding of this so sudden and unexpected accident, only accompanied with an hundred of his gentry and nobility, went into the camp to *Busca*, to let him know how ignorant he was of his lieutenant's error, that he had done it without his direction or knowledge, freely offering to perform what was concluded by his ambassadors with the emperor; and so causing all his garrisons to come out of their strong holds, he delivered all to *Busca* for the emperor, and so went to *Prague*,

*Sigismundus* yield-  
eth his  
country  
to *Busca*.

where he was honourably received, and established in his possessions, as his imperial majesty had promised. *Busca* assembling all the nobility, took their oaths of allegiance and fidelity, and thus their prince being gone *Transilvania* became again subject to the emperor.

Now after the death of *Michael*, vavoid of *Wallachia*, the *Turk* sent one *Jeremy* to be their vavoid or prince, whose insulting tyranny caused the people to take arms against him, so that he was forced to flee into the confines of *Moldavia*; and *Busca* in the behalf of the emperor, proclaimed the lord *Rodol* in his stead. But *Jeremy* having assembled an army of forty thousand *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Moldavians*, returned into *Wallachia*. *Rodol* not yet able to raise such a power, fled into *Transilvania* to *Busca*, his ancient friend; who considering well of the matter, and how good it would be for his own security, to have *Wallachia* subject to the emperor, or at least such an employment for the remainders of the old regiments of *Sigismundus*, (of whose greatness and true affection he was very suspicious) sent them with *Rodol* to recover *Wallachia*, conducted by the valiant captains the earl *Meldritch*, earl *Veltus*, earl *Nederpolt*, earl *Zarvana*, the lord *Becklefeld*, the lord *Budendorfe*, with their regiments, and divers others of great rank and quality, the greatest friends and alliances the prince had; who with thirty thousand, marched along by the river *Allus*, to the streights of *Rebrinck*, where they entered *Wallachia*, encamping at *Raza*; *Jeremy* lying at *Argish*, drew his army into his old camp, in the plains of *Peteske*, and with his best diligence fortified it, intending to defend himself, till more power came to him from the *Crim-Tartar*. Many small parties that came to his camp, *Rodol* cut off, and in the nights would cause their heads to be thrown up and down before the trenches. Seven of their porters were taken, whom *Jeremy* commanded to be flayed quick, and after hung their skins upon poles, and their carcases and heads on stakes by them.

*Busca* at  
*Argish* Ro-  
dal in  
*Wallachia*.

## CHAP. X.

*The battle of Rottenton; a pretty stratagem of fire-works by Smith.*

*Rodol* not knowing how to draw the enemy to battle, raised his army, burning and spoiling all where he came, and returned again towards *Rebrinck* in the night, as if he had fled upon the general rumour of the *Crim-Tartars* coming, which so inflamed the *Turks* of a happy victory, they

urged *Jeremy* against his will to follow them. *Rodol* seeing his plot fell out as he desired, so ordered the matter, that having regained the streights, he put his army in order, that had been near two days pursued with continual skirmishes in his rear, which now making head against the enemy,

*Asail's*  
*scout*  
*Rodal* and  
*Jeremy*.

*Wallachia*  
*defeated*  
*in the*  
*camp*.

ATIONS

ceived, and e-  
as his imperial  
assembling all  
s of allegiance  
prince being  
gain subject to

Michael, vavoid  
one Jeremy to  
whose insulting  
to take arms  
forced to flee  
ia; and Bufca  
or, proclaimed  
But Jeremy  
of forty thou-  
Moldavians, re-  
not yet able  
to Transilvania  
who consider-  
how good it  
y, to have Wal-  
or, or at least  
remainders of  
adus, (of whose  
he was very  
Rodol to recover  
the valiant cap-  
arl Veltus, earl  
the lord Beckle-  
with their regi-  
great rank and  
s and alliances  
thirty thousand,  
Altus, to the  
they entered Wal-  
Jeremy lying at  
his old camp,  
d with his best  
ding to defend  
ne to him from  
all parties that  
cut off, and in  
ir heads to be  
e the trenches.  
taken, whom  
ved quick, and  
boles, and their  
y them.

Smith.

will to follow  
ot fell out as  
atter, that ha-  
he put his ar-  
near two days  
mishes in his  
ad against the  
enemy,

A battle  
between  
Rodol and  
Jeremy.

enemy, that followed with their whole army in the best manner they could, was furiously charged with six thousand *Heydukes*, *Wallachians* and *Moldavians*, led by three colonels, *Overfall*, *Dubras* and *Calab*, to entertain the time till the rest came up; *Veltus* and *Nederjolt* with their regiments, entertained them with the like courage, till the zanzacke *Hamelbeg*, with six thousand more, came with a fresh charge, which *Meldritsch* and *Budendorfe*, rather like enraged lions, than men, so bravely encounter'd, as if in them only had consisted the victory; *Meldritsch's* horse being slain under him, the *Turks* pressed what they could to have taken him prisoner; but being remounted, it was thought with his own hand he slew the valiant zanzacke; whereupon his troops retiring, the two proud bashaws *Aladin* and *Zizimmus*, brought up the front of the body of their battle. *Veltus* and *Nederjolt* having breathed, and joining their troops with *Becksfeld* and *Zarvana*, with such an incredible courage, charged the left flank of *Zizimmus*, as put them all in disorder, where *Zizimmus* the bashaw was taken prisoner, but died presently upon his wounds. *Jeremy* seeing now the main battle of *Rodol* advance, being thus constrained, like a valiant prince in his front of the vanguard, by his example so bravely encouraged his soldiers, that *Rodol* found no great assurance of the victory. Thus being joyned in this bloody massacre, there was scarce ground to stand upon, but upon the dead carcases, which in less than an hour were so mingled, as if each regiment had singled out other. The admired *Aladin* that day did leave behind him a glorious name for his valour, whose death many of his enemies did lament after the victory, which at that instant fell to *Rodol*. It was reported *Jeremy* was also slain; but it was not so, but fled with the remainder of his army to *Moldavia*, leaving five and twenty thousand dead in the field, of both armies. And thus *Rodol* was seated again in his sovereignty, and *Wallachia* became subject to the emperor.

Wallachia  
subject  
to the em-  
per.

But long he rested not to settle his new estate, but there came news, that certain regiments of stragling *Tartars*, were foraging those parts towards *Moldavia*. *Meldritsch* with thirteen thousand men was sent against them, but when they heard it was the *Crim-Tartar*, and his two sons, with an army of thirty thousand; and *Jeremy*,

that had escaped with fourteen or fifteen thousand, lay in ambush for them about *Langanaw*, he retired towards *Rottenton*, a strong garrison for *Rodol*; but they were so invironed with these hellish numbers, they could make no great halt for skirmishing with their scouts, foragers and small parties that still encountered them. But one night amongst the rest, having made a passage through a wood, with an incredible expedition, cutting trees thwart each other to hinder their passage in a thick fog; early in the morning, unexpectedly they met two thousand loaded with pillage, and two or three hundred horse and cattle; the most of them were slain and taken prisoners, who told them where *Jeremy* lay in the passage, expecting the *Crim-Tartar* that was not far from him. *Meldritsch* intending to make his passage by force, was advised of a pretty stratagem by the *English Smith*, which presently he thus accomplished; for having accommodated two or three hundred trunks with wild-fire, upon the heads of lances, and charging the enemy in the night, gave fire to the trunks, which blazed forth such flames and sparkles, that it so amazed, not only their horses, but their foot also; that by the means of this flaming encounter, their own horses turned tails with such fury, as by their violence overthrew *Jeremy* and his army, without any loss at all to speak of to *Meldritsch*. But of this victory long they triumphed not; for being within three leagues of *Rottenton*, the *Tartar*, with near forty thousand to beset them, that they must either fight, or be cut in pieces flying. Here *Bufca* and the emperor had their desire; for the sun no sooner displayed his beams, than the *Tartar* his colours; where at mid-day he stayed a while to see the passage of a tyrannical and treacherous imposture, till the earth did blush with the blood of honesty, that the sun for shame did hide himself from so monstrous sight of a cowardly calamity. It was a most brave sight to see the banners and ensigns streaming in the air, the glittering of armour, the variety of colours, the motion of plumes, the forests of lances, and the thickness of shorter weapons, till the silent expedition of the bloody blait from the murdering ordnance, whose roaring voice is not so soon heard as felt by the aimed at object, made among them a most lamentable slaughter.



## CHAP. XI

*The names of the English that were slain in the battle of Rottenton; and how captain Smith was taken prisoner, and sold for a slave.*

*The battle  
of Rotten-  
ton.*

IN the valley of *Veristborne*, betwixt the river of *Altus* and the mountain of *Rottenton*, was this bloody encounter, where the most of the dearest friends of the noble prince *Sigismundus* perished. *Meldritch* having ordered his eleven thousand in the best manner he could, at the foot of the mountain upon his flanks, and before his front, he had pitched sharp stakes, their heads hardened in the fire, and bent against the enemy, as three battalions of pikes, amongst the which also, there was digged many small holes. Amongst those stakes were ranged his footmen, that upon the charge were to retire, as there was occasion. The *Tartar* having ordered his 40000 for his best advantage, appointed *Mustapha* bashaw to begin the battle, with a general shout, all their ensigns displaying, drums beating, trumpets and hautboys founding. *Neder-spolt* and *Movazo* with their regiments of horse most valiantly encountered, and forced them to retire; the *Tartar Begolgi* with his squadrons, darkening the skies with their flights of numberless arrows, who was as bravely encounter'd by *Veltus* and *Clerwin*, which bloody slaughter continued more than an hour, till the matchless multitude of the *Tartars* so increased, that they retired within their squadrons of stakes, as was directed. The bloody *Tartar*, as scorning he should stay so long for the victory, with his massie troops prosecuted the charge: But it was a wonder to see how horse and man came to the ground among the stakes, whose disordered troops were there so mangled, that the christians with a loud shout cried *Victoria*; and with five or six field pieces, planted upon the rising of the mountain, did much hurt to the enemy that still continued the battle with that fury, that *Meldritch* seeing there was no possibility long to prevail, joined his small troops in one body, resolved directly to make his passage, or die in the conclusion; and thus in gross gave a general charge, and for more than half an hour, made his way plain before him, till the main battle of the *Crim-Tartar*, with two regiments of *Turks* and *Janizaries* so overmatched them, that they were overthrown. The night approaching, the earl with some thirteen or fourteen hundred horse, swam the river, some were drowned, all the rest slain or taken prisoners: And thus in this bloody field, near 30000 lay, some headless, armless and legless, all cut and mangled; where

breathing their last, they gave this knowledge to the world, that for the lives of so few, the *Crim-Tartar* never paid dearer. But now the countries of *Transilvania* and *Wallachia* (subjected to the emperor) and *Sigismundus*, that brave prince, his subject and pensioner, the most of his nobility, brave captains and soldiers, became a prey to the cruel devouring *Turks*; where, had the emperor been as ready to have assisted him, and those three armies led by three such worthy captains, as *Michael*, *Busca* and himself, and had those three armies joined together against the *Turks*, let all men judge, how happy it might have been for all christianity, and have either regained *Bulgaria*, or at least have beat him out of *Hungaria*, where he hath taken much more from the emperor, than hath the emperor from *Transilvania*.

In this dismal battle, where *Neder-spolt*, *Veltus*, *Zarvans*, *Movazo*, *Bavel*, and many other earls, barons, colonels, captains, brave gentlemen, and soldiers were slain, give me leave to remember the names of our own countrey-men, with him in those exploits, that as resolutely as the best in the defence of *Christ* and his gospel, ended their days, as *Bakerfield*, *Hardwick*, *Thomas Milmer*, *Robert Molineux*, *Thomas Bishop*, *Francis Compton*, *George Davison*, *Nicholas Williams*, and one *John a Scot*, did what men could do; and when they could do no more, left there their bodies in testimony of their minds: only ensign *Charlton* and sergeant *Rolinson* escaped: But *Smith* among the slaughtered dead bodies, and many a gaiping soul, with toil and wounds lay groaning among the rest, till being found by the pillagers, he was able to live, and perceiving by his armour and habit, his ransom might be better to them than his death, they led him prisoner with many others; well they used him till his wounds were cured, and at *Axopolis* they were all sold for slaves, like beasts in a market-place, where every merchant, viewing their limbs and wounds, caused other slaves to struggle with them, to try their strength. He fell to the share of bashaw *Bogal*, who sent him forthwith to *Adrianopolis*, so for *Constantinople* to his fair mistress for a slave. By twenty and twenty chained by the necks, they marched in file to this great city where they were delivered to their several Masters, and he to the young *Charatza Tragabigzanda*.

CHAP.

*Extracted out of a book entitled, the names of Hungers, Wallachia and Moldavia, written by Francisco Perenna, a learned Italian, the prince's secretary, and translated by Mr. Perenna.*

*The Englishmen in this battle.*

*How he was sent into Turkey.*

*The Description of the Dismal State.*

T  
frien  
cause  
herle  
nians  
how  
were  
lord  
many  
sent  
with  
Bu  
no fu  
boug  
an A  
made  
the t  
ny w  
and  
these  
which  
took  
but h  
shoul  
that  
coun  
H  
this  
Sand  
Vern  
In al  
berly  
capti  
their  
tile  
most  
man  
Blac  
cape  
the f  
ed)  
betw  
but  
ther  
ny g  
wer  
the  
and  
by  
infl



## CHAP. XII.

*How Captain Smith was sent prisoner thorow the Black and Dissabacca-Sea in Tartaria; the description of those seas, and his usage.*

THIS noble gentlewoman took some time occasion to shew him to some friends, or rather to speak with him, because she could speak *Italian*; would feign herself sick when she should go to the *Banians*, or weep over the graves, to know how *Bogal* took him prisoner; and if he were, as the *basshaw* writ to her, a *Bobemian* lord conquered by his hand, as he had many others, which ere long he would present her, whose ransomes should adorn her with the glory of his conquests.

But when she heard him protest he knew no such matter, nor ever saw *Bogal*, till he bought him at *Anapolis*, and that he was an *Englishman*, only by his adventures made a captain in those countries; to try the truth, she found means to find out many who could speak *English*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Italian*, to whom relating most part of these former passages she thought necessary, which they so honestly reported to her, she took (as it seem'd) much compassion on him; but having no use for him, left her mother should sell him, she sent him to her brother the *Tymor* *Basshaw* of *Nalbrits*, in the county of *Cambia*, a province in *Tartaria*.

Here now let us remember his passing in this speculative course from *Constantinople* by *Sander*, *Screw*, *Panassa*, *Musa*, *Lasilla* to *Verna*, an ancient city upon the *Black-Sea*. In all which journey, having little more liberty, than his eyes judgment, since his captivity, he might see the towns with their short towers, and a most plain, fertile and delicate country, especially that most admired place of *Greece*, now called *Romania*, but from *Varna*, nothing but the *Black-Sea* water, till he came to the two capes of *Taur* and *Pergilos*, where he passed the streight of *Niger*, which (as he conjectured) is some ten leagues long, and three broad, betwixt two low lands, the channel is deep, but at the entrance of the sea *Dissabacca*, there are many great ofe shaulds, and many great black rocks, which the *Turks* said were trees, weeds and mud thrown from the in-land countries, by the inundations and violence of the current, and cast there by the eddy. They failed by many low isles, and saw many more of those muddy

rocks, and nothing else but salt-water, till they came betwixt *Sufax* and *Curuske*, only two white towns at the entrance of the river *Bruapo* appeared: In six or seven days sail, he saw four or five seeming strong castles of stone, with flat tops and battlements about them, but arriving at *Cambia*, he was (according to their custom) well used. The river was there more than half a mile broad. The castle was of a large circumference, fourteen or fifteen foot thick, in the foundation some six foot from the wall is a pallisado, and then a ditch of about forty foot broad, full of water. On the west-side of it, is a town all of low flat houses, which as he conceived, could be of no great strength, yet it keeps all them barbarous countreys about it in admiration and subjection. After he had stayed there three days; it was two days more before his guides brought him to *Nalbrits*, where the *Tymor* was then resident, in a great vast stone castle, with many great courts about it, invironed with high stone walls, where were quartered their arms, when they first subjected those countries, which only live to labour for those tyrannical *Turks*.

To her unkind brother, this kind lady writ so much for his good usage, that he half suspected as much as she intended; for she told him, he should there but sojourn to learn the language, and what it was to be a *Turk*, till time made her master of her self. But the *Tymor*, her brother, diverted all this to the worst of cruelty; for within an hour after his arrival, he caused his *Drubman* to strip him naked, and shave his head and beard so bare as his hand, a great ring of iron, with a long stalk bowed like a sickle, riveted about his neck, and a coat made of ulgries hair, guarded about with a piece of an undrest skin. There were many more christian slaves, and near an hundred *Forsados* of *Turks* and *Moors*, and he being the last, was slave of slaves to them all. Among these slavish fortunes there was no great choice, for the best was so bad, a dog could hardly have lived to endure, and yet for all their pains and labours, no more regarded than a beast.

## CHAP. XIII.

*The Turks diet; the slaves diet; the attire of the Tartars; and manner of wars and religion, &c.*

*The Tymo-  
mor's diet  
of Cam-  
bia is at  
the Turks*

THE Tymo and his friends fed upon pillaw, which is boiled rice and gar- nances, with little bits of mutton or buck- ones, which is roasted pieces of horse, bull, ulgie or any beasts. *Samboyfes* and *Mu- jelbit* are great dainties, and yet but round pies, full of all sorts of flesh, they can get chopped with variety of herbs. Their best drink is coffee, of a grain they called *Coava*, boiled with water; and sherbeck, which is only honey and water; mares milk, or the milk of any beast, they hold restora- tive; but all the commonalty drink pure water. Their bread is made of this *Coava*, which is a kind of black wheat, and *Cuf- kus* a small white feed, like *Mullia* in *Biskay*: But our common victuals, the entrails of horse and ulgies; of this cut in small pieces, they will fill a great cauldron, and being boiled with *Cufkus*, and put in great bowls in the form of chaffing-dishes, they sit round about it on the ground; after they have raked it thorow, so oft as they please with their foul fists, the remainder was for the christian slaves. Some of this broth they would temper with *Cufkus* pounded, and putting the fire off from the hearth, pour there a bowl full, then cover it with coals till it be baked, which stewed with the remainder of the broth, and some small pieces of flesh, was an extraordinary dainty.

*The attire  
of those  
Tartars.*

The better sort are attired like *Turks*, but the plain *Tartar* hath a black sheeps-skin over his back, and two of the legs tied a- bout his neck; the other two about his middle, with another over his belly, and the legs tied in like manner behind him: Then two more, made like a pair of bales, serveth him for breeches; with a little close

cap to his skull of black felt, and they use exceeding much of this felt for carpets, for bedding, for coats and idols. Their houses are much worse than your *Irish*, but the in-land countries have none but carts and tents, which they ever remove from country to country, as they see occasion, driving with them infinite troops of black sheep, cattle and ulgies, eating all up be- fore them as they go.

For the *Tartars* of *Nagi*, they have nei- ther town, nor house, corn nor drink, but flesh and milk. The milk they keep in great skins like burrachoos, which though it be never so fower, it agreeth well with their strong stomachs. They live all in *Hordias*, as do the *Crim-Tartars*, three or four hundred in a company, in great carts fifteen or sixteen foot broad, which are co- vered with small rods, wattled together in the form of a bird's nest, turned upwards, and with the ashes of bones, temper'd with oil, camels hair, and a clay they have, they loam them so well, that no weather can pierce them, and yet very light. Each *Hordia* hath a *Murfe*, which they obey as their king. Their gods are infinite. One or two thousand of those glittering white carts drawn with camels, deer, bulls and ulgies, they bring round in a ring, where they pitch their camp; and the *Murfe*, with his chief alliances, are placed in the midst. They do much hurt, when they can get any *Stroggs*, which are great boats used up- on the river *Volga*, (which they call *Edle*) to them that dwell in the country of *Pe- rolog*, and would do much more, were it not for the *Muscovite* garrisons that there inhabit.

## CHAP. XIV.

*The Description of the Crim-Tartars; their houses and carts, their idolatry in their lodgings.*

*The de-  
scription of  
the Crim-  
Tartars  
Coart.*

NOW you are to understand, *Tartary* and *Scythia* are all one, but so large and spacious, few or none could ever perfectly describe it, nor all the several kinds of those most barbarous people that inhabit it. Those we call the *Crim-Tartars* border upon *Moldavia*, *Podolia*, *Lithuania*, and *Russia*, are much more regular than the in-

terior parts of *Scythia*. The great *Tarta- rian* prince, that hath so troubled all his neighbours, they always call *Chan*, which signifieth emperor; but we the *Crim-Tartar*. He liveth for the most part in the best champion plains of many provinces; and his removing court is like a great city of houses and tents drawn on carts, all

so

TIONS

ner of wars

and they use  
for carpets,  
Jols. Their  
our *Irish*, but  
one but carts  
remove from  
see occasion,  
pops of black  
ing all up be-

they have nei-  
nor drink,  
ilk they keep  
which though  
ey live all in  
ars, three or  
in great carts  
which are co-  
ed together in  
ned upwards,  
temper'd with  
y they have,  
t no weather  
light. Each  
they obey as  
infinite. One  
ittering white  
er, bulls and  
a ring, where  
e *Murfe*, with  
in the midst.  
they can get  
boats used up-  
they call *Edle*)  
untry of *Pe*-  
more, were it  
ns that there

so orderly placed east and west, on the right and left hand of the prince's house, which is always in the midst towards the south, before which none may pitch their houses, every one knowing their order and quarter, as in an army. The prince's houses are very artificially wrought, both the foundation, sides and roof of wickers, ascending round to the top like a dove-coat; this they cover with white salt, or white earth, tempered with the powder of bones, that it may shine the whiter; sometimes with black felt, curiously painted with vines, trees, birds and bealls; the breadth of the carts are eighteen or twenty foot, but the house stretcheth four or five foot over each side, and is drawn with ten or twelve, or for more state twenty camels and oxen. They have also great baskets, made of smaller wickers, like great chests, with a covering of the same, all covered over with black felt, rubbed over with tallow and sheeps milk, to keep out the rain, prettily bedecked with painting or feathers; in those they put their household stuff and treasure, drawn upon other carts for that purpose. When they take down their houses, they set the door always towards the south, and their carts thirty or forty foot distant on each side, east and west, as if they were two walls: The women also have most curious carts; every one of his wives hath a great one for herself, and so many other for her attendants, that there seem as many courts as he hath wives. One great *Tartar* or nobleman, will have for his particular, more than an hundred of those houses and carts, for his several offices and uses,

His houses  
and carts.

Eight.

but set so far from each other, they will seem like a great village. Having taken their houses from the carts, they place the master always towards the north; over whose head is always an image like a puppet, made of felt, which they call his brother; the women on his left-hand, and over the chief mistress's head such another brother, and between them a little one, which is the keeper of the house; at the good wife's bed's-foot is a kid's-skin stuffed with wool, and near it a puppet looking towards the maids; next the door another, with a dried cow's udder, for the women that milk the kine, because only the men milk mares: Every morning those images in their orders, they besprinkle with that they drink, be it *Coffmos*, or whatsoever, but all the white mares milk is reserved for the prince. Then without the door, thrice to the south, every one bowing his knee in honour of the fire; then the like to the east, in honour of the air; then to the west, in honour of the water; and lastly to the north, in behalf of the dead. After the servant hath done this duty to the four quarters of the world, he returns into the house, where his fellows stand waiting, ready with two cups and two basons, to give their master, and his wife that lay with him that night, to wash and drink, who must keep him company all the day following, and all his other wives come thither to drink, where he keeps his house that day; and all the gifts presented him till night, are laid up in her chests; and at the door a bench full of cups, and drink for any of them to make merry.

Their id-  
latry in  
their lodg-  
ings.

*Coffmos*  
is mares  
milk.

# CHAP. XV.

*Their feasts, common diet, princes estate, buildings, tributes, laws, slaves, entertainment of ambassadors.*

Their  
fish.

FOR their feasts they have all sorts of beasts, birds, fish, fruits and herbs they can get, but the more variety of wild ones is the best; to which they have excellent drink made of rice, millet and honey, like wine; they have also wine, but in summer they drink most *Coffmos*, that standeth ready always at the entrance of the door, and by it a fidler; when the master of the house beginneth to drink, they all cry ha, ha, and the fidler plays, then they all clap their hands and dance, the men before their masters, the women before their mistresses; and ever when he drinks, they cry as before; then the fidler stayeth till they drink all round; sometimes

they will drink for the victory; and to provoke one to drink, they will pull him by the ears, and lug and draw him, to stretch and heat him, clapping their hands, stamping with their feet, and dancing before the champions, offering them cups, then draw them back again to increase their appetite; and thus continue till they be drunk, or their drink done, which they hold an honour and no infirmity.

Though the ground be fertile, they sow little corn, yet the gentlemen have bread and hony-wine; grapes they have plenty, and wine privately, and good flesh and fish; but the common sort stamped millet, mingled with milk and water. They call

Their com-  
mon diet.

T t t t

Cassa

VOL. II.

idolatry in

great *Tarta*-  
bled all his  
*Cban*, which  
e the *Crim*-  
st part in the  
y provinces;  
a great city  
on carts, all  
so

*Cassa* for meat, and drink any thing; also any beast unprofitable for service they kill, when they are like to die, or however they die, they will eat them, guts, liver and all; but the most fleshy parts they cut in thin slices, and hang it up in the sun and wind without salting, where it will dry so hard, it will not putrefy in a long time. A ram they esteem a great feast among forty or fifty, which they cut in pieces boiled or roasted, and put it in a great bowl with salt and water; for other sauce they have none; the master of the feast giveth every one a piece, which he eateth by himself, or carrieth away with him. Thus their hard fare makes them so infinite in cattle, and their great number of captivated women to breed upon, makes them so populous. But near the christian frontiers, the safer fort make little cottages of wood, call'd *Uluſi*, daubed over with dirt, and beasts dung covered with fedge; yet in summer they leave them, beginning their progress in April, with their wives, children and slaves, in their carted houses, scarce convenient for four or five persons; driving their flocks towards *Precopia*, and sometimes into *Taurica* or *Oſow*, a town upon the river *Tanais*, which is great and swift, where the *Turk* hath a garrison; and in October return again to their cottages. Their clothes are the skins of dogs, goats and sheep, lined with cotton cloth, made of their finest wool; for of their worst they make their felt, which they use in abundance, as well for shoes and caps, as houses, beds and idols; also of the coarse wool mingled with horse hair, they make all their cordage. Notwithstanding this wandering life, their princes sit in great state upon beds or carpets, and with great reverence are attended both by men and women, and richly served in plate, and great silver cups, delivered upon the knee, attired in rich furs, lined with plush, or taffety, or robes of tiffue. These *Tartars* possess many large and goodly plains, wherein feed innumerable herds of horse and cattle, as well wild as tame; which are elkes, bisons, horses, deer, sheep, goats, swine, bears and divers others.

In those countries are the ruins of many fair monasteries, castles and cities, as *Bacafaray*, *Salutium*, *Almassary*, *Precopia*, *Cremum*, *Sedacom*, *Capba*, and divers others by the sea, but all kept with strong garrisons for the great *Turk*, who yearly by trade or traffick, receiveth the chief commodities those fertile countries afford, as bezoar, rice, furs, hides, butter, salt, cattle and slaves, yet by the spoils they get from

the secure and idle christians, they maintain themselves in this pomp. Also their wives, of whom they have as many as they will, very costly, yet in a constant custom with decency.

They are mahometans, as are the *Turks*, God save the king, yet no law from whom also they have their laws, but no lawyers nor attornies, only judges, and justices in every village or hordia; but capital criminals, or matters of moment, are try'd before the *Chan* himself, or privy-councils, of whom they are always heard, and speedily discharged; for any may have access at any time to them, before whom they appear with great reverence, adoring their princes as gods, and their spiritual judges as saints; for justice is with such integrity and expedition executed, without covetousness, bribery, partiality and brawling, that in six months they have sometimes scarce six causes to hear. About the prince's court, none but his guard wear any weapon, but abroad they go very strong, because there are many bandittoes and thieves.

They use the *Hungarians*, *Russians*, *Wallachians* and *Moldavian* slaves (whereof they have plenty) as beasts to every work; and those *Tartars* that serve the *Chan* or noblemen, have only victuals and apparel, the rest are generally nasty and idle, naturally miserable, and in their wars better thieves than soldiers.

This *Chan* hath yearly a donative from the king of *Poland*, the dukes of *Lithuania*, *Moldavia*, and *Nagayon Tartars*; their messengers commonly he useth bountifully and very nobly, but sometimes most cruelly; when any of them do bring their presents, by his household officers, they are entertained in a plain field, with a moderate proportion of flesh, bread and wine, for once; but when they come before him, the *Sultans*, *Tuans*, *Ulan*s, *Marbies*, his chief officers and counsellors attend; one man only bringeth the ambassador to the court gate, but to the *Chan* he is led between two counsellors; where saluting him upon their bended knees, declaring their message, are admitted to eat with him, and presented with a great silver cup full of mead from his own hand, but they drink it upon their knees. When they are dispatched, he invites them again; the feast ended, they go back a little from the palace door, and are rewarded with silk vestures, wrought with gold down to their ankles, with an horse or two, and sometimes a slave of their own nation; in those robes presently they come to him again, to give him thanks, take their leave, and so depart.

CHAP.

How they become populous.

Their princes state.

Ancient buildings.

Commodities for tribute to the Turk.

How be

How be le-  
cous on  
army.

WH  
whom h  
mandet  
chief of  
that ho  
tribute,  
his inter  
c...n...  
is to fu  
victuals  
to mea  
with wa  
dried an  
make n  
flesh, th  
Chan at  
Aquavit  
they ple  
are cont  
guides,  
tends to  
to bring  
whom I  
knowled  
vised w  
to be de  
antiquit  
with his  
no enem  
far they  
man (up  
obvious  
men or  
Ten  
placeth  
for his  
my he  
ten or  
and ever  
to their  
but that  
camp;  
invade  
prey, w  
if he u  
ther fig  
will nev  
but upo  
numera  
fly from  
well ju  
was me  
and fo  
so intan  
can be  
fences,

CHAP. XVI.

*How he levieth an army; their arms and provision; how he divideth the spoil, and his service to the great Turk.*

How he le-  
vieth an  
army. WHEN he intends any wars, he must first have leave of the great Turk, whom he is bound to assist when he commandeth, receiving daily for himself and chief of his nobility, pensions from the Turk, that holds all kings but slaves, that pay tribute, or are subject to any: signifying his intent to all his subjects, within a month commonly he raiseth his army, and every man is to furnish himself for three months with victuals, which is parch'd millet, or ground to meal, which they ordinarily mingle with water (as is said,) hard cheese or curds dried and beaten to powder; a little will make much water like milk, and dried flesh, this they put also up in sacks: The Chan and his nobles have some bread and *Aquavite*, and quick cattle to kill when they please, wherewith very sparingly they are contented. Being provided with expert guides, and got into the country he intends to invade, he sends forth his scouts to bring in what prisoners they can, from whom he will wrest the utmost of their knowledge fit for his purpose: Having advised with his council, what is most fit to be done, the nobility, according to their antiquity, doth march; then moves he with his whole army: If he find there is no enemy to oppose him, he adviseth how far they shall invade, commanding every man (upon pain of his life) to kill all the obvious rusticks, but not to hurt any women or children.

Ten or fifteen thousand, he commonly placeth, where he findeth most convenient for his standing camp; the rest of his army he divides in several troops, bearing ten or twelve miles square before them, and ever within three or four days return to their camp, putting all to fire and sword, but that they carry with them back to their camp; and in this scattering manner he will invade a country, and be gone with his prey, with an incredible expedition. But if he understand of an enemy, he will either fight in ambuscado or flie; for he will never fight any battle if he can chuse, but upon treble advantage; yet by his innumerable flights of arrows, I have seen fly from his flying troops, we could not well judge, whether his fighting or flying was most dangerous, so good is his horse, and so expert his bowmen; but if they be so intangled they must fight, there is none can be more hardy or resolute in their defences.

Regaining his own borders, he takes the tenth of the principal captives, man, woman, child or beast (but his captains that take them, will accept of some particular person they best like for themselves;) the rest are divided amongst the whole army, according to every man's desert and quality; that they keep them, or sell them to who will give most; but they will not forget to use all the means they can, to know their estates, friends and quality, and the better they find you, the worse they will use you, till you do agree to pay such a ransom as they will impose upon you; therefore many great persons have endured much misery to conceal themselves, because their ransoms are so intolerable; their best hope is of some christian agent, that many times cometh to redeem slaves, either with money or man for man; those agents knowing so well the extreme covetousness of the *Tartars*, do use to bribe some jew or merchant, that feigning they will sell them again to some other nation, are oft redeemed for a very small ransom.

But to this *Tartarian* army, when the Turk commands, he goeth with some small artillery; and the *Nagayans*, *Pracopeans*, *Crimis*, *Ossovens* and *Circassians* are his tributaries; but the *Peligoroes*, *Oczaconians*, *Bialogordens* and *Dabruzen Tartars*, the Turk by covenant commands to follow him, so that from all those *Tartars* he hath had an army of an hundred and twenty thousand excellent, swift, stomachful *Tartarian* horse, for foot they have none. Now the Chan, his sultans and nobility, use *Turkish*, *Caramanian*, *Arabian*, *Parthian* and other strange *Tartarian* horses; the swiftest they esteem the best; seldom they feed any more at home, than they have present use for; but upon their plains is a short wood-like heath, in some countries like gail, full of berries, much better than any grafs.

Their arms are such, as they have surpris'd or got from the christians or *Persians*, both breast-plates, swords, scimiters, and helmets; bows and arrows they make most themselves; also their bridles and saddles are indifferent, but the nobility are very handsome, and well armed like the *Turks*, in whom consisteth their greatest glory; the ordinary fort have little armour, some a plain young pole unshaven, headed with a piece of iron for a lance; some an old christian pike, or a Turk's cavarinel; yet those tattertallions will have two or three



three horses, some four or five, as well for service, as for to eat; which makes their armies seem thrice so many as there are soldiers. The *Cban* himself hath about his person, 10000 chosen *Tartars* and *Tanizaries*, some small ordnance; and a white mare's tail, with a piece of green taffety on a great pike, is carried before him for a standard; because they hold no beast so precious as a white mare, whose milk is only for the king and nobility, and to sacrifice to their idols, but the rest have en-signs of divers colours.

For all this miserable knowledge, furniture, and equipage, the mischief they do in *Christendom* is wondrous, by reason of their hardness of life and constitution, obedience, agility, and their emperor's bounty, honours, grace, and dignities he ever bestoweth upon those, that have done him any memorable service in the face of his enemies.

A description of the Caspian sea.

The *Caspian* sea, most men agree that have passed it, to be in length about 200 leagues, and in breadth 150, environed to the east, with the great deserts of the *Tartars* of *Turkomania*; to the west by the *Circasses* and the mountain *Caucasus*; to the north, by the river *Volga*, and the land of

*Nagay*; and to the south, by *Media* and *Persia*: This sea is fresh water in many places, in others as salt as the great ocean; it hath many great rivers which fall into it, as the mighty river of *Volga*, which is like a sea, running near 2000 miles, thro' many great and large countries, that send into it many other great rivers; also out of *Saberia*, *Taick*, and *Yem*, out of the great mountain *Caucasus*, the river *Sirus*, *Araß*, and divers others, yet no sea nearer it than the black sea, which is at least 100 leagues distant: In which country live the *Georgians*, now part *Armenians*, part *Nestorians*; it is neither found to increase or diminish, or empty itself any ways except it be under ground, and in some places they can find no ground at 200 fathom.

Many other most strange and wonderful things are in the land of *Cathay*, towards the north-east, and *China* towards the south-east, where are many of the most famous kingdoms in the world, where most arts, plenty, and curiosities are in such abundance, as might seem incredible, which hereafter I will relate, as I have briefly gathered from such authors as have lived there.

## CHAP. XVII.

*How captain Smith escaped his captivity; flew the Bashaw of Nalbrits in Cambia; his passage to Russia, Transilvania, and the midst of Europe to Africa.*

How Smith escaped his captivity.

ALL the hope he had ever to be delivered from this thralldom, was only the love of *Tragabigzanda*, who surely was ignorant of his bad usage; for altho' he had often debated the matter with some christians, that had been there a long time slaves, they could not find how to make an escape, by any reason or possibility; but God beyond man's expectation or imagination helpeth his servants, when they least think of help, as it hapned to him. So long he lived in this miserable estate, as he became a threshers at a grange in a great field, more than a league from the *Tymor's* house; the *Bashaw*, as he oft used to visit his granges, visited him, and took occasion so to beat, spurn, and revile him, that forgetting all reason, he beat out the *Tymor's* brains with his threshing bat, for they have no flails; and seeing his estate could be no worse than it was, clothed himself in his clothes, hid his body under the straw, filled his knapsack with corn, shut the doors, mounted his horse, and ran into the desert at all adventures; two or three days, thus fearfully wandring he

knew not whither, and well it was, he met not any to ask the way; being even as taking leave of this miserable world, God did direct him to the great way or castragan, as they call it, which doth cross these large territories, and generally known among them by these marks.

In every crossing of this great way is there planted a post, and in it so many bobs with broad ends, as there be ways, and every bob the figure painted on it, that demonstrateth to what part that way leadeth; as that which pointeth towards the *Crim's* country, is marked with a half moon; if towards the *Georgians* and *Persians*, a black man, full of white spots; if towards *China*, the picture of the sun; if towards *Muscovia*, the sign of a cross; if towards the habitation of any other prince, the figure whereby his standard is known. To his dying spirits thus God added some comfort in this melancholly journey, wherein if he had met any of that vile generation, they had made him their slave, or knowing the figure engraven in the iron about his neck, (as all slaves have) he had been sent back again

again  
velled  
cross  
river  
The  
those  
and  
self  
good  
his w  
T  
The de  
section of  
Cambia,  
and his  
passage to  
Russia.  
wild  
bia is  
the g  
from  
nagac  
the p  
the H  
bacca  
which  
all the  
tries  
ny fr  
ni, C  
sea h  
Nalbr  
Circa  
stayed  
went  
cate l  
ed wi  
Zuma  
in lik  
this n  
Letch  
Berni  
cbica,  
fines  
much  
mann  
Draba  
and Z  
Polon  
vania  
with  
tertai  
he ca  
sent,  
as sub  
those  
there  
or co  
to be  
der a  
villag  
of th  
above  
at the  
with  
with  
Vo



by *Medus* and  
water in many  
great ocean;  
which fall into  
*Volga*, which is  
o miles, thro'  
ies, that fend  
s; also out of  
s of the great  
*Sirus*, *Araß*,  
nearer it than  
t 100 leagues  
live the *Geor-*  
*art Nestorians*;  
e or diminish  
ept it be un-  
aces they can  
n,  
and wonderful  
*thay*, towards  
ards the fourth  
most famous  
ere most arts,  
n such abun-  
edible, which  
e have briefly  
as have lived

in *Cambia*;  
*Africa*.

it was, he met  
being even as  
e world, God  
way or caltra-  
oth cross these  
lly known a-

great way is *Ther*  
any bobs with  
ys, and every  
s, that demon-  
y leadeth; as  
is the *Crim's*  
half moon; if  
*erfians*, a black  
towards *Cbi-*  
towards *Muf-*  
if towards the  
ce, the figure  
own. To his  
s, ne comfort  
wherein if he  
neration, they  
knowing the  
out his neck,  
een sent back  
again

*See de-  
scription of  
Cambria  
and his  
passage to  
Russia.*

again to his master; sixteen days he travelled in the fear and torment, after the cross, till he arrived at *Æopolis*, upon the river *Don*, a garrison of the *Muscovites*. The governor after due examination of those his hard events, took off his irons, and so kindly used him, he thought himself new risen from the dead, and the good lady *Calamata*, largely supplied all his wants.

This is as much as he could learn of those wild countries, that the country of *Cambia* is two days journey from the head of the great river *Bruapo*, which springeth from many places of the mountains of *Innagacbi*, that join themselves together in the pool *Kerkas*; which they account for the head, and falleth into the sea *Disfabbacca*, called by some the lake *N'rotis*, which receiveth also the river *Tanas*, and all the rivers that fall from the great countries of the *Circassi*, the *Cartacbes*, and many from the *Tauricaes*, *Precopes*, *Cummann*, *Cassunka*, and the *Crim*; thro' which sea he failed, and up the river *Bruapo* to *Nalbrits*, and thence thro' the deserts of *Circassi* to *Æopolis*, as is related; where he stayed with the governor, till the convoy went to *Caragnaw*; then with his certificate how he found him, and had examined with his friendly letters, sent him by *Zumalack* to *Caragnaw*, whose governor in like manner so kindly used him, that by this means he went with a safe conduct to *Letch* and *Donko* in *Cologofke*, and thence to *Bernists*, and *Newgrad* in *Siberia*, by *Rezechica*, upon the river *Nieper*, in the confines of *Lithuania*; from whence with as much kindness, he was conveyed in like manner by *Corofki*, *Dubersko*, *Duzibell*, *Drobobus*, and *Ostroge* in *Volonia*; *Saslaw*, and *Lajco* in *Podolia*; *Halico* and *Colonis* in *Polonia*; and so to *Hermontat* in *Transilvania*. In all this his life, he seldom met with more respect, mirth, content and entertainment; and not any governor where he came, but gave him somewhat as a present, besides his charges; seeing themselves as subject to the like calamity. Through those poor continually foraged countries, there is no passage, but with the caravans or convoys; for they are countries rather to be pitied than envied; and it is a wonder any should make wars for them. The villages are only here and there, a few houses of straight fir trees, laid heads and points above one another, made fast by notches at the ends, more than a man's height, and with broad split boards, pinned together with wooden pins, as thatched for cover-

ture. In ten villages you shall scarce find ten iron nails, except it be in some extraordinary man's house. For their towns *Æopolis*, *Letch* and *Donko*, have rampires made of that wooden walled fashion, double, and betwixt them earth and stones, but soatched with cross timber, they are very strong against any thing but fire; and about them a deep ditch, and a palizado of young fir trees; but most of the rest have only a great ditch cast about them, and the ditches earth, is all their rampire; but round well invironed with palizadoes. Some have some few small pieces of small ordnance and flings, calivers and muskets, but their generallest weapons are the *Russe* bows and arrows; you shall find pavements over bogs, only of young fir-trees laid cross one over another, for two or three hours journey, or as the passage requires, and yet in two days travel, you shall scarce see six habitations. Notwithstanding to see how their lords, governors and captains are civilized, well attired and accoutred with jewels, fables and horses, and after their manner with curious furniture, it is wonderful; but they are all lords or slaves, which makes them so subject to every invasion.

In *Transilvania* he found so many good friends, that but to see, and rejoice himself (after all those encounters) in his native country, he would ever hardly have left them, though the mirror of virtue their prince was absent. Being thus glutted with content, and near drowned with joy, he passed *Higb-Hungaria* by *Fileck*, *Tocka*, *Cassovia* and *Vnderoroway* by *Ulmicht* in *Moravia*, to *Prague* in *Bobemia*; at last he found the most gracious prince *Sigismundus*, with his colonel at *Lipswick* in *Misenland*, who gave him his pass, intimating the service he had done, and the honours he had received, with fifteen hundred ducats of gold to repair his losses: With this he spent some time to visit the fair cities and countries of *Dresden* in *Saxony*, *Magdeburgh* and *Brunswick*, *Cassel* in *Hessen*; *Wittenberg*, *Vilum*, and *Minekin* in *Bavaria*; *Augsborg* and her universities; *Hama*, *Frankford*, *Meitz*, the *Palatinate*; *Worms*, *Spies* and *Strasbourg*; passing *Nancie* in *Lorain*, and *France* by *Paris* to *Orleans*, he went down the river of *Loyer* to *Angiers*, and embarked himself at *Nantz* in *Britain*, to *Bilboa* in *Biskay*, to see *Burgos-Valladolid*, the admired monastery of the *Escorial*, *Madrid*, *Toledo*, *Corduba*, *Cuedyrial*, *Sevil*, *Cheriet*, *Cales* and *St. Lucas* in *Spain*.

*His objection  
is shown in  
his jour-  
ney to  
Transilva-  
nia,  
strough  
the midst  
of Europe.*

## CHAP. XVIII.

*The observations of captain Smith; Mr. Henry Archer, and others in Barbary.*

Being thus satisfied with *Europe* and *Asia*, understanding of the wars in *Barbary*, he went from *Gibraltar* to *Centa* and *Tangier*, thence to *Saffee*, where growing into acquaintance with a *French* man of war, the captain and some twelve more went to *Morocco*, to see the ancient monuments of that large renowned city: It was once the principal city in *Barbary*, situated in a goodly plain country, 14 miles from the great mount *Atlas*, and sixty miles from the *Atlantic-Sea*, but now little remaining but the king's palace, which is like a city of it self, and the christian church, on whose flat square steeple is a great broach of iron, whereon is placed the three golden balls of *Africa*: The first is near three ells in circumference, the next above it somewhat less, the uppermost the least over them, as it were an half ball, and over all a pretty gilded *Pyramid*. Against those golden balls hath been shot many a shot, their weight is recorded 700 weight of pure gold, hollow within, yet no shot did ever hit them, nor could ever any conspirator attain that honour as to get them down. They report, the prince of *Morocco* betrothed himself to the king's daughter of *Albiopia*, he dying before their marriage, she caused those three golden balls to be set up for his monument, and vowed virginity all her life. The *Alfantica* is also a place of note, because it is invironed with a great wall, wherein lie the goods of all the merchants securely guarded. The *Juderea* is also (as it were) a city of it self, where dwell the *Jews*: The rest for the most part is defaced; but by the many pinnacles and towers, with balls on their tops, hath much appearance of much sumptuousness and curiosity. There have been many famous universities, which are now but stables for fowls and beasts, and the houses in most parts lie tumbled one above another. the walls of earth are with the great fresh floods washed to the ground; nor is there any village in it, but tents for strangers, *Larbes* and *Moors*. Strange tales they will tell of a great garden, wherein were all sorts of birds, fishes, beasts, fruits and fountains, which for beauty, art and pleasure, exceeded any place known in the world, though now nothing but dung-hills, pigeon-houses, shrubs and bushes. There are yet many excellent fountains, adorned with marble, and many arches, pillars, towers, ports, and temples; but most only reliques of lamentable ruins and sad desolation.

When *Muly Hamet* reigned in *Barbary*, *Abbas*, he had three sons, *Muly Seck*, *Muly Sidan* and *Muly Busferres*, he a most good and noble king, that governed well, with peace and plenty, till his empress, more cruel than any beast in *Africa*, poisoned him, her own daughter, *Muly Seck*, his eldest son, born of a *Portugal* lady, and his daughter, to bring *Muly Sidan*, to the crown, now reigning, which was the cause of all those brawls and wars that followed betwixt those brothers, their children, and a faint that started up, but he played the devil.

King *Huly Hamet* was not black, as many suppose, but *Molata* or tawny, as are the most of his subjects; every way noble, kind and friendly, very rich and pompous in state and majesty, though he sitteth not upon a throne nor chair of state, but crost leg'd upon a rich carpet, as doth the *Turk*, whose religion of *Mabomet*, with an incredible miserable curiosity they observe. His ordinary guard is at least 5000, but in progress, he goeth not with less than 20000 horsemen, himself as rich in all his equipage, as any prince in christendom, and yet a contributor to the *Turk*. In all his kingdom were so few good artificers, that he entertained from *England*, goldsmiths, plumbers, carvers and polishers of stone, and watch-makers, so much he delighted in the reformation of workmanship, he allowed each of them ten shillings a day standing fee, linen, woollen, silks, and what they would for diet and apparel, and custom free to transport or import what they would; for there were scarce any of those qualities in his kingdom, but those, of which there are divers of them, living at this present in *London*. Amongst the rest, one *Mr. Henry Archer*, a watch-maker, walking in *Morocco*, from the *Alfantica* to the *Juderea*, the way being very foul, met a great priest, or a *Sante* (as they call all great clergymen) who would have thrust him into the dirt for the way, but *Archer* not knowing what he was, gave him a box on the ear; presently he was apprehended, and condemned to have his tongue cut out, and his hand cut off: But no sooner it was known at the king's court but 300 of his guard came and broke open the prison, and delivered him although the fact was next degree to treason.

The three golden balls of Africa.

The description of Morocco.

Concern-

The strange  
more  
Atlas  
day, 4  
young  
of a  
them  
which  
oppor  
twen  
which  
could  
them  
the re  
so ret  
male  
kept  
male  
it up  
till it  
dog m  
But b  
he ga  
that p  
sent H  
in the  
John  
divers  
not kn  
rare be  
whinin  
an exp  
inform  
ther,  
opened  
no do  
than  
hands  
to and  
ders;  
he ma  
when  
beast  
howlin  
row;  
ther ea  
In  
ther in  
wall;  
dog:  
his nec  
was he  
the fur  
till the  
great,  
after.  
Fez  
countr  
vided  
about

Author  
knew him  
a Morocco  
to

The de-  
scription  
of Fez.

n Barbary.

ed in Barbary, *Alach*  
eck, Muly Si-  
a most good  
ned well with  
mprefs, more  
rica, poisoned  
uly Sheek, his  
gal lady, and  
Sidan, to the  
was the cause  
that followed  
children, and  
he played the

black, as ma-  
cawny, as are  
ry way noble  
and pompous  
he sixtheth not  
ate, but cross  
as doth the  
omet, with an  
they observe.  
ft 5000, but  
with less than  
rich in all his  
christendom,  
Turk. In all  
od artificers,  
ngland, gold-  
and polishers  
so much he  
of workman-  
ten shillings  
woollen, silks,  
and apparel,  
import what  
scarce any of  
n, but those  
em, living at  
ngst the rest,  
-maker, walk-  
antica to the  
foul, met a  
they call all  
have thrust  
, but *Archer*  
ve him a box  
apprehended,  
s tongue cut  
ut no sooner  
urt but 300  
open the pri-  
ugh the fact

Concerning this *Archer*, there is one thing more worth noting: Not far from mount *Atlas*, a great lionsess in the heat of the day, did use to bathe her self, and teach her young puppies to swim in the river *Cauzef*, of a good breadth; yet she would carry them one after another over the river; which some *Moors* perceiving, watched their opportunity, and when the river was between her and them, stole four of her whelps, which she perceiving, with all the speed she could passed the river, and coming near them, they let fall a whelp (and fled with the rest) which she took in her mouth, and so returned to the rest: A male and a female of those they gave Mr. *Archer*, who kept them in the king's garden, till the male killed the female, then he brought it up as puppy-dog lying upon his bed, till it grew so great as a mastiff, and no dog more tame or gentle to them he knew: But being to return to *England*, at *Saffee* he gave him to a merchant of *Marjeilles*, that presented him to the *French* king, who sent him to king *James*, where it was kept in the tower seven years: After one Mr. *John Bull*, then servant to Mr. *Archer*, with divers of his friends, went to see the lions, not knowing any thing at all of him; yet this rare beast smelled him before he saw him, whining, groaning and tumbling, with such an expression of acquaintance, that being informed by the keepers how he came thither, Mr. *Bull* so prevail'd, the keeper opened the grate, and *Bull* went in: But no dog could fawn more on his master, than the lion on him, licking his feet, hands and face, skipping and tumbling to and fro, to the wonder of all the beholders; being satisfied with his acquaintance, he made shift to get out of the grate: But when the lion saw his friend gone, no beast by bellowing, roaring, scratching and howling, could express more rage and sorrow; nor in four days after would he either eat or drink.

In *Morocco* the king's lions are altogether in a court invironed with a great high wall; to those they put a young puppy-dog: The greatest lion had a fore upon his neck, which this dog so licked, that he was healed: The lion defended him from the fury of all the rest, nor durst they eat till the dog and he had fed; this dog grew great, and lived amongst them many years after.

*Fez* also is a most large and plentiful country, the chief city is called *Fez*, divided into two parts; old *Fez*, containing about 80 thousand households, the other

4000 pleasantly situated upon a river in the heart of *Barbary*, part upon hills, part upon plains, full of people and all sorts of merchandize. The great temple is called *Carucen*, in breadth seventeen arches, in length 120, born up with 2500 white marble pillars; Under the chief arch, where the tribunal is kept, hangeth a most huge lamp, compassed with 110 lesser, under the other also hang great lamps, and about some are burning 1500 lights: They say they were all made of the bells the *Arabians* brought from *Spain*. It hath three gates of notable height, priests and officers so many, that the circuit of the church, the yard, and other houses, is little less than a mile and half in compass; there are in this city 200 schools, 200 inns, 400 water-mills, 600 water-conduits, 700 temples and oratories; but 50 of them most stately and richly furnished. Their *Alcazer* or *Burje* is walled about, it hath twelve gates, and fifteen walks covered with tents, to keep the sun from the merchants, and them that come there. The king's palace, both for strength and beauty is excellent, and the citizens have many great privileges. Those two countries of *Fez* and *Morocco*, are the best part of all *Barbary*, abounding with people, cattle, and all good necessaries for man's use. For the rest, as the *Larbs* or mountainers, the kingdoms of *Cocow*, *Algier*, *Tripoli*, *Tunis* and *Egypt*; there are many large histories of them in divers languages, especially that writ by that most excellent statesman, *John de Leo*, who afterwards turned christian. The unknown countries of *Guine* and *Binn*, these 26 years have been frequented with a few *English* ships only to trade, especially the river of *Senega*, by captain *Brimslead*, captain *Brocket*, Mr. *Crump*, and divers others. Also the great river of *Gambria*, by captain *Jobson*, who is returned in thither again, in the year 1626, with Mr. *William Grent*, and thirteen or fourteen others, to stay in the country, to discover some way to those rich mines of *Gogo* or *Tumbatu*, from whence it is supposed the *Moors* of *Barbary* have their gold, and the certainty of those supposed descriptions and relations of those interior parts, which daily the more they are fought into, the more they are corrected: For surely those interior parts of *Africa*, are little known to either *English*, *French* or *Dutch*, though they use much the coast; therefore we will make little bold with the observations of the *Portugals*.

A brief description of the most unknown parts of Africa.

## CHAP. XIX.

*The strange discoveries and observations of the Portugals in Africa.*

How the  
Portugals  
coasted to  
the East-  
Indies.

THE Portugals on those parts have the glory, who first coasting along this western shore of Africa, to find passage to the East-Indies, within this 150 years, even from the Streights of Gibraltar, about the cape of *Bonne Esperance* to the *Perfian Gulf*, and thence all along the *Asian* coast to the *Moluccas*, have subjected many great kingdoms, erected many commonwealths, built many great and strong cities; and where is it they have not been by trade or force? No not so much as *Cape de Verd* and *Sermleone*; but most bays or rivers, where there is any trade to be had, especially gold, or convenience for refreshment, but they are scattered; living so amongst those blacks, by time and cunning, they seem to be naturalized amongst them. As for the isles of the *Canaries*, they have fair towns, many villages, and many thousands of people rich in commodities.

Or Ed-  
ward.

*Ordoardo Lopez*, a noble Portuguese, Anno Dom. 1578, imbarcking himself for Congo, to trade, where he found such entertainment, finding the king much oppressed with enemies, he found means to bring in the Portuguese to assist him, whereby he planted there christian religion, and spent most of his life to bring those countries to the crown of Portugal, which he describeth in this manner.

The king-  
dom of  
Congo.

The kingdom of Congo is about 600 miles diameter any way, the chief city, called *St. Savadore*, seated upon an exceeding high mountain, 150 miles from the sea, very fertile, and inhabited with more than 100000 persons, where is an excellent prospect over all the plain countries about it well water'd, lying (as it were) in the center of this kingdom, over all which the Portuguese now command, though but an handful in comparison of the negroes. They have flesh and fruits very plentiful of divers sorts.

Wild ele-  
phants.

This kingdom is divided into five provinces, viz. *Bamba*, *Sundi*, *Pango*, *Batta* and *Pembo*; but *Bamba* is the principal, and can afford 400000 men of war. Elephants are bred over all those provinces, and of wonderful greatness; though some report, they cannot kneel nor lie down, they can do both, and have their joints as other creatures for use: With their fore-feet they will leap upon trees to pull down the boughs, and are of that strength, they will shake a great *Coco* tree for the nuts, and pull down a good tree with their tusks, to

get the leaves to eat, as well as fedge and long grass, *Coco* nuts and berries, &c. which with their trunk they put in their mouth, and chew it with their smaller teeth; in most of those provinces, are many rich mines, but the negroes opposed the Portuguese for working in them.

The kingdom of *Angola* is wonderful populous, and rich in mines of silver, copper, and most other metals; fruitful in all manner of food, and sundry sorts of cattle, but dogs flesh they love better than any other meat; they use few clothes, and no armour; bows, arrows and clubs are their weapons. But the Portuguese are well armed against those engines, and do buy yearly of those blacks more than five thousand slaves, and many are people exceeding well proportioned.

The *Anchios* are a most valiant nation, but most strange to all about them. Their arms are bows, short and small, wrapped about with serpents skins of divers colours, but so smooth, you would think them all one with the wood, and it makes them very strong; their strings little twigs, but exceeding tough and flexible; their arrows short, which they shoot with an incredible quickness. They have short axes of brass and copper for swords; wonderful, loyal and faithful, and exceeding simple, yet so active, they skip amongst the rocks like goats. They trade with them of *Nubia* and *Congo* for *Lamach*, which is a small kind of shell-fish, of an excellent azure colour, male and female, but the female they hold most pure; they value them at divers prices, because they are of divers sorts, and those they use for coin, to buy and sell, as we do gold and silver; nor will they have any other money in all those countries, for which they give elephants teeth; and slaves for salt, silk, linen cloth, glass-beads, and such like Portuguese commodities.

They circumcise themselves, and mark their faces with sundry flashes from their infancy. They keep shamblers of mens flesh, as if it were beef or other victuals; for when they cannot have a good market for their slaves, or their enemies they take, they kill, and sell them in this manner; some are so resolute, in shewing how much they scorn death, they will offer themselves and slaves, to this butchery to their prince and friends; and though there be many nations will eat their enemies in *America* and *Asia*, yet none but those are known to

The king-  
dom of  
Angola.

The king-  
dom of  
Anchios.

A strong  
money.

Shamblers  
of mens  
flesh.



Africa.

all as sedge and  
berries, &c.  
y put in their  
smaller teeth;  
are many rich  
of the Portu-

is wonderful  
of silver, cop-  
ls; fruitful in  
undry sorts of  
ove better than  
w clothes, and  
clubs are  
*Portuguese*  
engines, and do  
more than five  
are people ex-

valiant nation,  
at them. Their  
small, wrapped  
divers colours,  
think them all  
it makes them  
tle twigs, but  
e; their arrows  
ch an incredible  
rt axes of brass  
onderful, loyal  
simple, yet so  
the rocks like  
hem of *Nubia*  
hich is a small  
excellent azure  
but the female  
value them at  
of divers sorts,  
n, to buy and  
ilver; nor will  
y in all those  
give elephants  
f, silk, linen  
like *Portugal*

ves, and mark  
hes from their  
bles of moss  
other victuals;  
a good market  
nies they take,  
this manner;  
ing how much  
ffer themselves  
to their prince  
ere be many  
ies in *America*  
are known to  
be

Divers  
nations  
yet un-  
known, and  
the won-  
ders of  
Africa.

The king-  
dom of  
Angola.

The king-  
dom of  
Angola.

A brave  
man.

Sham-  
of war.  
ship.

be so mad, as to eat their slaves and friends  
also.

Religions and idols they have as many  
as nations and humours; but the devil  
hath the greatest part of their devotions,  
whom all those blacks do say is white;  
for there are no saints but blacks.

But besides those great kingdoms of *Congo*, *Angola* and *Azicbi*, in those unrequented  
parts are the kingdoms of *Lango*, *Matania*,  
*Battua*, *Sofala*, *Mozambique*, *Quivola*, the  
*Ile of St. Lawrence*, *Mombaza*, *Melinda*, the  
empires of *Monomotapa*, *Monemugi* and  
*Prebyter John*, with whom they have a kind  
of trade, and their rites, customs, cli-  
mates, temperatures and commodities by  
relation: Also great lakes, that deserve  
the names of seas, and huge mountains of  
divers sorts, as some scorched with heat,  
some covered with snow; the mountains  
of the sun, also of the moon, some of chry-  
stal, some of iron, some of silver, and  
mountains of gold, with the original of  
*Nilus*; likewise sundry sorts of cattle, fishes,  
fowls, strange beasts and monstrous ser-  
pents; for *Africa* was always noted to be a  
fruitful mother of such terrible creatures,  
who meeting at their watering places, which  
are but ponds in desert places, in regard of  
the heat of the countrey, and their extremi-  
ties of nature, make strange copulations,  
and so ingender those extraordinary mon-

sters. Of all these you may read in the hi-  
story of this *Edward Lopez*, translated into  
*English* by *Abraham Hariswel*, and dedicated  
to *John* lord archbishop of *Canterbury*,  
1597. But because the particulars are most  
concerning the conversion of those pagans,  
by a good poor priest, that first converted  
a noble man, to convert the king, and  
the rest of the nobility; sent for so many  
priests and ornaments into *Portugal*, to so-  
lemnize their baptisms with such magnifi-  
cence, which was performed with such  
strange curiosities, that those poor negroes  
adored them as gods, till the priests grew  
to that wealth, a bishop was sent to rule  
over them, which they would not endure,  
which endangered to spoil all before they  
could be reconciled. But not so trouble  
you too long with those rarities of uncer-  
tainties; let us return again to *Barbary*,  
where the wars being ended, and *Befferes*  
possessed of *Morocco*, and his father's trea-  
sure, a new bruit arose amongst them, that  
*Muly Sidan* was raising an army against  
him, who after took his brother *Befferes*  
prisoner; but by reason of the uncertainty,  
and the perfidious, treacherous, bloody mur-  
ders rather than war, amongst those perfid-  
ious, barbarous *Moors*, *Smith* returned  
with *Merham*, and the rest to *Saffee*, and so  
aboard his ship, to try some other conclu-  
sions at sea.

## CHAP. XX.

*A brave sea-fight betwixt two Spanish men of war, and captain Merham, with Smith.*

*Merham*, a captain of a man of war  
then in the road, invited captain  
*Smith* and two or three more of them a-  
board with him, where he spared not any  
thing he had to express his kindness, to bid  
them welcome, till it was too late to go on  
shore, so that necessity constrained them to  
stay aboard; a fairer evening could not be;  
yet ere midnight, such a storm did arise,  
they were forced to let slip cable and an-  
chor, and put to sea; spooning before the  
wind, till they were driven to the *Canaries*;  
in the calms they accommodated them-  
selves, hoping this strange accident might  
yet produce some good event; not long it  
was before they took a small bark coming  
from *Tenerif*, loaded with wine; three or  
four more they chased, two they took, but  
found little in them, save a few passengers,  
that told them of five *Dutch* men of war,  
about the isles; so that they stood for *Boia-  
dora*, upon the *African* shore, betwixt which

Vol. II.

and cape *Noa*, they descry'd two sail. *Mer-  
ham* intending to know what they were,  
hailed them; very civilly they danced their  
topsails, and desired the man of war to  
come aboard them, and take what he would,  
for they were but two poor distressed *Biskay-  
ners*. But *Merham*, the old fox, seeing him-  
self in the lion's paws, sprung his louse, the  
other tacked after him, and came close up  
to his nether quarter, gave his broad-side,  
and so loused up to windward; the vice-  
admiral did the like, and at the next bout,  
the admiral with a noise of trumpets, and  
all his ordnance, murderers and muskets,  
boarded him on his broad-side; the other  
in like manner on his ley quarter, that it  
was so dark, there was little light, but fire  
and smoak; long he stayed not, before he  
fell off, leaving 4 or 5 of his men sprawl-  
ing over the grating; after they had bat-  
tered *Merham* about an hour, they boarded  
him again as before, and threw four ked-

X x x

gars

gars or grapnels in iron chains, then shearing off, they thought so to have torn down the grating; but the admiral's yard was so intangled in the shrouds, *Merbam* had time to discharge two cross-bar shot amongst them, and divers bolts of iron made for that purpose, against his bow, that made such a breach, he feared they both should have sunk for company; so that the *Spaniards* was as yare in slipping his chained grapnels, as *Merbam* was in cutting the tackling, kept fast their yards in his shrouds; the vice-admiral presently cleared himself, but spared neither his ordnance nor muskets to keep *Merbam* from getting away, till the admiral had repaired his leak; from twelve at noon, till six at night, they thus interchanged one volley for another; then the vice-admiral fell on stern, staying for the admiral that came up again to him, and all that night stood after *Merbam*, that shaped his course for *Mamora*; but such small way they made, the next morning they were not three leagues off from cape *Noa*. The two *Spanish* men of war, for so they were, and well appointed, taking it in scorn as it seemed, with their chafe, broad-side and stern, the one after the other, within musket shot, plying their ordnance; and after an hours work, commanded *Merbam* amain for the king of *Spain* upon fair quarter; *Merbam* drank to them, and so discharged his quarter-pieces: Which pride the *Spaniard* to revenge, boarded him again, and many of them were got to the top to unslung the main-sail, which the master and some others from the round-

house, caused to their cost to come tumbling down; about the round-house the *Spaniards* were so pelted, that they were forced to the great cabin and blew it up; the smoke and fire was so vehement, as they thought the ship on fire; they in the fore-castle were no less assaulted, that they blew up a piece of the grating, with a great many of *Spaniards* more; then they cleared themselves with all speed, and *Merbam* with as much expedition to quench the fire with wet cloaths and water, which began to grow too fast. The *Spaniard* still playing upon him with all the shot they could; the open places presently they covered with old sails, and prepared themselves to fight to the last man. The angry *Spaniard* seeing the fire quenched, hung out a flag of truce to have but a parley; but that desperate *Merbam* knew there was but one way with him, and would have none, but the report of his ordnance, which he did know well how to use for his best advantage. Thus they spent the next afternoon, and half the night, when the *Spaniards* either lost them or left them. Seven and twenty men *Merbam* had slain, and sixteen wounded, and could find they had received 140 great shot. A wounded *Spaniard* they kept alive confessed they had lost 100 men in the admiral, which they did fear would sink ere she could recover a port. Thus reaccommodating their sails, they sailed for *Santa Cruz*, cape *Goa* and *Magadore*, till they came again to *Saffee*, and then he returned into *England*.

## CHAP. XXI.

*The continuation of the general history of Virginia, the Summer-Isles and New-England; with their present estate from 1624 to this present 1629.*

Concerning these countries, I would be sorry to trouble you with repeating one thing twice, as with their maps, commodities, people, government and religion yet known; the beginning of these plantations, their numbers and names, with the names of the adventurers, the yearly proceedings of every governor both here and there. As for the misprisions, neglect, grievances, and the causes of all those rumours, losses and crosses that have happened; I refer you to the general history, where you shall find all this at large, especially to those pages where you may read my letter of advice to the council and company, what of necessity must be done, or lose all and leave the country, page 70, what commodities

I sent home, page 163, my opinion and offer to the company, to feed and defend the colonies, page 150, my account to them here of my actions there, page 162, my seven answers to his majesty's commissioners: Seven questions what hath hindered *Virginia*, and the remedy, page 165. How those noble gentlemen spent near two years in perusing all letters came from thence; and the differences betwixt many factions, both here and there, with their complaints; especially about theillery which should have been a new office in *London*, for the well ordering the sale of tobacco, that 2500 pounds should yearly have been raised out of it, to pay four or five hundred pounds yearly to the govern-

nor

nor of  
dred to  
of fort  
clear  
there  
pounds  
thing h  
in Eng  
lotterie  
of com  
othero  
ship to  
bours  
the tit  
colour  
all the  
150000  
comme  
have be  
people  
good  
this  
20000  
spent  
conclu  
with fo

Then  
account  
appoint  
order fo  
in a ma  
wider  
wonder  
expecta  
I cannot  
have tin  
ing wi  
would a  
me any  
they ha  
aller t  
ver of  
Sabb's  
most p  
particul  
wants  
years  
twenty  
or any  
do know

Now  
neral, v  
and Cas  
retained  
affirm,  
captain  
tain Re  
tain Te  
nor, of t  
The go  
council  
reft rep  
every th  
ing, to



come tumb-  
 the *Span-*  
 were forced  
 it up; the  
 ent, as they  
 in the fore-  
 at they blew  
 a great ma-  
 they cleared  
*Merbam* with  
 the fire with  
 h began to  
 still playing  
 y could; the  
 red with old  
 to fight to  
 niard seeing  
 flag of truce  
 at desperate  
 ne way with  
 at the report  
 know well  
 tage. Thus  
 and half the  
 ner lost them  
 y men *Mer-*  
 ounded, and  
 o great hor.  
 ot alive con-  
 in the admi-  
 sink ere the  
 reaccommod-  
 d for *Sanita*  
 re, till they  
 he returned

and New-  
 629.

opinion and  
 and defend  
 account to  
 , page 163.  
 efty's com-  
 at hath hin-  
 , page 165.  
 nt near two  
 came from  
 twixt many  
 with their  
 the fallery  
 w office in  
 the file of  
 ould yearly  
 pay four or  
 the gover-  
 nor

nor of that company, two or three hun-  
 dred to his deputy; the rest into stipends  
 of forty or fifty pounds yearly for their  
 clerks and other officers which were never  
 there, page 153; but not one hundred  
 pounds for all them in *Virginia*, nor any  
 thing for the most part of the adventurers  
 in *England*, except the undertakers for the  
 lotteries, setters out of ships, adventurers  
 of commodities, also their factors and many  
 other officers, there employ'd only by friend-  
 ship to raise their fortunes out of the la-  
 bours of the true industrious planters by  
 the title of their office, who under the  
 colour of sincerity, did pillage and deceive  
 all the rest most cunningly: For more than  
 150000 pounds have been spent out of the  
 common stock, besides many thousands  
 have been there consumed, and near 7000  
 people that there died, only for want of  
 good order and government, otherwise long  
 ere this there would have been more than  
 20000 people, where after twenty years  
 spent only in complement and trying new  
 conclusions, was remaining scarce 1500,  
 with some few cattle.

Then the company dissolved, but no  
 account of any thing, so that his majesty  
 appointed commissioners to oversee and give  
 order for their proceedings. Being thus  
 in a manner left to themselves, since then  
 within these four years, you shall see how  
 wonderfully they have increased beyond  
 expectation; but so exactly as I desired,  
 I cannot relate unto you: For altho' I  
 have tired my self in seeking and discour-  
 ting with those returned thence, more than  
 would a voyage to *Virginia*; few can tell  
 me any thing, but of that place or places  
 they have inhabited, and he is a great tra-  
 veller that hath gone up and down the ri-  
 ver of *James-Town*, been at *Pamaunke*,  
*Smith's-Isles*, or *Acomack*; wherein for the  
 most part, they keep one tune of their now  
 particular abundance, and their former  
 wants having been there, some sixteen  
 years, some twelve, some six, some near  
 twenty, &c. But of their general estate,  
 or any thing of worth, the most of them  
 do know very little to any purpose.

Now the most I could understand in ge-  
 neral, was from the relation of Mr. *Nathani-*  
*el Cassey*, that lived there with me, and  
 returned *Anno Dom. 1627*; and some others  
 affirm, Sir *George Yerely* was governor,  
 captain *Francis West*, Dr. *John Pott*, cap-  
 tain *Roger Smith*, captain *Matthews*, cap-  
 tain *Tucker*, Mr. *Clabourn* and Mr. *Far-*  
*rer*, of the council: Their habitations many.  
 The governor, with two or three of the  
 council, are for most part at *James-Town*, the  
 rest repair thither as there is occasion; but  
 every three months they have a general meet-  
 ing, to consider of their publick affairs.

Their numbers then were about 1500, *Their*  
 some say rather 2000, divided into seven-  
 teen or eighteen several plantations; the  
 greatest part thereof, towards the falls, are  
 so inclosed with palisadoes they regard  
 not the *Salvages*; and amongst those plan-  
 tations above *James-Town*, they have now  
 found means to take plenty of fish, as well  
 with lines as nets, and where the waters  
 are the largest, having means they need  
 not want.

Upon this river they seldom see any *Their con-*  
*Salvages*, but in the woods many times *dition with*  
 their fires: Yet some few there are, that up- *the salva-*  
 on their opportunity, have slain some few *ges.*  
 straglers, which have been revenged with  
 the death of so many of themselves; but no  
 other attempt hath been made upon them  
 this two or three years.

Their cattle, namely, oxen, kine, bulls, *Their in-*  
 they imagine to be about 2000; goats great *crease of*  
 store and great increase; the wild hogs, *cattle and*  
 which are infinite, are destroy'd and eaten *poultry.*  
 by the *Salvages*; but no family is so poor  
 that hath not tame swine sufficient; and  
 for poultery, he is a very bad husband,  
 that breedeth not an hundred in a year, and  
 the richer sort doth daily feed on them.

For bread they have plenty, and so good, *Plenty of*  
 that those that make it well, better cannot *corn.*  
 be: Divers have much *English* corn, espe-  
 cially Mr. *Abraham Perce*, which prepared  
 this year to sow two hundred acres of *Eng-*  
*lish* wheat, and as much with barley, feed-  
 ing daily about the number of sixty per-  
 sons at his own charges.

For drink, some malt the *Indian* corn, *Their*  
 others barley, of which they make good *drink.*  
 ale, both strong and finall, and such plenty  
 thereof, few of the upper planters drink  
 any water: But the better sort are well fur-  
 nish'd with sack, *Aquaviva* and good *Eng-*  
*lish* beer.

The servants commonly feed upon milk *Their ser-*  
 homily, which is bruised *Indian* corn pound- *vants diet.*  
 ed and boil'd thick, and milk for the fawce;  
 but boil'd with milk, the best of all will feed  
 oft on it, and leave their flesh; with milk,  
 butter and cheese; with fish, bulls-flesh,  
 for they seldom kill any other, &c. And e-  
 very one is so applied to his labour about  
 tobacco and corn, which doth yield them  
 such profit, they never regarded any food  
 from the *Salvages*, nor have they any trade  
 or conference with them them, but upon  
 meer accidents and defiance: And now  
 the merchants have left it, there having  
 gone so many voluntary ships within these  
 two years, as have furnished them with  
 apparel, sack, *Aquaviva*, and all necessaries,  
 much better than any before.

For arms, there is scarce any man but *Their arms*  
 he is furnish'd with a piece, a jack, a coat *and exer-*  
 of *cise.*

of male, a sword or rapier; and every holyday, every plantation doth exercise their men in arms, by which means hunting and fowling, the most part of them are most excellent marksmen.

*Their health and discoveries.*

For discoveries they have made none, nor any other commodity than tobacco do they apply themselves unto, tho' never any was planted at first. And whereas the country was heretofore held most intemperate and contagions by many, now they have houses, lodgings, victuals, and the sun hath power to exhale up the moist vapours of the earth, where they have cut down the wood, which before it could not, being covered with spreading tops of high trees; they find it much more healthful than before; and for their numbers few countries are less troubled with death, sickness or any other disease, or have their overgrown women become more fruitful.

*The present estate of Virginia 1629.*

Since this, Sir George Yerely died 1628, captain West succeeded him, but about a year after, returned for England: Now Dr. Pool is governor, and the rest of the council as before: *James-Town* is yet their chief seat, most of the wood destroyed, little corn there planted, but all converted into pasture and gardens, wherein doth grow all manner of herbs and roots we have in England, in abundance, and as good grass as can be. Here most of their cattle do feed, their owners being most some one way, some another, about their plantations, and return again when they please, or any shipping comes in to trade. Here in the winter they have hay for their cattle, but in other places they browse upon wood, and the great hulks of their corn, with some corn in them, doth keep them well.

*Mr. Hutchins. Five thousand people. Five thousand cattle. Goats, hogs, and poultry very infinite.*

Mr. Hutchins saith, they have 2000 cattle, and about 5000 people; but Master Floud, John Daves, William Emerson, and divers others say about 5000 people, and 5000 kine, calves, oxen and bulls; for goats, hogs and poultry, corn, fish, deer, and many sorts of other wild beast, and fowl in their season, they have so much more than they spend, they are able to feed three or four hundred more than they have; and do oft much relieve many ships, both there and for their return; and this last year was there at least two or three and twenty sale. They have oft much salt-fish from *New-England*, but fresh fish enough, when they will take it; peaches in

abundance at *Kekoughtan*; apples, pears, apricocks, vines, figs, and other fruits some have planted that prospered exceedingly, but their diligence about tobacco, left them to be spoiled by the cattle, yet now they begin to revive; Mrs. Pearce, an honest industrious woman, hath been there near twenty years, and now returned, saith, she hath a garden at *James-Town*, containing three or four acres, where in one year she hath gathered near an hundred bushels of excellent figs; and that of her own provision she can keep a better house in *Virginia*, than here in *London* for 3 or 400 pounds a year, yet went thither with little or nothing. They have some tame geese, ducks and turkeys. The masters now do so train up their servants and youths in shooting deer and fowl, that the youths will kill them as well as their masters. They have two brew-houses, but they find the *Indian* corn so much better than ours, they begin to leave sowing it. Their cities and towns are only scattered houses, they call plantations, as our country villages, but no ordnance mounted. The forts captain Smith left a building, so ruined, there is scarce mention where they were; no discoveries of any thing more, than the curing of tobacco, by which hitherto, being so present a commodity of gain, it hath brought them to this abundance; but that they are so disjointed, and every one commander of himself to plant what he will: They are now so well provided, that they are able to subsist, if they would join together, now to work upon soap-shes, iron, rape-oil, mader, pitch and tar, flax and hemp; as for their tobacco, there comes from many places such abundance, and the charge to great, it is not worth the bringing home.

*Commodities much making, black wal-nut, ash for piles, oak for plants, hawthorn for cherries.*

There is gone, and now a going, divers ships, as captain *Perse*, captain *Prine*, with Sir John Harvey to be their governor, with two or three hundred people; there is also some from *Bristol* and other parts of the west-country a preparing, which I heartily pray to God to bless, and send them a happy and prosperous voyage.

Nathaniel Cause, master Hutchins, master Floud, John Daves, William Emerson, master William Barnett, master Cooper, and others.

CHAP.

The p

FR  
an  
ordn  
they  
read  
tain  
fort  
they  
gilt  
being  
tairs  
have  
ling  
there  
wonder  
figs, w  
herbs,  
dance.  
whale  
shore  
over an  
that the  
was all  
dash  
a good  
we con  
bruise;  
blowing  
long as  
for two  
The  
Bell, w  
ger Woo  
man of  
time in  
bout 2  
dren, w  
greatest  
too mu  
the pit  
women

The p

W  
lon  
self w  
christi  
the fol  
the cou  
westerli  
Vol

Confidera  
tions about  
the life of  
true.

ples, pears,  
other fruits  
ered exceed-  
out tobacco,  
e cattle, yet  
s. Pearce, an  
h been there  
urned, faith,  
rown, contain-  
in one year  
hundred bushels  
ner own pro-  
nouse in Vir-  
or 3 or 400  
er with little  
e tame geese,  
sters now do  
and youths in  
the youths  
asters. They  
they find the  
in ours, they  
eir cities and  
ies, they call  
villages, but  
e forts cap-  
ruined, there  
were; no dis-  
an the curing  
to, being lo-  
ain, it hath  
ee; but that  
ery one com-  
that he will  
d, that they  
uld join to-  
soap-ashes,  
and tar, flax  
bacco, there  
abundance,  
is not worth  
going, divers  
Prine, with  
vornor, with  
there is also  
parts of the  
which I hear-  
d send them  
ge.

ter Hutchins,  
Davis, Wil-  
William Bar-  
and others.

CHAP.

## of Capt. JOHN SMITH.

357

## CHAP. XXII.

*The proceedings and present estate of the Summer Isles, from Anno Dom. 1624, to this present 1629.*

FROM the *Summer Isles*, Mr. Ireland, and divers others report, their forts, ordnance and proceedings, are much as they were in the Year 1622. as you may read in the general history, pag. 199. Captain Woodhouse governour. There are few forts of any fruits in the *West Indies*, but they grow there in abundance; yet the fertility of the soil in many places decayeth, being planted every year; for their plantains, which is a most delicate fruit, they have lately found a way by pickling or drying them, to bring them over into *England*, there being no such fruit in *Europe*, and wonderful for increase. For fish, flesh, figs, wine, and all sorts of most excellent herbs, fruits and roots they have in abundance. In this governour's time, a kind of whale, or rather a *Jubaria*, was driven on shore in *Southampton* tribe from the west, over an infinite number of rocks so bruised, that the water in the bay where she lay, was all oily, and the rocks about it all bedast with parmacitty, congealed like ice, a good quantity we gathered, with which we commonly cured any boil, hurt or bruise; some burnt it in their lamps, which blowing out, the very snuff will burn so long as there is any of the oil remaining, for two or three days together.

The next governour was captain Philip Bell, whose time being expired, captain Roger Wood possess'd his place, a worthy gentleman of good desert, and hath lived a long time in the country; their numbers are about 2 or 3000 Men, Women and Children, who increase there exceedingly; their greatest complaint is want of apparel, and too much custom, and too many officers; the pity is, there are no more men than women, yet no great mischief, because

there is so much less pride: the cattle they have increase exceedingly; their forts are well maintained by the merchants here, and planters there; to be brief, this isle is an excellent bit to rule a great horse.

All the cehow birds and egbirds are gone; seldom any wild cats seen; no rats to speak off; but the worms are yet very troublesome; the people very healthful, and the ravens gone; fish enough, but not so near the shore as it used, by the much beating it; it is an isle that hath such a rampire and a ditch, and for the quantity so manned, victualled, and fortified, as few in the world do exceed it, or is like it.

The 22d of March, two ships came from thence; the *Peter-Bonaventure*, near 200 Tons, and sixteen Pieces of ordnance; the captain, Thomas Sherwin; the master, Mr. Edward Some, like him in condition, a goodly, lusty, proper, valiant man: The *Lydia*, wherein was Mr. Anthony Thorne, a smaller ship, were chased by eleven ships of *Dunkirk*; being thus over-match'd, captain Sherwin was taken by them in *Torbay*, only his valiant master was slain; the ship with about seventy *English* men they carried betwixt *Dover* and *Calais* to *Dunkirk*; but the *Lydia* safely recovered *Dartmouth*.

These noble adventurers for all those losses patiently do bear them; but they hope the king and state will understand it is worth keeping, tho' it afford nothing but tobacco, and that now worth little or nothing, custom and freight pay'd, yet it is worth keeping, and not supplanting; tho' great Men feel not those losses, yet gardeners, carpenters and smiths, do pay for it.

From the Relation of Robert Chefevan and others.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*The proceedings and present estate of New England, since 1624, to this present 1629.*

WHEN I went first to the north part of *Virginia*, where the westerly colony had been planted, it had dissolved itself within a year, and there was not one christian in all the land. I was set forth at the sole charge of four merchants of *London*; the country being then reputed by your westerlings, a most rocky, barren, desolate

Vol. II.

desart; but a good return I brought from thence, with the maps and relations I made of the country, which I made so manifest, some of them did believe me, and they were well embraced both by the *Londoners* and the *Westerlings*, for whom I had promised to undertake it, I thinking to have joined them all together; but that might well

Y y y

have

have been a work of *Hercules*. Betwixt them long there was much contention; the *Londoners* indeed went bravely forward; but in three or four years, I and my friends consumed many hundred pounds amongst the *Plimothians*, who only fed me with delays, promises and excuses, but no performance of any thing to any purpose. In the interim, many particular ships went thither, and finding my relations true, and that I had not taken that I brought home from the *Frenchmen*, as had been reported; yet farther, for my pains to discredit me, and my calling it *New-England*, they obscured, and shadowed it, with the title of *Canada*, till at my humble suit, it pleased our most royal king *Charles*, whom God long keep, bless and preserve, then prince of *Wales*, to confirm it with my map and book, by the title of *New-England*; the gain thence returning, did make the fame thereof so increase, that thirty, forty, or fifty sail went yearly only to trade and fish; but nothing would be done for a plantation, till about some hundred of your brownists of *England*, *Amsterdam* and *Leyden*, went to *New Plimouth*, whose humorous ignorances, caused them for more than a year to endure a wonderful deal of misery, with an infinite patience; saying my books and maps were much better cheap to teach them than myself; many other have used the like good husbandry, that have pay'd soundly in trying their self-will'd conclusions; but those in time doing well, divers others have in small handfuls undertaken to go there, to be several lords and kings of themselves, but most vanished to nothing. Notwithstanding the fishing ships, made such good returns, at last it was ingrossed by twenty patentees, that divided my map into twenty parts, and cast lots for their shares; but money not coming in as they expected, procured a proclamation, none should go thither without their licences to fish; but for every thirty tuns of shipping, to pay them five pounds; besides, upon great penalties, neither to trade with the natives, cut down wood for the stages, without giving satisfaction, tho' all the country is nothing but wood, and none to make use of it, with many such other pretences, for to make this country plant itself, by its own wealth: Hereupon most men grew so discontented, that few or none would go; so that the patentees, who never a one of them had been there, seeing those projects would not prevail, have since not hindered any to go that would, that within these few last years, more have gone thither than ever.

*A new plantation, 1629.* Now this year 1629, a great company of people of good rank, zeal, means and

quality, have made a great stock, and with six good ships in the months of *April* and *May*, they set sail from *Thames*, for the bay of the *Massachusetts*, otherwise called *Charles's* river, viz. the *George Bonaventure*, of twenty pieces of ordnance, the *Talbot* nineteen, the *Lions-whelp* eight, the *May-flower* fourteen, the *Four Sisters* fourteen, the *Pilgrim* four, with three hundred and fifty men, women and children; also an hundred and fifteen head of cattle, as horse, mares, and neat beast; one and forty goats, some conies, with all provision for household and apparel; six pieces of great ordnance for a fort, with mulkets, pikes, corselets, drums, colours, with all provision necessary for a plantation, for the good of man; other particulars I understand of no more, than is writ in the general history of those countries.

But you are to understand, that the noble lord chief justice *Popham*, judge *Dodderge*, the right honourable earls of *Pembroke*, *Southampton*, *Salisbury*, and the rest, as I take it, they did all think, as I and they that went with me, did; that, had those two countries been planted, as it was intended, no other nation should complaint betwixt us. If ever the king of *Spain* and we should fall foul, those countries being so capable of all materials for shipping, by this might have been owners of a good fleet of ships, and have relieved a whole navy from *England* upon occasion; yea, and have furnished *England* with the most easternly commodities; and now since, seeing how conveniently the *Summer Isles* fell to our shares, so near the *West-Indies*, we might with much more facility than the *Dutchmen* have invaded the *West-Indies*, that doth now put in practise, what so long hath been advised on, by many an honest *English* statesman.

Those countries, captain *Smith* oft times used to call his children that never had mother; and well he might, for few fathers ever payed dearer for so little content; and for those that would truly understand, how many strange accidents hath befallen them and him; how oft up, how oft down, sometimes near despair, and ere long flourishing, cannot but conceive God's infinite mercies and favours towards them. Had his designs been to have persuaded men to a mine of gold, though few do conceive either the charge or pains in refining it, nor the power nor care to defend it; or some new invention to pass to the south-sea, or some strange plot to invade some strange monastery, or some portable country, or some chargeable fleet to take some rich carocks in the *East-Indies*; or letters of mart to rob some poor merchants; what multitudes

*The effect of negard-line's.*

*Spencer left to rest the great city of Mans.*

*Captain Charles Ley.*

*Sir Thomas Roe.*

*Captain Morton.*

multitudes of both people and money would contend to be first employed? But in those noble endeavours (now) how few of quality, unless it be to beg some monopoly; and those seldom seek the common good, but the commons goods, as you may read at large in his general history, pag. 217, 218, 219, his general observations and reasons for this plantation; for yet those countries are not so forward, but they may become as miserable as ever, if better courses be not taken than are; as this *Smith* will plain-

ly demonstrate to his majesty, or any other noble person of ability, liable generously to undertake it; how within a short time to make *Virginia* able to resist any enemy, that as yet lieth open to all, and yield the king more custom within these few years, in certain staple commodities, than ever it did in tobacco; which now not being worth bringing home, the custom will be as uncertain to the king, as dangerous to the plantations.

CHAP. XXIV.

*A brief discourse of divers voyages made unto the goodly country of Guinea, and the great river of the Amazons; relating also the present plantation there.*

IT is not unknown how that most industrious and honourable knight, *sir Walter Raleigh*, in the year of our Lord 1595, taking the ile of *Trinidad*, fell with the coast of *Guiana*, northward of the line 10 degrees, and coasted the coast, and searched up the river *Oranoco*; where understanding that twenty several voyages had been made by the *Spaniards*, in discovering this coast and river, to find a passage to the great city of *Mano*, called by them the *Eldorado*, or the golden city: He did his utmost to have found some better satisfaction than relations: But means failing him, he left his trusty servant *Francis Sparrow* to seek it, who wandering up and down those countries, some fourteen or fifteen years, unexpectedly returned. I have heard him say, he was led blinded into this city by *Indians*; but little discourse of any purpose, touching the largeness of the report of it; his body seeming as a man of an incurable consumption, shortly died here after in *England*. There are above thirty fair rivers that fall into the sea, between the river of the *Amazons* and *Oranoco*, which are some nine degrees asunder. In the year 1605, captain *Ley*, brother to that noble knight, *sir Oliver Ley*, with divers others, planted himself in the river *Weapoco*, wherein I should have been a party; but he died, and there lies buried, and the supply mis-carrying, the rest escaped as they could.

*Sir Thomas Roe*, well known to be a most noble gentleman, before he went lord ambassador to the great *Mogul*, or the great *Turk*, spent a year or two upon this coast, and about the river of the *Amazons*, wherein he most employed captain *Matthew Morton*, an expert seaman in the discovery of this famous river, a gentleman that was the first shot, and mortally supposed wounded to death, with me in *Virginia*, yet since hath been twice with command in the *East-Indies*.

also captain *William White*, and divers other worthy and industrious gentlemen, both before and since, have spent much time and charge to discover it more perfectly, but nothing more effected for a plantation, till it was undertaken by captain *Robert Harcote* 1609.

This worthy gentleman, after he had by commission made a discovery to his mind, left his brother *Michael Harcote*, with some fifty or sixty men in the river *Weapoco*, and so presently returned to *England*, where he obtained, by the favour of prince *Henry*, a large patent for all that coast called *Guiana*, together with the famous river of *Amazons*, to him and his heirs: But so many troubles here surprized him, tho' he did his best to supply them, he was not able, only some few he sent over as passengers, with certain *Dutchmen*, but to small purpose. Thus this business lay dead for divers years, till *sir Walter Raleigh*, accompanied with many valiant soldiers and brave gentlemen, went his last voyage to *Guinea*, amongst the which was captain *Roger North*, brother to the right honourable the lord *Dudley North*, who upon this voyage having stayed, and seen divers rivers upon this coast, took such a liking to those countries, having had before this voyage, more perfect and particular information of the excellency of the great river of the *Amazons*, above any of the rest, by certain *Englishmen* returned so rich, from thence in good commodities, they would not go with *sir Walter Raleigh* in search of gold; that after his return for *England*, he endeavoured by his best abilities to interest his country and state in those fair regions, which by the way of letters patents unto divers noblemen and gentlemen of quality, was erected into a company and perpetuity for trade and plantation, not knowing of the interest of captain *Harcote*.

Whereupon,

Spartan  
left to seek  
the great  
city of  
Mano

Captain  
Charles  
Ley.

Sir Tho-  
mas Roe.

Captain  
Morton.

White.

Captain  
Harcote.

Notes of  
the country  
(1607).



Captain  
Roger  
North.

Whereupon, accompanied with 120 gentlemen and others, with a ship, a pinnace and two shallops, to remain in the country, he set sail from *Plimouth* the last of *April* 1620, and within seven weeks after he arrived well in the *Amazons*, only with the loss of one old man: Some hundred leagues they ran up the river to settle his men, where the sight of the country and people so contented them, that never men thought themselves more happy: Some *English* and *Irish* that had lived there some eight years, only supplied by the *Dutch*, he reduced to his company and to leave the *Dutch*: Having made a good voyage, to the value of more than the charge, he returned to *England* with divers good commodities besides tobacco: So that it may well be conceived, that if this action had not been thus crossed, the generality of *England* had by this time been won and encouraged therein. But the time was not yet come, that God would have this great business effected, by reason of the great power the lord *Gundamore*, ambassador for the king of *Spain*, had in *England*, to cross and ruin those proceedings; and so unfortunate captain *North* was in this business, he was twice committed prisoner to the *Tower*, and the goods detained till they were spoiled, who beyond all others, was by the much greatest adventurer and loser.

Notwithstanding all this, those that he had left in the *Amazons*, would not abandon the country. Captain *Thomas Panton*, a worthy gentleman, his lieutenant died. Captain *Charles Parker*, brother to the right honourable the lord *Morley*, lived there six years after; Mr. *John Christmas* five years, so well, they would not return, altho' they might, with divers other gentlemen of quality and others: All thus destitute of any supplies from *England*. But all authority being dissolved, want of government did more wrong their proceedings, than all other crosses whatsoever. Some relief they had sometime from the *Dutch*, who knowing their estates, gave what they pleased, and took what they list. Two brothers, gentlemen, *Thomas* and *William Hixon*, who stayed three years there, are now gone to stay in the *Amazons*, in the ships lately sent thither.

The business thus remaining in this sort, three private men left of that company, named Mr. *Thomas Warriner*, *John Rhodes*, and *Robert Bims*, having lived there about two years, came for *England*, and to be free from the disorders that did grow in the *Amazons*, for want of government amongst their countrymen, and to be quiet amongst themselves, made means to let themselves out for *St. Christophers*; their whole num-

ber being but fifteen persons that paid for their passage in a ship going for *Virginia*, where they remained a year before they were supplied, and then that was but four or five men. Thus this isle, by this small beginning, having no interruption by their own country, hath not got the start of the continent and main land of *Guinea*, which hath been laid apart, and let alone until that captain *North*, ever watching his best opportunity and advantage of time in the state, hath now again pursued, and set on foot his former design: Captain *Harcae* being now willing to surrender his grant, and to join with captain *North*, in passing a new patent, and to erect a company for trade and plantation in the *Amazons*, and all the coast and country of *Guinea* for ever. Whereupon, they have sent this present year in *January*, and since 1628, four ships, with near 200 persons; the first ship with 112 men, not one miscarried; the rest went since, not yet heard of; and they are preparing another with their best expedition; and since *January* are gone from *Holland*, 100 *English* and *Irish*, conducted by the old planters.

This great river lieth under the line; the two chief head lands north and south, are about three degrees asunder, the mouth of it is so full of many great and small isles, it is an easy matter for an unexperienced pilot to lose his way. It is held one of the greatest rivers in *America*, and as most men think in the world; and cometh down with such a fresh, it maketh the sea fresh, more than thirty miles from the shore. Captain *North* having seated his men about 100 leagues in the main, sent captain *William White*, with thirty gentlemen and others, in a pinnace of thirty tun, to discover farther, which they did some 200 leagues, where they found the river to divide itself into two parts, till then all full of islands, and a country most healthful, pleasant and fruitful; for they found food enough, and all returned safe and in good health: In this discovery, they saw many towns well inhabited, some with three hundred people, some with five, six, or seven hundred; and of some they understood to be of so many thousands, most differing very much, especially in their languages: Whereof they suppose by those *Indians*, they understand are many hundreds more, unfrequented till then by any christians, most of them stark naked, both men, women and children, but they saw not any such giant-like women as the rivers name importeth. But for those where captain *North* hath seated his company, it is not known where *Indians* were ever so kind to any nation, not sparing any pains, danger or labour, to feed and



CHAP. XXV.

*The beginning and proceedings of the new plantation of St. Christopher by Captain Warner.*

After Ralph Marifield and others, having furnished this worthy industrious gentleman, he arrived at St. Christopher, as is said, with fifteen men, the 28<sup>th</sup> of January 1623, viz. William Tisted, John Rhodes, Robert Bims, Mr. Bensfield, Sergeant Jones, Mr. Ware, William Ryle, Rowland Graycock, Mr. Bond, Mr. Langley, Mr. Weaver, Edward Warner, their captain's son, and now deputy governor, till his father's return, sergeant Aplan, one sailor and a cook: At their arrival, they found three Frenchmen, who sought to oppose captain Warner, and to set the Indians upon us; but at last we all became friends, and lived with the Indians a month, then we built a fort, and a house; and planting fruits, by September we made a crop of Tobacco; but upon the 19<sup>th</sup> of September came a hurricano and blew it away. All this while we lived upon cassado bread, potatoes, plantanes, pines, turtles, guanes, and fish plenty; for drink we had Nicknobby.

The 18<sup>th</sup> of March 1624, arrived captain Jefferson, with three men passengers in the Hopewell of London, with some trade for the Indians, and then we had another crop of tobacco, in the mean time the French had planted themselves in the other end of the isle; with this crop captain Warner returned for England in September 1625.

In his absence came in a French pinnace, under the command of Monsieur de Nombe, that told us, the Indians had slain some Frenchmen in other of the Caribbee isles, and that there were six peryagoes, which are huge great trees, formed as your canoos, but so laid out on the sides with boards, they will seem like a little galley: Six of those, with about four or five hundred strange Indians came unto us, we bad them be gone, but they would not; whereupon we and the French joined together, and upon the 5<sup>th</sup> of November set upon them, and put them to flight: Upon new-years even they came again, found three English going about the isle, whom they slew.

Until the 4<sup>th</sup> of August, we stood upon our guard, living upon the spoil, and did Vol. II.

and maintain them. The English follow their buildings, fortifications and sugar works; for which they have sent most expert men, and with them all things necessary for that purpose; to effect which, they want not the help of those kind Indians to produce; and many other good commodities, which (God willing) will ere long make plain and apparent to this kingdom, and all the adventurers and well-willers to this plantation, to be well worthy the cherishing and following with all alacrity.

nothing. But now captain Warner arriving again with near an hundred people, then we fell to work and planting as before; but upon the 4<sup>th</sup> of September, came such a hurricano, as blew down all our houses, tobacco, and two drums into the air we know not whither, drove two ships on shore that were both split; all our provision thus lost, we were very miserable, living only on what we could get in the wild woods, we made a small party of French and English to go aboard for provision, but in their returning home, eight French men were slain in the harbour.

Thus we continued till near June that the Tortles came in 1627, but the French being like to starve, sought to surprize us, and all the cassado, potatoes, and tobacco we had planted, but we did prevent them. The 26<sup>th</sup> of October, came in captain William Smith, in the Hopewell, with some ordnance, shot and powder, from the earl of Carlisle, with captain Pelham and thirty men; about that time also came the Plover, also a small ship of Bristow, with captain Warner's wife, and six or seven women more.

Upon the 25<sup>th</sup> of November, the Indians set upon the French, for some injury about their women, and slew six and twenty French men, five English, and three Indians. Their weapons are bows and arrows, their bows are never bent, but the string lies flat to the bow; their arrows a small reed, four or five foot long, headed some with the poisoned sting of the tail of a stingray, some with iron, some with wood, but all so poisoned, that if they draw but blood, the hurt is incurable.

The next day came in captain Charles Saltonstall, a young gentleman, son to Sir Samuel Saltonstall, who brought with him good store of all commodities to relieve the plantation; but by reason some Hollanders, and others had been there lately before him, who carried away with them all the tobacco, he was forced to put away all his commodities upon trust till the next crop; in the mean time he resolved there to stay, and employ himself and his company in plant-

Z z z z

imz

A hurricano.

Eight French slain.

1627

Three Indians slain.

The arrival of many English ships.

ing tobacco, hoping thereby to make a voyage, but before he could be ready to return for *England* a hurricano happening, his ship was split, to his great loss, being sole merchant and owner himself, notwithstanding forced to pay to the governor the fifth part of his tobacco, and for freight to *England*, three pence a pound, and nine pence a pound custom, which amounts together to more than threecore pound in the hundred pound, to the great discouragement of him and many others, that intended well to those plantations. Nevertheless he is gone again this present year 1629, with a ship of about three hundred tons, and very near two hundred people, with Sir *William Tuffton* governor for the *Barbadoes*, and divers gentlemen, and all manner of commodities fit for a plantation.

Captain *Prinn*, captain *Stone*, and divers others came in about *Christmas*; so that this last year, there hath been about thirty sail of *English*, *French* and *Dutch* ships, and all the *Indians* forced out of the isle, for they had done much mischief amongst the *French*, in cutting their throats, burning their houses, and spoiling their tobacco; amongst the rest *Tegamund*, a little child, the king's son, his parents being slain or fled, was by great chance saved, and carefully brought to *England*, by master *Merifield*, who brought him from thence, and bringeth him up as his own children.

The description of the isle.

It lieth seventeen degrees Northward of the line, about an hundred and twenty leagues from the *Cape de tres Puntas*, the nearest main land in *America*; it is about eight leagues in length, and four in breadth; an island amongst 100 isles in the *West-Indies*, called the *Caribbees*, where ordinarily all them that frequent the *West-Indies* refresh themselves; those, most of them are rocky, little and mountainous, yet frequented with the canibals; many of them inhabited, as *St. Domingo*, *St. Mattalin*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Vincent*, *Granada* and *Margarita*, to the southward; northward, none but *St. Christophers*, and that but lately; yet they will be ranging *Marigalanta*, *Guardalupo*, *Decado*, *Mouniferat*, *Antegua*, *Mevis*, *Bernardo*, *St. Martin* and *St. Bartholomew*, but the worst of the four isles possessed by the *Spaniards*, as *Portorico* or *Jamaica*, is better than them all; as for *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, they are worthy the title of two rich kingdoms, the rest not respected by the *Spaniards*, for want of harbours, and their better choice of good land, and profit in the main. But captain *Warner* having been very familiar with captain *Painion*, in the *Amazon*, hearing his information of

this *St. Christophers*; and having made a years tryal, as it is said, returned for *England*, and joining with master *Merifield* and his friends, got letters patents from king *James* to plant and possess it. Since then, the right honourable the earl of *Carlisle* hath got letters patents also, not only of that, but all the *Caribee Isles* about it, who is now chief lord of them, and the *English* his tenants that do possess them; over whom he appointeth such governors and officers as their affairs require; and although there be a great custom imposed upon them, considering their other charges, both to feed and maintain themselves; yet there is there, and now a going, near upon the number of three thousand people; where by reason of the rockiness and thicknes of the woods in the isle, it is difficult to pass, and such a surff of the sea goeth on the shore, ten may better defend, than fifty assault. In this isle are many springs, but yet water is scarce again in many places; the valleys and sides of the hills very fertile, but the mountains harsh, and of a sulphurous composition; all over-grown with *Palmetas*, cotton trees, *Lignum Vita*, and divers other sorts, but none like any in christendom, except those carried thither; the air very pleasant and healthful, but exceeding hot, yet so tempered with cool breaths, it seems very temperate to them, that are little used to it; the trees being always green, the days and nights always very near equal in length, always summer; only they have in their seasons great gulfs and rains, and sometimes a hurricano, which is an over-grown, and a most violent storm.

In some of those isles, are cattle, goats and hogs, but here none but what they must carry; *Guanes* they have, which is a little harmless beast, like a crocodile or alligator, very fat and good meat; she lays eggs in the sand, as doth the land crabs, which live here in abundance, like conies in boroughs, unless about *May*, when they come down to the sea-side to lay in the sand, as the other; and all their eggs are hatched by the heat of the sun.

From *May* to *September*, they have good store of *Tortoisés* that come out of the sea to lay their eggs in the sand, and are hatched as the other; they will lay half a peck at a time, and near a bushel ere they have done, and are round like tennis-balls: This fish is like veal in taste, the fat of a brownish colour, very good and wholesome: We seek them in the nights, where we find them on shore, we turn them upon their backs, till the next day we fetch them home, for they can never return themselves, being so hard, a cart may go over them; and

Bird.

Rat.

Fruit.

The spring, temperate as in *Japan*.

A heavy hatching of eggs for *May*.

Fish.

A large view of the isle.

THE *Christians* south leagues of the thither *English* he we got the dren of *Caribbees* like miles but th about some fish; and n the m liquid rains it floa

and so big, one will suffice forty or fifty men to dinner. Divers sorts of other fish they have in abundance, and prawns most great and excellent, but none will keep sweet scarce twelve hours.

*Birds.* The best and greatest is a *Passer Flaminga*, which walking at her length, is as tall as a man; pigeons and turtle-doves in abundance; some parrots, wild hawks, but divers other sorts of good sea-fowl, whose names we know not.

*Roots.* *Cassado* is a root planted in the ground, of a wonderful increase, and will make very good white bread, but the juice rank poison, yet boiled, better than wine; potatoes, cabbages and radishes plenty.

*Fruits.* Maize, like the *Virginia* wheat; we have pine-apple, near so big as an artichoke, but the most daintiest taste of any fruit; *Plantains*, an excellent and most increasing fruit; apples, prickly-pears and pease, but differing all from ours. There is pepper that groweth in a little red husk, as big as a walnut, about four inches in length, but the long cods are small, and much stronger and better for use, than that from the *East-Indies*. There is two sorts of cotton; the silk-cotton, as in the *East-Indies*, groweth upon a small stalk, as good for beds as down; the other upon a shrub, and beareth a cod bigger than a walnut, full of cotton-wool: *Anotto* also groweth

upon a shrub, with a cod like the other, and nine or ten on a bunch, full of *Anotto*, very good for dyers, tho' wild; sugar-canes, not tame, four or five foot high; also mastic and locust-trees; great and hard timber, gourds, musk-melons, water-melons, lettuce, parsley; all places naturally bear purslain of it self; sope-berries like a musquet bullet, that washeth as white as sope; in the middle of the root is a thing like a fedge, a very good fruit, we call pengromes; a pappaw is as great as an apple, coloured like an orange, and good to eat; a small hard nut, like a hazel-nut, groweth close to the ground, and like this grows on the palmets, which we call a mucca-nut; mustard-seed will grow to a great tree, but bears no seed, yet the leaves will make good mustard; the mancinel tree, the fruit is poison; good figs in abundance; but the palmets ferveth to build forts and houses, the leaves to cover them, and many other uses; the juice we draw from them, till we suck them to death, it is held restorative, and the top for meat doth serve us as cabbage; but oft we want powder'd beef and bacon, and many other needful necessities.

By Thomas Simons, Rowland Grafscocke, Nicholas Burgh, and others.

## CHAP. XXVI.

### The first planting of the Barbadoes.

**T**HE *Barbadoes* lies south-west and by south, an hundred leagues from *St. Christophers*, three-score leagues west and south from *Trinidad*, and some four-score leagues from *Cape de Salinas*, the next part of the main. The first planters brought thither by captain *Henry Powel*, were forty *English*, with seven or eight negroes; then he went to *Disacuba* in the main, where he got thirty *Indians*, men, women and children of the *Arawacos*, enemies both to the *Caribbees* and the *Spaniards*. The isle is most like a triangle each side forty or fifty miles square, some exceeding great rocks, but the most part exceeding good ground, abounding with an infinite number of swine, some turtles, and many sorts of excellent fish; many great ponds wherein is duck and mallard; excellent clay for pots, wood and stone for building, and a spring, near the midst of the isle, of *Bitume*, which is a liquid mixture like tar, that by the great rains falls from the tops of the mountains; it floats upon the water in such abundance,

that drying up, it remains like great rocks of pitch, and as good as pitch for any use.

The mancinel apple, is of a most pleasant sweet smell, of the bigness of a crab, but rank poison, yet the swine and birds have wit to shun it; great store of exceeding great locust-trees, two or three fathom about, of a great height, that beareth a cod full of meal, will make bread in time of necessity. A tree like a pine beareth a fruit so great as a musk-melon, which hath always ripe fruit, flowers or green fruit, which will refresh two or three men, and very comfortable; plum-trees many, the fruit great and yellow, which but strained into water in four and twenty hours, will be very good drink; wild fig-trees there are many; all those fruits do fat the hogs, yet at sometimes of the year they are so lean as carrion; guane trees bear a fruit so big as a pear, good and wholesome; palmets of three several sorts; pappaws, prickly-pears, good to eat or make drink; cedar trees very tall and great; suttick trees

made a  
d for Eng-  
erfield and  
from king  
Since then,  
of *Carliste*  
or only of  
but it, who  
the *English*  
them; over  
ernors and  
; and al-  
m imposed  
er charges,  
selves; yet  
near upon  
ple; where  
d thickness  
difficult to  
a goeth on  
d, than fifty  
springs, but  
any places;  
Is very fer-  
; and of a  
over-grown  
ignum *Vitæ*,  
one like any  
carried thir-  
d healthful,  
perped with  
imperate to  
; the trees  
and nights  
gth, always  
their seasons  
times a hur-  
and a molt

attle, goats  
what they  
which is a  
odile or ali-  
at; she lays  
land crabs,  
ke conies in  
when they  
lay in the  
ir eggs are

er have good  
e of the sea  
l are hatch-  
half a peck  
e they have  
balls: This  
of a brown-  
esome. We  
re we find  
upon their  
fetch them  
themselves,  
over them;  
and

A *frany*  
hatching  
of eggs for  
beasts.

A *frany*  
one of the  
is.

trees are very great, and the wood yellow, good for dying; soap-berries, the kernel so big as a floe, and good to eat; pumpions in abundance; goats so great as will make good great bottles, and cut in two pieces, good dishes and platters; many small brooks of very good water; *Guinea* wheat, cassado, pines and plantains, all things we there plant, do grow, exceedingly, so well as tobacco; the corn, pease, and beans, cut but away the stalks, young sprigs will grow, and so bear fruit for many years together, without any more planting; the isle is overgrown with wood or great reeds, those woods which are soft are exceeding light and full of pitch, and those that are hard and great, they are as hard to cut as stone.

Their numbers.

Mr. *John Powel* came thither the 4<sup>th</sup> of August 1627, with forty five men, where we stayed three weeks, and then returning, left behind us about an hundred people, and his son *John Powel* for his deputy, as governor; but there have been so many factions amongst them, I cannot from so many variable relations, give you any certainty for their orderly government:

For all those plenty, much misery they have endured, in regard of their weakness at their landing, and long stay without supplies; therefore those that go thither, it were good they carry good provision with them; but the isle is most healthful, and all things planted do increase abundantly; and by this time there is, and now a going, about the number of fifteen or sixteen hundred people.

Sir *William Curtine*, and captain *John Powel*, were the first and chief adventurers to the planting this fortunate isle; which had been oft frequented by men of war to refresh themselves, and set up their shallops; being so far remote from the rest of the isles, they never were troubled with any of the *Indies*. Harbours they have none, but exceeding good roads, which with a small charge, might be very well fortified; it doth ebb and flow four or five foot, and they cannot perceive that there hath ever been any hurricano in that isle.

From the relations of captain *John White*, and captain *Wolverstone*.

## CHAP. XXVII.

### The first plantations of the isle of Mevis.

The description of the isle.

BECAUSE I have ranged and lived amongst those islands, what my authors cannot tell me, I thing it no great error in helping them to tell it myself. In this little isle of *Mevis*, more than twenty years ago, I have remained a great time together, to wood and water, and refresh my men; it is all woody, but by the sea-side southward, there are sands like downs, where a thousand men may quarter themselves conveniently; but in most places the wood groweth close to the water-side, at a high-water mark, and in some places so thick of a soft spongy wood like a wild fig-tree, you cannot get through it, but by making your way with hatchets or fauchions: Whether it was the dew of those trees, or of some others, I am not certain, but many of our men became so tormented with a burning swelling all over their bodies, they seemed like scalded men, and near mad with pain; here we found a great pool, wherein bathing themselves they found much ease; and finding it fed with a pleasant small stream that came out of the woods, we found the head half a mile within the land, distilling from many rocks, by which they were well cured in two or three days. Such factions here we

The bath.

had, as commonly attend such voyages, that a pair of gallows were made, but captain *Smith* for whom they were intended, could not be persuaded to use them; but not any one of the inventors, but their lives by justice fell into his power to determine of at his pleasure, whom with much mercy he favoured, that most basely and unjustly have betray'd him.

The last year 1628, Mr. *Littleton* with some others, got a patent of the earl of *Carlisle* to plant the isle called the *Barbadoes*, thirty leagues northward of *St. Christophers*; which by report of their informers and undertakers, for the excellency of the pleasantness thereof, they called *Dulcina*, but when they came there, they found it such a barren rock they left it; altho' they were told as much before, they would not believe it; persuading themselves those contradictees would get it for themselves, they were thus by their cunning opinion, the deceivers of themselves; for seeing it lie conveniently for their purpose in a map, they had not patience to know the goodness or badness, the inconvenience or probability of the quantity or quality; which error doth predominate in most of our homebred adventurers, that will have all things as they

Their numbers.

they more they ples made mong tions perie their taking of al  
A  
they stoppe furni the n create where stoppe Mr. L isles fo duce, discour all. T rions, and ch pressed ble; a much fraugh great, comm  
And miracle dily th of the are chi unposi so mu christi cities, ing fo wast, vages, than C prenc mours, so man tle to a  
The be  
A S seas m rates; threefe freshed ton and mous t hanged expert Vol

misery they  
their weakness  
ay without  
go thither,  
d provision  
t healthful,  
e abundant  
d now a go-  
n or sixteen

captain John  
adventu-  
ise; which  
n of war to  
their shal-  
n the rest of  
doubled with  
they have  
ads, which  
be very well  
four or five  
e that there  
at this life.

ions of cap-  
ite, and cap-  
one.

ch voyages,  
ide, but cap-  
re intended,  
e them; but  
s, but their  
ver to deter-  
with much  
basely and

Littleton with  
the earl of  
the Barba-  
of St. Chri-  
their infor-  
excellency  
called Dul-  
they found  
it it; altho'  
they would  
selves those  
nelves, they  
tion, the de-  
g it lie con-  
a map, they  
goodness or  
probability  
which error  
home bred  
all things as  
they

## of Capt. JOHN SMITH.

365

they conceit and would have it; and the more they are contradicted, the more hot they are; but you may see by many examples in the general history, how difficult a matter it is, to gather the truth from amongst so many foreign and several relations, except you have exceeding good experience, both of the countries, people and their conditions; and those ignorant undertakings, have been the greatest hindrance of all those plantations.

Their numbers.

At last, because they would be absolute, they came to *Mevis*, a little isle by *St. Christopher*; where they seated themselves, well furnish'd with all necessities, being about the number of an hundred, and since increased to an hundred and fifty persons, whereof many were old planters of *St. Christopher*, especially Mr. *Anthony Hinton*, and Mr. *Edward Thompson*. But because all those isles for the most part are so capable to produce, and in nature like each other, let this discourse serve for the description of them all. Thus much concerning those plantations, which now after all this time, loss and charge, should they be abandon'd, suppressed and dissolved, were most lamentable; and surely seeing they all strive so much about this tobacco, and that the freight thereof, and other charges are so great, and so open to any enemy by that commodity, they cannot long subsist.

And it is a wonder to me to see such miracles and mischiefs in men; how greedily they pursue to dispossess the planters of the name of Christ Jesus, yet say they are christians, when so much of the world is unpossessed; yea, and better land than they so much strive for, murdering so many christians, burning and spoiling so many cities, villages and countries, and subverting so many kingdoms, when so much lieth waste, or only possessed by a few poor savages, that more serve the devil for fear, than God for love; whose ignorance we pretend to reform, but covetousness, humours, ambition, faction and pride hath so many instruments, we perform very little to any purpose; nor is there either ho-

nour or profit to be got by any that are so vile, to undertake the subversion, or hindrance of any honest intended christian plantation.

Now to conclude the travels and adventures of captain *Smith*; how first he planted *Virginia*, and was set ashore with about an hundred men in the wild woods; how he was taken prisoner by the savages, by the king of *Pamaunke* tied to a tree to be shot to dath; led up and down their country to be shewed for a wonder; fatted, as he thought, for a sacrifice for their idol, before whom they conjured him three days, with strange dances and invocations, then brought him before their emperor *Powhatan*, that commanded him to be slain; how his daughter *Pocahontas* saves his life, return'd him to *James-Town*, relieved him and his famished company, which was but eight and thirty to possess those large dominions; how he discover'd all the several nations upon the rivers falling into the bay of *Chesapeake*; hung near to death with a most poisoned tail of a fish called stingray; how *Powhatan* out of country took the kings of *Pamaunke* and *Paspabegb* prisoners; forced thirty nine of those kings to pay him contribution; subjected all the savages; how *Smith* was blown up with gun-powder, and returned for *England* to be cured.

Also how he brought our *New-England* to the subjection of the kingdom of *Great-Britain*; his fights with the pirates, left alone amongst a many *French* men of war, and his ship ran from him; his sea-fights for the *French* against the *Spaniards*; their bad usage of him; how in *France* in a little boat he escaped them; was adrift all such a stormy night at sea by himself, when thirteen *French* ships were split or driven on shore by the isle of *Ree*, the general and most of his men drowned, when God, to whom be all honour and praise, brought him safe on shore to all their admirations that escaped; you may read at large in his general history of *Virginia*, the *Summer-Isles* and *New-England*.

Certain exploits of captain Smith.

### CHAP. XXVIII.

*The bad life, qualities and condition of pirates; and how they taught the Turks and Moors, so become men of war.*

AS in all lands where there are many people, there are some thieves, so in all seas much frequented, there are some pirates; the most ancient within the memory of three score years, was one *Callis*, who most refreshed himself upon the coast of *Wales*; *Clinton* and *Purser* his companions, who grew famous till queen *Elizabeth* of blessed memory hanged them at *Wapping*: *Flemming* was as expert and as much fought for as they, yet

Vol. II.

such a friend to his country, that discovering the *Spanish Armada*, he voluntarily came to *Plimouth*, yielded himself freely to my lord admiral, and gave him notice of the *Spaniards* coming; which good warning came so happily and unexpectedly; that he had his pardon, and a good reward; some few pirates there then remained; notwithstanding it is incredible how many great and rich prizes the little barques of the west country

5 A

daily



The difficulties of a great navy.

What occasioneth pirates.

Their chief rendezvous.

daily brought home, in regard of their small charge; for there are so many difficulties in a great navy, by wind and weather, victual, sickness, losing and finding one another, they seldom defray half the charge: But for the grace, state and defence of the coast and narrow seas, a great navy is most necessary, but not to attempt any far voyage, except there be such a competent stock, they want not wherewith to furnish and supply all things with expedition. But to the purpose.

After the death of our most gracious queen Elizabeth, of blessed memory, our royal king James, who from his infancy had reigned in peace with all nations; had no employment for those men of war, so that those that were rich rested with that they had; those that were poor, and had nothing but from hand to mouth, turned pirates; some, because they became slighted of those for whom they had got much wealth; some for that they could not get their due; some that had lived bravely, would not abase themselves to poverty; some vainly, only to get a name; others for revenge, covetousness, or as ill; and as they found themselves more and more oppressed, their passions increasing with discontent, made them turn pirates.

Now because they grew hateful to all christian princes, they retired to *Barbary*, where altho' there be not many good harbours, but *Tunis*, *Algier*, *Sally*, *Mamora*, and *Tiunane*, there are many convenient roads, or the open sea, which is their chief lordship: For their best harbours *Masfaquebar*, the towns of *Oran*, *Mellila*, *Tangier*, and *Ceuta*, within the streights, are possessed by the *Spaniards*; without the streights they have also *Arzella* and *Mazagan*; *Mamora* they have likewise lately taken and fortified. *Ward*, a poor *English* sailor, and *Danfer* a *Dutchman*, made first here their marts, when the *Moors* knew scarce how to sail a ship; *Bishop* was ancient and did little hurt; but *Easton* got so much as made himself a marquess in *Savoy*; and *Ward* lived like a bashaw in *Barbary*; those were the first that taught the *Moors* to be men of war. *Gennings*, *Harris*, *Tompson*, and divers others, were taken in *Ireland*, a coast they much frequented, and died at *Wapping*. *Hawes*, *Bough*, *Smith*, *Walsingham*, *Ellis*, *Collins*, *Sawkwel*, *Wollingstone*, *Barrow*, *Wilson*, *Sayres*, and divers others, all these were captains amongst the pirates, whom king James mercifully pardon'd; and was it not strange, a few of those should command the seas? Notwithstanding the *Maltese*, the pope, *Florentines*, *Genoese*, *French*, *Dutch* and *English* galleys and men of war, they would rob before their faces, and even at their own ports, yet seldom more than three four, five or six in a fleet; many

times they had very good ships, and well mann'd, but commonly in such factions amongst themselves, and so riotous, quarrelsome, treacherous, blasphemous and villainous, it is more than a wonder they could so long continue, to do so much mischief; and all they got, they basely consumed it amongst *Jews*, *Turks* *Moors* and whores.

The best was, they would seldom go to sea, so long as they could possibly live on shore, being compiled of *English*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Moors*, (but very few *Spaniards* or *Italians*) commonly running one from another, 'till they became so disjointed, disordered, debauched and miserable, that the *Turks* and *Moors* be an to command them as slaves, and force them to instruct them in their best skill, which many an accursed renegade or christian turned *Turk* did, till they have made those *Sallymen* or *Moors* of *Barbary* so powerful as they be, to the terror of all the *Streights*, and many times they take purchase in the main ocean, yea sometimes in the narrow seas in *England*, and those are the most cruel villains in *Turkey* or *Barbary*, whose natures are very noble and of good natures, in comparison of them.

To conclude, the misery of a pirate, (altho' many are sufficient seamen as any) yet in regard of its superfluity, you shall find it such, that any wise man would rather live amongst wild beasts, than them; therefore let all unadvised persons take heed how they entertain that quality; and I could wish merchants, gentlemen, and all setters forth of ships, not to be sparing of a competent pay, nor true payment; for neither soldiers nor seamen can live without means, but necessity will force them to steal; and when they are once entred into that trade, they are hardly reclaimed. Those titles of seamen and soldiers, have been most worthily honoured and esteemed, but now regarded for the most part, but as the scum of the world; regain therefore your wanted reputations, and endeavour rather to adventure to those fair plantations of our *English* nation; which however in the beginning were scorned, contemned, yet now you see how many rich and gallant people come from thence, who went thither as poor as any soldier or sailor, and gets more in one year, than you by piracy in seven. I intreat you therefore to consider how many thousands yearly go thither; also how many ships and sailors are employed to transport them, and what custom they yearly pay to our most royal king *Charles*, whose prosperity and his kingdom's good, I humbly beseech the immortal God to preserve and increase.



---

T W O

# J O U R N A L S :

THE FIRST

Kept by seven SAILERS

IN THE

ISLE of St. MAURICE in *GREENLAND*,

In the years 1633, 1634;

Who pass'd the winter, and all died in the  
said ISLAND.

THE SECOND

Kept by seven other SAILERS, who in the  
years 1633 and 1634, wintered at *SPITS-  
BERGEN*;

WITH

An account of their ADVENTURES and SUFFER-  
INGS from the BEARS and WHALES, insupport-  
able cold and storms, &c.

---

Done out of *LOW-DUTCH*.

---

TO THE  
R E A D E R.

**I***T having pleased God, the Creator and Preserver of the Universe, by whose uncontroulable will, the counsels of men are governed, to influence the committee of the Greenland company, to take a resolution of making the most exact enquiry that could be, concerning the true condition of the countrey of Greenland, during the winter: Concerning the nights there, and other curious observations (disputed among the astronomers) it was resolved to select seven of the boldest and ablest seamen, out of the fleet, who for that purpose should tarry there all the winter, which resolution being published, the following seven offered themselves for that service, and were accepted of accordingly: Outgert Jacobson of Groentenbrook, their commander; Adrian Martin Carman of Schiedam, Clerk; Thaunifs Thaunissen of Shermerhem, as cook; Dick Peterfon of Veenhuysse; Peter Peterfon of Harlem; Sebastian Gyse of Delfts-Haven, and Gerard Beautin of Bruges. These seven being left 1633, by their own choice, in the isle of St. Maurice in Greenland, the Dutch fleet set sail from thence the 26<sup>th</sup> of August, and the seamen left us the following account.*

T W O

## JOURNALS:

THE FIRST.

Kept by Seven SAILERS in GREENLAND:

THE SECOND,

Kept by Seven other SAILERS at SPITZBERGEN, in  
the Years 1633 and 1634.

THE 26<sup>th</sup> of August our fleet set sail for Holland with a strong N. E. wind and a hollow sea, which continued all that night.

The 27<sup>th</sup>, the wind still at N. E. we went four or five times up to an adjacent hill, but did not observe the least darkness all that night. The 28<sup>th</sup> the wind the same, it began to snow very hard; we then shar'd half a pound of tobacco betwixt us, which was to be our allowance for a week; towards evening we went about together, to see whether we could discover any thing worth our observation, but met with nothing. The 29<sup>th</sup> proving a sun-shiny and clear day, we ascended together in the afternoon the before mentioned hill, when, (and at several other times when it was clear weather) we could distinctly see the *Bears Mountain*. The 30<sup>th</sup> the wind turn'd to the N. W. with some snow in the afternoon, the night cloudy, the wind at N. E. The 31<sup>st</sup>, being a clear and sun-shiny day, we had a perfect sight of the *Bears Mountain*, with a fresh gale from the N. E. a fair star-light night.

The 1<sup>st</sup> of September prov'd a fair day, the wind at N. W. with some snow in the evening, and a windy night from the N. E. We went three or four times by the hill, but saw nothing. The 2<sup>d</sup>, the same wind continued, with some snow and cloudy night. The 3<sup>d</sup>, was a fair day, with some snow; the wind as the day before, which continued the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup>, with some snow; the night fair and star-light. The 6<sup>th</sup>, was a fair forenoon, but the night rainy, the wind the same. The 7<sup>th</sup>, the wind continued as before all the day, with fair weather, but turning to the S. E. by S. at night produced a great deal of rain. On the 8<sup>th</sup>

'twas a rainy morning, the wind at S. E. but in the afternoon fair, and the night star-light; at the beginning whereof we were frighten'd by a noise, as if something had fallen very heavy upon the ground, but saw nothing, the wind at S. E. still. The 9<sup>th</sup>, the wind the same; it prov'd a sun-shiny day, and so warm that we pull'd off our shirts and sported in the sun on the side of the hill; we had also a sight of the *Bears Mountain*; the night was rainy, the wind at S. E. The 10<sup>th</sup> was very stormy, the night rainy and the wind the same. The 11<sup>th</sup> was a foggy and rainy day, the wind at S. E. by S. but turn'd to the S. W. in the afternoon, and to the N. E. in the night, the weather cloudy; we made a shift to get some salleting, being fond of a change of diet. The 12<sup>th</sup> it blew hard from the N. E. the weather clear, but the night snowy, the wind as before. The 13<sup>th</sup> was a fair sun-shiny day, the wind at S. E. but the wind turning to the N. E. by N. it began to snow, the night was still and close, the wind at N. W. The 14<sup>th</sup> it was fair weather, the wind in the wet, with some snow; we went up the hill, but saw nothing worth our observation, except that at night we observed the setting of the sun; the wind at N. W. by W. a clear night, and the wind at S. W. The 15<sup>th</sup> it blew very hard, so that the sea foam'd; we observ'd the sun from the S. to the S. W. when it clouded in, but the night prov'd star-light, the wind at W. The 16<sup>th</sup> it was a fair sun-shiny day, the wind at S. W. which made us go about to gather some herbs for salletting; it being a very star-light moon-shining night, we saw abundance

the Uni-  
men are  
d compa-  
quity that  
f Green-  
and other  
s resolved  
fleet, who  
resolution  
that ser-  
of Groo-  
chiedad,  
ck Peter-  
a Gylfe of  
en being  
n Green-  
rust, and

abundance of sea-gulls. The 17<sup>th</sup> it blew very hard out of the S. W. which made the sea foam, yet the day was clear and the night calm, the wind as before. The 18<sup>th</sup> it was a rainy day, the wind at S. W. by S. This was the first time we took each of us our allotment of brandy, being a certain measure which was to serve us for eleven days. The 19<sup>th</sup> it was a clear day, the wind at W. the night star-light, the wind at S. E. The 20<sup>th</sup> it was sun-shine, the wind at S. E. by S. we then discharged our great guns, having no more to fear from the *Biscay* privateers for this season; the night was star-light, the wind at S. W. The 21<sup>st</sup>, day and night misty and rainy; the wind at S. W. The 22<sup>d</sup>, it blew and rain'd very hard, the wind at S. W. The 23<sup>d</sup>, being a cloudy day, the wind at E. we discover'd a whale near the shore, which made us set out our sloop in order to catch him; but he got clear of us, it turning a dark sky, with rain and mist on a sudden, and in the night it rain'd very hard; the wind at S. E. The 24<sup>th</sup>, the wind was at S. E. by S. with rainy weather in the forenoon, but the afternoon being fair, we went to the *Red-Hill* for some falletting, but found none; at night the wind was at S. E. The 25<sup>th</sup> proved very rainy in the morning, the wind at S. E. by E. but the afternoon and night it was very stormy weather. The 26<sup>th</sup> it was cold frosty weather, with an easterly wind. The 27<sup>th</sup> being a fair day, the wind at N. E. we went towards the south-side of the isle for some falletting, but found none, being spoiled by the cold rains; in the night the wind turn'd to the W. with very foul weather. The 28<sup>th</sup> a violent storm arose from the north, with some snow and running clouds, but the night prov'd fair, the wind at S. E. The 29<sup>th</sup> it blew very hard from the S. E. with some snow, we observed the height of the sun something above the mountains; the night was fair, and the wind S. The 30<sup>th</sup> it was a cloudy rainy day, the wind at S. W. by W. the night proved very wet, mix'd with snow, and very stormy.

THE 1<sup>st</sup> of October it was fair in the morning, the wind at N. E., but in the afternoon stormy, and a cloudy night, the wind as before; it being frosty weather, we resolv'd to go to the south-side of the isle. The 2<sup>d</sup> it froze so hard, that the ice would bear even on the south part of the island, the wind the same as the day before: We found there a fine spring of fresh water, and the night was very clear, the wind at east. The 3<sup>d</sup> the wind was the same in the forenoon, but turn'd to the west afterwards, with frost and snow, but the night was very fair. The 4<sup>th</sup> prov'd a

frosty day, the wind south; in the morning we saw the *Bears Mountain*; the afternoon was very warm, and the night foggy and rainy, the wind very sharp from the S. W. The 5<sup>th</sup>, the wind continued the same, with rain from morning till night, which made us keep our tents all that day; at night the wind turn'd to the south. The 6<sup>th</sup>, the wind was the same, with frosty weather, we observed the sun in the south, from our huts, about half a pace above the hill; we also could see the *Bears Mountain*: In the night it blew very hard from the S. W. by S. with a hollow sea and very dark sky. The 7<sup>th</sup> it was very stormy, the wind at S. W. by W. we went upon the hill, but met with nothing there, the night proved very wet. The 8<sup>th</sup> the wind continued the same, in the morning with snow, but turn'd to the S. W. by S. in the afternoon; towards night it grew very tempestuous, which shook our huts to that degree, that we were not able to rest, the storm increasing with snow and frost till late in the night; the wind at N. E. and afterwards to the N. with a very hollow sea. The 9<sup>th</sup>, the tempest continued with such violence, that no ship could have rid safely at anchor, with frost and snow, the waves rising by the northerly wind above the fort. It being excessive cold, we began the first time to make a fire; we had still very strong winds from the N. E. by N. all that night, which continuing the same the 10<sup>th</sup>; the excessiveness of the cold forced us to keep at home near the fire side; we found a considerable alteration in our bodies, being troubled with a sudden giddiness in our heads, the wind the same as before. The 11<sup>th</sup> it was very cold and snowy weather, the wind at N. E. we had hung some of our linen in the air to whiten, but were glad to bring them near the fire, they being in a moment frozen as hard as a board; we went along the sea-shore to the southern rocks, but found nor saw any thing there. The 12<sup>th</sup> it froze, snow'd, and blew so very hard; that our barrel of beer, (tho' laid within a fathom from the fire) was frozen, the wind at N. E. we went upon the hill that day but saw nothing. The 13<sup>th</sup> the cold weather continued, we took a view about us on the hill as usual, but discovered nothing, except that we see the sun set between S. and W. very clear, the wind at the north; the beginning of the night was star-light, but towards the morning it was stormy with snow. The 14<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather the same, and we observed the sun to set at S. W. by W. part of the night was star-light. The 15<sup>th</sup> in the morning, finding two whales cast a-shore near the old fur-

nace of *Amsterdam*, we went to work with our harp-irons, launces and hangers, but notwithstanding all our endeavours, they got clear of us by the advantage of the tide; the weather proved indifferently well that day, the wind as the day before; we went upon the hill but without seeing any thing. The 16<sup>th</sup> the weather continued very cold with snow, the wind the same, which occasioned no small alteration in our bodies; we took a view round about us on the hill, but observed nothing. The 17<sup>th</sup> it was still frosty weather, and cloudy, and blew very hard from the north; the evening was star-light; we went in the day upon the hill, but saw nothing. The 18<sup>th</sup> the frost continued, the wind N. we observed the sun to set at S. W. by N. or almost S. W. it was a very moon-light night. The 19<sup>th</sup> the wind kept in the N. we saw from the hill the *Bears Mountain*, and some ice we saw about a mile to the north of the shore; it was a sun shiny day, but the sun did not rise high enough to reach over the hill, into our huts in the bay; it was a bright moon-light night. The 20<sup>th</sup> being a fair day, the wind at N. E. we had sight of a bear, the first we saw here, but could not catch him; we saw great shoals of ice, a good way at sea, from the shore, and the night proved very cold, with an east wind. The 21<sup>st</sup>, it blow'd and snow'd very hard, with a N. E. wind, which continued all night, with very thick snow. The 22<sup>d</sup> it snow'd all day, and the night continued cloudy, the wind the same. The 23<sup>d</sup> was cloudy, the wind at N. E. we took a view again round about us from the hill, but saw nothing; the night was very fair. The 24<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather the same, with some frost, we went upon the red hill, where we saw nothing except the tracks of some beasts, whence we concluded that they began to come down towards the sea-side. The night was clear and frosty. The 25<sup>th</sup> we had an excessive cold, yet sun-shiny day, the wind at S. W. but the sun could not send its beams over the hills to our huts; it being a star-light night, a bear came in sight of our huts, but we could not take him; the wind was the same as the day before. The 26<sup>th</sup> the wind continuing the same corner, we went upon the hill, where we saw nothing but ice, the night was very clear, the wind at the W. The 27<sup>th</sup> it was fair weather, the wind the same, the night very clear and star-light. The 28<sup>th</sup>, the wind blew from the same corner all day and night, with clear frosty weather; we went up the hill but saw nothing. The 29<sup>th</sup> being an excessive cold day, the wind in the N. not only the bay, but also the sea, as far we could see, was full of ice; in the

night it snowed very hard, the wind as before. The 30<sup>th</sup> it continued freezing very hard, with the same wind, and the sea was so full of ice, that we could see no water; the night proved very tempestuous. The 31<sup>st</sup> the north-wind produced such an excessive frost and snow, that not the least drop of water was to be seen, wherever you turn'd yourself, and some of our vessels were frozen to pieces, tho' we sav'd our beer and other strong liquors, by putting them in the buttery cellar.

The 1<sup>st</sup> of *November*, a N. E. wind vehemently increased the cold, so that when we came upon the hill, we could see nothing but ice on the north-side; yet we had still ten hours day, tho' we seldom got sight of the sun-beams, the same not appearing except on the south-side, whither we could not come by reason of the snow and ice. Towards evening we got sight of a bear, but he no sooner saw us making up towards him, but he saved himself upon the ice at sea, these creatures being excessive shy here; the cold grew so fierce by this time, that to preserve our beer, and other liquors, we were forced to kindle a fire in the buttery cellar. Towards night, the bears appeared in such numbers about our huts, that we scarce durst venture abroad; the wind continued as before. The 2<sup>d</sup>, it being a very hard frost, we discover'd five or six bears upon the ice in the bay, whereof we kill'd one, but the rest saved themselves upon the ice. The 3<sup>d</sup>, it was tolerable good weather, the wind at N. E. we saw four bears, one whereof being kill'd by a gun, he got upon the ice in the bay, but was pull'd ashore by the help of some ropes we had by us. The night was star-light, and the wind as before. The 4<sup>th</sup>, the wind being at N. E. it froze very hard, tho' it was very cloudy; we saw three bears, but we could shoot none of them, they detaching themselves immediately to the ice at sea; the wind was W. The 5<sup>th</sup> a south wind produced so violent a snow, that we durst not venture out of our huts; we had of late not seen any sea gulls; all that night the wind continued in the south, as well as the 6<sup>th</sup>, with some tempestuous weather, the wind turned east in the night. The 7<sup>th</sup> it was still, the wind at N. E. we went up the hill, but discover'd nothing; the wind turning to the north in the night, fill'd the bay with great shoals of ice. The 8<sup>th</sup> the wind continued at the north, with excessive cold weather; for want of water we were forced to make use of melted snow. The 9<sup>th</sup>, the north-wind holding still, we made shift to get to the southern shore, where we saw no ice, but plainly discover'd the sun, this being the first time we had sight of

of it in 21 or 22 days last past, being then above half an hour above the horizon; the wind continued in the north, all that night as well as the next day, being the 10<sup>th</sup> when we got sight of a great number of bears. The 11<sup>th</sup> the north wind increased, with thick clouds; at night the wind turned N. E. which continued the 12<sup>th</sup>, with very thick fogs, we went upon the hill, but could see nothing but ice, and some sea-gulls; the night proved very light by reason of the moon; the wind at east. The same wind continuing the 13<sup>th</sup>, it froze most severely; and the 14<sup>th</sup> the wind turned to the west; the cold weather held on and brought vast quantities of ice into the bay; it was a bright moon-shiny night, but we saw no bears that day, tho' the next being the 15<sup>th</sup> we saw three or four, but had only the pleasure of seeing them, they not coming within the reach of our guns. The 16<sup>th</sup> the wind continued in the same corner all that day and night; we let fire at a bear that came in sight of us, but missing him he betook himself to the ice in the bay. The 17<sup>th</sup> the wind turned to the north, with dark snowy weather, yet the cold was not so excessive as before. The 18<sup>th</sup> the frost increased again with a N. E. wind, which however prov'd very tolerable to us hitherto; we spending most of our time in rehearsing to one another, the adventures that had befallen us both by sea and land; it prov'd a very fair and star-light night. The 19<sup>th</sup> the wind turning to the north again, we pass'd the hill to the south-side, yet not without a great deal of difficulty, being often knee deep in the snow; we then had a full sight of the *Bears-Mountain*, and saw the sun just above the surface of the sea, having yet so much daylight left, that we could write and read in the open air, but not within our huts, which made us very melancholy; the wind continued the same as it did the 20<sup>th</sup>, with dark snowy weather; in the night the wind turning to the west, continued there the 21<sup>st</sup>, when going up the hill we looked to the north-side, but could see nothing but ice. The 22<sup>nd</sup>, the wind held westerly, with very cold weather. The 23<sup>rd</sup> the wind shifted to the N. W. by W. and being a fair day, we pass'd the hill to the *Red-bill*, but could see nothing but ice wherever we turned our faces; two or three bears came within sight of us, but not within the reach of our guns: The beginning of the night proving very clear and calm, we discover'd a bear, at whom we discharged our guns immediately (they being always ready charged) and wounded him forely, as we found by the tracks of blood near the sea-shore; yet he escaped to the ice, nothing being more frequent than to

be shot quite thro' the body, without receiving much harm. The 24<sup>th</sup> proving a cloudy dark day, a S. E. wind forced most of the ice out of the bay into the sea, but yet not quite out of sight; at night the wind turning to the west, the bay was filled again with ice; the weather being very frosty; we saw a vast quantity of sea-gulls, but they kept close among the mountains; the wind as before. The 25<sup>th</sup> the wind being in the W. with frosty weather, we saw a vast number of sea-gulls, but they returned to the mountains before night; the wind was as before. The 26<sup>th</sup> the wind turning to the south, it prov'd a tolerable mild day, and most of the ice was carried out of the bay into the sea; the wind as before. The 27<sup>th</sup> it was fair weather, the wind at S. W. but turned to the east in the night. The 28<sup>th</sup> the wind was at S. E. with fair weather; we got sight of a bear again, whom we pursued over the hill, but he proving too nimble for us, escap'd our hands. The weather was (to our great surprise) so mild for these five or six days last past, that we believed the cold to be no more intense here than it was in *Holland*; at the same time the wind as before. The 29<sup>th</sup>, the wind continuing the same, we went over the hill again to the south-side of the isle, where we found all covered with ice; tho' at the same time there was scarce any ice to be seen within half a mile of the northern shore; it was a star-light night. The 30<sup>th</sup> the wind blew from the same corner, and seeing some bears, we made what haste we could after them, but in vain, not being able to overtake them; the wind continued as before, with violent rains.

The 1<sup>st</sup> of Dec. a southern wind produced some rain, but turned to the S. E. at night. The 2<sup>nd</sup> the wind continued the same, with rainy weather, which carried the ice from the shore to the N. at sea: It continued thawing all that night, the weather mild. The 3<sup>rd</sup> the wind at S. with rainy weather and strong winds at night. The 4<sup>th</sup> the wind continuing day and night the same, with cloudy weather, we heard some bears near our huts, and pursued two or three of them, but could take none. The 5<sup>th</sup> the wind still south, with mild calm weather, so that to the best of our judgment, it could scarce be better in *Holland* at that time of the year: We shot one bear as we perceived by the track of blood; but he had strength enough to get upon the ice, out of our reach. The 6<sup>th</sup> the wind blew from the S. E. cloudy sky, but mild weather, with a star-light night; the wind as before. The 7<sup>th</sup> the wind continued the same with foggy weather; but the wind turning to the south, at night it began to snow, and the frost return'd. The 8<sup>th</sup> a N. E. wind produced a dark

a dark a  
turn'd to  
the 9<sup>th</sup>, w  
there be  
far as our  
star-light  
day, the  
selves su  
but ice,  
discovere  
we woun  
our hand  
the hill,  
thing bu  
all night  
but coul  
that had  
our guns  
a very fi  
ing, we  
bear on  
ly; we  
which h  
lish'd ex  
upon no  
able tim  
west, wi  
moon-lig  
dark day  
the hill  
but vast  
north-fi  
the S. k  
clear fr  
and a b  
the ice  
way int  
ing the  
the ice  
the nig  
wind ch  
wind co  
hill, bu  
light ni  
dark d  
went ag  
it snow  
with th  
us abun  
does) t  
noise, h  
but ret  
ains, a  
was a  
fouth,  
with a  
night;  
nued t  
dark n  
in the  
ther,  
ground  
boots,  
Vou



hout receiv-  
ing a cloudy  
of the ice  
yet not quite  
d turning to  
in with ice;  
we saw a vast  
kept close a-  
before. The  
with frosty  
of sea-gulls,  
ains before  
The 26<sup>th</sup> the  
rov'd a tole-  
the ice was  
ea; the wind  
weather, the  
e east in the  
t S. E. with  
bear again,  
but he prov-  
d our hands.  
surprise) fo  
st past, that  
more intense  
the same time  
the wind con-  
the hill a-  
isle, where  
tho' at the  
ny ice to be  
the northern  
t. The 30<sup>th</sup>  
corner, and  
hat haste we  
h, not being  
d continued

nd produced  
E. at night.  
same, with  
ice from the  
ued thawing  
The 3<sup>d</sup> the  
and strong  
d continuing  
cloudy wea-  
our huts, and  
but could  
still south,  
t to the belt  
arce be bet-  
e year: We  
by the track  
gh enough  
reach. The  
E. cloudy  
a star-light  
The 7<sup>th</sup> the  
foggy wea-  
o the south,  
nd the frost  
nd produced  
a dark

a dark and frosty day, but at night it turn'd to the west: Which continued thus the 9<sup>th</sup>, with very clear and cold weather, there being nothing but ice to be seen as far as our eyes could reach. It was a frosty star-light night. The 10<sup>th</sup> was a bright day, the wind still at west; we found our selves surrounded on all sides with nothing but ice, it being a moon-shiny night, we discovered three or four bears, one of which we wounded in two places, yet he escaped our hands upon the ice: We went upon the hill, from whence we could discern nothing but ice; the wind continued at west all night, and the 11<sup>th</sup> with fair weather, but could discover no bears that day; those that had once heard or felt the effects of our guns, beginning to be very shy; it was a very frosty night. The 12<sup>th</sup> in the morning, we had the good fortune to shoot a bear on the head, who dropt immediately; we roasted a leg of him immediately, which happened to be a young one, it relish'd exceedingly well with us, having fed upon nothing but salt meat for a considerable time. The wind held still in the west, with very cold weather, and a calm moon-light night. The 13<sup>th</sup> was a cloudy dark day, the wind at S. W. we went cross the hill to the *Red-Hill*, but saw nothing but vast heaps of ice in the sea, to the north-side; at night the wind turned to the S. E. with snow. The 14<sup>th</sup> proved a clear frosty day, the wind at the south, and a bright moon-light night; we found the ice removed from the shore, a great way into the sea. The 15<sup>th</sup> the wind being the same, it proved a dark day, and the ice was forced back into the bay: In the night (which was exceeding dark) the wind changed to the S. W. The 16<sup>th</sup>, the wind continuing as before, we went up the hill, but observed nothing; it was a moon-light night. The 17<sup>th</sup> prov'd a very cloudy dark day, the wind still at south. We went again up the hill, but saw nothing; it snowed and thawed very hard at night, with the same south wind, which brought us abundance of sea-gulls (as it frequently does) to the sea-side; these make the same noise, here, as they do at *Holland in May*, but retire every night among the mountains, their ordinary receptacle. The 18<sup>th</sup> was a rainy dark day; the wind still at south, which changed to the E. the 19<sup>th</sup> with a hard frost, and a calm and cloudy night; the wind as before, which continued the 20<sup>th</sup> with calm weather, and a dark night. The 21<sup>st</sup>, the wind kept still in the same corner, with dark snowy weather, the snow lying so high upon the ground, that we could not stir out without boots; it froze and snow'd severely, the

Vol. II.

wind at north. The 22<sup>d</sup> in the morning, we found the bay fill'd with ice again, but the cold was so severe, that this was the coldest day we had met with as yet; we had still four hours day-light; the night was star-light and calm. The 23<sup>d</sup> an easterly wind produced a bright frosty day and stormy night, with so much snow, that we durst scarce venture out of our huts, but could see the ice turn'd back into the bay; the wind still at east, which continued the 24<sup>th</sup>, with a foggy air; yet the latter part of the night was star-light, with a hard frost and storm from the N. E. The 25<sup>th</sup>, a fourth wind produced a fair day, but at night the wind turned to the north. The 26<sup>th</sup> it was a clear frosty day, the wind at E. but turn'd to the N. W. at night. The 27<sup>th</sup>, the wind and weather as before, but the night proved dark and calm, with an easterly wind, which continued thus the 28<sup>th</sup>, with very dark snowy weather: In the night it blew hard out of the west, with so violent a snow, that we could not stir out of our huts; weather and wind as before. The 29<sup>th</sup> the wind veering about to the west, produced a clear and excessive cold day, the fore-part of the night prov'd star-light and calm, but the wind turning afterwards to the S. E. it snowed very hard; we found the bay clear of ice in the morning. The 30<sup>th</sup> it blew hard from the S. W. it was a cloudy but calm day; we saw neither bears nor fish. The 31<sup>st</sup> proved an indifferant good calm day, a S. W. wind produced a great deal of snow in the night, but the cold was very tolerable.

In the year 1634, the 1<sup>st</sup> of *January*, having wished one another a happy new year, and good success in our enterprise, we went to prayers to disburthen our hearts before God; the weather was dark, cold and frosty, and the wind as before; two bears came near our huts, but being a dark day and a very deep snow, it was impossible to take them. The 2<sup>d</sup> of *January* a N. E. wind produced a clear day; and the ice was forced out of the bay to sea, yet remained within sight; the fore-part of the night was star-light, but afterwards an east wind brought a cloudy sky along with it. The 3<sup>d</sup> it rained a little, the wind at S. E. which encreased at night, the wind blowing hard from the S. W. The 4<sup>th</sup> we had a fierce westerly wind and cold weather; the bay was so filled with ice again, that we could see no water. The night was pretty mild, with an easterly wind; which continued the 5<sup>th</sup> with a thick fog and frost; the night was star-light, the wind at W. The 6<sup>th</sup> was a clear frosty day, the wind at N. which increased all night with some snow. The 7<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather con-

5 C

tinued

tinued as before, but with abundance of snow, more than we observed before, since our coming hither; besides which, it froze hard all the day and night, that we durst not venture to stir abroad, for fear of being swallow'd up in some pit or other fill'd with snow. The 8<sup>th</sup> the wind blew from the N. E. with very frosty weather, but turned cloudy afterwards; the night was excessive cold and stormy; whereof we now began to feel the effects in our bodies. The 9<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather continued as before, and the bay was fill'd with such vast ice-shoals, that at a distance they appear'd from the tops of our huts, (where we used often to make our speculations) like white hills or land-skies; it was a clear moon-light night, tho' we never got sight of the moon, before she was seven or eight days old, by reason of the high hills betwixt her and us; the wind and weather continued as before. The 10<sup>th</sup>, a N. E. wind produced a bright, calm and pleasant day, but excessive cold, whereof we found the effects. The bay continued full of ice; the greatest part of the night was star-light, but very cold, which seem'd likely to hold. The 11<sup>th</sup> the forenoon proved clear and calm, but the wind turning to the south in the afternoon, it was cloudy, but nevertheless cold, which not a little annoy'd us, especially after the wind brought with it a vast quantity of snow from the S. E. The 12<sup>th</sup>, the same wind and snow continued, so that we could not stir out, tho' the cold was not altogether so excessive as for some days before; in the night the wind and the weather continued as before; and in the morning the ice was forced out to sea, quite out of sight. The 13<sup>th</sup> a S. E. wind brought abundance of snow, and seeing a bear near our huts, we kill'd him with a fusée upon the spot, and so drawing him with ropes into our tent, slay'd him, the weather being so cold, and snow so high, that we could not do it without doors; the night was very clear. The 14<sup>th</sup> it being a tolerable clear day, the wind at east, we went cross the hill to the *Red-bill*, but saw nothing; it was a moon-light night, and the stars appeared sometimes; the wind as before. The 15<sup>th</sup> it was a strong easterly wind with snow, we saw the ice about a mile from the shore; the night was moon-light, the wind at N. E. The 16<sup>th</sup> a south wind produced good tolerable weather; for we made this observation during our stay here, that with a south wind the weather was not so cold as otherwise; in the night the wind turned to the east; it was a dark but frosty night. The 17<sup>th</sup> the wind continued as before, with cold foggy weather; at night the wind turning to the north, it froze

so fiercely that the whole bay was cover'd with ice, there being not the least water to be seen in the morning. The 18<sup>th</sup> was a cold foggy day; in the afternoon the wind turned to the west, and in the night it began to snow, the wind as before, which continued thus the 19<sup>th</sup>, with abundance of snow, so that we were not able to stir abroad. The 20<sup>th</sup> the snow continued with a westerly wind, which lay so high, that we scarce peep'd out of our tent or hut; tho' for the rest, it was not quite so cold, as some days before; and in the Night an easterly wind brought us more snow. The 21<sup>st</sup> the same wind continued very strong, with a violent snow; in the night the wind turn'd to the west. The 22<sup>d</sup> the snow and westerly wind continued with great vehemency, which was follow'd by a very hard frost at night. The 23<sup>d</sup> it was a clear frosty morning, which made us get a little way out of our huts, (tho' not without a great deal of difficulty) to the south side of the isle, to observe the height of the sun; but growing cloudy soon after, could not make an exact observation; however, we saw in the bay thereabouts, the ice and snow at least 6 foot high; the wind was east all night, sometimes we could see the stars; the weather as before. The 24<sup>th</sup> a west wind had blown the ice a great way into the sea; it was first clear weather, then snowy and star-light in the beginning of the night; but in the morning a south wind produced a cloudy sky. The 25<sup>th</sup> the strong south wind and clouds continued, with a very cold night. The 26<sup>th</sup> it snow'd hard, the wind at west: At night we saw the ice again all over the bay; at night (which was cloudy) the wind turn'd to the south. The 27<sup>th</sup> the wind being west, it proved a mild cloudy day, and more ice was forced into the bay; the night was dark and snowy, with an east wind. The 28<sup>th</sup> the wind was at west at first, but veering about to the S. E. it began to snow; the same night the ice was carried a good way into the sea again. The 29<sup>th</sup> the wind turn'd to the S. W. and to the W. at night, with dark rainy weather: In the morning the bay was full of ice again; the wind and weather as before. The 30<sup>th</sup> proving a calm, clear and frosty day, we went (tho' not without a great deal of difficulty) upon the hill; and looking to the south, observed (according to guess) the sun about an hour and half high. In the night the wind turn'd to the east, with fair weather; the stars appeared sometimes; the wind and weather as before. The 31<sup>st</sup> a westerly wind brought us abundance of snow, in the night the wind turn'd to the north, with star-light frosty weather.

The

ay was cover'd  
e least water to  
18<sup>th</sup> was a cold  
noon the wind  
n the night it  
s before, which  
with abundance  
not able to stir  
now continued  
ch lay so high,  
ur tent or hut;  
t quite so cold,  
n the Night an  
re snow. The  
ed very strong,  
night the wind  
d the snow and  
th great vehem  
by a very hard  
as a clear frofly  
et a little way  
without a great  
uth side of the  
of the sun; but  
could not make  
ver, we saw in  
e and snow at  
d was east all  
see the stars;  
e 24<sup>th</sup> a west  
great way into  
weather, then  
the beginning of  
orning a south  
y. The 25<sup>th</sup>  
uds continued,  
26<sup>th</sup> it snow'd  
night we saw  
ay; at night  
d turn'd to the  
being west, it  
and more ice  
the night was  
st wind. The  
first, but ver  
gan to snow;  
carried a good  
weather, the  
29<sup>th</sup> the wind  
e W. at night,  
the morning  
in; the wind  
30<sup>th</sup> proving  
we went (tho'  
difficulty) upon  
the south, ob  
the fun about an  
ight the wind  
ther; the stars  
and wea  
westerly wind  
n, in the night  
n, with star-

The

The 1<sup>st</sup> of Feb. the wind continuing as before; it was clear and calm weather, which made us go upon the hill, where we saw the body of the sun very clear; and on the north-side of the ice nothing but ice as far as we could see; the night was very calm and star-light. The 2<sup>d</sup>, a N. E. wind produced clear but very cold weather, with a bright moon-light night, to our no small satisfaction; we found the bears to grow very shy of us, for we seldom saw any; the wind and weather as before. The 3<sup>d</sup> the wind was easterly, the weather the same, but the night was somewhat cloudy, with a S. E. wind; it was not so cold as before. The 4<sup>th</sup> the wind continued as the day before, in the forenoon, when the ice was carried out of the bay into the sea; in the afternoon the wind turn'd to the south, with snowy weather, but was not so cold as before; it was a star-light night. The 5<sup>th</sup> it was a fullen day, the wind at S. E. and at the east in the night, with some snow; but the cold was somewhat abated. The 6<sup>th</sup> the wind continued as before; the weather calm and cloudy; the wind turning to the S. W. it proved a very clear and moon-shiny night. The 7<sup>th</sup> it blew strong from the E. the weather cloudy. The 8<sup>th</sup> was a very calm day, the wind at south; the ice was carried away quite from the shore, beyond the reach of our eye-sight; it was a clear moon-light night. The 9<sup>th</sup> the wind being northerly, it snowed so violently, that we could not stir abroad, it continued thus all night; the wind at south. The 10<sup>th</sup> proved a pretty mild day, tho' the wind was at the N. but turn'd to the S. W. at night, which was very dark and stormy. The 11<sup>th</sup> was a cloudy day, the wind at the south, but turned to the east at night, but tolerable good weather. The 12<sup>th</sup> the wind continued the same, with some snow; it was a dark night, but not excessive cold, considering the climate and season. The 13<sup>th</sup> the wind stood still in the same corner, with snowy but calm weather; and it was a moon-light night. The 14<sup>th</sup> we had the same wind, and a clear day; but in the night it thawed and grew very stormy. The 15<sup>th</sup> the wind blew as yet from the east, and the snow was so high, that we sunk to the waste in it, so soon as we stir'd out of our huts. The same wind continued the 16<sup>th</sup>, the weather pretty mild, but cloudy: This day we got sight of two wild-fowls, which in respect of their bigness, did appear to us not unlike geese, but were so shy, that they would not come within reach of our guns, we also espied a falcon, but could likewise not come near enough to hit him. The 17<sup>th</sup> the wind blew still from the east, and

had a great deal of snow: In the night the stars appeared sometimes. The 18<sup>th</sup> the wind continued the same, with cloudy but mild weather. The 19<sup>th</sup> it was easterly wind still; and being a fair day, we made shift to get over the hill to the *Red-Hill*, but saw nothing worth taking notice of, not so much as any ice; the weather as before. The 20<sup>th</sup> the weather and wind continued with very little alteration, and was tolerably mild. The 21<sup>st</sup> the wind turned to the N. E. with very bright weather, which made us again get up the hill (tho' not without a great deal of trouble) but could see nothing worth mentioning. The night proved fair and calm, but afterwards frosty with some snow. The 22<sup>d</sup> the wind continued N. E. with much snow; the night was dark and frosty. The 23<sup>d</sup> the wind blew out of the same corner; the weather was very cold, which brought abundance of ice into the bay, but the main sea was clear of it as far as we could see; the night was dark and frosty. The 24<sup>th</sup> an easterly wind produced a most violent frost; the day cloudy, but the night clear, with a north wind, which held the 25<sup>th</sup>, with a cloudy sky; in the afternoon it clearing up in the west, we saw the sun again the first time from our huts, and found it to set at S. W. by W. the night was very dark. The 27<sup>th</sup> it was very calm and mild weather, but at night a south wind brought us a thaw. The 28<sup>th</sup> the south wind and open weather continued, the ice being forced out of the bay into the main sea, yet not quite out of sight, the night was very dark, the wind at S. W.

The 1<sup>st</sup> of March the wind and weather continued as before, with some sunshine in the forenoon, but afterwards it changed and proved rainy: We saw the sun-beams on the S. W. of our hut; the night was very dark, with a S. W. wind. The 2<sup>d</sup> it blew hard from the W. the weather clear and cold; the night was dark and frosty, and the wind very high from the N. E. The 3<sup>d</sup> the wind and weather continued with little alteration; a violent north wind forced the ice into the bay, but in small pieces. The 4<sup>th</sup> the wind turned to the N. E. with cloudy, but calm weather; the cold very tolerable. The 5<sup>th</sup> was cloudy, the wind at N. E. the night the same. The 6<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather continued as the day before; the night proved very calm and pleasant, yet by reason of the snow we could not as yet stir from our huts. The 7<sup>th</sup> it was cloudy but calm, and the night stormy from the N. E. The 8<sup>th</sup> the wind continued as before, with dark and cloudy weather, but a star-light night. The 9<sup>th</sup> the wind blew still from

the

the same corner; both the day and night were cloudy with a sharp frost. The 10<sup>th</sup> it froze very hard, the wind at N. E. with excessive cold weather; the night was very clear and frosty. The 11<sup>th</sup> the weather changed on a sudden, being a calm pleasant fun-shiny day; the south wind in the night brought us such pleasant weather, that we extremely rejoiced at it. The 12<sup>th</sup> the same wind continued, and the ice was carried out of the bay into the main sea, beyond the reach of our eye-sight; the night proved dark, but not very cold; the wind at S. E. The 13<sup>th</sup> was a cloudy day; in the night the wind and weather as before, very dark, but only moderately cold, the wind at N. E. The 14<sup>th</sup> it blew all day and all night, being very cold from the N. E. The 15<sup>th</sup> the wind turning to the south, produced milder weather; and perceiving a bear near our huts (a thing we had not seen many days before) we let fly at him so successfully, that he dropt down dead upon the spot; being glad to find our selves some employment, and to feed upon fresh meat (having lived upon powdered beef for a considerable time) we soon flay'd him, and having hung his skin up in the air to dry, we feasted upon part of the flesh, and sprinkled the rest with a little salt only, by reason we were exceedingly afflicted with the scurvy; the night proved dark, the wind at S. W. The 16<sup>th</sup> the wind continued the same, but the weather was very cold; we fix'd some traps to catch foxes, and in the night the wind turn'd to the N. which held thus the 17<sup>th</sup>, with cloudy weather, and fill'd the bay with ice from the sea; at night the wind was as before, which continued thus the 18<sup>th</sup>, being a cloudy, but frosty day, but a star-light night. The 20<sup>th</sup> proving a calm fun-shiny day, we went upon the hill, but could discover nothing, (as far as we could see) but ice; the night was cloudy, the wind in the south, which held thus the 21<sup>st</sup>, with dark rainy weather, the ice was all carried out to sea again; the night was cloudy, the wind still in the south. The 22<sup>d</sup> the wind turn'd to the S. E. with thick clouds; for want of refreshments we began to be very heartless, being afflicted with the scurvy to that degree, that our legs were scarce able to bear us; the night was cloudy, and the wind as before. The 24<sup>th</sup> proved a pretty pleasant fun-shiny day; in the afternoon the wind shifted to the S. E. with some snow clouds; the night was exceeding dark. The 25<sup>th</sup> was a fun-shiny and calm day, from morning till night; towards evening a southerly wind produced some clouds, but the night proved clear again and calm. The 26<sup>th</sup> the sea had forced the ice into the

bay again; the day was very bright, the wind at S. E. and S. the night was very clear. The 27<sup>th</sup> the same wind continued with fair and clear weather both day and night. The 28<sup>th</sup> proved a cloudy day, the wind at S. E. The ice was carried so far into the sea, out of the bay, that we could scarce see it. The same day we saw a whale, a huge beast, in the bay, but could not come at him: This day going also over the hill to the *Red-Hill*, we spied from thence five whales near the shore, and towards evening four more in the bay, being ten in all we had seen that day; had we had hands enough, and been provided with instruments for such a purpose, we might have taken as many of these fish, as would have freighted a good fleet immediately, without being obliged to stay for the taking of them after their arrival, as they generally do: The wind and weather was in the night as before. The 29<sup>th</sup> a southerly wind produced a cloudy, but very mild day: Innumerable whales appeared near the shore that day, so that had we not wanted men and tools, we might have made a considerable advantage, which we now durst not so much as attempt, being but seven in all, and disabled by the scurvy: In the night the wind and weather as before, which continued the 30<sup>th</sup>, when we saw abundance of fishes, as we did almost every day after; the night was very dark, the wind as before. The 31<sup>st</sup> it blew a brisk gale from the N. E. with some snow; we got sight of four or five whales again, which came so near the shore, that they were likely to have been cast upon the sands; but if they had, we had not strength enough to have catch'd them: We saw likewise a she bear with three young ones, about the bigness of a small sheep: We did what we could to kill them, but our first shot failing, they all got off, to our grief, tho' it was no unpleasant sight to see the young ones follow the old: In the night the wind and weather as before.

The first of *April* was a cloudy day, the wind at E. We saw four or five whales again at the entrance of the bay, but had only the pleasure of looking at them; the night was star-light, the wind in the south. The 2<sup>d</sup> proved a snowy day, the wind at S. E. but not very cold; the night was dark, the wind as before. The 3<sup>d</sup> the wind turning to the W. produced a cloudy day; there being at this time no more than two of us in health, (the rest being very ill and crippled by the scurvy) we killed the only two pullets we had left, at their request, and they fed pretty heartily upon them, in hopes it might prove a means to recover part of their strength, which was much decayed.

cayed,  
ing for  
their fa  
wind w  
continu  
4<sup>th</sup> a w  
day. T  
in the b  
S. E.  
the nigh  
or five  
the win  
continu  
ther; v  
sea and  
and the  
so it di  
of wha  
frosty,  
wind co  
weather  
some wh  
ther as  
fishes n  
last the  
very co  
as befor  
the N. E.  
at night  
which  
of ice,  
14<sup>th</sup> the  
with fu  
to the  
bay, a  
15<sup>th</sup> pr  
whales  
out fo  
very il  
the win  
day, ou  
upon h  
very sic  
day an  
continu  
cloudy  
greatest  
as befor  
ther pr  
having  
grew w  
without  
want o  
excessi  
able, v  
lerably  
were b  
we we  
our ca  
God's  
fore.  
wind  
Vor

cayed, and which we heartily wished, being sorry we had not been more for their sake: In the night the weather and wind was much the same as before, which continued thus all day and all night. The 4<sup>th</sup> a westerly wind produced a sun-shiny day. The 5<sup>th</sup> we saw two very large whales in the bay; the night was dark, the wind at S. E. The 6<sup>th</sup> it was clear weather, but the night dark, the wind N. E. we saw four or five whales more in the bay; at night the wind and the weather as before, which continued the 8<sup>th</sup>, with cold sun-shiny weather; we saw innumerable whales both at sea and in the bay: In the night the wind and the weather continued as before, and so it did the 9<sup>th</sup>, when we saw abundance of whales again; the night was cold and frosty, the wind at north. The 10<sup>th</sup>, the wind continued the same, with very clear weather; the bay was full of ice, and we saw some whales, in the night the wind and weather as before. The 11<sup>th</sup> we saw neither fishes nor bears, having not seen any of the last these several days; it continued to be very cold weather; in the night the wind as before. The 12<sup>th</sup> the wind turning to the N. E. it proved a very clear frosty day; at night the wind and weather as before, which continued the 13<sup>th</sup>; the bay was full of ice, the night very cold and dark. The 14<sup>th</sup> the wind held still in the same corner, with sun-shine; at night the wind turning to the south, the ice was carried out of the bay, a great way from the shore. The 15<sup>th</sup> proved a calm mild day, we saw four whales in the bay, tho' we don't now stir out so often as formerly, our clerk being very ill; the greatest part of the night the wind was at west. The 16<sup>th</sup> being *Easter-day*, our clerk died, the Lord have mercy upon his soul, and upon us all, we being all very sick; the wind was at W. with a clear day and dark night. The 17<sup>th</sup> the wind continued as the day before, but was very cloudy, the bay was full of ice again; the greatest part of the night weather and wind as before. The 19<sup>th</sup> both wind and weather proved as the day before: and now having not the least refreshment left, we grew worse and worse every day, and that without any hopes of recovery, partly for want of necessities, partly by reason of the excessiveness of the cold; for being scarce able, whilst in health, to keep ourselves tolerably warm, by exercising our bodies, we were but in little hopes of doing it now we were sick, and not able to stir out of our cabins, all our dependence being on God's mercy, the wind and weather as before. The 20<sup>th</sup> proved a cloudy day, the wind at S. we saw the ice forced a great

way to the N. at sea, the night was snowy, with an easterly wind. The 21<sup>st</sup> was a bright calm and sun-shiny day, but we could make but slender observations, being not able to stir from our huts, by reason of the scurvy, which encreases upon us every day; the night was cloudy, the wind at N. E. which continued thus the 22<sup>d</sup>; the ice was forced so near the shore, that we could scarce see any water; at night a south wind carried the ice quite out of sight again. The 23<sup>d</sup> the wind blew from the same corner with small rain; we were by this time reduced to a very deplorable state, there being none of them all, except myself, that were able to help themselves, much less one another; so that the whole burthen lay upon my shoulders, and I perform my duty as well as I am able, as long as God pleases to give me strength: I am just now a going to help our commander out of his cabin, at his request, because he imagined by this change to ease his pain, he then struggling with death, the night was dark, and the wind as before. The 24<sup>th</sup> was a cloudy day and night, the wind at S. which continued the 25<sup>th</sup> with some sun-shine: The ice kept about half a mile from the shore to the north-side, but on the south-side of the same bay, no ice was to be seen. We had sight of many whales again; the night was dark, with a strong N. W. wind; the ice was forced nearer to the shore, tho' there remained a good interval of water betwixt both; the wind and weather as before. The 26<sup>th</sup> it was a calm, but cloudy day, the night fair, the wind at W. The 27<sup>th</sup> it was thawing weather: That day we kill'd our dog for want of other refreshment; the night was cloudy, yet without rain, the wind at E. which continued thus the 28<sup>th</sup>, with cloudy weather: The ice was this day carried to sea, quite out of sight; the night was cloudy with a strong N. wind. The 29<sup>th</sup> the wind and weather as before, but turn'd to blow hard from the N. E. at night. The 31<sup>st</sup> was a clear sun-shiny day, with the same wind: [*Die*] *Memorandum*. This word *DIE*, was the last, questionless he writ, intending probably to set down afterwards his observation concerning the night, according to his usual way. This person being one, who (according to the report of others) had learned to write of the other six, he writ as long as he was able, viz. to the last day of *April*; when perhaps, being seized by a fainting fit, he was forced to retire to his cabin, where he delivered up his soul to his creator, as will appear more fully by the following additions.



**A**Mong all the ships that were sent the next year from *Holland* to *Greenland*, those of *Zealand* being the first that came in sight of the isle of *St. Maurice*, some of the seamen being eager to know what was become of their comrades, went ashore in a boat, striving who should be the first to come to their huts, tho' by their not appearing upon the sea-side, they did not preface any good to themselves. They were no sooner entered the hut, but they found they were not deceived in their guests, every one of the poor wretches, left there last year, lying dead in their cabins, the news whereof they brought to their commander.

The first of these seven unfortunate fellows, died the 16th of *April* 1634, whom they had put in a coffin, and deposited in one of the huts. The other six died in the beginning of *May*, as we believe by the conclusion of the journal at the end of *April*.

The before-mention'd ships of *Zealand* came to an anchor in the bay of *St. Maurice's* isle the 4<sup>th</sup> of *June* 1634, where they found the dead carcases of these unfortunate wretches, each in his own hut; near one of them stood some bread and cheese, upon which probably he had fed not long before his death; another had a box with ointment by his cabin-side, wherewith he had rubb'd his teeth and joints, his arm being still extended to his mouth; there also lay a prayer-book near him, wherein he had been reading; the rest being found each in his cabin.

If we seriously reflect upon the condition of these wretches, it must needs have been very miserable, especially after all were fallen sick, so as not to be able to assist one another; especially in respect of him that out-lived the rest, being the same, who according to his own testimony, attended them to the last; and had learn'd to write from the others, as did appear by his hand-writing, till the conclusion of the

journal, who, as we guess, lived some days after he left off writing; it being very probable, that some might grow sooner stiff, by the excessive cold, than others, in proportion of the quantity of natural heat they had left; tho' it is beyond all question, that the source of their distemper was the scurvy, occasioned by their salt food, without any manner of refreshment, which having put the cramp into their limbs, and rendered them incapable of exercise, they soon grew quite stiff, and were quite overcome by the cold; it being certain, that without the scurvy they needed not have dreaded the cold, which was not so excessive, but that once within three or four days they could stir abroad, after the snow was a little settled.

Our commodore had no sooner received the dismal news from the seamen that had been ashore, but he order'd the six dead carcases to be put in coffins, and to be buried with the seventh under the snow, till the ground should become more pliable; which being done, they were afterwards, viz. on *St. John's* day, honourably interr'd (according to the circumstances of time and place) under a general discharge of the cannon of the whole fleet.

It is furthermore left to the consideration of the courteous reader, that he was appointed clerk for this design, having never been in that station before, his want of ability ought to plead strongly for the simplicity of these observations; which having (at the request of some friends) been put to the press, were published, and made as intelligible as the nature of the matter would allow of, without imposing upon the publick, which has been done with the utmost sincerity, after the true original, which still remains in my custody, in opposition to divers fabulous relations, which have been published upon the same subject.

A SHORT



A SHORT  
JOURNAL  
OF

Seven other SEAMEN, who being left in 1634,

AT

SPITZBERGEN,

To pass the Winter, died there in 1635.

IN the year 1633, seven persons being left much at the same time as well at *Spitzbergen*, as in the isle of *St. Maurice*; the ships that were sent thither in 1634, had orders from the *Greenland* company, to release those that had stay'd there, and to leave in their room seven others, who should offer their service for that purpose. Accordingly the following seven were (with their consent) appointed to remain the next following winter at *Spitzbergen*; *Andrew Johnson* of *Middleburgh*, *Cornelius Thyffe* of *Rotterdam*, *Jerome Carcoen* of *Delfts-Haven*, *Tiebke Jellis* of *Friseland*, *Nicholas Florison* of *Hocm*, *Adrian Johnson* of *Delft*, *Fetije Otters* of *Friseland*.

These being provided with all manner of necessaries, as meat, drink, physical preparations, herbs, &c. were left ashore to continue all the winter there; during which time, they kept a journal of all remarkable occurrences; the chief heads whereof I thought only fit to insert here, leaving out the more unnecessary observations, such as of the wind and weather, &c. to avoid prolixity. The 11<sup>th</sup> of *September* 1634, the ships being sail'd thence for *Holland*, they got sight of abundance of whales, at whom they discharged their guns, but could not take any; they went also in search for green herbs, foxes and bears, but met with none. The 20<sup>th</sup> or 21<sup>st</sup> of *October*, they had no more sight of the sun. The 24<sup>th</sup> of *November* the scurvy beginning to appear among them, they search'd very earnestly after green herbs, bears and foxes, but to their great grief could find neither of them; so they comforted one another with hopes that God would provide for them something or other for their refreshment. The 2<sup>d</sup> of *December* *Nicholas Florison* took a dose

of a scorbutic potion, and they set some traps to catch foxes. The 11<sup>th</sup>, *Jerome Carcoen*, took such another potion; and they resolved for the future, every one to eat separately from the other, some being not so much afflicted with the scurvy as the rest. They went often in quest after some refreshments, but meeting with none, they recommended themselves to God's providence. The 12<sup>th</sup> *Cornelius Thyffe* did likewise take a medicinal potion against the scurvy. The 23<sup>d</sup>, as the cook was throwing out some water, he saw a bear just by the hut, but he run away at the noise, before they could come at their guns. The 24<sup>th</sup> they discovered another bear; three of them advancing towards him, he rose upon his hindmost legs, and being shot through the body by one of our guns, he began to bleed and to roar, and to bite one of our halberts with a great deal of fierceness; but finding us too hard for him, he betook to his legs; being excessive eager after some fresh meat, (of which we stood in great need for the recovery of our health) we pursued him with lanthorns and candles a great way, but to our sorrow could not overtake him; which made us say to one another, that in case we were not supply'd by God's peculiar providence, with some refreshments speedily, the pain we endured must needs kill us before the return of our ships; but God's will be done. The 25<sup>th</sup> *Cornelius Thyffe* took another potion against the scurvy, being in a deplorable condition. The 14<sup>th</sup> of *Jan.* *Adrian Johnson* of *Delft* died, being the first of the seven, tho' the other six were full of pain, and very ill. The 15<sup>th</sup> *Fetije Otters* died likewise; and on the 17<sup>th</sup> *Cornelius Thyffe*, being the man of all the rest, in whom they had

had put their most hopes next to God. The remaining four were very weak, and had scarce strength left to stand upon their legs, yet they made shift to make coffins for these three, and put their bodies into them. The 28<sup>th</sup> they saw the first fox, but could not take him. The 7<sup>th</sup> of February they had the good fortune to take a fox, to their no small satisfaction, tho' in effect they were too far gone to receive any benefit thereby.

They saw many bears, three or four, nay sometimes six or ten together, but had not strength enough to manage their guns; or if they had had, they could not have pursued them, being not in a condition to set one foot before another. They not even to bite their biscuits, for they were seized with most cruel pains, generally in their loins and belly, which came generally with the cold; one did not bleed, and another was afflicted with the bloody flux. *Jerome Carcoen* was still something better than the rest, being still able to fetch them some fowl for firing. The 23<sup>d</sup> they began to be so weak, that they kept close in their cabins, recommending themselves to God's mercy. The 24<sup>th</sup> they saw the sun again, which they had not seen since *October* 20 or 21 in the preceeding year. The 26<sup>th</sup>, being the last day (as we guess) they were able to write, and lived not long after; they left this following memorial behind them: Four of us that are still alive, lie flat upon the ground in our hut; we believe we could still feed, were there but one among us that could stir out of his hut to get us some fowl, but no body is able to stir for pain; we spend our time in

constant prayers, to implore God's mercy to deliver us out of this misery, being ready whenever he pleases to call us; we are certainly not in a condition to live thus long without food or fire, and cannot assist one another in our mutual afflictions, but must every one bear our own burthen.

When the ships from *Holland* arrived there in 1635, they found them all dead, shut up close in their tent, to secure their dead bodies against the bears and other ravenous creatures. This being the tent of *Middleburgh*, a baker who got a shore first, happened to come to the back door, which he broke open, and running up stairs, found there upon the floor, part of a dead dog that was laid there to dry; but making the best of his way down again, he trod upon the carcass of another dead dog (for they had two) at the stair foot in the buttry. From hence passing thro' another door, towards the fore-door, in order to open it, he stumbled in the dark over the dead bodies of the men, whom they saw, (after the door was opened) altogether in the same place, viz. three in coffins, *Nicolas Florison* and another, each in a cabin, the other two upon some sails spread upon the floor, with their knees drawn up to their chins. Coffins being ordered to be made for the four that had none; they were buried with the other three under the snow, till the ground becoming more penetrable, they were buried one by another, and certain stones laid upon their graves, to hinder the ravenous beasts from digging up their carcasses: These were the last that pretended to pass the winter at *Spitzbergen*.

A TRUE

A TRUE and SHORT

# ACCOUNT

OF

FORTY TWO PERSONS

Who perished by shipwreck near

# SPITZBERGEN,

In the year 1646.

**J**OHN CORNELIUS of *Muniken*, being ordered to *Spitzbergen*, to catch whales, he set sail from the *Texel* in a galliot, the 6<sup>th</sup> of May 1646, and arrived the 3<sup>d</sup> of June following near *Spitzbergen*, with an intention to anchor in the bay, but was by the vast floats of ice-shoals forced to keep out at sea. After having in vain cruized up and down among the ice-shoals, they got into the bay, but perceiving two whales farther at sea, they sent out their sloop in pursuit of the whales.

Whilst they were rowing up and down to watch the motion of these creatures, they discovered at a distance a great ice-shoal, with something white upon it, which at first sight they imagined to be bears, (they being generally white here;) but one *Ellert Johnson*, (who was in the sloop to manage the harpcock or iron wherewith they strike the whale) judging by the motion that it was something else, persuaded them to row that way, which being done accordingly, they not long after perceived the same to be a piece of a rope belonging to the sails of a ship, which was held up by a man as a signal of their utmost distress; so they rowed up to it with all the oars they had, and coming near them, found (to their great surprize) four living men, and one dead one, (all *Englishmen*) upon the ice-shoal, who upon their bended knees expres'd their joy and thankfulness for so unexpected a deliverance from the jaws of death. They were taken into the sloop, and carried into the bay aboard the ship.

VOL. II.

They had cut a great hole, in the nature of a subterraneous cave, into the ice, and round the entrance thereof had placed the pieces of ice that were cut out of the concavity, to defend themselves against the violence of the winds and waves. In this hole they had spent four or five days, (it being so long since they had lost their ship.)

At first there were in all forty two of them, and they had saved some victuals and tools with their sloop. The commander perceiving, after a little while, that it was impossible for them to hold out long upon the ice-shoal, resolved to go ashore in the sloop, with seventeen of his men, if he could, and to send them word afterwards, how matters stood there. This was done accordingly, but it blowing very hard, and they having not heard the least tidings of them since, they were afraid that they were drowned before they reached the shore.

There were then twenty four left upon the ice-shoal, but the want of provisions encreasing daily among them; and they being reduced to a starving condition, and expecting nothing but present death, resolved to divide themselves, and to get upon several other ice-shoals, in hopes by some chance or other, to come near to the shore; but whether some of them got ashore, or whether they were taken up by some ship or other, or whether they were swallowed up by the merciless waves, they were not able to tell.

5 E

Certain

Certain it is, that we found four of them (the miserable remnants of forty two) sitting together upon this ice shoal, overwhelmed with affliction, without any hopes of being saved, from the last extremity they were reduced to by frost and hunger, before we came in full sight of them with our sloop, having had nothing to feed upon for some time, but a leather-belt, (belonging to one them) which they had divided and eat, share and share alike, till all was consumed.

After they were brought to our ship, our surgeon took all imaginable care for their recovery; notwithstanding which, three of them died in a few days after, so that of forty two wherewith their ship was manned, no more than one escaped with life, who arriving in September 1646, in the galliot the *Delft* upon the *Meuse*, from thence return'd to his native country in *England*.

A N

A

Mon

S I

P Ur  
to  
ab  
in  
Greenland  
nothing is  
than to  
power, f  
another.

Island  
vast exten  
give you  
rial passag  
in their  
Jonas, (ex  
and by c  
note and  
score I a  
Wormius,  
gen, a pe  
of the no  
silence, v  
Dane by  
himself,  
things he  
which I  
Herodotus  
own eyes  
me, that  
be so car  
pose thin  
them, u  
experien  
tootsteps  
what I h  
grim Jon  
others, u  
ged to n  
The

A N  
A C C O U N T  
O F  
I S E L A N D,

S E N T T O

*Monfieur de la MOTHE de VAYER.*

S I R,

**P**Urfuant to your request, I am going to give you the best account I am able of what I could learn concerning the condition of *Ifeland* and *Greenland*, during our stay in the north. As nothing is more agreeable to my sentiments than to serve you to the utmost of my power, so I will treat of both one after another.

*Ifeland* is a large isle, and *Greenland* of a vast extent: I will begin with the first, and give you an account of all the most material passages I have met with concerning it, in their best authors, especially in *Angrim Jonas*, (erroneously call'd *Arngrim* by some) and by conversing with several persons of note and learning in *Denmark*; upon which score I am particularly obliged to *Olaus Wormius*, a doctor of physick of *Copenhagen*, a person very curious in all the affairs of the north. I will also not pass by in silence, what I have read in *Bleskenius*, a *Dane* by birth, and who has been in *Ifeland* himself, at least as far as relates to those things he has been an eye-witness of; for which I have the same regard, as for what *Herodotus* assures us to have seen with his own eyes; it appearing very improbable to me, that men of honour and learning should be so careless of their reputation, as to impose things upon the world, never seen by them, under a false notion of their own experience. To be short, I will follow the footsteps of *Salust*, and rehearse to you what I have either read in *Bleskenius* or *Angrim Jonas*, or heard from *Dr. Wormius* and others, upon whose authority we are obliged to rely in this point.

The isle of *Ifeland* lies in the *Deucalido-*

*nian* ocean, at 13 deg. 30 min. longitude, and 65 deg. 44 min. latitude, according to the elevation taken in the bishoprick of *Hole*, the most northern part of the isle, as *Angrim Jonas* tells us in his *Crimogea*; adding, that he had the same of *Gundebrand de Thorslac*, bishop of *Hole*, his familiar friend, and once a disciple of the famous astronomer *Tycho Brahe*.

*Ifeland* is to the east washed by the *Hyperborean* sea, and on the south side by the *Deucalidonian* sea; to the west it lies opposite to *Greenland*, towards the cape *Farewell*, and on the north side is inclosed by the frozen sea of *Greenland*. Its length from east to west, is computed to be twenty days journey; and its breadth, where it is broadest, at four days journey, from the south to the north. But *Angrim Jonas*, who has given us this account, does not mention whether these days journeys are to be perform'd on foot or on horseback.

It is generally believed to be twice as big as the isle of *Sicily*; and by its elevation and the globe, you will soon be convinced of the truth of what I am going to tell you, *viz.* That about the summer solstice, whilst the sun is in the *Twins* and *Cancer*, the sun does never go entirely below the horizon for two months, in the north of *Ifeland*; but some part of it remains above it, and one half of it whilst the longest days last, from ten at night till two in the morning, when it rises quite above the horizon; whence it appears, that about the winter solstice, whilst the sun is in the signs of *Sagittary* and *Capricorn*, the whole body of the sun does for two months successively not rise above the horizon; and in the shortest days not above half

half of it, from ten a clock in the morning till two in the afternoon, the ordinary time of sun-set here at that season.

This isle has got its name from the whiteness of its ice, *Quasi Island*; it was formerly reputed fertile in wheat, and well stored with wood, fit for the building of large ships; the roots whereof being of a vast bulk, are to this day found underground where these forests stood, and are as black as ebony-wood. But now-a-days *Island* produces no wheat, nay not so much as a tree, except some few shrubs. And were it not that they are furnished with grain from the neighbouring countries, and supplied with sufficient quantities of wood, both for fuel, and their buildings, (which are like those of other parts in the north) by the ice, which in the month of *May* is, together with the wood, forced from the more northern parts on this shore, they must perish with hunger and cold. In their building they also make use of the bones of whales and other great fishes; and for firing, of two sorts of turfs, (or *Cepes Bituminosus*, called *Gleba Fossilis* by *Angrim Jonas*) which they dig and dry in the sun. These shoals of ice, which come from the north thither, bring along with them such vast trunks of trees, that according to the *Island* chronicles, a tree was carried thither of sixty three cubits long, and seven in compais.

For no sooner come the ice shoals from the north to the *Island* coast, but the inhabitants go in quest of these trees, and of several beasts, which are carried along with it thither; such as white and red foxes, stags, wolves, white and black bears and unicorns. For that fine and large horn preserved in the king of *Denmark's* palace at *Fredericksburgh*, (the *Fontainebleau* of that kingdom) belonged to a fish taken upon the ice near *Island*; it is much larger than that of *St. Denis* in *France*. Count *Ulfeld*, great marshal of *Denmark*, shew'd me another of these unicorns, which was entire, but not above two foot long, likewise taken upon the ice near *Island*; he told me, that when he first had it, there was to be seen still part of the flesh and skin.

*Island* is a strong and mountainous country: their pastures are of such goodness, that they are fain to remove the cattle for fear they should burst themselves; the grafs having so agreeable a scent here, that foreigners transport and dry it, to lay it among their linen. However, their beef is not reckoned of the best sort, and their mutton is rank; which the *Islanders* don't much regard, because they dry their meat in the sun and wind, which preserves it better than salt, and takes away much of

its rankness. Butter they make in abundance, and keep it in tubs, or for want of such, only pile it up in the house. Their ordinary drink is milk or whey, sometimes with water, sometimes without. They don't want good horses; these feed during the winter upon dry'd fish, as well as their oxen and sheep, when hay begins to fall short: Of these dry'd fish they also make flour and bread, when by the rigour of the winter season, they can't sometimes be supplied with grain from abroad.

*Island* is full of clear and fine springs, the water whereof is not only very wholesome to drink, but some of them have also a nourishing quality like beer: they are also not destitute of hot springs for bathing; of ponds and lakes, they have great abundance, which furnish them with great quantities of fish; as also great numbers of brooks and navigable rivers, the names whereof, as well as of their bays and capes, I will not insert here, they being to be found in other authors.

*Bleskenius* tells us of a certain lake in the western part of the isle, which always smoaks, and yet is so cold, that it petrifies every thing that is put into it; for, says he, if you put a stick into the ground near it, the stick changes into iron as far as it is under ground; as far as it lies under water it turns into stone, and that part above the water remains wood as before. *Bleskenius* says, he saw this try'd twice, and that part which seem'd to be iron, being put into the fire, it burnt like charcoal. He also tells us of another lake in the middle of the same isle, the exhalations whereof are so malignant, that they kill the birds in an instant that fly over it. This lake seems to be of the same stamp with the *Avernus* of the Greeks mentioned by *Virgil*, lib. 6. *Æneid*.

*Quam super band ullum poterant impune volantes*

*Tendere iter pennis: tali sese balitus atris  
Faucibus effundens, supra ad convexa ferebat:  
Unde locum Graji dixerunt nomine Aornum.*

*Bleskenius* adds, (besides what *Angrim Jonas* relates of the hot springs of *Island*) that certain springs are so hot here, that the water thereof burns the skin; and after it is set to cool, it leaves a sulphur upon its surface, as the sea water leaves a saline substance in the salt pits. Upon the surface of the water of these springs, swims also a certain red substance, which plunges under water as soon as you come near it, but no sooner do you turn your back, but it appears again above water. The same author assures us, that in a certain place of

this isle,  
fountain  
other ex  
ing con  
channels  
or basin  
cellent t  
springs,  
of whey  
venerea  
*Bleskeni*

*Island*  
mineral  
is abund  
especial  
the isle,  
which f  
mount  
mount  
but also  
quor,  
sometim  
vast qua  
These  
well w  
living  
of the  
go to t  
into the  
break f  
gerous  
divers  
low'd u  
as they

It is  
landers,  
where t  
mented  
that th  
infernal  
into th  
ing bac  
says, th  
bloody  
or othe  
the noi  
shoal's  
groans  
souls, l  
endure  
souls a  
as well

The  
he was  
a fire  
sea nea  
all ove  
ment  
among  
that th  
itself.  
an ear  
follow  
V



this isle, named *Turlekbaven*, there are two fountains or springs, one very cold, the other excessive hot; the waters whereof being conveyed by two different pipes or channels, and mix'd together in one trunk or basin, make a convenient and most excellent bath. Near it (says he) is another spring, the water whereof having the taste of wheat, is a good remedy against the venereal distemper, which, according to *Bleskenius*, is very common here.

*Iceland* affords not any mines of metal or minerals, except brimstone, whereof there is abundance in most parts of the isle, but especially in the mount *Hecla* in the east of the isle, extending towards the south, and which sometimes appears all in flames like mount *Vesuvius*. *Bleskenius* says, that mount *Hecla* not only sends forth flames, but also whole torrents of sulphureous liquor, which burns like spirit of wine: sometimes these eruptions are followed by vast quantities of black ashes and stones. These eruptions cease commonly with a west wind, which makes the inhabitants living thereabouts, who know the avenues of the mountains, to chuse that time to go to the top of it, and throw great stones into the hole, through which the flames break forth: it being otherwise very dangerous to approach so near it, there being divers instances that men have been swallow'd up by the earth that has given way as they were going up the mountain.

It is a received opinion among the *Icelanders*, that this mountain is the place where the souls of wicked persons are tormented with fire; for they will tell you, that they see sometimes whole troops of infernal spirits carrying the damn'd souls into the abyss of this mount, and returning back again to fetch more. *Bleskenius* says, this is generally observed after some bloody battle has been fought in some place or other. Thus the *Icelanders* believe, that the noise which arises from the many sea shoals forced against the shore, are the groans and lamentations of the damn'd souls, by reason of the excessive cold they endure; it being their opinion, that some souls are condemn'd to suffer eternal cold, as well as everlasting fire.

The same *Bleskenius* tells us, that whilst he was in *Iceland*, there arose so prodigious a fire about midnight in *November*, on the sea near the mount *Hecla*, that it was seen all over the isle, to the no small astonishment of the inhabitants; the most sensible among whom were however of opinion, that the same proceeded from mount *Hecla* itself. Within an hour after they perceived an earthquake all over the isle, which was followed soon after by so dreadful a noise,

VOL. II.

(like a thunderclap) that every one expected the day of judgment to be at hand. Some few days after, the sea was found dry near the place where the fire had appear'd, and was retreated at least two leagues within its old bounds from the shore.

As the use of corn is unknown among the *Icelanders*, so they neither buy nor sell; but what commodities are brought to them, such as flour, beer, wine, strong-waters, iron, woollen and linen cloths, &c. they exchange for the products of their country; such as dry'd fishes, butter, tallow, coarse woollen cloths, brimstone, foxes, bears, stag and wolves skins. *Bleskenius* says, that the *Germans* who traffick thither, set up their tents upon the shore, where they expose their commodities, as cloaks, shoes, looking-glasses, knives, and such like toys, which they exchange for what the *Icelanders* bring to them. He further adds, that the young women of *Iceland* (who are handsome enough, but miserably clad) come to these strangers to prostitute themselves for some bread, biscuit, or some other trifle; nay, their fathers often carry them to these foreigners, and look upon it as a lucky chance, if they happen to be with child by them; they being afterwards in greater esteem among, and sooner married by the *Icelanders* than others.

So soon as an *Iscander* has bought (or rather exchanged) some wine or beer from these strangers, he invites his kindred, relations, and friends, to make merry with him; when they seldom part as long as any strong liquor is left. During the merriment, they sing the achievements of their ancient warriors, but without any art, order, or rule. It is accounted a singular piece of ill breeding among them, to go away from the table to piss, whilst they are drinking. The young wenches (who as I told you are not ugly) commonly creep under the benches, to reach them the chamber-pots.

*Angrim Jonas* is very angry with *Bleskenius* upon this account, and accuses him of falshood, in reflecting upon the reputation of his countrey-women, and accusing them of barbarity; as also, in regard of what he says concerning their washing their mouths and teeth every morning with their own urine, tho' the same has been observed in the *Celtiberians* by *Catullus*:

*Nunc Celtiber in Celtiberia Terra,  
Quod quisque minxit, hoc sibi solum mane  
Deniem, & russam defricare Gingivam.*

To tell you my opinion upon this matter; it's possible the *Icelanders* are not now so barbarous as formerly, tho' it may rati-

5 F nally

nally be supposed, that a nation living so near the north pole, may not be so refined and polished as some others, especially among the vulgar sort, for people of fashion ought to be exempted of this rule (less or more) in most places.

*Blefkenius* assures us, that the *Icelanders* have familiar spirits, who attend them like servants, and give them notice from time to time when they shall be successful in hunting or fishing. *Ortelius* adds, that they call these dæmons or spirits *drolla's*; which seems to have some reference to the *Danish* word *troll*, which signifies a devil. *Blefkenius* further tells us, that the *Icelanders* sell what wind they please to strangers. *Angrim Jonas* ridicules this story called *Ging*, that the *Iceland* seamen being very expert in discerning in the evening, by the disposition of the air, what wind is likely to blow the next day; which if they find suitable to the wish of such strangers as lie ready to sail near the shore, they pretend to sell them such a wind, which (to cover the deceit) they do thus: They ask the stranger to give them his handkerchief; which done, they pretend to mutter certain words into it, and immediately after tie it into knots, for fear the words should evaporate into the air. Afterwards he returns him his handkerchief thus knotted, with a strict charge to keep it thus with extraordinary care, till he arrives in the desired port: sometimes it happens, that the wind proves according to wish, but much oftner it proves quite otherwise. So soon as the poor stranger is got out to sea, if he be overtaken by a tempest, he is put to no small nonplus what to do, imagining that he carries the devil in his pocket, and consequently thinking it a point of conscience to keep it, yet is unwilling to part with it. If, says *Angrim*, once in a great many times the wind proves according to what the *Iscander* has foretold the stranger, this is a sufficient precedent in opposition to many other experiments made to the contrary; the person who fancies to have bought his favourable wind, not failing to tell it where-ever he comes, that with the assistance of the wind he purchased in *Iceland*, he was happily carried to the desired port.

Tho' such like stories are not likely to make any impression upon men of judgment, they may serve for variety's sake, there being some pleasure in understanding what is said and believed by other people. *Blefkenius* tells us also, that there are forcerers in *Iceland*, who can stop a ship under full sail; against which (says he) they make use of certain ill-scented suffumigations, (described by him) as counter charms, by vir-

tue of which they force the dæmon that retains them, to let the ship pursue its former course. But it's time to return to more serious matters relating to the history of *Iceland*.

*Iceland* was in ancient times divided into four provinces, according to the four corners of the world; each whereof was subdivided into three bailliages, called *reps* by the *Icelanders*, except the northern province, which being the largest and most considerable of all, had four bailliages, each of which was again subdivided into six, seven, eight, or ten districts or judicatures, in proportion to their extent. Every year there was an assembly held of the bailliages in each province, who were convened by certain small crosses of wood, sent by the governor of the province to his respective bailiffs, who were to distribute them among the judges, and these among such of the heads of families, as had a right to appear at this assembly. Besides which, the lord chief justice, or president of the whole isle, who being the interpreter or conservator of the laws of the land, who was also considered as the sovereign of the four provinces, used at certain times to call together the general estates of the whole isle; which was done by four wooden hatches, sent to the four governors of the provinces.

Each bailliage had three principal *pagodes*, or pagan temples, for the administration of justice, and their devotion; whence the office of bailiff was honoured with the surname of *godorp*, i. e. *divine*. The principal care of these bailiffs was to provide for the poor, whereof there were great numbers in so desolate a country; to take care that the poor of one *rep* did not go thence to another; and to refrain the licentiousness of sturdy beggars, against whom the laws were very severe; for they had liberty to kill, or to emaculate them, to prevent their multiplication. They had also a law, forbidding (under pain of banishment) not only a poor fellow to marry a poor woman, but also any man, who had but just enough for his own sustenance, to marry a woman without something to maintain herself.

This aristocratical form of government, and manner of administering justice, continued in this isle till the year of *Christ* 1263. when the kings of *Norway* conquered the said isle, and forced them to pay them an annual tribute; being invited thereunto by the intestine broils arisen among the great ones, about the administration of the government. The kings of *Denmark*, after having made themselves masters of *Norwegen*, did send into *Iceland* their governors

or viceroys; from which time on, they had nothing but the shadow left of their antient liberty. These governors have their residence in a certain castle, called *Besfat*, seated in the western part of the isle. They are however not obliged to reside there constantly, unless in case of necessity, and when they gather the yearly tribute, which is paid in the same commodities I had occasion to mention before, and which they exchange with strangers; which serve in some measure the king of *Denmark* to provide his navy with provisions, and clothing for the seamen.

The last viceroy, or governor of *Iseland* (since our coming into the north) was Mr. *Prosmoel*, admiral of the *Danish* fleet, lately defeated by the *Swedes* in the *Baltick* sea. The admiral fought with incredible courage, and died upon the deck of his ship with sword in hand, having refused to accept his life from the hands of his enemies.

*Angrim Jonas* dates christianism in *Iseland*, from the thousandth year after the birth of Christ; not but that there were christians there a considerable time before; but that paganism was not absolutely abolished till that time. The *Islanders*, whilst pagans, did, besides other gods, adore *Thor* and *Odin*. The first was to them instead of *Jupiter*, and *Odin* in lieu of the *Mercury* of the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*. Hence they call to this day their Thursday *Thorfsday*, and their Wednesday *Odin's Daguir*. The altars consecrated to their gods were covered with iron plates, upon which they kept an everlasting fire. Upon the altar stood a certain vessel of tin, containing the blood of the sacrifice, wherewith they besprinkled the spectators. On one side of this vessel lay a silver ring, of about twenty ounces weight, which they used to besmear with the blood of the sacrifice, and lay their fingers upon it when they were to take a solemn oath. The chronicles of *Iseland* tell us, that they used to offer sacrifices of men to their idols. These they threw down from the rocks, or into deep pits made for that purpose near the gates of their temples. The pagan *Islanders* had their two principal temples, one in the north, the other in the south part of the isle. In lieu whereof the *Iseland* christians have erected two, and the only two bishopricks in these parts of the isle, viz. that of *Hole* in the north, and that of *Scalbold* in the south. They at present profess the *Lutheran* religion, as well as in *Denmark*.

The antient *Islanders* were tall, and well made, robust, nimble, and active, famous gladiators, and much addicted to pyracies. *Monomachies*, or single duels, were publicly allowed among them; nay, even

their law-differences were decided by duels, the vanquished losing their pretensions, as did likewise he who refused to accept the challenge, and was used in the same manner as if he had been vanquished. This was the chief method of acquiring possessions among them; for, if two gladiators entered upon a single combat, the conqueror became by his victory master of the whole estate of his conquered enemy, against which his heirs had but one remedy, which was to bring a large bull or ox to the conqueror, which he was to kill with one stroke, which if he fail'd to do, he lost his whole pretension upon the estate of his conquer'd adversary.

Besides that the *Islanders* were very strong and courageous, they had also a sufficient share of wit, and were so curious in their annals, that they not only carefully preserved their own history from oblivion; but also embellished the same with the most memorable transactions that happened in the neighbouring kingdoms. Hence it is, that *Angrim Jonas*, in his *Specimen Islandicum*, speaking of his countrymen, calls them *ad totius Europæ res historicas lynciæ*, i. e. quicksighted in the whole history of *Europe*. Certain it is, that *Saxo Grammaticus*, in his preface to his *Danish* history, confesses to have made use with good success of the memoirs taken out of the *Annals* of *Iseland*, called *Tylenfes*. Dr. *Wormius*, I remember, told me concerning these Annals, that they were curiously written, and contained many exquisite matters (not to be found elsewhere) relating to the isles of *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Scotland*, and *England*, nay, even in the dukedom of *Normandy*: The reason whereof might probably be, that these *Islanders* were very powerful in the *Deucalidonean* or *Scots* sea, and perhaps carried from thence their commerce as far as *Normandy*.

The most antient histories of *Iseland*, and such as are most in esteem among them, were written in verse; it being observable upon this head, that the antient kings and heroes of the north used constantly to carry some poets along with them to the wars, who used to celebrate their histories in verse. These were sung by the soldiers in their armies, and consequently divulged in the adjacent countries. The *Islanders* were so famous for their poetry among the neighbouring nations, that it was generally believed that there was a certain kind of magic hidden in their verses, whereby they could summon the dæmons from the infernal regions, and change the influence of the planets. Their poets are born, and not made such; for the most ingenious person among them cannot write a verse, without his natural genius prompts him to it, the rules of their

their poetry being most strict and severe; whereas such as are endowed with this qualification by nature, write them with such facility, that they can speak scarce any thing but in metre. They are commonly seized with this poetical frenzy in the new moon, when their faces appear dreadful, with a pale countenance, and hollow eyes; not unlike as the sybil of *Cume* is described by *Virgil*. At that time it is very dangerous to converse with these furious fellows, the wound given by a mad dog being scarce more dangerous than their venomous satires.

I cannot forbear to tell you what *Dr. Wormius* related to me upon this head: Some years before, when he was *rector magnificus*, (or vice-chancellor of the university of *Copenhagen*) a certain young student, a native of *Iceland*, made his complaint to him against one of his countrymen, who, as he said, had most highly affronted him in one of his satires. *Wormius* having sent for the poet, he did not disown the poem, but denied that it was intended against his countryman; and in effect, the vice-chancellor, according to the knowledge he had of the *Iceland* tongue (being a dialect of the ancient *Runic* language) could not find out any great reason of complaint in the said poem. The plaintiff, finding the vice-chancellor inclinable to his adversary's side, burst out into tears; telling him, with a mournful countenance, that if he did not assist him, he was lost for ever. Then rehearsing to him the fables, figures, and other malicious designs, under which the malignity of this satire was couched; he further told him, that he must be looked upon as an infamous person in his country, if this poem should ever come thither; that all his welfare lay at stake; nay, that the malicious design of it reached even his life, and that the charms contained therein would pursue him, and have their effects upon him wherever he went. *Dr. Wormius*, not a little moved in compassion, when he saw him in this agony, took the poet aside, representing to him the duty and charity of a christian, and likewise the severity of the *Danish* laws against forcerers; with severe threats to deliver him into the hands of justice, if the other should happen to fall sick, tho' only out of fear: Which made such impression upon the poet, that at last he confessed the malicious design of his satire, tore it to pieces, and promising never to write it, or speak of it again, embraced the young student, who was ravished with joy, because he had made his peace with the poet.

The *Iceland* poets have a certain mythology or explanation of their fables, called

76. Edda. Edda. Among other matters, they sup-

pose a certain giant, named *Immer*, the first principle of things. They say, that the chaos produced dwarfs, who getting upon the giant, took him to pieces. Out of his skull they made the heavens, out of his right eye the sun, out of his left the moon, out of his shoulders the mountains, the rocks of his bones, the sea of his bladder, and the rivers of his urine; and so with the other parts of his body: Whence it is, that these poets call the heavens *Immer's* skull, the sun his right eye, the moon his left eye, the rocks his bones, the mountains his shoulders, the sea his bladder, the rivers his urine, and so forth. *Dr. Wormius* did shew me a very antient copy of this *Edda*, written in the *Iceland* tongue by an *Iselander*, and interpreted it to me, whence I have taken what I have related to you now.

If we may believe the *Icelanders* annals, they used in former ages to be so formidable at sea, that both the kings of *Denmark* and *Norway* were jealous of their naval strength; whereas now they have no wood enough to build a fisher-boat. They formerly traffick'd into all the circumjacent countries, whereas now they scarce ever leave the isle, unless some few of them who come to *Copenhagen* to study, and are generally so eager to return to their native country, that there is not so much as one instance to be given of their staying in *Denmark* afterwards, tho' good livings have been offered them there, there being some among them who have applied themselves to their studies with very good success. They are so bigotted to their misery, that whatever you tell them concerning the advantage of the *Danish* climate beyond theirs, has not the least effect upon them. There were at that time about fourteen or fifteen students at the university of *Copenhagen*, who were generally speaking of a low stature, and slender; tho' I remember, *Blefkemius* says in one place, that he saw an *Iselander* in *Iceland* of such a prodigious strength, that he could lift a *Hamborough* barrel of beer (holding forty-eight gallons) to his mouth.

The *Icelanders* retain to this day some relics or rather a shadow of their antient government; their laws being now so interwoven with those of *Norway* and *Denmark*, that whilst they are fond, not quite to part with their own, and at the same time are obliged to obey the others, they entangle themselves into no small difficulties concerning the concordance betwixt their and the *Danish* laws; which has made *Angrim Jonas* say, that there are as many *Pantimies* in the laws of *Iceland*, as there are *Antinomies* in the *Roman* law.

The *Icelanders* retain to this day their antient



Immer, the first  
y say, that the  
o getting upon  
ces. Out of his  
rens, out of his  
his left the moon,  
mountains, the  
a of his bladder,  
and so with the  
Whence it is,  
heavens Immer's  
e, the moon his  
ones, the moun-  
his bladder, the  
h. Dr. Wormius  
ent copy of this  
and tongue by an  
ic: to me, whence  
e related to you

Islanders annals,  
o be so formida-  
ings of *De mark*  
of their naval  
ey have no wood  
boat. They for-  
the circumjacent  
they scarce ever  
me few of them  
to study, and are  
rn to their native  
it so much as one  
ir staying in *Den-*  
ood livings have  
there being some  
plied themselves  
ood success. They  
isery, that what-  
ng the advantage  
nd theirs, has not  
There were at  
or fifteen students  
abagen, who were  
low stature, and  
r, *Blefkemius* says  
w an *Islander* in  
s strength, that  
b barrel of beer  
s) to his mouth.  
this day some re-  
their antient go-  
ing now so inter-  
way and *Denmark*,  
not quite to part  
the same time are  
ers, they entangle  
difficulties con-  
betwixt their and  
has made *Angrim*  
as many *Pantino-*  
as there are *An-*

this day their an-  
tient

tient custom of building their houses at a considerable distance from one another, without any order or rule, for fear of fire, being all of wood: They have no other windows but a hole on the top; their houses being very low, and sometimes half under ground, by reason of the high winds that often blow here. They are commonly covered (like those in *Sweden*) with the bark of beech-tree covered with turfs, much after the same manner as *Virgil* describes the hut of *Tityrus* in his *Bucolics*:

*Pauperis & Tuguri congestum cespite culmen.*

These are their dwelling-houses, wherein they live to a hundred years of age, and more, without making use of any physick or physicians.

The whole isle of *Island* has no more than two villages, which are the seats of their two bishops, viz. *Hole* and *Schalbolt*; the first whereof, being the biggest, has only a few houses; and as they have neither towns nor villages, so they have no highways; which obliges those that travel here from one province to another, to make use of the needle and compass (as they do at sea) for their guide; and near those pits or holes, which by reason of their being filled with snow, might prove dangerous to travellers, they set up marks to warn them of the danger. The *Islanders* seldom inhabit but near the sea shore, or near a river, for the conveniency of fishing and pasture, so that the inland country is in a manner a desert. At *Hole* there is a college or school for boys, till they come into rhetoric, when they are sent to *Copenhagen* to study philosophy and divinity. Here is also a printing-press, where they did sometime ago print the Old Testament, translated into the *Island* tongue. The New Testament is still in the press for want of paper, which is a dear commodity in that country.

There have been divers bishops of note in *Island*, especially in the see of *Hole*, a catalogue of whom you may see in the *Crimson* of *Angrim Jonas*. *Gundebrand Torlac* was bishop of this see, a person of great probity and learning. *Angrim Jonas* being his coadjutor, had the survivance of this bishoprick granted him by the king of *Denmark*; but after the death of *Gundebrand*, refused to accept of the same, having for some time before devoted most of his time to his private studies. He is still living; and, as *Dr. Wormius* told me, above ninety years of age, notwithstanding which he married a very young woman about four years ago. He is both a man of learning and probity, and much consider'd for his

VOL. II.

knowledge in the affairs of the north, as his writings sufficiently testify.

I had almost forgot to mention one thing, worth our observation among the *Islanders*, viz. that they are great chess-players, there being not a peasant in the country, but what has a set of it, which they make themselves out of fish-bones. The whole difference betwixt theirs and ours, being only that our fools stand for their bishops; because, say they, the clergymen ought to be near the king's person. Their rooks represent little captains, whence the *Island* scholars call them *Centuriones*. They are represented with swords on their sides, with bloated cheeks, as if they were blowing the horn they hold in both their hands. I shall have occasion to speak more concerning the horns used by the northern generals in the wars, which are not unlike that of our *Rouland*, or the horn, or rather trumpet of *Mijenus*, whom *Virgil* styles *Hectoris magni comes*, or, *HeFor*'s companion; it being certain, that in *Germany*, as well as the northern parts, trumpeters are not considered as servants, but officers of the troop; but of this more another time. We return to our chess-game.

This game is not only of antient standing, and generally used, in *Island*, but all over the north. The *Norwegian* chronicle tells us, that *Drofen* the giant, foster-father of *Herald* surnamed the *Hairy*, (as *Chiron* was of *Achilles*) having understood the great actions of his pupil, then king of *Norway*, sent him, among other presents (mention'd in that chronicle) a very fine and rich chess-table. This *Herald* reign'd about the year of Christ 870. And if *Encolpius* in *Petrus* could brag that he had seen *Trimalcion* play at draughts upon tables made of turpentine wood and chrystals, with men of gold and silver; I may boast to have play'd at chess with the countess *Eleonore*, natural daughter to the king of *Denmark*, married to count *Ulefeld*, great marshal, and chief minister to the king of *Denmark*. The tables were inlaid with a white and yellow amber; the pieces of gold, curiously wrought, and enamell'd with the same colours as the tables. The kings and queens were dress'd in their royal robes, seated upon a throne, with a crown on the head. The bishops had their mitres and habits, richly adorned; and the knights were mounted on horses, with fine trappings. The rooks were represented by elephants with towers on their backs. The men were little musqueteers, presenting their guns close to their cheeks, as if they were expecting the word, to fire.

I told you before, that the *Island* tongue was founded upon the antient *Runic* language; and *Dr. Wormius*, who is well ver-

*Chess-play much used in the north.*

*Island a dialect of the Runic.*

fed in the *Runic*, and has writ a whole treatise of it, has assured me, that the *Iceland* tongue is the purest dialect of the *Runic* that is to be found now. For a farther proof whereof it is to be observed, that the alphabet given us by *Blekenius* are *Runic* characters; adding, that some of them being designed for hieroglyphicks, express entire words. *Angrim Jonas* has also a whole chapter of it in his *Crimogea*. And since this book is very scarce to be had here, and consequently much more in *France*, you will I hope not take it amiss, if I entertain you with some things I have observed there, it being certain, that by explaining to you the antiquity of the *Iceland* tongue, I shall at once give you a considerable insight into the ancient state of the north.

*Angrim Jonas* tells us, that the *Iceland* chronicles, speaking of the first inhabitants of the northern part of the world, deduce their origin from a certain *Asiatick* prince, named *Odin* or *Ottin*, who being forced out of the lesser *Pbrygia* by the victorious arms of *Pompey the great*, retired with the remainder of his *Pbrygian* forces into the north. *Angrim* is forced to confess, that the *Iceland* chronicles don't begin but with *Odin*, though at the same time some other northern countries trace their origin much further, viz. of a certain prince, named *Norus*, who first erected *Norway* into a kingdom, and provided them with wholesome laws. This *Norus* was son to *Tberre* king of *Gotland* and *Finland*, the most potent, brave, and most virtuous prince of that age; for which reason he was by his subjects revered like a God; and the *Norwegians* to this day call the month of *January* *Tberre*, after his name. King *Tberre* had a most beautiful daughter, named *Goa*, who being ravished by a foreign prince, her brother *Norus* went in pursuit of the ravisher; and the name of *Goa* was given to the month of *February*, to her memory, the same being retained to this day among the *Icelanders*. *Angrim* has given us the genealogy of all the ancestors of *Norus*, who were reckon'd among the number of the gods by the northern nations; one whereof represented the god of the sea, another of the winds, another of snow, another of the winter. Among the rest they worshipped one under the name of the god of fire, whose statue was extremely fine and handsome; whence they gave him the name of *Halogie*, i.e. a fierce and glorious flame. This genealogy reaches to *Giloe*, a nephew of *Norus*, in whose reign (as the chronicle tells us) the great *Odin* came out of *Asia* into the north.

*Angrim Jonas* finding such a diversity in the chronicles, saw himself obliged to look

farther backwards, beyond the first kings of *Norway*, for the first original of the northern nations, which he deduces from the ancient giants that were forced out of the land of promise by *Jeshua*, and afterwards settled their habitations in the northern parts, from whom the *Gotbs* derive their race, the word *Got* signifying as much as a giant; wherefore I think it not amiss to say something as well in reference to these giants as of *Odin* the *Asiatick* prince.

This famous *Odin* was worshipped as a God all over the north, under the name of *Mercury*, by reason of his excellent wit. It is he who laid the first foundation of the northern poetry, and of their *magi*, so much celebrated in other parts of the world. Of the first I have said something already, and upon the *magi* I could say much more, were it not that it both deserves and requires a most particular account, which I intend to reserve for another opportunity. I can't however forbear to put you in mind upon this occasion, of the negligent temper of many of our modern authors, who, without making any serious reflection upon the circumstances of things imposed upon the world (without the least sense or reason) by antiquity, are not only taken by them for granted, but also improved by them, in order to make them pass current in the world. I would desire any body to consider how little coherence there is betwixt the fabulous relations of *Odin* their *Asiatick* prince, and the time of *Pompey*, so much celebrated in history?

Is it not a most surprizing thing, to see most of the antients, represent the founders of nations, or other great men, like giants? Thus they make *Hercules* three times bigger than other men. And *Virgil* represents his *Aeneas* and *Turnus* like mountains, *quantus Atlas, aut quantus Erix*; and compares *Andarus* and *Bitias* to two tall oaks. Thus all the pictures and statues of *Charles the great* (in the German churches) are much beyond the size of an ordinary man. I remember that I saw the statue of a *Rowland* in the market-place of *Bremen*, of the height of a pike. *Saxo Grammaticus* makes his *Danes* to be descended from giants. *Job*, and *Olaus Magnus*, two brothers, and both *Swedish* historians, do the same with their countrymen, as *Angrim Jonas* describes his first *Icelanders* as giants, the word *Got*, as he says, signifying a giant, and that the ancient *Gotbs* were actually such. And because the giants of *Canaan*, who were drove thence by *Jeshua*, were the first giants mentioned in the holy scripture after the deluge, these must be brought into the north, because *Palestine* was too hot for them to abide in.

The



The two before-mentioned *Swedish* historians (who being brothers, succeeded one another in the archbishoprick of *Upsal*) outdo even *Angrim Jonas* himself in deducing the origin of the *Swedes* from the children of *Japhet*; and take a great deal of pains to persuade the world, that the city of *Upsal* was built in the time of *Abraham*. I wonder how *Angrim Jonas* happened not to follow their footsteps, in deducing the origin of his *Islanders* from the race of *Japhet*; seeing it is said of the children of *Japhet*, in the tenth chapter of *Genesis*, *Ab his divisæ sunt insule gentium in regionibus suis, unusquisque secundum linguam suam, Et familias suas in nationibus suis*; By these were the isles of the *Gentiles* divided in their lands, every one after his tongue, after their families in their nations. For it being a general and orthodox opinion, that the children of *Noah* did repeople the world after the deluge, and that those of *Japhet* in particular, settled in the isles: *Angrim* might with much better pretence affirm, that of the first inhabitants of his isle, than *Olaus Magnus* had told us of the *Swedes* being descended from the race of *Japhet*; for besides that *Angrim* has the history of *Genesis* on his side (which the *Swedes* have not) it saves the trouble of tracing the original of the *Islanders* from the giants of *Canaan* coming into the northern parts.

To tell you my real opinion concerning those gentlemen, who have taken so much pains in making so nice a scrutiny into the first inhabitants of the world, after the deluge, they have taken a great deal of pains in vain; it being certain, that since we are destitute of true histories concerning these most ancient times, all their relations are founded only upon conjectures, or some fabulous chronicle or account ill digested and worse explained. I don't apply this only to *Mr. Angrim Jonas*, for whom I have a singular respect: The error is general, he having not been the first who traced the original of the northern nations from the giants of *Canaan*; besides that, he has no insignificant plea for his assertion, because he found some *Island* words to have no small congruity with the *Hebrew*, which was called the language of *Canaan*, after the *Jews* had made themselves masters of the land of *promise*, by chasing the giants thence. Our author had unhappily forgot, that these giants did not speak *Hebrew*, which being foreign to them, they could not possibly introduce it in the north, if we would take it for granted, that they actually inhabited there.

Many errors of this nature are to be met with in the writings of most of the best authors, who have run upon the same mistake

in looking for the true origin of nations among the interpretation or etymology of certain *German* or *Hebrew* words, which to them seem'd to have a near relation to the language of those nations they were treating of. Thus *Mr. Grotius*, in his treatise of the origin of the *Americans*, deduces their race from the *Germans*, because, says he, many of their words terminate in *Lan*, *Land* being a *German* word. *Mr. Saß* says, that there is a certain nation in *America*, called *Alavardes*, who have got their name from one *Alvarado*, a *Spanish* commander, who conquered them. But *Grotius* traces the origin of the *Alavardes* from the *Lombards*, by a corruption of the word; as to this day the *French* call *Hallbards*, certain arms of the *Lombards*, called *Lombards* by the ancient *French*.

*Mr. Bechard*, a person not inferior in learning to *Grotius*, takes the same road in his treatise called *Ptoleæ*, of the partition and inhabitants of the earth after the deluge, his reasons being founded upon conjectures of the same nature; tho' I must confess I could not but be surpris'd at his stupendous knowledge in the eastern languages, in finding out the interpretation of the *Carthaginian* verse in *Plantus* his comedy, called the *Carthaginian*, out of the *Hebrew*. I told you just now, that his invention is full of ingenuity; but can't however agree with him, that the *Carthaginian* tongue had any relation to the *Hebrew*, for *Dido*, (who founded *Carthage*) being a native of *Phœnicia*, (which language was very different from the *Hebrew*) the *Carthaginians* questionless were so far from speaking *Hebrew* in the days of *Plantus*, that it is most likely they retained the same language that *Dido* had introduced there, viz. the *Phœnician*. *Mr. Samuel Petit*, a learned man and great critick, having before *Mr. Bechard* found out quite another interpretation of the same words in *Plantus*, I am apt to imagine, that if a third person (as well skill'd as they in the *Hebrew*) should undertake the same task, he would find out another interpretation of the same *Carthaginian* verses in *Plantus*, by virtue of the transposition of the letters and points, which these two gentlemen have made use of to attain their end, according to the liberty allowed to the criticks in the *Hebrew*; by which rule they are able to give almost what sense they please to a sentence, just as we can make our chimes found a tune at pleasure.

I hope, Sir, you will pardon this digression, which I thought not altogether foreign to our present purpose, when I observed *Mr. Angrim Jonas* to be misguided by the same error, as many others have been

been besides him, in looking for the origin of the *Islanders* among the *Hebrew*, it being certain, that nothing can be more fallacious than conjectures founded upon such like etymologies.

I am apt to believe, that *Angrim Jonas* would have acknowledged the same giants, who, according to his opinion, first peopled the north, for the first founders of the *Islanders*, were it not that he believes that isle not to have been inhabited till for a considerable time after; wherefore it will not be amiss to relate the chief heads of his relation upon that account. He says, that *Island* was first of all discovered by one *Naddocus*, who, as he was going to the isles of *Faro*, was cast by a tempest on the eastern part of *Island*, unto which he gave the name of *Sneeland*, i. e. *Snowland*, from the vast heaps of snow he saw there, which made *Naddocus* not to stay there long. The next who went in quest after this isle, was a certain *Sewede*, named *Garderus*, who hearing *Naddocus* speak of this isle, found it, and landed there in the year 864; and having pass'd the whole winter there, called it *Gardersholm*, i. e. *Garders isle*. The third person who came into this isle, was a famous *Norwegian* pirate named *Flocco*, who having understood something of the situation of this isle, made use of a peculiar invention for his direction, the compass being then a thing as yet unknown in the world. As he was going from *Hittland*, (one of the *Orcades* or *Orkney* islands) he ventured boldly into the main sea, and having taken three ravens along with him, he let one of them fly as soon as he thought himself at a good distance from the shore; but finding the raven returning towards *Hittland*, from whence he was come, he kept on his course farther at sea; and then letting go the second raven, he soon found by her return to the ship, that she could discover no land; so steering his former course for some time, he sent forth the third raven, which discovering the *Island* shore, *Flocco* followed her with all the sails he could make; and thus with a favourable wind landed in the eastern part of *Island*, then call'd *Gardersholm*, where he pass'd the winter, and finding himself against the spring surrounded with whole mountains of ice, (called the *Greenland* ice by the inhabitants) he gave it the name of *Island*, i. e. *Iceland*, which name it has retained ever since; *Flocco* pass'd another winter in the south part of the isle; but being as little pleased with that part as with the other, he return'd to *Norway*, where they gave him the name of *Kesnafloke*, i. e. *Flocco the Raven*, because he had made use of that creature in the discovery of *Island*.

The true founder of the *Islanders*, was a certain baron of *Norway*, named *Ingulph*, who having with his brother-in-law *Hiorleifus*, killed two of the greatest men of that country in a duel, were banish'd for that fact. And it being the custom of this country for exiles to take along with them the doors or gates of their houses, *Ingulph* having cast anchor near the *Island* shore, threw his gates over-board, in order to facilitate his landing upon them. But being forced to another part of the isle, viz. in the southern part, he landed there; but finding his gates cast ashore three years after, he thought fit to fix his habitation thereabouts. *Ingulph* and his brother-in-law first landed in this isle in the year 870, but did not settle there till four years after, viz. 874, whence the *Island* chronicles take their epocha; this being the time of the first peopling of this isle, which the same chronicle says, *Ingulph* found desert and uncultivated. However, it is said, that some *English* and *Irish* miners were before that time cast ashore here, the same having been discovered by some bells, crosses, and other pieces made in *England* and *Ireland*, and some books they had left behind them. It is agreed on all hands, that the *Irish* had been ashore in this isle several times before the time of *Ingulph*; for their chronicles say, that the ancient *Islanders* called these *Irish*, *Papa's*, and the western part of the isle, *Paper*, from the *Irish* who used to land there.

Because the *Island* chronicle calls *Island*, *A wilderness and uncultivated*, at the time of the arrival of *Ingulph*, *Angrim Jonas* assures us boldly, that it was not inhabited before that time; nay, is angry with those who disagree with him in this point, as *Pontanus*, and others, who would have *Island* be the *Toule* of the ancients mentioned by *Virgil*, who speaking of *Augustus*, says,

— *Tibi serviat ultima Thule.*

For (says he) in his *Specimen Islandicum*, if *Island* is supposed to have been the *Toule* of the ancients, it must have been inhabited in *Augustus's* time; which is contrary to our *Island* chronicles, which tell us, that it was not inhabited till *Augustus's* time.

But I would have this gentleman to call to mind, what he himself has alledged in another place, viz. That the *Irish* used to come ashore in *Island* before the time of *Ingulph*, and that these *Irish* were called *Papa's* by the ancient *Islanders*. I would fain know of him, who were these ancient *Islanders*. I agree with *Angrim*, that *Island* was not converted to the christian religion till some years after *Ingulph* landed there;

*Islanders*, was named *Ingulph*, her-in-law *Hior-greatest* men of the banish'd for the custom of this along with them houses, *Ingulph* the *Island* shore, in order to them. But be- of the isle, viz. landed there; shore three years his habitation his brother-in- in the year 870, four years after, d chronicles take the time of the which the same found desert and it is said, that ers were before the same having ls, crosses, and and *Ireland*, ft behind them. that the *Irisb* le several times for their chro- *Islanders* called the western part the *Irisb* who used

a *Thule*.

n *Icelandicum*, if been the *Thule* e been inhabited is contrary to ch tell us, that *Augustus* his time. entleman to call has alledged in the *Irisb* used to ore the time of *Irisb* were called *Islanders*. I would ere these ancient *Angrim*, that *Ise-* the christian reli- *Ingulph* landed there;

there; but on the other hand, he will, I hope, easily allow me, that there were a considerable number of christians at that time in the northern countries: 'tis certain that the *Irisb* were such, the marks they had left behind them, and found by *Ingulph*, sufficiently testify the same. *Angrim* mentions in his *Crimogea*, that *Ingulph*'s brother-in-law, who came along with him into *Island*, had many sentiments which inclined to christianity, if he was not an absolute christian. And it is certain, that the christian religion was at that time spread all over the northern countries, and among the rest in *Island*, as I shall have occasion to shew anon. This being granted, what time is it that *Angrim* pretends to allow to the pagan *Islanders*, who were, as he says, so zealous in their idolatry, and especially in their adoration of *Odin*, by whom they used to swear, and call him the grand protector of *Asia*. It is beyond all dispute, that among all the heathenish superstitions, the sacrifices of men are of the most ancient date, which, that they were practised among the ancient *Islanders*, I have sufficiently demonstrated before. Their own chronicle tells us, that in the western part of the isle there was a certain cirque, in the center whereof stands a high rock, from whence they tumbled down the miserable wretches design'd for the sacrifice, the blood whereof was afterwards offered to their Gods. The same chronicle mentions, that after the said custom was abolished here, as well as in other places, the rock retained still a red tincture, the remnants of the blood spill'd there before. I must, I say, upon this account, once more ask *Angrim*, where he will fix these many ages mentioned in his annals? And from whence he dates the introduction or invention of their mythology call'd *Edda*, which are of such antiquity, and so peculiar to the *Islanders*, that the other nations have but very little knowledge of it, and all the other *Europeans* none at all.

Add to this, Sir, that the *Island* chronicles, when they speak of the voyages of *Naddheus*, of *Garderus*, and *Flocco* (all which happened before the time of *Ingulph*) don't make the least mention of the isle of *Island* having been a desert at that time: certain it is, that *Flocco* lived there for two whole years, and in all probability, not without such provisions as are the products of a country not destitute of inhabitants. Besides this, how will *Angrim Jonas* come off of what he had said of the *Islanders*, that they were very exact and curious, in recording the histories of all other nations of *Europe*; ad totius Europæ res historicas *Lynceri*, says he: *Herodotus* and *Plato* men-

VOL. II.

tion the fame of the ancient *Egyptians*: For (says he) they preserve in their libraries, the most ancient monuments of the history of foreign nations, looking upon it as the best argument they can alledge for the antiquity of their own nation. To add as much weight as I can unto what *Angrim Jonas* says upon this head concerning his *Islanders*, I must tell you, that Dr. *Wormius* shew'd me a copy of a chronicle of the western part of *Island*, wherein (by his interpretation) I found many remarkable passages in the history of *Norway*, *Denmark*, *England*, the *Orcaides*, *Hebrides*, and among the rest, of the invasion of that part of *France* by the *Normans*, unto which they gave that name after their conquest. The arrival of *Ingulph* being not mentioned till afterwards, it seems very probable, that there were certain people that took care of the records of *Island*, and that consequently that isle was inhabited before that time. I am of opinion, that the *Island* chronicles (which speak of *Ingulph*) cited by *Angrim Jonas*, are authentick, and that the said *Ingulph* did not come into *Island* till about the year 874. But it is possible, that the southern parts, where he landed, were at that time dispeopled either by mortality, or the ravages of certain pirates; yet does it not follow from thence, that the whole isle was destitute of inhabitants. It is not likely, that *Ingulph* could settle a sufficient colony there to people the whole isle; besides, that the *Island* chronicles tell us, that divers neighbouring nations did settle in: divers parts thereof. *Angrim Jonas* himself, makes mention of a certain inhabitant of the *Hebrides*, named *Kalman*; who, he says, was the first who made a settlement in the western part of *Island*, where it is worth our observation, that *Angrim Jonas* does not tell us the time when this *Kalman* came thither, no more than when the *Irisb*, *Scotch*, those of the *Orkney* isles, and others, who inhabited there, fix'd their first habitations in *Island*. 'Tis for this reason, that I imagine, that a considerable difference ought to be made betwixt the isle of *Island*, whilst inhabited by pagans, and betwixt that since christianity was established there: the chronicles of the christian *Island* don't trace their origin beyond the time of *Ingulph*; which, according to the christian *Era* of this country, begins with the year 874. whereas the chronicles of the pagan *Island* have no certain beginning.

Taking this for granted, (as it easily may be) nothing is more easy than to reconcile the chronicles in reference to the pagan and christian *Island*; and consequently to make *Angrim Jonas* to agree with himself; and to allow what *Pontanus* says, viz. that

5 H

the

the modern *Island* is the *Tbule* of the ancients, which he proves from the authority of divers Greek and Latin authors, from the history of *Adam of Bremen*, who writ in the year 1067. of *Saxo Grammaticus*, who lived soon after, and of *Andreas Vel-lejus*, who has translated *Saxo* into the *Danish* tongue, and in his translation always takes the *Tyleasses* for the modern *Islanders*. *Angrim Jonas*, as I remember, alledges, that *Adam of Bremen* has inserted many fabulous relations in his history, and among the rest, that in his time it was received as an ancient tradition, that the ice in *Island* was sometimes found so old and dry, that if thrown into the fire, it would burn as fierce as a certain kind of coal, called *Hoville* by the *Flemings*. But to answer this objection, it is not so much the question here, whether the ancients were not guilty of certain follies; but rather, whether the more ancient the history is, the more it favours of folly; which seems to be an argument for the antiquity of *Island*, and its being known in other parts. Perhaps *Angrim Jonas* will tell us, that if the ancient authors did take the modern *Island* for the same they called *Tbule*, they are much out in its true situation; but to this I answer, that the same authors have committed many errors of this nature in reference to other places; the question being not at this time, whether the said authors have given us an exact description of *Island*, either as it was then, or as it is now; but, whether the isle they described to us was the same with our *Island*.

What confirms me in this opinion is, that *Cajaubon* declares for it; for in his commentaries upon *Strabo*, he tells us expressly, that the *Tbule* mentioned in this great geographer, is our modern *Island*: and, to confess the truth, the thing argues in its own behalf; the modern *Island* being now as well as in former ages, placed by the joint consent of all the geographers, at the extremity of the *Deucalidian* sea, or that of *Scotland*, or the *British* sea; and the ancient *Tbule* has always been accounted the furthestmost of the *Britannick* isles. 'Tis a thing beyond all dispute, that the *Scots* sea has been formerly called the *Caledonian* sea, from that vast *Caledonian* forest, whereof there is not so much as a single tree to be seen at this time in *Scotland*. *Selden* says, that the *Scots* inhabiting the northern parts of that kingdom, were called *Deucalidomans*, which in their language signifies as much as *Black and Swarthy*, as the ocean which washes the northern shore of *Scotland*, and the adjacent isles has been called the *Deucalidian* sea, from the dark and cloudy air which is generally observed thereabouts.

*Pliny* calls it for the same reason, *mare pigrum*, or the *Lazy Sea*; and *Adam of Bremen*, *Mare Jecrum* and *Pulmonum*, because it has a heavy motion like those troubled with an asthma, in the same sense as *Plantus* speaks of asthmatick legs; *pedibus pulmonis mihi advenisti*.

*Angrim Jonas*, as it seems, would not be so averse, to allow that *Island* is the same with the ancient *Tbule*, provided he could be convinced, that that isle was inhabited before the time of *Ingulph*; wherefore, though I have said enough upon this head for the satisfaction of unbiass'd persons; yet will I not think it beyond the purpose, to alledge some undeniable reasons for the proof thereof, viz. that *Island* was inhabited before that time. I have by me two chronicles of *Greenland* written in *Danish*, one in verse, the other in prose. That written in verse, begins with the year 770. when it says, *Greenland* was first discovered. The other assures us, that the person that went first from *Norway* into *Greenland*, pass'd through *Island*, and tells us expressly, that *Island* was inhabited at that time; whence it is evident, that *Island* was not first of all inhabited in the year 874.

*Angrim Jonas* will perhaps object, that my *Danish* chronicles don't agree with that of *Island*, which says, that *Greenland* was not discovered till the year 982, nor inhabited till 986. But I must tell him, that my *Danish* chronicles are founded upon the authority of *Angarius* a great prelate, a native of *France*, who has been acknowledged the first apostle of the northern world. He was made archbishop of *Hamburg* by *Lewis the Mild*, his jurisdiction extending from the river *Elbe*, all over the north, as far as the frozen sea; the emperor's patents, constituting the said *Angarius* the first archbishop of *Hamburg*, are dated in the year 834, and were confirmed by pope *Gregory IV's* bull in 835. The true copy, both of the patent and of the bull, may be seen in the 4<sup>th</sup> book of *Pontanus* his *Danish* history of the year 834. where it is expressly said in the patent, that the gates of the Gospel are set open, and that Jesus Christ had been revealed both in *Island* and *Greenland*; for which the emperor gives his most humble thanks to God.

Two inferences are to be made from thence: first, that *Island* was inhabited by christians in the year 834; and consequently forty years before the arrival of *Ingulph* there: secondly, that *Greenland* was inhabited by christians in the same year 834, which agrees with my *Danish* chronicle, where

where the first discovery of *Greenland* is fix'd to the year 770. *Angrim Jonas* being put to a nonplus, tells us, that he questions the authority of the bull of *Gregory IV.* alledged by *Pontanus*, which he would fain make us believe is supposititious; but to be plain with him, I think he has taken a notion of maintaining the credit of his native country, by adhering too strictly to the authority of its chronicles; whereas it would have been more for his reputation, not to have insisted so much upon that authority, than to rob this isle of the glory of its antiquity; who is so ignorant as not to know, that the age wherein *Ingulph* lived was very barbarous? The *Goths* having carried the same together with their arms throughout all *Europe*; whoever should go about to persuade me into a belief of all what is inserted in the ancient chronicles of these barbarous ages, might as soon make me believe the romances of *Oger the Dane*, or the four sons of *Aymon*, of the archbishop of *Turpin*, and other such like nonsensical stories relating to the same time.

I could wish, *Sir*, you had the opportunity of reading the writings of *Angrim Jonas*, which I had scarce time to peruse. Perhaps you might discover some reasons for the antiquity of *Iseland*, which I have either not discovered or neglected. His *Specimen Islandicum*, was printed at *Amster-*

*dam* 1643. Perhaps his *Crinogea* is not so easy to be had; that which I saw was printed at *Hamburg* in 1609. As I don't question but you will take abundance of pleasure in reading of them, so I will refer myself to them for a more ample account, of what I have related to you now by way of an epitome; it being all I was able to learn, and thought worthy your knowledge concerning *Isel. I.* If I find this to have met with a favourable reception at your hands, I will send you a farther account of *Greenland*, though at the same time I am ready to acknowledge, that considering your merits and reputation you have acquired, by those excellent treatises you have obliged the world with of late, I ought for the future not to offer any thing but what is more polite than this; the defect thereof you will, I hope, attribute in a great measure to the want of time, and my readiness to obey your commands, which must at this juncture serve as a plea to you to excuse its errors; in hopes of which I beg you to be persuaded that I am,

SIR,

Your most humble, and

most obedient servant,

LA PEYRERE.

Copenhagen,  
Dec. 18. 1644.

A N







1771 17

---

AN  
ACCOUNT  
OF  
GREENLAND.

---





18  
20  
22  
25

10  
01

# ADVERTISEMENT

Concerning the

## MAP of GREENLAND.

**A**S I dare assure my self, that monsieur Chaplain is the true author of this map; having judg'd the same absolutely necessary for the understanding this historical account; so I thought I could not do amiss, in following the advice of a person so highly and so universally esteem'd

I was compil'd this map answerable to four elevations, particularly known to me, viz. that of cape Farewell, of Ifland, of Spitzbergen, and of that part of the Chrillian's-Sea, where captain Monk being stop'd by the ice, gave it the name of Monk's Winter haven.

I have computed the longitude of all these places, from the meridian of the Iron island of the Canaries, by the advice of M. Rorerval, a famous mathematician; and of Mr. Sanlon, an excellent geographer, whose steps I have follow'd in that map.

A great  
lunar e-  
clipse.

Monsieur  
Gallendus.

The old  
new and  
Green-  
land.

The longitude of Monk's Winter-Haven, was more exactly discover'd to me beyond the rest, by an eclipse of the moon, mention'd in the journal of that captain, who declares to have seen it in that harbour, about eight a clock at night, the 20th of December in the year 1619. This eclipse must have been seen at Paris, (according to the tables of the celestial motions) about three in the morning, the 21st day of that month. But in regard, that eclipse continued above three hours, and that captain Monk did not see it, either in its beginning, middle or end, I have consult'd Mr. Gallendus, concerning this doubt; whose abilities and learning being sufficiently known to all, who make profession of these sciences, I thought I might with probability enough, suppose this eclipse discover'd at Monk's Haven, between its beginning and end; that is to say, about the middle of its duration, or about the hour that it must have been seen at Paris; whence it is evident, that when it was there a clock in the morning at Paris, it was no more than eight a clock of the preceding evening at Monk's Harbour; and that consequently there are seven hours difference between the one place and the other. Now supposing 15 degrees for every hour, (according to the rules of astronomy) the meridian of Monk's Harbour must be distant from the meridian of Paris 105 degrees, and Paris being at the 23 degree and a half of longitude, Monk's Haven ought to be plac'd in the 178 degree and a half; that is to say, in the 81 degree and half beyond the meridian of the Canaries: And consequently allowing twelve ordinary leagues of France for every degree of this parallel, the degrees (whereof are one less than the degree of the great circle moiety) this haven must be distant from Paris about 1260 leagues. I have divid'd the southern part of Greenland, taken at cape Farewell, into two islands, in the manner they are represented here. This I have done, not from the Danish accounts I made use of to compose this history (for they don't mention it) but from a map communicated to me out of the library of my lord cardinal Mazarin, by monsieur Naude, (the ornament of that excellent collection of books, and other rarities that make up that renowned library.) These are the words in Latin, written at the bottom of the said map: This delineation was made by Martin, the son of Arnold, born at the Briel, a city of Holland; who twice, viz. 1624, and 1625, went as commodore to the Isle, known by the name of Old-Greenland. This Martin, the son of Arnold, call'd Greenland an island; tho' it is not certainly known, whether it be an island or part of the continent, or made up of several isles. He declares it to be the map of Old-Greenland; tho' he might rather have call'd it both the old and new, for none else has been discovered; and that, which we know, ought rather to be call'd the new Greenland, than the old. Because, tho' the old Greenland must undoubtedly be fix'd somewhere near the coast of Iceland; nevertheless, this certain place is not known to this day, even not to the inhabitants of Norway, tho' their fore-fathers were the first discoverers of it, and dwell in it some entire ages, as will more fully appear out of the following relation.

The nearness of their situation betwixt cape Farewell, and the streights call'd Chrillian's Streights, with the sea of that name, and Monk's Winter-Haven, has been represented according to the map captain Monk caus'd to be made of his voyage, and was annex'd to his journal. I was the rather inclin'd to follow his footsteps, for as much as it agrees with that of captain Hudson, who first discover'd these streights and this sea; which map Mr. Chaplain was pleas'd to communicate to me, in order to compare it with that of captain Monk.

I dare not affirm, that all the coast of the Chrillian's-Sea, and so westerly from thence, between the Gulph of Davis, and Monk's Winter haven, belong to Greenland, because perhaps some great river or streight unknown, may separate Greenland from America. What makes me more doubtful upon this, is, that I never heard in Denmark, that all this coast did belong to Greenland, as I have heard it declar'd of all the coast on the N. E. between cape Farewell and Spitzbergen. I refer the solution of this question to those who have got a better insight into this matter, from the English and Dutch relations; my only design being to give an account of what I understand of this country out of the Danish books, and from the conversation I have had in Denmark.

The Ambassador, mentioned in this relation, was Monsieur de la THULLERIE, who was so instrumental in concluding that famous peace between the two northern crowns.

A N

NT

D.

udge'd the same ab-  
do amiss, in follow-

cape Farewell, of  
not by the ice, gave

Canaries, by the  
whose steps I have

by an eclipse of the  
out eight a clock at  
ording to the tables  
d, that eclipse con-  
or end, I have con-  
n to all, who make  
at Monk's Haven,  
that it must have  
ris, it was no more  
are seven hours dif-  
to the rules of astro-  
and Paris being at  
d a half; that is  
ing twelve ordinary  
degree of the great  
re southern part of  
This I have done,  
ut from a map com-  
nt of that excellent  
in Latin, written  
orn at the *Brief*, a  
y the name of Old-  
known, whether it  
of Old-Greenland;  
ba, which we know,  
undoubtedly be fix'd  
en not to the imba-  
rentine ages, as will

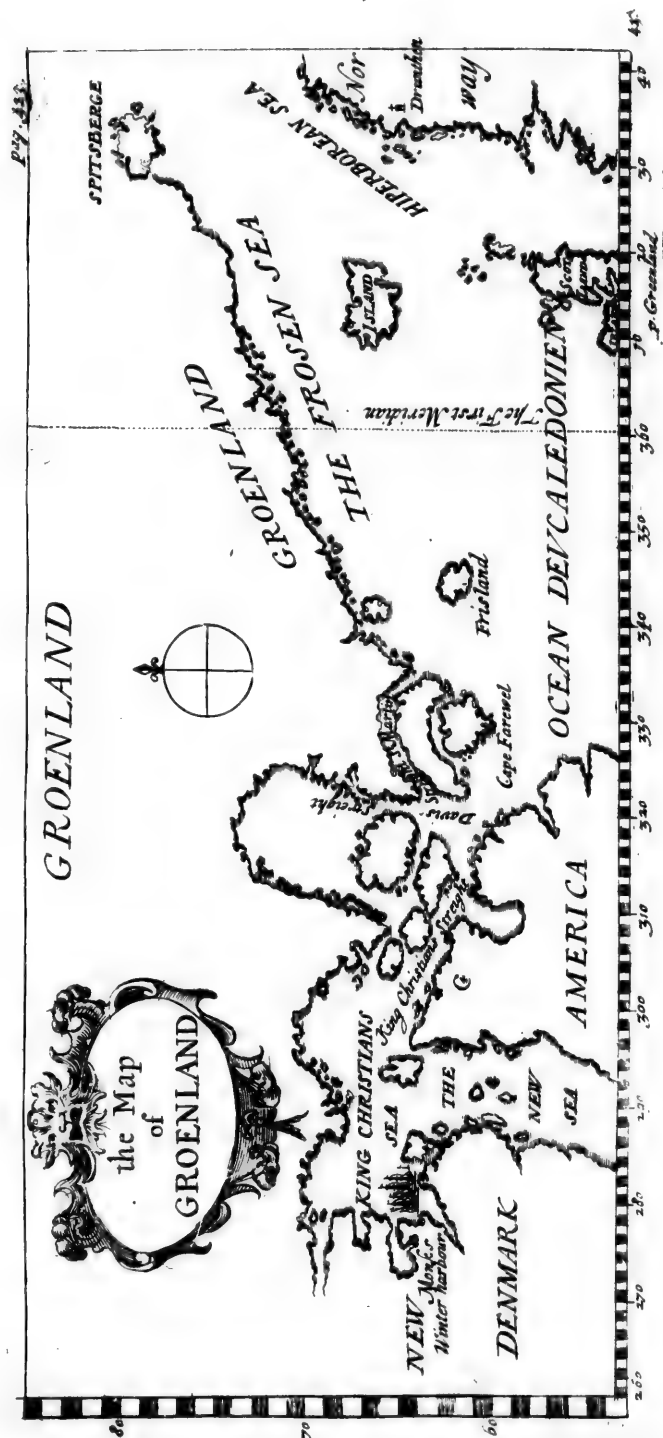
hts, with the sea of  
caused to be made of  
for as much as it  
Mr. Chaplain was

even the Gulph of  
ight unknown, may  
beard in Denmark,  
N. E. between cape  
sight into this mat-  
understand of this

so instrumental in

A N





O'Green-  
land.

which  
and  
to the  
coasts  
and  
that  
is un-  
O

A N  
A C C O U N T  
O F  
G R E E N L A N D,  
T O  
Monsieur de la MOTHE le VATER.

S I R,

I Perceive that I have not satisfied your curiosity, in writing to you a long letter concerning *Island*: 'Tis but just therefore, that I should perform my promise, to send you a relation of *Greenland*. Don't wonder at the time that I have taken to pass between these two islands. If you weigh the difficulties and the dangers that attend such a voyage, you will be satisfied that I ought to inform my self with leisure of the true condition of this northern country, which deserves rather the name of *Incognita, unknown*, than the southern part of the world. Nevertheless, it has been inhabited by the *Norwegians*, during the space of five or six hundred years, who traffick'd and settled their colonies there. But that I may not confound matters, I will tell you what I have understood of this country, (which is almost inaccessible,) with all imaginable exactness, from whatever I could learn either by conversation, or from the most confused writings, I will not say that ever I read, because they were explained to me out of a tongue I understood not, as were the *Danish* books, and which Mr. *Rets*, a *Danish* gentleman, was so kind to read and to interpret to me, whom you will see speedily at *Paris*; the king of *Denmark* having named him, in consideration of his merits, his resident in *France*.

Of *Greenland*.

*Greenland* is that northern tract of land which extends from the south to the east, and thence to the north from cape *Farewell*, to the *Deucaliedonian* ocean, all along the coasts of the frozen sea towards *Spitzbergen* and *Neva Zembla*. Some are of opinion, that it joins to the *Great-Tartary*; but this is uncertain, as you shall see anon.

On the east it hath the *Frozen-Sea*, on

the south the *Deucaliedonian* ocean, on the west the streights of *Hudson* or *Christian*, and the *Christian* or *Hudson's-Sea*, that divides it from *America*. Its extent towards the north is unknown hitherto. The *Danish* chronicle informs us, that it is the farthest part of the world towards the north, and that beyond it, there is no land on that side. Some believe, that *Greenland* is join'd to *America*, because the *English*, who have attempted to pass the *Streights of Davis*, to seek a passage that way to the east, have found, by experience, that what *Davis* fancied to be the streights, is nothing but a gulf; tho' according to the account of a certain *Danish* captain, named *John Monk*, who ventured to find a passage to the east, by the north-west of the *Gulf of Davis*, there is great likelihood, that this country is altogether separated from *America*, as will appear in its proper place, when we shall discourse of this voyage. The elevation of *Greenland* taken at cape *Farewell*, (the most southern part of it) according to the computation of captain *Monk*, a most expert seaman, is sixty degrees and thirty minutes: The other part extending much nearer to the pole. The elevation of *Spitzbergen*, which the *Danes* judge to belong to *Greenland*, is according to their computation 78 degrees or thereabouts. I don't say any thing concerning the longitude of that country, because my accounts being silent here, I have learn'd nothing more than what our maps inform upon this head. It will be sufficient for me to take notice in this place, that cape *Farewell* is beyond the *Canaries*, and our first meridian: As to the history of *Greenland*, I have chiefly made use of two chronicles,

Its latitude.

one of *Iceland*, the other of *Denmark*; the first being very ancient and in prose, the other of a later date in verse, but both in the *Latin* language. However the original of that of *Iceland* was written in the *Iceland* tongue, by one *Snorro Sturluson* an *Iceland*er, who was *Nomophylax*, as *Angrim Jonas* call him; that is, chief justice of that island, in the year 1215, the same who compiled the *Edda*, or the *Iceland* fables in verse I have formerly mentioned to you. The *Danish* chronicle was written in *Danish* verse, by a *Danish* priest, named *Claudie Christoffersen*; within these 15 years, or thereabouts. This *Danish* chronicle says, that some *Armenians* being long toils'd at sea by a furious tempest were forced into the northern sea, at last got ashore in *Greenland*, from whence they pass'd over into *Norway*, where they inhabited the rocks of the *Hyperborean-Sea*: But this relation is founded only upon ancient fables and customs, to deduce the original of remote places and nations: But thus much is certain, that the *Norwegians* did first discover and inhabit *Greenland*.

Torwald  
and his son  
Erick.

A certain gentleman of *Norway*, named *Torwald*, and his son *Erick*, surnamed the *Red-hair'd*, having committed a murder in his country, fled over into *Iceland*, where *Torwald* died. His son *Erick* being a choleric person, kill'd soon after another man in *Iceland*; so that to escape the severity of the law, he resolv'd to seek for shelter in a country which one *Gundebur* had told him he had seen to the west of *Iceland*; *Erick* landed by his direction, in a certain harbour, made by two capes or points of land, viz. one at the end of an island, opposite to the continent of *Greenland*, the other on the continent. The cape of the island was named *Huidferken*, that of the continent *Huarfs*; having between both a very good harbour call'd *Santassin*, where ships may ride safely at anchor, even in the greatest storm.

*Huidferken* is a prodigious high mountain, without comparison much bigger than *Huarf*. *Erick* call'd it *Mukla-jokel*, i. e. the *Ice-mountain*; but it has been since named *Bloferken*, i. e. the *Blue-Shirt*; and a third time *Huidferken*, i. e. the *White-Shirt*. The reason of these two last alterations, seems to be founded upon the change of its colour; for the ice that melts and freezes at the same time, appears in colour at first not unlike the moss or grass or little trees growing upon these rocks. But when by a long continued snow, vast heaps are gathered, the ice becomes extraordinary thick and returns to its former colour and natural whiteness. This I can affirm by my own experience in *Swedeland*, where we have seen rocks, some whereof appeared

to us of a bluish, and others of a white colour for the same reason. I will assure you, and my lord ambassador can testify, that in our return the same winter from *Swedeland* to *Denmark*, as we pass'd in a coach over the sea, betwixt *Elfsure* and *Copenhagen*, we met vast shoals of ice piled upon one another; some whereof appeared to our sight very white; others of the finest azure, which being not able to give a sufficient reason for this difference, as being produced by the same water; and minute in respect of our eyes, at no such distance as to cause so remarkable a difference: This put me in mind of what *Virgil* says concerning the frozen *Zones*.

*Cerulea glacie concretæ atque imbribus atris.*

Tho' I am apt to believe that the words *Cerulea glacie* ought to be interpreted in this passage, the *Black Ice*, as *Virgil* fancies to be in these dark and black countries; in the same sense he says in another place,

*Olli ceruleus supra caput adstitit imber.*

And in another place,

*Stant manibus ære,  
Ceruleis mastæ vitis atræq; cupressæ.*

In both which passages the word *Ceruleus* signifies black, without all dispute.

But to return to our purpose, *Erick* before he would venture on the continent, thought it advisable to land in the isle unto which he gave the name of *Erickland*, i. e. *Erick's Isle*, and continued there all the winter. In the spring he pass'd over to the continent, which he call'd *Greenland*, i. e. the *Green-Country* from the verdure of its pastures and trees. Unto the place where he landed, he gave the name of *Ericksfjorden*, i. e. *Erick's-Haven*, at a small distance from whence he built certain habitations, call'd *Ostraburg*, i. e. the *East-borough* or plantation. Next *Autumn* he went to the western-side, where he erected another plantation call'd *Vestreborg*, i. e. the *Western-Borough*. But whether the continent seem'd to him colder and sharper than that of *Iceland*; or whether he found it less secure, he returned the next winter to *Erickland*; yet returned from thence next summer to the continent, taking his course towards the north, to the foot of a great rock which he named *Sneefjel*, i. e. the *Snow-Rock*, and thence to a certain harbour, upon which he bestowed the name of *Ravensfjorden*, i. e. *Rookefjorden*, from a great number of crows or ravens he found there. *Ravensfjorden* lies directly opposite to the north-line of the *Ericksfjorden*, which is seated on the south side

side, be  
arm of  
*Erick* re  
the thir  
to go in  
habitan  
good co  
*Greenla*  
ing the  
country  
cattle, o  
all forts  
so prev  
them cr  
land.

*Erick*  
panied  
thence  
my chro  
a favour  
of the  
The kin  
ly emb  
*Leiffe* to  
be bapt  
the win  
back to  
pany of  
and his  
being r  
had the  
the fort  
had escap  
On the  
indiffer  
cause he  
tain str  
ed durin  
escaped.  
ship, ca  
them in  
*Greenla*  
*Leiffe* h  
stranger  
not to d  
nerous  
his fath  
to him  
charity  
that he  
advice,  
with su  
to suffe  
the inh  
is all  
son *Lei*  
inhabit  
cle mer  
of *Erick*  
drem in  
the rei  
*Wealtb*  
the reig  
Vol

side, being divided only by a branch or arm of the sea. About the end of autumn, *Erick* returned to his island, where he pass'd the third winter. In the spring he resolv'd to go in person to *Island* to engage the inhabitants of that isle (with whom he had good correspondence) to follow him into *Greenland*; he was not backward in telling them wonders of this new discovered country, of its plenty of great and small cattle, of excellent pastures, of fishes and all sorts of game. His rhetoric proved so prevailing, that a good number of them crossed the sea with him into *Greenland*.

*Erick* had a son named *Leiffe*, accompanied his father into *Island*, and from thence crossed over to *Norway*; where, as my chronicle of *Island* tells us, he gave a favourable account to king *Olaus Trugger* of the country discover'd by his father. The king of *Norway* having then but lately embraced the christian religion, caus'd *Leiffe* to be instructed in the same, and to be baptiz'd, who continued at his court all the winter. The next summer he sent him back to his father into *Greenland*, in company of a certain priest, to instruct *Erick* and his people in the christian faith. *Leiffe* being returned to his father in *Greenland*, had the name of *Leiffdenbepne*, i. e. *Leiffe the fortunate* bestow'd upon him, because he had escap'd great dangers in his voyage: On the other hand, he met with but an indifferent reception from his father, because he had brought along with him certain strange seamen, who being shipwrecked during the same tempest he so narrowly escap'd, he found upon the keel of their ship, cast upon the ice-rocks, and receiv'd them into his ship, and carried them into *Greenland*. *Erick* was displeas'd because *Leiffe* had, as he alledged, shew'd to the strangers the way to a country he desired not to discover to all the world: But the generous *Leiffe* knew so well how to manage his father's savage temper, by representing to him the true duty of humanity, and of charity the chief ornament of christians, that he began to relish his and the priest's advice, sent to him by the king of *Norway*, with such success, that he was persuas'd to suffer himself to be baptized, as did all the inhabitants under his jurisdiction. This is all I could learn concerning *Erick*, his son *Leiffe*, and those first *Norwegians* that inhabited *Greenland*. The *Island* chronicle mentions the departure of *Torwald* and of *Erick* his son from the harbour of *Jedrem* in *Norway* to have happened under the reign of *Hakon Jarle*, surnamed the *Wealthy*, where this chronicle begins under the reign of *Olaus Trugger* king of *Norway*.

Vol. II.

who reign'd about the year of our lord 982. But the *Danish* chronicle put it about the year 770. I have proved to you in my relation of *Island*, that this computation is more probable than the first, by a bull of pope *Gregory IV.* granted about the year of our Lord 835, to bishop *Ansgarius*, to encourage the propagation of the christian religion in the northern countries, and particularly in *Island* and *Greenland*. I will not pretend in this place to weigh all the arguments alledged on this head, but will content my self to mention two particulars only, in relation to this opinion. The first is, that the same *Danish* chronicle says, that the kings of *Denmark* being continued christians, during the reign of the emperor *Lewis the Mild*, *Greenland* was much talk'd of in those days. The second is, that Mr. *Gunter*, secretary to the king of *Denmark*, a person of more than ordinary learning and ingenuity, and my intimate friend, has assured me, that he himself saw among the records of the archbishoprick of *Bremen*, an ancient MS. chronicle containing a copy of a bull, by virtue whereof the archbishop of *Bremen* was constituted metropolitan of all the north, and particularly of *Norway*, and of the islands thereunto belonging, viz. those of *Island* and *Greenland*. He had indeed forgot the date of the bull, but remembred very well that it was granted before the year of our lord 900.

The *Danish* chronicle says, that as the successors of *Erick* increased in number in *Greenland*, they ventured deeper into the countrey, and met with a fruitful soil, meadows and rivers in the valleys between the mountains. They divid'd *Greenland* into east and west *Greenland*, according to the different situation of the two boroughs. *Ostreborg* and *Vestreborg* built by *Erick*. In the east they laid the foundation of a town named *Garde*, whither (as the chronicle tells us) the *Norwegians* transported every year, divers merchandizes, and sold them to the inhabitants.

Their posterity went farther in, and built a city, unto which they gave the name of *Albe*. And as their zeal increased, they built a monastery upon the sea-shore, dedicated to *St. Thomas*. The city of *Garde* was the residence of their bishops, and the church of *St. Nicholas* (the patron of seamen) built in the same town, the cathedral church of *Greenland*. A catalogue, together, with the succession of those bishops, is to be seen in that part of the *Specimen Islandicum* of *Angrim Jonas* which treats of *Greenland* from the time of their settlement there, 'till the year 1389. And *Pontan* observes in his history of *Denmark*, that

5 K in

Olaus Trugger King of Norway, a

Archbishop of Bremen metropolitan of the north.

Garde a town in Greenland.

St. Nicholas Church.

## An Account of GREENLAND.

in the same year 1389, one named *Henry* bishop of *Garde* was present at the assembly of the states of *Denmark* held at *Nieu-burg* in the isle of *Funen*, at the entrance of that part of the *Baltick* sea, commonly call'd the *great Balt*. As *Greenland* was under the jurisdiction of the kings of *Norway* in temporal matters, so their bishops acknowledged the superiority of the bishops of *Drunben* in *Norway*, in ecclesiastical matters; and the bishops of *Greenland* used frequently to cross the sea into *Norway* to advise with the bishops of *Drunben* about such difficulties as sometimes intervened in points of religion. *Greenland* was then governed by the laws of *Iseland*, under certain governors, appointed by the kings of *Norway*. The names of whom, with the actions performed by some *Iseland* heroes in *Greenland*, you may read in the *Specimen Islandicum*, where good *Angrim* their affectionate countryman has remembered them to the best advantage.

Magnus  
K. of Nor-  
way, and  
Erick of  
Denmark  
conquers  
Green-  
land.

The *Danish* chronicle tells us, that in the year 1256, *Greenland* revolted and refused to pay their tribute to king *Magnus* of *Norway*; which induced king *Erick* of *Denmark* (at the request of king *Magnus* who had married his niece) to equip a fleet against them; but they no sooner saw the *Danish* flags display'd on the coast of *Greenland*, but they were seized with alarm, that they sued for pardon, and desired peace. The king of *Denmark* (in respect of the love he bore to his niece, and her children) would not take any advantage of the weakness of the king of *Norway*, but left him in full possession of *Greenland*. This peace was concluded in the year 1261. *Angrim* *Jonas* further mentions the names of the three principal inhabitants of *Greenland*, who were instrumental in concluding the treaty of peace in *Norway*. By virtue thereof those of *Greenland* were for the time to come to swear fealty, and to pay tribute to the kings of *Norway*.

The chronicle of *Iseland* being only a collection of other stories; has among the rest a chapter entitled a description of *Greenland*, which as it seems to relate to its most flourishing state during the settlement of the *Norwegians* there; so I will transcribe to you *verbatim* the whole chapter, as it was interpreted to me from the *Danish* tongue into *French*. But don't require from me either time or method in this relation, for I can warrant neither.

Skagfi-  
ord.

In the most eastern part of *Greenland* lies the city of *Skagfjord*, seated near an inaccessible rock; and further at sea, a sand-bank hinders ships from entering the road, except at high water, when if the wind blows hard, many whales and other fish

come into the bay, and are taken in great abundance. A little higher towards the east, there is another harbour called *Funchebuder*, having borrow'd its name from a certain page of *St. Olav* king of *Norway*, who was with several others shipwrecked there. A little higher nearer the

*Ice-mountains*, there is an island called *Roon-fon*, well stor'd with all sorts of wild beasts, and particularly with white bears, but beyond it nothing is to be seen but ice, both on the sea and land side. On the western coast lies the bay of *Kindelford*, inhabited all along the shore. On the right hand of this bay stands a church called *Korsirk*, i.e. the *Cross-Church*; the land whereof reaches to *Petresvik* near *Vandaleburg*; and beyond it monastery of monks, dedicated to *St. Olav* and *St. Austin*. The jurisdiction of a monastery extends to *Bolton*. Next to *Kindelford* is *Rumpeinford*, where is a nunnery, and near it several little islands, having

divers hot springs of such an excessive heat in the winter, that no body can endure it, tho' in the summer they are pretty cool and temperate; these waters are very wholesome, and proper for the cure of divers diseases. A little beyond them is *Eynetsford*: Between *Eynetsford* and *Rumpeinford*, stands a royal palace call'd *Fos*; and a great church dedicated to *St. Nicholas*. Near the bay of *Lunesford* is the cape of *Klining*, and beyond it another bay called *Grantevig*, and beyond that a house named *Daller*, that belongs to the cathedral of *Greenland*. To this cathedral appertains all the country about *Lunesford*, and particularly the great island beyond *Eynetsford* called *Reyalsen*, because of the many *Renes* (a kind of stags frequent in the north) found there. This island produces a certain stone called *Talguestein*, of such solidity as not to be corrupted by fire, and so easy to be cut, that drinking vessels, kettles, and vats containing ten or twelve ton, are made of it. More towards the west is an island called *Langen*, where are eight farms. This island belongs to the cathedral. Near to the church of *Eynetsford* is a royal palace named *Hallestad*. Not far from it is the bay of *Ericksfjord*; at the entrance whereof lies an island called *Herrieven*, i.e. the *Lord's-island*, one half whereof belongs to the cathedral, the other half to the church called *Diurnes*, the first church you meet with in *Greenland*, as you enter on *Ericksforden*. To the church of *Diurnes* belongs all the country as far as *Midford*, and the whole track of land from *Ericksfjord* to the north east. Near it is *Bondeford* to the north, where are many islands and good harbours. The country is not inhabited, but altogether desert between *Ofstreburg* and *Vestreburg*. Near to this desert is a church

named

Of the  
Straglin-  
ga.

name  
reside  
*Sirek*  
count-  
duce  
mann  
either  
of this  
a long  
land,  
having  
judge  
ingres  
ing m  
they t  
Beyond  
melrao  
safe pa  
ny wh

The  
chapte  
as muc  
had no  
*Greenl*  
count,  
manne  
is, wh  
between  
been e  
bited,  
dence  
that t  
prerop  
ing th  
that i  
the bi  
sage th  
from t  
moirs  
of *Gre*  
*Island*  
presly  
*Garden*  
*fjord*  
see wa  
bay of  
*Greenl*  
may p  
has pr  
rian,  
who w  
he was  
Mr. *H*  
ever I  
has co  
and in  
riginal  
'us pr  
name,  
'Tis  
the bar  
ther b  
What

A hat  
from.



taken in great  
r towards the  
r called *Fin-*  
name from  
king of *Nor-*  
others ship-  
her nearer the  
d called *Roon-*  
of wild beasts,  
bears, but be-  
but ice, both  
on the western  
ord, inhabited  
right hand of  
d *Korskirke*, i.e.  
thereof reaches  
and beyond it  
ated to St. O-  
jurisdiction of  
on. Next to  
islands, having  
excessive heat  
can endure it,  
pretty cool and  
e very whole-  
e of divers  
ern is *Eynetsfi-*  
*Rumpefinsford*,  
s; and a great  
las. Near the  
of *Kluning*, and  
*Grantveig*, and  
aller, that be-  
reenland. To  
the country a-  
larly the great  
alled *Ryafsen*,  
kind of stags  
there. This  
called *Talgue-*  
o be corrupted  
that drinking  
aining ten or  
More towards  
*Langen*, where  
belongs to the  
ch of *Eynets-*  
*Hallestad*. Not  
*Kesford*; at the  
nd called *Her-*  
one half where-  
the other half  
the first church  
as you enter on  
ch of *Diurnes*  
ar as *Midford*,  
om *Ericksford*  
s *Bondeford* to  
lands and good  
not inhabited,  
*Ostreborg* and  
rt is a church  
named

Of the  
firegins-  
ga.

named *Strofnæs*, formerly the cathedral, and residence of the bishop of *Greenland*. The *Skreklingues* or *Skreklingres* inhabit all the country about *Vestreborg*. These deserts produce horses, goats, oxen, sheep, and all manner of wild beasts, tho' not inhabited either by christians or pagans. The author of this account was one *Iver Ben*, who was a long time steward of the bishop of *Greenland*, and an eye-witness of what he says, having been with others employed by the judge of *Greenland* to suppress the *Skreklingres*. At their arrival they found no living men, but abundance of cattle, of which they took as much as their ship could carry. Beyond *Vestreborg* is a great rock call'd *Himmetradshild*; beyond this rock there is no safe passage for ships, by reason of the many whirlpools on that coast.

These are the contents of the whole chapter which I have set down here with as much exactness as I was able; and as I had neither map, nor any other history of *Greenland*, to justify or contradict this account, I have given it you in the same manner as I had it. What puzzles me most is, what is said of the church of *Strofnæs*, between *Ostreborg* and *Vestreborg*, to have been ever since *Greenland* began to be inhabited, the cathedral and the bishop's residence; there being not the least doubt but that the city of *Garde* has always had that prerogative. The *Danish* chronicle lamenting the loss of this country, assures us, that if the city of *Garde*, the residence of the bishop, were yet in being, and the passage thither could be recovered, we might from thence be supply'd with sufficient memoirs for the comprizing of a good history of *Greenland*. *Angrim Jonas*, a native of *Island*, speaking of this residence, says expressly, *Fundata in Bordum* (we must read *Garden*) *episcopalis residentia in sinu Eynetsford Greenlandicæ Orientalis*; An episcopal see was settled in the city of *Garden* in the bay of *Eynetsford*, on the eastern coast of *Greenland*. The author of that relation may perhaps have been a good steward, but has proved himself but an indifferent historian, having not given us the least account who were these *Skreklingres*, against whom he was sent. I will therefore tell you what *Mr. Wormius*, the most curious person that ever I met with in the affairs of the north, has communicated to me by word of mouth, and in writing. They were savages, the original natives of *Greenland*, unto whom 'tis probable, the *Norwegians* gave that name, but for what reason I know not. 'Tis likely they inhabited the west side of the bay of *Kindelford* in *Greenland*; the other being inhabited by the *Norwegians*. What this author says concerning the *Skrek-*

*lingres* being in possession of *Vestreborg* must be understood of the west side; the east part being possessed by the *Norwegians*. 'Tis very probable that some few of the *Norwegian* adventurers having passed the other side of the bay of *Kindelford*, were worsted by those *Skreklingres*. The viceroy or governor of *Greenland*, called the judge of *Greenland* (according to the *Island* idiom) being resolved to revenge this affront, sent against them a ship well equip'd, and mann'd with land-forces, which those savages no sooner saw approach their shore, but according to their usual custom (when they find they are too weak to resist) they fled into the woods and rocks. The *Norwegians* finding no living body upon the coast, plunder'd the country, and carried the booty aboard their ship. This did induce our author to tell us, that amongst the *Skreklingres* were horses, goats, oxen, sheep, &c. but neither christians nor pagans.

*Mr. Wormius* is of opinion, that those *Skreklingres* were not far distant from the gulph of *Davis*, and perhaps were *Americans*, or the native inhabitants of *New Greenland*, discover'd by the *Danes* in the reign of *Christiern IV.* their king; of which I shall have occasion to speak more hereafter: That they lived near the *Old Greenland*, inhabited by the *Norwegians*, and that they peopled part of *Vestreborg*, before ever *Erick* possessed himself of the other part.

To tell you my opinion, I see no reason why we should transplant the *Americans* hither; *Mr. Wormius's* opinion is more reasonable; unto which I shall add only, that by the same reason that *Vestreborg* was inhabited by the natives of that country, when the *Norwegians* came thither, *Ostreborg* had likewise its inhabitants. And as the eastern shore was nearer to the *Frozen Sea*, it was less fruitful, and by consequence more desert than the western coast. The *Norwegians* finding less resistance on that side than on the other, took possession of *Ostreborg* with less resistance than *Vestreborg*; and according to all the relations that I have seen, they were not so resolute in attempting a passage on the western coast, but to the north where they travell'd eight days together, without discovering any thing but snow and ice in the valleys. From whence you may infer, that the track of land inhabited by the *Norwegians* in *Greenland* was enclosed between the southern and eastern seas; to the north by inaccessible ice-mountains, and to the west by the *Skreklingres*, who stopp'd their farther progress on the side of *Vestreborg*. It is also observable, that the *Island* chronicle affirms it for a certain truth, that the *Norwegians* were possessed of so small a track



track of land in *Greenland*, as would not amount to above a third part of a bishoprick in *Denmark*, notwithstanding their bishopricks are no larger than those of *France*. The *Danish* chronicle declares the same, tho' in different words, viz. that the *Norwegians* did not inhabit the hundredth part of *Greenland*; that it was inhabited by divers nations, governed by their peculiar lords, most of whom were never known to the *Norwegians*.

Green-  
land bar-  
ren.

The *Iceland* chronicle speaks variously concerning the fruitfulness of *Greenland*, according to the different relations that compose it. It says in one place, that there grows the best wheat in the world, and high and lott oak, which bear acorns as big as apples. In another place he tells us, that nothing grows in *Greenland*, because of the cold, and that its inhabitants know not what bread is. This agrees with the *Danish* chronicle, which affirms, that when *Erick* first came into this country, his people were forced to live altogether upon fish, by reason of the sterility of the land. Nevertheless the same *Danish* chronicle relates, that *Erick's* successors, who went farther into the country, found between certain mountains, fruitful lands, meadows, and rivers, not discover'd by *Erick*. The contradictions in the *Iceland* chronicle are not to be regarded, when it declares that nothing grows in *Greenland*, because of the cold, the reason itself alledged to back this assertion, rendering it very dubious; it being most certain, that that part of *Greenland*, inhabited by the *Norwegians*, was situate under the same degree of elevation with *Upland*, the most fruitful province of *Swedeland*, which produces very good and fine wheat. Add to this what the same chronicle observes in another place, viz. that the cold is not so violent in *Greenland* as in *Norway*. Now 'tis most certain, that *Norway* produces very good wheat; and what I am going to tell you upon this head, would perhaps seem strange to you, if the same was not founded upon the authority of creditable persons, who have informed me that there are certain places in *Norway*, where they have two crops within the space of three months. This must be understood of the plains betwixt the rocks, which being continually enliven'd by the reverberated sunbeams against these rocks, in the months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, become so fertile, that in six weeks time they sow and reap good corn. The soil being so fat and moist there by reason of the great quantity of snow melted and carried into the plains from the mountains, that immediately after they sow again, and at the end of another six weeks, never fail of a second harvest as good as the former.

Norway  
wonderful  
fruitful.

'Tis very likely, that in *Greenland*, as well as other countries, are some good and some bad grounds; some plains, some mountains. 'Tis certain it has many rocks; the *Iceland* chronicle tells us expressly that it produces marble of all colours. And it is agreed on all hands, that their pasture grounds are excellent, and maintain abundance of great and small cattle, many horses, hares, stags, renes and other deer, ordinary wolves, and stag-wolves, foxes, bears white and black; and if credit may be given to the *Icelandian* chronicle, they have taken castors and martins also, the furs whereof were not inferior to the martin fable of *Muscovy*. *Greenland* abounds more in falcons (white and grey) than any other place in the world. Formerly these birds used to be sent to the kings of *Denmark* as rarities, because of their extraordinary goodness; and the kings of *Denmark* presented them frequently to other kings and princes, because falcons and hawks are not used in *Denmark*, nor in any of the northern countries.

Green-  
land dogs.

The sea produces great plenty of fishes all along the coasts of *Greenland*; as likewise sea-wolves, sea-dogs, and sea-calves, and an incredible number of whales. I know not whether I ought to reckon the white bears of *Greenland* amongst the terrestrial or marine creatures; for, as the black bears never forsake the land, and live altogether upon flesh; so white bears never leave the sea, and live upon what fish they catch. They are much larger and wilder than the black. They hunt after the sea-wolves and dogs, who save their young ones upon the ice for fear of the whales. They are greedy after the young whales, their flesh being a greater dainty to them than that of any other fish. They never of their own accord venture into the main sea when the ice is melted. 'Tis not but that they can swim, and live in the water as well as the fish, but they much dread the whales pursuing them by the scent, out of a natural antipathy, and because they devour their young ones. It happens sometimes that vast ice shoals are from the north part of *Greenland* driven towards the south, so that the bears not daring to venture from the ice are carried along with it, either into *Iceland* or *Norway*, and being enraged with hunger,

In fish.

White  
bears.

(*Hæu male cum foliis Norwegum erratur in oris.*)

destroy all they meet in their way, whereof they tell you strange stories in these countries.

*Greenland* has ever yielded plenty of horned beasts,

Unusu.

beasts, or  
frequent  
entire, a  
you enq  
horns, I  
horned  
corns, h  
so much  
which be  
ever it b  
ous, for  
creatures  
fish. Yo  
the unic  
(whether  
substance  
seen in  
tiful ent  
of to yo  
lace at  
bigger t  
'tis not f  
three fo  
'tis of th  
as that o  
horns I  
penagen  
against p  
where are  
all those  
the same  
these of  
*Greenland*  
of anima  
Mr. Wor  
me that  
smart di  
this opin  
timents o  
courfed o  
a terrestr  
grees wi  
ture, wh  
four-legg  
ed perfor  
me a far  
from *Cop*  
thereof h

"SO"  
"houfe  
"son, th  
"occasio  
"of the  
"of our  
"quente  
"to the  
"wheree  
"to us,  
"troub  
"some p  
"better  
"V o l.

beasts, called unicorns. In *Denmark* we have frequent opportunity to see many of them entire, and some pieces of these horns. If you enquire what sort of animals bear these horns, I must tell you, Sir, that they are horned creatures, improperly named unicorns, having nothing common with that so much celebrated horn of the creature which bears that name, of what nature soever it be. And as this name is ambiguous, some do yet question whether the creatures that have them are flesh or fish. You may observe, that the horns of the unicorns which I saw in *Denmark*, (whether whole or in pieces) are of the same substance, fashion, and virtue, as those seen in *France* and elsewhere. That beautiful entire horn I have sometimes spoken of to you, in the king of *Denmark's* palace at *Fridericksbourg*, is without dispute bigger than that at *St. Denis*. I confess, 'tis not so straight, and bends within two or three foot of the point; but for the rest, 'tis of the same colour, shape, and weight as that of *St. Denis*; for the pieces of those horns I have seen in divers places at *Copenhagen*, are esteemed great preservatives against poison, as those in *Paris*, and elsewhere are. Now taking it for granted, that all those horns in *Denmark* are altogether the same with those of *France*, and that these of *Denmark* are brought thither from *Greenland*, the main question is, What sort of animals bear these horns in *Greenland*? Mr. *Wormius* being the first who informed me that they are fishes. This occasioned a smart dispute betwixt us at *Christianople*, this opinion being contradictory to the sentiments of all the naturalists, who have disapproved of it; who represent the unicorn as a terrestrial four-legg'd creature, which agrees with divers passages of holy Scripture, which cannot be understood but of four-legg'd unicorns. A curious and learned person having had the goodness to give me a farther account thereof in his letter from *Copenhagen*, I will insert the copy thereof here.

SOME years ago being at Mr. *Frise* the lord chancellor of *Denmark's* house (the predecessor of Mr. *Thomafson*, the present lord chancellor) I took an occasion to complain to that great man, of the negligence and want of curiosity of our merchants and seamen that frequented *Greenland*, in not enquiring into the nature of those animals, the horns whereof they brought in such plenty to us, without giving themselves the trouble of bringing along with them some part of their flesh or skin, for the better discovery of the whole. The

VOL. II.

lord chancellor answer'd, they are more curious than you imagine, and instantly sent for a great piece of a dry'd skull, with part of that kind of horn on it, of about four foot long. Being extremely rejoiced to see me hold in my hands so great a rarity, and could scarce sufficiently feast my eyes with the sight of it, as not understanding at first what it was, I enquired my lord to give me leave to carry it home to my house, to look upon it there at my own leisure, which he readily granted. I found this cranium or skull much like that of the head of a whale, having two holes on the top, and which penetrate to the palate or throat; these two holes, being doubtless the two passages thro' which this fish spouts up the water it drinks: I took also notice, that what they called the horn, proceeded out of the left side of its jaw. I invited the most curious and ingenious of my auditors, to be eye witnesses of so extraordinary a sight in my closet, and among the rest sent for a painter, who in the presence of all the company drew the picture of that skull, with the horn, as it really was in figure, and answerable to its bigness, according to the original.

My curiosity stop't not here; but understanding that such another creature had been taken near, and carried into *Island*; I writ to the bishop of *Hole*, whose name was *Thorlac Schalamius*, and who had been formerly my disciple at *Copenhagen*, to send me the draught of that animal, which he did accordingly; and sent me word at the same time, that the *Islanders* call it *Narbual*, that is, a whale *Narbual*: that feeds upon dead carcases; for *Hual* a great *Fish*. signifies a whale, and *Nara* a dead carcass. 'Twas really the picture of a true fish, like a whale; I promise to shew it to you in your return from *Christianople*, with that of the skull I had from my lord chancellor *Frise*.

Mr. *Wormius* fail'd not at our return to fulfill his promise and even beyond it; for not satisfied to shew me the draughts of those fishes, he led me into his closet, where I saw upon a table the skull it self of that animal, which my lord chancellor had formerly delivered to him. He had got it, (at his request) from a *Danish* gentleman, a kinsman of monsieur *Frise*, who being one of his co-heirs, had got it for his share, and valued it at 8000 rixdollars, and had brought it 20 leagues to *Copenhagen*, to shew it to my lord ambassador. I must confess, that I could not sufficiently

5 L

admirer

admire so exquisite a piece of curiosity. After he had carried it to my lord ambassador, he was desirous to look upon it in the same closet. His excellency viewed it with more than ordinary satisfaction, and intreated Mr. *Wormius* to lend it him, in order to have a draught made of it, which he intended to carry with him to *Paris*. This great man, who has a great veneration for all virtuofes, will be glad to shew this draught among his other curiosities he brings along with him from the north. As he has a particular affection for you, and for all those gentlemen of the famous and ingenious society of the library of monsieur *Bourdelot*: So I am certain that his closet (which he designs to furnish and accomplish, if God grants him life) will after his return into *France*, be free for you, and for all those gentlemen.

Unicorns.

There is no doubt, but that the name of unicorn is equivocal, and belongs to several animals, as to the onyx and *Indian* ass, mentioned by *Aristotle*, and to that wild beast, described by *Pliny* to have the head of a stag, the body of a horse, and the feet solid, all of a piece, like the elephant; and besides this, of a wonderful swiftness and strength, being the same unicorn, mention'd in several places of the holy scripture. As to its swiftness, the same is represented as so marvellous that God will cause *Syrian* (a mountain of *Libanus*;) to skip as the foal of an unicorn, and its strength so exalted that the power of God is compared to it. The strength of God, (saith *Moses*, the leader of the children of *Israel*;) is like that of the unicorn. Whence it appears that our unicorns of the north, which we know to be fish, must be of a different kind from the unicorns believed to be in the south or eastern parts of the world, and are without doubt terrestrial animals, when the prophet *Isaiab* foretells the *Jews* that God would drive them and their kings (whom he names unicorns) from *Jerusalem*. The unicorns, saith he, shall descend with them: This cannot be understood but of a terrestrial creature; if the prophet had supposed those unicorns to be fishes, 'tis likely he would have said, they shall swim, instead of, they shall descend. I will therefore call them a kind of sea-unicorns, as others have done with sea-dogs, sea-calves and sea-wolves. This name is not new, seeing *Bartholine* a *Danish* author hath inserted a peculiar chapter of sea-unicorns, in his treatise of unicorns. Notwithstanding which, there remains still another difficulty, viz. whether these sea-unicorns (of which we are now speaking)

be really unicorns, and whether that we call their horns, be truly horns, or rather their teeth. The resolution of the first doubt depends upon the second, for if they be teeth, those fishes cannot properly be called unicorns, because they have no horns; and if they be horns, they are doubtless unicorns, because they have but one horn. Mr. *Wormius* affirms, that they are teeth and not horns. And I find that *Angrim Jonas* calls them *Dentes* in that place of his *Specimen Islandicum*, where he speaks of a bishop of *Greenland* named, *Arnoldus*, being shipwreck'd as he was sailing to *Norway*; the ship being shatter'd to pieces by a storm in the *Isfimus* to the west of *Island*. This shipwreck happened in the year 1126: He mentions the several things taken up out of this shipwreck; *Reperti sunt*, saith this old man, *Dentes Balenarum*, &c. There were cast ashore by the tide, precious and rare teeth of whales, *Runic* letters done upon them, with a red gum, not to be blotted out, that every one of the seamen at the end of their voyage might know their own. And 'tis certain, that this *Angrim Jonas* understands by these precious teeth of whales, the same which in *Denmark* they call, and ought to be understood of, those horns we attribute to unicorns, and of which we now treat; what makes me suppose them to be teeth and not horns is, that *Aristotle* lays it down as an undoubted truth, that all unicorns carry their horns in the middle of their foreheads; but these fish have that which we name horns, at the end of their snout or under-jaw or gum, in the same place where teeth are fixed: That the horns are growing in the forehead *per symphysem*, i. e. by an adjunction or natural union with the bone, but the teeth are sunk into the gums *per Gampbesim* i. e. as a wedge or nail that enters the substance. This was plainly to be seen in that skull monsieur *Wormius* shew'd us, which was sunk into the jaw near a foot deep, and stretch'd out in length like a lance, laid flat in the same manner as the fish named *Pristis* carries its sythe, and the *Xipbias* or sword-fish wears its sword.

I have taken notice of a very good reason, or rather observation in *Aristotle*, concerning the horn of these unicorns. He says, that all the animals that have two horns, are cloven-footed; but all unicorns have but one solid claw: That nature had made the same union, and the same conjunction of claws in the feet, as of the horns in the head of the unicorns, as it has made the same division of claws and horns in the feet and hands of other animals. From whence it follows, that

Let us  
Return  
inter.

the

the only  
the other  
and folio  
by the f  
their cl  
mals, th  
place o  
And as  
horns, t  
front, t  
the mid  
fish we  
ther cla  
in their  
clude, t  
being fi  
fastned  
said to  
reckon'  
At fi  
nion, t  
with me  
of *Dent*  
nent ver  
to the  
you bes  
honoure  
and tak  
my curi  
told me  
thing th  
on, tha  
He acqu  
mark',  
present  
that the  
handfor  
entire h  
where  
soon as  
(which  
it hollow  
most, i  
horn, c  
as the  
horn to  
the litt  
the infi  
long w  
of the  
me ima  
thof: I  
theirs,  
and oth  
it was  
many  
were c  
coast o  
was for  
I saw  
served  
its jaw  
thing t

the only distinction of the unicorns from the other animals, consists in the unity and solidity of their claws and horns; and by the same reason that the unicorns have their claws in their feet, as the other animals, they bear their horns in the same place of the head, namely in the forehead: And as the other beasts that have two horns, carry them on both sides of their front, they that have but one, have it in the middle of the fore-head. But as the fish we are speaking of, that have neither claws nor feet, cannot have any horns in their head, we may from hence conclude, that what some suppose their horns, being fixed deep into their jaws, and not fastned to their front, cannot properly be said to be horns, and therefore are to be reckon'd as teeth.

At first I my self was not of this opinion, but as I was disputing about it with monsieur *Wormius*, the great marshal of *Denmark*, (of whose high birth, eminent virtues and dignities he possesses next to the king, my letters have informed you before.) This great person, who has honoured me with his particular favour, and taken a singular satisfaction to satisfy my curiosity in every thing I could desire, told me in relation to this matter something that confirm'd me in my first opinion, that they were horns and not teeth. He acquainted me, that the king of *Denmark*, his master, designing to make a present of a piece of this sort of horns, that should be extraordinary beautiful and handsome, he order'd him to cause an entire horn to be sawed near the root, where 'tis biggest and most beautiful. As soon as he had sawed a little of the horn, (which he fastned to be solid) he found it hollow within, and what surpris'd him most, in the same concavity, another less horn, of the same figure and substance as the great one. He order'd the great horn to be sawed round, without touching the little one, and found it to be grown in the inside of the great one, about a foot long within the concavity, the remainder of the great one being solid. This made me imagine that the animals which bear those horns, cast them as the stags do theirs, that their great horns fall off, and others come in their stead; and that it was doubtless for this reason, that so many horns separated from their heads, were carried by the ice-shoals unto the coast of *Greenland over Iceland*: But I was soon convinced to the contrary, when I saw the skull before mentioned, and observed that long root that was fixed in its jaw-bone, and that the very same thing that the said minister told me he had

caused to be sawed, was a tooth and no horn. That also 'tis possible that the teeth fall, and others grow in their stead, in these fishes, as well as they fall and grow again in children, and some persons of a more advanced age. 'Tis very frequent that such teeth as fall are put out and forced away by other new teeth that begin to appear before the old ones fall away. The like never happens to the stags, whose heads, after having cast their horns, remain as bare as if they never had any, until such time as their new horns grow again.

But for fear so long a discourse of horns should seem tedious, I will conclude it with saying something of the pretended unicorn's horn of *St. Denys*. I have told you that it is altogether, and every where like that of *Denmark*. I will add to this, that the *Danes* are of opinion, (as most certainly it is) that all those kind of horns found in *Muscovy*, *Germany*, *Italy* and *France*, came originally out of *Denmark*, where this sort of merchandize was very frequent, whilst there was a passage between *Norway* and old *Greenland*, and that they constantly cross the seas from one coast to the other. The *Danes*, who brought them to sale in foreign countries, had no reason to declare them to be fishes teeth, but sold them for unicorn's horns, to sell them at the higher rate; this they have not only practis'd formerly, but also continue to do it this day. 'Tis not long since, that the company of *New-Greenland* at *Copenhagen*, sent one of their agents into *Muscovy*, with several great pieces of these kind of horns, and amongst the rest, one end of a considerable bigness, to sell it to the great duke of *Muscovy*. The great duke being extremely taken with the beauty thereof, he shew'd it his physician, who understanding the matter, told the great duke, 'twas nothing but the tooth of a fish; so that this agent returned to *Copenhagen* without selling his commodity. After his return, giving an account of the success of his journey, he exclaimed against the physician, who had spoiled his market: by disgracing his commodities: Thou art a half-headed fellow, replied one of the directors of the company, (as he told me since) why didst thou not offer two or three hundred ducats to the physician, to persuade him that they were the horns of unicorns? You need not doubt, sir, but that the horn of *St. Denys*, did come originally from the same place, and was sold in the same manner. I can't exactly tell you the time since I saw it; but if the remembrance of the idea that remains in me, deceives me not, 'tis a tooth like those

The horn of St. Denys.

These were sold for horns of an unicorn.



those they show in *Denmark*; for it has the same root as the rest, hollow and worm-eaten at the end like a rotten tooth; this being granted, as it is really true, I will positively affirm it to be a tooth fallen out of the jaw-bone of the same fish known in *Island*, by the name of *Narbual*, and that consequently it is no horn.

But it is time to return into *Greenland*: The chronicle of *Island* tells us, that the air of *Greenland* is milder and more temperate than in *Norway*: That there is not so much, nor such frequent snow, neither the cold so excessive; not but that it freezes very hard, and sometimes they have grievous tempests; but those violent frosts and great storms happen not often, nor do they continue for any considerable time. The *Danish* chronicle mentions it as a very strange thing, that in the year 1308, they were afflicted with such dreadful thunders and lightening in *Greenland*, that a church named *Skalbalt*, was burnt to the ground: That this thunder and lightening was followed by such a prodigious tempest, that it overthrew the tops of several rocks, which cast out such abundance of ashes that they fancied it rain'd ashes. This tempest was succeeded by an excessive cold winter, the like whereof had never been known in *Greenland*; the ice continuing a whole year without melting. One time as I was relating this stupendous rain of ashes to my lord ambassador, he informed me, that being at *Rochel*, a sea captain lately come from the *Canaries*, assured him, that lying at anchor about six leagues from those islands, there happen'd to fall just such a shower of ashes, which lay as thick upon the deck of his ship, as if it had snowed very hard. The cause of this sudden accident was attributed to a violent earthquake, which having shaken the fiery mountains in the *Canaries*, the ashes were by the wind carried six leagues into the sea. 'Tis very probable, that the ashes cast out from the *Greenland* rocks proceeded from the same cause, and that there are in that country sulphurous mountains and subterraneous places, which burn like these of the *Canaries* and elsewhere. This may be verified by the neighbourhood of mount *Hecla* in *Island*, which lies much more northerly than this part of *Greenland*, as also by several instances of other fiery mountains in *Lapland*, much farther than the *Arctic* circle: Besides, what questionless you may have taken notice of before, in the old description of that country, viz. That there are baths there of such an excessive heat, that they are useful only in winter.

The summer in *Greenland* is always plea-

sant both night and day, if that continual twilight, that in summer abides all the night in the air, may be called night. As the days in winter are very short, the nights are consequently very long. Besides that, nature produces there a wonder which I should scarce relate upon my own credit, did not the *Island* chronicle record the same as a miracle, and had I not an entire confidence in monsieur *Relis*, who did read and interpret it to me.

In *Greenland* with the beginning of the night, a certain light arises either with the new-moon, or just before it, which gives light to all the country, in the same degree and manner, as if it were full moon; and the darker the nights are, the more conspicuous the light appears. It takes its course towards the north, whence it is called the *Northern-Light*. It appears like a flying fiery meteor, streaming along in the air, as a high and long palisado. As it moves from one place to another, it leaves behind it a smok in those places, through which it had passed; its swiftness being such, that none but such as have seen it are able to imagine it. It lasts all the night, and vanishes with sun rising. The enquiry into the true cause of this meteor, I will leave to those who are better versed in natural philosophy than myself, whether certain vapours arising out of the earth, enflamed by a continual motion, are not the most probable cause thereof, as we see with the same swiftness those long fuzes or fiery tongues to kindle, which fall from, or pass thro' the sky, or in the same manner as the flaming meteors fly about the church-yards. I have been told for certain, that this northern light is plainly seen as far as *Island* and *Norway*, when the air is clear, and the nights not clouded with any mists: It gives light, not only to the people of this northern climate; but also discovers itself in our parts. Doubtless this light is the same which I have heard mention'd by the most learned and judicious philosopher monsieur *Gassendi*, to have been frequently seen by him, and named *Aurora Borealis* or the *Northern Twilight*. The most remarkable that he ever saw, was that seen all over *France*, *silente Luna*, or about the new-moon, (for it was but one day old) in the night betwixt the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> of September, Anno 1621. He has mentioned it only *en passant* in the life of monsieur *Peregrin*, but described it at large, more compleat in his learned observations, and at the end of his exercitations against Dr. *Flud*, whither I refer you, to avoid proximity; and to return to my former relation.

The

Air of  
Green-  
land.

A violent  
storm.

A strange  
shower of  
ashes.

A fiery  
light.

if that continual  
abides all the  
called night. As  
very short, the  
y long. Besides  
there a wonder  
te upon my own  
nd chronicle re-  
, and had I not  
nfieur *Rets*, who  
me.

beginning of the  
s either with the  
it, which gives  
the same degree  
full moon; and  
, the more cons-  
s. It takes its  
h, whence it is

It appears like *A stray light.*  
streaming along in  
g palliada. As  
e to another, it  
in those places,  
ed; its swiftness  
ut such as have  
it. It lasts all  
with sun rising.  
ue cause of this  
ose who are bet-  
osophy than my  
ours arising out  
a continual mo-  
able cause there-  
ne swiftness those  
gues to kindle,  
thro' the sky,  
the flaming me-  
h-yards. I have  
at this northern  
r as *Island* and  
clear, and the  
any mists: It  
he people of this  
o discovers itself  
this light is the  
mention'd by the  
ous philosopher  
e been frequent-  
*Aurora Borea-*  
*lgt.* The most  
f saw, was that  
*e Luna*, or about  
(but one day old)  
12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> of  
He has mention-  
life of monieur  
at large, more  
bservations, and  
tions against Dr.  
, to avoid pro-  
my former rela-

The

The *Danish* chronicle says, that in the year 1271, a violent wind from the north east forced such a vast quantity of ice shoals laden with bears and wood to the coast of *Island*, that from thence they conjectured, that what was discovered in the west of *Greenland*, was only a small part thereof; and that it extended a great way farther to the north-east. This persuaded some seamen of *Island* to venture upon this discovery, but could meet with nothing but ice shoals; some kings of *Norway* and *Denmark* having a long time before the same thought and design in their heads, they had sent thither several ships, nay some of them went thither in person, but with no better success than the seamen of *Island*: What had induced them to attempt this voyage, was either the fame, or the general received opinion grounded upon certain reports that this countrey abounded in veins of gold and silver, and precious stones. Or perhaps that passage in *Job* had made some impression upon their mind, *Gold comes from the north*. Upon which account I can't forbear to tell you what the same *Danish* chronicle says upon that subject, viz. that in former times certain merchants return'd from thence with great riches. It says also, that in the reign of *St. Olavs* king of *Norway*, some mariners of *Friseland* undertook that voyage for the same purpose; but being by violent tempests forced among the rocks of this coast, they were forced to shelter themselves in some creek. He further tells us, that when they adventured ashore, they found not far from the sea shoar some ill built huts or cabins half under ground; and about those cabins a great many mineral stones, glittering like gold and silver ore, which made them resolve to take a good quantity along with them. In effect every one of them having taken as much as they could well carry away, as they were marching off to their ships, they saw coming out of these under-ground huts, a good number of ill shap'd and ill look'd fellows, resembling more the devils than men, with their bows and slings, and great dogs at their heels. This oblig'd these mariners to hasten their pace, to preserve both themselves and their treasure; but one of them loitering behind, had the misfortune to fall into the hands of those salvages, who tore him immediately in pieces, in the sight of his companions. This *Danish* author adds, that this countrey is full of riches, and therefore 'tis commonly said, that Saturn has hid here his treasures, and planted a set of devils here to guard them.

In the *Island* chronicle he has a peculiar chapter intitled, *The course and navigation from Norway to Greenland*. The course

Vol. II.

into *Greenland*, according to the account given by the most skilful pilots, born either in *Greenland*, or returned from thence lately, is as followeth. From *Nordstadenfundmur* in *Norway*, you direct your course towards the west, till ye come to *Horensunt*, on the eastern side of *Island*, is seven days sail. From *Susfuels Jokel*, a sulphureous mountain of *Island*, to *Greenland*, the shortest way is to sail towards the west. Half way between *Island* and *Greenland*, lies *Gundebuirne skeer*. This was the old passage before the ice from the north rendred this navigation very dangerous. 'Tis also recorded (but in a separate paragraph) from *Langueries* to *Island*, (which is the most northerly part towards the pole) are eighteen leagues to *Ostrebörn*, which signifies the eastern born. From *Ostrebörn* to *Hualsbredde*, is twice twenty four hours sail. I would not have any body to undertake a voyage into *Greenland*, according to this direction; the same having always been, as far as I was able to learn, very difficult and dangerous; you may perhaps have taken notice of this from what I have said before, of the return of *Leiffe* into *Greenland*, to his father *Erick*, surnamed the red hair'd, from the foremention'd shipwreck of bishop *Arnold*, and the disasters that befel the mariners of *Friseland*. The same *Island* chronicle has another chapter, entituled, *A copy taken out of an old book, call'd, Speculum Regale, or, the Royal Looking-glass*. Concerning the affairs of *Greenland*, the contents whereof are plainer than the former; it says, that in former days three large sea-monsters of a strange shape, were seen in the sea of *Greenland*. The first was by the *Norwegians* call'd *Haffstramb*, which appear'd from the girdle upwards above water; its neck, head, face, nose and mouth, were altogether like those of a man, only the head was extraordinary high, and pointed towards the crown. It had very large shoulders, and at the extremities thereof two stumps like arms, but without hands. The body was but slender towards the middle, and keeping constantly under water, below the girdle, none ever saw the whole shape of this monster. Its countenance appear'd like ice, and as often as it was seen above water, it prov'd the forerunner of violent storms.

The second monster was call'd *Marguer*; in shape (as far as the girdle) not unlike a woman with large breasts, its hair hanging down behind, large hands, at the extremities of its stumps of arms with long fingers join'd together, with a skin like the feet of geese. Sometimes this monster has been seen holding a fish in its hands upon which it fed. It always portended an ap-

5 M

proaching

The Strait  
course to  
Green-  
land.

Three  
strange  
monsters.

The second  
monster.



proaching violent storm; if it dived under water with the face towards the mariners, 'twas a sign they should not be shipwreck'd; but if it turn'd its back to them, 'twas an ill omen, foretelling that they should be cast away.

*The third monster.*

The third monster was call'd *Hafgierrinduer*; being no monster to speak properly, but three mountains of water raised by violent storms, which occasioned a whirlpool, that swallowed up all the ships that had the misfortune to light within this triangular whirlpool, made by the position of these watery mountains, out of which seldom any escaped without shipwrecking. This pretended monster or whirlpool, was occasioned by the currents of the sea, which meeting with turbulent winds contrary to the current, used to surprize and swallow up the ships.

This same book declares, that in this sea are great heaps of ice raised upon one another, appearing at a distance like huge statues of strange shapes: it advises those that go into *Greenland*, to bend their course towards the south west, before they come near the shoar of that country, by reason of the great quantity of ice that swims on these seas, at a great distance from the shoar, even in the summer. It advises those that happen to be entangled among the great ice shoals, to put in practice what others have done in such like emergencies, viz. to put their long boat upon the thickest part of these ice shoals, with all the provision they have, and to stay there till this ice carries them to some land or other, or else it dissolves, when they may save themselves in their long-boat.

*How to escape from the ice shoals.*

Here ends the history of old *Greenland*; but the history of *Denmark* tells us precisely, that in the year 1348, a furious plague, call'd the *black pestilence*, carried away the greatest part of the inhabitants of the north, and among the rest, the seamen and merchants of *Norway* and of *Denmark*, that were members of the *Greenland* company in both kingdoms. And it is observable, that from this time on, the voyages and traffick into *Greenland* were discontinued, and began to be lost. Monsieur *Wormius*, as I remember, told me nevertheless, to have read in an old *Danish* manuscript, that about the year 1484, in the reign of king *John*, there were in the city of *Bergen* in *Norway*, above forty seamen living that failed every year into *Greenland*, and brought from thence several commodities of great value: but having refused to sell them to certain *German* merchants, come on purpose to *Bergen* to buy them, these *Germans* (without discovering their design) invited those mariners to a supper,

and destroyed them all in one night. This story as 'tis related carries but little probability along with it; there being at that time no such free and frequent passage betwixt *Norway* and *Greenland*; the narrative I am entering upon being most certain that the trade and traffick which *Norway* and *Denmark* formerly had with *Greenland*, was then either quite decayed, or totally ruined.

You must understand, Sir, that the tributes and customs of *Greenland* were anciently designed and employed to defray the charges of the table of the kings of *Norway*; and that not a mariner durst fail into *Greenland* without leave, upon pain of death. It happened in the year 1389, that *Henry* bishop of *Garde*, went over into *Denmark*, to be present, as I told you before, at the assembly of the states of this kingdom, then assembled in *Funen*, in the reign of queen *Margaret*, who united the two crowns of *Norway* and *Denmark*. It happened about the same time, that certain merchants of *Norway*, who had cross'd the seas to *Greenland* without leave, were accused of having embezzled the tributes and customs belonging to the queen's table. The queen treated those merchants severely enough, for they had been infallibly hang'd, if they had not taken a strict oath upon the holy Bible, that they had been carried over into *Greenland*, not designedly, but by a storm; and that what merchandises they had brought from thence were purchased with ready money, without meddling in the least with the queen's revenues; they were discharged upon this oath. However the severe prohibitions made upon this occasion, together with the danger of the seas, produced this fatal effect, that since that time, neither merchant nor mariner durst venture on this voyage. The queen, some time after, sent thither some ships, which were never heard of since, supposed to be cast away, tho' it was never known either how or where, or in what manner they were lost. This put such a consternation among the old mariners of *Norway*, that none of them could be prevailed upon to venture again upon those seas. The queen being at that time engaged in a war with *Sweden*, and consequently meeting no great account of *Greenland*, was not very forward to force them to these voyages.

The *Danish* chronicle, unto which I stand indebted for this history, says, that about the same time, viz. in the year of our Lord 1406, *Eskild* bishop of *Drumbem* in *Norway*, willing to take the same care of *Greenland* as his predecessors had done before; sent thither a certain person named *Andrew*, to succeed in the place of *Henry* bishop

bishop to send this *Andrew* not the and not could be the least *Henry*. sent from

The talogue *Denmark* reign o with an referenc their re quiste, this suc fortunes knowle which i inhabite our wor

*Erick Margare*

come i pains as was such land.

*Christi* after E reign in dals, th little lei

The sways in the *Christia* that rad towards south: he got countre the cro blish ar

*Christi* solemn his utm *Greenla* countre forced cruetie out of united and *De* kingdo ed into rit tha that th more When mongt ken ic

bishop of *Garde*, in case he was dead, or to send him word if he was alive. But since this *Andrew* took shipping for *Greenland*, not the least news could be heard of him; and notwithstanding all the inquiry that could be made, it was impossible to hear the least tidings, either of him or of bishop *Henry*. This was the last bishop that was sent from *Norway* into *Greenland*.

The same *Danish* chronicle gives us a catalogue of the names of all the kings of *Denmark*, since queen *Margaret*, to the reign of *Christian IV.* the present king, with an exact account of what happen'd in reference to the recovery of *Greenland*, in their respective reigns. It is absolutely requisite, Sir, you should not be ignorant of this succession, and of the fatalities or misfortunes which have made us lose even the knowledge of this renowned country, which in former days was so well known, inhabited, and frequented by the people of our world.

*Erick of Pomerania* succeeded to queen *Margaret*, but as he was a foreigner newly come into *Denmark*, he never took the pains as much as to enquire, whether there was such a country in the world as *Greenland*.

*Christopber of Bavaria* was crown'd next after *Erick*, but being all the time of his reign employ'd in a war against the *Vandals*, then inhabiting *Pomerania*, had but little leisure to look after *Greenland*.

The family of *Oldenbourg*, that now sways the *Danish* scepter, began to reign in the year of our lord 1448. But king *Christian*, the first of that name, and of that race, instead of bending his thoughts towards the north, employ'd them in the south: for going in pilgrimage to *Rome*, he got from the pope the propriety of the country of *Dübmarsen*, to be annexed to the crown of *Denmark*, and leave to establish an university at *Copenhagen*.

*Christian II.* succeeded *Christian I.* and solemnly promised at his coronation, to use his utmost endeavours for the recovery of *Greenland*: but instead of recovering a country lost by his predecessors, he was forced to forsake his own kingdoms. His cruelties having caused him to be driven out of *Sweden*, which queen *Margaret* had united with the two kingdoms of *Norway* and *Denmark*, and establish'd in these three kingdoms but one government. He departed into *Denmark*, with the same furious spirit that had possessed him in *Sweden*, so that the *Danes*, not able to suffer him any more than the *Swedes*, deposed him. Whence it is, that he is represented amongst the kings of *Denmark*, with a broken scepter in his hand. His lord chan-

cellor *Erick Valkanor*, a *Danish* gentleman, remarkable for his virtue, wisdom and wit, being made archbishop of *Druntben* after his master's disgrace, retired to his archbishoprick, where he employ'd his mind and skill in the recovery of *Greenland*. He perus'd all the books that mention'd it: he examin'd all the merchants and mariners of *Norway* that could in the least be supposed to have any knowledge of it, and caus'd a map to be made of the passage leading to it. But just as he was upon the point of putting in execution so laudable a design in the year 1524, a great lord of *Norway* pick'd a quarrel with him, and forc'd him to abandon both his archbishoprick and the kingdom, whence he departed to *Rome*, where he died.

*Frederick I.* uncle to king *Christian*, had took possession of the kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, and because the faction of *Christian* was not altogether extinct, *Frederick* fearing the interest of *Valkanor*, caus'd him to be driven out of *Norway*, and annull'd the charters given to the respective companies erected for the discovery and recovery of *Greenland*.

*Christian III.* succeeded *Frederick*, who caus'd the passage into *Greenland* to be attempted, but those he sent return'd without being able to find it out. This oblig'd this king to repeal all the severe prohibitions and orders publish'd by the king's predecessors, viz. that none should sail into *Greenland* without peculiar licence. Instead whereof he granted full liberty to every one that had a mind to go thither without his leave. But the *Norwegians* being in those days so weak in shipping, and so miserably poor, were not in a condition to provide ships for so difficult and dangerous a voyage.

King *Frederick II.* inherited with the kingdom his father *Christian III.*'s design. He sent a certain person named *Magnus Heimgingson* to discover *Greenland*. If we may rely upon the author's credit in reference to this voyage, there is a secret and hidden cause unknown to all the world, that visibly stops and hinders the designs of recovering this country. For after *Magnus Heimgingson* had wandered and pass'd through many difficulties; he discovered *Greenland* at a distance, but could not come near it, for as soon as he had made the coast, his ship stopt immediately, at which he was astonish'd (and not without reason) for it was in the main sea, in a great depth of water, without any ice; besides, the wind blew fresh and fair, and the ship was under full sail. Thus being unable to go forward, he was forced to return to *Denmark*, where he gave an account

of

of what had happen'd to the king; whom he told by way of excuse, that in the bottom of those seas there are rocks of loadstone, which had stopp'd his ship. If he had but known the story of the *Remora*, perhaps he might have alledg'd that as a pretence, more probable than that of the loadstone. This expedition happen'd in the year 1588, or thereabouts, when king *Frederick II.* reigned. Our *Danish* chronicle tracing exactly the sequel of the time, hath inserted between the reigns of king *Christian* and king *Frederick*, a long narrative of the voyage of captain *Martin Forbisher*, an *English* captain, who undertook the discovery of *Greenland* in the year 1577. As this narrative gives us a much clearer insight into the affairs of *Greenland* and of its inhabitants than any other now extant, as far as ever I saw till this time; so I thought it not amiss to send you a translation of the matters contain'd therein.

*The Voyage of Martin Forbisher into Greenland.*

*Martin Forbisher* set sail out of *England* for *Greenland*, in the said year 1577; he discover'd it, but could not land nor come near it that year, by reason of the night, the ice and the winter, which came very suddenly upon him in that voyage. After his return into *England*, he acquainted queen *Elizabeth* with what he had seen. The queen upon his relation thought to have recovered this unknown country. She with the first beginning of the spring, gave him three ships. With these *Forbisher* set sail, and having got sight of the land, came to an anchor on the east side of it. The inhabitants of the country where he landed, fled away at the approach of the *English*, leaving their houses to hide themselves up and down; nay, some of them for fear climb'd up to the top of the sharpest and highest rocks, from whence they cast themselves down into the sea. The *English*, who could never so far prevail upon, or engage these savages to come near them, enter'd into their forsaken dwellings, being properly speaking no more than tents made with skins of sea-calves or whales, spread upon four great poles, fow'd together very artificially with dry'd nerves. They took notice that all those tents had two entrances, the one on the western side, the other towards the south, whereby they sheltered themselves from the winds that most troubled them from the east and north. In all those dwellings, they found nothing but an old woman of a frightful look, and a young woman big with child, whom they took away with them, with a little infant that she held by the hand. As they took them away by force from the old woman, she howl'd and cried most vehemently. From whence they

*The houses of Greenland.*

failed along the coast towards the east, and saw a monster upon the water as big as an ox, with a horn at the end of its snout of a yard and a half long, which they fancy'd to be an unicorn. Thence they steer'd their course to the north east, and discovering land, they cast anchor there, the country thereabouts appearing very pleasant to them. And though this place was within the continent of *Greenland*, they named it *Anavavick*, that they might keep it under another name. They found this country much subject to earthquakes, which overthrew great massy rocks, and rowled them into the plains, and that there was no abiding there without manifest danger. However they stay'd there a while, and because they met with a sand, glittering as if it were intermix'd with gold oar; they loaded three hundred tuns of it in their vessels. They did what they could to draw the salvages of this country to a conversation with them, which they seem'd not to be unwilling to; for they answered by signs, to the signs the *English* made to them, giving them to understand, that if they would go higher, they would find what they sought for. *Forbisher* answered he would, and for that purpose took his long boat with some soldiers, giving order to his three ships to follow. He pass'd along the coast higher up, and saw a great number of those salvages upon the rocks, which made him apprehensive of a surprize. The salvages who conducted him along the coast and were ashore, perceiving his jealousy, (that they might not fright him by their numbers) caused three men only to appear from behind an intrenchment, much handsomer and better habited than the rest. These desired the *English* by signs and demonstrations of love to come ashore. *Forbisher* seeing no more than three near the shoar, the rest appearing on the rocks at a distance, row'd towards the shoar without the least fear, but some that were conceal'd in a ditch being impatient (when they saw *Forbisher* rowing towards them) of delay, ran in a croud to meet the *English*; this made him keep off at a distance. However these salvages being not in the least discouraged for that reason, endeavoured still to draw to them the *English*, by casting a great deal of raw flesh upon the coast, as if they had dogs to deal withal. But finding the *English* to be afraid to approach them, these salvages contrived another artifice. They carried a pretended cripple to the sea shoar, and there leaving him they departed, and never appeared for some time, as if they were gone a great way off, or for good and all. They supposed that the *English*, according to the custom

*Of the Danish language.*

*Of the land.*

*The salvages of Greenland.*

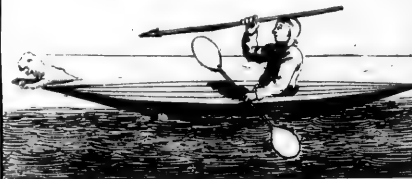
D.

the east, and  
as big as an  
of its snout of  
which they fan-  
ce they steer'd  
and discover-  
ere, the coun-  
ry pleasant to  
ce was within  
they named it  
keep it under  
this countrey  
which over-  
rowled them  
e was no abi-  
anger. How-  
and because  
ering as if it  
r; they load-  
their vessels. *Of this*  
draw the fal- *land.*  
converfation  
d not to be  
red by figns,  
to them, gi-  
if they would  
l what they  
ed he would, *The fable*  
is long boat *gave of*  
order to his *Green-*  
ed along the *land.*  
reat number  
ocks, which  
urprize. The  
ong the coast  
his jealousy,  
him by their  
ly to appear  
much hand-  
an the ref.  
igns and de-  
fhoar. For-  
ree near the  
he rocks at  
fhoar with-  
at were con-  
tient (when  
yards them)  
et the Eng-  
t a diftance.  
not in the  
fon, endea-  
the Englifh,  
fh upon the  
deal withal.  
raid to ap-  
ntrived an-  
pretended  
ere leaving  
r appeared  
one a great  
They fup-  
ing to the  
custom

Savages of Groenland



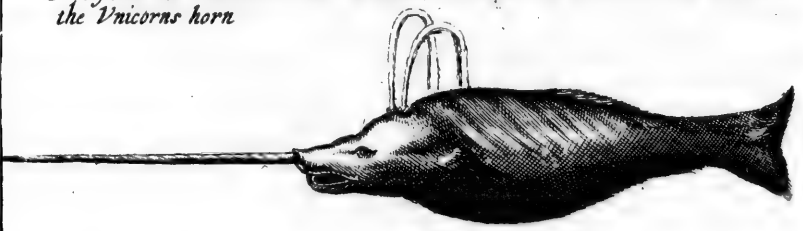
A Savage fishing in his boate



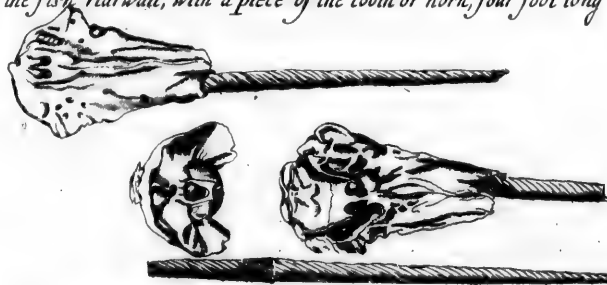
A little Groenland boate



The fish the Islanders call Narwall, which has the horn, or tooth call'd the Unicorns horn



The head of the fish Narwall, with a piece of the tooth or horn, four foot long



custo  
away  
could  
use o  
glib  
quet  
that  
as fal  
Then  
to the  
of its  
bows,  
in lieu  
and c  
a mor  
Ac  
ges an  
rous,  
They  
colour  
there  
in Eib  
sea do  
Their  
they ca  
faces,  
wear  
many  
they p  
drawn  
their  
lookin  
to the  
the tid  
often h  
women  
sewed  
Both f  
which  
fish.  
sty and  
instead  
ther an  
conceal  
are rec  
bows,  
are bu  
pointed  
are ver  
and lin  
water  
covered  
which  
time.  
fastene  
and ril  
sewed  
these b  
at one  
stance  
fish low  
though  
are so  
Vo



custom of strangers, would come and carry away that weak and infirm man, (who could not easily escape their hands) to make use of him as an interpreter. But the *English* smelling the rat, discharged a musket at the cripple, which rous'd him to that degree, that he was glad to run away as fast as he could set his feet to the ground. Then the salvages flock'd in vast numbers to the shoar, and sending whole showers of stones and arrows out of their slings and bows, the *English* only laugh'd at it, but in lieu thereof gave them a volley of shot and cannon ball that dispers'd them all in a moment.

According to this relation, those salvages are treacherous, wild, and so barbarous, as not to be civilized by flattery. They are gross of body, and of an olive colour; though some are of opinion, that there are amongst them negroes as well as in *Ethiopia*. Their cloathing is of skins of sea dogs sewed together, with dry nerves. Their women walk with their hair loose, they cast it behind their ears to shew their faces, painted with blue and yellow: they wear no petticoats as our women do, but many drawers made of fish skins, which they put one over another; each pair of drawers has its pockets, where they keep their knives, thread, needles, and small looking-glasses, and other trifles brought to them by strangers, or cast ashore by the tide of the sea after shipwrecks, which often happen here. The shifts of men and women are made of the bowels of great fish sewed together with very small nerves. Both sexes wear a kind of loose garments which they girt with straps of the skins of fish. They stink most nauseously, are nasty and filthy: their tongues serve them instead of a napkin or handkerchief, neither are they ashamed of what other men conceal and cover. Amongst them those are reckoned the richest who have most bows, slings, boats, and oars; their bows are but short, and their arrows slender, pointed with bone or sharp horns. They are very dexterous in handling their bows and slings, and in darting at the fish in the water with their javelins. Their boats are covered all over with skins of sea-dogs which hold no more than one man at a time. Their great boats are made of wood fastened together with strong wooden pegs and ribs, and covered with whales skins sewed together with very strong nerves; these boats carry at most but twenty men at one time; their sails are of the same substance as their shifts, viz. of the bowels of fish sewed together with small nerves; and though there be no iron in those ships, they are so artificially and strongly join'd together,

VOL. II.

that they dare adventure in them a great way into the main sea, without dreading the most violent storms or tempests. This country produces no venomous creatures except spiders. They have also abundance of gnats, which with their stings raise large pustules and swellings in the face. They have no fresh water but what they procure from the dissolved snow.

The author of this chronicle is of opinion, that the violent frosts bind and stop the veins of the earth to such a degree, as to hinder the passage of all fresh water springs. Their dogs are of an extraordinary size, so that they couple them together, and use them to draw their carriages in the same manner as other people do with their horses.

Here ends this relation, which whether this *Danish* author has taken out of the *English* travels of *Martin Forbisber*, or whether he has written by hear-say, in imitation of those ancient *Danes*, who made up and compos'd the history of their times according to the tales that were spread abroad in the world, I am not able to determine. But it is time to return to the kings of *Denmark*.

*Christian V.* son of *Frederick II.* undertook once more the business of *Greenland*, resolving to leave no stone unturn'd for the discovery thereof, notwithstanding the ill success his father and grandfather had met with in this attempt: in order to this design, he sent for a captain and skilful pilot from *England*, both well acquainted with those seas, and the course they were to take in this voyage. The captain and pilot being arrived in *Denmark*, three stout ships were equipp'd, and committed to the conduct of *Gotiske Lindenau*, a *Danish* gentleman, as commodore, who set sail from the *Sound* in the beginning of the warm season in the year 1605. These three ships kept together for some time, till the *English* captain being come to the elevation he long'd for, he steer'd his course towards the south west for fear of the ice, that he might with the more safety and convenience approach the coast of *Greenland*. The course he took seem'd suitable to the ancient passage from *Island* mention'd before. The relation whereof gives the same directions. The *Danish* commodore judging the *English* captain to have taken the wrong course to the south west, steer'd his course to the north east, and arriv'd alone with his ship in *Greenland*. As soon as he cast anchor, divers salvages that had discover'd him from the high shoar, (where they inhabited) leap'd into their little boats, and came on board him. He receiv'd them with a great deal of civility, and welcomed them

*Christian V. of Denmark.*

*His endeavours to recover Greenland.*

*Gotiske Lindenau sailing to Greenland.*

*Two compasses into Greenland.*

land

Boat

call'd

not long

Greenland



them with several bumpers of excellent wine; but these savages fancying it to be bitter, made very ugly faces at it; but seeing some whale oil, they desired something of that; accordingly great pots being fill'd with it, they did drink them off very greedily. These salvages brought skins and furs, of foxes, bears, sea-calves, and a great many horns, (which the author calls precious) or at least some pieces, ends and stumps of them, which they exchanged for needles, knives, looking-glasses, buckles, and other such like trifles, which the *Danes* shewed them: They making not the least account of the gold and coined silver that was offer'd them, but express'd an earnest desire for all steel works, a thing most in request among them, above all other commodities. To purchase which they were ready to part with what they esteem'd most precious, viz. their bows, arrows, boats, and oars, and when they had nothing else to give, they stripped themselves of their shirts. *Goske Lindenau* continued three days in this road, but the chronicle does not say that he landed here. Doubtless he was afraid to venture ashore, and to hazard his small number of men amongst such multitudes of salvages of this country. He weighed anchor and departed the fourth day, but before he set sail, detain'd on board his vessel two of those salvages that were come to traffick with him, who made such violent efforts to get out of the hands of the *Danes*, that they attempted to leap over-board into the sea, so that they were forced to bind them. Those that remained a shore, seeing their companions chained and carried away, made a most dreadful noise, and sent whole showers of arrows and stones after the *Danes*; but these firing a great gun at them, they were soon dispersed. The commodore return'd alone with his ship into *Denmark*.

Davis's  
gulph.

The *English* captain with his and the other *Danish* ship arrived in *Greenland* (as the chronicle tells us) at the furthestmost end of the land to the west, which could be no other place but *Cape Farewel*: For 'tis most certain that he enter'd *Davis's* gulph, and sailed along the eastern coast of that gulph. He discovered a great many good harbours, a beautiful country, and large verdant plains. The salvages of this part of the country barter'd with them, as the salvages of the other part of *Greenland* had done with *Goske Lindenau*. These indeed seem'd to be much more wary, timorous and mistrustful than the others, for as soon as they had made any exchange of goods with the *Danes*, they would run and leap into their boats as if they had stolen them, or as if they had been pursued by

an enemy. The *Danes* being very desirous to land in one of these harbours, went ashore well provided with all sorts of weapons. The country where they set foot ashore, appear'd to them pleasant and pretty good, but sandy and stony like the grounds in *Norway*. By the exhalations and vapours that issued out of the earth, they concluded that there were divers sulphureous mines here, especially since they found a great many stones supposed to be long to the silver mines which they had carried over into *Denmark*; where out of one hundred weight of these stones, they extracted twenty six ounces of silver. This *English* captain finding so many fine harbours along this coast, gave them *Danish* names, and caused a map to be drawn of them before his departure thence. He also seized four of those salvages, the most comely they could meet with, one of which was so enraged at his captivity, that the *Danes* finding they could not drag him along with them, they beat out his brains with the but end of their musquets, which so irighted the other three, that they followed them without any farther opposition. At the same time a body of salvages got together, either to revenge the death of him that was kill'd, or to relieve those that were leading away into captivity. To effect this, they got betwixt the sea and the *Danes*, with an intention to engage them before they could reach the harbour, and prevent their getting on board. But the *Danes* having sent a volley of their small shot, seconded by their cannon, among them, the salvages frighted both with the noise and the fire, fled in great confusion, suffering the *Danes* to embark without any farther disturbance; who were no sooner got on board, but they weighed anchor and returned into *Denmark* with the three salvages, whom they presented to the king their master, who declared that he thought them much better shaped, and less barbarous, than those two *Goske Lindenau* brought along with him, being also very different from them in their habit, language and manners.

The king of *Denmark*, well satisfied with this first voyage, resolved on a second. Accordingly the next year 1606, he sent the same gentleman *Goske Lindenau*, with five good ships into *Greenland*: He set sail from the Sound the 8<sup>th</sup> day of May, carrying along with him the three salvages, the *English* captain had taken in *Davis's* gulph, for to make use of them as his interpreters. Those poor harmless creatures express'd an unspeakable joy when they understood that they were returning back into their own country. One of them fell sick at sea, died, and

was

was calling his  
ing his  
the En  
to the  
via by  
lost he  
four a  
In the  
the fal  
the sho  
so that  
*Danes*,  
This o  
go up  
met w  
dious t  
as ill-h  
jealous  
them i  
The D  
more t  
landing  
along t  
in their  
some d  
surpriz  
vages,  
boats b  
that w  
third r  
bold se  
to suffe  
to try  
ing, th  
the cor  
him, o  
any m  
admira  
of his  
foot on  
and to  
after th  
sheltrin  
yond t  
knives  
of the  
call'd  
are as  
*Goske*  
not lik  
ing in  
but on  
much a  
tive co  
self ove  
The  
the fir  
in this  
above  
storm  
ter'd  
that t  
after t

was cast over-board. *Goske Lindenau* steering his course directly towards *America* (as the *English* captain had done before) came to the south-west point of the gulph of *Davis* by cape *Farewell*. One of his five ships lost her company in a mist, but the other four arrived in *Greenland* the 3<sup>d</sup> of *August*. In the first road where the *Danes* cast anchor, the salvages appear'd in great numbers near the shore, but would not traffick with them, so that as they seem'd to be afraid of the *Danes*, those likewise would not trust them.

The salvages  
are jealous  
of the  
Danes re-  
sist to  
traffick  
with them.

This obliged them to hoist their sails, and go up higher to another place, where they met with an harbour much more commodious than the first, but the inhabitants were as ill-humour'd as the former; for, being jealous of the *Danes*, they threatned to fight them if they offer'd to set foot on shore. The *Danes*, not willing to trust these any more than the others, or venture upon a landing, sail'd farther; and as they coasted along the shore, these salvages rowed along in their small boats, and following them at some distance; the *Danes* found a means to surprize, at several times, six of these salvages, whom they carried aboard in their boats belonging to their ships. It happen'd that when the *Danes* had cast anchor at the third road, a servant of *Goske Lindenau*, a bold fellow, earnestly entreated his master to suffer him to go alone on shore, in order to try the temper of those salvages, alledging, that he hoped either to intice them by the commodities he would carry along with him, or to save himself by flight if they had any mischievous design against him. The

A bold ad-  
venture to  
the desper-  
ation of the  
adventur-  
er.

admiral yielded at last to the importunity of his servant, but no sooner had he set his foot on the shore, but he was taken, kill'd and torn in pieces by these salvages, who after this tragedy withdrew from the shore, sheltering themselves behind the hills, beyond the reach of the *Danish* cannon. The knives and swords of these salvages are made of the horns or teeth of fishes, commonly call'd unicorns, sharpen'd with stones, and are as keen as if they were of iron or steel. *Goske Lindenau* being convinced that he was not likely to get much advantage by staying in this country, set sail for *Denmark*, but one of his *Greenland* prisoners was so much afflicted at his removal from his native country, that in despair he cast himself over-board into the sea, and was drown'd.

The *Danes* in their return home met with the first ship that was separated from them in this voyage, but did not keep together above five days, when by a most violent storm they were again separated and scatter'd from one another in such a manner, that they did not meet again till a month after the storm ceas'd. After much labour,

hazard, and a thousand difficulties, they return'd to *Copenhagen* the 1<sup>st</sup> day of *October* following.

The king of *Denmark* having taken a resolution, undertook the third and last voyage into *Greenland*; he sent two great ships under the command of a certain captain, a native of *Holstein*, named *Karsten Rickbardsen*, who took into his service some of the best mariners of *Norway* and *Island*, who being well versed in those seas, were to serve him as guides in the dangerous enterprise. The chronicle says, this captain set sail from the *Sound* the 13<sup>th</sup> day of *May*, without mentioning the year, which I could never learn. The 8<sup>th</sup> day of *June* following, he discovered the tops of the mountains of *Greenland*, but he could not come near the shore, by reason of the vast ice shoals that were settled near to the shore, and extended a great way into the sea. The ice being heap'd upon one another, appear'd at a distance like mountains or high rocks. Upon this occasion the author observes, that some years the ice of *Greenland* never melts all the summer. Thus the captain of *Holstein*, finding no means to approach the shore, and being besides this separated by a storm from the other ship, before he came to these vast ice mountains, was obliged to return without being able to encompass his design. However, the king of *Denmark* was pleas'd to admit of his excuses, and the difficulties he alledg'd in his behalf. Perhaps you will be curious to know what became of the four first salvages, and of the five last, the remnants of all they had taken in the two first voyages into *Greenland*: I will give you, sir, a brief account of them.

The third  
adventure

Is prevent-  
ed to ap-  
proach the  
shore by  
the ice.

The king of *Denmark* appointed certain persons to take particular care of their food, and to look after them, with this proviso, however, that they should be at liberty to walk where they pleas'd. Their food was milk, butter, cheese, raw flesh, and fishes, after the same manner as they used to feed in their own country. It being found impracticable to accustom them to our bread, or roasted or boil'd meat, much less to our wines; but they swallow'd nothing more greedily than great draughts of oil, or of whales greafe. They often turn'd their heads towards the north, and by their sighs express'd the desire and affection they bore to their native country; that after their keepers were removed, some of them who could get to their little boats and oars, put off to sea, with an intent questionless to cross the seas; but being surprized by a storm about ten or twelve leagues from the *Sound*, were forced upon the shore of *Schonen*, where being taken by the peasants, they were brought back to *Copenhagen*, where they

An account  
of some sal-  
vages car-  
ried from  
*Greenland*  
into *Den-*  
*mark*.

ry desirous  
s, went a-  
ts of wea-  
ry set foot  
afant and  
ry like the  
exhalations  
the earth,  
divers ful-  
since they  
osed to be  
they had  
here out of  
ones, they  
iver. This  
y fine har-  
nem *Danish*  
e drawn of  
c. He also  
the most  
ne of which  
y, that the  
drag him a-  
t his brains  
uets, which  
at they fol-  
opposition.  
salvages got  
ne death of  
re those that  
tivity. To  
the sea and  
to engage  
the harbour,  
board. But  
ey of their  
cannon, a-  
ghted both  
ed in great  
to embark  
e; who were  
they weighed  
ark with the  
ented to the  
red that he  
bed, and less  
ke *Lindenau*  
ng also very  
it, language

satisfied with  
second. Ac-  
he sent the  
u, with five  
set sail from  
arrying along  
the *English*  
ulph, for to  
eters. Those  
an unspeak-  
ed that they  
own coun-  
ta, died, and  
was

they were more strictly guarded by their keepers afterwards, which put them into such a melancholly humour, that they pined themselves to death.

However there being five of these salvages alive, a *Spanish* ambassador came into *Denmark*, the king being willing to give the said minister the divertisement of seeing these salvages to row in their little canoes or boats, they perform'd the same with extraordinary dexterity.

But to give you the best idea I can of the shape of these boats, I would have you fancy the weaver's shuttle, of ten or twelve foot long, compos'd of large whale bones, of the thickness of an inch, or thereabouts, cover'd both within and without, (not unlike the sticks of an umbrella) with the skins of sea-dogs, and sea-calves, stitched together, with the nerves of the same creature.

*Their boats  
and manner  
of using them.*

We must also suppose this engine or boat to have a round hole on the top, in the middle about the compass of both the thighs of a man; and that it grows narrower and narrower by degrees, at both ends proportionably to its bigness, (like our watermen's boats upon the *Thames*.) The chief strength and ingenuity of the whole engine, consisting chiefly in the junctures at both ends, where these whale bones are join'd and fastened together; and in the opening, hole, or circle above, in the circumference whereof all the whale bones from the lowermost parts meet; the demi-circle underneath being fastened to the uppermost circle, or round hole like a rundlet, where it opens towards its paniers: It is farther to be observed, that all the whale-bones underneath and of the sides of the boat either pass thro' or end in this demi-circle; and that every thing is so well join'd together, that what with its light weight, and the good management of the rower, it will bear against the most violent storms at sea.

The salvages, when they are to make use of these boats, get into them by the hole or open, at the top, and stretching their legs towards one or other of these two ends, stop the overtures left with their waists, made of a 3 or sea-calves skins; these they fasten close to their middle, and the hole wherein they sit, and cover their heads with certain bladders or caps tied to the upper part of their waists, that let the weather be never so bad, and the sea never so boisterous; nay tho' they are dip'd sometimes over head and ears, (which often happens) they are never the worse for it, no water entering either thro' their cloaths, or into their boat. Thus they always swim on the surface of the water, and are in less danger in tempestuous weather than a large ship.

They use only one oar, not above five or six foot long, and half a foot broad at both ends, which they manage with both hands, grasping it in the middle where it is round.

I did not tell you without very good reason, that the shape of these boats resembles a weaver's shuttle, it being certain that the shuttle us'd by the most dexterous workmen does not go forward with the same swiftness as these boats do upon the water, by the dexterity of these salvages: The *Spanish* ambassador was extremely delighted to see five of them perform their task with such incredible swiftness, and to cross and pass by one another with so violent a motion, without touching their oars or boats.

The king of *Denmark* being curious to try the uttermost of their strength, order'd a sloop to be mann'd with eight pair of oars, to row against them, but they were so nimble, that the sloop could scarce overtake them. The ambassador was so generous as to give a present of money to every one of these salvages, which they bestow'd in cloaths after the *Danish* fashion: Now some of them bought themselves boots and spurs, and feathers in their hats, offering to serve the king on horseback.

But they were soon after seiz'd with their former splenetick fits; all their thoughts being bent upon their native country. Two of these mention'd before, who got out at sea, and were cast upon the shore of *Schonen*, being not so strictly guarded as the rest, because no body believed they would run the same hazard again, (after their first deliverance) did once more attempt to row in their boats cross the seas, steering their course towards the north; they were pursued as far the entrance of the *Sound*, but could not be overtaken; so that 'tis probable they were lost, it being not likely they could reach *Greenland* in their small boats.

*They attempt to return to Greenland.*

It was generally observed, that these salvages would burst out into tears, as often as they saw a child on his mother's or a nurse's breast; questionless because they were married and could not forget their wives and children, they had been forced to leave behind them.

Those that remained at *Copenhagen* had a strict guard put upon them, which serv'd only to encrease their desire to return to their native country, because they now despair'd of ever seeing it again.

This had such a powerful influence upon their minds, that they all died with vexation, except two who outliv'd their companions about ten or twelve years. The *Danes* did what they could to render their capti-

captiv  
they v  
mong  
which  
them.

The  
your t  
but as  
the *Da*  
hearing  
truly  
stian r

Som  
notice  
frequ  
heaven  
of the  
employ

For

in *Den*  
they c  
out the  
are tak  
among  
and row  
ing off  
his cou  
played

*Colding*  
verme

ployme  
excell  
the bef  
of that  
pearls;

success  
that in  
his pea  
salvage  
standi  
such a  
kill'd

His

by his  
of their  
tunity  
to the  
any be  
flight;  
taken;  
30 and  
underst  
have b  
waves

*Greenla*  
his int  
*Norwa*  
he wor  
the dir  
to *Cope*  
the en  
The  
Vol

captivity easy, representing to them, that they were, and always should be treated among them like friends and countrey-men; which seem'd to have some influence upon them.

The next thing they did, was to endeavour to instruct them in the christian faith; but as they could never be brought to learn the *Danish* tongue, and that faith comes by hearing, it was impossible to make them truly sensible of the mysteries of the christian religion.

Some people who had taken particular notice of their actions, did observe them frequently lifting up their eyes towards heaven, and to worship the rising-sun. One of them died at *Colding* in *Jutland*, being employed in fishing of pearls in the water.

For it is observable, fir, that the mussels in *Denmark* are so full of seed pearls, (as they call them) that scarce any are without them; of these mussels, vast quantities are taken in the river of *Colding*; and some among the rest, which contain very good and round ones: The *Greenland* salvage having often mention'd, that they had pearls in his countrey, and that he us'd to be employed in fishing for them, the governor of *Colding* took him along with him to his government, where he gave him sufficient employment in the river; the salvage being an excellent diver, brought up abundance of the best mussels, and for the most part some of that kind, which contained very good pearls; the governor was so pleas'd at this success, that imagining no otherwise, but that in a little time he should be able to sell his pearls by the bushel, he made this poor salvage dive continually for pearls (notwithstanding the rigour of the winter season) to such a degree, that at the last the cold kill'd him.

His companion, now become inconsolable by his death, made shift to get into one of their little boats, and taking the opportunity of the next fair day, cross'd the seas to the opposite shore of the *Sound*, before any body had the least suspicion of his flight; however he was pursu'd and overtaken, but not before he was got betwixt 30 and 40 leagues at sea. Being given to understand by certain signs, that he must have been infallibly swallow'd up by the waves of the sea, before he could reach the *Greenland* shore; he answered by signs, that his intention was to keep along the coast of *Norway*, to a certain light, from whence he would have cross'd over to *Greenland*, by the direction of the stars. After his return to *Copenhagen*, he died for grief. This was the end of the unhappy *Greenlanders*.

They were much the same, as I formerly Vol. II.

ly described to you the *Laplanders*, of a low stature and broad shoulder'd, *forti pectore & armis*, strong limb'd, flat nosed, with large thick lips. The remnants of their boats, oars, bows, arrows, slings and garments, are to be seen to this day in *Denmark*. I had the opportunity of seeing two of their boats with their oars at *Copenhagen*, one at Mr. *Wormius's*, and the other at the landlord's of our ambassador. The said Mr. *Wormius* has also some of their garments made of dogs and sea-calves skin, some of their shirts made of the guts of fishes, one of their vests made of the skin of a bird, with the feathers on it of various colours; as also their bows, arrows, slings, knives, hangers, and their javelins or darts, which they use in fishing, pointed at the extremities (as well as their arrows) with horns, or teeth sharpened at the points. I also saw here a *Greenland* almanack, compos'd of 25 or 30 small canes or reeds, fastened to a piece of a sheep-skin, but the use thereof was known to nobody but the *Greenlanders* themselves.

The kings of *Denmark* being quite discouraged by so many disappointments in these voyages, some merchants of *Copenhagen* entred into a society with some persons of quality (known to this day by the name of the *Greenland* company) in order to prosecute the same design. This company sent in 1636, two ships to the gulph of *Davis*, where they came to a anchor near the shore, which surrounds that bay. They had not been there long, before they saw eight salvages of the countrey coming towards them in their small canoes or boats; coming aboard, the *Danes* laid out their knives, looking-glasses, needles and such like trifles, and the salvages their fur and dog skins, and sea-calves skins; besides a considerable quantity of what they call the unicorns horns.

Whilst they were busy in exchanging these commodities, a cannon aboard one of these ships happened to be discharged at the drinking of a health; the sudden noise whereof put these poor wretches into such a consternation, that they run over-board into their boats, and so put to sea, with such swiftness, that they could scarce well perceive them, till about 200 or 300 paces from the ship. The *Danes*, surprized at their unaccountable fear, gave a signal to these salvages to return, which they did, as soon as they saw the fire and smoke quite gone. Their manner of traffick is thus: Having chosen what commodities they like best, they put them together in one bundle; this done, they put in another bundle what commodities they are willing to exchange for them;



them; and thus adding or diminishing till both parties are satisfied, the bargain is struck at last.

Much about the same time that the *Danes* were busy in exchanging their commodities with those of the salvages, they saw one of these marine unicorns lying upon the shore, where being cast by the tides, it was left wallowing upon the sands. As it is generally reported of these sea-calves, that they love to feed upon grass; so it is likely that these fishes (which may well be call'd sea-oxen) take delight to come now and then ashore.

The salvages had no sooner discovered the prey, but they attack'd and kill'd the fish, and after they had beaten his horn or teeth into several pieces, carried them aboard immediately and sold them to the *Danes*. This fish which appears so defenceless ashore, is very fierce at sea, being the same thing at sea to the whale, that the rhinoceros is to the elephant among the terrestrial beasts; for he will engage the whale, and run his tooth into his sides. Some affirm, that they are of such strength as to be able to split a vessel at sea, if they run their teeth against it, and that several ships have been sunk by them.

However this traffick was not the main reason that had induced the *Danes* to bestow such vast charges upon those voyages: The pilot it seems, who was the chief conductor of these ships, had formerly taken notice of a certain tract near the sea-shore on that coast, the sand whereof had both the colour and full weight of gold oar; he thought it best to improve this opportunity, he gather'd as much of it, as the ship aboard of which he was could well carry, and so set sail for *Denmark*, telling the ships crew, that they were all rich enough, if they could come safely thither.

The great marshal of *Denmark*, who was governor and the first establisher of this company, being surpriz'd at their sudden return, the pilot told him, that his ship being loaden with gold, they had done their business beyond expectation. But the great marshal being a person not easily to be impos'd upon, he sent some of this sand to the goldsmiths of *Copenhagen*, who not being able to bring as much as one single grain of gold out of it, the grand marshal was so enraged at the folly of the pilot, that, to give all possible demonstrations that could be to the rest of the company, that he had not the least hand in so gross a miscarriage, he commanded the pilot immediately to weigh anchor, and to throw the whole charge of this pretended gold oar into the *Baltick* sea: The pilot was forced to obey,

but finding himself at once despoiled of all his hopes, died soon after, as it is supposed, for grief.

However, the great marshal had sufficient occasion afterwards to repent of this rash resolution; for (as he told me himself) not long after, such another gold dust or sand being found in the mines of *Norway*, an assy-master, who was lately settled at *Copenhagen*, found means to separate a considerable quantity of gold, in proportion of the oar, so that the *Danes* in all probability, lost a great treasure by the ignorance of the other goldsmiths (in whose skill they confided) who perhaps would not have drawn any gold ever out of the oar of *Pern*.

This was the last voyage undertaken by the *Danes* for the discovery of *Greenland*; in this voyage they brought along with them that great piece of an unicorn's horn, which, as we told you before, the great duke of *Muscovy's* physician discover'd to be the tooth of a fish; which the master of the house, where the ambassador lodged, and who belong'd to the *Greenland* company, shew'd us, being valued at 6000 rixdollars.

The *Danish* ship, at the time of their departure from the *Greenland* coast, seized two of the salvages of that country aboard them, in order to carry them to *Denmark*: After they were come into the main sea, they loosened these poor wretches of their bonds, who guided by a violent desire after their native country, laid hold of the first opportunity, and throwing themselves overboard, did endeavour to reach that shore by swimming, tho' questionless they were devoured by the waves, they being too great a distance from it.

I have hitherto given you an account of what I was able to learn, as well of the *Old* as the *New Greenland*, the first inhabited by the *Norwegians*, the second discover'd by the *Norwegians*, *Danes* and *English*, whilst they were endeavouring to recover the passage in the first. 'Tis very probable that the passage between the *Old Greenland* and *Island*, has been stop'd up by the vast ice shoals forced thither during the extremity of the winter season; and by the strong north-east winds from the *Frozen-Sea*, and gathered into vast ice mountains in these straits; whereby the free passage for ships being quite interrupted, those mariners who were sent in quest after the recovery of *Old Greenland*, were forced to steer their course towards the cape *Farewell*, and the gulph of *Davis*, lying to the east, being that part of the country now known by the name of *New Greenland*; it being certain by so many reiterated trials and experiments, that

the pa  
Greenla  
be attri  
ice mo

The  
which  
somethi  
truth o  
betwixt  
were a  
istles, f  
which,  
be forc  
violence  
fun bei  
in the  
cees of  
ly stop  
Greenla  
been th  
those A

'Tis  
which  
being t  
land, d  
rants, a  
tries of  
myself,  
you, it  
his voy  
shore o  
near it  
in thos  
rity of  
in *Old*

On  
firm'd  
saw an  
that ne  
brough  
differen  
guage)  
or mar  
ther w  
the lar  
from h  
*Danes*  
could  
they fi

The  
notice  
from c  
lot, fi  
not he  
words  
which  
derstan  
that th  
name  
part o  
often  
the sh  
as affe

the passage betwixt *Iceland* and the *Old Greenland*, has been quite lost, which must be attributed to its being stopped up by the ice mountains.

The *Iceland* chronicle, in that chapter which treats of the old passage, mentions something which seems much to confirm the truth of this assertion, viz. That half ways betwixt *Iceland* and *Old Greenland*, there were a considerable number of small rocky isles, frequented only by bears; betwixt which, it is likely, these ice shoals might be forced in betwixt those rocks, with such violence, and in such vast heaps, that the sun being not strong enough to melt them in the summer season, they became in process of time to be petrified, and consequently stop'd up the whole passage into the *Old Greenland*; so that ever since there has not been the least news heard of the posterity of those *Norwegians* that settled there.

'Tis not unlikely, that the same plague which raged in 1348, all over the north, being transplanted out of *Norway* into *Greenland*, did sweep away most of their inhabitants, as it happened in divers other countries of the north. I am apt to persuade myself, that *Gottke Lindenau*, who, as I told you, steer'd his course to the north-east, in his voyage, did either actually come to the shore of the *Old Greenland*, or at least very near it; and that the two salvages he took in those parts, were actually of the posterity of the antient *Norwegians*, that settled in *Old Greenland*.

On the other hand, I have heard it affirm'd by very considerable persons, who saw and conversed with them at *Copenhagen*, that neither these, nor the other salvages, brought from the gulph of *Davis* (tho' much different both in their manners and language) had any thing either in their language or manners, that had the least relation either with *Denmark* or *Norway*; nay, that the language of those salvages was so far from having any congruity with that of the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, that even they could not as much as understand one word they said.

The *Danish* chronicle takes particular notice, that the three salvages brought from the gulph of *Davis* by the *English* pilot, spoke so fast and thick, that one could not hear them speak distinctly, except these words, *Oxa indeba*; the signification of which words, no body has been able to understand hitherto. 'Tis beyond all dispute, that that part of *Greenland*, known by the name of the *Old Greenland*, is only a slender part of that vast tract of northern land, so often mentioned in this treatise; and, that the shore is opposite and nearest to *Iceland*, as also that the *Norwegians*, who settled

there, did not advance very far into the country, no more than those, who since that time have discover'd the *New Greenland*, did ever advance farther than to the ports, and upon the shore; the most of them (as we told you before) not daring as much as to venture to set foot ashore.

I had it from the lord great marshal of *Denmark's* own mouth, that in the last voyage made thither by the *Danes* in 1636, they by certain signs enquired of the *Greenlanders*, who came to traffick with them, whether there lived another people like themselves, beyond the mountains they saw, about ten or twelve leagues distant from the sea side; whereupon the salvages did give them to understand by certain signs, that there actually lived other men, having no hair upon their heads, on the other side of those mountains; that they were of a giantick stature, with vast bows and arrows, killing all strangers that came into their country. But no real certainty can be given of these people, no more than of the country they inhabit; both the ancient and modern histories being silent in this point; the only thing we are certain of is, that *Greenland* is without comparison of a much larger extent, than has been hitherto discovered by the *Norwegians*, *Danes* and *English*.

I was willing to enlarge my self the more upon this subject, in order to the representing to you two other things: (1.) That it is not very certain, whether *Greenland* is coherent with the continent of *Asia*, near the *Grand-Tartary*: (2.) No more, than whether it be contiguous to *America*. Concerning the first, I can tell you, that the vast ice mountains near *Nova-Zembla*, have hitherto so infested the passage thereabouts, that no body has been able to determine, whether there be a passage that way into the sea of the east; for tho' the most skilful pilots and mariners have been employed in finding it out, they could never come beyond the cape of *Spitzbergen*, accounted by the *Danes* a part of *Greenland*, whereabouts, they catch most of the whales transported afterwards into *Europe*: The *Dutch* here have their huts for the management of their trade, and with other nations send thither ships every year.

I can't upon this occasion forbear to give you an account of what I had the honour to learn from the grand-marshal of *Denmark's* own mouth, concerning this part of *Greenland*, and the adjacent sea; nay, such was his generosity, that not satisfied to have told it me by way of mouth, he would give himself the trouble of writing it in a letter to me, which I carefully preserve as a glorious proof of his generosity and



and favour towards me, in hopes of meeting before long, with a favourable opportunity of showing the same to you. But what do I say of showing you his letter, when there is so great a prospect, that you may suddenly see his excellency in person; it being at present reported here at the *Hague*, as a thing unquestionable, that this great person, with the countess *Eleonor* his spouse, the daughter of the king of *Denmark*, are gone lately from *Copenhagen* to *France*, where this great personage is to reside with the character of ambassador extraordinary from his majesty of *Denmark*: This is the same great person, of whose most excellent qualifications, I have sent such ample praises to our dear friend Mr. *Burdolat*, when I gave him an account of that famous interview betwixt the two plenipotentiaries of *Sweden* and *Denmark* at the bridge of *Brensbroe*, on account of a negotiation of peace, betwixt the two northern crowns; which was at last happily concluded by the intercession and indefatigable care of my lord ambassador from our most illustrious king: This interview was one of the most glorious that had been seen for a long time, where the two greatest men of the two northern crowns, viz. the grand marshal of *Denmark*, and the lord chancellor of *Sweden*, did meet one another with an inexpressible veneration, and all the marks of a most generous courage; and our ambassador had there the honour to establish a most intimate friendship between those two great personages.

Of the lord chancellor of *Sweden*, I shall have occasion to speak upon another occasion, and it is beyond my present purpose to enter upon a panegyrick of the grand marshal of *Denmark*; so I will only assure you, that whenever you shall have the opportunity of seeing this great minister, you will be satisfied both in respect of his extraordinary courage and refined wit, and by his noble presence, that he not only deserves the honour of managing all the affairs of moment in the north, but also of a far greater empire.

Add to these his historical virtues, that he is a compleat philosopher who disdains all pomp and vanities, but in lieu hereof is endowed with the most generous inclinations in the world, which renders his conversation the most agreeable in the universe. This great person had in his service, among many others, a certain *Spanish* gentleman named *Leonin*, who being a great naturalist, he sent him to *Spitzbergen*, in order to give him an account of what observations he could make there; whereof I will give a brief account.

This country is situate under the 78

degree of elevation, and not improperly call'd *Spitzbergen*, i. e. peaked Mountains, from those peaked mountains wherewith it is covered. These mountains are a mixture of sand, or rather gravel, and small flat stones joined pretty close together, not unlike that which we commonly call the grey *Ardoise* stone. The mountains increase in bulk every year, so as to be plainly discovered by those who sail that way; *Leonin* went ashore, as deep into the country as he durst venture, and found the whole country, as far as his eyesight could carry, all covered with these peaked hills; and met with no living creature except some few foxes; he was not a little surprized to discover upon one of these hills, about a league from the seaside, a small mast of a ship, with one of its pulleys still fastened to it; this made him ask the seamen how that mast came there, who told him they were not able to tell, but were sure they had seen it as long as they had used that coast. Perhaps formerly the sea might either cover or come near this mountain, where some ship or other being stranded, this mast is some remnant of that wreck.

They have some grass, but so short, that it is scarce to be seen above ground, or beyond the stones; for to speak properly, here is scarce any earth, but only small stones or gravel, betwixt which comes forth a sort of moss, like that which grows upon the barks of trees, in other parts of the northern climate, which serves for food for the ree deer, and is so nourishing to them, that they become absolutely fat by it; and I remember, that the grand marshal had once one of these creatures kill'd, which had at least four inches of fat.

This country is a desert, and not habitable, by reason of the excessive cold; for though the sun does not set here for four whole months in the year; and that for six weeks more, it does not go below the horizon above three eels: To speak after the *Danes*, who seem to have taken their mensuration of the heaven from *Virgil*; meaning that at midnight (if you may so call it) the sun does approach only within eleven degrees and half of the horizon in this country for the space of six weeks: As the cold is very fierce here, so the sunbeams are very bright and piercing, and consequently this subtilty of the air, increases the effects of the cold.

There is no living near these mountains, which scarce having any solidity, they constantly send forth certain exhalations, which pierce the whole body in a very little time; to prevent which, the best remedy is to expose yourself to the sunbeams

Waste of  
Spitzber-

beams  
you o  
The  
that c  
ing i  
They  
way c  
shoals  
veral  
which  
he ha  
acqu  
long  
sleep  
caufe  
ter, v  
to the  
of the  
those  
the b  
for tv  
he bel  
for a v  
out by  
stened

The  
dance  
some t  
be no  
of a p  
ference  
ly take  
a hund  
creatur  
vast bo  
cept te  
small t  
corrup  
quantit  
bottom  
that th  
ders, n  
the sea  
abouts  
that it  
sign to  
whales  
booty  
part of  
fects.

Som  
so vast  
ness, th  
ry all t  
of it be  
the nex  
It is  
rupts o  
the dea  
appear  
they di  
the gh  
Here  
Voi

improperly  
Mountains.  
where with it  
are a mix-  
ed, and small  
together, not  
only call the  
mountains increas-  
e plainly dis-  
tinct way; *Leo-*  
the country  
and the whole  
light could car-  
peaked hills;  
nature except  
a little surpri-  
these hills, a-  
side, a small  
pulleys still  
ask the sea-  
re, who told  
well, but were  
as they had  
merly the sea  
near this moun-  
being strand-  
nant of that

but so short, *A disjunc-*  
above ground, *tion of*  
speak proper- *Spitzber-*  
out only small *gen.*  
which comes forth  
which grows  
other parts  
which serves for  
so nourishing  
absolutely fat  
that the grand  
these creatures  
inches of fat.  
and not ha-  
ssive cold; for  
here for four  
and that for  
go below the  
to speak after  
taken their  
from *Virgil*;  
you may so call  
within ele-  
horizon in this  
six weeks: As  
so the sun-  
piercing, and  
the air, en-

these moun-  
any solidity,  
tain exhalati-  
body in a very  
the best re-  
to the sun-  
beams

beams in a place where they may surround you on all sides without any obstacle.

They have great quantities of bears in that country; they are all white, some living in the water, others upon the shore. They are commonly seen swimming a good way out at sea, or else upon the great ice shoals. The grand Marshal had caused several of these creatures to be taken alive, which he kept at *Copenhagen*; and when he had a mind to shew some sport to his acquaintance, they used to take a walk along the sea-shore, and in some sandy but deep place where the water was very clear, cause these bears to be thrown into the water, where they could see them dive quite to the bottom; he told me, that it was one of the best diversions in the world, to see those creatures plunge themselves down to the bottom of the sea, and to sport there for two or three hours successively; nay, he believed they would have continued there for a whole day, had they not been drawn out by the ropes and chains that were fastened round their bodies.

Whales of  
Spitzber-  
gen.

The sea of *Spitzbergen* produces abundance of whales of such a bigness, that some taken hereabouts have been found to be no less than two hundred foot long, and of a proportionable bigness in the circumference of their bodies. But they frequently take those of a hundred and thirty and a hundred and sixty foot long. These vast creatures have no teeth, and within these vast bodies they seldom find any thing except ten or twelve handfuls of a kind of small black spiders, progenerated by the corrupted air of the sea, and some small quantity of green herds tore up from the bottom of the sea; it is most probable that these whales don't live upon these spiders, neither upon these herbs, but upon the sea, which produces both; the sea hereabouts being so covered with these insects, that it appears quite black, an infallible sign to those who go about catching of whales, that they are likely to make a good booty; the whales generally delight in that part of the sea which produces these insects.

Sometimes they take of these whales in so vast numbers, and of so prodigious bigness, that the ships are not sufficient to carry all the lard, but are forced to leave part of it behind them, in order to carry it away the next year.

It is observable that never any thing corrupts or putrifies in this country; even the dead carcases buried thirty years before, appear as entire and as well coloured as they did at the same moment they gave up the ghost.

Here are certain huts erected a long time

Vol. II.

2

ago for the convenience of boiling the whale oil or grease; these appear the self-same, without the least alteration, now, as they did from the beginning, when they were built, the wood being as firm and as fresh, as it was the day it was cut from the tree. To speak the truth of these northern parts, the dead fare better here than the living; for if the first don't corrupt, the living don't keep long in health; witness poor *Leonin* (before mentioned) who returned from this voyage so cramp'd with cold, that he lived not long after.

All the birds you meet with here, are water-birds, there being not one kind of them living upon land. They have ducks in great abundance, besides divers other sorts of water-fowl not known to strangers. The grand marshal of *Denmark* has several of them by him stuffed out, it being impossible to bring them to *Copenhagen* alive. Their feathers and beaks are not unlike those of the *Paroquets*, and their feet are like those of the ducks. Those that have taken them, assure us, that they sing very deliciously, especially when many of them sing together, they make a most harmonious noise.

Those that failed to *Spitzbergen* to catch whales, arrive there in the month of *July*, and return from thence in *August*. If they come before *July*, they can't approach the shore, by reason of the vast ice-shoals, and for the same reason they must not venture to stay longer than about the middle of *August* at farthest; for nothing is more frequent than to see vast ice-shoals in these seas, sometimes 60, 70 or 80 fathoms thick.

—*Quæ tantum vertice ad auras  
Æthereas tantum radice ad Tartara tendunt.*

For in certain places near this shore, the ice-shoals are so thick, that they reach the bottom of the sea, and these encreasing by degrees, by the occasion of new ice-shoals, arise as high above the surface of the water, as they are deep below it. These ice-shoals are as bright and transparent as glass: What renders the navigation hereabouts most dangerous is, the uncertainty of the currents, occasioned, as I suppose, by the sudden melting of the ice, which sometimes congeals and melts in different places, at no great distance, at the same time.

It ought therefore not to seem strange to you, if I am not able to resolve absolutely the first proposition, viz. whether *Greenland* is coherent to the continent of *Asia*, and the *Grand-Tartary* or not, by reason of the vast distance there is between us and the *Frozen-Sea*; the uncertainty of the melting

5 P

melting

Uncertain-  
ty about  
Greenland  
whether a  
continent  
or isle.

melting of the ice, the violence of the tempests that reign frequently near these coasts, the uncertainty of the true course to be taken, the dangers you meet with there, and what is worst, the want of all manner of subsistence and conveniences in these deserts: All these taken together, are such insurmountable obstacles, as render this discovery past all hopes of success. The second proposition being involved in no less difficulties than the first; we can with no more certainty affirm of this, than of the former, whether *Greenland* joins with the continent of *America* or not.

Of this I can give you not a more convincing proof, than what I intended to oblige you with, viz. The account of a voyage made by a *Danish* captain named *John Munck* (which I promised you long ago) who attempted the discovery of the *eastern passage*, towards the north-west, betwixt *Greenland* and *America*; the same being not in the least foreign to my present purpose; for besides that it contains no small varieties, it has a particular relation to *Greenland* and the adjacent isles.

Munck's  
voyage to  
discover a  
passage be-  
tween  
*Greenland*  
and *Ame-  
rica*.

The king of *Denmark* (that now reigns) being prevailed upon to encourage by his authority, the discovery of a passage to the *East Indies*, thro' a supposed strait betwixt *Greenland* and *America*, engaged one captain *Munck* to undertake this voyage. A certain *English* captain named *Hudson*, had some time before attempted the discovery of this sea and straits with the same design, but was lost in the voyage, tho' no body knows how; it is likely that his boldness having some relation to the presumption of *Icarus*, his wings were render'd useless by the cold, as the others were by the heat of the sun, and so met with the same fate of perishing in the sea; which like that of *Icarus*, got from him the name of *Hudson's straits*, and *Hudson's bay*.

Captain *Munck* set sail from the *Sound* the 16th of *May* 1619, with two vessels, equipped at the charge of the king of *Denmark*, one mann'd with forty eight, and the other with sixteen men. He arrived the 28th of *January* on the cape *Farvel* (as the *Danes* call it) i. e. *Farewell*; having got its name questionless from the opinion the *Danes* have conceived, that such as go beyond it, are passing into another world, and take a long farewell from this part of it. This cape *Farewell*, as I told you before, lies under 60 degrees and a half of elevation, in a mountainous country, covered always with snow and ice; and as these vary frequently in colour, and with their whiteness and transparency dazzle the eye, the true shape of this cape has not been discovered hitherto.

From this cape captain *Munck* steering his coast to the west by north, entered *Hudson's straits*, where meeting with a-bundance of ice, he avoided the danger thereof, by keeping out at sea. Hence it is that he advises those that will attempt this passage, not to go too far to the west, by reason of the many ice shoals, and impetuous currents that are near the *American* coast. He tells us, that the eighth of *July* there arose so thick and strong a frost in these seas, that all his ship tackling were covered with ice-tags, so that they were scarce able to manage them; but that the next day from three a clock in the afternoon till sun-set, it was so excessive hot, that they were forced to pull off their clothes.

A sudden  
change of  
weather.

Coming into *Hudson's straits*, he gave it the name of *Christian's straits*, after the king of *Denmark* his master; and landed some of his men the 17th of *July* in an isle upon the coast of *Greenland*. Those that were sent to view this isle, assured the captain, that they had discovered some footsteps of men, but no inhabitants. However the next day they saw a whole troop of them near the sea-shore, who being amazed and frightened at the sight of the *Danes*, did run away as fast as they could, but had no sooner hid their arms, they carried along with them, behind an adjacent huge mass of stones, but they advanced towards the *Danes*, and in an obliging manner returned the salute given by them, with this caution however, to keep betwixt the *Danes* and the place, where they had concealed their arms. But the *Danes* found means by several turnings and windings to amuse them so long, till coming near to the stone heap, they seized upon their bows, quivers, and arrows.

Their  
bills.

The poor salvages, quite dismay'd at their loss, did in most submissive posture, and with all the engaging signs in the world, beg the *Danes* to restore them their weapons, giving them to understand, that as they lived upon hunting, and must perish for want of them, they would give them their clothes in exchange for them. The *Danes*, moved with compassion, restored them their arms, which they joyfully received upon their bended knees. The *Danes* to engage them the more, produced their toys, and made some trifling presents to the salvages, who were infinitely delighted with them, and in lieu thereof gave to the *Danes* divers sorts of birds, and some fat of fishes. One of these salvages casting his eyes upon a little looking-glass, in which he saw his face, was so taken with it, that he put it in his bosom, and run away as fast

as

as his le  
ving th  
city, as  
at the r  
of their  
flat-face  
him for  
ref'd h  
quainta

Capt  
being t  
to purs  
vast ice  
old stat  
of the  
could t  
hanging  
other to  
out of  
forbidd  
with th  
is uncer

Capt  
went of  
bundan  
it the  
Renes,  
chor, M  
is: lies  
after l  
ol *Den*  
cond ti  
after s  
and vat  
made s  
betwixt  
chors,  
to faste  
shore.

It w  
*Danes*  
and th  
ried al  
ty of i  
and n  
have b  
the op

Bet  
ice sho  
which  
broken  
tom of  
that th  
it it h  
our sh  
up by  
The  
but di  
marks  
that t  
been  
found

nek steering Comes to  
th, entered Hudlon's  
ing with a freight.  
the danger  
Hence it  
will attempt  
to the welt,  
als, and im-  
the American  
ighth of July  
g a froit in  
ckling were  
at they were  
but that the  
in the after-  
excessive hot,  
ull off their

bs, he gave  
bs, after the  
and landed  
uly in an ile  
Those that  
ared the cap  
d some foot-  
How-  
hole troop of  
being amazed  
the Danes, did  
, but had no  
carried along  
t huge mals  
towards the  
nner returned  
th this caution  
the Danes and  
ncealed their  
means by seve-  
amuse them fo  
e stone heap,  
quivers, and

dismay'd at  
iffive posture,  
signs in the  
ore them their  
derstand, that  
ad must perish  
ld give them  
them. The  
tion, restored  
ey joyfully re-  
es. The Danes  
roduced their  
presents to the  
delighted with  
gave to the  
nd some fat of  
ges casting his  
lafs, in which  
with it, that  
un away as fast

as his legs would carry him, the Danes having the diversion of laughing at his simplicity, as they had occasion to do soon after at the rest of the falvages, who seeing one of their ship's crew, with black hair and flat-faced, not unlike themselves, mistook him for one of their countrymen, and caress'd him as if they had been very old acquaintance.

Captain Muneck left this isle the next day, being the 19th of July, with an intention to pursue his voyage, but by reason of the vast ice shoals, was forced to return to his old station, but could not get sight of any of the falvages again, tho' they did all they could to entice them to the sea shore, by hanging little knives, looking-glasses, and other toys on small ropes. Whether it was out of fear of the Danes, or that they were forbidden to keep any farther correspondence with them by the chief judge or governour, is uncertain.

Captain Muneck meeting with no men, went often a hunting, and having taken abundance of reen-deer in this isle, he gave it the name of *Reinfundt*, i. e. *the gulph of Renes*, and the road where they lay at anchor, *Muneeckens*, after his own name. This isle lies at 61 deg. 20 min. elevation; where after having set up the arms of the king of Denmark his master, he departed a second time, the 22d of July; but was soon after surprized by such violent tempests, and vast ice shoals, that with much ado he made shift to save himself the 28th of July betwixt two isles, where he cast all his anchors, and for his better security, was forc'd to fasten his vessels with long ropes on the shore.

It was no sooner low water, but the Danes found themselves all upon dry land, and the water beginning to rise again, carried along with it such a prodigious quantity of ice shoals, that had they not been day and night upon their guard, they would have been in greater danger here than in the open sea.

Betwixt these two isles, there was a huge ice shoal, about twenty two fathom high; which being loosen'd from the shore, and broken in two pieces, did sink to the bottom of the sea with so violent a motion, that the waves did arise like mountains, as if it had been a violent tempest, and put our ship in great danger of being swallow'd up by them.

They did not see any inhabitants here, but discovered several foot-steps, and other marks which sufficiently convinced them, that they were either at that time, or had been formerly inhabited by men. They found here divers minerals, and among the

rest, great store of *Talc*, of which they carried off several tons into ships. They saw several other isles thereabouts, which in all probability were inhabited as well as these; but the shore being so rocky and full of ice, that there was scarce ever any thing seen like it, the Danes durst not venture too near them. These isles are situated at 62 deg. 20 min. about fifty leagues within the *Christian's freights*. Captain Muneck gave that part where he lay at anchor, the name of *Harefount*, i. e. *the bay or road or bays*, from the vast number of hares they saw in this isle, and set up *Christian IV.* there, which the Danes generally express by this character C4.

He left these isles the 9th of August, steering his course to the W. S. W. with a N. W. wind, and the 10th came on the southern shore of *Christian's freights*, being the *American coast* itself. Pursuing his course, he discovered a large isle to the N. W. unto which he gave the name of *Sneoculand*, i. e. *the Snow-isle*.

The 20th of August he steer'd his course from the W. to the N. and then (as the journal says) *I took the right course at the elevation of 62 deg. 20 min.* But it being a very thick fog, they could discover no land; tho' as the same journal says, *The freights of Christian is thereabouts not above sixteen leagues broad.* From whence 'tis reasonable to conclude, that it is broader in other places.

Out of the streight he failed into *Hudson's sea*, the name whereof he changed likewise, as he had done that of the freights, giving it two names instead of one; for that part which washes the shore of *America*, he called the *New-sea*, and the other part towards the side of *Greenland* (if it may be supposed to belong to that country) *Christian's sea*.

He steer'd his course as much as possible he could to the W. N. W. till finding themselves at 63 deg. 20 min. elevation; they were so entangled amongst the ice, that they were forced to seek for shelter on the *Greenland coast*, and to pass the winter there; whence it is clear they gave the name of *Muneeckens winter haven*, i. e. *Muneeck's winter haven*, to that road; and to the track of land along the coast, the name of *New Denmark*.

The author of this journal has pass'd by in silence several places they saw in their passage thither, because having inserted their names in a peculiar map, he directs his readers thither for farther instructions. He speaks only of two isles in the *Christian's sea*, call'd by him the *two sister isles*, and of one more much larger than the former, towards

Breadth of  
Hudson's  
or Christi-  
ian's  
freights.

Hudson's  
or Christi-  
an's  
sea.

Muneeck  
came to an  
anchor betwixt  
two isles.

towards the *New-sea*, unto which he has given the name of *Dikes Oculand*. He advises those that intend to pass the *Christian's freights*, to keep in the middle of the freights as much as possibly they can, by reason of the rapidity of the contrary currents, occasion'd by the flux and reflux of the seas on both coasts, which carrying along with them vast ice shoals, put the vessels in frequent danger of being lost. He adds, that the tides in the *Christian's sea*, keep their certain times, from five to five hours, and that these tides are regulated according to the course of the moon.

Munck's  
Haven.

Captain *Munck* came to an anchor the 7th of September at *Munck's winter haven*, where after having somewhat refresh'd his men, he order'd his ships to be drawn into a little creek near the harbour, in order to have them refitted, and to preserve them against the force of the ice. The next thing they had to do, was to erect some huts, to defend themselves against the extremity of the cold of the approaching winter season, which would not permit them to return homewards at that time. *Munck's haven* is situate at the entrance of a river, which was not frozen in October, tho' the sea was already full of ice near the shore.

The coun-  
try near  
it.

Captain *Munck* says, that the 7th of October he went up the river in a sloop, to view the situation of the adjacent country, but could not go farther than a league and a half, being stop'd by the rocks that are cross the river. Finding the passage by the river thus closed up, he took along with him some soldiers and seamen, and marched along with them about three or four leagues deep into the country, in hopes of meeting with some of the inhabitants, but found nothing like it that way. However, in his return thro' another part of the country, he found a pretty broad and high stone, and upon it the figure of a devil, with his horns and claws very distinctly painted. Near it was a place inclosed with small stones about eight foot square: On one side of this square place he saw a little hill composed of small stones, intermix'd with the moss of trees. On the opposite side of the same square, stood another square stone, not unlike an altar, resting upon two other stones, and upon the altar, he saw three pieces of charcoal laid crossways upon one another.

One of  
their al-  
tars.

Their sa-  
crifices.

Captain *Munck* saw several such like altars in his return, with charcoal upon them, just like the former; and tho' he could not as much as get sight of one single person of the natives, yet was it observable, that near every one of these al-

tars they saw, they observed the foot-steps of men; whence they conjectured, that the natives of the country used to assemble near these altars, to perform their sacrifices, which in all likelihood they celebrated either with fire, or to the fire. They farther took notice, that near those places, where they discovered these foot-steps of men, they found abundance of bones gnawed, which as they supposed, were the remnants of the sacrificed beasts, eaten by the salvages at the sacrifice, after their fashion, or rather torn or gnaw'd to pieces with their hands and teeth, as our dogs do with a bone.

In the woods, thro' which they pass'd, they found abundance of trees, sawed or cut in pieces by iron instruments; as also abundance of dogs muzzled with small twigs of trees. But what confirm'd them most of all in their opinion, viz. That this tent was not destitute of inhabitants was, that they had discovered the marks where tents or huts had been erected in divers places, and many pieces of bears and wolf-skins, as also of stags, sea-calves and dogs-skins, which had questionless served to cover these tents withal; it being more than probable, from what has been said upon this head, that these inhabitants lead a vagabond life, like the *Scytes*, or encamp in troops like the *Laplanners*.

The *Danes* having fix'd their huts, which were to serve them all the winter, began to provide wood to keep themselves warm, and venison for their food. Captain *Munck* was the first who shot a white bear with his own gun, which they eat with a good appetite, and say, did relish and digest very well. They also kill'd abundance of hares, partridges, and other birds, which tho' not express'd by their peculiar names, he says are very frequent in *Denmark*. He adds, that they catch'd also four black foxes, and some sables, a name the northern nations generally give to the sable martins.

What most surprized the *Danes* was, that they discovered in the sky divers phenomena they never observed in *Denmark*. Thus, (as the journal assures us) there appeared the 27<sup>th</sup> of November, three distinct suns in the firmament, tho' it was a very thick and gross air. The 24<sup>th</sup> of January next following, two suns appeared very distinctly; and the 10<sup>th</sup> of December, or the 20<sup>th</sup> of the old stile, they observed an eclipse of the moon about eight a clock at night; and the same night, they saw for two hours together, the moon surrounded by a very bright circle, with a cross in it, dividing the whole body of the moon into four

four pa-  
fore-ru-  
almost  
you wi-  
The  
time to  
there la-  
and 36  
wines,  
nysb win-  
top to l-  
ed then  
the liqu-  
pieces of  
pieces of  
being n-  
wards u-  
excess o-  
to forge-  
of their  
them ce-  
in that  
gun to fi-  
Thus  
not spare  
with fuel  
Danes. miser-  
after and  
cording  
being fei-  
were ema-  
dropt on  
the mid-  
keep the  
himself v-  
own hut.  
The w-  
stead of a  
proach of  
gan to l-  
mouths w-  
they coul-  
steep'd in  
rable rem-  
by the b-  
pains in t-  
been prie-  
the point  
decay visi-  
black at l-  
beer bea-  
lett their  
of the co-  
else than  
dilemper  
known in  
Such as di-  
ground, t-  
them.  
By this  
sing, they  
the snow,  
Vol. I.



four parts. This meteor seem'd to be the fore-runner of the ensuing miseries, and almost total destruction of the *Danes*, as you will see out of the following account.

The extremity of the cold began by this time to increase to such a degree, that there lay ice-shoals near the shore of 300 and 360 foot thick; and their beer and wines, nay, even the most spirituous *Spanish* wines and strong brandies, froze from top to bottom in the vessels that contain'd them, which breaking asunder, and the liquors being congealed into entire pieces of ice, they were forced to cut out pieces of them with their hatchets, which being melted, before the fire, they afterwards used to drink; nay, such was the excess of the cold, that if they happened to forget a small quantity of water in any of their tin or leather vessels, they found them certainly crack'd the next morning, in that very place where the water had begun to freeze.

Thus the merciless cold, which even did not spare the metals increased its rigour with such violence, upon the bodies of the miserable *Danes*, that they fell all sick, one after another, their sickness encreasing according to the rigour of the season; for being seized with a violent looseness, they were emaciated to the last degree, till they dropt one after another, there being about the middle of *March* not enough left to keep the guard; so that captain *Munck* himself was forced to stand centinel at his own hut.

The worst was, that this distemper instead of abating did augment with the approach of the spring, when their teeth began to loosen in their gums, and their mouths were so full of ulcers within, that they could eat no bread, except what was steep'd in water. Towards *May*, the miserable remnants of the *Danes* were attack'd by the bloody flux, and such excessive pains in the nervous parts, as if they had been pricked without intermission, with the points of knives. Their bodies did decay visibly day by day, turned livid and black at last, no otherwise than if they had been beaten with sticks, and some of them lost their arms and legs by the violence of the cold. This is properly nothing else than the highest degree of scurvy, a distemper very common, and sufficiently known in the northern parts of the world. Such as died were forced to be kept above ground, the rest wanting strength to bury them.

By this time the want of bread encreasing, they were constrained to dig under the snow, where by good chance they found

Vol. II.

a certain sort of berries, which they did feed upon for some time; but the worst was, that they would not keep in the least, wherefore they were obliged to boil and eat them immediately. The journal mentions the 12<sup>th</sup> of *April* as a very remarkable day, because it then rained the first time, after seven months, there having not fallen a drop of rain in all that time.

The spring rejoiced them with the sight of many sorts of birds, none of which had appeared all the winter long, but their weakness would not permit them to catch or shoot any of them. About the middle of *May* they saw abundance of wild geese, swans, ducks, an infinite number of small birds, partridges, ravens, falcons, and some eagles. Not long after, captain *Munck* happened to fall ill among the rest, and on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *June* was so miserably afflicted with tormenting pains in his limbs, that for four days together he could not stir out of his hut: Not imagining otherwise than that his last hour was near at hand, he made his last will, in which he prayed the next that came to that shore, to bury his body, and to be careful of his journal, in order to deliver it to the king of *Denmark*. But about four days after, finding his strength somewhat recovered, he made shift to peep out of his hut to see whether any of his crew were living or not; and out of sixty four that came along with him, found only two alive. These poor wretches ravish'd with joy to see their captain, revived as it were from the dead, run to him with open arms, and carried him straightways to a fire, wherewith rubbing his joints, they brought him pretty well to himself. They then encouraged one another, resolving to live if possible they could, but how was the difficulty; they were forced to look for food under the snow, where now and then they found some herbs and roots, which had that happy effect upon them, that they began to recover more and more every day. It being then the 10<sup>th</sup> of *June*, the ice began to melt, which gave them opportunity to catch some trouts, salmon and other fishes: Thus what they catch'd by fishing and hunting, furnished them with sufficient food; by which means having now recovered their full strength, they resolved notwithstanding all the difficulties and dangers they were to surmount, to endeavour to get back to *Denmark*; what hastened their resolution was, that about that time the summer season and rainy weather brought ashore such vast quantities of gnats, that they were not able to abide there.

According to this resolution, they left their greatest ship behind them, and embarked

No rain in seven months.

Birds of Greenland.

Captain Munck makes his last will.

Recovered.



Muneeck  
remarks  
with two  
seamen  
only.

bark'd aboard the small frigate, the 16<sup>th</sup> of July, and set sail from the same port, where I told you they had laid up their ships, and was by the captain named *Jans Muneeck's Bay*, i. e. *John Muneeck's Bay* or port, after his own name. Coming into the *Christian-Sea*, they met with abundance of floating ice-bergs, where they lost their sloop, and with much ado got their vessel clear; for having lost their rudder, they were forced to fasten their ship to a vast ice-rock till it could be refitted. The ice beginning to melt they found their sloop again, about ten days after; but this lasted not long, for the sea freezing and thawing again by turns, they got, not without a great deal of trouble, thro' the *Christian Strait*, and thence by cape *Farewel* into the ocean, where they were surpris'd the 3<sup>d</sup> of September, by so violent a tempest, that they were in great danger of being lost; the two seamen being so tired out by the long continuance of the tempest, that being forced to commit themselves to the mercy of the wind and waves, their mast was brought by the board, and with much ado they got the sails out of the sea into the ship.

Arrive in  
Norway.

The fury of the tempest being somewhat allay'd for some days, gave them leisure and opportunity to get the 21<sup>st</sup> of September, into a part of *Norway*, where they came to an anchor with one anchor, the only one they had left.

But when they thought themselves freed from all danger, they were assaulted by another tempest, which put them in more danger than ever they had seen before; however they had the good fortune once more to escape this danger, having found means to run their ship among the rocks, they made shift to get ashore, 'till the fury of the tempest being past, they refitted their vessel, and in some days after got safe into *Denmark*, where captain *Muneeck* gave an account of the success of his voyage, to the king, who received him no otherwise, than if had been returned from the dead.

One might reasonably suppose, that this voyage would put a period to captain *Muneeck's* misfortunes; but his ill fate not tired yet of pursuing so brave a man, the odds of the accident that befel him hereafter ought not to be pass'd by in silence.

After some stay in *Denmark*, (during which time he mused upon his last miscarriage, for want of knowledge of the country) he began to be persuaded within himself that there was still a possibility of finding out a passage to the east that way, and therefore resolv'd to attempt the same

Muneeck  
prepares  
for a second  
voyage into  
Green-  
land.

a second time. But this being a thing of such a nature, as to require the assistance of other people, he engaged divers gentlemen of quality, and rich citizens of *Denmark* in the same design, who entering into a society, they equip'd two vessels, which they committed to the care of captain *Muneeck*.

Having taken effectual care to provide his ships with all necessaries, and to remedy all the inconveniencies he had been made sensible of in his former voyage; when being just ready to depart, the king of *Denmark* demanded the captain (as he was taking his leave of him) the day fix'd for his departure; and thus entering upon the discourse of his late voyage into *Greenland*, the king began to upbraid his conduct, as if his ships had been lost by the captain's ill management. His reply happening to be somewhat rougher than the king expected, he pushed him with his cane against the *Dungh* breast, which the captain taking to heart, *grief* went home to bed, and what with grief and want of food (which he refused to take) died in ten days after.

But it is time to return to the subject, that did lead us into this long digression; from what has been said, it seems to be evident, that there is a long and broad canal, if not an entire sea, betwixt *Greenland* and *America*; notwithstanding which, as we know but very little of that coast, it remains doubtful, whether *Greenland* is upon the same continent with *America* or not; tho' it seems most probable it is not, as I told you before. And captain *Muneeck* was questionless of the same opinion, without which he would never have taken so much pains to engage a whole society of gentlemen to attempt the finding out of this passage to the east.

This leads me to a discovery of the mistake of the author, who has published his dissertations concerning the origin of the *Americans*, which he deduces from the *Greenlanders*; the first inhabitants of which he would make us believe were *Norwegians*, and consequently that the first inhabitants of *America*, were originally of *Norway*. He pretends to justify his opinion by a certain imaginary affinity betwixt some *American* words that terminate in *Lan* and the termination of *Land*, so frequent in the *German*, *Lombard* and *Norwegian* languages, and the resemblance of the manner of living; that is, as he tells you, betwixt the *Americans* and *Norwegians*, who are, if you will believe him, the *Allemanni* of *Tacitus*: But I don't question to convince you of his mistake, by the following reasons: (1.) because the *Norwegians* were not the first inhabitants

The *Norwegians* were not the first inhabitants of *Greenland*.  
habitants what has and Mr. mous anti tracing t of *America* contrary, ginal nat burgb, to americans. in his gu lihood th nent of A well know us imagin in what the langu twixt the contrary y the precece *Norwegian* ced in *A* passage fo rica, than

The Nor-  
wegians  
were not  
the first in-  
habitants  
of Green-  
land.

habitants of *Greenland*, as is apparent from what has been said upon the head before; and Mr. *Wormius*, that learned and famous antiquary of the north, is so far from tracing the original of the first inhabitants of *America* out of *Greenland*, that on the contrary, he believes the *Skreglingers* or original natives of *Greenland*, about *Westernburgh*, to have been descended from the *Americans*. (2.) He is grievously mistaken in his guess, there being little or no likelihood that *Greenland* is joined to the continent of *America*, neither is that passage so well known, nor so easy as he would have us imagine. (3.) He is no less in an error, in what he says concerning the affinity of the languages and manner of living, betwixt the *Norwegians* and *Americans*; the contrary being made sufficiently evident by the preceeding relation: But supposing the *Norwegian* language to have been introduced in *America*; he must find out another passage for these northern people into *America*, than by the way of *Greenland*.

I will not trouble you with the other mistakes this author has been guilty of in several passages of his dissertations, knowing that you are constantly employed in matters of much more moment, wherewith you have obliged the learned world; and as I must look upon it as an eternal obligation, that you would throw away part of your precious time, in reading so unpolished a work, that has so little resemblance to the nicety of your own excellent pieces, I don't question, but that you are as well pleased to have done with reading of this letter, as I am satisfied to have finished it, and to declare to you, that I shall always be

S I R,

From the *Hague*  
Jan. 18, 1646.

Your most humble and

most affectionate Servant.

Captain

Ca

V

S

GO

*PH*

---

A PL

Divers

By Mr

An A

Vol.

Captain *THOMAS JAMES*'s  
STRANGE and DANGEROUS  
**V O Y A G E**  
In his intended DISCOVERY of the  
North-West PASSAGE  
INTO THE  
*S O U T H S E A*,  
In the years 1631 and 1632.

Wherein the MISERIES indured, both  
GOING, WINTERING, RETURNING,  
And the RARITIES observed, both  
*PHILOSOPHICAL* and *MATHEMATICAL*,  
Are RELATED at Large.

---

Published by His Majesty's Command.

---

To which are added  
**A PLAT or CARD** for the sailing in those Seas.

ALSO  
Divers little TABLES of the AUTHOR's, of the VARIATION  
of the COMPASS, &c.

WITH  
An *APPENDIX* concerning LONGITUDE,  
By Mr. HENRY GELLIBRAND, Astronomy Reader of *Gresham-College, London*.

AND  
An ADVICE concerning the PHILOSOPHY of these late DISCOVERIES,  
By *W. W.*

THE  
PREPARATIONS  
TO THE  
VOYAGE.

HAVING been for many years importuned, by my honourable and worshipful friends, to undertake the discovery of that part of the world, which is commonly called, *The North-West Passage into the South-Sea*, and so to proceed to *Japan*, and so round the world to the westward; being prest forward withal, by signifying to me the earnest desire the King's Most Excellent Majesty had, to be satisfied therein: I acquainted my much honoured friends, the merchants of *Bristol*, therewith; who, as ever they have been benefactors and advancers of them that pursue the ways of honour (together with the enlargement and benefit of his Majesty's kingdoms) did freely offer to be at the charge of furnishing forth shipping for this purpose. And now being thus enabled, I addressed my self to the honourable Sir *Thomas Roe*, Kt. (as to a learned, and furthest employed traveller by sea and land, this day in *England*) who joyfully presented theirs and mine own voluntary willingness, to do His Majesty service in this kind; who most graciously accepted of the offer; and encouraged me by many favours, in my weak undertakings. Wherefore with all speed, I contrived in my mind, the best model I could, whereby I might effect my design. The adventurers moneys were instantly ready, and put into a treasurer's hand, that there might be no want of present pay, for any thing I thought necessary for the voyage.

I was ever of the opinion, that this particular action might be better effected by one ship, than by two consofited; because in those icy seas, so much subject to fogs, that they might be easily separated; I forbear to speak of storms and other accidents; as that of a rendezvous in discoveries, cannot surely, or without much hindrance be appointed; and that speedy perseverance is the life of such a business: Wherefore I resolved to have but one ship, the ship-boat, and a shallop.

A great ship (as by former experience I had found) was unfit to be forced thorow the ice, wherefore I made choice of a well-conditioned strong ship, of the burthen of 70 ton; and in GOD, and that only ship, to put the hope of my future fortunes.

The ship resolved upon, and that in less time than eighteen months our voyage could not be effected. I next considered how our ship of seventy tons in bulk and weight might now be proportioned, in victuals, namely, and other necessities; this was all done, as contractedly as we could; and the number of men it would serve, at ordinary allowance for the forementioned time, was found to be twenty two, a small number to perform such a business, yet double sufficient to sail the ship with provident carefulness.

The baker, brewer, butcher, and others, undertake their offices upon their credits, knowing it to be a general business, and their utter undoing if they failed in performance; but truly they proved themselves masters in their arts, and have my praise for their honest care; in them consisting a great part of the performance of the voyage.

The carpenters go in hand with the ship, to make her as strong and serviceable as possible in their understandings they could.

Every thing being duly proportioned, and my small number of men known, I began to think of the quality and ability they should be of.

Voluntary loyterers I at first disclaimed, and published I would have all unmarried, approved, able and healthy seamen: In a few days an abundant number presented themselves, furnished with general sufficiency in Marine occasions. I first made choice of a *Boatswain*, and some to work with him, for fitting the rigging of the ship; and as things went forward, shipped the *subordinate Crew*. And all things being perfectly ready, I ship'd the *Master's Mates*; and last of all, the *Master* of my ship, and my *Lieutenant*. The whole company were strangers to me, and to each other, (as by way of familiarity) but yet privately recommended by worthy merchants, for their ability and faithfulness. I was sought to by divers, that had been in places of the chiefest command in this action formerly, and others also that had used the *northerly Icy-Seas*; but I utterly refused them all, and would by no means have any with me that had been in the like voyage or adventures, for some private reasons unnecessary here to be related. Keeping thus the power in my own hands, I had all the men to acknowledge immediate dependance upon my self alone, both for direction and disposing of all, as well of the navigation, as all other things whatsoever.

In the mean time, the better to strengthen my former studies in this business, I seek after *Journals*, *Plots*, *Discourses*, or whatever else might help my understanding.

I set skillful workmen to make me *Quadrants*, *Staves*, *Semicircles*, &c. as much, namely, as concern the fabrick of them, not trusting to their mechanic hands to divide them, but had them divided by an ingenious practitioner in the *Mathematics*. I likewise had *Compass-Needles*, made after the reasonablest and truest ways that could be thought on: And by the first of *April*, every thing was ready to be put together into our hopeful ship.

In the mean space I made a journey up to *London*, to know his Majesty's further pleasure, and to make known to him my readiness; who calling for the before mentioned honourable knight, I speedily after received his Majesty's royal letters, with directions for proceeding in my voyage, and my discharge; whereupon I had forth the ship into the road, expecting a fair wind to begin the voyage.

## A VOYAGE



# A V O Y A G E

For the DISCOVERY of a

## North-West Passage

I N T O T H E

## S O U T H S E A.

**T**HE 2d of May 1631, I took my leave of the worshipful merchant-adventurers in this action, in the city of *Bristol*; and being accompanied with a reverend divine, one Mr. *Thomas Palmer*, and divers of the merchants, with others of my kindred and native countreymen, I repaired on board. Here Mr. *Palmer* made a sermon, exhorting us to continue brotherly love amongst us, and to be bold to profess the true christian religion, wherever we should happen in this our peregrination. After they had received such entertainment as my estate could afford them, they departed for *Bristol*. This afternoon I made a review of all things, as well of clothes, and other necessaries, as of victuals; and where there was found any want, we were presently furnished.

The 3d of May (after prayer for a prosperous success to our endeavours) about three a clock in the afternoon, we came to sail, and stood down the channel of *Severne*, with little wind, but slowly got forward to the westward of *Lundy*; and then the wind opposed itself so strongly against us, that we were driven to bear up and come to an anchor in *Lundy* road the 5th in the evening, where we remained until the 8th in the morning. Now hoping the wind would favour us, we came to sail, but we were forced to put into *Milford*, where we came to an anchor about midnight. Here we remained till the 17th in the morning; when with the first favouring wind, we proceeded and doubled about cape *Cleere* of *Ireland*.

The 22d we were in the latitude 51.26. and the *Blafkes* did bear of us north east, about twelve leagues off; which *Blafkes* is in latitude 52.4. Here I ordered the course that should be kept, which was generally west north west, as the wind would give leave, which in this course and distance is very variable and unconstant.

The 4th of June we made the land of *Greenland*, standing in with it to have knowledge of the trending of it; it proved very thick foul weather.

The 5th, by two a clock in the morning, we found ourselves encompassed about with ice; and endeavouring to clear ourselves of it, (by reason we could not see far about us) we were the more engaged, and struck many fearful blows against it: at length we made fast to a great piece, (it blowing a very storm) and with poles wrought day and night to keep off the ice; in which labour we broke all our poles.

The 6th, about two a clock in the morning, we were beset with many extraordinary great pieces of ice that came upon us, as it were with wilful violence; and doubtless had crushed us to pieces, if we had not let fall some sail, which the ship presently felt. In escaping that danger we ran against another great piece, that we doubted whether our ship had not been staved to pieces; but pumping, we found she made no water. The former pieces of ice had crushed our shallop all to pieces; wherefore I caused our long boat speedily to be had up from betwixt the decks, and put over-board; by help whereof we again recovered our broken shallop, and had her up

up on  
her.  
beaten  
ing a  
were in  
as our  
corners  
All the  
outside  
so beat  
ship co  
was Goo  
be all h  
I made  
fail they  
thorough  
I think  
clear, v  
stanch y  
prayer,  
delivery  
The  
to doub  
pestered  
The  
we mad  
us due  
*Blafkes*  
*Farewel*  
north w  
leagues  
courses,  
with m  
we found  
the com  
leagues  
3.00. to  
310 leag  
*Blafkes*, the  
westward  
to the ca  
tion is al  
been ob  
current  
have wri  
calm we  
not perce  
riable,  
depth.  
hitherto  
ther for  
that wet  
The  
foul wea  
though v  
some pic  
Our long  
at stern,  
shallop c  
us to for  
This we  
into the  
and that

up on the decks, intending to new build her. All this day we did beat, and were beaten fearfully amongst the ice, it blowing a very storm. In the evening, we were inclosed amongst great pieces, as high as our poop; and some of the sharp blue corners of them did reach quite under us. All these great pieces (by reason it was the outside of the ice) did heave and set, and so beat us, that it was wonderful how the ship could endure one blow of it; but it was God's only preservation of us, to whom be all honour and glory. In this extremity, I made the men to let fall, and make what sail they could, and the ship forced herself thorough it, tho' so tossed and beaten, as I think never ship was. When we were clear, we fayed the pumps, and found her stanch; upon which we went instantly to prayer, and to praise God for his merciful delivery of us.

The 7th and 8th days, we endeavoured to double about cape *Farewel*, being still pestered with much ice.

The 9th. we were in latitude 59.00. and we made account the cape *Farewel* bare of us due east, and some ten leagues off. The *Blafkes* in *Ireland*, is in lat. 52. 4. and cape *Farewel* in lat. 59. 00. The course is west north west, and the distance about 410 leagues. I know very well these latitudes, courses, and distance, do not exactly agree with mathematical conclusions; but thus we found it by practice. The variation of the compass in lat. 52. 30. and thirty leagues to the westward of *Ireland*, is about 3.00. to the eastward; in lat. 57.00. about 310 leagues west north-west from the *Blafkes*, the compass doth vary 9.00. to the westward: In lat. 59. 15. some forty leagues to the eastward of cape *Farewel*, the variation is about 14. 45. In this course I have been observant, whether there were any current that did set to the N. E. as some have written there did, and that as well in calm weather, as otherwise; but I could not perceive any. The winds here are variable, and the sea of an unsearchable depth. We have not seen from *Ireland* hitherto any whales or other fish; the weather for the most part was foggy and misty, that wets as bad as rain.

The 10th, all the morning, was very foul weather, and a high-grown sea, although we had ice not far off about us, and some pieces as high as our top-mast-head. Our long boat, which we were fain to tow at stern, (by reason we were building our shallop on our decks) broke away, and put us to some trouble to recover her again. This we did, and made means to have her into the ship, though very much bruised; and that I had two men fore hurt, and like

to be lost in the heaving of her in. By eight of the clock this evening, we were shot up as high as cape *Defolation*; for finding here the land to trend away north and by east, we certainly knew it to be the cape. It stands in lat. 60. 00. and the land from cape *Farewel* to it, trends N. W. the distance about forty leagues. The distance from cape *Defolation*, to the south end of the island of *Resolution*, is about 140 leagues; the course west, half a point north. The lat. of the south end of the island, being 61. 20. some twelve leagues to the westward of cape *Defolation*, the variation is 16. 00. In this course we were much tormented, pestered and beaten with the ice, many pieces being higher than our top-mast-head. In our way we saw many grampusses amongst the ice, and it seemeth the sea is full of them: The weather for the most part a stinking fog, and the sea very black; which I conceive to be occasioned by reason of the fog.

The 17th at night we heard the rut of the shore, as we thought; but it proved to be the rut against a bank of ice that lay on the shore. It made a hollow and hideous noise, like an overfall of water, which made us to reason amongst ourselves concerning it; for we were not able to see about us, it being dark night and foggy. We stood off from it till break of day, then in again; and about four a clock in the morning we saw the land above the fog; which we knew to be the island of *Resolution*. This last night was so cold, that all our rigging and sails were frozen. We endeavoured to compass about the southern point of the island; for that we were so much pestered with the ice, and blinded with a very thick fog. Here runs a quick tide into the straight, but the ebb is as strong as the flood: The fog was of such a piercing nature, that it spoiled all our compasses, and made them flag, and so heavy withal, that they would not traverse. Wherefore I would advise any that shall sail this way hereafter, to provide compasses of *Muscovy* glass, or some other matter that will endure the moisture of the weather. As the fog cleared up, we could see the entrance of the straight to be all full of ice close thronged together. Endeavouring to go forward, we were fast inclosed amongst it; and so drove to and again with it, finding no ground at 230 fathom, four leagues from the shore.

The 20th in the morning, we had got about the southern point of the island; and the wind came up at west, and drove both us and the ice upon the shore. When we were driven within two leagues of the shore, we came amongst the most strange

whirlings of the sea that possibly can be conceived: there were divers great pieces of ice aground in 40 fathom water, and the ebb coming out of the broken grounds of the island, amongst these isles of ice, made such a distraction, that we were carried round, sometimes close by the rocks, sometimes close by those high pieces, that we were afraid they would fall upon us. We were so beaten likewise with the encountering of the ice, that we were in a most desperate estate. We made fast two great pieces of ice to our sides with our kedger and grapnels that drew nine or ten fathom, that so they might be a-ground before us, if so be we were driven on the shore. But that design failed us; and now from the top seeing in amongst the rocks, I sent the boat (for now we had finished her) to see if she could find some place of security; but she was no sooner parted, but she was inclosed, and driven to hale up on the ice, or else she had been crushed to pieces. They ran her over the ice from piece to piece; and in the mean space, with the whirling and encountering of the ice, the two pieces brake away from our sides, and carried away our kedger and grapnels: then we made signs to the boat, to make all the haste she could to us, which she perceiving did; the men being with much difficulty inforced to hale her over many pieces of ice. In the mean space we made some sail, and got to that piece of ice that had our grapnel on it, which we again recovered. By this time was our boat come, and we put a fresh crew into her, and sent her to fetch our kedger, which she endeavoured with much danger of boat and men. By this time the ship was driven so near the shore, that we could see the rocks under us and about us; and we should be carried with the whirlings of the waters, close by the points of rocks, and then round about back again; and all this notwithstanding the sail we had abroad; that we expected continually when she would be beaten to pieces. In this extremity I made them to open more sail, and to force her in amongst the rocks and broken grounds, and where there was many great pieces of ice a-ground. We went over rocks, that had but twelve or thirteen foot water on them; and so let fall an anchor. This anchor had never been able to wind up the ship, but that (by good fortune) the ship ran against a great piece of ice that was a-ground. This rush brake the main knee of her beak-head, and a corner of it tore away four of our main shrouds, and an anchor that we had at the bow, fastened into it, and so stopp'd her way, that she did wind up to her anchor. We saw the sharp rocks under us, and about

us; and had but fifteen foot water; being also in the sides way; where all the ice would drive upon us: Our boat we could not see, which made us doubt she had been crushed to pieces. In her was the third part of our company; but by and by we saw her come about a point amongst the rocks. She had recovered our kedger, which made us something joyful; with all speed we laid out hawfers to the rocks, and every one did work to the best of his strength, to warp her out of this dangerous place to the rock's side, where we had three fathom water, and were under the shelter of a great piece of ice that was a-ground, which should keep off the ice, that otherwise would have driven upon us. Here we lay very well all the ebb; but when the flood came, we were assaulted with pieces of ice, that every half hour put us into despicable distress. We did work continually and extremely, to keep off the ice. At full sea our great piece of ice (which was our buckler) was afloat; and do what we could got away from us, and left us in a most eminent danger, by reason of the ice that drove in upon us. But the ebb being once made, this great piece of ice came again a-ground very favourable to us, and sheltered us all the rest of the ebb. All night we wrought hard, to shift our cables and hawfers; and to make them fast aloft on the rocks, that the ice might the better pass under them. All day and all night it snowed hard, and blew a very storm at west, which drove in all the ice out of the sea upon us. In working against the violence of the ice, the flooke of our kedger was broken, two arms of our grapnels, and two hawfers, our shallop being again very much bruised; whereupon to work we go on all hands to repair it.

This tide the harbour was choaked full of ice, so that it did seem firm and unmoveable; but when the ebb was made, it did move. Some great pieces came a-ground, which did alter the course of the other ice, and put us on the rocks. Here, notwithstanding all our uttermost endeavours, she settled upon a sharp rock, about a yard above the main mast; and as the water ebbed away, she hung after the head, and heel'd to the offing. We made cables and hawfers aloft to her masts, and so to the rocks, straining them tough with our tackles; but she as the water ebbed away, sunk still; that at length she was so turned over, that we could not stand in her. Having now done all to the best of our understandings, (but to little purpose) we went all upon a piece of ice, and fell to prayer, beseeching God to be merciful unto us. It wanted yet an hour to low

water, and the tide did want a foot and a half to ebb, to what it had ebbed the last tide. We were careful observers of the low waters, and had marks by stones and other things which we had set up, so that we could not be deceived. The ship was so turn'd over, that the portlefs of the forecattle was in the water; and we did look every minute when she would overset. Indeed at one time the cables gave way, and she sunk down half a foot at that slip; but unexpectedly it began to flow, and sensibly we perceived the water to rise apace, and the ship withal. Then was our sorrow turned to joy, and we all fell on our knees, praising God for his mercy, in so miraculous a deliverance.

As soon as she was freed from this rock, we wrought hard to get her further off. All the flood we were pretty quiet from the ice, but when the ebb was made, the ice came all driving again upon us, which put us to a great extremity. We got as many pieces betwixt us and the rocks as we could, to fence us from the rocks. There came a great piece upon our quarter, which was above 300 of my paces about, but it came a-ground. Thus did divers great pieces besides, which was the occasion that this tide the harbour was quite choakt up; so that a man might go any way over it from side to side. When it was three quarters ebb, these great pieces that came a-ground, began to break with a most terrible thundering noise; which put us in a great fear, that those about us would break us all to pieces. But God preserved us.

The 22d in the morning, the water veer'd to a lower ebb than the last tide had done by two foot, whereby we saw God's mercies apparent in our late extremity. That flood we had some respite from our labours; but after full sea our hopes ebb too. The great piece that was by us, so stop't the channel, that the ice came all driving upon us; so that now undoubtedly we thought we should have lost our ship. To work thereupon we go with axes, bars of iron, and any thing proper for such a purpose; to break the corners of the ice, and to make way for it to drive away from us. It pleas'd God to give good success to our labours; and we made way for some, and send'd off the rest; and got so much of the softer sort of the ice betwixt us and the rocks, that we were in pretty security. But at low water, those pieces that were a-ground, breaking, kept a most thundering noise about us. This day I went ashore, and built a great beacon with stones upon the highest place of the island, and put a cross upon it, and named this har-

bour, *The harbour of God's providence*. In the evening, the harbour was fuller of the ice than ever it had been since we came hither; and the greater pieces grounded and stop't the rest, that none went out the ebb, but the ship lay as if she had lain in a bed of ice.

The 23d in the morning, with the flood, the ice drove up amongst the broken grounds; and with the ebb, drove all out (it being then very calm) except one extraordinary great piece; which coming a-ground not far from us, settled itself in such a manner, that we much fear'd him. But there came no more great ice after him; otherwise we must have expected as great danger as at any time heretofore. I took the boat, and went ashore upon the eastern side, to see if I could find any place free from danger than this unfortunate place, where amongst the rocks I desired a likely place. From the top of the hill where I was, I could see the ship. It was now almost low water; at which instant the forementioned piece of ice brake with a terrible noise into four pieces, which made me doubtful if it had not spoiled the ship, it being full half mast high. I made what haste I could to the boat, and so to the ship, to be satisfied; where I found all well, God be thanked, for that the ice had broken from the ship-ward. I instantly sent away the boat, to sound the way to a cove that I had found; which was a very dangerous passage for the boat. At her return we unmoor'd the ship, and with what speed possible warp't away from amongst this terrible ice. We were not a mile from them, but they brake all to pieces; and would surely have made us bear them company, but that God was more merciful unto us. We got about the rocks, and so into this little cove which I had so newly discovered. Here we made fast to the rocks, and thought ourselves in indifferent safety; which being done, I went ashore again, to wander up and down, to see what I could discover. I found it all broken rocky grounds, and not so much as a tree, herb, or grass upon it: Some ponds of water there were in it, which were not yet thaw'd, and therefore not ready for the fowl: We found not in the snow any footing of deer, or bears, but foxes we saw one or two.

We found where the salvages had been, but it was long since. They had made five hearths, and we found a few firebrands about them; and some heads and bones of foxes, with some whale-bones: I could not conceive to what purpose they should come thither; for we could find none or very little wood on the shore side, and no fish

at all; though we did daily endeavour to take some. But it may be the season was not yet come. I named this cove by the master's name of my ship, *Price's Cove*. The latitude of it is 61. 24. the variation. The firebrands and chips which I spake of, had been cut with some hatchet or instrument of iron. From the top of the hills, we could see the islands that are on the south shore, and commonly called *Sir Thomas Button's isles*: They did bear south and by east, half a point easterly; some 14 or 15 leagues distant upon the change day, it flows here seven a clock and a half, and the tide highest at most three fathoms. The flood comes from the eastward, and thither it returns. I have been observant from the top of the hills, whence I might defy the great pieces of ice two or three leagues from the shore, drive to and again with the flood and ebb indifferently. Hence I collected, that assuredly there is no current sets in here, but that it is a meer tide. Near the shore, the eddies whirl into twenty manners, when the ebb is made; which is, because it comes out of the broken ground amongst the ice that is aground near the shore: Besides which reason, there be divers rocks lying under water, on which you shall have now 30, then 12, and anon but 8, and then 20 fathom; and these uncertainties occasion such distractions. I would therefore advise none to come too near those dangerous shores, for fear he lose his ship, and so by consequence ail: The last night we took better rest than we had done in ten nights before.

And this morning, being the 24<sup>th</sup>, there sprung up a fare gale of wind at east; and after prayer we unfastened our ship, and came to sail, steering betwixt great pieces of ice, that were aground in 40 fathom, and twice as high as our topmast head.

We went forth of this cove, upon the flood, and had none of those whirlings of the waters, as we had at our going into it. We endeavoured to gain the north shore, and kept ourselves within a league of the shore of the island of *Resolution*, where we had some clear water to sail thorough. In the offing, it was all thick throng'd together, as might be possible. By twelve a clock we were fast inclosed, and notwithstanding it blew very hard at east, yet we could make no way through it; but the hard corners of the ice did grate us with that violence, as I verily thought it would have grated the planks from the ships sides. Thus we continued in torment till the 26<sup>th</sup> day, driving to and again in the ice, not being able to see an acre of sea from topmast head.

The 26<sup>th</sup> was calm sun-shine weather,

and we took the latitude and variation. The latitude is , the variation we founded, and had ground at 140 fathom, small white sand. I caused the men to lay out some fishing lines, but to no purpose; for I could not perceive that the bait had been so much as touched. The nights are very cold, so that our rigging freezes, and the fresh ponds of water stand upon the ice above half an inch thick.

The 27<sup>th</sup>, there sprung up a little gale at south-east, and the ice did something open. Hereupon we let fall our foreail, and forced the ship thorough the throng of ice. In the evening, the wind came contrary, at W. N. W. and blew hard, which caused us to fasten to a great piece, to which we remained moor'd till the 29<sup>th</sup>.

The 29<sup>th</sup> I resolved, that here is no current, and that by many experiments which I have made: namely, by taking marks on the land, and noting our drift to and again with the ebb and flood for many days together, as well in calm weather as otherwise. By all these experiments, I found exactly, that the tide was no stronger there than that betwixt *England* and *France*.

The 29<sup>th</sup> in the morning, there sprung up a fine gale at east, and the ice did open something, so that we did force the ship thorough it with her foreail. By twelve a clock, we were gotten into some open water, with a fine gale of wind at east, and so clear weather, that we could see the island of *Resolution*. The north-end did bear of us E. N. E. some twelve leagues off.

From the 29<sup>th</sup>, till the 5<sup>th</sup> of *July*, we sailed continually thorough the ice, with variable winds and fogs, and sometimes calm. At noon we had a good observation, and were in latitude 63. 15. and then we saw *Salisbury* island, bearing W. by N. some seven leagues off, with much ice betwixt it and us; to weather which we were driven to stand to the northward. Soon after we saw *Prince Charles's* cape and *Mill* island; and to the N. N. W. (and indeed, round about us) the sea most infinitely pestered with ice. This did grieve me very much; for whereas I had determined to prosecute the discovery to the north-westward, I saw it was not possible this year. We were moreover driven back again with contrary winds, still closed and pestered with ice, and with all the perils and dangers incident to such adventures, so that we thought a thousand times that the ship had been beaten to pieces.

By the 15<sup>th</sup> of *July* we were got betwixt *Digge's* island and *Nottingham's* island, not being able to get more northward. There for an hour or two we had some open water.

But be  
not amiss  
freight, y  
solution, a  
If you go  
is about 1  
W. and E  
is about 1  
southward  
middest i  
broad, an  
wider; fo  
cape *Char*  
Betwixt w  
and *Notin*  
ther, you  
north shor  
middle of  
land: A c  
rent: The  
the clear  
shore you  
which can  
and in m  
it had fin  
on both si  
so much f  
you to the  
The 16<sup>th</sup>  
impossibil  
wellward,  
order to t  
way, W.  
*feld's* islan  
a clock in  
had so m  
mongst th  
ful blows  
done. T  
to half al  
I ordered  
Two of ou  
ness, but  
evening w  
the boat  
brought m  
ashore, it  
and as we  
ice, the W  
W. S. W  
far as the  
ed above  
savages h  
which the  
tracks of  
not find  
the weath  
spend som  
Next m  
came from  
ed. The  
ice, (tho  
we flood  
VOL.



and variation.  
variation we  
140 fathom,  
the men to lay  
no porpoise;  
the bait had  
The nights are  
freezes, and  
upon the ice

a little gale  
something e-  
our forefall,  
the throng of  
and came con-  
hard, which  
piece, to which  
19th.

there is no cur-  
rents which  
ing marks on  
to and again  
many days to-  
ther as other-  
rents, I found  
stronger there  
d France.

there sprang  
ice did open  
the ship thro-  
By twelve a  
me open wa-  
at east, and  
see the island  
did bear of  
ues off.

of July, we  
the ice, with  
and sometimes  
t observation,  
and then we  
W. by N.  
much ice be-  
which we were  
ward. Soon  
cape and Mill  
(and indeed,  
infinitely pe-  
rievie me very  
determined to  
e north-west-  
ble this year.  
ck again with  
and pestered  
erils and dan-  
tures, so that  
that the ship

we got betwixt  
s island, not  
ward. There  
me open wa-

But

But before I proceed farther, it were not amiss in some manner to describe the freight, which begins at the island of *Resolution*, and ends here at *Digger's* island. If you go down into the bay, the freight is about 120 leagues long; and trends W. N. W. and E. S. E. generally. In the entrance it is about 15 leagues broad; and then on the southward side is a great bay. About the midst it is likewise about 15 leagues broad, and then the land opens something wider; so that betwixt *Digger's* island and cape *Charles*, it is about 20 leagues broad: Betwixt which two stands *Salisbury* island and *Nottingham* island. If it be clear weather, you may see both the south and the north shores; ordinarily, the depth in the middle of the freight is 120 fathoms, white sand: A certain tide runs in it, and no current: The north shore is the straightest, and the clearest from ice too. Along the north shore you have many low small islands, which cannot be seen far off from the land; and in many places, the land makes as if it had small sounds in it. The main land on both sides is indifferent high land. And so much for discourse may suffice, referring you to the plot for the particulars.

The 16th, being now resolved of the impossibility to do any thing to the north westward, for the reasons aforesaid, I gave order to the master of my ship to steer away, W. S. W. to have a sight of *Mansfield's* island, which the next day by three a clock in the afternoon we had; having had so much dangerous foul weather amongst the ice, that we struck more fearful blows against it than we had ever yet done. This was the first day that we went to half allowance of bread flesh days, and I ordered things as sparingly as I could. Two of our men complained likewise of sickness, but soon afterward recovered. In the evening we came to an anchor, and I sent the boat ashore to try the tides. They brought me word, that whilst the boat was ashore, it flowed about some three foot; and as we found by the ship, and by the ice, the water at that time came from the W. S. W. and that at the highest tides (so far as they could perceive) it had not highed above two fathom: They found that the savages had been upon it, by certain fires which they found, and heaps of stones, tracks of other beasts, but foxes they could not find. The wind was so contrary, and the weather so foggy, that we were fain to spend some powder to recover our boat again.

Next morning, being the 17th, the wind came something favourable, and we weighed. The shore being something clear of ice, (though very thick all to the offing) we stood along it S. and S. by W. some

VOL. II.

ten leagues. In the afternoon, the wind came contrary, and we came again to an anchor, within a mile of the shore; for to sea-board was all thick ice and unpassable. I went ashore myself, to be resolved of the tide, and found whilst I was ashore, that it did flow two foot; and at that time the flood came from the S. W. by W. I doubted it was an half tide, which afterwards I found to be true. I found where the savages had been upon the island, but could see little or no drift wood on the shore, no beasts on the island, nor fishes in the sea. It flows on the change day about a eleven a clock. We saw some fowl on it, of which we killed one, and returned on board. This island is very low land, little higher than a dry sand-bank. It hath ponds upon it of fresh water, but no grafs; and is utterly barren of all goodnes.

The 18th in the morning, the wind came something favourable, and we weighed and came to sail; for the ice was all come about us. We endeavoured to proceed to the westward, intending to fall with the western land about the latitude 63. 00. By twelve a clock (having been much pestered) we were come to a firm range of ice; but it pleased God that the wind larged, and we stowed away S. S. W. at noon in latitude 62. 00. By four in the evening (having escaped dangerous blows) we were come as we thought into an open sea, and joyfully steered away W. and W. by N. although that joy was soon quailed. By ten at night we heard the rut of the ice, and it grew a thick fog, and very dark with it: nevertheless we proceeded, and the nearer we came to it, the more hideous noise it made.

The 19th, by three in the morning, we were come to it, and as it did clear a little, we could see the ice; which were as thick rands of ice, as any we had yet seen. These being unpassable, and moreover the wind at N. W. we stowed along it, hoping to weather it to the southward; but at last, we became so blinded with fog, and so incompassed with ice, that we could go no farther.

The 20th in the morning (notwithstanding the fog) we endeavoured to get to the westward, our ship beating and knocking all this while most fearfully.

It this wilfulness we continued till the 21st. when being fast amongst the ice, I observed we were in latitude 60. 33. and then looking what damage our ship might have received, we could perceive that below the plate of iron, which was before her cut-water, she was all bruised and broken; the two knees she had before to strengthen her, spoiled and torn; and many other defects, which we could not by any means

5 T

came



come to mend. Notwithstanding all this, and the extraordinary thick fog, (that we could not see a pistol shot about us) we proceeded with the hazard of all.

Till the 27th, which was the first time we had clear weather to look about us: The wind withal came up at south, and the ice did open something; so that we made some way thorough it to the westward. In the evening we were fast again, and could go no farther; the wind veering from the south to the east, and blowing a fresh gale. This occasioned our griefs the more, that with a good wind we could not go forward; putting therefore a hawser upon a piece of great ice, to keep the ship close to it, we patiently expected for better fortune. Since we came from *Mansfield's* island, our depth was commonly 110 and 100 fathom oozy ground. Now the water begins to shoal; for this present 27th, driving fast to and again in the ice, we have but 80 fathom ground as before.

The 28th and 29th, we were so fast inclosed in the ice, that notwithstanding we put abroad all the sail that was at our yards, and that it blew a very hard gale of wind, the ship stirred no more than if she had been in a dry dock. Hereupon we went all boldly out upon the ice, to sport and recreate ourselves, letting her stand still, under all her sails. It was flat, extraordinary large ice, the worst to deal withal that we had yet found. I measured some pieces, which I found to be 1000 of my paces long. This was the first day that our men began to murmur, thinking it impossible to get either forwards or backwards. Some were of the opinion, that it was all such ice betwixt us and the shore. Others, that the bay was all covered over; and that it was a doubt whether we could get any way, or to any land to winter in. The nights were long, and every night it did freeze, that we could not sail amongst the ice by night, nor in thick foggy weather. I comforted and encouraged them the best I could; and to put away these cogitations, we drank a health to his majesty on the ice; not one man in the ship, and the still under all her sails. I most ingeniously confess, that all their murmuring was not without reason: Wherefore doubting that we should be frozen up in the sea, I ordered that fire should be made but once a day; and that with a certain number of shides, that the steward should deliver to the cook by tail, the better to prolong our fuel, whatsoever should happen.

The 30th we made some way thro' the ice; we heaving the ship with our shouldered, and with mawls and croes of iron breaking the corners of the ice, to make

way. As we got forwards, the water shoal'd apace; so that I believe it to be some island. At noon we observed thro' the fog, with the quadrant, upon a piece of ice, and were in latitude 58. 54. our depth 30 fathom. We put out hooks, to try to catch some fish, but to no purpose, for there is not any in this bay.

The 31st we laboured as afore said, and got something forward. At noon we were in lat. 58. 40. our depth 23 fathom. It was very thick hazy weather, or else I think we should have seen the land.

The first of *August* the wind came up at west, which drove us to the eastward, where our depth increased to 35 fathom. At noon (by observation with the quadrant, on the ice) we were in latitude 58. 45. At six a'clock this evening we might perceive the ice to heave and set a little; which was occasioned by a swelling sea that came out of the south-west. This did comfort us very much, hoping shortly we should get out of the ice.

The 2d it did blow hard at S. W. and yet we could not feel the forementioned swelling sea; which did again quench the hopes we had formerly conceived.

The 3d we did see a little open water to the Northwestward, and did feel a swelling sea from the west; which doth assure us, that there is an open sea to the westward.

The 5th we saw the sea clear; but could by no means work ourselves to it with our sails; wherefore about six in the evening we let fall an anchor in 50 fathom water, and stood all with poles and oars to fend off the ice, and let it pass to leeward. We continued this labour all night.

The 6th in the morning the wind came up at N. W. and we weighed with much joy, as hoping now to get into an open sea to the southward. This by noon we had done, and were in lat. 58. 28. very free of ice. The wind did large upon us, so that we stood away N. W. to get up as high to the northward as we could, and so to come coasting to the southward. We went to prayer, and to give God thanks for our delivery out of the ice.

The 9th (being in lat. 59. 40.) we came again to the ice, which lay very thick to the north. Since we came out of the ice, our depth increased to 110 fathom, and now decreaseth again: So that I think we approached towards the shore.

The tenth proved very thick foggy weather; the wind contrary, and the water shoaling apace, we came to an anchor in 22 fathom.

The 11th in the morning we weighed, and made in for the shore, and about noon saw the land, our depth being 16 fathom,

water shoal'd  
be some island,  
the fog, with  
ice, and were  
h 30 fathom.  
to catch some  
there is not a-

afore said, and  
noon we were  
30 fathom. It  
or else I think

and came up at  
astward, where  
om. At noon  
drant, on the  
15. At six a-  
t perceive the  
which was oc-  
at came out of  
omfort us very  
ould get out of

at S. W. and  
forementioned  
in quench the  
ived.

le open water  
feel a swelling  
oth assure us,  
ne westward.  
car; but could  
to it with our  
n the evening  
fathom water,  
oars to fend  
leeward. We  
at.

the wind came  
ed with much  
to an open sea  
noon we had  
very free of  
on us, so that  
up as high to  
nd so to come  
We went to  
ks for our de-

40.) we came  
ry thick to the  
of the ice, our  
om, and now  
think we ap-

ck foggy wea-  
and the water  
n anchor in 22

g we weighed,  
nd about noon  
ng 16 fathom,  
in

in lat. 59. 40. The land to the N. of us did trend N. by E. and so made a point to the southward, and trended away W. by S. which we followed, making it for that place which was formerly called *Hubbert's* hope. And so it proved indeed, but it is now hopeless.

Two or three weeks now concerning the bay that we have passed over. It is from *Diggs* island to the western land (in latitude afore said) about 160 leagues, the course W. S. W. the variation.

The tides do set in the middle of the bay, east and west, as we have often try'd by our lead a ground. But nearer the shores, as they are forced by the land, I am of the opinion, that in the ocean, or in large bays, the tides do naturally set E. and W. and that this doth give little hope of a passage. The greatest depth we had in the bay was 110 fathom, and so shoaling as you approach to land, we coasted round about this forementioned little bay, which is some 18 leagues deep in 8 and 6 fathoms, and in the bottom of it we were in 2 fathom and a half water, and saw the firm land almost round about us. Then we proceeded to the southward six and seven fathom water, within sight of the breach of the shore, keeping the lead continually going, and in the night we would come to an anchor. This night, here being little wind, we came to an anchor with our kedger; but in weighing of him, we lost him, having no more aboard us.

The twelfth we were in lat. 58. 46. some two leagues from the shore, The variation is about 17 deg.

The 13th in the afternoon (it being something hazy) we saw some breaches a-head us; our depth was 9 and 10 fathom; and luffing to clear ourselves of them, we suddenly struck upon the rocks; the ship then being under our two topsails, fore sail, and sprit-sail, with a fresh gale of wind. In this fearful accident, we struck all our sails a-main; and it did please God to fend two or three good swelling seas, which did heave us over the rocks into three fathom, and presently into three fathom and a half, where we chopt to an anchor, and assayed the pumps; but we found she made no water, although she had three such terrible blows, that we thought her malt would have shiver'd to pieces, and that she had been assuredly bulged. We hoisted the boat over-board, and doubly mann'd her, to go seek and found a way out of this perilous place. She was no sooner gone, but there rose a fog; so that we were fain to spend some powder, that she might hear whereabouts we were. The wind dull'd something, otherwise it had been doubtful whether she

could ever have recovered to us again. After she had been absent about two hours, she brought us word, that it was all rocks and breaches round about us, and that withal, she had found a way, where there was not less than two fathom and a half, and that afterwards the water did deepen. We did presently weigh, and follow the boat, and past over two ledges of rocks, on which there was scarce fourteen foot water: Then it did deepen to three, four, and so to fourteen fathom; then it shoal'd again to nine. It being now night, we came to an anchor; where we rid in different well all the night. In the morning the wind came contrary, so that we could not go that way we intended to clear our selves, and therefore we went to work, to fit our holds, to splice our cables, and make ready two shot, and so placed them in the hold, that they might upon all occasions run clear; the ends of them being fasten'd to the main-mast. We likewise look'd to our anchors, and fitted our spare ones. We got out our long boat from betwixt the decks; which was very much broken and bruised. The carpenter went to work to fit her, (for I intended to tow the shallop at stern) and so to have the boats ready at an instant, either to lay out anchors, or be serviceable to what God should be pleased to try our faith and patience withal; for in him was our only trust, and our hope upon his favour in our honest endeavours. At noon, in lat. 57. 45. we could see the land from the N. W. to S. E. by E. with rocks and breaches; and the rocks that we came over, dry above water; whereby I knew it flows here two fathoms at least. At noon I sent the boat off to sound to the eastward, because the water shoal'd when we came to an anchor. She brought us word, the shoalest water she had been in was seven fathom. We intending thereupon to weigh, the wind came easterly, so that we could not budge; but lay here the 14th all night with a stiff gale of wind.

The 15th in the evening our cable galded off; by reason of which perilous and sudden accident, in which we had not time to put a buoy to it, we lost our anchor, and were driven into four fathom water, before we could set our sails. This when we had done, we stowed S. S. E. the wind being at east, but the water shoal'd to three fathom. Then we stowed N. N. E. and it did deepen by degrees to ten fathom; and because it grew dark, we came to an anchor, and rid a good stress all night.

The 16th in the morning the wind came up at N. a fresh gale; and we weighed and came to sail. By nine a clock it grew to

be a very storm; and we turned to and again in ten fathom water. In the evening the wind dull'd; and we stood S. W. to have a sight of port *Nelson*; which course we stood all night, by the stars, being in lat. 57. 25. the variation about 17 degrees.

The 17th in the morning we stood south; and our depth decreased by degrees to eight fathoms. At noon we had good observation, being in lat. 57. 15. and we make account that we are some six or seven leagues off the southern side of port *Nelson*. Here the colour of the water changed, and was of a puddleish and sandy red colour. We stood into six fathoms, and could not see the land from top-mast-head? so night coming on, and it beginning to blow hard at east by south, we stood off again into ten and twelve fathoms, where the water was again of the colour of the sea.

The 18th, as the wind and weather favoured us, and the storm was broken up, we stood in again south, and came again into thick puddleish water, into eight, seven, and six fathom, and then off again, for that it grew thick foggy weather, keeping our lead continually going, night and day.

The 19th, being fine clear sun-shine weather, we stood in again into the thick puddleish water, into eight fathom, where we came to an anchor to try the tides; for that from top-mast-head we could not now see the land. We were at noon (by good observation) in lat. 57. 20. and the tide did set N. W. by W. and S. E. by E. It did run two knots and a half in two glasses. I resolved that this was nothing but shoals to the land. In the afternoon it began to snuffle and blow, so that we had much ado to get up our anchor. This being done, we stood E. S. E. but the water shoaled apace. Then we stood E. and it deepened a little. In the evening the wind came up at W. and then we stood E. S. E. into ten and eight, and afterwards S. E. as our depth did guide us by our lead and the colour of the water, into seven and six fathoms.

The 20th at six in the morning we saw the land, it being a very low flat land. We stood into five fathoms, to make it the better, and so stood along it. At noon we were in lat. 57. 00. We named it *the new principality of South Wales*, and drank a health in the best liquor we had to prince *Charles* his highness, whom God preserve. We stood along it, and came to a point where it trends to the southward; near to which point there are two small islands. In the evening it was calm, and we came to an anchor. The tide set as aforesaid. There we rid all that night, and the next day, by reason the wind was contrary. There went a chopping short

sea; and the ship did labour at it exceedingly leaping in spreetail-yard, fore-castle, and all; for as yet we had not trimm'd her well, to ride. About nine at night it was very dark, and it did blow hard. We did perceive by the lead the ship did drive; wherefore bringing the cable to capstan, to heave in our cable (for we did think we had lost our anchor) the anchor hitch'd again, and upon the chopping of a sea, threw the men from the capstan. A small rope in the dark had gotten foul about the cable, and about the master's leg too; but with the help of God he did clear himself, tho' not without fore bruising. The two mates were hurt; the one in the head, the other in the arm. One of our lustiest men was stricken on the breast with a bar, that he lay sprawling for life; another had his head betwixt the cable, and hardly escaped. The rest were flung where they were fore bruised; but our gunner (an honest and a diligent man) had his leg taken betwixt the cable and the capstan, which wrung off his foot, and tore all the flesh off his leg, crush'd the bone to pieces, and sorely withal bruised all his whole body; in which miserable manner he remained crying till we had recovered ourselves, our memory, and strengths to clear him. Whilst we were putting him and the rest down to the chirurgeon; the ship drove into shoally water, which put us all fear; we being to forely weaken'd by this blow, which had hurt eight of our men. It pleased God, that the anchor held again; and she rid it out all night. By midnight the chirurgeon had taken off the gunner's leg at the gartering place, and dress'd the others that were hurt and bruised; after which we comforted each other as well as we could.

The 22d we weighed, and stood a little off into deeper water, expecting a better wind; which in the afternoon favoured us. We stood in again for the shore, and along it we proceeded. It is very shoal about four leagues off, and full of breaches.

The 23d at noon we were in lat. 56. 28. In the evening, the wind came contrary, and we were fain to turn to and again. All this month the wind hath been very variable, and continued not long upon one point; yet it happened so, that we could get but little forward.

The 26th there sprung up a fine gale at west, but very thick weather; nevertheless we stood into seven and six fathom, the water very thick and puddleish. At noon it cleared; and we could see that we were imbayed in a little bay: the land being almost round about us.

We stood out of it, and so along it, in sight, till the 27th in the morning; when

we came to  
seen since v  
We stood i  
five fathom  
and arm'd,  
were to do,  
fore sun-se  
news of our  
but had no  
us, doubti  
fter befall  
we should  
were not at  
the ship.  
shore, whic  
because the  
false fires w  
al, that it  
now trium  
they came,  
themselves,  
shore, it di  
of land was  
as they cou  
covered agai  
me. They  
store of dr  
good quant  
they saw th  
store of fo  
some) but  
pass'd over  
third, whic  
it did flow  
times, as a  
was low w  
flood came  
half tide, v  
ceived by s  
but three f  
wind began  
we weighed  
midnight,  
we saw the  
hard, and  
very storm  
maintain a  
our main  
some time  
some time  
The 29th  
count we h  
or 18 leag  
cleared) w  
some thre  
fall, and b  
at an anch  
majesty's f  
in her.  
I saluted  
the sea, an  
I stood in  
tack about  
Vol. I

we came to higher land than any we had yet seen since we came from *Nottingham* island. We stood into it, and came to an anchor in five fathom. I sent off the boat, well mann'd and arm'd, with order in writing what they were to do, and a charge to return again before sun-set. The evening came, and no news of our boat; we shot and made false fires, but had no answer, which did much perplex us, doubting that there had been some disaster befall her, thro' carelessness, and in her we should lose all. We aboard, at present, were not able to weigh our anchor, nor fail the ship. At last we saw a fire upon the shore, which made us the more doubtful, because they did not answer our shot, nor false fires with the like. We thought withal, that it had been the salvages, who did now triumph in their conquest. At length they came, all safe and well; and excused themselves, in that upon their coming ashore, it did ebb so suddenly, that a bank of sand was so presently dry without them, as they could not come away, till that was covered again; and with that they pacified me. They reported, that there was great store of drift-wood on the shore; and a good quantity growing on the land. That they saw the tracks of deer and bears, good store of fowl (of which they had killed some) but no sign of people: That they pass'd over two little rivers, and came to a third, which they could not pass: That it did flow very near three fathoms sometimes, as appeared by the shore. That it was low water at four a clock; that the flood came from the N. W. and that it flow'd half tide, which both they and we had perceived by the ship. At low water we had but three fathom, where we did ride. The wind began to blow hard at E. whereupon we weighed and stood to the northward till midnight, then in again; and in the morning we saw the land, and then it began to blow hard, and as we stood off, it increased to a very storm; so that at length we could not maintain a pair of courses, but tried under our main course, all day and all night; some time turning her head to the landward, some time to the offing.

The 29th in the morning we made account we had droven back again some 16 or 18 leagues; and in the morning (as it cleared) we saw a ship to leeward of us some three or four leagues; so we made sail, and bore up with her. She was then at an anchor in 13 fathom. It was his majesty's ship, and captain *Fox* commanded in her.

I saluted him according to the manner of the sea, and received the like of him. So I stood in to see the land, and thought to tack about, and keep weather of him, and

to send my boat on board of him; but the wind shifted, so that for that time I could not. In the evening, I came to weather of him, and sent my boat on board of him, who presently weighed, and stood off with me till midnight, and then we stood in again.

In the morning, captain *Fox* and his friends came on board me; where I entertained them in the best manner I could, and with such fresh meat as I had gotten from the shore: I told him, how I had named the land, *The south principality of Wales*. I shewed him how far I had been to the eastward, where I had landed; and in brief, I made known to him all the dangers of this coast, as far as I had been. He told me, how he himself had been in port *Nelson*, and had made but a cursory discovery hitherto; and that he had not been aboard, nor had not many times seen the land. In the evening, after I had given his men some necessaries, with tobacco and other things which they wanted, he departed on board his ship; and the next morning stood away S. S. W. since which time I never saw him. The wind something favouring me, I stood in for the shore, and so proceeded along it in sight.

This month of *August* ended with snow and hail; the weather being as cold as at any time I have felt in *England*.

The first of *September* we coasted along the shore in ten fathoms, and when it cleared, in sight of land. At length the water shoaled to six and five fathom, and as it cleared, we saw it all breaches to leeward, so we hull'd off, N. N. E. but still raised land. By night we had much ado to get safely out of this dangerous bay. At midnight the wind came up at S. and so we took in our sails, and let the ship drive to the northward into deeper water. This day was the first time the surgeon told me, that there were divers of the men tainted with sickness. At noon we were in lat. 55.12.

The second we stood in again for the shore, but as we came into shoal water it began to blow, the weather being wintery and foul, threatening a storm; wherein we were not deceived, for that in standing off we had a violent one.

By midnight it broke up, and the third in the morning we stood in again, and by eleven we saw it. Here we found the land to trend S. S. E. and S. so that we knew we were at a cape land; and named it *cape Henrietta Maria*, by her majesty's name, who had before named our ship. At noon we were in lat. 55.05. and that is the height of the cape.

From port *Nelson* to this cape, the land trends (generally) E. S. E. but makes with points and bays; which in the particulars

doth alter it a point, two or three. The distance is about 130 leagues, the variation at this cape taken by amplitude, is about 16 deg. a most shoal and perilous coast, in which there is not one harbour to be found.

The 3d day in the afternoon, we had a tearing storm at N. which continued till midnight in extreme violence.

The 4th in the morning (the storm being broke up) we stood in again S. W. The weather was very thick, and we found continually; but by noon it cleared, and we saw the land. Here it did trend S. by E. and the tides did set along it, with a quick motion. In the evening there came a great rolling sea out of the N. N. E. and by eight a clock it blew very hard at S. E. and by reason of the encounter of the wind and this great sea, the sea was all in a breach; and to make up a perfect tempest, it did so lighten, snow, rain and blow all the night long, that I was never in the like: We shipped many seas, but one most dangerous, which rack'd us fore and aft, that I verily thought it had sunk the ship, it strook her with such a violence. The ship did labour most terribly in this distraction of wind and waves, and we had much ado to keep all things fast in the hold and betwixt decks.

The 5th in the morning, the wind shifted to S. W. but changed not his condition, but continued in his old anger and fury. In the afternoon it shifted again to the N. W. and there showed his uttermost malice; and in that tearing violence, that nor I, nor any that were then with me, ever saw the sea in such a breach. Our ship was so tormented and did so labour, with taking it in on both sides, and at both ends, that we were in a most miserable distress in this so unknown a place. At eight a clock in the evening the storm brake up, and we had some quietness in the night following, not one having slept one wink in 30 hours before. If this storm had continued easterly, as it was at first, without God's goodness we had all perished.

The 6th, the wind was at S. W. so that we could do no good to the westward. We spent the time therefore in trimming of our ship; we brought all our coals (which for the most part was great coal) aft; as we also did some other things, and all to lighten her afore. Others did pick our bread, whereof there was much wet; for do what we could, we ship'd abundance of water betwixt decks, which ran into the hold, and into our bread-room; for the sea indeed, so continually over-rack'd us, that we were like *Jonas* in the whales belly. We over-looked our tacks and shoots, with other riggings of strefs, be-

cause that hence forward we were to look for no other but winter weather. This evening our boatwain (a painful man, and one that had labour'd extremely these two or three days) was very sick, swooning away three or four times; inasmuch that we thought verily he would presently have died.

The 7th in the morning the wind came up at S. E. and we stood away S. W. under all the sail we could make. In this course we saw an island, and came close aboard it, and had 20 fathom water, which was some comfort to us; for hitherto we could not come within four or five leagues of the shore, at that depth. This island stands in latitude 54. 10. In the afternoon we stood away S. W. and in the evening had the shoaling of the western shore, in ten, eight and seven fathom, but it was so thick, that we could not see the land. It is about 14 leagues betwixt this island and the main.

The 8th was thick, foggy and calm; which so continued till the 9th, about six in the morning; the wind then coming up at S. S. W. (though very foggy) we stood to the eastward, keeping our lead going continually. In the evening the water shoaled to ten and nine fathom, wherefore we stood off and on all night.

The 10th we made it, finding it an island of about eight or nine leagues long. It stands in latitude 53. 5. and about 15 leagues from the western shore. The part of it that we coasted, trends W. N. W. I named it my lord *Weston's Island*. We stood still away to the eastward, it being broken foggy weather. In the afternoon, we descri'd land to the eastward of us, which made like three hills or hummocks: Towards them we sail, keeping our lead still going, and very circumspect. At length we also saw land to the southward of us; whereupon we loof up, and now make for that, by course, as we had set it in the thick dark fog. We came in amongst such low broken grounds, breaches and rocks, that we knew not which way to turn us; but God be thanked it was but little wind, and so we came to an anchor. Soon after it cleared, at which time we could see nothing but sands, rocks and breaches round about us; that way only excepted which we came in. I sent presently the boat to sound amongst the shoals and rocks, that if we should be put to extremity, we might have some knowledge which way to go. This night proved calm and fair weather, and we rid quietly.

The 11th in the morning, I went in the boat ashore my self; and whilst I was a land, I sent the boat about amongst the broken

broken ground  
Island utter  
of that we  
found; w  
or some  
ed our si  
ceive that  
rily) abo  
drift wood  
drove up  
the island  
storms w  
winter.  
many of  
island, to  
tunately  
At noon,  
in latitude  
men retur  
weight'd a  
ing to an  
20 fathom

The 12th  
blow hard  
the shore,  
being soft  
our ancho  
under two  
bushy in h  
that shoal  
ship, ran  
of meer c  
bout, or I  
had seen th  
even then  
been blind  
enviously  
blow stru  
running o  
at first, b  
saw our  
another w

After I  
my self, a  
fel that w  
upon thos  
ror; I o  
get off the  
halled all  
did no go  
der: Wh  
amain; a  
ing down  
through th  
laid out a  
made all  
and set f  
out, and  
our beer:  
coals, wh  
We quile  
boat; all  
fearfully th



broken grounds to sound. I found this island utterly barren of all goodness, yea, of that which I thought easily to have found; which was scurvy-grass, sorrel, or some herb or other, to have refreshed our sick people. I could not perceive that the tide did flow here (ordinarily) above two foot. There was much drift wood on the shore, and some of it drove up very high, on the north-side of the island; whereby I judged that the storms were very great at north in the winter. Thus I returned aboard; and sent many of our sick men to another part of island, to see if they themselves could fortunately find any relief for their griefs. At noon, by good observation, we were in latitude 52. 45. In the evening our men returned comfortless; and then we weigh'd and stood to the westward, coming to an anchor under another island, in 20 fathoms.

The 12th in the morning it began to blow hard at S. E. which was partly off the shore, and the ship began to drive, it being soft oozy ground. We heaved in our anchor thereupon, and came to sail under two courses. Whilst the most were busy in heaving out of top-sails; some that should have had special care of the ship, ran her ashore upon the rocks, out of meer carelessness; in looking out and about, or heaving of the lead after they had seen the land all night long, and might even then have seen it, if they had not been blinded with self-conceit, and been enviously opposite in opinions. The first blow struck me out of a deep sleep; and I running out of my cabin, thought no other at first, but I had been awakened (when I saw our danger) to provide my self for another world.

After I had controul'd a little passion in my self, and had checkt some bad counsel that was given me, to revenge my self upon those that had committed this error; I ordered what should be done to get off these rocks and stones: First, we halled all our sails a back-stays, but that did no good, but make her beat the harder: Whereupon we struck all our sails amain; and furl'd them up close, tearing down our stern to bring the cable through the cabin to the capitan, and so laid out an anchor to heave her astern. I made all the water in hold to be staid, and set some to the pumps to pump it out, and did intend to do the like with our beer: Others I put to throw out all our coals, which was soon and readily done. We quitted out our cables into our long boat; all this while the ship beating so fearfully that we saw some of the sheathing

swim by us. Then stood we, as many as we could, to the capitan; and heaved with such a good will, that the cable brake, and we lost our anchor. Out with all speed therefore, we put another. We could not now perceive whether she did leak or no; and that by reason we were employed in pumping out the water, which we had bulged in hold; though we much doubted, that she had received her death's wound; wherefore we put into the boat the carpenter's tools, a barrel of bread, a barrel of powder, six muskets, with some match, and a tinder-box, fish-hooks and lines, pitch and okum; and to be brief, whatever could be thought on in such an extremity. All this we sent ashore, to prolong a miserable life for a few days. We were five hours thus beating, in which time she struck 100 blows, inasmuch that we thought every stroke had been the last that it was possible she could have endured. The water we could not perceive in all this time to flow any thing at all: At length it pleased God, she beat over all the rocks, though yet we knew not whether she were stanch. Whereupon to pumping we go on all hands, 'till we made the pumps suck; and then we saw how much water she did make in a glass. We found her to be very leaky; but we went to prayer and gave God thanks it was no worse; and so fitted all things again, and got farther off and came to an anchor. In the evening it began to blow very hard at W. S. W. which if it had done whilst we were on the rocks, we had lost our ship without any redemption. With much ado we weigh'd our anchor, and let her drive to the eastward amongst the broken grounds and rocks, the boat going before, founding. At length we came amongst breaches, and the boat made signs to us that there was no going farther. Amongst the rocks therefore we again came to an anchor, where we did ride all night, and where our men, which were tired out with extreme labour, were indifferently well relieved. Here I first noted, that when the wind was at S. it flowed very little or no water at all, so that we could not bring our ship aground to look to her, for we did pump almost continually.

The 13th at noon we weigh'd and stood to the westward; but in that course it was all broken grounds, shoals and sunken rocks, so that we wondered with our selves, how we came in amongst them in a thick fog. Then we shaped our course to the northward, and after some consultation with my associates, I resolv'd to get about this land, and so to go down into the bottom of *Hudson's Bay*, and see if I could



could discover a way into the river of *Canada*; and if I failed of that, then to winter on the main land, where there is more comfort to be expected, than among rocks or islands. We stood along the shore, in sight of many beaches: When it was night we stood under our fore-sail, the lead still going. At last the water shoaled upon us to ten fathom, and it began to blow hard: We tackt about, and it did deepen to 12 and 14 fathom, but by and by it shoaled again to eight fathom. Then we tackt about again, and suddenly it shoaled to six and five fathom, so we struck our sail again, and chopt to an anchor, resolving to ride it out for life and death. We rid all night a great stress, so that our bits did risk, and we thought they would have been torn to pieces.

At break of day the 14th, we were joyful men; and when we could look about, we descried an island some two leagues off, at W. by N. and this was the shoal that lay about it. Here did run a distracted, but yet a very quick tide, of which we taking the opportunity, got up our anchor, and stood N. W. to clear our selves of this shoal. In the afternoon the wind came up at N. E. and we stood along the eastern shore in sight of a multitude of breaches. In the evening it began to blow a storm not fail-worthy, and the sea went very high, and was all in a breach. Our shalop, which we did now tow at stern, being moor'd with two hawfers was sunk, and did spin by her moorings, with her keel up, twenty times in an hour. This made our ship to hull very broad, so that the sea did continually over-rake us, yet we endured it and thought to recover her. All night the storm continued with violence, and with some rain in the mornings, it then being very thick weather. The water shoaled apace, with such an over-grown sea withal, that her sail was not to be endured, and what was as ill, there was no trusting to an anchor. Now therefore began we to prepare ourselves, how to make a good end of a miserable tormented life. About noon as it cleared up, we saw two islands under our lee; whereupon we bare up to them, and seeing an opening betwixt them, we endeavoured to get into it before night, for that there was no hope of us, if we continued out at sea that night; therefore come life, come death, we must run this hazard. We found it to be a good found, where we rid all night safely, and recovered our strengths again, which were much impaired with continual labour. But before we could get into this good place, our shalop broke away, (being moor'd with two hawfers) and we lost her to our great grief. Thus now

had we but the ship-boat, and she was all torn and bruised too. This island was the same that we had formerly coasted the western side of, and had named my lord *Wilton's* island. Here we remained till the 19th, in which time it did nothing but snow and blow extremely, insomuch that we durst not put our boat over-board.

The 19th, the wind shifted N. N. E. and we weigh'd and stood to the southward; but by noon the wind came up at S. and so we came to an anchor under another island, on which I went ashore, and named it *The earl of Bristol's island*. The carpenter wrought hard in repairing our boat; whilst I wandered up and down on this desert island, I could not perceive that ever there had been any salvages on it; and in brief, we could find neither fish, fowl nor herb upon it, so that I returned comfortless on board again. The tides do high about some six foot, now that the wind is northerly: The flood comes from the north, and it doth flow half-tide. The full sea this day was at one a clock. Here seeing the winds continue so northerly, that we could not about to go into *Hudson's* bay, we considered again what was best to do, to look out for a wintering-place. Some advised me to go for port *Nelson*, because we were certain that there was a cove, where we might bring in our ship. I liked not that counsel, for that it is a most perilous place, and that it might be so long ere we could get thither, that we might be debar'd by the ice. Moreover, seeing it was so cold here, as that every night our rigging did freeze, and that sometimes in the morning we did shovel away the snow half a foot thick off our decks, and in that latitude too; I thought it far worse in the other place. I resolved thereupon to stand again to the southward, there to look for some little creek or cove for our ship.

The 21st, the wind came up at N. and we weigh'd, although it was a very thick fog, and stood away S. W. to clear our selves of the shoals that were on the point of this island. This island is in lat. 53. 10. When we were clear, we steer'd away S. At noon the fog turned into rain, but very thick weather, and it did thunder all the afternoon, which made us doubt a storm; for all which we adventured to proceed. In the evening the wind increased, and blew hard; wherefore we took in all our sails, and let her drive to the southward, heaving the lead every glass. Our depth, when we took in our sails, was thirty fathom, and it did increase to 45, which was a great comfort to us in the dark: At midnight, our depth began suddenly to decrease; and as fast as the lead could be

heaved,

heaved,  
tore we  
our ship  
red all  
no need  
them p  
long,  
althoug  
it did b

The  
look ab  
lee som  
breache  
the help  
ed to h  
sea still  
(strength  
God be  
we coul  
nine fut  
double  
this isla  
and five  
it did  
anchor  
very go  
increas  
well all  
covered  
last nigh  
hail, at  
took th  
some cr  
for the  
become  
ing ar  
when v  
but led  
and the  
Never  
it, and  
made  
and the  
for me  
top of  
not fee  
it beg  
wards  
ebbed  
any m  
that w  
breach  
a col  
their  
blow  
little  
wind  
return  
son o  
they  
warp  
and f  
well  
V.

heaved, it shoaled to twenty fathom, wherefore we chopt to an anchor, and trimmed our ship afire, to mount on the sea, and fitted all things to ride it out. There was no need to bid our men watch, not one of them putting his eyes together all the night long. We rid it out well all the night, although the sea went very lofty, and that it did blow very hard.

The 22d in the morning, when we could look about us, we saw an island under our lee some leagues off, all being shoals and breaches betwixt us and it. At noon (with the help of the windward tide) we attempted to heave up our anchor, although the sea still went very lofty. Joining all our strengths therefore, with our best skills, God be thanked, we had it up; but before we could set our sails we were driven into nine fathom. Endeavouring thereupon to double a point, to get under the lee of this island, the water shoaled to seven, six, and five fathom, but when we were about, it did deepen again, and we came to an anchor in a very good place; and it was very good for us that we did, for the wind increased to a very storm. Here we rid well all the night, took good rest, and recovered our spent strengths again. The last night and this morning it did snow and hail, and was very cold: Nevertheless, I took the boat and went ashore, to look for some creek or cove to have in our ship, for she was very leaky, and the company become sickly and weak, with much pumping and extreme labour. This island, when we came to the shore, was a thing but ledges of rocks, and banks of sand, and there went a very great surf on them. Nevertheless I made them row thorough it, and ashore I got with two more, and made them row off without the breaches, and there to come to an anchor and to stay for me: I made what speed I could to the top of a hill, to discover about, but could not see what we looked for: Thus because it began to blow hard, I made haste towards the boat again. I found that it had ebbed so low, that the boat could not by any means come near the shore for me; so that we were fain to wade thro' the surf and breaches to her; in which some took such a cold, that they did complain of it to their dying day. But now it began to blow hard, so that we could not get but little to windward toward our ship, for the wind was shifted since we went ashore; and return to the shore we could not, by reason of the surf. Well, we row for life; they in the ship let out a buoy by a long warp, and by God's assistance we got to it, and so haled up to the ship, where we were well welcomed, and we all rejoiced together.

VOL. II.

This was a premonition to us, to be careful how we sent off the boat, for that it was winter weather already. I named this island, *Sir Thomas Roe's island*: It is full of small wood, but in other benefits not very rich, and stands in lat. 52. 10. At noon we weighed, seeing an island that bare S. S. E. of us, some four leagues off, which was the highest land we had yet seen in this bay; but as we came near it, it suddenly shoaled to six, five, and four fathom, wherefore we struck our sails amain, and chopt to an anchor; but it was very foul ground, and when the ship was winded up, we had but three fathom at her stern. As it cleared, we could see the breaches all along under our lee; holding it safe therefore to stay long here, we staid every thing in order, for the ship to fall the right way. We had up our anchor, got into deep water, and stood over again for *Sir Thomas Roe's island*, which by night we brought in the wind of us, some two leagues off, which did well shelter us. The tides run very quick here amongst these shoals; and their times of running ebb or flood, be very uncertain: Their currents are likewise so distracted, that in the night there is no failing by the compass; wherefore we were fain to seek every night some new place of security to come to an anchor.

The 24th in the morning it did lower, and threaten a storm, which made us with the windward tide weigh to get nearer under the island. It was very thick foggy weather, and as we stood to the north eastward, we came to very uncertain depths; at one cast twenty fathom, the next seven, then ten, five, eight, and three, and coming to the other tack, we were worse than we were before, the currents making a fool of our best judgments in the thick fog, when we could see no land marks. It pleased God that we got clear of them, and endeavoured to get under the lee of the island. This being not able to do, we were fain to come to an anchor in 35 fathom, some two leagues off the shore. All this afternoon (and indeed all night too) it did snow and hail, and was very cold.

The 25th we weighed, and thought to get to the eastward; but as we tack'd to and again, the wind shifted so in our teeths, that it put us within a quarter of a mile of the very shore; where we chopt to an anchor, and rid it out for life and death. Such miseries as these we endured amongst these shoals and broken grounds, or rather more desperate than I have related (very unpleasant perchance to be read) with snow, hail, and stormy weather, and colder than ever I felt it in *England*, in my life. Our shoot-anchor was down twice or thrice a day,

5 X

and

and extreme pains made a great part of the company sickly.

All this lasted with us until the 30th of this month of *September*, which we thought would have put an end to our miseries; for now we were driven amongst rocks, shoals, over-falls, and breaches round about us, that which way to turn we knew not; but there rid amongst them in extremity of distress. All these perils made a most hideous and terrible noise in the night season; and I hope it will not be accounted ridiculous, if I relate with what meditations I was affected, now and then, amongst my ordinary prayers; which I here afford the reader, as I there conceived them in these few ragged and torn rhimes.

*Oh my poor soul, why dost thou grieve to see,  
So many deaths muster to murder me?  
Look to thyself, regard not me; for I  
Must do (for what I came) perform or die.  
So thou mayst free thyself from being in  
A dungeon, a mere sink of sin;  
And happily be freed, if thou believe,  
Truly in God through Christ, and ever live.  
Be therefore glad: yet e'er thou go from hence,  
For our joint sins, let's do some penitence,  
Unfeignedly together. When we part,  
I'll wish the angels joy, with all my heart.  
We have with confidence relied upon  
A rusty wire, touch'd with a little stone,  
Incompar's'd round with paper, and alas,  
To house it harmless, nothing but a glass,  
And thought to shun a thousand dangers, by  
The blind direction of this senseless flies,  
When the fierce winds shatter'd black nights  
around,  
Whose pitchy clouds, spitting forth fire and  
thunder,  
Hath shook the earth, and made the ocean  
roar;  
And run to hide it in the broken shore:  
Now thou must steer by faith; a better guide,  
'Twill bring thee safe to heaven against the  
tide  
Of Satan's malice. Now let quiet gales  
Of saving Grace inspire thy zealous sails.*

The first of *October* was indifferent fair weather, and with a windward tide, out went our boat to found a channel to help us out of this perilous place. The boat within two hours returned, and told us how she had been a way where there was no less than 12 fathom. We presently thereupon weigh'd, but found it otherwise, and came amongst many strange races and over-falls, upon which there went a very great and breaking sea. As we proceeded, the water shoal'd to six fathom. Well! there was no remedy, we must go forward, happy be lucky, seeing there neither was any riding, and as

little hope to turn any way with a sail, but that there appear'd present death in it. It pleased God so to direct us, that we got thro' it, having no less than five fathoms, and all very uncertain depths. The water sometimes deepen'd to twenty fathom, then upon a sudden, it shoal'd to seven, six, and five fathoms; so we struck all our sails amain, and chopp'd to an anchor, where we rid till midnight, for life and death, it blowing a merciless gale of wind, and the sea going very lofty, and all in a breach. The ground was foul ground too, inasmuch that we doubted our cable every minute.

The second in the morning was little wind; wherefore taking the opportunity of the tide, the boat went forth to sound; which returning again in two hours, told us how they had sounded about that shoal, and had found a place of some safety to ride in, and had been in no less water than five fathom. We weigh'd, and found our cable galled in two places; which had soon failed us, if the foul weather had continued. We stood the same way that the boat did direct us; but it proved so calm, that we came to an anchor in eighteen fathom. I took the boat, and went ashore on an island that was to the southward of us, which I named, *The earl of Danby's island*. From the highest place in it, I could see it all broken grounds and shoals to the southward; and rather worse than any thing better than that which we had been in. I found that the salvages had been upon it, and that it was full of wood. I made haste to the boat to found the bay for fear of shoals and sunken rocks, but found it indifferent good. Toward the evening it began to blow hard; wherefore we made towards the ship. She put forth a buoy and a warp; and we rowing for life to recover her, were put to the leeward of her; but by getting hold of the warp, we hall'd up to her. The boat we left half full of water, ourselves being as wet as drown'd rats; and it made us the more rejoice, that we had escap'd this great danger. All this night we had a very hard rode-steed, it blowing a most violent gale of wind, with snow and hail.

The third about noon the wind dull'd, and we had up our anchor, standing in farther into the bay into four fathom and a half water. Here we came again to an anchor, with our second anchor; for many of our men are now sick, and the rest so weaken'd, that we can hardly weigh our shoot-anchor. I took the boat, and went presently ashore to see what comfort I could find. This was the first time that I put foot on this island, which was the same that we did after winter upon. I found the tracks of deer, and saw some fowl; but that that did

rejoice

rejoice  
pening  
ver.  
found i  
ter at f  
most es  
thom v  
board,  
men m  
The  
hard, y  
boat to  
like a  
time I  
five mi  
find no  
a few b  
ried ou  
returne  
boat to  
I still f  
I had o  
fierce g  
to win  
with no  
ther, w  
till the  
we stood  
moor'd  
The  
were fa  
vels, a  
continu  
and it  
the ship  
about r  
middle  
wife fro  
fain to  
shine v  
out of  
them,  
a sunnin  
not ha  
them.  
rowed  
come n  
to land  
ter with  
fands,  
made it  
not set  
thing h  
shore.  
extreme  
ry little  
boat, a  
penter  
carry it  
brough  
were li  
that we  
the boat

rejoice me most, was, that I did see an opening into the land, as if it had been a river. To it we make with all speed, but found it to be barr'd, and not two foot water at full sea on the bar; and yet within a most excellent fine harbour, having four fathom water. In the evening I returned aboard, bringing little comfort for our sick men more than hopes.

The fourth it did snow and blow very hard, yet I got ashore, and appointed the boat to go to another place (which made like a river) and to found it. In the mean time I went with four more, some four or five miles up into the country, but could find no relief all that way for our sick, but a few berries only. After we had well wearied ourselves in the troublesome woods, we returned to the place I had appointed the boat to tarry for me; where at my coming I still found her, she having not been where I had order'd her, for it had blown such a fierce gale of wind, that she could not row to windward. Thus we returned aboard with no good news. It continued foul weather, with snow and hail, and extreme cold, till the sixth, when with a favouring wind, we stood in nearer to the shore, and here moor'd the ship.

The seventh it snow'd all day, so that we were fain to clear it off the decks with shovels, and it blew a very storm withal. It continued snowing and very cold weather, and it did so freeze, that all the bows of the ship, with her beak-head, was all ice; about the cable also was ice as big as a man's middle. The bows of the boat were likewise frozen half a foot thick, so that we were fain to hew and beat it off. The sun did shine very clear, and we tore the topails out of the tops, which were hard frozen in them, into a lump; so that there they hung a sunning all day, in a very lump; the sun not having power to thaw one drop of them. After the boat was fitted, we rowed towards the shore, but could not come near the place where we were used to land, for that it was all thicken'd water with the snow that had fallen upon the sands, that are dry at low water. This made it so difficult to row, that we could not get through it with four oars, yet something higher to the westward, we got ashore. Seeing now the winter to come thus extremely upon us, and that we had very little wood aboard, I made them fill the boat, and went aboard; and sent the carpenter and others to cut wood, others to carry it to the water-side, whilst the boat brought it aboard; for I doubted that we were likely to be debar'd the shore, and that we should not go to and again with the boat. It was miserable and cold alrea-

dy aboard the ship; every thing did freeze: in the hold, and by the fire-side. Seeing therefore that we could no longer make use of our sails (which be the wings of a ship) it rais'd many doubts in our minds that here we must stay and winter. After we had brought so much wood aboard as we could conveniently stow, and enough as I thought would have lasted two or three months, the sick men desired that some little house or hovel might be built ashore, whereby they might be the better sheltered, and recover their healths. I took the carpenter (and others whom I thought fit for such a purpose) and chusing out a place, they went immediately to work upon it. In the mean space, I myself, accompanied with some others, wandered up and down in the woods, to see if we could discover any signs of favages, that so we might the better provide for our safeties against them. We found no appearance that there were any on this island, nor near unto it. The snow by this time was half-leg high; and stalking thro' it, we return'd comfortless to our companions, who had all this time wrought well upon our house. They aboard the ship took down our top-sails in the mean while, and made a great fire upon the hearth in the hatch-way; so that having well thaw'd them, they folded them up, and put them betwixt decks, that if we had any weather, they might bring them again to yard. Thus in the evening we returned aboard.

The twelfth we took our main-fail from the yard, which was hard frozen to it, and carried it ashore to cover our house withal, being first fain to thaw it by a great fire. By night they had covered it, and had almost hedged it about; and the six builders did desire to lie in it ashore that night, which I condescended unto, having first fitted them with muskets and other furniture, and a charge to keep good watch all night. Moreover, they had ashore two greyhounds, (a dog and a bitch) which I had brought out of *England*, to kill us some deer, if happily we could find any.

By the 13th at night our house was ready; and our six builders desired they might travel up into the country to see what they could discover.

The 14th, betimes in the morning, being fitted with munition, and their order to keep together (but especially to seek out some creek or cove for our ship) they departed. We aboard took down our own top-masts and their rigging, making account if we did remove, to make use of our foresail and mizen.

The 15th in the evening our hunters returned very weary, and brought with them a small lean deer, in four quarters, which rejoiced

rejoiced us all, hoping we should have had more of them to refresh our sick men withal. They reported, that they had wander'd above twenty miles, and had brought this deer above twelve miles, and that they had seen nine or ten more. The last night they had a very cold lodging in the woods; and so it appeared, for they look'd all almost starved, nor could they recover themselves in three or four days after. They saw no sign of salvages, nor of any ravening wild beasts, nor yet any hope of harbour.

The 17<sup>th</sup> my lieutenant, and five more, desired they might try their fortunes in travelling about the island. But they had far worse luck than the others, although they endured out all night, and had wandered very far in the snow (which was now very deep) and returned comfortless, and miserably disabled with the coldness. But what was worse than all this, they had lost one of their company, *John Barton*, namely, our gunner's mate; who being very weary, merely to save the going about, had attempted to go over a pond, that was a quarter of a mile over; where when he was in the very midst, the ice brake and closed upon him, and we never saw him more. Considering these disasters, I resolved to fish no more with a golden hook, for fear I weaken'd myself more with one hunting, than twenty such deers could do me good. Being now assured, that there were no salvages upon the island, nor yet about us on the other islands; no, nor on the main neither, as far as we could discover (which we farther proved by making of fires) and that the cold season was now in that extremity, that they could not come to us, if there were any; we comforted and refreshed our selves, by sleeping the more securely. We chang'd our island garrison every week, and for other refreshing we were like to have none till the spring.

From this 10th to the 29th it did (by *interims*) snow and blow so hard, that the boat could hardly adventure ashore, and but seldom land, unless the men did wade in the thick congealed water, carrying one another. We did sensibly perceive withal, how we did daily sink into more miseries. The land was all deep cover'd with snow, the cold did multiply, and the thick snow-water did increase; and what would become of us, our most merciful God and preserver knew only.

The 29th I observed an eclipse of the moon, with what care possibly I could, both in the trial of the exactness of our instruments, as also in the observation. I refer you to the observation in the latter end of this relation, where it is at large describ'd. This month of *October* ended with snow and

bitter cold weather.

The first of *November* I cast up my accounts with the steward concerning our victuals, the third part of our time being this day out. I found him an honest man; for he gave me an account every week what was spent, and what was still in the hold remaining under his hand. I would take no excuse of leakage or other waste, unless he did daily shew it me. Every month I made a new survey; and every six months put what we had spared by itself; which now was at least a month's provision of bread, and a fortnight's of peas, and fish, &c.

The third the boat endeavoured to get ashore, but could not get thro' the thick congealed water.

The fourth they found a place to get ashore, and so once in two or three days, till the ninth, bringing beer to our men ashore in a barrel, which would freeze firmly in the house in one night. Other provision they had store. The ice beer being thaw'd in a kettle, was not good; and they did break the ice of the ponds of water, to come by water to drink. This pond-water had a most loathsome smell with it; so that doubting lest it might be infectious, I caus'd a well to be sunk near the house. There we had very good water, which did taste (as we flatter'd our selves with it) even like milk.

The tenth (having store of boards for such a purpose) I put the carpenter to work, to make us a little boat, which we might carry (if occasion were) over the ice, and make use of her, where there was water. At noon I took the latitude of this island by two quadrants, which I found to be 52.00. I urged the men to make traps to catch foxes, for we did daily see many. Some of them were pied, black and white; whereby I gathered that there were some black foxes, whose skins, I told them, were of a great value; and I promised, that whosoever could take one of them, should have the skin for his reward. Hereupon they made divers traps, and waded in the snow (which was very deep) to place them in the woods.

The twelfth our house took fire, but we soon quenched it. We were vain to keep an extraordinary fire night and day; and this accident made me order a watch to look to it continually; seeing, that if our house and clothing should be burnt, that all we were but in a woful condition. I lay ashore till the 17th, all which time our miseries did increase. It did snow and freeze most extremely. At which time we looking from the shore towards the ship, she did look like a piece of ice in the fashion of a ship, or a ship resembling a piece of ice. The snow

was

was all  
part firm  
also. C  
derful to  
the long  
cogitation  
not see a  
I was af  
ble to en  
ry day  
cables; I  
carpente  
ice out o  
water w  
hands, I  
they cou  
out bein

The  
rememb  
guish in  
weak; I  
had to  
ther, w

The  
honest a  
a close  
which w  
clothes  
wanted  
a fire co  
warmth  
wound,  
We con  
the ship

The  
dinarily  
flakes,  
drove by  
In the  
a great  
four mo  
them a  
the dar  
ing it w  
bour, u  
was ful  
a matre  
thorough  
ing an  
the wh  
signify  
in dist  
could n  
all pat  
tully,  
had fe  
mornin  
men al  
arrived  
to wa  
that th  
culty.  
pieces  
Voi



was all frozen about her, and all her fore-part firm ice, and so was she on both sides also. Our cables froze in the hawse, wonderful to behold. I got me aboard, where the long nights I spent, with tormenting cogitations; and in the day time, I could not see any hope of saving the ship. This I was assured of, that it was most impossible to endure these extremities long. Every day the men must beat the ice off the cables; while some within board, with the carpenters long calking iron, did dig the ice out of the hawses; in which work, the water would freeze on their clothes and hands, and would so benumb them, that they could hardly get into the ship, without being heavy'd in with a rope.

The 19th, our gunner (who as you may remember, had his leg cut off) did languish irrecoverably, and now grew very weak; desiring, that for the little time he had to live, he might drink sack altogether, which I ordered he should do.

The 22d in the morning he died. An honest and a strong-hearted man. He had a close boarded cabin in the gunroom, which was very close indeed; and as many clothes on him as was convenient, (for we wanted no clothes) and a pan with coals, and a fire continually in his cabin: For all which warmth, his plaister would freeze at his wound, and his bottle of sack at his head. We committed him at a good distance from the ship unto the sea.

The 23d, the ice did increase extraordinarily, and the snow lay on the water in flakes, as it did fall; much ice withal drove by us, yet nothing hard all this while. In the evening, after the watch was set, a great piece came athwart our hawse, and four more following after him, the least of them a quarter of a mile broad; which in the dark did very much astonish us, thinking it would have carried us out of the harbour, upon the shoal's eastern-point, which was full of rocks. It was newly congealed, a matter of two inches thick, and we broke thorough it, the cable and anchor enduring an incredible stress, sometimes stopping the whole ice. We shot off three muskets, signifying to our men ashore, that we were in distress; who answered us again, but could not help us. By ten a clock it was all past; nevertheless, we watched carefully, and the weather was warmer than we had felt it any time this month. In the mornings, at break of day, I sent for our men aboard, who made up the house, and arrived by ten, being driven by the way, to wade thorough the congealed water, so that they recovered to the boat with difficulty. There drove by the ship many pieces of ice, though not so large as the

former, yet much thicker: One piece came foul of the cable, and made the ship drive.

As soon as we were clear of it, we joined our strengths together, and had up our easternmost anchor; and now I resolved to bring the ship aground, for no cables nor anchors could hold her: But I will here show you the reasons why I brought her no sooner aground. First, it was all stony-ground, some stones lying dry, three or four foot above water; so that it was to be suspected, that it was the like all about us. Secondly, it did ordinarily flow but two foot and a half here; and if she should bed deep in the sands, we could not ever come to dig her out again; for that she would not be dry, by four or five foot. Thirdly, it was a loose sand, which might rise with the surf, or so mount about her, that all our weak powers could not heave it away in the next spring time. Fourthly, we doubted the tides would not high so much in the summer as they did now. Fifthly, We could not bring her out of the tides way, which doth run something quick here; and the ice, besides, might drive and mount up upon her, and so overset her, or tear her, and carry away her planks, iron works and all; so that we should have nothing left to finish our pinnace with. Sixthly, If it did blow a storm at N. W. or thereabouts, the water would flow ten foot and upwards; and that wind being off the shore, it would blow away all the ice, and there would come in an extraordinary great surf about the shoaled eastern-point, which was occasioned by a deep overfall. Moreover, she would beat extremely; and if she were put up by the sea, or that surf, it was very doubtful that we should never have her off again. For these reasons we endured all the extremity, still hoping upon some good and fortunate accident. But now all our provident designs we saw to become foolishness; and that a great deal of miserable labour had been spent in vain by us. With the flood we weighed our westernmost anchor, perceiving God's assistance manifestly, because it happened to be fine warm weather; otherwise we had not been able to work. The wind was now south, which blew in upon the shore, and made the lowest tides. We brought the ship into twelve foot water, and hid out one anchor in the offing, and another in shoaled water, to draw her a land at command. Our hope also was, that some stones that were to the westward of us, would send off some of the ice. We then being about a mile from the shore, about ten a clock in the dark night, the ice came driving upon us, and our anchors came home. She drove some two cables length; and the wind

blowing



blowing on the shore, by two a clock she came aground, and stopp'd much ice; yet she lay well all night, and we took some rest.

The 25th the wind shifted easterly, and put abundance of ice on us. When the flood was made, we encouraged one another, and to work we go, drawing home our anchors by main force, under great pieces of ice, our endeavour being to put the ship to the shore. But to our great discomforts, when the half tide was made, (which was two hours before high water) the ship drove amongst the ice to the eastward, (do what we could) and so would have on the shoaled rocks. As I have formerly said, these two days, and this day, was very warm weather, and it did rain, which it had not yet but once done, since we came hither; otherwise, it had been impossible we could have wrought. Withal, the wind shifted also to the south, and at the very instant, blew a hard puff, which so continued for half an hour. I caus'd our two topmasts to be had up from betwixt decks, and we hoisted them up with ropes in all haste, and we forced the ship ashore, when she had not half a cable's length to drive on the rocky shoals. In the evening we broke way thorough the ice, and put an anchor to shoreward in five foot water, to keep her to the shore if possible it might be. Here sir *Hugh Willoughby* came into my mind, who without doubt was driven out of his harbour in this manner, and so starved at sea. But God was more merciful to us. About nine a clock at night, the wind came up at N. W. and blew a very storm. This wind was off the shore, which blew away all the ice from about us, long before we were afloat. There came in a great rowling sea withal about the point, accompanied with a great surf on the shore. And now were we left to the mercy of the sea on the ground. By ten, she began to rowl in her dock; and soon after, began to beat against the ground. We stood at the capstang as many as could, others at the pumps; for we thought that every fifth or sixth blow would have staved her to pieces. We heaved to the uttermost of our strengths to keep her as near the ground as we could. By reason of this wind, it flowed very much water, and we drew her up so high, that it was doubtful if ever we should get her off again. She continued thus beating, till two a clock the next morning, and then she again settled. Whereupon we went to sleep to restore nature; seeing the next tide we expected to be again tormented.

The 26th, in the morning tide, our ship did not float, whereby we had some quietness. After prayers, I called a consulta-

tion of the master, my lieutenant, the mates, carpenter, and boatswain; to whom I propos'd, that now we were put to our last shifts, and therefore they should tell me what they thought of it: Namely, whether it were not best, to carry all our provision ashore; and that when the wind should come northerly, it were not safest to draw her farther off, and sink her. After many reasonings they allowed of my purpose, and so I communicated it to the company, who all willingly agreed to it. And so we fell to getting up of our provisions; first our bread, of which we landed this day two dry-fats with a hoghead of beef; having much ado to fet the boat thorough the thick congealed water. In the evening, the wind came up at N. E. and E. and fill'd the bay choakful of ice.

The 27th, the bay continued full of ice, which I hoped would so continue and freeze, that we should not be put to sink our ship. This day we could land nothing.

The 28th, at break of day, three of our men went ashore over the ice, unknown to me; and the wind coming up at W. drove the ice from betwixt us and the shore, and most part out of the bay also: And yet not so, that the boat could go ashore for any thing. I made the carpenter fit a place against all sudden extremities, for that with the first N. W. or northerly wind, I meant to effect our last project. In the run of her, on the starboard side, he cut away the sealing and the plank to the sheathing some four or five inches square, some four foot high from the keel of her, that so it might be boared out at an instant. We brought our bread which was remaining in the bread room, up into the great cabin, and likewise all our powder, setting much of our light dry things betwixt decks.

The 29th, at five a clock in the morning, the wind came up at W. N. W. and began to blow very hard. It was ordinary for the wind to shift from the W. by the N. round about. So first I order'd the cooper to go down in hold, and look to all our cask; those that were full, to mawle in the bungs of them; those that were empty, to get up, or if they could not be gotten up, to stave them. Then to quail all our cables upon our lower tire; and to lay on our spare anchors, and any thing that was weighty, to keep it down from rising. By seven a clock, it blew a storm at N. W. our bitter enemy. The ship was already bedded some two foot in the sand, and whilst that was a flowing, she must beat. This I before had in my consideration; for I thought she was so far driven up, that we should never get her off. Yet we had been so

ferreted  
ed to fin  
that haz  
to rowl  
dinary g  
found to  
ed over  
that put  
went do  
took his  
and let  
we bega  
thorough  
By ten,  
covered  
gan fo  
more, t  
to do a  
sink fo  
tinued b  
and the  
how the  
with it.  
tire rose  
the infir  
the brea  
piece, a  
twixt de  
and the  
so that n  
the ship  
At one  
and tha  
way. Th  
a clock,  
upper d  
fettle. I  
part of  
chirurg  
that we  
almost  
our mi  
upon th  
with w  
and I  
comman  
all into  
pliment  
to me,  
them,  
with th  
the shi  
We

ferreted by her last beating, that I resolv-  
ed to sink her right down, rather than run  
that hazard. By nine a clock, she began  
to rowl in her dock, with a most extraor-  
dinary great sea that was come, which I  
found to be occasioned by the foremention-  
ed overfall. And this was the fatal hour  
that put us to our wits end. Wherefore I  
went down in hold with the carpenter, and  
took his augur and bored a hole in the ship,  
and let in the water. Thus with all speed,  
we began to cut out other places to bore  
thorough, but every place was full of nails.  
By ten, notwithstanding, the lower tire was  
covered with water; for all which, she be-  
gan so to beat in her dock, more and  
more, that we could not work, nor stand  
to do any thing in her: Nor would she  
sink so fast as we would have her, but con-  
tinued beating double blows; first abaft,  
and then before, that it was wonderful  
how she could endure a quarter of an hour  
with it. By twelve a clock, her lower  
tire rose; and that did so counterbeat on  
the inside, that it beat the bulk heads of  
the bread-room, powder-room, and fore-  
piece, all to pieces; and when it came be-  
twixt decks, the chests fled widdly about,  
and the water did flash and fly wonderfully;  
so that now we expected every minute when  
the ship would open and break to pieces.  
At one a clock she beat off her rudder,  
and that was gone we knew not which  
way. Thus she continued beating till three  
a clock, and then the sea came up on the  
upper deck, and soon after, she began to  
settle. In her, we were fain to sink the most  
part of our bedding and clothes; and the  
chirurgeons chest with the rest. Our men  
that were ashore, stood looking upon us,  
almost dead with cold, and forrows to see  
our misery and their own. We look'd  
upon them again, and both upon each other  
with woful hearts. Dark night drew on,  
and I bade the boat to be haled up, and  
commanded my loving companions to go  
all into her; who (in some refusing com-  
pliments) expressed their faithful affections  
to me, as loth to part from me. I told  
them, that my meaning was to go ashore  
with them. And thus, lastly, I forsook  
the ship.

We were seventeen poor souls now in the

boat; and we now imagined, that we were  
leapt out of the frying pan into the fire:  
The ebb was made, and the water extraor-  
dinary thick, congealed with snow; so  
that we thought assuredly, it would carry  
us away into the sea. We thereupon dou-  
ble mann'd four oars, appointing four more  
to sit ready with oars; and so with the  
help of God we got to the shore, hailing  
up the boat after us. One thing was most  
strange in this thick water: Namely, that  
there went a great swelling sea. Being ar-  
rived upon the land, we greeted our fellows  
the best we could; at which time they  
could not know us, nor we them by our  
habits nor voices, so frozen all over we  
were, faces, hair, and apparel. And here  
I mean to take breath awhile, after all this  
long and unpleasant relation of our misera-  
ble endeavours, craving leave first of all to  
speak a word or two in general.

The winds, since we came hither, have  
been very variable and unconstant; and till  
within this fortnight, the southerly wind  
was the coldest. The reason I conceive  
to be, for that it did blow from the main  
land, which was all covered with snow;  
and for that the north winds came out of  
the great bay which hitherto was open.  
Add to that, we were now under a fourth  
bank which did shelter us, so that we were  
not so sensible of it.

A N. W. a N. W. by N. and a N. W.  
wind (if it blew a storm) would raise the  
tides extraordinarily: And indeed, from  
the W. N. W. to the N. N. E. would  
raise the tides in proportion, as they did  
blow from the middle point: The wind  
being on the opposite points (if it blew) it  
would flow very little at all. The harder  
it blew, the less water it would flow. If  
it were little wind or calm, it would flow  
indifferently. The tides do high ordina-  
rily (without being forced) about three  
foot; but being forced with the fore-  
mentioned winds, upwards of ten foot. I  
could perceive no difference betwixt neap  
and spring tides: It flows half tide; that  
is, the flood comes from the northward,  
and thither returns again, two hours be-  
fore it be high water; and it is commonly  
so seen in most bays or inlets.

# OUR WINTERING.

**A**FTER we had haled up the boat, we went along the breach side in the dark, towards our house, where we made a good fire; and with it and bread and water, we thawed and comforted ourselves, beginning after that to reason one with another, concerning our ship. I requir'd that every one should speak his mind freely. The carpenter (especially) was of the opinion, that she was founder'd, and would never be serviceable again. He alledged, that she had so beaten, that it was not possible, but that all her joints were loose, and seams open; and that by reason it flowed so little water, and no creek nor cove being near, wherein to bring her aground, he could not devise how he might come to mend it. Moreover, her rudder was lost, and he had no iron work to hang on another. Some alledged, that we had heaved her up so high upon the sands, that they thought we should never have her off again, and that they were assured she was already dock'd three foot. Others, that she lay in the tides way, and that the ice might tear her to pieces off the ground; besides which, two of our anchors we could not now get from under the ice; which when the ice brake (which would be of a great thickness by the spring) would break our anchors to pieces, and then we should have no anchors to bring us home withal, supposing we got off the ship, and that she proved found also. I comforted them the best I could with such like words; My masters and faithful companions, be not dismay'd for any of these disasters, but let us put our whole trust in God; it is he that giveth and he that taketh away; he throws down with one hand, and raiseth up with another: His will be done. If it be our fortunes to end our days here, we are as near heaven as in *England*; and we are much bound to God Almighty for giving us so large a time of repentance, who as it were daily calls upon us, to prepare ourselves for a better life in heaven. I make no doubt, but he will be merciful to us both here on earth, and in his blessed kingdom; he doth not in the mean time deny, but that we may use all honest means to save and prolong our natural lives withal; and in my judgment, we are not yet so

far past hope of returning into our native countries, but that I see a fair way by which we may effect it. Admit the ship be founder'd, (which God forbid, I hope the best) yet have those of our own nation, and others, when they have been put to these extremities, even out of the wreck of their lost ship, built then a pinnace, and recovered to their friends again. If it be objected, that they have happened into better climates, both for temperateness of the air, and for pacifick and open seas; and provided withal, of abundance of fresh victuals; yet there is nothing too hard for courageous minds, which hitherto you have shewn, and I doubt not will still do, to the uttermost.

They all protested to work to the uttermost of their strength, and that they would refuse nothing that I should order them to do, to the uttermost hazard of their lives. I thank'd them all, and to the carpenter for his cheerful undertaking, I promised to give him so much plate presently, as should be worth ten pound sterling; and if so be I went to *England* in the pinnace, I would give her him freely, and fifty pounds in money over and above; and would moreover gratify all them, that I should see painful and industrious. Thus we then resolv'd, to build us a new pinnace with the timber we should get upon the island; that in the spring, if we found not the ship serviceable, we might tear her up, and plank her with the ships planks. And so for this night we settled ourselves close about the fire, and took some rest till day-light.

The 30th betimes in the morning, I caus'd the chirurgeon to cut the hair of my head short, and to shave away all the hair of my face, for that it was become intolerable, and that it would be frozen so great with ices: The like did all the rest.

The first of *November* we fitted our selves to work. The first thing we were to do, was to get our clothes and provisions ashore, and therefore I divided the company. The master and a convenient company with him, were to go aboard, and get things out of the hold. The cock-swain with his gang, were to go in the boat, to bring and carry things ashore. Myself, with the rest, to carry it half a mile thro' the snow, unto the place

place w  
house :  
posed to  
afternoon  
and the  
we thou  
our hold  
and with  
water :  
stand on  
thinking  
would b  
we wer  
sistance,  
made a  
board.  
got form  
decks ;  
not adv  
bed in  
ved.

The f  
went th  
where t  
day we  
500 of  
and clo  
of the l

The  
of the m  
were ve  
day we  
nor bac  
a store-l  
wind ca  
and driv  
and larg  
have spo

The  
res of ic  
the stop  
over the  
but whe  
water, i  
shot of  
wade th  
and can  
their ba  
ice, it f  
seem li  
mentab  
evening  
bout th  
with ha  
ing to  
small l  
any mo  
she wa  
her in,  
the lac  
The  
perform  
The  
Voi

place where we intended to build a store-house : As for the heavier things, we purposed to lay them upon the beach. In the afternoon the wind was at south south west, and the water veer'd to so low an ebb, that we thought we might get something out of our hold. We launched our boat therefore, and with oars set thro' the thick congealed water : It did freeze extream hard, and I did stand on the shore with a troubled mind, thinking verily that with the ebb the boat would be carried into the sea, and that then we were all lost men. But by God's assistance, they got safely to the ship, and made a fire there, to signify their arrival aboard. They fell presently to work, and got something out of the hold, upon the decks ; but night coming on, they durst not adventure to come ashore, but lay on the bed in the great cabin, being almost starved.

The first of December was so cold, that I went the same way over the ice to the ship, where the boat had gone yesterday. This day we carried upon our backs in bundles, 500 of our Fish, and much of our bedding and clothes, which we were fain to dig out of the Ice.

The 2d was mild Weather ; and some of the men going over the ice, fell in, and were very hardly recovered ; so that this day we could land nothing, neither by boat nor back : I put them therefore to make us a store-house ashore. In the evening, the wind came up at west ; and the ice did break and drive out of the bay : It was very deep and large ice, that we much doubted it would have spoiled the ship.

The 3d day, there were divers great pieces of ice that came athwart the ship, and she stopt them, yet not so, that we could go over them. We found a way for the boat ; but when she was laden, she drew four foot water, and could not come within a flight-shot of the shore. The men therefore must wade through the thick congealed water, and carry all things out of the ship upon their backs. Every time they waded in the ice, it so gathered about them, that they did seem like a walking piece of ice, most lamentable to behold. In this extream cold evening they cut away as much ice from about the boat as they could, and pickt it with hand-spikes out of her, and endeavouring to hoise her into the ship : There being small hope that she could go to and again any more. But use what means they could, she was so heavy, that they could not hoise her in, but were fain there to leave her in the tackles by the ship's side.

The 4th, being sunday we rested ; and performed the sabbath-duties of a christian.

The 5th and 6th were extream cold ;

Vol. II.

and we made bags of our store-shirts, and in them carried our loose bread over the ice ashore upon our backs. We also digged our clothes and new-falls with hand-spikes of iron, out of the ice, and carried them ashore, which we dried by a great fire.

The 7th day was so extreamly cold, that our noses, cheeks, and hands, did freeze as white as paper.

The 8th and 9th it was extream cold, and it did snow much, yet we continued our labour, in carrying and rowling things ashore. In the evening the water raised the ice very high, and it did break two thoughts of our boat, and break in the side of her ; but for that time we could not help it.

The 10th, our carpenter found timber to make a keel, and a stern, for our pinnace ; the rest wrought about our provisions until the 13th day ; and that we spent in digging our boat out of the ice, which we were fain to do to the very keel ; and dig the ice out her, and then we got her up on the ice ; in which doing, many had their noses, cheeks, and fingers, frozen as white as paper. The cold now encreased most extreamly. By the 19th, we could get no more things out of our hold ; but were fain to leave five barrels of beef and pork, all our beer, and divers other things which were all firm frozen in her.

The 21st was so cold, that we could not go out of the house.

The 23d we went to heave our boat ashore, running her over our oars, but by ten a clock there came such a thick fog, that it was as dark as night. I made them give over, and make what haste we could to the shore ; which we had much ado to find, for the time, losing one another. At the last, we met all at the house, the miserablest frozen that can be conceived. Upon divers, the cold had raised blisters as big as wall-nuts. This we imagined to come, by reason that they came too hastily to the fire. Our well was now frozen up ; so that dig as deep as we could, we can come by no water. Melted snow water is very unwholesome, either to drink or to dress our victuals. It made us so short-breathed, that we were scarce able to speak. All our sack, vinegar, oil, and every thing else that was liquid, was now frozen as hard as a piece of wood, and we must cut it with a hatchet. Our house was all frozen on the inside, and it froze hard within a yard of the fire-side. When I landed first upon this island, I found a spring under a hill-side ; which I then observing, had caused some trees to be cut for marks to know the place again by. It was about three quarters of a mile from our house. I sent three of our men which had been formerly with me, thither upon the

5 Z

24th :

24th: These wading thorow the snow, at last found the place, and shoveling away the snow, they made way to the very head of it. They found it spring very strongly, and brought me a can of it, for which I was right joyful. This spring continued all the year, and did not freeze, but that we could break the ice and come to it. We labour'd very hard these three or four days, to get wood to the house, which we found to be very troublesome, through the deep snow.

We then settled our bedding and provisions, providing to keep *Christmas-day* holy, which we solemnized in the joyfullest manner we could; so likewise did we *St. John's day*; upon which we named the wood we did winter in, in memory of that honourable knight, *sir John Winter, Winter's Forest*. And now instead of a *Christmas* tale, I will here describe the house that we did live in, with those adjoining.

When I first resolved to build a house, I chose the warmest and convenientest place, and the nearest the ship withal. It was amongst a tuft of thick trees under a south-bank, about a flight-shot from the sea's side. True it is, that at that time we could not dig into the ground, to make us a hole or cave in the earth, (which had been the best way) because we found water within two foot digging, and therefore that project fail'd. It was a white light sand, so that we could by no means make up a mud-wall. As for stones, there were none near us, which moreover were all now covered with the snow. We had no boards for such a purpose, and therefore we must do the best we could, with such materials as we had about us.

The house was square, about twenty foot every way, as much namely, as our main-course could well cover: First we drove strong stakes into the earth, round about, which we wattled with boughs, as thick as might be, beating them down very close. This our first work was six foot high on both sides, but at the ends almost up to the very top, there we left two holes for the light to come in at, and the same way the smoak did vent out also. Moreover I caufed at both ends, three rows of thick bush-trees, to be stuck up, as close together as might be possible. Then at a distance from the house, we cut down trees, proportioning them into lengths of six foot, with which we made a pile on both sides, six foot thick, and six foot high, but at both ends ten foot high, and six foot thick: We left a little low door to creep into, and a portal before that, made with piles of wood, that the wind might not blow into it. We next of all

fastened a rough-tree aloft over all, upon which we laid our rafters, and our main-course over those again; which lying thwart-ways over all, did reach down to the very ground on either side. And this was the fabrick of the outside of it. On the inside we made fast our bonnet-fails round about. Then we drove in stakes and made us bedstead frames, about three sides of the house, which bedsteads were double one under another, the lowermost being a foot from the ground. These we first fill'd with boughs, then we laid some spare fails on that, and then our bedding and cloaths. We made a hearth or cauld in the middle of the house, and on it made our fire; some boards we laid round about our hearth to stand upon, that the cold damp should not strike up into us. With our waft-clothes we made us canopies and curtains, others did the like with our small fails.

Our second house was not past twenty foot distant from this, and made for the watteling much after the same manner, but it was less, and covered with our fore-course: It had no piles on the south-side, but in lieu of that we piled up all our chests on the inside; and indeed the reflex of the heat of the fire against them, did make it warmer than the mansion-house. In this house we drest our victuals, and the subordinate crew did refresh themselves all day in it.

A third house (which was our store-house) we likewise made some twenty paces off from this, for fear of firing. This house was only a rough-tree fastened aloft, with rafters laid from it to the ground, and covered with our new suit of fails. On the inside we had laid small trees, and covered them over with boughs, and so stor'd up our bread and fish in it, about two foot from the ground, the better to preserve them. Other things lay more carelessly.

Long before *Christmas* our mansion-house was covered thick over with snow, almost to the very roof of it: And so likewise was our second house; but our store-house all over, by reason we made no fire in it. Thus we seem'd to live in a heap and wilderness of snow; forth a-doors we could not go, but upon the snow, in which we made us paths middle-deep in some places, and in one special place, the length of ten steps. To do this we must shovel away the snow first; and then by treading make it something hard under foot: The snow in this path was a full yard thick under us; and this was our best gallery for the sick men, and for mine own ordinary walking. And both houses and walks we did



did daily accommodate more and more, and make fitter for our uses.

The 27th we got our boat ashore, and fetcht up some of our provisions from the beach-side into the store-house; and so by degrees did we with the rest of our provisions, with extremity of cold and labour, making way with shovels thorow the deep snow, even from the sea-side unto our store-house. And thus concluded we the old year 1631.

January 1632.

The first of *January* (and for the most part of all the month) was extreme cold.

The 6th, I observed the latitude with what exactness I could, (it being very clear sun-shine weather) which I found to be 51. 52. This difference is, by reason that here is a great refraction.

The 21st I observed the sun to rise like an oval, along the horizon: I call'd three or four to see it, the better to confirm my judgment; and we all agreed that it was twice as long as it was broad. We plainly perceived withal, that by degrees as it gate up higher, it also recovered its roundness.

The 26th I observed, when the eastern-edge of the moon did touch the planet *Mars*, the *Lion's-Heart* was then in the east-quarter 21. 45. above the horizon; but all this was not done with that exactness that I have done other observations.

The 30th and 31st there appeared in the beginning of the night, more stars in the firmament than ever I had before seen by two thirds. I could see the cloud in *Cancer* full of small stars, and all the *Via Lactea* nothing but small stars, and amongst the *Pleiades* a great many small stars. About ten a clock the moon did rise, and then a quarter of them was not to be seen. The wind for the most part of this month hath been northerly and very cold; the warmest of which time we employed our selves in fetching wood, working upon our pinnace, and other things that happened. In the beginning of this month the sea was all firmly frozen over, so that we could see no water any way. I hope it will not seem tedious to the readers, if I here deliver mine own opinion, how this abundance of ice comes to be ingendered.

The land that encircles this great bay, (which lies in a broken irregular form, making many little shoald bays and guts, being moreover full of islands and dry sands) is for the most part low and flat, and hath flat shoalds adjoining to it, half a mile or a mile, that are dry at low

water. Now you must know that it flows half tide (as I have often experienced) that is, from whence the flood cometh, the water thither returneth, two hours before it be high-water or full sea. It seldom rains after the middle of *September*, but snows, and that snow will not melt on the land nor sands: At low water when it snows (which it doth very often) the sands are all covered over with it, which the half-tide carries officiously (twice in 24 hours) into the great bay, which is the common rendezvous of it. Every low water are the sands left clear, to gather more to the increase of it. Thus doth it daily gather together in this manner, till the latter end of *October*, and by that time hath it brought the sea to that coldness, that as it snows the snow will lie upon the water in flakes, without changing its colour, but with the wind is wrought together, and as the winter goes forward, it begins to freeze on the surface of it, two or three inches or more in one night; which being carried with the half-tide, meets with some obstacle, (as it soon doth) and then it crumples, and so runs upon itself, that in a few hours it will be five or six foot thick. The half-tide still flowing, carries it so fast away, that by *December* it is grown to an infinite multiplication of ice. And thus by this storing of it up, the cold gets the predomination in the sea, (which also furnisheth the springs and water in the low flat lands) that it cools it like itself. This may appear by our experience, though in all this I freely submit myself unto the better learned. Our men found it more mortifying cold to wade thorow the water in the beginning of *June*, when the sea was all full of ice, than in *December* when it was increasing. Our well, moreover, out of which we had water in *December*, we had none in *July*.

The ground at ten foot deep was frozen: The quantity of the ice, may very easily be made appear, by mathematical demonstration; and yet I am not of the opinion, that the bay doth freeze all over. For the 21st the wind blowing a storm at north, we could perceive the ice to rise something in the bay.

February 1632.

The cold was as extreme this month as at any time we had felt it this year; and many of our men complained of infirmities, some of fore mouths, all the teeth in their heads being loose, their gums swollen, with black rotten flesh, which must every day be cut away. The pain was so fore on them, that they could not eat their ordinary



dinary meat. Others complained of pain in their heads and their breasts, some of weakness in their backs, others of aches in their thighs and knees, and others of swellings in their legs. Thus were two thirds of the company under the surgeon's hand; and yet nevertheless they must work daily, and go abroad to fetch wood and timber, notwithstanding the most of them had no shoes to put on. Their shoes upon their coming to the fire, out of the snow, were burnt and scorcht upon their feet, and our store-shoes were all sunk in the ship. In this necessity they would make this shift, to bind clouts about their feet, and endeavoured by that poor help, the best they could to perform their duties. Our carpenter likewise is by this time fallen sick to our great discomforts. I practised some observations by the rising and setting of the sun, calculating the time of his rising and setting, by very true running-glasses: As for our clock and watch, notwithstanding we still kept them by the fireside, in a chest wrapt in clothes, yet were they so frozen, that they could not go. My observations by these glasses, I compared with the stars coming to the meridian. By this means we found the sun to rise 20 minutes before it should; and in the evening to remain above the horizon 20 minutes (or thereabouts) longer than it should do; and all this by reason of the refraction.

Since now I have spoken so much of the cold, I hope it will not be too coldly taken, if I in a few words make it some way to appear unto our readers.

We made three differences of the cold, all according to the places. In our house; in the woods; and in the open air, upon the ice, in our going to the ship.

For the last, it would be sometimes so extreme, that it was not indurable, no cloaths were proof against it, no motion could resist it. It would, moreover so freeze the hair on our eye-lids, that we could not see; and I verily believe that it would have stifled a man in a very few hours. We did daily find by experience, that the cold in the woods would freeze our faces, or any part of our flesh that was bare, but it was yet not so mortifying as the other. Our house on the out-side was covered two third parts with snow, and on the inside frozen and hang'd with ice-fickles. The cloathes on our beds would be covered with hoar-frost, which in this little habitation, was not far from the fire. But let us come a little nearer to it. The cook's tubs, wherein he did water his meat, standing about a yard from the fire, and which he did all day ply with melted snow-

water; yet in the night-season, whilst he slept but one watch, would they be firm frozen to the very bottom. And therefore was he fain to water his meat in a brais-kettle close adjoining to the fire; and I have many times both seen and felt by putting my hand into it, that side which was next the fire was very warm, and the other side an inch frozen: I leave the rest to our cook, who will almost speak miracles of the cold. The surgeon, who had hung his bottles of syrups and other liquid things, as conveniently as he could to preserve them, had them all frozen: Our vinegar, oil and sack, which we had in small cask in the house, was all firm frozen. It may farther in general be conceived, that in the beginning of *June* the sea was not broken up, and the ground was yet frozen; and thus much we found by experience in the burying of our men, in setting up the king's standard towards the latter end of *June*, and by our well our coming away in the beginning of *July*, at which time upon the land, for some other reasons, it was very weather.

March 1632.

The first of this month being *St. David's* day, we kept holiday, and solemnized it in the manner of the antient *Britains*, praying for his highness's happiness. *Charles* prince of *Wales*.

The 15th, one of our men thought he had seen a deer; whereupon he with two or three more desired that they might go to see if they could take it: I gave them leave; but in the evening they returned so disabled with cold, which did rise up in blisters under the soles of their feet, and upon their legs, to the bigness of walnuts, that they could not recover their former estate (which was not very well) in a fortnight alter.

The 26th three more desired that they also might go out to try their fortunes, but they returned worse disabled, and even almost stifled with the cold.

This evening the *Moon* rose in a very long oval along the horizon.

By the last of this month, the carpenter had set up 17 ground timbers and 34 saddles, and (poor man) he proceedeth the best he can, though he be fain to be led unto his labour.

In brief, all this month hath been very cold. The wind about the N. W. the snow as deep as it hath been all this winter: but to answer an objection that may be made; you were in a wood (may some men say unto us) and therefore you might

might make fire enough to keep you from the cold. It is true, we were in a wood, and under a south-bank too, or otherwise we had all starved. But I must tell you withal, how difficult it was to have wood in a wood: And first, I will make a muster of the tools we had. The carpenter in his chest had two axes indeed, but one of them was spoiled in cutting down wood to pile about our house before *Christmas*. When we came first a-land, we had but two whole hatchets, which in a few days broke two inches below the sockets. I called for three of the cooper's hatchets: The carpenter's axe and the cooper's belt hatchet I caused to be locked up; the other two hatchets to be new helv'd, and the blades of the two broken hatchets to be put into a cleft piece of wood, and then to be bound about with rope-yarn, as fast as might be, which must be repaired every day; and these were all the cutting-tools we had: Moreover, the 6th of *Feb.* the carpenter had out his best axe about something, and one of the company in his absence, by his undiscreeit handling of it, brake that too, two inches below the socket; we must henceforth order these pieces of tools the best we could; wherefore I gave order that the carpenter should have one of the cooper's hatchets; they that lookt for timber in the woods the other; and they that cut down wood to burn, were to have the two pieces: And this was before *Christmas*.

The three that were appointed to look crooked timber, must stalk and wade (sometimes on all four) thorow the snow; and where they saw a tree likely to fit the mould, they must first heave away the snow, and then see if it would fit the mould, if not, they must seek farther; if it did fit the mould, then they must make a fire to it, to thaw it, otherwise it could not be cut; then cut it down and fit it to the length of the mould, and then with other help get it home, a mile thorow the snow.

Now for our firing. We could not burn green wood; it would so smoke, that it was not indurable; yea, the men had rather starve without in the cold, than sit by it. As for the dry wood, that also was bad enough in that kind, for it was full of turpentine, and would send forth such a thick smoke, that would make abundance of soot, which made us all look as if we had been free of the company of chimney-sweepers. Our clothes were quite burnt in pieces about us, and for the most part we were all without shoes: but to our fuellers again. They must first (as the former) go up and down in the snow, till

they saw a standing dry tree; for that the snow covered any that were fallen. Then they must hack it down with their pieces of hatchets, and then others must carry it home thorow the snow. The boys with cutlasses must cut boughs for the carpenter; for every piece of timber that he did work, must first be thaw'd in the fire, and he must have a fire by him, or he could not work. And this was our continual labour throughout the forementioned cold, besides our tending of the sick and other necessary imployments.

April 1632.

The first of this month being *Easter-day*, we solemnized as religiously as God did give us grace. Both this day, and the two following holy-days were extreme cold: And now fitting all about the fire, we reasoned and considered together upon our estate. We had five men (whereof the carpenter was one) not able to do any thing. The boatwain and many more were very infirm; and of all the rest we had but five that could eat of their ordinary allowance. The time and season of the year came forwards apace, and the cold did very little mitigate. Our pin-nace was in an indifferent forwardness, but the carpenter grew worse and worse. The ship (as we then thought) lay all full of solid ice, which was weight enough to open the seams of any new and sound vessel, especially of one that had lain so long upon the ground as she had done. In brief, after my disputations, and laying open of our miserable and hopeles estates, I resolved upon this course: That notwithstanding it was more labour, and tho' we declined weaker still and weaker; yet that with the first warm weather, we would begin to clear the ship, that so we might have the time before us, to think of some other course. This being ordered, we lookt to those tools we had, to dig the ice out of her; we had but two iron-bars ashore, the rest were sunk in the ship, and one of them was broken too: Well, we fell to fitting of those bars, and of four broken shovels that we had, with which we intended (as after we did) to dig the ice out of her, and to lay that ice on a heap, upon the larboard-bow, and to sink down that ice to the ground so fast, that it should be a barricado to us, when the ice brake up, which we feared would tear us all to pieces.

The 6th was the deepest snow we had all this year, which filled up all our paths and ways, by which we were used to go unto the wood; this snow was something moist-

er and greater than any we had all this year; for formerly it was as dry as dust, and as small as sand, and would drive like dust with the wind.

The weather continued with this extremity until the 15th, at which time our spring was harder frozen, than it had been all the year before. I had often observed the difference betwixt clear weather and misty refractious weather, in this manner. From a little hill which was near adjoining to our house, in the clearest weather, when the sun shone with all the purity of air that I could conceive, we could not see a little island which bare off us S. S. E. some four leagues off; but if the weather were misty (as aforesaid), then we should often see it from the lowest place. This little island I had seen the last year, when I was on *Danby* island.

The 13th, I took the height of it instrumentally, standing near the sea-side, which I found to be 34 minutes, the sun being 28 degrees high. This shows how great a refraction here is. Yet may this be noted by the way, that I have seen the land elevated, by reason of the refractious air, and nevertheless the sun hath risen perfectly round.

The 16th was the most comfortable sunshine day that came this year; and I put some to clear off the snow from the upper decks of the ship, and to clear and dry the great-cabin, by making fire in it. Others I put to dig down thorow the ice, to come by our anchor, that was in shoal water, which the 17th in the afternoon we got up and carried aboard.

The 18th I put them to dig down thorow the ice, near the place where we thought our rudder might be. They digged down and came to water, but no hope of finding of it: We had many doubts that it might be fanded, or that the ice might have carried it away already the last year; or if we could not recover it by digging before the ice brake up and drove, there was little hope of it.

The 19th we continued our mining work aboard the ship, and returned in the evening to supper ashore. This day the master and two others desired that they might lie aboard, which I condescended to; for indeed they had lain very discommodiously all the winter, and with sick bed-fellows, as I my self had done, every one in that kind taking their fortunes. By lying aboard they avoided the hearing of the miserable groanings, and lamenting of the sick men all night long, enduring (poor souls) intolerable torments.

By the 21st we had laboured so hard, that we came to see a cask, and could like-

wise perceive that there was some water in the hold. This we knew could not be thawed water, because it did still freeze night and day very hard aboard the ship, and on the land also.

By the 23d in the evening, we came to pierce the forementioned cask, and found it was full of very good beer, which did much rejoyce us all, especially the sickmen, notwithstanding that it did taste a little of bulge-water. By this we at that time thought that the holes we had cut to sink the ship were frozen, and that this water had stood in the ship all the winter.

The 24th we went betimes in the morning to work, but found that the water was risen above the ice, where we had left work, about two foot; for that the wind had blown very hard at north the night before. In the morning the wind came about south, and blew hard, and although we had little reason for it, we yet expected a lower veer of the water. I thereupon put them to work on the out-side of the ship, that we might come to the lower hole, which we had cut in the stern-shoots. With much labour by night, we digged down thorow the ice to it, and found it unfrozen, (as it had been all the winter) and to our great comforts, we found that on the inside, the water was ebb'd even with the hole; and that on the outside it was ebb'd a foot lower. Hereupon I made a shot-board to be nail'd on it, and to be made as tight as might be, to try if the water came in any other way. As to the other two holes, we had digged on the inside, we found them frozen. Now I did this betimes, that if we found the ship foundered, we might resolve of some course to save or prolong our lives, by getting to the main before the ice were broken up; for as for our boat it was too little, and bulged; besides that, our carpenter was by this time just hope, and therefore little hope had we of our pinnace: But which was worst of all, we had not four men able to travel through the snow over the ice, and in this miserable estate were we at this present.

The 25th we satisfied our longing; for the wind now coming about northerly, the water rose by the ship's-side (where we had digged down) a foot and more above the hold, and yet did not rise within board. This did so encourage us, that we fell very lustily to digging, and to heave out the ice out of the ship. I put the cook and some others to thaw the pumps, who by continual pouring of hot water into them, by the 27th in the morning they had cleared one of them, which we assaying, found that it did deliver water very sufficiently. Thus we fell to pumping; and having cleared

cleared  
have a  
thus i  
had cl  
found  
found  
any th

The  
sign co  
The  
work,  
cold w  
our sic  
This c  
ed late  
made  
ceremo  
endeav  
means  
merry  
what g  
Easter  
all the

At  
were f  
as bee  
had lit  
order

The  
night  
night,  
of out  
the bee  
to hal  
porrid  
hot as  
ordina  
and pe  
beef m  
our Th  
day ni  
Wedne  
Friday  
our be  
did us  
Christ  
mouth  
fish, r  
this.  
in a m  
pan w  
would  
well  
most  
drink  
above  
be de  
tentim  
fettle  
if we  
long  
broth  
flesh

cleared two foot water, we then left to have a second trial. Continuing our work thus in digging the ice, by the 28th we had cleared our other pump, which we also found to deliver water very well: We found likewise that the water did not rise any thing in hold.

The 29th it rained all day long a sure sign to us, that winter was broken up.

The 30th we were betimes aboard at work, which day and the 31st were very cold with snow and hail, which did pinch our sick men more than any time this year. This evening being *May* even, we returned late from our work to our house, and made a good fire, and chose ladies, and did ceremoniously wear their names in our caps, endeavouring to revive ourselves by any means. And because you hear us in this merry humour, I will make known to you what good cheer we kept at *Christmas* and *Easter*; and how we had dieted our selves all the winter.

At our coming forth of *England*, we were stored with all sort of sea provisions; as beef, pork, fish, &c. but now that we had little hope of refreshing, our cook did order it in this manner.

The beef which was to serve on *Sunday* night to supper, he did boil on *Saturday* night, in a kettle full of water, with a quart of oat-meal, about an hour. Then taking the beef out, he boiled the rest till it came to half the quantity; and this we called porridge, which with bread we did eat, as hot as we could; and after this we had our ordinary of fish. *Sunday* dinner we had pork and peas, and at night the former boiled beef made more porridge. In this manner our *Tuesday's* beef was boiled on the *Monday* nights; and the *Thursday's* upon the *Wednesday*. And thus all the week (except *Friday* night) we had some warm thing in our bellies every supper. And (surely) this did us a great deal of good. But soon after *Christmas* many of us fell sick, and had sore mouths, and could neither eat beef, pork, fish, nor porridge. Their diet was only this. They would pound bread or oatmeal in a mortar to meal; then fry it in a frying-pan with a little oil, and so eat it. Some would boil peas to a soft paste, and feed as well as they could upon that. For the most part of the winter, water was our drink. In the whole winter we took not above a dozen foxes; many of which would be dead in the traps two or three days oftentimes; and then when the blood was settled, they would be unwholesome. But if we took one alive, that had not been long in the trap, him we boiled, and made broth for the weakest sick men of him; the flesh of it being soft boiled, they did eat also.

Some white partridges we kill'd; but not worth the mentioning towards any refreshing.

We had three sorts of sick men: Those that could not move nor turn themselves in their beds, who must be tended like an infant. Others that were as it were crippled with scurvy-aches. And others, lastly, that were something better. Most of all had sore mouths. You may now ask me, how these infirm men could work? I will tell you: Our surgeon (who was diligent, and a sweet-condition'd man as ever I saw) would be up betimes in the mornings; and whilst he did pick their teeth, and cut away the dead flesh from their gums, they would bathe their own thighs, knees, and legs. The manner whereof was this: There were no trees, buds, nor herb, but we made trial of it; and this being first boiled in a kettle, and then put in a small tub and basin, they put it under them, and covered themselves with clothes upon it. This would so mollify the grieved parts, that although when they did rise out of their beds they would be so crippled, that they could scarce stand; yet after this done half an hour, they would be able to go (and must go) to wood through the snow, to the ship, and about their other business. By night they would be as bad again; and then they must be bathed, anointed, and their mouths again dress'd, before they went to bed. And with this diet, and in this manner, did we go through our miseries.

I ever doubted that we should be weakest in the spring; and therefore had I reserv'd a ton of *Alicant* wine unto this time. Of this, by putting seven parts of water to one of wine, we made some weak beverage; which (by reason that the wine, by being frozen, had lost his virtue) was little better than water. The sicker sort had a pint of *Alicant* a day, by itself; and of such poor *aqua vite* too, as we had, they had a little dram allowed them next their hearts every morning; and thus we made the best use of what we had, according to the seasons.

*May*, 1632.

The first of this month we went aboard betimes to heave out the ice.

The second it did snow and blow, and was so cold, that we were fain to keep house all day. This unexpected cold at this time of the year did so vex our sick men, that they grew worse and worse; we cannot now take them out of their beds, but they would swoon, and we had much ado to fetch life in them.

The third, those that were able went aboard betimes to heave out the ice. The snow

snow was now melted in many places upon the land, and flood in places; and now there came some cranes and geese to it.

The fourth, while the rest wrought aboard, I and the surgeon went with a couple of pieces, to see if we could kill any of these fowl for our sick men, but never did I see such wild-fowl, they would not incline to see any thing move. Wherefore we returned within two hours, not being able to endure any longer stalking thro' the snow, and the wet places. I verily thought that my feet and legs would have fallen off, they did so torment me with aching.

The sixth, *John Warden*, the master of my ship's chief mate, died; whom we buried in the evening (in the most christian-like manner we could) upon the top of a bare hill of sand, which we called *Brandon-Hill*.

The weather continued very cold; freezing so hard in a night, that it would bear a man.

By the ninth we were come to, and got up our five barrels of beef and pork, and had found four butts of beer, and one of cyder, which God had preserved for us. It had lain under water all the winter; yet we could not perceive that it was any thing the worse. God make us ever thankful for the comfort it gave us.

The tenth it did snow and blow so cold, that we could not stir out of the house; yet nevertheless by day the snow vanisheth away apace on the land.

The eleventh we were aboard betimes, to heave out ice.

The twelfth at night we had cleared out all the ice out of the hold, and found likewise our store-shoes, which had lain soak'd in the water all the winter; but we dried them by the fire, and fitted our selves with them. We struck again our cables into the hold. There stow'd we a butt of wine also, which had been all the winter on the upper-deck, and continued as yet all firm frozen. We fitted the ship also, making her ready to sink her again, when the ice brake up. We could hitherto find no defect in her, and therefore well hop'd that she was staunch. The carpenter, nevertheless, did earnestly argue to the contrary; alledging, that now she lay on the ground, in her dock; and that the ice had fill'd her defects; and that the ice was the thing that kept out the water; but when she should come to labour in the sea, then doubtless she would open. And indeed we could now see quite through her seams betwixt wind and water. But that which did trouble us as ill as all this, was the loss of her rudder; and that she now lay in the very strength of the tide, which, when-

ever the ice drove, might tear her to pieces. But we still hoped the best.

The thirteenth, being the sabbath-day, we solemniz'd, giving God thanks for those hopes and comforts we daily had; the weather by day-time was pretty warm, but it did freeze by night; yet now we could see some bare patches of land.

The fourteenth we began a new sort of work. The boatwain and a convenient number fought ashore the rest of our rigging, which was much spoiled by pecking of it out of the ice; and this they now fell to fittings, and to serving of it. I set the cooper to fit our cask, although (poor man) he was very infirm; my intent being to pass some cables under the ship, and so to baoy her up with these casks, if otherwise we could not get her off. Some others I ordered to go see if they could kill some wild-fowl for our sick men, who grew worse and worse. And this is to be remember'd, that we had no shot but what we did make of the aprons of our guns, and some old pewter that I had; for the carpenter's sheet-lead we durst not use.

The fifteenth I manured a little patch of ground, that was bare of snow, and sowed it with peason, hoping to have some of the herbs of them shortly to eat; for as yet we can find no green thing to comfort us.

The eighteenth our carpenter, *William Cole* died, a man generally bemoaned of us all, as much for his innate goodness, as for the present necessity we had of a man of his quality. He had endured a long sickness with much patience, and made a godly end. In the evening we buried him by *Mr. Warden*, accompanied with as many as could go; for three more of our principal men lay then expecting a good hour. And now were we in the most miserable estate that we were in all the voyage. Before his extreme weakness he had brought the pinnacle to that pass, that she was ready to be boulded and trennel'd, and to be joined together to receive the plank; so that we were not so discouraged by his death, but that we did hope of our selves to finish her, if the ship proved unserviceable.

This our pinnacle was 27 foot by the keel, 10 foot by the beam, and 5 foot in hold. She had 17 ground timbers, 34 principal saddles, and eight short saddles. He had contrived her with a round stern, to save labour; and indeed she was a well proportioned vessel. Her burthen was twelve or fourteen ton.

In the evening the master of our ship, after burial, returning aboard ship, and looking about her, discover'd some part of our gunner, under the gun-room ports. This



man we had committed to the sea at a good distance from the ship, and in deep water, near six months before.

The nineteenth in the morning I sent men to dig him out. He was fast in the ice, his head downward, and his heel upward, for he had but one leg, and the plaster was yet at his wound. In the afternoon they had digged him clear out; after all which time he was as free from noisomeness as when we first committed him to the sea. This alteration had the ice and water, and time only wrought on him, that his flesh would slip up and down upon his bones, like a glove on a man's hand. In the evening we buried him by the others. This day one *George Ugganes* (who could handle a tool best of us all) had indifferent well repaired our boat; and so we ended this mournful week. The snow was by this time prettily well wasted in the woods; and we having a high tree, on the highest place of the island, which we called our watch-tree, from the top of it we might see into the sea, but found no appearance of breaking up yet.

The twentieth, being *Whit-sunday*, we fastly solemnized, and had some taste of the wild-fowl, but not worth the writing.

The 21st was the warmest sun-shine day that came this year. I sent two a fowling; and my self taking the master, the surgeon, and one more, with our pieces and our dogs, we went into the woods to see what comfort we could find. We wandered from the house eight miles, and search'd with all diligence; but returned comfortless, not an herb nor leaf eatable, that we could find. Our fowlers had as bad success. In the woods we found the snow partly wasted away, so that it was passable. The ponds were almost unthaw'd; but the sea from any place we could see all firm frozen.

The snow doth not melt away here with the sun or rain, and so make any land-floods, as in *England*; but it is exhaled up by the sun, and suck'd full of holes, like honey-combs, so that the sand whereon it lies will not be at all wetted. The like observation we also had; that let it rain ever so much, you shall see no land-floods after it.

The 22d we went aboard the ship, and found that the had made so much water, that it was now risen above the ballast, which made us doubt again of her foundeness. We fell to pumping, and pump'd her quite dry. And now by day sometimes we have such hot glooms, that we cannot endure in the sun, and yet in the night it would freeze very hard. This unnaturalness of the season did torment our men, that they now grew worse and worse daily.

The 23d our boatswain (a painful man)

having been long sick, (which he had heartily relisted) was taken with such a painful ach in one of his thighs, that we verily thought he would have presently died. He kept his bed all day in great extremity; and it was a maxim amongst us, that if any one kept his bed two days, he could rise no more. This made every man to strive to keep up for life.

The 24th was very warm sun-shine, and the ice did consume by the shore's side, and crack'd all over the bay, with a fearful noise. About three in the afternoon, we could perceive the ice with the ebb to drive by the ship; whereupon I sent two with all speed unto the master to beat out the hole, and to sink the ship; as likewise to look for the rudder betwixt the ice. This he presently performed; and a happy fellow, one *David Hammon*, pecking betwixt the ice, struck upon it, and it came up with his lance; who crying that he had found it, the rest came and got it up on the ice, and so into the ship. In the mean space, with the little drift that the ice had, it began to rise and mount into high heaps against the shoal shores and rocks; and likewise against the heap of ice, which we had put for a barricado to our ship, but with little harm to us. Yet we were fain to cut away 20 fathom of cable, which was frozen in the ice. After an hour, the ice settled again, as not having any vent outwards. Oh! this was a joyful day to us all; and we gave God thanks for the hopes we had of it.

The 25th was a fine warm day, and with the ebb the ice did drive against the ship, and shake her shrewdly.

The 26th I took the surgeon with me, and went again to wander the woods; and went to that bay, where last year we had lost our man *John Barton*. But we could find no sign of him, nor of other relief.

By the 28th it was pretty clear betwixt the ship and the shore, and I hoped the ice would no more dangerously oppress us; wherefore I caused the lower hole to be firmly stopp'd, the water then remaining three foot above the ballast.

The 29th, being prince *Charles's* birthday, we kept holy-day, and display'd his majesty's colours both a-land and a-board, and named our habitation, *Charles-town*, by contraction *Cbarlton*; and the island, *Cbarlton-island*.

The 30th we launched our boat, and had intercourse sometimes betwixt the ship and the shore by boat, which was news to us.

The last of this month we found on the beach some vetches to appear out of the ground, which I made the men to pick up, and to boil for our sick men.

## Our Wintering at Winter's Forest.

This day we made an end of fitting all our rigging and sails; and it being a very hot day, we did dry and new make our fish in the sun, and aired all our other provisions. There was not a man of us at present able to eat of our salt provisions, but myself and the master of my ship. It may be here remember'd, that all this winter we had not been troubled with any rheums, nor flegmatical diseases. All this month the wind hath been variable, but for the most part northerly.

June, 1632.

The four first days it did snow, hail, and blow very hard; and was so cold, that the ponds of water did freeze over; and the water in our cans did freeze in the very house; our clothes also that had been washed, and hung out to dry, did not thaw all day.

The fifth it continued blowing very hard in the broad-side of the ship, which did make her swag and wallow in the dock for all she was funken, which did much shake her. The ice withal did drive against her, and gave her many fearful blows. I resolved to endeavour to hang the rudder; and when God sent us water (notwithstanding the abundance of ice that was yet about us) to have her farther off. In the afternoon we under-run our small cable to our anchor, which lay a-stern in deep water, and so with some difficulty gate up our anchor. This cable had lain slack under foot, and under the ice, all the winter, and we could never have a clear flatch from ice, to have it up before now; we found it not a jot the worse. I put some to make colrakes, that they might go into the water, and make a hole in the sands to let down our rudder.

The sixth we went about to hang it. And our young lustiest men took turns to go into the water, and to rake away the sand; but they were not able to endure the cold of it half a quarter of an hour it was so mortifying; yea, use what comforts we could, it would make them swoon and die away. We brought it to the stern-post, but were then fain to give it over, being able to work at it no longer. Then we plugg'd up the upper holes within board, and fell to pumping the water again out of her.

The seventh we wrought something about our rudder, but were again forced to give over, and to put out our cables over-board, with messengers unto them; the anchors lying to that pass, that we might keep her right in her dock, when we should have brought her light.

By the eighth at night we had pump'd

all the water out of her; and she at a high water would fleet in her dock, though she were still dock'd in the sands almost four foot. This made us to consider what was to be done. I resolved to heave out all the ballast, for that the bottom of her being so soak'd all the winter, I hoped was so heavy, that it would bear her. If we could not get her off that way, I then thought to cut her down to the lower deck, and take out her masts; and so with our cask to buoy her off.

The ninth betimes in the morning we fell to work. We hoisted out our beer and cyder, and made a raft of it, fastening it to our shore-anchor. The beer and cyder sunk presently to the ground, which was nothing strange to us; for that any wood or pipe-staves that had lain under the ice all the winter, would also sink down, so soon as ever it was heav'd over-board. This day we heav'd out ten tun of ballast. And here I am to remember God's goodness towards us in sending those forementioned green vetches; for now our feeble sick men, that could not for their lives stir these two or three months, can endure the air and walk about the house; our other sick men gather strength also, and it is wonderful to see how soon they were recovered. We used them in this manner: Twice a day we went to gather the herb or leaf of these vetches, as they first appeared out of the ground; then did we wash and boil them, and so with oil and vinegar that had been frozen, we did eat them. It was an excellent sustenance and refreshing; the most part of us eat nothing else. We would likewise bruise them, and take the juice of them, and mix that with our drink. We would eat them raw also with our bread.

The eleventh was very warm weather, and we did hang our rudder. The tides did now very much deceive us; for a northerly wind would very little raise the water. This made us doubt of getting off our ship.

The thirteenth I resolved of the latitude of this place; so that having examined the instruments, and practised about it this fortnight, I now found it to be in 52 deg. and 3 min.

The fourteenth we had heaved out all the ballast, and carried all our yards, and every thing else of weight ashore, so that we now had the ship as light as possible it could be.

The fifteenth we did little but exercise ourselves; seeing that by this time our men that were most feeble, are now grown strong, and can run about. The flesh of their gums became firtled again, and their teeth fasten'd; so that they can eat beef with their vetches.

This day I went to our watch-tree; but the sea (for any thing I could perceive to the contrary) was still firm frozen; and the bay we were in, all full of ice, having no way to vent it.

The sixteenth was wondrous hot, with some thunder and lightning, so that our men did go into the ponds ashore to swim and cool themselves; yet was the water very cold still. Here had lately appeared divers sorts of flies; as butter-flies, butchers-flies, horse-flies, and such an infinite abundance of blood-thirsty muscatoes, that we were more tormented with them than ever we were with the cold weather. These (I think) lie dead in the old rotten wood all the winter, and in the summer they revive again. Here be likewise infinite company of ants, and frogs in the ponds upon the land; but we durst not eat of them, they look'd so speckled like toads. By this time were neither bears, foxes, nor fowl to be seen; they are all gone.

The seventeenth the wind came northerly, and we expecting a high tide in the morning betimes, put out our small cable astern out at the gun-room-port; but the morning tide we had not water by a foot. In the evening I had laid marks, by stones, &c. and methoughts the water did flow apace. Making signs therefore for the boat to come ashore, I took all that were able to do any thing with me aboard; and at high-water (altho' he wanted something to rise clear out of her dock) yet we heav'd with such a good-will, that we heav'd her thro' the sand into a foot and a half deeper water. Further then so, we durst not yet bring her, for that the ice was all thick about us. After we had moor'd her, we went all to prayers; and gave God thanks that had given us our ship again.

The eighteenth we were up betimes; the cooper, and some with him, to fill fresh water; myself with some others to gather stones at low water; which we piling up in a heap, at high water the cockswain and his gang fetch'd them aboard; where the master with the rest stowed them. The ship at low water had a great lust to the offing; by which means we could the better come and stop the two upper holes firmly; after which we fitted other convenient places, to make others to sink here, if occasion were.

The nineteenth we were all up betimes to work, as afore specified. These two days our ship did not fleet, and it was a happy hour when we got her off, for that we never had such a high tide all the time we were here. In the evening I went up to our watch-tree; and this was the first time I could see any open water any way, except that little by the shore-side, where we

were. This put us in some comfort, that the sea would shortly break up, which we knew must be to the northward, seeing that way we were certain, there was above two hundred leagues of sea.

The twentieth we laboured as afore said. The wind at N. N. W. The tide rose so high, that our ship flected, and we drew her further off, into a foot and a half deep water. Thus we did it by little and little, for that the ice was still wonderful thick about us.

The 22d there drove much ice about us, and within us, and brought home our stern anchor. At high water (notwithstanding all the ice) we heav'd our ship further off; that so she might lie a-float at low water.

The next low water we founded all about the ship, and found it very foul ground; we discovered stones three foot high above the ground, and two of them within a ship's breadth of the ship, whereby did more manifestly appear God's mercies to us; for if when we forced her ashore, she had stricken one blow against those stones, it had bulged her. Many such dangers were there in this bay, which we now first perceived, by the ice's grounding and rising against them. In the evening we tow'd off the ship unto the place where she rid the last year, and there moor'd her, sheering the ship night and day, flood and ebb, amongst the dispers'd ice that came athwart of us.

The 23d we laboured in fetching our provisions aboard; which to do we were fain to wade to carry it to the boat a full flight shot, and all by reason the wind was southerly. This morning, I took an observation of the moon's coming to the south, by a meridian-line of one hundred and twenty yards long, which I had rectified many weeks before-hand.

The 24th I took another observation of the moon's coming to the meridian; for which I refer you to the observations in the latter end of this journal.

Whereas I had formerly cut down a very high tree, and made a cross of it, to it I now fastened (uppermost) the king's and queen's majesties pictures drawn to the life, and doubly wrapt in lead, and so close, that no weather could hurt them. Berwix both these I affixed his majesty's royal titles; viz. *Charles the first, king of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland; as also of Newfoundland, and of these territories; and to the westward as far as Nova Albion; and to the northward, to the latitude of 80 degrees, &c.*

On the out-side of the lead, I fasten'd a shilling and a six-pence of his majesty's coin; under that we fasten'd the king's arms fairly cut in lead, and under that the arms of the city of Bristol. And this being *Midsummer-Day*,

summer-day, we raised it on the top of the bare hill, where we had buried our dead fellows; formally by this ceremony taking possession of these territories to his majesty's use.

The wind continuing southerly, and blowing hard, put all the ice upon us; so that the ship now rid amongst it, in such apparent danger, that I thought verily we should have lost her. We labour'd, flood and ebb, both with poles and oars, to heave away and part the ice from her. But it was God that did protect and preserve us; for it was past any man's understanding, how the ship could endure it, or we by our labour save her. In the night the wind shifted to the westward, and blew the ice from us, whereby we had some rest.

The 25th in the morning, the boatwain, with a convenient crew with him, began to rig the ship, the rest fetching our provisions aboard. About ten a-clock, when it was something dark, I took a lance in my hand, and one with me with a musket and some fire, and went to our *watch-tree*, to make a fire on the eminentest place of the island, to see if it would be answer'd. Such fires I had formerly made, to have knowledge if there were any savages on the main or the islands about us. Had there been any, my purpose was to have gone to them, to get some intelligence of some christians, or some ocean sea thereabouts. When I was come to the tree, I laid down my lance, and so did my comfort his musket; and whilst my self climbed up to the top of the tree, I ordered him to put fire unto some low tree thereabouts. He (unadvisedly) put fire to some trees that were to windward; so that they (and all the rest too, by reason it had been very hot weather) being fear and dry, took fire like flax or hemp; and the wind blowing the fire towards me, I made haste down the tree. But before I was half way down, the fire took in the bottom of it, and blazed so fiercely upwards, that I was fain to leap off the tree, and down a steep hill, and in brief, with much ado, escap'd burning. The moss on the ground was as dry as flax; and it would run most strangely, and like a train along the earth. The musket and the lance were both burnt. My comfort at last came to me, and was joyful to see me; for he thought verily I had been burned. And thus we went homeward together, leaving the fire increasing, and still burning most furiously. We could see no answer of it. I slept but little all night after; and at break of day I made all our powder and beef to be carried aboard. This day I went to the hills to look to the fire; where I saw how it did still burn most furiously, both to the west-

ward and northward: leaving one upon the hills to watch it, I came home immediately, and made them take down our new suit of sails, and carry them to the seaside, ready to be cast in, if occasion were, and to make haste to take down our houses. About noon the wind shifted northerly; and our centinel came running home, bringing us word, that the fire did follow him hard at his heels, like a train of powder. It was no need to bid us take down and carry all away to the sea-side. The fire came towards us with a most terrible rattling noise, bearing a full mile in breadth; and by that time we had uncovered our houses; and laid hand on, to carry away our last things, the fire was come to our town, and seized on it, and (in a trice) burnt it down to the ground. We lost nothing of any value in it; for we had brought it all away into a place of security. Our dogs in this combustion would sit down on their tails, and howl, and then run into the sea, on the shoals, and there stay. The wind shifted easterly; and the fire ranged to the westward, seeking what it might devour. This night we lay all together aboard the ship, and gave God thanks that he had shipt us in her again.

The 27th, 28th, and 29th, we wrought hard in fetching our things aboard, as likewise our water, which we must tow off with the ebb, and bring it to the ship with the flood. Moreover, we must go about the easter-point for drift-wood; for our tools were all so spent, that we could cut none. Wherefore, about some three days ago I had caused our pinnacle to be sawed to pieces, and with that we stowed our cask, intending to burn it at low waters, and such other times as we could not work in carrying things aboard. I employed the men in fetching stones; and we did build three tombs over our three dead fellows, filling them up with sand in a decent and handsome fashion. The least tomb had two tons of stones about it.

The 30th we most earnestly continued our labour, and brought our sails to yard; and by eleven a-clock at night had made a priddy ship; meaning to have finished our business with the week and the month, that so we might the better solemnize the sabbath ashore to-morrow, and so take leave of our wintering island.

The wind hath been variable a great while, and the bays are now so clear of ice, that we cannot see a piece of it, for it was all gone to the northward. Hoping therefore that it give content to some readers, I will relate the manner of the breaking of it up. It is first to be noted, that it doth not freeze (naturally) above six foot, the rest is by accident. Such is that

that ice  
thick.  
digging  
digging  
up.

In 2  
thaws  
which  
the cou  
and flo  
do fo  
breaks  
for mo  
another  
against  
comes  
may ha  
this, n  
where  
the fu  
mate i  
time it  
rable i  
it is a  
will fre  
in the  
this to

The  
were n  
cient i  
put ou  
tion ag  
and m  
swoln  
itch an  
tear th  
more t  
had ho

The  
we we  
ship to  
antient  
in the  
brief c  
this da  
were a  
profe  
ward,  
island.  
ded, v  
travell  
to the  
in the  
known  
thus w  
and ko  
march  
to wh  
There  
Vo

that ice that you may see here, six fathom thick. This we had manifest proof of, by digging the ice out of the ship, and by digging to our anchors before the ice broke up.

In May, when the heat increaseth, it thaws first on the shoal by the shore side; which when it hath done round about, then the courtes of the tides (as well by the ebb and flood, as by their rising and falling) do so shake the main ice, that it cracks and breaks it. Thus, when it hath gotten room for motion, then runs one piece of it upon another; and so bruises and grinds it self against the shoals and rocks, that it becomes abbreviated, inasmuch that a ship may have well passage through it. Besides this, much of it is thrust upon the shoals, where it is much consumed by the heat of the sun. The season here in this climate is most unnatural; for in the day-time it will be extreme hot, yet, not indurable in the sun, which is, by reason that it is a sandy country. In the night again it will freeze an inch thick in the ponds, and in the tub about and in our house; and all this towards the latter end of June.

The muscatoes, upon our coming away, were most intolerable. We tore an old ancient in pieces, and made us bags of it to put our heads in; but it was no fortification against them. They would find ways and means to sting us, that our faces were swollen hard out in pimples, which would so itch and smart, that we must needs rub and tear them. And these flies, indeed, were more tormenting to us than all the cold we had heretofore endured.

July, 1632.

The first of this month, being Sunday, we were up betimes. And I caused our ship to be adorned the best we could; our antient on the poop, and the king's colours in the main-top. I had provided a short brief of all the passages of our voyage to this day: I likewise wrote in what state we were at present, and how I did intend to prosecute the discovery, both to the westward, and to the southward, about this island. This brief discourse I had concluded, with a request to any noble minded traveller, that should take it down, or come to the notice of it; that if we should perish in the action, then to make our endeavours known to our sovereign lord the king. And thus with our arms, drum and colours, cook and kettle, we went ashore, and first we marched up to our eminent cross, adjoining to which we had buried our dead fellows. There we read morning prayer, and then

VOL. II.

walked up and down till dinner-time. After dinner we walked to the highest hills, to see which way the fire had waited. We desired that it had consumed to the westward sixteen miles at least, and the whole breadth of the island. Near about our cross and dead it could not come, by reason it was a bare sandy hill. After evening prayer I happened to walk along the beach-side; where I found an herb resembling scurvy-grass. I made some to be gathered, which we boiled with our meat to supper. It was most excellent good, and far better than our vetches. After supper we went all to seek and gather more of it; which we did to the quantity of two bushels, which did afterwards much refresh us. And now the sun was set, and the boat come ashore for us; whereupon we assembled our selves together, and went up to take the last view of our dead, and to look unto their tombs, and other things. Here leaning upon mine arm, on one of their tombs, I uttered these lines, which though perchance they may procure laughter in the wiser sort (which I shall be glad of) they yet moved my young and tender-hearted companions at that time with some compassion. And these they were:

*I were unkind, unless that I did speed,  
Before I part, some tears upon our dead;  
And when my eyes be dry, I will not cease  
In heart to pray, their bones may rest in  
peace:  
Their better parts (good souls) I know were  
given,  
With an intent they should return to heaven.  
Their lives they spent, to the last drop of  
blood,  
Seeking God's glory, and their country's  
good;  
And as a valiant soldier, rather dies,  
Than yields his courage to his enemies;  
And stops their way, with his beav'd flesh,  
When death  
Hath quite depriv'd him of his strength and  
breath:  
So have they spent themselves, and here they  
lie  
A famous mark of our discovery.  
We that survive, perchance may end our  
days  
In some employment meriting no praise:  
And in a dungbil rot; when no man names  
The memory of us, but to our shames,  
They have out-liv'd this fear, and their brave  
ends,  
Will ever be an honour to their friends.  
Why drop you so, mine eyes? Nay rather  
pour  
My sad departure in a solemn shower.*

6 C

The



## Our Wintering at Winter's Forest.

*The winter's cold, that lately froze our blood,  
Now were it so extreme, might do this good,  
As make these tears, bright pearls: which I would lay,  
Tomb'd safely with you, till doom's fatal day.  
That in this solitary place, where none  
Will ever come to breathe a sigh or groan,  
Some remnants might be extant, of the true  
And faithful love I ever tender'd you.  
Oh, rest in peace, dear friends, and let it be  
No pride to say the sometime part of me.  
What pain and anguish doth afflict the dead,  
The heart and stomach, when the limbs are dead;  
So griev'd, I kiss your graves, and vow to die  
A foster-father to your memory.*

FAREWEL.

So fastening my brief to the cross, which was securely wrapt up in lead, we presently took boat and departed, and never

put foot more on that island.

This island and all the rest (as likewise the main) is a light white sand, covered over with a white moss, and full of shrubs and low bushes; excepting some bare hills, and other patches. In these bare places the sand will drive with the wind like dust. It is very full of trees, as spruce and juniper; but the biggest tree I saw was but a foot and a half over. At our first coming hither, we saw some deer, and kill'd one, but never any since. Foxes all the winter we saw many, and kill'd some dozen of them; but they went all away in May. Bears we saw but few, but kill'd none. We saw some other little beasts. In May there came some fowl, as ducks and geese; of which we kill'd very few. White partridges we saw, but in small quantities; nor had we any shot to shoot at them. Fish we could never see any in the sea; nor no bones of fish on the shore side, excepting a few cockle-shells, and yet nothing in them neither. Other things remarkable I have before mentioned.

O U R

O U R  
D I S C O V E R Y  
A N D  
Coming Home.

July 1632.

**M**onday being the 2d of July, we were up betimes, about stowing and fitting our ship and weighing of our anchors, which when the last was a-trip, we went to prayer, beseeching God to continue his mercies to us, and rendering him thanks for having thus restored us. Our ship we found no defect in; we had abundance of such provisions as we brought out of *England*, and we were in indifferent health, and did gather strength daily. This being done, we weighed and came cheerfully to sail: The wind at N.W. bad to get away; wherefore we stood over to *Danby* island, to take in more wood, and there to be ready to take the opportunity of a fair wind. I went ashore my self with the boat; for that some of the company had told me, that they had seen stakes the last year droven into the ground. When we came ashore, whilst some gathered wood, I went to the place, where I found two stakes droven into the ground about a foot and a half, and firebrands, where a fire had been made by them. I pull'd up the stakes, which were about the bigness of my arm; and they had been cut sharp at the ends with a hatchet, or some other good iron tool, and driven in as it were with the head of it. They were distant about a stone's throw from the water-side. I could not conceive to what purpose they should be there set, unless it were for some mark for boats. This did augment my desire to speak with the savages; for without doubt they could have given notice of some christians with whom they had some commerce. About four in the evening I returned aboard with a boat's lading of wood, and the wind something favouring we weighed, with our lead seeking out a channel amongst these perilous shoals. In the evening the wind opposing it self, we came to anchor betwixt *Charleton* island, and that island we named the last year, (in memory of that honourable gentleman, Mr. *Thomas Carie*, one of the bed-chamber to the king) *Carie's* island, where we rid all night.

The 3d at break of day, we weighed with a bare wind, and founding up and down for a channel, we were many times in five and four fathom water. The wind larging upon us, we stood away west: By noon we saw all ice to the northward of us; endeavouring therefore to compass about the western point of *Charleton* island, and so to seek to the southward, we found it all shoals, rocks and braches. By four in the afternoon we saw the western land, but all full of ice; whereupon as the wind favoured us, we stood along it in sight to the northward.

The 4th was calm, but so very thick fog with all, that we could not see a pistol-shot about us: Wherefore we came to an anchor, and there rid all this day and the next night.

The 5th at three in the morning we weighed; but ice being all about us, we knew not which way to turn us: Now to avoid telling the same thing twenty times, we were continually, 'till the 22d, so pestered and tormented with ice, that it would seem incredible to relate it: Some we were so blinded with fog, that we could not see about us; and being now become wilful in our endeavours, we should so strike against the ice, that the forepart of the ship would crack again, and make our cook and others to run up all amazed, and think the ship had been beaten all to pieces. Indeed we did hourly strike such unavoidable blows, that we did leave the hatches open, and twenty times in a day the men would run down into the hold, to see if she were bulged.

Sometimes when we had made her fast in the night, to a great piece of ice, we should have such violent storms, that our fastning would break, and then the storm would beat us from piece to piece most fearfully; otherwhile we should be fast inclosed among great ice as high as our poop. This was made (as I have formerly said) by one piece running upon another, which made it draw eight or ten fathom water.

Best

Besides which, the lowermost would rise from underneath, and strike us under the bulge, with pieces of five, six, yea of eight ton, that many times we have pump'd clear water for an hour together, before we could make the pump suck. Amongst these several and hourly dangers, I overheard the men murmur and say, that they were happy that I had buried; and that if they had a thousand pounds they would give it, so they lay fairly by them; for we (say they) are destined to starve upon a piece of ice. I was fain to endure all this with patience, and to comfort them up again, when I had them in a better humour.

The 22d having been vext with a storm all last night, and this morning with a thick fog, we drove in thirteen fathom water. About noon it cleared, and we saw land, and at the instant had a good observation, whereby we knew it to be cape *Henrietta Maria*. I made the master stand in with it, and in the mean time we fitted a cross, and fastened the king's arms and the arms of the city of *Bristol* to it; we came to an anchor within a mile of the shore, in six fathom water; so we hoisted out the boat, and took our arms and our dogs, and went ashore. Upon the most eminent place we erected the cross, and then seeking about, we soon saw some deer, and by and by more and more: We stole to them with the best skill we had, and then put our dogs on them, but the deer ran clear away from them at their pleasure. We tired the dogs and wearied ourselves, but to no purpose, neither could we come to shoot at them. I saw in all about a dozen (old and young) very goodly beasts. We took half a dozen young geese on the pools, by wading in to them; and so returned to our boat vext, that now we had found a place where there was refreshing, and we could get none of it: Whereas therefore we had kept our dogs with a great deal of inconvenience aboard the ship all the winter, and had pardoned them many misdemeanors, (for they would steal our meat out of the sleeping tubs) in hope they might hereafter do us some service; and seeing they now did not, and that there was no hope they could hereafter, I caused them to be left ashore. They were a dog and a bitch; buck-dogs of a very good race. The dog had a collar about his neck, which it may be hereafter may come to light. I did see no sign at all of any salvages, nor could we find any herbs or other refreshing here.

In the evening, (being returned aboard) and the wind blowing fair at fourth, I caused the master to weigh and come to sail, and to

lose no time, for we did hope for an open sea to the N. W. This cape hath a very shoald point that lies off it, which we endeavoured to compass about.

Sailing therefore amongst shattered ice, we came to very shoald water, (four and five fathom deep) and could not avoid it. At length standing N. the water deepened, but we came amongst great pieces of ice; which by reason of some open water, there went a pretty sea. These hard pieces of ice made a most fearful noise. It proved a fair moon-shine night, otherwise it had gone ill with us. We turned amongst this ice, staying the ship sometimes within her length of great pieces, as bad as rocks; but by reason we were often forced to bear up, we did sag upon the main rand of ice, and that we thought would be worse for us, we let fall an anchor, and stood all on the decks to watch the ice's sheering of the ship (to and again) to avoid it. Thus having poles and oars to fend it, we could not keep our selves so clear, but many pieces came foul of us. We brake two of our great poles with it, which were made to be handled by four men, besides some other damages. At break of day we weighed, and sought all ways to clear ourselves of ice, but it was impossible. I conceive it impertinent to relate every particular days passages, which was much alike to us. Our endeavours were sometimes with our sails, giving and receiving 500 fearful blows in a day. Sometimes we would stop at an anchor, when we could get a little open water, and so suffer the ice to drive to leeward; other whiles we should be enclosed amongst it, and then it would so break and rise, and leap up under us, that we expected to be beaten every hour to pieces.

Moreover, we should have such storms in the dark nights, that would break the mooring we had made fast to some piece of ice for security in the night season; and then we should beat most dangerously from piece to piece till day-light, that we could see to make her fast again. I forbear to speak of thick fogs which we had daily, which did freeze our rigging day and night; besides all which, we should come into most uncertain depths, sometimes twenty fathom, next cast ten, next fifteen, then nine, rocky foul ground. The great deep ice withal, driving on these uncertain depths, did so distract the tides, and deceive us so much in our accounts, that by the 30th we were driven back so far to the eastward, and to the southward of the cape, that at five a clock in the evening it bare N. W. of us some three leagues off, contrary to our expectations. With

all these  
very lea  
watch.  
after co  
we were  
was imp  
to the e  
fore I n  
wind bl  
the sou  
get to  
shore.  
perate n  
to be f  
and sto  
shift to  
out God  
here w  
long, th  
the piec  
I caus  
conveni  
second  
remitt  
in execu  
got abo  
then in  
and th  
water (c  
come to  
ice driv  
so much  
were fa  
er water  
it. T  
most d  
mornin  
again o  
which  
our co  
heave  
stood  
to spil  
mornin  
water,  
into fo  
being  
ice wh  
off ag  
dark)  
Ab  
of ice  
of ou  
and d  
into f  
and f  
to cap  
rage,  
from  
(the b  
eight  
God's  
other  
V d

all these mischiefs our ship is now become very leaky, that we must pump every half watch. Here I called a consultation; and after consideration of all our experience, we were all of the same opinion, that it was impossible to get to the northward, or to the eastward, by reason of the ice; wherefore I resolved upon this course; when the wind blew south, it would blow the ice off the south shore, then we would seek to get to the westward, betwixt it and the shore. I must confess, that this was a desperate resolution, for all the coast we knew to be shoal and foul ground, all rocks and stones; so that if the wind should shift to the northward, there would be (without God's mercies) little hope of us. But here we must not stay; the nights grew long, the cold so increased, that betwixt the pieces of ice, the sea would be frozen. I caused the ship to be fitted, and places convenient again prepared to sink her the second time, if so be we were put to extremities. We presently put our project in execution (the wind being at south) and got about the shoals of the cape, standing then into the shoreward, to get betwixt it and the ice, we came into four fathom water (very foul rocky ground) thinking to come to an anchor all night, and let the ice drive to leeward. But still there was so much ice betwixt us and the shore, that we were fain to bear up amongst it into deeper water, and to let the ship drive amongst it. The wind increasing, we endured a most dangerous dark night of it. In the morning we fell to work to get the ship again out of the ice into some clear water, which we saw W. by S. of us. Some of our company went out upon the ice, to heave her with their shoulders, whilst others stood aboard with poles; the rest stood to spill and fill the sail. By nine in the morning we had gotten into some clear water, and stood west and by south, and into four fathom water foul ground. But being not able to weather some rands of ice which did drive, we were fain to stand off again, and (when the evening grew dark) to come to an anchor.

About midnight there came a great piece of ice (which we could not avoid) athwart of our cable, and made the ship drive and drag her anchor. This drove her into shoal water, it being very rocky and foul ground. We brought the cable to capstan, and heav'd with such a courage, that we heaved home our anchor from under it. Thus we did endeavour (the best we could) to keep our selves in eight and ten fathom water. It then pleased God that the wind blew along the shore, otherwife it had gone far worse with us.

VOL. II.

August 1632.

The first of this month at break of day, when we could see a little about us, we fell to struggle and strive again with the ice, and to get in nearer to the shore. There by reason the wind was opposite to come to an anchor, we let the ice drive to leeward, hoping that there was a clear sea to the westward. The ice drove very thick upon us, and one piece came foul of us, which did touch our spritsail-yard, and made the ship drive, but we soon clear'd ourselves of it. Then we weigh'd and stood in nearer to the shore, but the water shoalded, and there were so many great rands of ice betwixt us and the shore, that there was no coming to an anchor: So we turned betwixt the ice, many pieces of it being a-ground in shoal water, and few pieces distant one from the other a cables length. This day we saw two sea-morses on the ice.

The 2d in the morning we were glad of the break of day, having most dangerously turned amongst the ice all night, and endured many a heavy blow. We stood in again to the shoreward, to see if we could get some clear water; for to the northward it was all impassable ice. We stood into five and four fathom, but still all incompast with ice; so we stood off again into deeper water, and in the evening we were inclosed amongst extraordinary great pieces; it was a very thick fog withal, so that we made fast the ship to a great flat piece, and went to sleep and refresh ourselves after our extreme pains-taking.

The 3d, 4th and 5th we were inclosed amongst very great ice, and it blew such a storm of wind, that we sometimes endeavoured to get forward to the westward, did strike such heavy blows, that made all the forepart of the ship crack again: Then we would give over working, and let her alone amongst it; but then the ice would break and rise under us, that would endanger us as bad as the former. Our ship doth make above a ton of water every watch, which we must pump out, beside our other labour. God think on us, and be merciful to us amongst all these dangers.

The 5th at noon we were in latitude 55. 30. the cape bearing off us S. E. by E. some twelve leagues off; and this is all we have gotten since the 22d of July. All night it blew a violent gale of wind at W. N. W. and about midnight our hawker (which we had made fast to a piece of ice) broke, and we lost fourteen fathom of it. We beat all night most fearfully, being tost from piece to piece, because that in the dark we durst not venture our men to go forth on the ice for fear of losing them.

All the 6th the storm indured and drove us again with the ice, almost to the cape.

6 D

The

The 7th was the most comfortable day we had since we came out of our wintering-place; the wind came up fair at east, and we got (although with our former inconveniences and dangers) nearer to the shore, and into some open water, making good way to the westward. Moreover, our leak now stopt of its own accord, so that now we pump't but little. We sailed all night, keeping good watch on the fore-castle, bearing up for one, and loofing for another.

Thus did we the 8th also, but then the wind shifting to the N. W. it drove the ice on the shore, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water. The main ice we had some two mile to windward of us, but the set of the tide kept it off from us. At noon we were in latitude 55. 34. In the evening a range of ice drove upon us, which made us weigh and stand in nearer the shore, about 12 fathom, and there to come to an anchor. The wind increasing about midnight, the ship did drive, and was quickly in five fathom water; wherefore we let fall our shoot-anchor, and both held her. But that that troubled us was, that we expected every minute, when the main ice would come upon us, and then there would be no hope but to be put ashore.

The 9th in the morning we weighed our second anchor, the ice being within less than a mile of us. About eight in the morning a point of it came foul of us, which we prevented by weighing, and came to an anchor in three fathom and a half water. The wind continued N. N. W. which was in on the shore. This morning I caused all our empty cask to be filled with water, and the ship to be left unpumpt, and the places look't to that we had prepared to sink her; for we were at present in as apparent danger as any time this voyage, and (to our great griefs) it was all foul rocky ground: The danger of this was, if we made fast to a piece of ice that drew deep water, then as soon as it came to ground on these rocks, it would break all to pieces, and betray us to our destruction. About noon there came foul of us the point of a range of ice, which we resolv'd to endure the extremity of with an anchor, thinking to ride and break through it, we now perceiving some open water beyond it; thrusting therefore and fending with our poles, at last a great piece came thwart our hawser, and there went a pretty sea amongst it. The ship did now fall upon it so violently, that I expected every blow she would beat out her bows. At length she did drive with it, so that I thought the cable had been broken. We brought it to capstan to heave it in, but found that our shoot-anchor was broken

in the middle of the shank. We presently set our sails thereupon, endeavouring that way to edge in amongst the ice off of this perilous shore. It pleased God to favour our labour so, that by eight in the evening we got off into seven fathom; and a dark night coming on, we made fast to the biggest piece we could find. It blew fairly all night, but about midnight the wind came up at north, which was more on the shore than before.

By break of day on the 10th we were driven into four fathom, very foul ground, so that the lead did fall off the rocks three or four foot; we set our sails, and used our uttermost endeavours to edge off. Some of us went upon the ice to hale her; others stood with poles to thrust by night. At night we had gotten off into eight fathom, and made fast to the biggest piece we could find. If any man should ask why we now kept so near to the shore, in this continual danger? I answer, Because that in the offing the ice was so extraordinary thick, that we could make no way, any way through it. Moreover, when we were in that great thick ice, and that the wind came up fair at S. or S. E. or E. we could not get out of it. Wherefore we chose to run this adventure, and so prevent and overcome all dangers with God's assistance and our extreme labour.

The 11th in the morning was a thick fog, yet there sprung up a gale of wind at east, and we made in for the shore.

From the 11th till the 14th the wind continued fair, and we made all the sail we could (night and day) as the ice would suffer us. We had the shore in sight by day on one side, and the ice within two miles on the other, and we sail'd amongst disperst pieces, luffing for one, and bearing up for another.

The 14th at noon we were in latitude 57. 55. In the evening we were imbayed in ice, and stood S. W. to clear ourselves of it, but could not. But seeing from topmast-head clear water over it, we put into it; but there rose a very thick fog, and night came on withal, that we were fain to fasten to a piece of ice, expecting day and better weather.

The 15th in the morning (although the fog was very thick) we endeavour'd to get out of the ice, and stood away west; but within two hours the water shoalded from forty fathom to twenty five, whereby we knew that we had the shoalding of the western shore. Then we shaped our course to the northward, the fog continued so thick, that we could not see a pistol-shot about us. We had not stood this way two hours, but we heard the rut of the

the ice  
hideous  
voyage  
stood  
ing of  
of it,  
ice ab  
except  
water  
den g  
handl  
us to  
gulfs  
a mo  
we m  
took  
the sh  
shoald  
we tu  
set ou  
as she  
but li  
thofe  
the la  
was th  
this y  
Th  
to a g  
set ou  
shore  
about  
ice; b  
sea in  
stood  
the af  
blew f  
us, fo  
besides  
shoald  
and e  
in the  
it. B  
to tun  
all ou  
The ic  
among  
Th  
see ab  
ice; b  
ken in  
three  
a hea  
storm  
beaten  
raculo  
endea  
north  
ing w  
W  
thank  
we we  
as it  
any (



We present-  
endeavouring  
the ice off of  
d God to fa-  
eight in the  
fathom; and  
made fast to  
It. It blew  
midnight the  
which was more

both we were  
foul ground,  
the rocks three  
and used our  
ge off. Some  
le her; others  
y night. At  
eight fathom,  
est piece we  
ould ask why  
shore, in this  
Because that  
extraordinary  
no way, any  
r, when we  
and that the  
E. or E. we  
Wherefore we  
nd so prevent  
n God's assist-

was a thick  
le of wind at  
shore.

with the wind  
le all the fail  
the ice would  
in sight by  
e within two  
ail'd amongst  
e, and bear-

re in latitude  
were imbayed  
near ourselves  
seeing from  
r it, we put  
y thick fog,  
that we were  
e, expecting

although the  
eavoured to  
away west,  
er shoalded  
five, where-  
shoalding of  
shaped our  
og continued  
see a pistol-  
t stood this  
the rut of  
the

the ice a-head of us, which made the most hideous noise of any we had heard this voyage. We halloed our tacks aboard, and stood to the westward in this day, hearing of it sometimes, and sometimes seeing of it, which was very large, deep and high ice above the water. We weathered it all, except some few pieces, and got into open water. About sunset there came a sudden gust N. N. W. and before we could handle our sails, it was with us, and put us to some trouble. It dallied with us by gusts till nine a clock, and then it fell into a most violent storm. We considered where we might have the clearest drift, and so took in all and let her drive her head to the shoreward. Before midnight the water shoalded on us to fifteen fathom. Then we turned her head to the eastward, and set our main-course low set, but as much as she could indure. The water deepen'd but little, and we knew that we were on those rocky shoalds which we struck on the last year; God be merciful to us. Here was the first great breaking sea that we had this year.

The 16th in the morning we were driven to a great rand of ice; to avoid which we set our fore course to, and stood to the shoreward in 13 fathom water, and then about again: We stood in a mile into the ice; but there went such a great swelling sea in it, that it was indurable, so we stood out again. About three a clock in the afternoon the storm broke up, and blew fair at N. W. which proved good for us, for we had not drift for four hours; besides, it was but two leagues betwixt the shoalds and the ice. We set all our sails and endeavoured to weather the ice, but in the evening we were still pester'd with it. By midnight we knew not which way to turn, nor what to do; so we took in all our sails, and let her drive amongst it. The ice beat us on every side, for there went amongst it a very great full sea.

The 17th in the morning, when we could see about us, we were in the midst of the ice; but with the last storm it was all broken into mammoicks, as big as a boat of three or four tons, which did give us many a heavy blow in the dark night. If this storm had taken us amongst it, it had beaten us all to pieces, without God's miraculous preservation. We made sail and endeavoured to clear ourselves of it to the northward, which by eight in the morning we had done.

We then went to prayer, and gave God thanks that had delivered us out of it. For we were hourly, for the space of six weeks, as it were in the jaws of death; yea, never any (that I have heard of) have been so

long in such long nights upon a foul shoald shore, tormented with ice, as we have now been. At noon we were in latitude 58. 20.

Now as touching the dissolution or ruin of the ice, we found that this storm had torn and shattered this rand of ice, which was on the outside, although it must have a long time to work into the main body of it. I have in July, and in the beginning of August, taken some of the ice into the ship, and cut it square two foot, and put it into the boat, where the sun did shine on it with a very strong reflex about it: And notwithstanding the warmth of the ship (for we kept a good fire) and all our breathings and motions, it would not melt in eight or ten days.

It was our practice, when we should be two days together fast to a piece of ice, to set marks on it, to see how it did consume, but it yielded us small hope of dissolving. We could not in that time perceive any diminution by the sinking of it or otherwise. Nevertheless, I think that it is ruined with storms, or consumed with heat some years, or else the bay would be filled choke-full; but I think that these secrets of nature are beyond our apprehension.

Being out of it, (but no otherways than that we yet saw it from off the decks, all to the eastward) I ordered the master to steer away north and by east, keeping the shoalding of the western shore.

The 18th at noon we were in latitude 59. 30.

The 19th we continued our course betwixt N. N. E. and the N. by E. and at noon were in latitude 61. 7. some 12 leagues off the shore. I ordered the master to shape his course north east, to look to that place betwixt *Carie's Swans-nest* and *Ne ultra*.

The 20th we were in latitude 61. 45. This day we saw some few seals about the ship.

The 21st the water shoalded so that we made account we did approach the land; but about noon the wind came up at N. E. our direct opposite. We looft as near it as we could, and as it larg'd we came to stand E. and E. and by N.

The 22d we fell with the land to the westward of *Carie's Swan's-Nest*, where we had forty fathom three leagues off. We stood in within a league of the shore, into thirteen fathom; and seeing the land to the southward of us, we compass about it, it being *Carie's Swan's-Nest*, which is in latitude 52. 00.

All the 23d we sailed N. E. and for the most part in sight of land.

The

The 24th at noon, (by judgment) we were in latitude 63. 30. having fail'd a N. E. course. All this day was a very thick fog, which about one a clock clear'd a little, so that I expected to see the land. Some of our men being better sighted, spied it out about some two leagues off from us. I knew it could be no other than *Nottingham* island, though it were something contrary to the expectation of our best mariners. We stood into it to make it. It was the north end of it, and it bare off us due east; I was soon assured of it, and I ordered the master to shape his course N. W. and by N. Both he and others were unwilling, but without much ado submitted themselves, (how loth soever) for that it was so very foul thick weather. The reasons of my resolution were these; the time of the year was far spent, and the discommodities of winter came upon us, and therefore would I make the shortest way, betwixt the lands already discovered. If I found an open sea, I had my desire, and did then intend to proceed to the utmost of our power; if we met with the land, I should then finish the discovery, it being not passing fifteen leagues from land to land, and not passing ten leagues from *Nottingham* island to the main of the north shore. We made what sail we could, it blowing a very stiff gale of wind until eight in the evening; then it began to blow fiercely, and we took in our top-sails, and stood under our two courses and bonnets. At nine it blew a violent storm at S. S. E. so that we took in our fore-sail, and let her drive N. W. All the night it continued an extraordinary storm; so that we heaved the lead every half watch; but the ship did drive so fast, that she would be paid the lead before there was twenty fathom of line out, all the night being exceeding cold withal.

The 25th the storm continued in his utmost malice, and did so perplex us, that there were but few that did sleep or eat a bit these 24 hours. About six a clock in the afternoon the storm began to slacken, yet blew there a fierce gale of wind betwixt the S. and S. W. We stood W. N. W. and made a N. W. way, when suddenly the sea became very smooth. We reasoned thereupon amongst ourselves, what might be the cause of it. We all thought it to be the leeward tide, nothing doubting what afterwards we encountered. The ship had very quick way in this smooth water.

The 26th by two a clock in the morning, we were suddenly come in amongst the ice; and it pleased God that the moon at the instant gave us so much light, that

we could see a little about us. We would have staid the ship, but it was so thick to windward, and so near us, that we durst not. We then bore up in this unexpected accident; and (I verily believe) did not escape striking the length of a foot against the ice as hard as rocks, two or three times; the ship now having way, after twelve leagues a watch. Then we stood close by a wind to the eastward, expecting day, that we might see about us: We could from top-mast-head see the ice to N. N. W. the N. W. and so round about by the S. to the E. and some there was to leeward of us. It was all flat sound ice, in main rands, and the sea as smooth as a well amongst it. This struck us all into a dump, whereupon I called a consultation of my associates; namely, *Arthur Price* master, *William Clemens* lieutenant, *John Whittered* master's mate, *Nathaniel Bilson* surgeon, and *John Palmer* boatswain, requiring them to advise and counsel me, how to prosecute our business to effect. These all went together, and reasoned amongst themselves, and then brought me their opinions in writing under their hands, viz. Our advice is, That you repair homeward from this present 26th, and that for these reasons:

First, For that the nights are long and so extreme cold withal, that we can hardly handle our sails and riggings. Secondly, The times are now subject to stormy and gusty weather, as witnesseth the present season, it having continued a storm ever since the 24th, and doth yet continue no weather to discover in. Thirdly, we doubt whether *Hudson's Streights* be so clear of ice, that it may be passable in convenient time, (winter coming now on apace) before we be frozen up, seeing the ice lies here all over the seas in rands and ranges. Fourthly, We must have a set of fair weather to pass the straight, which we may stay a long time for, if we neglect the first opportunity. Fifthly, For that our ship is very leaky, so that in foul weather we are fain to pump every glass, which is great labour. Moreover we know her to be so forely bruised with rocks and blows of the ice, that she is no more to be adventured amongst it, but in saving of our lives homewards. Besides all this, our men grow very weak and sickly, with extreme labour. Sixthly, the season of the year is so far spent, that we can expect no other weather than we have had, both lately and at present; that is to say, snow and fog freezing our rigging, and making every thing so slippery, that a man can scarce stand; and all this with the wind southerly, which if it should come to the northward,

ward,  
Seventh  
in this  
way we  
may be  
as at  
of pro  
counse  
that G  
and re  
countri  
him too

Inde  
view,  
oppose  
how w  
(with  
consent  
up, an  
hoping  
censure  
return  
vered  
cial no  
and p  
their r  
the my  
nor ma  
of God  
ingnes  
table  
helm,  
N. W.  
Some  
farther  
was by  
lesser

The  
with v  
on in c  
swellin  
cape  
that ca  
it did  
so tha  
and a  
And h  
that it  
to cor  
was u  
place)  
clearly  
the ni  
hottel  
any d  
any,  
from  
was t  
ha'd  
could  
like a  
course  
ther;  
Vo

We would  
so thick to  
that we durst  
unexpected  
did not  
foot against  
two or three  
way, after  
en we stood  
d, expecting  
s: We could  
ce to N. N.  
about by the  
s to leeward  
ice, in main  
as a well a-  
into a dump,  
ation of my  
Price master,  
bn Whittered  
e chirurgion,  
t, requiring  
me, how to  
t. These all  
thought them-  
their opinions  
viz. Our ad-  
neward front  
or these rea-

are long and  
we can hard-  
s. Secondly,  
b stormy and  
the present  
a storm ever  
continue no  
lly, we doubt  
o clear of ice,  
venient time,  
e) before we  
lies here all  
ges. Fourth-  
r weather to  
may stay a  
the first op-  
our ship is  
ather we are  
ich is great  
her to be so  
blows of the  
adventured  
of our lives  
s, our men  
with extreme  
the year is  
ect no other  
h lately and  
now and fog  
aking every  
can scarce  
ind fouth-  
the north-  
ward,

ward, then we are to expect far worse. Seventhly and lastly, that the ice lies all in thick rands and ranges, in the very way we should go, as you and all men here may see. And therefore we conclude as aforesaid, that there is no possibility of proceeding farther; wherefore we here counsel you to return homeward, hoping that God will give us a favourable passage, and return us home safe into our native countries, if we take time, and not tempt him too far by our wilfulness.

Indeed most of these reasons were in view, and I could not tell what to say to oppose them; nor any reason could I give, how we might proceed farther; wherefore (with a sorrowful heart, God knows) I confessed that the helm should be born up, and a course shap'd for England, well hoping that his majesty would graciously censure of my endeavours, and pardon my return. And although we have not discovered populous kingdoms, and taken special notice of their magnificence, power and policies, brought samples home of their riches and commodities, pried into the mysteries of their trades and traffick, nor made any great fight against the enemies of God and our nation; yet I wish our willingsness in these desert parts may be acceptable to our readers. When we bore up helm, we were in latitude 65. 30. at least N. W. and by N. from *Nottingham* island. Some were of an opinion, that we were farther to the northward; but by reason it was by judgment, I chose to set down the lesser distance.

The 27th the wind came up at N. W. with which wind we could not have gone on in our design: That wind made no great swelling sea. By noon we were athwart of cape *Charles*, so that we went in betwixt that cape and *Mill* Islands. The last night it did snow very much, and was very cold, so that all our rigging and sails were frozen; and all the land covered over with snow. And here (since I have formerly spoken that it snows very much) it will not be amiss to consider of the reasons of it. When I was upon *Charleston* island, (our wintering place) and in *June*, when the snow was clearest gone off the ground, I have in the nights, (and some of them following the hottest days) observed, whether there fell any dew or no; but I could never perceive any, and (under correction of the learned) from mois and sand, little (methoughts) was to be expected. Now of what was exhald from the snowy ice and cold sea; what could there probably be returned but the like again? Generally we continued on our course, blinded with foggy and dirty weather; and that, intermixt with snow and

Vol. II.

frost, amongst disperst pieces of ice, many of them higher than our topmast-head.

With great variety of winds, we were also driven within three leagues of both shores; so that the last of this month, we were in the narrow of the straight, which is about fifteen leagues over; the fourth shore was much pestered with ice.

September 1632.

The 1st and 2d we continued our endeavour to get on our way.

The 3d in the evening, as the weather cleared up, we did see the south end of the *Island of Resolution*.

These three days and nights had been extreme cold with fog and frost, inasmuch that our men in the evening could hardly take in our topmasts and sprectails. We have sailed thorow much mountainous ice, far higher than our topmast-head; but this day we sailed by the highest that I ever yet saw, which was incredible indeed to be related. Now as the wind comes easterly we feel another sea out of the ocean, and the ship labours with another motion, than she hath done with any that ever we observed to come out of the westward.

From the 3d to the 8th we had variety of winds, and were gotten clear out of the streights, but were now come into such a tumbling sea, (the weather dirty and gusty, and by interims calm again) that the ship did so labour and rowl, that we thought verily she would have rowled her masts by the board. This made her so leaky, that we were fain to pump every glass; yea; her seams did so open aloft, we lay all wet in her.

This was the last day that we saw any ice. The wind now favouring us, we made all the haste we could homeward. By the way, (having endeavoured, observed and experimented some things in my unfortunate voyage) I perfected up my said observations, which being after commanded to publish, I here most submissively offer unto the judicious readers, and raine our private opinion withal, concerning the feasibility of the action intended, which was to find a *Passage into the South-Sea*.

What hath been long ago fabled by some *Portuguese*, that should have come this way out of the *South-Sea*, the meer shadows of whose mistaken relations have come to us, I leave to be confuted by their own vanity. These hopes have stirred up from time to time, the more active spirits of this our kingdom, to research that merely imaginary passage. For my own part, I give no credit to them at all; and as little to the vicious and abusive wits of

6 E

later

later *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*, who never speak of any difficulties, as shoald water, ice, nor sight of land, but as if they had been brought home in a dream or engine. And indeed their discourses are found absurd, and the *Plots* (by which some of them have practised to deceive the world) meer falsities, making sea where there is known to be main-land, and land where is nothing but sea.

Most certain it is, that by the only industry of our own nation, those northern parts of *America* have been discovered to the latitude of 80 degrees and upwards. And it hath been so curiously done, (the labours of several men being joined together) that the main land hath been both seen and searcht, and they have brought this supposed passage to this pass, that it must be to the north of 66 degrees of latitude. A cold clime pestered with ice and other discommodities, and where the *Spaniards* dispositions and their weak specke ships can hardly long endure it. And withal it is thus known, that the entrance of *Hudson's Straights* is but fifteen leagues broad, in the middle not so much; and betwixt *Salisbury* island and the main, that it is but eight leagues. Then proceeding to the northwards, towards the forementioned latitude, it is but fifteen leagues from main to main. This in length is but about 140 leagues, as may more plainly appear by the map. Most infinitely pestered withal it is with the ice until *August*, and some years not passable then; yea I believe the streight is never clear of ice thorowly.

Now most probable it is, that there is no passage, and that for these reasons following.

First, that there is a constant tide flood and ebb setting into *Hudson's Straights*, the flood still coming from the eastward, which as it proceeds (correspondent to the distance) it alters his time of full sea. This also entering into bays, and broken ground, it becomes distracted, and reverses with half tides.

Secondly, here is no small fish, as cod, &c. and very few great ones, which are rarely to be seen; nor are there any bones of whales, sea-horses, or other great fish to be found on the shore, nor any drift-wood.

Thirdly, That we found the ice in the latitude of 65. 30. to be lying all over the sea in rands; and I am most certain that the shoalds and shoald-bays are the mother of it. Had there now been any ocean beyond it, it would have been broke all to pieces; for so we found it coming thorow

the streight into the sea to the eastward.

Fourthly, the ice seeks his way to the eastward, and so drives out at *Hudson's Straights*, which I have often observed, being a land upon the island of *Resolution*, and driving amongst the ice in the streight.

Now admit there were a passage, yet is it known, that it is partly narrow, for 140 leagues, and to be infinitely pestered with ice withal, as every one have found, who have gone that way. Comparing therefore some observations taken at *Bantam*, *Gulolo*, and at *Firando* in *Japan*, and the distance betwixt *Japan* and the western part of *Californi*a, with the observations taken at *Charleton* island, (referring all to the meridian of *London*) and then the distance betwixt the meridians of cape *Charles* and the western part of *Californi*a, will be found to be about 500 leagues in the latitude of 66. 00. where yet the meridians incline very much together.

To this may be added, that near about cape *Charles*, the variation is 29 degrees to the west, which is a probable argument, that there is much land to the westward; and that this streight must be very long, and that you have no time to pass it but in *August* and *September* when the nights are so long, and the weather so cold, that it will not be indurable.

Add to this, that neither can any great ships, which are fit for carrying of merchandize, indure the ice, and other discommodities, without extraordinary danger.

Moreover, a thousand leagues is sooner sailed to the southward, and about the cape *de Bona Speranza*, (where the winds are constant) and that with safety, than a hundred in these seas, where you must daily run the hazard of losing ship and lives: Put hereunto that comfort for the sick, or refreshing for your men, here is none to be had in these quarters.

Towards the latter end of *August* and in *September*, the weather grows tempestuous, and the winds incline to be westerly, that there will be but small hope of performing your voyage this way.

But let us (by way of imagination only) enlarge this streight, in this latitude, and free it of ice; yet what advantage, in speedy performance, will be gotten by this passage, if the winds be withal considered? To *Japan*, *Cbina*, and the northern parts of *Asia*, it may be the nearer cut; but in navigation, the farthest way about is well known, in fewer days to be performed, yea with lesser pains, and more safety of ship and goods.

Again: To the *East-Indies* and other parts, where we have the greatest commerce and employment of shipping, the other way is as near. What benefit of trade might have been obtained in those northern parts of *Asia*, I will not presume to speak of; holding that there is a great difference betwixt those parts and the northern parts of *America*; whereas I am sure that there is none in any place where I have been all this voyage.

The 22d of *October* we arrived in the road of *Bristol*, having been hindered and crost with much contrary tempestuous winds and weather. The ship being brought into harbour, and hal'd dry a ground to look to her, it was there found, that all her cut-water and stern were torn and beaten away, together with fourteen foot of her keel; much of her sheathing cut away, her bows broken and bruised, and many timbers crackt within board; and under the starboard bulge a sharp rock had cut thorow the sheathing, the plank, and an inch and a half into a timber that it met withal. Many other defects there were besides, so that it was miraculous how this vessel could bring us home again. Being all here arrived, we went all to church and gave God thanks for his preservation of us amidst so many dangers. I very well know that what I have here hastily written, will never discourage any noble

spirit, that is minded to bring this so long tried action to absolute effect; and it is likely withal, that there be some, who have a better understanding, and a surer way of prosecuting of it, than myself have: To whose designs I wish a happy success. And if they do but make a review of what hath been done, and give more certain celestial observations, hydrographical descriptions, or exacter practice in navigation, it will be a most commendable labour. For although I have spent some years of my ripest age, in procuring vain intelligence from foreign nations, and have travelled unto divers honourable and learned personages of this kingdom, for their instructions; have bought up whatever I could in print or manuscript, and what plot or paper soever conducing to this business, that possibly I could procure; and have served voluntarily besides, and spent some time in rendering a relation, (since my coming home) and expended withal of my own monies, in my aforesaid endeavours, and in furnishing of extraordinary necessities above 200 *l.* in ready money; yet I repent not myself, but take a great deal of comfort and joy, in that I am able to give an account (in some reasonable way) of those parts of the world, which heretofore I was not so well satisfied in.

T H E



T H E

## COPY of the LETTER

Which I left at

C H A R L E T O N,

Fastened to the Cross, July 1, 1632.

**B**E it known to any that shall haply arrive here, on this island of *Charleton*, that whereas our sovereign lord, *Charles I.* king of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. having a desire to be certified, whether there were any passage or not, by the north-west or north-westward, thorough these territories into the fourth sea: Some of the better minded merchants, of the worshipful company of merchant-adventurers of the city of *Bristol*, to satisfy his majesty therein, did voluntarily offer to set forth a convenient ship for that purpose, well mann'd, victualled, and furnished with all other necessaries. This free offer of theirs was not only commended, but graciously accepted of by his majesty. Whereupon, they fitted and furnished forth a ship, called the *Henrietta Maria*, of the burthen of 70 tuns, victualled for 18 months. A number thought convenient to manage such a business was 22 men, whereof 19 were choice able men, two youngers, and my unworthy self their commander. All which, the *Bristol* merchants did most judiciously and bountifully accommodate, and had in a readiness, the first of *May*, 1631.

The 3d of *May* we began our voyage out of the road of *Bristol*, commonly called *King's Road*, passing about the cape *Cleere* of *Ireland*, upon many courses, but reduced to a west north-west, we sailed along, and upon the 4th of *June*, we made the land of *Greenland* to the northward of cape *Farewell*, where for the space of two days, we were dangerously engaged amongst the ice. Being clear of it, we doubled cape *Farewell* to the southward, and so continued our course to the westward, continually sailing and thrusting the ship thorough much ice.

The 19th of *June* we made the island of *Resolution*, and endeavouring to compass about it to the southward, we were taken with a strong westerly wind, which drove the ice and it us, upon the shore. In that distress, (seeing it was broken grounds and main inlets into it) I sent the shallop to seek and found a place for our refuge; but when she was departed, she was in as great danger as we, and could not return to us by reason of the ice. We being now driven very near the rocks, were fain to set our sails, and force the ship into an opening, adventuring her amongst unknown dangers to avoid apparent, before we could moor her in a place (as we thought) safe from danger.

The 22d of *June*, (this inlet being full of ice) that ice upon the ebb, so jam'd one piece into another, that it altered the ordinary course of it, and it came upon the ship, and put her against the rocks, notwithstanding our utmost resistance. As the water ebb'd away, the ship hung by the keel upon a rock, and heel'd to the offing. As soon as we perceiv'd this, we made fast some hawfers to her masts, and to the rocks, to hold her upright; but all in vain; she sunk still, as the water ebb'd away; so that she was so turned over, that we could not stand in her. Hereupon, we got all upon a piece of ice, looking upon her, and praying God to be merciful to us. The rock that she hung upon, was a little abaft the mainmast, which made her hang after the head, and she sunk over so much, that the portlass of the forecaltle was in the water. At length, it pleased God the flood came, before it had ebb'd so low as the tide before and after, by a foot; and the ship rose, and was safe and sound: And thus were we miraculously delivered. With  
the

the first wind, we proceeded to the westward, continually being pestered with so much ice, that it was about the middle of July before we could attain to Sir Dudley Digge's island. And here I was put to my consideration; for whereas by my directions, I was to search especially two places; one from Digge's island to the northward, and sailing there, to go to the *Checks* and *Hubbart's* hope, and so to search it to the southward; I now finding the sea much pestered with ice in the latitude of 64. 00. and as far as we could see to the northward; and that the time was so far spent, as that before I could do any thing that way, it would be August, and then as much trouble to return again to Digge's island; and that by that time, the year would be so far spent, the nights so long and cold, that I fear'd I should be forced with shame to return into England again that year. Wherefore I took my way to the westward, by *Mansfield's* island; on which I landed twice, still hindered and incumbered with ice. Thence I proceeded westward, hoping for an open sea in the bay. We were there more troubled with ice, than in any place before; so that it was the 11th of August, before we had sight of the western land, which we made in latitude 59. 30. something to the southward of the *Checks*. We were not able to attain thither, by reason of the contrary winds and ice, but were observant of the current of the tides; which after, by experience, we found to come from the northward. We coasted along the shore, in sight of land, and in ten fathom water to the southward; and entered that inlet, which heretofore was called *Hubbart's* hope; which was the very place where the passage should be, as it was thought by the understandingest and learnedest intelligencer of this business in England. We failed to the very bottom of it, into three fathom water, and found it to be a bay of some eighteen or nineteen leagues deep. From thence we proceeded to the southward, in sight of land for the most part; and although I was as careful to keep the lead always going (it blowing a fresh gale of wind, and a pretty big sea) yet before the lead was up, the ship struck upon a flat rock; (she then being under foremast, foretopmast, maintopmast, and sprit-sail) and gave three fore knocks, and got over it. Being past this danger, we proceeded, and pass'd by port *Nelson*. Finding the land trend to the eastward, we began our discovery of it more carefully; because that no man (that ever I could hear or read of) did ever see this land before. We stood into six and five fathom;

Vol. II.

for it is very low land, and trends for the most part E. S. E. and E. by S.

The 27th of August I entered upon it, and in the name of the merchants-adventurers of *Bristol*, took possession of it to his majesty's use, naming it, *The New South-West Principality of Wales*. I brought from the land some small trees and herbs, and killed divers sorts of fowl, in sign of seizure, which I brought aboard. Not long after, (being put back to the westward with contrary winds) we spake with captain *Fox*, in a ship of his majesty's, set forth for the same purpose that we were: I invited him aboard, and entertained him with such fare as we had taken in this new discovered land; and made him a relation of all our endeavours: The like did he to us, and withal told us, that he had been in port *Nelson*, where he had put up a shallop, and found there many things which Sir *Thomas Button* had left there. The next day he departed from us, and stood to the westward, and we never saw him since. His ship, he, and all his company were very well. We continued our discovery to the eastward, and came to the eastern-point, which is in latitude 55. 06. which we named cape *Henrietta Maria*. There the land trends to the southward, and we followed it in sight, but were put off with foul weather; which being over-blown, we stood in again for the western shore, (that we might leave no part unseen) and followed it again to latitude 54. 40. The second time we also put off, with like foul weather, which made us stand to the eastward. In this way we past by some islands, and happened amongst broken grounds and rocks, in latitude 53. 30. where we came to an anchor, and sheltered ourselves some few days, shifting roads. Now the winter began to come on, and the nights to be long and cold; that amongst these dangerous places, we were fain to spend the day to look for security for the night. Here, by misfortune, our ship came aground; and that amongst great stones, as big as a man's head, where she did beat for the space of five hours most fearfully. In this time, we lightned her, and carried some of our things ashore; so that by the great favour of God, we got her off again; whereupon we named this island, *The island of God's Favour*. After that again, amongst those rocks, we were put to many extremities. At length, (having a gentle southerly wind) we stood along the eastern shore to the northward, now looking for a convenient place to winter in. And here again, were we assaulted with a violent storm, in which we lost our shallop, and were driven amongst divers dangers;

6 F

and

and seeing an opening betwixt two islands, we ventured to go in, in very foul weather. We found it to be a very good sound, and there we came to an anchor. We landed on one of them, which we named, *The Lord Weston's Island*; and mann'd out our old ship boat upon it. The other island, we named my *Lord of Bristol's Island*. Parting from hence, we stood to the southward, to look for a wintering place, because the time of discovery was past for this year. Many were our troubles amongst these islands, shoals and broken grounds, which made us strain our ground tackle for life many a time.

The 6th of *October* we arrived in this bay, it seeming a very likely place to find a harbour in; but searching the likeliest places, we found it all so shoaled flats and rocks, and stony by the shore side, that we could by no means bring our ship near the shore, but were forced to ride a league off, in three fathom and a half water.

The winter came on apace, the weather proved tempestuous, and the cold so multiplied, that our sails froze in lumps to the yards unmanuable. Neither could our only boat go from the ship, by reason of the weather. About the middle of *October*, I caused a house to be made ashore, where our sick men might the better recover; but always with an intent to take it down, if we found otherwise a place for our ship. I sent likewise men afoot, (seeing the boat could not go) to discover the island, and to see if they could find some creek or cove, but all in vain; we spent the time with hope of fairer weather, till now the cables began to freeze in the house, and the ship to be frozen over with the spew of the sea; so that we were fain to shovel the snow off our decks. Moreover, the water began so to congeal by the shore side, that the boat could hardly get ashore. Yet for all that, if the wind blew N. W. there went a very great surf on the shore, and such a great sea in the bay, that there was no lringing of our ship aground. Besides this, she would have then lain open to the E. and S. E. and S. and indeed the nearest land, all about that way, was two leagues off. Hereupon, we continued out the extremity at an anchor.

The 29th of *November*, the ice came about us on all sides, and put us from our ground tackle, and would have driven us out of the bay upon rocks and shoals, (where undoubtedly we had perished) but that by God's great goodness, it proved so warm a day, (the wind at S.) that suddenly we brought up some sail, and hoist it up with ropes, and so forced her ashore; where she beat all that night very forely.

The ship being now grounded and quiet, we considered what was best to do with her, and resolved to sink her; but the next tide, before we had any of our provisions ashore, the wind came N. W. so that the ship beat most fearfully. We got all our dry provisions up to the upper deck, and made a hole to sink her; but before she was sunk, she beat so extraordinarily, that we all thought she had been foundered. Being sunk down so low, that the water came on the upper deck, we took our boat and went all ashore, in such pitiful cold weather, that we were all so white frozen, that some sick men that were ashore before, did not know us one from another.

The next day we fell to land our provisions: First our bread, fish, and dry things, the men driven to wade in the water up to the middles, most lamentable to behold. Within two days, what with great flat pieces that stuck about us, and that which froze, it was become firm ice, betwixt the ship and the shore; so that then we were fain to carry all things on our backs a mile from the ship to the house. Within few days, the hold became so frozen, that we could not get all our things out of it, but were fain there to leave it frozen till the next year. Then we made us two other houses: Our first house was our mansion house, wherein we did all lie together; our other was to dress our victuals; and the third for a store-house; which we built a pretty distance off, for fear of fire. And now we considered of the estate we were in, we all doubted that the ship was foundered, especially our carpenter. But suppose she were found, yet was it a question, whether we could get her off in the summer, when the tides are low. Moreover, she might be spoiled, lying in the tides way, when the ice brake up; and then we should be destitute of any vessel to bring us home. The carpenter undertook to build a pinnace, of the burthen of twelve or fourteen tun, that should be ready by the spring; that if we found the ship unserviceable, we might tear her up, and plank her with the ships plank. Upon this we resolved, and by *May* brought it to that pass, that she was ready to be joined together to receive the plank. But God mercifully provided otherwise for us: We endured a bitter cold winter, in which it pleased God to visit us with sickness; so that in the beginning of *May* 1632, there was but myself, and the master and surgeon, perfectly sound, and he began to find some defect also. About the beginning of *April*, we began to dig the ice out of our ship, which by the middle of *May* we had effected.

The 24th of May the ice began to break up betwixt the ship and the shore; and about the middle of June we had off our ship, and found her to be stanch and sound, contrary to all our expectations. Before this time, about the middle of May, our carpenter died; and with him the hope of our pinnace: Master Warden died the 6th of May; our gunner, Richard Edwards, had his leg broken (which was cut off) at the capstang in August 1631, and languished till the 22d of November, on which day he died. These three men lie buried here under these tombs of stones. We lost another man, one John Barton our quarter-master, who miscarried in the little bay that is due west from this cross three miles; the ice breaking under him, so that he sunk down, and we never saw him more. The two pictures which are wrapt in lead, and fastened uppermost on this cross, are the lively pictures of our sovereign lord and lady, Charles I. and queen Mary his wife, king and queen of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, &c. The next under that is his majesty's royal arms; the lowermost is the arms of the city of Bristol.

And now we are in a readines to depart this day, and I intend to prosecute our discovery to the westward, in this latitude of 52. 03. and so the southward also, although with little hope. Failing there, I mean to haste to Digg's island, and endeavour to discover to the northward. Thus having had some experience of the dangers of the ice, shoals, and rocks of unknown

places, I thought it necessary to leave this testimony of us and our endeavours, if God should take us into his heavenly kingdom, and frustrate our return into our native country. Wherefore I desire any noble minded traveller, that shall take this down, or come to the knowledge of it, that he will make relation of it to our sovereign Lord the king's majesty, and to certify his grace, that we cannot as yet find any hope of a passage this way; and that I do faithfully persevere in my service; accounting it but my duty to spend my life to give his majesty contentment, whom I beseech God to bless with all happiness. And that they would likewise advertise our worshipful adventurers of all our fortunes; and that if as aforesaid, we perish, it was not by any want or defect in ship or victual, or other necessities; all which we have in abundance for four months and above; which if occasion be, we can prolong to six months. Thus being at present unable to express a grateful mind otherwise but in my prayers to God, I heartily beseech him to pour out his bountiful blessing upon all their honest endeavours, and to continue their noble dispositions in actions of this kind. And I faithfully promise, that if I shall come where the like letters and tokens shall be left, to make a true relation of it, as it shall be desired. So desiring the happiness of all mankind, in our general Saviour Christ Jesus, I end,

Charleton, July 2.  
1632.

Thomas James.

## *The NAMES of the several INSTRUMENTS, I provided and bought for this Voyage.*

**A** *Quadrant* of old seasoned pear-tree wood, artificially made, and with all care possible divided with *diagonals*, even to minutes. It was of four foot (at least) *semidiameter*.

An *equilateral triangle* of like wood, whose *radius* was five foot at least, and divided out of *Petiscus's* table of *tangents*.

A *quadrant* of two foot *semidiameter* of like wood; and with like care projected.

The *sights*, *centers*, and every other part of them look'd to, and tried with convenient *compasses*, to see if they had been wrong'd or alter'd. And this continually, before they were made use of.

*Staves for taking altitudes and distances in the heavens.*

A *staff* of seven foot long, whose *transome* was four foot, divided into equal parts by way of *diagonals*, that all the *figures* in a *radius* of ten thousand, might be taken out, actually.

Another of six foot, near as convenient, and in that manner to be used.

Mr. *Gunter's* *cross-staff*.

Three *Jacob's staves*, projected after a new manner, and truly divided out of the table of *tangents*.

Two of Mr. *Davis's* *back-staves*, with like care made and divided.

### *Of Horizontal Instruments.*

Two *femicircles*, two foot *semidiameter*, of seasoned pear-tree wood, and divided with *diagonals*, to all possible exactness.

Six *meridian compasses*, ingeniously made; besides some dozens of others, more common.

Four *needles* in square boxes, of six inches *diameter*, and other six of three inches *diameter*.

Moreover, four special *needles* (which my good friends Mr. *Allen* and Mr. *Marre* gave me) of six inches *diameter*, and touch'd curiously, with the best *load-stone* in *England*.

A *load-stone* to refresh any of these if occasion were, whose *poles* were marked for fear of mistaking.

A *watch-clock* of six inches *diameter*, and another lesser *watch*.

A table every day calculated, correspondent to the *latitude*, according to Mr. *Gunter's* directions in his book, the better to keep our *time* and our *compass*, to judge of our *course*.

A chest full of the best and choicest *mathematical books*, that could be got for money in *England*; as likewise Mr. *Hackluite*, and Mr. *Purchas*; and other books of *journals* and *histories*.

*Study instruments*, of all sorts.

I caused many small *glasses* to be made, whose part of time, I knew to a most insensible thing, and so divided and appropriated the *log-line* to them; making use of *Wilbrordus Snellius* his numbers of feet answering to a *degree*, and approved of by Mr. *Gunter*.

I made a *meridian-line* of 120 yards long, with six *plumb-lines* hanging in it; some of them being above 30 foot high, and the weights hung in a hole in the ground, to avoid wind. And this to take the *sun's* or *moon's* coming to the *meridian*. This line we verified, by setting it by the *pole* itself, and by many other ways.

Two pair of curious *globes*, made purposely; the workman being earnestly affected to this voyage.



This was the manner that we took the variation of the Compass, and that as often as conveniently we could, but divers of the tables, by negligence of my boy are lost; but these (I hope) may suffice to give satisfaction of our care in navigation.

July 13, 1631. These 13 Azimuths, with the *Altitu. Dec.* were taken upon a great piece of ice, with three Needles together; then the Declination was not equated, the last three set forth by themselves, proves the rest; viz. the Azimuth of W. with his Variation, the Azimuth at due W. and the Variation by the Altitude and Azimuth at due W.

These were taken 20 leagues to the eastward of Salisbury island; and two *Qyad*, one of four, another of two foot, *Semid. Semicircle* of two foot *Semid.*

Latitud.	Declin.	Al. Sun.	AZ M.	F.	T. AZ.	F.	Variat.
63	01	20 14	39 42	77 50	S.	50 11	S 27 39
63	01	20 14	35 33	90 00		62 12	S 27 48
63	01	20 14	34 24	76 30	N	65 07	S 27 23
63	01	20 14	31 24	80 18	N	72 12	S 27 30
63	01	20 14	30 57	78 53	N	73 21	S 27 40
63	01	20 14	29 00	74 50	N	77 28	S 27 42
63	01	20 14	27 10	71 00	N	98 42	N 27 42
63	01	20 14	25 52	68 28	N	96 02	N 27 34
63	01	20 14	25 00	66 40	N	94 16	N 27 36
63	01	20 14	24 00	64 50	N	92 16	N 27 26
63	01	20 14	23 30	64 00	N	91 15	N 27 44
63	01	20 14	22 30	27 55	N	89 58	N 27 33
63	01	20 14	22 20	61 34	N	89 18	N 27 44

The mean variation is 27 36 00

The variation of the altitude and azimuth of West. 27 33 00

The variation of the azimuth of West. 27 48 00

The variation by azimuth a due West. 27 35 00

The mean of these three, is, 27 38 00

July 22, 1631. These three Azimuths and Altitudes were taken upon a piece of ice, the *Magnetical Azimuths* by the sun's shade in the water, the air thick of fog, that the sun gave no perfect shade otherways, ten leagues west from *Mansfield's island*.

Latitud.	Declin.	Al. Sun.	AZ M.	F.	T. AZ.	F.	Variat.
60	33	18 25	34 06	90 00	S	64 34	S 25 26
60	33	18 25	31 34	84 48	N	70 08	S 25 04
60	33	18 25	18 25	71 35	N	82 54	N 25 21

The mean is 25 17 00

July 24, 1631. These 11 Azimuths were taken upon a piece of ice about the middle of the great bay; some of them by the shade, and some by the sight of the sun in the water, the weather being thick of fog.

Latitud.	Declin.	Al. Sun.	AZ M.	F.	T. AZ.	F.	Variat.
59	20	17 40	36 44	82 50	S	59 04	S 22 46
59	20	17 40	35 44	83 40	S	61 18	S 22 22
59	20	17 40	33 02	90 00		67 14	S 22 46
59	20	17 40	29 49	84 25	N	73 40	S 21 55
59	20	17 40	27 25	79 50	N	75 10	S 22 00
59	20	17 40	26 27	78 10	N	87 14	S 22 14
59	20	17 40	23 48	72 35	N	84 38	S 22 47
59	20	17 40	21 16	68 47	N	88 38	S 22 35
59	20	17 40	20 40	67 30	N	90 00	S 22 30
59	20	17 40	20 10	67 00	N	89 00	N 22 12
59	20	17 40	19 34	66 00	N	88 10	N 22 10

The mean is 22 23 21

July 31, 1631. These several *Azimutbs* were taken upon a piece of ice, 50 leagues off the western shore.

<i>Alt. Sun</i>	<i>AZ. M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>T. AZ.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Variat.</i>	
24 00	76 26	N	99 20	N	22 34	Latitude 58 43 43
23 35	76 00	N	98 38	N	22 38	
22 50	75 00	N	97 18	N	22 18	
22 05	73 40	N	96 04	N	22 24	Declinat. 15 43 43
20 32	71 20	N	93 32	N	22 12	
18 40	67 55	N	90 24	N	22 29	
18 30	67 30	N	90 02	N	22 32	

The mean is 22 29 34

August 1, 1631. These several *Azimutbs* were taken upon a piece of ice about forty leagues off the western shore.

<i>Alt. Sun</i>	<i>AZ. M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>T. AZ.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Variat.</i>	
26 36	83 05	N	104 36	N	21 31	Latitude 58 45 00
25 24	81 25	N	103 06	N	21 41	
24 26	78 38	N	100 42	N	22 04	
22 30	75 16	N	97 22	N	22 06	Declinat. 15 25 00
21 31	73 50	N	95 42	N	21 52	
20 10	71 27	N	93 24	N	21 57	
18 42	68 40	N	90 58	N	22 18	
18 07	67 25	N	89 56	N	22 31	

The mean is 22 00 00

August 5, 1631. These *Azimutbs* were taken upon a piece of ice, and calculated by all the figures of the canon, about forty leagues off the western shore.

<i>Alt. Sun</i>	<i>AZ. M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>T. AZ.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Variat.</i>	
23 14	79 12	N	101 02	N	21 50	Latitude 58 37 00
22 11	76 40	N	99 12	N	22 32	
21 11	75 11	N	97 28	N	22 17	
20 00	73 02	N	95 48	N	22 46	Declinat. 14 12 00
18 59	71 24	N	93 47	N	22 23	
17 15	68 35	N	90 53	N	22 18	
16 42	67 28	N	90 00	N	22 32	
15 39	65 32	N	88 18	N	22 46	

The mean is 22 25 30

These observations were taken the 10th of November, 1631. the latitude 52.03. the difference may be conceived, to grow by reason of the sun's low altitude and refraction. The others about the summer solstice, where difference of Meridians is avoided, and are more exact.

<i>Alt. Sun</i>	<i>AZ. M.</i>	<i>T. AZ.</i>	<i>Var. West.</i>
<i>G. M.</i>	<i>G. M.</i>	<i>G. M.</i>	<i>G. M.</i>
14 25	42 25	26 11	16 14
14 00	45 25	27 30	17 55
13 15	47 25	29 54	17 31
12 18	48 10	32 33	15 37
12 03	49 20	33 16	16 04
11 41	51 07	34 15	16 52
10 57	53 25	36 04	17 21
9 42	55 25	38 58	16 27
9 15	57 45	40 00	17 14
8 50	58 37	40 52	17 45

The mean is 16 57 00 West.

An

## An APPENDIX touching Longitude.

Latitude and longitude are two primary affections of the earth; by the help of these two, doth the geographer strive to represent the parts of the earth that they may keep symmetry and harmony with the whole. Latitude then is an arch of the Meridian, comprehended between the æquator and a parallel; but longitude is an arch of the æquator, intercepted between the prime meridian and the meridian of a place, the difference of longitudes being the difference of two meridians. The measure of the former is the meridian, the æquator of this latter. For the exact settling of latitudes we have many and absolute helps, so that the error, if any happen, ought to be imputed to the imperfect handling of the artist. But the longitude of a meridian is that which hath, and still wearieth, the greatest masters of geography. Nevertheless hath not the wise creator left man unfurnished of many excellent helps to attain his desire: For besides eclipses, especially of the moon, (whose leisure we must often wait, and perhaps go without, if the heavens be not propitious to us) we have the concurrence of quick pac'd inferior planets, with superior slow ones, or their appulses with some fixed star of known place, or else some other artifice derived from their motions and positions. As for the magnetical needle to argue a longitude from its variation, is altogether without ground. And though well furnish'd seamen are able by their dead reckonings (as they term them) to determine the difference of meridians somewhat near, yet by reason of the unknown quantity of a degree in a given measure, (which is the rule of the ships way) varieties of adverse winds, different sets of tides, and other involved incumbrances, they come often wide of the mark they aim at. The best way yet known to the world, is that which is deduced from the celestial appearances, which being performed by judicious artists, may in short time rectify our geographical and hydrographical charts hitherto in most places foully distorted. It is my intent here, to give an instance from two several observations drawn from the celestial bodies, by the author of this discourse, in his discovery for the N. W. at the bottom of the bay, being his wintering place, and called by the name of *Charlton*, which for judgment, circumspection, and exactness, may compare with most: The first, from the eclipse of the moon; the second, from the moons mediation of heaven, or her coming to the plan of his meridian of *Charlton*.

The captain then mindful of the lunar eclipse, which was to happen *October 29, Anno 1631*, was waiting on the moon with his instruments, but by reason of the interposition of the clouds, could make no observation on the beginning of her obscuration, but at her emerſion or total recovery of light, the heavens being more serene, he took the altitude of the superior limb of the moon 29 deg. 11 min. the latitude of *Charlton* being 52 deg. 3 min.

At that very time, myself, with some friends, found the exact time of the moons emerſion at *London* in *Greſham* college, (by a quadrant of six foot Radius, actually cut to each minute of the quadrant) to be *October 29. 13 h. 7 min. 28 sec.* or *October 30 day, at one of the clock, 7 min. and about a half in the morning*.

Now because the tables of the celestial motions, lately published by the most learned and industrious *Lansberg*, do much amuse the world, with that lofty title of perpetuity, it shall not be amiss to enquire after the time of the captain's observation from them, that so by comparing the one with the other, we may obtain the difference of meridians, which is the matter now sought after.

The middle motions of the luminaries answerable to the equal time of the emerſion of the moon, are these which follow.

		Sex.	Deg.	M.	Sec.
The middle motion of the	{ Sun	3	47	39	26
	{ Center of the sun	3	15	49	58
	{ Apogæum of the sun	1	35	45	44
The middle motion of the	{ Longitude of the moon	2	59	29	1
	{ Anomaly of the moon	0	5	11	30
	{ Latitude of the moon	4	32	8	15
The Prosthaphæresis of the æquinox		0	0	12	30

Being thus furnished with these middle motions, we are next to enquire for the true places of the luminaries and their concomitants, as their right ascensions, the declination, latitude, semidiameter, parallax, and refraction of the moon, that so the true altitude

of the moons center, and consequently the time of the emerſion may be had at *Charlton*.

	For the ſun's true place.	Sex.	Deg.	M.	Sec.
The middle motion of the ſun's center	3	15	49	58	
The Proſthaphæreſis of the center add	0	1	37	0	
The proportional ſcruples					
The middle motion of the ſun's apogæum	1	35	45	44	
The true motion of the apogæum ſubtr.	1	37	22	24	
The middle motion of the ſun is	3	47	39	26	
The anomaly of the ſun's orb	2	10	16	42	
The proſthaphæreſis of the ſun's orb	0	1	32	43	
The exceſs to be added	0	0	0	20	
The abſolute proſthaphæreſis of the ſun's orb ſubtr.	0	1	33	3	
The middle motion of the ſun from the true æquinoctial	3	47	51	56	
The true motion of the ſun from the true æquinoctial	3	46	18	53	
Therefore the ſun's true place was in <i>Virgo</i>	0	16	18	53	
And his right aſcenſion		223	49	53	

	For the moon's true place.				
The anomaly of the moon's center	5	59	18	2	
The proſthaphæreſis of the moon's center	0	0	5	30	
The proportional ſcruples	0				
The anomaly of the moon's orb	0	5	11	30	
The æquated anomaly of the moon's orb	0	5	5	54	
The proſthaphæreſis of the moon's orb ſubtr.	0	0	24	4	
The middle motion of the moon's longitude from the ſun	2	59	39	1	
The true motion of the moon's longitude from the ſun	2	59	14	57	
The middle motion of the ſun from the true æquinoctial	3	47	51	56	
The true motion of the moon from the true æquinoctial	0	47	6	53	
Therefore the moon's true place was in <i>Taurus</i>	0	17	6	53	

	For the moon's latitude.				
The middle motion of the moon's latitude	4	32	8	15	
The moon's abſolute proſthaphæreſis of her orb ſubtr.	0	0	24	4	
The moon's true motion of latitude	0	31	44	11	
The moon's northern latitude was	0	0	9	5	
And her reductive ſcruples ſubtr.	0	0	0	26	
But the moon's true motion in her proper orb was	0	17	6	53	
Therefore the moon's true place reduced to the eclipt. <i>Taurus</i>	0	17	6	47	
And becauſe the north latitude of the moon was	0	0	9	5	
Therefore will her right aſcenſion be	0	44	35	10	
And her declination	0	17	7	40	
And becauſe we have the diſtance of the moon, from the earth in } ſemidiameters of the earth	0	64	15	0	
Therefore ſhall the moon's apparent ſemidiam. be	0	0	15	0	
And her parallax of altitude	0	0	47	0	
Now becauſe the altitude of the limb of the moon was found by ob- } ſervation to be	0	29	11	0	
If we ſhall ſubſtract her ſemidiameter	0	0	15	0	
And the refraction	0	0	2	0	
We have the apparent altitude of the moon's center	0	28	54	0	
To this if we add the parallax of altitude	0	0	47	0	
We ſhall have the true altitude of the moon's center	0	29	41	0	
Having thus the latitude of the place, the moon's true altitude with } her declination, by the reſolution of a ſpherical triangle, accord- } ing to the 11 <i>Prob. Lib. 2. Part. 2.</i> of our <i>Britiſh Trigonometry</i> , } we have the diſtance of the moon from the merid.	0	63	26	0	

And by comparing this arch with the difference of the aſcenſions of the luminaries, the time of the moon's total recovery of her light at *Charlton*, will be 7 h. 49 min. 28 ſec. which ſubtr. from the time of the emerſion at *London*, 13 h. 7 min. 28 ſec. The difference of meridians, in reſpect of time, will be 5 h. 18 min. ſo that *Charlton* is removed from *London* weſtwards, 79 deg. 30 min.

This may likewiſe be confirmed by a ſecond different obſervation made at the inſtant of the moon's culmination or mediation of heaven, at which time the altitude of the brighteſt ſtar in the afterſin of the northern crown, (being of the ſecond magnitude) was found to be 53 deg. 27 min. eafterly, *Anno* 1632, *June* 23. It

## An Appendix touching Longitude.

485

It may be problematically delivered after this manner.

Having the latitude of a place, with the altitude of a known fixed star at the moment of the moon's culmination, to find the longitude.

This fixed star is of known longitude and latitude, therefore was his declination 27. 59. and right ascension 229. 46. Now by the resolution of a spherical triangle of three known sides, we have the distance of this star from the meridian, and by consequence the right ascension of the moon, whence we conclude her culmination to be with the 28 deg. 10 min. of *Aquarius*; but the moon's true place was much less. Here note, that the scrupulosity of time is unknown, and therefore we cannot argue the moon's true place from thence, (though I grant it might be evinced) for that were to beg the question, and to know that first, which we look after.

In the next place we are to enquire with what point of the ecliptick the moon did culminate with us here at *London*, that so from the difference of her places of the like affection, we may deduce the difference of meridians.

Observation on the moon's culmination here at *London* we made none; therefore must we have recourse to the aforesaid tables of *Lansberg*, and from thence calculate the same. Now because the moon was not far removed from the sun's opposite point, it will not be amiss to enquire first the moon's place at midnight.

	Sex.	Deg.	M.	Sec.
The sun's opposite place at midnight in <i>Aquarius</i> _____	0	11	18	15
The moon's true place at midnight reduced to the eclip. was in <i>Aquarius</i> 0	23	33	18	
The south latitude of the moon was_____	0	4	56	38
Therefore the difference of ascensions will be_____	0	14	6	0
The diurnal motion of the moon_____	0	14	24	0
Therefore the moon's proper motion answerable to the difference of } ascensions is_____	0	0	33	50
Which added to the moon's true place at midnight_____	0	23	33	18
Gives us the moon's true place reduced to_____				
The ecliptick at her culmination at <i>London</i> _____	0	24	7	8

Now because the moon's southern latitude was 4 deg. 56 min. 38 sec. the arch therefore of the ecliptick comprehended between the moon's true place and the culminating point of the ecliptick, will trigonometrically be found to be 54 min. 38 sec. which added to the moon's true place before found, gives us the culminating point of the ecliptick, 25 d. 1 min. 46 sec. which is less than that found at *Charleston*, the difference being 3 d. 8 min. 24 sec. therefore is the place of observation westerly of *London*. Having therefore the moon's diurnal motion, and the difference of the culminating points, we conclude the meridian of *Charleston* to be distant from this of *London* 5 h. 14 min. of time, of 78 deg. 30 min. of the equator.

The difference between that of the ecliptic, and this latter observation, is only 4 min. of time, or one deg. a difference easily pardoned, especially if we shall compare the same with some other places, yea even such as border nearly on each other. To give an instance on two eminent places which lie in the heart of *Europe*, *Rome* and *Norberg*: Their difference of longitude, *Regiomontanus* makes 36, *Werner* 32, *Appian* 34, *Mestlin* and *Origan* 33, *Stoßer* 18, *Maginus* 26, *Schöner* 12, *Mercator* and *Hondius* as much, *Stadius* 13, *Jansonus* 10, *Longomontanus* 16, *Lansberg* 10, *Kepler* by two observations on two lunar eclipses, but 4 min. of time.

This variety among these great artists, will I hope, pardon us this difference of 4 min. and be a means to encourage our *English* seamen, and others, to make such or the like observations in foreign parts as the heavens shall be offered unto them.

H. GELLIBRAND.



*To the Venerable Artists and younger Students in Divinity, in the famous University of Cambridge.*

**Y**OU nobly-witted and ingeniously studied academians, whose excellency in all kinds of learning, all foreign universities do admire, and none attain unto; I here present you a voyage to *Choccos*, though not the golden fleece with it; the search, I mean, but not the finding, of that so much talk'd of, so often sought for, north-west passage, and nearer way into the *South-Sea*. That, wherein so much time and treasure have been expended, so many brave spirits employed, and yet none discovered. Perchance, there is no such passage to be found, and that the *Spaniards*, by the gullery of their false sea-charts, and the fable of an old *Greek* pilot, have but diverted our *English* and *Dutch* seamen, from their golden *Indies*. This plot of theirs hath taken, for these many years, and it appears to be but a plot, for that themselves never make use of this passage. For mine own part, I suppose that the philosopher's stone is in the north-west passage. My argument for it, is, for that there's so much philosophy in the way to it.

So much, and such variety; such variety, and that so various (I think) from what is received in the schools; that it were well worth the disquisition of an university, (and I wish you the first honour of it) either to find out, how these observations may be reduced to *Aristotle's* philosophy; or whether they need any other enquiry, and ought to be examined by some other rules, than *Aristotle* hath yet light upon. This is my purpose of inscribing it unto you. Of this one thing am I confident: that you are all so rational and ingenious, as to prefer truth before authority: *Amicus Plato, amicus Aristoteles*, but *magis amica veritas*. Your sciences, then, being liberal; your studies, I know, have so far passed into your manners, that your minds are so too, and that such as have already profited beyond the credulity required in a young learner, and are themselves promoted to be masters of the arts; though they still reverence their old *Greek* tutor, yet they will not suffer that of *Pythagoras's* school, so to domineer in *Aristotle's*, as to let an *ipse dixit*, go away with it: much less allow it the authority of a mayor's hammer, with one knock to silence all arguments.

Upon this confidence, I with all due respects here prefer two propositions unto your discussing.

The first this, *Whether those rules of Aristotle's philosophy be to be allowed so universal, that they hold all the world over.*

The second this, *Whether they ought to be so magisterial, as to prescribe against all other examinations.*

The first of these I shall but *problematically* propound unto you: but in the second, I hope a man of my cloathing may be allowed the freedom of being something more earnest.

But that I may not come with prejudice to the making of these motions, or be thought upon some *ignorance* or *ambition*, to speak against the incomparable *Aristotle*; I shall desire all my fellow academians to allow me so much discretion, as to know, that he that shall in your hearings oppose your *Aristotle*, does like the ship here spoken of, run against a rock, endanger his own bulge, and the staving of his vessel. No, I so far honour the old *Aristotle*, that I will allow him to be *master* and *moderator* of the schools; and that there is the same respect due to him in the schools, which, by *reason* and *long custom*, is due to one of the *king's ships* in the narrow seas; That in acknowledgement of a sovereignty, every other name ought to strike sail to him. *Aristotle* (it must be confess'd) hath made all learning beholden to him: no man hath learned to confute him, but by him; and unless he hath plow'd with his heifer. He had the most incomparable wit, and was the most logical and demonstrative deliverer of himself, of all the sons of nature: One who best of all deserved to be called, *her principal secretary*; one who not only adorns a library, but makes it: *Qui habet Aristotelem, habet bibliothecam*, is truer of him, than of the great comparer. This is my opinion of him; and I wish him more studied.

'Tis not therefore the name or the authority of the great *Aristotle*, that my propositions meddle withal; but whether his observations gathered out of this part of the world alone, could, like a royal pass or commission, carry a man all the world over?

It must be confess'd, that in respect of the *equinoctial*, and the latitude that *Aristotle* lived in, he was but a *northern man*; and 'twas his own rule, that *nihil agit extra sphaeram aëritatis sue*. So then it would be put to voices, to consider whether he that knew but these northern parts, and the *Mediterranean* sea, could possibly make such collections, by what was here to be learned, as should be unfailable in the southern hemisphere.

sphere and the two Indies? Plainly, those that are conversant in navigations and books of voyages into those parts, have found so many contrarieties to observe, that it were rather tedious than difficult, to fill up a notebook with them.

The ancients, we know (as if they had measured the world by the yard-wand) restrained the limits of temperature and habitation, by the five zones, without consideration of any interloping or concurring causes, which experience hath now found out, to have quite altered their observation. I add, that a good leisure and diligence might observe, how in the contrary part of the world there be found clean contrary causes and effects, unto those in this part of the world.

The south wind there brings cold and winter, and the north is the rainy wind. How will the thunder and the wind be made agree with Aristotle's definition of a meteor? In some places of the mountains Andes by Peru, it thunders ever. The East Indies have their Monsoons and their steady winds, constant for six months together; and who shall assign their causes? Then the doctrine of the tides, nothing so uncertain; which ebb and flow in some places different, and in others contrary to the moon and her motions. This (as I remember) is Aristotle's definition of a meteor, that it is an imperfect mix'd body, generated out of an infirm and inconstant concretion of the elements, which therefore cannot be durable. Now the Monsoon is both constant in his continuance this year, and in his return next year; most constantly keeping his seasons half year one way, and half year another way for all ages, nothing more constantly or durably, and therefore nothing like Aristotle's meteor. And so for the thunder upon the Andes: It is first, perpetual; secondly, not caused by a dry exhalation (as Aristotle wills) but hanging over such hills as are covered with snow, and a perpetual winter. Witness the thunder on the Alps also; yea, and that in the middle of the sea, five hundred leagues from the shore, or any thing that is dry. Yea, it frequently both shows and thunders upon the Andes, at one instant; and in dry places that are hard by, scarce ever thundering.

But not to pass the line for it; you see in this little book how Charleston island, which is no more northerly than your Cambridge, is yet so unsufferably cold, that it is not habitable; and that there encounter so many different (at least so seeming) occurrences of nature, as were well worth the disquisition of a philosopher. I could (in my small reading) instance in many other particulars, which I had rather should be found out by some industrious searchers after nature, in the modern relations of our discoverers, than

in this my short proposition. 'Tis not to be doubted, but that the careful reading of our books of voyages, would more elucidate the history of nature, and more conduce to the improvement of philosophy than any thing that hath been lately thought upon. These navigations have in part fulfill'd that of the prophet, many shall pass to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased. This, I suppose, might be observed from this study, that the great and infinite creator hath so disposed and varied every thing, that it is impossible for man's reason and observation to conclude him; and therefore, tho' vulgar and received philosophy may give a man a general hint, all the world over; yet no universal and unfailling certainty.

This brings me to my second proposition, That seeing God will not have his works, (no more than his kingdom) to come by observation; Whether then ought any human dictates to be so magisterial, as to prescribe against all other examination?

No human study more conduces to the setting forth of God's glory, than the contemplation of his great works in philosophy: For tho' a smattering knowledge in second causes warps the mind towards atheism; yet a higher speculation of them, brings it about again to religion. No man, I believe, will think it fit for us to have a pope in philosophy, one that no body shall presume to censure of, but all be bound to advance his decretals above the holy scriptures. This is the scandal that myself and divers good men take at the undue authority in some heats pinn'd upon the Stagyræ.

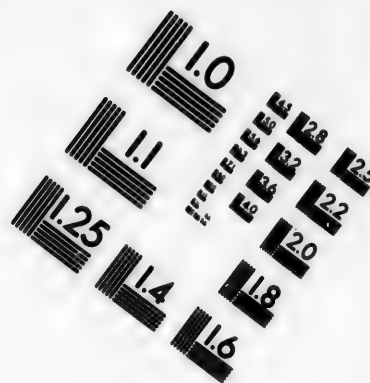
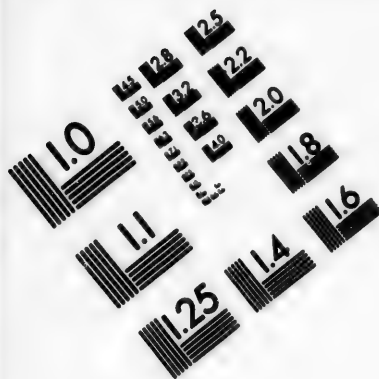
I am sorry that the Israelites dotage upon Solomon's philosophy, should have caused the zealous Hezekiah to call in and to suppress those unvaluable physics; for fear, I suppose, lest their credit should have as much derogated from the authority of the holy scriptures; as the brazen serpent (which he destroy'd about the same time) had done from religion. None will believe, that Solomon's philosophy was contrary to the scriptures, seeing the scripture commends Solomon for them. 'Twas not Hezekiah's fear, therefore (or not only) lest there might have been a competition between them, but a neglect of one of them: He was jealous lest the scripture might have any writing set up by it, tho' not against it.

Can divines then be blamed for speaking, when they hear Aristotle's philosophy to be solely magnified, and the study of the scripture philosophy, disrespected? Or that when 'tis confessed, that such a thing is true in divinity, and yet in the moderating of the point, determine for philosophy? Nay, to hear it call'd absurd and ridiculous, to have scripture urged at all in point of philosophy? No doubt

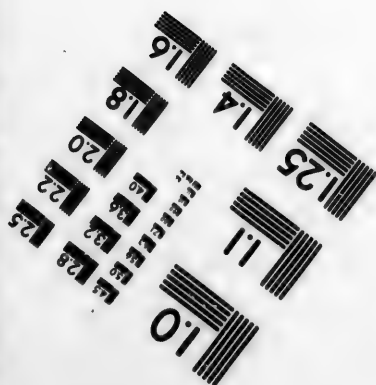
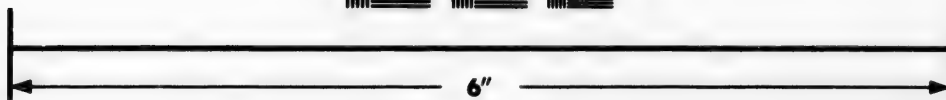
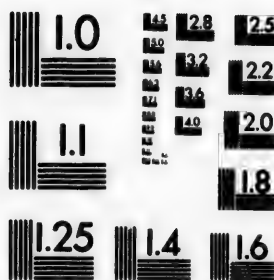
Arist.  
De Mete.  
lib. 1.

Suidas, &  
Rabbini.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**22 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
3.6 3.2 2.8

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100



doubt there is; *But whatsoever is false in divinity, is also false in nature*, how much thew of truth soever it passeth with in philosophy. *Philosophy* hath taken its turn in the schools; and the holy texts by the schoolmen, have even been submitted unto *Aristotle's*: Yea, to the great corruption of *theology*, as the complaint is, hath this man been so far advanc'd, that *contra est philosophus, & contra est apostolus*, have familiarly pass'd up and down for equal oppositions; so that it hath been a measuring cast oftentimes betwixt the prophet and the peripatetic, and by foul play hath the measure been made to stand the harder at the peripatetic, for that the prophet hath been enforced to comply with him by a *scriv'd interpretation*. Thus had St. Paul need give his caveat unto *theology* as well as unto *theologues*, *Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy*.

All this were to no purpose, unless the text of God were excellent in this kind, and embellish'd here and there with most admirable philosophy. What incomparably rare foot-steps of it have we in the books of *Genesis*, *Job*, and the *Psalms*? How noble a study then were it, and how worthy the leisure of some excellently learned to bestow some time upon it? *Valesius* the physician hath in his *Sacra philosophia* done something in this kind; who yet might have done better here and there, for the honour of the scriptures. I am not so sottish to believe, that every particular is to be drawn out of scripture; 'tis none of my dotage, that: Or, that God in scripture did intend, every where, the accurateness of philosophy; or stand to be so curious in definitions and decisions. Nor so foolish would I be thought, as to have all philosophy taken in pieces, and new moulded by the scriptures: Nor, that nothing should be determined on, till a text confirm'd it. But this perchance might profitably be thought upon, that where the scriptures have any thing in this kind, it should more reverently be esteem'd; collections out of scatter'd places (as is done out of *Aristotle*) made; these compared, and their resemblances observ'd. This surely would amount to more than is yet thought of; and, a-God's name, let scholars be so bold with *Aristotle*, as to examine him upon good assurance, by what is *truth's touchstone*. Received philosophy is a most necessary hand-maid to the scriptures; but let her not be set above her lady, nor no competition be maintained betwixt them.

Something else remains to be thought of: That seeing the same God, who gave *Ari-*

*stotle* these good parts, hath, in like manner, rais'd up many excellent spirits more, whether it were not injurious unto what is done, and a discouragement to what might be done; to have the inventions or observations of those excellent wits and great industries, so abash'd with *Aristotle's* authority, that they can have no credit in the world, for that his *dictates* have pre-occupied all good opinion? Let it not then be thought unequal to examine the first cogitations of the old philosophy, by the second thoughts of our more modern artists: For that the same improvement may by this means accrue unto our *physicks*, that hath advanced our *geography*, our *mathematics*, and our *mechanicks*: And let it not be thought so insolent, to refuse *Aristotle's* authority singly, where his reason is not for concluding; seeing other men have taken the boldness to do that before us in several kinds. Some have perfect'd, and others controul'd his *ethicks* by the scriptures; as *Scultetus*, *Wallens*, and some others. *Justin Martyr*, surnam'd the philosopher, hath purposely written *contra dogmata Aristotelis*. *Basson* and *Gassendus* (two brave men) have newly written point-blank against him: nor have they taken away all liberty from those that are to follow them.

And thus, with renewing my former protestation for mine own respects to *Aristotle*, I conclude my two propositions; which I desire may receive a favourable construction from all ingenuous, incapricious scholars. I meant them out of good will to promote learning; to encourage and countenance future undertakings: and in such a case, a little too much saying, may be thought not to have exceeded an honest rhetorician; for I would not be thought too earnest in it. The hint for all this I took from this book; which in mine own and some better judgments, is (to say no more) as well done, and enriched with as sure and useful observations, as any in this kind. I was desir'd by the able author, and some other friends, to overlook the written copy of it, and to amend the *English* here and there; in which I did not despair of doing something, for that, in my younger time I had a little acquainted myself with the language of the sea. That which put me in the head to inscribe it unto your names (most excellently learned Academicians) was, for that the place of this wintering, was within a minute or two of the beight of our Cambridge; which my prayer to God is, that your studies may make famous.

Yours, X. Z.

in like manner, spirits move, whether what is done, might be done; observations on the state of the industries, for the priority, that they would, for that they had all good opinions, might be unequal to the *old philosophy* of our more modern improvements. Our *geography, mechanics*. And *tolerant*, to refuse where his reason other men have not before us is perfected, and the *scriptures*, to others. *Justification*, hath *philosophy*, hath *Kamatata Arijloz*, have men) have certainty him: nor depart from those

my former pro-  
perts to *Arifelli*,  
is; which I de-  
ole construction  
my *fibular*.  
ill to promote  
countenance fu-  
uch a café, a lit-  
thought not to  
historian; for I  
need in it. The  
om this book;  
the better judg-  
as well done,  
nd useful obler-  
I was desired  
the other friends,  
oy of it, and to  
there; in which  
something, for  
had a little ac-  
quaintance of the  
head to inscrib-  
excellently learned  
the place of this  
ve or two of the  
which my pray-  
erlies may make

A N

The FIRST of  
Feodor *ISKOWITZ BACKHOFF*,  
The MUSCOVITE Envoy,

INTO  
C H I N A.

The SECOND of  
**Mr. ZACHARY WAGENER,**  
 A Native of DRESDEN in MISNIA,  
 Thro' a great part of the WORLD,  
 As also into CHINA.

*Translated from the High-Dutch original printed at Berlin.*

# Advertisement

T O T H E

## R E A D E R.

**A**MONG those many voyages which lately have been ushered into the World, the following Muscovite embassy may justly challenge a place, especially for its usefulness in geography, which I here present to the reader, without the least alteration, according to the copy thereof, sent to me by Johannes Scultetus, counsellor of state of his electoral highness of Brandenburg. And as the voyages of Mr. Zacharias Wagener, are very famous in Holland, and the following abstract thereof being communicated to me by his brother-in-law Mr. Christian Bothe, a considerable merchant in Dresden, I thought it not unseasonable to subjoin the same, for the benefit of the courteous reader.

T H E

T H E  
T R A V E L S  
O F  
Feodor *Iskowitz Backhoff*  
F R O M  
*MUSCOW* into *CHINA*.

---

(1.) *The road from Muscow to Siberia.*

**M**OST generally they take their way over *Ustingba*, seated upon the river *Dwina*, from whence we continu'd our journey to *Tobolsko*, the capital city of *Siberia*, being three thousand versts, or six hundred German leagues from the city of *Muscow*. Before you have travell'd the third part of your way, you come to a great ridge of mountains, called *Camiani Rojas*, i. e. *the stone girdle*, by the *Muscovites*; it being their opinion, that they extend round the terrestrial globe. I suppose them to be the same the antients called *montes Siberei*. This mountain being

fifty leagues over, and interwoven with deep valleys, which are generally, but especially in *Autumn*, overflown with water, is impassable in the summer; but these being well frozen in the winter, afford a swift and convenient passage for sleds, so that in twenty four hours you may travel eighteen or twenty leagues, and consequently perform the whole journey from *Muscow* to *Tobolsko* in six or seven weeks. The first city you come to in *Siberia* is called *Worchaturia* from the river *Tura*, upon which it lies.

(2.) *Of the cities, rivers, and fertility of Siberia.*

**S**iberia has twenty three cities, the capital of which *Tobolsko*, situate upon a hill near the river side, is a place of no great traffick; the inhabitants being for the most part *Bouchar* and *Calmuck Tartars*, who are very poor; the chiefest place of trading being *Jenissay*, lying a great way beyond *Tobolsko*, which consists in fables, martins, and such like furs. *Dauri* is the utmost frontier place of *Siberia*, on the *Calmuck* side. *Siberia* is watered by many rivers, among which the river *Oby* is the chiefest. It contains many islands well stor'd with trees. This river is in some places a German league, in other places about half a league broad, and falls into the *Tartarian sea*.

It produces abundance of fish, and among the rest *Beluja's* or *white fish*. The cities of *Siberia* are, *Worchaturia*, *Japonfoi*, *Tumen*, *Tobolsko*, *Damiansky*, *Samara*, *Sergouz*, *Berofolt*, *Narin*, *Tomoko*, *Kosheutz*, *Krajnazar*, *Ket*, *Jenissay*, *Nallen*, *Dauri*, *Takow*, *Magafcy*. These as well as all the other cities of *Siberia*, are not very populous. There are very good corn-fields here, the soil whereof is so good, that it bears very well without dung. It has no sea-ports, the *Tartarian sea* being cover'd with ice summer and winter; however fisher-boats venture as far as the isle of *Malgamfay*, over-against the mouth of the river *Oby*.

(3.) *Of*

(3.) *Of the inhabitants of Siberia.*

THE antient inhabitants were *Tartars*, governed by their own princes or kings; one of the family of their last prince living not long ago, with the Czar's permission, in *Siberia*, till his house was plunder'd, and he forced to fly the country, by the *Russians* that trade that way in fairs, with the *Calmuks Tartars*, which they bring thence in great barges. This prince having afterwards married among the *Calmuks Tartars*, makes sometimes an inroad into *Siberia*, and takes a severe revenge of the *Muscovites* there. The natives being not very forward to oppose him, as living still in hopes, that one time or other he may be in-

strumental in delivering them from the *Muscovite* yoke. The *Calmuks* and *Moguls Tartars* border upon *Siberia*, (besides divers other *Tartarian* nations) their country extending from thence to the frontiers of *China*. There are also divers other herds, living on the frontiers of *Siberia*; as the *Tingiskoy*, the *Watzkoy*, *Tyngiskoy* and *Baraniskoy*, which have each their particular captains or leaders. The natives of *Siberia* are much addicted to sorcery. There are not many *Russians* living among them, by reason of the great distance of this country from *Moscow*.

(4.) *How Siberia was brought under the obedience of the Muscovites.*

ABove a hundred years ago, under the reign of the Czar *Joan Basilowitz*, a certain *Cossack* named *Jormac Timorof*, leader of a certain gang of robbers, having taken some vessels laden with ammunition belonging to the Czar; he issued his strict orders to seize the said *Jormac*, cost it what it would; so that *Jormac* dreading the Czar's revenge, got with his gang into the river *Cama*, and so to *Czotrava*, an isle about five or six hundred *Versts* above *Casán*, which at that time belong'd to a vast rich *Russian* merchant named *Daniel Stroginov*, living in a city built by him, and called *Stroginov* after his name. Having represented to this merchant the easy conquest of *Siberia*, he obtained some arms and ammunition of him to accomplish his design; accordingly he went up the river *Tagit*, till he came to the river *Toura*, where is a considerable island, inhabited by *Tartars*; these he soon chased thence, and continuing his march to the city of *Tumen*, he soon made himself master of it, the same he did afterwards with *Tobolsko* the residence of their king. However he march'd forward fifty leagues to the river *Irtish*, in pursuit of the enemy, who retreated before him. Having refreshed his people hereabouts for six weeks, he

sent three hundred of them to pursue the flying *Tartars*, which they did with so much eagerness, that being surrounded by the enemy, they were almost all kill'd, few escaping their hands. *Jormac* having no more than two hundred men left, intrench'd himself in an isle, but being attack'd in the night-time by the *Tartars*, he was killed with all his followers, except forty, who made a shift to get into *Muscovy*; and having represented unto the Czar all the circumstances of the matter, he sent six hundred chosen men under the command of one of these *Cossacks* (who had been *Jormac's* lieutenant) who retook the city of *Tobolsko*; where having fortify'd himself, and being recruited with fresh troops, he made such frequent excursions into the neighbouring *Tartarian* countries; that they at last grew weary of the war, and submitted to the Czar of *Muscovy*. The same fortune attended the Czar in his conquest of the kingdom and city of *Astracan*, which he made himself master of in one campaign, but he paid pretty dear for *Casán*, having been forced to raise the siege of that city, the first time, but took it in the second siege.

(5.) *The revenues of the kingdom of Siberia.*

THE Czar's revenues in this kingdom arise from the tribute of the fables, martins, red and white foxes skins, and other furs, out of which he has the fifth for his share; certain officers being appointed by the Czar for that purpose. Mr. *Fletcher*, who was *English* envoy in *Muscovy* in 1588,

affirms, that in one year there were brought into the Czar's treasury out of *Siberia*, no less than 466 *Zimmer* of sable (40 fables to each *Zimmer*) and 180 *Siberian* fox skins. The ordinary revenue of *Siberia* amounts now to 200000 *Roubles*. They have different ways of catching the fables; either by

wooden



wooden traps, not unlike our mice-traps, or by snares, which being laid under the trees where they feed, the trees are cut down, and they entangled in the snares. They

also go a sable hunting in sleds drawn by dogs, and kill them with their bows and arrows.

*The Journals of Feodor Iskowitz Backhoff from Tobolsko, the capital city of Siberia, into China, called Kattay by the Russians.*

IN the year 7162 \*, in the month of May, I left Tobolsko, pursuant to his Czarish majesty's orders, and travell'd to the city Tax upon the river Irtysh, where I arriv'd the 27th of July, having spent a month and three days in this journey. From Tax I went up the river the first of August, and for want of horses spent four weeks of my journey to the white lake, where being furnished with forty camels and fifty horses from Snablai Tzishba, or prince of the Bouchar Tartars, we left the said lake the 16th of October, and continued our journey in three weeks time to Kabalgakuna, inhabited by the Calmuck Tartars, who live in brick-houses, built after the Russian manner. From Kabalgakuna to the seven elms is two days travelling; and from thence to the rivulet of Jekusa, which arises from among the mountains, and falls into the Irtysh, another day's journey. From the river of Jekusa, along the right side of the Irtysh, to the residence of that Calmuck prince (who is a priest) residing on the left side of the said river, is three days journey. Their fields, which produce wheat, barley, and peas, are plowed by some of the Bouchar Tartars. From hence, all along the right side of the river Irtysh to Ablawich (near the Bouchar cornfields) is fourteen days journey, thro' high mountains, full of birch-trees.

We arrived at Ablawich the 22d of November, where they live in plaster'd houses; their fruits are wheat, barley, and peas; and they abound in fish. Their prince named Ablai Tzishba did invite me to his house, where after he had demanded the Czar's presents (which I gave him) he entertained me very handsomely. The 30th of November I continued my journey thro' the Bouchar Tartars, who are for the most part husbandmen, among whom I tarried four months and ten days.

The third of April 7163, I went from thence to the brook of Baika, twelve days journey from the Bouchar cornfields; near this brook the before-mentioned prince Ablai Tzishba was building for himself two houses of stone, by Chinese workmen. Here I stayed five weeks and five days.

The 30th of June, 7163, having receiv'd my passport from Ablai Tzishba, I continu'd my journey from the brook Botka to Conjaja Toucha, or Kattasching's children in four-

teen days, and in five days more to the small city of Rontashina, inhabited by Calmuck priests. From this place to the lake, through which passes the river Irtysh, is fourteen days journey.

From hence to Mijansko Tzishba, is two days journey, and from thence through the mountains seven days more. Hereabouts live the princes of the Mogul Tartars, who speak both the Mogul and Calmuck languages; there is three days journey from hence to the residence of the prince named Dobruna, whose territories extend fifteen days journey to the frontiers of China. However many petty princes have their territories interspersed here, who are also of the race of the Moguls.

From the uttermost frontiers of China to Cokatana, their first city, is a journey of three months. The mountains along the river Irtysh and the white lake to the frontiers of China, are inhabited by the Moguls and Calmuck Tartars; the first live very poorly, and I was often obliged to stay among them to furnish myself with water and provisions. After I had stayed nine days at Cokatana in expectation of two guides, we continued our journey thence the twelfth day of January 7164 to Kofki, a journey of twelve days. Hereabouts also live divers petty princes of Mogul Tartars, who call themselves Tiobertzanjky, but are under the Chinese jurisdiction. Kanki is situate among the rocks; here I saw the famous Chinese wall, being three fathoms high, and one and a half thick, fill'd up in the inside with small stones; the stone towers stand not in the same line close to the wall, but at ten fathoms distance, and are a hundred fathoms distance from one another, reaching as long as the wall to the sea-side. The 20th of February, having received orders from the king of China for the continuation of my journey, we set out the 21st from Capki, seven days journey from Cambalu, (or Pekin) having twenty eight cities lying between them, surrounded with stone walls, upon which we saw some canon, but of a small size. The soldiers that keep the guard at the gates were armed with a kind of carabines, not above half a yard long, with threefold muzzles, but without firelocks. They have generally stone-bridges built over their canals or rivulets, but have

not many rivers of note; the governors of the places are generally carried in *Palanka's* or litters, upon mens shoulders, attended by a guard on both sides.

We came to *Cambalu* the third of *March* 7164; about an *English* mile out of town, we were met by two deputies, one whereof was the chancellor of the *Pracas*, or secretary's office of the foreign affairs, the other of that of the *Chinefe* affairs. They received us in a spacious structure of stone, inhabited by some priests, and built as we were told, for the reception of the *Dalac Lama*, or the *Tartarian* high-priest, who is revered among them like a god. At the entrance of this house they desired me to alight from my horse, and to pay my respects to their king upon my knees: Unto which I replied, that it was not our custom to salute even our *Czar* upon our knees, but only with a very low bow, and bare-headed; unto which they gave no other answer, but that the *Dutch* never refused it, and therefore I ought not. They then presented me with some *Tbee*, made with cow's milk and butter, in the king's name; it being *Lent*, I refused to drink it. They told me, that I being sent from one great *Czar* to another mighty prince, I ought at least to accept it, which I did, and so returned back. As we were making our entry, I saw in the gate standing three brass cannon, and so we marched forward three *Versts*, thro' most markets, before we came to the court prepared for our reception, which had two houses of stone, hung with tapestry. Our daily allowance of provisions was one sheep and a small cask of *Spanish* brandy, two fishes, a middle-sized *Jassy*, a certain quantity of wheaten flour, *Sicbay*, and rice, and two cups of brandy. The 4th of *March* certain persons sent by the *Chinefe* king came to my lodgings to demand the presents I had brought along with me from the *Czar*; I told them, that it was not customary at our *Czar's* court to deliver the presents till we had been admitted to the audience of the king, and delivered our credentials. Unto which they replied, *One king ought not to prescribe laws to another; our customs are different from yours. Our Bogday (king) has sent us to demand the presents, but if you come to sell them, let us know your price.* I replied, That I was not sent by the *Czar* to merchandize, but to establish a friendly concurrence betwixt the two kings, and to offer him some presents. They then told me, That since I own'd I was sent with presents to their king, they would take by force

what our *Czar* had sent; and as for my credentials, care should be taken of them hereafter; and thus actually took the presents by force.

The 6th of *March* word was sent me to bring my credentials to the secretary's office; which I refused to comply with, telling the messenger that I was sent with these credentials to the king, and not to his ministers.

*August* 21, they sent again upon the same errand; but I refusing the same, they told me, That since I had disobey'd their king's command, they had orders to punish me; I gave them no other answer, but, if they cut me limb by limb, I would not part with them till I had been admitted to the king's presence.

The 31st of *August* all the presents were brought back by certain officers, who told me that it was done by special command from their king, because I had refused to deliver my credentials into the *Pracas* or secretary's office; and one among them told me, *No foreign minister, come he from what country he will, is admitted into the presence of our king, but only of his great ministers, call'd Inoanol Boyarde.* I can give you no true account of the bigness of the city of *Cambalu*, because we had no liberty to take a view of it; but if we may credit the *Moguls* and *Chinefe*, they told us it was sixty *Versts* (twelve *German* leagues) in compass. Vast quantities of silk stuffs are made and sold here, but their pearls and precious stones they have from *Karatsebo*, two months journey with camels from *Cambalu*, and then in the possession of a son of the late king. The king's palace fronts a spacious market-place, whither all sorts of people come to salute the king, at least three times a month. Every new moon they put out flags as a signal to the people to come to make their submission; and the same is done every 22d and 29th day of the month, when they appear in rich brocade'd clothes, upon their bended knees, and among the rest twenty six elephants trained up for that purpose. The *Bogday* then regent, was a *Mogul Tartar*; but the late *Chinefe* emperor, after these *Tartars* had made themselves masters of the *Chinefe* empire (about thirty years before) kill'd himself, securing only a young son, named *Young Sie*, behind two of the *Chinefe* lords carried to *Karatsebo* in old *China*. The *Chinefes* are much stronger in the city of *Cambalu* than the *Moguls*. In the year 7164, the 7th of *July*, 25 *Hollanders*, the

(\*) *Nieuwhoff* p. 181. We understand by the said facter *Adam*, that there was there a *Muscovite* embassy, with an attendance of 100 persons (among whom were some *Movers*) to treat about certain points relating to

traffic; but were not as yet admitted to audience, because the emperor refused at that time sometimes in the city, sometimes at some distance thence.

remainders of the three ships (who had each of them 100 men aboard, two whereof were lost) arrived at *Cambalu*, but for want of an interpreter could not converse with them; they gave me two letters for *Muscov*. Having obtained my passport in 7164 in *September*, I left *Cambalu*, and returned thro' the same way I came to *Muscov*, having had but ill success in my negotiation, because I would not reverence their idols (\*).

And here it is to be observed that *Cambalu* is the capital city of *China*, otherwise it is called *Peking*, the first being the name given them by the *Tartars*, whence some geographers have been mislead, who have placed *Cambalu* in their maps, in the great *Tartary*. *Tamerlane* a *Tartar* by birth, having conquered *China*, is the reason that frequent mention has been made of *Cambalu* in his history, which has introduced this error of placing *Cambalu* in *Tartary*; add to

this, that our ancient historians of *China* have call'd it *Kattay*, the same name that is given to it by the *Russians* to this day, *Kattay* being a *Tartarian* word, signifying as much as an inclosed or wall'd place, (such as *China* is) given by them to *China*, whilst they were in possession of it. And because *China* was known or first described by the ancient historians at the same time the *Tartars* were masters of it, they were easily led into that mistake, by taking the *Grand Tartary* for *China*, and so put it down accordingly in their maps, placing *Cambalu* in *Tartary*, whereas it is the same with *Peking* the capital city of the *Chinese* empire. For the same reason it is, that they have described *Tartary* as a rich plentiful country, whereas it is very mean, and above one half of it not fit for tillage. *Kattay* is indeed a *Tartarian* word, but not a name of their own country, but given by them to *China*.

(b) *Intreetta* p. 313. Speaking of this embassy: *In quos (sc. ritus) quoniam Muscovice ante biennium legatione functi conjunctim veniunt, cum dedere muneribus, quæ attulerant, redditus rejiciunt.* And *Nieuhoff* p. 187, the 14th of *September* our envoys understood that the *Muscovite* Ambassador was upon his departure, with our being admitted to audience, because he refused to bend his knees before the imperial seat, as looking upon it as a degrading to his master's honour. About noon,

just as our enjoys were at dinner, one of the said ambassador's domesticks came to take leave of us, desiring in behalf of all the rest, that we would be pleased to give them a certificate to testify that they had met with us here, which was readily granted. Afterwards we heard, that the said ambassador was stopped in the country, because he was not provided with a sufficient passport.

## A SHORT

A SHORT  
 ACCOUNT  
 OF THE  
 VOYAGES  
 OF

Mr. ZACHARY WAGENER,

Perform'd in thirty five Years,

Through *Europe, Asia, Africa and America;*

Taken out of his own JOURNAL.

**A**NNO 1633, the 3d of *June*, I left *Dresden* (my native city) with consent of parents and embarked in a small vessel upon the river *Elbe* in company of Mr. *Frederick Lebzelter*, one of the grooms of the chamber to his electoral highness of *Saxony*, for *Hamburg*, where we arrived safely some time after; but not meeting with any opportunity of preferment there, I embarked for *Amsterdam*, where I was entertained for a whole year by Mr. *William Johnson Blawe*, one of the most noted booksellers of that city; and after that, being resolved upon travelling farther, engaged my self in the service of the *West-India* company, in the quality of a private centinel, and in 1634, the 18th of *July*, embarked aboard a stout two deck'd ship, bound for *Brazil*, where we arrived after a most troublesome voyage of sixteen weeks, and came to an anchor before the *Receif*. Not long after our arrival, I was advanced to a muster-master's place in major *Bajart's* company then in garrison in the fort *Ernestus*, and sometime after was made clerk of the kitchen of his excellency count *John Maurice of Muscov*, general of *Brazil*.

Anno 1638, the 20th of *April*, the beforemention'd earl embark'd with 8000 *European* soldiers, and 3000 *Brazilians* aboard 47 ships, steering their course from

the *Receif* to the *Bay of all Saints*, in order to besiege the city of *St. Salvador*; I went along with his excellency in that expedition, which proved unsuccessful; for the city being impossible to be begirt on all sides, we returned after two months to the *Receif*. Anno 1630, I went along with the said earl to *Anthony Vaz*, by the way of the cape of *St. Austin* and *Sexinbain*, and so farther by land to *Porto Calvo*: In our return we pass'd thro' the middle of the *Dutch-Brazil*, by the way of *Bojorvegid*, to the city of *Paraiiba*, and as we pass'd along took a view of all the garisons and fortresses, so that this progress took up above, three months. After I had spent this seven years in *Brazil*, viz. three years in the service, and four in his excellency's family, I desired leave to return home, which being granted, and a passport given me, I embark'd in 1641, in *April*, aboard a vessel called the *Tiger*, bound with two other vessels freighted with sugar, tobacco and *Brazil* wood, Mr. *William Honton* commodore for *Holland*. We arrived the 17th of *January* in the *Texel*, when a man of war being then just ready to sail for *Enkhuysen*, I when aboard her, and lodged that night in the said city. The 18th, early in the morning I went by land over *Horn* to *Burmerent*, and from thence thro' the *Beemles* by water to *Amsterdam*. The 20th early

in the morning, I went in the *Tracksbuit* over *Harlem* to *Leyden*, and from thence to the *Hague* and *Delft*, where I delivered the letters and presents wherewith I was intrusted by his excellency the earl of *Nassau*.

But having a longing desire to see my native country, I set out from *Amsterdam*, Anno 1641, the 14th day of *August*, and taking my way over *Harlem*, thro' *Friseland*, arrived safely at *Hamburg* the 23d, but the roads being then much infested by straggling parties, I went up the river *Elbe* as far as *Magdeburg*, where taking coach for *Leipzig*, I continued my journey afterwards from thence to *Dresden*, the place of my nativity, where I arrived the 12th of *October*, and to our mutual joy, found my parents in good health. I stayed with them about fourteen months, but not being able to comply with their manner of living, so different from what I had been used to of late years, I took a resolution (with their consent) to return into *Holland*, and to take a voyage thence into the *East-Indies*.

Accordingly in 1642, the 10th of *February*, I took shipping upon the river *Elbe*, in company of the young Mr. *Dillibius*, and the son of the count marshal, Mr. *Henry Van Tauben*, and passing down the river *Elbe*, where my fellow travellers left me, intending to continue their journey thro' *Holland* for *France*, and the river beginning to be full of ice by this time, our vessel could not get farther than *Tangermunden*, where we were forced to stay till the 2d of *March* and then went forward (tho' not without great danger of the ice) for *Hamburg*, where I arrived the 6th, and soon after agreed with a *Dutch* master of a vessel to carry me to *Amsterdam*. The 11th we set sail, and passing by *Gluckstadt*, came to an anchor near *Zell*, where going ashore, I diverted my self for a short time with one of my relations, and so went aboard again, and continued our voyage towards the *Dutch* coast. Our Master it seems was born in a certain village on the *Friseland* coast, called *Maecon*, and being seiz'd with a curiosity to see his birth-place, took this opportunity to come to an anchor near it, which proved so unprosperous, that in a few days after being surpris'd by a storm with a violent frost, I was obliged to spend thirteen days at the houle of a rugged *Friseland* country fellow, whose language I did not understand. All the comfort I had was to take this opportunity to go to *Franeker*, an university in those parts; and after my return the tempest being laid, we set sail again the 26th, and arrived the 28th at *Eukbuiscu*, where changing my vessel for another, I came the 29th early in the

morning to *Amsterdam*; here I received the unwelcome news that the ships wherewith I intended to have sailed to the *East-Indies*, were already gone some days before, and that the next were not to sail till *August*; being afraid that my money would scarce hold out till that time, I was forced to take a journey into *Norib-Holland*, to expect the coming of their *East-India* ships, wherewith I returned afterwards. Anno 1642, the 10th of *May* we came to an anchor with nine ships before the *Texel*, where in two months after, we saw ten ships richly freighted, Mr. *Francis Caron* commodore, and came along with them in *August* into *Holland*.

Having in vain endeavoured, by the interest of Mr. *Beirnbellen* to get an assistant's place in the chamber of *Amsterdam*, I was forced to take up with a *Cade's* place, at the rate of ten *guilders* per month; and being furnished with recommendatory letters to the regency of *Batavia*, I sail'd out of the *Texel* the 29th of *September*, in a new vessel call'd the *Swan*, in company of two others; and having refreshed ourselves at the *Ile of Wight*, (belonging to *England*) and in the *isle of St. Vincent*, we came in 1643, the 17th of *April*, safely to an anchor in the road of *Batavia*, having outstrip'd the two others, that were no such failers as ours. After I had stay'd here for some time, the then governor-general *Anthony Van Diemen* removed me from the military service to an assistant's place worth 20 *guilders* per month. Anno 1647, the 20th of *May*, Mr. *Cornelius Vander Lyn*, his successor, bestow'd upon me one of the head clerks places worth 28 *guilders* per month, besides six *Reals* board wages: Anno 1648, I being then in the 35th year of my age, married at *Batavia* a certain widow born in the city of *Wesel*, named *Mary*, the relict of Mr. *Aux Brebis*, who then lived with the head factor, Mr. *James S. buern*. Anno 1649, the 29th of *September*, the said governor-general Mr. *Van Lyn*, was pleas'd to bestow upon me the employment of a factor (besides my clerks place) for five years, with a monthly salary of 56 *guilders* per month, and 13 *reals* board wages.

Anno 1650, I was sent in an open chaloop from *Batavia* to the *Straits of Sundra*, *Thys Crab* commander, to fetch certain instructions, which Mr. *Maximilian le Maire* (who was lately arrived there with the ship the *Walvisch* from *Holland*) had brought along with him; but before we reach'd the said vessel, we met the ship the *Nassau*, coming from the western coast of *Sumatra*, laden with pepper, and being willing to speak with them, by the carelessness of our master the chaloop run so violently against the



poop of the ship, that it was ready to sink; I did endeavour to lay hold of the lion's head of the great ship, but missing my aim, fell into the water, where I narrowly escaped being drowned; for the ship being under sail, I got under her, and with much ado got upon the other side (yet not without being forely cut by the mussel-shells that stuck to the bottom) from whence, with much ado they dragged me up with a rope into the ship. Afterwards it being resolved to send me along with Mr. *William Versteegen*, extraordinary councillor of the Indies, and commissary of the northern quarter, from *Tonquin* to *Tabwan*, my salary was raised to 66 guilders per month.

Anno 1651, the 20th of April, we embarked aboard the *Delfsbaven* yacht at *Batavia*, in order to prosecute this intended voyage, which having been accomplish'd with good success, we stop'd in our return near the kingdom of *Quinam*, and after having settled a firm peace with that king, and obtained the releasement of our prisoners, we came to an anchor again in the road of *Batavia*, the last day of December, where in a few days after my arrival, I was constituted a member of the council of justice by Mr. *Reimerjon*, then governor-general in the absence of Mr. *Lyn*.

Anno 1653, the 14th of July, the time of my former contract being expired, I engaged myself again in the companies service for three years longer, at the rate of 85 guilders per month; I was soon after as commissary or envoy of the company sent with two yachts the *Shellfish* and the *Brownfish* to *Kanton* in *China* (\*) to endeavour the establishment of a free commerce for our company there, with the *Tartarian* viceroy; but the *Tartarian* commanders aiming at nothing but our money, and little to be relied upon, I left these covetous wretches,

and made the best of my way with my two yachts towards *Tonquin*, where having left the *Brownfish* to rest, I returned, notwithstanding I was very dangerously ill, with the *Shellfish* alone the 29th of December to *Batavia*. Having immediately after my recovery, given an account of my negotiation, I had soon after a place assign'd me in the council of justice.

Anno 1656, the 12th of July, I was sent in the quality of director in the ship call'd the *Calf* to *Japan*, (†) to relieve according to custom, Mr. *John Bricklinus*, his year being expired; where I arrived the 18th of August, and immediately delivered the presents sent by the company to the emperor, but had scarce been here three days when on the north-side of the capital city of *Yedo*, a sudden fire broke out, which being increased by a violent wind, laid not only the whole city (which might for its bigness be compared to a whole province) in ashes in 48 hours, but also consumed the royal palace and near 160000 souls; however we had the fortune to escape the fury of the flames thro' God's mercy, tho' not without a great deal of danger.

Anno 1657, the 27th of October, I returned out of *Japan* (†) in the ship the *Flower-Valley*, in company of the head factor, Mr. *John Betgens*, who had received orders to go and reside at *Tajapan* in the quality of deputy-governor to Mr. *Coyett*; we were put to no small trouble to get into the road of that place, where having stay'd six days, I set sail again thence, in company of the *Hercules* and the *Watchman*, and came safely before *Batavia* the 18th of December, where we found several Dutch ships (which on the 31st returned for *Holland*, under the command of Mr. *John Cananus*) riding at anchor.

Anno 1658, being ready to go a second

(\*) Of this voyage *Nieuhoff* p. 29. Hereupon it was resolved to send as commissioners Mr. *Schedel* and Mr. *Wagner*, the first in the *Brownfish*, the other in a vessel call'd the *Shellfish*. They set sail together from *Batavia*, and after a voyage of four weeks, came to the western point of *Haitan*. From whence they went up the river *Kanton*, as far as *Wangse*, three leagues distance from *Kanton*, where having staid for some time, but in vain, in expectation of the *Mandarins* to conduct them to *Kanton*; Mr. *Schedel*, without leave from the regency of *Kanton*, and against the advice of the interpreters, went to see his old friend *Haitan*, in whom he much confided; being directed by him to go to see *Taurant*, he did accordingly, but finding neither him nor his secretary at home, was forced to come aboard again immediately, as not knowing where to lodge all that night.

The same *Nieuhoff* p. 32. Mr. *Wagner* finding all his courtships to the *Mandarins* of no effect, he returned with both the yachts to *Batavia*, he having not with all his cunning, been able to settle a commerce there for his countrymen: What vexed him most was, that these avaricious wretches had the impudence to demand to wait a sum of money, only to procure the

reception of his letters, by the viceroy, without the least promise of entering afterwards into a conference upon the proposed commerce.

(†) Concerning this commission, *Arnold Montan* says, p. 356. Next to this the embassy performed by Mr. *Zachary* of *Mynia*, is no less remarkable; and p. 369. speaking of this conflagration: Mr. *Wagner* returning early in the morning into the city, found the whole southern part of it in a flame; About noon the fire got into the imperial palace, with such violence, that in an instant the strong towers and stone watch-houses were seen tumbling into the ditch, where the fire stop'd on that side; but continuing on the other hand, the emperor's lodgings were consumed before the night, he having scarce time given him to retire with his chief councillors to their summer-houses, built on the north-side at some distance from the palace; in short, in two days time above 100000 houses were laid in ashes, inhabited before the fire by 1000000 of souls, together with a vast number of most stately palaces, and pagodes or pagan temples.

(‡) The same *Montan*, p. 377. In the meanwhile Mr. *Wagner* taking a short voyage to *Batavia*, soon returned to prepare for his second intended embassy to *Japan*. Anno 1659, he had made all the necessary preparations for it.

way with my two  
where having been  
returned, notwithstanding  
generously ill, with  
h of December to  
diately after my  
at of my negotia-  
place assign'd me

July, I was sent  
in the ship call'd  
relieve according  
Admiral, his year  
arrived the 18th of  
delivered the pre-  
to the emperor;  
three days when  
capital city of Je-  
put, which being  
nd, laid not only  
ht for its bigness  
province) in ashes  
sumed the royal  
uls; however we  
the fury of the  
tho' not with-

of October, I re-  
in the ship the  
of the head fa-  
who had received  
at Japan in the  
r to Mr. Coxe's  
ouble to get into  
ere having stay'd  
thence, in com-  
the Watchman,  
avia the 18th of  
d several Dutch  
returned for Hol-  
of Mr. John Ca-

to go a second

ceroy, without the  
s into a conference

Arnold Montan says,  
performed by Mr.  
rable; and p. 369.  
Wagener returning  
, found the whole  
at noon the fire got  
violence, that in an  
e watch-houses were  
e the fire dug'd on  
er hand, the empe-  
er the night, he ha-  
re with his chief  
built on the north-  
in front, in two days  
after, inhabited be-  
her with a vast num-  
or pagan temples.  
he mean while Mr.  
avia, soon returned  
ally to Japan. Anno  
reparations for it.

time

time as director to Japan, to take care of  
the company's interest there, Mr. John Mac-  
zucker, who succeeded Mr. Reymers as go-  
vernor-general, was pleased to appoint me  
100 guilders per month, without any limit-  
ed time; I embark'd immediately after  
aboard the ship call'd the *Venenburgh* at  
*Batavia*, and set forward with a prosperous  
gale till August, when being among the  
*Maccauske* islands upon the Chinese coast,  
we were overtaken by so violent a tempest,  
that we expected every moment to be dash-  
ed against the rocks, but thro' God's mercy  
this storm lasted not above twelve hours;  
after which the wind proving pretty favour-  
able, we continued our voyage, and the  
17th of September arrived safely in the bay  
of *Nangasacka*. Our commerce in Japan  
being establish'd upon a good foot, and all  
other matters settled to our satisfaction, I  
began to prepare for my return to *Batavia*;  
and in 1659, set sail in the ship called the  
*Harversen*, from the bay of *Nangasacka*; but  
the master of our vessel being not well ac-  
quainted in those seas, we got one night  
among the rocks *de Paradies* (a branch of  
the sea, formerly part of the continent,  
but swallow'd up by the waves) I was  
no sooner awake the next morning, but  
seeing ourselves among these rocks, and  
that we had missed the entrance of the  
*Streight of Banca*, I gave myself over for  
lost, and certainly had been so, if by the  
indefatigable labour of the seamen, and a  
favourable gale, we had not made shift to  
get the 20th of December into the harbour  
call'd *Paulofingen*, where we were forced to  
stay four days before we could get out to  
make the said streight, from whence we  
failed without any sinister accident to *Ba-  
tavia*.

Anno 1660, the 22d of August, Mr. Ja-  
cob Carack, and I were sent as commission-  
ers to *Macassar* in the *Postilion* yacht, to  
treat with the king concerning a peace,  
pursuant to the instructions given us for  
that purpose.

The 12th of November I returned alone  
in the same vessel, in order to give an ac-  
count of my negotiation there, Mr. Carack  
being obliged to stay behind about some  
business of moment in our fortrefs of *Pan-  
neballa*.

In the beginning of the year 1661, be-  
ing without employment, I thought fit to  
accept of the surveyorship over the build-  
ings, vacant by the death of Mr. John Li-  
fingen, whereby I a third time obtained a  
place in the council of justice; but finding  
this office too burthensome for my gouty  
carcass, which was not able to endure such  
continual going from place to place, I quit-  
ted that employment, and in lieu thereof

was ordered to relieve the commander in  
chief on the *Cape of Good-Hope*, Mr. John  
*Van Riebeck*, who was to have been succeed-  
ed by Mr. *Gent Van Hoom* but he dying in  
his voyage thither, I was pitch'd upon to  
supply his place. Accordingly I left *Bata-  
via* Anno 1662, the 30th of January, with  
all my family, and with two ships in sixteen  
days time, with a prosperous gale, came in  
sight of the cape or utmost point of *Africa*.  
As I was entering the bay, we heard the  
unwelcome news, that of the seven ships  
we saw at anchor before *Batavia*, and part-  
ed thence about a month before us, four  
were lost in a storm near the island of St.  
*Maurice*.

Anno 1663, in February I received let-  
ters out of Holland from the governors of  
the company, wherein they not only con-  
firm'd me in my governors place here, but  
also appointed me the same allowance my  
predecessor had enjoy'd.

Anno 1664, being advertised by several  
letters sent to me over land from the bay  
of *St. Helens*, by captain *Henry Van Wallen*,  
intimating that a conspiracy had been disco-  
vered in the ship call'd the *Arms of Horn*,  
and that he had been obliged to take into  
custody the master of the ship and another  
officer; I embark'd the next day with  
three horses, aboard the ship called the  
*Watercock*, but not being able to go be-  
yond the cape of *Satanbia*, I landed there,  
with two servants on horse-back, continu-  
ed my journey thither by land; but were  
no sooner arrived there, when being in-  
form'd by the *Hottentots* (inhabitants of the  
cape) that the said ship was failed thence  
the day before towards the cape; we were  
forced to make the best of our way back  
to the bay of *Satanbia*, where we arrived  
the 3d day, but to our great regret,  
found that the captain had again quitted  
his first station there, and was gone up  
two leagues farther into the bay; so that  
we saw ourselves under an absolute neces-  
sity to take up our resting place all that  
night upon the ground near the sea-shore  
but were not a little surpris'd, when the  
next morning we discovered in the land  
the foot-steps of a great lion that had pas-  
sed but a few paces from us, without doing  
us any harm.

After my return to the cape, viz. Anno  
1666, my wife, after a month's sickness,  
departed this life, after I had lived with  
her in marriage 18 years and four months,  
but had no children by her; I ordered a  
small chapel to be built on the cape, where-  
in she was interred. Not many months  
after, viz. the 16th of September Mr. *Corne-  
lius Van Quaalbergen*, who was sent in the  
ship the *Dordrecht* to succeed me in my com-  
mand,

mand, arrived at last on the cape, after a most tedious and troublesome voyage of eight months, in which they had lost 190 men by the scurvy and other distempers. Having pursuant to the orders sent me by the council of seventeen, given the said Mr. *Quellbergen*, all the necessary instructions, and surrendered the government into his hands, I embark'd with all my moveables the 1st of *October*, in the before-mentioned ship the *Dordrecht*, together with my daughter-in-law, whose name was *Mary Buequi*, the relict of *Cornelius Vorburgh*, one of the head factors of the company, and with a very moderate and prosperous wind, arrived safely at *Batavia*, where being lodged at Mr. *John Balan's* house, she and I shared the inheritance of her mother, according to the determination of two arbitrators chosen for that purpose.

Anno 1667, the 1st of *September* I embark'd at *Batavia* in the ship called the *Erebus*, being sent as an envoy of the companies to the emperor of great *Java* or of *Materan*, with two very fine *Persian* herbes, besides other presents to renew the ancient friendship, and good neighbourly correspondence betwixt them; we came to an anchor near the river *Samaran*, where leaving our ship, we travell'd in six or seven days to the capital city *Materan*, where having discharged my commission, I return'd from thence by land, with a numerous attendance to *Samaran*, and from thence set sail towards *Japan*, where having stayed a few days to dispatch some business of moment, we embarked, and arrived the last day of *November*, with the same yacht, we came in from *Batavia* in that road, where I gave an ample account of my transactions to the great council of the *Indies*.

Having by this time spent twenty five years in the *East-India* company's service, I took a full resolution to return to my native country, for which reason having desired my discharge from the just now mentioned council, the governor-general, Mr. *Maetzucker*, would fain have prevailed upon me to continue there for some time longer, offering me his garden-house without the gate of *Batavia* for my habitation.

But being resolved to return to my native country, I was forced to refuse his kind offer, and having obtained my passport, I left *Batavia* in 1667, the 8th of *December*, with a Squadron of six ships, whereof *John Vander Lahn* was admiral, and my self carrying the vice-admiral's flag aboard the ship call'd the *Arms*, bound for *Middleburg* on account of the chamber

of *Zealand*. Having happily pass'd the *Straits of Sunda*, we arrived Anno 1668, the 22d of *February*, with fair wind and weather, in the *Table-Bay* of the cape of *Good-Hope*, where to our great satisfaction we received the news of the late concluded peace betwixt his *Britannick* majesty and the states-general at *Breda*.

Whilst we lay at anchor here, four more ships that were left behind at *Batavia* to take in their cargo, arrived likewise in the said bay the 10th of *March*; as also not long after, the ship called *Thuis de Telsen*, being sent from the chamber of *Amsterdam*, having aboard fourteen conspirators, (for the most part northern country men) who had laid a plot to kill the captain and the other officers of their ship, whilst they were at dinner, and afterwards to seize the vessel; five of the ringleaders of them were sentenced to be hanged on a gibbet near the fort; seven others to be whip'd and burn'd with a red hot iron, and the rest to be kept in irons for their life-time, and to work in such places as should be appointed by the company, which was put in execution accordingly. Anno 1668, the 26th of *March* we set sail from the *Table-Bay* with the whole fleet, consisting of ten ships richly laden, viz. the *Holland Hayn*, the *Arms of Middleburgh*, the *Dordrecht*, *Liberty*, *Amerongen*, *Cattenburgh*, the *Spreew*, *Outshorn*, the *Tiger* and the *Young Prince*; and taking our course betwixt the continent and the *Red-Island*, pass'd the *Green-Sea*, and so with a prosperous gale continued our voyage till the month of *July*, when we arrived happily in *Holland*.

N. B. Mr. *Zachary Wagener*, being in the month of *July* arrived with ten ships as vice-admiral in *Zealand*, found himself so much indispos'd, that after some stay at *Middleburgh*, he thought fit to go to *Amsterdam*, to take the advice of the physicians of that city; and having accordingly taken up his quarters at the sign of the city of *Prague*, in the *Warmer-street*, nothing was left unattempted to remove the indisposition of his body; which notwithstanding all the endeavours of the best physicians not availing, he died the 1st of *October* 1668, and was inter'd the 6th following, in the *Old Church* of *Amsterdam*. He was then 54 years old and four months, the greatest part of which he had spent in travelling by sea and land; having spent seven years in *Brasil*, and served the *Dutch East-India* company no less than 25 years.

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
Life and Actions  
OF  
Adm. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS,  
AND OF HIS  
DISCOVERY  
OF THE  
WEST-INDIES,  
CALL'D  
The NEW WORLD,  
Now in Possession of his CATHOLICK MAJESTY.

*Written by his own Son D. FERDINAND COLUMBUS.*

VOL. II.

6M

THE

T H E

## Author's Preface.

**I** Being the son of the admiral Christopher Columbus, a person worthy of eternal memory, who discovered the West-Indies; and having myself sail'd with him some time, it seem'd to me but reasonable, that among other things I have writ, one and the chiefest should be his life, and wonderful discovery of the West-Indies, or New-World; because his great and continual sufferings, and the distempers he laboured under, did not allow him time to form his notes and observations into a method fit for history; yet knowing there were many others who had attempted this work, I forebore, till reading their books I found in them, that which is usual among historians, viz. that they magnify some things, lessen others, and sometimes pass that over in silence, which they ought to give a very particular account of. For this reason I resolv'd to undergo the labour of this task, thinking it better I should lie under the censure my skill and presumption shall be subject to, than to suffer the truth of what relates to so noble a person to lie buried in oblivion. For it is my comfort, that if any fault be found in this my undertaking, it will not be that, which most historians are liable to, viz. that they know not the truth of what they write; for I promise to compose the history of his life of such matter only as I find in his own papers and letters, and of those passages of which I myself was an eye-witness. And whoever shall imagine, that I add any thing of my own, may be assured I am satisfied, I can reap no benefit thereby in the life to come; and that the reader alone will have the benefit of it, if it be capable of yielding any.

The author having given this account of himself, I have not much to add, but to inform the reader before he enters upon the work, that in it he will find all the reasons which induced the admiral to such an undertaking; he will see how far he proceeded in person upon the discovery in four several voyages he made; how great and honourable the articles were, upon which he entered upon the discovery, and which were afterwards confirm'd to him by those two famous princes, king Ferdinand and queen Isabel or Elizabeth; how basely they were all violated; and he, after such unparalleled services, most inhumanly treated; how far he settled the affairs of the island Hispaniola, the first place the Spaniards planted in; what care he took that the Indians should not be oppress'd, but rather by good usage and example, prevail'd upon to embrace the Catholick faith; also the customs and manners of the Indians; their opinions and practice as to religious worship; and in a word, all that can be expected in a work of this nature, the foundation whereof was laid by so great a man as was the admiral, and finish'd by his own son, who had all the education that could contribute to make him capable of writing so notable a life.

T H E

Colum-  
bus's ori-  
ginal.



( 499 )

THE  
DISCOVERY  
OF THE  
*WEST-INDIES,*

BY

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS,

Together with his

LIFE and ACTIONS, &c.

CHAP. I.

*Of the country, original, and name of admiral Christopher Columbus.*

Colum-  
bus's ori-  
ginal.

IT being a very material point in the history of any man of note, to make known his country and original, because they are best look'd upon, who are born in noble cities and of illustrious parents; therefore some would have had me spent my time in shewing that the admiral was honourably descended, tho' his parents, thro' the peevishness of fortune, were fallen into great poverty and want; and that I should have proved they were the offspring of that *Junius Colon*, of whom *Tacitus* in his 12th book says, That he brought king *Mithridates* prisoner to *Rome*; for which service the people assign'd him the consular dignity, the eagle or standard and consular court. And they would have me give a large account of those two illustrious *Coloni*, his predecessors, who, *Sabellicus* tells us, gained a mighty victory over the *Venetians*, as shall be mention'd in the 5th chapter: But I refused to undertake that task, believing he was particularly chosen by Almighty God for so great an affair as that was he performed; and because he

was to be so truly his apostle as in effect he proved it was his will he should in this part be like the others, who were called to make known his name from the sea and rivers, and not from courts and palaces, and to imitate himself, whose progenitors being of the blood royal of *Jerusalem*, yet it pleas'd him that his parents should not be much known. Therefore, as God gave him all the personal qualities for such an undertaking, so he would have his country and original more hid and obscure. So it is that some, who would cast a cloud upon his fame, say he was of *Nervi*, others of *Cugureo*, and others of *Bugiesco*, all small towns near the city of *Genoa*, and upon its coast. Others, who were for exalting of him say, he was a native of *Savona*, others of *Genoa*; others more vain, make him of *Piacenza*, in which city there are some honourable persons of his family, and tombs with the arms and inscriptions of the family of *Columbus*; this being then the usual surname of his predecessors; tho' he complying with

His Name.

the

THE

the country whither he went to live, and begin a new state of life, modelled the word, that it might be like the ancient, and distinguished the direct from the collateral line, calling himself *Colon*. This made me apt to believe, that as most of his affairs were guarded by some special providence, so this very particular, concerning his name and surname, was not without some mystery. We may instance many names which were given by secret impulse, to denote the effects those persons were to produce, as in his is foretold and expressed the wonder he performed. For if we look upon the common surname of his ancestors, we may say he was true *Columbus* or *Columba*, for as much as he convey'd the grace of the Holy Ghost into that new world which he discovered, shewing those people who knew him not, which was God's beloved son, as the Holy Ghost did in the figure of a dove at St. *John's* baptism; and because he also carried the olive branch and oil of baptism over the waters of the ocean, like *Noah's* dove, to denote the peace and union of those people with the church, after they had been shut up in the ark of darkness and confu-

sion. And the surname of *Colon* which he reviv'd, was proper to him, which in *Greek* signifies a member, that his proper name being *Christophor*, it might be known he was a member of Christ, by whom salvation was to be convey'd to those people. Moreover, if we would bring his name to the *Latin* pronunciation, that is *Christophorus* *Colonus*; we may say, that as St. *Christophor* is reported to have bore that name, because he carried Christ over the deep waters, with great danger to himself, whence came the denomination of *Christophor*; and as he convey'd over the people whom no other could have been able to carry; so the admiral, *Christophorus* *Colonus*, imploring the assistance of Christ in that dangerous passage, went over safe himself and his company, that those *Indian* nations might become citizens and inhabitants of the church triumphant in heaven; for it is to be believ'd, that many souls, which the devil expected to make a prey of, had they not pass'd through the water of baptism, were by him made inhabitants and dwellers in the eternal glory of heaven.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the admiral's father and mother, and their quality, and of the false account one Justiniani gives of his employ, before he had the title of admiral*

*No certainty of Columbus's parentage.*

NOT to go upon the etymology, derivation and meaning of the word admiral; but to return to the quality and persons of his progenitors; I say, that how considerable soever they were, being reduced to poverty and want by the wars and factions in *Lombardy*; I do not find after what manner they lived, tho' the admiral himself in a letter says, that his ancestors and he always traded by sea. For my farther information in this particular, as I pass'd thro' *Cugureo*, I endeavoured to receive some information from two brothers of the *Columbi*, who were the richest in those parts, and reported to be somewhat a kin to him; but the youngest of them being above 100 years old, they could give me no account of this affair. Nor do I think that this is any dishonour to us who descend from him, because I think it better that all the honour be deriv'd to us from his person, than to go about to enquire whether his father was a merchant or a man of quality, that kept his hawks and hounds; whereas it is certain there have been a thousand such in all parts, whose memo-

ry was utterly lost in a very short time among their neighbours and kindred, so as it is not known whether there ever were any such men. But I am of opinion that their nobility can add less lustre to me, than the honour I receive from such a father. And since his own honourable exploits made him not stand in need of the wealth of his predecessors, (who notwithstanding their poverty, were not destitute of virtue, but only of fortune) he ought at least by his name and worth, to have been raised by authors above the rank of mechanics and handicrafts. Which yet, if any will affirm, grounding his assertion on what one *Augustin Justiniani* writes in his chronicle; I say, that I will not set my self to deny it, begging time or means to prove the contrary by testimonials; for as much as *Justiniani's* writing it does not make that to be look'd upon as an article of faith, which is no longer in the memory of man; so neither will it be thought undeniable, should I say I received the contrary from a thousand persons. Nor will I show his falsehood by the histories others have

*Justiniani's chronicle.*

Colon which he which in Greek s proper name be known he y whom salva- to those people. ng his name to is *Chriſtophorus* as *St. Chriſto-* ore that name, over the deep himſelf, whence *Chriſtopher*; and eople whom no to carry; ſo the *mus*, imploring that dangerous himſelf and his nations might abitants of the ven; for it is y ſouls, which ke a prey of, h the water of ade inhabitants l glory of hea-

the false account  
admiral

ry ſhort time a- and kindred, ſo there ever were of opinion that ſis luſtre to me, from ſuch a fa- honourable ex- in need of the (who notwith- not deſtitute tute) he ought worth, to have ve the rank of s. Which yet, ing his aſſertion *Justini-* iani writes in his will not ſet my me or means to cimonials; for as ing it does not pon as an article r in the memory be thought un- ceived the con- ſions. Nor will e hiſtories others have

*False-  
Justi-  
niani's  
hiſtory.*

have writ of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, but by this ſame author's testimony, and writing, in whom is verified the proverb, *that lyers ought to have good memories*, becauſe other- wiſe they contradict themſelves, as *Justini- ani* did in this caſe; ſaying in his com- pariſon of the four languages, upon that expreſſion of the pſalm, *in omnem terram exiit ſonus eorum*, theſe very words. This *Chriſtopher Columbus* having in his tender years attain'd ſome elements of learning, when he came to manly years, applied him- ſelf to the art of navigation, and went to *Liſbon in Portugal*, where he learn'd coſ- mography, taught him by a brother of his who there made ſea charts; with which improvement, and diſcourſing with thoſe that fail'd to *S. George de la Mira* in *Africk*, and his own reading in coſ- mography, he entertain'd thoughts of fail- ing to thoſe countries he diſcover'd. By which words it appears, that he follow'd no mechanic employment, or handicraft; ſince, he ſays, he employ'd his childhood in learning; his youth in navigation and coſmography, and his riper years in diſ- coveries. Thus *Justiniani* convinces him- ſelf of falſhood, and proves himſelf an in- conſiderate, raſh, and malicious country- man; for when he ſpeaks of a renowned perſon who did ſo much honour to his country, whoſe hiſtoriographer *Justiniani* made himſelf, tho' the admiral's parents had been very mean, it had been more de- cent, to ſpeak of his origin, as other au- thors in the like caſe do; ſaying he was of low parentage, or come of very poor friends, than to uſe injurious words, as he did in his pſalter; and afterwards in his chronicle, falſly calling him a mechanick. And ſuppoſing he had not contradicted him- ſelf, reaſon it ſelf made it appear, that a man, who had been employ'd in art manu- al or handicraft, muſt be born and grow old in it to become a perfect maſter; and that he would not from his youth have travelled ſo many countries, as alſo that he would not have attained ſo much learning and knowledge, as his actions demonſtrate he had, eſpecially in thoſe four principal ſciences required, to perform what he did, which are, aſtrology, coſmography, geo- metry and navigation. But it is no won- der that *Justiniani* ſhould dare to deliver an untruth in this particular, which is hidden, ſince in affairs well known concerning his diſcovery and navigation, he has infered above a dozen falſhoods in half a ſheet of paper in his pſalter, which I ſhall briefly hint at without ſtaying to give him an an- ſwer, to avoid interrupting the ſeries of the hiſtory, ſince by the very courſe of it, and what others have writ on that ſubject, the

Vol. II.

falſhood of his writing will be made out. The firſt therefore was, that the admiral went to *Liſbon* to learn coſmography of a brother of his own that was there; which is quite contrary, becauſe he liv'd in that city before, and taught his brother what he knew. The ſecond falſhood is, that at his firſt coming into *Caſtile*, their catholic majesties *Ferdinand*, and *Iſabel*, or *Eli- zabeth* accepted of his propoſal, after it had been ſeven years bandy'd about and re- jected by all men. The third, that he ſet out to diſcover with two ſhips, which is not true, for he had three caravals. The fourth, that his firſt diſcovery was *Hip- paniola*, and it was *Guarabani*, which the ad- miral called *S. Salvador*, or *S. Saviour*. The fifth, that the ſaid iſland *Hippaniola* was inhabited by *Canibals*, that eat men's fleſh; and the truth is, the inhabitants of it were the beſt people, and moſt civiliz'd of any in thoſe parts. The ſixth, that he took by force of arms, the canoe, or *Indian* boat he ſaw, whereas it appears that he had no war that firſt voyage with any *Indian*, and continued in peace and amity with them till the day of his departure from *Hippaniola*. The ſeventh, that he re- turn'd by way of the *Canary* iſlands, which is not the proper way for thoſe veſſels to return. The eighth, that from the ſaid iſland he diſpatch'd a meſſenger to their majesties aforeſaid, whereas it is certain, that he was not firſt at that iſland, as was obſerv'd, and he himſelf was the meſſen- ger. The ninth, that the ſecond voyage he return'd with twelve ſhips, and it is mani- feſt he had ſeventeen. The tenth, that he arrived at *Hippaniola* in twenty days, which is a very ſhort time to reach the neareſt iſlands, and he perform'd it not in two months, and went to others much farther diſtant. The eleventh, that he preſently made from *Hippaniola* with two ſhips, and it is known there were three he took to go from *Hippaniola* to *Cuba*. *Justiniani's* twelfth falſhood is, That *Hip- paniola* is four hours diſtant from *Spain*, and the admiral reckons it above five. And farther, to add a thirteenth to the dozen, he ſays, the weſtern point of *Cu- ba*, is ſix hours diſtant from *Hippaniola*, making it further from *Hippaniola* to *Cuba*, than from *Spain* to *Hippaniola*. So that by his negligence and heedleſſneſs, in being well inform'd and writing the truth of theſe particulars, which are ſo plain, we may plainly diſcern what inquiry he made into that which was ſo obſcure, wherein he contradicts himſelf, as has been made appear. But laying aſide this controver- ſy, wherewith I believe I have by this time tired the reader, we will only add,

6 N

that

## The first Discovery of

that considering the many mistakes and falshoods found in the said *Justinian's* history, and psalter, the senate of *Genoa* has laid a penalty upon any person that shall read or keep it; and has caus'd it to be carefully fought out in all places it has been sent to, that it may by publick decree be destroy'd and utterly extinguish'd. I will return to our main design, concluding with this assertion, that the admiral was a man of learning and great experience; that he did not employ his time in handicraft or mechanick exercises, but

in such as became the grandeur and renown of his wonderful exploits, and will conclude this chapter with some words taken out of a letter he writ himself to prince *John of Castile's* nurse, which are these.

*I am not the first admiral of my family, let them give me what name they please; for when all is done, David, that most prudent King, was first a shepherd, and afterwards chosen king of Jerusalem, and I am servant to that same Lord, who rais'd him to such dignity.*

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the admiral's person, and what sciences he learn'd.*

*The admiral described.*

THE admiral was well shap'd, and of a more than middling stature, long visag'd, his cheeks somewhat full, yet neither fat nor lean; he had a hawk nose, his eyes white, his complexion white, with a lovely red: In his youth his hair was fair, but when he came to thirty years of age, it all turn'd grey. He was always modest and sparing in his eating, drinking, and his dress. Among strangers he was affable, and pleasant among his domesticks, yet with modesty and an easy gravity. He was so strict in religious matters, that for fasting and saying all the divine office, he might be thought profess'd in some religious order. So great was his aversion to swearing and cursing, that I protest I never heard him swear any other oath, but by *S. Ferdinand*; and when in the greatest passion with any body, he would vent his spleen by saying, *God take you for doing or saying so.* When he was to write, his way of trying his pen

was by writing these words, *Jesus cum Maria sit nobis in via*, and that in such a character, as might very well serve to get his bread. But passing by other particulars of his actions and manners, which may be mention'd at their proper time in the course of this history; let us proceed to give an account to what science he most addict'd himself. In his tender years he apply'd himself so much to study at *Pavia*, as was sufficient to understand cosmography; to which sort of reading he was much addict'd, for which reason he also apply'd himself to astrology and geometry, because these sciences are so link'd together, that the one cannot subsist without the other: And because *Ptolemy* in the beginning of his cosmography, says, that no man can be a good cosmographer unless he be a painter too; therefore he learn'd to draw, in order to describe lands, and set down cosmographical bodies, plains or rounds.

### CHAP. IV.

#### *How the admiral employ'd himself before he came into Spain.*

*Testimonies out of Columbus's own writings.*

THE admiral having gain'd some insight in sciences, began to apply himself to the sea, and made some voyages to the east and west; of which and many other things of those his first days, I have no perfect knowledge, because he died at such time as I being confin'd by filial duty, had not the boldness to ask him to give an account of things; or to speak the truth, being but young, I was at that time far from being troubled with such thoughts. But in a letter writ by him in the year 1501, to their catholick majesties, to whom he

durst not have writ any thing but the truth; he has these following words.

Most serene princes, "I went to sea very young, and have continued it to this day; and this art inclines those that follow it, to be desirous to discover the secrets of this world; it is now forty years that I have been failing to all those parts, at present frequented; and I have dealt and conversed with wise people, as well clergy as laity, *Latins, Greeks, Indians* and *Moors*, and many others of other sects; and our Lord has been favourable to this

"my

" my inclination, and I have received of  
 " him the spirit of understanding : He has  
 " made me very skilfull in navigation,  
 " knowing enough in astrology, and so  
 " in geometry and arithmetick. God hath  
 " given me a genius and hands apt to  
 " draw this globe, and on it the cities, ri-  
 " vers, islands and ports, all in their pro-  
 " per places. During this time I have seen,  
 " and endeavoured to see, all books of co-  
 " mography, history and philosophy, and  
 " of other sciences ; so that our Lord has  
 " sensibly opened my understanding, to the  
 " end I may sail from hence to the *Indies*,  
 " and made me most willing to put this in  
 " execution. Fill'd with this desire, I came  
 " to your highnesses. All that heard of my  
 " undertaking, rejected it with contempt  
 " and scorn. In your highnesses alone,  
 " faith and constancy had their feat." In  
 " another letter written from *Hispaniola*, in  
 " January 1495, to their catholick majesties,  
 " telling them the errors and mistakes com-  
 " monly made in voyages and piloting ; he  
 " says thus, " It happened to me that king  
 " *Rencee*, whom God has taken to himself,  
 " sent to me to *Tunis* to take the galeasse  
 " call'd *Fernandina* ; and being near to the  
 " island of *St. Peter* by *Sardinia*, I was told  
 " there were two ships and a barack with  
 " the said galeasse, which discompos'd  
 " my men, and they resolv'd to go no far-  
 " ther, but to return to *Marseilles* for ano-  
 " ther ship and more men ; and I perceiv-  
 " ing there was no going against their wills,  
 " without some contrivance, yielded to their  
 " desires, and changing the point of the  
 " needle, set sail when it was late, and next  
 " morning at break of day, we found our  
 " selves near cape *Cartegna*, all aboard  
 " thinking we had certainly been sailing for  
 " *Marseilles*." In the same manner in a  
 " *Memorandum*, or observation he made to  
 " show, that all the five zones are habitable,  
 " and proving it by experience in navigation,  
 " he says, " In *February* 1467, I sail'd my self  
 " an hundred leagues beyond *Tbule*, *Island*,  
 " whose northern part is 73 degrees distant  
 " from the equinoctial, and not 63 degrees  
 " as some will have it to be ; nor does it lie

" upon the line where *Ptolemy's* west begins,  
 " but much more to the westward ; and to  
 " this island which is as big as *England*, the  
 " *English* trade, especially from *Bristol*. At  
 " the time when I was there, the sea was  
 " not frozen, but the tides were so great,  
 " that in some places it swell'd 26 fathoms,  
 " and fell as much." The truth is, That  
 " the *Tbule* *Ptolemy* speaks of, lies where he  
 " says, and this by the moderns is call'd *Friz-  
 land*. And then to prove that the equino-  
 " ctial or land under it is habitable, he says,  
 " I was in the fort of *St. George de la Mira*  
 " belonging to the king of *Portugal*, which  
 " lies under the equinoctial, and I am a wit-  
 " ness that 'tis not uninhabitable, as some  
 " would have it." And in his book of his  
 " first voyage, he says, " He saw some mer-  
 " maids on the coast of *Menegueta*, but that  
 " they are not so like ladies, as they are  
 " painted." And in another place he  
 " says, " I observed several times in sailing  
 " from *Lisbon* to *Guinea*, that a degree on  
 " the earth, answers to 56 miles and two  
 " thirds." And farther he adds, " That  
 " in *Scio*, an island of the *Archipelago*, he  
 " saw mastick drawn from some trees." In  
 " another place he says, " I was upon the sea  
 " 23 years, without being off it any time  
 " worth the speaking of ; and I saw all the  
 " east and all the west, and may say towards  
 " the north, or *England*, and have been at  
 " *Guinea* ; yet I never saw harbours for  
 " goodness, like those of the *West-Indies*." And a little farther he says, " That he took  
 " to the sea at 14 years of age, and ever  
 " after follow'd it." And in the book of  
 " the second voyage, he says, " I had got  
 " two ships, and left one of them at *Porto*  
 " *Santo*, for a certain reason that occur'd  
 " to me, where she continued one day,  
 " and the next day after I join'd it at  
 " *Lisbon*, because I light of a storm and  
 " contrary winds at south-west, and she had  
 " but little wind at north-east, which was  
 " contrary." So that from these instances  
 " we may gather, how much experience he  
 " had in sea affairs, and how many countries  
 " and places he travell'd before he undertook  
 " his discovery.



## CHAP. V.

*The admiral's coming into Spain, and how he made himself known in Portugal, which was the cause of his discovering the West-Indies.*

*Another  
Columbus.*

AS concerning the cause of the admiral's coming into Spain, and his being addicted to sea-affairs, the occasion of it was a famous man, of his name and family, call'd *Columbus*, renown'd upon the sea, on account of the fleet he commanded against infidels, and even in his own country, inasmuch that they made use of his name to frighten the children in the cradle; whose person and fleet, it is likely were very considerable, because he at once took four *Venetian* galleys, whose bigness and strength I should not have believ'd, had I not seen them fitted out. This man was call'd *Columbus the Younger*, to distinguish him from another, who was a great seaman before him. Of which *Columbus the Younger*, *Marc Antony Sabellicus*, the *Livy* of our age, says in the eighth book of his tenth decade, That he lived near the time when *Maximilian*, son to the emperor *Frederick* the 3d, was chosen king of the *Romans*: *Jerome Donato* was sent ambassador from *Venice* into *Portugal*, to return thanks in the name of the republic to king *John* the 2d, because he had clothed and relieved all the crew belonging to the aforesaid great galleys, which were coming from *Flanders*, relieving them in such a manner, as they were enabled to return to *Venice*, they having been overcome by the famous Corsair *Columbus the Younger*, near *Lisbon*, who had strip'd and turn'd them ashore. Which authority of so grave an author as *Sabellicus*, may make us sensible of the afore-mention'd *Justiniani's* malice, since in his history he made no mention of this particular, to the end it might not appear, that the family of *Columbus* was less obscure than he would make it. And if he did it thro' ignorance, he is nevertheless to blame; for undertaking to write the history of his country, and omitting so remarkable a victory, of which its enemies themselves make mention. For the historian, our adversary, makes so great account of his victory, that he says, ambassadors were sent on that account to the king of *Portugal*. Which same author in the afore-mentioned eighth book, somewhat further, as one less obliged to inquire into the admiral's discovery, makes mention of it, without adding those twelve lies which *Justiniani* inserted. But to return to the matter in hand, I say, That whilst the admiral sail'd with the aforesaid *Columbus*

*the Younger*, which was a long time; it fell out that understanding the before-mentioned four great *Venetian* galleys were coming from *Flanders*, they went out to seek, and found them beyond *Lisbon*, about Cape. *St. Vincent*, which is in *Portugal*, where falling to blows, they fought furiously, and grappled, beating one another from vessel to vessel with the utmost rage, making use, not only of their weapons, but artificial fire-works; so that after they had fought from morning till evening, and abundance were kill'd on both sides; the admiral's ship took fire, as did a great *Venetian* galley, which being fast grappled together with iron hooks and chains, used to this purpose by sea-faring men, could neither of them be relieved, because of the confusion there was among them, and the fright of the fire, which in a short time was so increased, that there was no other remedy, but for all that could, to leap into the water, so to die sooner, rather than bear the torture of the fire. But the admiral being an excellent swimmer, and seeing himself two leagues or a little further from land, laying hold of an oar, which good fortune offered him, and sometimes resting upon it, sometimes swimming, it pleased God, who had preserved him for greater ends, to give him strength to get to shore; but so tired and spent with the water, that he had much ado to recover himself. And because it was not far from *Lisbon*, where he knew there were many *Genoeses* his countrymen, he went away thither as fast as he could, where being known by them he was so courteously received and entertain'd, that he set up house and marry'd a wife in that city. And so far as he behav'd himself honourably, and was a man of a comely presence, and did nothing but what was just; it happened that a lady whose name was *Donna Felipa Moniz*, of a good family and pensioner in the monastery of all saints, whither the admiral used to go to mass, was so taken with him, that she became his wife. His father-in-law *Peter Moniz Pereirello*, being dead, they went to live with the mother-in-law, where being together, and the seeing him so much addicted to cosmography, told him that her husband *Pereirello* had been a great sea-faring man, and that he with two other captains having obtained the king of *Portugal's* leave, went to make discoveries

*The admiral  
saw  
under him*

*Come to  
Lisbon and  
marry.*

*Some  
people  
say*

*Argument  
for  
the  
fact*

coveries, upon condition, that dividing what they found into three parts they were to call lots who should chuse first. Being thus agreed, they sail'd away to the south-west, and arriv'd at the island of *Madera* and *Porto Santo*, places never before discovered. And because the island of *Madera* was biggest; they divid'd it into two parts; the island of *Porto Santo*, being the 3d which fell to the lot of the said *Peregrino*, *Columbus's* father-in-law, who had the government of it till he died.

The admiral being much delighted to hear such voyages and relations, his mother-in-law gave him the journals and sea charts left her by her husband, which still more inflam'd the admiral; and he enquired into the other voyages the *Portugueses* then made to *St. George de la Mira*, and along the coast of *Guinea*, being much pleas'd to discourse with those that had sail'd thither. To say the truth, I can not certainly tell whether whilst this wife lived, the admiral went to *Mira* or *Guinea*, as I said above, the reason seems to require it. However it was, as one thing leads to another; and one consideration to another, so whilst he was in *Portugal*, he

began to reflect, that as the *Portugueses* travel so far southward, it were no less proper to sail away westward, and land might in reason be found that way. That he might be the more certain and confident in this particular, he began to look over all the cosmographers again, whom he had read before, and to observe what astrological reasons would corroborate this project; and therefore he took notice of what any persons whatsoever spoke to that purpose, and of sailors particularly, which might any way be a help to him. Of all which things he made such good use, that he concluded for certain, that there were many lands west of the *Canary* islands, and *Cabo Verde*; and that it was possible to sail to, and discover them. But that it may appear from what mean arguments he came to deduce, or make out so vast an undertaking, and to satisfy many who are desirous to know particularly, what motives induced him to discover these countries, and expose himself in so dangerous an undertaking, I will here set down what I have found in his papers relating to this affair.

CHAP. VI.

*The principal motives that inclin'd the admiral to believe he might discover the West-Indies.*

BEING about to deliver the motives that inclin'd the admiral to undertake the discovery of the *West-Indies*, I say they were three, viz. natural reasons, authority of writers, and the testimony of sailors. As to the first, which is natural reason, I say, he concluded that all the sea and land compos'd a sphere or globe; which might be gone about from east to west, travelling round it, till men came to stand feet to feet one against another in any opposite parts whatsoever. Secondly, he gave it for granted, and was satisfied by the authority of approved authors, that a great part of this globe had been already travelled over, and that there then only remained to discover the whole, and make it known, that space which lay between the eastern bounds of *India*, known to *Ptolemy* and *Marinus*, round about eastward, till they came thro' our western parts to the islands *Azores*, and of *Cabo Verde* the most western parts yet discovered. Thirdly, He considered, that this space lying between the eastern

limits known to *Marinus*, and the afore-said island of *Cabo Verde*, could not be above a third part of the great circumference of the globe, since the said *Marinus* was already gone 15 hours, or 24 parts into which the world is divided towards the east; and therefore to return to the said isles of *Cabo Verde*, there wanted about eight parts; for the said *Marinus* is said to have begun his discovery towards the west. Fourthly he reckoned, that since *Marinus* had in his said cosmography, given an account of 15 hours, or parts of the globe towards the east, and yet was not come to the end of the eastern land, it followed of course, that the said end must be much beyond that; and consequently, the farther it extended eastward, the nearer it came to the islands *Cabo Verde*, towards our western parts; and that if such space were sea, it might easily be sail'd in a few days, and if land, it would be sooner discovered by the west, because it would be nearer to the said islands. To which reason

6 O son

son may be added, that given by *Strabo* in the 15th book of his cosmography, that no man with an army ever went so far as the eastern bounds of *India*, which *Ctesias* writes is as big as all the rest of *Asia*; *Oenopides* affirms, it is the third part of the globe; and *Nearchus*, that it is four months journey in a strait line; besides *Pliny* in the 17th chapter of his 6th book, says, That *India* is the third part of the earth: Whence he argu'd, that being so large, it must be nearer *Spain* by way of west. The 5th argument that induced him to believe, that the distance that way was small, he took from the opinion of *Alfraganus* and his followers, who make the circumference of the globe, much less than all other writers and cosmographers, allowing but 56 miles and two thirds to a degree. Whence he would infer, that the whole globe being small, that extent of the third part must of necessity be small, which *Marinus* left as unknown; therefore that part might be sail'd in less time than he assign'd; for since the eastern bounds of *India* were not yet discover'd, those bounds must lie near to us westward, and therefore the lands he should

Why call'd  
Indies.

discover, might properly be call'd *Indies*. By this it plainly appears, how much one Mr. *Roderick*, arch-deacon of *Seville*, was in the wrong as well as his followers, who blame the admiral; saying, He ought not to have call'd those parts *Indies*, because they are not so, whereas the admiral did not call them *Indies*, because they had been seen or discover'd by any other person, but as being the eastern part of *India* beyond *Ganges*, to which no cosmographer ever assign'd bounds, or made it border on any other country eastward, but only upon the ocean; and because these were the eastern unknown lands of *India*, and have no particular name of their own; therefore he gave them the name of the nearest country, calling them *West-Indies*, and the more because he knew all men were sensible of the riches and wealth of *India*; and therefore by that name he thought to tempt their catholic majesties, who were doubtful of his undertaking, telling them he went to discover the *Indies* by way of the west. And this mov'd him rather to desire to be employed by the king of *Castile*, than by any other prince.

## CHAP. VII

### The second motive inducing the admiral to discover the West-Indies.

A second  
motive  
from au-  
thors.

THE second motive that encouraged the admiral to undertake the afore-said enterprise, and which might reasonably give occasion to call the countries he should discover *Indies*, was the great authority of learned men, who said that it was possible to sail from the western coast of *Africa* and *Spain*, westward to the eastern bounds of *India*, and that it was no great sea that lay between them, as *Aristotle* affirms, at the end of his 2d book of heaven and the world; where he says, That they may sail from *India* to *Cadiz* in a few days. Which some think *Averroes* proves, writing upon that place. And *Seneca* in his first book of nature, looking upon the knowledge of this world, as nothing in respect of what is attain'd in the next life; says, a ship may sail in a few days with a fair wind from the coast of *Spain*, to that of *India*. And if as some would have it, this same *Seneca* writ the tragedies; we may conclude it was to the same purpose, that in the chorus of his *Medea*, he speaks thus;

Venient annis  
Sæcula feris, quibus Oceanus  
Vincta rerum laxet, & ingens  
Pateat tellus, Typhysque novos  
Delegat orbis, nec sit terris  
Ultima Thule.

That is, There will come an age in later years, when the ocean will loose the bonds of things, and a great country be discovered, and another like *Typhys* shall discover a new world, and *Thule* shall no longer be the last part of the earth. Which now most certainly has been fulfill'd in the person of the admiral. And *Strabo* in the first book of his cosmography, says, the ocean encompasses all the earth; that in the east, it washes the coast of *India*, and in the west, those of *Mauritania* and *Spain*, and that if the vastness of the atlantick did not hinder, but they might soon sail from the one to the other upon the same parallel. The same he repeats in the second book. *Pliny* in the second book of his natural history, Chap. III. adds, That the ocean furrounds

A letter  
concerning  
the dis-  
covery  
westward.

surrounds all the earth, and that the extent of it from east to west, is from *India* to *Cadiz*. The same author, book the 6th. chap. 31, and *Solinus*, chap. 68, of the remarkable things in the world, say, that from the islands *Gorgones*, supposed to be those of *Cabo Verde*, was forty days sail on the *Atlantick* ocean, to the islands *Hesperides*, which the admiral concluded were those of the *West-Indies*. *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, and *John Mandville* in their travels say, they went much farther eastward than *Ptolemy* and *Marinus* mention, who perhaps do not speak of the eastern sea; yet by the account they give of the east, it may be argued, that the said *India* is not far distant from *Africk* and *Spain*. *Peter Aliacus* in his Treatise, *De imagine mundi*, chap. 8. *De quantitate terræ habitabilis*, & *Julius Capitolinus*, *de locis habitabilibus*; and in several other treatises, say, that *Spain* and *India* are neighbours westward. And in the 19th chapter of his cosmography, he has these words; according to the philosophers and *Pliny*, the ocean that stretches between the western borders of *Spain* and *Africk*, and from the

beginning of *India* eastward, is of no great extent, and there is no doubt but it may be sail'd over in a few days, with a fair wind, and therefore the beginning of *India* eastward, can not be far distant from the end of *Africk* westward. These and the like authorities of such writers, inclined the admiral to believe that the opinion he had conceived was right, and one Mr. *Paul* physician to Mr. *Dominick* of *Florence*, contemporary with the admiral, much encouraged him to undertake the said voyage. For this Mr. *Paul* being a friend to one *Ferdinand Martinez*, a canon of *Lisbon*, and they writing to one another concerning the voyages made in the time of king *Alphonso* of *Portugal* to *Guinea*, and concerning what might be made westward; the admiral who was most curious in these affairs, got knowledge of it, and soon by the means of *Laurence Girardi*, a *Florentine* residing at *Lisbon*, writ upon this subject to the said Mr. *Paul*, sending him a small sphere, and acquainting him with his design. Mr. *Paul* sent his answer in *Latin*, which in *English* is thus.

CHAP. VIII.

A Letter from Paul, a physician of Florence, to the admiral, concerning the discovery of the Indies.

To Christopher Columbus, Paul the physician wishes health.

I Perceive your noble and earnest desire to sail to those parts where the spice is produced, and therefore in answer to a letter of yours, I send you another letter, which some days since I writ to a friend of mine, and servant to the king of *Portugal*, before the wars of *Castile*, in answer to another he writ to me by his highnesses order, upon this same account, and I send you another sea chart like that I sent him, which will satisfy your demands. The copy of that letter is this.

To Ferdinand Martinez canon of Lisbon, Paul the physician wishes health.

A letter concerning the discovery westward.

I Am very glad to hear of the familiarity you have with your most serene and magnificent king, and though I have very often discoursed concerning the short way there is from hence to the Indies, where the spice is produced, by sea, which I look upon to be shorter than that you take by the coast of *Guinea*; yet you now tell me, that his highness would have me make out and demonstrate

it, so as it may be understood and put in practice. Therefore, tho' I could better show it him with a globe in my hand, and make him sensible of the figure of the world; yet I have resolved to render it more easy and intelligible, to show this way upon a chart, such as are used in navigation; and therefore I send one to his majesty, made and drawn with my own hand, wherein is set down the utmost bounds of the west from *Ireland*, in the north, to the farthest part of *Guinea*, with all the islands that lie in the way: opposite to which western coast is described the beginning of the Indies, with the islands and places whither you may go, and how far you may bend from the north pole towards the equinoctial, and for how long a time; that is, how many leagues you may sail before you come to those places most fruitful in all sorts of spice, jewels, and precious stones. Do not wonder if I term that country where the spice grows west, that product being generally ascribed to the east, because those who shall sail westward, will always find those places in the west; and they that travel by land eastward, will ever find those places in the east. The strait lines that lie lengthways in the chart, show the distance there

there is from east to east, the other cross them, show the distance from north to south. I have also mark'd down in the said chart, several places in India, where ships might put in upon any storm or contrary winds, or any other accident unforeseen. And moreover, to give you full information of all those places, which you are very desirous to know, you must understand, that none but traders live or reside in all those islands, and that there is there as great a number of ships and seafaring people with merchandize, as in any other part of the world, particularly in a most noble part call'd Zacton, where there are every year an hundred large ships of pepper loaded and unloaded, besides many other ships that take in other spice. This country is mighty populous, and there are many provinces and kingdoms, and innumerable cities under the dominion of a prince call'd the great cham, which name signifies king of kings, who for the most part resides in the province of cathay. His predecessors were very desirous to have commerce, and be in amity with christians, and 200 years since, sent ambassadors to the pope, desiring him to send them many learned men and doctors to teach them our faith, but by reason of some obstacles the ambassadors met with, they returned back without coming to Rome. Besides there came an ambassador to pope Eugenius IV. who told him the great friendship there was between those princes, their people and christians. I discours'd with him a long while upon the several matters of the grandeur of their royal structures, and of the greatness, length and breadth of their rivers, and he told me many wonderful things of the multitude of towns and cities founded along the banks of the rivers, and that there were 200 cities upon one only river, with marble bridges over it of a great length and breadth, and adorn'd with abundance of pillars. This country deserves as well as any other, to be discover'd, and there may not only be great profit made there, and many things of value found, but also gold, silver, all sorts of precious stones, and spices in abundance, which are not brought into our parts. And it is certain that many wise men, philosophers, astrologers, and other persons skill'd in all arts, and very ingenious, govern that mighty province, and command their armies. From Lisbon directly westward, there are in the chart 26 spaces, each of which contains 250 miles, to the most noble and vast city of Quilay, which is 100 miles in compass, that is 35 leagues; in it there are 10 marble bridges: the name signifies a heavenly city, of which wonderful things are reported, as to the ingenuity of the people, the buildings and revenues. This space above mentioned, is almost the third part of the globe. This city is

in the province of Mango, bordering on that of Cathay, where the king for the most part resides. From the island Antilia, which you call the seven cities, and where, if you have some knowledge, to the most noble island of Cipango, are ten spaces, which make 2500 miles, or 225 leagues, which island abounds in gold, pearls, and precious stones: and you must understand, they cover their temples and palaces with plates of pure gold. So that for want of knowing the way, all those things are hidden and conceal'd, and yet may be gone to with safety. Much more might be said, but having told you what is most material, and you being wise and judicious, I am satisfied there is nothing of it, but what you understand, and therefore I will not be more prolix. Thus much may serve to satisfy your curiosity, it being as much as the shortness of time and my business would permit me to say. So I remain most ready to satisfy and serve his highness to the utmost, in all the commands he shall lay upon me.

Florence, June 25.

1474.

After this letter, he again writ to the admiral as follows.

To Christopher Columbus, *Pat!* the physician wishes health.

I Received your letters with the things you sent me, which I take as a great favour, and commend your noble and ardent desire of sailing from east to west, as it is markt out in the chart I sent you, which would demonstrate it self better in the form of a globe. I am glad it is well understood, and that the voyage laid down is not only possible, but true, certain, honourable, very advantageous, and most glorious among all christians. You cannot be perfect in the knowledge of it, but by experience and practice, as I have had in great measure, and by the solid and true information of worthy and wise men, who are come from those parts to this court of Rome, and from merchants who have traded long in those parts, and are persons of good reputation. So that when the said voyage is perform'd, it will be to powerful kingdoms, and to most noble cities and provinces, rich, and abounding in all things we stand in need of, particularly in all sorts of spice in great quantities, and store of jewels. This will moreover be grateful to those kings and princes, who are very desirous to converse and trade with christians of these our countries, whether it be for some of them to become christians, or else to have communication with the wise and ingenious men of these parts, as well in point of religion, as



in all sciences, because of the extraordinary account they have of the kingdoms and government of those parts. For which reasons and many more that might be alledged, I do not at all admire, that you who have a great heart, and all the Portuguese nation, which has ever had notable men in all undertakings, be eagerly bent upon performing this voyage.

This letter, as was said before, encour-

aged the admiral much to go upon his discovery, tho' what the doctor there wrote was false, as believing that the first land they should meet with, would be Catbay, and the empire of the Great Cham, with the rest he there relates; since as experience has made appear, the distance from our Indies to that, is greater than from hence to our Indies.

CHAP. IX.

*The third motive and inducement, which in some measure excited the admiral to discover the West-Indies.*

As the  
admiral  
was  
the  
first  
to  
discover  
the  
West-Indies.

THE third and last motive the admiral had to undertake the discovery of the *West-Indies*, was the hopes of finding, before he came to *India*, some very beneficial island or continent, from whence he might the better pursue his main design. This his hope was grounded upon the authority of many wise men and philosophers, who look'd upon it as most certain, that the greatest part of this terraqueous globe was land, or that there was more earth than sea; which if so, he argued, that between the coast of *Spain* and the bounds of *India* then known, there must be many islands, and much continent, as experience has since demonstrated, which he the more readily believed, being imposed upon by many fables and stories which he heard told by several persons and sailors, who traded to the islands and western sea, and to *Madera*; which testimonies making somewhat to his purpose, they were sure to gain a place in his memory. Therefore I will not forbear relating them, to satisfy those that take delight in such curiosities. It is therefore requisite to be understood, that a pilot of the king of *Portugal*, whose name was *Martin Vicente*, told him, that he being once 450 leagues westward of cape *St. Vincent*, found and took up in the sea, a piece of wood ingeniously wrought, but not with iron; by which, and the winds having been west for many days, he guessed that piece of wood came from some island that way. Next one *Peter Correa*, who had married the admiral's wife's sister, told him, that in the island of *Porto Santo* he had seen another piece of wood brought by the same winds, well wrought, as that above mentioned; and that there had been canes found so thick, that every joint would hold above four quarts of wine; which he said he affirmed to the king of *Portugal* himself dis-

couraging with him about these affairs, and that they were shown him; and there being no place in our parts, where such canes grow, he look'd upon it as certain, that the wind had brought them from some neighbouring islands, or else from *India*. For *Ptolemy* in the first book of his cosmography, chap. 17, says, there are such canes in the eastern parts of *India*: And some of the islanders, particularly the *Azores* told him, that when the west wind blew long together, the sea drove some pines upon those islands, particularly upon *Gratijsa* and *Fayal*, there being no such in all those parts. And that the sea cast upon this island of *Flores*, another of the *Azores*, two dead bodies of men, very broad faced, and differing in aspect from the christians. At cape *Verga* and thereabouts, they say, they once saw some cover'd *Almadies* or boats, which it is believed were drove that way by stress of weather, as they were going over from one island to another. Nor were these only the motives he then had, which yet seem'd reasonable; but there were those that told him they had seen some islands, among whom was *Anthony Leme*, married in the island of *Madera*, who told him, that having made a considerable run in a caraval of his own westward, he had seen three islands. These he did not give credit to, because he found by their own words and discourse, that they had not fail'd 100 leagues to the westward, and that they had been deceived by some rocks, taking them for islands; or else perhaps they were some of those floating islands that are carried about by the water, call'd by the sailors *Aguadas*, whereof *Pliny* makes mention the first book, chap. 97, of his natural history; where he says, that in the northern parts the sea discover'd some spots of land, on which there are trees of deep roots, which parcels of land are carried

Floating-  
islands.

about like floats or islands upon the water. *Seneca* undertaking to give a natural reason why there are such sorts of islands, says in his third book, that it is the nature of certain spongy and light rocks, so that the islands made of them in *India*, swim upon the water. So that were it never so true, that the said *Anthony Leme* had seen some island, the admiral was of opinion, it could be no other than one of them, such as those called *St. Brandam* are supposed to be, where many wonders are reported to have been seen. There is also an account of others that lie much northward, and always burn. *Jucentius Fortunatus* relates, that there is an account of two islands towards the west, and more southward than those of *Cabo Verde*, which swim along upon the water. These and the like grounds might move several people of the islands of *Ferro* and *la Gomera*, as also of the *Azores*, to affirm that they saw islands towards the west every year, which they look'd upon as most certain, and many persons of reputation swore it was true. He says moreover, that in the year 1484, there came into *Portugal*, one from the island of *Madera* to beg a caraval of the king, to go to discover a countrey, which he swore he saw every year, and always after the self-same manner, agreeing with others, who said they had seen it from the islands *Azores*. On which grounds in the charts and maps formerly made, they placed some islands thereabouts; and particularly because *Aristotle* in his book of wonderful natural things, affirms, it was reported that some *Carthaginian* merchants had sail'd through the *Atlantick* sea, to a most fruitful island, as we shall declare more at large hereafter, which island some *Portuguese* inserted in their maps, calling it *Anvilla*; tho' they did not agree in the situation with *Aristotle*, yet none placed it above 200 leagues due west from the *Canaries* and *Azores*, which they conclude to be certainly the island of the seven cities, peopled by the *Portuguese* at the time that *Spain* was conquered by the *Moors* in the year 714. At which time they say, seven bishops with their people embark'd and sail'd to this island, where each of them built a city; and to the end none of their people might think of returning to *Spain*, they burnt the ships, tackle and all things necessary for sailing. Some *Portuguese* discouraging about this island, there were those that affirmed several *Portuguese* had gone to it, who could not find the way to it again. Particularly they say, that in the time of *Henry* infant of *Portugal*, a *Portuguese* ship was drove by stress of weather to this island *Anvilla*, where the

men went ashore, and were led by the islanders to their church, to see whether they were christians, and observed the *Roman* ceremonies, and perceiving they did, they desired them not to depart till their lord came, who was then absent, and would make very much of them, and give them many presents, and to whom they would presently send advice; but the master and seamen were afraid of being detained, suspecting those people had not a mind to be discovered, and might therefore buy their ship, and for that reason they sail'd back to *Portugal*, hoping to be rewarded for what they had done by the *Infante*. He reproved them severely, and bid them return quickly; but the master for fear run away from *Portugal* with the ship and men; and it is reported, that whilst the seamen were at church in the said island, the boys of the ship gathered sand for the cook-room, the third part whereof they found to be pure gold. Among others that set out to discover this island, was one *James de Fieue*, whose pilot *Peter Velasquez*, of the town of *Palos de Moguer*, told the admiral in the monastery of *St. Mary de la Rabida*, that they set out from *Feyal*, and sail'd above 150 leagues south-west, and in their return discovered the island *Flores*, being led to it by abundance of birds—they saw fly that way, because those being land and not sea-fowls, they judged they could not rest but upon land: After which they sail'd so far north-east, till they came to cape *Clare*, in the west of *Ireland*, where they met with stiff westerly winds, and yet a smooth sea, which they imagined was caused by some land that shelter'd it towards the west. But it being then the month of *August*, they would not turn towards the island for fear of winter. This was above forty years before our *Indies* were discovered. This account was confirm'd by the relation a mariner at port *St. Mary* made, telling him that once making a voyage into *Ireland*, he saw the said land, which he then thought to be part of *Tartary*, falling off towards the west, which it is like was the land we now call *Bacallaos*, and that they could not make up to it by reason of the bad weather. This he said agreed with what one *Peter de Valasco* of *Galicia* affirm'd to him, in the city of *Murcia* in *Spain*, which was, that sailing for *Ireland*, they went away so far to north-west, that they discovered land west of *Ireland*, which land he believes to be the same, that one *Fennaldolmos* attempted to discover after the manner as I shall here faithfully set down, as I found it in my father's writings; that it may appear how some men lay the foundation of great mat-

were led by the  
to see whether  
observed the Ro-  
ceiving they did,  
depart till their  
bsent, and would  
, and give them  
hom they would  
the master and  
ng detained, fu-  
d not a mind to  
t therefore burn  
eason they shi'd  
t to be rewarded  
t the *Infante*. He  
nd bid them re-  
for fear run  
he ship and men;  
hilst the seamen  
island, the boys  
nd for the cook-  
ereof they found  
g others that set  
, was one *James*  
*ter Velasquez*, of  
uer, told the ad-  
f *St. Mary de la*  
from *Feyal*, and  
south-west, and  
the island *Flores*,  
nce of birds they  
those being land  
dged they could  
after which they  
ill they came to  
f *Ireland*, where  
y winds, and yet  
y imagined was  
t shelter'd it to-  
being then the  
would not turn  
fear of winter.  
s before our *In-*  
account was con-  
ariner at port *St.*  
at once making a  
aw the said land,  
e part of *Tartary*,  
, which it is like  
l *Bacallaos*, and  
up to it by rea-  
This he said a-  
*ter de Valasco* of  
the city of *Mur-*  
that sailing for  
so far to north-  
d land west of  
elieves to be the  
as attempted to  
r as I shall here  
ound it in my fa-  
may appear how  
on of great mar-  
ters

ters upon slight grounds. *Gonzalo de Oviedo*, in his history of the *Indies*, writes, That the admiral had a letter, wherein he found the *Indies* describ'd, by one that had before discovered them, which was not so, but thus: *Vincent Dear*, a *Portuguese* of *Tavira*, returning from *Guinea* to the *Tercera* islands, and having pass'd the island of *Madera*, which he left east of him, saw, or imagin'd he saw, an island which he certainly concluded to be land. Being come to the *Tercera* island, he told it to one *Luke de Cazzana*, a *Genoese* merchant, who was very rich, and his friend, persuading him to fit out some vessel to conquer that place; which he was very willing to do, and obtain'd licence for it of the king of *Portugal*. He writ therefore to his brother *Francis de Cazzana*, who resided at *Sevil*, to fit out a ship with all

speed for the said pilot. But the said *Francis* making a jest of such an undertaking, *Luke de Cazzana* set out a vessel in the *Tercera* island, and the pilot went out three or four times to seek the said island, sailing from 120 to 130 leagues, but all in vain, for he found no land. Yet for all this, neither he nor his partner gave over the enterprize till death, always hoping to find it. And the brother aforesaid, told me and affirm'd it, that he knew two sons of the captain that discovered the *Tercera* island, their names *Michael* and *Jasper Coterel*, who went several times to discover that land, and at last in the year 1502, perish'd in the attempt, one after another, without ever being heard of; and that this was well known to many.

# CHAP. X.

*Proving it to be false, that the Spaniards had formerly the dominion of the Indies, as Gonzalo de Oviedo endeavours to make out in his history.*

*Aristotle  
account of  
a Spanish  
author dis-  
puted.*

IF all we have said above, concerning so many imaginary islands and countries, appears to be a mere fable and folly, how much more reason have we to look upon that as a falshood, which *Gonzalo Fernandez de Oviedo* conceits in his natural history of the *Indies*, looking upon his own imagination as a certain truth, and saying he has fully made out, that there was another discoverer of this navigation of the ocean, and that the *Spaniards* had the dominion of those lands; alledging to make out his assertion, what *Aristotle* writes of the island *Atlantis*, and *Sebosus* of the *Hesperides*. This he affirms upon the judgment of some persons, whose writings we have duly weigh'd and examin'd, and I would have omitted to talk on this subject, to avoid condemning some, and tiring the reader, had I not consider'd, that some persons, to lessen the admiral's honour and reputation, make great account of such notions. Besides I thought I did not perform my duty fully, by setting down with all sincerity the motives and inducements that inclin'd the admiral to undertake his unparalleled enterprize, if I should suffer such a falshood, which I know to be so, to pass unobserv'd. Therefore, the better to discover his mistake, I will in the first place, set down what *Aristotle*, as related by one *F. Theophilus de Ferra-*

*riis*, says as to this point; which *F. Theophilus* among *Aristotle's* problems collected by him, brings in a book call'd, *De admirandis in natura auditis*, a chapter with these following words: Beyond *Hercules's* pillars, it is reported there was formerly found an island in the atlantic sea, by certain *Carthaginian* merchants, which had never before been inhabited by any but brute beasts. It was all wooded and covered with trees, had a great many navigable rivers, and abounded in all things nature usually produces, though removed not many days sail from the continent. It happened that some *Carthaginian* merchants coming to it, and finding it a good country, as well for the richness of the soil, as temperature of the air, they began to people it. But the senate of *Carthage* being offended at it, soon made a publick decree, That for the future, no person upon pain of death, should go to that island, and they that went first were put to death; to the end that other nations should not hear of it, and some more powerful people take possession of it; by which means it might become an enemy to their liberty. Now I have faithfully quoted this authority, I will give the reasons that induce me to say, That *Oviedo* has no just cause to affirm that this island was *Hispaniola* or *Cuba*, as he asserts. In the first place, because *Gonzalo de Oviedo* not understanding

Atlantis  
neither Hi-  
spaniola  
nor Cuba.

understanding *Latin*, he of necessity took such interpretation of this place, as some body made him; who, by what we see did not well know how to translate out of one language into another, since he alter'd and chang'd the *Latin* text in several particulars, which perhaps deceiv'd *Oviedo*, and inclin'd him to believe that this quotation spoke of some island in the *Indies*; because we do not read in the *Latin* text, that these people went out of the straits of *Gibraltar*, as *Oviedo* writes; nor much less, that the island was large, nor its trees great, but that it was an island much wooded. Nor is it found there, that the rivers were wonderful; nor does it speak of its fatness, or say it was more remote from *Africa* than *Europe*, but in plain terms, says, it was remote from the continent: Nor does it say any towns were built there, for traders who happened upon it could build but little: Nor is it said to be famous, but that they were afraid its fame would spread abroad into other nations. So that the expostor who interpreted this place to him, being so ignorant, it caus'd *Oviedo* to imagine it to be another thing than really it was: and if he should say, that it is otherwise in *Aristotle's* text, and that what the friar writes, is as it were a compendium of what *Aristotle* writ; I must ask him who gave him authority to bestow so many kingdoms on whom he pleases, and to rob one of his honour, who has gain'd it so fairly; and tell him he ought not to have been satisfied with reading that authority as it lies in the friar's pamphlet, but should have seen it in the original, that is, in *Aristotle's* works. Besides that he was misinform'd in this case, for tho' *Theophilus* in all his other books following *Aristotle*, delivered the substance and sum of what he says; yet he did not so in his book *De admirandis*, he himself owning in the beginning, that he does not in that his book abridge *Aristotle*, as he has done in the others; but that he there inserts all the text word for word; and therefore it cannot be said there was either more or less in *Aristotle*, than what he set down. Add to this, That *Anthony Beccaria of Verona*, who translated this book out of *Greek* into *Latin*; of which translation *Theophilus* made use, did not render it so faithfully, but that he inserted several matters differing from the *Greek* original, as will appear to any man that shall observe it.

In the second place I say, that tho' *Aristotle* had writ so, as *Theophilus* delivers it, yet *Aristotle* himself quotes no author, but speaking as of a thing, for which there is no good authority, says, *Fertur*, which implies that what he delivers concerning this island, he

writes as doubtful and ill grounded. Besides, He writes of a thing not then new but which had happened long before; saying, It is reported, that formerly an island was found, and therefore it may well be said according to the proverb, *That in great travells there are great lyes*: Which proverb is now verifi'd; for in that narration there are circumstances no way agreeable to reason, for as much as it says, That this island abounded in all things, but had never been inhabited, which is not consonant, nor likely, for as much as fruitfulness in land proceeds from its being cultivated by the inhabitants; and where there are no inhabitants, the land is so far from producing any thing of it self, that even those things which art produces, grow wild and useless. Nor is it more likely, that the *Carthaginians* should be displeased, because their people had found such an island, and should put to death the discoverers; for if it was so remote from *Carthage* as the *Indies* are, it was a folly to fear that those who should come to inhabit there would conquer *Carthage*, unless, that as *Oviedo* affirms, the *Spaniards* possess'd those islands before. He would farther assert, That the *Carthaginians* were prophets, and that now their jealousy and prophesie were fulfill'd, the emperor taking *Tunis* or *Carthage*, with the money brought from the *Indies*, which I am satisfied he would have said, to gain more favour by telling such news, than he did, but that his book was publish'd before. So that any judicious person may conceive it is a folly to say, that island was never more heard of, because the *Carthaginians* quitted the dominion of it, for fear any other nation should take it from them, and come afterwards to destroy their liberty; for they ought to have fear'd this much more from *Sicily* or *Sardinia*, that lay but two days sail from their city, than from *Hispaniola*, between which and them, there lay one third of the world. And if it should be objected that they apprehended the wealth of that country, might empower their enemies to do them harm; I answer, they had more cause to hope, that being themselves masters of those riches, they might oppose and subdue whom they pleased, and that if they left that island unpeopled, they left it in the power of another to discover it; whence the same mischief might follow, which they feared. And therefore they ought rather to fortify it and secure their trade to it, as we know they did another time upon the like occasion; for having found the islands which they then call'd *Cassiterides*, and now we call the *Azores*, they kept that voyage very private, because of the tin they brought from thence; as *Strabo* tells us at the

grounded. Be-  
not then new  
g before; say-  
merly an island  
it may well be  
b, *That in great*  
Which proverb  
narration there  
greeable to rea-  
That this island  
had never been  
onant, nor like-  
ness in land pro-  
tivated by the  
re are no inha-  
from producing  
ven those things  
wild and useless.  
the *Cartaginians*  
use their people  
and should put  
or if it was so re-  
ndies are, it was  
se who should  
d conquer *Car-*  
*tado* affirms, the  
nds before. He  
the *Cartaginians*  
w their jealousy  
l, the emperor  
with the money  
which I am satis-  
gain more fa-  
than he did, but  
before. So that  
conceive it is a  
was never more  
aginians quitted  
r any other na-  
m, and come af-  
perty; for they  
uch more from  
ut two days sail  
*Hispaniola*, be-  
re lay one third  
uld be objected  
wealth of that  
r enemies to do  
had more cause  
elves masters of  
ppose and sub-  
nd that if they  
they left it in  
ver it; whence  
ow, which they  
ought rather to  
trade to it, as  
time upon the  
ound the islands  
erides, and now  
pt that voyage  
the tin they  
*Crabo* tells us at  
the

the latter end of the third book of his *co-*  
*mography*. Wherefore, granting it were  
true, what *Aristotle* had writ in this fable,  
it might be said he meant it of the voyage  
to the islands *Azores*, which either for want  
of better understanding, and the great an-  
tiquity of the testimony, or through affec-  
tion, which blinds men, *Oviedo* argues,  
should be understood of the *Indies* we now  
possess, and not of the said islands *Azores*,  
or any of them. If it should be replied,  
that this cannot be, because *Strabo* does not  
say they were the *Cartaginians* who were  
possessed of the islands *Azores*, but the *Phe-*  
*nicians*: I answer, that the *Cartaginians*  
being come from *Poenicia* with their queen  
*Dido*, therefore she and they were called  
*Poenicians* at that time, as the christians  
born in the islands are now called *Spaniards*.  
And should it be again urged, that the  
place of *Aristotle* which speaks of this island,  
says, it had many navigable rivers, which  
are not to be found in the islands *Azores*,  
but in *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*. I answer, that  
if we will take notice of this particular,  
they add, that there were abundance of  
beats in them, which there are not in *Cuba*  
or *Hispaniola*; and it may well be, that in  
a thing of such antiquity, there might be  
some mistake in relating that particular,  
as often happens in many of these uncer-  
tain and so far distant antiquities. Observe  
that neither *Cuba* nor *Hispaniola* have any  
deep navigable rivers, as the place quoted  
intimates; and that any ships may enter the  
mouths of the biggest rivers of those islands,  
but not conveniently sail up them. Besides  
that, as has been said, how great soever  
*Aristotle's* authority may be, the word might  
possibly be corrupted, and it might be writ  
*navigandum*, instead of *potandum*, which  
better agreed with what he treated of, com-  
mending it for plenty of drinking water,  
as well as fruitfulness in producing things  
to eat. This might well be verify'd of any  
one of the *Azores*, and with more reason,  
because neither *Cuba* nor *Hispaniola* lie so,  
as that the *Cartaginians* could be carried  
to them either by reason of their nearness,  
or by any mischance; for if those who went  
purposely with the admiral to discover,  
thought the way so long, that they would  
have turned back, how much longer must  
it seem to them who designed no such te-  
dious voyage, and who, as soon as the time  
would permit, had turned back towards  
their country! Nor does any storm last so  
long, as to carry a ship from *Cadiz* to *His-*  
*paniola*; nor is it likely, that because they  
were merchants, they should have any mind  
to run farther from *Spain* or *Cartage*, than  
the wind obliged them, especially at a time  
when navigation was not come to that per-

Vol. II.

fection as now it is. For which reason ve-  
ry inconsiderable voyages were then look'd  
upon as great, as appears by what we read  
of *Jason's* voyage to *Colchus*, and that of  
*Ulysses*, thro' the *Mediterranean*, in which  
so many years were spent; and therefore  
they were so famous, that the most excel-  
lent poets have given an account of them,  
because of the little knowledge they had  
then of sea-affairs, whereas it has been so  
approved of late in our age, that there have  
been those who had the boldness to sail  
round the world, which has contradicted the  
proverb that said, *He that goes to cape Nam*,  
*will either return or not*, which cape is in  
*Africk*, not very much distant from the *Ca-*  
*naries*. Besides, it is a notorious mistake,  
to think the island, whither those mer-  
chants were carried, could be either *Cuba*  
or *Hispaniola*; for it is well known, that  
with all the knowledge we have at this  
present, 'tis almost impossible to come at  
them, without meeting with any other  
islands that encompass them all round. But  
if we would say that land or island was  
none of the *Azores*, as has been said above,  
one lye ought to be grafted upon another,  
by alledging that it was the same island of  
which *Seneca* in his fourth book, makes  
mention, where he tells us, that *Thucydides*  
speaks of an island called *Atlantica*, which  
in the time of the *Peloponnesian* war was all,  
or mostly drowned. Whereof *Plato* also  
makes mention in his *Timæus*. But because  
we have discoursed too long concerning  
these fables, I will proceed to the next point,  
where it is said, that the *Spaniards* had en-  
tirely the dominion of the said islands;  
which opinion is grounded on what *Statius*  
and *Sebosus* say, that certain islands called  
*Hesperides*, lay forty days sail west of the  
islands *Gorgones*. And hence it is argued,  
that since those must of necessity be *Indies*,  
and are called *Hesperides*; that name came  
from *Hesperus*, who was king of *Spain*, who of  
consequence, and the *Spaniards* were lords  
of that country. So that rightly consider-  
ing his words, he endeavours from uncer-  
tain premises to deduce three infallible con-  
sequences, contrary to *Seneca's* rule, who  
in his sixth book of *Nature*, speaking of  
of such like things, says it is hard to affirm  
any thing as sure and certain upon grounds  
that are no other than conjectures, as here  
*Oviedo* does; forasmuch as only *Sebosus* is  
said to have made mention of those islands  
*Hesperides*, declaring towards what part they  
lie, but not mentioning that they were the  
*Indies*, or of whom they took the name,  
or by whom conquered. And if *Oviedo*  
out of *Berosus*, affirms that *Hesperus* was  
King of *Spain*; I grant it to be true, but  
not that he gave the name to *Spain*, or

*Hespe-*  
*rides* none  
of the  
*Indies*.

6 Q

*Italy*.



*Italy*. But he, like a true historian, owning that *Berosus* fails him in this particular, took up with *Hyginus*, yet cautiously without mentioning in what book or chapter; and thus he conceals his authority; for in short, no place is to be found where *Hyginus* speaks of any such matter; but on the contrary, in one only book of his that is extant, entitul'd, *De poetica astronomia*, he has not only no such words; but in three several places where he speaks of these *Hesperides*, he says thus; *Hercules* is painted as killing the dragon that guarded the *Hesperides*. And somewhat farther he says, that *Hercules* being sent by *Eurytheneus* for the golden apples to the *Hesperides*, and not knowing the way thither, he went to *Prometheus* on mount *Caucasus*, and entreated him to shew him the way, whence follow'd the death of the dragon. Now according to this we shall have other *Hesperides* in the east, to whom also *Oviedo* may say, *Hesperus* king of *Spain* gave his name. *Hyginus* says farther, in the chapter of planets, that it appears by several histories, that the planet *Venus* is called *Hesperus*, because it sets soon after the sun. From all which we may infer, that if we ought to make use of any testimonies or quotations from persons used to relate poetical fables, as *Hyginus* does, that very same which *Hyginus* says, rather makes against *Oviedo* than for him; and we may suppose and affirm, they were

called *Hesperides* from a certain star. And as the *Greeks* for the same reason call'd *Italy* *Hesperia*, as many write; so we may say, *Sebosus* called these islands *Hesperides*, and made use of the same conjectures, and some reasons to shew whereabouts they lay, which we said above, moved the admiral to believe for certain, that there were such islands westward.

Thus we may conclude, that *Oviedo* did not only presume to counterfeit authorities for what he said, but that either through inadvertency, or to please him who told him these things (for it is certain he did not understand them himself) he maintain'd two contradictions, the disagreement between which were sufficient to discover his error. For if the *Cartaginians*, who, as he says, arrived at *Cuba* or *Hispaniola*, found that country inhabited by none but brute beasts, how could it be true, that the *Spaniards* had been possessed of it long before, and that their king *Hesperus* gave it his name? Unless perhaps he will say, that some deluge unpeopled it; and that afterwards some other *Noah* restored it to that condition it was discovered in by the admiral. But because I am quite tired with this dispute, and methinks the reader is cloy'd with it, I will not dilate any more upon this point, but follow on our history.

## CHAP. XI.

*How the admiral was disgusted by the king of Portugal on account of the discovery he propos'd to him.*

*Proposals made to the king of Portugal.*

THE admiral now concluding that his opinion was excellently well grounded, he resolv'd to put it in practice, and to sail the western ocean in quest of those countries. But being sensible that such an undertaking was only fit for a prince, who could go through with and maintain it; he resolv'd to propose it to the king of *Portugal*, because he liv'd under him. And though king *John* then reigning, gave ear to the admiral's proposals, yet he seem'd backward in embracing them, because the great trouble and expence he was at upon account of the discovery and conquest of the western coast of *Africa*, call'd *Guinea*, without any considerable success as yet, or being as yet able to weather the cape of *Good Hope*, which name some say was given it instead of *Agelingué*, its proper denomination, because that was the farthest they hoped to extend their discoveries and con-

quests, or as others will have it, because this cape gave them hopes of better countries and navigation. Be it as it will, the aforesaid king had but little inclination to lay out more money upon discoveries; and if he gave any ear to the admiral, it was because of the excellent reasons he gave to prove his opinion, which so far prevail'd upon him, that there remain'd only to grant the admiral those terms he demand'd. For the admiral being a man of a noble and generous spirit, would capitulate to his great benefit and honour, that he might leave behind him such a reputation, and so considerable a family, as became his great actions and merits. For this reason the king by the advice of one doctor *Calzadilla*, of whom he made great account, resolv'd to send a caraval privately, to attempt that which the admiral had propos'd to him; because in case those countries were so discovered,

*King Henry VII. of England.*

*The admiral sails for Spain.*

tain star. And  
reason call'd Italy  
to we may say,  
Hesperides, and  
figures, and some  
they lay, which  
admiral to be-  
were such islands

that Oviedo did  
perfect authorities  
either through  
him who told  
s certain he did  
self) he main-  
the disagreement  
ment to discover  
baginians, who,  
a or Hispaniola,  
ted by none but  
e true, that the  
d of it long be-  
Hesperus gave it  
s he will say,  
d it; and that  
b restored it to  
vered in by the  
am quite tired  
inks the reader  
dilate any more  
pw on our hi-

f the discovery

ave it, because  
of better coun-  
as it will, the  
e inclination to  
discoveries; and  
admiral, it was  
sons he gave to  
so far prevailed  
ed only to grant  
demanded. For  
a noble and ge-  
ate to his great  
he might leave  
on, and so con-  
his great ac-  
reason the king  
Calzadilla, of  
nt, resolved to  
o attempt that  
posed to him;  
es were so dis-  
covered,

King  
Henry  
VII. of  
England.

covered, he thought himself not oblig'd to bestow any great reward, which might be demanded on account of the discovery. Having thus speedily equip'd a caraval, and going out, it was to carry supplies to the islands of *Cabo Verde*, he sent it that way the admiral had propos'd to go. But those he sent wanted the knowledge, constancy, and spirit of the admiral. After wandering many days upon the sea, they turned back to the islands of *Cabo Verde*, laughing at the undertaking, and saying, it was impossible there should be any land in those seas. This being come to the admiral's ear, and his wife dead, he took such an aversion to that city and nation, that he resolved to go to *Castile*, with a little son he had left him by his wife, call'd *D. James Columbus*, who inherited his father's estate. But fearing lest if the king of *Castile* should not consent to his undertaking, he might be forced to propose it to some other prince, which would take up much time, he sent a brother he had with him, called *Bartholomew Columbus*, into *England*, who tho' he was no *Latin* scholar, was a skilful and judicious man in sea affairs, and could make sea charts, globes, and other instruments fit for that profession, having been taught by the admiral his brother. *Bartholomew Columbus* being on his way for *England*, it was his fortune to fall into the hands of pyrates, who stripp'd him and the rest of his company. For this reason, and being sick and poor in that country, it was a long time before he could deliver his message, till having got some supply by making sea-charts, he began to make some proposals to *King Henry the VIIth.* then reigning, to whom he presented a map of the world, on which were these verses, which I found among his papers, and shall be here insert'd, rather for their antiquity than elegance.

*Terrarum quicunque cupis feliciter oras  
Noscere, cuncta decens docte pictura docabit,  
Que Strabo, affirmat, Ptolemæus, Plinius,  
atque  
Isidorus; non una tamen sententia cniq.  
Pingitur hic etiam nuper sulcata carinis  
Hispanis Zona illa, prius incognita genti,  
Torrida, quæ tandem nunc est notissima multis.*

*Pro auctore, sive pictore.*

And a little lower.

*Genoa cui patria est, nomen cui Bartholomæus  
Columbus de terra rubra, opus edidit istud,  
Londiniis Ann. Dom. 1480. atque in super anno.  
Octava Decimaque die cum tertia mensis  
Febr. Laudes Christo cantentur abunde.*

The sense of the first lines is to this effect. Whosoever thou art that desirest to know the coasts of countries, must be taught by this draught, what *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, *Pliny*, and *Isidorus* assert, tho' not agreeing in all points. Here is also set down, the formerly unknown torrid zone, now known to many. For the author or painter. The second verses implied, That his name was *Bartholomew Columbus* of the red earth, a *Genoese*, published this work at *London*, Anno 1480, the 21st of February. Praise to God.

And because it may be observed, that he says, *Columbus of the red earth*; I must acquaint the reader, that I have seen some subscriptions of the admiral's, before he had that title, where he writ *Columbus de terra rubra*. But to return to the king of *England*; I say, that he having seen the map, and what the admiral offer'd him, readily accepted of it, and ordered him to be sent for. But God having reserved it for *Castile*, the admiral had at that time gone his voyage, and was returned with success, as shall be shewn in its place.

## CHAP. XII.

*The admiral's departure from Portugal, and the conferences that he had with their catholic majesties, king Ferdinand, and queen Isabel or Elizabeth.*

The admi-  
ral goes  
into Spain.

I Will now forbear relating how *Bartholomew Columbus* proceeded in *England*, and will return to the admiral, who about the end of the year 1484, stole away privately out of *Portugal*, with his son *James*, for fear of being stopped by the king; for he being sensible how faulty they were, whom he had sent with the caraval, had a mind to

restore the admiral to his favour, and desired he should renew the discourse of his enterprize; but not being so diligent to put this in execution, as the admiral was in getting away; he lost that good opportunity, and the admiral got into *Castile* to try his fortune, which was there to favour him. Therefore leaving his son in a monastery at

*Palos,*

*Palos*, called *la Rabida*, he presently went away to the catholick king's court, which was then at *Cordova*; where being affable, and of pleasant conversation, he contracted friendship with such persons as he found most inclinable to his undertaking, and fittest to persuade the king to embrace it; among whom was *Lewis de Santangel* an *Arragonian* gentleman, clerk of the allowances in the king's household, a man of great prudence and reputation. But because the matter required to be handled with learning, rather than empty words and favour, their highnesses committed it to the prior of *Prado*, afterwards archbishop of *Granada*, ordering him together with some cosmographers to take full information in this affair, and report their opinions therein. But there being few cosmographers at that time, those that were called together were not so skilful as they ought to be; nor would the admiral so far explain himself as that he might be served as he had been in *Portugal*, and be deprived of his reward. For this reason, the answer they gave their highnesses was as various as were their judgments and opinions. For some said, that since in so many thousand years as had pass'd since the creation, so many skilful failers had got no knowledge of such countries; it was not likely that the admiral should know more than all that were then, or had been before. Others, who inclin'd more to cosmographical reason, said the world was so prodigious great, that it was incredible three years sail would bring him to the end of the east, whither he design'd his voyage; and to corroborate their opinion, they brought the authority of *Seneca*, who in one of his works, by way of argument, said, that many wise men among them disagreed about this question, whether the ocean were infinite, and doubted whether it could be sail'd, and tho' it were navigable, whether habitable lands would be found on the other side, and whether they could be gone to. They added, that of this lower globe of earth and water, only a small compass was inhabited, which had remained in our hemisphere above water, and that all the rest was sea, and not navigable, but only near

*Reason: a-  
gainst his  
undertak-  
ing.*

the coasts and rivers. And that wise men granted it was possible to sail from the coast of *Spain* to the farthest part of the west. Others of them argued almost after the same manner as the *Portuguese* had done about sailing to *Guinea*, saying, That if any man should sail streight away westward, as the admiral proposed, he would not be able to return into *Spain*, because of the roundness of the globe, looking upon it as most certain, that whosoever should go out of the hemisphere known to *Ptolemy*, would go down, and then it would be impossible to return, affirming it would be like climbing a hill, which ships could not do with the stiffest gale. Tho' the admiral sufficiently solv'd all these objections; yet the more powerful his reasons were, the less they understood him thro' their ignorance; for when a man grows old upon ill principles in mathematics, he cannot conceive the true, because of the false notions at first imprinted in his mind. In short, all of them holding to the *Spanish* Proverb, which, tho' it be contrary to reason, commonly says, *dubitat Augustinus, St. Augustin* questions it, because the said saint in his 21st book, and 9th chapter *Of the city of God*, denies and looks upon it as impossible that there should be *Antipodes*, or any going out of one hemisphere into the other; and further urging against the admiral those fables that are current about the five zones, and other untruths, which they looked upon as most certainly true, they resolved to give judgment against the enterprize, as vain and impracticable; and that it became not the state and dignity of such great princes, to be moved upon such weak information. Therefore after much time spent upon this subject, their highnesses answered the admiral, that they were then taken up with many other wars and conquests, and particularly the conquest of *Granada*, which they had then in hand, and therefore could not conveniently attend that new undertaking, but that in time there would be more conveniency to examine and execute that which he proposed. And to conclude, their majesties would not give ear to the great proposals the admiral made.

CHAP. XIII.

*How the admiral not agreeing with the king of Castile, resolved to go elsewhere to offer his service.*

the admiral not agreeing with more discontent.  
**W**Hilst this was in agitation, their catholic Majesties had not been always settled in one place, because of the war they made in *Granada*, for which reason it was a long time before they came to a resolution and gave their answer. The admiral therefore went to *Sevil*, and finding their highnesses no way resolved more than at first; he concluded to give the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* an account of his project. But after many conferences, seeing there was no likelihood of coming to such conclusion as he wish'd for in *Spain*, and that the execution of his design was too much delay'd; he resolved to apply himself to the King of *France*, to whom he had already writ concerning this affair, designing, if he were not admitted there, to go into *England*, next to seek out his brother, of whom he had as yet no manner of news. Being so resolved to set out for the Monastery of *Rabida*, to send his son *James*, whom he had left there, to *Cordova*, and then proceed on his journey. But to the end what God had decreed, should not be disappointed, he put it into the heart of *F. John Perez*, guardian of that house, to con-

tract such friendship with the admiral, and be so taken with his project, that he was concern'd at his resolution, and for the loss *Spain* would sustain by his departure. Therefore he intreated him by no means to put his design in execution, for that he would go to the queen, of whom he hoped, that he being her father confessor, she would give credit to what he should say to her. Tho' the admiral was quite out of hopes and disgusted to see so little resolution and judgment in their highnesses counsellors, yet, being on the other side very desirous that *Spain* should reap the benefit of his undertakings, he complied with the father's desires and request, because he now look'd upon himself as a natural born *Spaniard*, because he had so long resided there: whilst he was following his project, and because he had got children there which was the cause he rejected the offers made him by other princes, as he declares in a letter he writ to their highnesses in these words, *that I might serve your highnesses, I have refused to take up with France, England and Portugal, the letters from which princes your highnesses may see in the hands of doctor Villan.*

CHAP. XIV.

*How the admiral returned to the camp before Granada, and took his leave of their catholic majesties, having concluded nothing with them.*

the admiral not agreeing with more discontent.  
**T**HE admiral departing from the monastery of *Rabida* near *Palos*, together with *F. John Perez*, to the camp of *S. Faith*, where their catholic majesties then were to carry on the siege of *Granada*, the said father further inform'd the queen, and press'd the business so home, that her majesty was pleas'd the conferences about the discovery should be renewed. But the opinions of the prior of *Prado* and others of his followers varying, and on the other side, *Columbus* demanding to be made admiral and vice-roy, besides other matters of great consequence; it was thought too much to grant him, because if what he propos'd succeeded, they judg'd his demand too considerable, and in case it did not, they thought it a folly to give such titles, which made the business come to nothing. I

cannot forbear declaring that I make great account of the admiral's wisdom, resolution and foresight, for he being so unfortunate in this affair, having so earnest a desire, as I have said before, to remain in this kingdom, and being reduced to such a condition, that he ought to take up with any thing; it was a greatness of spirit in him not to accept of any but great titles and honours, demanding such things as if he had foreseen and been most certainly assured of the success of his project, he could not have articul'd better, or more honourably than he did, so that at last they were forced to grant, that he should be admiral on the ocean, and enjoy all the allowances, privileges and prerogatives, that the admirals of *Castile* and *Leon* had in their several seas, and that all civil employ-

## The first Discovery of

ments, as well of government as administration of justice, in all the islands and continent should be wholly at his disposal, and that all government should be given to one or three persons he should name; and that he should appoint judges in all parts of *Spain* trading to the *Indies*, who should decide all matters relating to those parts. As for profit and revenue, he demanded, over and above the salary and perquisites of the aforesaid employments of admiral, vice-roy and governor, the tenth of all that was bought, bartered, found, or got within the bounds of his admiralship, abating only the charge of the conquest; so that had there been

1000 ducats in an island, one hundred were to be his. And because his adversaries said he ventured nothing in that undertaking, but had the command of a fleet as long as it lasted, he demanded the eighth part of what he should bring home in his fleet, and he would be at the eighth part of the expence. These being matters of such great consequence and their highnesses refusing to grant them, the admiral took leave of his friends and went away towards *Cordeva*, to take order for his journey into *France*, for he was resolved not to return to *Portugal*, tho' the king had writ to him, as shall be said.

### C H A P. XV.

*How their catholick majesties sent after the admiral, and granted him all he demanded.*

*Reasons that prevailed with the queen.*

**I**T was now the month of *January*, in the year 1492, when the admiral departed from the camp of *St. Faith*, and that same day *Lewis de Santangel* before mentioned, who did not approve of his going away, but was very desirous to prevent it; went to the queen, and using such words as his inclination suggested to persuade and reprove her at once, said, he wondered to see that her highness, who had always a great soul for all matters of moment and consequence, should now want the heart to venture upon an undertaking, where so little was ventured, and which might redound so much to the glory of god and propagation of the faith, not without great benefit and honour to her kingdoms and dominions; and such in short, that if any other prince should undertake it, as the admiral offered, the damage that would accrew to her crown was very visible, and that then she would with just cause be much blam'd by her friends and servants, and reproached by her enemies, and all people would say, she had well deserv'd that misfortune; and tho' she herself should never have cause to repent it, yet her successors would certainly feel the smart of it. Therefore, since the matter seemed to be grounded upon reason, and the admiral who proposed it was a man of sense and wisdom, and demanded no other reward but what he should find, being willing to bear part of the charge, besides venturing his own person; her highness ought not to look upon it as such an impossibility as those scholars made it, and that what they said that it would be a reflexion on her if the enterprise did not succeed, as the admiral proposed, was a

folly, and he was of a quite contrary opinion, rather believing they would be look'd upon as generous and magnanimous princes, for attempting to discover the secrets and wonders of the world, as other monarchs had done, and it had redounded to their honour. But tho' the event were never so uncertain, yet a considerable sum of money would be well employ'd in clearing such a doubt. Besides that, the admiral only demanded 2500 crowns to fit the fleet, and therefore she ought not to despise that undertaking, that it might not be said it was the fear of spending so small a sum that kept her back. The queen knowing the sincerity of *Santangel's* words, answered, thanking him for his good advice, and saying, she was willing to admit of the proposals, upon condition the execution were respited, till she had a little breathing after the war. And yet if he were of another opinion, she was content that as much money as was requisite for fitting out the fleet should be borrowed upon her jewels. But *Santangel* seeing the queen had upon his advice condescended to what she had refused to all other persons, replied, there was no need of pawning her jewels, for he would do her highness that small service as to lend his money. Upon this resolution the queen immediately sent an officer post, to bring the admiral back, who found him upon the bridge of *Pinos*, two leagues from *Granada*; and tho' the admiral was much concerned at the difficulties and delays he had met with in his enterprise, yet understanding the queen's will and resolution, he returned to the camp of *St. Faith*, where he was well entertained by their catho-



lick majesties, and his dispatch and articles committed to the secretary *John Coloma*, who by their highnesses command and under their hand and seal, granted him all the

articles and clauses we said above, he had demanded, without altering or diminishing any thing in them.

CHAP. XVI.

*How the admiral fitted out three caravals to go upon his discovery.*

The admiral sets sail.

THE aforesaid articles being granted by their catholic majesties, he set out from *Granada* on the 12th of *May*, this year 1492, for *Palos*, the port where he was to fit out his ships, that town being oblig'd to serve their highnesses three months with two caravals, which they ordered should be given to the admiral. These and another ship be fitted out with all care and diligence. The ship he went in was call'd the *St. Mary*, another was *La Pinta*, whereof *Martin Alonso Pinzon* was captain, and *Vincent Yanez Pinzon*, brother to *Alonso*, both of the town of *Palos*, of the 3d which was call'd *La Nina*, and had square sails. They being furnished with all necessities, and 90 men, set sail directly towards the *Canaries* on the 3d of *August*, and from that time forwards, the admiral was very careful to keep an exact

journal of all that happened to him during the voyage, specifying what wind blew, how far he sail'd with every wind; what currents he found, and what he saw by the way, whether birds, or fishes, or other things; which he always did in four voyages he made from *Spain* to the *Indies*. I will not write all those particulars; for tho' to give an account of his voyage, and to shew what impressions and effects answered the course and aspects of the stars, and to relate what difference there is between that and our sea and our countries, would be now very beneficial; yet I do not think all those particulars would now be pleasing to the reader, whom such long and superfluous relations must tire. Therefore I shall only discourse of those things I shall think necessary and convenient.

CHAP. XVII.

*The admiral arriv'd at the Canary islands, and there furnish'd himself completely with all he wanted.*

The rudder of a caraval gets broke.

THE next day after the admiral's departure for the *Canary* islands, being *Saturday* the 4th of *August*, the rudder of one of the caravals, call'd *La Pinta*, broke loose, and being therefore forced to lie by, the admiral soon came by her side, but the weather blowing hard, could give no assistance; yet commanders at sea are oblig'd so to do, to encourage those that are in distress. This he did the more readily, as misfouling this had happened by the contrivance of the master, to avoid going the voyage, as he attempted to do before they set out. *Pinzon* the captain being an able seaman, soon repaired that fault with the help of some ropes, so that they were able to continue their voyage, till on *Tuesday* following, the weather being rough, the ropes broke, and they were forced again to lie by to mend what had given way. From which misfortune of breaking of the rudder twice, any body that had been superstitious, might have foreboded its future disobedience to the admiral, when thro' the malice of *Pinzon*, it twice

got away from him, as shall be mentioned hereafter.

To return to what we have in hand, they apply the best remedy they could for the present, that they might at least reach the *Canary* islands, which all three ships discovered on *Thursday* the 9th of *August* about break of day, but the wind being contrary, they could not come to an anchor at *Gran Canaria*, tho' very near it, that day nor the two following. Here the admiral left *Pinzon*, that going ashore he might endeavour to get another ship; and he to the same purpose went away to the island *Gomera*, with the caraval call'd *La Mina*, that if they fail'd of a vessel in one island, they might find it in the other. Thus he came to *Gomera* on the *Sunday* following, being the 12th of *August*, and sent his boat ashore, which return'd in the morning, with the news that there was never a vessel in the island at that time, but that they hourly expected the lady *Beatriz de Bobadilla*, proprietress of that same island, who was then at *Gran Canaria*,

The admiral at Gomera.

## The first Discovery of

and had hired a vessel of 40 tun, belonging to one *Gradenna* of *Seville*, which being fit for the voyage he design'd, he might have taken. Therefore the admiral resolv'd to expect him in that port, believing that if *Pinzon* had not been able to repair his own vessel, he might himself have got another at *Gomera*. Having stay'd there the two following days, and the vessel above mentioned not appearing, he sent a man aboard a bark that was bound from *Gomera* to *Gran Canaria*, to acquaint *Pinzon* where he lay, and assist him in fixing his rudder, writing to him that he did not go himself to assist him, because that vessel could not fail. But it being long after the departure of that bark, before the admiral received any answer, he resolv'd on the 23d of *August* to return with his two vessels to *Gran Canaria*, and failing the next day, met in the way the aforementioned bark, which was not yet arriv'd at *Gran Canaria*, by reason of the contrary winds. Having taken out the man he had sent aboard the bark, that night he sail'd close by *Tenerife*, where they saw flames gush out of the high rock commonly call'd the *Peake*, or rather *El Pico*, which his men admiring at, he told them the occasion of

At *Gran Canaria*.

that fire, proving what he said by the example of mount *Etna* in *Sicily*, and of many others like it. Leaving that island they arriv'd at *Gran Canaria* upon *Saturday* the 25th, whither *Pinzon* with much difficulty was got in but the day before. By him he was inform'd that the lady *Beatrix* was sail'd the *Monday* before, with that vessel he took such pains to get, and the others being much troubled at it, he made the best of whatever happen'd; affirming, that since it did not please God he should meet with that vessel, it was perhaps because in finding it, he would at the same time have met with some obstacle or opposition in pressing of it, and have lost time in shipping and unshipping the goods, which would be a hindrance to his voyage: for this reason, fearing if he returned to seek it at *Gomera*, he might miss of it by the way; he resolv'd to repair his caraval the best he could at *Gran Canaria*, making a new rudder, she having lost hers, and to change the sails of the other caraval call'd *La Nina*, which were square, to round, that she might follow the other ships with less danger and agitation.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*How the admiral set sail from the island of Grand Canaria upon his discovery and what happened to him on the ocean.*

WHEN the ships were refitted and in order to sail on *Friday*, (this by what follows ought to be *Saturday*) the first of *September*; in the afternoon the admiral weigh'd anchor, and departed from *Gran Canaria*, arriving the next day at *Gormra*, where four days more were spent in laying in provisions, wood and water; so that next *Thursday* in the morning which was on the 6th of *September* 1482, which may be accounted the first setting out upon the voyage on the ocean, the admiral departed from *Gomera*, and stood away to the westward, but made but little way by reason of the calm. On *Sunday* about day, he found himself nine leagues west of the island *Ferro*, where they lost sight of land, and many fearing it would be long before they should see it again, sigh'd and wept, but the admiral after comforting them all with great promises of lands, and wealth to raise their hopes, and lessen the fear they had conceived of the length of the way, tho' they sail'd 18 leagues that day, he pretended by his computation it was but 15, resolv'd all the voyage to keep short in his reckoning,

The admiral sails westward.

that his men might not think themselves so far from *Spain* as they were, if he should truly set down the way he made, which yet he privately mark'd down. Continuing thus his voyage, on *Wednesday* the 12th of *September*, about sun-setting, being about 150 leagues west of the island *Ferro*, he discovered a large body of the mast of a tree of 120 tun, which seem'd to have been a long time upon the water. There and somewhat further the current set strong towards the north east, but when he had run 50 leagues farther westward, on the 13th of *September*, he found that at night fall, the needle vary'd half a point towards the north-east, and at break of day, half a point more, by which he understood that the needle did not point at the north star, but at some other fix'd and visible point. This variation no man had observ'd before, and therefore he had occasion to be surpriz'd at it, but he was more amaz'd the 3d day after, when he was almost 100 leagues further; for at night the needles vary'd about a point to the north east, and in the morning they pointed upon the star. On *Saturday*

day the 15th of September, being almost 300 leagues west of *Ferro*, at night they saw a wonderful flash of light fall from the sky, into the sea, about four or five leagues distance from the ships towards the south-west, tho' the weather was then fair, like April, the wind favourable at north east, the sea still, and the current setting north-east. The men aboard the caraval call'd *la Ninna*, told the admiral, they had the Friday before seen a heron and another sort of bird, which the Spaniards call *Rabo de Junco*, which they were amaz'd at, those being the first birds they had seen: but they were more surpris'd the next day, which was Sunday, at the great abundance of weeds between green and yellow, that appeared upon the water, which seem'd to be newly wash'd away from some island or rock. They saw enough of these weeds the next day, which made many affirm they were already near land, especially because they saw a small lobster alive among those weeds, which they said somewhat resembled the herb *Star-wort*, but that the stalk and branches were long, and it was all full of small feeds. Afterwards they observed that the sea-water was but half as salt as before: besides, that great abundance of *Tunny* fishes follow'd them, running along, and sticking

so close to them, that those aboard the caraval *Ninna*, kill'd one with a bearded iron. Being now 360 leagues west of *Ferro*, they saw another of those birds the Spaniards call *Rabo de Junco*, because of a long feather their tail consists of, and in Spanish, *Rabo* signifies a tail, as *Junco* is a rush, so that *Rabo de Junco* imports rush tail. On Tuesday following, being the 18th of September, *Martin Alonso Pinzon*, who was gone a-head with the caraval call'd *Pinta*, which was an excellent sailer, lay by for the admiral, and told him he had seen a great number of birds fly away westward, for which reason he hop'd to find land that night, and he thought he saw the land to the northward, 15 leagues distant; that day about sun-setting, looking very dark and cloudy. But the admiral knowing for certain it was no land, he would not lose time to discover it, as all his men would have had him; forasmuch as he was not yet come to the place where he expected by his computation to find land, therefore they took in their top-sails at night, because the wind freshen'd, having for eleven days never abated one handful of sail, going still before the wind westward.

CHAP. XIX.

*How all the men carefully observed what signs they discovered, being eager to discover land.*

ALL the men aboard the ships being unacquainted with that voyage, and fearfull of the danger, because far from any relief, there were some that began to mutter, and seeing nothing but sky and water, carefully observed every thing that appear'd, at greater distance from land, than any had been before. For which reason I will relate all they made any account of, and this only in the first voyage, for I shall not mention lesser tokens generally seen upon such occasions. On the 19th of September, in the morning, a fowl call'd *Alcatraz*, which is a sort of sea gull, flew over the admiral's ship, and others in the afternoon, which made him conceive hope of land, he imagining they would not fly very far from it. Upon these hopes, as soon as the wind abated, they sound'd with 200 fathom of line; and tho' they found no bottom, they perceived the current now set south-west. On Thursday the 22d, two hours before noon, two *Alcatrazes* came to the ship, and another some time after; besides, they took a bird like a heron, but that it was black, and had a white tuft on the head, the feet

like a duck, as commonly water-fowls have; they also caught a little fish, and saw abundance of weeds; and about evening there came aboard three land-fowls singing, but at break of day they flew away, which was some comfort to them, considering that the other fowls being large, and used to the water, might better go far from land, but that these little ones could not come from any far distant country. Three hours after they saw another *Alcatraz*, that came from the W. N. W. and the next day after noon, they saw another *Rabo de Junco* and an *Alcatraz*, and there appear'd more weeds than before, towards the north, as far as they could see; which things sometimes were a comfort to them, believing they might come from some near land, and sometimes they caus'd dread, because they were so thick, that in some measure they staid the ships, and fear making things worse than they are, they apprehended that might befall them, which is fabulously reported of *St. Amaro* in the frozen sea, who is said not to suffer ships to stir backwards or forwards, and therefore they steer

Vol. II.

6 S ed

ed away from those shoals of weeds, as much as they could. But to return to the tokens. The next day they saw a whale, and on *Saturday* following, being the 23d of *September*, some small birds; and the wind those days blew at south-west, sometimes more and sometimes less west, which tho' contrary to their voyage, the admiral said he look'd upon as very good, and a help to them, because the men continually muttering, among other things that increased their fear, said this was one, That since the wind was always right a stern, they should never in those seas have a gale to carry them back; and tho' sometimes they found the contrary, they alledg'd that it was no settled wind, and that not being strong enough to swell the sea, it would never carry them back so far as they had to sail. Whatsoever the admiral could say, telling them that the reason was, the lands being now near,

*Muttering  
among the  
jermen.*

which did not suffer the waves to rise, and using the best argument he could, yet he affirms he stood in need of God's particular assistance, as *Moses* did when he led the *Israelites* out of *Egypt*, who forbore laying violent hands upon him, because of the prodigies God wrought by his means. So said the admiral, it happened to him in that voyage; for upon *Sunday* following, the wind started up at W. N. W. with a rowling sea, as the men wish'd, and three hours before noon, they saw a turtle fly over the ship, and about evening an *Alcatraz*, a river fowl, and other white birds, and some crabs among the weeds; and the next day they spy'd another *Alcatraz*, and several small birds that came from the west, and small fishes, whereof the men of the other vessels stuck some with harping irons, because they would not bite at the hook.

## CHAP. XX.

*How the men mutiny'd to turn back, and seeing other signs and tokens of land, went on well enough satisfied.*

*The men  
mutiny.*

THE more the afore said tokens were found vain, the more they took occasion to apprehend and mutter; caballing together, and saying, the admiral out of a foolish fancy of his own, had designed to make himself a great lord at the expence of their lives and danger; and since they had done their duty in trying their fortune, and had gone farther from land and any succour than any others had done, they ought not to destroy themselves, nor proceed in that voyage, since if they did, they should have cause to repent; for provisions would fall short, and the ships fail, which they knew were already so faulty, that it would be hard to get back so far as they were gone, and that none would condemn them for so doing, but they would rather be look'd upon as very brave men, for going upon such a design, and venturing so far; and that the admiral being a foreigner, and having no favour at court, and so many wise and learned men having condemn'd his opinion, there would be no body now to favour and defend him, and they should sooner find credit if they accused him of ignorance and mismanagement, than he whatsoever he could say for himself. Nor did there want some who said, that to end all dispute, in case he would not acquiesce to them, they might make short, and throw him overboard, and give out, that as he was making his observations he dropped into the sea, and no man would go about to enquire into the truth of it, which was the readiest way for them to return home and secure themselves.

Thus they went on from day to day, muttering, complaining and consulting together: nor was the admiral without apprehensions of their inconstancy, and ill intentions towards him. Therefore sometimes with good words, and sometimes with a full resolution to expose his life, putting them in mind of the punishment due to them if they obstructed the voyage, he in some measure quell'd their apprehensions, and suppress'd their ill designs. To confirm the hope he gave them, he put them in mind of the afore said signs and tokens, assuring them they would soon find land; which signs they were so attentive to, that they thought every hour a year till they saw land. On *Tuesday* the 25th of *September*, about sun-setting, as the admiral was discoursing with *Pinzon*, whose ship was very near, the said *Pinzon* on a sudden cry'd out, land, land, fir! Let not my good news miscarry: And shew'd him towards the south-west, a bulk which look'd very like an island, about 25 leagues from the ships. This was so pleasing to the men, that they returned thanks to God; and the admiral who had given no credit to these words, to please the men and that they should not obstruct his voyage, stood that way a great part of the night. Next morning they perceived that what they had seen were only clouds, which often look like land, for which reason, to the great dissatisfaction of most of the sailors, they turn'd the sterns of their ships westward, as they had always done, except when the wind hindred. Continuing still

waves to rise, and he could, yet he of God's particular when he led the who forbore laying h, because of the by his means. So opened to him in Sunday following, W. N. W. with a wish'd, and three saw a turtle fly evening an *Alca-* other white birds, the weeds; and another *Alcatraz*, at came from the whereof the men some with harp- would not bite at

ens of land, went

ay to day, mutter- consulting together: out apprehensions intentions towards with good words, resolution to ex- in mind of the if they obstructed e measure quell'd suppress'd their ill he hope he gave nd of the aforesaid g them they would gns they were so thought every hour and. On *Tuesday* about sun-setting, rsing with *Pinzon*, ar, the said *Pin-* t, land, land, fir! s miscarry: And outh-west, a bulk n island, about 25 This was so pleas- y returned thanks al who had given to please the men obstruct his voy- great part of the hey perceived that only clouds, which which reason, of most of the fail- rns of their ships always done, ex- red. Continuing still

still attentive to the signs; they saw an *Alcatraz*, a *Rabo de Junco*, and other birds like those above mentioned. On *Thursday* the 27th of *September* in the morning, they saw another *Alcatraz* coming from the west, and sailing eastward, and abundance of fishes with gilt backs appeared, whereof they struck one with a harping-iron. A *Rabo de Junco* flew by them, and they found that the currents, for those last days, were not so regularly fixt, as they used to be before, but turned with the tide, and there were not so many weeds as before. On *Friday* following, all the ships took some fishes with gilt backs, and on *Saturday* they saw a *Rabo de Junco*, which tho' it be a sea-fowl does not rest on it, but flies always in the air, pursuing the *Alcatrazes*, till it makes them drop their excrement for fear, which it catches in the air for its nourishment, and thus it maintains its self on the sea, and it is reported there are many of them about the Islands of *Cabo Verde*. Soon after they saw two other *Alcatrazes*, and abundance of flying fishes, which are about a span long, and have two little wings like a bat; they fly about a pike high from the water, and a musket-shot in length, more or less, and sometimes they drop upon the ships. Afternoon they saw abundance of weeds lying in length north and south, as they had

done before, besides three *Alcatrazes* and a *Rabo de Junco* that pursued them.

On *Sunday* morning four *Rabo de Juncos* came to the ship, by reason of whose coming so together, it was thought the land was nearer, especially because soon after there flew by four *Alcatrazes*, and abundance of weeds were seen in a line lying W. N. W. and E. S. E. and also a great number of those fishes they call *Emperadores*, which have a very hard skin, and are not fit to eat. How much soever the admiral regarded these tokens, yet he never forgot those in the heaven, and the course of the stars. He therefore observed in this place, to his great admiration, that the *Charles Wain* at night appeared in the west point, and in the morning they were directly N. E. by which he gathered, that their whole nights course was but three lines or nine hours, that is, so many parts of twenty four, and this he made out every night. He also perceived, that at night fall the compass varied a whole point to the north-west, and at break of day it came right with the star. These things confounded the pilots, till he told them the cause of it was the compass the star took about the pole, which was some satisfaction to them; for this variation made them apprehend some danger in such an unknown distance from home, and such strange regions.

## CHAP. XXI.

*How they saw not only the aforementioned signs and tokens, but others better than they, which were some comfort to the men.*

*They dis- agree in their com- putations.*

ON *Monday* the 11th of *October*, after sun-rising, an *Alcatraz*, came to the ship, and two more about ten in the morning, and long streams of weeds lay from east to west. That day in the morning the pilot of the admiral's ship said, they were 578 leagues west of the island *Ferro*, the admiral said by his account, they were 584 leagues, but in private he concluded it was 707, which is 129 leagues more than the pilot reckon'd. The other two ships differed very much in their computation, for the pilot of the caraval *Ninna* on *Wednesday* following afternoon said, they had sail'd 540 leagues, and the other of the caraval *Pinta* said 634. Adding all they had sail'd during those three days, they were still much short of truth, for they went always before the wind, and had run much more. But the admiral, as has been said, wink'd at this gross mistake, that the men might not be quite dejected, being so far from home. The next day, being the 2d of

*October*, they saw abundance of fish, catch'd a small tunny, and saw a white bird, and many other small ones, and the weeds they saw were withered and almost fallen to powder. The next day after, seeing no birds, but some fish, they mistrusted they had left some islands on both hands, and were slip'd between without discovering them; guessing that those many birds they had seen were passing from one island to another. They were very earnest to steer either one way or the other, to seek out those lands they imagined; but the admiral would not consent, being unwilling to lose the fair wind that carry'd him away to westward, which he accounted his surest course; and besides, because he thought it was a lessening the reputation of his undertaking, to run from one place to another, seeking that which he always affirmed he well knew where to find. For this reason the men were ready to mutiny, continuing to mutter and conspire against him; but it pleased God, as

was



was said above, to assist him by the means of fresh tokens; for on *Thursday* the 4th of *October*, afternoon, above forty sparrows together and two *Alcatrazes* flew so near the ships, that a seaman killed one of them with a stone; and before this they had seen another bird like a *Rabo de Junco*, and another like a swallow, and a great many flying fishes fell into the ships. Next day there came a *Rabo de Junco*, and an *Alcatraz*, from the westward, and abundance of sparrows were seen. On *Sunday* the 7th of *October*, about sun-rising, some signs of land appeared westward, but being imperfect, no man would speak of it, not so much for the shame that would follow of asserting what was not, as for fear of losing 30 crowns a year, their catholic majesties had promised for life, to him that should first discover land; and to prevent their crying land, land at every turn, as they might do without cause at every turn, out of covetousness of that allowance, it was ordered, that whosoever said he saw land, if it were not made out in three days after, should lose the reward, though afterwards he should prove the first discoverer. All aboard the admiral being thus forewarned, none of them durst cry out land; but those in the caraval *Ninna*, which was a better sailer, and kept a head, believing it to be certainly land, fired a gun, and put out their colours in token of land. But the farther they sailed, the more their joys vanished, till that appearance quite vanished, tho' it pleased God soon after to give them some manner of comfort, for they saw great flights of great fowl, and others of small land birds, flying from the west towards the south-west. Therefore the admiral being now so far from *Spain*, and sure that such small birds would not go far from land; he alter'd his course, which till then was west, and stood to the south-west, saying, that if he changed his road, it was, because he deviated but little from his first design, and

The admiral alters his course.

because he would follow the example of the *Portuguese*, who had discovered most of their islands by means of such birds, and the more because those they saw followed almost the same way; he had always proposed to himself to find land, according to the place they were then in; since as they well knew he had often told them, he never expected to find land till he was 750 leagues to the westward of the *Canaries*; within which distance he had farther said, he should discover *Hispaniola*, which he then call'd *Cipango*, and there is no doubt but he had found it, had not he known it was reported to lie in length from north to south: For which reason he had not inclined more to the south to run upon it, and therefore that and others of the *Caribbea* islands lay now on his larboard-side, south of him, whether those birds were directing their course. Being so near to land was the reason they continually saw such abundance of birds; and on *Monday* the 8th of *October*, there came to the ship twelve singing-birds of several colours, and after flying a turn about the ship, they held on their way. They also saw from the ships, many other birds flying towards the south-west; and that same night abundance of large fowls were seen, and flights of small birds coming from the northward, and flying after the rest. Besides, they saw a good number of tunny fish. In the morning they spy'd a jay, an *Alcatraz*, ducks and small birds, flying the same way the others had done; and they perceived the air to be fresh and odoriferous, as it is at *Sevil* in *April*. But they were now so eager to see land, that they had faith in no signs whatsoever; so that tho' on *Wednesday* the 10th of *October*, they saw abundance of birds pass by both day and night, yet the men did not cease to complain, nor the admiral to blame their want of courage; declaring to them, that right or wrong they must go on in discovering the *Indies*, their catholic majesties had sent them to.

## C H A P. XXII.

*How the admiral discovered the first land, which was an island called De Los Lucayos.*

THE admiral being no longer able to withstand so many as opposed him, it pleased God that on *Thursday* the 11th of *October*, afternoon, the men took heart and rejoiced, having manifest tokens that they were near land, which were that those aboard the admiral, saw a green rush swim by the ship, and then a great green fish of that sort, that goes not far from the rocks.

Other Tokens.

Those aboard the caraval *Pinta* saw a cane and a staff, and took up another staff curiously wrought, and a small board, and abundance of weeds fresh wash'd away from the banks. Those in the caraval *Ninna* saw other such like tokens, and a branch of a thorn full of red berries, which seem'd to be newly broke off. By these tokens, and reason it self, the admiral being assured

ured he was near land; at night, after prayers, he made a speech to all the men in general, putting them in mind how great a mercy it was that God had brought them so long a voyage, with such fair weather, and comforting them with tokens, which every day were plainer and plainer; therefore he pray'd them to be very watchful that night, since they well knew that in the first article of the instructions he gave each ship at the *Canary* islands, he ordain'd that when they had sail'd 700 leagues to the westward, without discovering land, they should lie by from midnight till day. Therefore, since they had not yet obtained their desires in discovering land, they should at least express their zeal in being watchful. And forasmuch, as he had most assured hopes of finding land that night, every one should watch in his place; for besides the gratuity their highnesses had promised of 30 crowns a year for life, to him that first saw land, he would give him a velvet doublet. After this, about ten at night, as the admiral was in the great cabin, he saw a light ashore, but said it was so blind, he could not affirm it to be land, tho' he called one *Peter Gutierrez*, and bid him observe whether he saw the said light, who

said he did; but presently they called one *Roderick Sanchez de Segovia*, to look that way, but he could not see it, because he came not up time enough where it might be seen; nor did they see it afterwards above once or twice, which made them judge it might be a candle or torch belonging to some fisherman or traveller, who lifted it up, and let it fall down; or perhaps that they were people going from one house to another, because it vanish'd and suddenly appeared again, so that few would guess but that they were near land. Being now very much upon their guard, they still held on their course, till about two in the morning the *Land light* <sup>covered</sup> *caraval Pinta*, which being an excellent failer, was far a-head, gave the signal of land, which was first discovered by a failer, whose name was *Roderick de Triana*, being two leagues from shore. But the thirty crowns a year was not granted by their catholic majesties to him, but to the admiral, who had seen the light in the midst of darkness, signifying the spiritual light he was then spreading in those dark regions. Being now near land, all the ships lay by, thinking it a long time till morning, that they might see what they had so long desired.

CHAP. XXIII.

*How the admiral went ashore, and took possession for their catholic Majesties.*

St. Salvador the island named. DAY appearing, they perceived it was an island fifteen leagues in length, plain, without hills and full of green trees, and delicious waters, with a great lake in the middle, inhabited by abundance of people, who ran down to the shore, astonished and admiring at the sight of the ships, believing them to be some living creatures, and were impatient to know certainly what they were. Nor were the christians less hasty to know them, whose curiosity was soon satisfied, for they soon came to an anchor; the admiral went ashore with his boat well armed, and the royal standard display'd, as did the captains of the other two ships in their boats, with their particular colours of this enterprise, which were a green cross with an F on the one side, and on the other the names of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* crown'd. Having given thanks to God, kneeling on the shore, and kiss'd the ground with tears of joy, for the great mercy re-

ceived, the admiral stood up, and called that island *St. Salvador*. After that he took possession for their catholic majesties, in the usual words, and with the solemnity proper in those cases; abundance of the natives that were come out, being present, and consequently the christians admitted him as admiral and viceroy, and swore to obey him as representing their highnesses persons, and with such expressions of joy, as became their mighty success, all of them begging his pardon for all the affronts they had done him thro' their fear and irresolution. Abundance of the *Indians* being come down to this rejoicing, and the admiral perceiving they were peaceable, quiet and very simple people, he gave them some red caps, and strings of glass beads, which they hung about their necks, and other things of small value, which they valued as if they had been stone of high price.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*The manners and customs of those people, and what the admiral saw in that island.*

*Descripti-  
on of the  
Islanders.*

THE admiral being gone off to his boats, the Indians follow'd him to them and to the ships swimming, and others in their canoes, carrying parrots, bottoms of spun cotton, javelins, and other such trifles to barter for glass-beads, bells, and other things of small value. Like people in their original simplicity, they went naked as they were born, and a woman that was among them had no other cloathing. Most of them were young, not above thirty years of age; of a good stature, their hair lank, thick, very black and short, being cut above their ears, except some few who had let it grow down to their shoulders, and had ty'd it with a strong thread about their head like women's tresses. Their countenances were pleasant, and their features good, but their too high foreheads made them look somewhat wild. They were of a middle stature, well shaped, plump, but of an olive colour, like the people of the *Canaries* or peasants that are sun-burn'd. Some were painted with black, some with white and others with red; some only the faces, others the whole body, and others nothing but the eyes and nose. They had no weapons like our men, nor knowledge of them; for when the christians shew'd them a naked sword, they took it simply by the edge. Nor had they any knowledge of iron, and therefore they made their javelins we mentioned, of wands, with the points hardened at the fire, arming them with a fish bone instead of iron. Some of them having scars of wounds about them, and being ask'd by signs how they came by them, they answered by signs, that people came from other islands to take them away, and they received those wounds in their own defence. They seem'd ingenious and of a voluble tongue, for they easily repeated the words they once heard. There were no sort of creatures there but parrots, which they carried to barter among the other things we have spoke of, and in this trade they continued till night. Next day being the 13th of *October* in the morning, many of them came down to the shore, and went aboard in their boats called canoes, which were made of one piece, being the body of a tree hol-

low'd like a tray. The biggest of them were so large, they contained 40 or 45 men, and so less and less, till some would hold but one. They row'd with a paddle like a baker's peal, or those they use in dressing hemp; true it is, that the oars are not fixed on the side with pins to turn as ours are, but they dip them in the water, and pull back as if they were digging. These canoes are so light and so artificially built, that if they overfet they soon turn them right again swimming, and empty the water by throwing the vessel from side to side like a weaver's shuttle; and when it is above half out, they lade out what remains with dry'd calabashes cut in two, which they carry for that purpose. That day they brought such things to barter for as they had the day before, giving all they had for any small things they could get. Jewels or any sort of metal were not seen among them, except some small plates of gold which hung at their nostrils, and being asked whence they had that gold, they answered by signs, towards the south, where there was a king who had abundance of pieces and vessels of gold, expressing that towards the south and south-west, there were many other islands and large countries. Being very covetous of any thing of ours, and being themselves but poor, and having nothing to give in exchange, as soon as they came aboard, if they could lay their hands on any thing, tho' it were but a piece of a broken earthen glazed dish or porringer, they leaped into the sea and swam ashore; and if they brought any thing aboard, they would give it for any trifling thing of ours, or bit of broken glass, so that some of them gave 16 bottoms of cotton for three small pieces of *Portuguese* brass coin not worth a farthing; these bottoms weighed 25 pounds, and the cotton was very well spun. Thus they spent the day, and at night they all went ashore. It is to be observed, that their liberality in dealing did not proceed from the great value they put upon those things themselves, which they had of our men, but because they valued them as being ours, looking upon it as most certain that our men were come down from heaven, and therefore they earnestly desired to have something left them as a memorial.

*Concept:  
on Island.*

*Island Fer-  
nandina.*

## CHAP. XXV.

*How the admiral departed from that island, and went to discover others.*

al saw in that

biggest of them  
ned 40 or 45 men,  
some would hold  
with a paddle like  
they use in dres-  
at the oars are not  
ns to turn as ours  
n the water, and  
digging. These  
artificially built,  
soon turn them  
nd empty the wa-  
from side to side  
and when it is  
out what remains  
t in two, which  
pose. That day  
to barter for as  
giving all they had  
could get. Jewels  
not seen among  
all plates of gold  
s, and being asked  
d, they answered  
uth, where there  
undance of pieces  
fing that towards  
there were many  
countries. Being  
of ours, and be-  
and having no-  
e, as soon as they  
d lay their hands  
re but a piece of  
fish or porringer,  
nd swam ashore;  
ing aboard, they  
ng thing of ours,  
that some of them  
n for three small  
coin not worth a  
ghed 25 pounds,  
ell spun. Thus  
at night they all  
e observed, that  
did not proceed  
put upon those  
they had of our  
ed them as being  
most certain that  
rom heaven, and  
ed to have some-  
rial.

Concept-  
on Island.

Island Fer-  
nandina.

NEXT Sunday, being the 15th of October, the admiral run along the coast of the island, towards the north-west, in his boats, to discover something about it; and that way he went, he found a large bay or harbour, capable of containing all the ships in christendom. The people seeing him scour along, ran after, along the shoar, crying out, and promising to give him provisions, calling others to come to see the people drop'd from heaven upon earth, and lifted up their hands to heaven, as it were giving thanks for their coming. Many of them swimming, or in their canoes, as best they could, came to the boats, asking by signs, whether they were come down from heaven, and praying them to land and rest themselves. The admiral gave them all glass beads, pins, and other trifles, rejoicing at their great simplicity, till he came to a *Peninsula*, which made a good port, and where a good fort might be made. There he saw six houses of the *Indians* with gardens about them, as pleasant as they are in *Castile* in May. But his men being weary of rowing, and he plainly perceiving that was none of the land he looked for, nor so beneficial, as that he should make any longer stay there, he took seven of those *Indians* to serve him as interpreters; and returning to his ships, sailed for other islands that could be discovered from the *Peninsula*, and appeared to be plain, green and very populous, as the *Indians* themselves affirm'd. The next day being Monday, the 16th of October, he came to one that was seven leagues from the other, and called it *St. Mary of the Conception*. That side of this island next *St. Salvador* extended north-west five leagues in length, but the admiral went to that side which lies east and west, and is above 10 leagues in length; and being come to an anchor towards the west, landed to do as he had done in the other. Here the people of the island ran together to see the christians, admiring as the others had done. The admiral perceiving this was the same thing as the last: The next day being Tuesday, sail'd westward to another island considerably bigger, and anchored upon the coast of it, which runs north-west and south-east, above 28 leagues. This was like the others, plain, had a fine strand, and was called *Fernandina*. Before they came to this island, and that of the *Conception*, they found a man in a small canoe, who had a piece of their bread, and

a calabash of water, and a little earth like vermillion, wherewith those people paint their bodies, as was said above; and some dry leaves which they value, as being of a sweet scent and wholesome; and in a little basket he had a string of beads of green glass, and two small pieces of *Portuguese* money, by which it was guessed that he was coming from *St. Salvador*, that he had pass'd by the *Conception*, and was going to *Fernandina* to carry news of the christians: But because the way was far, and he weary, he came to the ships, was taken up with his canoe, and courteously treated by the admiral, designing as soon as he came to land to send him ashore, which he did, that he might spread the news. The good account he gave, caused the people of *Fernandina* to come aboard in their canoes, to exchange the same sort of things the others had done before, for these people were like the rest; and when the boat went ashore for water, the *Indians* very readily show'd where it was, and carry'd a small cask full on their shoulders to fill the hogheads in the boat. They seem'd to be a wiser and discreeter people than the first, and as such bargain'd harder for what they exchanged, had cotton cloath in their houses, and bed-cloaths; and the women covered their privities with short hanging cotton-cloaths, and others with a sort of swathe. Among other notable things they saw in that island, were some trees which seem'd to be grafted, because they had leaves and branches of four or five several sorts, and yet were natural. They also saw fishes of several shapes and fine colours, but no sort of land creatures but lizards and snakes. The better to discover the island, they sail'd away north-west, and came to an anchor at the mouth of a beautiful harbour; at the entrance whereof was a small island, and therefore they could not get in, there being but little water; nor did they much care, because they would not be far from a town that appeared at a distance: For in the biggest island they had yet seen they had not found above 12 or 15 houses together, built like tents, in which they saw no other ornaments or moveables, but what they carry'd to the ships to exchange. Their beds were like a net, drawn together in the nature of a sling tied to two posts in their houses, in which they lie. Here they saw some dogs like mastiffs, and others like beagles, but none of them bark'd.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*How the admiral sailed by other islands that were in sight where he was.*

*Island of Isabella.*

Finding nothing of value in this island, *Fernandina*, on Friday the 19th of October, they sailed away to another, called *Saomotto*, to which he gave the name of *Isabella*, to proceed regularly in his names; for the first which the *Indians* call'd *Guanabani*, he call'd *St. Salvador*, or *St. Saviour* in honour of god, who had show'd it and delivered him from many dangers. The second for his particular devotion, to the conception of the virgin *Mary*; and because she is the great patroness of christians, he called *St. Mary of the Conception*; the third he called *Fernandina*, in honour of the catholick king, and the fourth *Isabella*, in remembrance of the catholick queen; and the next after it which was *Cuba*, he stiled *Joanna*, in respect to prince *John*, heir of *Castile*, having in these names regard both to spirituals and temporals. True it is, that as to goodness, extent, and beauty, he said this *Fernandina* far exceeded the others; for besides that it abounded in delicious waters, pleasant meadows and trees, among which were many of *Aloes*; there were in it some hills, which the others wanted, being very plain. The admiral enamoured with its beauty, and to perform the ceremony of taking possession, landed upon some meadows as pleasant and delightful as they are in *Spain* in April; and there was heard the singing of nightingales and other birds, so sweet, that

he could scarce depart. Nor were they only about the trees, but flew thro' the air in such swarms, that they darkened the sun, and most of them differed much from our birds. There being abundance of waters and lakes; near to one of them they saw a sort of alligator seven foot long, and above a foot wide in the belly, which being disturbed by our men, threw its self into the lake. But it not being deep, they killed it with their spears, not without dread and admiration, because of its fierce and frightful look. Time afterwards made them look upon this as a dainty, it being the best food the *Indians* had; forasmuch as when that horrid skin, and the scales that cover it are taken off, the flesh is very white and very delicious, the *Indians* call them *Yvanas*. Being very desirous to know more of that country, and it being then late, they left that creature for the next day, when they killed another, as they had done the first; and travelling up the land found a town, the people whereof fled, carrying away as much of their goods as they could. The admiral would not suffer any thing of what they had left to be taken away, lest they should look upon the christians as thieves. Therefore their fear being soon over, they came of their own accord to the ships to barter, as the others had done.

*Yvanas.*

## C H A P. XXVII.

*How the admiral discovered the island of Cuba and what he found there.*

*Island of Cuba.*

THE admiral having learned the secrets of the island *Isabella*, its product, and the manners of the people, would lose no more time among those islands, because they were many and like one another, as the *Indians* said. He therefore set sail with a fair wind for a very large country, much applauded by them all, called *Cuba*, which lay towards the south, and on Sunday the 28th of October, he came up with the coast of it, on the north side. This island at first sight appeared to be better and richer than those before named, as well by reason of the beauty of its hills and mountains, as for the variety of trees, the large plains, and the greatness and extent of its coasts and rivers. Therefore to get some knowledge of its people, he came to an anchor in a large river, where the trees were very thick and

tall, adorned with fruit and blossoms, differing from ours, and where there were abundance of birds, the place most delicious, for the grass was high, and nothing like ours; and tho' there were several sorts of herbs known to us, yet the great variety made our men not know them. Going to two houses that were not far off, they found the people were fled for fear, and had left their nets, and all other fishing tackle, and a dog that did not bark. As the admiral had ordered, nothing was touched, for it was enough for him at present to see what their food and necessaries were. Returning to their ships they held on their course westward, and came to another river, which the admiral called *de Mares*, or of seas. This much exceeded the other, because a ship could turn it



it up, and the banks were much inhabited; but the people seeing the ships, fled towards the mountains, which appear'd, and were high, round, and covered with trees and pleasant plants, whither the *Indians* convey'd all they could carry away. The admiral being disappointed, by the peoples fear, of learning any thing of the nature of the island, and considering if he landed with many men, it would increase their terrour, he resolv'd to send two christians, with one of the *Indians* he brought from

*St. Salvador*, and with one of that country, who ventured to come aboard in his canoe. These he ordered to travel up into the country, making much of the natives they met by the way, and that no time might be lost, whilst they were going, he order'd the ship to be lay'd ashore to careen her, where they observed that all the fire they made was mastick, whereof there was plenty all the country over. This tree is in all respects like our mastick tree, but much bigger.

C H A P. XXVIII.

*How the two christians return'd, and the report they made of what they had seen.*

*A town in Cuba.*

THE ship being repaired and ready to sail, the christians returned with two *Indians* on the 5th of *November*, saying, they had travell'd twelve leagues up the land, and came to a town of 50 pretty huge houses, all of timber covered with straw, and made after the manner of pavillions, like the others; that they contain'd about 1000 people, because all that were of one family liv'd in a house, that the principal men of the place came out to meet them, and led them by the arms to their town, giving them one of those great houses to lodge in, where they made them sit down upon seats made of one piece, in strange shapes, and almost like some creature that had short legs, and the tail lifted up to lean against, which is as broad as the seat for the conveniency of leaning, with a head before, and the eyes and ears of gold. These seats they call *Duchi*, where the christians being seated, all the *Indians* fate about them on the ground, and then came one by one to kiss their hands and feet, believing they came from heaven; and they gave them some boil'd roots to eat, not unlike chestnuts in taste; earnestly entreating them to stay there among them, or at least to rest themselves 5 or 6 days, because the two *Indians* they took with them, gave those people an excellent character of the christians. Soon after, many women coming in to see them; the men went out, and these with no less respect, kiss'd their feet and hands, offering them what they brought. When their time came to return to the ships, many *Indians* would go along with them, but they would admit only of the king, his son and one servant, whom the admiral did much honour to; and these christians told him, that in their way out, and return, they had found several towns, where they were en-

tain'd with the same courtesy, but that there were not in them above five houses together: Besides, that by the way they met many people, who always carried a lighted firebrand, to light fire and perfume themselves with certain herbs they carried along with them, and to roast some of those roots they gave them; so far as that was their principal food. They also saw very many sorts of trees and plants, which were not to be seen about the sea-coast; and great variety of birds, far differing from ours, but that among them that were partridges and nightingals. As for four-footed creatures, they had seen none but dumb dogs. That there was a great deal of till'd land, some sow'd with those roots, a sort of beans, and a sort of grain they call *Maiz*, which was well tasted, bak'd, or dry'd and made into flour. They saw vast quantities of cotton well spun, in bottoms, in so much that in one house only, they saw above 12500 pounds of it. The plants it comes from are not set, but grow naturally about the fields, like roses, and open of themselves, when they are ripe, but not all at the same time; for upon one and the same plant, they had seen a little young bud, another open, and a third coming ripe. Of these plants the *Indians* afterwards carried great quantities aboard the ships, and gave a basket full for a thong of leather; yet none of them make use of it to cloath themselves, but only to make nets for their beds, which they call *Hamacas*, and in weaving aprons for women to cover their nakedness. Being ask'd whether they had gold or pearls, or spice, they made signs that there was great plenty towards the east, in a country they call'd *Bubia*, which is the island of *Hispaniola*, but it is not yet certainly known what place they meant.

## The first Discovery of

## C H A P. XXIX.

*How the admiral desisted from following the western coast of Cuba, and turn'd eastward towards Hispaniola.*

*Conjugal  
affection in  
an Indian.*

THE admiral having this account, and resolving to stay no longer in that river, order'd some natives of that island to be taken, designing to carry some from all parts into *Spain*, to give an account of his country; and accordingly 12 were seiz'd, men, women, and children, and this so peaceably and without any disturbance, that when they were ready to sail with them, the husband of one of the women, and father of two children that had been carry'd aboard, came to the ships in a canoe desiring he might be taken along with them, and not parted from his wife and children, which extremely pleas'd the admiral, who order'd he should be receiv'd, and they all well us'd and made much of. That same day, being the 13th of *November*, he came about to the eastward, designing for the island they call'd *Bobio*. The wind blowing hard at north, he was forced to come to an anchor again in the same island of *Cuba*, among some high islands, lying near a large port, which he call'd *del Principe*, or the princes port, and the sea, *Our Lady's*. These islands lay so thick and close, there was not above a quarter of a league distance between them at furthest, and but a musquet shot for the most part. The channels were so deep, and so well adorn'd with trees and greens, that it was very delightful going among them; and among the multitude of other trees, there were abundance of mastic, aloes and palm, the trunk green and smooth, and other plants of sundry sorts. And tho' these islands were not

inhabited, yet there appeared the tokens of many fires made by fishermen; for as it afterwards appear'd, the people of *Cuba* went together in great number, in their canoes over to these islands, and abundance more that lie hereabouts uninhabited, and live upon the fish they catch, upon birds, crabs, and other things they find on the earth; forasmuch as generally the *Indians* eat abundance of filthy things, such as great spiders, worms that breed in rotten wood and other corrupt places, and abundance of fish almost raw; for as soon as taken, before they roast it, they digg out the eyes to eat, and many other such things they feed on, which, besides that they are nauseous, would kill any of us, should we eat them. They follow this fishing and birding according to the season, sometimes in one island, sometimes in another, as one that changes his diet, being weary of the last. But to return to the islands of *Our Lady's Sea*, in one of them the christians with their swords, kill'd a beast like a badger, and in the sea found much mother of pearl; and casting their nets, among many other sorts of fish they caught, one was like a swine, all cover'd with a very hard skin, no part whereof was soft but the tail. They also observ'd that in this sea, and the islands, the tide swell'd and fell much lower than in other places, where they had been till then, and their tides were quite contrary to ours; for it was low water when the moon was S. W. and by S.

*Food of the  
Indians.*

*A delicious  
country.*

## C H A P. XXX.

*How the admiral set sail again eastward for Hispaniola, and one of the ships forsook him.*

*Martin Alonso  
leaves the  
admiral.*

ON Monday the 19th of *November*, the admiral departed from the princes port in *Cuba*, and the sea of *Our Lady*, steering eastward for the island of *Bobio* and *Hispaniola*, but the wind being contrary, he was forced to ply two or three days between the island *Isabella*, which the *Indians* call *Somoto*, and the said princes port, which lie almost north and south, about 25 leagues distant, in which sea he still found long traces of these weeds he had seen in the ocean, and he perceived they swam along the current, and never lay athwart it. During this time *Martin Alonso Pinzon* being inform'd by certain *Indians* he

had conceal'd aboard his caraval, that in the island *Bobio*, which we said was *Hispaniola*, there was great plenty of gold; covetously blinding him, on *wednesday* the 21st of *November*, he went away from the admiral without any stress of weather, or any other occasion, for he could have come up to him before the wind, but would not, and so making as much way as possibly he could, his vessel being an excellent sailer, he made forwards all *Tburjay*, whereas they had sail'd in sight of one another all the day before, and night coming on, he quite vanish'd. Thus the admiral was left only with two ships, and the weather not being

fit

fit for his vessels to sail over towards *Hispaniola*, he was forced to return to *Cuba*, to another port not far from the princes, which he call'd *St. Catharine's*, there to take in wood and water. In this port he accidentally saw signs of gold on some stones in the river where they were watering, and up the country there were mountains full of such tall pine trees, as would make masts for the biggest ships. Nor was there any want of wood for planks, to build as many ships as they would, and among them oaks, and others like those in *Castile*. But perceiving that all the *Indians* directed him to *Hispaniola*, he run along the coast 10 or 12 leagues farther towards the south-east, meeting all the way excellent harbours, and many large rivers. The admiral says so much of the delightfulness and beauty of that country, that I have thought fit here to set down his own words, speaking of the mouth of the river, which makes a harbour by him called *Puerto Santo*, or holy harbour. Thus he says, when I went with the boats before me to the mouth of the harbour towards the south, I found a river, up whose mouth a gally could easily row, and the way up it was such, that it was not to be discover'd but close by: the beauty of it invited me to go up a boats length, where I found from 5 to 8 fathom water; and proceeding, I went a considerable way up the river in the boats; because, as well the beauty and delightfulness of the river, and the clearness of the water, thro' which I could see the sand at the bottom; as the abundance of palm trees of several sorts, the finest and highest I had yet met with; the other, infinite number of large green trees, the birds, and the verdure of the plain, temp-

ted me to fix there for ever. This country, most serene princes, is so wonderfully fine, as far exceeds all other beauty and delightfulness, as the day in brightness exceeds the night. Therefore I often told my companions, that tho' I should never so much endeavour to give your highnesses a perfect account of it, my tongue and pen would always fall short of the truth. And to say the truth, I was astonish'd to see so much beauty, and know not how to express it; for I have writ of the other countries, of their trees and fruits, of the plants and ports, and of all that belong'd to them, as largely as I was able, yet not as I ought, since all men affirm'd it was impossible any other country could be more delicious. Now I am silent, wishing this may be seen by others, who will write of it, that they may prove how little credit is to be got more than I have done in writing or speaking of that place considering what it deserves. The admiral going on with his boats, saw a canoe among the trees in the port, drawn upon land under a bower, which canoe was made of the body of one tree, and as big as a twelve oar barge, and in some houses hard by, they found a ball of wax, and a man's skull in two baskets hanging at a post. The same they afterwards found in another house, which made our men judge, they were the skulls of the founders of those houses. No people appeared to receive any information of, for as soon as ever they saw the christians, they fled from their houses to other parts. Afterwards they found another canoe about 70 foot long, that would carry 50 persons, made like the other we spoke of before.

*A delicious country.*

*Two vast canoes.*

CHAP. XXXI.

*How the admiral sail'd over to Hispaniola, and what he saw there.*

*Hispanio-*  
THE admiral having sail'd 106 leagues eastward along the coast of *Cuba*, came to the east point of it, which he call'd *Alpba*. and on Wednesday the 5th of December, struck off to sail over to *Hispaniola*, distant 16 leagues from *Cuba* eastward, and by reason of some currents, could not reach it till the next day, when he put into port *St. Nicholas*, so call'd by him in memory of that saint, whose festival was that day. The port is large, deep, safe, and encompass'd with many tall trees, but the country is more rocky, and the trees are less, that is, like those of *Castile*, among which there were small oaks, myrtle and other shrubs, and a pleasant river ran along a

plain towards the port, all about which there were large canoes like 15 oar barges. The admiral not being able to meet with any of those people, ran along the coast northward, till he came to a port he call'd the *Conception*, which lies almost due south of a small island about the bigness of *Gran Canaria*, which was afterwards call'd *Tortuga*. Perceiving that this island *Bobio* was very large, and that the land and trees were like those of *Spain*; and that at one draught of a net they had taken several fishes, like those of *Spain*, as soles, salmon, pilchards, crabs, and some others, therefore on Sunday the 9th of December, they gave it the name of *Espannola*, as call'd in

*Tortuga.*

and turn'd

ared the tokens  
ermen; for as it  
people of *Cuba*  
nber, in their ca-  
and abundance  
nhabited, and live  
pon birds, crabs,  
on the earth;  
*Indians* eat abun-  
ch as great spi-  
rotten wood and  
undance of fish  
as taken, before  
t the eyes to eat,  
gs they feed on,  
nauseous, would  
eat them. They  
ling according to  
one island, some-  
that changes his  
laft. But to re-  
*Lady's Sea*, in one  
with their swords,  
r, and in the sea  
arl; and casting  
other sorts of fish  
a swine, all co-  
n, no part where-  
They also ob-  
the islands, the  
h lower than in  
ad been till then,  
ontrary to ours;  
n the moon was

of the ships

raval, that in the  
d was *Hispaniola*,  
gold; covetously  
lay the 21st of  
from the admi-  
weather, or any  
uld have come  
but would not,  
ay as possibly he  
excellent sailer,  
ay, whereas they  
nother all the day  
on, he quite va-  
l was left only  
eather not being  
fit

in *English*, *Hispaniola*. All of them being very desirous to enquire into the nature of this island; whilst the men were fishing on the shoar, three christians travelled along the mountain, and lighted on a company of *Indians*, as naked as those they had seen before, who seeing the christians draw near them, in a great fright, ran into the thickest of the wood, as having no cloaths to hinder them. The christians to get some information, ran after them, but could only overtake a young woman, who had a plate of gold hanging at her nose. She was carried to the ships, where the admiral gave her several baubles, as bells and glafs, and then sent her ashore without the least disgust offer'd her, ordering three *Indians* of those he brought from the other islands to go with her, and three christians, to the town where she dwelt. The next day he sent 11 men ashore well arm'd, who having travelled four leagues, found a fort of town or village of above 1000 houses, scattered about a valley, the inhabitants whereof seeing the christians, all fled to the woods. But the *Indian* guide, whom our men brought from *St. Salvador*, went after them, and said such things to them of the christians, affirming they were people come from heaven, that he persuaded them to turn back quietly and without any fear. Afterwards full of astonishment, they would lay their hands on our mens heads by way of honour, brought them to eat, and gave them all they desired, without asking any return, praying them to stay that night in their village. The christians would not accept of the invitation, but return'd to their ships carrying the news that the country was very pleasant, abounding in their provisions: that the people were whiter and handsomer, than any they had yet seen in other islands, and that they were tractable and courteous, and told them the country where the gold was found, lay farther eastward. The admiral hearing this account, set sail immediately, tho' the

wind was contrary, and on Sunday following, being the 15th of December, as he was plying between *Hispaniola* and *Tortuga*, he found one *Indian* alone in a little canoe, which they all wonder'd was not swallowed by the sea, the wind and the waves were so high. He took him into the ship, carried him to *Hispaniola*, and set him ashore with several gifts. He told the *Indians* how kindly he had been used, and spoke so well of the christians, that abundance of them came presently aboard, but they brought nothing of value, except some small grains of gold hanging at their ears and nostrils, and being ask'd whence they had that gold, they made signs there was a great deal higher up. The next day there came a great canoe from the island *Tortuga*, which was near the place where the admiral lay at anchor, with 40 men in it, at such time as the *Cacique* or lord of that port of *Hispaniola* was upon the shoar, bartering a plate of gold he had brought. When he and his saw the canoe, they all fate themselves down upon the ground, as a sign they would not fight. Immediately almost all those in the canoe landed, again whom the *Cacique* of *Hispaniola* got up alone, and with threatening words made them return to their canoe. Then he threw water over them, and taking up stones off the strand, cast them into the sea towards the canoe. But when they were all in submissive manner return'd to their canoe, he took up a stone and delivered it to one of the admiral's officers, to throw at those in the canoe, to express that he took the admiral's part against the *Indians*, but the officer did not throw, seeing they presently went off in their canoe. After this, discoursing about the affairs of that island, which the admiral had call'd *Tortuga*, he affirm'd there was more gold in it than in *Hispaniola*, and that in *Bahia* there was more than in any other, which was about 15 days journey from the place where they were.

#### C H A P. XXXII.

*How the principal king of the island came aboard, and of the state he came in.*

ON Tuesday the 18th of December, the king that came the day before, where the canoe of *Tortuga* was, and who lived 5 leagues from the place where the ships lay, came in the morning to the town near the sea, sent of the *Spaniards* at the same time being there by the admiral's order to see whether they brought any more gold. These seeing the king come, went to acquaint the admiral, saying he brought above 200 men a-

long with him, and that he came not a foot but was carry'd on a sort of palanquine by four men with great respect, tho' he was very young. This king being at a small distance from the ships having rested a little, drew near with all his men, concerning which, the admiral himself writes thus: There is no doubt but your highnesses had been very much pleas'd to have seen his gravity, and the respect his people pay'd him

*Account of  
the Cacique  
or Indian  
king.*

*The admiral's ship  
is.*

unday following, as he was play'd Tortuga, he a little canoe, is not swallowed the waves were to the ship, car- set him ashore the Indians how d spoke so well adance of them at they brought me small grains ars and nostrils, had that gold, great deal high- e came a great yga, which was miral lay at an- at such time as port of Hispani- ntering a plate When he and ate themselves a sign they tely almost all gain whom the done, and with em return to w water off the strand, rds the canoe. umbly man- he took up a e of the admi- hofe in the ca- k the admiral's the officer did tly went off in ourfing about ich the admiral n'd there was niola, and that in any other, urney from the

him, tho' all naked. When he came a-board, and understood I was under deck, being then at dinner, he surpris'd me, sitting down by me, without giving me time to go out to receive him, or rise from table. When he came down he made signs to all his followers to stay above, which they did with great respect, sitting down upon the deck, except two ancient men that seem'd to be his counsellors, that sat down at his feet. They said this man was a *Cacique*. I order'd such meat as I was eating, to be brought him; they just tast'd of every thing, and sent the rest to their men, who all eat of it. The same they did as to drinking, for they only kiss'd the cup and gave it about. They were all wonderful grave, and spoke but few words, and those they utter'd, by what I could gather, were very deliberate and staid. The two old men observ'd the king's mouth, and spoke for and to him. After eating, one of his gentlemen with great respect brought him a girdle, not unlike those us'd in *Castile*, tho' differently wrought, which he took in his hand, and gave me with two pieces of wrought gold very thin. Of which gold I believe there is little here, and I guess'd that place was near to where they took it, which produced very much. I believing he would like a carpet or counterpan that lay on my bed, gave it him, together with some fine amber beads I had about my neck, with a pair of red shoes and a bottle of orange-flower water, with which he was wonderfully pleas'd, and both he and his counsellors express'd much concern because they did not understand me,

nor I them, tho' I made out, that if I wanted any thing, all the island was at my command. I presently brought out a letter-case, in which I carry'd a gold medal weighing 4 ducats, on which your highnesses effigies are cut, and shew'd it him, saying over again, that your highnesses were mighty princes, and possess'd the best part of the world, and shew'd him the royal standard, and the other of the cross, which he made great account of. Therefore turning to his counsellors, he said, your highnesses were certainly mighty princes, since you had sent me so far as from heaven thither, without any fear. Much more pass'd between us, which I did not understand, but perceiv'd they admir'd at every thing they saw; but it being then late, and he desiring to be gone, I sent him ashore very honourably in my boat, and caus'd several guns to be fired, and he being ashore got into his palanquine, attended by above 200 men, and a son of his was carried on a man of note's shoulders. He order'd all the *Spaniards* that were ashore, to have meat given them, and to be very courteously us'd. Afterwards a failer that met him on the way, told me, that every one of the things I had given him, were carry'd before him by a man of great worth, and that his son went not along with him on the road, but at some distance behind him with as many more attendance as he had, and a brother of his on foot, with near as many more, two great men leading him under the arms, to whom I had given some small matters when he came aboard after his brother.

C H A P. XXXIII.

*How the admiral lost his ship upon the flats thro' the carelessness of the sailers, and the assistance he receiv'd from the king of that island.*

THE admiral continuing the relation as above, says, That on *Monday* the 24th of *December*, the weather was very calm, without any wind hardly, but so much as carried him from *St. Thomas's* sea, to *Punta Santa*, or the holy cape, off which he lay by about a league, and about 11 of the clock at night he went to take his rest, for he had not slept in two days and a night; and the weather being calm, the seaman that was at the helm, left it to a grummet, which (says the admiral) I had forbid during the whole voyage, bidding them, whether the wind blew or not, never to leave the helm to a grummet. And to say the truth, I thought my self safe from flats and rocks; for that *Sunday* I sent my boats to the king, they went at least

three leagues and a half beyond the said *Punta Santa*; and the seamen had view'd all the coast, and the shoals that lie three leagues E. S. E. of that cape, and observ'd which way to sail, which I had not done during the voyage; and it pleas'd our lord, that at midnight, seeing me gone to bed, we being in a dead calm and the sea as still as the water in a dish, all the men went to rest, leaving the helm to a grummet. Thus it came to pass, that the current easily carried away the ship upon one of those shoals, which tho' it was night, made such a roaring noise, that they might be heard and discover'd a league off. Then the fellow who felt the rudder strike and heard the noise, began to cry out, and I hearing it, got up immediately; for none

6 X had

he came in.

ame not a foot palanquine by tho' he was ng at a small g rested a lit- men, concern- lf writes thus: highnesses had have seen his people pay'd him

Account of the Cacique or Indian king.



had yet perceived that we were a ground. Presently the master, whose watch it was, came out, and I order'd him and other failers to take the boat, and carry out an anchor a stern; whereupon he and others leap'd into the boat, and I believing they would have done as I ordered, they row'd away, flying with the boat to the other caraval, which was half a league off. I then perceiving they ran away with the boat, that the water ebb'd, and the ship was in danger, caus'd the masts to be cut down, and lightned her as much as I could to see to get her off; but the water still ebbing, the caraval could not budge, but turning athwart the streams, the seams open'd, and all below deck was full of water. Mean while the boat returned from the caraval to relieve me; for the men aboard perceiving the boat fled, would not receive it, which oblig'd it to return to the ship. No hopes of saving the ship appearing, I went away to the caraval to save the men, and because the wind blew from the land, and great part of the night was spent, and yet we knew not which way to get from among those flats; I lay by with the caraval till day appeared, and then I drew towards land within the shoals, having first sent *James de Arana* the provost, and *Peter Gutierrez* your highnesses secretary, to acquaint the king with what had happened, telling him, That as I was going to visit him in his own port, as he had desired the last Saturday, I had lost my ship opposite to his town, and a league and a half from it upon a flat. The king understanding it, with tears in his eyes, expressed much grief for our loss, and immediately sent a-

Great kindness of the Indians to the Spaniards.

board all the people in the place, with many large canoes. So they and we began to unload, and in a short time carried off all that was upon deck. The assistance this king gave was great; and afterwards he himself, with his brothers and kindred, took all possible care both aboard and ashore, that all things might be done orderly; and from time to time he sent some of his kindred weeping, to beg of me not to be dejected, for he would give me all he had. I do assure your highnesses, better order could not have been taken in any part of *Castile*, to secure our things; for we lost not the value of a pin, for he caus'd all our cloaths to be laid together near his palace, where he kept them till the houses were voided, which he had appointed for us. He placed armed men to keep them, who stood there all day and all night, and all the people lamented, as if our loss had concern'd them much; so loving, tractable and free from covetousness they are, that I swear to your highnesses, there are no better people, nor a better countrey in the world. They love their neighbour as themselves, and their conversation is the sweetest in the universe, being pleasant and always smiling. True it is, both men and women go as naked as they were born; yet, your highnesses may believe me, they have very commendable customs, and the king is serv'd with great state; and he is so staid, that it is a great satisfaction to see him, as it is to think what good memories these people have, and how desirous they are to know every thing, which moves 'em to ask many questions, and to enquire into the cause and effects of every thing.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*How the admiral resolv'd to plant a colony where the king resided, and call'd it the nativity.*

ON Wednesday the 26th of December, the chief king of that countrey came aboard the admiral's caraval, and expressing much grief and sorrow, comforted him, offer'd all he would have, and saying he had already given the christians three houses to lay up all they got out of the ship, and that he had given them many more, had they stood in need of them. In the mean while a canoe came with some *Indians* from another island, bringing some plates of gold to exchange for bells, which they valued above any thing. Besides the seamen came from shore, saying abundance of *Indians* resorted from other places to the town, who brought several things in gold and gave them for points, and other things

of small value, offering to bring much more if the christians would. Which the great *Cacique* perceiving was pleasing to the admiral; he told him he would cause a great quantity to be brought from *Cibao*, a place that yielded much gold. Being ashore, he invited the admiral to eat *Axis* and *Cazabi*, which is their principal diet, and gave him some vizor masks, with the eyes, nose and ears of gold, and other pretty things which they hung about their necks. Then complaining of the *Carribbes*, who carried away his men to make slaves and eat them, he was much comforted, when the admiral comforting him, show'd him our weapons, saying, he would defend him with them. He was much a-

stonish'd

The admiral built a first and largest men in the island.

Where the first christian colony was.

the place, with  
they and we be-  
port time carried  
k. The assist-  
eat; and after-  
is brothers and  
e care both a-  
things might be  
me to time he  
weeping, to beg  
or he would give  
your highnesses,  
ave been taken  
ure our things;  
of a pin, for he  
aid together near  
em till the houses  
ppointed for us.  
keep them, who  
night, and all  
ur loss had con-  
g, tractable and  
are, that I swear  
e no better peo-  
y in the world.  
as themselves,  
the sweetest in  
ant and always  
men and women  
born; yet, your  
they have very  
the king is serv'd  
so staid, that it  
him, as it is to  
es these people  
ey are to know  
em to ask many  
to the cause and

stonish'd at our canon, which so terrified them, that they fell down as if they were dead, when they heard the report. The admiral therefore finding so much kindness among those people, and such signs of gold, almost forgot the grief conceiv'd for the loss of his ship; thinking God had permitted it that he might fix a colony there, and leave christians to trade, and get farther knowledge of the people and country, learning the language, and conversing with the natives, that when he returned from Spain with succours, he might have some body to direct him in his affairs, for peopling and subduing that country. To this he was the more inclined, because many voluntarily offered themselves to stay and inhabit there. For this reason he resolv'd to build a tower with the timber of the ship that was wrecked, whereof he lost no part, but made use of it all. To forward his design, the next day being *Thursday*, the 27th of *December*, news was brought, that the caraval *Pinta*, was in a river towards the east point of the island. To be assured of it, the *Cacique*, whose name was *Guacanagari*, sent a canoe with some *Indians*, who carried a christian thither: he having gone 20 leagues along the coast, returned without any news of it, which was the reason that no credit was given to another *Indian*, who said he had seen her some days before. Nevertheless the admiral did not alter his resolution of leaving some christians in that place, who were all still more sensible of the goodness and wealth of the country, the *Indians* bringing masks and other things of gold to give them, and telling them of several provinces in the island where it was

found. The admiral now being ready to depart, and discoursing with the king concerning the *Caribbes*, or *Canibals*, of whom they complained and were in great dread, therefore to please him with leaving some christians there, and at the same time make him afraid of our arms, he caus'd a gun to be fired against the side of the ship, which shot quite thro' it, and the bullet fell into the water, which not a little terrified the *Cacique*. Besides, he showed him all our other weapons, and how they offend'd with them, and defended themselves, telling him, that since such weapons were left to defend him, he need'd not to fear the *Caribbes*, for the christians would destroy them all, and he would leave them for his guard, and return himself to *Castile* for jewels and other things to give him. Then he particularly recommended to him *James de Arana*, son to *Roderick de Arana of Cordova*, of whom mention has been made above. To him, and *Peter Gutierrez* and *Roderick de Eskovedo*, he left the government of the fort, and command of 36 men, with abundance of commodities, provision, arms and cannon, and the boat that belonged to the ship, with carpenters, caulkers, and all other necessaries for settling there, also a surgeon, gunner, and such like persons. This done he prepar'd with all possible speed to return directly to *Castile*, without making any more discoveries, fearing, since he had but one ship left, left some other misfortune might befall him, which might hinder their catholic majesties from coming to the knowledge of those kingdoms he had newly acquired for them.

C H A P. XXXV.

*How the admiral set out to return to Spain, and found the other caraval commanded by Pinzon.*

ON *Friday* the 4th of *January*, at sun-rising, the admiral set sail, with the boats a-head, standing north-west, to get out of shoal water, that was about the port where he left the christians, by him called the port of the *Nativity*, because on *Christmas* day he had land'd, escaping the danger of the sea, and begun to build that colony. Those flats reach from cape *Santo* to cape *Serpe*, which is six leagues, and run out above three leagues to sea, and all the coast north-west and south-east is an open strand, and plain for four leagues up the country, where there are then high mountains, and abundance of large villages, in comparison of what is in the other islands. Then he sail'd towards a high

mountain, which he call'd *Monte Christo*, and lies 18 leagues E. of cape *Santo*. So that whosoever would come to the city of the *Nativity*, when he discovers *Monte Christo*, which is round like a pavillion, and looks almost like a rock, must keep out at sea two leagues from it, and sail west till he comes to cape *Santo*, when the city of the *Nativity* will be five leagues from him; and he must pass thro' certain channels among the flats, which lie before it. The admiral thought fit to mention these marks, that it might be known where the first habitation of christians was in those western parts. Having sail'd east of *Monte Christo* with contrary winds, on *Sunday* the 6th of *January*, in the morning, a sailer from the round

Where the first christian colony was.

The admiral builds a fort and leaves men in the island.

The other  
caravel found

round top discovered the caravel *Pinta* that was sailing westward, right before the wind. As soon as it came up with the admiral, *Martin Alonzo Pinzon*, the captain, coming aboard the admiral's caravel, began to show some reasons, and give excuses for his leaving of him, saying it had happened against his will. The admiral, tho' he very well knew the contrary, and was satisfied of the man's evil inclination, remembering his bold manner of proceeding before in the voyage, yet connived at him, and bore with all, for fear of ruining his undertaking, which might easily have been done, because most of his crew were *Martin Alonzo's* countrymen, and several of them his relations. And the truth is, that when he forsook the admiral, which was at *Cuba*, he went away with a design to fail to the island *Bobio*, because the *Indians* aboard his caravel hold him, there was abundance of gold there. When he was there and found nothing of what had been told him, he

was returning towards *Hispaniola*, where other *Indians* had told him there was much gold, and thus he had spent 20 days in sailing not above 15 leagues east of the *Nativity*, to a river which the admiral called of *Grace*, and there *Martin Alonzo* had lain 16 days, and had got gold enough, as the admiral had done at the *Nativity*, giving things of small value for it. Of this gold he distributed one half among his crew, to gain and please them, that he as captain might keep the rest, and afterwards he would persuade the admiral that he knew nothing of all this. He now following on his way to come to an anchor at *Monte Christo*, the weather not permitting him to proceed farther, he went in his boat up a river, southwest of the mount, where in the sand he discovered signs of gold dust, and therefore called it the *River of Gold*. This river lies 17 leagues east of the *Nativity*, and is not much less than the river *Guadalquivar* that runs by *Cordova*.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Of the first skirmish between the Christians and Indians, which happened about the gulf of Samana in Hispaniola.*

Fierce In-  
dians.

ON Sunday the 13th of January, being near the cape called *Enamorado*, or the *lovers Cape*, the admiral sent the boat ashore, where our men found some *Indians* with fierce countenances on the shoar, with bows and arrows, who seemed to be ready to engage, but at the same time were in a consternation. However, having some conference with them, they bought two of their bows and some arrows, and with much difficulty prevailed to have one of them go aboard the admiral. Their speech was suitable to their fierceness, which appeared greater than any people they had yet met with had shown; for their faces were all daubed over with charcoal, it being the custom of all those people to paint themselves, some black, some red and some white, some one way, and some another; their hair was very long, and hung in a bag made of parrots feathers. One of them standing before the admiral, as naked as he was born, as all the others there till then discovered were, he said in a lofty tone, they all went so in those parts. The admiral thinking this was one of the *Caribbes*, and that the bay parted them from *Hispaniola*, he ask'd of him where the *Caribbes* dwelt who pointed with his finger, in another island eastward, and that there were pieces of *Guanin*, as big as half the stern of the caravel; and that the island *Matimino* was all inhabited by women, with whom the *Ca-*

*ribbes* went and lay at a certain time of the year, and if afterwards they brought forth sons, they gave them to the fathers to carry away. Having answered to all the questions put to them, partly by signs, and partly by that little the *Indians* of *St. Salvador* could understand of their language, the admiral gave them to eat, and some bangles, as glass beads, and green and red cloath, which done, he sent them ashore, that they should cause gold to be brought if the others had any. The boat being ashore, they found on the shore among the trees 55 of them, all naked, with long hair, as the women in *Spain* wear it, and behind on the crown of the head, they had plumes of parrots or other birds feathers, and all of them armed with bows and arrows. When our men landed, the *Indian* that had been aboard made the others lay down their bows and arrows, and a great cudgel they carry instead of a sword, for, as has been said, they have no iron at all: when they came to the boat, the christians stepped ashore, and having begun to trade for bows and arrows by order of the admiral, the *Indians* who had already sold two, not only refused to sell any more, but with scorn, made as if they would seize the christians, and run to their bows and arrows where they had left them, taking up with them ropes to bind our men; they being upon their guard seeing them

Dissem-  
ers return  
wards  
Spain.

A fray  
with the  
Indians.

*Lispaniola*, where there was much spent 20 days in the east of the *Nativity* admiral called *Alonso* had lain enough, as the *Nativity*, giving it. Of this gold long his crew, to that he as captain and afterwards he said that he knew now following on anchor at *Monte* permitting him in his boat up the mount, where signs of gold dust, the *River of Gold*, east of the *Nativity* less than the rises by *Cordova*.

them come in that fury, tho' they were but seven, fell courageously upon them, and cut one with a sword on the buttock, and shot another with an arrow in the breast. The *Indians* astonished at the resolution of our men, and the wounds our weapons made, fled most of them leaving their bows and arrows; and many of them had been killed, had not the pilot of the caraval, who commanded the boat, protected them. The admiral was not at all displeased at this skirmish, imagining these were the *Caribes* all the other *Indians* so much dreaded, or that at least they bordered on them, they being a bold and resolute people, as appeared by their aspect, arms and actions, and he hoped that the islanders hearing how seven christians had behaved themselves against 55 fierce *Indians* of that country, they would the more respect and honour our men that were left behind at the *Nativity*, and would not dare to offend them. Afterwards, about evening, they made a smook at land to show their courage; wherefore the boat went again to see what

they would have, but they could never be brought to venture themselves, and so the boat returned. The bows were of yew, almost as big as those in *France* and *England*, the arrows of small twigs growing out of the ends of the canes, which are massive and very strait, about the length of a man's arm and a half; the head is made of a small stick hardened at the fire, about a quarter of a yard and half long, at the end whereof they fix a fish's tooth, or bone, and poison it. For this reason the admiral gave that gulph the name of *Gulph de Flechas*, that is, *Gulph of arrows*, whereas the *Indians* called it *Samana*. There appeared a great deal of fine cotton and *Axi*, which is the pepper they use, and is very hot, some of it long and some round. Near land, where there was little water, grew abundance of those weeds our men saw in long strings upon the ocean, whence they concluded it all grew near land, and when ripe, broke loose, and was carried out to sea by the current.

opened about the

certain time of the they brought forth the fathers to carry to all the quest-signs, and parts of *St. Salvador* language, the ad-and some banded green and red sent them ashore, and to be brought The boat being the shore among all naked, with in *Spain* wear it, of the head, they other birds feathered with bows when landed, the rd made the o-and arrows, and read of a sword, y have no iron the boat, the d having begun ws by order of who had already felled to sell any ade as if they d run to their had left them, s to bind our r guard seeing them

*Dinner-  
er return  
wards  
Spain.*

C H A P. XXXVII.  
*How the admiral set out for Spain, and the caraval Pinta was parted from him in a great storm.*

ON Wednesday, the 16th of January, 1493. the admiral set forward with a fair wind from the aforesaid *Gulf of arrows*, now called *Samana*, towards *Spain*, because now both the caravals were very leaky, and they took much pains to keep them up: Cape *Santelmo* being the last land they saw; 20 leagues north-east of it, there appeared abundance of weeds, and 20 leagues still farther, they found all the sea covered with small tunny-fishes, whereof they saw great numbers the two following days, which were the 19th and the 20 of January, and after them abundance of sea-fowls, and all the way the weeds ran with the current in long ropes, lying east and west; for they had really found, that the current takes these weeds a great way off, and that they keep not on long in the same way; for sometimes they go one way, and sometimes another; and this they saw almost every day, till they were almost half seas over. Holding on their course with a fair wind, they made so much way, that in the opinion of the pilots, on the 9th of February, they were south of the islands *Azores*; but the admiral said they were 150 leagues short, and this was the truth, for they still found abundance of weeds, which as they went towards the *Indies*, they did not see till they were 263 leagues west of

Vol. II.

the island of *Ferro*. As they sailed on thus with fair weather, the wind began to rise more and more every day, and the sea to run so high, that they could scarce lie upon it. For which reason, on Thursday the 14th of February, they drove which way soever the wind would carry them; and the caraval *Pinta*, commanded by *Pinzon*, not being able to lie athwart the sea, run away due north, before the south wind, the admiral steering north-east to draw nearer to *Spain*, which the caraval *Pinta*, could not do, by reason of the darkness, tho' the admiral had always his light out. Thus when day appeared, they had quite lost sight of one another, each looking upon it as most certain, that the other was lost; therefore betaking themselves to prayers and religious acts; those aboard the admiral cast lots, which of them should go in pilgrimage for the whole crew to our lady of *Guadalupe*, which fell to the admiral. Afterwards they drew for another to go to *Loretto*, and the lot fell upon one *Peter de Villa*, a seaman of *Port St. Mary*. Then they cast lots for a third, who was to watch a night at *St. Olive of Moguer*, and the storm still increasing, they all made a vow to go barefoot and in their shirts at the first land they came to, to some church of our lady. Besides these general vows

*A terrible  
storm.*

6 Y

several

several others were made by private men, because the tempest was now vehement, and the admiral's vessel could scarce withstand it for want of ballast, which was fallen short, the provisions being spent. To supply which want, they thought convenient to fill all the vessels in the ship with seawater, which was some help, and made the ship bear more upright, and be in less danger of oversetting. Of this violent storm, the admiral has these words. I had been less concerned for the tempest, had I alone been in danger; for I know I owe my life to the supreme creator, and because I have been other times so near death, that only the least part was wanting to compleat it. But what infinitely grieved and troubled me was the consideration, that as it had pleased our lord to give me faith and assurance to go upon this undertaking, wherein I had now been successful; so now that those who opposed it were to be convinced, and your highnesses served by me with honour and increase of your mighty state, his divine majesty should please to obstruct all this by my death, which had yet been more tolerable, had it not been attended with the loss of all those men I had carried with me, upon promise of happy success. They seeing themselves in that affliction did not only curse their setting out, but the fear and awe my persuasions infused into them, to dissuade their return when outward bound, as they had several times resolved to do. But above all my sorrow was double, when I remembered two sons I had left at school at *Cordova*, destitute of friends, in a strange country, before I had done, or at least could be known to have done any service, which might be believed to incline your highnesses to remember them. And tho' on the one side I comforted myself with the faith, that our lord would not

permit a thing which was so much for the exaltation of his church, to be left imperfect, when I had with so much opposition and trouble, almost brought it to perfection: yet on the other side I considered, It was his will, that because of my demerits he would not permit me to obtain such honour in this world, but snatched it from me. Being in this inward confusion, I remembered your highnesses good fortune, which tho' I were dead, and the ship lost, might find some means that a conquest so near achieved should not be lost, and that it was possible the success of my voyage should by some means or other, come to your knowledge. For this reason as briefly as the time would permit, I writ upon parchment, that I had discovered those lands, I had promised, as also in how many days, and what way I had done it, the goodness of those lands, the nature of the inhabitants, and how your highnesses subjects were left in possession of all I had discovered; which writing folded and sealed, I supercribed to your highnesses, promising in writing upon it a 1000 ducats to him, that should deliver it sealed to you; to the end, that if any foreigners found it, the promised reward might prevail with them, not to give that intelligence to another. Then I caused a great cask to be brought to me, and having wrapped the writing in an oyled cloath and then put it into the cask of wax, I dropped it into the cask, and having stopped the bung close, cast it into the sea, all the men fancying it was some act of devotion. And apprehending that might perhaps never be taken up, and the ship still failed nearer to *Spain*, I made another packet like the first, and placed it at the top of the poop, to the end that when the ship sunk, the cask might take its chance, remaining still above water.

## C H A P. XXXVIII.

*How the admiral arrived at the islands Azores and the people of the island of St. Mary took away his boat and the men in it.*

*They spy land.*

Sailing on in such mighty danger, and so great a storm, on *Friday* the 15 of *February*, at break of day, one *Ruy Garcia*, from the round top, saw land bear E.N.E. from them. The pilot and seamen judged it was the rock of *Lisbon*, but the admiral concluded it was one of the islands *Azores*, and tho' they were at no great distance from it, yet they could not come to an anchor that day because of the weather. Thus plying about because the wind was east, they lost sight of the island and discovered another, about which they ran struggling against wind and wea-

ther, with continual labour and no respite, not being able to get to land. Wherefore the admiral in his journal says, on *Saturday* the 16th of *February*, I arrived at one of those islands at night, and by reason of the bad weather, could not tell which of them it was. That night I took a little rest, because from *Wednesday* till then, I had never slept, and was lame of both my legs, having been continually in the open air and wet, nor was it little that I suffered by provisions. Upon *Monday* morning, being at an anchor, I understood from some of the inhabitants, that it was the island of *St. Mary*, one



one of the *Azores*, and all of them admired I had escap'd, considering the terrible storm, which had held for 15 days without intermission in those parts. These people understanding what the admiral had discovered, seem'd to rejoice, giving praise to God, and three of them came aboard with some fresh provisions and many complements from the commander of the island, who was far from thence at the town; for about this place, there was nothing to be seen but a hermitage, which as they said, was dedicated to the blessed virgin. Thereupon the admiral and all his crew remembering they had made a vow the *Thursday* before, to go barefoot and in their shirts, the first land they came at, to some church of our lady; they were all of opinion they ought here to perform it, especially it being a place where the people and governour

express'd so much affection and tendernefs for our men, and belonging to a king, who was so great a friend to him of *Casile*. Therefore the admiral desired those three men to repair to the town, and cause the chaplain to come that had the keys of that hermitage, that he might say mass there. These men consenting, they went into the caraval's boat, with half the ship's crew, that they might begin to perform their vow, and being come back, the rest might go to do their part. Being landed barefooted and in their shirts, as they had vow'd to do, the governour, with abundance of people from the town, who lay in ambush, on a sudden rush'd out upon them and made them prisoners, taking their boat, without which he thought the admiral could never get away from him.

CHAP. XXXIX.

*How the admiral weathered another storm, and at last recovered his boat and men.*

THE admiral thinking they stay'd too long, who were gone ashoar in the boat; it being then noon, whereas they went off by break of day, he suspected some misfortune had befallen them, either at land or at sea. Therefore not being able from the place where he lay, to discover the hermitage they were gone to, he resolv'd with his ship to sail about a point, whence the church could be seen. Being come near, he saw abundance of people a horseback, who dismounting, went into the boat to attack the caraval. The admiral therefore mistrusting what might happen, ordered his men to be in a readiness and arm'd, but make no shew of resistance, that the *Portuguese* might come the nearer. When they were near the admiral, the captain of them stood up, demanding to parley, which the admiral granted, thinking he would come aboard, and might be secur'd without breach of faith, since he had seiz'd his men without provocation. But the *Portuguese* durst not come nearer than to be heard, when the admiral told him, he admir'd at his irregular manner of proceeding, and that none of his men came in the boat since they were gone ashoar upon a safe conduct, and offers of relief, especially since the governour himself had sent to welcome him. He therefore desired him to consider, that besides his doing an action which enemies would not be guilty of, and against the laws of honour, the king of *Portugal* would be highly offended at it, whose subjects were, when they landed, in the dominions of their catholic majesties, or resided there,

made much of, and treated with all manner of civility, and were safe without any safe conduct, as if they were in *Lisbon*; besides that their highnesses had given him letters of recommendations to all princes, potentates, and other persons in the world, which he would shew him if he drew near. Therefore since such letters were received with respect in all parts, and he and the king's subjects well treated on their account, much more they ought to be so in *Portugal*, their princes being so near neighbours and allies; especially he being their great admiral of the ocean and vice roy of the *Indies* he had discovered, all which he was ready to shew him under their highnesses hands and seals. Accordingly at that distance he shew'd his commissions, and told him he might draw near without any apprehension, for as much as in regard to the peace and amity betwixt their catholic majesties and the king of *Portugal*, they had commanded him to pay the utmost civility to such *Portuguese* ships as he met; adding, that though he should obstinately persist in keeping his men, yet that would not prevent his returning to *Spain*, he having still men enough to sail to *Sevil*, and to do him harm, if need were, whereof he himself would be the occasion, and such punishment would be adjudged well deserved of him, besides that his king would punish him, as giving cause for a war between him and their catholic majesties. The captain and his men answered, that they neither knew their catholic majesties, nor their letters, nor did they fear them, and would make him know what

the island of St.

and no respite, and. Wherefore says, on *Saturday* arrived at one of by reason of the which of them a little rest, been, I had never my legs, have open air and suffered by pro-ning, being at some of the and of St. *Mary*, one

what *Portugal* was. By this answer the admiral suspected, there had some breach happened between the two crowns since his departure and therefore gave him such an answer as his folly deserv'd. At last when they were parting, the captain stood up, and at a great distance said, he might go to the harbour with his caraval, for that all he did was by order of the king his master. The admiral hearing it, call'd all that were aboard to bear witness, and calling to the captain and *Portuguese*, swore he would never go off the caraval, till he had taken an *100 Portuguese* to carry them into *Castile*, and to destroy all that island. This said, he again came to an anchor in the port, where he was at first, the weather obliging him to it. But the next day the wind still increasing, and the place where he lay being unsafe, he lost his anchors, and was forced to stand out to sea, towards the island of *St. Michael*, where in case he could not come to an anchor, he had resolv'd to run it out at sea, not without much danger, as well because the sea ran high, as by reason he had but three able seamen left, and some grumets, all the rest being land men, and *Indians* who understood nothing of sea affairs. But supplying the want of the absent in his own person, he pass'd that night with much labour and danger, till day appearing, perceiving he had lost sight of

the island of *St. Michael*, and that the weather was calmer, he resolv'd to return to the island of *St. Mary*, to endeavour to recover his men, anchors, and boat. He came up with it on *Thursday* the 21st of *January*, after noon, and soon after the boat came off with five men and a notary, who all upon security given them, went aboard and lay there that night, it being late. The next day they said they came from the captain to know for certain whence the ship came, and whether it had the king of *Spain's* commission, which being made out, they were ready to show them all manner of friendship, which they did because they could not seize the ship nor the admiral, and that they might suffer for what they had done. The admiral suppressing his resentment, said, he thank'd them for their civil offers, and since they proceeded according to the maritime laws and customs, he was ready to satisfy them; and accordingly show'd them the king of *Spain's* general letter of recommendation, directed to all his subjects and those of other princes, as also his commission for that voyage; which the *Portuguese* having seen, they went ashore satisfied, and soon dismissed the seamen, with their boat, of whom they understood it was *reported* in the island, that the king had sent orders to all his subjects to secure the person of the admiral by any means whatsoever.

## CHAP. XL.

*How the admiral sail'd from the islands of Azores, and was forced into Lisbon by a storm.*

Another  
terrible  
storm.

ON *Sunday* the 24th of *February*, the admiral sail'd from the island of *St. Mary* for *Spain*, being in great want of wood and ballast, which he could not take in, because of the bad weather, tho' the wind was fair for his voyage. Being an *100 leagues* from the nearest land, a swallow came into the ship, which, as was believ'd, the storm had drove out to sea, which appeared more plainly, because the next day being the 28th of *February*, a great many more swallows and land fowl came aboard, and they saw a whale. On the 3d of *March* the tempest was so great, that after midnight it split their sails; wherefore being in great danger of their lives, they made a vow to send one in pilgrimage to our lady *de Cinta* at *Guelva*, whither he was to go barefoot, and in his shirt. The lot fell again upon the admiral, God showing thereby, that his offerings were more acceptable than those of others; besides which, other private vows were made. Thus running on without a rag of cloath, but bare masts, a mighty sea,

high winds and frightful thunder, each of which seem'd enough to destroy the caraval, it pleas'd God to give them sight of land, about midnight, which offered no less danger than the rest; for to avoid being beaten to pieces, and running into some place where they knew not how to get off, they were forced to make some sail, to bear up against the storm till day, which appearing, they found they were upon the rock of *Lisbon*. The admiral was forced to put in there, to the great astonishment of the people of that country, and their seamen, who ran from all parts to behold, as it were some wonder, a ship that had escap'd so terrible a storm; having receiv'd news of many ships that had perish'd about *Flanders*, and in other countries of late days. He came to an anchor in the river c<sup>t</sup> *Lisbon* upon *Monday* the 4th of *March*, and presently sent away an express to their catholic majesties with the news of his arrival, and another to the king of *Portugal*, asking leave to go up to anchor before the city, the place

The admiral at Lisbon.

and that the wea-  
ved to return to  
to endeavour to  
, and boat. He  
yday the 21st of  
d soon after the  
en and a notary,  
ven them, went  
night, it being  
said they came  
for certain whence  
r it had the king  
hich being made  
ow them all man-  
they did because  
hip nor the admi-  
ffer for what they  
uppressing his re-  
d them for their  
y proceeded ac-  
aws and customs,  
m; and accord-  
of Spain's general  
directed to all his  
r princes, as also  
yage; which they  
y went ashore fa-  
the seamen, with  
understood it was  
the king had sent  
secure the person  
ns whatsoever.

to Lisbon by

hunder, each of  
troy the caraval,  
n sight of land,  
ered no less dan-  
void being beat-  
into some place  
to get off, they  
fail, to bear up  
which appearing,  
on the rock of  
forced to put in  
ment of the peo-  
eir seamen, who  
as it were some  
escap'd so terri-  
d news of many  
ut Flanders, and  
days. He cam  
Lisbon upon  
u presently sent  
catholic majes-  
arrival, and ano-  
l, asking leave  
the city, the  
place

place where he was, not being safe, against  
any that should design to do him harm, up-  
on pretence, it was done by the king's or-

der, as believing by his ruin, they might  
obstruct the king of Spain's success.

CHAP. XLI.

*How the people of Lisbon came to see the admiral, as a prodigy; and he went to  
visit the king of Portugal.*

*The admi-  
ral's return  
to Lisbon  
was a great  
event.*

ON Tuesday the 5th of March, the mas-  
ter of a great guard ship that lay  
in the harbour, came with his boat full of  
arm'd men to the admiral's caraval, requir-  
ing him to come along to give an account  
of himself to the king's officers, as was  
practis'd by all ships that came into the  
harbour. He answered, That the king of  
Spain's admirals, as he was, were not obli-  
g'd to obey any such fummons, nor to  
quit their ships, to give any account of  
themselves, and he was resolv'd to do his  
duty. The master bid him at least to send  
his boatwain. The admiral reply'd, It  
was still the same thing, whether he sent a  
grummet, or went himself, and therefore it  
was in vain to desire him to send any body.  
The master being sensible he was in the  
right, desired him at least to show him the  
king of Spain's letter, that he might satisfy  
his captain: This being but reasonable, the  
admiral shew'd him their catholick ma-  
jesties letter, with which he was satisfied,  
and went back to his ship to give an ac-  
count of what had happened, to Alvaro de  
Acunna his captain, who came immediat-  
ly with trumpets, fifes, drums, and great  
state, aboard the admiral, expressing much  
kindness, and offering his service. The  
next day it being known at Lisbon, that the  
ship came from the Indies, such throngs of  
people went aboard to see the Indians, and  
hear news, that the caraval could not con-  
tain them, and the water was covered with  
boats, some of them praising God for so  
great a happiness, and others storming that  
they had lost that discovery, thro' their  
king's incredulity; so that day was spent  
with great concourse of people. The next  
day, the king ordered his officers to pre-  
sent the admiral with all sorts of refresh-  
ment, and all things he stood in need of ei-  
ther for himself, or his men, without asking  
any pay. At the same time he writ to the  
admiral, congratulating his happy arri-  
val, and desiring, since he was in his do-  
minions, he would come to see him. The  
admiral was doubtful what to do in this  
case, but he considered the king was in a

mity with their catholick majesties, and had  
treated him courteously; and besides, to  
take off all suspicion that he came from his  
conquests, he consented to go to Valparaiso,  
nine leagues from Lisbon, where the king  
was, whither he came on Saturday night,  
being the 9th of March. The king order-  
ed all the nobility of his court to go out  
to meet him, and being come into his pre-  
sence, did him great honour, commanding  
him to put on his cap, and sit down, and  
having with a cheerful countenance heard  
the particulars of his prosperous voyage,  
offer'd him all he stood in need of, for the  
service of their catholick majesties, though  
he thought, that so far as he had  
been a captain in Portugal, that conquest  
belong'd to him. To which the admiral  
answer'd, That he knew of no such a-  
greement, and that he had strictly observ'd  
his orders, which were not to go to the  
mines of Portugal, nor to Guinea. The king  
said, all was well, and he doubted not but  
justice would be done. Having spent a long  
time in this sort of discourse, the king com-  
manded the prior of Crato, the greatest man  
then about him, to entertain the admiral,  
and shew him all civility and respect, which  
was done accordingly. Having stay'd there  
all Sunday and all Monday, till after mass,  
the admiral took leave of the king, who  
express'd great kindness, and made him  
great proffers, ordering D. Martin de No-  
ronha to go along with him, and many o-  
ther gentlemen went for company to ho-  
nour him, and hear an account of his voy-  
age. As he was thus on his way to Lisbon,  
he pass'd by a monastery, where the queen  
then was, who sent earnestly to intreat him  
he would not pass by without seeing her.  
She was much pleas'd to see him, and did  
him all the favour and honour that was  
due to the greatest lord. That night a  
gentleman came from the king, to the ad-  
miral, to let him know, that if he pleas'd  
to go by land into Spain, he would attend  
him, provide lodgings all the way, and fur-  
nish him all necessaries, as far as the borders  
of Portugal.

*Nobly re-  
ceiv'd by  
the king.*

## C H A P. XLII.

*How the admiral left Lisbon to return to Castile by sea.*

*The admiral returns to Palos.*

ON Wednesday the 13th of March, two hours after day, the admiral set sail for Sevil, and on Friday following at noon, arrived at Saltes, and came to an anchor in the port of Palos, whence he had set out on the 3d of August the foregoing year 1492, 7 months and 11 days before his return. He was there received by all the people in procession, giving thanks to God for his prosperous success, which, it was hop'd, would redound so much to the propagation of christianity, and increase of their catholic majesties dominions; all the inhabitants of that place looking upon it as a great matter that the admiral set out from thence, and that most of the men he had with him, belong'd to it, tho' many of them, thro' Pinzon's fault, had been mutinous and disobedient. It happened that when the admiral came to Palos, Pinzon was arriv'd in Galicia, and design'd to go by himself to Barcelona to carry the news to their catholic majesties, who sent him orders not to go thither without the admiral, with whom he had been sent to discover, at which he was so concern'd and offended, that he return'd indispos'd, to his native country, where within a few days he died for grief: But before he got to Palos, the admiral set out for Sevil, designing thence for Barcelona, where their catholic majesties were; and he was

forced to stay a little by the way, tho' but never so little, to the so great admiration of the people wheresoever he went, that they ran from all the neighbouring towns, down to the roads to see him, the Indians, and other things he brought. Thus holding on his way he got to Barcelona about the middle of April, having before sent their highnesses an account of the happy success of his voyage, which was extraordinary pleasing to them, and they ordered him a most solemn reception, as to a man that had done them such singular service. All the court and city went out to meet him; and their catholic majesties sat in publick with great state, on rich chairs under a canopy of cloth of gold; and when he went to kiss their hands, they stood up to him as to a great lord, made a difficulty to give him their hands, and caused him to sit down. Having given a brief account of his voyage, they gave him leave to retire to his apartment, whither he was attended by all the court; and he was so highly honoured and favoured by their highnesses, that when the king rode about Barcelona, the admiral was on one side of him, and the Infante Fortuna on the other; whereas before, none went by his majesty but the said Infante, who was his near kinsman.

*His reception at Barcelona.*

## C H A P. XLII.

*How it was resolved that the admiral should return with a powerful fleet to people the island Hispaniola, and his holinesses approbation of the conquest was obtain'd.*

*The pope's grant.*

ORDERS were given at Barcelona, with great care and expedition for the admiral's return to Hispaniola, as well to relieve those that were left there, as to enlarge the colony and subdue the island, with the rest that were and should be discovered. To make their title to them the stronger, their catholic majesties, by the advice of the admiral, procured the pope's approbation and consent for the conquest of the said Indies, which pope Alexander the 6th, who then governed the church, readily granted; not only for what was already, but for all that should be discovered westward, till it should come to the east, where any christian prince was then actually in possession, forbidding all persons in general, to intrude within those bounds. The same his holiness con-

firmed the next year, in very significant terms. And their catholic majesties being sensible that the admiral had been the cause of all this favour granted by the pope, and that his discovery had entitled them to the possession of all those parts, they were pleas'd he should be immediately gratify'd at Barcelona, on the 28th of May, and therefore granted him a new privilege, or rather an exposition, and explanation of what he had before, confirming to him all they had granted before, and in plain terms declared how far the bounds of his admiralship, and vice-royship extended, being over all that which his holiness had granted them, thus ratifying what they had given him before, which privileges and prerogatives are as follows.

C H A P. XLIV.

*Privileges and prerogatives granted by their catholic majesties to the admiral.*

*The admiral's letter patent.* Ferdinand and Elizabeth, by the grace of God king and queen of Castile, of Leon, of Aragon, of Sicily, of Granada, of Toledo, of Valencia, of Galicia, of Majorca, of Minorca, of Sevil, of Sardinia, of Jaen, of Algarve, of Algezira, of Gibraltar, of the Canary Islands, count and countess of Barcelona, lord and lady of Biscay and Molina, duke and duchess of Athens and Neopatria, count and countess of Rouffillion and Cerdagne, marquess and marchioness of Oristan, and Gociano, &c. Forasmuch as you Christopher Columbus, are going by our command with some of our vessels and men to discover and subdue some islands and continent in the ocean, and it is hoped that by God's assistance, some of the said islands and continent in the ocean will be discovered and conquer'd by your means and conduct, therefore it is but just and reasonable, that since you expose your self to such danger to serve us, you should be rewarded for it. And we being willing to honour and favour you for the reasons aforesaid: Our will is, That you, Christopher Columbus, after discovering and conquering the said islands and continent in the said ocean, or any of them, shall be our admiral of the said islands and continent you shall so discover and conquer; and that you be our admiral, vice-roy and governor in them, and that for the future you may call and style your self, D. Christopher Columbus, and that your sons and successors in the said employment may call themselves dons, admirals, vice-roys and governors of them; and that you may exercise the office of admiral, with the charge of vice-roy and governor of the said islands and continent, which you and your lieutenants shall conquer, and freely decide all causes civil and criminal, appertaining to the said employment of admiral, vice-roy and governor, as you shall think fit in justice, and as the admirals of our kingdoms use to do; and that you have power to punish offenders; and you and your lieutenants exercise the employments of admiral, vice-roy and governor in all things belonging to the said offices, or any of them; and that you enjoy the perquisites and salaries belonging to the said employments, and to each of them, in the same manner as the high-admiral of our kingdoms does. And by this our letter, or a copy of it sign'd by a public notary: We command prince John, our most dearly beloved son, infantes, dukes, prelates, marquesses, great masters and military orders, priors, commendaries, our counsellors, judges, and other officers of justice whatsoever, belonging to our household, courts and chancery,

and constables of castles, strong-houses and others; and all corporations, bailiffs, governors, judges, commanders, sea-officers; and the aldermen, common-council, officers and good people of all cities, lands and places in our kingdoms and dominions, and in those you shall conquer and subdue, and the captains, masters, mates and other officers and sailors, our natural subjects now being, or that shall be for the time to come, and any of them, that when you shall have discovered the said islands and continent in the ocean; and you, or any that shall have your commission, shall have taken the usual oath in such cases, that they, for the future, look upon you as long as you live, and after you, your son and heir, and so from one heir to another for ever, as our admiral on our said ocean, and as vice-roy and governor of the said islands and continent, by you Christopher Columbus discovered and conquered; and that they treat you and your lieutenants, by you appointed, for executing the employments of admiral, vice-roy and governor, as such in all respects, and give you all the perquisites and other things belonging to such appertaining to the said offices; and allow, and cause to be allow'd you, all the honours, graces, concessions, prebeminences, prerogatives, immunities and other things, or any of them which are due to you, by virtue of your commands, of admiral, vice-roy and governor, and to be observed completely, so that nothing be diminished, and that they make no objection to this, or any part of it, nor suffer it to be made; forasmuch as we from this time forward, by this our letter, bestow on you the employments of admiral, vice-roy and perpetual governor for ever; and we put you into possession of the said offices, and of every of them, and full power to use and exercise them, and to receive the perquisites and salaries belonging to them, or any of them, as was said above. Concerning all which things, if it be requisite, and you shall desire it, we command our chancellor, notaries and other officers to pass, seal and deliver to you our letter of privilege, in such firm and legal manner, as you shall require or stand in need of. And that none of them presume to do any thing to the contrary, upon pain of our displeasure, and forfeiture of thirty ducats for each offence. And we command him, who shall show them this our letter, that he summon them to appear before us at our court, where we shall then be, within 15 days after such summons, under the said penalty. Under which same we also command any public notary whatsoever, that he give to him that shows it,



him, a certificate under his seal, that we may know how our command is obey'd.

Given at *Granada*, on the 30th of *April*, in the year of our Lord 1492. I the king, I the queen.

By their majesties command, *John Coloma* secretary to the king and queen. Entered according to order, *Roderick Doñor. Registred, Sebastian Dolana, Francis de Madrid*, chancellors.

**A**ND now sofarasmuch as it has pleased our lord, that you have discovered several of the said islands, as we still hope you will by his grace discover and find others and the continent in the said ocean, and those parts of the Indies, and have desired and requested of us, that we would confirm to you our said grant here set down, and all the contents of it, to the end that you and your children, heirs and successors, one after another, and after your days, may have and enjoy the said employments of admiral, vice-roy and governor of the said ocean, islands and continent, as well of those you have already found and discover'd, as of those you shall for the future find and discover, with all the power, prebeminence and prerogative, as the admirals, vice-roys and governors in our kingdoms of Castile and Leon do enjoy; and that all the perquisites and salaries appertaining and belonging to the said offices, and granted and allowed to our admirals, vice-roys and governors may be made good to you; or that we make such provision in this case, as in our goodness we shall think fit. And we having regard to the hazard and danger you have expos'd your self to in our service, in going to discover and find out the said islands, and that which you now run in attempting to find out the other islands and continent, wherein we have been, and hope to be by you well served: To requite and reward you do by these presents, confirm to you and your children, heirs and successors, one after another, now and for ever the said employments of admiral of the said ocean, and vice-roy and governor of the said islands and continent by you discovered and found out; and of the other islands and continent, that shall be by you or your industry found or discovered for the future in those parts of the Indies. And it is our will, that you, and after you your children, heirs and successors, one after another, enjoy the said employment of our admiral of the said ocean, which is ours, and commences at a line, we have caused to be drawn from the islands Azores, to those of Cabo Verde, and so from pole to pole north and south; so that all beyond the said line westward is ours, and belongs to us. And accordingly we constitute you admiral, and your sons and successors, one after another, of all that part for ever. And we also appoint you our vice-roy and governor,

The confirmation.

and after you, your sons heirs and successors, one after another, of the said islands and continent discovered, and to be discovered in the said ocean in those parts of the Indies, as has been said; and we grant you the possession of all the said employments of admiral, vice-roy and governor for ever, with full commission and authority to use and exercise in the said sea, the office of admiral in all those things, and in the same manner and form, and with the rights and privileges, perquisites and salaries, as our admirals of Castile and Leon, have and do use, have enjoy'd or enjoy, as well in the said islands and continent already discover'd, as in those that shall hereafter be discovered in the said ocean and said parts of the Indies, that the planters of them all may be the better governed. And we grant you such power and authority, that you may, as our vice-roy and governor, and your lieutenants, judges, commanders and officers by you created, exercise the civil and criminal jurisdiction, the supreme and mean authority, and the absolute and mixt command. And in those places you may remove, turn out, and put in others in those places, as often as you please, and shall think convenient for our service. And that they have power to hear, judge and determine all suits or causes civil or criminal, that shall occur or arise in the said islands or continent; and that they have and receive the fees and salaries usually annex'd, and appertaining to those employments in our kingdoms of Castile and Leon. And you our said vice-roy and governor may hear and determine all the said causes and any of them, whensoever you shall please, upon the first motion by way of appeal or complaint, and examine, determine and decide them, as our vice-roy and governor; and you and your children may do all that is reasonable in such cases, and all other things appertaining to the office of vice-roy and governor, and that you and your lieutenants and officers appointed to this purpose, may take such cognizance, and use such methods as you shall think proper for our service, and the execution of our justice. All which you and they may do and perform lawfully and effectually, as they might and ought to do, had the said officers been appointed by us. But our will and pleasure is, that such letters patents as you shall grant, be drawn and granted in our name, with these words, *Ferdinand and Elizabeth* by the grace of God king and queen of Castile and Leon, &c. and be sealed with our seal, which we will cause to be given you for the said islands and continent. And we command all the people, inhabitants and other persons in the said island and continent, to obey you, as our vice-roy and governor of the same; and those that sail on the said seas to obey you as our admiral of the said ocean; and that all of them execute your letters and orders, and take part with

The admiral's second voyage.

you and your officers, for the execution of our justice; and give, and cause to be given you, all the aid and assistance you shall require and stand in need of, upon such penalties as you shall impose on them, which we by these presents do impose on them, and do look upon them as impos'd, and do grant you authority to execute them on their persons and goods. And it is also our will, that if you shall find it for our service, and the execution of justice, That any persons who shall be in the said islands or continent, depart from them, and do not return nor stay in them, and that they come and appear before us, you may in our name command, and make them depart the said islands. All whom by these presents we command, that they presently perform, execute and put in practice all that has been said, without looking farther, or asking advice upon it, nor expecting any other letter or command from us, notwithstanding any appeal or petition they shall make or present against your said order. For all which things, and any other due or belonging to the said offices of our admiral, viceroy, and governour, we give you sufficient authority, with all incidents, dependencies, and emergencies to them annexed or inherent. Concerning all which things, if it shall be your will, we do command our chancellor, notaries, and other officers belonging to our seals, that they

give, pass, dispatch, and seal you our letter of privilege, made as effective, firm and strong, as you shall require of them and stand in need of; and that none of them presume to do any thing to the contrary, upon pain of our displeasure, and of thirty ducats to be paid to our treasury by every one that shall be guilty of the contrary. And besides, we command him that shall shew them this our letter to summon them to appear before us at our court, wherefore we are, within fifteen days upon the said penalty. Under which we command any publick notary, that shall be called for such purpose, that he give to him that shall shew it him, a certificate sign'd under his hand, that we may know how our commands are obey'd.

Given in the city of Barcelona the 28th of May, in the year of our Lord 1493.

I the King, I the Queen.

By their majesties order, *Ferdinand Alvarez de Toledo*, secretary to the king and queen, our lord and lady.

*Peter Gutierrez*, chancellor, without fees for seal or entry.

Deliver'd, *Roderick Doctor*.

Enter'd, *Alonso Perez*.

# C H A P. XLV.

*How the admiral went from Barcelona to Seville, and set out thence for Hispaniola.*

The admiral's second voyage.

ALL things necessary for the peopling of those countries being provided, the admiral departed from Barcelona for Seville in June, and being come thither, so diligently solicited the fitting out of the fleet their catholic majesties had ordered him to provide, that in a short time seventeen ships, between great and small, were made ready, well stored with provisions, and with all things thought necessary for peopling of those countries; as handicrafts of all sorts, labourers, countrymen to till the land; besides, the fame of gold and other rarities in those countries, had drawn together so many gentlemen, and other persons of worth; that it was necessary to lessen the number, and not to allow so many to go aboard, at least till it appeared in some measure how things would succeed in those parts, and till things were a little settled. Yet was it impossible so much to confine the number of people that went aboard, but that it amounted to 1500 of all sorts; among whom

some carried horses, asses, and other beasts, which were afterwards of great use and advantage to the planters in those countries. Being thus furnished, the admiral weigh'd anchor in the road of Cadiz, where the fleet had been fitted, upon Wednesday the 25th of September 1493, an hour before sun-rising, my brother and I being there, and stood south-west for the Canary islands, designing there to take in some necessary refreshment. On the 28th of September, being 100 leagues from Spain, there came aboard the admiral's ship, abundance of land-fowl, turtle-doves, and other sorts of small birds, which seem'd to be passing over to winter in *Africk*, and to come from the islands *Azores*. He holding on his course, on Wednesday the 2d of October arrived at *Gran Canaria*, and came to an anchor; at midnight sail'd again for *Gomera*, where he arriv'd on the fifth of October, and orders were given for taking up with all speed whatsoever the fleet stood in need of.

He arrives at the Canaries.

## C H A P. XLVI.

*How the admiral departing from Gomera, crossed the ocean and discovered the Caribbee islands.*

ON Monday the 7th of October the admiral continued his voyage towards the Indies, having first deliver'd a commission shut up and seal'd, to every ship, commanding them not to open it, unless they were separated from him by stress of weather; for he in those letters giving an account of the course they were to steer, to come to the town of the Nativity in Hispaniola, would not have that course known to any wit. At great need. Thus sailing with a fair gale till Thursday the 24th of October, when being 400 leagues west of Gomera, he yet met with none of the weeds he had seen the first voyage, when he was out but 250 leagues, to the great astonishment of them all. That day and the next a swallow flew about the fleet. On Saturday at night the body of St. Elmo was seen, with seven lighted candles on the round-top, and there follow'd mighty rains, and frightful thunder. I mean, the lights were seen, which the seamen affirm to be the body of St. Elmo, and they sing litanies and prayers to him; looking upon it as most certain, that in those storms where he appears, there can be no danger. Whatsoever this is, I leave to them; for if we will believe Pliny, when such lights appeared in those times to the Roman sailors in a storm, they said they were Castor and Pollux, whereof Seneca makes mention also, at the beginning of his first book of nature. But to return to our history; on Saturday

the second of November, at night, the admiral perceiving a great alteration in the sky and winds, and taking notice of the mighty rains, he concluded for certain that he was near some land, and for this reason caused most of the sails to be furl'd, and ordered all to be upon the watch; nor without cause; for that same night, as day began to break, they spy'd land seven leagues to the westward, which was a high mountainous island; and he called it *Dominica*, because discovered upon Sunday morning. A while after he saw another island north-east of *Dominica*, and then another, and another after that, more northward. For which mercy God had been pleased to bestow on them, all the men assembling in the poop, sung the *Salve regina*, and other prayers and hymns very devoutly, giving thanks to God, for that in twenty days after departing from Gomera, they had made that land, judging the distance between them to be between 750 and 800 leagues. And finding no convenient place to come to an anchor on the east side of the island *Dominica*, they stood over to another island which the admiral called *Marigante*, that being his ship's name. Here landing, he with all necessary solemnity again confirmed the possession he had in his first voyage taken of all the islands and continent of the *West Indies* for their catholic majesties.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*How the admiral discovered the island of Guadalupe, and what he saw there.*

ON Monday the fourth of November, the admiral sailed from the island *Marigante* northwards, by another great island, which he called *St. Mary of Guadalupe*, for his own devotion, and at the request of the friars of the house of that name, to whom he had made a promise to call some island by the name of their monastery. Before he came to it, at two leagues distance, they discovered a very high rock, ending in a point, whence gush'd out a stream of water, as thick as a large barrel, which falling made such a noise, that it was heard aboard the ships, tho' many affirmed it was only a white vein in the rock, the water was so white and frothy by reason of its steep fall. Going ashore in the boat to view a fort of town they saw from the shore, they found

no body there, the people being fled to the woods, except some children, to whose arms they ty'd some baubles to allure their fathers when they returned. In the houses they found geese like ours, and abundance of parrots with red, green, blue, and white feathers, as big as common cocks. They also found pumpions, and a sort of fruit, which look'd like our green pine-apples, but much bigger, and within full of a solid meat, like a melon, and much sweeter both in taste and smell, which grow on long stalks like lillies or aloes, wild about the fields, and are better than those that are brought up by art, as afterwards appeared. They also saw other sorts of fruits and herbs differing from ours. Beds of cotton nets, that is, hammacks, bows, and arrows, and other

discovered the

at night, the admiral  
eration in the sky  
rice of the mighty  
ertain that he was  
this reason caused  
irl'd, and ordered  
ch; nor without  
t, as day began to  
ven leagues to the  
high mountainous  
*Dominica*, because  
orning. A while  
north-east of *Do-*  
and another after  
For which mercy  
bestow on them,  
n the poop, sung  
prayers and hymns  
inks to God, for  
departing from  
that land, judging  
m to be between  
d finding no con-  
an anchor on the  
*inica*, they stood  
which the admiral  
being his ship's  
with all necessary  
the possession he  
taken of all the  
the *West Indies* for

*Island of*  
*Guadalupe*

*Island of*  
*Guadalupe*

he saw there.

being fled to the  
children, to whose  
es to allure their  
. In the houses  
and abundance  
blue, and white  
on cocks. They  
a sort of fruit,  
pine-apples, but  
full of a solid  
uch sweeter both  
ow on long stalks  
about the fields,  
that are brought  
ppeared. They  
ts and herbs dif-  
cotton nets, that  
arrows, and o-  
ther

ther such things, of which our men took none, that the *Indians* might be the less afraid of the christians. But what they most admired was, that they found an iron-pan, tho' I believe that the rocks and fire-stones in that country being of the colour of bright iron, a person of but indifferent judgment that found it, without looking farther, took it for iron, tho' in truth it was not so; forasmuch as from that day to this, there was never any thing of iron found among those people, nor did I hear the admiral speak of this. And therefore I am opinion, that he using daily to write down whatsoever happened, and was told him, that he might among other things set down what was told him concerning this particular, by those that were ashore. And tho' it were of iron, it was not to be admired, because the *Indians* of the island of *Guadalupe*, being *Caribbees*, and making their excursions to rob as far as *Hispaniola*, perhaps they had that pan of the christians, or of the other *Indians* of *Hispaniola*; and it is possible they might carry the body of the ship the admiral lost, to make use of the iron; and tho' it were not the hulk of that ship, it must be the remainder of some other wreck, carried thither by the wind and current from our parts. But be it what it will, they that day took neither the pan nor any thing else, but returned to their ships. The next day, which was *Tuesday* the fifth of *November*, the admiral again sent two boats ashore, to endeavour to take some body that might give him an account of the country, and inform him how far off, and which way *Hispaniola* lay. Each of the boats brought back a youth, who agreed in saying they were not of that island, but of another call'd *Borriquen* (now *St. John*) and that the inhabitants of that island of *Guadalupe* were *Caribbees* or *Canibals*, and had taken them prisoners from their own island. Soon after the boats returning to shore, to take up some christians they had left there, found six women with them, who had fled to them from the *Caribbees*, and came of their own accord aboard the ships. The admiral to allure the islanders, would not keep them aboard, but gave them some glass beads and bells, and made them be set ashore against their wills. This was not done unadvisedly, for as soon as they landed, the *Caribbees* in the sight of the christians, took away all the admiral had given them. Therefore either thro' the hatred they bore the *Caribbees*, or for the fear they had conceived of those people; awhile after, when the boats returned for wood and water, the said women got into them, begging of the seamen to carry them aboard the ships, and giving them to understand by signs, that those peo-

ple did eat men, and make slaves of them, and therefore they would not stay with them. So that the men yielding to their intreaties, carried them back to the ships, with two children and a young man that had made his escape from the *Caribbees*, thinking it safer to put themselves into the hands of people they never saw, and such strangers to their nation, than to remain among those they knew to be wicked and cruel, and who had eaten their husbands and children, and they say they do not kill and eat the women, but keep them as slaves. One of the women told them, that towards the south there were many islands, some inhabited, others not, which both she and the other women, severally call'd *Giamachi*, *Cairvaco*, *Huino*, *Buriari*, *Arubeira*, *Sixibei*. But the continent, which they said was very great, both they and the people of *Hispaniola*, called *Zuanta*, because in former times canoes had come from that land to barter with abundance of lads, of whom they said there were two thirds in an island not far distant; and they also said, that a king of that country whither they fled, was gone with ten great canoes, and 300 men, to make incursions into the neighbouring islands, and take people to eat. The same women gave information where the island *Hispaniola* lay; for tho' the admiral had inserted it in his sea-chart; yet for his farther information, he would hear what the people of that country said of it. He would immediately have failed that way, had he not been told, that one captain *Mark* was gone ashore with eight men, without his leave, before day, and was not yet returned. He was therefore forced to send out to look for him, tho' in vain; for by reason of the great thickness of the trees, there could be no discovering of them. Therefore the admiral, that they might not be lost, or be obliged to leave a ship behind to take them in, which might afterwards miss her way to *Hispaniola*, resolved to stay there till the next day; and because the country, as has been said, was full of great woods, he ordered them to be sought after again, and that they should carry trumpets and muskets to bring them to the noise. These people having strayed all that day, returned to their ships without finding or hearing any news of them. The admiral therefore seeing it was now *Thursday* morning, and no news had been heard of them since *Tuesday*, and that they went without leave, resolved to continue his voyage, or at least make shew of so doing, that it might be a punishment to others, but at the intreaty of some of their kindred and friends, he stay'd, and ordered the ships should in the mean while take in wood and water, and the men wash

*Products of*  
*the island*  
*Guadalupe.*

with their linen; and sent captain *Hojeda*, with forty men, to look for those that were stray'd, and pry into the nature of the country, where he found mastick, aloes, sandal, ginger, frankincense, and some tices in taste and smell like cinamon, abundance of cotton, and many falcons, and saw two of them pursuing the other birds; they also saw kites, herons, daws, turtles, partridges, geese, and nightingals, and affirm'd that in travelling six leagues, they cross'd 26 rivers, several whereof were vast deep, which makes me believe, that the country being uncouth, they often cross'd the same river. Whilst these were admiring at what they saw, and other companies went about the island, seeking the stragglers, they returned to the ships without being met by any that

look'd for them, on *Friday* the 8th of *November*, saying the thickness of the woods was the cause they had lost themselves. The admiral to punish their presumption, commanded the captain to be cast into irons, and the rest to suffer by retrenching their allowance of provisions. Then he landed, and went to some houses, where he saw all the things above-mentioned, especially a great deal of cotton spun and unspun, looms to weave, abundance of mens skulls hung up, and baskets full of mens bones. These houses they saw were the best, and more plentifully stored with provisions, and other things necessary for the use of the *Indians*, than any others the admiral saw in the islands at his first voyage.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*How the admiral departed from the island Guadalupe, and of some islands he found in his way.*

Monfe-  
ratic  
island.

ON *Sunday* the tenth of *November* the admiral weighed anchor, and sailed with the whole fleet along the coast of the island *Guadalupe*, towards the north-west for *Hispaniola*, and came to the island *Monferatte*, calling it by that name, because of its height, and understood by the *Indians* he had with him, that the *Caribbees* had unpeopled it, devouring the inhabitants.

Redonda.

Thence he proceeded to *St. Mary Redonda*, so called, because it is so round and upright, that there seems to be no getting into it without ladders, which the *Indians* call'd *Ocamaniro*. Next he came to *St. Maria la Antigua*, which is above 28 leagues in extent. Still holding on his course north-west, there appeared several other islands towards the north, and lying north-west and south-east, all very high and full of woods, in one of which they cast anchor, and call'd it *St.*

or Martin.

*Martin*, where they took up pieces of coral, sticking to the anchor flooks, which made them hope they should find other useful things in those countries. Tho' the admiral was very desirous to know every thing, yet he resolv'd to hold on his course towards *Hispaniola*, to relieve those he had left there, but the weather being bad, he came to an anchor on *Thursday* the thirteenth of *November*, in an island, where he ordered some *Indians* to be taken, to know whereabouts he was. As the boat was returning to the fleet with four women, and three children the men had taken, it met a canoe, in which there were four men and one woman,

who perceiving they could not make their escape, stood upon their guard, and hit two of the christians with their arrows, which they let fly with such force and dexterity, that the woman shot a target quite thro'; but the boat furiously boarding, the canoe overset, so that they took them all swimming in the water, and one of them swimming shot several arrows, as if he had been upon dry land. These had their members cut off, for they are taken by the *Caribbees* in other islands, and gelt, as we do to fat capons, that they may be more pleasing to the taste. The admiral departing hence, continued his voyage W. N. W. where he found above fifty islands, which he left to the northward; the biggest of them he called *St. Ursula*, and the others the *Eleven thousand virgins*. Next he came to the island which he call'd *St. John Baptist*, but the *Indians* *Borriquen*, and the fleet anchored in a bay on the west side of it, where they took several sorts of fish, as skate, olaves, pilchards, and shads, and saw falcons, and bushes like wild vines. More to the eastward, some christians went to certain houses well built after their fashion, with a square before them, and a broad road down to the sea, with towers made of cane on both sides, and the top of them, curiously interwoven with greens, as is seen in the gardens of *Valencia*. At the end of it next the sea, was a rais'd gallery or balcony that could hold ten or twelve people, lofty and well built.

St. Ursula.

St. John,  
or Borri-  
quen.



C H A P. XLIX.

*How the admiral arrived at Hispaniola, where he understood the Spaniards were dead.*

*An Indian* **O**N Friday the twelfth of November, the admiral came up with the north side of Hispaniola, and presently sent ashore at Samana, one of the Indians born in that part, whom he brought out of Spain, being then converted to our holy faith, who offer'd to reduce all the Indians to submit to the christians. The admiral continuing his voyage towards the town of Natal, or the Nativity, when he came to cape Angel, some Indians went aboard, to barter their commodities with the christians. Coming to an anchor in the port of Monte Cbristo, a boat that went ashore, found near a river two dead men, one of them seemed to be young, the other old, who had a rope made of a certain sort of broom, or such like furze that grows in Spain, called *Esparto*, about his neck, his arms extended, and his hands tied to a piece of wood, in the form of a cross; but they could not discern whether they were christians or Indians, but look upon it as an ill omen. The next day being the 26th of November, the admiral sent ashore in several places, the Indians came very friendly and boldly to talk with the christians, and touching our men's shirts and doublets, said shirt, doublet in *Spanish*, to shew they knew how those things were called, which delivered the admiral from the jealousy he had con-

ceived, on account of the dead men, judging that if those people had wronged the christians left there, they had not come so boldly aboard the ships. But the next day, when he came to an anchor near the town of Navidad, or the nativity, after midnight, a canoe came to the fleet, and asked for the admiral, and being bid to come aboard, for he was there, they would not do it, saying, they were resolved not to go aboard till they saw and knew him. The admiral therefore was forced to come to the ship's side to hear them, and then presently two went up with two masks, which they gave to the admiral, from the *Cacique Guacanagari*, saying, he sent many commendations. They being asked by the admiral concerning the christians left there, answered, that some of them died of distempers, some parted from their company, and some were gone into other countries; but that all of them had four or five wives, tho' it appeared by their way of speaking, that all or most of them were dead; yet the admiral not thinking fit to take any notice at that time, sent back the Indians, with a present of some things made of latten, and other baubles, for *Guacanagari*, and themselves, and so they went away that same night, with the gifts for the *Cacique*.

C H A P. L.

*How the admiral went to the town of Navidad, or the Nativity, found it forsaken and burnt, and had an interview with King Guacanagari.*

*St. John, or Borriquen.* **O**N Thursday the 28th of November, about evening, the admiral with all his fleet came into the port, before the town of Navidad or the Nativity, found it all burnt, and that day no body was seen all about there: Next day in the morning, the admiral landed very much concern'd to see the houses and fort burnt, and nothing left belonging to the christians, but only ragged cloaths and such like things, as is usual in a place plunder'd and destroy'd; and seeing no body to enquire of, the admiral went with some boats up a river that was hard by. Whilst he was going up it, he ordered the well he had made in the fort, to be cleansed, thinking to find gold in it; because at his going away, fearing what might happen, he commanded those he left behind, to throw all the gold they could get into that well,

but nothing was found in it; and the admiral that way he went up with his boats, could lay hold of no Indian, because they all fled from their houses, to the woods. Having therefore found nothing but some of the christians cloaths, he returned to Navidad, where he saw eight of the christians, and three others, in the fields near the town, whom they knew to be christians by their cloaths, and they seem'd to have been dead about a month. The christians going about to seek some other tokens, or writings of the dead, a brother of the *Cacique Guacanagari*, came with some Indians to talk with the admiral. These could speak some words of *Spanish*, and knew the names all of the christians, that had been left there, and said that those Spaniards soon began to fall at variance among themselves, and to take every one

*How the  
Spaniards  
left in Illi-  
caniola  
before de-  
parted.*

what gold and as many women as they could; whereupon *Peter Gutierrez* and *Ejcovado* kill'd one *James*, and then they and nine others went away with their women to a *Cacique*, whose name was *Caunabo*, who was lord of the mines, and kill'd them all; then many days after came with a great many men to *Navidad*, where there was only *James de Arana*, with ten men, who had remained with him to guard the fort, all the rest being disperied about the island. The *Cacique Caunabo* coming up by night, fired the houses where the christians liv'd with their women, for fear wherof they fled to the sea, where eight of them were drowned, and three died ashore, whom they shew'd. That *Guacanagari* himself, fighting with *Caunabo* in defence of the christians, was wounded and fled. This account agreed with that given by other christians, sent by the admiral to learn more of the country, who went to a town where *Guacanagari* lay ill of a wound, which he said had hindred him from waiting on the admiral, and giving him an account of what was become of the christians; among whom he said, soon after the admiral returned for *Spain*, there began to be diffension, and every one would barter gold for himself, and take what woman he thought fit; and not satisfied with what *Guacanagari* gave and allowed to be given them, they divided into several parcels, and disperied some one way and some another, and that some *Biscainers* joyning together, went where they were all kill'd; and this was the

truth of what had happened, which they might tell the admiral, desiring him by those same christians, that he would go see him, because he was in such a condition that he could not leave his house. The admiral did so, going the next day to visit him, and he with great signs of sorrow, told him all that had happened, as has been related above, and that he and his men had been all wounded in defence of the christians, as appeared by their wounds, which were not given by christian arms, but with *Arayas*, or wooden swords, and arrows pointed with fish bones. This discourse being over, he presented the admiral with 8 strings of small beads, made of white, green, and red stones, a string of gold beads, a regal crown of gold, and three little calabashes full of gold sand, all which might be about 4 mark weight in gold, each mark being half a pound. The admiral in return, gave him abundance of our baubles, which might be worth three royals, (or eighteen pence) and were valued by him above a thousand. Tho' he was very ill, he would needs go with the admiral to see the fleet, where he was courteously entertain'd and much pleased to see the horses, of which the christians had before given him an account. And because some of those that were dead, had misinform'd him concerning our holy faith, the admiral was forced to instruct him in it, and afterwards would have him wear an image of the virgin *Mary* about his neck, which at first he had refused to receive.

## CH A P. LI.

*How the admiral left the colony of Navidad, and went to found the city which he call'd Isabella.*

THE admiral reflecting on the disaster of those christians, and his own misfortune at sea, having lost the men and fort ashore, and his ship upon the water, and that not far off there were better and more commodious places to plant a colony; on Saturday the 7th of December, he sail'd with the whole fleet eastward, and about evening cast anchor not far from the islands of *Monte Christo*, and the next day at *Monte Christo*, among those seven low little islands, whereof mention has been made already, which, tho' they are without trees, are nevertheless pleasant; for in that winter season, they there found flowers, and nests with eggs, others with young birds, and all other things that are seen in summer. Thence he went to anchor before a town of *Indians*, where resolved to plant a colony, he landed with all the men, provisions and

utensils he brought aboard the fleet, in a plain near a rock, on which a fort might conveniently be built, where he built a town and call'd it *Isabella*, in honour of queen *Isabel* or *Elizabeth*. This place was judged very convenient, forasmuch as the port was very large, tho' expos'd to the north-west, and had a most delicate river a bow shot from it, from which canals of water might be drawn to run thro' the middle of the town, and beyond was a mighty open plain, from which the *Indians* laid the mines of *Cibao* were not very remote. For these reasons the admiral was so eager upon settling the said colony, that what with the fatigue endured at sea, and what he here went thro', he not only wanted time to write day by day what happened, according to his custom, but it happen'd he fell sick, which interrupted his writing from the

ned, which they  
ring him by those  
ould go see him,  
condition that he  
e. The admiral  
to visit him, and  
row, told him all  
been related a-  
men had been all  
christians, as ap-  
which were not  
but with *Arago*-  
d arrows pointed  
ourse being over,  
with 8 strings of  
s, green, and red  
s, a regal crown  
calabashes full of  
e be about 4 mark  
rk being half a  
return, gave him  
which might be  
hteen pence) and  
ve a thousand.  
would needs go  
e fleet, where he  
and much pleased  
ch the christians  
n account. And  
were dead, had  
g our holy faith,  
nstruct him in it,  
ve him wear an  
y about his neck,  
d to receive.

e city which be

the fleet, in a  
h a fort might  
ere he built a  
in honour of  
This place was  
rafinuch as the  
expos'd to the  
t delicate river a  
ch canals of wa-  
thro' the middle  
as a mighty o-  
Indians laid the  
y remote. For  
s so eager upon  
what with the  
d what he here  
anted time to  
pened, accord-  
ppen'd he fell  
writing from  
the

the 11th of December, till the 12th of March, in the year 1494. During which time, having ordered the affairs of the town the best he could, for affairs abroad, he sent one *Alonso de Hojeda*, with 15 men to seek out the mines of *Cibao*. Afterwards on the 2d of February, 12 ships of the fleet returned to *Castile*, under the command of one captain *Antony de Torres*, brother to prince *John's* nurse, a man of great judgment and honour, and in whom their catholic majesties and the admiral much confided. He had all in writing at large that had happened, as also the nature of the country, and what it required. Not long after *Hojeda* returned, and giving an account of his journey, said, That the 2d day, after he set out for *Isabella*, he lay at the foot of a mountain, which was very difficult of access, that afterwards, at every league's distance he found *Caciques*, who had been very kind to him; and continuing his journey the 6th day after he set out, he came to the mines of *Cibao*, where the *Indians* immediately before him, took up gold in a small river, as they had done in many others of the same province, were he affirm'd there was great plenty of gold. This news much rejoiced the admiral, who was then recovered of his sickness, and he resolved to go ashore, to observe the disposition of the country, that he might the better know what was to be done. Accordingly on Wednesday the 12th of March, 1494, he set out from *Isabella* from *Cibao*, to see the mines, with all the people that were in health, both a foot and a horseback, leaving a good guard in the two ships and three caravals that remained of the fleet, and causing all the ammunition and tackle belonging to the other ships, to be put aboard his own, that none might rebel with them as they had attempted to do whilst he was sick. Because many having gone that voyage, upon the belief, that as soon as they landed they might load themselves with gold, and so return rich home, (which gold, wheresoever it is found, requires time, trouble, and labour to gather it) the thing not falling out as they expected; being therefore dissatisfied and offended, as also because of the building of the new town, and weary of the diseases, the climate and change of diet caused among them, they had privately conspired to revolt from the admiral, and taking the ships that remain'd, by force to return in them to *Spain*. One *Bernard de Piza*, who had been an officer of justice at court, and went that voyage in the quality of their catholic majesties controller, was the ring-leader and head of these mutineers; therefore the admiral, when informed of it, would not punish him any otherwise, than by se-

curing him aboard a ship, with a design to send him afterwards into *Spain*, with his process drawn up, as well for mutinying, as for having writ a false information against the admiral, which he had hid in the ship. Having therefore ordered all these affairs, and having left some persons both at sea and ashore, together with his Brother *D. James Columbus* to look to, and secure the fleet, he set forwards towards *Cibao*, carrying along with him all the tools and necessities to build a fort, to keep that province under, and secure the christians left there to gather gold, against any attempts or designs of the *Indians*. And the more to terrify them, and take away all hopes that they might do in the admiral's presence, as they had done in his absence with *Arana*, and the 38 christians left among them; he then carried along with him all the men he could, that they might in their own towns see and be sensible of the power of the christians, and be sensible that whensoever any wrong was done to one single man of ours travelling through the country, there was a force of men to chastize it. And to appear the more formidable, when he set out for *Isabella* and other towns, he made his men march with their arms in rank and file, as is usual in time of war, and with trumpets sounding, and colours flying. In his way he march'd along that river, which lay about a musquet shot from *Isabella*; and a league beyond, he cross'd another less river, and went to lie that night three leagues off in a plain, divided into pleasant fields, reaching to the foot of a craggy hill, and about two bow shots high. This he call'd *Puerto de los Hidalgos*, or the gentleman's port, (the *Spaniards* call passes on mountains, dry ports) because some gentlemen went before to order the road to be made, and this was the first road made in the *Indies*; for the *Indians* make their ways broad enough but for one man to pass at a time. Beyond this pass, he came into a large plain, over which he travelled five leagues the next day, and went to lie near a great river, which the men pass'd upon floats and in canoes. This river which he call'd of *Canes*, fell into the sea at *Monte Cbristo*. In his journey, he pass'd by many *Indian* towns, the houses whereof were round, thatch'd, and with such a little door, that he who goes in must stoop very low. Here, as soon as some of the *Indians* brought from *Isabella*, went into the houses, they took what they liked best, and yet the owners were not at all displeas'd, as if all things were in common. In the like manner, the people of the country, coming near to any christian, would take from him what they thought fit, thinking our things had been as common as theirs.

But

Conspir-  
cy against  
the admi-  
ral.

His fear  
ney to the  
main.

But they were soon undeceiv'd, being told the contrary. In their way they pass'd over mountains most pleasantly wooded, where there were wild vines, aloes, and cinnamon trees, and another sort that produces a fruit

like a fig, and were vastly thick at the foot, but the leaves were like those of the apple tree. Of this sort of tree, the scammony is said to come.

## CHAP. LII.

*How the admiral came to the province of Cibao, where he found the gold mines, and built the castle of St. Thomas.*

*A description of the country.*

ON Friday the 14th of March, the admiral set for ward from the river of Canes, and a league and a half from it, found a great river, which he call'd the river of Gold, because in passing it, they gathered some grains of gold. Having pass'd it with some difficulty, he proceeded to a large town, where many of the people fled to the mountains; but most of them fortified their houses, barring their doors with some canes, as if that were a great defence, to hinder any body from coming in: for according to their custom, no man dares break in at the door he finds so barr'd; forasmuch as they have no wooden doors, or other means to shut themselves in, and it seems these bars are sufficient. Hence the admiral went to another fine river, which he call'd the Green River, the banks whereof were covered with bright round stones, and there he rested that night. Holding on his journey the next day, he pass'd by some great towns, where the people had put flicks cross their doors, like the others above-mentioned, and the admiral and his men being tired, they stay'd that night at the foot of a rugged mountain, which he call'd Port Cibao; forasmuch as the province of Cibao begins beyond the mountain. From this the first mountain they pass'd was 11 leagues distant, all which distance is a plain, and the way directly south. Setting out the next day, he travelled along a path, where they were forced with much difficulty, to lead the horses; and thence he sent back some mules to Isabella, to bring bread and wine, for they began to want provisions, and the journey was long; and they suffered the more, because they were not yet used to the Indian diet, as they are now who live and travel in those parts, who find the food of that country more easy of digestion, and more agreeable to that country, than what is carried from Europe, tho' it is not of so great nourishment. Those that went for provisions being returned, the admiral passing over the mountain on Sunday the 16th of March, entered the country of Cibao, which is rough and stony,

full of gravel, plentiful of grafs, and watered by several rivers, in which gold is found. The further they went into this country, the more uncouth they found it, and encumbered with mountains, on the tops whereof, there appeared grains of gold sand; for as the admiral said, the great rains carry it down from the tops of the mountains, to the rivers in small sand. This province is as big as Portugal, and there are in it abundance of mines, and gold in the brooks; but for the most part there are very few trees, and those along the banks of rivers, and are most of them pines and palms of several sorts. Now Hojeda having as was said, travell'd that country the Indians had some knowledge of the christians, so it happened, that what way soever the admiral went, the said Indians came out to the road to meet him, with presents of provisions, and some small quantity of gold dust they had gathered, after they understood they came for it. The admiral perceiving he was now 18 leagues from Isabella, and the country he had left behind very craggy, he order'd a fort to be built in a very pleasant and strong place, which he call'd the castle of St. Thomas, to command the country about the mines, and be a place of safety for the christians that went thither. The command of this new fort he gave to D. Peter Margarite, a person of account, with 56 men, among whom were workmen of all sorts to build the castle, which was built with clay and timber, that being a sufficient strength to keep out any number of Indians that could come against it. Here breaking ground to lay the foundation, and cutting a rock to make the ditches, when they were got two fathom below the stone, they found nests made of hay and straw, and instead of eggs, three or four round stones, as big as oranges, as artificially made, as if they had been cannon balls; and in the river that runs at the foot of that hill, the castle now stands upon, they found stones of several colours, some of them large, of pure marble, and other of jasper.

*The fort of St. Thomas.*

C H A P. LIII.

*How the admiral returned to Isabella, and found that soil was very fruitful.*

THE admiral having given orders for the finishing and fortifying of the castle, set out for *Isabella*, on *Friday* the 21<sup>st</sup> of *March*, and near the green river met the mules going with provisions, and not being able himself to stay there, because of the great rains, he stay'd there, sending the provisions to the fort. Afterwards endeavouring to find the ford of that river, and of the river *del Oro*, which is bigger than *Ebro*, he stayed some days in those *Indian* towns, eating their bread and garlick, which they gave for a small matter. On *Sunday* the 29<sup>th</sup> of *March*, he came to *Isabella*, where melons were already grown, fit to eat, tho' it was not above two months since the seed was put into the ground. So cucumbers came up in 20 days, and a wild vine of that country being prun'd, had produced grapes, which were good and large. The next day, being the 30<sup>th</sup> of *March*, a countryman gathered ears of wheat he had sown at the latter end of *January*. There were also vetches, but much bigger than those they sow'd; and all they sow'd sprang up above ground in three days, and the 25<sup>th</sup> day they eat of it. The stones of fruit set in the ground, sprouted out in seven days, and the vine branches shot out in the same time, and in 25 days after, they gathered green grapes. The sugar canes budded in seven days, which proceeded from the temperature of the climate, not unlike to that of our country, for it was rather cold than hot; besides, that the waters there are very cold, thin, and wholesome. The admiral was well enough pleas'd with the air, the soil and the people of the country. On *Tuesday* the 1<sup>st</sup> of *April*, there came a messenger from fort *St. Thomas*, who brought news, that the *Indians* of that country fled, and that a *Cacique*, whose name was *Caunabo*, was preparing to come and attack the fort. The admiral knowing how inconsiderable the people of that country were, made little account of that report, especially confiding in the horses, by whom the *Indians* were afraid to be devoured, and therefore were so much afraid, that they durst not go into any house where a horse stood. However the admiral thought fit to send more men and provisions, considering that since he design'd to go to discover the continent with three caravals he had left him, it was fit all things should remain quiet behind. Therefore on *Wednesday* the 2<sup>d</sup> of *April*, he

sent 70 men with provisions and ammunition to the fort, 25 of which were to keep guard, and the others help to make another road, the first being very troublesome, as were the fords of the rivers. These being gone, whilst the ships were fitted to go upon the new discovery, he attended to order all things necessary for the town he was building, dividing it into streets, with a convenient market place, and endeavouring to bring the river to it along a large cut canal; for which reason he also made a dam that might serve the mills, because the town being almost a cannon shot from the river, the people would have been troubled to fetch water so far, especially then, when most of them were very weak and indisposed, by reason of the sharpness of the air, which did not agree with them; so that some were sick, and had no other *Spanish* provisions but biscuit and wine, by reason of the ill management of the captains of the ships, as also because in that country nothing keeps so well as in *Spain*. And tho' they had plenty of the country provisions, yet not being used to that food, it did not agree with them. Therefore the admiral had resolv'd to leave but 300 men in the island, and to send the rest into *Spain*, which number, considering the nature of the island, and of the *Indies*, he knew was sufficient to keep that country in subjection to their catholic majesties. In the mean while, because the biscuit grew towards an end, and they had no flour, but wheat; he resolv'd to make some mills, tho' there was no fall of water fit for that purpose within a league of the town, at which work, and all others, he was forced to stand over the workmen, they all endeavouring to save themselves from any labour. After that, he resolv'd to send out all the people that were in health, except handicraft men, and artificers, to the royal plain, that travelling about the country, they might pacify it, strike a terror into the *Indians*, and by degrees be us'd to their food, since they daily felt more want of that of *Spain*. *Hojeda* was sent to command these men, till they came to *St. Thomas*, there to deliver them to *D. Peter Margarite*, who was to lead them about the island, and *Hojeda* himself to command in the fort, he having taken the pains, the winter before, to discover that province of *Cibao*, which in the *Indian* language signifies stony. *Hojeda* set out from *Isabella* on *Wednesday* the 29<sup>th</sup>

Great  
Fruitful-  
ness of Hi-  
spaniola.

The fort  
of St. Tho-  
mas.



400 men  
sent about  
the island.

of April, towards St. Thomas, with all the aforeſaid men, being above 400, and having paſſ'd the river *del Oro*, apprehended the *Cacique* that liv'd there, and a brother a nephew of his, ſending them in irons to the admiral, and cut off the ears of one of his ſubjects, in the great place of his town, becauſe three chriſtians coming from St. Thomas to *Iſabella*, this *Cacique* gave them five *Indians* to carry their cloaths over the river at the ford, and they being come to the middle of the river, returned to their town with them, and the *Cacique* inſtead of puniſhing them, took the cloaths for himſelf, reſuſing to reſtore them. Another *Cacique* who dwelt beyond the river relying on the ſervice he had done the chriſtians, reſolved to go with the priſoners to *Iſabella*, and intercede with the admiral for them, who entertain'd him courteouſly, and ordered that the other *Indians*, with their

hands bound, would be publickly ſentenced to die in the market-place, which the honeſt *Cacique* ſeeing, he with many tears obtained their lives, promiſing they ſhould never be guilty of any other offence. The admiral having diſcharged them all, a man a horſeback came from St. Thomas's, and gave an account, that he had found in that ſame *Cacique*, who had been priſoner in his town, five chriſtians taken by his ſubjects as they were coming for *Iſabella*, and that he frightning the *Indians* with his horſe had releaſed them, above 400 men running away from him, of whom he wounded two in the purſuit; and that when he had paſſ'd the river, he ſaw they turn'd upon the ſaid chriſtians, whereupon he made as if he would go back againſt them, but they for fear of his horſe, all ran away, leaſt the horſe ſhould fly over the river.

#### C H A P. LIV.

*How the admiral ſettled the affairs of the iſland, and went to diſcover Cuba, ſuppoſing it to be the continent.*

A council  
to govern  
Hiſpaniola.

THE admiral being reſolved to go out to diſcover the continent, appointed a council to govern the iſland in his abſence, the perſons it conſiſted of, were, *D. James Columbus*, his brother, with the title of preſident, *F. Boyl*, and *Peter Fernandez Coronell*, Regents, *Alonſo Sanchez de Carvajal* Reſtor of *Bacca*, and *John de Luxan* of *Madrid*, gentlemen to their catholic majeſties. And that there might not want meal for ſupport of the people, he haſtned the building of the mills, notwithstanding the rain and flood very much obſtructed it. From theſe rains, the admiral ſays, proceeds the great moiſture, and conſequently the fruitfulneſs of the iſland, which is ſo wonderful, that they eat fruit of the trees in *November*, when they were bloſſoming aſreſh, which ſhews that they bear twice a year. But herbs and ſeeds grow at all times, and ſo they find on the trees, neſts with eggs, and young birds. As the fruitfulneſs of the ſoil appeared extraordinary, ſo they daily received freſh advices of the wealth of the country; for ſome of thoſe the admiral had ſent out, were always returning with news of new mines diſcovered, beſides the relation of the *Indians* concerning the great plenty of gold found in ſeveral parts of the iſland. The admiral not ſo ſatiſhed, reſolved to go out to diſcover along the coaſt of *Cuba*, not knowing whether it was an iſland or continent. Therefore taking 3 ſhips along with him, he ſet ſail upon *Thurſ-*

day the 24th of April, after noon, and came to an anchor that day at *Monte Chriſto*, weſt of *Iſabella*. On Friday he went to *Guacanagari's* port, thinking to find him there, but he ſeeing the ſhips, fled for fear, tho' his ſubjects falſly affirm'd he would ſoon return. But the admiral not caring to ſtay without great cauſe, departed on Saturday the 26th of April, and went to the iſland *Tortuga*, which lies 6 leagues to the weſtward: He lay by it that night, in a calm with his ſails abroad, the tide running back againſt the currents. Next day the north-weſt winds and currents ſetting from the weſt, oblig'd him to go back to an anchor in the river of *Guadalquivir*, which is in the ſame iſland, there to wait for a wind that would ſtem the current, which both then and the year before, he found to run ſtrong there toward the eaſt. On Tuesday the 29th of the ſame month, the wind being fair, he came to cape *St. Nicholas*, and thence croſs'd over to the iſland of *Cuba*, running along the fourth coaſt of it, and having ſail'd a league beyond *Cabo Puerte*, The admiral put into a large bay which he call'd *Puerto of San Grande*, or great port, the mouth whereof was 150 paces over, and had much water. Here he caſt anchor, and took ſome reſreſhment of broil'd fiſh and oysters, whereof the *Indians* had great ſtore. On the 1ſt of May he continued his voyage along the coaſt, where he found commodious harbours, fine rivers and high mountains. Up-

on the sea, after he left *Tortuga*, he met abundance of the weeds he saw on the ocean, in his voyage to and from *Spain*. He sailing close along the shore, abundance of people came aboard in their canoes from the island, thinking our men were come down from

heaven, bring of their bread, water and fish, and giving it all freely, without asking any thing for it; but the admiral to send them home well pleased, ordered they should be paid, giving them beads, bells, and such-like baubles.

CHAP. LV.

*The admiral discovers the island of Jamaica.*

*Coast of Jamaica.*

ON *Saturday* the 3d of *May*, the admiral resolved to sail over from *Cuba* to *Jamaica*, that he might not leave it behind, without knowing whether the report of such plenty of gold they had there, was in it, prov'd true, and the wind being fair, and he almost half way over, discovered it on *Sunday*. Upon *Monday* he came to an anchor, and thought it the beautifullest of any he had yet seen in the *Indies*, and such multitudes of people in great and small canoes came aboard, that it was astonishing. The next day he ran along the coast to find out harbours, and the boats going to sound the mouths of them, there came out so many canoes and arm'd men, to defend the country, that they were forced to return to the ships, not so much for fear, as to avoid falling to enmity with those people. But afterwards considering, that if they show'd signs of fear the *Indians* would grow proud upon it, they returned together to the port, which the admiral call'd *Puerto Bueno*, that is, good harbour. And because the *Indians* came to drive them off, those in boats gave them such a flight of arrows from their cross-bows, that fix or seven of them being wounded, they retired. The fight ending in this manner; there came a-

bundance of canoes from the neighbouring places in peaceable manner, to see and barter provisions, and several things they brought, and gave for the least trifle that was offered them. In this port, which is like a horse-shoe, the admiral's ship was repaired, it being leaky, and that done, they set sail on *Friday* the 9th of *May*, keeping so close along the coast westward, that the *Indians* follow'd in their canoes to trade, and get something of ours. The wind being somewhat contrary, the admiral could not make so much way as he wish'd, till on *Tuesday* the 14th of *May*, he resolved to stand over again for *Cuba*, to keep along its coast, designing not to return till he had sail'd 5 or 600 leagues and were satisfied whether it was an island or continent. That same day, as he was going off from *Jamaica*, a very young *Indian* came aboard, saying, he would come into *Spain*, and after him came several of his kindred and other people in their canoes, earnestly intreating him to go back, but they could never alter his resolution; and therefore to avoid seeing his sisters cry and sob, he went where they could not come at him. The admiral admiring his resolution, gave order that he should be used with all civility.

CHAP. LVI.

*The admiral from Jamaica returns to the coast of Cuba, still thinking it to be the continent.*

THE admiral leaving *Jamaica* on *Wednesday* the 15th of *May*, came to that point of *Cuba*, which he call'd *Cabo de Santa Cruz*, or cape Holy Cross, and running along the coast, there happened a great storm of thunder and lightning, which together with the flats and currents, put him into no small danger and to very much trouble, being obliged at the same time to struggle against these two evils, which required contrary remedies; for it is a proper remedy against thunder, to strike the sails,

and it is requisite to spread them to avoid the flats, and had this calamity lasted for 8 or 10 leagues, it had been insupportable. But the worst of it was, that all over that sea, both north and north-east, the further they went, the more low little islands they met with, and tho' there were trees in some of them, yet others were sandy, and scarce appear'd above the surface of the water, some a league, some more and some less in compass. True it is, that the nearer they sail'd to *Cuba*, the higher and pleasanter the

*Infinite small islands.*

the little islands appeared, and being a matter of difficulty, and to no purpose, to give every one of them a name, the admiral called them all in general *Jardin de la Reyna*, the queen's garden. But as many islands as he saw that day, he saw many more and bigger the next day, than he had before, and not only to the north-east, but north-west and south-west; insomuch that they counted 160 islands that day, all parted by deep channels, which the ship sail'd through. In some of these islands they saw abundance of cranes, in shape and bigness like those of *Spain*, but that they were as red as scarlet. In others they found abundance of tortoises, and of their eggs, not unlike a hen's, but that the shells are very hard. The tortoises lay these eggs in a hole they make in the sand, and covering them, leave them till the heat of the sun hatches and brings forth the tortoises, which in time grow as big as a buckler, or great target. In these islands they also saw crows and cranes like those of *Spain*, and several crows, and infinite numbers of little birds that sung sweetly, and the very air was as sweet, as if they had been among roses and the finest perfumes in the world, yet the danger was very great, there being such abundance of channels, that much time was spent in finding the way out. In one of these channels, they spy'd a canoe of *Indian* fishermen, who very quietly, without the least concern expected the boat which was making towards them, and being come near, made a sign to them in it, till they had done fishing. Their manner of fishing was so strange and new to our men, that they were willing to comply with them; it was thus: they had ty'd some small fishes they call *Reves*, by the tail, which run themselves against other fish, and with a certain roughness they have from the head to the middle of the back, they stick so fast to the next fish they meet, that when the *Indians* perceive it, drawing their line, they draw them both together; and it was a tortoise our men saw so taken by those fishermen, that fish clinging about the neck of it, where they generally fasten, being by that means safe from the other fish biting them, and have seen them fasten up

Birds and  
Tortoises in  
them.

A pretty  
way of  
fishing.

on vast sharks. When the *Indians* in the canoe had taken their tortoise, and two other fishes they had before, they presently came very friendly to the boat, to know what our men would have, and by their directions went along aboard the ships, where the admiral treated them very courteously, and understood by them that there was an infinite multitude of islands in that sea, and they freely gave all they had, tho' the admiral would suffer nothing to be taken of them but the fish, the rest being their nets, hooks, and calabashes full of water to drink. Having given them some small trifles, they went away very well pleased, and he held on his course with a design not to do so long, because he began to want provisions already, whereas, had he been well stored, he thought not to have returned into *Spain*, but cast about, tho' he was very much spent, not only because he fed ill, but also because he had not stript or lain in a bed ever since he sail'd from *Spain*, till the 19th of *May*, when he writ this, except eight nights, when he was much indisposed. And if he had much care upon him at other times it was doubled this voyage, by reason of the innumerable quantity of islands, among which he was sailing, which were so many, that on the 20th of *May*, he discover'd 71, besides many more he saw W. S. W. at sun-setting. Which islands or sands are not only frightful by their multitude, appearing on all sides; but what is yet more terrible, is, that every night there rises off them a great fogg eastward, so dismal to behold, that it seems as if some great shower of hail would fall; the thunder and lightning are so violent, but when the moon rises, it all vanishes, part of it turning to rain and wind, which is so usual and natural in that country, that it did not only happen all those nights the admiral was there, but I saw the same in those islands in the year 1503, in my return from the discovery of *Vergua*, and generally here at night the wind is north, coming off the island *Cuba*; and afterwards when the sun is up, it comes about east, and follows the sun till it comes to the west.

An Indian  
sail.

## CHAP. LVII.

*Of the great fatigue the admiral underwent sailing among abundance of islands.*

THE admiral still holding on his course westward, among infinite numbers of islands, upon *Thursday* the 22d of *May* came to an island somewhat bigger than the rest, which he call'd *St. Mary*, and landing

at a town, there was in it not one *Indian* would stay to talk to the christians, nor did they find any thing in the houses but fish, which is all the food those people live on, and several dogs like mastiffs, who eat fish

The admiral  
im-  
bry'd.

Indians in the  
life, and two  
they present-  
boat, to know  
and by their di-  
the ships, where  
ry courteously,  
t there was an  
n that sea, and  
d, tho' the ad-  
to be taken of  
eing their nets,  
water to drink.  
e small trifles,  
pleased, and  
a design not to  
n to want pro-  
d he been well  
have returned  
tho' he was  
because he fed  
d not strip or  
il'd from Spain,  
en he writ this,  
h he was much  
much care up-  
he doubled this  
e innumerable  
which he was  
ty, that on the  
d 71, besides  
W, at fun-fet-  
ds are not only  
, appearing on  
ore terrible, is,  
ff them a great  
behold, that it  
of hail would  
ning are so vio-  
lences, it all va-  
rain and wind,  
al in that coun-  
appen all those  
re, but I saw  
the year 1503,  
covery of *Vera-*  
night the wind  
and *Cuba*; and  
up, it comes  
un till it comes

e of islands.

not one Indian  
tians, nor did  
oules but fish, Indians  
people live on, *Lucas*  
who eat fish on the  
too

too. Thus without talking to any body, seeing any thing remarkable, he sail'd away north-east, among abundance of islands, in which there were many cranes as red as parrots, and other sorts of birds, dogs like those before mentioned, and abundance of those weeds he saw on the ocean, when he first discover'd the *Indies*. Thus sailing among so many sands and islands, fatigued him very much; for sometimes he was forced to stand west, sometimes north, and sometimes south, according as the channels would permit; for notwithstanding his care in founding, and keeping men upon the round-top to look out, yet the ship often touch'd, and there was no avoiding it, there being no end of the flats on all hands. Sailing on in this manner, he came again to *Cuba*, to take in water, whereof they had much need. And tho' there was no town where they put in, because the place was wooded, yet one of the seamen that went ashore, going up among the trees with a cross-bow to kill some bird or beast, found 30 people arm'd with such weapons as they use, that is, spears, and staves, which they wear instead of swords, and call *Macanas*. Among them he said he saw one clad with a white coat or a vest, down to his knees, and two that carry'd him had them down to their feet, all three of them as white as the *Spaniards*, but that he had no talk with them, because being afraid of such a number, he began to cry out to his companions, and the *Indians* ran away without looking back. Tho' the admiral the next day sent people ashore to know the truth of it, they could not travel above half a league, because of the thickness of the trees and bushes, and because all that coast

As Indian  
clad.

is boggy and muddy, for two leagues up the country, where there are hills and mountains, so that they only saw footsteps of fishermen on the shoar, and abundance of cranes like those in *Spain*, but bigger. Then sailing about 10 leagues westward, they saw houses on the shoar, from which some canoes came with water, and such things as those people eat, which they brought to the christians, who payed well for 'em; and the admiral caused one of those *Indians* to be stopp'd, telling him, and the rest by his interpreter, that he would let him go freely home, as soon as he had directed him in his voyage, and given some account of that country. At which the *Indian* was very much pleased, and assured the admiral that *Cuba* was an island, and that the king or *Cacique* of the western part of it, never spoke to his subjects but by signs by whom all his orders were immediately obeyed, that all that coast was very low, and full of small islands, which was found to be too true, that the next day, being the 11th of *June*, to pass from one channel to another, the admiral was forced to have the ships towed over a flat, where there was not a foot water, and all the breadth of it was not above two ships length. Bearing up closer to *Cuba* they saw tortoises of a vast bigness, and in such numbers, that they covered the sea. At break of day they saw such a cloud of sea crows that they darkened the sun, coming from the seaward to the island, where they all lighted; besides them, abundance of pigeons, and birds of other sorts were seen, and the next day here came such swarms of butterflies, that they darkened the air, and lasted till night, when the great rain carried them away.

Infinite  
tortoises,  
crows and  
butterflies.

## CHAP. LVIII.

*How the admiral returns back towards Hispaniola.*

ON Friday the 13th of *June*, the admiral perceiving that the coast of *Cuba* ran far west, and that it was a matter of the greatest difficulty to sail that way, by reason of the infinite multitude of islands and sands there were on all sides, and that he already began to want provisions, for which reason he could not continue his voyage as he had intended, he resolv'd to return to the town he had begun to build in *Hispaniola*, and to furnish himself with wood and water, he anchored in the island *Evangelista*, which is 30 leagues in compass, and 700 from *Dominica*. Having provided himself with what he wanted, he directed his course southward, hoping to get out better that way,

The admi-  
ral im-  
boy'd.

VOL. II.

and sailing thro' the channel, he saw looked clearest, after sailing a few leagues, found it shut up, which did not a little trouble and terrify the men, seeing themselves as it were hemmed in on all sides, and destitute of provisions and all comfort. But the admiral, who was wife and courageous, perceiving their faint-heartedness, said with a cheerful countenance, that he thank'd God for forcing him back the same way he came; forasmuch as if they had continued their voyage that way they intended to go, it might perhaps have happened they might have run themselves into some place whence it would be hard getting out, and at a time when they had neither ships nor provisions to go back, which at present they could

7 D easily

easily do. Thus with great satisfaction of all the men, he returned to the island *Evangeliſta*, where he had watered, and on *Wednesday* the 25 of *June*, ſailed thence north-weſt towards ſome ſmall iſlands that appeared 5 leagues off. Going ſtill a little forward he came into a ſea ſo patched with green and white, that it looked like one entire ſand, tho' there was two fathom water; along which he ſailed 7 leagues, till he met another ſea, as white as milk, which he much admired, the water being very thick. This ſea dazzled the eyes of all that beheld it, and ſeemed to be all a ſhoal without water enough for the ſhips, yet there were about 3 fathom water. But when he had ſailed about 4 leagues upon that ſea, he came into another ſea, as black as ink, and 5 fathom deep, thro' which he held his courſe till he came up with *Cuba*. Thence ſtanding to the eaſtward, with ſcant winds, thro' narrow channels and ſhoals. On the 30th of *June* as he was writing his journal of the voyage, his ſhip run a ground ſo faſt, that neither anchors nor other inventions, being able to get it off; it pleaded God it was drawn off a-head, tho' with ſome damage, becauſe of its beating on the ſand. However, with

God's aſſiſtance they got off at laſt, and he ſailed on as the wind and ſhoal-water would permit, always thro' a very white ſea, and two fathom deep, neither deeper nor ſhallower, unleſs he came too cloſe to ſome of the ſands, where there was want of water. Beſides which trouble, every day about ſun-ſetting, he was troubled with mighty ſhowers, which riſe in the mountains from the morafſes near the ſea, which were a great fatigue to him, till he came cloſe to *Cuba* towards the eaſt, the way he came at firſt. Thence, as he had found before, came off a moſt fragrant ſcent, as it were of flowers. On the 7th of *July* he landed to hear maſs, and there reſorted to him an old *Cacique* lord of that province, who was very attentive at maſs; when it was ended, by ſigns, and the beſt he could expreſs, he ſaid it was very well done to give thanks to God, becauſe the ſoul which was good, would go to heaven, and the body remain on earth, but that the wicked ſouls muſt go to hell. And among other things ſaid, he had been in the iſland *Hiſpaniola*, where he knew ſome of the chief men; that he had been in *Jamaica*, and a great way towards the weſt of *Cuba*, and that the *Cacique* of that port, was clad like a prieſt.

Notably words of an Indian.

South end of Hiſpaniola is diſcovered.

#### CHAP. LIX.

*The great hunger and other calamities the admiral and his men endured, and how he returned to Jamaica.*

THE admiral ſailing thence on *Wednesday* the 16th of *July*, ſtill attended by terrible rains and winds, drew near to cape *Cruz* in *Cuba*, where he was on a ſudden aſſaulted by ſuch a violent rain and ſtorm as bore his ſhip's ſide under water, but it pleaſed God they immediately ſtruck all their ſails, and drop'd their beſt anchors; but they took in ſo much water at the deck, that the men were not able to pump it out, eſpecially in the condition they were, being much ſpent for want of proviſions: For they eat nothing but a pound of rotten biſcuit a day, and about half a pint of wine, unleſs they happened to catch ſome fiſh, which yet they could not keep from one day to the next, proviſions in thoſe parts being of a very flight nature, and becauſe the weather was always more inclinable to heat than in our countries, and this want being common to all, the admiral in his journal ſpeaks thus concerning it. I my ſelf am at the ſame allowance, God grant it may be to his honour, and for your highneſs's ſervice, for I ſhall never again for my own benefit expoſe myſelf to ſuch ſufferings and dangers, never a day paſſing; but I ſee we are

all upon the brink of death. In this danger and diſtreſs he arrived at cape *Cruz* the 18th of *July*, where he was friendly entertained by the *Indians*. They brought him abundance of *Cazabi*, ſo they call their bread made of roots grated, a great deal of fiſh, ſtore of fruit and ſuch other things as they eat. The wind being contrary to ſail for *Hiſpaniola*, he ſtood over to *Jamaica* on *Wednesday* the 22d day of *July*, and ſail'd along weſtward cloſe under the ſhore, the countrey all along moſt delightful and fruitful, with excellent harbours, at every league diſtance, and all the coaſt full of towns, the people whereof followed the ſhips in their canoes, bringing ſuch proviſions as they eat, and much better liked by the chriſtians, than that they found in the other iſlands. The climate, air, and weather was the ſame as the reſt, for in this weſtern part of *Jamaica* there gathered every evening a ſtorm of rain, which laſted about an hour more or leſs, which the admiral ſaid, he attributed to the great woods there in thoſe countries, for that he knew this was uſual at firſt in the *Canary* iſlands, *Madera* and the *Azores*, whereas now the woods are cut down

Great beauty of Jamaica.

Great diſtreſs.



at last, and he  
pal-water would  
white sea, and  
eeper nor thal-  
close to some of  
want of water.  
day about sun-  
h mighty show-  
ains from the  
h were a great  
e close to *Cuba*  
y he came at  
nd before, came  
as it were of  
y he landed to  
d to him an old  
nce, who was  
n it was ended,  
xpress, he said  
hanks to God,  
ood, would go  
main on earth,  
must go to hell.  
id, he had been  
where he knew  
at he had been  
ay towards the  
*Cacique* of that

ured, and how

In this danger  
cape *Cruz* the  
friendly enter-  
ey brought him  
they call their  
a great deal of  
other things as  
contrary to fail  
to *Jamaica* on  
uly, and sail'd  
the shore, the  
ghtful and fruit-  
at every league  
full of towns,  
nd the ships in  
rovisions as they  
y the christians,  
e other islands.  
er was the same  
ern part of *Ja-*  
evening a storm  
an hour more  
said, he attri-  
there in those  
this was usual at  
*Madera* and the  
woods are cut  
down

down that shaded them, there are not so great and frequent storms and rains, as there were formerly. Thus the admiral sail'd on tho' with contrary winds, which obliged him every night to take the shelter of the land, which appeared green, pleasant, fruitful, abounding in provisions, and so populous, that he thought none excell'd it, especially near a bay which he called *De las Vacas*, because there are nine islands close to the land, which he said was high as any he had seen, and believ'd reached above the region where the storms bred, yet it is all peopled, very fruitful and pleasant. This island he judg'd to be 800 miles in compass,

and when fully discovered, computed it to be 50 leagues in length and 20 in breadth. Being much taken with its beauty, he had a great mind to stay there to be fully informed of the nature of it, but the great want of provisions we mention'd, and the leakiness of the vessels would not permit. Therefore as soon as the weather was a little fair, he sail'd away eastward, so that on *Tuesday* the 19th of *Aug.* he lost sight of that island, standing over directly for *Hispaniola*, and call'd the most eastward cape of *Jamaica* on the south coast *Cabo del Farol*.

# CHAP. LX.

*The admiral discovers the south-side of Hispaniola, till he returned east about the town of Isabella.*

South  
side of  
*Hispanio-*  
is disco-  
ver'd.

ON *Wednesday* the 20th of *August*, the admiral had sight of the south-side of *Hispaniola*, and called the first point cape *St. Michael*, which was 30 leagues distant from the easterlyest point of *Jamaica*, yet at present through the ignorance of the sailors it is called cape *Tiburón*. From this cape on *Saturday* the 23d of *August*, there came aboard a *Cacique*, who call'd the admiral by his name, and had some other *Spanish* words, by which he was convinced this was the same land as *Hispaniola*. At the end of *August* he anchor'd in an island, which is called *Alto Velo*, and having lost sight of the other two ships under his command, he caused some men to go ashore in that little island, whence being very high they might see a great way round; but they discovered none of their companions. As they were going aboard they killed eight sea-wolves, that lay asleep on the sand, and took abundance of pig o is and other birds; for that island not been inhabited, nor those creatures us'd to see men, they stood still to be killed with staves. The same they did the two following days, waiting for the ships which had been astray ever since the *Friday* before, till at the end of six days they came, and all three together went away to the island *Beata* twelve leagues distant from *Alto Velo*. Hence they passed on coasting *Hispaniola*, in sight of a delightful country, which was a plain running up a mile from the sea, so populous, that it seem'd to be one continued town for a league in length. In which plain there appear'd a lake five leagues long from east to west. The people therefore of the country having some knowledge of the christians, came aboard in their canoes, bringing news that some *Spaniards* from *Isabella* had

happened to come among them, and that they were all well, which much pleas'd the admiral, and to the end they too might hear of his health, and his company's and of his return, being somewhat more towards the east, he sent nine men to cross the island, passing by the forts of *St. Thomas* and the *Magdalen* to *Isabella*, and he with his three ships still keeping along the coast eastward, sent the boats for water to a place, where a great town appeared. The *Indians* came out against them with bows and poison'd arrows, and with ropes in their hands, making signs that they would bind the christians they should take with them. But as soon as the boats came to the shore, the *Indians* laid down their arms, and offered to bring bread and water, and all they had, asking in their language for the admiral. Going hence they saw in the sea a fish as big as a whale, which on its neck had a great shell, like a tortoise, and bore its head, which was as big as a hoghead, above water, had a tail like a tunny fish, very long, and two large fins on the sides. The admiral by this fish and other signs, perceiving there would be some change of weather, he fought for some harbour to secure himself. And on the 15th of *September* it pleas'd God to show him an island, being near the east part of *Hispaniola*, call'd by the *Indians* *Adamana*, and the weather being very stormy drop'd anchor in the channel, between it and *Hispaniola*, close to a small island that lies between both, where that night he saw the eclipse of the moon, which he said varied 5 hours 23 minutes from *Cadiz* to the place where he was. This I suppose made the bad weather last so long, for he was forced to lie close in that very place till the 20th of the month,

A mon.  
strous fish.

not without fear for the other ships, which could not get in, but it pleased God to save them. Being afterwards together again, on the 24th of September they sail'd to the most easterly point of *Hispaniola*, and thence pass'd over to a little island lying between *Hispaniola* and *S. John de Borriquen*, called by the *Indians* *Mona*. From this island the admiral does not continue the journal of his voyage, nor does he say how he returned to *Isabella*, but only that going from *Mona* to *St. John*, the great toil he had gone through, his own weakness and want of provisions cast him into a dangerous disease between a pestilential fever and a lethargy, which presently depriv'd him of

all his senses and memory. Whereupon all the men aboard the ships resolv'd to desert from the design he had in hand of discovering all the islands of the *Caribbees*, and to return to *Isabella*, where they arriv'd in five days, and on the 29th of September, and there it pleased God to restore his health, tho' his sickness lasted above five months, which was attributed to the great sufferings he had gone through during that voyage, and to his extraordinary weakness; for sometimes he had not sleep three hours in eight days, which seems almost impossible, were not he himself and his men witnesses of the truth of it.

# CHAP. LXI.

*11. the admiral subdued the island Hispaniola, and took such order, that they might not revolt again.*

Bartholomew Columbus.

THE admiral returning to *Hispaniola* from the discovery of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, found there his brother *Bartholomew Columbus*, who, as was said before, had been sent to treat with the king of *England* about the discovery of the *Indies*. He returned to *Spain* with the grant of his demands, understood at *Paris*, by *Charles* king of *France*, that the admiral his brother had discovered the *Indies*, and he supplied him with 100 crowns to proceed on his journey. Upon this news he made all the haste he could to overtake the admiral in *Spain*; yet when he came to *Sevil*, his brother was set out for the *Indies* with seventeen sail. Therefore to fulfil the orders he had left him at the beginning of the year 1494, he went away to their catholick majesties, carrying me and my brother *D. James Columbus*, to serve prince *John* as his pages, as had been appointed by the queen, who was then at *Valladolid*. As soon as we came thither their majesties sent for *D. Bartholomew Columbus*, and sent him to *Hispaniola* with three ships, where he served some years, as appears by a manuscript I found among his papers, in which are these words. "I served as captain from the 14th of April 1494, till the 12th of March 1496, when the admiral set out for *Spain*, and then I began to act as governor till the 24th of August 1498, when the admiral returned from the discovery of *Paria*, when I again served as captain till the 11th of December 1500, when I returned to *Spain*." But to return to the admiral, he returning from *Cuba*, made him governor of the *Indies*, tho' afterwards there arose a controversy on this account, because

their catholick majesties said they had not granted the admiral power to appoint any such. But to decide this difference their highnesses granted it a-new, and so for the future he was called *Adelantado*, that is, lieutenant of the *Indies*.

The admiral having the assistance and advice of his brother, took some rest, and lived in quiet, tho' on the other side he met with trouble enough, as well from his sickness, as because he found almost all the *Indians* had revolted, through the fault of *D. Peter Margarite*, of whom we spoke above. He tho' obliged to respect and honour him that at his departure for *Cuba*, had left him the command of 360 foot and 14 horse, to travel over the island, and reduce it under the obedience of their catholick majesties and the christians, and particularly the province of *Cibao*, whence the chief profit was expected; yet did all things so much to the contrary, that as soon as the admiral was gone, he went with all his men to the great plain called *Vega Real*, ten leagues from *Isabella*, without stirring to over-run and reduce the island. Hence there ensued discord and factions at *Isabella*; he endeavouring that those of the council instituted by the admiral, should obey his orders, sending them very insolent letters, till perceiving he could not succeed in his design of getting the whole command into his hands, rather than stay the coming of the admiral, who would call him in question for his behaviour, he went aboard the first ships that came from *Spain*, and returned in them, without giving any account of himself, or any ways disposing of the men left under his command. Upon this every

By the  
Indians  
revolted.

Our Indi-  
an king  
pleas'd with  
the Spani-  
sh.

Whereupon  
resolved to de-  
in hand of dis-  
the Caribbes,  
ere they arriv'd  
th of September,  
to restore his  
asted above five  
ted to the great  
ugh during that  
inary weakness;  
leep three hours  
almost impos-  
and his men

der, that they

id they had not  
to appoint any  
difference their  
and so for the  
ontado, tha is,

the assistance and  
k some rest, and  
other side he met  
ill from his sick-  
almost all the In-  
in the fault of D.  
we spoke above,  
and honour him  
ba, had left him  
and 14 horse, to  
reduce it under  
colick majesties  
cularly the pro-  
chief profit was  
egs so much to  
as the admiral  
his men to the  
al, ten leagues  
ng to over-run  
nce there ensued  
ella; he endea-  
ouncil instituted  
ey his orders,  
eters, till per-  
and in his design  
mand into his  
coming of the  
him in question  
aboard the first  
, and returned  
any account of  
ing of the men  
pon this every  
one

Why the  
Indians  
revolted.

On Indi-  
in king  
flew with  
the Spani-  
ards.

one went away among the *Indians*, where he thought fit, taking away their goods and their women, and committing such outrages, that the *Indians* resolved to be reveng'd on those they found alone, or stragling; so that the *Cacique* of the *Magdalen*, whose name was *Guaguana*, had killed ten, and privately ordered a house to be fired, in which there were eleven sick. But he was severely punished, when the admiral returned; for tho' he himself could not be taken, yet some of his subjects were made prisoners and sent into *Spain* in four ships, *Antony de Torres* brought on the 24th of *February* 1495. Six or seven more, who in other parts of the island had done harm to the christians, suffer'd for it. The *Caciques* had certainly killed many, and would have destroy'd more, but that the admiral came in time to curb them all, who found the island in such disorder, that most of the christians committed a thousand insolencies, for which they were mortally hated by the *Indians*, who refused to submit to them. It was no difficult matter for them all to agree to cast off the *Spanish* yoke; because, as has been said, there were four principal kings or *Caciques*, to whom all the others were subject. The names of those four were *Caunabo*, *Guacanagari*, *Bebechico* and *Guarionex*; and each of these had under him 70 or 80 others little lords; not that they paid tribute or gave any thing, but were obliged, whenever called upon, to assist them in their wars, and till the ground; but *Guacanagari*, one of these who was lord of that part of the island where the town of the *Nativity* had been built, continued a friend to the christians. As soon therefore as he heard of the admiral's coming, he went to visit him, saying, he had no way been aiding or advising with the others, which might appear by the great civility the christians had found in his country, where 100 men had been always very well used and furnished with all things he could get to please them; for which reason, the other kings were become his enemies, and particularly *Bebechico* had killed one of his women, and *Caunabo* had taken another, wherefore he pray'd him to cause her to be restored, and assist him to revenge these wrongs. The admiral resolved to do so, believing what he said was true, because he wept every time he called to mind those that had been killed at the *Nativity*, as if they had been his own children, and he was the more inclinable to it, considering that the discord among them would make it more practicable to conquer the country, and punish the revolt of the other *Indians*, and killing of the christians. Therefore on the 24th of *March* 1495, he

VOL. II.

set out from *Isabella* to carry on the war, and the afore said *Guacanagari* with him, being very desirous to crush his enemies; tho' the undertaking seem'd very difficult, they having raised above 100000 *Indians*, 100000 whereas the admiral had not along with him above 200 christians, 20 horses, and as many dogs. The admiral being acquainted with the nature and qualities of the *Indians*, when he was two days journey from *Isabella*, divided his forces, giving half to his brother the lieutenant, that he might attack that multitude scattered about the plains in two places, believing the terror of hearing the noise in several places would put them to flight sooner than any thing else, as in effect it proved. The battalions of foot on both sides falling upon the multitude of *Indians*, and breaking them with the first discharge of their cross-bows and muskets, the horse and dogs fell in next in most furious manner, that they might not rally, whereupon those faint-hearted creatures fled, some one way, and some another, and our men pursuing and killing a great number, made such havock, that in a short time, through God's assistance they obtained a complete victory, many of the enemies being slain, and others taken, among whom was *Caunabo*, the chief *Cacique* of them all, together with his wives and children. This *Caunabo* afterwards confessed he had killed 20 of the christians left with *Arana* in the town of the *Nativity*, the first voyage when the *Indies* were discovered, and that afterwards, under colour of friendship, he went in great haste to see the town of *Isabella*, to observe how he might best attack it, and do as he had done at the *Nativity*. Of all which things, the admiral had been fully informed by others; and therefore to punish him for that offence, and this second revolt, and gathering of forces he had now march'd against him, and having taken him and his brother, he sent them all prisoners into *Spain*; for he would not without the knowledge of their catholic majesties, execute so considerable a person, being satisfied with punishing some of those that were most in fault. The victory obtain'd, and this man's imprisonment, put the affairs of the christians into such a good posture, that tho' at that time they were but 630, many of them sick, and others women and children; yet in the space of a year, the admiral spent in ranging the island, without being forced to draw sword any more, he reduced it to such obedience, that they all promised to pay tribute to their catholic majesties every three months, that is, all that inhabited the province of *Cibao*, where the gold mines were, from 14 years

7 E

of

of age upward, to pay a large horse-bell full of gold-dust, and all the rest 25 pounds of cotton a head. And that it might be known who had paid this tribute, there was a sort brass and tin coin stamp'd, one of which pieces was to be given to every one that paid, and he to wear it about his neck, that whosoever was found without it might be known not to have paid and punished. And doubtless this order would have proved effectual, had not those troubles we shall speak of afterwards happen'd among the christians; for after the taking of *Caunabo*, the country was so peaceable, that for the future one single christian went safely where he pleased; and the *Indians* themselves would carry him about on their shoulders, which the admiral attributed on-

ly to God and the good fortune of their catholic majesties, considering it had been otherwise impossible for 200 men, half sick and ill-armed, to overthrow such a multitude, which it pleased his divine majesty not only to bring under his command, but to send such scarcity of provisions, and such violent diseases among them, that they were reduced to one third of what they had been at first, to make it appear the more plain, that such miraculous victories, and the subduing of nations are his gift, and not the effect of our power or conduct, or of their want of courage; for tho' our men had been superiour to them, yet their multitude might make amends for any advantage we had over them.

## C H A P. LXII.

*Some remarkable things in the island, as the customs, ceremonies and religion of the Indies.*

*Product of Hispaniola.*

THE people of the island being brought under, and conversing more freely with our men, many other particulars, and the secrets of their religion were found out, but particularly that there were mines of copper, azure and amber; as also ebony, cedar, frankincense, and other rich gums and spice of several sorts, but wild, which being cultivated, might be brought to perfection; as for instance, cinnamon of good colour, but bitter, ginger, long pepper, abundance of mulberry trees for making of silk, which bear leaves all the year, and many other useful trees and plants not known in our parts. Besides, the *Spaniards* were inform'd of many other things relating to their customs, which to me seem to deserve a place in our history. To begin with their religion, I will here set down the admiral's own words, writ by himself, which are these.

"I could discover neither idolatry nor any other sect among them, tho' every one of their kings, who are very many, as well in *Hispaniola*, as in all the other islands and continent, has a house apart from the town, in which there is nothing at all but some wooden images carved, by them called *Cemies*; nor is there any thing done in those houses but what is for the service of those *Cemies*, they repairing to perform certain ceremonies, and pray there, as we do to our churches. In these houses they have a handsome round table, made like a dish, on which is some powder, which they lay on the head of the *Cemies* with a certain cere-

mony; then through a cane that has two branches clapp'd to their nose, they snuff up this powder: The words they say none of our people understand. This powder puts them besides themselves, as as if they were drunk. They also give the image a name, and I believe it is their fathers or grand-fathers, or both; for they have more than one, and some above ten, all in memory of their forefathers, as I said before. I have heard them commend one above another, and have observed them to have more devotion, and show more respect to one than another, as we do in processions in time of need, and the people and *Caciques* boast among themselves of having the best *Cemies*. When they go to these their *Cemies*, they shun the christians, and will not let them go into those houses, and if they suspect they will come, they take away their *Cemies*, and hide them in the woods, for fear they should be taken from them; and what is most ridiculous, they use to steal one another's *Cemies*. It happened once, that the christians on a sudden rushed into the house with them, and presently the *Cemie* cried out, speaking in their language, by which it appeared to be artificially made; for it being hollow, they had applied a trunk to it, which answered to a dark corner of the house covered with boughs and leaves, where a man was concealed who spoke what the *Cacique* ordered him. The *Spaniards* therefore reflecting on what it might be, kick'd down the

*Superstitions of Indians.*

*Prophecy of the Indians.*

fortune of their  
ring it had been  
men, half sick  
such a multi-  
tude majesty not  
command, but to  
tions, and such  
that they were  
they had been  
the more plain,  
es, and the sub-  
st, and not the  
act, or of their  
our men had  
their multitude  
advantage we

and religion of

cane that has  
their nose, they  
he words they  
derstand. This  
themselves, as  
They also give  
I believe it is  
rs, or both; for  
and some above  
their forefathers,  
e heard them  
her, and have  
more devotion,  
one than ano-  
ons in time of  
Caciques boast  
ving the best  
to these their  
ristians, and  
those houses;  
r will come,  
ies, and hide  
r they should  
what is most  
one another's  
ce, that the  
hed into the  
only the Cemi  
language, by  
specially made;  
ad applied a  
ed to a dark  
with boughs  
as concealed  
que ordered  
efore reflect-  
sick'd down  
" the

" the *Cemi*, and found as has been said;  
" and the *Cacique* seeing they had disco-  
" vered his practice, earnestly begg'd of  
" them not to speak of it to his subjects,  
" or the other *Indians*, because he kept  
" them in obedience by that policy. This  
" we may say has some resemblance of ido-  
" latry, at least among those who are igno-  
" rant of their *Caciques* fraud, since they  
" believe it is the *Cemi* that speaks, and all  
" of them in general are imposed upon,  
" and only the *Cacique* and he that com-  
" bines with him, abuse their credulity,  
" by which means he draws what tribute  
" he pleases from his people. Most of the  
" *Caciques* have three stones also, to which  
" they and their people show a great de-  
" votion. The one they say helps the corn  
" and all sorts of grain; the second makes  
" women be delivered without pain; and  
" the third procures rain or fair weather,  
" according as they stand in need of either.  
" I sent your highness three of these stones  
" by *Antony de Torres*, and have three more  
" to carry along with me. When these  
" *Indians* die, they have several ways of  
" performing their obsequies, but the man-  
" ner of burying their *Caciques* is thus.  
" They open and dry him at the fire, that  
" he may keep whole. Of others they  
" take only the head, others they bury  
" in a grot or den, and lay a calabash of  
" water and bread on his head; others they

" burn in the house where they die, and  
" when they are at the last gasp, they suf-  
" fer them not to die, but strangle them,  
" and this is done to *Caciques*. Others  
" are turn'd out of the house, and others  
" put them into a hammock, which is their  
" bed, laying bread and water by their head,  
" never returning to see them any more.  
" Some that are dangerously ill, are carri-  
" ed to the *Cacique*, who tells them whe-  
" ther they are to be strangled or not, and  
" what he says is done. I have taken pains  
" to find out what it is they believe, and  
" whether they know what becomes of them  
" after they are dead; especially I en-  
" quired of *Caunabo*, who was the chief-  
" est king in *Hispaniola*, a man in years,  
" knowing, and of a most piercing wit.  
" He and the rest answered, that they go  
" to a certain vale, which every great *Cacique*  
" supposes to be in his country, where  
" they affirm they find their parents, and  
" all their predecessors, and that they eat,  
" have women, and give themselves up to  
" pleasures and pastimes, as appears more  
" at large in the following account, in  
" which I order'd one *F. Roman*, who un-  
" derstood their language, to set down all  
" their ceremonies and antiquities, tho'  
" there are so many fables that nothing  
" can be made of it, but that they have  
" all some regard to a future state, and hold  
" the immortality of the soul.

The MANUSCRIPT of *F. Roman*, concerning the antiquities  
of the *Indians*, which he, as being skill'd in their tongue, has  
carefully gather'd by order of the admiral.

**I** *F. Roman*, a poor anchorite of the order of *St. Jerome*, by order of the most illustrious lord  
admiral, viceroy and governor of the islands and continent of the Indies, write what I could  
bear and learn of the belief, and idolatry of the *Indians*, and how they serve their Gods. Every  
one observe some particular way and superstition and worshipping idols, which they call *Cemis*.  
They think there is an immortal being, like heaven, invisible, and that has a mother, but has  
no beginning, and this being they call *Jocakuvague Maorocon*, and its mother they call *Ata-*  
*bei*, *Iermaoguacar*, *Apito* and *Zuimaco*, which are several names. Those I here write of,  
are the people of the island *Hispaniola*, for I know nothing of the others, having never been  
in them. They also know whence they came, the original of the sun and moon, how the sea was  
made, and whither the dead go. And they believe the dead appear to them upon the roads  
when any of them go alone, for when there are a great many together they do not appear to  
them. All this their ancestors have made them believe, for they can neither read nor tell be-  
yond ten.

## CHAP I.

Whence the *Indians* came, and after what manner.

*Propo-  
sition  
of the  
Indians.*

**T**here is a province in *Hispaniola* call'd  
*Caanan*, in which there is a mountain  
called *Canta*, where there are two grotts or

caverns; the one called *Cacibagiagua*, the  
other *Amaiarva*; most of the people that first  
inhabited the island came out of *Cacibagi-*  
*agua*.



## The first Discovery of

*gua*. These being in those caverns, kept watch by night, and one *Marocael* had the charge of it, who coming one day too late to the door, they say the sun took him away. Seeing therefore that the sun had carried him away for his neglect, they shut the door against him, and so he was turn'd into a stone near the door. Then they say,

that others going a fishing were taken by the sun, and became trees by them call'd *Jobi*, but otherwise *Mirabolani*.

The reason why *Marocael* watch'd and warded, was to observe whether he would fend and distribute the people, and it appears he staid to his own harm.

### CHAP. II.

#### *How the men parted from the women.*

IT happened, that one *Guagugiana*, bid another, whose name was *Giadrucava*, go and gather an herb called *Digo*, wherewith they cleanse their body when they go to wash. He went out before day, the sun took him by the way, and he became a

bird that sings in the morning, like the *Nightingale*, and is call'd *Giabuba Bagiaci*. *Guagugiana* perceiving he did not return, whom he had sent to gather *Digo*, resolv'd to go out of the aforesaid grot *Cacibagiana*.

### CHAP. III.

*Guagugiana* resolv'd to go away in a passion, seeing they did not return whom he had sent to gather *Digo* to wash him, and said to the women, leave your husbands, and let us go into other coun-

tries, and we shall get jewels enough. Leave your children, and let us only carry the herbs along with us, and we will come again for them.

### CHAP. IV.

*Guagugiana* set out with all the women, and went to seek another country, and came to *Matinino*, where he immediately left the women, and went into another country, called *Guanin*, having left the children by a brook. Afterwards, when hunger began to pinch them, they say, they cry'd, and called their mothers, that were gone; and the fathers could not relieve the children, who for hunger, called

their mothers, saying, *Ma, Ma*, to speak, but in truth to beg of the earth. And they thus crying and begging of the earth, saying, *Too, Too*, like one that very earnestly begs a thing, they were transform'd into little creatures like dwarfs, and call'd *Tona*, because of their begging of the earth. And thus all the men were left without women.

### CHAP. V.

THAT there went women again to the said island of *Hispaniola*, formerly called *Aiti*, and so the inhabitants of it are called, and the other islands called them *Bouchi*: And soasmuch as they have no letters, nor way of writing, they can give no good account how they understand this story of their ancestors, and therefore they do not agree in what they say, nor is what they relate to be put into any order. When *Guagugiana*, who carry'd away all the women went off, he took with him the wives of his *Caciques*, whose name was *Anacacugia*, deceiving them as he had done the o-

thers. Besides, a kinsman of *Guagugiana*, who followed him, went upon the sea, and *Guagugiana* said to his kinsman, when he was in the canoe, look what a fine *Cobo* there is in the water, which *Cobo* is the sea-snail, or periwinkle; and he looking down for the *Cobo*, *Guagugiana* his kinsman took him by the feet and threw him into the sea, and so took all the women to himself, and left those at *Matinino*, where it is said there are none but women to this day; and he went away to another island called *Guanin*; and it was so called for what he carried to it when he went thither.

### CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

*Novus*

THAT *Guagugiana* return'd to the same *Canta*, whence he had carried the women: They say that *Guagugiana* being in that country whither he went, saw he had left a woman in the sea, at which he was not pleas'd, and look'd about where to wash himself, being full of those blotches we call the *French Pox*. The woman put him into a *Guanara*, that is, a by-place; and being there, he was heal'd of his sores.

Afterwards he ask'd her leave to go his way, and she gave it him. This woman's name was *Guabonito*; and *Guagugiana* chang'd his name, calling himself from that time forwards, *Biberoci Guabagiona*. And the woman *Guabonito*, gave *Biberoci Guabagiona* much *Guanine* and *Cibe*, that he might carry them tied to his arms; for in those countries, the *Colecibi* are of stone, very like

marble, and they wear them about their wrists and necks; and the *Guanini's* wear them at their ears, making holes in them when they are little, and they found like fine mettles. They say, that *Guabonito*, *Albeborael*, *Guabagiona*, and the father of *Albeborael*, were the first of these *Guanini's*. *Guabagiona* staid in that country with the father, called *Hiauna*, his son from his father took the name *Hia Guaili Guanin*, which signifies son of *Hiauna*, and from thence forward, was called *Guanin*, and is so to this day. And they not knowing how to write, cannot give a good account of these fables, nor can I write them well; wherefore I believe, I mention the last first and the first last. But all I write is related by them, and so I deliver it as I had it from the people of the country.

CHAP. VII.

*How women came again to the aforesaid island Aiti, now called Hispaniola.*

THEY say the men went one day to wash themselves, and when they were in the water it rain'd much, and they were very desirous to have women; and that very often, when it rain'd, they had gone to seek out the track of their women, and could find no news of them; but they say, that as they were washing themselves that day, they saw fall down from the trees, as it were sliding down the branches, the shape of people, which were neither men nor women, nor had the secret parts of men or women, which they went to catch, but they fled as swift as if they had been eagles.

Therefore by order of their *Cacique*, they call'd 2 or 3 men, since they themselves could not catch them, to watch how many there were of them, and find out for each of them a man that was *Caracaracoli*; for those men had rough hands, and therefore would hold fast. They told the *Cacique* they were four, and so they took four men that were *Caracaracoli*, which is a distemper like the itch, that makes the body very rough. When they had taken those creatures, they held a council about them, how to make them women, since they had neither the privities of man or woman.

CHAP. VIII.

*How they found the way to make women.*

*Women*

THEY sought out a bird called *Turiri*, formerly *Turire Cabuvail*, that is, a *Woodpecker*, that makes holes in trees, and taking those creatures that had neither the parts of man nor woman, tied them hands and feet, and bound the said bird to their body; the which bird taking them to be trees, began to work as it uses, pecking and boring that part where womens privities should be; and thus say the ancientest

*Indians*, they came to have women. I writing in haste, and not having paper enough, could not place every thing rightly, but through mistake transpos'd some; but the mistake is not great, for they believe all that is here writ. Let us now return to what we should have said first, that is, my opinion concerning the original and beginning of the sea.

## C H A P. IX.

*How they say the sea was made.*

There was a man they call *Giaia*, whose right name they know not, his son was call'd *Giaiel*, that is, *Giaia's* son. This *Giaiel* intending to kill his father, he banish'd him, where he remain'd an outlaw 4 months; after which his father kill'd him, put his bones into a calabash, and hung it to the top of his house, where it continued some time. It happen'd that being desirous to see his son, *Giaia* one day said to his wife, I have a mind to see our son *Giaiel*, and she was content. Taking down the calabash, he turn'd it over to see his son's bones, and there came out of it abundance

of great and small fishes. Perceiving that the bones were turn'd into fishes, they resolv'd to eat them. Now they say, that one day, when *Giaia* was gone to his *Comibi*, that is, his lands, he had by inheritance, there came 4 sons of a certain woman called, *Itiba Tabuvava*, all born at one birth; for the said woman dying in labour, they cut her open, and took out the said sons; and the first they cut was *Caracaracol*, that is, *Mangy*; which *Caracaracol* had to name . . . . . the others had no name.

Of the  
dead.

## C H A P. X.

HOW the four sons of *Itiba Tabuvava*, who died in labour, went to take down *Giaia's* calabash; in which was his son *Giaiel* who had been converted into fish, and none of them durst lay hold of it but *Dimivan Caracaracol*, who unhung it; and they all eat their belly full of fish, but whilst they were eating, they perceiv'd *Giaia* was coming from his estate, and go-

ing about in that hurry to hang up the calabash; they did not hang it right, so that there ran so much water from it, as overflow'd all the country, and with it came out abundance of fish, and hence they believe the sea had its original. Afterwards they went and met with a man whose name was *Cone*, and he was dumb.

## C H A P. XI.

*What happened to the four brothers, when they fled from Giaia.*

AS soon as they came to *Bassamanaco's* door, and found he brought *Cazzabi*, they said, *Abiacavo Gearocol*; that is, let us be acquainted with this grandfire of ours. So *Deminan Caracaracol*, seeing his brothers before him, went in to try whether he could get some *Cazzabi*, which is the bread they eat there. *Caracaracol* going into the house of *Aiamavaco*, ask'd some *Cazzabi* of him, which, as has been said, is bread. He clapt his hand on his nose, and threw on him a *Guanguaio*, full of *Cogioba*, which he had made that day, and is a sort of powder they take sometimes to purge them, and for other purposes you shall know hereafter. This they take through a cane half a cubit long, one end whereof they put to their nose, and the other to the powder, and so snuff it up, which purges them very much. So he gave him that *Guanguaio* instead of bread, and leaving what he was about, went away very angry because they ask'd it of him — After this, *Caracaracol* return'd

to his brothers, and told them what had happen'd to him with *Baiaimanicoel*, and the stroke he gave him on the shoulder with the *Guanguaio*, and that it pain'd him very much. His brothers look'd upon his shoulder, and perceiv'd it was much swollen, which swelling increas'd so much, that he was like to die. Therefore they endeavour'd to cut it open, and could not; but taking an instrument of stone, they opened it, and out came a live female tortoise; so they built their house, and bred up the tortoise. I understood no more of this matter, and what we have writ signifies but little. They say further, that the sun and moon came out of a grotto, that is in the country of *Cacique*, whose name is *Mancia Tuvel*, and the grotto is called *Giovovava*; and they pay a great veneration to it, and have painted it all after their fashion, without any figure, but leaves, and the like. In the said grotto, there were two little stone *Cemies*, about a quarter of a yard long, their hands bound,

bound, and they look'd as if they sweated. These *Cemi's* they honour'd very much; and when they wanted rain, they say they used to go visit them, and they presently had it. One of the *Cemies* is by them called *Boinaiel*, the other *Maroia*.

CHAP. XII.

*What their opinion is concerning the wandring of the dead, after what manner they are, and what they do.*

*Of the dead.*

THEY hold, there is a place to which the dead go, called *Coabai*, and lying in a part of the island known by the name of *Soraia*. The first that was in *Coabai*, they say, was one *Macbetaurie Guaiava*, who was lord of the said *Coabai*, the habitation and dwelling-place of the dead.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the figure they assign the dead.*

THEY say they are shut up in the day, and walk abroad in the night; that they feed on a certain fruit, called *Guabazza*, which tastes like a —, that in the day-time they are —, and at night were converted into fruit, and that they feast, and go about with the living; and thus it is they know them: They feel their belly, and if they cannot find their navel, they say they are dead; for they say the dead have no navel; and therefore they are sometimes deceiv'd, when they do not observe this, and lie with some of the women of *Coabai*, whom when they think they have in their arms, they have none, because they vanish on a sudden. This they still believe as to this affair. Whilst a man is living, they call the soul *Goeiz*, and when dead *Opia*, which *Goeiz* they say, often appears to them, as well in the shape of a man as of a woman; and they say, there have been men that would fight with it, and when they came to close, it vanish'd, and the man clapp'd his arms elsewhere about some tree, to which he clung fast. This they believe all in general, great and small, and that it appears to them in the shape of their father, mother, brother, kindred, or any other. The fruit they say the dead feed on, is about the bigness of a quince. The dead do not appear to them in the day-time, but always at night; and therefore if any one ventures to go abroad at night, it is with great fear.

CHAP. XIV.

*Whence they have this, and who makes them hold such an opinion.*

THERE is a sort of men among them, called *Bobuti's*, who have many juggling tricks, as we shall say hereafter, to make them believe, they talk with the dead, that they know all their actions and secrets, and when they are sick, cure them. Thus they impose upon them, which I have seen with my own eyes, tho' as to other particulars I relate only what I have heard from many of them, especially the principal men, with whom I convers'd more than with others; for these believe such fables more firmly than the others; for they have all their superstitions reduced into old songs, and are directed by them, as the *Moors* are by the *Alcoran*. When they sing these songs, they play upon an instrument, called *Maibaran*, made of wood, hollow, strong, yet very thin, and as long as a man's arm; that part where they play on it is made like a smith's tongs, and the other end like a club, so that it looks like a calabash with a long neck. This instrument they play on, and is so loud, that it is heard a league and a half off; and to that musick they sing those songs they have got by heart. The chief men play on it, who learn it from their infancy, and so sing to it according to their custom. Let us now proceed to speak of many other ceremonies and customs of these *Gentiles*.

CHAP.

## C H A P. XV.

*Of the observations of the Indian Buhuitihu's, how they profess physick, teach the people, and are often deceived in their cures.*

ALL or most of the people of the island of *Hispaniola* have abundance of *Cemies*, of several sorts: some have their father, mother, kindred and predecessors: some figures cut in stone and wood, and many of both sorts, some that speak, others that cause things to grow, some that eat; and others that cause rain, and others that make the wind blow; which things those ignorant people believe the idols perform, or rather those devils. They having no knowledge of our holy faith. When any one

is sick, they bring him to *Bubuitibu*, that is, as was said above, the physician. The doctor is obliged to be dieted as the sick man is, and to look like him, which is done thus. He is to purge himself as the sick man does, which is done by snuffing a certain powder, called *Cogiaba*, up his nose, which makes him drunk, that he knows not what he does, and so says many extravagant things, which they affirm is talking with the *Cemies*, and that they tell them how the sickness came.

## C H A P. XVI.

*What these Buhuitihu's do.*

*Cure of the sick.*

WHEN they go to visit any sick body, before they set out from their house, they take the foot off a pot, or pounded charcoal, and black all their face, to make the sick man believe what they please concerning his distemper. Then they take some small bones, and a little flesh, and wrapping them all up in something that they may not drop, put them in their mouth, the sick man being before purged with the powder aforesaid. When the physician is come into the sick man's house, he sits down, and all persons are silent; and if there are any children, they put them out, that they may not hinder the *Bubuitihu* in performing his office; nor does there remain in the house any but one or two of the chief persons: Being thus by themselves, they take some of the herb *Gioia* — broad, and another herb, wrapped up in the web of an onion half a quarter long; one of the *Gioia's*, and the other they hold, and drawing it in their hands they bruise it into a paste, and then put it in their mouths to vomit what they have eaten, that it may not hurt them; then presently begin their song, and lighting a torch, take the juice. This done, having staid a little, the *Bubuitibu* rises up, and and goes towards the sick man, who sits all alone in the middle of the house, as has been said, and turns him twice about, as he thinks fit; then stands before him, takes him by the legs, and feels his thighs, descending by degrees to his feet; then draws hard, as if he would pull something off; then he goes to the door, shuts it, and says, be gone to the mountain, or to

the sea, or whither thou wilt; and giving a blast, as if he blowed something away, turns about, claps his hands together, shuts his mouth, his hands quake as if he were cold, he blows on his hands, and then draws in his blast as if sucking the marrow of a bone, sucks the sick man's neck, stomach, shoulders, jaws, breast, belly and several other parts of his body. This done they begin to cough, and make faces, as if they had eaten some bitter thing, and the doctor pulls out that we said he put into his mouth at home, or by the way, whether stone, flesh or bone, as above. If it is any thing eatable, he says to the sick man, take notice you have eaten something that has caused this distemper; see how I have taken it out of your body; for your *Cemi* had put it into you because you did not pray to him, or build him some temple, or give him some of your goods. If it be a stone, he says, keep it safe. Sometimes they take it for certain, that those stones are good, and help women in labour; wherefore they keep them very carefully, wrapped up in cotton, putting them into little baskets, giving them such as they have themselves to eat, and the same they do to the *Cemies* they have in their houses. Upon any solemn day, when they provide much to eat, whether fish, flesh, or any other thing, they put it all into the house of the *Cemies*, that the idol may feed on it. The next day they carry all home, after the *Cemi* has eaten. And so God help them, as the *Cemi* eats of that, or any other thing, they being inanimate stocks or stones.

*Physician  
purged.*



C H A P. XVII.

*How the aforeſaid phyſicians have been ſometimes deceived.*

WHEN they have done as has been ſaid, and yet the patient dies, if the dead man has many friends, or was lord of a territory, and can oppoſe the ſaid *Bubuitibu*, that is, phyſician, for mean people dare not contend with them; he that would do him harm, does it thus. When they would know whether the patient died through the phyſician's fault or whether he did not obſerve what was preſcribed; they take an herb, called *Gueia*, whoſe leaves are like *Bafil*, thick and broad, being called by another name *Zacbon*: they take the juice of this leaf, pair the dead man's nails, and cut off the hair on his forehead, which they powder between two ſtones, and mix with the aforeſaid juice of the herb, and pour it down the dead man's throat, or noſtrils, and ſo doing, ask him, whether the phyſician was the occaſion of his death? and whether he obſerved order? this they ask ſeveral times, till he ſpeaks as plain, as if he were alive;

ſo that he answers to all they ask of him, ſaying, the *Bubuitibu* did not obſerve order, or was the cauſe of his death; and they ſay, the phyſician asks him, whether he is alive, and how he comes to talk ſo plain; and he answers he is dead. When they have known what they deſire of him, they return him to his grave, whence they took him to make this enquiry. They uſe another method to know what they deſire: they take the dead body and make a great fire, like that uſed for making of charcoal, and when the wood is turned into a live coal, they throw the body into that violent fire, and cover it with earth, as the collier's do the coals, where they let it lie as long as they think fit, and there ask queſtions, as was ſaid before; who answers, he knows nothing. This they ask ten times, and then he ſpeaks no more. They ask, whether he is dead? but he ſpeaks only thoſe ten times.

C H A P. XVIII.

*How the kindred of the party revenge themſelves, when they have got an answer by means of the drench.*

*Phyſicians ſaid.*

THE dead man's kindred get together upon a day appointed, wait for the aforeſaid *Bubuitibu*, and baſtinado him, till they break his legs, arms and head, ſo that he is all battered, and ſo they leave him for dead. At night, they ſay, there come abundance of ſnakes of ſeveral ſorts, white, black, green and of ſeveral other colours, which lick the ſaid phyſician's face, and all his body, ſo left, as has been ſaid, and remains in that manner two or three days. Whiſt he is thus, they ſay the bones of his legs and arms knit together again, he gets up, and walks fair and ſoftly towards his houſe and they that ſaw him, ask the queſtion of him, were not you dead? he answers, the *Cemi's* came to his aſſiſtance in the ſhape of ſnakes. The dead man's kindred, in a rage, becauſe they thought they had revenged their relations death, ſeeing him alive, grow deſperate, and endeavour to lay hold of him to put

him to death; and if they can catch him again, they put out his eyes, and bruife his teſticles; for they ſay none of theſe phyſicians can die, tho' never ſo much baſtinadoed, if they do not cut out his teſticles.

*How they know what they deſire of him they burn, and how they take their revenge.*

When they uncover the fire, the ſmoke that comes from it, riſes till they loſe ſight of it, and makes a noiſe, as it breaks out: Then it turns down again, and goes into the houſe of the *Bubuitibu* or phyſician; and that very moment, he that did not obſerve order, falls ſick, is covered with ſores, and all the ſkin of his body flays off; and this they take for a ſign, that he did not do his duty, and therefore the patient died; for which reaſon they endeavour to kill him, as was ſaid in the other caſe. Theſe are the forceries they uſe.

## CHAP. XIX.

*How they make and keep their wooden and Stone Cemies.**of Cemies  
or idols.*

THOSE of wood are made thus: when any one is traveling, he says, he sees some tree that shakes its root; the man in a great fright, stops, and asks, who he is? it answers, my name is, *Bubuitibu*, and he will inform you who I am: the man repaireing to the said physician, tells him what he has seen. The wizard, or conjurer, runs immediately to see the tree the other has told him of, sits down by it, and makes it *Cogioba*, as was said above in the story of the four brothers. The *Cogioba* being made, he stands up, gives it all its titles, as if it were some great lord; and asks of it, tell me who you are, what you do here, what you will have with me, and why you send for me? tell me whether you will have me cut you, whether you will go along with me, and how you will have me to carry you, and I will build you a house and endow it? immediately, that tree, or *Cemi*, becomes an idol, or devil, answers, telling how he will have him do it. He cuts it into such a shape as he is directed, builds his house, and endows it; and makes *Cogioba* for it several times in the year: which *Cogioba* is to pray to it, to please it, to ask and know of the said *Cemi*, what good or evil is to happen, and to beg wealth of it. When they would know whether they shall be victorious over their enemies, they go into a house, whither none but the chief men are admitted. The lord of them is the first that begins to make the *Cogioba*, and to make a noise; whilst he does it, none of the company speaking till he has done. His prayer being ended, he stands awhile with his head turned about,

and his arms on his knees; then he lifts up his head, and looks towards heaven, and speaks. Then they all answer him with a loud voice, and when they have all spoke, giving thanks, he tells the vision he saw, being made drunk with the *Cogioba*, he snuffed up his nose, which flies into his head; and says, he has talked with the *Cemi*, and shall obtain victory, or that his enemies shall fly, or that there shall be a great mortality, or war, or famine, or some such thing, as occurs to him in his drunken fit. Consider, what a condition their brains are in; for they say, the houses seem to them to be turned topsy turvy, and that the men goupon their heads. This *Cogioba* they make for stone and wooden *Cemies*, as well as for the dead bodies, as has been said above. The stone *Cemies* are of several sorts: some there are, which they say, the physicians take out of the body of the sick, and those they look upon as the best to help women in labour. Others there are that speak, which are shaped like a long turnip, with the leaves long, and extended, like the shrub bearing capers. Those leaves for the most part are like those of the *Lin*. Others have three points, and they think they cause the *Guica* to thrive. Their roots are like a radish. The leaves of *Guica* have at least six or seven points; nor do I know what to compare them to, for I have seen nothing like it in *Spain*, or elsewhere. The stem of the *Guica* is as high as a man. Let us now speak of their opinions concerning the idols and *Cemi*'s, and how they are deceived by them.

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Cemi, Bugid and Aiba.**Barlamo's  
opinion.*

THEY say, in the time of the wars, he was burnt, and afterwards being wash'd with the juice of *Guica*, his arms grew out again, his body spread, and he recovered his eyes. The *Guica* was small, and they wash'd it with the above-mentioned water and juice, to make it grow bigger, and they affirm it made those sick who had made the said *Cemi*, because they

had not brought it *Guica* to eat. This *Cemi* was called *Baidrama*, and when any one fell sick, they called the *Bubuitibu*, and ask'd him, whence the distemper proceeded? He answered *Baidrama* had sent it, because they had not sent him to eat by those that had charge of his house. This the *Bubuitibu* said the *Cemi*, *Baidrama*, had told him.

CHAP. XXI.

*Of Guamoreté's Cemi.*

THEY say, that when they built the house of *Guamoreté*, who was a man of note, they put into it a *Cemi*, that was on the top of his other house, which *Cemi* was called *Corocofo*; and when they had wars among themselves, *Guamoreté's* enemies burnt the house in which this *Cemi Corocofo* was. They say he presently got up, and went a bow-shot from that place, near to a water. They further say, that when he was on the top of the house, he would

come down and lie with the women. That afterwards *Camorefo* died, and the *Cemi* fell into the hands of another *Cacique*, and still continued to lie with the women; and moreover, that he had two crowns grew on his head; for which reason they said, since such a one has two crowns, he is certainly *Corocofo's* son; and this they look'd upon as most certain. This *Cemi* came afterwards to another *Cacique*, called *Gualabanex*, and his country is called *Giacoba*.

CHAP. XXII.

*Of another Cemi, called Opigielguoviran, which belonged to a great man, whose name was Cavavaniova, who had many subjects.*

THIS *Cemi Opigielguoviran*, they say, has four feet, like a dog's, and is made of wood, and that he would often at night go out of the house into the woods; whither they went to seek him out, and when brought home again, they bound him with cords, yet he would go away to the

woods. They say that when the christians came to the island *Hispaniola*, he broke loose, and went into a moras, whither they followed him by the track, but never saw him since, nor know any thing of him. As I receiv'd this, so I deliver it.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of another Cemi, called Guabancex.*

THIS *Cemi Guabancex* was in the country of a great *Cacique*, whose name was *Aumatex*; and they say, it is a woman *Cemi*, and has two others with it; one a crier, the other gatherer, or governor of the waters. When *Guabancex* is angry, they say, it raises the winds and waters, overthrowes houses, and shakes the trees. This *Cemi* they say, is a female, and made of stones of that country. The other two

*Cemi's* that are with it, are call'd, one of them *Gualawva*, and is a crier, that by order of *Guabancex*, makes proclamation for all the other *Cemi's* of that province to help to raise a high wind, and cause much rain: The other is, *Coatrisibie*, who they say, gathers the waters in the valleys among the mountains, and then lets them loose to destroy the country. This they believe as most certain.

CHAP. XXIV.

*Their Belief of another Cemi, called Faraguvaol.*

THIS *Cemi* belongs to a principal *Cacique* of the island *Hispaniola*, is an idol, has several names, and was found as you shall now hear. They say, that on a certain day in past times, before the island was discovered, they know not how long since, being abroad a hunting, they found a certain creature: they ran back, and that got into a ditch; looking into it, they saw a beam, which look'd like a thing

that had life in it. The huntsman seeing it, ran to his lord, who was a *Cacique*, and father to *Guarionel*, telling him what he had seen. They went thither, and found the thing as the huntsman had given information, and taking that log, they built a house to it. They say it went out of that house several times, and return'd to the place whence they brought it, not exactly to the same spot, but near it; for the

fore said

aforesaid lord, and his son *Guaraionel*, ordering it to be fought out, found it hid; and that another time, they bound and put it

in a sack, and yet bound as it was, it went away as before. Those ignorant people look upon this as undoubted truth.

#### C H A P. XXV.

*Of those things they affirm were reported by two principal Caciques of the island Hispaniola; one of them called Cazziva, father to the aforesaid Guaraionel; the other, Gamanacoei.*

THAT great lord, who, they say, is in heaven, at the beginning of the book, is this *Cazziva*, who kept a sort of abstinence here, which all of them generally perform; for they shut themselves up six or seven days, without taking any sustenance but the juice of herbs, with which they also wash themselves. After this time they begin to eat something that is nourishing. During the time they have been without eating, weakness makes them say, they have seen something they earnestly desired, for they all perform that abstinence in honour of the *Cemes*, to know whether they shall obtain victory over their enemies, or to acquire wealth, or any other thing they desire. They say, this *Cacique* affirm'd, he had spoke with *Giocauvagbama*, who told him, that whosoever surviv'd him, would not long enjoy his power, because they should see a people clad in their country, who would rule over, and kill them, and they should die for hunger. They thought at first, these should be the *Canibals*, but afterwards considering, that they only plunder'd and fled; they believ'd it was some other people the *Cemi* spoke of; and now they believe it is the admiral and those that came with him. Now I will give an account of what I saw and knew, when *F. Roman*, a poor anchorite, went to the province *Madalena*, to a fort built by *D. Christopher Columbus*, admiral, viceroy, and governor of the islands and continent of the *Indies*, for their majesties king *Ferdinand* and Queen *Isabel*. I being in that fort, with *Arriaga*, appointed governor of it by the aforesaid viceroi *D. Christopher Columbus*, it pleased God to give the light of his faith to a whole family of ill-principled people of that province of *Madalena*, which province was called *Maroris*, and the lord of it *Guaraionel*, that is, son of *Guaraenechin*. In the said house are his servants, and retainers, whose surname is *Giabuvariu*, and were in all 16 persons, all relations, and among them five brothers. Of these one died, and the other four were baptiz'd; and I believe, they died martyrs, for so it appear'd by the manner of their death and their constancy. The first that receiv'd baptism was an *Indian*

called *Guaticava*, afterwards *John*. This was the first christian that suffer'd a cruel death, and to me he seems to have died a martyr; for I have heard from some that were by when he died, that he said, *Dio Aboridacha*, *Dio Aboridacha*, that is, I am God's servant. So died his brother *Arriaguy*, and another with him, saying the same words. All the people of this house attended me, to do whatsoever I pleased. Such as are left alive at this day, are now christians by means of *D. Christopher Columbus*, viceroy and governor of the *Indies*, and by the grace of God they are very numerous at present.

Let us now say what happened in the province of *Madalena*. When I was there, the aforesaid lord admiral came to the assistance of *Arriaga*, and some christians, besieged by the subjects of a principal *Cacique*, called *Caualto*. The admiral told me, that the language of the province *Madalena Maroris* was different from the rest, and not understood in all parts of the country; and therefore bid me go and reside with another principal *Cacique*, called *Guarionex*, lord of many subjects, whose language was understood all over the island. In obedience to his orders, I went to reside with the said *Guarionex*. True it is, I said to *D. Christopher Columbus*, my lord, why will you have me go to live with *Guarionex*, when I know no language but that of *Maroris*? Be pleas'd to give leave that one of those *Nobuirci's*, (who were afterwards christians, and knew both the languages) may go along with me; which he granted, and bid me carry who I pleas'd; and it pleased God to give me for a companion, the best of the *Indians*, and who was best instructed in the catholic faith; and afterwards took him from me, God be praised who gave and took him away; for indeed, I look'd upon him as a good child and a brother; and it was that *Guacavannu*, who was afterwards a christian, and called *John*. What happened to us there I shall not relate, and how I and *Guacavannu* went to *Isabella*, where we waited for the admiral, till he return'd from the relief of *Madalena*. As soon he came, we went where he had ordered, with one *John de Aguada*, who had

as it was, it went  
se ignorant people  
bted truth.

ques of the island  
said Guarionex;

wards John. This  
at suffer'd a cruel  
ms to have died a  
d from some that  
that he said, *Dis-  
ba*, that is, I am  
his brother *Antony*  
n, saying the same  
of this house at  
ticever I pleas'd  
this day, are now  
of the *Indies*,  
they are very nu-

happened in the  
When I was there,  
I came to the as-  
d some christians,  
of a principal *Ca-  
The admiral told  
the province *Ma-  
ent from the rest,  
parts of the coun-  
ne go and reside  
Cacique, called  
y subjects, whose  
ll over the island.  
I went to reside  
True it is, I said  
, my lord, why  
ive with *Guarion-  
guage but that of  
ve leave that one  
were afterwards  
h the languages)  
which he granted,  
pleas'd; and it  
or a companion,  
d who was best  
faith; and at-  
e, God be praised  
way; for indeed,  
od child and a  
*Guacacuanu*, who  
and called *John*.  
e I shall not re-  
*Guacacuanu* went to  
for the admiral,  
ic of *Madalena*.  
t where he had  
de *Aguada*, who  
had***

had the command of a fort, which *D. Christopher Columbus* had built, half a league from the place where we were to reside. The admiral commanded the said *John de Aguada* to allow us such provisions as there were in the fort, which is called the *Conception*. We continued with that *Cacique, Guarionex*, almost two years, instructing him in our faith, and the manners of christians. At first he appear'd well inclin'd, and gave some hopes of complying and becoming a christian, bidding us teach him the lord's prayer, the creed, and all other christian prayers, which many in his house learnt; and he said his prayers every morning, and caus'd all his family to do so twice a day: yet afterwards he fell off from his good purpose, through the fault of some of the principalmen of that country, who blam'd him for submitting to the law of christ, since the christians were ill men, and drove them out of their country by force. Therefore they advis'd him never to mind any thing that belong'd to the christians; but that he should joyn and conspire with them, for their destruction, because they could not satisfy them, and were resolv'd to submit no longer. Thus he fell off from his good beginning, and we perceiving he neglected what he had learnt, resolv'd to depart thence, and go where we might be more successful in instructing the *Indians* in the faith. We therefore went away to another principal *Cacique*, who show'd a favourable inclination, saying, he would be a christian: his name was *Maviatue*.

Accordingly we set out to go to the said *Maviatue's* country; I *F. Roman* *Pano*, poor anchorite, and *F. John Borgnon* of the order of *St. Francis*, and *John Mathew* the first that was baptized in *Hispaniola*.

The second day after we set out from the town and habitation of *Guarionex*, to go to the other *Cacique*, called *Maviatue*; we found *Guarionex's* people building a house near the house of prayer, where we left some pictures for the *Catecumen's*, to knee, and pray before them. These were the mother, brothers, and kindred, of the aforesaid *John Mathew*, the first christian; afterwards seven more joyn'd them, and at last all the family became christians, and persever'd in the faith; so that all the aforesaid family was left to keep that house of prayer, and some lands I had caus'd to be till'd. They being so left to keep the house, two days after we were gone towards the aforesaid *Maviatue*, six men went to the aforesaid house of prayer, left in the custody of the seven *Catecumen's*, and by order of *Guarionex*, told them, they should take those pictures, left by *F. Roman*, and destroy them, since he and his companion were gone, and they knew not what was become of them. These six servants of *Guarionex* found six children keeping the house of prayer, who being so instructed, said, they should not come in; but they went in by force, took the pictures, and carried them away.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*What became of the pictures, and a miracle God wrought to show his power.*

THESE men being gone out of the house, threw the pictures down, cover'd them with earth, and piss'd upon them, saying, now you will yield much fruit. This they said, because they bury'd them in a field that was sown, saying, what grew there would be good, but this they did in scorn. The children that were keeping the house by order of the *Catecumen's*, seeing this, they ran to their friends who were upon their Lands, and told them, that *Guarionex's* men had abus'd and scorn'd the pictures; which they understanding, left what they were about, and ran crying out to give an account of it to *D. Bartholomew Columbus*, who was then governor, his brother being gone into *Spain*. He as lieutenant to the viceroy, proceeded against the offenders, and having convicted them publicly, burnt them. This did not deter

*Guarionex* and his subjects, from their design of murdering all the christians on the day when they were to bring in their tribute; but the conspiracy was discovered, and they apprehended on the same day they were to put it in execution. Still they held on their resolution, and accordingly killed four *Spaniards*, besides *John Mathew* and his brother *Anthony*, who had been baptized; and running where they had hid the pictures, tore them in pieces. Some days after, the owner of that field went to dig up his *Ag's*, which are certain roots like turnips, and some like radishes; and in the place where the pictures had been buried, two or three *Ag's* were grown in the shape of a cross, as if they had been stuck one through another; nor could any man find this cross, but only the mother of *Guarionex*, who was the worst woman I knew in those



parts, who look'd upon this as a great miracle, and said to the commander of the fort of the *conception*, this miracle has been shown by God, where the images were found: God knows to what end.

Let us now give an account, how they were converted that first became christians, and how much will be requisite to convert them all. To say the truth, that island stands in much need of people to punish the lords, when they will not suffer their people to be instructed in the faith; for they have nothing to say against it, which I can with truth maintain, because it has cost me much labour to know it; as I am satisfied may be gathered by what has been said hitherto; and a word to the wife is enough.

The first christians were those we have beforement'd in the island of *Hispaniola*, that is, *Gianauery*, in whose house there were seventeen persons who all became christians, only giving them to understand, that there is one God, who has made all things, and created heaven and earth, without any further arguments or controversy; for they were easy of belief. With others there must be force and ingenuity used, for all of them are not alike; for as much, as if those had a good beginning and a better end, they were none of those others that

begin well, and then fall off from what has been taught them; and therefore there is need of force and punishment.

The first that receiv'd baptism in the island *Hispaniola*, was *John Matthew*, who was baptiz'd on the feast of St. *Matthew* the evangelist, in the year 1496, and after him all his family; where were many christians, and a greater progress had been made, had they been instructed in the faith, and the *Spaniards* been in a condition to keep them under. And if any one should ask, why I make this so easy a matter? I say, it is, because I know it by experience, especially in the person of a principal *Cacique*, called, *Mabaviavira*, who has continued now for three years in his good purpose, saying, he will be a christian, and have but one wife; for they use to have two or three, and the great men twenty five or thirty. This is what I could learn and find out as to the customs and ceremonies of the *Indians* of *Hispaniola*, with all the pains I have taken; wherein I expect no spiritual, nor temporal advantage. May it please our lord, if this turns to his honour and service, to give me his grace to persevere; and if it must fail out otherwise, may he deprive me of my understanding.

*The end of the work of the poor anchorite Roman Pane.*

#### CHAP. LXIII.

*How the admiral return'd to Spain to give their majesties an account of the condition he left the island in.*

TO return to the main subject of our history; I say, the admiral having brought the island into a peaceable condition, and built the town of *Isabella*, besides three forts about the countrey, he resolv'd to return into *Spain*, to acquaint their catholic majesties with several matters he thought convenient for their service; but particularly because of many malicious slanderers, who through envy ceased not to give the king a false information of the affairs of the *Indies*, to the great prejudice and dishonour of the admiral and his brothers. For these reasons he went on board on *Thursday* the 10th of *March* 1496, with 225 *Spaniards* and 30 *Indians* sailed from *Isabella* about break of day, and turned it along the coast with two caravals, one called *Santa Cruz*, the other *Nina*, the same he went in to discover the island of *Cuba*. On *Tuesday* the 22d of *March*, he lost sight of the east point of *Hispaniola*, holding on his course eastward as the wind would per-

mit. But the wind for the most part continuing at east, on the 6th of *April*, finding his provisions fell short, and his men were weary and discouraged, he fell off towards the south to the *Caribbee* islands, and came up with them in three days, anchoring at *Marigalante* on *Saturday* the 9th of *April*. The next day, tho' it was not his custom to weigh anchor on a *Sunday*, when in any port, he set sail, because his men mutter'd, saying, when they were to seek their bread, they needed not so strictly observe days. So he anchor'd at the island *Guadalupe*, and sending the boats well-mann'd ashore, before they came to land, abundance of women came out of a wood, with bows and arrows and feathers, as if they would defend their island. For this reason, and because the sea ran somewhat high, those in the boats kept aloof, and sent two *Indian* women, they brought from *Hispaniola*, ashore swimming, of whom those other women particularly enquired concern-

ing,

ff from what has  
therefore there is  
nent.

baptism in the  
Matthew, who  
of St. Matthew  
1496, and after  
were many chri-  
ogres had been  
ucted in the faith,  
n a condition to  
if any one should  
a matter? I say,  
experience, elpe-  
principal Cacique,  
ho has continued  
is good purpose,  
ian, and have but  
ave two or three,  
y five or thirty.  
and find out as  
onies of the Indi-  
the pains I have  
no spiritual, nor  
ay it please our  
onour and service,  
perfevere; and if  
may he deprive

account of the

the most part con-  
ch of April, find-  
ort, and his men  
ed, he fell off to-  
ribbee islands, and  
ree days, anchor-  
aturday the 9th of  
no' it was not his  
on a Sunday, when  
because his men  
they were to seek  
not so strictly ob-  
or'd at the island  
the boats well-  
they came to land,  
me out of a wood,  
and feathers, as if  
island. For this  
sea ran somewhat  
kept aloof, and  
they brought from  
ng, of whom those  
enquired concern-  
ing,

ing the christians; and understanding they  
only desired provisions in exchange for such  
things as they had, bid them go with their  
ships to the north-side, where their husbands  
were, who would furnish them with what  
they wanted. The ships sailing close under  
the shore, saw abundance of people come  
down to the shore with bows and arrows,  
who let fly upon our men with great cries,  
tho' in vain, for their arrows fell short.  
But perceiving the boats full of men were  
going ashore, the Indians went ba & into  
an ambush, and when our men drew near,  
came out to hinder their landing, till being  
frighted with the cannon fir'd at them from  
the ships, they fled to the wood, leaving  
their houses and goods, where the christi-  
ans took and destroy'd all they found. Be-  
ing acquainted with the way of making  
bread, they fell to work, and made enough  
to supply their want. Among other things  
they found in the houses, there were great  
parrots, honey, wax and iron, whereof  
they had hatchets to cut, and looms like  
those for tapistry-work, in which they weave  
their tents. Their houses were square, and  
not round, as is usual in the other islands.  
In one of them was found the arm of a man  
roasting upon a spit. Whilst the bread  
was making, the admiral sent forty men  
up the country, to learn something of it;  
who the next day return'd with ten women  
and three boys, the rest of the people be-  
ing fled. Among these women, was the  
wife of a Cacique, whom a Canaryman, that  
was very nimble, had much difficulty to  
overtake; and she had got from him, but  
that seeing him alone, she thought to take  
him, and closing she got him down, and  
had stifled him, but that others came in to

his assistance. These womens legs are  
swathed with cotton from the ankle to the  
knee, that they may look thick, which or-  
nament they call *Cairo*, and look upon it  
as very genteel, and they gird so hard, that  
if it happens to slip off the leg, that part  
appears very thin. The same both men  
and women use in *Jamaica*, who swath their  
arms up to the arm-pits, that is, about the  
smallest parts, like the old fashion sleeves  
used among us. These women are also  
excessive fat, and there were some thicker  
than a man could grasp; as soon as chil-  
dren can stand upon their legs and walk,  
they give them a bow, that they may learn  
to shoot; and they all wear their hair long,  
and loose upon their shoulders, nor do they  
cover any part of the body. That lady  
they took said, the island was only inhab-  
ited by women, and that those who would  
have hindered the men landing were wo-  
men, except only four men, who were there  
accidentally from another island; for at a  
certain time in the year they come to sport,  
and lie with them. The same was observ-  
ed by the women of another island, called  
*Matrimonio*, of whom she gave the same  
account we read of the *Amazons*; and the  
admiral believed it by what he saw among  
those women, and and because of the cou-  
rage and strength that appeared in them.  
They also say, those women seem to be en-  
dow'd with clearer understanding than those  
of the other islands; for in other places they  
only reckon the day by the sun, and the  
night by the moon, whereas these women  
reckoned by other stars, saying, when the  
*Charles Wain* rises, or such a star is north,  
then it is time to do so and so.

# CHAP. LXIV.

*The admiral sails from the island Guadalupe for Spain.*

WHEN they had made provision of  
bread for twenty days, besides what  
they had aboard, the admiral resolv'd to  
continue his voyage towards *Spain*; but  
perceiving that island was an inlet to the  
others, he thought fit first to satisfy those  
women with some gifts, in satisfaction for  
the loss they had sustained, and therefore  
sent them all ashore, except the chief lady,  
who chose to go into *Spain* with her daugh-  
ter, among the other *Indians* of the island  
*Hispaniola*, one of whom was *Caonabo*, who  
it has been said, was the chief man in all  
the island, and that because he was not a  
native of it, but of the *Caribbees*, and there-  
fore that lady was content to go into *Spain*  
with the admiral. He having furnished

himself with bread, wood and water, set  
sail on *Wednesday* the 20th of *April* from  
*Guadalupe*, with the wind very scant, keep-  
ing near the latitude of 22 degrees; for at  
that time they had not found out the me-  
thod of running away north to meet the  
south-west winds.

Having made but little way, and the  
ships being full of people, on the 20th of  
*May*, they all begun to be much afflicted  
for want of provisions, which was so great,  
that they had but six ounces of bread a day  
for each, and less than a pint of water, with-  
out any thing else. And though there  
were eight or nine pilots in those two ships,  
yet none of them knew where they were,  
but the admiral was confident they were

Great  
want of  
Provision.

but a little west of the *Azores*, whereof he gives an account in his journal thus.

This morning the *Dutch* compasses varied as they used to do, a point; and those of *Genoa*, that used to agree with them, varied but a very little, but afterwards sailing east vary more, which is a sign we are 100 leagues, or some what more, west of the *Azores*; for when we were just 100, there were but a few scatter'd weeds in the sea; and the *Dutch* needles varied a point, those of *Genoa* cutting the north-point; and when we are somewhat farther E. N. E. they will alter again; which was verified on Sunday following being the 22d of May; by which, and the exactness of his account, he found he was 100 leagues from the islands *Azores*, which he was surprized at, and assigned this difference to the several sorts of load-stones the needles are made by; for till they come just to that longitude, they all varied a point, and there some held it; and those of *Genoa* exactly cut the north-star. The same was yet farther demonstrated the next day, being the 24th of May. Thus continuing their voyage, though all the pilots went like blind men, on *Wednesday* the 8th of June, they came in sight of *Odemira*,

between *Lisbon* and cape *St. Vincent*, all the pilots for several days having still made for the land, except the admiral, who the night before slack'd his sails for fear of land, saying, he did so because they were near cape *St. Vincent*, which all laugh'd at; some of them affirming they were in the *English* channel, and those that erred least, said, they were on the coast of *Galicia*, and therefore ought not to take in any sail, it being better to die ashore than starve miserably at sea, the scarcity being so great, that there were many, who like the *Camibals*, were for eating the *Indians* they had aboard; and others, to save the little provision there was left, were for throwing them overboard, which they would have done, had not the admiral used all his authority to prevent it, considering they were human creatures, and therefore ought not to be worse used than the rest, and so it pleased God to reward him with the sight of land next morning, as he had promised them all, for which reason he was afterwards looked upon by the seamen as most expert, and almost prophetic in sea affairs.

#### C H A P. LXV.

*How the admiral went to court, and their catholic majesties set him out again for the Indies.*

THE admiral being landed in *Spain*, began to prepare for his journey to *Burgos*, where he was favourably received by their catholic majesties, who were there celebrating the nuptials of prince *John* their son, who married *Margaret* of *Austria*, daughter to *Maximilian* the emperor, who was conducted into *Spain*, and received by most of the nobility, and the greatest appearance of persons of quality that had ever been seen together in *Spain*: But tho' I was present as page to prince *John*, I shall not mention the particulars of this solemnity, as well because it does not belong to our history, as because their highnesses historiographers have doubtless taken care to do it. Therefore to return to what concerns the admiral, I say, that being come to *Burgos*, he presented their majesties with several things he brought as samples from the *Indies*, as well birds and beasts, as trees, plants, instruments and other things the *Indians* use for their service and diversion; also several girdles and masks, with eyes and ears of plates of gold, besides much gold sand, grofs and small, as nature produced it: Some grains as big as vetches, some as beans, and some as pigeons eggs.

*Presented to  
the king  
and queen.*

This was not afterwards so much valued, because in progress of time, there were pieces of gold found that weigh'd above thirty pounds. Yet at this time what he brought was much valued, in hopes of what was hoped for, and accordingly their majesties received it in good part. When the admiral had given them an account of all that related to the improving and peopling the *Indies*; he was desirous to return with speed, for fear some disaster should happen in his absence, especially because he had left the people there in great want of all necessaries. Tho' he press'd hard on this account, yet the affairs of that court being subject to delays, he could not be so soon dispatch'd, but that ten or twelve months elapsed before he obtain'd two ships, which were sent before with succours under the command of *Peter Fernandez Coronel*. These set out in *February* 1498. and the admiral stay'd to negotiate the obtaining such a fleet as was requisite for him to return to the *Indies*. But he was forced to stay above a year at *Burgos* and at *Medina del campo*, where in the year 1499. their catholic majesties granted him many favours, and gave the necessary orders for his

*Delays in  
negotiating  
the fleet  
for the  
Indies.*

*The ad-  
miral re-  
ceives  
Spain's  
favour.*

St. Vincent, all the  
aving still made for  
iral, who the night  
r fear of land, say-  
they were near cape  
ugh'd at; some of  
ere in the English  
erred least, said,  
Galicia, and there-  
any fail, it being  
n starve miserably  
ing so great, that  
like the Canibals,  
they had aboard;  
ttle provision there  
owing them over-  
d have done, had  
ll his authority to  
they were human  
ought not to be  
, and so it pleased  
with the sight of  
he had promised  
afon he was after-  
the seamen as most  
ophetical in sea af-

Delays in  
the admiral's  
return.

his affairs, and for the government, and  
settling of the Indies. Whereof I here  
make mention, that it may appear how  
ready their catholic majesties were as yet  
to reward his merits and service, and how  
much they afterwards alter'd through the  
false informations of malicious and envious  
persons, insomuch as to suffer the wrongs  
to be done him, which we shall give an ac-  
count of hereafter. But to return to his  
departure from court to *Sevil*, there the  
sitting out of the fleet was retarded much  
longer than was convenient, through the  
negligence and ill-management of the king's  
officers, and particularly of *D. John de Fon-*

*seca*, arch-deacon of *Sevil*. Whence it pro-  
ceeded, that the said *D. John*, who was af-  
terwards bishop of *Burgos*, ever was an in-  
ter enemy to the admiral and his affairs,  
and was chief of those that brought him  
into disgrace with their catholic majes-  
ties. And to the end that *D. James* my  
brother and I, who had served as pages  
to prince *John*, who was now dead, might  
not suffer by his delays, nor be absent from  
court, till the time of his departure; he  
sent us on the 2d of November 1497, from  
*Sevil*, to serve still as pages to her majesty  
queen *Ishabel* or *Elizabeth* of glorious me-  
mory.

# CHAP. LXVI.

*The admiral sets out from Spain to discover the continent of Paria.*

THE admiral forwarding his expedi-  
tion with all possible care, on the  
30th of May 1498, set sail from the bay of  
*St. Lucar de Berrameda*, with six ships load-  
ed with provisions and other necessaries for  
the relief of the planters in *Hispaniola*, and  
peopling of that island.

On the 7th of June he arrived at the  
island of *Puerto Santo*, where he heard mass,  
and staid to take in wood and water, and  
what else he stood in need of; yet that  
same night sailed away towards *Madera*,  
whither he came on Sunday the 9th of June,  
and there at the town of *Foncal*, was cour-  
teously received and treated by the gover-  
nor of that island, with whom he staid to  
provide himself farther till Saturday in the  
afternoon, when he sail'd, and on Wednes-  
day the 19th of June arrived at *Gomera*,  
where there was a French ship that had  
taken three Spaniards; who seeing the ad-  
miral's squadron, weigh'd and stood to sea  
with them. The admiral supposing they  
had been merchant ships, and fled, believ-  
ing him to be a Frenchman, took no care  
to pursue, till when they were at a great  
distance, he was inform'd what they were,  
and sent after them three of his ships; for  
fear of which the French left one of the  
ships they had taken, and fled with the  
other two, so that the admiral could not  
fetch them up. They might have carried  
the other off too, had they not forsaken it;  
for when the admiral appeared in the port,  
in the confirmation they were in, they had  
not time to man it; so that there being but  
four Frenchmen aboard, and six Spaniards  
of those that had been taken in it; these  
seeing the assistance coming to them, clapt  
the French under hatches, and return'd to  
the port, where the ship was restored to

The admi-  
ral reco-  
vers a  
Spaniard  
lost.

him out again for

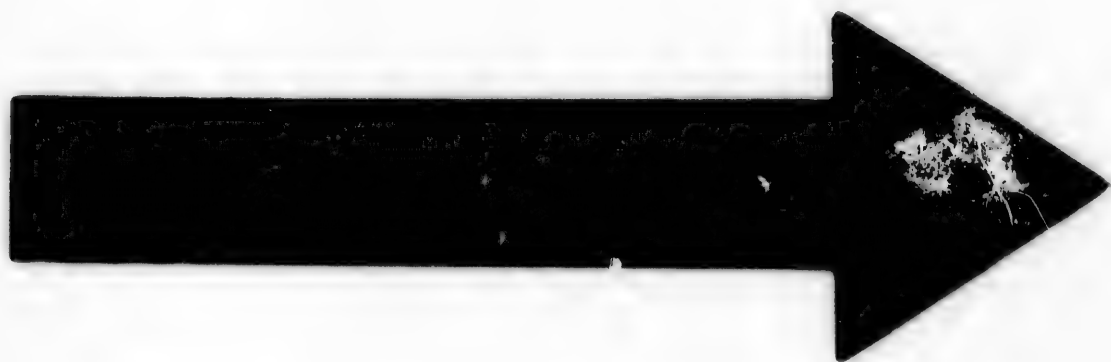
so much valued,  
time, there were  
at weigh'd above  
that time what he  
ed, in hopes of  
accordingly their  
ood part. When  
them an account  
the improving and  
was desirous to  
fear some dis-  
s absence, especi-  
e people there in  
s. Tho' he pres'd  
the affairs of that  
ays, he could not  
that ten or twelve  
tain'd two ships,  
ch succours under  
rnandez Coronel.  
y 1498. and the  
ate the obtain-  
quisite for him  
But he was for-  
t Burgos and at  
n the year 1499.  
anted him many  
ssary orders for  
his

its master; and the French had suffer'd, but  
that *D. Alvaro de Lugo* the governor, and all  
the island interceded for them, who beg'd  
them to exchange for six of their men the  
French had carried away, which the admiral  
granted. Still hastening on his way,  
he sailed for the island *Ferro* on Thursday  
the 21st of June. There he resolv'd to  
send away three of his six ships to *Hispa-  
niola*, and to sail away with the rest to-  
wards the islands of *Cabo Verde*; thence to  
sail directly over, and discover the contin-  
ent. He therefore appointed a captain  
over each ship, of those he sent to *Hispa-  
niola*, one of which was *Peter de Arana*,  
cousin to that *Arana* who died in *Hispanio-  
la*, the 2d *Alonso Sanchez de Carvagal*, and  
the third one *John Antony Columbus* his own  
kinsman, to whom he gave particular in-  
struction, that each of them should com-  
mand a week in his turn. This done, he  
set out for the islands of *Cabo Verde*, and  
those captains for *Hispaniola*. But that cli-  
mate he was then entering upon being un-  
healthy at that time, he had a terrible fit  
of the gout in one leg, and four days after  
he fell into a violent fever; yet notwith-  
standing his sickness, he was still himself,  
and diligently observed the way the ship  
made, the alterations of the weather that  
happened, as he had done since his first  
voyage.

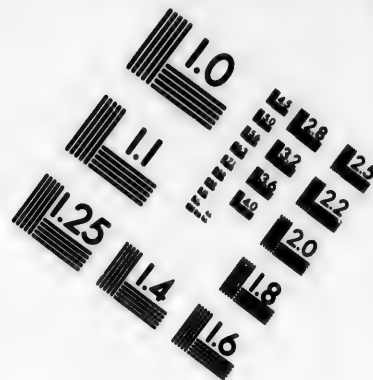
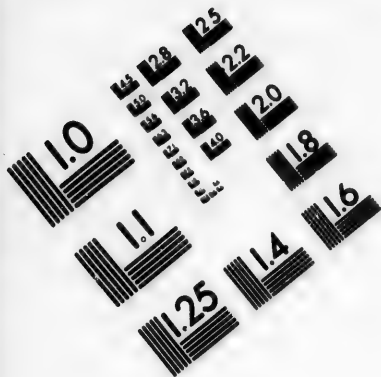
Islands of  
Cabo  
Verde.

On Wednesday the 25th of June, he dis-  
covered the island *de Sal*, one of those of  
*Capo Verde*, passing by it, he came to an-  
other called *Boa Vista*, a name remote from  
the truth, for it signifies a good sight, and  
the place is dull and wretched. Here he  
cast anchor in a channel near a small island  
on the west-side of it, near to where there  
are six or seven houses of the inhabitants

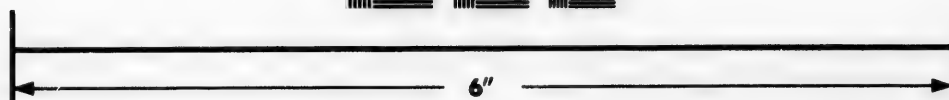
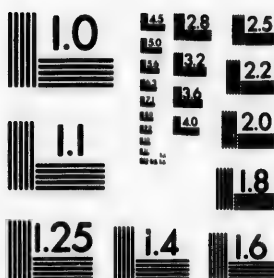
Boa Vista,  
where  
lepers are  
cur'd, and  
bowl.







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0  
4.5  
5.0  
5.6  
6.3  
7.1  
8.0  
9.0  
10.0  
11.2  
12.5  
14.0  
16.0  
18.0  
20.0  
22.5  
25.0  
28.0  
31.5  
36.0  
40.0  
45.0  
50.0  
56.0  
63.0  
71.0  
80.0  
90.0  
100.0

1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0  
4.5  
5.0  
5.6  
6.3  
7.1  
8.0  
9.0  
10.0  
11.2  
12.5  
14.0  
16.0  
18.0  
20.0  
22.5  
25.0  
28.0  
31.5  
36.0  
40.0  
45.0  
50.0  
56.0  
63.0  
71.0  
80.0  
90.0  
100.0

for persons troubled with the leprosy, who came thither to be cured. And as sailors rejoyce when they discover land, so do these wretches much more, when they see any ships. Therefore they presently ran down to the shore, to speak to those the admiral sent ashore in the boats to take in water and salt, there being also abundance of goats there. Understanding they were *Spaniards*, the *Portuguese*, who had charge of the island for the owner, went aboard to speak to the admiral, and offer him all he demanded; for which the admiral thanked him, ordered him to be well treated, and some provision given him, because by reason of the barrenness of the island, they always live miserably. The admiral being desirous to know what method they used to cure the lepers; that man told him, that the temperature of the air was one main cause of it; and the next was their diet, because there came thither a vast number of tortoises, on which the sick feed, and anoint themselves with their blood, and continuing it a short time they recover; but that those who are born infected with this distemper are longer a curing. That the reason of having so many *Tortoises*, was the shores being all sandy, whither the tortoises, in the months of *June*, *July* and *August*, came over from the shore of *Africk*, most of them as big as an ordinary target, and that every night they came up to sleep and lay their eggs on the sand; that the people went along the shore in the night with lanterns or other light, seeking the track the tortoise leaves on the sand, which they follow till they find the fish; which being tired with coming so far, sleeps so sound, that it hears not its enemy. He having found and turned his belly up, without doing it any more harm, goes on to seek more; for when turn'd, they cannot stir from the place, or recover their feet. Having got as many as they think fit, they

Tortoises  
have  
caught.

come again in the morning to chase those they like best; and letting go the least, carry away the others to eat. So wretchedly do the sick live, without any other employment or sustenance, the island being very dry and barren, without trees or springs, so that they drink of certain wells whose water is thick and brackish. Those who had charge of the island, which were only that man and four more, had no other employment but only to kill goats and salt them to send into *Portugal*. He said, there were such multitudes of these goats on the mountains, that some years they killed to the value of three or four thousand ducats, and that they all came from eight goats, carried thither by the proprietor of the island, whose name was *Roderick Afonso*, the king of *Portugal's* secretary of the customs. That very often the hunters are four or five months without bread, or any other thing to eat, except goats flesh and fish; for which reason he made great account of the provision he had given him. That man and his companions, with some of the admiral's men, went out a goat-hunting; but perceiving it required much time to kill all he had need of, he would stay no longer being in great haste.

On *Saturday* the 30 of *June*, he sailed for the island of *Santiago*, the chief of *Cabo Verde*, where he arrived the next day in the evening, and anchored near a church, sending ashore to buy some cows and bulls to carry alive to *Hispaniola*: yet observing it was a difficult matter to furnish himself so soon as he desired, and how prejudicial delays were to him, he resolved to stay no longer; and the more for fear his men should sicken, that country being unhealthy. He says, that all the while he was at that island, he never saw the sky nor any star; but there was always a thick hot fog, inasmuch that three parts of the inhabitants were sick, and they all of them had a bafe colour.

Santiago  
island.

#### C H A P. LXVII.

*How the admiral sailed from the islands of Cabo Verde, to discover the continent; of the violent heat he endured, and great brightness of the North-Star.*

ON *Thursday* the 5th of *July*, the admiral left the island of *Santiago*, sailing south west, with a resolution to hold that course till he was under the equinoctial, and then to steer due-west, that he might find some other land, or cross over to *Hispaniola*. But the currents among those islands setting violently towards the north and north west, he could not fail as he designed; so that he says, on *Saturday* the 7th of *July*, he was still in sight of the island of *Fogo*,

Fogo  
island.

go, which is one of those of *Cabo Verde*; which he says, is very high land on the south-side; and at a distance, looks like a great church, with a steeple at the east end, which is a vast high rock; whence before the east winds blow, there usually breaks out much fire; as is seen at *Tenerif*, *Vesuvius* and mount *Ætna*. From this last country of christians he held on his course south west, till he came into only 5 degrees of north latitude, where he was becalmed, Having

Trinity  
island dis-  
covered.

to chuse those  
go the least,  
at. So wretch-  
out any other  
the island being  
thout trees or  
of certain wells  
ackith. Thole  
nd, which were  
e, had no other  
l goats and salt  
He said, there  
se goats on the  
they killed to the  
and ducats, and  
ht goats, carried  
the island, whose  
he king of Portu-  
That very often  
months without  
to eat, except  
which reason he  
provision he had  
his companions,  
men, went out  
iving it required  
had need of, he  
in great haste.

June, he failed  
the chief of Cabo  
the next day in the  
church, sending  
and bulls to carry  
serving it was a  
himself so soon  
rejudicial delays  
stay no longer;  
men should sick-  
ealthy. He says,  
that island, he  
star; but there  
s, infomuch that  
s were sick, and  
colour.

the continent;  
North-Star.

of Cabo Verde;  
gh land on the  
ce, looks like a  
e at the east end,  
s; whence before  
usually breaks  
t Tenerif, Vesu-  
From this last  
ld on his course  
only 5 degrees  
was becalmed,  
having

having been till then continually attended by the fog we mentioned above. The calm lasted eight days, with such violent heat, that it almost burnt the ships; and there was no man could abide under deck, and had it not rained sometimes, and the sun been clouded, he thought they would have been burnt alive together with the ships; for the first day of the calm, which was fair, the heat was so violent, that nothing could withstand it, had not God miraculously relieved them with the aforesaid rain and fog. Having therefore got off a little to the northward, into seven degrees of latitude, he resolved not to make any more to the south, but sail due-west, at least till he saw how the weather settled; because he had lost many cask with the great heat, the hoops flew, and the corn and all provisions were scorched up. About the middle of July, he says, he very carefully took the latitude, and found a wonderful difference between that and the parallel of the *Azores*. For there, when the *Charles's Wain* was on the right, that is, east, then the *North-Star* was lowest, and from that time began to rise; so that when the *Charles's Wain* was over thead the *North-Star* was two degrees and an half higher, and being once passed that, began again to descend, the same five degrees it ascended. This, he says, he observed several times very carefully, the weather being very fit for that purpose. But that where he was at this time in the torrid zone,

Martine  
circati-  
on,

Santiago  
island.

it happened quite contrary; for when the *Charles's Wain* was in its greatest elevation, he found the *North-Star* six degrees high, and when the *Charles's Wain* came to the west, in six hours space he found the *North-Star* eleven degrees high; and then in the morning, when the *Charles's Wain* was quite depressed, though it could not be seen because of the inclination of the pole, the *North-Star* was six degrees high, so that the difference was ten degrees, and it made a circle, whose diameter was ten degrees, whereas in the other place it made but five lowering the position; for there it is lowest when the other is west, and here when in its elevation. The reason of it he thought very difficult to comprehend, and not being completely master of it, without farther reflexions on it, he says, he is of opinion, that in what relates to the circumference of the stars orb, it may be said, that at the equinoctial the full appears, and the nearer a man goes to the pole it seems the less, because the heaven is more oblique. As for the variation, I believe the star has the quality of all the four quarters, as has the needle, which if touched to the east-side points to the east, and so of the west, north, and south; and therefore he that makes the compass, covers the load-stone with a cloth, all but the north part of it, viz. that which has the virtue to make the steel point north.

# C H A P. LXVIII.

*How the admiral discovered the island of the Trinity, and saw the continent.*

ON Tuesday the last day of July, 1498. the admiral having sailed many days west, infomuch, that in his judgment, the *Caribbee* islands were north of him, he resolved not to hold that course any longer, but to make for *Hispaniola*, not only because he was in great want of water, but also because all his provisions perished, and he was afraid lest during his absence some mutiny or disorder had happened among the people he left there, as in effect there had, as we shall show hereafter. Therefore altering his course from the west, he stood north, thinking to light on some of the *Caribbee* islands, there to refresh his men, and take in wood and water, whereof he had great want.

Trinity  
island dis-  
covered.

As he was thus sailing one day about noon, *Alonso Perez Norando*, a sailor of the town of *Gulfoa*, going up to the round-top, saw land to the westward at about fifteen leagues distance, and there appeared three mountains all at the same time,

but not long after they perceived the same land stretched out towards the north-east, as far as the eye could reach, and that did not seem to be the end. Having given thanks to God, said the *Salve Regina*, and other prayers, the seamen use in time of distress or joy; the admiral called that land the island of the *Trinity*, as well because he had before thoughts of giving that name to the first land that he found, as in return, because it had pleased God to show him three mountains all together, as has been said. He sailed due-west, to make a cape that appeared to the south of him, and making for the south-side of the island, till he came to an anchor, five leagues beyond a point, which he called *de la Galera*, or of the galley, because of a rock that lay near the point, and at a distance look'd like a galley under sail. Having now but one cask of water for all his ships crew, and the other ships being in the same condition, there being no conveniency here to take

## The first Discovery of

take in any, on *Wednesday* following in the morning he continued his course still west, and cast anchor at another point, which he called *de la Plaga*, or, of the strand, where the people landed, and took water, in a delicate brook, without seeing any town or people there, tho' along the coast they left behind they had seen many houses and towns. True it is, they found the tokens of fishermen, who had fled, leaving behind them some of their fishing tackle. They also saw the prints of the feet of beasts, which seem'd to be of goats, and saw the bones of one, but the head being without horns, they thought it might be of some catamountain, or monkey, as they afterwards found it to be, seeing abundance of those cats in *Paria*. This same day, being the first of *August*, sailing between cape *Galera* and that of *la*

*Plaga* southwards, they discovered the continent, about twenty five leagues distance, as they guessed; but they thinking it another island, called it *Isla Santa*, or Holy Island. The land they saw of the *Trinity*, between the two points, was thirty leagues in length east and west, without any harbour, but all the country very pleasant with trees down to the sea, and abundance of towns. This space they ran in a very short time, because the current of the sea set so very violent westward, that it looked like a rapid river both day and night, and at all hours, notwithstanding the tide flow'd and ebb'd along the shore above forty paces, as happens at *St. Lucar de Barrameda*, when there are floods; for though the water rise and fall never so much, yet it never ceases running towards the sea.

### C H A P. LXIX.

*How the admiral sailed to the cape, called Puntal del Arenal, and a canoe came out to talk to him.*

Perceiving they could have no account of the people of the country at this cape, and that there was no conveniency of taking water, without excessive labour, and there was no conveniency of careening the ships and getting provisions, the next being the second of *August*, the admiral went on to another point of land, which seemed to be most westerly in that island, and called it *del Arenal*, where he came to an anchor, thinking the easterly winds which reign there would not be so troublesome to the boats in going backwards and forwards. On the way before they came to this point, a canoe began to follow them with twenty five men in it, and stopped at about a cannon-shot distance, calling out and talking very loud. Nothing could be understood, though it was supposed they enquired who our men were, and whence they came, as the other *Indians* used to do at first: there being no possibility of persuading them with any words to come aboard, they began to show them several things, that they might covet to have them, such as little bras basons, looking-glasses, and other things, the rest of the *Indians* used to make great account of. But tho' this drew them a little, yet

they soon stopped again, and therefore the more to allure them, the admiral ordered one to get upon the poop with a taber and pipe, and some young fellows to dance. As soon as the *Indians* saw it, they put themselves into a posture of defence, laying hold of their targets, and shooting their arrows at those that danced, who by the admirals command, that those people might not go unpunished, or condemn the christians, leaving their dance began to shoot with their cross bows, so that they were glad to draw off, and made to another caraval, clapping close to its side without any apprehension. The pilot of the ship went over into the canoe and gave them some things they were very well pleased with, and said, if they had been ashore they would have brought him bread from their houses, and so they went towards land, nor would they in the ship stop e'er a one, for fear of displeasing the admiral. The account they gave of them, was, that they were well shaped people, and whiter than those of the other islands, and that they wear their hair long, like women, bound with small strings, and covered their privities with little clouts.

Indians of  
the Trini-  
ty.

### C H A P.



## CHAP. LXX.

*Of the danger the ships were in, entering the mouth of the channel, they called Boca del Drago, or, the Dragon's Mouth; and how Paria was discovered, being the first discovery on the continent.*

AS soon as the ships had anchored at Punta del Arenal, the admiral sent the boats ashore for water, and to get some information of the Indians, but they could do neither, that country being very low, and unpeopled. He therefore ordered them the next day to dig trenches on the island, and by good luck they found them ready made and full of excellent water, and it was thought the fishermen had made them. Having taken what they wanted, the admiral resolved to proceed on to another mouth or channel which appeared towards the north-west, which he afterwards called Boca del Drago, or, the Dragon's Mouth, to distinguish it from that where he was, to which he had given the name of Boca de la Serpe, or, the Serpent's Mouth. These two mouths or channels, like the Dardanelles, were made by the two westernmost points of the Trinity island, and two others of the continent, and lay almost north and south of one another. In the midst of that, where the admiral anchored, was another rock, which he called El Gallo, that is the Cock. Through this mouth, he called Boca de Serpe, the water continually ran so furiously northward, as if it had been the mouth of some great river, which was the reason of giving it that name, because of the fright it put them into. For as they

lay very securely at anchor, there came a stronger stream of water than usual, with a hideous noise, running through that mouth northward. And another current running out of the gulph now called Paria, opposite to that before-mentioned, they met with hideous roaring, and caused the sea to swell up like a high mountain, or ridge of hills along that channel, which mountain soon came towards the ships to the great terror of all men fearing they should over-set. But it pleased God it passed under, or rather lifted them up without doing any harm, though it drew the anchor of one of them, carrying the vessel away, but by the help of their sails they escaped the danger, not without mortal fear of being lost. That furious current being passed, the admiral considering the danger he was in there, stood for the Dragon's Mouth, which was between the north point of the Trinity island, and the east point of Paria; yet went not through it at that time, but sailed along the south coast of Paria westward, believing it to be an island, and hoping to find a way out, northwards towards Hispaniola. And though there were many ports along that coast of Paria, he would put into none, all the sea being a harbour locked in with the continent.

*The gulph of Paria.*

*A wonderful swelling of water.*

## CHAP. LXXI.

*How there was some gold and pearls found in Paria, and a people of good conversation.*

THE admiral being at an anchor on the Fifth of August, and it being his particular devotion never to weigh on a Sunday, he sent the boats ashore, where they found abundance of fruit of the same sort they had seen in the other islands; great numbers of trees, and signs of people that had fled for fear of the christians. But being unwilling to lose time, he sailed down the coast fifteen leagues farther without going into any harbour, for fear he should miss of wind to bring him out. Being at an anchor on the coast, at the end of these fifteen leagues, there came out a canoe to the caravel called El Borreo, with three men in it, and the pilot knowing how much the admiral coveted to receive some information from those people, he pretended to

talk to them, and let himself fall into the canoe, and the Spaniards in the boat took those three men, and carried them to the admiral, who made very much of them, and sent them ashore with many gifts, where there appeared abundance of Indians. These hearing the good account the three gave them, came all in their canoes to barter, for such things as they had, which were much the same, as had been seen in the islands before discovered, only that here they had no targets, nor poisoned arrows, which these people do not use, but only the Canibals. Their drink was a sort of liquor as white as milk, and another somewhat blackish, tasting like green wine made of grapes not quite ripe, but they could not learn what fruit it was made of. They wore cotton cloths

*Indians go aboard.*

VLO. II.

7 K

well

## The first Discovery of

well wove, of several colours, about the bigness of a handkerchief, some bigger and some less; and what they most valued of our things, was brass, and especially bells. The people seem to be more civilized and tractable than those of *Hipaniola*. They cover their nakedness with one of those cloths above-mentioned, and have another wrapped about their head. The women cover nothing, nor even their privities; the same they do in the *Trinity* island. They saw nothing of value here, except some little plates of gold they hung about their necks; for which reason, and because the admiral could not stay to dive into the secrets of the country, he ordered six of those *Indians* to be taken, and continued his voyage westward, believing that land of *Paria*, which he called the *Holy Island*, was no continent. Soon after another island appeared towards the south, and another no less than that towards the west, all high land, sowed and well peopled; and the *Indians* had more plates of gold about their necks than the others, and abundance of *Guaniis*, which is very low gold. They said that was produced in other western islands inhabited by people that eat men. The women had strings of beads about their arms,

and among them very fine large and small pearls strung, some whereof were got in exchange to send their catholic majesties as a sample. Being asked where they found those things, they made signs to show that in the oyster-shells which were taken westward of that land of *Paria*, and beyond it towards the north. Upon this, the admiral staid there to know more of that good discovery, and sent the boats ashore, where all the people of the country that had flocked together, appeared so tractable and friendly, that they importuned the christians to go along with them to a house not far off, where they gave them to eat, and a great deal of that wine of theirs. Then from that house, which it is likely was the king's palace, they carried them to another, which was his sons, and shewed them the same kindness. They were all in general whiter than any they had seen in the *Indies*, and of better aspects and shapes, with their hair cut short by their ears, after the *Spanish* fashion. From them they understood that land was called *Paria*, and that they would be glad to be in amity with the christians. Thus they departed from them, and returned to the ships.

*The first pearls in the west Indies.*

*A courteous and obliging people.*

*Capt. Concha Margarita island.*

### C H A P. LXXII.

*How the admiral passed through Boca del Drago, and the danger he was in there.*

THE admiral holding on his voyage westward, they still found less and less water, inasmuch that being come through four or five fathom, they found but two and a half at ebb, for the tide differed from that at the *Trinity* island; for at the *Trinity*, the water swelled three fathom, and here being forty five leagues to the westward, it rose but one; and there always, whether ebb or flood, the current ran west; and here upon the ebb they ran east, and upon the flood west; there the water was but brackish, here it was like river water. The admiral perceiving this difference, and how little water he found, durst proceed no farther in his ship, which required three fathom water, being of a hundred ton, and therefore came to an anchor on that coast, which was very safe, being a port like a horseshoe, locked with that land on all sides. However, he sent the little caraval, called *El Boreo*, or the post, to discover whether there was any pass westward among those islands. She having gone but a little way, returned the next day, being the eleventh of *August*, saying, that at the westernmost point of that sea, there was a mouth or opening, two leagues over from north

to south, and within it a round bay, with four other little bays, one towards each quarter of heaven, that from each of them flowed a river, whose water made that sea so sweet, which was yet much sweeter farther in, adding, that all that land which seemed to be islands, was one and the same continent; that they had every where four or five fathom water, and such abundance of those weeds they saw in the ocean, that they hindered their sailing. The admiral therefore being certain he could not get out westward, that same day stood back to the eastward, designing to pass the straits, which he saw between the land the *Indians* call *Paria*, and the *Trinity*. In this strait there are four little isthms east near the point of the *Trinity*, which he called cape *Boca*, because it was blunt, west upon the point of the continent, which he called cape *Lapa*, and in the middle. The reason why he called this the *Dragon's Mouth*, was, because it is very dangerous, by reason of the abundance of fresh water that struggles to get out there into the sea, and made three boisterous channels, extending from east to west the width of the strait. And because as he was sailing through, the wind failed

*Boca del Drago.*

*Account of the gulph of Paria.*

arge and small  
were got in ex-  
majesties as a  
ney found thofe  
how that in the  
en westward of  
ond it towards  
e admiral staid  
good difcovery,  
where all the  
had flocked to-  
e and friendly,  
iftians to go a-  
e not far off,  
t, and a great  
Then from  
was the king's  
another, which  
them the fame  
general whiter  
the Indies, and  
with their hair  
the Spanifh fa-  
nderftood that  
that they would  
the chriftians.  
m, and return-

The fe-  
pearls in  
the weft  
Indie.

A courtier  
and oblig-  
ing people.

failed him, and he was in danger of being drove on fome fand or rock; therefore he with reafon gave it a name answerable to that of the other mouth, where he was in no lefs danger as was faid above. But it pleas'd God, that what they moft dreaded fhould be their greateft fafety, the ftrength of the current carrying them off. Therefore on *Monday* the 17th of *Auguft*, he began to fail westward along the coaft of *Paria*, in order to ftand over afterwards for *Hifpaniola*, giving thanks to God, who deliver'd him from fo many troubles and dan-

gers, ftill fhowing him new countries full of peaceable people and great wealth, efpecially that, which he certainly concluded to be the continent, becaufe of the great extent of that gulph of pearls, of the rivers that ran from it, of the fea, which was all fweet water; and by the authority of *Eſdras*, in the 8th chapter of the 4th book; where he fays, that dividing the globe into feven parts only, one of them is covered with water; for all the *Indians* of the *Caribbee* iflands have told him, there was a vaft land fouthward.

## C H A P. LXXIII.

*How the admiral flood over from the continent to Hispaniola.*

THE admiral failing along westward on the coaft of *Paria*, ftill fell farther off from it towards the north weft, the currents in being calm driving him that way; fo that on *Wednesday* the 15th of *Auguft*, he left the cape, he called *de las Conchas*, or of fhells, fouth of him, and the ifland *Margarita* weft, which name he gave this ifland, perhaps by divine infpiration, becaufe clofe by it lies that of *Cubagua*, where an infinite quantity of pearls has been found; and in *Hifpaniola* and *Jamaica* at his return he called fome *Mountains of Gold*, where afterwards was found the greateft quantity and largeft pieces that ever were carried from thence into *Spain*. But to return to his voyage, he held on his courfe by fix iflands, which he called *las Guardas*, or the guards, and three others more to the north, *los Teſtigos*, or the witneſſes. And though they ftill difcover'd much land of *Paria* weftward, yet the admiral fays, he could not from this time give fuch an account of it as he would wifh, becaufe through or ermuch watching, his eyes were inflam'd, and therefore was forced to take moft of his obfervations from the failors and pilots. He alfo fays, that this

Cape Con-  
chas  
Margarita  
ifland

fame night, being *Thursday* the 16th of *Auguft*, the compaſſes which till now had not varied, did at this time, at leaft a point and a half, and fome of them two points, wherein there could be no miſtake, becaufe feveral perfons had always watch'd to obferve it. Admiring at this, and griev'd that he had not the opportunity of following the courfe of the continent, he held on north-weft, till on *Monday* the 20th of *Auguft* he came to an anchor between *Beaca*, and *Hifpaniola*; whence he ſent a letter by ſome *Indians* to his brother the *Adelantado*, acquainting him with his fafe arrival and ſucceſs. He was furpriz'd to find himſelf fo far weftward; for though he knew the force of the currents fail'd, yet he did not think it had been fo much. Therefore to the end his proviſions might not fail him in time of need, he flood to the eaftward for *S. Domingo*, into which harbour he fail'd on the 30th of *Auguft*; for here the lieutenant his brother had appointed the city to be built on the eaft-fide of the river, where it ftands at preſent, and was called *Santo Domingo* in memory of his father, whoſe name was *Dominick*.

S. Domin-  
go in Hif-  
paniola.

## C H A P. LXXIV.

*The rebellion and troubles the admiral met with in Hispaniola, raiſed by the wickedneſs of one Francis Roldan, whom he had left as alcalde mayor, or chief juſtice.*

THE admiral being come to *S. Domingo*, almoſt blind with over-watching, he hoped there to reſt himſelf after his voyage, and find peace among his people, but found all quite contrary, for all the people in the ifland were in diſorder and rebellion; for abundance of thoſe he had left were dead, and of thoſe that remain'd, above 160 were ſick of the *French* pox, and be-

ſides that many were in rebellion with *Roldan*, he found not the three ſhips, we ſaid he ſent before him from the *Canary* iflands. Of theſe things it is requiſite we ſpeak orderly, beginning from the time the admiral ſet out for *Spain*, which as we ſaid, was in *March* 1496, 30 months before his return: the firſt part of which time the people continued pretty quiet in hopes of his return

he was in

und bay, with  
towards each  
n each of them  
made that ſea-  
ch ſweeter far-  
at land which  
e and the fame  
ery where four  
uch abundance  
the ocean, that  
The admiral  
uld not get out  
od back to the  
the ſtreights,  
and the *Indians*  
In this ſtreight  
eaft near the  
he called cape  
weft upon the  
he called cape  
The reaſon why  
touth, was, be-  
y reaſon of the  
at ſtruggles to  
and made three  
ng from eaſt to  
ght. And be-  
ugh, the wind  
failed

Boca del  
Drago.

Rebellion  
among the  
Spaniards.

return, and of being speedily relieved : But the first year being pass'd, the *Spanish* provisions failing, and sickness and sufferings increasing, they began to be dissatisfied with what was, and to despair of any better ; so that the complaints of many discontented persons were heard, who never want some body to stir them up, desiring to be head of a party, as was now done by one *Francis Roldan*, born at *Torre de D. Ximeno*, whom the admiral had left in such power among both *Christians* and *Indians*, by making him chief justice, that he was as much obey'd as himself. For this reason it is to be suppos'd there was not that good understanding between him and the admiral's lieutenant, as ought to have been for the publick good, as time and experience made it appear. For the admiral, neither returning himself, nor sending any supplies, this *Roldan* began to think of possessing himself of the island, designing for this purpose to murder the admiral's brothers, as those that could best oppose his rebellion, and waited an opportunity to put this in execution. It happened that the lieutenant of the island, one of the admiral's brothers, went to a province in the west, called *Xaragua*, 80 leagues from *Isabella*, where the said *Roldan* remained in his employ, but subordinate to *D. James*, second brother to the admiral. This *Roldan* was so offended at, that whilst the lieutenant was taking order how the king of the island should pay tribute to their catholic majesties, as the admiral had rated all the *Indians*, *Orlando* began underhand to draw some of them over to his party. But that it might not prove fatal to rise on a sudden, and without some pretence : that which *Roldan* laid hold of was, that there was a caraval ashore at *Isabella*, built by the lieutenant of the island, to send to *Spain* in case of necessity, and there being no launching of it for want of tackle and other necessities, *Roldan* feign'd and gave out there was some other reason for it, and that it behov'd the publick, that caraval should be fitted out, that some of them might go to *Spain* in it, to give an account of their sufferings. Thus upon pretence of the publick good, he pers'd that it might be launch'd, and *D. James Columbus* not consenting to it for want of

tackle, as has been said, *Roldan* began more boldly to treat with some about launching the caraval in despite of him ; telling those, he thought to agree with him, that if the lieutenant, and *D. James* were disspleas'd at it, the reason was because they would secure to themselves the dominion of the country, and keep them in subjection, without any ship that might carry the news of their revolt to their catholic majesties. And since they were satisfied and convinced of the cruelty and ill-nature of the lieutenant, and what a restless life he led them, building towns and forts, and that they had no hopes of the admiral's coming with supplies, it was fit they should take that caraval and procure their liberty, and not suffer themselves under pretence of pay, which they never receiv'd, to be kept under by a foreigner, whereas it was in their power to live at ease and in plenty ; for that whatsoever could be had in the island would be equally divided among them, and they would be serv'd by the *Indians* to their own content, without being so much in subjection, that they could not take to wife any *Indian* woman they pleas'd. That the lieutenant made them keep the three vows of religious men ; and besides that, they wanted not for fasts and disciplines, as also imprisonment, and other punishments, which they endured for the least fault. Therefore, since he had the rod of justice and regal authority, which secured them against any thing that might befall them on this account, he advis'd them to do what he directed, wherein they could not do amiss. With these and the like words, proceeding from the hatred he bore the lieutenant, he drew so many over to his own party, that one day when the lieutenant was come back from *Xaragua* to *Isabella*, some of them resolv'd to stab him, looking upon it as so easy a matter, that they had provided a halter to hang him up after he was dead. What at present the more incens'd them, was the imprisoning of one *Barabona*, a friend to the conspirators, against whom, if God had not put it into the heart of the lieutenant not to proceed to execution of justice at that time, they had then certainly murdered him.

Further  
progress  
of the re-  
volt.

#### CHAP. LXXV.

*How Francis Roldan endeavour'd to make the town of Conception mutiny, and plundered Isabella.*

**F**Francis Roldan, perceiving he had mis'd of the murder of the lieutenant, and his conspiracy was discovered, he resolv'd

to possess himself of the town and fort of the *Conception*, thinking from thence he might easily subdue the island. It fell out con-

Roldan began more about launching of him; telling with him, that James were distressed because they the dominion of em in subjection, at carry the news sholick majesties. ed and convinced re of the lieuten- life he led them, and that they al's coming with should take that liberty, and not retence of pay, to be kept un- as it was in their in plenty; for had in the island mong them, and Indians to their ing so much in not take to wife ased. That the the three vows sides that, they iplines, as also punishments, the least fault. e rod of justice e secured them t besaf them on to do what he not do amifs. ds, proceeding lieutenant, he wn party, that was come back me of them re- upon it as so ad provided a he was dead. ncens'd them, Barabona, a against whom, e heart of the execution of then certainly

Further progress of the rebels.

conveniently for his design, that he was near the said town; for whilst the lieutenant was abroad, he had been sent with 40 men about that province, to reduce the Indians that had revolted, with the same design of making themselves masters of that town, and destroying the christians. So that Roldan, under pretence of putting a stop to this evil, and punishing the Indians, gather'd his men at the residence of one of their Caciques, call'd Marche, designing to put his project in execution upon the first opportunity. But Ballester the commander of the fort, having some jealousy of him, he stood upon his guard, and acquainted the lieutenant of the island with the danger he was in, who with all speed, and what men he could gather, threw himself into the fort. Thither Roldan came upon a safe conduct, now his conspiracy was discovered, rather to observe by the lieutenant what might do him harm, than through any desire of coming to an accommodation, and with more boldness and impudence than became him, required the lieutenant to cause the caraval to be launched, or give him leave to launch it, which he and his friends would do. The lieutenant incensed at these words, answered, that neither he nor his friends were seamen, or knew what was proper to be done in that case; and that though they had known how to launch it, yet they could not fail in her for want of rigging, and other necessities, and therefore it would be only exposing the men and the caraval. And, forasmuch as the lieutenant understood that affair, as a seaman, and they not being such, knew nothing of it, therefore they varied in their judgments. These and other displeasing words having pass'd between them, Roldan went away in a passion, refusing to quit his rod of justice, or stand trial, as the lieutenant ordered, saying he would do both, when their majesties, whose the island was, commanded him; knowing he could expect no justice from him, because of the hatred he bore him, but that right or wrong he would find means to put him to death with shame: that in the mean while, not to exceed the bounds of reason, he would go and reside where he should bid him. But he at present appointing him the residence of the Cacique, James Columbus, he refused it, saying, there were not provisions there for his men, and that he would find a more convenient place. He set out towards Isabella, and having gathered 65

men, perceiving he could not launch the caraval, he plunder'd the magazines, he and his followers, taking away what arms, stuffs, and provisions they thought fit, D. James Columbus, who was there, not being able to oppose him, but would have been in danger, had he not retired to the fort with some friends and servants. Yet in the process afterwards drawn up on this subject, there were some that depos'd, that Roldan promised to submit to him, provided he would take his part against his own brother: which he refusing, and Roldan not being able to do him any further harm; as also fearing the succours that were coming from the lieutenant, he went out of town with all the mutineers, and falling on the cattle that graz'd thereabouts, they kill'd such as they lik'd to eat, and took the beasts of burthen to serve them in their journey, resolving to go into the province of Xaragha, whence the lieutenant was lately come, designing to settle there, that being the pleasantest and most plentiful part of the island, the people here being more civiliz'd and wiser than the rest of the natives of Hispaniola; but above all, because the women were the handsomest, and of the most pleasing conversation of any others, which most invited them to go thither. But that they might not go without making trial of their strength, before the lieutenant could increase his power, and punish them as they deserv'd, they resolv'd to take the town of the Conception in their way, to surprize it, and kill the lieutenant, and in case this did not succeed, to besiege him. The lieutenant having intelligence of their design, stood upon his guard, encouraging his men with good words, and promising them many gifts, and each of them two slaves. And forasmuch as he understood, that most of those that were with him, lik'd the life Roldan and his men led so well, that many of them gave ear to his messages; therefore Roldan having conceiv'd hopes that they would all go over to him, had the boldness to undertake that enterprise, which did not succeed as he expected. For the lieutenant, having provided as has been said, being himself a man of great resolution, and having the best men on his side, was resolv'd to do that by force of arms, which he could not compass by fair means and arguments. Having therefore gathered his men together, he march'd out of town to attack the rebels on the road.

mutiny, and

yn and fort of  
m thence he  
It fell out  
con-



## C H A P. LXXVI.

*How Francis Roldan incens'd the Indians against the lieutenant, and went away with his men to Xaragua.*

**F**Francis Roldan, perceiving he was so disappointed, and that not one of the lieutenants men came over to him, as he had expected, resolv'd to retire in time, and go away to *Xaragua* as he design'd at first, not daring to meet him, yet presum'd to talk contemptibly of him, and to stir up the *Indians*, where-ever he went, to rebel against him, telling them, the cause of his forsaking him was his being a man naturally revengeful and morose, as well towards the *Christians*, as *Indians*; and abominably covetous, imposing great burdens and tributes on them; which if they bore with, he would increase every year, tho' against their catholick majesties will; who requir'd nothing of their subjects but obedience, maintaining them in justice, liberty and peace; which, if they fear'd they should not be able to maintain, he with his friends and followers, would assist them to assert, and would declare himself their protector and deliverer. After which, they resolv'd to forbid paying the tribute, we said had been impos'd on them, by which means it could not be gathered of those that dwelt far from the lieutenant, nor durst he exact it of those near about him for fear of provoking them to join with the rebels. Yet this condescension towards them, had not so good an effect, but that as soon as the lieutenant was gone from the *Conception*, *Guarionex*, who was the principal *Cacique* of that province, with the assistance of *Roldan*, resolv'd to besiege the fort, and destroy the *Christians* that kept it. The better to effect it, he drew together all the *Caciques* of his party, and agreed with them privately, that every one should kill those that were within his precinct, because the territories in *Hispaniola* being too small, for any of them to maintain a great number of people, the *Christians* had been oblig'd to divide themselves into small parcels of eight or nine in each liberty. This gave the *Indians* hopes, that surprizing them all at the same time, they might have it in their power to suffer none to escape. But they having no other way of fixing a time, or or-

*Conspiracy of the Indians to destroy the Spaniards.*

dering any thing else that requires counting, but only by their fingers, they resolv'd, that every one should be ready to destroy the *Christians* at the next full moon. *Guarionex* having thus dispos'd his *Caciques* to put this in execution, the chiefest of them being desirous to gain honour, and looking upon the matter as very easie, and being no good astronomers, to know when the full moon was, fell on before the time appointed, and were forced to fly after many blows. He thinking to find assistance in *Guarionex* found his own ruin; for he put him to death, as he had deserv'd, for having caus'd the conspiracy to be discovered, and the *Christians* to be upon their guard. The rebels were not a little concern'd at this miscarriage; for as was reported, it had been contriv'd with their consent, and therefore they waited to see, whether *Guarionex* brought affairs to such terms, that joining with him they might destroy the lieutenant: But perceiving this did not succeed, they thought not themselves secure in the province where they were, but went away to *Xaragua*, still proclaiming themselves protectors of the *Indians*, whereas they were thieves in their actions and inclinations, having no regard to God or the world, but following their inordinate appetites; for every one stole what he could, and *Roldan* their leader more than all of them, persuading and commanding every *Cacique* to entertain him that could and would defend the *Indians* and rebels from paying the tribute the lieutenant demanded of them, tho' at the same time he under this pretence took much more from them; for from only one *Cacique*, whose name was *Manicacotex*, he received every three months, a calabash, containing three marks of pure gold, that is, a pound and a half, and to be the more sure of him, kept his son and nephew as hostages. He that reads this, must not wonder that we reduce the marks of gold to the measure of a calabash, which we do to show, that the *Indians* in these cases dealt by measure, because they never had any weights.

## C H A P. LXXVII.

*How the ships came from Spain with provisions and supplies.*

**T**HE *Christians* being thus divided, as has been said, and no ships yet coming from *Spain* with supplies, neither the lieu-

tenant, nor his brother *D. James*, could keep the people quiet, that had remained with them; for most of them being mean persons,

*The rebels refuse to submit.*

*Excessive at pilots comes the ship to the west of Hispaniola.*

and went away

requires count-  
ers, they resol-  
be ready to de-  
next full moon.  
ed his *Caciques*  
chiefest of them  
r, and looking  
ie, and being  
now when the  
re the time ap-  
fly after many  
d assistance in  
n, for he put  
serv'd, for ha-  
be discovered,  
on their guard.  
ie concern'd at  
as reported, it  
r consent, and  
whether *Gua-*  
terms, that  
ht destroy the  
his did not suc-  
mselfes secure  
were, but went  
claiming them-  
s, whereas they  
and inclinatio-  
God or the  
inordinate ap-  
what he could,  
ore than all of  
manding every  
at could and  
nd rebels from  
nant demanded  
time he under  
re from them;  
whose name  
d every three  
ng three marks  
nd and a half,  
him, kept his  
ges. He that  
that we reduce  
ature of a ca-  
w, that the *Ja-*  
y measure, be-  
ights.

es.

James, could  
had remained  
m being mean  
persons,

persons, and desirous to lead that easie life *Roldan* promis'd them, they durst not pu-  
nish the guilty, for fear of being forsaken;  
which made them so insolent, that it was  
impossible to keep them in order, and there-  
fore they were forced to bear with the af-  
fronts of the rebels. But it being God's  
will to afford them some comfort, it pleas'd  
him to order that the two ships should ar-  
rive, which, as was said before, had been sent  
a year after the admiral's departure from the  
*Indies*, not without great application us'd  
by him at court for fitting them out; for he,  
considering the nature of the country, the  
dispositions of the people he left behind,  
and the great danger that might accrue  
from his long absence, press'd for and ob-  
tain'd of their catholick majesties, that those  
two ships might be sent before, of 18 he  
had been ordered to fit out. The arrival  
of these, the supplies they brought of men  
and provisions, and the assurance that the  
admiral was safe arrived in *Spain*, encour-  
aged those that were with the lieutenant to  
serve him more faithfully, and made those  
that followed *Roldan*, apprehensive of be-  
ing punish'd. These being desirous to hear  
news, and furnish themselves with what  
they wanted, resolv'd to repair to *S. Do-*  
*mingo*, where the ships had put in, hoping  
to draw some of the men over to their  
party. But the lieutenant having intelli-  
gence of their march, and being nearer  
that harbour, he mov'd towards them to  
hinder their passage; and having left

The rebels  
obey to  
him.

guards on the passies, went to the port to  
see the ships, and order the affairs of that  
place. And being desirous the admiral  
should find the island in a peaceable condi-  
tion, and all troubles ended, he again made  
new overtures to *Roldan*, who was six  
leagues off with his men, sending to him  
for this purpose the commander of the two  
ships lately arriv'd, whose name was *Peter*  
*Fernandez Coronel*; as well because he was  
a man of worth and in authority, as because  
he hop'd his words would prove more effec-  
tual, since he as an eye witness, could cer-  
tify him of the admiral's arrival in *Spain*,  
the good reception he had found, and the  
willingness their majesties express'd to make  
him still greater. But the chief men among  
them, fearing the impression this messenger  
might make upon their followers, would not  
suffer him to speak in publick; so that they  
received him with their bows and arrows on  
the road, and he could only speak some  
few words to those that were appointed to  
hear him. Thus having done nothing, he  
returned to the town, and the rebels to  
their quarters in *Xaragua*, not without ap-  
prehensions, lest *Roldan* and some of the  
principal men of his gang should write to  
their friends that were with the lieutenant,  
desiring them when the admiral came, to  
intercede for them, since all their complaints  
were against the lieutenant, and not against  
the admiral himself, for which reason they  
desired to be restored to his favour.

#### C H A P. LXXVIII.

*How the three ships the admiral sent from the Canary islands arrived where the rebels were.*

HAVING spoke of the arrival of the two  
ships the admiral sent from *Spain* to  
*Hispaniola*, it is fit we give an account of the  
three that parted from him at the *Canary*  
islands, which proceeded on their voyage  
with fair winds till they came to the *Carib-*  
*bee* islands, which are the first that sailors  
meet with in their way to the port of *S.*  
*Domingo*. The pilots then not being so well  
acquainted with that voyage, as they have  
been since, it happened they knew not how  
to hit that port, and were carried away by  
the currents so far to westward, that they  
arrived in the province of *Xaragua*, where  
the rebels were, who as soon as they under-  
stood that those ships were out of their  
way, and knew nothing of their revolt,  
some of them went peaceably aboard, pre-  
tending they were there by the lieutenant's  
orders, the better to be supplied with pro-  
visions, and keep that country under. But

Exorcise  
of pilots  
carries the  
ship to the  
west of  
Hispaniola.

it being very easie for a secret, that is a-  
mong many, to be discovered, *Alonso San-*  
*cbez de Carvajal*, who was the skilfullest of  
the captains of those ships, being aware of  
the rebellion and discord, began immedi-  
ately to make overtures of peace to *Francis*  
*Roldan*, thinking to bring him to submit to  
the lieutenant. But the familiar conversa-  
tion the rebels had before entertain'd aboard  
the ships, was the cause that his persuasions  
had not the desired effect; for *Roldan* had  
privately obtain'd promises from many of  
those that came fresh out of *Spain*, that they  
would stay with him, and by that accession  
he hoped to become still greater. *Carvajal*  
therefore finding things were not in such a  
posture, that he might hope for a speedy  
conclusion of what he had in hand, thought  
it convenient, with the advice of the other  
two captains, that the people they brought  
under pay to work in the mines, and other  
employ-

*With men  
deject to  
the rebels.*

employments, should go by land to *S. Domingo*, because the winds and currents being set there against that voyage, it was possible they might not perform it in two or three months; so that they would not only consume the provisions, but the men might fall sick, and the time be lost, which ought to have been employed in the service they came for. Having agreed upon this, it fell to *John Anthony Columbus* his lot to march with the men, which were 40, to *Arana* to sail about with the ships, and to *Carvajal* to stay and endeavour to bring the rebels to an accommodation. *John Anthony Columbus* setting forward the 2d day after they landed, those labourers and vagabonds sent over to work, went away to the rebels, leaving their captain with only six or seven men that stuck to him. He seeing their base infidelity, without apprehending any danger, went to *Roldan*, and told him, That since he pretended to promote the service of their catholic majesties, it was not reasonable he should suffer those men, that were come to people and cultivate the country, and to follow their callings with wages in hand, to stay there and lose their time, without doing any thing of that they were obliged to; and that if he had turn'd

them away, it had been a token that his words and his actions agreed; that his staying there caused the division and disorder with the lieutenant, and not any inclination in him to obstruct the king's service. But that which had happened turning to the account of *Roldan* and his followers, as well for the carrying on their design, as because the crime committed by many is generally soonest conniv'd at; he excus'd himself as to that point, saying, He could not use violence towards them, and that his was a religious order, which refused no man. *John Anthony* knowing it was not the part of a discreet man to expose himself to the danger of pressing farther without hopes of success, resolv'd to go aboard again with those few that follow'd him; and therefore that they might not be serv'd so by those that were left, they two captains sail'd immediately with their two ships towards *S. Domingo*, with the wind as contrary as they had fear'd; for they spent many days, spoil'd their provisions, and *Carvajal's* ship was much damaged upon certain sands, where she lost her rudder, and sprung a leak, so that they had much to do to bring her in.

#### CHAP. LXXIX.

*How the captains of the ships that came from Xaragua, found the admiral at S. Domingo.*

*The admiral  
endeavouring  
to reduce the  
rebels.*

THE captains with their ships, arriving at *S. Domingo*, in their return from *Xaragua*, found the admiral there, after his discovery of the continent. He being fully inform'd of the condition of the rebels, and having seen the process his lieutenant had made against them, tho' the crime was plainly made out to deserve severe punishment, yet he thought fit to form a new process, and give their majesties an account of it, resolving at the same time to use all the moderation he could in this matter, and endeavouring to reduce them by fair means. For which reason, and that neither they nor any others, might have cause to complain of him, or say, he kept them there by force, he made proclamation on the 12th of *September*, giving leave to all that would return to *Spain*, and promising them free passage and provisions. And being inform'd on the other hand, That *Roldan* was coming towards *S. Domingo* with some of his men, he ordered *Michael Ballester*, commander of the *Conception*, to secure his own town and fort; and in case *Roldan* came that way, he should tell him from the admiral, that he was

much concerned at his sufferings, and all that was past, and would have no more said of it, granting a general pardon to all, and desiring him to come away immediately to the admiral, without fearing any thing, that by his advice things might be ordered, as was for their majesties service; and if he required any safe conduct, he would send it him in such form as he required. *Ballester* return'd answer on the 14th of *February*, That he had received certain information, that *Riquelme* was the day before come to the town of *Bonao*, and that *Adrian* and *Roldan*, who were the ring-leaders, would meet there in seven or eight days, at which time he might there apprehend them, as he did. For having discours'd them according to the instructions given him, he found them obstinate and unmannerly. *Roldan* telling him, They were not come to treat, nor did they desire, or care for peace, for he had the admiral and his authority at his beck, either to support, or suppress it, as he pleas'd; and that they must not talk to him of any accommodation, till they had sent him all the *Indians* taken at the siege of the *Conception*, since they had met together

token that his  
that his staying  
and disorder with  
inclination in  
service. But that  
g to the account  
as well for the  
as because the  
generally soon-  
d himself as to  
uld not use vio-  
that his was a re-  
d no man. John  
not the part of a  
self to the dan-  
without hopes of  
board again with  
and therefore  
v'd so by those  
prains sail'd im-  
ships towards S.  
contrary as they  
ent many days,  
Caravajal's ship  
a certain sands,  
r, and sprung a  
ch to do to bring

the admiral at

offerings, and all  
ave no more said  
ardon to all, and  
y immediately to  
ring any thing,  
ight be ordered,  
vice; and if he  
he would send  
required. Bal-  
e 14th of Febru-  
certain informa-  
day before come  
that Adrian and  
g-leaders, would  
at days, at which  
reheard them, as  
ours'd them ac-  
s given him, he  
mannerly. Rol-  
ere not come to  
or care for peace,  
his authority at  
t, or suppress it,  
ey must not talk  
dation, till they  
ians taken at the  
nce they had met  
together

General  
suspect's  
suspect's

together to serve the king, and upon his promise of security. Other things he added, by which it appeared, he would make no agreement, but what was much to his advantage. To this purpose he demanded, that the admiral should send *Caravajal* to him, because he would treat with no other but him, he being a man that would hear reason, and had discretion, as he had found by experience, when the three ships, as has been said, were at *Xaragua*. This answer made the admiral suspect *Caravajal*, and not without much cause.

First, because before *Caravajal* was at *Xaragua*, where these rebels then were, they had often writ and sent messages to their friends that were with the lieutenant, telling them, they would come and deliver themselves up to the admiral as soon as he arrived, and therefore they desired them to intercede for them, and appease him.

Secondly, because, since they did this as soon as they heard there were two ships come to the assistance of the lieutenant, they had much more cause to perform it, knowing the admiral was not come, had not the long conference *Caravajal* had with them prevented it.

Thirdly, because if he would have done his duty, he might have kept *Koldan*, and the chief men of his gang prisoners, aboard his caraval, they having been two days aboard without any security given.

Fourthly, because knowing as he did, that they were in rebellion, he ought not to suffer them to buy aboard the ships, as they did, 56 swords, and 60 cross-bows.

Fifthly, because there being some proofs that the men who were to land with *John Anthony* to go to *S. Domingo*, would join the rebels, he ought not to suffer them to land, or at least when they were gone over to them, he ought to have been more industrious to endeavour to recover them.

Sixthly, because he gave out that he came to the *Indies* as companion to the admiral, that nothing might be done without him, for fear the admiral should commit some offence.

Seventhly, because *Roldan* had writ to the admiral by *Caravajal* himself, acquainting him, that he was drawing near to *S. Domingo* with his men, by the advice of *Caravajal*, to be the nearer to treat of an accommodation, when the admiral arrived in *Hispaniola*; and now he was come, his actions not suiting with his letter, it appeared he had rather invited him to come thither, to the end that if the admiral had been long coming, or had not come at all, he as the admiral's associate, and *Roldan* as

Vol. II.

chief justice, might govern the island in despite of the lieutenant.

Eighthly, because at the same time that the other captains came with the three caravals to *S. Domingo*, he came by land attended by a guard of the rebels, and one of the chief of them called *Gamir*, who had been two days and two nights with him aboard his ship.

Ninthly, because he writ to the rebels when they came to *Bonao*, and sent them presents and provisions.

Tenthly, and lastly, because, besides that the said rebels would not treat with anybody but him, they all unanimously said, if there had been occasion, they would have taken him for their captain.

Yet the admiral on the other side, considering that *Caravajal* was a discreet prudent person, and a gentleman, and that every one of those arguments might be answered, and perhaps what he had been told was not true, and looking upon him, as one that would not do any thing contrary to his duty, having a great desire to put out that fire, he resolv'd to consult with all the chief men he had about him, about *Roldan's* answer, and resolve upon what was to be done on this occasion. All agreeing upon it, he sent *Caravajal*, with

The rebels  
reject the  
admiral's  
offers.

*Ballester*, to treat, who had no other answer from *Roldan*, but that since they had not brought the *Indians* he demanded, they should not without them talk of any accommodation. *Caravajal* discreetly answering to these words, made so taking a discourse, that he mov'd *Roldan* and three or four of the chief men to go wait upon the admiral and agree with him; but the others disliking of it, as *Roldan* and the others were mounting their horses to go with *Caravajal* to the admiral, they fell upon them, saying, they would not allow them to go, and that if any agreement was to be made, it should be drawn up in writing, that they might all know what was doing: So that after some days pass'd upon this resolution, on the 20th of October, *Roldan* by the consent of all his men, writ a letter to the admiral, laying the blame of their separation on the lieutenant; and telling the admiral, that since he had not in writing sent them security to come and give an account of themselves, they had resolved to send him their demands in writing, which were the reward of what they had hitherto done, as shall appear hereafter. Though their proposals were extravagant and insolent, yet the commander *Ballester*, the next day writ to the admiral, extolling *Caravajal's* moving discourse, and

7 M

saying

saying, that since it was not of force to remove those people from their wicked design, nothing less than granting them what they demanded would prevail; for he found them so resolute, that he looked upon it as most certain, that most of the people that were with his lordship would go over to the rebels. And tho' he might rely on his servants and men of honour, yet they would not be able to withstand such a number, many daily resorting to them, which the admiral already knew by experience; for when Roldan was near *S. Domingo*, he muster'd all that were fit to bear arms, if it were requisite, and observ'd, that some feigning themselves sick, and some lame, he had not found above 70 men, of which there were not 40 that he could confide in. For which reason, the next day, being the 17th of *October* 1498 the aforelaid Roldan, and the chief of his followers, who would have gone to the admiral, sent him a letter subscribed by them, telling him, they had withdrawn from the lieutenant to save their lives, he having a design to destroy them; and that they being his lordship's servants, whose coming they had expected, as of one, that would look upon what they had done complying with their duty, as good service, they had hindred their people from doing harm to any that belong'd to his lordship, as they might easily have done. But that since he was come, and was so far from thinking, that he insist'd upon ta-

king revenge, and doing them harm, that they might with honour do what they had undertaken, and be at liberty to do it, they took leave of him and his service. Before this letter was delivered to the admiral, he had sent Roldan an answer. Caravajal, whom he sent to him, telling him what confidence he always repos'd in him, and what a good account he had given his catholick majesty of them, adding, that he did not write to him for fear of some inconvenience, if his letter should be seen by the common sort, which might redound to his disadvantage, and therefore instead of hand and seal, he had sent that person to him, in whom he knew how much he confided, and might regard what he said, as if it were under his seal, which was the commander Ballester; and therefore he might consider what was proper to be done, and he should find him most ready to comply. On the 18th of *October*, he ordered five ships to depart for *Spain*, sending their catholick majesties by them, a most particular account of affairs, and saying, he had kept those ships till then, believing that Roldan and his men would have gone away in them, as they had given out at first; and that the other three he kept with him, were fitting out for his brother to go in them to pursue the discovery of the continent of *Paria*, and take order about the fishery and trade for pearls, a sample whereof he sent them by *Arogial*.

## C H A P. LXXX.

*How Francis Roldan went to treat with the admiral, but came to no agreement with him.*

Roldan having received the admiral's letter, answer'd the third day, seeming to incline to do all he order'd him, but his men not allowing him to go to treat without a safe-conduct, he desir'd him to send one, drawn up according to those heads he sent under his hand, and sign'd by the chief men about him. This safe-conduct was immediately sent him by the admiral on the 26th of *October*, and Roldan having received it, soon came, but rather with a design to draw some body over to him, than to conclude any thing, as appeared by his impudent proposals. Thus he return'd without concluding any thing, saying, He would give his company an account of matters, and write word what they resolv'd on. And that there might be some body from the admiral to treat and sign what was agreed on, the admiral's steward went with him, his name was *Salamanca*. After much talk, Roldan sent articles of agreement for the

admiral to subscribe, telling him, That was all he could obtain of his people, and if his lordship thought fit to grant it, he should send his assent to the *Conception*; for at *Bonao* they had no longer provisions to subsist on, and they would expect his answer till the next monday. The admiral having read their answer and proposals, and considering what dishonourable things they demanded, would not grant them, lest he should bring himself, his brothers, and justice it self into contempt. But that they might have no cause to complain, or say he was too stiff in this affair, he ordered a general pardon to be proclaim'd, and to be 30 days upon the gates of the fort, the purport whereof was as follows.

“ THAT for as much as during his absence in *Spain*, some difference had happened between the lieutenant, and the chief justice Roldan, and other persons

Articles of agreement.



hem harm, that  
what they had  
ty to do it, they  
service. Before  
the admiral, he  
ver. *Caravajal*,  
lling him what  
s'd in him, and  
d given his ca-  
adding, that he  
fear of some in-  
should be seen by  
ight redound to  
efore instead of  
t that person to  
ow much he con-  
what he said, as  
which was the  
d therefore he  
oper to be done,  
ft ready to com-  
ber, he ordered  
*Spain*, sending  
y them, a most  
rs, and saying,  
then, believing  
ould have gone  
ad given out at  
three he kept  
for his brother  
the discovery of  
d take order a-  
or pearls, a fam-  
*Aroglal*.

no agreement

him, That was  
people, and if his  
nt it, he should  
tion; for at *Bo-*  
visions to subsist  
t his answer till  
admiral having  
posals, and con-  
things they de-  
them, left he  
rothers, and ju-  
But that they  
plain, or say he  
he ordered a ge-  
nd, and to be  
of the fort, the  
ows.

h as during his  
some difference  
lieutenant, and  
and other per-  
sons

A general  
pardon.

“ sons who had fled with him, notwith-  
“ standing any thing that had happened,  
“ they might all in general, and every one  
“ in particular, safely come to serve their  
“ catholick majesties, as if no difference had  
“ ever been, and that whosoever would go  
“ into *Spain* should have his passage, and  
“ an order to receive his pay, as was usual  
“ with others, provided they presented  
“ themselves before the admiral within 30  
“ days, to receive the benefit of this par-  
“ don, protesting that in case they did not  
“ appear within the time limited, they  
“ should be proceeded against according to  
“ course of law.

This pardon, subscrib'd by himself, he  
sent to *Roldan* by *Caravajal*, giving him in

writing, the reasons why he neither could  
nor ought to grant the articles sent by him,  
and putting him in mind what they ought  
to do, if they aim'd at their majesties ser-  
vice. *Caravajal* went to the rebels at the  
*Conception*, where they were very haughty  
and proud, laughing at the admiral's par-  
don, and saying, He should soon have oc-  
casion to ask one of them. All this hap-  
pened in the space of three weeks, during  
which time, under colour of apprehending  
a man *Roldan* would execute, they kept the  
commander *Ballester* besieged in the fort,  
and cut off his water, believing the want of  
it would oblige him to surrender; but up-  
on *Caravajal*'s arrival, they rais'd the siege,  
and after many alterations made on both  
sides, came to the following conclusion.

# CHAP. LXXXI.

*The agreement made between the admiral, and Roldan with his rebels.*

THE articles signed and agreed to by  
*Francis Roldan*, and his company, in  
order to their return to *Spain*, are as fol-  
lows.

Articles of  
agreement.

I. THAT the lord admiral give  
him two good ships, and in  
good order, according to the judgment  
of able seamen, to be delivered to him  
at the port of *Xaragua*, because most of  
his followers were there; and because  
there is no other port more commodious  
to provide and prepare victualling and  
other necessaries, where the said *Roldan*  
and his company shall embark, and sail  
for *Spain*, if so God please.

II. That his lordship shall give an  
order for the payment of the salaries due  
to them all till that day, and letters of  
recommandation to their catholick ma-  
jesties, that they may cause them to be  
paid.

III. That he shall give them slaves  
for the service they have done in the  
island, and their sufferings, and certifie  
the said gift: And because some of them  
have women big with child, or deliver-  
ed; if they carry them away, they shall  
pass instead of such slaves they were to  
have; and the children shall be free, and  
they may take them along with them.

IV. His lordship shall put into the  
aforesaid ships all the provisions requisite  
for that voyage, as has been given to  
others before; and because he could not  
furnish them with bread, the judge and  
his company have leave to provide in  
the country, and that they have 30  
hundred weight of biscuit allowed them,

or for want of it 30 sacks of corn; to  
the end, that if the *Carabi* or *Indian*  
bread should spoil, as might easily hap-  
pen, they may subsist upon the aforesaid  
biscuit or corn.

V. That his lordship shall give a  
safe-conduct for such persons as shall  
come to receive the orders for their pay.

VI. For as much, as some goods be-  
longing to several persons, who are with  
*Roldan*, have been seiz'd, his lordship  
shall order restitution to be made.

VII. That his lordship shall write a let-  
ter to their catholick majesties, acquaint-  
ing them, That the said *Roldan*'s swine  
remain in the island, for the inhabitants  
provision, being 120 great ones, and  
230 small, praying their highness to al-  
low him the price for them they would  
have bore in the island; the which  
swine were taken from him in *February*  
1498.

VIII. That his lordship shall give the  
said *Roldan* full authority to sell some  
goods he has, which he must part with  
to go away, or to do with them as he  
pleases, or to leave them for his own  
use with whom he thinks fit to make the  
best of them.

IX. That his lordship will order the  
judges to give speedy judgment concern-  
ing the horse.

X. That if his lordship shall find the  
demands of *Salamanca* to be just, he shall  
write to the said judge to cause him to  
be paid.

XI. That his lordship shall be discon-  
fessed concerning the captain's slaves.

XII. That forasmuch as the said  
*Roldan*

" Roldan and his company mistrust, that  
 " his lordship, or some other person by  
 " his order, may offer them some violence  
 " with the other ships that are in the island,  
 " he shall therefore grant them a pass or  
 " safe-conduct, promising in their majes-  
 " ties name, and upon his own faith, and  
 " the word of a gentleman, as is used in  
 " Spain, that neither his lordship, nor any  
 " other person shall offend them, or ob-  
 " struct their voyage.

Having examined this agreement made by *Alonso Sanchez de Caravajal* and *James de Salamanca*, with *Francis Roldan* and his company, this day being *Wednesday* the 21st of *November* 1498, I am content it be fully observed, upon condition that the said *Francis Roldan*, nor any of his followers, in whose name he subscribed and ratified the articles by him delivered to the aforesaid *Alonso Sanchez de Caravajal* and *James de Salamanca*, shall not receive into their company any other christian of the island, of any state or condition whatsoever.

I *Francis Roldan*, judge, do promise and engage my faith and word for myself and all those with me, that the articles abovementioned shall be observed and fulfilled, without any fraud, but faithfully as is here set down, his lordship performing all that has been agreed on between *Alonso Sanchez de Caravajal* and *James de Salamanca*, and my self, as is in the written articles.

I. " **T**hat from the day of the date here-  
 " of, till the answer be brought,

" for which ten days shall be allowed, I  
 " will admit no person whatsoever of those  
 " that are with the lord admiral.

II. " That within fifty days after the  
 " said answer shall be delivered to me here  
 " in the *Conception*, signed and sealed by  
 " his lordship, which shall be within the  
 " ten days before-mentioned, we will em-  
 " bark and set sail for *Spain*.

III. " That none of the slaves freely grant-  
 " ed us, shall be carried away by force.

IV. " That whereas the admiral will not  
 " be at the port where we are to embark,  
 " the person or persons his lordship shall  
 " send thither, be honoured and respected  
 " as their majesties and his lordship's officers,  
 " to whom shall be given an account of  
 " all we put aboard the ships, that they  
 " may enter it, and do as his lordship shall  
 " think fit; as also to deliver to them such  
 " things as we have in our hands belong-  
 " ing to their majesties. All the afore-  
 " said articles are to be subscribed and per-  
 " form'd by his lordship, as *Alonso Sanchez*  
 " *de Caravajal*, and *James de Salamanca*,  
 " have them in writing; the answer where-  
 " of I expect here at the *Conception* for  
 " eight days to come; and if it be not  
 " then brought, I shall not be obliged to  
 " any thing here mention'd.

In testimony whereof, and that I and my company may observe and perform what I have said, I have subscribed this writing, given at the *Conception*, on the 16th of *November* 1498.

#### C H A P. LXXXII.

*How after the agreement concluded, the rebels went away to Xaragua, saying, they would embark on the two ships sent them by the admiral.*

**T**Hings being adjusted as above, *Caravajal* and *Salamanca* returned to *St. Domingo* to the admiral, and at their request, on the 21st of *November*, he subscribed the aforesaid articles brought by them, and granted a new safe-conduct or leave to all those that would not go to *Spain* with *Roldan*, promising them pay, or the liberty of planters, as they liked best, and for others to come freely to manage their affairs. These the *Castellan Balleser* delivered to *Roldan* and his company at the *Conception* on the 24th of *November*, and they having received them, went away toward *Xaragua*, to prepare for their departure, as was afterwards known. And tho' the admiral was sensible of their villainy, and much concerned that the good

service his brother might have done in continuing the discovery of the continent of *Paria*, and settling the pearl fishery and trade, was obstructed by giving them those ships, yet he would not give the rebels occasion to blame him, saying, he had refused them their passage. He began therefore presently to fit out the ships as had been agreed, tho' the equipment was somewhat retarded for want of necessities. To supply which defect, and that no time might be lost, he ordered *Caravajal* to go over by land to provide and dispose all things for the departure of the rebels, whilst the ships came about, giving him ample commission for it, resolving himself to go soon to *Isabella*, to settle affairs there, leaving his brother *James* at *St. Domingo*, to look to that

\*ships fitted  
 up to carry  
 away  
 the rebels.

The rebels  
 refused to  
 go to Spain.

all be allowed, I  
thatsoever of those  
admiral.  
ty days after the  
livered to me here  
ed and sealed by  
all be within the  
enced, we will em-  
chain.

laves freely grant-  
away by force.  
e admiral will nor  
e are to embark,  
his lordship shall  
red and respected  
ordship's officers,  
in an account of  
ships, that they  
his lordship shall  
liver to them such  
ur hands belong-  
All the afore-  
scribed and per-  
as *Alonso Sanchez*  
s de *Salamanca*,  
he answer where-  
e *Conception* for  
nd if it be not  
ot be obliged to  
.

and that I and  
re and perform  
subscribed this  
ception, on the

ragua, saying,  
iral.

ave done in con-  
the continent of  
earl fishery and  
iving them those  
e the rebels oc-  
e, he had refused  
egan therefore  
ps as had been  
was somewhat  
aries. To sup-  
no time might  
d to go over by  
e all things for  
whilst the ships  
ple commission  
go soon to *Isa-*  
te, leaving his  
go, to look to  
that

that place. After his departure, about the end of *January*, the two caravals furnish'd with all necessaries for the voyage, set out to take up the rebels, but a great storm rising by the way, they were forced to put into another port till the end of *March*; and because the caraval *Ninna*, one of the two, was in the worst condition, and re-

quired most repairs, the admiral sent orders to *Peter de Arana* and *Francis de Garai*, to repair to *Xaragua* with another called *Santa Cruz* or the *Holy Cross*, aboard which *Caravajal* went, and not by land. He was 11 days by the way, and found the other caraval waiting for him.

C H A P. LXXXIII.

*How the rebels altered their resolution of going to Spain, and came to a new agreement with the admiral.*

IN the mean while, the caravals not coming, and most of *Roldan's* men having no mind to embark, they took that delay for a pretence to stay, blaming the admiral, as if he had not dispatch'd them as soon as he might; whereof he being informed, writ to *Roldan* and *Adrian*, persuading them in a friendly manner to perform the agreement, and not fall into disobedience. Besides, *Caravajal*, who was with them at *Xaragua*, on the 20th of *April*, entered his protestation before a notary, called *Francis de Garai*, afterwards governor of *Panuco* and of *Jamaica*, requiring them, since the admiral had sent the ships, to accept of them, and embark according to articles. And because they would not, on the 25th of *April* he ordered the ships to return to *St. Domingo*, because they were destroyed by the worms, and the men suffered much for want of provisions. The rebels were no way concerned, but rather rejoiced and grew haughty, seeing such account was made of them, and were so far from acknowledging the admiral's civility, that they laid it to his charge in writing, that it was through his fault they staid, saying, he had a mind to be revenged on them, and had therefore delayed the sending of the caravals, which were in such ill case, that it was impossible they should go in them to *Spain*, and that tho' they had been never so good, their provisions were spent expecting them, and they could not get more under a long while, for which reason they had resolved to expect redress from their majesties. *Caravajal* returned with this answer by land to *St. Domingo*, to whom at the time of his departure, *Roldan* said, he would willingly go wait on the admiral, to endeavour for such an accommodation, as might please all parties, provided he would send him his safe-conduct. *Caravajal* sent the admiral word of it from *St. Domingo*, on the 15th of *May*, who answered on the 21st, commending him for the pains he took, and sent the safe-conduct he required, with a short letter to *Roldan*, the

The rebels  
refuse to  
quit Spain.

very pithy, persuading him to peace, submission, and their majesties service; which he afterwards repeated at *S. Domingo*, more at large on the 29th of *June*; and on the 3d of *August*, six or seven of the chief men about the admiral, sent *Roldan* another safe-conduct, that he might come to treat with his lordship. But the distance being great, and the admiral having occasion to visit the country, he resolved to go with two caravals to the port of *Azuza* in the same island *Hispaniola*, west of *S. Domingo*, to be the nearer the province where the rebels were, many of whom came to the said port; and the admiral arriving there about the end of *August* with his ships, confer'd with the chief of them, exhorting them to desist from their ill course, and promising them all possible favour and kindness, which they promised to do, provided the admiral granted them four things, *viz.*

- I. "THAT he should send fifteen of them to *Spain* in the first ships that went.
- II. "That to those that remained, he should give land and houses for their pay.
- III. "That proclamation should be made, that all what had happened was caused by false suggestions, and through the fault of ill men.
- IV. "That the admiral shall appoint *Roldan* perpetual judge.

This being concluded among them, *Roldan* returned ashore from the admiral's caraval, and sent his companions the articles, which were so much to their mind, and so unreasonable, that they concluded, saying, in case the admiral fail'd in any part, it should be lawful for them by force, or any other means, to oblige him to performance. The admiral being eager to conclude this difficult matter, which had lasted above two years; and considering his adversaries continued more obstinate than ever, and that

many of those, who were with him, had a mind to join companies, and conspire together to go to other parts of the island, as *Roldan* had done; he resolv'd to sign the articles whatsoever they were, viz. To grant *Roldan* a patent for perpetual judge, and the other three above-mentioned particulars, besides all they had sent in writing, a copy whereof was insert'd above. On *Tuesday* following, being the 5th of *November*, *Roldan* to exercise his office, and

accordingly it being a part of his grant, he constituted *Peter Riquelme* judge of *Bonao*, with power to imprison offenders in criminal cases, but that he should send criminals upon life and death, to be tried by him at the fort of the *Conception*. The substitute being no honeste than his master, he presently went about to build a strong house at *Bonao*, had not *Peter de Arana* forbid him, because he plainly perceiv'd it was contrary to the respect due to the admiral.

## C H A P. LXXXIV.

*How Ojeda returning from his discovery, excited new troubles in Hispaniola.*

TO return to the course of our history, the admiral having adjust'd matters with *Roldan*, appointed a captain with some men to march about the island to pacify it, and reduce the *Indians* to pay the tribute, and be always in a readiness, that upon the least mutiny among the christians, and sign of rebellion among the *Indians*, he might suppress and punish them, which he did with a design to go himself over to *Spain*, and carry with him his brother the lieutenant, because it would be difficult if he were left behind, to forget old grudges. As he was preparing for his voyage, *Alonso de Ojeda*, who had been discovering with four ships, arriv'd in the island. And forasmuch as this sort of men sail'd about to make their fortune, on the 5th of *September* he put into the port the christians called *Brasil*, and the *Indians Taquimo*, designing to take what he could from the *Indians*, and load with wood and slaves. Whilst he was thus employ'd, he did all the harm he could, and to show he was a limb of the bishop we have mention'd, endeavour'd to raise another mutiny, gave out, that queen *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* was ready to die; and as soon as she was dead, there would be no body left to support the admiral, and that he as a faithful servant to the said bishop, might do what he pleas'd against the admiral, because of the enmity there was between them. Upon these grounds he began to write to some that were not very sound, after the late troubles, and to hold correspondence with them. But *Roldan* being inform'd of his proceedings and designs, by the admiral's order, went against him with 21 men, to prevent him doing the harm he intended: Being come within a league and a half of him on the 29th of *September*, he understood he was with 15 men at a *Caciques*, whose name was *Haniguaaba*, making bread and bisket, and therefore he travel'd that night to surprize him. *Ojeda* understanding that *Roldan* was com-

ing upon him, and being too weak to oppose him, to make the best of a bad case, went to meet him, saying, want of provisions had brought him thither, to supply himself in the king his master's dominions, without designing any harm. And giving him an account of his voyage, said, he had been discovering 600 leagues westward along the coast of *Paria*, where he found people that fought the christians even hand, and had wounded 20 of his men, for which reason he could make no advantage of the wealth of the country, where he said he had seen deer and rabbits and tygers skins and paws and *Gaaninies*, all which he show'd *Roldan* aboard the caravals, saying, he would soon repair to *S. Domingo* to give the admiral an account of all. He at this time was much troubled, because *Peter de Arana* had signified to him, that *Riquelme*, judge of *Bonao*, for *Roldan*, under colour of building a house for his herds, had made choice of a strong rock, that he might from thence, with a few men, do all the harm he thought fit; that he had forbid him: Whereupon *Riquelme* had drawn up a process, attested by witnesses against him, and sent it to the admiral, complaining that *Arana* used violence towards him, and praying relief, that no disorder might happen among them. Hereupon, tho' the admiral knew that man was not of a quiet disposition, yet he thought fit to conceal his jealousy, yet so as to be upon his guard, being of opinion it was enough to provide against *Ojeda's* open intrusion, without taking notice of that which might tolerably be conniv'd at. *Ojeda* holding his wicked purpose, and taking leave of *Roldan* in *February* 1500, went away with his ships to *Xaragua*, where a great many of those lived, who had before rebelled with *Roldan*. And because avarice is the most beneficial and ready way to promote any mischief, he began to give out among those people, that their catholick majesties had appointed him

*Roldan goes against Ojeda.*

*Ojeda forced away.*

*Ojeda stir up the people to rebellion.*

of his grant, he  
e judge of *Bonao*,  
offenders in crimi-  
ould send criminals  
be tried by him at  
on. The sublti-  
an his master, he  
uld a strong house  
de *Arana* forbid  
perceiv'd it was  
e to the admiral.

in Hispaniola.

too weak to op-  
est of a bad case,  
s, want of provi-  
thither, to supply  
aster's dominions,  
rm. And giving  
yage, said, he had  
gues westward a-  
where he found  
ristians even hand,  
is men, for which  
advantage of the  
where he said he  
and tygers skins  
ll which he show'd  
avals, saying, he  
*Domingo* to give  
all. He at this  
because *Peter de*  
m, that *Riquelme*,  
lan, under colour  
herds, had made  
s, that he might  
men, do all the  
at he had forbid  
ne had drawn up  
cesses against him,  
complaining that  
wards him, and  
order might hap-  
pon, tho' the ad-  
is not of a quiet  
ght fit to conceal  
e upon his guard,  
ough to provide  
ison, without tam-  
might tolerably  
iding his wicked  
of *Roldan* in Fe-  
with his ships to  
ny of those lived,  
th *Roldan*. And  
st beneficial and  
ny mischief, he  
g these people,  
es had appointed  
him

*Ojeda*  
forced a-  
way.

him and *Caravajal* the admiral's counsellors, that they might not suffer him to do any thing, which they did not think was for their majesties service; and that among many other things they had ordered him to do; one was, that he should immediately pay in ready money, all those that were in the island in their service; and since the admiral was not so just as to do it, he was ready to go along with them to *S. Domingo*, to oblige him to pay them out of hand; and that done, if they thought fit, to turn him out of the island dead or alive; for they ought not to rely on the agreement made, or the word he had given them, for he would keep it no longer than necessity obliged him to it. Upon these promises many resolved to follow him, and therefore being assisted by them, he one night fell upon others who opposed him, and there were some killed and wounded on both sides. And being satisfied that *Roldan*, who was returned to the admiral's service, would not join with them, they resolved to surprize and make him prisoner; but he being informed of their design, went well attended where *Ojeda* was, to put a stop to his disorders, or punish him, as he should find expedient. *Ojeda* for fear of him, retired to his ships, and *Roldan* continuing ashore, they treated about a conference, each of them fearing to put himself into the power of the other. *Roldan* perceiving that *Ojeda* was unwilling to come ashore, he offered to go treat with him aboard; to which purpose he sent to ask his boat, which he sent him well mann'd, and having taken in *Roldan* with six or seven of his followers, when they least suspected it, *Roldan* and his people on a sudden fell upon *Ojeda*'s men, with their naked swords, and killing some and wounding others, made themselves masters of the boat, returning with it to land, *Ojeda* having only a small skiff left him, in which he resolved to come peaceably to treat with *Roldan*. Having made some excuse for his offences, he agreed to restore some men he had taken by force, that his boat and men might be returned him, alledging, if it were not restored, it would be the ruin of them all and their ships, because he had no other fit to serve them. *Roldan* readily granted it, that he might have no cause to complain, or say, he was lost through his means, yet making him promise and give security that he would depart the island by a time appointed, as he was obliged to do, by the good guard *Roldan* kept ashore. But as it is a hard matter to root out cockle so that it may not sprout up again, so is it no less difficult for people that have got a habit of doing ill to forbear relapsing into

their crimes, as happened to some of the rebels a few days after *Ojeda* was gone. For one *D. Ferdinand de Guevara*, being in disgrace with the admiral, as a seditious person, and having taken part with *Ojeda*, in hatred to *Roldan*, because he would not permit him to take to wife the daughter of *Canua*, the principal queen of *Xaragua*, began to gather many conspirators to secure *Roldan*, and succeed him in the ill things he had done. Particularly he gained to his party, one *Adrian de Moxica*, a chief man among the late rebels, and to other wicked men, who about the middle of July 1500, had contrived to secure or murder *Roldan*. He having intelligence of the design, stood upon his guard, and ordered his business so well, that he seized the aforesaid *D. Ferdinand*, *Adrian*, and the chief men of their party, and sending the admiral an account of what had happened, asked what his pleasure was he should do with them? The answer was, That since they had endeavoured, without any provocation to disturb the country, (and if they were not punished every thing must run to ruin) he should punish them according to their demerits, and as the law directed. The judge did it accordingly, and proceeding legally against them, hanged *Adrian* as chief author of the conspiracy, banished others, and kept *D. Ferdinand* in prison, till on the 13th of June he delivered him, with other prisoners, to *Gonsalo Blanco*, to carry them to *la Vega*, that is, the Plain, where the admiral then was. This example quieted the country, and the Indians again submitted themselves to the christians. Such rich gold mines were discovered, that every man left the king's pay, and went away to live upon his own account, applying himself to dig gold at his own expence, allowing the king the third part of all they found. This prospered so well, that a man has gathered five marks, (a mark is eight ounces) of gold in a day, and a grain of pure gold has been taken up worth above 196 ducats; and the Indians were submissive, dreading the admiral, and so desirous to please him, that they readily became christians only to oblige him. When any of the chief of them was to appear before him, he endeavoured to be clad; and therefore to settle all things the better, the admiral resolved to take a progress thro' the island, and accordingly he and his brother and lieutenant set out on Wednesday the 20th of Feb. 1499, and came to *Isabella* on the 19th of March. From *Isabella* they set out the 5th of April for the *Conception*, and came thither the Tuesday following. The lieutenant went thence for *Xaragua* upon Friday the 7th of June. On Christmas-

Another  
rebellion  
suppressed.



## The first Discovery of

day following, which was in the year 1499, being forsaken by all the world, the *Indians* and rebel christians fell upon me, and I was reduced to such distress, that to avoid death, leaving all behind me, I put to sea in a little caraval. But our lord presently relieved me, saying, Thou man of little faith, fear not, I am with you, and so he dispersed my enemies, and show'd

how he could fulfil my promises: Unhappy sinner that I am, who placed all my hopes on the world. From the *Conception* the admiral designed to go to *S. Domingo* on the 3d of February, in order to make ready to return into *Spain* to give their catholic majesties an account of all things.

## C H A P. LXXXV.

*How their catholic majesties upon false informations, and malicious complaints of some persons, sent a judge to take cognizance of affairs.*

Com-  
plaints  
against the  
admiral.

**W**Hilst these disorders happened, as has been said, many of the rebels by letters sent from *Hispaniola*, and others that were returned into *Spain*, did not cease to give in false informations to the king and his council, against the admiral and his brothers, saying, they were cruel and unfit for that government, as well because they were strangers and aliens, as because they had not formerly been in a condition to learn by experience how to govern people of condition; affirming, that if their highnesses did not apply some remedy, those countries would be utterly destroy'd; and in case they were not quite ruined by their ill government, the admiral would revolt, and join in league with some prince to support him, he pretending that all was his own, as having been discovered by his industry and labour; and that the better to compass his design, he concealed the wealth of the country, and would not have the *Indians* serve the christians, nor be converted to the faith, because by making much of them he hoped they would be of his side, to do what he pleased against their highnesses. They proceeding in these and such like slanders, importuned their catholic majesties, ever talking ill of the admiral, and complaining there were several years pay due to the men, gave occasion to all that were at court to rail. So that when I was at *Granada*, at the time the most serene prince *Michael* happened to die, above 50 of them, like shameless wretches, brought a load of grapes, and sat down in the court of *Alhambra*, (a castle and palace) crying out, that their highnesses and the admiral made them live so miserably by not paying them, with many other scandalous expressions. And their impudence was so great, that if the catholic king went abroad, they all got about him, crying, pay, pay. And if it happened that my brother or I, who were pages to her majesty, passed by where they were, they cried out in a hideous manner, making the sign of the cross, and saying, there are the

admiral of the *Mosquito*'s sons, he that has found out false and deceitful countries, to be the ruin and burial place of the *Spanish* gentry; adding many more such insolencies which made us cautious of appearing before them. Their complaints running so high, and their constant importunity with the king's favourites, it was resolved to send a judge to *Hispaniola*, to enquire into all these affairs, ordering him in case he found the admiral guilty of what was alledged, to send him to *Spain*, and stay there himself as governor. The person their majesties made choice of for this purpose, was one *Francis de Bovadilla*, a poor knight of the order of *Calatrava*, who on the 21st of May 1499, had full and ample commission given him at *Madrid*, and blank letters, subscribed by their majesties, to such persons as he should think fit in *Hispaniola*, commanding them to be aiding and assisting to him. Thus furnished, he arrived at *S. Domingo* at the latter end of August 1500, at such time as the admiral was at the *Conception*, settling the affairs of that province, where his brother had been assaulted by the rebels, and where there were more *Indians*, and those more understanding people than in the rest of the island. So that *Bovadilla* at his arrival finding no body to keep him in awe, the first thing he did was to take up his quarters in the admiral's palace, and seize and make use of all he found there, as if it had fallen to him by inheritance; and gathering together all he could find that had been in rebellion, and many others that hated the admiral and his brothers, he presently declared himself governor. And to gain the affections of the people, he caused a general freedom to be proclaimed for 20 years to come; requiring the admiral to repair to him without any delay, because it was convenient for his majesty's service he should do so. And to back his summons on the 7th of September, sent him the king's letter by *R. John de la Sosa*, which was to this effect.

*Bovadilla  
the judge  
in Hispaniola.*

mises: Unhappily placed all my from the Concept to go to S. Domingo, in order to Spain to give account of all

To D. Christopher Columbus, our admiral of the ocean.

fore we desire you to give him entire credit, and to obey him. Given at Madrid the 21st of May 1499.

WE have ordered the commendary Francis de Bovadilla, the bearer, to acquaint you with some things, from us: There-

By command of their highnesses, Mich. Perez de Almazan.

I the king,  
I the queen.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

How the admiral was apprehended and sent to Spain in irons, together with his brothers.

s complaints of

ons, he that has ul countries, to e of the Spanish such infolencies f appearing be- running so high, unity with the solved to send a ire into all these e he found the as alledged, to ay there himself their majesties urpose, was one r knight of the the 21st of May mmission given k letters, sub- to such persons Hispaniola, com- and assisting to e arrived at S. of August 1500, was at the Com- f that province, assaulted by the re more Indians, ng people than o that Bovadilla dy to keep him did was to take al's palace, and he found there, by inheritance, he could find and many others d his brothers, hself governor. of the people, om so be pro- ; requiring the hout any delay, or his majesty's nd to back: his ember, sent him la Sera, which

the prac- tice of Bovadilla.

Bovadilla the judge in Hispaniola.

THE admiral having seen their majesties letter, came away presently to St. Domingo, where the afore said judge was, who being eager to remain governor there, at the beginning of October 1500. without any delay, or legal information, sent him prisoner a board a ship, together with his brother James, putting them in irons, and a good guard over them, and ordered upon severe penalties, that none should dare to speak for them. After this, (by Abington law) he began to draw up a process against them, admitting the rebels his enemies as witnesses, and publicly favouring all that came to speak ill of them, who in their depositions gave in such villainies and incoherencies, that he must have been blind that had not plainly perceiv'd, they were false and malicious. For which reason, their catholic majesties would not admit of them, and cleared the admiral, repenting that they had sent such a man in that employment; and not without good cause, for this Bovadilla ruin'd the island, and squander'd the king's revenues, that all men might be his friends, saying, their majesties would have nothing but the honour of the dominion, and that the profit should be for their subjects. Yet he neglected not his own share, but siding with the richest and most powerful men, gave them Indians to serve them, upon condition they should share with him all they got by their means, and sold by auction the possessions and rights the admiral had acquir'd for their majesties, saying, they were no labourers, nor did they desire to make a profit of those lands, but only kept them for the benefit of their subjects. He thus selling all things under this colour, endeavoured on the other side that they should be bought by some of his own companions, for one third of the value. Besides all this, he made no other use of his judicial power but to enrich himself, and gain the affections of the people, being still afraid lest the lieutenant, who was not yet come from Xaragua, should put a stop to his proceedings, and

endeavour to set the admiral at liberty by force of arms; in which particular, the brothers behav'd themselves very prudently; for the admiral sent them word immediately, that they should come peaceably to him, the king's service so requiring, that the island might not be put into an uproar; for when they were in Spain, they should more easily obtain the punishment of such a senseless person, and satisfaction for the wrong done them. Yet this did not divert Bovadilla from putting him and his brothers into irons, allowing the baster fort to rail at them publicly, blowing horns about the port where they were shipp'd, besides many scandalous libels set up at corners of streets against them; so that tho' he was inform'd that one James Ortiz, governor of the hospital, had writ a libel, and read it publicly in the marketplace, he was so far from punishing of him, that he seem'd to be very well pleas'd, which made every one endeavour to show himself in this sort. And perhaps for fear the admiral should swim back, he took care when they were to sail, to desire Andrew Martin the master of the ship, to look to him, and to deliver him in irons as he was, to the bishop D. John de Fonseca, by whose advice and direction it was concluded he did all these things; tho' when they were at sea, the master being sensible of Bovadilla's unworthiness, would have knock'd off the admiral's irons, which he would never permit, saying, that since their catholic majesties, by their letter directed him to perform whatsoever Bovadilla did in their name command him to do, in virtue of which authority and commission he had put him into irons, he would have none but their highnesses themselves to do their pleasure herein; and he was resolv'd to keep those fetters as relics, and a memorial of the reward of his many services, as accordingly he did; for I always saw those irons in his room, which he order'd to be buried with his body; notwithstanding, that he having on the 20<sup>th</sup> of November

The admiral dis-  
cuss'd.

1500. writ to their majesties, acquainting them with his arrival at *Cadiz*; they understanding the condition he came in, immediately gave orders that he should be releas'd, and sent him very gracious letters, saying, they were very sorry for his sufferings, and the unmannerly behaviour of *Bovadilla*: towards him, ordering him to go to court, where care should be taken about his affairs, and he should be shortly dispatch'd with full restitution of his honour. Nevertheless, I cannot but blame their catholick majesties, who chose for that employment a base and ignorant man; for had he been a man who knew the duty of his office, the admiral himself would have been glad of his coming; since he by letter had

desired that one might be sent, to take true information of the perverseness of those people, and of the crimes they committed, that they might be punish'd. And another hand, he being unwilling to use that severity which an impartial person would have done, because the original of those tumults had been against his brother. And tho' it may be urg'd, that tho' their majesties had such bad accounts of the admiral, yet they ought not to send *Bovadilla* with so many letters, and such power, without limiting the commission they gave him: It may be answer'd in their behalf, that it was no wonder they did so, because the complaints against the admiral were many, as has been said above.

### C H A P. LXXXVII.

*How the admiral went to court to give their catholick majesties an account of himself.*

AS soon as their majesties heard of the admiral's coming, and being in irons, they sent orders on the 12<sup>th</sup> of December for him to be set at liberty, and writ to him to repair to *Granada*, where he was received by their highnesses with a favourable aspect, and kind words, telling him, his imprisonment had not been by their desire or command, and therefore they were much offended at it, and they would take care those that were in fault should be punish'd, and full satisfaction given him. Having spoke these and such like gracious words, they order'd his business should be immediately gone upon, the result whereof was, that a governor should be sent to *Hispaniola*, who was to right the admiral and his brothers, and *Bovadilla* should be obliged to restore all he had taken from them; and that the admiral should be allow'd all that belong'd to him, according to the articles their highnesses had granted him; and that the rebels should be proceeded against and punish'd according to their offences. *Nicolas de Obando*, commendary of laws, was sent with this power; he was a wife and judicious man, but as afterwards appear'd partial, craftily concealing his passions, giving credit to his own surmises, and malicious persons; and therefore acting cruelly and revengefully, as appears by the death of the eighty kings we have spoken of before. But to return to the admiral; as their majesties were pleas'd to send *Obando* to *Hispaniola*, so they thought it proper to send the admiral upon some voyage that might turn to his advantage, and keep him employ'd till the said *Obando* could pacify and reduce the island *Hispaniola*, because

The admiral well receiv'd at court.

they did not like to keep him so long out of his right, without any just occasion, the information sent by *Bovadilla* plainly appearing to be full of malice, and not containing any thing whereby he might forfeit his right. But there being some delay in the execution of this design, it being now the month of October 1500. and ill men endeavour'd to prevail that a new information might be expected, the admiral resolv'd to speak to their majesties, and beg of them that they would defend him against all dangers, which he afterwards repeated by letter. This they promis'd him by letter, when the admiral was ready to set out upon his voyage; the words of it are to this effect:

AND be assured that your imprisonment was very displeasing to us, which you were sensible of, and all men plainly saw, because as soon as we heard of it, we applied the proper remedies. And you know with how much honour and respect we have always ordered you to be treated, which we now direct should be done, and that you receive all worthy and noble usage, promising that the privileges and prerogatives by us granted you shall be preserv'd in ample manner, according to the tenor of our letters patents, which you and your children shall enjoy without any contradiction, as is due in reason: And if it be requisite to ratify them a-new, we will do it, and will order that your son be put into possession of all, for we desire to honour and favour you in greater matters than these. And be satisfied we will take the due

The admiral well receiv'd at court.

" due care of your sons and brothers, which  
" shall be done when you are departed ;  
" for the employment shall be given to  
" your son, as has been said. We there-  
" fore pray you not to delay your departure.  
*Given at Valentia de la Torre, on the 14<sup>th</sup>  
of March 1502.*

This their majesties writ, because the admiral had resolved not to trouble himself any more with the affairs of the *Indies*, but to ease himself upon my brother, wherein he was in the right ; for he said, that if the services he had already done were not sufficient to deserve to have those villainous people punish'd, all he could do for the future would never obtain it, since he had already perform'd the main thing he undertook before he discover'd the *Indies*, which was to shew that there was a continent and islands westward, that the way was easy and navigable, the advantage visible, and the people gentle and unarm'd. All which, since he had verified himself in person, there now remained nothing but for their highnesses to pursue what was begun, sending people to discover the secrets of those

countries ; for now the gate was open'd, any one might follow the coast, as some did already, who improperly call themselves discoverers ; not considering they have not discovered any new countrey, but that for the future they pursue the first discovery, the admiral having shewn them the islands and province of *Paria*, which was the first land of the continent discover'd. Yet the admiral having always had a great inclination to serve their catholick majesties, and particularly the queen, he was content to return to his ships, and undertake the voyage we shall speak of ; for he was convinced there would daily be found out great wealth, as he writ to their highnesses the year 1499. speaking of the discovery in this manner : It is not to be discontinued ; for to say the truth, because one time or other something material will be found. As has since appeared by *New Spain* and *Peru*, though at that time, as generally happens to most men, no body gave credit to what he said, and yet he said nothing but what proved true, as their catholick majesties testify in a letter of theirs writ at *Barcelona* on the 5<sup>th</sup> of *September* 1498.

# C H A P. LXXXVIII.

*How the admiral went from Granada to Seville, to fit out a fleet for another discovery.*

THE admiral having been well dispatched by their catholick majesties, set out from *Granada* for *Seville* in the year 1501. and being there, so earnestly solicited the fitting out his squadron, that in a small time he had rigg'd and provided four ships, the biggest of 70, the least of 50 tun burthen, and 140 men and boys, of which number I was one.

We set sail from *Cadiz* on the 9<sup>th</sup> of *May*, 1502. and failed to *St. Catherine's*, whence we parted on *Wednesday* the 11<sup>th</sup> of the same month, and went to *Arzilla* to relieve the *Portuguese*, who were reported to be in great distress ; but when we came thither, the *Moors* had rais'd the siege. The admiral therefore sent his brother *D. Bartolomeu Columbus*, and me, with the captains of the ships ashore, to visit the governor of *Arzilla*, who had been wounded by the *Moors* in an assault. He return'd the admiral thanks for the visit and his offers, and to this purpose sent some gentlemen to him, among whom some were relations to *Donna Philippa Moniz*, the admiral's wife in *Portugal*. The same day we set sail, and arriving at *Gran Canaria*, on the 20<sup>th</sup> of *May*, cast anchor among the little islands ; and on the 24<sup>th</sup> went over to *Maspalomas* in the

same island, there to take in wood and water for our voyage. The next night we set out for the *Indies*, and it pleas'd God the wind was so fair, that without handling the sails, on *Wednesday* the 15<sup>th</sup> of *June* we arrived at the island *Matinino* with a rough sea and wind. There, according to the custom of those that sail from *Spain* to the *Indies*, the admiral took in fresh wood and water, and made the men wash their linen, staying till *Saturday*, when we stood to the westward, and came to *Dominica*, ten leagues from the other. So running along among the *Caribbee* islands, we came to *Santa Cruz*, and on the 24<sup>th</sup> of the same month ran along the south-side of the island of *St. John*. Thence we took the way for *St. Domingo*, the admiral having a mind to exchange one of his ships for another, because it was a bad sailer, and besides, could carry no sail, but the side would lie almost under water, which was a hindrance to his voyage, because his design was to have gone directly upon the coast of *Paria*, and keep along that shore, till he came upon the streight, which he certainly concluded was about *Veraagua* and *Nombre de Dios*. But seeing the fault of the ship, he was forced to repair to *St. Domingo* to change it for a better.

And

The admiral's voyage.

And to the end the commendary *Lores* sent by their majesties to call *Bovadilla* to an account for his male-administration, might not be surpriz'd at our unexpected arrival, upon *Wednesday* the 29<sup>th</sup> of *June*, being near the port, the admiral sent *Peter de Terreros*, captain of one of the ships to him, to signify what occasion he had to change that ship; for which he, as also because he apprehended a great storm was coming, he desired to secure himself in that port, advising him not to let the fleet sail out of the port for eight days to come; for if he did it would be in great danger. But the afore said governor would not permit the admiral to come into the harbour, nor did he hinder the going out of the fleet that was bound for *Spain*, which consisted of eighteen sail, and was to carry *Bovadilla*, who had imprison'd the admiral and his brothers, *Francis Roldan*, and all the rest, who had been in rebellion against them, and done them so much harm, all whom it pleased God to infatuate, that they might not admit of the admiral's good advice. And I am satisfied it was the hand of God; for had they arrived in *Spain*, they had never been punish'd as their crimes deserv'd; but rather been favour'd and prefer'd, as being the bishop's friends. This was prevented by their setting out of that port for *Spain*; for no sooner were they come to the east point of the island *Hispaniola*, but there arose so terrible a storm, that the admiral of the fleet sunk, in which was *Bovadilla*, with most of the rebels, and made such havock among the rest, that of 18 ships, only three or four were saved. This happen'd upon *Thursday* the last of *June*, when the admiral having foreseen the storm, and being refused admittance into the port, for his security drew up as close to the land as he could, thus sheltering himself, not without much dissatisfaction among his men, who for being with him were denied that reception, which had been allowed to strangers, much more to them that were of the same nation; for they fear'd they might be so serv'd, if any misfortune should befall them for the future. And tho' the admiral was concern'd on the same account, yet it

*He foresaw a great storm, and is refus'd admittance in Hispaniola.*

more vex'd him to behold the baseness and ingratitude us'd towards him in that country he had given to the honour and benefit of *Spain*, being refused to shelter his life in it. Yet his prudence and judgment secured his ships, till the next day the tempest increasing, and the night coming on very dark, three ships broke from him every one its own way: the men aboard each of them, tho' all of them in great danger, concluded the others were lost; but they that suffer'd most were those aboard the ship called *Santo*, who to save their boat, which had been ashore with the captain *Terreros*, dragg'd it a-stern, where it over-set, and were at last forced to let it go to save themselves. But the caraval *Bermuda* was in much more danger, which running out to sea, was almost cover'd with it, by which it appeared the admiral had reason to endeavour to change it and all men concluded, that under God the admiral's brother was the saving of her, by his wisdom and resolution; for as has been said above, there was not at that time a more expert sailor than he. So that after they had all suffer'd very much, except the admiral, it pleased God they met again upon *Sunday* following in the port of *Azuza*, on the fourth-side of *Hispaniola*, where every one giving an account of his misfortunes, it appeared that *Bartolomew Columbus* had weather'd so great a storm, by flying from land like an able sailor; and that the admiral was out of danger, by lying close to the shore like a cunning astrologer, who knew whence the danger must come. Well might his enemies blame him therefore, saying, he had rais'd that storm by art magick, to be reveng'd on *Bovadilla*, and the rest of his enemies that were with him, seeing that none of his four ships perish'd; and that of 18 which set out with *Bovadilla*, only one called *la Aguja*, or *The Needle*, the worst of them all held on its course for *Spain*, where it arrived safe, having on board 4000 peso's in gold, worth eight shillings a peso, belonging to the admiral, the other three that escap'd, returning to *S. Domingo* shatter'd, and in a distressed condition.

*All his ships escape.*

*Great error of the sea charts.*

*Fourteen bound for Spain cost six*

#### C H A P. LXXXIX.

*How the admiral departed from Hispaniola, and discovered the islands of Guanaia.*

THE admiral in the port of *Azuza*, gave his men a breathing time after the storm; and it being one of the diversions us'd at sea, to fish, when there is nothing else to do, I will mention two sorts of fish among the rest, which I remember were

taken there; the one of them was pleasant, the other wonderful. The first was a fish call'd *Saavina*, as big as half an ordinary bell, which lying asleep above water, was struck with a harping-iron from the boat of the ship *Biscaina*, and held so fast, that it could



the baseness and  
in that coun-  
our and benefi-  
ster his life in  
ement secured  
the tempest in-  
ning on very  
him every one  
each of them,  
ger, concluded  
ey that suffer'd  
ne ship called  
boat, which had  
tain *Terreros*, All his  
over-set, and  
it go to save  
al *Hermuda* was  
ch running out  
with it, by which  
reason to en-  
men concluded,  
P's brother was  
seldom and reso-  
l above, there  
re expert sailor  
had all suffer'd  
niral, it pleas'd  
unday following  
ne south-side of  
e giving an ac-  
appeared that  
weather'd fo  
om land like an  
admiral was out  
to the shore like  
knew whence  
Well might his  
re, saying, he  
magick, to be  
the rest of his  
m, seeing that  
h'd; and that  
*Bovadilla*, only  
be *Needle*, the  
its course for  
ake, having on  
d, worth eight  
to the admiral,  
ly, returning to  
in a distressed

ds of Guanaia.

m was pleasant,  
the first was a fish  
half an ordinary  
bove water, was  
from the boat of  
to fast, that it  
could

Two  
strange  
fishes.

Great  
error of  
one sea  
chart.

Fourteen  
bound  
for Spain  
cost 200

could not break loose; but being tied with a long rope to the boat, drew it after it as swift as an arrow; so that those aboard the ship seeing the boat scud about, and not knowing the occasion, were astonish'd it should do so without the help of the oars, till at last the fish sunk, and being drawn to the ship's side, was there hall'd up with the tackle. The other fish was taken after another manner, the *Indians* call it *Manati*, and there are none of the sort in *Europe*: it is as big as a calf, nothing differing from it in the colour and taste of the flesh, but that perhaps it is better and fatter; wherefore those that affirm there are all sorts of creatures in the sea, will have it, that these fishes are real calves, since within they have nothing like a fish, and feed only on the grass they find along the banks. To return to our history, the admiral having a little refresh'd his men, and repaired his ships, left port *Azuza*, and went to that of *Brasil*, which the *Indians* call *Giaccemo*, to shun another storm that was coming. Hence he sail'd again on the 14<sup>th</sup> of *July*, and was so becalm'd, that instead of holding on his course, the current carried him away to certain islands near *Jamaica*, which are very small and sandy, and he called them *Los Poros*, or *The Wells*, because not finding water in them, they dug many pits in the sand, and took up that water for their use. Then sailing southward for the continent, we came to certain islands, where we went ashore upon the biggest only, called *Guanaia*, whence those that make sea charts, took occasion to call all those islands of *Guanaia*, which are almost 12 leagues from the continent, near the province now call'd *Honduras*, tho' then the admiral called it *cape Casinas*. But these men making such charts without having seen the world, they commit vast mistakes; which since it now comes in my way, I will here set down, tho' it interrupts the course of our history. These same islands and continent are by them twice set down in their charts, as if they were different countries; and whereas *cape Gracias a Dios*, and that they call *cape . . . . .* are but one and the same, they make two of it. The occasion of this mistake was, that after the admiral had discovered these countries, one *John Diaz de Solis*, (from whom the river *de la Plata*, that is, of Silver or Plate, was called *Rio de Solis*, because he was there killed by the *Indians*;) and one *Vincent Yanez*, who commanded a ship the first voyage, when the admiral discover'd the *Indies*, set out together to discover in the year 1508. designing to follow along that coast the admiral had discovered in his voyage from *Veragua* westward; and he following almost the

VOL. II.

same track, they put into the coast of *Cariari*, and pass'd by *cape Gracias a Dios*, as far as *cape Casinas*, which they call'd *Honduras*, and the aforesaid islands they call'd *Guanaias*, giving the name of the biggest to them all. Thence they proceeded on further, without owning the admiral had been in any of those parts, that the discovery might be attributed to them, and to have it believ'd they had found large countries; notwithstanding that, *Peter de Lefesma*, one of their pilots, who had been before with the admiral in his voyage to *Veragua*, told them, he knew that country, and that he had been there with the admiral discovering it, from whom I afterwards had this. But the nature of the charts plainly demonstrates it; for the same thing is twice set down, and the island is in the same shape, and at the same distance, they having at their return brought a true draught of that country, only saying, it lay beyond that which the admiral had discover'd. So that the same country is twice describ'd in one chart; which, if it please God, time will make appear, when that coast is better known; for they will find but one country of that sort, as has been said. But to return to our discovery, being come to the island of *Guanaia*, the admiral order'd his brother *Bartholomew Columbus* to go ashore with two boats, where they found people like those of the other islands, but not of such high foreheads. They also saw abundance of pine-trees and pieces of *Lapis Calaminaris*, us'd to mix with copper, which some seamen taking for gold, kept hid a long time.

The admiral's brother being ashore in that island, very desirous to know something of it, fortune so order'd it, that a canoe as long as a galley, and eight foot wide, all of one tree, and like the others in shape, put in there, being loaded with commodities brought from the westward, and bound towards *New Spain*. In the midst of it was a covering like an awning made of palm-tree leaves, not unlike those of the *Venetian Gondola's*, which kept all under it so close, that neither rain nor sea-water could wet the goods. Under this awning were the children, the women, and all the goods, and tho' there were 25 men aboard this canoe, they had not the courage to defend themselves against the boats that pursued them. The canoe being thus taken without any opposition, was carried aboard, where the admiral blessed God, for that it had pleas'd him at once to give him samples of the commodities of that country, without exposing his men to any danger. He therefore order'd such things to be taken, as he judg'd most lightly and

7 P valuable

A canoe  
canoe.

It was  
goods they  
had.

valuable; such as some quilts, and shirts of cotton, without sleeves, curiously wrought and dy'd of several colours, and some small clouts to cover their privities, of the same sort; and large sheets in which the *Indian* women aboard the canoe wrapp'd themselves, as the *Moorish* women at *Granada* us'd to do; and long wooden swords with a channel on each side, where the edge should be, in which there were sharp edges of flint fix'd with thread, and a bituminous sort of matter, which cut naked men, as if they were of steel, and hatchets to cut wood like those of stone the other *Indians* use, but that these were made of good copper; also bells of the same metal, plates, and crucibles to melt the metal. For their provision they had such roots and grain as they in *Hispaniola* eat, and a sort of liquor made of *Maiz*, like the *English* beer; and abundance of *Cacao* nuts, which in *New Spain* pass for money, which they seemed to value very much; for when they were brought aboard among their other goods, I observ'd that when any of these nuts fell, they all stoop'd to take it up, as if it had been a thing of great consequence: yet at that time they seem'd to be in a manner besides themselves, being brought prisoners out of their canoe aboard the ship, among such strange and fierce people, as we are to them; but

so prevalent is avarice in man, that we ought not to wonder that it should prevail upon the *Indians* above the apprehension of the danger they were in. I must add, that we ought to admire their modesty; for it falling out, that in getting them aboard, some were taken by the clouts they had before their privities, they would immediately clap their hands to cover them; and the women would hide their faces, and wrap themselves up as we said the *Moorish* women do at *Granada*. This mov'd the admiral to use them well, to restore their canoe, and give them some things in exchange for those that had been taken from them. Nor did he keep any one of them but an old man, whose name was *Giumbe*, that seem'd to be the wisest and chief of them, to learn something of him concerning the country, and that he might draw others to converse with the christians, which he did very readily and faithfully all the while we sail'd where his language was understood. Therefore, as a reward for this his service, when we came where he was not understood, the admiral gave him some things, and sent him home very well pleased, which was before he came to cape *Gracias a Dios*, on the coast of *Orechia*, where of mention has been made already.

Modesty of  
the Indians.

#### CHAP. XC.

*How the admiral would not go to New Spain, but sail to the eastward to find out the streight in the continent.*

NOTwithstanding the admiral had heard so much from those in the canoe, concerning the great wealth, politeness, and ingenuity of the people westward towards *New Spain*; yet thinking that those countries lying to the leeward, he could sail thither when he thought fit from *Cuba*, he would not go that way at this time, but held on his design of discovering the streight in the continent, to clear a way into the *South Sea*, which was what he aim'd at in order to come at the countries that produce spice, and therefore resolv'd to sail eastward towards *Veragua* and *Nombre de Dios*, where he imagin'd the said streight to be, as in effect it was; yet was he deceiv'd in the matter; for he did not conceit it to be an *Isthmus*, or narrow neck of land, but a small gulph running from sea to sea. Which mistake might proceed from the likeness of the names; for when they said the streight was at *Veragua* and *Nombre de Dios*, it might be understood either of land or water; and he took it in the most usual sense, and for

that he most earnestly desir'd. And yet tho' that streight is land, yet it was and is the way to the dominion of both seas, and by which such immense riches have been discovered and convey'd; for it was God's will, a matter of such vast concern should not be otherwise found out, that canoe having given the first information concerning *New Spain*.

There being nothing therefore in those islands of *Guanaia* worth taking notice of, he without further delay sail'd in order to seek out the streight towards the continent, to a point he called *Casinas*, because there were abundance of trees that bear a sort of fruit that is rough, as a spungy bone, and is good to eat, especially boil'd; which fruit the *Indians* of *Hispaniola* call *Casinas*. There appearing nothing worth taking notice of all about that country, the admiral would not lose time to go into a great bay the land makes there, but held on his course eastwards along that coast, which runs along the same way to cape *Gracias a Dios*, and

The admiral sail'd eastward.

man, that we  
it mould prevail  
e apprehension of  
I must add, that  
modesty; for it  
ng them aboard,  
outs they had be-  
ould immediate-  
er them; and the  
faces, and wrap  
the *Moorish* wo-  
is mov'd the ad-  
o restore their ca-  
e things in ex-  
been taken from  
any one of them  
ame was *Gumbo*,  
ifest and chief of  
of him concern-  
at he might draw  
e christians, which  
faithfully all the  
language was un-  
a reward for this  
me where he was  
ral gave him some  
ne very well plea-  
came to cape *Gra-*  
*of Orecchia*, where-  
le already.

ward to find out

ir'd. And yet tho'  
it was and is the  
both seas, and by  
nes have been dif-  
for it was God's  
ast concern should  
ut, that canoe ha-  
mation concerning

therefore in those  
n taking notice of,  
failed in order to  
ards the continent,  
nas, because there  
that bear a sort of  
spungy bone, and  
ly boil'd; which  
aniola call *Casinas*,  
worth taking no-  
ntreney, the admiral  
go into a great bay  
held on his course  
ast, which runs a-  
pe *Gracias a Dios*,  
and

The ad-  
ral sail-  
eastward.

and is very low and open. The people nearest to cape *Casinas*, wear those painted shirts or jerkins before-mentioned, the clouts before their privities, which were like coats of mail made of cotton strong enough to defend them against their weapons, and even to bear off the stroke of some of ours.

But the people higher eastward towards cape *Gracias a Dios*, are almost black, of a fierce aspect, go stark naked, are very savage, and as the *Indian* that was taken, said, eat mens flesh, and raw fish just as it is taken. They have their ears bored with such large holes, that they may put a hens egg into them, which made the admiral call that coast *de las Orejas*, or of the Ears. There on Sunday the fourteenth of August 1502, *Bartolomeu Columbus* went ashore in the morning with the colours, the captains, and many of the men, to hear mass; and on Wednesday following, when the boats went ashore to take possession of the country for their catholic majesties, above a hundred men ran down to the shore, loaded with provisions; who as soon as the boats came ashore came before the lieutenant, and on a sudden retired back without speaking a word. He ordered they should give them horse-bells, beads, and other things; and by means of the aforesaid interpreter, inquired concerning the country; tho' he having been but a short time with us, did not understand the christians, by reason of the distance of his country from *Hispaniola*, where several persons aboard the ships had learnt the *Indian* language. Nor did he understand those *Indians*; but they being pleased

with what had been given them, came the next day to the same place, above two hundred of them loaded with several sorts of provisions, as hens of that country, which are better than ours, geese, roasted fish, red and white beans, like kidney beans, and other things like those they have in *Hispaniola*. The country was green and beautiful, tho' low, producing abundance of pines, oaks, palm-trees of seven fots, and *Mirabalans* of those of *Hispaniola* they call *Hobi*, and almost all sorts of provisions that island affords were here to be found. Abundance of leopards, deer, and other sorts of fish there are in the islands and in *Spain*. The people of this country are much like those of the islands, but that their foreheads are not so high, nor do they seem to have any religion. There are several languages among them, and for the most part they go naked, but cover their privities; some wear short jumps down to their navel without sleeves, their arms and bodies have figures wrought on them with fire, which make them look oddly; and some have lions, others deer, and others castles with towers, and other things painted on their bodies. Instead of caps, the better sort of them wear red and white cloths of cotton; and some have locks of hair hanging on their foreheads. But when they are to be fine against a festival day, they colour their faces, some black, and some red; others draw streaks of several colours; others paint their nose, and others black their eyes; and thus they adorn themselves to appear beautiful, whereas in truth they look like devils.

## CHAP. XCL

*How the admiral left the coast called de las Orejas, and by cape Gracias a Dios, came to Cariari, and what he did and saw there.*

THE admiral sailed along the said coast *de las Orejas* eastward to cape *Gracias a Dios*, which was so called, because there being but sixty leagues to it from cape *Casinas*, we laboured seventy days by reason of the currents and contrary winds upon the tack to gain it, standing out to sea, and then making the shore, sometimes gaining and sometime losing ground, as the wind was scant or large when we came about. And had not the coast afforded such good anchoring we had been much longer upon it; but being clear, and having two fathom water half a league from the shore, and two more at every leagues distance; we had always the conveniency of anchoring at night when there was but little wind, so that the course was navigable by reason of the good anchoring, but with difficulty.

1

When on the fourteenth of September we came up to the cape, perceiving the land turned off to the south, and that we could conveniently continue our voyage with those *Levant* winds that reigned there, and had been so contrary to us, we all in general gave thanks to God, for which reason the admiral called this cape *Gracias a Dios*. Cape *Gracias a Dios*. A little beyond it, we passed by some dangerous sands that ran out to sea, as far as the eye could reach.

It being requisite to take in wood and water; on the sixteenth of September, the admiral sent the boats to a river that seemed to be deep, and to have a good entrance, but the coming out proved not so; for winds freshing from sea, and the waves running high against the current of the river, so distressed the boats, that one of them

was

was lost with all the men in it, wherefore the admiral called it the river *de la Degradia*, that is, of the disaster.

In this river and about it, there were canes as thick as a man's leg; and on *Sunday* the twenty fifth of *September*, still running southward, we came to an anchor near a little island called *Quiriviri*, and a town on the continent, the name whereof was *Cariari*, where were the best people, country, and situation, we had yet seen; as well because it was high, full of rivers, and abounding in trees, as because the island was thick wooded, and full of forests of palm, mirabilan, and other sorts of trees. For this reason, the admiral called it *Hucite*. It is a small league from the town the *Indians* call *Cariari*, which is near a great river, whither resorted a great multitude of people from the adjacent parts, some with bows and arrows, others with staves of palm-tree, as black as a coal, and hard as a horn, pointed with the bones of fishes, others with clubs; and they came together as if they meant to defend their country. The men had their hair braided and wound about their heads; the women short like ours. But perceiving we were peaceable people, they were very desirous to barter their commodities for ours, theirs were arms, cotton-jerkins, and large pieces like sheets, and *Guanines*, which is pale gold, they wear about their necks, as we do relics. These things they swam with to the boats, for the christians went not ashore that day nor the next; nor would the admiral allow any thing of theirs to be taken, that we might not be taken for men that value their goods, but gave them some of ours. The less they saw us value the exchange, the more eager they were, making abundance of signs from land. At last, perceiving no body went ashore, they took all the things that had been given them, without reserving any, and tying them together, left them in the same place where the boats first went ashore, and where our men found them on the *Wednesday* following when they landed. The *Indians* about this place, believing, that the *Christians* did not confide in them, they sent an ancient man of an awful presence with a flag upon a staff, and two girls, the one about eight, the other about fourteen years of age, who putting them into the boat, made signs that the christians might safely land. Upon their request, they went ashore to take in water, the *Indians* taking great care not to do any thing that might fright the christians, and when they saw them return to their ships, they made signs to them to take along with them the young girls with their *Guanines* about their necks, and at the request of the old man that con-

ducted them, they complied and carried them aboard. Wherein those people showed more friendly than others had done; and in the girls appeared an undauntedness. For tho' the christians were such strangers to them, they express no manner of concern, but always looked pleasant and modest, which made the admiral treat them well, clothed, fed, and set them ashore again, where the fifty men were, and the old man that had delivered them received them again with much satisfaction. The boats going ashore again that same day, found the same people with the girls, who restored all the christians had given them. The next day the admiral's brother going ashore to learn something of those people, two of the chief men came to the boat, and taking him by the arms between them, made him sit down upon the grass; and he asking some questions of them, ordered the secretary to write down what they answered; but they seeing the pen, ink, and paper, were in such a consternation, that most of them ran away, which, as was believed, they did for fear of being bewitched; for to us they seemed to be sorcerers, or superstitious people, and that not without reason; because, when they came near the christians they scattered some powder about them in the air, and burning some of the same powder endeavoured to make the smoke go towards the christians; besides, their refusing to keep any thing that belonged unto us, shewed a jealousy, for, as they say, *a knave thinks every man like himself*. Having staid here longer than was convenient, considering the haste we were in, after repairing the ships, and provided all we wanted, upon *Sunday* the second of *October*, the admiral ordered his brother to go ashore with some men to view that *Indian* town, and learn something of their manners, and the nature of the country. The most remarkable things they saw were, in a great wooden palace covered with canes, several tombs, in one of which there was a dead body dry'd up and embalmed; in another, two bodies, wrapped up in cotton sheets without any ill scent; and over each tomb, was a board with the figures of beasts carved on it; and on some of them, the effigies of the person buried there, adorned with *Guanines*, beads, and other things they most value. These being the most civilized *Indians* in those parts, the admiral ordered one to be taken, and learn of him the secrets of the country; and of seven that were taken, two of the chiefest were picked out, and the rest sent away with some gifts, and civil entertainment, that the country might not be left in an uproar, telling them, they were to serve as guides

Indians of  
Cariari ci-  
vilized.

Indian  
people, and  
a few  
wild cat.

Bay of Ca-  
ritivo.

Indian  
jackets, and  
a fine  
wild cat.

guides upon that coast, and then be set at liberty. But they believing they were taken out of covetousness, that they might ransom themselves with their goods and things of value, the next day abundance of them came down to the shore, and sent four aboard the admiral, as their ambassadors, to treat about the ransom, offering some things, and freely giving two hogs of the country, which tho' small, are very wild. The admiral therefore observing the policy of this people, was more desirous to be acquainted with them, and would not depart till he had learnt something of them, but would not give ear to their offers. He therefore ordered some trifles to be given to the messengers, that they might not go away dissatisfied, and that they should be paid for their hogs, one of which was hunted after this manner. Among other creatures that country produces, there is a kind of cats of a greyish colour, and as big as a small greyhound, but have a longer tail, and so strong, that whatsoever they clap it about is as it were tied with a rope. These run about the trees like the squirrels, leap-

ing from one to another; and when they leap, they do not only hold fast with their claws, but with their tail too, by which they often hang, either to rest them, or sport. It happened that one *Ballester* brought one of these cats out of a wood, having knocked him off a tree, and not daring to meddle with it when down, because of its fierceness, he cut off one of his fore legs, and carrying it so wounded aboard; it frightened a good dog they had; but put one of the hogs they had brought us into a much greater fear; for as soon as the swine saw the cat, it run away, with signs of much dread, which we were surprized at; because before this happened, the hog ran at every body, and would not let the dog rest upon the deck. The admiral therefore ordered it to be put close to the cat, which presently wound her tail about its snout, and with that fore-leg it had left, fastened on its pole to bite it, the hog for fear grunting most violently. By this we perceived that these cats hunt like the wolves or dogs in *Spain*.

# C H A P. XCII.

*How the admiral went from Cariari, to Caravaro and Veragua, till he came to Portavelo, all along a very fruitful coast.*

Bay of Caravaro.

UPON Wednesday the 5th of October, the admiral sailed, and came to the bay of *Caravaro*, which is six leagues in length, and above three in breadth, where there are many small islands, and two or three channels to get in or out at any time. Within these islands the ships sail as it were in streets between islands, the leaves of the trees striking against the shrouds. As soon as we anchored in this bay, the boats went to one of the islands, where there were twenty canoes upon the shore, and the people by, as naked as they were born, and had only a gold plate about their neck, and some an eagle of gold. These, without showing any tokens of fear, the two *Indians* of *Cariari* interpreting, gave a gold plate for three horse-bells; it weighed ten ducats, and they said there was great plenty of that metal up the continent not far from them.

The next day being the seventh of October, the boats went ashore upon the continent, where meeting ten canoes full of people, and they refusing to chaffer away their gold plates, two of the chief of them were taken, that the admiral might learn something of them with the assistance of two interpreters. The gold plate one of them wore weigh'd fourteen ducats, and the other's eagle

twenty two. These said, that a day or two's journey up the country, there was abundance of gold found in some places which they named. In the bay a vast deal of fish was taken, and ashore there were abundance of those creatures above-mentioned at *Cariari*; also great plenty of their food, such as roots, grain, and fruit. The men, who are painted all over face and body of several colours, as red, black and white, go naked, only covering their privities with a narrow cotton cloth.

From this bay of *Caravaro*, we went to another close by it, called *Aburena*, which in some measure is like the other.

On the seventeenth we put out to sea to continue our voyage; and being come to *Guaiga*, a river twelve leagues from *Aburena*, the admiral commanded the boats to go ashore, which as they were doing, they saw above a hundred *Indians* on the strand, who vaulted them furiously, running up to the middle into the water, brandishing their spears, blowing horns, and beating a drum in warlike manner, to defend their country, throwing the salt water towards the christians, chewing herbs and spurning it towards them. Our men not stirring endeavoured to appease them, as they did, for at last they drew near to exchange the gold

Product of the coast.  
try.

Aburena.

plates

Vol. I.

7 Q



plates they had about their necks, some for two, and some for three horse bells, by which means we got sixteen gold plates, worth a hundred and fifty ducats. The next day being *Friday* the nineteenth of *October*, the boats went to land again to barter; yet before any christian went ashore, they called to some *Indians*, who were under some bowers they had made that night to defend their country, fearing the christians would land to do them some wrong. Tho' they called never so much, yet none of them would come, nor would the christians land without knowing first what mind they were in: for, as afterwards appeared, they waited in order to fall on them as soon as they landed. But perceiving they came not out of the boats, they blew their horns, beat the drum, and making a great noise, ran into the water, as they had done the day before, till they came almost to the boats, making signs as if they would cast their javelins if they did not return to their ships. The christians offended at this their proceeding, that they might not be so bold, and despise them, wounded one with an arrow in the arm, and fired a cannon, at which they were so frightened, that all ran away to land. Then four christians landed, and calling them back, they came very peaceably, leaving their arms behind them, and exchanged three gold plates, saying, they had no more, because they came not provided for to trade, but to fight.

Catiba.

All the admiral looked for in this journey, was to get samples of what those parts afforded; and therefore without farther delay, he proceeded to *Catiba*, and cast anchor in the mouth of a great river. The people of the country were seen to gather, calling one another with horns and drums; and afterwards sent a canoe with two men in it to the ships, who having talked with the *Indians* that were taken at *Cariari*, presently came aboard the admiral without any apprehension of fear; and by the advice of those *Indians*, gave the admiral two plates of gold they had about their necks, and he in return gave them some baubles of ours. When these were gone ashore, there came another canoe with three men

wearing plates hanging at their necks, who did as the first had done. Amiry thus settled, our men went ashore, where they found abundance of people with their king, who differed in nothing from the rest, but that he was covered with one leaf of a tree, because at that time it rained hard; and to give his subjects a good example, he exchanged a plate, and bid them barter for theirs; which in all were nineteen of pure gold. This was the first place in the *Indies* where they saw any sign of a structure, which was a great mass of wall, or imagery, that to them seemed to be of lime and stone; the admiral ordered a piece of it to be brought away as a memorial of that antiquity.

He went away eastward, and came to *Cobravo*, the people of which place lie near the rivers of that coast; and because none came down to the strand, and the wind blew fresh, he held on his course, and went on to five towns of great trade, among which was *Veragua*, where the *Indians* said the gold was gathered and the plates made.

The next day he came to a town, called *Cubiga*, where the *Indians* of *Cariari* said the trading country ended, which began at *Carakora*, and ran as far as *Cubiga*, for fifty leagues along the coast.

The admiral without making any stay, went on till he put into *Porto Bello*, giving it that name, because it is large, beautiful, well-peopled, and encompassed by a well cultivated country. He entered this place on the second of *November*, passing between two small islands, within which the ships may lie close to the shore, and turn it out if they have occasion. The country about that harbour higher up, is not very rough, but tilled and full of houses, a stone's throw or a bow shot one from the other; and it looks like the finest landskip a man can imagine. During seven days we continued there on account of the rain and ill weather, there came continually canoes from all the country about to trade for provisions, and bottoms of fine spun cotton which they gave for some trifles, such as points and pins.

Retrete very fine port.

## C H A P. XCIII.

*How the admiral came to port Bastimentos, or Nombre de Dios, and continued his voyage till he put into Retrete.*

ON *Wednesday* the 9th of *November*, we sail'd out of *Porto Bello*, eight leagues to the eastward; but the next day were forced back four leagues by stress of weather, and put in among the islands near the con-

tinent, where is now the town of *Nombre de Puerto de Dios*; and because all those small islands were full of grain, he call'd it, *Puerto de Bastimentos*, that is, the port of provisions.

There

their necks, who  
Amity thus fer-  
where they found  
h their king, who  
the rest, but that  
leaf of a tree, be-  
hard; and to give  
ple, he exchanged  
barter for theirs;  
green of pure gold.  
in the Indies where  
a structure, which  
or imagery, that  
of lime and stone;  
piece of it to be  
monial of that an-

ard, and came to  
which place lie near  
and because none  
nd, and the wind  
a course, and went  
reat trade, among  
ere the Indians said  
d the plates made.  
to a town, called  
ns of Cariari said  
ded, which began  
far as Cubiga, for  
aft.

making any stay,  
Porto Bello, giv- Porto Bel-  
se it is large, beau- lo.  
encompassed by a  
He entered this  
November, passing  
ada, within which  
to the shore, and  
ve occasion. The  
bour higher up, is  
l and full of houses,  
shot one from the  
he finest landskip a  
ing seven days we  
ing of the rain and  
continually canoes  
bout to trade for  
of fine spun cotton  
n: triffes, such as

os, and continued

own of Nombre de Puerto de  
those small islands Badimen-  
all'd it, Puerto de toa.  
port of provisions.

There

There a boat well mann'd, pursuing a  
canoe, the Indians imagining our men  
would do them some harm, and perceiving  
the boat was within less than a stone's throw  
of them, they all threw themselves into  
the water to swim away, as in effect they  
did; for tho' the boat row'd hard, it  
could not in half a league the pursuit last-  
ed, overtake any of them; or if it did  
happen to overtake one, he would dive like  
a duck, and come up again a bow-shot or  
two from the place. This chase was very  
pleasant, seeing the boat labour in vain,  
which at last returned empty.

Here we continued till the 23d of No-  
vember, refitting the ships, and mending  
our cask; and that day we sailed eastward  
to a place called *Guiga*, there being ano-  
ther of the same name between *Veragua*  
and *Cerago*. The boats going ashore,  
found above 300 persons on it, ready to  
trade for such provisions as they have, and  
some small things of gold they wore hang-  
ing at their ears and noses.

Retrete, a  
very small  
port.

But without making any stay here, on  
*Saturday* the 24th of November, we put in-  
to a small port, which was called *Retrete*,  
that is, retir'd place, because it could not  
contain above five or six ships together,  
and the mouth of it was not above 15 or  
20 paces over, and on both sides of it rocks  
appearing above water as sharp as dia-  
monds; and the channel between them was  
so deep that they found no bottom, tho' if  
the ships inclin'd never so little to either  
side, the men might leap ashore, which  
was it that sav'd the ships in that narrow  
place, which was the fault of those who  
went in the boats to view it, they being co-  
vetous to deal with the Indians, and per-  
ceiving the ships would lie there convenient-  
ly for it, close to the shore. In this place  
we continued nine days with bad weather;  
and at first the Indians came very familiarly  
to trade for such as they had, but when they  
saw the christians steal privately out of their

ships they retir'd to their houses, because  
the seamen like covetous, dissolute men,  
committed a thousand infolencies; inso-  
much that they provok'd the Indians to  
break the peace, and some skirmishes hap-  
ned between them. They increasing daily, *War with*  
Indians.  
took courage to come up to the ships, which,  
as we said, lay with their sides close to the  
shore, thinking to do some harm, which  
design of theirs had turn'd to their own de-  
triments, had not the admiral always en-  
deavour'd to gain them by patience and  
civility: but at last, perceiving their inso-  
lence, to strike a terror into them, he caus'd  
some pieces of cannon to be fir'd, which  
they answer'd with shouts, threshing the  
trees with staves, and threatening by signs,  
shewing they did not fear the noise, for  
they thought it had been only a thundering  
to terrify them. Therefore to abate their  
pride, and make them not condemn the  
christians, the admiral caus'd a shot to be  
made at a company of them that was got  
together upon a hillock, and the ball fall-  
ing in the midst of them, made them sen-  
sible there was a thunderbolt as well as  
thunder; so that for the future they durst  
not appear, even behind the mountains.  
The people of this country were the pro-  
perest they had yet seen among the Indians,  
for they were tall and spare, without any  
great bellies, and well countenanced.

The country was all plain, bearing little  
grafs, and a few trees; and in the harbour  
there were vast great *Crocodiles* or *Alliga-*  
tors, which go out to stay and sleep ashore,  
and scatter a scent as if all the musk in the  
world were together; but they are so raven-  
ous and cruel, that if they find a man  
sleeping, they drag him to the water to de-  
vour him, tho' they are fearful and coward-  
ly when attack'd. These *Alligators* are  
found in many other parts of the continent,  
and some do affirm they are the same as the  
*Crocodiles* of Nile.

Alligatora.

# C H A P. XCIV.

*How the admiral being drove by stress of weather, stood again to westward, to get intelligence concerning the mines, and enquire concerning Veragua.*

ON Monday the 5th of December, the  
admiral perceiving the violent east  
and north-east winds did not cease, and  
that there was no trading with those people,  
he resolv'd to go back, to be satisfied con-  
cerning what the Indians said of the mines  
of *Veragua*, and therefore that day he re-  
turn'd to *Porto Bello*, ten leagues westward;  
and continuing his course the next day, was  
assaulted by a west wind, which was oppo-  
site to his new design, but favourable to

that he had for three months past. But he  
believing this wind would not last long, did  
not alter his course, but bore up against the  
wind for some days, because the weather  
was unsettled; and when the weather seem'd  
a little favourable to go to *Veragua*, ano-  
ther wind would start up and drive him to-  
wards *Porto Bello*; and when we were most  
in hopes to get into port, we were quite  
beat off again, and sometimes with such  
thunder and lightning, that the men durst

not

Terrible  
tempests  
for many  
days.

not open their eyes, the ships seem'd to be just sinking, and the sky to come down. Sometimes the thunder was so continued, that it was concluded, some ship fired its cannon to desire assistance. Another time there would fall such storms of rain, that it would last violently for two or three days, insomuch that it look'd like another universal deluge. This perplex'd all the men, and made them almost despair, seeing they could not get half an hour's rest, being continually wet, turning sometimes one way, and sometimes another, struggling against all the elements, and dreading them all; for in such dreadful storms, they dread the fire in flashes of lightning, the air for its fury, the water for the terrible waves, and the earth for the hidden rocks and sands which sometimes a man meets with near the port, where he hop'd for safety, and not knowing them, chafes rather to contend with the other elements in whom he has less share.

Besides all these terrors, there occur'd another no less dangerous and wonderful, which was a spout rising from the sea, on Tuesday the 13th of December, which if they had not dissolv'd by saying the gospel of St. John, it had certainly sunk whatsoever it fell upon; for as has been said, it draws the water up to the clouds like a pillar, and thicker than a butt, twisting it about like a whirlwind. That same night we lost sight of the ship called *Caimo*, and had the good fortune to see it again after three dreadful dark days, though it had lost its boat, and been in great danger, being so near land as to cast anchor, which it lost at long run, being forced to cut the cable. Now it appeared that the currents on that coast follow the wind, running westward with the east-wind, and the contrary, the water still going after the prevailing wind. The ships being now almost shattered to pieces with the tempest, and the men quite spent with labour, a day or two's calm gave them some respite, and brought such multitudes of sharks about the ships, that they were dreadful to behold, especially for such as are superstitious; because, as it is reported, that ravens at a great distance smell out dead bodies; so some think these sharks do, which if they lay hold of a man's arm or leg, cut it off like a razor, for they have two rows of teeth in the nature of a saw. Such a multitude of these was killed with the hook and chain, that being able to destroy no more, they lay swimming upon the water, and they are so greedy, that they do not only bite at carrion, but may be taken with a red rag upon the hook. I have seen a tortoise taken out of the belly of one of these

Multitudes  
of sharks.

sharks, and it afterwards liv'd aboard the ship; but out of another was taken the whole head of one of his own kind, we having cut it off and thrown it into the water, as not good to eat, no more than they are themselves, and that shark had swallowed it; and to us it seem'd contrary to reason, that one creature should swallow the head of another of its own bigness, which is not to be admired, because their mouth reaches almost to their belly, and the head is shaped like an olive. Tho' some look'd upon them to forebode mischief, and others thought them bad fish, yet we all made much of them, by reason of the want we were in, having been now above 8 months at sea, so that we had consum'd all the fish and flesh brought from *Spain*; and what with the heat and moisture of the sea, the biscuit was so full of maggots, that, as God shall help me, I saw many that staid till night to eat the portage or brevice made of it, that they might not see the maggots; and others were so us'd to eat them, that they did not mind to throw them away when they saw them, because they might lose their supper if they were so very curious.

Upon Saturday the 17th, the admiral put into a port 3 leagues east of *Pennon*, which the *Indians* called *Huiva*. It was like a great bay, where we rested 3 days, and going ashore, saw the inhabitants dwell upon the tops of trees, like birds, laying sticks across from bough to bough, and building huts upon them, rather than houses. Tho' we knew not the reason of this strange custom, yet we guess'd it was done for fear of the griffins there are in that country, or of enemies; for all along that coast, the people at every league distance are great enemies to one another.

We sailed from this port on the 20th with fair weather, but not settled; for as soon as we were got out to sea, the tempest began to rage again, and drove us into another port, whence we departed again the third day, the weather seeming somewhat mended, but like an enemy that lies in wait for a man, rush'd out again, and forced us to *Pennon*, where when we hop'd to put in, the wind started up so contrary, that we were drove again towards *Veragua*. Being at an anchor in the river, the weather became again so stormy, that all the favour we had from it, was, that it allowed us to get into that port, where we had been before on Thursday the 12th of the same month. Here we continued from the 2d day in *Christmas*, till the 3d of *January* the following year 1503. when having repair'd the ship called *Gallega*, and taken aboard abundance of *Indian* wheat, water,

liv'd aboard the  
er was taken the  
is own kind, we  
rown it into the  
t, not more than  
that shark had  
seem'd contrary  
re should swallow  
its own bigness,  
ed, because their  
their belly, and  
an olive. Tho'  
forebode mischief,  
bad fish, yet we  
by reason of the  
been now above  
ve had consum'd  
ht from Spain;  
l moisture of the  
f maggots, that,  
many that staid  
or brewice made  
ee the maggots;  
eat them, that  
row them away  
ause they might  
ere so very cu-

h, the admiral  
east of Pennon,  
Huiva. It was  
e rested 3 days,  
habitants dwell  
ids, laying sticks  
n, and building  
houses. Tho'  
of this strange  
s done for fear  
at country, or  
that coast, the  
are great ene-

t on the 20th  
settled; for as  
sea, the tem-  
d drove us in-  
departed again  
seeming some-  
emy that lies  
ut again, and  
when we hop'd  
so contrary,  
wards Veragua.  
the weather  
at all the far-  
that it allowed  
e we had been  
of the same  
from the 2d  
d of January  
n having re-  
r, and taken  
wheat, water,  
and

Wonderful  
change of  
matters.

and wood, we turn'd back towards *Veragua* with bad weather, and contrary winds, which chang'd crossly, just as the admiral alter'd his course. And this was so strange and unheard of a thing, that I would not have repeated so many changes, if, besides by being then present, I had not seen the same written by *James Mendez*, who sail'd with the canoes of *Jamaica*, whereof I shall speak hereafter, and writ an account of this voyage; and the letter the admiral sent by him to their catholic majesties, which is printed, will inform the reader how great our sufferings were, and how much torture persecuted him the ought most to favour. But to return to the changes of weather, and of our course, which put us to so much trouble between *Veragua* and *Porto Bello*, for which reason, that coast was called *Costa de Contraffes*, that is, coast of thwartings.

Upon *Thursday*, being the feast of the *Epiphany*, we cast anchor near a river, which the *Indians* call *Yebra*, and the admiral nam'd *Belem*, or *Betlem*, because we came to that place upon the feast of the three kings. He caus'd the mouth of that river, and of another westward, to be

founded; the latter the *Indians* call *Veragua*, where he found but shoal water, and in that of *Belem*, 4 fathom at high water. The boats went up this river to the town, where they were inform'd the gold mines of *Veragua* were. At first the *Indians* were so far from conversing, that they assembled with their weapons, to hinder the christians landing. The next day, our boats going to the river of *Veragua*, the *Indians* there did as the others had done, and that not only ashore, but stood upon their guard with their canoes in the water. But an *Indian* of that coast, who understood them a little, going ashore with the christians, and telling them, we were good people, and desir'd nothing but what we paid for, they were somewhat pacified, and truck'd 20 gold plates, some hollow pieces like joints of reeds, and some grains never melted; which to make their value the more, they said were gathered a great way off upon uncouth mountains; and that when they gather'd it, they did not eat, nor carry women along with them, which some thing the people of *Hispaniola* said, when it was first discovered.

Indian po-  
lity.

# C H A P. XCV.

*How the admiral went into the river of Belem, and resolv'd to build a town there and leave his brother the lieutenant in it.*

Terrible  
the Indians.

ON monday the 9th of *January*, the admiral's ship, and that called *Biscaina*, went up the river, and the *Indians* came presently to truck for such things as they had, particularly fish, which at certain times of the year comes out of the sea up these rivers in such quantities as seems incredible to such as do not see it; and they exchange'd some little gold for pins, and those things they most valued they gave for beads or hawks-bells. Next day the other two ships came in, which they had not done at first, because there being but little water at the mouth of the river, they were forced to stay for the flood; tho' there the sea never rises or falls above half a fathom.

*Veragua* being fam'd for mines and extraordinary wealth, the third day after our arrival, the admiral's brother went up the river with the boats to the town of *Quibio*, so the *Indians* call their king, who hearing of the lieutenant's coming, came down the river in his canoes to meet him. They met in very friendly manner, giving one another interchangeably such things, as they valu'd most, and having discours'd a long time together, every one went away peaceably. Next day the said *Quibio* came aboard

to visit the admiral, and having discours'd together about an hour, the admiral gave him some things, and his men truck'd bells for some gold, and so he return'd without any ceremony the same way he came.

We being thus very easie and secure, on *Wednesday* the 24th of *January*, the river of *Belem* suddenly swell'd so high, that before we could provide against it, or carry a cable ashore, the fury of the water came so impetuously against the admiral's ship, that it broke one of its two anchors, and drove her with such force against the ship *Gallega*, which lay a-stern of it, that it brought the foremast by the board, and were both carried away foul of one another in utmost danger of perishing. Some judg'd the mighty rains to have been the cause of this mighty flood, they having never ceas'd all the winter in that country; but had that been it, the river would have swell'd by degrees, and not all on a sudden, which made it be believed some great shower had fallen on the mountains of *Veragua*, which the admiral called *St. Christopher's*, because the highest of them was above the region of the air, where meteors are bred; for no cloud was ever seen above, but all

A danger-  
ous sudden  
flood.

below it. To look to, it is like an hermitage, and lies at least 20 leagues up the country, in the midst of woody mountains, whence we believed that flood came which was so dangerous, that tho' it brought water enough to carry the ships out to sea, the wind was then so boisterous, that they must have been shatter'd to pieces at the mouth of the river, distant half a mile from whence they broke loose. This tempest lasted so long, that we had time enough to refit and caulk the ships. The waves broke so furiously upon the mouth of the river, that the boats could not go out to discover along the coast, to learn where the mines lay, and chuse a place to build a town; the admiral having resolved to leave his brother there with most of the men, that they might settle and subdue that country, whilst he went to *Spain* to send supplies of men and provisions: Upon this prospect, the weather growing calmer, on Monday the 6th of February, he sent his brother with 68 men by sea to the mouth of *Veragua* river, a league distant from *Belem* westward, and he went a league and a half up the river, to the *Cacique's* town, where he

staid a day enquiring out the way to the mines.

On Wednesday they travel'd four leagues and a half and came to lie near a river, which they pass'd 44 times, and the next day advanced a league and a half towards the mines, show'd them by *Indians* sent by *Quibio* to guide them. In two hours time after they came thither, every man gather'd some gold about the roots of the trees, which were there very thick, and of a prodigious height. This sample was much valued, because none of those that went had any tools to dig, or had ever gather'd any. Therefore the design of their journey being only to get information of the mines, they return'd very well pleas'd that same day to *Veragua*, and the next to the ships. True it is, that, as was afterwards known, these mines, were not those of *Veragua*, which lay much nearer, but of *Urira*, a town whose people are enemies to those of *Veragua*, to do whom a displeasure, *Quibio* ordered the christians to be conducted thither, and that they might go away to those and leave his.

#### C H A P. XCVI.

*How the admiral's brother went to see some towns of that province; with an account of the country, and customs of those people.*

ON Thursday the 14th of February 1503, the admiral's brother went into the country with 40 Men, a boat following with 14. The next day they came to the river of *Urira*, 7 leagues from *Belem* westward. The *Cacique* came out a league from his town to meet him, with 20 Men, and presented him with such things as they feed on, and some gold plates were exchange'd here. Whilst they were here, the *Cacique*, and chief men, never ceased putting a dry herb into their mouths and chewing it, and sometimes they took a sort of powder they carried with that herb, which looks very odd. Having rested here a while, the christians and *Indians* went together to the town, where abundance of people came out to them, and assign'd them a great house to lie in, giving them much to eat. Soon after came the *Cacique* of *Dururi*, which is a neighbouring town, with a great many *Indians*, who brought some gold plates to truck; all these *Indians* said, there were *Caciques* up the country, who had plenty of gold, and abundance of men arm'd like ours. Next day, the lieutenant ordered the rest of his men to return by land to the ships, and he with thirty, he kept with him, held on his journey to-

wards *Zabraba*, where the fields for above 6 leagues were all full of *Maiz*, like corn-fields. Thence he went to *Cateba*, another town; at both places he was well entertained, abundance of provisions given him, and some gold plates truck'd, which, as has been said, are like the paten of a chalice, some bigger and some less, weighing 12 ducats more or less; they wear them about their necks, hanging by a string, as we do relics. The lieutenant being now very far from the ships, without finding any port along that coast, or any river bigger than that of *Belem* to settle his colony, he came back the same way on the 24th of February, bringing above — ducats in gold he had exchanged for. As soon as he return'd, presently order was taken for his stay, and 80 men being appointed to remain with him, they agreed by ten and ten, or more or less in a gang, and began to build houses upon the bank of the aforesaid river of *Belem*, about a cannon shot from the mouth of it, within a trench that lies on the right hand, coming up the river, at the mouth of which there is a little hill. Besides these houses, which were all of timber, and covered with palm-tree leaves, which grew along the shore, another large house

Christians find good reception.

Dururi.

Zabraba.  
Cateba.

A little  
river that  
lies between  
up with  
land.

Indians  
manner of  
fishing.

The mouth  
of the river  
is very close  
up with  
land.



at the way to the

vel'd four leagues  
lie near a river,  
nes, and the next  
and a half towards  
by Indians sent by  
in two hours time  
very man gather'd  
of the trees, which  
nd of a prodigious  
was much valued,  
that went had any  
ver gather'd any,  
their journey being  
of the mines, they  
d that same day to  
rds known, these  
f Veragua, which  
of Urira, a town  
to those of Vera-  
teasure, Quibio or-  
conducted thither,  
to away to those

Indians  
manner of  
fishing.

with an account

fields for above  
Maiz, like corn-  
to Cateba, ano-  
s he was well en-  
provisions given  
s truck'd, which,  
ke the paten of a  
some less, weigh-  
; th y wear them  
g by a string, as  
tenant being now  
without finding  
st, or any river  
to settle his colo-  
e way on the 24th  
ove — ducats in  
r. As soon as he  
was taken for his  
appointed to re-  
d by ten and ten,  
g, and began to  
k of the aforesaid  
annon shot from  
a trench that lies  
up the river, at  
re is a little hill.  
were all of tim-  
palm-tree leaves,  
re, another large  
house

house was built, to serve as a storehouse and magazine, into which several pieces of cannon, powder, and provisions were put, and other necessities for the support of the planters. But for wine, biscuit, oil, vinegar, cheese, and much grain, which was all they had to eat, these things were left in the safest place, aboard the ship called *Gallega*, that was to be left with the lieutenant, that he might make use of it either at sea, or ashore, having all its cordage, nets, hooks, and other fishing tackle; for as we have said, there is vast plenty of fish in that country in every river, several fairs at certain times running along the coast in shoals, on which the people of the country feed more than upon flesh; for tho' there be some sorts of beasts they are not enough to maintain them. The customs of these *Indians* are for the most part much like those of *Hispaniola*, and the neighbouring islands; but these people of *Veragua*, and the country about it, when they talk to one another, and eat, turn their backs, and are always chewing an herb, which we look upon to be the occasion that their teeth are decay'd and rotten. Their food is fish, which they take with nets and hooks made of tortoise-shell, which they cut with a thread, as if they were sawing; the same they use in the islands. They have another way of catching some very small fishes, which in *Hispaniola* they call *Titi*. These at certain times being drove to the shore by the rains, are so persecuted by the bigger fish, that they are forced up to the surface of the water, where the *Indians* take as many as they will of them in little mats, or small nets, and wrap them up in leaves of trees, as apothecaries do their drugs; and having dried them in an oven, they keep a long time. They also catch pilchards almost in the same manner; for at certain times these fishes fly from the great ones so violently, and in such fear, that they leap out two or three paces upon the dry land, so that there is no more to do, but to take them as they do the others. These pilchards

are taken after another manner; for in the middle of their canoes, from stem to stern, they raise a partition of palm-tree leaves two yards high, and plying about the river they make a noise, and beat the shore with their oars, and then the pilchards, to fly from the other fish, leap into the canoe, and hitting against those leaves fall in, by which means they take as many as they please. Several sorts of fish pass along the coast in shoals, whereof wonderful quantities are taken, which they keep roasted a long time. They have also abundance of *Maiz*, which is a sort of grain growing in Indian an ear, or hard head like *millet*, whereof <sup>Indians</sup> wine. they make white and red wine, as beer is made in *England*, and mix of their spice with it as pleases their palate; it has a pleasant taste like a sharp brisk wine: they also make another sort of wine of certain trees like palms; and I believe they are of that kind, but that they are smooth, and have such prickles on the trunk as the thorn. From the pith of this palm, which is like palm-toes squeez'd, they draw a juice, whereof they make wine, boiling with it water and spice; and this they make great account of. They make another wine of the fruit we said is found in the island *Guanadalupe*, which is like a great pine-apple: It is planted in great fields, and the plant is a sprout growing out at the top of the fruit itself, like that which grows out of a cabbage or lattice. One plant lasts three or four years, and bears. They make wine of other sorts of fruit, particularly of one that grows upon very high trees, and is as big as a large limon, and every one has two, three, and some nine stones like nuts, but they are not round, but long, or like a chestnut. The rind of this fruit is like a pomegranate, and when first taken from the tree it resembles it exactly, save only that it wants the prickly circle at the top. The taste of it is like a peach: Of these some are better, some worse, as is usual among other fruit. There are of them in the islands, and the *Indians* call them *Mamei*.

# C H A P. XCVII.

*How for the greater security of the christian colony, Quibio, and several of the principal men were made prisoners, and how through the carelessness of his keepers, he made his escape.*

The mouth  
of the ri-  
ver choak'd  
up with  
sand.

ALL things were now settled for the christian colony, and ten or twelve houses built and thatched, and the admiral ready to sail for *Spain*, when he fell into greater danger for want of water, than he had been before by the inundation. For the great rains of *January*, being over,

the mouth of the river was so choaked up with sand, that whereas when they came in, there was about ten foot water, which was scant enough, when we would have gone out there were not two foot, so that we were shut up without any help, it being impossible to get the ships over the sand,

sand; and though there had been such an engine, the sea was so boisterous, that the least wave which beats upon the shore was enough to beat the ships in pieces, especially ours, which were at this time like a honey-comb, being all worm-eaten through and through. We had nothing left but to have recourse to God, and beg rain of him, as before we pray'd for fair weather; for the rain we knew would swell the river, and clear the sand from the mouth of it, as is usual in those rivers. It being in the mean while discovered by means of the interpreter, that *Quibio*, the *Cacique* of *Veragua* intended to set fire to the houses and destroy the christians, because all the *Indians* were against their planting upon that river; it was therefore thought fit, as a punishment to him, and a terror and example to others, to make him a prisoner with all his chief men, and send them into *Spain*, and that his town should remain at the disposal of the christians.

To this purpose, the lieutenant on the 30th of *March*, went with 76 men to the town or village of *Veragua*; and because I call it a town or village, it is to be observed that in those parts their houses are not close together, but they live as in *Biscay* at some distance from one another. When *Quibio* understood that the lieutenant was come near, he sent him word not to come up to his house, which stood upon a hill above the river of *Veragua*; and the lieutenant, that he might not fly for fear of him, resolved to go with only five men, ordering those he left behind to come after him, two and two, at some distance from one another; and when they heard a musquet fired, they should beset the house, that none might escape. Being come up to the house, *Quibio* sent another messenger, bidding him not go in, for he would come out to talk to him, tho' he was wounded with an arrow, which they do that their women may not be seen, being wonderful jealous of them. Accordingly he came and sat at the door, bidding only the lieutenant come near him, who did so, ordering the rest to fall on, as soon as he laid hold of his arm. He asked the *Cacique* some questions concerning his indisposition, and the affairs of the country by the assistance of an *Indian* he had, whom we had taken not far off, above three months since, and he willingly went along with us. This man was then much afraid, for knowing that *Quibio* design'd to destroy all the christians, and not knowing our strength, he thought that might easily be done by the great multitude of people there was in that province. But the lieutenant minded not his fear, and pretending to look where

the *Cacique* was wounded, he took him by the arm, and tho' they were both very strong, yet the lieutenant took such good hold, that he lost it not till the other four came up, which done, one of them fired a musquet, and on a sudden all the christians running out of their ambush, beset the house, in which there were thirty people great and small, most of which were taken, and never a one wounded, for they seeing their king taken, would make no resistance. Among these there were some wives and children of *Quibio*, and other men of note, who offered great wealth, saying, there was a great treasure in the adjoining wood, and they would give it all for their ransom. But the lieutenant not regarding their promises, ordered *Quibio*, with his wives and children, and the principal men, to be carried aboard, before the country took the alarm, staying himself there with most of the men, to go after his kindred and subjects who were fled. Then having consulted with the captains and chief men, whom they should intrust to conduct the prisoners to the mouth of the river; he at last delivered them to *John Sanchez de Cadiz*, a pilot, and a man in good reputation, he offering to carry them, the *Cacique* being bound hands and feet; and this pilot being charged to take special care that the *Cacique* should not escape, he answered, he would give them leave to pull of his beard if he got from him. So he took him into his custody, and went down the river of *Veragua*. Being come within half a league of the mouth of it, and *Quibio* complaining that his hands were too hard bound, *John Sanchez* out of compassion, loosed him from the seat of the boat to which he was tied, and held the rope in his hand. A little after, *Quibio* observing he did not mind him, threw himself into the water; and *John Sanchez* not being able to hold fast the rope, let go that he might not draw him after into the water. Night coming on, and those in the boat being all in a confusion, they could not see or hear where he got ashore, so that they heard no more of him than if a stone had fallen into the water: That the like might not happen with the rest of the prisoners, they held on their way to the ships with much shame for their carelessness and oversight. The next day the lieutenant perceiving the country was very mountainous and woody, and that there were no regular towns, but one house here, and another at a great distance, and that it would be very difficult to pursue the *Indians* from place to place, he resolved to return to the ships with his men, not one of them being either killed or wounded. He presented

The *Cacique* apprehended.

Makes his escape.

Indians attack the new Colon.

he took him by  
were both very  
ook such good  
the other four  
of them fired  
all the christi-  
abush, beset the  
e thirty people  
f which were  
anded, for they  
ould make no  
ere were some  
bio, and other  
at wealth, say-  
ure in the ad-  
uld give it all  
lieutenant not  
ordered Quibio,  
and the prin-  
aboard, before  
s, staying him-  
men, to go af-  
who were fled.  
h the captains  
ould intrust  
the mouth of  
ed them to John  
and a man in  
to carry them,  
ands and feet;  
to take special  
not escape, he  
m leave to pull  
n him. So he  
and went down  
g come within  
of it, and Qui-  
bands were too  
out of compas-  
eat of the boat  
held the rope  
Quibio observ-  
rew himself in-  
chebez not being  
let go that he  
into the water.  
ose in the boat  
ey could not see  
e, so that they  
if a stone had  
the like might  
f the prisoners,  
the ships with  
siness and over-  
lieutenant, per-  
very mountain-  
there were no  
ouse here, and  
e, and that it  
ursue the Indi-  
resolved to re-  
nen, not one of  
wounded. He  
presented

presented the admiral with the plunder of Quibio's house, worth about 300 ducats in gold plates, little eagles, and small quills which they string and wear about their arms and legs, and in gold twists which they put about their head in the nature of

a coronet. All which things, deducting only the 5th part for their catholick majesties, he divided among those that went upon the expedition: And to the lieutenant, in token of victory, was given one of those crowns or coronets above-mention'd.

# C H A P. XCVIII.

*How after the admiral was gone from Belem to return to Spain, Quibio assaulted the christian colony, in which engagement there were many killed and wounded.*

ALL things being provided for the maintenance of the colony, and the rules and methods for them to be govern'd by, settled by the admiral, it pleased God to send so much rain, as swelled the river and open'd the mouth of it; wherefore the admiral resolv'd to depart with all speed for *Hispaniola*, to send speedy supplies to this place. Having waited for a calm that the sea might not beat upon the mouth of the river, he went out with three ships, the boats going a-head and towing us. Yet never a one went out so cleverly, but his keel raced upon the sand, and had been in danger notwithstanding the calm but that those are loose moving sands. Then we presently took in all we had unladed to lighten the ships that they might get out. As we lay waiting for a fair wind upon the open coast, a league from the mouth of the river, it pleased God miraculously to give us an occasion of sending the admiral's boat ashore as well for water, as for other necessary affairs, that by the loss of these both those ashore, and those in the ships might be saved, which happened thus. When Quibio and the *Indians* saw that the ships were without, and could not relieve them that were left behind, they assaulted the christian colony at the same time that the boat came to the shore. They having not been discover'd by reason of the thickness of the wood, when they came within ten paces of our mens houses, fell on with great shouts, casting javelins at those they spied, and at the very houses, which being covered with palm-tree leaves, were easily struck through and through, and so sometimes they wounded those within. Having thus surprized our men thinking of no such thing, they wounded 4 or 5 before they could put themselves into a posture of defence. But the lieutenant being a man of great resolution, he went out against the enemy with a spear, encouraging his men, and falling furiously on the *Indians*, with 7 or 8 that followed him, so that he made them retire to the wood, which (as we said) was close to the houses. Thence they returned and skirmish'd, casting their javelins and then retiring, as the *Spaniards* use to do in the sport they call *Juego de Can-*

*nas*, many of them flying from the christians after they had felt the edge of their swords, and the teeth of a dog, who furiously fell in among them; so that at length they fled, having killed one christian and wounded 7, one of which was the lieutenant, who was hurt with a javelin in the breast; from which danger two christians took care to preserve themselves, which story I will relate to show the comicalness of the one, who was an *Italian of Lombardy*, and the gravity of the other who was a *Spaniard*. The *Lombard* running hastily to hide himself in a house, *James Mendez*, of whom mention will be made hereafter, said to him, turn, turn back *Sebastian*, whither are you going? He answered, let me go, you devil, for I am going to secure my person. The *Spaniard* was captain *James Triflan*, whom the admiral sent ashore in the boat, who never went out of it with his men, tho' the fray was just by the river; and being blamed by some for not assisting the christians, he answered, he said he did it that those ashore might not run to the boat and so all perish, because if the boat were lost, the admiral would be in danger at sea, and therefore he would do no more than he had been commanded, which was to take in water, and to see whether there was any need of his assistance. Resolving therefore to take in the water immediately, that he might carry the admiral an account of what had happen'd, he went up the river for it, where the sweet did not mix with the salt, tho' some advised him not to go, for the danger there was of the *Indians* and their canoes; to which he answered, he did not fear that danger, since he was sent for that purpose by the admiral. Accordingly he went up the river, which is very deep within, and shelter'd on both sides with abundance of trees, which come to the edge of the water and so thick that there is scarce any going ashore, except in some places which are the fishermen's paths, and where they hide their canoes. As soon as the *Indians* perceived he was got about a league from the colony up the river, they rushed out from the thickest on both sides the river in their canoes, and making a hideous noise, blow-

*Indians  
kill all the  
Spaniards  
in the  
boats.*

ing their horns, assaulting him boldly on all sides with great odds on their side, because their canoes being swift, and one man being enough to command and turn them which way they please, especially those that are little and belong to the fishermen, three or four men came in each of them, one of whom row'd, and the rest cast their javelins at those in the boat; I call them javelins because of their bigness, tho' they have no iron-heads, but only points of fish-bones. There being but seven or eight men in our boat who row'd, and the captain with three or four men for fight, they could not cover themselves against the many javelins they threw at them, and therefore they were forced to quit the oars to take up their targets. But there was such a multitude of Indians, who pour'd in on all sides, coming up and retiring in good order, as they thought fit, that they wounded most of the christians, especially the captain, who was hurt in many places; and tho' he stood unmoved encouraging his men, it availed him nothing; for he was beset on all sides, and could not stir, nor make use of his musquets, till at last they struck a javelin into his eye, and he fell down dead; and all the rest came to the like fate, except one *John de Noia of Sevil*, who by good luck in the height of the fray fell into the water, and diving got to the shore, and made his way through the thickest of the wood to the colony, to carry the news of what had happened. This so terrified our men, that seeing they were but a few, some of their companions being kill'd and others

wounded, and that the admiral was at sea without a boat, and in danger not to return to a place whence he might send them relief, they resolv'd not to stay there; and accordingly would have gone away immediately without any orders, had not the mouth of the river hindred, the bad weather having shut it up again; for neither could the ship they had left them get out, nor durst any boat attempt it, because the sea beat so violently, so that there was no sending the admiral advice of what had happened. He was in no less danger himself, riding in an open road, having no boat and but few men, so many having been killed: So that we were all in the same trouble and confusion, as they were within, who considering what had happened, and seeing those that had been killed in the boat drive down the river covered with wounds, and followed by the country crows, look'd upon these things as ill omens, and dreaded coming to the same end; and the more because they perceived the Indians were puff'd up with their success, inasmuch that they gave them not a minute's respite by reason of the ill situation of the colony; and there is no doubt but that they must have all suffer'd, had they not advis'd to remove to an open strand eastward, where they made a work round them with the casks and other things, and planting the cannon in convenient places defending themselves, the Indians not daring to come out of the wood, because of the mischief the bullets did among them.

## C H A P. XCIX.

*How the Indians that were kept prisoners aboard made their escape, and the admiral was informed of the success of his men.*

Some Indians swim ashore, and others hang themselves.

WHilst these things happen'd, the admiral waited ten days with much trouble, and suspecting what might fall out, till the sea would settle, that he might send another boat to know what it was that detain'd the first; but fortune thwarting him in all things, would not allow us to hear of one another; and to add to our affliction, it happened that the sons and kindred of *Quibio*, whom we kept prisoners aboard the ship *Bermuda*, to carry them to Spain, found means to escape thus. At night they were kept under hatches, and the scuttle being so high that they could not reach it, the watch forgot to fasten it with a chain as they used to do, especially because some seamen lay upon it. The prisoners therefore one night gathering the stones that were in the hold under the scuttle, and rai-

sing themselves on them, set their shoulders against it, and forced it open, tumbling those that lay on it over and over, and some of the principal men leaping out, and cast themselves into the sea. The seamen taking the alarm, many of them could not get out; and the scuttle being fastened with the chain, better care was taken; but those that remained in despair, because they could not get off with their companions, hang'd themselves with the ropes they could come at, and so were found the next morning, their feet and knees dragging upon the bottom of the hold, the place not being high enough for them to hang without touching, so that all the prisoners aboard that ship escap'd or died. Tho' this loss was not material to the ships, yet besides that it increased the number of misfortunes, it was fear'd

The new colony abandon

admiral was at sea  
anger not to return  
ght fend them re-  
o stay there; and  
gone away imme-  
lers, had not the  
dred, the bad wea-  
again; for neither  
left them get out.  
pt it, because the  
that there was no  
vice of what had  
o less danger him-  
ad, having no boat  
y having been kill-  
in the same trou-  
y were within, who  
opened, and seeing  
d in the boat drive  
with wounds, and  
crows, look'd up-  
nens, and dreaded  
and the more be-  
Indians were puff-  
infomuch that they  
s respite by reason  
colony; and there  
must have all suf-  
ficed to remove to  
where they made  
the casks and other  
cannon in conve-  
hemselfes, the In-  
out of the wood,  
the bullets did a-

feard it might be hurtful to those ashore; because *Quibio* would willingly have made peace with them to get his children, and now there being no hostage left, there was cause to suspect he would make war with the greater fury. Being thus afflicted amidst so many troubles and disasters, having nothing to trust to but our anchors and cables, without knowing any thing from shore, there wanted not those, who said, that since those *Indians* only to obtain their liberty, had ventured to leap into the sea above a league from shore, they to save themselves, and so many more, would be content to swim ashore, provided that boat which remained would carry them as far as where the waves did not break. I say one boat remain'd, which was that of the ship *Bermuda*, for that of the *Biscaina*, we said before, was lost in the fray, so that they had only that one boat at present among the three ships. The admiral hearing these seamen's honest proposal, allow'd of it, and so the boat carried them within a musket shot of land, not being able to go nearer without great danger, because of the great waves that broke

on it. There one *Peter de Ledesma*, a pilot of *Sevil*, threw himself into the water, and with a good heart got to shore, where he learnt the condition our men were in, and how they all unanimously said, they would not upon any account remain there in that forlorn condition, and therefore desired the admiral not to sail till he had taken them off, for to leave them there was sacrificing of them, and the more because there were already divisions among them, and they obey'd neither the admiral's brother nor the captains, and all their care was upon the first fair weather, to secure a canoe and go aboard, because this could not be conveniently done with only one boat that was left them; and if the admiral would not receive them, they would endeavour to save their lives aboard that ship which was left them, and rather trust fortune than be at the mercy of the *Indians*, who would inhumanly butcher them. With this answer *Peter de Ledesma* returned to the boat which waited for him, and thence to the ships, where he gave the admiral an account how matters stood.

A Spani  
and several  
ashore.

# CHAP. C.

*How the admiral brought off the men he had left at Belem, and struck over to Jamaica.*

The new  
colony at  
bandon'd.

THE admiral understanding the rout, the confusion and despair those ashore were in, he resolv'd to stay and bring them off, tho' not without great danger, because his ships lay in an open road, out of all shelter, and without hopes of escaping had the weather grown more boisterous. But it pleas'd God in eight days he continued there, the weather mended so much, that those ashore with their boat and large canoes fast bound together, that they might not over-set, began to gather their goods, and every one striving to be none of the last, they us'd such diligence, that in two days nothing was left ashore but the hulk of the ship, which by reason of the worms was unfit for service. Thus rejoicing we were all together again, we sail'd up that coast eastward; for tho' all the pilots were of opinion that we might return to *St. Domingo* standing away to the north, yet only the admiral and his brother, know it was requisite to run a considerable way up that coast, before they struck across that gulph that is between the continent and *Hispaniola*, which our men were much displeas'd at, thinking the admiral design'd directly for *Spain*, whereas he neither had provisions, nor were his ships fit for that voyage. But he knowing best what was fit to be done,

we held on our course till we came to *Porto Bello*, where we were forced to leave the ship *Biscaina*, it was so leaky, being all worm-eaten through and through. And holding along up the coast, we pass'd by the port we call'd *Retrete*, and a country near which there were abundance of small islands, which the admiral call'd *las Barbas*, but the *Indians* and pilots, call that the territory of the *Cacique Pocoroja*: Hence we held on ten leagues to the last land we saw of the continent, call'd *Marmora*, and on Monday the first of May 1503, we stood to the northward, the wind and currents east, which made us lie as near the wind as we could. And tho' all the pilots said, we should be east of the *Caribbee* islands, yet the admiral fear'd he should not make *Hispaniola*, which proved so; for upon Wednesday the 10th of the same month of May, we were in sight of two very small and low islands, full of tortoises, as was all the sea about, infomuch that they look'd like little rocks, for which reason those islands were call'd *Tortugas* or *Tortois*. Sailing on northwards, on Friday following about evening, 30 leagues from those islands, we came to those call'd *Jardin de la Reina*, or the queen's garden, which is a great number of islands on the south-side of *Cuba*. Being here at

Portugal  
Islands.

and the admi-

set their shoulders  
open, tumbling  
er and over, and  
n leaping out, cast  
The seamen ta-  
f them could not  
eing fastened with  
taken; but those  
because they could  
mpanions, hang'd  
they could come  
the next morning,  
ing upon the bot-  
ce not being high  
without touching,  
aboard that ship  
this loss was not  
besides that it in-  
isfortunes, it was  
feard



an anchor, ten leagues from *Cuba*, with men and trouble enoegn, because they had nothing to eat but bisket, with some little oil and vinegar, labouring day and night at the pump, because the ships were so worm-eaten they were ready to sink, a great storm arose in the night, and the ship *Bermuda* not being able to ride it out, ran foul of us, and broke our stem and its own stern, and tho' with much difficulty, because of the roughness of the sea and high wind, it pleas'd God they got loose from one another; and tho' we cast all our anchors none would hold but the sheet-anchor, whose cable when day appeared, we found held but by a thread, which if the night had lasted an hour longer, must have given way, and all that place being full of rocks, we could not miss splitting upon some of those that were a-stern us. But it pleas'd God to deliver us here, as he had done from many other dangers. And so failing hence with much toil, we came to an *Indian* town on the coast of *Cuba*, called *Mataia*, where having got some refreshment, we sail'd for *Jamaica*, for the east winds and great currents setting westward, would not permit us to stand for *Hispaniola*, especially the ships being so worm-eaten, that as has been said, we never ceas'd day

and night working at three pumps in each of them, and if any one broke, whilst it was mended, we were forced to supply the want of it with kettles. For all this, the night before *Midsummer-Eve*, the water was so high in our ship, that there was no draining of, for it came almost up to the deck; and with much labour we held out in that manner till day appearing we put into a harbour in *Jamaica* called *Puerto Bueno* or *Good Harbour*, which tho' good to take shelter against a storm, had no fresh water, nor any town near it. Having made the best shift we could, on the day after the feast of *St. John*, we set out for another harbour eastward, called *Santa Gloria* or *Holy Glory*, which is enclosed with rocks. Being got in, and no longer able to keep the ships above water, we run them ashore as far in as we could, stranding them close together board and board, and shoaring them up on both sides, fixed them so that they could not budge; and in this posture the water came up almost to the deck, upon which, and the poop and fore-castle, were sheds made for the men to lie in, to secure our selves, that the *Indians* might not hurt us, because the island was not then inhabited or subdued by *Christians*.

The admiral runs his ships aground.

Cause of our shipwreck.

#### CHAP. CI.

*How the admiral sent canoes from Jamaica to Hispaniola, to give advice that he was cast ashore there with his men.*

Being thus fortified in our ships about a bow shot from land, the *Indians*, who were a peaceable good natured people, came in their canoes to sell provisions, and such things as they had, for our commodities. Therefore, that there might not be some disorder committed among the christians, and that they might not take more in exchange than was fitting, and the others might have their due, the admiral appointed two persons to oversee the buying of such things as they brought, and to divide daily among the men what was exchanged, because there was nothing left aboard to subsist on, as well because most of the provisions were spent, as for that the rest was spoil'd and some lost when the men came away from *Belem*, where the haste and confusion hindred things being brought off as they should. That we might be supplied with sustenance, it pleas'd God to direct us to that island, which abounds in provisions, and is inhabited by *Indians*, who are willing enough to trade, and therefore they resorted from all parts to barter such commodities as they had. For this reason, and that the christians might not

The admiral's care to prevent disorders.

disperse about the island, the admiral chose to fortify himself upon the sea, and not settle a dwelling ashore; because we being naturally disobedient, no command or punishment would have kept the men from running about the country, and into the houses of the *Indians*, to take from them what they found, and thus they would have anger'd their wives and children, which would have caus'd quarrels and made them our enemies, and the taking their provisions by force, would have reduced us to great want and distress. This could not happen now, because the men were aboard, and there was no going ashore without leave, which pleas'd the *Indians*, who sold two *Huties*, which are little creatures like rabbets, for a bit of tin, and cakes of bread they call *Zabi*, for two or three red or yellow glass beads; and when they brought a quantity of any thing, they had a hawk's-bell, and sometimes we gave a *Cacique* or great man a little looking-glass or red cap, or a pair of scissors to please them. This good order kept the men plentifully supplied with provisions, and the *Indians* were well pleas'd with our company.

Mutiny against admiral.

pumps in each  
stroke, whilst it  
to supply the  
or all this, the  
the water was  
e was no drain-  
to the deck ;  
eld out in that  
we put into a  
Puerto Bueno  
ed to take shel-  
fresh water, nor  
made the best  
fter the least of  
er harbour east-  
or *Holy Glory*,  
s. Being got  
ep the ships a-  
ore as far in as  
close together  
ing them up on  
hat they could  
ture the water  
e, upon which,  
le, were sheds  
e, to secure our  
ht not hurt us,  
then inhabited

The admiral  
saw the ships  
on the ground

Canoes  
of the  
Hijpaniola

advice that he

the admiral chose  
a, and not fet-  
se we being na-  
mand or pu-  
the men from  
, and into the  
ake from them  
as they would  
and children,  
rrels and made  
e taking their  
have reduced  
s. This could  
e men were a-  
ng ashore with-  
e Indians, who  
little creatures  
tin, and cakes  
r two or three  
and when they  
ning, they had  
nes we gave a  
e looking-glass  
ssors to please  
kept the men  
provisions, and  
with our com-  
pany.

pany. But it being requisite to find some means to return to *Spain*, the admiral sometimes consulted with the captains and principal men about the means of getting out of that confinement, and at last returning to *Hijpaniola*; for to stay there in hopes some ships might arrive was a mere folly, and to think to build a vessel was impossible, having neither tools nor workmen fit to do any thing to the purpose, but what would take up a long time, and not produce such a vessel as was fit to sail against the winds and currents that prevail among those islands; and therefore it had been only time lost, and would rather have proved our ruin than relief. Therefore after many consultations, the admiral resolved to send to *Hijpaniola* to give an account that he was cast ashore on that island, and desired a ship might be sent him with provisions and ammunition. To this purpose he made choice of two persons that might perform it faithfully and courageously, I say courageously, because it seemed impossible to go over from one island to the other in canoes, and there was no other way for it: These being boats, as has been said above, made of one single tree hollowed, and so contrived that when they are loaded, they are not a span above water. Besides, they must be indifferently large for that passage, because little ones would be more dangerous, and the biggest by reason of their own weight were not fit for a long voyage, or to perform what was design'd. Two canoes fit for the purpose being chose, the admiral in July 1503, ordered *James Mendez de Segura*, his chief secretary, to go in one of them with six christians and ten Indians to row, and in the other he sent *Bartholomew Fiesco*, a Genoese gentleman, with the like number of men; that as

soon as *James Mendez* got over to *Hijpaniola*, he might continue his journey to *St. Domingo*, which was 250 leagues from the place where we were, and *Fiesco* might return to bring the news that the other was safe arrived, and we might not be left in fear lest some disaster had befallen him, which there was much cause to fear; considering, as has been said, how unfit a canoe is to live upon a rough sea, especially when there were christians in it; for if there were none but Indians the danger had not been so great, because they are so dexterous, that tho' a canoe overlets when they are half way over, they turn it up again, swimming, and get into it. But honour and necessity putting men upon bolder attempts than this, the persons above-mentioned took their way along the coast of *Jamaica* to the easternmost point of it, that the Indians call *Aoamagueue* from a Cacique of that province so called, 33 leagues from *Maima*, where we were. There being 30 leagues distance between the two islands, and nothing in the way but one little island or rock eight leagues from *Hijpaniola*, it was requisite to expect a calm, in order to cross over so great a sea in such poor vessels, which it pleased God they soon had. Every Indian having put aboard his calabash of water and *Car-rabi*, or such provisions as they use, and the Christians with swords and targets, and the necessary sustenance, they put out to sea; and the admiral's brother, who went to that point of *Jamaica* to see that the Indians of the island should no way hinder them, staid there till night coming on, he lost sight of them, and then returned easily towards the ships, in his way perceiving the people of the country to converse and be friendly with us.

## C H A P CII.

*How the brothers called Porras, with many of the men, mutiny'd against the admiral, saying, they would go to Spain.*

WHEN the canoes were gone for *Hijpaniola*, the men left aboard the ships began to fall sick, as well by reason of the hardships endur'd during the voyage, as the change of diet; for at present they had no Spanish provisions, nor wine, nor flesh, except some of those *Huties* we have spoke of, they happened to get in exchange. So that those who were sound, thinking it very hard to be so long confin'd, did not forbear to mutter among themselves in private; saying, the admiral would return into *Spain* no more, because their catholick majesties had turn'd him off, nor much less to *Hijpaniola*.

Mutiny  
against the  
admiral.

VOL. II.

*niola*, where he had been refus'd admittance at his coming from *Spain*, and that he had sent those in the canoes into *Spain* to solicit his own affairs, and not to bring ships or other succours, and that he design'd, whilst they were soliciting their catholick majesties to stay there to fulfil his banishment; for otherwise *Bartholomew Fiesco* had been come back by this time, as was given out he was to do. Besides, they knew not, whether he and *James Mendez* were drown'd by the way; which, if it had happened, they should never be reliev'd, if they did not take care for it themselves, since the admi-

7 T

ral

## The first Discovery of

ral did not seem to look to it for the reasons aforesaid, and because of the gout, which had so seiz'd all his limbs, that he could scarce stir in his bed, much less undergo the fatigue and danger of going over to *Hispaniola* in canoes. For which reasons, they ought with a good heart to fix their resolution, since they were well, before they fell sick, with the rest, that it would not be in the admiral's power to hinder them; and being once in *Hispaniola*, they would be so much the better received, by how much the danger they left him in was greater, because of the hatred and enmity born him by the commendary *Lares*, then governor of that island; and that when they went into *Spain* they might go to the bishop *D. John de Fonseca*, who would favour them, as would the treasurer *Morales*, who kept for his mistress the sister of those *Porras's*, the ring-leaders of the mutineers, and chief fomenters of the sedition, who did not doubt but they should be well received by their catholic majesties, before whom all the fault would be laid upon the admiral, as had been in the affairs of *Hispaniola* with *Roldan*; and their majesties would the rather seize him and take all he had, than be obliged to perform all that was agreed upon between them and him. These and the like arguments they us'd among themselves, and the persuasions and suggestions of the aforesaid brothers, one of whom was captain of the ship *Bermuda*, and the other controller to the squadron, prevail'd with 48 men to join in this conspiracy, taking *Porras* for their captain; and every one provided what he could against the day and hour appointed; and being all ready with their arms, on the 2d of *January* in the morning, the aforesaid captain *Francis de Porras* came upon the quarter-deck of the admiral's ship, and said to him, My lord, what is the meaning that you will not go into *Spain*, and will keep us all here perishing? The admiral hearing these unusual insolent words, and suspecting what the matter might be, very calmly answer'd, He did not see which way they could go, till those that were gone in the canoes sent a ship. That no man was more desirous to be gone than he, as well for his own private interest, as for the good of them all, for whom he was accountable; but that if he had any thing else to propose, he would again call together the captains and principal men to consult, as had been done several times before. *Porras* replied, It was no time to talk, but that he should embark quickly, or stay there by himself; and so turning his back, added in a loud voice, I am going to *Spain* with those that will follow me, at which time all his followers, who were pre-

sent began to cry out, We will go with you, We will go with you, and running about, possess'd themselves of the fore-castle, poop, and round tops, all in confusion; and crying, Let them die; others, For *Spain*, for *Spain*; and others, What shall we do captain? Though the admiral was then in bed so lame of the gout that he could not stand; yet he could not forbear rising and stumbling out at this noise. But two or three worthy persons, his servants, laid hold of, and with labour laid him in his bed, that the mutineers might not murder him. Then they ran to his brother, who was courageously come out with a half pike in his hand; and wresting it out of his hands, put him in to his brother, desiring captain *Porras* to go about his business, and not do some mischief they might all suffer for, that he might be satisfied they did not oppose his going; but if he should kill the admiral, he could not expect but to be severely punish'd, without hopes of any benefit. The tumult being somewhat appeas'd, the conspirators took ten canoes, that were by the ship's side, and which the admiral had bought all about the island, and went aboard them as joyfully as if they had been in some port of *Spain*. Upon this, many more, who had no hand in the plot, in despair to see themselves as they thought forsaken, taking what they could along with them, went aboard the canoes with them, to the great sorrow and affliction of those few faithful servants, who remain'd with the admiral, and of all the sick, who thought themselves lost for ever, and without hopes of ever getting off. And it is certain, that had the people been well, not 20 men had remain'd with the admiral, who went out to comfort his men with the best words the posture of his affairs would suggest; and the mutineers, with their captain, *Francis de Porras*, in their canoes, went away for the east-point of the island, whence *James Mendez* and *Fiesco* went over <sup>Mutineers</sup> <sup>go away in</sup> <sup>the Coast</sup> <sup>of the</sup> <sup>Island</sup> for *Hispaniola*; and wheresoever they came, they insulted the *Indians*, taking away their provisions, and what else they pleas'd by force; and telling them, they might go to the admiral and he would pay them, but in case he did not, they might kill him, which was the best thing they could do; because he was not only hated by the *Cibrianians*, but had been the cause of all the mischief had befallen the *Indians* of the other island, and would do the same by them, if they did not prevent it by his death, for that was his design in staying there. Thus travelling to the easternmost point of *Jamaica*, the first calm they set out for *Hispaniola*, carrying some *Indians* in every canoe to row. But the weather not being well settled,

their B  
larities.

Mutineers  
go away in  
the Coast  
of the  
Island

The In  
ans fai  
supply  
Spania

We will go with you, and running as fast as the forecable, all in confusion; die; others, For others, What shall the admiral was the gout that he could not forbear at this noise. But sons, his servants, about laid him in; might not murder to his brother, me out with a half wrestling it out of his brother, desig- go about his busi- nesses; chief they might be satisfied they; but if he should did not expect but without hopes of it being somewhat took ten canoes, de, and which the about the island, joyfully as if they of Spain. Upon had no hand in the themselves as they g what they could aboard the canoes sorrow and afflicti- servants, who re- al, and of all the selves lost for ever, getting off. And people been well, with the admiral, his men with the of his affairs would es, with their cap- in their canoes, point of the island, *Mutineers* and *Fiesco* went over go away in the Coast of the Island; soever they came, taking away their se they pleas'd by they might go to id pay them, but y might kill him, g they could do; hated by the *Ciri-* cause of all the *Indians* of the o- the same by them, g by his death, for lying there. Thus ost point of Jama- set out for *Hispani-* in every canoe er not being well settled,

Their Bar- barities.

settled, and their canoes overloaded, they resolv'd to return to *Jamaica* before they were four leagues at sea, the wind turning against them, and they being able to make but little way. Besides, they not being skilful at managing the canoes, it happen'd a little water flash'd in over the sides; to remedy which, they lightened, throwing all they carried over-board; so that nothing remain'd but their arms, and as much provision as would serve them back. The wind still freshing, and they thinking themselves in some danger, it was resolv'd to murder the *Indians*, and throw them into the sea; this they accordingly executed upon some of them; and others, who for fear of death, trusting in their skill in swimming, leap'd over into the water, and being very weary would hang by the canoes to breath a little, had their hands cut off, and were wounded in other parts; so that they butcher'd 18, leaving only a few alive to steer the canoes, because they knew not how to do it. And had not the need they had of them prevented it, they had compleated the greatest act of cruelty imaginable, leaving not one of them alive, after they had by intreaties, and deceitfully drawn them to their assistance in that dan-

gerous voyage. Being come to shore, they differ'd in opinions; for some said it was better to go to *Cuba*, and that from that place where they were, they might take the east winds and currents upon their quarter, and so run over without any trouble in a short time, and so cross over from thence to *Hispaniola*, not knowing they were 17 leagues asunder: Others said it was better to return to the ships, and make their peace with the admiral, or take from him by force what commodities and arms he had left; others were for staying till another calm, to attempt the same passage again. This being thought the best advice, they staid in that town of *Acamaquique* above a month, waiting for fair weather, and destroying the country. When the fair weather came, they embark'd again twice, but made nothing of it, the wind being contrary. Being thus disappointed of that passage, they set out towards the west from one town to another, with an ill-will, without canoes or any comfort, sometimes eating what they found, and taking it where they could by force, according to their strength, and that of the *Caciques*, through whose territories they pass'd.

### CHAP. CIII.

*What the admiral did, after the mutineers were gone from him, and the Advantage he made of an eclipse.*

TO return to what the admiral did, after the rebels were gone, he took great care that the sick should be furnished with such things as were proper for their recovery, and that the *Indians* should be so civilly treated that they might not forbear bringing provisions to exchange for our commodities; which things were so well manag'd, and with such application by him, that the *Christians* soon recover'd, and the *Indians* continued some days providing all things plentifully. But they being a people that take little pains in sowing; and we eating more in one day than they did in 20; besides having no longer any inclination to our commodities, and making little account of them, they began in some measure to take the advice of the mutineers, since they saw so great a part of our men against us, and therefore brought not such plenty of provisions as we stood in need of. This brought us to great distress; for if we would have taken it by force, the greatest part of us must have gone ashore in warlike manner, and have left the admiral aboard in great danger, he being very ill of the

The *Indians* fail to supply the *Spaniards*.

gout; and if we expected they should bring it of their own accord, we must live in misery, and give ten times as much for it as we did at first, they knowing how to make their bargains, as being sensible of the advantage they had over us. But God, who never forsakes those that have recourse to him, as the admiral had, put him in the way how he should be furnish'd with all he wanted, which was thus. He bethought himself, that within three days there would be an eclipse of the moon in the first part of the night; and then sends an *Indian* of *Hispaniola*, who was with us, to call the principal *Indians* of that province, saying, he would talk with them about a matter of concern. Being come that day before the eclipse was, he ordered the interpreter to tell them, That we were *Christians*, and believ'd in God, who dwelt in heaven, and took care of the good, and punish'd the wicked: That he seeing the rebellion of the *Spaniards*, had not permitted them to go over to *Hispaniola*, as *James Mendez* and *Fiesco* had done, but had made them run through all those sufferings and dangers all

the

the island had heard of: That as for the *Indians*, seeing how negligent they were in bringing provisions for our commodities, he was angry with them, and had decreed to punish them with plague and famine; which because perhaps they would not believe, God had appointed to give them a manifest token of it in the heaven that they might plainly know the punishment was to come from him. Therefore, he bid them that night, observe when the moon appear'd, and they should see her rise angry and of a bloody hue, to denote the mischief God intended should fall on them. Having said this to them, the *Indians* went away, some afraid, and others looking upon it as an idle story: but the eclipse beginning as the moon was rising, and increasing, the higher she was, the *Indians* took notice of it, and were so frightened, that they came running from all parts loaded with provisions, crying and lamenting, and pray'd the admiral by all means to intercede with God for them, that he might not make them feel the effects of his wrath, and promising for the future carefully to bring him all he wanted. The admiral said he would speak with God, and

shut himself up whilst the eclipse lasted, they still crying out to him to assist them; and when the admiral saw, the eclipse began to go off, and the moon would soon shine, he came out of his cabin, saying, He had pray'd to his God for them, and promis'd him in their names they would be good for the future, and use the *Christians* well, bringing them provisions and other necessities; and that therefore God forgave them, and as a token of it they should see the angry and bloody colour of the moon would go off. This proving so; just as he spoke it, they gave the admiral many thanks, and prais'd God, continuing so till the eclipse was quite pass'd. From that time forwards they always took care to provide all that was necessary, ever praising the God of the *Christians*; for they believ'd the eclipses they had seen at other times, had denoted mischiefs to befall them; and being ignorant of the cause of them, and that they happened at certain times, not believing it possible to know on earth, what was to happen in the heavens, they certainly concluded the God of the *Christians* had reveal'd it to the admiral.

## C H A P. CIV.

*Of another mutiny among those that remain'd with the admiral, which was quell'd by the coming of a vessel from Hispaniola.*

Another  
Mutiny.

EIGHT months being pass'd after *James Mendez* and *Baribolomew Pisco* went away, and there being no news of them, the admiral's men were very much cast down, suspecting the worst; some saying they were lost at sea; others, that they were kill'd by the *Indians* in *Hispaniola*; and others, that they had died with sickness and hardships; for from the point of that island, which lay next *Jamaica*, there was above 100 leagues to *S. Domingo*, whither they were to go for relief, the way by land being over uncouth mountains, and by sea against the prevailing winds and currents. To confirm their suspicion, some *Indians* assur'd them they had seen a canoe overfet and carried on the coast of *Jamaica* by the current, which its likely had been spread abroad by the mutineers to make those that were with the admiral despair of getting off. They therefore concluding for certain that no relief would come to them; one *Bernard*, an apothecary of *Valencia*, with two companions, whose names were *Zanora* and *Villatoro*, and most of those that had remain'd sick, secretly conspir'd together to do the same the others had done before. But almighty God, who knew how dangerous this second

sedition must be to the admiral, was pleas'd to put a stop to it by the coming of a vessel sent by the governor of *Hispaniola*. It came to an anchor one evening near the ships that were a ground; and the captain of it, whose name was *James de Escobar*, came in his boat to visit the admiral, saying, The commendary and governor of *Hispaniola* sent him his commendations; and not being able so soon to send a ship fit to carry off all those men, had sent him in his name to visit him, and presenting him a cask of wine and two fitches of bacon, return'd to his caraval, and without taking any letter, sail'd away that very evening. The men, somewhat comforted with his coming, took no notice of what they had conspir'd to do; tho' at the same time they much wonder'd that the caraval had stole away so privately, and in such haste; and they suspected, that perhaps the governor of *Hispaniola* would not have the admiral go thither. He being aware of it, told them he had so ordered it, because he would not go away without carrying them all off, which that caraval was not big enough to perform; he being willing to prevent any disorders his stay might occasion, from the mutineers. But the

Base Pro-  
fice of the  
Governor  
of Hispani-  
niola.

Great Dis-  
grace for  
itself.



the governor of *Hispaniola* was afraid that if the admiral return'd to *Spain*, their catholic majesties would restore him to his government, and so he should be forced to quit it; for which reason he would not provide, as he might have done, for the admiral's voyage to *Hispaniola*; and therefore had sent that

little caraval to spy and observe the condition the admiral was in; and to know whether he could contrive with safety to have him destroyed, which he knew, by what had happened to *James Mendez*, who sent an account of his voyage in writing, by the caraval, which was as follows.

## C H A P. CV.

*An account of what happened to James Mendez, and Fiesco in their voyage.*

**J**AMES Mendez, and Fiesco, setting out from *Jamaica*, that day they found the weather settled calm, and so held on till night, encouraging and persuading the *Indians* to row with those paddles they use instead of oars; and the weather being violently hot, they would sometimes leap into the water and swim, and then come fresh again to row. Thus holding on their way, at sun-set they lost sight of land, and half the *Christians* and *Indians* taking their watch together at night to row, and take care the *Indians* should not prove treacherous, they advanced all that night without staying, so that when day appeared they were all weary enough. But the commanders encouraging their men, and sometimes vowing to give a good example; after eating to recover their strength, and the fatigue of the night, they fell to their labour again, seeing nothing but sky and water. And tho' this was enough to afflict them sufficiently, yet we may say of them that they were in *Tantalus* his condition; who having water within a span of his mouth, could not quench his thirst; so they were in distress; for through the ill management of the *Indians*, and the great heat of the foregoing day and night; all the water was drank up, without any regard to the future: And all heat and labour being intolerable without drink, the higher the sun ascended the second day after they set out, the more the heat and thirst increased, so that by noon they had no strength left. And as upon such occasions, the head is bound to supply the defect of the hands and feet; so by good fortune, the captains found two casks of water, wherewith now and then relieving the *Indians*, they kept them up till the cool of the evening, encouraging them, and affirming they should be soon near a small island called *Nabazza*, which lay in their way eight leagues distant from *Hispaniola*. This with their extraordinary thirst, and the labour of rowing two days and a night, quite cast them down, believing they had lost their way; for according to their reckoning they had run 20 leagues, and ought now to be in sight of the island. But it was weariness that deceived them, as well because a canoe that rows well cannot in a day and night row above

10 leagues, as by reason the currents are against them that go from *Jamaica* to *Hispaniola*, which they always judge to be more that suffer most by it. Night being come, having thrown one into the sea who died with thirst, and others lying stretch'd out on the bottom of the canoe, they were so afflicted in mind, and so weak and spent, that they hardly made any way. Yet, taking sometimes sea-water to refresh their mouths, which we may say was the comfort given our saviour, when he said, *I thirst*; they gently held on their way till the second night came on without sight of land: But they being of those God intended to save, it pleas'd him, that in that time of need, when the moon began to rise, *James Mendez* perceiv'd she got up over-land, for a little island cover'd her in the nature of an eclipse. Nor could they have seen it otherwise, because it was small, and at that time of night. Comforting them cheerfully, and showing them the land, he so encouraged them, supplying them in their great thirst with a little water out of the barrels, that the next morning they found themselves near the small island, we said was 8 leagues from *Hispaniola*, and called *Nabazza*. They found it to be all round a hard rock, and about half a league in circumference. Landing there the best they could, they all gave God thanks for that mercy; and there being no spring nor tree, they went about taking up rain-water with their calabashes, which lay in holes among the rocks; which it pleas'd God to give them such plenty of, that they fill'd their bellies and vessels; and tho' the wiser sort advis'd the others to use moderation in drinking, yet thirst made some of the *Indians* exceed all measure, whereof some died there, and others got desperate distempers. Having rested that day till evening, diverting themselves, and eating such things as they found along the shore; for *James Mendez* had all utensils to strike fire, rejoicing to be in sight of *Hispaniola*; and fearing some bad weather might start up, they made ready to put an end to their voyage, and accordingly about sun-setting in the cool of the evening, they set out towardscape *St. Michael*, the nearest land of *Hispaniola*, where they arriv'd the next morning

Great Distress for thirst.

Bale Practice of the Governor of Hispaniola.

morning, being the fourth day after they set out. When they had rested here two days, *Baribolomeo Fiesco*, who was a gentleman that stood upon his honour, would have return'd as the admiral had commanded him, but the men who were sailors, and *Indians*; being spent and in dispos'd with their past labour, and drinking sea-water, and thought they had been delivered out of the whales belly, their 3 days and nights answering to those *Jonas* lay there, he could not get a man to go with him. *James Mendez*, as being most in haste, was gone up the coast of *Hispaniola* in his canoe, notwithstanding he suffer'd under a quartan ague caus'd by his great sufferings at sea and at land, in that condi-

tion, travelling over mountains and bad roads, he came to *Xaragua*, which is a province in the west of *Hispaniola*, where the governor then was, who seem'd to rejoice at his coming, tho' afterwards he was tedious in dispatching him, for the causes above-mention'd, till after much importunity, it was obtain'd of him, that he should give *James Mendez* leave to go to *St. Domingo*, there to buy and fit out a vessel with the admiral's money; which ship being by him got ready, was sent to *Jamaica* at the latter end of *May* 1504, and failed for *Spain*, according to the admiral's direction, to give their catholic majesties an account of the success of his voyage.

## C H A P. CVI.

*How the mutineers set themselves against the admiral, and would bear of no agreement.*

*The admiral finds and offers pardon to the mutineers.*

NOW to return to the admiral, who with all his company had now receiv'd some comfort and certain hopes of being delivered, by the account of *James Mendez* his arrival, and the coming of the caraval; he therefore thought fit to make it known to the mutineers, that their jealousy ceasing, they might return to their duty. He therefore sent two men of note, who had friends among them, and knowing they would not believe, or at least not seem to believe the coming of the caraval, he sent them part of the bacon, the captain of it had presented him. These two being come where captain *Porras* was, with those he confided most in, he came out to meet them, that they might not move, or persuade the men to repent them of the crime they had committed, imagining, as the truth was, that the admiral sent them a general pardon. Yet it was not in the power of the brothers so to curb their men, but that they heard the news of the coming of the caraval, the health of those that were with the admiral, and the offers he made them. After several consultations among themselves, and the principal men, the result was, that they would not trust to the pardon the admiral sent them, but would go peaceably away to *Hispaniola*, if he would promise to give them a ship to go in, provided two came; and if there came but one, he should assign them half of it; and in the mean while, because they had lost their clothes, and commodities they had to trade upon the sea, he should share what he

had with them. To which the messengers answering, that those were no reasonable proposals, they interrupted them saying, that since it was not granted them by fair means, they would have it by force. Thus they dismiss'd the admiral's messengers, misinterpreting his offers, and telling their followers, that he was a cruel revengeful man; and tho' they fear'd nothing for themselves, because the admiral durst not presume to wrong them, because of the favour they had at court, yet they had reason to fear he would be reveng'd on the rest, under colour of just punishment; and that for this reason, *Roldan* and his friends in *Hispaniola* had not trusted him, nor his offers, and it succeeded well with them, they finding so much favour, that they had him sent into *Spain* in irons. And that the coming of the caraval with the news of *James Mendez*, might make no impression on them, they intimated to them, that it was no true caraval, but a phantom made by art magick, the admiral being very skilful in that art, alledging, it was not at all likely, that if it had really been a caraval, the men aboard it would not have had some further discourse with those about the admiral, but would have vanish'd so soon. Nay, it was more probable, that had it been a caraval, the admiral himself would have gone aboard it, with his son and brother. With these and other words to this purpose, they again confirm'd them in their rebellion; and then brought them to resolve to repair to the ships to take what they found by force, and secure the admiral.

*The rebels obstinate.*

*The rebels resist.*

## C H A P. CVII.

*How the mutineers being come to the ships, the admiral's brother went out to fight them, overcame them, and took Porras their captain.*

THE mutineers continuing obstinate in their wicked resolution, came to a town of the *Indians* within a quarter of a

league of the ships, then called *Maima*, where afterwards the *Christians* built the town they called *Sevil*; which the admiral under-

mountains and bad  
which is a pro-  
moliola, where the  
seem'd to rejoice  
ards he was redi-  
the causes above-  
importance, it  
he should give  
to St. Domingo,  
a vessel with the  
ship being by him  
maica at the lar-  
failed for Spain,  
direction, to give  
n account of the

of no agreement.

h the messengers  
re no reasonable  
ed them saying,  
ed them by fair  
by force. Thus  
messengers, mis-  
telling their fol-  
revengeful man;  
g for themselves,  
not presume to  
the favour they  
reason to fear he  
est, under colour  
at for this reason  
Hispaniola had not  
and it succeeded  
ing so much fa-  
ent into Spain in  
ing of the caraval  
dex, might make  
they intimated to  
aval, but a phan-  
the admiral being  
allegding, it was  
had really been a  
would not have  
with those about  
vanish'd so soon,  
that had it been  
self would have  
son and brother.  
ards to this pur-  
them in their re-  
t them to resolve  
take what they  
the admiral.

The rebels  
obstinate.

The rebels  
misad.

understanding, and being inform'd of their  
design, he resolv'd to send his brother a-  
gainst them, to endeavour to reduce them by  
good words; but so attended, that if they of-  
fer'd him any wrong, he might be able to  
oppose them. To this purpose, the lieuten-  
ant drew out 50 men, well arm'd, and rea-  
dy for any service. These being come to a  
small hill, a bow-shot from the town where  
the rebels were, sent those two before, who  
had gone on the first message, to require  
them to be peaceable, and that their captain  
should come peaceably to a conference. But  
they being nothing inferior in strength or  
number, and almost all seamen, persuaded  
themselves, that those who came with the  
lieutenant were weak men, and would not  
fight them; therefore they would not per-  
mit the messengers to talk to them, but with  
their naked swords, and the spears, they had  
all in a body, crying, Kill, kill, fell upon  
the lieutenant's party; six of the rebels, who  
were accounted the boldest, having taken an  
oath, not to part, but go directly against the  
lieutenant, for if he were kill'd, they made  
no account of the rest; wherein it pleas'd  
God they were disappointed; for they were  
so well received, that 5 or 6 of them drop'd  
at the first charge, most of them being of  
those that aim'd at the lieutenant, who fell  
upon his enemies in such manner, that in a  
very short time, John Sanchez de Cadiz, from  
whom Quibio made his escape, was kill'd, as  
was John Barba; the first I saw draw his  
sword when they ran into rebellion, and some  
others fell very much wounded, and Francis  
de Porras their captain was taken. Seeing  
themselves so roughly handled like base re-  
bellious people, they turn'd their backs and  
fled as fast as they could. The lieutenant  
would have pursued, had not some of the  
chief men about him been against it, saying,  
it was good to punish, but not so severely,  
lest when he had killed many of them, the  
Indians should think fit to fall upon the  
victors, since he saw they were all in arms,  
waiting the event of the fray, without taking  
either side. The lieutenant approving of  
the advice, return'd to the ships, carrying  
along with him the captain of the rebels  
and some other prisoners, where he was well  
receiv'd by the admiral, his brother, and  
those that had remain'd with him, all of them  
giving thanks to God for that victory, which  
they attributed to him, and wherein the guil-  
ty had receiv'd their just punishment, and  
their pride been humbled, none being wound-  
ed on our side but the lieutenant in his hand,

and one of the admiral's gentlemen of the  
chamber, who died of a small wound he re-  
ceiv'd with a spear in his hip. But to return  
to the rebels, Peter de Ledezma, that pilot  
we mention'd above, who went with Vincent  
Yanez to Honduras, and swam ashore at Be-  
lem, fell down certain rocks, and lay hid  
that day and the next, till the evening, no  
body assisting him, or knowing where he  
was, except the Indians, who with amaze-  
ment, not knowing how our swords would  
cut, with little sticks opened his wounds,  
one of which was in his head, and his brains  
were seen thro' it, another on his shoulder,  
so large that his arm hung, as it were, loose,  
and the calf of one leg almost cut off, so  
that it hung down to his ankle, and one foot,  
as if it had a slipper on it, being sliced from  
the heel to the toes. Notwithstanding all  
which desperate hurts, when the Indians dis-  
turb'd him, he would say, Let me alone,  
for if I get up, &c. And they at these words  
would fly in a great consternation. This  
being known aboard the ships, he was car-  
ried into a thatch'd house hard by, where  
the dampness and gnats were enough to have  
kill'd him. Here instead of turpentine, they  
dress'd his wounds with oil, and he had so  
many, besides those already mention'd, that  
the surgeon who dress'd him swore, that for  
the first 8 days, he still found out new ones,  
and yet at last he recover'd, the gentleman  
of the chamber dying, in whom he appreh-  
ended no danger. The next day, being  
the 20th of May, all those that had escap'd,  
sent a petition to the admiral, humbly beg-  
ging he would be merciful to them, for they  
repented them of what was past, and were  
ready to submit themselves to him. The  
admiral granted their request, and pass'd a  
general pardon, upon condition the captain  
should continue a prisoner, as he was, that  
he might not raise another mutiny. And  
because they could not be so easy, and conve-  
niently aboard the ships, and there might  
arise some provoking words among the com-  
mon sort, which would cause disturbance,  
and rub up old sores, which might be the  
cause of fresh tumults, and because it would  
be a hard matter to quarter, and maintain so  
many men conveniently, those few there  
were beginning to suffer want, he resolv'd to  
send them a commander with commodities  
to exchange, that he might go with them  
about the island, and contain them within  
the bounds of justice, till such time as the  
ships came, which he daily expected.

A wonder-  
ful account  
of a wound  
done.

The rebels  
submit, and  
are pardon-  
ed.

ent out to fight

n called Maima,  
ristians built the  
which the admiral  
under-

# CHAP. CVIII.

How the admiral went over to Hispaniola, and thence into Spain, where at Valladolid  
it pleas'd God to take him to himself.

THE christians being all again return'd  
to their duty, and the Indians for

that same reason being more careful to sup-  
ply them for their commodities, some days  
pass'd

pass'd which made up a year since we arrived at *Jamaica*. After which, there arrived a ship, which *James Mendez* had bought and fitted out at *St. Domingo* with the admiral's money, aboard which all the men, as well enemies as friends, were shipped, and setting sail on the 28th of *June*, we proceeded on our voyage with much difficulty, the winds and currents, as we have said before, being very contrary to go from *Jamaica* to *St. Domingo*, where we arrived in great need of rest, on the 13th of *August* 1504; and the governor made a great reception for the admiral, lodging him in his own house; tho' this was a treacherous kindness; for on the other side, he set *Porras* who had headed the mutineers at liberty, and attempted to punish those who had a hand in apprehending of him, and to try other causes and offences that belong'd only to their catholick majesties, who had appointed the admiral captain general of their fleet; and yet he fawned upon the admiral, using all demonstrations of kindness in his presence. This lasted till our ship was refitted, and another hired, on which the admiral, his kindred and servants embark'd, most of the rest remaining in *Hispaniola*. We sailed on the 2d of *September*, and being but two leagues at sea, the mast of the ship came by the board; for which reason the admiral caused it to return into the harbour, and we in the other held on our course for *Spain*. Having run about the 3d part of the way, there arose such a terrible storm, that the ship was in great danger. The next day, which was the 19th of *October*, the weather being fair, and we very still, the mast flew into four pieces; but the courage of the lieutenant, and the admiral's ingenuity, tho' he could not rise out of his bed for the gout, found a remedy for this misfortune, making a jury-mast of a yard, and strengthening the middle of it with ropes, and some planks they took from the poop and stern. In another storm we spent our foremast, and yet it pleased God we sailed 700 leagues in that condition, and arrived at the port of *St. Lucar de Barrameda*, and thence to *Sevil*, where the admiral took some rest after the fatigues he had gone through; and in *May* 1505, set out for the catholick king's court; for the glorious queen *Isabel* had the year before exchanged this life for a better, which was no small trouble to the admiral, she having always favoured and supported him, whereas the catholick king had proved unkind and adverse to his affairs, which plainly appeared by the reception he gave him; for tho' to appearance he shew'd him a favourable aspect, and pretended to restore him to his full power, yet he would have quite stript him of

all, had not shame hindered him; which, as has been said, has great power over noble spirits; and the king himself and queen had both ingag'd their faith to him, when he went upon his last voyage. But the *Indies* daily more and more discovering what they were like to be, and the king perceiving how great a share fell to the admiral, by virtue of the articles granted him, he strove to have the absolute dominion in himself, and to dispose of all those employments which belong'd to the admiral, according to his own will and pleasure. Hereupon he began to propose new terms to him, by way of equivalent, which God would not permit to take effect; because just then king *Philip* I. came to reign in *Spain*; and at the time his catholick majesty went from *Valladolid* to meet him, the admiral much oppress'd with the gout, and troubled to see himself put by his right, other distempers coming on him, gave up his soul to God upon *Ascension-Day*, being the 20th of *May* 1506, at the aforesaid city of *Valladolid*, having devoutly received all the sacraments of the church, and said these words last, *Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit*; which through his infinite mercy we do not question but he received into his glory: To which may he admit us with him.

His body was afterwards convey'd to *Sevil*, and there by the catholick king's order magnificently buried in the cathedral, and an epitaph in *Spanish* cut on his tomb, in memory of his renewed actions, and discovery of the *Indies*. The words are these:

A CASTILIA, YA LEON,  
NUEVO MUNDO DIO COLON.

That is,

Columbus gave Castile and Leon a new world.

words well worth observing, because the like cannot be found either among the ancients or moderns.

It will therefore be ever remembred, that he was the discoverer of the *West-Indies*, tho' since then, *Ferdinand Cortez* and *Francis Pizarro* have found out many other provinces and vast kingdoms on the continent; for *Cortez* discovered the province of *Yucatan*, and the city of *Mexico*, called *New Spain*, then possess'd by the great *Montezuma*, emperor of those parts; and *Francis Pizarro* found out the kingdom of *Peru*, which is of a vast extent, and full of endless wealth, which was under the dominion of the great king *Atabaliba*. From which countries and kingdoms there come every year into *Spain*, many ships laden with gold, silver, brazil, cochineal, sugar, and many other commodities of great value, besides pearls and other jewels, which are the cause that at this time *Spain* and its princes flourish and abound in wealth.

Pyrami-

Pyramidographia:  
 OR, A  
 DESCRIPTION  
 OF THE  
 PYRAMIDS  
 IN  
 Æ G Y P T.

By JOHN GREAVES, *Professor of Astronomy  
 in the University of Oxford.*

*Romanorum Fabricæ & antiqua opera (cum veniâ id dictum sit)  
 nihil accedunt ad Pyramidum splendorem, & superbiam.*

Bellon. lib. II. Observ. cap. 42.

VOL. II.

7 U

*This*



*This LETTER underneath was written by Mr. Greaves to the famous Claudius Hardy, who published EUCLID's DATA, and was in great Esteem for his Learning in the Mathematicks, and his skill in the Oriental Languages.*

*Clarissimo Doctissimoque Viro D. C. H. To the most worthy and most learned D. C. D.*

**Q**Uatuor anni elapsi sunt (vir clarissimè) ex quo propter longinquam peregrinationem à me in Orientem susceptam, nulla mihi opportunitas data est, affectum, sincerumque tibi animum testandi. Tandem favente NUMINE, salvo & incolumi reverso, conceditur nonnihil otii, & de periculis præteritis, & de amicis veteribus, cogitandi. Inter quos si rectè de humanitate, studiisque tuis judico, nemo erit qui de reditu meo, majori, quàm tu, lætitiâ afficiatur. Eaque tantò erit accumulatio, cùm intellexeris iter tam periculosum non alias ob causas initum, nisi ut linguis orientalibus, & studiis astronomicis, peregrè felicius incumberem, in quibus utriusque quantum profeceris, eruditis tuis scriptis, literatis omnibus satis comprobasti. Quapropter breviter, strictimque, ubi commemoratus sim, quid præstiterim, & quos libros mecum adduxerim, pro veteri amicitia tibi indicabo. Primum annum Constantinopoli egi, ut me totum linguæ Arabicæ addicerem, sed spe falsus, idoneis destitutus magistris, ad alias curas animum induxi, cùmque diligenti librorum MSS. disquisitioni applicui. Quo quidem in genere non poenitendam operam locavi. Nam præter varios codices Arabicos, Persicos, Turcicos, propemodum de universis scientiis scriptos, & præter lexica melioris notæ tribus hæc linguis deservientia, coemi insuper penè omnes antiquos mathematicos Græcos, in idioma Arabicum ante aliquot sæcula traductos, unà cum operibus præcipuè astronomorum recentium, apud Arabes, & Indos, maxime insignium. Inter verò illos antiquos, non leviter gaudeo adhuc superstites reperiri, quatuor libros Apollonii Pergæi geometræ subtilissimi.

في قطع الخطوط على النسي

quorum Pappus, alique meminerunt. Constantinopoli cum classe Turcicâ solvi, eo anni tempore, quo solent, multis navigiis simul, pro more gentis, Alexandriam petere. Fretus satis prosperâ navigatione Rhodum appuli, ubi, propter auctoritatem Possidonii, clanculum in submænicianis Christianorum hortis altitudinem solis sæpe ob-

**I**T is now four years, worib; sir, since my long travels into the East have deprived me of the opportunity of giving you some testimony of my affection, and sincere inclinations to you. Being at length, by the help of God, returned in safety, I have some leisure to think on past dangers, and old friends, among whom, if I be not mistaken in your favour and inclinations, none will more rejoice at my return than you. And your satisfaction will be the greater, when you understand that I undertook so dangerous a journey upon no other account, but to apply my self more successfully in foreign parts, to the study of astronomy, and the oriental languages, in both which, how great a proficient you are, has been sufficiently made appear to the learned world by your writings, full of erudition. I will therefore, in pursuance of our former friendship, briefly inform you in what parts I resided, what I did there, and what books I have brought with me. I spent the first year at Constantinople, with a design to apply my self wholly to the Arabick tongue, but being deceived in my expectation, and wanting able masters, I bent my mind to other affairs, and applied my self to a diligent search of manuscript books. Wherein I have not lost my labour: for besides several Arabick, Persian, and Turkish books, which treat of almost all sciences, and besides the best lexicons for the understanding of these three languages, I have bought almost all the ancient Greek mathematicians, translated some ages since into the Arabick tongue, together with the works of the most renowned modern astronomers among the Arabians and Indians. But among these ancient ones, I do not a little rejoice, that there are still found in being four books of Apollonius Pergæus, the most subtle geometrician,

Conicorum libri quatuor.

of which Pappus, and others make mention. I sailed from Constantinople with the Turkish fleet at the same time the great convoy of that nation uses to set out for Alexandria. My passage was good, and I arrived at Rhodes, where, in respect to Possidonius's authority, I often took the sun's altitude privately in the gardens of the Christians without the walls.

servavi: inde post sex dies è portu discedens, octo dierum spatio, flantibus leniter Etesiiis, Alexandriam perveni: ubi corruptis Judæis, qui vectigalibus ibi præfunt, instrumenta mea astronomica sine periculo exposui. Erant autem diversa, ex ære ut plurimum fabrefacta, & ab egregio artifice summâ cum diligentia constructa, quorum maximum quadrans erat totus æneus, radium obtinens septem eorum pedum, qui apud Anglos veteri edicto regio usurpatur. Alexandriæ sex menses continuos hæsi, soli stellisque intentus, quoties per caligines, aut pluvias, licebat, quas illic, mediâ præcipuè hyeme, contra receptam opinionem, & crebras, & violentas, esse sensi. Laboribus, & vigiliis defessus, relaxandi animi gratiâ bis Memphim petii, seu ut rectius loquar *مصر القديمة* Nam antiquâ Memphi orientalius est hodierna Elkahira septem ad minimum millibus passuum: inde ad sepulcra veterum Ægyptiorum accessi, & cryptas illas subterraneas subii; post ad pyramides me contuli, earumque justam magnitudinem, idoneis ad eam rem adjunctis instrumentis, deprehendi, & multa illic, dum omnia curiosius perlustro, nec à præfisis scriptoribus, nec à recentioribus, literis mandata, annotavi. Opera sanè stupenda, & ab ipsis antiquis inter orbis miracula meritis judicata, sed a nemine (quod sciam) pro eorum dignitate satis descripta.

Interiorem cameram, & nonnulla secretiora adyta, temporis injuriâ nondum corrupta, nec unquam, si rectè judico, corruptenda, mensuris Anglicis diligenter mensus sum, adeo exactè, ut è viginti mille partibus, in quas viginti pedes, lineis transversis, sive potius diagonis, divisi, ne unam quidem, vel deesse, vel superesse, existimem. Quod ideo tanto accuratius præstiti, ut ex istâ comparatione omnium gentium mensuræ, quæ hodie sunt, aut olim fuerunt, è duraturo aliquo monumento posteris signari possint. Quod quidem si à Mathematicis olim præstitum fuisset, selectis aliquibus idoneis locis, temporum injuriæ non obnoxiiis, minus hodie incerti essemus in antiquorum mensuris investigandis. Quid de meo consilio censendum sit, eruditorum judicio permitto; me certe, neque propositi, neque laboris, suscepti poenitet. Te verò (vir clarissime) inter alios præcipuè, oro, & obsecro, ut pondera, & mensuras gallicas, summâ diligentia cum archetypis, collatis, & regio sigillo, ut fieri adest, munitas ad me transmittas, & si qua numismata, vasa præfata, vel pedes vetusti, ad hæredibus nobilissimi D. viri Perescii recuperari possint, meo ære compares. Multum ille in hac palæstrâ desudavit, & quantum ex literis

*Departing that port after six days, a gentle easterly gale, in eight days, brought me to Alexandria; where bribing the Jews, who have the collecting the customs, I landed my astronomical instruments in safety. I had several of them, most of them of brass, and made by a notable workman, with extraordinary accuracy; the biggest whereof was a brass quadrant, whose radius was seven ancient statute foot of England. I continued six whole months at Alexandria, observing the sun and stars, as often as fogs and rains would permit; which, contrary to the received opinion, I found to be frequent and violent, especially in the depth of winter. Being spent with labour and watching, I went twice to divert my self to Memphis, or to speak more properly, Elkahira: for the present Elkahira (Grand Cairo) is at least seven miles to the eastward of the ancient Memphis. Thence I repaired to the sepulchres of the ancient Egyptians, and entered those subterranean cells, or caverns; thence I went to the pyramids, and having fit instruments for that purpose, took their exact dimensions, observing there many things, as I curiously view'd them, which have not been delivered in writing either by the ancient or modern authors. They are indeed amazing structures, and deservedly reckoned by the ancients among the wonders of the world, but not yet described as they ought to be by any one that I know of.*

*I carefully took the dimensions of the inner chamber, and some more private places, which time has not yet, nor, if I mistake not, ever will destroy, with English measures, and that so exactly, that I believe there is not one part over or under of 20000, into which twenty foot are divided by cross, or rather diagonal lines. Which I was the more exact in, to the end that the measures of all nations that now are, or formerly were, may be transmitted to posterity from some lasting monument, by comparing them with these. Had this been formerly done by mathematicians, choosing for the purpose some proper places not exposed to the injury of time, we should not at present be so uncertain in the search after the measures of the ancients. I leave it to the learned to determine, what judgment is to be made of this my design; for my part I neither repent my attempt nor my labour. I intreat and conjure you (most worthy sir) to send me the French weights and measures, carefully compared with the standards, and sealed by the king's authority, as is usual; and if any coins, old vessels, or ancient feet can be obtained of the heirs of the most noble Perescius, that you will buy them upon my account. He laboured much in this affair, and, as may be conjectured by his letters, had he brought forth what he had so long conceived,*

ipſius licet conſpicere, ſi peperiffet, quæ tam diu parturivit, omnium induſtriam, & conatus facilè ſuperaffet. Ipſe dum peregrè agebam tanquam itineris præſectus, Arabum, Perſarum, Turcarum, Itolorum, Hiſpanorum, Germanorum, varia, & diverſa pondera, & menſuras, meis oculis, manibusque ſubjeci, & cum Anglicis ſedulò, & fideliter contuli. Idem & de Gallicis in animum induxiſſem, ſi per Pariſios domum redire contigiſſet, ſed, ſpe fraſtratus, iſtam tibi, tuæque diligentiæ provinciam demando. Tu me interea eadem benevolentia proſequeris, quâ ſolchas, & ſi quid, quod mihi adjumento eſſe poſſit, repereris, viro doctiſſimo, meique amantiſſimo, D. Dorrel in ædibus oratoris Angli, committe. Vale.

Londini 18 Kal.  
Jun. MDCXLI.

Tibi addiſtiſſimus,

JOANNES GRAVIUS.

*conceiv'd, he would doubtleſs have out-done all others. I, during my travels, by the by, view'd and handled the ſeveral and ſundry weights and meaſures of the Arabians, Perſians, Turks, Italians, Spaniards, and Germans, and carefully compar'd them with the Engliſh. I ſhould have done the ſame by the French, had I returned home by the way of Paris, but being diſappointed of it, I commit this affair to your care. Do you continue your wonted good will to me, and if you happen to find any thing that may be a help to me, deliver it to the moſt learned gentleman, and my very good friend, Mr. Dorrel, at the Engliſh ambaffador's. Farewel.*

London, May  
14. 1641.

Your moſt affectionate,

JOHN GREAVES.









*Cheaves* *flection*, *Cchemmis*,) signifying *adulstion*, which anciently might be the same in *Aegyptian*, and *χλωψ*, or *χλωψ*, signifying *swarthy visage* or *adulst*; *Herodotus* might call him *Cheops* in Greek, whom in the *Aegyptian* language *Diodorus* styles *Cchemmis*. But I go on with *Diodorus*. This *Cchemmis*,<sup>1</sup> faith he, erected the greatest of these three *Pyramids*, which are reputed among the seven wonderful fabricks of the world; where he also enlarges the number of the workmen employed by him, to three hundred and sixty thousand, which *Herodotus* mentions only to have been an hundred thousand; though both of them concur, and <sup>2</sup> *Pliny* with them both, that twenty years were spent in the building of this *Pyramid*.

Concerning the second *Pyramid*, *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* assign the author of it to have been *Cephren*, brother to the former king. *Diodorus* adds, that by some he is also called *Chabryis*, and was the son of *Cchemmis*; a difference which I imagine to have been occasioned out of the diversity of pronunciation of *Chabryis* for *Cephren*; there being an easy transmutation in letters of the same organ, as *grammarians* use to speak. *Cheops*, as <sup>3</sup> *Herodotus* informs us, being deceased, his brother *Cephren* reigned after him; who imitated him, as in other things, so in the making of a *Pyramid*, the magnitude of which is less than that of his brother's. And <sup>4</sup> *Diodorus* relates, That *Cchemmis* being dead, his brother *Cephren* succeeded him in the kingdom, and reigned fifty six years: some say, that not his brother, but his son, which was named *Chabryis*, reigned after him. This is affirmed by the consent of all, that the successor of the former king, in imitation of him, built the second *Pyramid* like to the first, in respect of the art and workmanship, but far inferior to it in respect of magnitude.

The third *Pyramid* was erected by *Myserinus*, some call him *Myserinus*, as it is observed by *Diodorus*, who makes him the son of *Cchemmis*, as *Herodotus* doth of *Cheops*; the difference between them being, as we noted before, rather nominal than real. The same <sup>5</sup> *Herodotus* also writes, That some of the *Grecians* make the third *Pyramid*

the work of *Rhodopis* a *curtizan*; an error in opinion of those who seem not to know who this *Rhodopis* might be of which they speak; for neither could she have undertaken such a *Pyramid*, on which so many thousand talents were to be spent; neither lived she in this man's time, but in the time of king *Amasis*. Now this *Amasis*, as he elsewhere shews, lived long after these *Pyramids* were in being. The same story is cited both by <sup>6</sup> *Strabo* and *Pliny*, both of them omitting the names of the founders of the former two. *Strabo* gives her a double name; The third *Pyramid* is the sepulchre of a *curtizan*, made by her lovers, whom *Sappho* the poetess calls *Doricha*, mistress to her brother *Charaxus*; others name her *Rhodope*. But whether we name her *Doricha*, or *Rhodope*, the relation is altogether improbable, if we consider either her condition or the infinite vastness of the expence. For <sup>7</sup> *Diodorus*, though he rightly acknowledges this *Pyramid* to be much less than either of the former two, yet in respect of the exquisite workmanship, and richness of the materials, he judges it not inferior to either of them. A structure certainly too great and sumptuous to have been the design and undertaking of a *curtizan*, which could hardly have been performed by a rich and potent monarch. And yet *Diodorus* hath almost the same relation, only a little altered in the circumstances: <sup>8</sup> Some say, that this is the sepulchre of the strumpet *Rhodope*; of whom, some of the *Nomarchæ* (or prefects of the provinces) being enamoured, by a common expence to win her favour, they built this monument. But to pass by this fable, (for it is no better,) and to return to our enquiry. The same author immediately before, ingenuously confesses, that concerning them all three, there is little agreement either amongst the natives or amongst writers: <sup>9</sup> For they say, *Armæus* made the greatest of these; the second, *Amasis*; the third, *Inaron*. And <sup>10</sup> *Pliny* informing us, that these three were made in seventy eight years and four months, leaves the founders of them very uncertain: for reciting the names of many authors that had described them, he

<sup>1</sup> *Diod. Sic. lib. 1.* Χίρμις] κατισμένης ὅ τὴν μάλιστα τοῦ πρώτου Πυραμίδου τοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἑπτὰ τοῖς ἐπιφανέστατος ἦν ἐκ τῶν μόνων.

<sup>2</sup> *Pyramis amplissima ex Arabis lapidicinis constat. Trecenta LX hominum millia annis XX eam construxisse proutur. Plin. l. 36. c. 12.*

<sup>3</sup> *Herod. lib. 3.* Τελιομένης ὅ τῆς, ἐκείνου τὴν βασιλείαν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ χροῖον, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *Diodor. lib. 1.* Τελιομένης ὅ τὴν βασιλείαν αὐτῷ διέδοκεν τὸ ἀρχὸν ὁ ἀδελφὸς χροῖον, καὶ ἔξιν ἔτι ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ πεπρωμένου, &c.

<sup>5</sup> *Pyramides ὅ καὶ οὗτοι ἀπὸ πολλοῦ ἰσχυροῦ τὸ παρὲς. Herodot. lib. 2.*

<sup>6</sup> *Herodot. lib. 2.* Τὸ δὲ μετὰ τὴν Φωίαν ἑλλήνων ῥοδόπιος ἑταίρου γυναικὸς ἦν, οὗ ἡδὺς ἡγοῦντο, &c.

<sup>7</sup> *Λέγουσι ὅ τὴν ἐκείνου τῆς γυναικὸς τοῦ πρώτου ἡδὺς ἦν, ὁ δὲ τῶν μετὰ τὴν Φωίαν καὶ ἀδελφὸς χροῖον, καὶ ἔξιν ἔτι ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτῷ χροῖον διέδοκεν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀδελφὸς χροῖον. Strab. lib. 17.*

<sup>8</sup> *Diod. Sic. lib. 1.* Τούτων δ' ἑταίρου λέγουσι ῥοδόπιος τῆς ἑταίρου, ὅς φασί, τὸν Νεκρωχὸν τοῦ ἐκείνου ὄνομα, ὃς φιλελευθέρως ἐνδεδουλωμένος ἐπέλιπεν αὐτῷ τὸ κατασκευάσασθαι.

<sup>9</sup> *Idem. Ibid.* Τὸν μάλιστα αὐτοῦ λέγουσι Ἀρμένιος τὸν δὲ δεύτερον Ἀμωσίον. [ἢ Ἀμωσίον.] τὸν δὲ τρίτον Ἰνάρων. [ἢ Μύρμιον.]

<sup>10</sup> *Trei vero factæ annis LXXVIII. Et mensibus IV. Plin. lib. 36. cap. 12.*

concludes, \* *Inter omnes eos non constat à quibus factæ sint, iustissimo casu oblitteratis tantæ vanitatis auctoribus.*

The *Arabians*, whose excellencies I judge to have been in the speculative sciences, and not in the histories and occurrences of ancient times, assign other founders of these three, different from those mentioned by the *Greeks*. The author of the book intitled, *Morat Alzezan*, writes, *They differ concerning him that built the Pyramids: some say Joseph, some say Nimrod, some Dalukah the queen, and some that the Egyptians built them before the flood: for they foresaw that it would be, and they carried thither their treasures, but it profited them nothing*. In another place he tells us, *That the Coptites (or Egyptians) report, that these two greater Pyramids, and the lesser, which is coloured, are sepulchres*. In the east Pyramid is king Saurid, in the west Pyramid his brother Hougib, and in the coloured Pyramid Fazarfinoun the son of Hougib: The Sabæans relate, that one of them is the sepulchre of Shitit, (that is, Seth), and the second the sepulchre of Hermes, and the coloured one the sepulchre of Sab, the son of Hermes, from whom they are called Sabæans. They go in pilgrimage thither, and sacrifice at them a cock, and a black calf, and offer up incense. Ibn Abd Albohm, another Arabian, discoursing of this argument, confesses, that he could not find amongst the learned men in Egypt, any certain relation concerning them, (wherefore) *what is more reasonable* (saith he) *than that the Pyramids were built before the flood?* For if they had been built after, there would have been some memory of them amongst men. At last he concludes, *The greatest part of chronologers affirm, that he which built the Pyramids, was Saurid Ibn Salhouk the king of Egypt, who was before the flood three hundred years*. And this opinion he confirms out of the books of the *Egyptians*: To which he adds, *The Coptites mention in their books, that upon them there is an inscription engraven; the explication of it in Arabic is this, I Saurid the king, built the Pyramids in such and such a time, and finished them in six years; he that comes after me, and says he is equal to me, let him destroy them in six hundred years; and yet it is known, that it is easier to pluck down than to build; and when I had finished them, I covered them with satin, and let him cover them with mats*. The same relation I find in several others

of them, that this *Saurid* was the founder of these three Pyramids, which the admiration of after-times enrolled amongst the miracles of the world. And these are those three, which are still fair and entire, and standing near to one another, formerly not far distant from the great and ancient city *Mempbis*, built by *Uchoreus*, of which there is now not so much as the ruins left,) and less distant from the river *Nilus*, as *Diodorus*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*, rightly describe.

Besides these three, we find mentioned in *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, the names and authors of some others, not much inferior to these in magnitude, long since ruined and defaced by time. On the contrary, there are many now standing in the *Libyan* desert, whose names and authors, neither *Herodotus* nor *Diodorus*, nor yet any of the ancients, have expressed.

After Myserinus, according to \*Herodotus, (for Diodorus is here silent,) *Alysbeis* succeeded in the kingdom, *a* who being desirous to excel his predecessors, left for a monument a Pyramid made of bricks, with these words engraven in stone, Compare not me with the Pyramids built of stone, which I as far excel as Jupiter doth the other gods. For striking of the bottom of the lake with long poles, and gathering the dirt which stuck to them, they made thence bricks, and formed me in this manner.

The fame author relates, that many ages after this *Ajchis*, *Sanacharib* king of the *Arabians* and *Affyrians*, who certainly is the fame which is mentioned in the fcriptions, having expelled *Sebon* the king of the *Egyptians*, and the priest of *Vulcan*,<sup>b</sup> the *Egyptians* recovering their liberty, made choice of twelve kings, (which is alfo confirmed by *Diodorus*), dividing *Egypt* into fo many parts; for they could at no time live without a king, thefe by a common confent, built a labyrinth above the lake of *Mœris*: At the angle where the labyrinth ends, there is a Pyramid of *xi*. *Orgyie*, (that is, of *ccxi* feet,) in which are engraven huge resemblances of beafts, the paffage to it is under ground. And this is that Pyramid, as may evidently be collected out of *Strabo*, in which *Imandes* lies buried, whom we may probably fuppofe to have been the builder of it: His words are thefe, At the end of this building, (that is, of this labyrinth,) which contains a furlong in length, there is a certain *ſepucbre*, being a quadrilateral Pyra- mid,

<sup>x</sup> Plin. l. 36. c. 12.

<sup>9</sup> Οὐχ ὅτις ἔκτισι πάλιν Μίμοισι, ἐπὶ Θουκυδίτῃ τῶν κατ' Ἀιγυπτίους. Diodor. lib. I

<sup>2</sup> Herod. lib. 2.

\* Herod. lib. 2. \* Ὑπερβαλὼν ἡ βασιλεὺς τοῦτο τὴν βασιλείαν τοὺς πύθιοις ἰαυτοῦ βασιλείας ἔχομεν. Αἰγύπτου, μαλακώσαντες Περσίδα λιπὴν ἐκ κλάδων ποιεῖσάντα, ἐν τῇ γράμμαται ἐν λίθῳ ἐγκυκαλωμένη πρὸς ἀγνοίας ἐστὶ. Μὰ καὶ κατωφίος πρὸς τῆς λιθίνης Περσίδος, πρὸς αὐτὴν τοσούτου, ὅτι ὁ ζῆλος τῶν ἄλλων ἐστὶν. καὶ τῇ ᾧ ἰσχυρῶς

ἵπποις ἐς λίμνην,  
 ἢ ἑξῆς τῆς λίμνης

το 5 πλεον τῆ κοι  
 ρ. 1. 11. 12.

a circle of gold of three hundred and sixty five cubits compass, and a cubit in thickness, in which the days

**GREAVES** mid, each side of which is cccc feet, and the altitude is the same; the name of him that lies buried there is Imandes, whom the author of the epitome calls Maindes, and Strabo himself not long after Imandes; Diodorus names him Ojmanduas. Which of these two, whether Herodotus or Strabo, hath given the truest measure of it, unless the Pyramid were now extant, cannot be decided by us. Though Pliny adheres to the dimensions of Herodotus; but whereas Herodotus and Strabo mention there but one Pyramid, he makes mention of many. And whereas Strabo makes this to be quadrilateral, he describes these (if I mistake not his words) to be hexangular. \**Superque Nemeses xv. adiculis inclusit Pyramides complures* (that is, above this labyrinth which he places in Heracleopolite Nomo,) *quadragesimum ulnarum vi radice muros obliquescentes.*

Long before these four Pyramids of Cheops, Cephren, Mycerinus, and Asychis, who immediately succeeded one another in the kingdom, but after this of Imandes, Myris as he is called by Diodorus, (but Herodotus, Strabo and Pliny, name him Meris) another Egyptian king, built two admirable Pyramids; the description of which, tho' in Herodotus, it immediately follows that of the twelve kings; yet as it may evidently be collected out of him and Diodorus, these two of Meris must many ages have preceded. For Herodotus tells us, that from Menes (the first king of the Egyptians, whom Diodorus names Menas,) the priests recited out of their books cccxxx kings, the last of which was Meris; long after whom reigned Sesostris, who is call'd by Manethos, Setbosis; and by Diodorus, Sesostris, and Sesoosis, who more particularly than Herodotus, expresses Sesostris to have been 8 seven ages after Meris, and to have reigned long before these twelve kings. The which Sesostris, or Setbosis, immediately succeeding Amenophis, (according to Manethos in Josephus, as we shall shew in the ensuing discourse,) must have been before Cheops, Cephren, Mycerinus, and Asychis; and therefore consequently, that Meris must long have preceded these twelve kings. This Meris undertook,

and finished that most admirable lake denominated after his name, as it is testified by Herodotus, Diodorus, Strabo, and Pliny. A work the most useful and wonderful, if it be rightly considered, that I think was ever by any man attempted; in the midst of which, he erected two Pyramids, the one in memory of himself, the other of his wife, each of them being 120 feet in height; the description of both which, and of his lake, we have in Herodotus, the latter we find in Strabo, but in none so fully as in Diodorus, and therefore I shall relate his words. Ten schœnes, (that is, 120 furlongs; though Strabo and Artemidorus before him, observe a difference of schœnes in Egypt, above the city (Memphis), Myris dug a lake of admirable use, the greatness of which work is incredible. For they relate, that the circumference of it contains 120 120 120 120 furlongs, the depth of it in many places is fifty fathoms, (that is, two hundred cubits, or three hundred feet,) who therefore may not deservedly ask, that shall consider the greatness of the work, how many myriads of men, and in how many years they made it? The common benefit of it to those that inhabit Egypt, and the wisdom of the king, no man can sufficiently commend. For since the rising of Nilus is not always alike, and the country is the more fruitful by the moderateness of this, he digged a lake to receive the superfluity of the water, that neither by the greatness of the inundation unseasonably drowning the country, it should occasion marshes or lakes; or flowing less than it should do, for want of water, it should corrupt the fruits; he therefore cut a ditch from the river to the lake, eighty furlongs long, and three hundred feet in breadth. By which, sometimes receiving in, and sometimes diverting the river, he exhibited a seasonable quantity of water to the husbandmen, the mouth of it sometimes being opened, and sometimes shut, not without much art, and great expences. For he that would open the bars (or sluices,) or shut them, it was necessary that he spent at the least fifty talents. The lake in this manner benefiting the Egyptians, hath continued to our times, and from the author of it at this day, is called the lake of Myris. The king that digged it, left a place in the midst, in which he built a sepulchre and two

of the year were inscribed, and divided into a cubit a piece, with a description according to their nature, of the setting and rising of the stars, and also their operations, after the Egyptian astrologers. They lay, this circle was carried away by Cambyse and the Persians, at what time they conquered Egypt. (Diod. Sicul. lib. 1.) He which shall seriously consider this, and several other passages in Herodotus and Diodorus, of the stupendous works of the Egyptians, must needs acknowledge, that for magnificence, if not for art, they far exceeded the Grecians and Romans, even when their empires were at the height, and most flourishing. And therefore, those *admiranda Romæ*, collected by Lipsius, are scarce to be admired, if compared with some of these. At this day there is hardly any vestige or obelisk remaining in Rome, worthy of note. Which hath not anciently been brought thither out of Egypt.

\* Plin. lib. 36. cap. 13. Herod. lib. 2. Μεγάλη τῆς οὐκίας [Μήνη] κατέλιπον οἱ ἱερεῖς ἐν βίβλῃ ἄλλαν βασίλειον  
 τρεκακίστα καὶ τριακόντα ἀνέγραψαν ἑκάστης Μηνεῖ.  
 † Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Ἐπίσης δὲ τὸ πάλαιον ἀπὸ δέκα χιλίων δούλων ὤρεται τῇ μὲν ἐκείνῃ  
 Σανκισσῇ, τῇ δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἔργον ἄνθρωποι, &c.

able lake de-  
is it is testified  
abo, and Pliny.  
d wonderful, if  
at I think was  
; in the midst  
ramids, the one  
e other of his  
feet in height ;  
ich, and of his  
the latter we  
e to fully as in  
shall relate his  
s, 100 furlongs ;  
rus before him,  
s in Egypt, a-  
Myris dug a lake  
s of which work  
e, that the cir-  
to 100 100 100  
any places is fifty  
red cubits, or  
therefore may  
nsider the great-  
myriads of men,  
y made it? The  
that inhabit Æ-  
be king, no man  
or since the rising  
and the country  
derateness of this,  
superfluity of the  
greatness of the  
ning the country,  
akes ; or flowing  
ant of water, it  
be therefore cut a  
ke, eighty furlongs  
in breadth. By  
t, and sometimes  
ited a seasonable  
usbandmen, the  
ened, and some-  
b art, and great  
ld open the bars  
as necessary that  
nis. The lake in  
Egyptians, bath  
from the author  
e lake of Myris.  
t a place in the  
epulchre and two

to their nature, of  
ers. They say, this  
(Diod. Sicul. lib. 1.)  
on, of the stupendi-  
s, they far exceeded  
ling. And there-  
with some of these.  
ore. which hath not

Εἰς τὴν ἑλκυσσιν  
ἀφ' ἧς ἡ ἀρχὴ

Pyramids, each a furlong in height ; the one for himself, the other for his wife, placing upon them two marble-statues, sitting on a throne, imagining by these works he should propagate to posterity an immortal memory of his worth. The revenue of the fish of this lake, he gave to his wife for her unguents, and other ornaments ; the fishing being worth to her a talent a day : For they report, there are two and twenty sorts of fishes in it, and that such a multitude is taken, that those who are perpetually employed in salting them, of which there is a very great number, can hardly dispatch the work. Thus far Diodorus. Which description, as it is much more full than that of Herodotus, so Herodotus hath this memorable observation omitted by Diodorus : ' That this lake was made by hand, and hollowed, it is apparent, because almost in the midst of it, there stands two Pyramids fifty fathoms above the water, and as many fathoms of the building under-water : Upon the top of each of which, there is a Colossus of stone sitting upon a throne ; so that the Pyramids are an hundred fathoms high. Strabo I know not by what oversight omits these two Pyramids, whereas he acknowledges the lake of Meris in which they stood, to be admirable, being like a sea for greatness and for colour.

Besides these which we have handled, and whose founders are upon record in the writings of the ancients, there are many others in the Libyan desert where it bounds Egypt, of which there is no particular mention extant, either in the Greeks, Latins, or Arabians ; unless we shall apply these words of <sup>1</sup> Diodorus to some of them. There are three other Pyramids, each side of which contain two hundred feet, the structure of them, excepting the magnitude, is like to the former, (that is, as he there specifies, to those three Pyramids of Chemmis, Cephren, and Mycerinus,) these three kings before-mentioned, are reported to have erected them for their wives. The signets of some of these now extant, doth well answer the measure assigned by Diodorus : but if these three kings built them for their queens, it may be wondered why they should have placed them so remote from their own sepulchres ; or why they should stand at such large and unequal distances of several miles from one another. I find as little satisfaction in <sup>2</sup> Pliny where he writes, *Multa circa hoc vanitas ilorum hominum fuit, vestigiaque complurium inchoatarum ex-*

*tant, una est in Arsinoite Nomo, duc in GRAVES Memphi, non procul labyrintho, de quo & ipsi dicemus.* For not telling us the founders of these, he leaves us still in the same darkness, only we may in general collect out of him, and likewise out of that ode in Horace :

*Exegi monumentum ære perennius ;  
Regaliq; situ Pyramidum altius.*  
Horat. ode 30. lib. 3.

That they were the works of Egyptian kings ; but of which of them, and at what time, we are altogether uncertain. *Regum pecunia,* <sup>3</sup> saith Pliny, *otiosa, ac stulta ostentatio.* Of the same opinion is *Leo Africanus*, in his accurate description of Africa, after many years travel in those parts. *Hæc per desertum arenaceum, iuxta ad Pyramides, nempe ad præcorum Egypti regum sepulchra, quo in loco Memphi olim existisse asserunt.* It may be it was the royal prerogative, and that it was prohibited to private men, how wealthy and potent soever to be thus intombed ; but without some farther light from the ancients, it would be too great a presumption to determine any thing.

<sup>4</sup> *Lucan*, I know not upon what ground, makes as if the Ptolemies had imitated the Egyptian kings in this particular :

*Cum Ptolemæorum manes seriemque pu-  
dendam  
Pyramides claudant.*

Surely if they did, these are none of those : For they would have built them at Alexandria, which was then the regal seat, and not at Memphis, the which as <sup>5</sup> Diodorus assures us, began to decay after the building of Alexandria, like as the ancient Thebes (as the <sup>6</sup> Grecians stiled it ; or the city of the sun, as the Egyptians, according to <sup>7</sup> Diodorus, called it ; or Diospolis, as Diodorus and <sup>8</sup> Strabo also name it,) did after the building of Memphis. Those which imagine the monument or sepulchre, mentioned by <sup>9</sup> Plutarch at Alexandria, into which Cleopatra fled for fear of Augustus, to have been a Pyramid, are much deceived. For in the life of Mark Antony, where he informs us, that there were sepulchres near the temple of Isis, of exquisite workmanship, and very high ; into which she conveyed the richest of her treasures, he describes one of them, wherein she hid her self, to have

<sup>1</sup> Herodot. lib. 2.  
<sup>2</sup> Strab. lib. 17.

<sup>3</sup> Diod. Sic. lib. 1. *Εἰς τὴν ἑλκυσσιν ἡ ἀρχὴ τῆς Πυραμίδος, ὅς ἐστιν ἡ πρὸς τὸν Πυραμίδος, τὸ δ' ἄλλο τῶν ὀψέ-  
παισιν τῇ κατασκευῇ τῶν ἄλλων, πλὴν ὅς ἐστιν αὐτῶν τῶν πρὸς τὸν Πυραμίδος τῶν βασιλέων τῶν ἰσχυρῶν κατὰ  
ἐκδοτὸν γυναικῶν.*

<sup>4</sup> Plin. lib. 36. cap. 12. <sup>5</sup> Ibid. <sup>6</sup> Leo Afric. lib. 8. <sup>7</sup> Diodor. lib. 1. <sup>8</sup> Plato, & alii. <sup>9</sup> Strab. lib. 17.  
<sup>10</sup> Plutarch. in Antonio.



**G**RAEVES had a window above the entrance, by which she drew up with cords the body of *Antony*, and by which afterwards *Proculeius* entered, and surprized her. This window is not in any of those Pyramids I have seen; neither can I apprehend, if these were of as solid and massive stones, and of the same shape as those at *Memphis*, and the chambers within as remote from the outward superficies, of what use it could be, either in

respect of light or ornament; and therefore I conjecture these monuments of the *Ptolemies* to have been of a different structure from those of the Pyramids.

In all other classical authors, I find no mention of the founders of the rest in the *Libyan* desert; and after such a distance of time, we must be content to be silent with them.

### Of the Time in which the PYRAMIDS were built.

**T**O define the precise time in which these Pyramids were erected, as it is an inquiry of much difficulty, so of much importance, in regulating the various and uncertain traditions of the antients concerning the *Egyptian* chronology. For if we shall peruse those fragments of *Manetho*, an *Egyptian* priest, preserved by <sup>a</sup> *Josephus*; or those relations of <sup>b</sup> *Herodotus*, of cccxxx kings to *Mæris*, from *Menes* the first that reigned in *Egypt*, (who probably is <sup>c</sup> *Mizraim*, the second son of *Cham*, and <sup>d</sup> father of the *Egyptians*;) or that computation of <sup>e</sup> *Diodorus*, borrowed from their sacred commentaries, that to the clxxx *Olympiad*, or to the time in which he travelled thither, there had been a succession in the royal throne for xv cto years; or that calculation of <sup>f</sup> *Pomponius Mela*, of cccxxx kings to the time of *Amasis*, continued above xiii cto years; or lastly, those *Dynasties* mentioned by *Africanus* and *Eusebius*, but pretermitted by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, the first of which <sup>g</sup> *Joseph Scaliger* places in the vii cto and ix year of that *Julian* period, which by him is called *periodus Juliana postulatitia*, and the time *tempus prolepticum*, preceding the creation by cto ccc xxxvi years, we shall find our selves intangled in a labyrinth, and maze of times, out of which we cannot, without much perplexity, unwind our selves. And if we farther consider, that amongst those many names delivered by *Manetho*, and preserved by *Josephus*, *Africanus*, *Eusebius*, and *Synellus*, how few there are that concur with those of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, or with those in *Plato*, *Strabo*, *Pliny*, *Plutarch*, *Censorinus*, and some others: And that which is of greater consequence, how difficult is it to reconcile these names and times to the *Egyptian* kings recorded in the scriptures, we shall find our selves beset, and as it were invironed on every side with great inextricable doubts. What therefore in inquiries of this nature, is ap-

proved as the most solid and rational foundation, that is, to find out some common and received *Epocha*, in which either all or most agree, that shall be our guide in matters of so great antiquity. Now of all the ancient *epocha's* which may conduce to our purpose, that is none that we may safer rely upon than there of the migration of the *Israelites* out of *Egypt*; which had the same hand faithfully to pen it, that was the most active and miraculous instrument of their departure. And though prophane historians differ much in the manner of this action, either as they were tainted with malice against the *Hebrews*, or misled with the calumnies and false reports of their enemies, the *Egyptians*; of whom, <sup>h</sup> *Josephus* may seem to have given a true censure, *That all the Egyptians in general are ill affected to the Jews*; yet all agree in this, that *Moses* was the chief author, and conductor of this expedition. If therefore we shall discover the time in which *Moses* flourished, and in which this great enterprize was performed by him, it will follow by way of consequence, that knowing what *Pbaraoh*, or king in *Egypt*, was coetaneous and concurrent with him, we may by *synchronism*, comparing sacred and prophane authors, and following the line of their successions, as it is delivered by good authority, at length fall upon the age in which *Cheops*, and those other kings reigned in *Egypt*, whom we assigned out of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, to have been the founders of these Pyramids.

And here, for our inquiry, what *Egyptian* king was concurrent with *Moses*, we must have recourse to the relations, not only of the scriptures, but also of other approved authors amongst the *Jews* and *Gentiles*; in which last though we often find more than an *Egyptian* darkness, yet sometimes through this we may discover some glimmerings of light. By the scriptures alone, it is impossible to infer, what king of

<sup>a</sup> Joseph. lib. 1. contra Apionem.

<sup>b</sup> Herodot. lib. 2.

<sup>c</sup> Gen. x. 6.

<sup>d</sup> Joseph. l. 1. Antiq. cap. 7.

<sup>e</sup> Diodor. lib. 1.

<sup>f</sup> Trecentis & triginta Reges ante Amasim, & supra tredecim millium annorum etate, certis annalibus referunt. Pomp. Mela, l. 1. c. 9.

<sup>g</sup> Scal. in Eusebii chronic.

<sup>h</sup> Φαίνοι δὲ καὶ οὐκ ὡς ἀληθῆς ἀποφαίνεται ἡ ἀγνοία τῶν Ἰσραηλῆων. Joseph. lib. 1. contra Apionem.

*Egypt*

and therefore  
ts of the Ptole-  
ferent structure  
h, I find no  
the rest in the  
ch a distance of  
to be silent with

d rational foun-  
some common  
which either all  
be our guide in  
ty. Now of all  
may conduce  
ne that we may  
of the migration  
pt; which had  
to pen it, that  
maraculous instru-  
and though prom-  
in the manner  
ey were tainted  
ews, or misled  
alse reports of  
ns; of whom,  
ve given a true  
ptions in general  
; yet all agree  
he chief author,  
dition. If there-  
time in which  
which this great  
by him, it will  
ance, that know-  
in Egypt, was  
with him, we  
aring sacred and  
llowing the line  
is delivered by  
fall upon the  
hose other kings  
assigned out of  
have been the

y, what Egypt-  
with Moses, we  
relations, not  
also of other ap-  
Jews and Gen-  
n we often find  
kness, yet some-  
y discover some  
y the scriptures  
er, what king of

1. 1. Antiq. cap. 7.  
m. milium annorum  
bii chronic.  
1. contra Apionem.  
Egypt

Egypt was coetaneous with Moses; seeing the name, which is there given him, of Pharaoh, is a common denomination applicable to all of them; much like Caesar or Augustus with the Roman emperors; or some time Cosroe with the Persians, and no distinctive appellation. Yet in Herodotus we find one king, the successor of Sesostris, to have been called Pheron, which I suppose is Pharaoh, and his proper and peculiar name. But who this Pharaoh should be, whose heart God hardened, and upon whom Moses wrought so many wonders, is worth our disquisition. Josephus in his first book contra Apionem, out of Manethos contends, that Teimosis (who is termed also Amosis by African. and Eusebius,) reigned then in Egypt. The whole force of his argument lies in this, that Manethos mentions the expulsion of the nation of shepherds to have been by Teimosis: but the Hebrews were a nation of shepherds: therefore the Hebrews were expelled out of Egypt, or in the scripture-pharse, departed out of Egypt under Teimosis; and consequently, that Moses, who was their conductor, was coetaneous with him. That the Hebrews were a nation of shepherds, and so accounted of themselves, and were esteemed by others, is very perspicuous. And Joseph said unto his brethren, and unto his father's house, I will go up and shew Pharaoh, and say unto him, My brethren and my father's house which were in the land of Canaan, are come unto me: and the men are shepherds, for their trade hath been to feed cattle, and they have brought their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have. And it shall come to pass, when Pharaoh shall call you, and shall say, What is your occupation? that ye shall say, thy servants trade hath been about cattle, from our youth even until now, both we and also our fathers; that ye may dwell in the land of Goshen. For every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians. But before we shall disprove this assertion of Josephus, which carries much speciousness with it, and therefore is approved and followed by Tatianus, by Justin Martyr, and by Clemens Alexandrinus, we shall put down the words of Manethos himself, as they are reported by Josephus in his first book contra Apionem. Timanus by name being our king, under him I know not how God was displeased, and beyond expectation, out of the eastern countries, men of obscure birth encamped themselves in the country, and easily, and without battle, took it by force, binding the princes, and besides, cruelly burning

the cities, and overthrowing the temples of the gods. Last of all, they made one of themselves a king, who was named Salatis; he reigning nineteen years, died. After him, another, named Bæon, reigned forty four years; next to him Apachnas; another, thirty six years, seven months; then Apophis, sixty one; Janias, fifty, and one month; after all, Asis, forty nine years and two months. And these were the first six kings of them always conquering, and desiring to extirpate Egypt. Their nation was called Hyclos, that is, kingly shepherds. For hyc in the sacred tongue, signifies a king; and sos a shepherd, or shepherds in the common dialect, and thence hyclos is compounded. But some say, that these were Arabians. [In other copies I have found, that by the denomination hyc, kings are not signified, but on the contrary, captive shepherds. For hyc in the Egyptian language, when it is pronounced with a broad sound, plainly signifies captives; and this seems more probable to me, and better agreeing to the ancient history.] These kings therefore, which we before mentioned, and those which were called Pastores, and those which defended of them, ruled Egypt five hundred and eleven years. After this, he mentions that by the kings of Thebes, and of the rest of Egypt, there was an invasion made against these shepherds, and a very great and lasting war. The which, he says, were conquered by a king, whose name was Alisfragmuthosis, whereby they lost all Egypt, being shut up into a place containing in circuit ten thousand acres. This space Manethos says, the shepherds encompassed with a great and strong wall, that they might secure all their substance and their spoils in a defensible place. But Themosis, the son of Alisfragmuthosis endeavouring to take them with four hundred thousand armed men, beleaguering the walls, who despairing to take them by siege, made conditions with them that they should leave Egypt, and go without any damage whither they would: they upon this agreement, no less than two hundred and forty thousand, with all their substance, went out of Egypt by the desert into Syria, and fearing the power of the Assyrians, (who then ruled Asia,) in that country, which is now called Judæa, they built a city capable to receive so many myriads of men, naming it Hierusalem.

By way of answer to Josephus, we say, that though the Israelites might properly be called shepherds, yet it cannot hence be inferred out of Manethos, that these shepherds were Israelites. Nay, if we compare this relation of Manethos, with that in Exodus, which Josephus being a Jew,

[These are the words of Josephus, and not of Manethos.]

<sup>1</sup> Σωσιππος ὁ ἐπὶ τῶν ἱερῶν ἐκείνων ἱστορεῖ τὸν βασιλεὺς τῶν ποιμένων αὐτῶν Σάλατις. Herodot. l. 2.  
<sup>2</sup> Gen. xlv. 31, 32, &c. <sup>3</sup> In oratione contra Græcos. <sup>4</sup> In parænetico ad eosdem.  
<sup>5</sup> Lib. 1. Stromatum. <sup>6</sup> Joseph. lib. 1. contra Apion. <sup>7</sup> Ἐγὼ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ τῆς Ἰερουσαλὴμ, &c.  
<sup>8</sup> Exod. i.

**G**RAVES cannot but approve of, we shall find the contrary. For there they live under a heavy slavery and persecution, whereas here they are the persecutors and afflictors; there they groan under their task-masters the Egyptians, here they make all Egypt to groan under them: Lastly, whereas there they are employed in the lowest offices, in mortar and in brick, and in all manner of service in the field: Here, after the destruction of many cities, and men, and infinite outrages committed upon the Egyptians, they make one of themselves a king, and for six descents keep themselves in possession of the royal throne, of which, after a long and bloody war, they are deprived. Their building likewise of a city in Judæa, and naming it Jerusalem, according to Manethos, is a strong argument against Josephus, that these shepherds could not have been the Israelites. For before the entrance of the Israelites into Canaan, we find that Jerusalem was a fort of the Jebusites upon mount Sion, unconquered by Joshua. As for the Jebusites the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the children of Israel could not drive them out. But they were long after subdued by David. And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem, which is Jebus, where the Jebusites were the inhabitants of the land. And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David, Thou shalt not come hither; nevertheless, David took the castle of Zion, which is the city of David. Besides all this, the history and chronology of those ancient times, if we compare sacred and prophane authors, will in no sort admit that these shepherds must have been the Israelites. For if these that departed out of Egypt in the reign of Tetbmosis, king of Thebais, or of the upper part of Egypt, were the children of Israel, then must Moses their conductor have been as ancient as Tetbmosis, or Amosis, that is, as ancient as Inachus, the first king of the Argives. For Apion, in his fourth book of the histories of Egypt, shews out of Ptolemæus Mendesium, an Egyptian priest, that this Amosis lived in the time of Inachus, as it is recorded by Tatianus, Justin Martyr, Clemens Alexandrinus, and others. Eusebius, tho' he doth not approve of it, for he places Moses in the time of Cecrops, yet he assures us, that it was a received opinion among many learned men, Moïsen Inachi fuisse temporibus eruditissimi viri tradiderunt ex nostris Clemens, & Africanus; ex Judæis, Josephus, & Justus, veteris historiæ monumenta replicantes. Now Inachus according to Cassor

an ancient chronographer, with whom Eusebius also concurs, began to reign a thousand and eighty years before the first olympiad, that is, 1100 years before the destruction of the temple under Zedekiah, and before Christ's nativity, after the Dionysian or common account, 1100 years. That of the olympiads is so assured an epocha, and so strongly and clearly proved by eclipses of the sun and moon, which are the best demonstrations in chronology, these being expressed by some of the ancients to have happen'd in such a year of such an olympiad, as by Ptolemy; others in such a year of the epocha of Nabonassar, that we cannot err in our calculations an hour, much less an intire day. By this therefore we shall fix the time of Zedekiah, and the destruction of the temple: And consequently, if, by our continuation of the years mentioned in the sacred story, it shall appear, that from the time of Moses, either to the first olympiad, or to Zedekiah and the destruction of the temple, there cannot be so great a distance as these suppose, we may safely then conclude, that Moses lived not in the time of this Tetbmosis, and is not so ancient as Josephus makes him; and that these shepherds were not the Israelites, but very probably Arabians, as Manethos here also reports. Some say that these were Arabians; who to this day, for the greatest part, like the Nomades, wander up and down, feeding their cattle, and often make incursions upon the Egyptians and Syrians. Which occasioned Sesostris the great (as we find it in Diodorus,) to make a wall on the east-side of Egypt, a thousand and fifty furlongs in length, from Pelusium by the desert to Heliopolis, against the invades of the Syrians and Arabians: As at this day the Chinese have done against the irruptions of the Tartars on the north and west parts of China, for many hundred miles, the which appears by a large map of mine of that country, made and printed in China. On the contrary, if the succession of times from Moses, recorded in the holy writ, better agrees with the age of Amenophis, the father of Ramesses, whose story Josephus hath preserved out of Manethos, and whose time and rank in the Dynasties, Africanus and Eusebius deliver out of the same Manethos, we may with more probability affirm, that the migration of the Israelites and time of Moses, was when Amenophis was Pharaoh, or king of Egypt, than that it was when Tetbmosis reigned, as Josephus and others contend, out of a desire to make Moses ancients than in truth he is.

<sup>4</sup> Exod. i. 14. <sup>5</sup> Josh. xv. 63. <sup>6</sup> 2 Chron. xi. 4, 5. <sup>7</sup> In oratione contra Græcos. <sup>8</sup> In parenthetico ad Græcos. <sup>9</sup> Lib. 1. Strom. <sup>10</sup> And so doth St. Augustin, eduxit Moïsem ex Ægypto populum Dei novissimo tempore Cecropis, Atheniensium regis. L. 18. c. 11. de Civ. Dei. <sup>11</sup> Euseb. Chron. <sup>12</sup> Ibid. <sup>13</sup> Ptolemæus in γεωγραφικῇ ἐπιστάσει. <sup>14</sup> Diod. Sic. lib. 1. <sup>15</sup> Joseph. lib. 1. contra Apionem.

And tho' this argument from the series and successions of time is so demonstrative and conclusive, that nothing can be opposed against it, and therefore might be sufficient to evince our purpose: yet if we considerately examine another relation of *Manethos*, (which is slighted and depressed by *Josephus*, because it made not for his purpose,) it must necessarily be that those shepherds he meant not the *Israelites*, but rather by the *Israelites* the leprous people, which in his computation are three hundred thirty years and six months after the Dynasty of the shepherds. And therefore we may oppose the authority of *Manethos* against himself, or rather against *Josephus*. The sum of whose discourse is this, That *Amenophis*, who was a great worshipper of the gods, as *Orus* one of the former kings had been, being desirous to see the gods, one of the priests of the same name with him, told him he might, if he cleansed the country of leprous and polluted people. This leprous people chose for their captain one of the priests of *Heliopolis*, named *Osarsiphus*, who changing his name, was called *Moses*; he causing *Amenophis* for fear to fly into *Æthiopia*, was afterwards by him, and by his son *Setbon*, who was also called *Rameses*, by the name of his father overthrown in battle, and the leprous people were pursued by them unto the confines of *Syria*. Thus far out of *Manethos*. Here, which is very remarkable, we have expressly the name of *Moses*; whereas in the former relation of *Manethos* there is no mention of him, but of six other kings, with their peculiar names. Whereas it is not probable he would have omitted the name of *Moses* if he had lived in that age, being a name so famous and so well known to them; and by *Josephus* acknowledged, that the *Ægyptians* accounted him to be an admirable and divine man. The pursuing of them unto the confines of *Syria*, doth very well intimate the following of the *Israelites* by *Pharaoh* and his host. For his terming them a leprous and polluted people, we must consider him to have been an *Ægyptian*, and therefore not unlikely to throw as many aspersions as he could upon the *Israelites*, whom they deadly hated, it may be out of memory of their former plagues.

However it were, *Charemon* hath almost the same history, as *Josephus* confesses. *Charemon* professing to write the history of *Ægypt*, says, That under *Amenophis* and his son *Rameses*, Two hundred and fifty thousand leprous and polluted men were cast out of *Ægypt*. Their leaders were *Moses* the scribe, and *Josephus*, who was also a sacred scribe. The *Ægyptian* name of *Moses* was *Tisithen*, of *Joseph* *Peteleph*. These coming to *Pelusium*, and finding there three hundred and eighty thousand men left by *Amenophis*, which he would not admit into *Ægypt*, making a league with them, they undertook an expedition against *Ægypt*. Upon this *Amenophis* flies into *Æthiopia*, and his son *Messenes* drives out the *Jews* into *Syria*, in number about two hundred thousand, and receives his father *Amenophis* out of *Æthiopia*. I know *Lyfimachus* assigns another king, and another time, in which *Moses* led the *Israelites* out of *Ægypt*, and that was when *Bocchoris* reigned in *Ægypt*, the nation of the *Jews* being infected with leprosy, and scabs, and other diseases, betook themselves to the temple to beg their living, many being tainted with the disease, there happened a death in *Ægypt*. Whereupon *Bocchoris* consulting with the oracle of *Ammon*, received answer, That the leprous people were to be drowned in the sea in fleets of lead, the scabbed were to be carried into the wilderness; who choosing *Moses* for their leader, conquered that country which is now called *Judæa*. Out of which relation of *Lyfimachus*, and some others of like credit, *Tacitus* may have borrowed his in the fifth book of his histories. Most authors agree, that there arising a contagion in *Ægypt* which defiled their bodies, king *Bocchoris* consulting the oracle of *Hammon* for remedy, was bid to purge his kingdom, and to carry that sort of men, as hated of the gods, into other countries. Thence the vulgar sort being enquired after, and collected together, after they had been left in the deserts, the rest being heavy with tears, *Moses*, one of the banished men, admonished them, not to expect the help either of gods or men, being deserted by both, but that they should trust to him as their captain sent from heaven, to whose assistance by their giving credit at the first, they had overcome

<sup>a</sup> Manethos apud *Joseph.* lib. 1. contra Apionem. *Sicut vocatur.* *Joseph.* lib. 1. contra Apionem.

<sup>b</sup> Lib. 1. contra Apionem. *Χαρίμων* καὶ γὰρ ὅτις Ἀἰγύπτου ἐν Φέσκων ἱεροῖς συγγραφεὺς καὶ πρῶτος ταύτης ἱστορίας τῶν βασιλέων, ὅντιν ἐν *Manethos*, Ἀμενόφης καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Ῥάμεσιν, &c.

<sup>c</sup> *Lyfimachus* apud *Joseph.* lib. 1. contra Apionem. *Ἐπὶ Βουχχόριος* τοῦ Ἀἰγυπτίου βασιλεὺς τῶν λαῶν τῶν λειψάνων ἀπορίας ὄντας καὶ ὄντας, καὶ ἄλλαν ἐργασίαν τὴν ἐχούσας, αὐτὸν τὴν ἰσχυρὰν καταφύγουσας παρτατῶν τρωπῶν, &c.

<sup>d</sup> *Tacit.* l. 5. Hist. *Plurimi auctores consentiunt, erit per Ægyptum tabe quæ corpora fœdaret: regem Bocchorin, adito Hammonis oracula, remedium petentem, purgare regnum, & id genus hominum ut invisum deis alias in terras avolvere iussim.* Sic conquestum collectumque vulgus, postquam vastis locis relictum sit, ceteris per la-brynas serpentinibus, Moysen unum exulium monuisse, ne quam deorum hominum opem expectarent ab utrisque desertis, sed sibi ut duci caelesti crederent, primo cuius auxilium credentes præsentis miseriae pepulissent. Affertur atque omnium ignari fortissimum iter incipiunt.

*GRAEVES* their present calamities. They assented unto him, and being ignorant of all, they begin their journey as fortune should lead them. Thus much and more hath Tacitus of Moses and the Jews. But to pass by his and *Lysimachus's* calumnies, we can no more assent to these testimonies of theirs, that *Moses* lived in the time of *Bocchoris*, than we did to *Josephus* that he was coetaneous with *Teibmosis*. For we find *Bocchoris* to be placed by *Africanus* and *Eusebius*, both following *Manethos* in the twenty fourth dynasty, and by *Diodorus* long after *Sesestris* the great, or *Rameses*, which *Rameses*, or *Seibosis*, or *Setbon*, (that is, *Sesestris*, and *Sesosis* in *Diodorus*,) both in *Manethos* and *Charemon*, is the son of *Amorophis*, who is the last king of the eighteenth dynasty, according to *Africanus* and *Eusebius*. I purposely omit the opinion of *Apian*, that *Moses* (whom he makes to be of *Helopolis*,) departed with these lepers, and blind, and lame, in the first year of the seventh olympiad, in which year, saith he, the Phœnicians built Carthage; and that other of *Porphyrius* in his fourth book against the Christians, that *Moses* was before *Semiramis*. Where he places him as much too high, as *Apian* doth too low.

Laying therefore aside these vain and uncertain traditions, we have no more assured way exactly to fix the time of *Moses*, and by *Moses* the time in which the Pyramids were built, than to have recourse to the sacred scriptures, and sometimes to compare such authors of the Gentiles with these, against whom we have no just exceptions. For by those, and these conjointly, we may continue his time to the first olympiad, and thence to the destruction of the temple, by *Nebuchadnezzar* king of *Babylon*: That of the olympiads being a most certain and known epocha with the Greeks, as that of the destruction of the temple with the Jews. From *Moses* then, or the migration of the Israelites out of *Egypt*, to the building of *Solomon's* temple, are *ccccxxx* years current, or

four hundred seventy nine complete; and so also *Eusebius* computes them. The words of the text plainly conclude this sum: "And it came to pass in the four hundred and fourth-score year, after the children of Israel were come out of the land of *Egypt*, in the fourth year of *Solomon's* reign over Israel, in the month *Zif*, which is the second month, that he began to build the house of the Lord. From the building of the temple to the destruction of it in the reign of *Zedekias*, by the calculation and confession of the best chronologers, are betwixt four hundred and twenty and four hundred and thirty years. Which is thus deduced: After the first foundation of the temple, *Solomon* reigned thirty seven years, *Rehoboam* with *Abia* twenty; in whose time we are to place *Shishak*, or *Sesobosis*, the king of *Egypt*. "And it came to pass in the fifth year of king *Rehoboam*, that *Shishak* king of *Egypt*, came up against *Jerusalem*, and he took away the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king's house, he even took away all; and he took away all the shields of gold which *Solomon* had made. This *Shishak* is named by the *Septuagint* *Σισακ*, by *St Hieron* *Sesac*, and is the same whom *Josephus* calls *Σισακ*, which he imagines to have been *Sesestris* the great, whose victories and conquests are describ'd at large by *Herodotus*. But this *Sesestris*, or *Sesosis*, as *Diodorus* also terms him, must long have preceded *Rehoboam's* time, as in the sequel of this discourse it will appear. Therefore the more probable opinion is that of *Scaliger*, that by *Shishak* is meant *Sesobosis*, whom *Manethos* calls *Σισοβυς*, and the scoliast of *Apollonius* *Σισοβυς*, the time of the twenty second dynasty, in which we find him placed by *Africanus* and *Eusebius*, doth well agree with it, and the radical letters in *Shishak*, *Sesac*, and *Σισακ*, being the same, do very much strengthen our assertion. After *Rehoboam* and *Abia's* reign, *Asa* and *Jeboas* reigned *lxxvi* years, *Joram* and *Abazias* *ix*, *Abazias* and *Joas* *xlv*, *Amasias* *xxix*, *Uzziah* *lvi*, *Jotham* *xvi*, *Ahaz*

<sup>h</sup> Ex Edit. Jos. Scaligeri.

<sup>i</sup> Diod. lib. 1.

<sup>k</sup> Apud Jos. lib. 2. contra Apionem.

<sup>l</sup> Ex Ethnicis verò impijs illi Porphyrius in quarto operis sui libro, quod adversum nos casto labore contextit, post Moysen Semiramum fuisse affirmat. Bulech. chron.

<sup>m</sup> Ibid.

<sup>n</sup> Kings vi. 1.

<sup>o</sup> For 1 Kings vi. 1. In the fourth year of his reign, and in the second month he began to build the house of the Lord. And in 1 Kings xi. 42. The time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over Israel was forty years. Out of which, if we subduct three complete years that preceded the foundation of the temple, there remain thirty seven years.

<sup>p</sup> 1 Kings xiv. 21. He reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem.

<sup>q</sup> 1 Kings xv. 2. Three years reigned he in Jerusalem. <sup>r</sup> 1 Kings xiv. 25. 26. <sup>s</sup> Joseph Antiq. l. 8. c. 4. <sup>t</sup> Herod. lib. 2. <sup>u</sup> Diodorus in the printed copies, always names him *Sesobosis*, but in one of the MSS. as *Herr. Stephanus* observes, he is sometimes called *Sesestris*, and sometimes *Sesobosis*. Vid. edit. Diod. ab *Herr. Stephanus*.

<sup>v</sup> 1 Kings xv. 10. Forty one years reigned he in Jerusalem.

<sup>w</sup> 1 Kings xxii. 42. He reigned twenty five years in Jerusalem. <sup>x</sup> 2 Kings viii. 17. He reigned eight years in Jerusalem.

<sup>y</sup> 2 Kings xi. 3. And he was with her bid in the house of the Lord six years; and *Abathab* did reign over the land. <sup>z</sup> 2 Kings xii. 1. Forty years reigned he in Jerusalem.

<sup>a</sup> 2 Kings xiv. 2. He reigned twenty nine years in Jerusalem. <sup>b</sup> 2 Kings xv. 2. He reigned fifty two years in Jerusalem. <sup>c</sup> 2 Kings xx. 33. He reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem.



complete; and  
as them. The  
conclude this  
in the four hun-  
after the children  
land of Egypt.  
son's reign over  
which is the second  
d the house of the  
g of the temple  
e reign of Zede-  
and confession of  
e betwixt four  
ur hundred and  
deduced: Af-  
the temple, So-  
n years, 'Rebo-  
n whose time  
r Sefobchus, the  
me to pass in the  
n, that Shilhak  
ainst Jerusalem  
es of the house of  
the king's house,  
he took away all  
omon had made.  
y the Septuagint  
ac, and is the  
e, which  
s of the great,  
are describ'd  
this Sefobchus, or  
erms him, must  
me's time, as in  
it will appear.  
able opinion is  
his/bak is meant  
calls Sefobchus,  
s Sefobchus, the  
and dynasty, in-  
d by Africamus  
ee with it, and  
bak, Sefac, and  
do very much  
After Rehobam  
and 'Jehoiakim  
m and 'Abazias  
LVI, 'Amasias  
am XVI, 'Abaz

xvi, being contemporary with *Hoshea* the last king of *Israel*, in whose time we find *So* to reign in *Egypt*, (2 Kings xvii. 4.) After *Abaz* succeeded, *Hezekiah* reigning 1 xxix years

Now <sup>1</sup> in the fourteenth year of king *Hezekiah*, did *Sennacharib* king of *Assyria*, come up against all the fenced cities of *Judah*, and took them. But afterwards, when he came to besiege *Jerusalem* — <sup>2</sup> It came to pass that night, that the angel of the Lord went out and smote in the camp of the *Assyrians* an hundred fourscore and five thousand; and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses. So *Sennacharib* king of *Assyria* departed, and went, and returned and dwelt at *Nineveh*. In the time of this *Sennacharib*, *Seibon* succeeding *Anysis* reigned in *Egypt*, according to <sup>3</sup> *Herodotus*, who in his *Euterpe* hath plainly the name of *Sanacharib*, siliing him king of the *Arabians* and *Assyrians*, and making him to have received a miraculous defeat, which it may be was that of *Hezekiah*, though he applies it to *Seibon* king of the *Egyptians*. His story is well worth our observation; which runs thus: "After this (Anysis) the priest of *Vulcan*, by name *Sethon*, reigned, who abusing the men of war of the *Egyptians*, and condemning them as not useful to him, besides other ignominies he deprived them of their lands, which had been given to every company of twelve by the former kings. Wherein it happened, that when afterwards *Sanacharib*, the king of the *Arabians* and *Assyrians*, invaded *Egypt*, the *Egyptian* soldiers refused to assist him. Then the priest destitute of counsel, stout himself up, lamenting before the image how much he was in danger to suffer; in the midst of his mourning falling asleep, a God appeared to him, encouraging him that he should suffer no distress, if he would march against the armies of the *Arabians*; for he would send him succour.

He therefore giving credit to this dream, taking with him such volunteers of the *Egyptians* as followed him, pitched his army at *Belusium*; for there *Egypt* is easiest invaded: Neither did any of the soldiers follow him, but trades-men, and artificers, and merchants. Coming thither by night, an infinite number of mice entering upon his enemies, gnawed their quivers and bows, and the leathers of their shields, so that the next day the enemies destitute of arms, fled, many of them being slain. And therefore now this king stands in the temple of *Vulcan*, in a statue of marble, holding in his hand a mouse with this inscription. He that looks upon me let him be religious. After *Hezekiah*, <sup>4</sup> *Manasses* reigned 1 v years, <sup>5</sup> *Amon* 11, <sup>6</sup> *Josiah* xxxi. "In his days *Pharaoh* *Nechoh* king of *Egypt*, went up against the king of *Assyria* to the river *Euphrates*, and king *Josiah* went against him, and he slew him at *Megiddo* when he had seen him. The same relation we read in *Herodotus*, if we pardon him the mistake of *Magdolo* for *Megiddo*, who writes, that <sup>7</sup> *Necus* (the king of *Egypt*) fighting a battle on land with the *Syrians* in *Magdolo*, obtained the victory, and after the fight he took *Cadytus*, a great city in *Syria*.

Next to *Josiah* succeeded <sup>8</sup> *Joachaz*, <sup>9</sup> *Jehoiakim*, and <sup>10</sup> *Jechoniah* or *Jehoiachin*, reigning eleven years and six months. And in the eleventh year of <sup>11</sup> *Zedekiah*, the next king after *Jechoniah*, was the temple burnt by *Nebuzaradan*, in the 19 nineteenth year of *Nebuchadnezzar* king of *Babylon*, or the second of *Vaphres* king of *Egypt*, in the computation of *Clemens Alexandrinus*. This *Zedekiah*, saith <sup>12</sup> *Josephus*, having been a confederate of the *Babylonians* for eight years, broke his faith with them, and joining league with the *Egyptians*, hoped to overthrow the *Babylonians*. This league we find intimated in <sup>13</sup> *Ezekiel*; and we read in <sup>14</sup> *Jeremiah* and <sup>15</sup> *Josephus* of succours

<sup>1</sup> 2 Kings xviii. 2. He reigned twenty nine years in Jerusalem.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Kings xix. 35, 36.

<sup>3</sup> Herod. lib. 2. *Sanacharib*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> 2 Kings xxii. 19. He reigned two years in Jerusalem.

<sup>5</sup> He reigned thirty one years in Jerusalem.

<sup>6</sup> 2 Kings xxiii. 29. and Chron. xxxv. 20. *Necho* king of *Egypt*, came up to fight against *Carchemish* by *Euphrates*, and *Josiah* went out against him.

<sup>7</sup> *Ezek. i. ver. 5, 6, 7, 12, 13.* almost word for word, which is remarkable.

<sup>8</sup> 2 Kings xxiii. 31. He reigned three months in Jerusalem.

<sup>9</sup> 2 Kings xxiv. 8. He reigned in Jerusalem three months.

<sup>10</sup> And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king *Zedekiah*. And on the ninth day of the fourth month the famine prevailed in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land: and the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night.

<sup>11</sup> And in the fifth month on the seventh day of the month (which is the nineteenth year of *Nebuchadnezzar* king of *Babylon*), came *Nebuzan*, captain of the guard, a servant of the king of *Babylon*, unto *Jerusalem*. And he burnt the house of the Lord, and the king's house, and all the houses of *Jerusalem*, and every great man's house burnt he with fire, 2 Kings xxv. 2, 3, 4, 8, 9. The same relation we find in *Jeremiah*, chap. lii. ver. 5, 6, 7, 12, 13. almost word for word, which is remarkable.

<sup>12</sup> *Joseph. antiquit. lib. 10. cap. 10.* *Tō sumpnōn kai tō tēs tēs βασιλείας ἐπὶ τῆς ἑστῆς κατὰ τὴν δόξαν τῆς αὐτῆς πίστεως, ὅς τῶν Αἰγυπτίων προσηύχοντες, καταλύειν τὴν βασιλείαν ἡλπίσαντες.*

<sup>13</sup> *Ezek. xvii. 15.*

<sup>14</sup> *Jer. xxxvii. 5.*

<sup>15</sup> *Jos. ant. l. 10. c. 10.* *ὁ δὲ Ἀλκίνοος ἐκ τῶν ἐν τῇ ἐστῇ βασιλείᾳ αὐτῆς Σελίανος ἀναστάντων πολλὰ δόγματα καὶ τὰν ἰσχυρίαν, ὡς λέγον τῆς πολιτείας.*

GREAVES and assistance sent by the king of Egypt, when Zedekiah and Jerusalem were first distressed by the Chaldeans, or forces of the king of Babylon. <sup>d</sup> Then Pharaoh's army was come forth out of Egypt, and when the Chaldeans that besieged Jerusalem, heard tidings of them, they departed from Jerusalem. The same is reiterated by him: Behold Pharaoh's army which is come forth to help you, shall return to Egypt to their own land. And the Chaldeans shall come again, and fight against this city, and take it, and burn it with fire. All which we see was perform'd by Nebuchadnezzar in the eleventh year of Zedekiah; and a judgment also denounced against the king of Egypt. \* Thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will give Pharaoh Hophra king of Egypt, into the hands of his enemies, and into the band of them that seek his life: as I gave Zedekiah king of Judah, into the band of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, his enemy, and that fought his life. The same is often threatned by the prophet Ezekiel, who lived in the time of Hezekiah, as Jeremiab did: I am against Pharaoh king of Egypt, and I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations, and will disperse them throughout the countries: And I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, and put my sword in his hand, but I will break Pharaoh's arms. Which prophecies we may discover most manifestly to have been fulfilled in the reign of Apries, as <sup>e</sup> Herodotus names him, or Apries, as <sup>f</sup> Diodorus calls him, or Vapbres, as the Septuagint and Eusebius render the name of that king, which here in Jeremiab is called Pharaoh Hophra. Who, saith <sup>g</sup> Herodotus, next to Psammiticus his grandfather, was the most fortunate of all the former kings for twenty five years of his reign; which might occasion Zedekiah to fly to him for succour: But the Egyptians rebelling against him, he was overthrown in battle, taken prisoner, and afterward strangled by his own servant Amasis, whom they had made their king. The whole story and manner is at large in <sup>h</sup> Herodotus, neither did divine vengeance long forbear to pursue the traitor. For Cambyses the king of the Persians and of Babylon, coming with an army against him, possessed himself of Egypt, as the prophets had foretold. Nor could the Egyptians ever to this day recover the monarchy. For after the Persians succeeded the Macedonians, after them the Romans, then the Arabians, next the Mamalukes or Circassians, and last of all the Turks or Sy-

rians. So that we may conclude from the occurrences then happening, (the relations of Herodotus exactly agreeing with the threatenings of the prophets,) as also from the computation of times, and from the affinity and analogy of names, that Hophra, and Apries, or Vapbres, must have been the very same Egyptian king coetaneous and concurrent with Zedekiah.

To reassume then what hath been demonstrated by us: From the migration of the Israelites out of Egypt, under the conduct of Moses to the building of Solomon's temple, are four hundred seventy nine years complete; and from the building of the temple to the destruction of it, are four hundred and thirty years and six months. But because it is not probable, that amongst so many kings, all of them should have reigned completely so many years as are express'd in the text; it being the usual stile of kings to reckon the years current of their reign as complete, I shall limit this uncertainty between ccccx and ccccxix years, which is a sufficient latitude. If any one should desire a more exact calculation, he may compute them by comparing other places of the scriptures with these, to be but ccccxv years current, according to the opinion of the most reverend and judicious primate of Ireland, to which I willingly subscribe; though either computation be sufficient for my purpose.

This destruction of the temple, by our best chronographers, is placed in the first year of the forty eight olympiad, and in the hundred and sixtieth of the epocha of Nabonassar, and in the nineteenth (as the scripture often makes mention) of Nebuchodonosor the son of Nabonassar, (as <sup>i</sup> Berossus in Josephus names him,) which Nabonassar must necessarily be the same with him that is called Nabopolassar in Ptolemy, (the xiv king of the Babylonians after Nabonassar,) whom Nabopolassar (or <sup>m</sup> Nabuchodonosor, or <sup>n</sup> Nebuchadnezzar, or <sup>o</sup> Nebuchadnezzar, as the scripture also terms him,) in his Canon Regnorum succeeds. The nearness of the names, and agreement of the times from Cyrus, in whom the sacred scriptures and prophane authors equally concur, do strongly prove them to be the same. Wherefore we may conclude, that from the time of Moses, or the migration of the Israelites out of Egypt, or from the end of the Ammonites, (coetaneous with Moses,) the last king of the eighteenth Dynasty, (as Eusebius out of Manethos ranks him,) to the

<sup>d</sup> Jer. xxxvii. 6, 8.

<sup>e</sup> Jer. xlv. 30.

<sup>f</sup> Ezek. xxx. 23, 23.

<sup>g</sup> Herod. l. 2.

<sup>h</sup> Diodor. lib. 1.

<sup>i</sup> Οὗ μὲν Παμμιτικῆς τῆς αὐτοῦ προκαταρτῆς ἐγένετο ἰνδουμανίτης· οὗ τῆς πρώτης βασιλείας ἐκ τῆς πύρας ἐκείνης ἄρτος.

Herod. l. 2.

Herodot. lib. 2.

<sup>m</sup> Nebuchodonosor· ὁ παῖς αὐτοῦ Ναβουπασάρ. Beross. apud Joseph. l. 1. contra Apionem.

<sup>n</sup> So Josephus, and the Vulgate, always name him.

<sup>o</sup> Jer. lii. 12, 28, 29.

<sup>p</sup> 2 Kings xxv. 8. Ezra i. 7. ii. 1.

conclude from the  
ing, (the relations  
reering with the  
phets,) as also  
times, and from  
of names, that  
pbes, must have  
ian king coeta-  
ch Zedekiah.  
at hath been de-  
n the migration  
gypt, under the  
building of Solo-  
hundred seventy  
d from the build-  
destruction of it,  
ty years and six  
is not probable,  
ings, all of them  
ompletely so many  
the text; it being  
reckon the years  
complete, I shall  
ween ccccx and  
s a sufficient lati-  
desire a more ex-  
ompute them by  
of the scriptures  
cccxv years cur-  
ion of the most re-  
ate of Ireland, to  
e; though either  
or my purpose.  
e temple, by our  
placed in the first  
piad, and in the  
epocha of Nabo-  
nib (as the scrip-  
t) of Nebuchodo-  
r, (as <sup>1</sup> Berosus in  
which Nabonassar  
me with him that  
Ptolemy, (the xiv  
after Nabonassar,)  
Nabuchodonozor,  
Nebuchadnezzar,  
him,) in his Ca-  
The nearness of  
of the times from  
ed scriptures and  
lly concur, do  
the same. Where-  
at from the time  
n of the Israelites  
end of the Ame-  
Moses,) the last  
nasty, (as Euse-  
nism,) to the

Herod. l. 2.  
... τῶν πρίντων  
nem.  
8, 29.

reign of Apries, or Vapres, or Hophra, the eighth king of the twenty sixth Dynasty, (according to the same Eusebius following Manetbos,) being coetaneous with Zedekiah king of Judah, and Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, are 13000000 years, and from Moses to the first olympiad 13000000 and not 13000000 as they who make Moses as ancient as Inachus affirm. In which space we may with much certainty, if we give credit to Herodotus and Diodorus, place the kings the founders of the three greatest and fairest Pyramids; which is the principal intention of this discourse. For both of them describe these to have reigned many ages before Apries, and long after Sesostris the great. Which Sesostris, or Sesostris, as Diodorus also styles him, must have been the same king whom Manetbos in Josephus calls Setosis, and Ramefies, and <sup>4</sup> Egyptus, son to Amenophis before-mentioned, and brother to Armais, or Danaus; and Eusebius of Scaliger's edition in Greek names Setosis, the Latin translations of St. Hierom, both MSS. and printed copies Setbus, and by all of them is the first king of the xix Dynasty. The great acts and conquests assigned by Herodotus to Sesostris, and as great attributed by Manetbos to Setosis, or Ramefies, which cannot well be applied to any other precedent or subsequent kings; together with the relation of them both, that while he was in pursuit of his victories abroad, his brother, whom Manetbos names Armais, and Danaus (in Herodotus his name is omitted,) rebelled against him at home, and the nearness of the time, which may be collected out of both, do very much confirm the probability of this assertion. Sesostris then, and Setosis, being one and the same, is by Manetbos in Josephus ranked immediately after Amenophis, (coetaneous with Moses, as we have prov'd,) and is the same Manetbos in the tradition of Eusebius after Menophis that is Amenophis, both in the Greek and Latin copies. Wherefore the founders of these Pyramids having lived after Sesostris, must likewise have been after Amenophis. If we will come to a greater preciseness yet of time, (for this latitude of nine hundred and four

years, which we assigned from Moses to the Graves destruction of the first temple, in the time of Zedekiah king of Judah, and Apries king of Egypt, is so great that we may lose our selves in it,) we have no other possible means left, after the revolution of so many ages, and the loss of so many of the commentaries and monuments of the Egyptians, but by having recourse to those Dynasties of Manetbos, as they are preserved by Africanus and Eusebius. And yet in neither of these shall we find the names of Cbeops or Chemmis, or Cepren or Chabryis, or of Mycerinus, the authors of the greater Pyramids, mentioned by Herodotus and Diodorus; or of Asychis, the builder of a fourth, according to Herodotus. Wherefore what their writings have not supplied us with, that reason must. For since these Egyptian kings, as we have proved, lived between Amenophis and Apries, and by Eusebius out of Africanus, Amenophis is the last of the xviii Dynasty, and Apries or Vapres, the viii of the xxvi Dynasty, we must necessarily place them in one of the intermediate Dynasties. But seeing all the intermediate Dynasties have their peculiar kings, unless it be the xx, we have no reason to exclude them, and to bring these in their places as usurpers: But rather with great probability, (for I must say here with Livy, *Quis rem tam veterem pro certo asserimet?*) we may assign to them the xx Dynasty. In which we find not the name of any one king, but yet the space left vacant of 13000000 years, according to Eusebius.

Here therefore we shall place,

First, Cbeops or Chemmis, the founder of the first Pyramid, who began his reign in the 13000000 cccc xlviii year of the Julian period, that is cccclxxx years before the first olympiad, and 13000000 before the first destruction of the temple, and 13000000 before the beginning of the years of our Lord. He reigned fifty years, saith Herodotus, and built this Pyramid, as Diodorus observes, a thousand years before his time, or the 1300000 olympiad, whereas he might have said a thousand two hundred and seven.

<sup>1</sup> Herodot. lib. 2. Diodor. Sic. lib. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Ἰστορίαι τῶν Ἑλλήνων* τῶν πρίντων, Ἀρμαῖος ὁ ἐκ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς αὐτοῦ Δαναῖος. Manethos apud Jos. l. 1. contra Apionem. Where in the same place Manetbos calls this *Ἰστορία*, also *Ῥωμαίων*, and son of Amenophis; and therefore Scaliger rightly observes, that Ramefies with Manetbos is Trionimis. *Scal. in Euseb. Chron.*

<sup>3</sup> This Danaus (for his rebellion, being expelled by his brother out of Egypt,) sailed into Greece, and possessed himself of Argos, as it is testified by Josephus, (lib. 1. contra Apionem,) by Africanus and Eusebius, (vid. Euseb. chron.) by Pausanias, and several others. From whom descended the Danaides, one of the races of the kings at Argos; of all which there is frequent mention in the Greek historians and chronographers: Wherefore we cannot be ignorant either of Danaus or of his brother's time. I shall only add, for farther illustration, what I find in Africanus, Ἀρμαῖος ὁ ἐκ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ὁ ἀδελφεὸς τοῦ Ἰστορίου τοῦ καὶ Ἀφρικῆος ἱστορίου καὶ Ἰστορίου βασιλεὺς αὐτοῦ, οὗ ἑλλὰς τι ἐκτίθειτο. Ῥωμαῖος ὁ ἀδελφεὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Ἀφρικῆος καλεῖται Ἰστορίου. Ἰστορίου ἑλλὰς ἑκτίθειτο. Μεταστάσεις τῶν χρόνων Ἀφρικῆος τῶ Ἰστορίου ἑκτίθειτο, ἡ τι πρότερον Μετὰ τῶν ἑλλὰς δὲ Ἀφρὶ ἀνέστητο Δαναῖος δὲ ὁ καὶ Ἀρμαῖος πρῶτος τῶ Ἀργεῖ, ὃ ἐκ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς ἐκτίθειτο τῶ Ἀργεῖ, καὶ ἐκ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς αὐτοῦ μετὰ αὐτοῦ Δαναῖος καλεῖται, ὃν ἑλλὰς τῶ Ἰστορίου τῶ Ἰστορίου, καὶ οὗ ἐκ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς. Afr. apud Euseb. chron.

<sup>4</sup> Liv. l. 1.

Secondly, *Cephren* or *Cbabryis*, the builder of the second, who reigned fifty six years.

Thirdly, *Mycerinus*, the erecter of the third, seven years.

Fourthly, *Ayebis* the author of the fourth.

Fifthly, *Anysis* the blind.

How long these two reigned is nowhere expressed.

Sixthly, *Sabacbus* the *Ethiopian*. He conquered *Egypt*, and reigned fifty years.

The sum is *CLXIII* years, this being subtracted out of *CLXXVIII* years, (the whole time allowed by *Eusebius* to this *Dynasty*;) the remainder is *XY* years, which space we may without any inconvenience, divide between *Ayebis* and *Anysis*.

If any shall question why the names of these kings are omitted by *Manethos*, an *Egyptian* priest, in the *XX* *Dynasty*, I can give no other reason than what we read in *Herodotus*: 'These kings (speaking of *Cheops* and *Cephren*;) the *Egyptians* out of hatred will not so much as name, but they call them the *Pyramids* of *Phibition* a shepherd, who in those times, at that place, fed his cattle. The which hatred, occasioned by their oppressions, as *Diodorus* also mentions, might cause him to omit the rest, especially *Sabacbus*, an *Ethiopian*, and an usurper.

Following this computation of *Eusebius* of *CLXXVIII* years for the *XX* *Dynasty*, and not that of *Africanus*, who assigns only an *CCXV*, of whom *Joseph Scaliger* hath this censure, *In istis Dynastiis, aliquid turbasse videtur Africanus, ut consideret rationibus suis*; it will follow by way of consequence, as the most reverend and learned *primate of Ireland*, in his *Chronologia Sacra* hath singularly well observed.

First, That the *XVIII* *Dynasty* ends with the migration of the *Israelites* out of *Egypt*, and with the death of *Amenophis*; which is clearly signified by *Manethos*,

and the times of *Belus* and *Danans*, noted by the *Greek* chronographers, do evidently confirm it. I mean the *Egyptian* *Belus* or *Amenophis*, the father of *Egyptus*, or *Setheps* and *Danans*, not the *Babylonian* *Belus* the father of *Ninus*, whom *Mythologists* confound with this, feigning him to have transported colonies out of *Egypt* to *Babylon*. The time allotted by *Thallus*, an ancient chronographer, to *Belus* of *ccc* *xx* years before the *Trojan* war, doth exactly agree with this *Egyptian* *Belus* or *Amenophis*.

Secondly, That the *XX* *Dynasty* will receive those six kings, which out of *Herodotus* we have placed there; the number of whose years exceed the time limited by *Africanus*.

Thirdly, That the *XXII* *Dynasty* will fall upon the latter time of king *Solomon*, whereby *Sejonebis* the first king of it, may be the same with *Sesac*, or *Sibbac*, who in the fifth year of *Rehoboam*, the son of *Solomon*, invaded *Judea*; which was the only reason that moved *Scaliger* to suspect, that something had been altered by *Africanus* in these *Dynasties*.

By the same series and deduction of times, we may conclude, that the *labyrinth* adjoining to the *Pyramid* of *Osmandus*, raised by a common expence of the *XII* kings, who succeeded *Seton* to have been *etc etc cccxxiv* years since, to *CLXXX* before *Christ*. For *Seton* living in the time of *Sennacharib*, and these immediately following *Seton* in the government of the kingdom, they must have reigned either in the same age the scripture assigns to *Sennacharib*, or not long after.

Those other *Pyramids*, the one of *Osmandus* in *Diodorus*, or *Ismandes*, in *Strabo*; and those two of *Meris*, or *Myris*, in *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, it is evident they preceded *Sejostris* the great, and must therefore have been above three thousand years since, but by how many kings or how many ages, is hard to be defined.

<sup>a</sup> Herod. lib. 2. Diodor. lib. 1. <sup>b</sup> Ibid. <sup>c</sup> Τούτους ἰσὶ μέγας ἡ καταστάσις. Αἰγύπτου ἐννοεῖται, ἀλλὰ ὅτι τὰς πυραμίδας καλεῖται παρὰ τὸν Φιλιππίου, ὅτι ἔχον τὸ χρῆμα ὡς οὐκ ἐπὶ ταῦτα ταχυτά. Herodot. lib. 2. <sup>d</sup> Diodor. lib. 1. <sup>e</sup> Scalig. in Euseb. chron. <sup>f</sup> Kings xiv. 25, 26. <sup>g</sup> Scalig. in Euseb. chron. <sup>h</sup> Herodot. lib. 2. <sup>i</sup> Diodor. lib. 1. <sup>j</sup> Strabo, lib. 17.

Of the end or intention of the PYRAMIDS, that they were for sepulchres; where, by the way is expressed, the manner of embalming used by the ÆGYPTIANS.

THAT these Pyramids were intended for sepulchres and monuments of the dead is the constant opinion of most authors, which have writ of this argument.

<sup>a</sup> Diodorus expressly tells us, that Chemmis and Cephren, although they designed (these two greater) for their sepulchres, yet it happened that neither of them were buried in them.

<sup>b</sup> Strabo judges all those near Memphis to have been the sepulchres of kings. Forty stadia from the city (Memphis,) there is a certain brow of an hill in which are many Pyramids, the sepulchres of kings. And in particular he calls another near the lake of Maris, the sepulchre of Imandes. To which also the writings of the Arabians are consonant, who make the three greater the monuments of Saurid, Hougib, and Fazfarinoun. And the Sabæans the first of them, the sepulchre of Seb, the second of Hermes, the third of Sab, from whom they suppose themselves denominated Sabæans, as we formerly mentioned. And if none of these authorities were extant, yet the tomb found in the greatest Pyramid to this day of Cheops, as Herodotus names him, or Chemmis, according to Diodorus, puts it out of controversy. Which may farther be confirmed by the testimony of Ibn Abd Albokm an Arabian, where he discourses of the wonders of Ægypt, who relates that after Almamon the calif of Babylon, had caused this Pyramid to be open'd [about eight hundred years since,] <sup>d</sup> they found in it towards the top a chamber, with an hollow stone, in which there was a statue like a man, and within it a man, upon whom was a breast-plate of gold set with jewels, upon this breast-plate was a sword of inestimable price, this sword, and at his head a carbuncle of the bigness of an egg, shining like the light of the day, and upon him were characters writ with a pen, which no man understood.

But why the Ægyptian kings should have been at so vast an expence in the building of these Pyramids, is an enquiry of an higher nature. <sup>e</sup> Aristotle judges them

to have been the works of tyranny: And Pliny conjectures, that they built them, partly out of ostentation, and partly out of state-policy, by keeping the people in employment, to divert them from mutinies and rebellions. <sup>f</sup> Regum pecunia otiosa, ac stulta ostentatio. Quippe cum facienda eas causa a plerisque tradatur, ne pecuniam successoribus, aut amulsi insidiantibus praberent, aut ne plebs esset otiosa.

But the true reason depends upon higher and more weighty considerations; though I acknowledge these alledged by Pliny might be secondary motives. And this sprang from the theology of the Ægyptians, who, as Servius shews in his comment upon these words of <sup>g</sup> Virgil, describing the funeral of Polydorus,

—Animamque sepulchro  
Condimus.—

believed, that as long as the body endured, so long the soul continued with it, which also was the opinion of the <sup>h</sup> Stoicks. <sup>i</sup> Hence the Ægyptians skilful in wisdom, do keep their dead embalmed so much the longer, to the end that the soul may for a long while continue, and be obnoxious to the body, lest it should quickly pass to another. The Romans did the contrary, burning their dead, that the soul might suddenly return into the generality, that is, into its own nature. Wherefore that the body might not, either by putrefaction be reduced to dust, out of which it was first formed, or by fire be converted into ashes, (as the manner of the Græcians and Romans was) they invented curious compositions, besides the intombing them in state-ly reconditories, hereby endeavouring to preserve them from rotteness, and to make them eternal. <sup>k</sup> Nec cremare, aut fodere fas putant, verum arte medicatos intra penetralia collocant, faith Pomponius Mela: And Herodotus gives the reason why they did neither burn nor bury. For discoursing, in his third book, of the cruelty of Cambyzes, and of his commanding that the body of

Note, In Mr. Greaves's edition of this work, printed at London, Anno 1646. the Arabick is cited at large, to which the curious reader may have recourse.

<sup>a</sup> Τῶν δὲ βασιλέων τῶν καλεσσομένων αὐτοῖς ἰσχυροῦς συνέβη μολύνειν αὐτῶν τὰς πυραμίδας ἱερὰς αὐτοῖς.

Diod. Sic. lib. 1.

<sup>b</sup> Τετταράκοντα δ' αὐτὸ τῆς πέλειος τὰς δὲ προελθὺς ὀρεαὶ τις ὄρεος ἔχει, ἐφ' ᾧ πολλὰ μὲν πυραμίδες καὶ τὰς δὲ βασιλέων.

Strab. lib. 17.

<sup>c</sup> Ἰσχυροῦς δ' ὅραμα ὁ τῶσδε. Ibid.

<sup>d</sup> G. Almec. Hist. Arab. ex Edit. Erp.

<sup>e</sup> Arist. l. 3. Polit.

<sup>f</sup> Plin. l. 26. c. 12.

<sup>g</sup> Æneid. lib. 3.

<sup>h</sup> Stoici medium sequentes, tam diu animam durare dicunt, quam diu durat & corpus.

<sup>i</sup> Unde Ægypti periti sapientiæ condita diutius referant cadavera, scilicet ut anima multo tempore perduret, & corpori sit obnoxia, ne cito ad aliud transeat. Romani contra faciebant comburentes cadavera, ut statim anima in generalitatem, id est, in suam naturam rediret. Serv. Com. in lib. 3. Æneid.

<sup>k</sup> Pompon. Mel. l. 1. c. 9.



**GRAVES** *Amasis*, an Egyptian king, should be taken out of his sepulchre, whipt, and used with all contumely, he reports, that after all he bid it to be burnt, "commanding that which was not holy. For the Persians imagine the fire to be a god, and neither of them are accustomed to burn the dead body. The Persians for the reason before alledged, because they conceive it waiting for a god to devour the carcass of a man; and the Egyptians, because they are persuaded the fire is a living creature, devouring all things that it receives, and after it is satisfied with food, dies with that which it hath devoured. Nor is it their custom of giving the dead body to beasts, but of embalming (or salting) it, not only for this reason, but that it may not be consumed with worms. The term used by Herodotus ταρχυν, of salting or embalming the dead, is also used by *Baruch* and by *Plato*, and by *Lucian* in his discourse de luctu, treating of the several sorts of burial practised by several nations. \* The Grecian doth burn [the dead] the Persian bury, the Indian doth anoint with the fat of swine, the Scythian eat, and the Egyptian ταρχυν, embalm, (or powders.) Which manner also is alluded to by Antoninus under the word ταρχυν, † that which the other day was excrementitious matter, within few days shall either be ταρχυν, an embalmed body, or meer ashes: In the one expressing the custom of the Egyptians, in the other of the Romans, where doctor *Casaubone*, the learned son of a learned father, hath rightly corrected the errors of those who render ταρχυν to be a certain sort of fish. By this means then salting the body, and embalming it, (the manner of both we shall describe out of Herodotus and Diodorus,) the soul was obliged (according to the belief

of the Egyptians) to abide with the body, and the body came to be as durable as marble. Inasmuch as *Plato*, who lived in Egypt with *Eudorus* no less than XIII years, as *Strabo* witnesseth, brings it for an argument in his *Phædon* to prove the immortality of the soul, by the long duration of these bodies. Which surely would have been more conclusive with him, could he have imagined that to these times, that is, till two thousand years after him, they should have continued so solid and intire, as to this day we find many of them. Wherefore *St. Augustin* truly affirms, that the Egyptians alone believe the resurrection, because they carefully preserve their dead corpses. For they have a custom of drying up the bodies, and rendering them as durable as brass; these (in their language) they call Gabbares. Whence the glois of *Isidore*, Gabbares mortuorum, in *Vulcanius*, his edition; or as *Spondanus* reads Gabbares mortuorum condita corpora.

The manner how the Egyptians prepared and embalmed these bodies, is very copiously, and by what I observed, very faithfully described by Herodotus and Diodorus, and therefore I shall put down their own words: Their mourning, faith, \* Herodotus, and manner of burial are in this kind: When any man of quality of the family is dead, all the women besmear their heads and faces with dirt, then leaving the body with their kindred, they go lamenting up and down the city with their kinsfolks, their apparel being girt about them, and their breasts naked. On the other side, the men having likewise their cloaths girt about them, beat themselves. These things being done, they carry it to be † embalmed. For this there are some appointed, that profess the art; these, when the body is brought to

\* Herodot. lib. 3. Ἐταλλόμεθα δὲ τῷ σώματι. Πόρην γὰρ οὐκ ἀποτίνομεν οὐδὲν τὸ σῶμα, &c.

† This barbarous custom is still practised in the East-Indies, as *Teisner* (who from his own travels, and the writings of *Emir Coni*, a Persian, hath given us the best light of those countries) truly informs us. Wherefore, we may give credit to that of *Tully*: *Magorum mos est non damare corpora suorum, nisi à feris sint antea laniata. In Hyrcania plebs publicis aliis canes, optimates domesticos, (Nobile autem genus canum illud scimus esse,) sed pro sua quisque facultate parat, à quibus laniatur, eamque optimam illi esse censent sepulcrum.* *Tulc.* q. 1. 1. † *Baruch* vi. 71. † *Plat. Phædon.* † *Lucian de Luctu.*

‡ O μὲν ἄλλοι τὸ σῶμα τὸ ἐν τῷ τάφῳ καταλείβουσιν, ὡς δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ἀνθρώπων, ταρχυνὴν δὲ ἐκρίβουσιν. † *M. Aurel. Anton. lib. 4.* Ἐγὼ δὲ μὴ ταρχυν, οὐκ ἐκ τῶν ταρχυν δὲ τῶν. † *Casaub. ann. in lib. 4. M. Aurel. Anton.* † *Strabo, lib. 17.* † *Ægyptii vero soli credunt resurrectionem, quia diligenter curant cadavera mortuorum, morem enim habent siccare corpora, à quibus artem reddere, Gabbares ea vocant.* *Aug. Serm. 120. De diversis.* † *Spondanus de Cæmet. sacris, lib. 1. par. in c. 3.*

\* Herodotus, lib. 2. Ὁμοῖα δὲ ἐ ταφῇ σφίον ἀνὴρ αἰδῶ, &c.

† Amongst these embalmed bodies are found Egyptian idols, *Omni-genusque Deum monstra, & lastrator Anubis*, to use *Virgil's* expression, (*Æn.* 8.) Some of these are in great, some in little portraictures, formed either with potters earth baked, or else of stone, or metal, or wood, or the like; in all which kinds I have bought some. One of them for the rarity of the matter, and for the illustration of the scriptures deserves to be here mentioned; being cut out of a magnes, in the form and bigness of the *magus*, or *scarabæus*; which as *Plutarch* testifies, was worshipped by the Egyptians, and was by military men engraven as an emblem on their seals. To which sort of idols, it may be *Moses* alluded, when speaking of the gods of Egypt he terms *gallim, stercoreus deus*, † as the original is rendered by *Janius*, and *Tremellius*; for such places are the unfavourable dwellings of the *scarabæus*. That which is remarkable of it in nature is this, that the stone, though probably two thousand years since taken out of its natural bed, the rock, yet still retains its attractive and magnetical virtue.

\* De If. & Osir. τὰς δὲ ταρχυνοῦσιν καὶ ταρχυν: ἢ γὰρ σφίον ἐστὶν αἰδῶ. † Deut. xix. 17. Vidistis adominandos & stercoreos deos illorum.

with the body, durable as marble, lived in A. D. 1311 years, as if for an age the immortal long duration they would have him, could he times, that is, them, they should and mire, as to them. Where- firms, that the resurrexion, be- their dead corpses, ing up the bodies, le as brass; these call Gabbarees, Gabbarees mor- edition; or as mortuorum con-

gyptians prepared s, is very copi- us and Diodorus, down their own th, \* Herodotus, this kind: When family is dead, all ds and faces with th their kindred, with the city with being girl about d. On the other wise their cloaths res. These things to be \* imbalanced. nted, that profess body is brought to

is own travels, and truly informs us, a fuorum. nisi à se- bile autem genus ca- te optimam illi esse \* Lucian de Lucet. agnostis à se aliquid. faub. ann. in lib. 4. nem, quia diligenter Gabbareas ea vocant.

monstra, & latrator little portraictures, like; in all which stration of the scrip- ture and was by military led, when speak- al is rendered by us. That which is ars since taken out

17. Vidistis abomi-

them,

them, shew to the bringers of it certain pat- terns of dead bodies in wood, like it in paint- ing. One of these they say is accurately made, (which I think it not lawful to name,) they shew a second inferior to it, and of an eas- ier price, and a third cheaper than the for- mer. Which being seen, they ask of them ac- cording to what pattern they will have the dead body prepared? When they have agreed upon the price, they depart thence; those that remain, carefully imbalm the body in this manner: First of all they draw out the brain with a crooked iron by the nostrils, which be- ing taken out, they infuse medicaments. Then with a sharp Ethiopick stone they cut it about the bowels, and take out all the guts: these purged and washed with wine made of palm, they again wash with sweet odours beaten; next filling up the belly with pure mirrhe beaten, and cassia, and other odours, except frankincense, they sew it up again; having done this, they salt it with nitre, biding it seventy days, (for longer it is not lawful to salt it;) seventy days being ended, after they

have washed the body, binding it with fillets, (or ribbands,) and wrapping it in a shroud of silk linen, they linear it with gum, which the Egyptians often use instead of glue. The kindred receiving it thence, make a coffin of wood, in the similitude of a man, in which they put the dead body; and being thus in- closed, they place it in a reconditory in the house, setting it upright against the wall. In this manner with great expences they prepare the funerals of their dead. But those who a- voiding too great expences desire a mediocrity, prepare them in this manner. They take a clyster with the juice of cedar, with which they fill the belly by the fundament, neither cutting it, nor taking it out, and salt it so many days, as we mentioned before. In the last of which they take out that (clyster) of cedar out of the belly, which before they in- jected. This bath such efficacy, that it car- ries out with it the whole paunch and entrails corrupted. The nitre consumes it: flesh, and there is only left the skin and bones of the dead body. When they have done this, they restore

<sup>b</sup> Having caused the head of one of the richer sort of these imbalanced bodies to be opened, in the hol- low of the skull I found the quantity of two pounds of these medicaments; which had the confidence, black- nels, and smell of a kind of bitumen, or pitch, and by the heat of the sun waxed soft. This infusion could not well have been made any other way, than as Herodotus here intimates, by the nostrils. The tongue of this imbalanced body being weighed by me, was less than seven grains English. So light was that member, which St. James calls a world of mischief, James iii. 6.

<sup>c</sup> Plutarch writes, that they first exposed the belly, being opened, to the sun, casting the bowels into the river (Nilus), *tantum inquinamentum corporis*: this being done, they filled up the belly, and the hollow of the breast with unguents and odours, as it is manifest by those which I have seen.

<sup>d</sup> These ribbands, by what I observed, were of linen, which was also the habit of the Egyptian priests. For Herodotus, lib. 2. writes, that it was prophane for the Egyptians either to be buried in woollen garments, or to use them in their temples: and Plutarch de Iside & Osiride expressly tells us, that the priests of Isis used linen vestments, and were shaved; Suetonius in Orthona, (lib. 7.) *sacra etiam Isidis sepi hinc religiosequae veste prepalam celebravit*. And therefore the goddess Isis is called in Ovid (a Amor. Elen. 2.) *Linigera*. *Nec tu Linigeram fieri quid possit ad Isim, Quisquis.*

Of these Ribbands I have seen some so strong and perfect, as if they had been newly made. With these they bound and swathed the dead body, beginning with the head, and ending with the feet: Over these again, they wound others so often upon one another, that there could not be much less than a thou- sand en upon one body.

\* These coffins are fashioned in the similitude of a man, or rather resembling one of those imbalanced bodies, which, as we described before, are bound with ribbands, and wrapped in a shroud of linen. For as in those there is the shape of a head, with a kind of painted vizard, or face fastened to it, but no appearance without of the arms and legs: so it is with these coffins; the top of them hath the shape of the head of a man, with a face painted on it resembling a woman, the residue being one continued trunk: at the end of this trunk is a pedestal, somewhat broad; upon which it stood upright in the reconditory, as Herodotus here mentions. Some of these coffins are handsomely painted without, with several hieroglyphicks. Opening two of them, I found within, over the body, divers scroles fastened to the linen shroud. These were painted with sacred characters, for the colours very lively, and fresh; amongst which, were in a larger size the pictures of men or women, some headed like hawks, some like dogs, and sometimes dogs in thurs standing alone. These scroles either ran down the belly and sides, or else were placed upon the knees and legs. On the feet was a linen cover, (and so were all the scroles before-mentioned of linen,) painted with hieroglyphicks, and fashioned like to a high slipper. The breast had a kind of breast-plate covering it, made with folds of linen cut colop- wise, richly painted and gilt. In the midst of the bend at the top of it, was the face of a woman with her arms expanded; on each side of them, at the two outmost ends, the head of an hawk fairly gilt, by which they represented the Divine Nature, according to Plutarch (in his book de Iside & Osiride,) as by a serpent with the tail in his mouth, the revolution of the year was resembled; in which kind also I have seen fair sculptures in gems, found at Alexandria: and as by the sign of the cross they did denote *vitam æternam*, in Rufinus's expression. Of these crosses I have seen several amongst their hieroglyphicks; some painted, and some engraven in this manner ✕, and some others amongst their mummies formed of stone (or baked earth) in this figure.

At Rome, on the statue of Osiris, it is engraven thus: T. which may serve for confirmation of what Strabo and Suetonius relate; that at Alexandria, the temple of Serapis or Osiris (for Plutarch judges Serapis and Osiris to be one and the same,) being by the command of Theodosius demolished, they found characters resembling crosses cut in stone: these, in the interpretation of the wise men of Egypt, signified, *Tempus æternitatis, vitam æternam*: which discovery, as the same authors report, occasioned the conversion to Christianity of some of the Gentiles. *Socr. hist. eccl. lib. 5. cap. 17. Suetonius. hist. eccl. lib. 7. cap. 15.*

† *Ἰσίδης ὁ θεὸς τοῦ νεκροῦ, ἀνέπαυτος ὑπάρχων.* Plut. de Is. & Osir.

the



believe Tacitus, "the Hebrews (in general) learned from the Egyptians rather to bury their dead than to burn them. Where Spondanus instead of *condere cadavera*, reads *condire*, as if it had been their custom of powdering or embalming their dead. Wash them and anoint them we know they did, by what was done to our Saviour and to the widow Doreas; and long before it was in use amongst the Gentiles, as well as Jews, as appears by the funeral of Patroclus in Homer, and of Misenus the Trojan in Virgil.

*Corpusque lavant frigentis, & ungunt.*

And of Tarquinius the Roman in Ennius:  
*Tarquini corpus bona semina lavit, & unxit.*

But certainly the Egyptian manner of embalming, which we have described out of Herodotus and Diodorus, was not received by them; or if it were, *Martha* the sister of *Lazarus*, needed not to have fear'd, that after four days the body should have stunk. "They which infer out of the funeral of *Asa*, king of *Judah*, that it was the custom of the *Jews* as well as *Egyptians*, have very little probability for their assertion. "We read, that they buried him in his own sepulchre, which he had made for himself in the city of *David*, and laid him in the bed, which was filled with sweet odours, and divers kinds of spices prepared by the apothecaries art; and they made a very great burning for him. This very great burning is so contrary to the practice of the *Egyptians*, to whom it was an abomination, as appears by the authorities before cited of *Herodotus* and *Mela*, besides the little affinity of filling the bed with sweet odours, and the *Egyptians* filling the body and the place of the entrails with sweet odours, according both to *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, that we shall not need to enlarge our selves in any other confutation. But as for that of *Jacob* and *Joseph*, the father and the son both living and dying in *Egypt*, the text is clear, they were embalmed after the fashion of the *Egyptians*. "And *Joseph* commanded his servants the physicians to imbalm his father, and the physicians embalmed *Israel*, and forty days were fulfilled for him (for so are fulfilled the days of those which are

embalmed) and the *Egyptians* mourned for him threescore and ten days. In the same chapter we read, "So *Joseph* died being an hundred and ten years old, and they imbalm'd him, and he was put in a coffin in *Egypt*. Both which places are very consonant to the traditions of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, and may serve to shew what necessity there is of having oft-times recourse to the learning of the heathen, for the illustration of the scriptures. Forty days were fulfilled for the embalming of *Jacob*: This "Diodorus tells us was their custom, They anointed the dead body with the juice of cedar, and other things for above thirty days, and afterward with myrrhe and cinnamon, and the like; which might make up the residue of the forty days: And the *Egyptians* mourned for him threescore and ten days. This time out of *Herodotus* may be collected to have been from the first day of the death of the person, till the body was returned by the physicians after seventy days perfectly embalmed. The text says, And *Joseph* was put in a coffin; which is very lively represented by "Herodotus. The kindred receiving the dead body from the embalmers, make a coffin of wood in the similitude of a man, in which they put it. This coffin then, as it is probable, of *Joseph*, was of wood, and not marmorea theca, as *Cajetan* imagines, the former being the custom of the *Egyptians*. Besides, that this was much easier and fitter to be carried by the *Israelites* into *Canaan*, marching on foot, and for ought we read destitute of waggons and other carriages.

The tradition of the ancient Hebrews in their commentaries, is very probable and consonant to it. They carried in the desert two arks, the one of God, the other of *Joseph*; that the ark of the covenant, this the ark (or coffin) in which they carried *Joseph's* bones out of *Egypt*. This coffin (if it be lawful for me to conjecture after the revolution of three thousand years,) I conceive to have been of sycamore, (a great tree very plentifully growing in *Egypt*), of which sort there are many found in the mummies, very fair, entire, and free from corruption to this day. Though I know the *Arabians* and *Persians* have a different tradition, that his coffin was of glass. "They put his blessed body, after they

"Judeos ab Egyptiis didicisse, condere cadavera, potius quam cremare. Tacit. histor. lib. 5.

"Spondan. lib. 1. part. 1. cap. 5. de cœmeteriis sacris.

"Kai teta de autou ta, kai anastasi aut' idag. Iliad. lib. 19.

"Translulerunt Israelite hunc ritum ex Egypto secum in Canaanem, quo deinceps in sepulchris principum

et regum usi dicuntur in historia Asia. 2 Paral. vi. & lib. D. Paral. Com. in Gen. 1. 2. "2 Chron. xvi. 14.

"Gen. 1. 2. 3. "Gen. 1. 26.

"Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Καθ' οὗτο καὶ τὸ πρῶτον καὶ τὸ δεύτερον ἄλλας ἐπιμαχίας ἔθεντο ἐπ' ἑαυτοῖς πάλιν τὰς ἐπιμαχίας, ἵνα τὰς ἐπιμαχίας καὶ ἐπιμαχίας, &c.

"Herod. lib. 2.

"Veteres Hebræi commentati sunt duas fuisse arcas, unam incedentes in deserto, alteram Divinitatis, alteram

*Josephi*; illam scilicet arcam fœderis, hanc vero loculos quibus *Josephi* ossa ex *Egypto* asportabantur in regionem *Canaan*. Peter. Com. in 1. cap. Genes.

"Note, In Mr. Greaves's edition of this work, printed at London, anno 1646, the Arabic is cited at large,

to which the curious reader may have recourse.

**GRAVES** had washed it, into a coffin of glass, and buried it in the channel of the river Nilus, saith *Emir Cond*, a *Persian*.

That phrase of *Joseph*, where he takes an oath of the children of *Israel*, \* *Ye shall carry up my bones from hence, surely is a synecdoche, or figurative speech*. And so is that in *Exodus*: And *Moses* took the bones of *Joseph* with him; for he had straitly sworn the children of *Israel*, saying, *God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones away hence with you*: for his body being boweled, and then embalmed, after the manner of the *Ægyptians*, not only the bones, but the skin, the flesh, and all besides the entrails, (which according to *Plutarch*, were thrown into the river,) would have continued perfect and intire, a much longer space than from his death to their migration out of *Ægypt*.

Having thus by art found out ways to make the body durable, whereby the soul might continue with it, as we shewed before, which else would have been at liberty to have passed into some other body,<sup>d</sup> this also being the opinion of the *Ægyptians*, from whom *Pythagoras* borrowed his *μετεμύχουσις*, or transmigration, (the which made him to forbid his disciples the eating of flesh, *Ne forte bubulam quis de aliquo proavio suo obsonaret*, as *Terullian* wittily speaks;) the next care of the *Ægyptians* was to provide conditories, which might be as lasting as the body, and in which it might continue safe from the injury of time and men. That occasioned the ancient kings of *Thebes* in *Ægypt* to build those, which *Diodorus* thus describes: *There are, they say, the wonderful sepulchres of the ancient kings, which in magnificence exceeds the imitation of posterity*. Of these in the sacred commentaries, forty seven are mentioned; but in the time of *Ptolemæus Lagi*, there remained but xvii. Many of them at our being in *Ægypt*, in the hundred and eightieth olympiad, were decayed; neither are these things alone reported by the *Ægyptians*, out of the sacred books, but by many also of the *Græcians*, who in the time of *Ptolemæus Lagi* went to *Thebes*, and having compiled histories, (amongst whom is *Hecateus*;) agree with our relations. And this might occasion also those others recorded by *Strabo*, which he calls *τεμαλια*, or *mercuriales tumulos*, seen by him near *Siene*, in the upper parts of *Ægypt*, very

strange and memorable, *Passing in a chariot from Siene to Philæ, over a very even plain, about an hundred stadia, all the way almost, of both sides, we saw in many places mercurial tombs; a great stone, smooth, and almost spherical, of that black and hard marble out of which mortars are made, placed upon a greater stone, and on the top of this another, some of them lying by themselves; the greatest of them was no less than twelve feet diameter, all of them greater than the half of this*. Many ages after, when the regal throne was removed from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, the same religion and opinion continuing amongst the *Ægyptians*, that so long as the body indured, so long the soul continued with it, not as quickning and animating it, but as an attendant or guardian, and as it were unwilling to leave her former habitation. It is not to be doubted, this incited the kings there, together with their private ambition, and thirst after glory, to be at so vast expences in the building of these *Pyramids*; and the *Ægyptians* of lower quality, to spare for no cost, in cutting those *hypogææ*, those caves or dormitories in the *Libyan* deserts, which by the *Christians* now adays are called the *mummies*. *Diodorus Siculus* excellently expresses their opinion and belief in this particular, together with their extreme cost of building sepulchres, in these words: *The Ægyptians make small account of the time of this life being limited, but that which after death is joined with a glorious memory of virtue they highly value: They call the houses of the living, inns, because for a short space we inhabit these: But the sepulchres of the dead they name eternal mansions, because they continue with the gods for an infinite space. Wherefore in the structures of their houses they are little solicitous, but in exquisitely adorning their sepulchres they think no cost sufficient*.

Now why the *Ægyptians* did build their sepulchres often in the form of *Pyramids*, (for they were not always of this figure, as appears by those *τεμαλια*, or *mercuriales tumuli*, before cited out of *Strabo*, which were spherical; and by those *hypogææ*, or caves still extant in the rocks of the desert,) *Pierius* in his hieroglyphicks, or rather the *Anonymous Author* at the end of him, gives several philosophical reasons:

<sup>b</sup> *By a Pyramid, saith he, the ancient Ægyptians*

<sup>a</sup> Gen. l. 25.

<sup>b</sup> Exod. xlii. 19.

<sup>c</sup> *Plutar. 7. supient. convivio.*

<sup>d</sup> *Πρώτοι γὰρ τῶν τοῦ λόγου Αἰγυπτίων ἐπὶ αἰώνιται, οἱ ἀνδράσιν ψυχῇ ἀθάνατοι*—

*ἐπὶ τῶν τεμαλίων* ἢ καταφύλων, ἢ ἄλλοι ζῶσι αὐτῶν γινώσκοντες ἐς θάνατον. *Herod. lib. 2.*

<sup>e</sup> *Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Εἰς αὐτὰς ἐνταῦθα τῶν ἀρχαίων βασιλέων θάνατοι, &c.*

<sup>f</sup> *Strabo. lib. 17. Ἡ Αἰγύπτῳ δ' ἐν Φιλαιᾷ οἱ Σινοὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐρημίας σφιδῶσι πρὸς τοὺς ὄρους τὴν ἰσχυρίαν. Περὶ ἄλλων δ' οὐκ εἶναι ἢ ἐν αὐτῇ οὐκ ἀπομένοντες πελάγη οὐκ ἐν ἰσχυρίαν, &c.*

<sup>g</sup> *Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Οἱ δὲ ἐν ἰσχυρίαν τὸν μὲν δὲ τῶν ζῶν χρεῖον ἐνταῦθα πάντα ἀπὸ τῶν νομίζοντων, τὸν δὲ μὲν τὸν τελευτῶν δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν μεταφύλων, ἀπὸ πλείων ποιεῖται. Καὶ τὰς δὲ τῶν ζῶντων οἱ νόμοι καταλύουσιν ἀναγκάσει, &c.*

<sup>h</sup> *Ex erudit. cujusd. l. 2. sub finem Hierogl. Pierii. Per pyramidem veteres (Ægyptii) rerum naturam, & substantiam illam informem formas recipientem significare volebant, quid ut pyre sit a puncto, & summo signis*



Passing in a cha-  
piter a very even  
dia, all the way  
to in many places  
one, smooth, and  
and hard mar-  
ble made, placed  
the top of this  
by themselves; the  
than twelve feet  
than the half of  
when the regal  
Thebes to Mem-  
phris opinion con-  
spires, that so  
long the soul con-  
cerning and ani-  
mated or guar-  
ding to leave her  
to be doubted,  
together with  
and thirst after  
pleasures in the  
; and the A-  
egyptians spare for no  
tea, those caves  
desarts, which  
days are called  
pyramids excellently  
believe in this  
their extreme  
in these words:  
account of the  
but that which  
glorious memory  
They call the  
because for a  
but the sepulchres  
of the mansions, be-  
cause for an infinite  
of their  
s, but in exqui-  
sitions they think no

did build their  
of Pyramids,  
of this figure,  
or mercuriales  
Pyramids, which  
those hypogaea,  
of the de-  
glyphicks, or  
at the end of  
philical reasons:  
ancient Aegy-  
ptians

ἀρχαὶ φύρῃ ἀδύνατον  
κατασκευασθαι. Πλάτωνα δὲ  
ἐν τῇ ταλάντῃ δι-  
κεῖν, &c.  
ἐν τῇ ταλάντῃ δι-  
κεῖν, &c.  
ἐν τῇ ταλάντῃ δι-  
κεῖν, &c.  
ἐν τῇ ταλάντῃ δι-  
κεῖν, &c.

tians expressed the nature of things, and that informed substance receiving all forms. Be-  
cause as a Pyramid having its beginning from  
a point at the top, is by degrees dilated on all  
its sides so the nature of all things proceeding  
from one fountain and beginning, which is  
indivisible, namely from God, the chief work-  
master; afterwards receives several forms, and  
is diffused into various kinds and species, all  
which it conjoins to that beginning and point,  
from whence every thing issues and flows.  
There may also be given another reason for  
this, taken from astronomy: For the Aegy-  
ptians were excellent astronomers, yea, the  
first inventors of it; these [dividing the Zo-  
diac, and all things under it, into twelve  
signs,] will have each sign to be a kind of  
Pyramid, the basis of which shall be in the  
heaven; (for the heaven is the foundation of  
astronomy,) and the point of it shall be in  
the centre of the earth; seeing therefore in  
these Pyramids all things are made, and  
that the coming of the sun, which is as it were  
a point in respect of the signs, is the cause  
of the production of natural things, and its  
departure the cause of their corruption, it  
seems very fitly that by a Pyramid, nature  
the parent of all things, may be expressed.  
Also the same Egyptians under the form of  
a Pyramid, shadowed out the soul of man,  
making under huge Pyramids the magnificent  
sepulchres of their kings and heroes, to testifie  
that the soul was still existent, notwithstanding  
the body were dissolved and corrupted, the which  
should generate and produce another body for  
it self, when it should seem good to the first  
agent, (that is, the circle of thirty six thou-  
sand years being transfused:) Like as a Py-  
ramid (as it is known to geometers,) the  
top of it standing fixed, and the base being  
moved about, describes a circle, and the whole  
body of it a cone; so that the circle expresses  
that space of years, and the cone that body  
which in that space is produced. For it was  
the opinion of the Egyptians, that in the re-  
volution of thirty six thousand years, all  
things should be restored to their former state,  
Plato witnesseth, that he received it from  
them, who seems also to me in his *Timæus*,  
to attest this thing, that is, that our soul hath  
the form of a Pyramid, which (soul) accord-  
ing to the same Plato, is of a fiery nature,  
and adhereth to the body as a Pyramid doth

to the basis, or as fire doth to the fuel. Thus  
far the Anonymous Author in *Pierius*: Most  
of which reasons of his are but pretty fancies,  
without any solid proof from good authors.  
For he might as well say, that the Aegy-  
ptians were excellent geometers, as well  
as astronomers, (as they were very skillful  
in both,) and that they made these Pyra-  
mids, to express the first and most simple  
of mathematical bodies; or else being ex-  
cellent arithmeticians, to represent the my-  
steries of pyramidal numbers; or being  
well seen in opticks, to shadow out the  
manner of vision, and the emission of  
rays from luminous bodies, as also the  
effluvia of the species intentionales from  
the object, all which are supposed to be  
pyramidal. But this were to play with  
truth, and to indulge too much to fancy.  
Wherefore I conceive the reason why they  
made these sepulchres in the figure of a  
Pyramid, was, either as apprehending this  
to be the most permanent form of struc-  
ture, as in truth it is; (for by reason of  
the contracting and lessening of it at the  
top, it is neither overpressed with its own  
weight; nor his so subject to the sinking  
in of rain as other buildings;) or hereby  
they intended to represent some of their  
gods. For anciently the Gentiles expres-  
sed them, either by columns fashioned like  
cones, or else by quadrilateral obelisks,  
the Egyptian manner; in which latter kind,  
I have seen many standing very intire, some  
of them plain, and some with hierogly-  
phicks inscribed. Now such obelisks are  
but lesser models of the Pyramids, as the  
Pyramids are but greater kinds of obe-  
lisks. The first institution of them, as  
<sup>1</sup> Pliny informs us, was by *Mitres* an A-  
egyptian king, whom <sup>2</sup> *Isidore* terms *Mes-  
phres*; both of them affirming him to have  
consecrated them *solis numini*, to the deity  
of the sun. Which deity <sup>3</sup> *Diodorus* relates  
the Egyptians to have worshipped under  
the name of *Osiris*, as they did the moon  
by the goddess *Isis*, whom the *Libyans* bor-  
dering on the Egyptians, termed *Urania*,  
and the *Phœnicians* *Astroarches*, according  
to <sup>4</sup> *Herodian*: (And therefore as *Isis Cor-  
nigera*, in which portraiture I have ob-  
served her statue at *Alexandria* to be form-  
ed,) did represent the horns of the moon,

tigio incipiens, paulatim in omnes partes dilatatur, sic rerum omnium natura ab unico principio & fonte, qui di-  
vidi non potest, nempe à Deo summo opifice profecta, varias deinde formas suscipit, & in varia genera atque  
species diffunditur, omniaque apici illi & puncto conjungit, à quo omnia manant & fluunt. Verum & alia bu-  
jus rei ratio nempe astronomia reddi potest, &c.

<sup>1</sup> Traces ex eo fecere reges quodam certamine, obeliscos vocantes solis numini sacratos. Radiorum ejus argu-  
mentum in effigie est: & ita significabatur nomine Egyptio. Primus omnium id instituit Mitres, qui in solis  
urbe regnabat, somnio jussus. Plin. lib. 36. cap. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Obeliscum Mesphres rex Egypti primus fecisse fertur — qui post cæcitatem visio recepto, duos obeliscos  
solis consecravit. Ibid. lib. 18. cap. 31.

<sup>3</sup> Ταλασίη υἱὸς τοῦ Θιου αἰδίου καὶ πρώτου, τῆς ἡλίου καὶ τῆς σελήνης, ὃς τὸν Ὀσίριον τῶν ἱσίων ἐπορεύετο.  
Diod. Sic. lib. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Αἰδίου δὲ αὐτὸς Οὐρανίαν καλεῖται, Φοίνικες δὲ Ἀστροάρχον φερούσιν, σελήνην υἱὸν αἰδίου, Herodian. lib. 5.

**G**RAVES or luna *falcata*; so these quadrilateral Pyramids, or obelisks, might not unfitly resemble the rays of the sun, or their god *Osiris*: A god denominated, as *Plutarch* testifies, from *Os*, signifying in the *Egyptian* language, many, and *Iri* eyes. For which reason, both *Diodorus* and *Plutarch*, term *Osiris* in Greek *πολύφθαλμος*, many eyes, or many rays; the which emitted, as the optics demonstrate, in pyramidal or conical forms, might not unaptly by the Gentiles be represented in either figure. Hence the *Phœnicians*, next neighbours to the *Egyptians*, and probably first imitators of this their idolatry, worshipped the sun, whom they named *Elæagabalus*, or as the ancient coins render him, *Alegabalus*, and some inscriptions *Heliogabalus*, an idol, in the similitude of a cone. *Herodian* (l. 5.) *The Phœnicians worship the sun, calling him in their language Elæagabalus; to whom there is erected a very spacious temple, adorned with gold, plenty of silver, and precious stones. It is not only worshipped by the natives, but likewise the great men, and kings of the Barbarians every year, with a kind of emulation, send honourable presents to the god. There is no statue, as among the Greeks and Romans, which polished by hand, may express the image of the god. But there is a certain great stone circular below, and ending with a sharpness above, in the figure of a cone, of black colour. They report it to have fallen from heaven, and to be the image of the sun.* This idolatry by commerce with the *Egyptians* and *Phœnicians*, came afterward to be communicated to the *Grecians*, and other nations; and from these, what at the first institution was proper to the sun, came by superstition to be apply'd to their other gods. Thus *Tacitus* (lib. II. hist.) at *Cyprus* in the temple of *Venus*, at *Paphos*, *The image of the goddess is not of human shape, but a figure rising continually round, from a larger bottom to a small top in conical fashion; the reason thereof is not known. Though what Tacitus rendreth meta modo exurgens,*

or conical, *Maximus Tyrus* termeth pyramidal. *In Paphos, Venus hath the chiefest honour; bowbeit, her image you can liken to nothing so well as to a white Pyramid.* In like manner we find in *Clemens Alexandrinus*, that *Calisto* the priestess of *Juno*, decked the column of the goddess with crowns and garlands; that is, faith *Joseph Scaliger*, the image of the goddess with crowns and garlands; for at that time the statues of the gods were *κίονες πυραμιδοειδής*, pyramidal columns, or obelisks. And *Ἀπόλλων αἰώνος*, was nothing else with the *Grecians* but *κίονας εἰς τὸν λόγον*, a column ending in a point, as *Suidas* witnesseth: which kind of columns some make proper to *Apollo*, others to *Bacchus*, and others to them both. In *Pausanias* also we read, that in the city *Corinth*, *Jupiter*, *Melichius*, and *Diana* surnamed *Patroa*, were made with little or no art: *Melichius* being represented by a Pyramid, and *Diana* by a column. Whence not improbably the same *Pausanias*, in his *Corinthiacs*, conjectures, this manner of representation of the gods, to have been the first and most ancient among the *Grecians*. But *Clemens Alexandrinus*, deriving the beginning of it much higher, imagines it to have been the first kind of idolatry in the world, (and therefore well agreeing with the antiquity of the *Egyptians*;) *Before the exact art of making statues was found out, the ancients erecting columns, [pyramidal or conical columns,] worshipped these as the images of God.*

This practice of the *Egyptians*, I mean of erecting Pyramids for sepulchres, was but rarely imitated by other nations; tho' *Servius* seems to make it frequent in his comment upon these verses of *Virgil*:

—Fuit ingens monte sub alto  
Regis Dercenni, terreno exaggere bustum  
Antiqui Laurentis, opacaque ilice testum.

*With the ancients (saith Servius) noble men were buried, either under mountains, or*

<sup>1</sup> Τὸν δὲ βασιλέα καὶ κύριον Ὀσίρι ἰσχυροῦ καὶ σκῆπτρον ἡγήσασιν. Ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ τὸ ἱερόν ἐστιν πολυφθαλμοῦ, ὡς τὸ μὲν ὅτι τὸ πάλαι, ὅ δὲ ἴρι τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς Αἰγυπτίᾳ γλώττῃ φασκότες. Plut. de Isid. & Osir.

<sup>2</sup> Εἰναι τοὺς μὲν Ὀσίρι πολυφθαλμοῦ, εἰκότως, πάλαι δὲ ἐτιθέμενον τὴν αἰκίαν, ὡστὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς πολλοῖς βλίσκων κτισμένην γῆν καὶ πύλασσαν. Diod. lib. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Τὸντο [τὸν λόγον] οἱ ἱερεῖς ἐξέθεντο, τῇ φυσικῇ φύσιν Ἐλεαγᾶβαλον καλεῖσθαι, τὴν δὲ αὐτῇ μέγεθος, &c. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐν μέγιστο, ἡγενομένης φύσεως, λέγουσιν εἶναι καὶ αὐτῇ σχῆμα, μέγιστον τὸ ἐν ἡρώ, &c. Herodian. lib. 5.

<sup>4</sup> Simulacrum Deæ non effigie humanâ, continuis orbis latiori initio tenuem in ambitum meta modo exurgens: & ratio in obis. Tacit. lib. 2. hist.

<sup>5</sup> Πυράμις ἢ μὲν Ἀφροδίτῃ τῇ κυρίᾳ τῆς ἡρώ, τὸ δὲ ἀγαλλοῦ ἢ ἢ εἰς αἰκίαν ἢ ἢ πυραμίδος λόγῳ. Max. Tyr. διὰ τὴν λα.

<sup>6</sup> Clem. Alexandr. lib. 1. Stromatum ex Phoronidis auctore.

<sup>7</sup> Scaliger in Eusebii chronicon.

<sup>8</sup> Ἀπόλλων Ἀργεῖος διὰ τὴν κύριον εἰς τὸν λόγον. Ὅτι ἱερεῖς πρὸ τῆς ἡρώς εἰναι διὰ φασιν αὐτοὺς εἶναι Ἀπόλλωνος, οἱ δὲ Διόνυσος, οἱ δὲ Ἀφροδίτη. Suidas.

<sup>9</sup> Εἰς δὲ τῆς Μελίχου, καὶ Ἀργεῖος ὀνομαζομένης πατρίδος, οὗ τὴν γῆν πεποιμένη ὑμῖνα. Περικλῆς δὲ δὲ Μελίχου, ἢ δὲ κύριον εἰς αἰκίαν. Pausan. Corinthiacs.

<sup>10</sup> Εἰς δὲ τὴν ἀφροδίτην τὴν ἀγαλλοῦ ἡρώς κύριον ἡρώς οἱ παλαιοὶ ἱερεῖς τῆς, ὡς ἀφελόμενον τοῦ ὀσι. Clem. Alex. lib. 1. Stromatum.

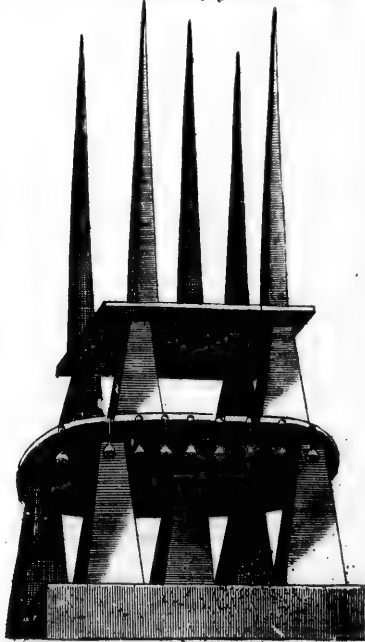
<sup>11</sup> Apud majores, nobiles aut sub montibus, aut in montibus sepeliebantur: unde natus est, ut supra calaverat, aut Pyramides fierent, aut ingentes collocarentur columnæ. Serv. in Virgil.

in mountains; whence the custom came, that over the dead, either Pyramids were made or huge columns erected. In imitation of the latter custom, it may be \* Absalom erected his pillar; and Pausanias describing the manner of burial amongst the ancient nation of the Sicyonians, tells us, <sup>b</sup> that they covered the body with earth, and raised pillars over it. But for the former of the Pyramids, I find none out of Egypt accounted miraculous, unless it be the sepulchre of Porfena king of Etruria, (with which I shall conclude, described by Pliny out of Varro; being more to be admired

for the number and contrivance of the Pyramids, than for any excessive magnitude. <sup>c</sup> We shall use M. Varro's own words in the description of it.

He was buried, saith he, without the city Clusium, in which place he left a monument of square stone. Each side of it is three hundred feet broad, and fifty feet high. Within the square basis there is an inextricable labyrinth, whither whose adventures without a clue can find no passage out. Upon this square there stand five Pyramids, four in the angles, and one in the middle; in the bottom they are broad seventy five feet, and high an hundred and fifty. They are pointed in such a manner, that at the top there is one brass circle, and covering for them all, from which there hangs bells fastened to chains: These being moved by the wind, give a sound afar off, as at Dodona it has formerly been. Upon this circle there are four other Pyramids, each of them an hundred feet high. Above which, upon one plain, there are five Pyramids, the altitude of which Varro was ashamed to add. The Etruscan fables report that it was as much as that of the whole work. With so vain a madness he sought glory by an expence useful to no man; wasting besides the wealth of his kingdom, that in the end the commendation of the artificer should be the greatest.

*Porfena's Tomb at Clusium  
in Italy Consisting of many Pyramids*



\* 2 Sam. xviii. 18.

<sup>b</sup> Pausanias Corinth. five lib. 2. Αἰὲρ δὲ Σικωνίῃ τὰ πολλὰ τοιαῦτα γένηται.

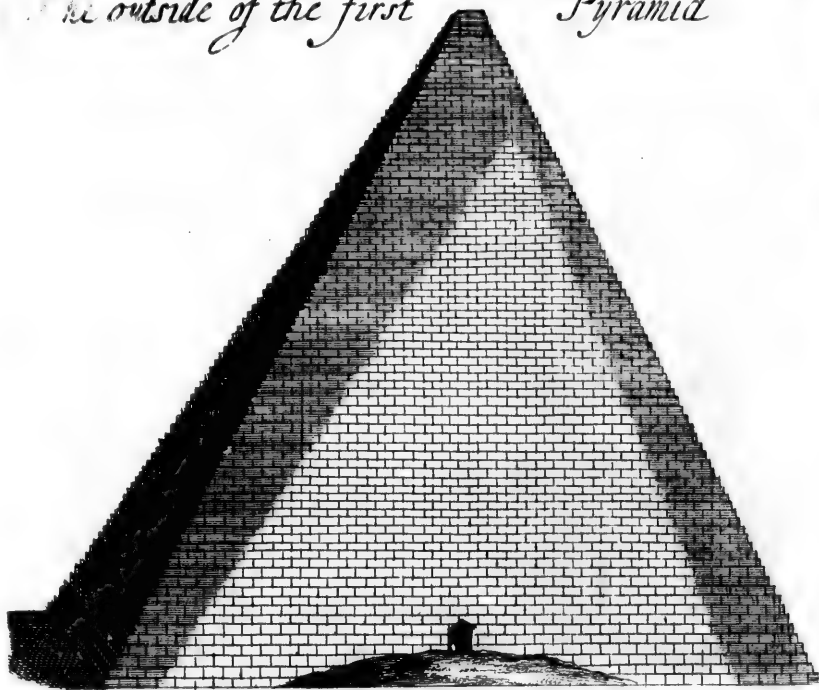
<sup>c</sup> Plin. l. 36. c. 13. Utemur ipsius M. Varroni in expositione ejus verbis. Sepultus est, inquit, sub urbe Clusio, in quo loco monumentum reliquit lapide quadrato, singula latera pedum lata tricenarium, alta quinquagenarium: inque basi quadrata intus labyrinthum inextricabilem: quo si quis impropere sine glomere fini, exitum invenire nequeat. Supra id quadratum Pyramides sunt quinque, quatuor in angulis, & in medio una; in imo latera pedum septuagenarium quinum, alias centum quinquagenum: ita fastigiata, ut in summo orbis aenei, & petasus unus omnibus sit impositus, ex quo pendeant excepta catenis tintinnabula, quae vento agitata longi sonitus referant, ut Dodona olim factum. Supra quem orbem quatuor Pyramides insuper singula extant alias pedum centenium. Supra quas uno solo quinque Pyramides, quarum altitudinem Varro neminem puduit adicere. Fabulae Etruscae tradunt eandem fuisse quam totius operis: addo vestigia dementiae quaeque gloriam, impendio nulli profutura. Praeterea saepe regni vires, ut tamen laus major artificio esset. Plin. l. 36. c. 13.

*A Description of the PYRAMIDS in ÆGYPT, as I found them in the CIO XL VIII Year of the Hegira, or in the Years CIO ID CXXXVIII, and CIO ID CXXXIX of our LORD, after the Dionysian Account.*

**G**RAVES **H**AVING discovered the founders of these Pyramids, and the time in which they were erected, and lastly, the end for which these monuments were built: next, in the method we proposed, the *sciography* of them is to be set down: where, we shall begin with the dimensions of their figure without, and then we shall examine their several spaces and partitions within.

*A Description of the first and fairest PYRAMID.*

*The outside of the first Pyramid*



**T**HE first and fairest of the three greater Pyramids, is situated on the top of a rocky hill in the sandy desert of *Libya*, about a quarter of a mile distant to the west, from the plains of *Ægypt*: above which the rock riseth an hundred feet or better, with a gentle and easy ascent. Upon this advantageous rise, and upon this solid foundation the Pyramid is erected; the height of the situation adding to the beauty of the work, and the solidity of the rock giving the superstructure a permanent and stable support. Each side of the Pyramid, computing it according to *Herodotus*, contains in length 10 ecc *Grecian* feet; and in *Diodorus Siculus's* ac-

<sup>a</sup> Herodot. lib. 2.  
αὐτὴν ἰσάμεν ἕξαι πλείων ἑστέ.

<sup>a</sup> Diod. l. 1. Ἡ δὲ πύξις τετραγώνη· ὅσα δὲ πλάτος, τὴν αὖτὴν ἴσους.

as I found  
the Years  
er the Di-

where, we  
ions of their  
shall examine  
tions within.

247

2



Pyramid is  
situation add-  
k, and the fo-  
the superstruc-  
support. Each  
ing it accord-  
length 10 ccc  
us Siculus's ac-

in the 2nd

count

count 10 cc: <sup>1</sup>Strabo reckons it less than a furlong, that is, less than 100 Grecian feet, or six hundred twenty five Roman; and <sup>2</sup>Pliny equals it to 10 ccc LXXXIII. That of <sup>3</sup>Diodorus Siculus in my judgment comes nearest to the truth<sup>h</sup>, and may serve in some kind to confirm those proportions, which in another discourse I have assigned to the Grecian measures. For measuring the north-side of it, at the *basis*, by an exquisite *radius* of ten feet in length, taking two several stations, as mathematicians use to do, when any obstacle hinders their approach, I found it to be six hundred ninety three feet, according to the *English* standard; which quantity is somewhat less than that of <sup>4</sup>Diodorus. The rest of the sides were examined by a line, for want of an even level, and a convenient distance to place my instruments, both which the *area* on the former side afforded.

The altitude of this pyramid was long since measured by <sup>5</sup>Thales Milesius, who, according to <sup>6</sup>Tatianus Affrius, lived about the fiftieth olympiad: but his observation is no where by the antients expressed. Only <sup>7</sup>Pliny tells us of a course proposed by him, how it might be found, and that is by observing such an hour, when the shadow of the body is equal to its height: A way at the best, by reason of the faintness, and scattering of the extremity of the shadow, in so great an altitude, uncertain and subject to error. And yet <sup>8</sup>Diogenes Laertius in the life of <sup>9</sup>Thales, hath the same story from the authority of <sup>10</sup>Hieronymus. Hieronymus reports, that he measured the Pyramids by their shadow, marking when they are of an equal quantity. Wherefore I shall pass by his, and give my own observations. The altitude is something defective of the latitude; though in <sup>11</sup>Strabo's computation it exceeds; but <sup>12</sup>Diodorus rightly acknowledges it to be less; which, if we measure by its perpendicular, is four hundred ninety nine feet; but if we take it as the Pyramid ascends inclining (as all such figures do,) then is it equal, in respect of the lines subtending the several angles, to the latitude of the

*basis*, that is, to six hundred ninety three <sup>GRÆVUS</sup> feet. With reference to this great altitude <sup>13</sup>Statius calls them,

— audacia saxa  
Pyramidum —

And <sup>14</sup>Tacitus, *Inftar montium eductæ Pyramides.*

<sup>15</sup>Julius Solinus goes farther yet: *The Pyramids are sharp pointed towers in Ægypt, exceeding all height which may be made by hand.* <sup>16</sup>Ammianus Marcellinus in his expression ascends as high: *The Pyramids are towers erected altogether, exceeding the height which may be made by man; in the bottom they are broadest, ending in sharp points at top; which figure is therefore by geometricians called pyramidal, because in the similitude of fire it is sharpened into a cone, as we speak.* <sup>17</sup>Propertius with the liberty of a poet, in an hyperbole, flies higher yet:

*P'ysidum sumptus ad sidera ducit.*

And the Greek Epigrammatist in a transcendent expression, is no way short of him.

*Ἡ γὰρ οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἄνω Νεφελίδος ἄσπερον μέτρον.  
Κυβερνᾷ Χρυσεὶς ἄσπερος πλάδαυ.*

What excessive heights they fancied to themselves, or borrowed from the relations of others, I shall not now examine: This I am certain of, that the shaft or spire of *Paul's* in *London*, before it was casually burnt, being as much, or somewhat more than the altitude of the tower now standing, did exceed the height of this Pyramid. For <sup>18</sup>Camden describes it in his *Elizabetha*, to be in a perpendicular five hundred and twenty feet from the ground: And in his <sup>19</sup>*Britannia*, to have been somewhat more, 10 xxxiv feet; whereof the tower cclx, and the Pyramid on the top cclxxiv. See *Godw. de presul.* 229.

If we imagine upon the sides of the *basis*, which is perfectly square, four equila-

<sup>1</sup> Strabo, l. 17. <sup>2</sup> Plin. l. 36. c. 12. *Amplissima est jugera obtinent soli, quatuor angularum paribus intervalis, per octingentos octoginta tres pedes, singulorum laterum.*

<sup>3</sup> For the exact dimensions of this Pyramid, see miscellaneous observations upon authors antient and modern. Pag. 119, & seq. <sup>4</sup> Tatiani Orat. contra Græcos.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 36. c. 12. *Mensuram altitudinis eorum, omniumque similium deprehendere invenit Thales Milesius, umbram metiendo, quâ hora par esse corpori solet.*

<sup>6</sup> Diog. Laert. in vitâ Thaletis, l. 1. *Ὁ δὲ Θάλες, καὶ ἀναστρέψας, φησὶ αὐτὸς τὴν σκιάμειδον, ἐν τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ ὅταν ἴσῃ τῇ ὑψικῇ.*

<sup>7</sup> Strabo, lib. 17. *Εἰς γὰρ ἑκάστην αὐτῶν ὁμήνην.* Whereas the breadth he reckons less than a stadium.

<sup>8</sup> Diodor. lib. 1. *Τὰ δὲ ὄρη τὰς πλείων τῶν ἰσχυρῶν.* But to the breadth he assigns seven plethra.

<sup>9</sup> Stat. l. 5. Sylv. 3. <sup>10</sup> Tacit. Annal. l. 2. <sup>11</sup> Pyramides sunt turres in Ægypto, fastigiatae ultra excelsum omnem, quæ manu fieri potest. Jul. Solin. Polyh. c. 45. <sup>12</sup> Ammian. Marcell. l. 21.

<sup>13</sup> Propertius, l. 3. Eleg. 1. <sup>14</sup> Græc. Epigram. l. 4. Francofurti 1600. cum Annot. Brodæi.

<sup>15</sup> Pyramid pulcherrima cathederalis ecclesiæ S. Pauli, quæ singulari urbis ornamento in suspiciendam edita altitudinem DXX scilicet pedes à solo & CCLX à turre quadratâ, cui imposita erat à maserâ lignæ plumbo vestita, de celo propè fastigium tanta destitavit. Camdeni Elizabethæ. <sup>16</sup> Camd. Brit. in Middlesex.



**G**RAVES teral triangles mutually inclining, till they all meet on high as it were in a point, (for so the top seems to them which stand below,) then shall we have a true notion, of the just dimension and figure of this Pyramid; the perimeter of each triangle comprehending two thousand seventy nine feet, (besides the latitude of a little plain or flat on the top,) and the perimeter of the basis two thousand seven hundred seventy two feet. Whereby the whole area of the basis (to proportion it to our measures,) contains four hundred eighty thousand two hundred forty nine square feet, or eleven English acres of ground, and 1089 of 43560 parts of an acre. A proportion so monstrous, that if the ancients did not attest as much, and some of them describe it to be more, this age would hardly be induced to give credit to it. But *Herodotus* describing each side to contain eight hundred feet, the area mult of necessity be greater than that by me assigned, the sum amounting to six hundred and forty thousand; or computing it as *Diodorus Siculus* doth, the area will comprehend four hundred and ninety thousand feet: And in the calculation of *Pliny*, if we shall square eight hundred eighty three, (which is the number allotted by him to the measure of each side,) the product seven hundred seventy nine thousand six hundred eighty nine, will much exceed both that of *Herodotus* and this of *Diodorus*. Tho' certainly, *Pliny* is much mistaken in assigning the measure of the side to be eight hundred eighty three feet, and the basis of the Pyramid to be but eight jugera, or Roman acres. For if we take the Roman jugerum to contain in length two hundred and forty feet, and in breadth one hundred and twenty, as may be evidently proved out of *Varro*, and is expressly affirmed by *Quintilian*, then will the superficies or whole extension of the jugerum be equal to twenty eight thousand eight hundred Roman feet; with which, if we divide seven hundred seventy nine thousand six hundred eighty nine, the result will be twenty seven Roman jugera, and 2089 of 28800 parts of an acre. Wherefore, if we take those numbers eight hundred eighty three of *Pliny* to be true, then I suppose he writ twenty eight jugera instead of eight, or else in his proportion of the side to the area of the basis, he hath err'd.

The ascent to the top of the Pyramid is contrived in this manner: from all the sides without we ascend by degrees; the lowest degree is near four feet in height, and three in breadth; this runs about the Pyramid in a level; and at the first, when the stones were intire, which are now somewhat decayed, made on every side of it a long but narrow walk. The second degree is like the first, each stone amounting to almost four feet in height, and three in breadth; it retires inward from the first near three feet, and thus runs about the Pyramid in a level, as the former. In the same manner is the third row placed upon the second, and so in order the rest, like so many stairs rising one above another to the top. Which ends not in a point, as mathematical Pyramids do, but in a little flat or square. Of this, *Herodotus* hath no where left us the dimensions: But *Henricus Stephanus*, an able and deserving man, in his comment hath supplied it for him. For he makes it to be eight orgia. Where if we take the orgia as both *Hesychius* and *Suidas* do, for the distance between the hands extended at length, that is, for the fathom or six feet, then should it be forty eight feet in breadth at the top. But the truth is, *Stephanus* in this particular, whilst he corrects the errors of *Valla's* interpretation, is to be corrected himself. For that latitude which *Herodotus* assigns to the admirable bridge below, (of which there is nothing now remaining,) he hath carried up, by a mistake to the top of the Pyramid. *Diodorus Siculus* comes nearer to the truth, who describes it to be but nine feet. *Pliny* makes the breadth at the top to be twenty five feet. *Altitudo* (I would rather read it *latitudo*), à cacumine pedes XXV. By my measure it is XIII feet, and 280 of 1000 parts of the English foot. Upon this flat, if we assent to the opinion of *Proclus*, it may be supposed that the Egyptian priests made their observations in astronomy; and that from hence, or near this place, they first discovered, by the rising of *Sirius*, their annus *novis*, or *canicularis*, as also their *periodus Solbiaca*, or *annus magnus novis*, or *annus Heliacus*, or *annus Dei*, as it is termed by *Censorinus*, consisting of 1460 sidereal years; in which space their *both vagum*, and *fixum*, came to have the same beginning: That the priests might near these Pyramids, make their observati-

\* Jugerum quadratus duos actus habet. Actus quadratus qui est latus est pedes CXX, et longus totidem. Is medius ac mina appellatur. Varro de Re R. l. 1. c. 13.

\* Jugerum mensuram CCXL longitudinis pedes esse dimidique in latitudinem patere non ferè quisquam est qui ignoret. Quintil. l. 1. c. 10.

\* Orgia à τὸν ἀποστήσαντων ὀργάνων. Helych.

\* Diodor. l. 1. c. 12.

\* Censorin. de die natali. Quem Græci novis, Latine canicularum vocamus. Hic annus etiam belliacus à quibusdam dicitur, et ab aliis, à τὸν βίωσθαι.

ons I no way question; this rising of the hill being, in my judgment, as fit a place as any in *Egypt* for such a design; and so much the fitter by the vicinity of *Memphis*. But that these Pyramids were designed for observatories, (whereas by the testimonies of the ancients I have proved before, that they were intended for sepulchres,) is no way to be credited upon the single authority of *Proclus*. Neither can I apprehend to what purpose the priests with so much difficulty should ascend so high, when below with more ease, and as much certainty, they might from their own lodgings hewn in the rocks, upon which the Pyramids are erected, make the same observations. For seeing all *Egypt* is but as it were one continued plain, they might from these cliffs have, over the plains of *Egypt*, as free and open a prospect of the heavens, as from the tops of the Pyramids themselves. And therefore *Tully* writes more truly: *Ægyptii, aut Babylonii, in camporum patentium aquaribus habitantes, cum ex terrâ nihil emeretur, quod contemplationi celi officere possit, omnem curam in siderum cognitione posuerunt.* The top of this Pyramid is covered not with <sup>b</sup> one or <sup>c</sup> three massy stones, as some have imagined, but with nine, besides two which are wanting at the angles: The degrees by which we ascend up, (as I observed in measuring many of them,) are not all of an equal

depth, for some are near four feet, others want of three, and these the higher we ascend, do so much the more diminish: Neither is the breadth of them alike; the difference in this kind, being as far as I could conjecture, proportionable to their depth. And therefore a right line extended from any part of the basis without to the top, will equally touch the outward angle of every degree. Of these it was impossible for me to take an exact measure, since in such a revolution of time, if the inner parts of the Pyramid have not lost any thing of their first perfection, as being not exposed to the injury of the <sup>a</sup> air and fall of rains; yet the outward parts, that is, these degrees or rows of stone, have been much wasted and impaired by both. And therefore they cannot conveniently now be ascended, but either at the south-side, or at the east-angle, on the north: They are well stiled by *Herodotus*, *Βασιλίδες*, that is, little altars: For in the form of altars they rise one above another to the top. And these are all made of massy and polished stones, hewn according to *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, out of the Arabian mountains, which bound the upper part of *Egypt*, or that above the *delta* on the east, as the *Lybian* mountains terminate it on the west, being so vast, that the breadth and depth of every step, is one single and entire stone. The relation of <sup>d</sup> *Herodotus*,

<sup>a</sup> Cicer. de Divin. l. 1.

<sup>b</sup> Les voyages de Seign. Villamont.

<sup>c</sup> Sand's travels.

<sup>d</sup> The air of *Egypt* is confessed by the antients to be often full of vapours. Which appears both by the great dews, that happen after the deluge of *Nilus* for several months; as also in that I have discovered at *Alexandria*, in the winter time, several obscure stars in the constellation of *Ursa major*, not visible in *England*; the which could not be discerned, were there not a greater refraction at that place than with us, and consequently a greater condensation of the medium, or air, as the optics demonstrate. But I cannot sufficiently wonder at the antients, who generally deny the fall of rain in *Egypt*. *Plato*, in his *Timæus*, speaking of *Egypt*, where he had lived many years, writes thus: *Καὶ δὲ τὸ πλεονεχὲς τῆς γῆς αὐτῆς ἀλλοτρίον, ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν τῇ αἰσθητικῇ φύσει ἐκείνῃ. Πομπηίου Μέλῃ in express terms relates, that *Egypt* is terra ex parte imbricaria, mirè tamen fertilis. Whereas for two months, namely *December* and *January*, I have not known it rain so constantly and with so much violence at *London*, as I found it do at *Alexandria*, the winds continuing north north-west; which caused me to keep a diary as well of the weather, as I did of my observations in astronomy: And not only there, but also at *Grand Cairo*, my very noble and worthy friend, sir *William Paston*, at the same time, observed, that there fell much rain. And so likewise about the end of *March* following, being at the *mumies*, somewhat beyond the Pyramids, to the south, there fell a gentle rain for almost a whole day: But it may be the antients mean the upper parts of *Egypt* beyond *Thebes*, about *Siena*, and near the *Catadupa*, or cataracts of *Nilus*, and not the lower parts; where I have been told by the *Ægyptians*, that it seldom rains. And therefore *Seneca* (lib. 4. *Natur. Quæst.*) seems to have writ true, *In ea parte quæ in Æthiopia vergit* (speaking of *Egypt*) *aut nulli imbres sunt, aut rari.* But where he after says, *Alexandria nives non cadunt*, it is false: For at my being there in *January*, at night it snowed. However, farther to the south than *Egypt*, between the tropicks, and near the line, in *Habassina*, or *Ethiopia* every year, for many weeks, there falls store of rain, as the *Habassines* themselves at *Grand Cairo* relate. Which may be confirmed by *Josèphus* *Æthi. lib. 2. de naturâ orbis novi*, where he observes in *Peru*, and some other places (lying in the same parallel with those of *Ethiopia*) that they have abundance of rains. This then is the true cause of the inundation of *Nilus* in the summer time, being then highest, when other rivers are lowest; and not those which are alleged by *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, *Plutarch*, *Aristides*, *Heliodorus*, and others: Who are extremely troubled to give a reason of the inundation, imputing it either to the peculiar nature of the river, or to the obstruction of the mouth of it by the *Etesia*; or to the melting of snows in *Ethiopia*, (which I believe seldom fall in those hot countries, where the natives, by reason of the extreme heats, are all black; and where, if we credit *Seneca*, *argentum replumbatur, flos is melted*, by the scorching heats) or to some such other reasons of little weight. In *Diodorus* I find *Agatharchides* *Cnidius*, to give almost the same reason assigned by me: But those times gave little credit to his assertion. Yet *Diodorus* seems to assent to it, (*Did. lib. 1.*) *Agatharchides Cnidius habet come narisi to the truth; for he saith: Every year in the mountains about Ethiopia, there are continual rains from the summer solstice, to the autumnal equinox, which cause the inundation.* The time of this is accounted generally for certain, that I have seen the *Ægyptian* astronomers to put it down many years before, in their Ephemerides: That such a day of such a month, the *Nilus* begins to rise.*

**GREATER** and <sup>1</sup> *Pomponius Mela*, is more admirable, who make the least stone in this Pyramid to be thirty feet. And this I can grant in some, yet surely it cannot be admitted in all, unless we interpret their words, that the least stone is thirty square, or to speak more properly, thirty cubical feet; which dimension, or a much greater, in the exterior ones, I can without any difficulty admit. The number of these steps is not mentioned by the ancients, and that caused me, and two that were with me, to be the more diligent in computing them, because by modern writers, and some of those too of repute, they are described with much diversity and contrariety. The degrees, saith <sup>2</sup> *Bellonius*, are about two hundred and fifty, each of them single contains in height forty five digits, at the top it is two paces broad. For this I take to be the meaning of what *Clusius* renders thus: *A basi autem ad cacumen ipsius supputationem facientes, comperimus circiter ccl. gradus, singuli altitudinem habent v. solarum calcei ix. pollicum longitudines, in fastigio duos passus habet.* Where I conceive his *passus* is in the same sense to be understood here above, as not long before he explains himself in describing the *basis* below, which in his account is cccxxiv *passus* paululum extensis cruribus. <sup>3</sup> *Albertus Lewenstainius* reckons the steps to be two hundred and sixty, each of them a foot and a half in depth. *Jobannes Helfricus* counts them to be two hundred and thirty. <sup>4</sup> *Sebastius Serlius*, upon a relation of *Grimano*, the patriarch of Aquileia, and afterwards cardinal, (who in his travels in *Egypt* measured these degrees) computes them to be two hundred and ten; and the height of every step to be equally three palms and an half. It would be but lost labour, to mention the different and repugnant relations of several others: That which by experience, and by a diligent calculation, I, and two others found, is this, that the number of degrees from the bottom to the top, is two hundred and seven; tho' one of them in descending reckoned two hundred and eight.

Such as please, may give credit to those fabulous traditions of <sup>5</sup> some, that a *Turkish*

archer standing at the top, cannot shoot beyond the bottom, but that the arrow will necessarily fall upon these steps. If the *Turkish* bow (which by those figures that I have seen in ancient monuments, is the same with that of the *Partians*, so dreadful to the *Romans*) be but as swift, and strong, as the *English*; as surely it is much more, if we consider with what incredible force some of them will pierce a plank of six inches in thickness, (I speak what I have seen) it will not seem strange, that they should carry twelve score in length; which distance is beyond the *basis* of this Pyramid.

The same credit is to be given to those reports of the ancients, that this Pyramid, and the rest, cast no shadows. <sup>6</sup> *Solinus* writes expressly, *Mensuram umbrarum egressæ nullas habent umbras.* And <sup>7</sup> *Ausonius*:

—Quadro cui in fastigia cono  
Surgit & ipsa suas consumit Pyramis umbras.

<sup>8</sup> *Ammianus Marcellinus* hath almost the same relation, *umbras quoque mechanicâ ratione consumit.* Lastly, <sup>9</sup> *Cassiodorus* confirms the same, *Pyramides in Ægypto, quarum in suo statu se umbra consumens, ultra constructionis spatia nulla parte respicitur.* All which in the winter season I can in no sort admit to be true: For at that time I have seen them cast a shadow at noon. And if I had not seen it, yet reason, and the art of measuring altitudes by shadows, and on the contrary, of knowing the length of shadows by altitudes, doth necessarily infer as much. Besides how could *Tales Milesius*, above two thousand years since, have taken their height by shadows, according to *Pliny*, and *Laertius*, as we mentioned before, if so be these Pyramids have no shadows at all? To reconcile the difference, we may imagine, *Solinus*, *Ausonius*, *Marcellinus*, and *Cassiodorus*, mean in the summer-time; or which is nearer the truth, that almost for three quarters of the year, they have no shadows: And this I grant to be true at midnight.

<sup>1</sup> Οὐδὲν τῶν λίθων τριάντα ποδῶν ἰσόσταν. Herod. l. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Pomp. Mcl. l. 1. c. 9. <sup>3</sup> Bellonius, lib. 2. obierv. c. 42. <sup>4</sup> Albertus Lewenstainius gradus ad cacumen numerat cclx. singulos scquipedali altitudine, Jobannes Helfricus cccxxx. Raderus in Martial. Epigr. Barbara Pyramidum fileat miracula Memphis, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Il numero de pezzidalla basa fino alla sommità sono da ccx, è sono tutti d'una altezza talmente che l'altezza di tutta la massa è quanto l'esca bassa. Sebast. Serl. lib. 3. delle Antichità.

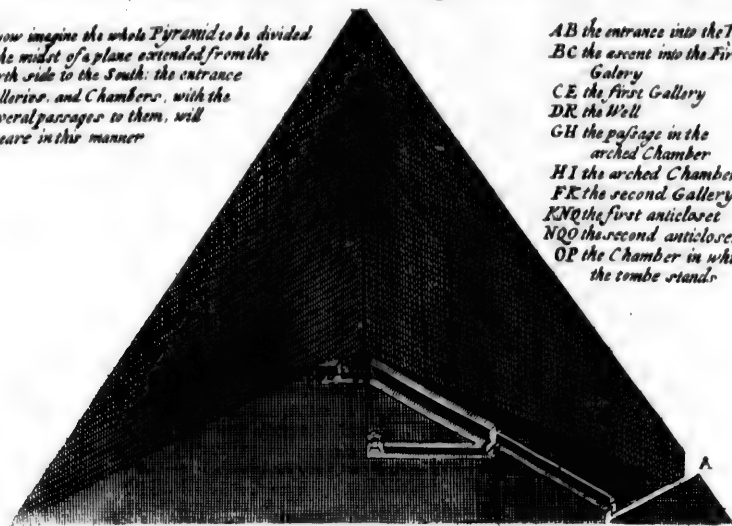
<sup>6</sup> Bellon. Obierv. lib. 2. cap. 42. & alii. Peritissimus atque validissimus sagittarius in ejus fastigio exiit, atque sagittam in aerem emittens, tam validè eam ejaculari non poterit, ut extra molis basim decideret, sed in ipsos gradus caderet, adeo vastæ magnitudinis, uti diximus, est hoc moles. Bellon.

<sup>7</sup> Jul. Solin. Polyh. c. 45. <sup>8</sup> Auson. Edyllio 3. <sup>9</sup> Ammian. Marcel. lib. 22. <sup>10</sup> Cassiodor. Var. 7. Formula 15.

A Description of the Inside of the first PYRAMID.

The inside of the first and fairest Pyramid

If you imagine the whole Pyramid to be divided in the midst of a plane extended from the North side to the South: the entrance Galleries, and Chambers, with the several passages to them, will appear in this manner



AB the entrance into the Pyramid  
BC the ascent into the First Gallery  
CE the first Gallery  
DE the Well  
GH the passage in the arched Chamber  
HI the arched Chamber  
FK the second Gallery  
KN the first anticloset  
NO the second anticloset  
OP the Chamber in which the tombe stands

HAVING finished the description of the greater Pyramid, with the figure, and dimensions of it, as they present themselves to the view without: I shall now look inwards, and lead the reader into several spaces, and partitions within: of which, if the ancients have been silent, we must chiefly impute it to a reverend and awful regard, mixed with superstition, in not presuming to enter those chambers of death, which religion, and devotion, had consecrated to the rest, and quiet of the dead. Wherefore <sup>a</sup>Herodotus mentions no more, but only in general, that some secret vaults are hewn in the rock under the Pyramid. Diodorus Siculus is silent; though both enlarge themselves in other particulars less necessary. <sup>b</sup>Strabo also is very concise, whose whole description both of this, and of the second Pyramid, is included in this short expression: Forty stadia from the city (Memphis), there is a certain brow of an hill, in which are many Pyramids, the sepulchres of kings: Three of them are memorable. Two of these are accounted amongst the seven mi-

racles of the world; each of these are a furlong in height: The figure is quadrilateral, the altitude somewhat exceeds each side, and the one is somewhat bigger than the other. On high, as it were, in the midst between the sides, there is a stone that may be removed, which being taken out, there is an oblique (or shelving) entrance (for so I render that which by him is termed *σύνεξε σκαλία*) leading to the tomb. <sup>c</sup>Pliny expresses nothing within, but only a well (which is still extant) of eighty six cubits in depth; in which he probably imagines, by some secret aqueduct, the water of the river Nilus to be brought. Aristides, in his oration, entitled, *Ἀγώνισμα*, upon a misinformation of the Egyptian priests, makes the foundation of the structure to have descended as far below, as the altitude ascends above. Of which I see no necessity, seeing all of them are founded upon rocks. His words are these: <sup>d</sup>Now as with admiration we behold the tops of the Pyramids, but that which is as much more under ground opposite to them, we are ignorant of. (I speak what I have received from

GRAVES

<sup>a</sup> Herodot. lib. 2.

<sup>b</sup> Strabo, lib. 17.

<sup>c</sup> Plin. l. 36. c. 12.

<sup>d</sup> Νῦν δ' ὡς περὶ τῶν πυραμίδων τὰς μὲν κορυφὰς ὁρῶντες ἐκπληττίζομεν τὸ δ' ὑπὸ τῶν πετρῶν ὡς ἀγνοούμεν (καὶ μὴ δ' αὐτῶν τῶν κατωτέρων) &c. Arithm. λόγῳ Αἰγυπτίων.

**G**RAVES (the priests.) And this is that which hath been delivered to us by the ancients; which I was unwilling to pretermitt, more out of reverence of antiquity, than out of any special satisfaction. The Arabian writers, especially such as have purposely treated of the wonders of Egypt, have given us a more full description of what is within this Pyramid: But that hath been mixed with so many fictions of their own, that the truth hath been darkened, and almost quite extinguished by them. I shall put down that which is confessed by them, to be the most probable relation, as is reported by Ibn Abd Albokm, whose words out of the Arabick are these: The greatest part of chronologers agree, that he which built the Pyramids, was, Saurid Ibn Salhouk, king of Egypt, who lived three hundred years before the flood. The occasion of this was, because he saw in his sleep, that the whole earth was turned over with the inhabitants of it, the men lying upon their faces, and the stars falling down, and striking one another, with a terrible noise, and being troubled, he concealed it. After this he saw the fixed stars falling to the earth, in the similitude of white fowl, and they snatched up men, carrying them between two great mountains; and these mountains closed upon them, and the shining stars were made dark. Awaking with great fear, he assembled the chief priests of all the provinces of Egypt, an hundred and thirty priests, the chief of them was called Aclim: Relating the whole matter to them, they took the altitude of the stars, and making their prognostication, foretold of a deluge. The king said, Will it come to our country? They answered, Yea, and will destroy it. And there remained a certain number of years for to come, and he commanded in the mean space to build the Pyramids, and a vault to be made, into which the river Nilus entering, should run into the countries of the West, and into the land Al-Said; and he filled them with treasures, and with strange things, and with riches, and treasures, and the like. He engraved in them all things that were told him by wise men, as also all profound sciences, the names of alakakirs, the uses and hurts of them. The science of astrology, and of arithmetick, and of geometry, and of physick. All this may be interpreted

by him that knows their characters, and language. After he had given order for this building, they cut out vast columns and wonderful stones. They fetch massy stones from the Ethiopians, and made with these the foundation of the three Pyramids, fastning them together with lead and iron. They built the gates of them forty cubits under ground, and they made the height of the Pyramids one hundred royal cubits, which are fifty of ours in these times, he also made each side of them an hundred royal cubits. The beginning of this building was in a fortunate bore-scope. After that he had finished it, he covered it with coloured fatten, from the top to the bottom, and he appointed a solemn festival, at which were present all the inhabitants of his kingdom. Then he built in the western Pyramid thirty treasures, filled with store of riches, and utensils, and with signatures made of precious stones, and with instruments of iron, and vessels of earth, and with arms which rust not, and with glass which might be bended, and yet not broken, and with strange spells, and with several kinds of alakakirs, single and double, and with deadly poisons, and with other things besides. He made also in the east Pyramid, divers celestial spheres and stars, and what they severally operate, in their aspects, and the perfumes which are to be used to them, and the books which treat of these matters. He also put in the coloured Pyramid, the commentaries of the priests, in chests of black marble, and with every priest a book, in which were the wonders of his profession, and of his actions, and of his nature, and what was done in his time, and what is, and what shall be, from the beginning of time, to the end of it. He placed in every Pyramid a treasurer: The treasurer of the western Pyramid was a statue of marble-stone, standing upright with a lance, and upon his head a serpent wreathed. He that came near it, and stood still, the serpent bit him of one side, and wreathing round about his throat, and killing him, returned to his place. He made the treasurer of the east Pyramid, an idol of black agate, his eyes open and shining, sitting upon a throne with a lance; when any looked upon him, he heard of one side of him a voice, which took away his sense, so that he fell prostrate upon his face, and ceased not till he

\* *Telema*] The word used by the Arabians is derived from the Greek, *ὑπερμαρμα*, by an *apbæresis* of *ὑπερ*. By the like *apbæresis*, together with an *epenthesis*, the Arabians call him *Babtonassar*, whom Ptolemy names *Nabonassar*: as by an *apbæresis*, and *syncope*, the Turks call *Constantinople*, *Stambol*, or *Istanbul*: from whence some of our writers term it *Stambol*; tho' the Arabians more fully express it by *Constantiniya*, and *Buzantiya*; that is, *Constantinopolis*, and *Byzantium*. The various significations of *ὑπερμαρμα*, and *ὑπερμαρμα*, see in Mr. Seiden's learned discourse, *de diis Syris*; and in Scaliger's annotations, in *apotelesmatum Manili*. That which the Arabians commonly mean by *telema*, are certain *figilla*, or *amuleta*, made under such and such an aspect, or configuration of the stars and planets, with several characters accordingly inscribed.

† *Alakakir*] Amongst other significations, is the name of a precious stone; and therefore in *Abulfeda* it is joined with *yacut*, a *ruby*. I imagine it here to signify some magical spell, which it may be was engraven in this stone.



died. He made the treasurer of the coloured Pyramid a statue of stone, (called) Albut, sitting: he which looked towards it was drawn by the statue, till he stuck to it and could not be separated from it, till such time as he died. The Coptites write in their books, that there is an inscription engraven upon them, the exposition of which in Arabick is this: I king Saurid built the Pyramids in such and such a time, and finished them in six years: he that comes after me, and says that he is equal to me, let him destroy them in six hundred years; and yet it is known, that it is easier to pluck down, than to build up. I also covered them, when I had finished them, with fatten; and let him cover them with mats. After that, Almamon the calif entered Egypt, and saw the Pyramids: He desired to know what was within, and therefore would have them opened: They told him, It could not possibly be done: He replied, I will have it certainly done. And that hole was opened for him, which stands open to this day, with fire and vinegar. Two smiths prepared and sharpened the iron, and engines, which they forced in, and there was a great expence in the opening of it: The thickness of the wall was found to be twenty cubits; and when they came to the end of the wall, behind the place they had digged, there was an ewer (or pot) of green emerald; in it were a thousand dinars very weighty, every dinar was an ounce of our ounces: they wondered at it, but knew not the meaning of it. Then Almamon said, Cast up the account, how much bath been spent in making the entrance: they cast it up, and lo it was the same sum which they found, it neither exceeded, nor was defective. Within they found a square well, in the square of it there were doors, every door opened into an house (or vault) in which there were dead bodies wrapped up in linen. They found towards the top of the Pyramid, a chamber, in which there was an hollow stone: in it was a statue of stone like a man, and within it a man, upon whom was a breast-plate of gold, set with jewels, upon his breast was a sword of invaluable price, and at his head a carbuncle of the bigness of an egg, shining like the light of the day, and upon him were characters written with a pen, no man knows what they signify. After Almamon had opened it, men entered into it for many years, and descended by the slippery passage, which is in it, and some of them came out safe, and others died. Thus far the Arabians; which traditions of theirs, are little better than a romance; and therefore leaving these, I shall give a more true and particular description, out of mine own experience, and observations.

On the north-side ascending thirty eight feet, upon an artificial bank of earth,

there is a square and narrow passage leading into the Pyramid, thorough the mouth of which (being equi-distant from the two sides of the Pyramid) we enter, as it were, down the steep of an hill declining with an angle of twenty six degrees. The breadth of this entrance is exactly three feet, and four hundred sixty three parts of one thousand of the English foot: The length of it beginning from the first declivity, which is some ten palms without, to the utmost extremity of the neck, or straight within, where it contracts it self almost nine feet continued, with scarce half the depth it had at the first entrance (tho' it keep still the same breadth) is ninety two feet and an half. The structure of it hath been the labour of an exquisite hand, as appears by the smoothness and evenness of the work, and by the close knitting of the joints. A property long since observed, and commended by Diodorus, to have run thorough the fabrick of the whole body of this Pyramid. Having passed with tapers in our hands this narrow straight, tho' with some difficulty, (for at the farther end of it we must creep upon our bellies) we land in a place somewhat larger, and of a pretty height, but lying incompolled; having been dug away, either by the curiosity, or avarice of some, in hopes to discover an hidden treasure; or rather by the command of Almamon, the deservedly renowned calif of Babylon. By whomsoever it were, it is not worth the enquiry, nor doth the place merit describing, but that I was unwilling to pretermitt any thing: Being only an habitation for bats, and those lo ugly, and of so large a size, (exceeding a foot in length) that I have not elsewhere seen the like. The length of this obscure and broken space, containeth eighty nine feet, the breadth and height is various, and not worth consideration. On the left hand of this, adjoining to that narrow entrance thorough which we passed, we climb up a steep and massy stone, eight or nine feet in height, where we immediately enter upon the lower end of the first gallery. The pavement of this rises with a gentle acclivity, consisting of smooth and polished marble, and were not smeared with filth, appearing of a white and alabaster colour: The sides and roof, as Titus Livinius Burretinus, a Venetian, an ingenious young man, who accompanied me thither, observ'd, was of impolished stone, not so hard and compact as that on the pavement, but more soft and tender: The breadth almost five feet, and about the same quantity the height, if he have not mistaken. He likewise discovered some irregularity in the breadth, it opening a little wider in some

GRAVES

characters, and in order for this and women and women's stones from with these the mids, fastening and iron. They cubits under of the Pyramid, which are fifty made each side is. The beginning a fortunate bon-finished it, be in, from the top painted a solemn ent all the in-ben be built in treasures, filled with, and with stones, and with is of earth, and and with glass yet not broken, and with several and double, and with other things east Pyramid, wars, and what air aspects, and used to them, these matters. Pyramid, the chests of black jest a book, in profession, and ture, and what is, and what of time, to the Pyramid a treasure. Pyramid standing up-bis head a serene near it, and of one side, and wroat, and kill. He made the id, an idol of shining, sitting when any looked e of him a voice, so that he fell ceased not till he

by an aphorism of ar, whom Ptolemy or Istanbols from Constantiniya, and terquara, and darre-ns, in apotelefmatic or amuleta, made characters accordingly

re in Abulfeda it is ay be was engraven

died.

**G**RAVES places than in others; but this inequality could not be discerned by the eye, but only by measuring it with a careful hand: By my observation with a line, this gallery contained in length an hundred and ten feet. At the end of this begins the second gallery; a very stately piece of work, and not inferiour, either in respect of the curiosity of art, or richness of materials, to the most sumptuous and magnificent buildings. It is divided from the former by a wall, through which stooping, we passed in a square hole, much about the same bigness, as that by which we entered into



the Pyramid, but of no considerable length. This narrow passage lieth level, not rising with an acclivity, as doth the pavement below, and roof above, of both these galleries. At the end of it, on the right hand, is the well, mentioned by *Pliny*; the which is circular, and not square, as the *Arabian* writers describe: the diameter of it exceeds three feet, the sides are lin'd with white marble, and the descent into it is by fastning the hands and feet in little open spaces cut in the sides within, opposite, and answer-

pendicular. In the same manner are almost all the wells and passages into the cisterns at *Alexandria* contrived, without stairs or windings, but only with inlets, and square holes on each side within; by which using the feet and hands, one may with ease descend. Many of these cisterns are with open and double arches, the lowermost arch being supported by a row of speckled and *Tebraick* marble pillars, upon the top of which stands a second row, bearing the upper and higher arch: The walls within are covered with a sort of plaister, for the colour white; but of so durable a substance, that neither by time, nor by the water, it is yet corrupted and impaired. But I return from the cisterns and wells there, to this in the Pyramid; which in <sup>b</sup> *Pliny's* calculation, is eighty six cubits in depth; and it may be was the passage to those secret vaults mentioned, but not described by *Herodotus*, that were hewn out of the rock, over which this Pyramid is erected. By my measure, founding it with a line, it contains twenty feet in depth. The reason of the difference between *Pliny's* observation and mine, I suppose to be this, that since his time it hath almost been

dammed up, and choaked with rubbish, which I plainly discover'd at the bottom, by throwing down some combustible matter set on fire. Leaving the well, and going on strait upon a level, the distance of fifteen feet, we entered another square passage, opening against the former, and of the same bigness. The stones are very massy, and exquisitely jointed, I know not whether of that glistering and speckled marble, I mentioned in the columns of the cisterns at *Alexandria*. This leadeth (running in length upon a level an hundred and ten feet) into an arched vault, or little chamber; which by reason it was of a grave-like smell, and half full of rubbish, occasioned my lesser stay. This chamber stands east and west; the length of it is less than twenty feet, the breadth about seventeen, and the height less than fifteen. The walls are intire, and plastered over with lime, the roof is covered with large smooth stones, not lying flat but shelving, and meeting above in a kind of arch, or rather an angle. On the east-side of this room, in the middle of it, there seems to have been a passage leading to some other place. Whether this way the priests went into the hollow of that huge sphinx, as *Strabo* and <sup>1</sup> *Pliny* term it, or androsphinx, as *Herodotus* calls such kinds, (being by *Pliny's* calculation 211 feet in compass about the head, in height 1211, in length 62111: And by my observation made of one intire stone) which stands not far distant without the Pyramid, south-east of it, or into any other private retirement, I cannot determine; and it may be too this served for no such purpose, but rather as a *Thebes* or *Nichio*, as the *Italians* speak, wherein some idol might be placed; or else for a piece of ornament (for it is made of polished stone) in the architecture of those times, which ours may no more understand, than they do the reason of the rest of those strange proportions, that appear in the passages and inner-rooms of this Pyramid. Returning back the same way we came, as soon as we are out of this narrow and square passage, we climb over it, and going straight on, in the trace of the second gallery, upon a shelving pavement (like that of the first) rising with an angle of twenty six degrees, we at length came to another partition. The length of the gallery, from the well below to this partition above, is an hundred fifty and four feet; but if we measure the pavement of the floor, it is somewhat less, by reason of a little vacuity (some fifteen feet in length) as we described before, between the well and the square hole we climbed over. And here to reassume some part of

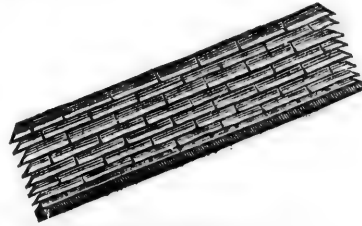
<sup>b</sup> In Pyramidē maximā est intus puteus LXXXVI cubitorum, fumen illi admissum arbitrantur. *Plin.* l. 36. cap. 12.

<sup>1</sup> *Plin.* l. 36. cap. 12.

with rubbish, the bottom, by possible matter tell, and going distance of square passage, and of the same very massy, and not whether of marble, I mean the cisterns at ending in length ten feet; into amber; which like smell, and shed my lesser east and west; in twenty feet, and the height are intire, and the roof is co-ones, not lying ing above in a angle. On the e middle of it, passage leading er this way the y of that huge y term it, or all such kinds, on 11 feet in n height 111, my observation hich stands not ramid, south- private retire- and it may be purpose, but as the *Italians* ight be placed; ment (for it is the architecture may no more the reason of e proportions, ges and inner- eturning back soon as we are re passage, we ight on, in the upon a shelv- the first) rising degrees, we atartition. The the well below n hundred fifty asure the pave- ewhat less, by me fifteen feet e descende, between e we climbed e some part of

that which hath been spoken, if we consider the narrow entrance at the mouth of the Pyramid by which we descend; and the length of the first and second galleries by which we ascend, all of them lying as it were in the same continu'd line, and leading to the middle of the Pyramid, we may easily apprehend a reason of that strange ecchoe within, of four or five voices, mentioned by *Plutarch* in his fourth book, *De placitis Philosophorum*: Or rather of a long continued sound; as I found by experience, discharging a musket at the entrance. For the sound being shut in, and carried in those close and smooth passages, like as in so many pipes or trunks, finding no issue out, reflects upon it self, and causes a confused noise and circulation of the air, which by degrees vanishes, as the motion of it ceases. This gallery, or *corridore*, (or whatsoever else I may call it) is built of white and polished marble, the which is very evenly cut in spacious squares, or tables. Of such materials as is the pavement, such is the roof, and such are the side walls, that flank it: The coagmentation, or knitting of joints, is so close, that they are scarce discernible to the eye; and that which adds a grace to the whole structure, tho' it makes the passage the more slippery and difficult, is the acclivity and rising of the ascent. The height of this gallery is twenty six feet, the breadth is six feet, and eight hundred seventy parts of the foot divided into a thousand, of which three feet, and four hundred thirty six of a thousand parts of a foot, are to be allowed for the way in the midst; which is set and bounded on both sides with two banks (like benches) of sleek and polished stone; each of these hath one foot seven hundred seventeen of a thousand parts of a foot in breadth, and as much in depth. Upon the top of these benches near the angle, where they close, and join with the wall, are little spaces cut in right angled parallel figures, set on each side opposite to one another; intended, no question, for some other end than ornament. In the casting and ranging of the marbles in both the side-walls, there is one piece of architecture, in my judgment, very graceful; and that is, that all the courses, or ranges, which are but seven (so great are those stones) do set and flag over one another about three inches; the bottom of the uppermost course over-setting the higher part of the second, and the lower part of this overflagging the top of the third, and so in order the rest, as they descend. Which will better be conceived by the representation of it to the

eye in this figure, than by any other description.



Having passed this gallery, we enter another square hole, of the same dimensions with the former, which brings us into two *anticamerette*, as the *Italians* would call them, or *anti-closets*, (give me leave in so unusual a structure to frame some unusual terms) lined with a rich and speckled kind of *Thebaick* marble. The first of these hath the dimensions almost equal to the second: The second is thus proportioned, the *area* is level, the figure of it is oblong, the one side containing seven feet, the other three and an half, the height is ten feet. On the east and west sides, within two feet and half of the top, which is somewhat larger than the bottom, are three cavities, or little seats, in this manner:



Besides these, I have not observed any other sculptures, or engravings, in the whole Pyramid: and therefore it may justly be wondered, whence the *Arabians* borrowed those traditions I before related,

\* Εἰς τοὺς τοιαύτας καὶ τὰς Ἀλγυπτίων παραβολὰς ἔδωκεν οὐκ ἴσως παρὰ τῶν ἰσχυρῶν τῶν τετραγώνων. Plut. lib. 4. de philos. plac. cap. 20.

<sup>1</sup> Sunt enim rebus novis, nova ponenda nomina. Cicero, lib. 1. de naturâ deorum.

GREAVES that all sciences are inscribed within in hieroglyphicks: and as justly it may be questioned, upon what authority Dio, or his epitomizer Xiphilius, reports, that Cornelius Gallus (whom <sup>m</sup> Strabo more truly names Aelius Gallus, with whom he travelled into Egypt, as a friend and companion) <sup>n</sup> engraved in the Pyramids his victories, unless we understand some other Pyramids not now existent. This square passage is of the same wideness and dimensions as the rest, and is in length near nine feet, (being all of Thebaick marble, most exquisitely cut) which lands us at the north end of a very sumptuous and well-proportioned room. The distance from the end of the second gallery to this entry, running upon the same level, is twenty four feet. This rich and spacious chamber, in which art may seem to have contended with nature, the curious work being not inferior to the rich materials, stands as it were in the heart and centre of the Pyramid, equi-distant from all the sides, and almost in the middle between the *basis* and the top. The floor, the sides, the roof of it, are all made of vast and exquisite tables of Thebaick marble, which if they were not veiled and obscured by the steam of tapers, would appear glittering and shining. From the top of it descending to the bottom, there are but six ranges of stone, all which being respectively sized to an equal height, very gracefully in one and the same altitude, run round the room. The stones which cover this place, are of a strange and stupendous length, like so many huge beams lying flat, and traversing the room, and withal supporting that infinite mass and weight of the Pyramid above. Of these there are nine, which cover the roof; two of them are less by half in breadth than the rest; the one at the east end, the other at the west. The length of this <sup>o</sup> chamber on the fourth side, most accurately taken at the joint, or line, where the first and second row of stones meet,

is thirty four English feet, and three hundred and eighty parts of the foot divided into a thousand (that is, thirty four feet, and three hundred and eighty of a thousand parts of a foot.) The breadth of the west side at the joint, or line, where the first and second row of stones meet, is seventeen feet, and an hundred and ninety parts of the foot divided into a thousand (that is, seventeen feet, and a hundred and ninety of a thousand parts of a foot.) The height is nineteen feet and an half.

Within this glorious room (for so I may justly call it) as within some consecrated oratory, stands the monument of *Cheops*, or *Cheemmis*, of one piece of marble, hollow within, and uncovered at the top, and sounding like a bell. Which I mention not as any rarity, either in nature, or in art (for I have observed the like found, in other tombs of marble cut hollow like this) but because I find modern authors to take notice of it as a wonder. Some write, that the body hath been removed hence; whereas <sup>q</sup> Diodorus hath left above sixteen hundred years since, a memorable passage concerning *Cheemmis* the builder of this Pyramid, and *Cephren*, the founder of the next adjoining. *Alibo* (saith he) these kings intended these for their sepulchres, yet it happened that neither of them were buried there: For the people being exasperated against them, by reason of the insolencies of these works, and for their cruelty and oppression, threatened to tear in pieces their dead bodies, and with ignominy to throw them out of their sepulchres: Wherefore both of them dying, commanded their friends privately to bury them, in an obscure place. This monument, in respect of the nature and quality of the stone, is the same with which the whole room is lined; as by breaking a little fragment of it, I plainly discovered, being a speckled kind of marble, with black, and white, and red spots, as it were equally mixed, which some writers call Thebaick marble: tho' I conceive it to be that sort of porphyry which *Pliny* calls *leucostictos*, and de-

<sup>m</sup> Strabo, lib. 17.

<sup>n</sup> Xiphil. in Cæs. Aug. Ταύτην ὅσα ἐκείνη, ἐκ πεντήκοντα ἐξήκοντα.

<sup>o</sup> These proportions of the chamber, and those which follow, of the length and breadth of the hollow part of the tomb, were taken by me with as much exactness as it was possible to do; which I did so much the more diligently, as judging this to be the fittest place for the fixing of measures for posterity. A thing which hath been much desired by learned men, but the manner how it might be exactly done, hath been thought of by none. I am of opinion, that as this Pyramid has stood three thousand years almost, and is no whit decayed within, so it may continue many thousand years longer: and therefore that after-times measuring these places by me assigned, may hereby not only find out the just dimensions of the English foot, but also the feet of several nations in these times; which in my travels abroad I have taken from the originals, and have compared them at home with the English standard. Had some of the ancient mathematicians thought of this way, these times would not have been so much perplexed, in discovering the measures of the Hebrews, Babylonians, Egyptians, Greeks, and other nations. Such parts as the English foot contains a 1000, the Roman foot, on *Constantinus* monument (commonly called by writers, *Pis Colatianus*) contains 967. The Paris foot 1068. The Spanish foot 920. The Venetian foot 1062. The Rhinland foot, or that of *Snellius*, 1033. The Braccio at Florence 1913. The Braccio at Naples 2100. The Derab at Cairo 1824. The greater Turkish Pike at Constantinople 2200.

<sup>p</sup> As appears by a fair and ancient monument brought from Smyrna, to my very worthy friend *Edouard Rolt*, Esq; which stands in his park at *Woolwich*. <sup>q</sup> Diod. Sic. lib. 1. Ταῖς δὲ βασιλείαις τὰς κατὰ σπουδαίαν αὐτῶν αὐτοῖς τῶν, οὐκ ἔστι μὲν τῶν αὐτῶν τῶν περὶ τὴν ἰσχυρίαν, &c. <sup>r</sup> Plin. lib. 36. cap. 7.

three hun  
foot divided  
ty four feet,  
y of a thou-  
breadth of  
line, where  
stones meet,  
red and nine-  
to a thousand  
d a hundred  
ts of a foot.)  
d an half.  
(for so I may  
consecrated o-  
of Cheops, or  
marble, hollow  
the top, and  
I mention not  
are, or in ar-  
round, in other  
y like this) but  
to take notice  
rite, that the  
hence; where-  
the sixteen hun-  
orable passage  
ider of this Py-  
founder of the  
h he) these kings  
bres, yet it hap-  
eried buried there:  
ed against them,  
of these works,  
cession, threatened  
bodies, and with  
of their sepul-  
them dying, com-  
ely to bury them,  
nument, in re-  
lity of the stone,  
whole room is  
ttle fragment of  
eing a speckled  
ck, and white,  
equally mixed,  
baick marble:  
at sort of por-  
ceosities, and de-  
is inscribed.  
h of the hollow part  
d so much the more  
A thing which hath  
been thought of by  
is no whit decayed  
asuring these places  
also the fact of leve-  
have compared them  
his way, these times  
abylonians, Egyptian  
foot, on Cassutius  
1068. The Spanisb  
he Braco at Florence  
Constantinople 2200.  
friend Edward Roll,  
mi cœmentis aut me  
a. lib. 36. cap. 7.

scribes

scribes thus: *Rubet porphyrites in eadem Agypto ex eo candidis interuentibus punctis leucostictos appellatur. Quantissibet molibus cœdendis sufficiunt lapidicina.* Of this kind of marble there was, and still is, an infinite quantity of columns in *Agypt*. But a *Venetian*, a man very curious, who accompanied me thither, imagined that this sort of marble came from mount *Sina*, where he had lived among the rocks; which he affirmed to be speckled with party-colours of black and white, and red, like this: and to confirm his assertion, he alledg'd, that he had seen a great column, left imperfect amongst the cliffs, almost as big as that huge and admirable *Corinthian pillar*, standing to the south of *Alexandria*; which, by my measure, is near four times as big as any of those vast *Corinthian pillars*, in the *Porticus* before the *Panttheon* at *Rome*; all which are of the same coloured marble with this monument, and so are all the obelisks with hieroglyphicks, both in *Rome* and *Alexandria*. Which opinion of his doth well correspond with the tradition of *Arifides*, who reports, that in *Arabia* there is a quarry of excellent porphyry. The figure of this tomb without, is like an altar, or more nearly to express it, like two cubes finely set together, and hollowed within, it is cut smooth and plain, without any sculpture and engraving, or any relevy and embossment. The exterior superficies of it contains in length seven feet, three inches, and an half. *Bellonius* makes it twelve feet, and *monsieur de Breves* nine; but both of them have ex-

ceeded. In depth it is three feet, three GRAVES inches, and three quarters, and is the same in breadth. The hollow part within, is in length on the west-side, six feet, and four hundred and eight parts of the *English* foot divided into a thousand parts (that is, six feet, and four hundred and eighty eight of the thousand parts of a foot) in breadth, at the north-end, two feet, and two hundred and eighteen parts of the foot divided into a thousand parts (that is, two feet, and two hundred and eighteen of a thousand parts of a foot.) The depth is two feet, and eight hundred and sixty of the thousand parts of the *English* foot. A narrow space, yet large enough to contain a most potent and dreadful monarch, being dead, to whom living, all *Agypt* was too freight and narrow a circuit. By these dimensions, and by such other observations as have been taken by me from several embalmed bodies in *Agypt*, we may conclude, that there is no decay in nature; (so<sup>t</sup> the question is as old as *Homœr*) but that the men of this age are of the same stature they were near three thousand years ago; notwithstanding *St. Augustin*, and others, are of a different opinion. *Quis jam ævo isto non minor suis parentibus nascitur?* Is the complaint of *Solinus* above fifteen hundred years since. And yet in those crypte sepulchrales, at *Rome*, of the primitive Christians, resembling cities under ground: admired anciently by *St. Hierom*, and very faithfully of late described by *Bosius*, in his *Roma subterranea*, (for I took so much pains for

<sup>t</sup> Which may also be confirmed by *Bellonius's* observations; who describing the rock, on of which, upon *Moses* striking it, there gushed out waters, makes it to be such a speckled kind of Thebaick marble: *Est una grosse pierre massive droite de même grain & de la couleur, qu'est la pierre Thebaïque.*

<sup>t</sup> The compass of the *Scapus* of this column at *Alexandria*, near the *Torus*, is XXIV *En*, *l'île* c: the compass of the *Scapus* of those at *Rome*, is XV *English* feet, and three inches. By these proportions, and by those rules which are expressed in *Petrusius*, and in other books of architecture, the ingenious reader may compute the true dimensions of those before the *Panttheon*, and of this at *Alexandria*; being, in my calculation, the most magnificent column that ever was made, of one entire stone.

<sup>t</sup> *Pervenitur in elegans cubiculum quadrangulum sex passus longum, & quatuor latum, quatuor vero vel VI orgyis altum, in quo marmor nigrum solidum in cistâ formam excisum invenimus XII pedes longum, V altum, & totidem latum, sine operculo.* *Bellon.* Ober. lib. 2. cap. 4.

<sup>t</sup> Les voyages de monsieur de Breves.

<sup>t</sup> 6 Feet

<sup>t</sup> 488

<sup>t</sup> 1000

<sup>t</sup> 2 Feet <sup>218</sup> In the reiteration of these numbers, if any shall be offended, either with the novelty or tediousness of expressing them so often, I must justify my self by the example of *Vlug Beg*, nephew to *Tamerlane* the great, (for so is his name, and not *Tamerlane*) and emperor of the *Moguls*, or *Tatars*, (whom we term amiss the *Tartars*.) For I find in his astronomical tables (the most accurate of any in the east) made about CC years since, the same course observed by him, when he writes of the *Græcians*, *Arabians*, *Persians*, and *Gelætan epocha's*; as also of those of *Cates* and *Turkistan*. He expresseth the numbers at large, as I have done, then in figures, such as we call *Arabian*, because we first learned these from them; but the *Arabians* themselves fetch them higher, acknowledging that they received this useful invention from the *Indians*; and therefore, from their authors, they name them *Indian figures*. Lastly, he renders them again in particular tables, which manner I judge worthy the imitation, in all such numbers as are radical, and of more than ordinary use. For if they be only twice expressed, if any difference shall happen by the neglect of scribers, or printers, it may often so fall out, that we shall not know which to make choice of; whereas if they be thrice expressed, it will be a rare chance but that two of them will agree; which two we may generally presume to be the truth.

<sup>t</sup> Jam vero ante annos propè mille, vates ille *Homerus* non cessavit minora corpora mortalium quam prisca conqueri. *Plin.*

<sup>t</sup> Nam genus hoc vivo jam decreverat *Homerus*.

<sup>t</sup> Terra malos homines nunc educat atque puerillos. *Juven.* Sat. 15.

<sup>t</sup> August. de civ. Dei. l. 15. cap. 9.

Vol. II.

8 G

my



**G**RAVES my own satisfaction, as to enter those wonderful grots, and compare his descriptions) I find the bodies entombed, some of them being as ancient as *Solinus* himself, no way to exceed the proportions of our times.

It may be justly questioned how this monument of *Cheops* could be brought hither, seeing it is an impossibility that by those narrow passages, before described, it should have entered. Wherefore we must imagine that by some *machina* it was raised and conveyed up without, before this oratory or chamber was finished, and the roof closed. The position of it is thus: it stands exactly in the meridian north and south, and is, as it were, equidistant from all sides of the chamber, except the east, from whence it is doubly remoter than from the west. Under it I found a little hollow space to have been dug away, and a large stone in the pavement removed, at the angle next adjoining to it: which *Sands* erroneously imagines to be a passage into some other compartment: dug away, no doubt, by the avarice of some, who might not improbably conjecture an hidden treasure to be repositied there. An expenceful prodigality, out of superstition used by the ancients, and with the same blind devotion taken up, and continued to this day in the East-Indies. And yet it seems by *Josephus's* relation, that by the wisest kings, in a time as clear and unclouded as any, it was put in practice, who thus describes the funeral of king *David*: *His son Solomon buried him magnificently in Jerusalem, who, besides the usual solemnities at the funerals of kings, brought into his monument very great riches, the multitude of which we may easily collect by that which shall be spoken. For thirteen hundred years after, Hyrcanus the high-priest, being besieged by Antiochus, surnamed Pius, the son of Demetrius, and being willing to give money to raise the siege, and to lead away his army, not knowing where to procure it, he opened one of the vaults of the sepulchre of David, and took thence three thousand talents; part whereof being given to Antiochus, he freed himself from the danger of the siege, as we have elsewhere declared. And again, after many years, king Herod opened another vault, took out a great quantity of money; yet neither of them came to the coffins of the kings; for they were with much art hid under ground, that they might not be found by such as entered into the sepulchre.*

The ingenious reader will excuse my curiosity, if before I conclude my descrip-

tion of this Pyramid, I pretermitt not any thing within, of how light a consequence soever. This made me take notice of two inlets, or spaces, in the south and north sides of this chamber, just opposite to one another; that on the north was in breadth seven hundred of a thousand parts the *English* foot, in depth four hundred of a thousand parts; evenly cut, and running in a straight line six feet, and farther, into the thickness of the wall. That on the south is larger, and somewhat round, not so long as the former, by the blackness within, it seems to have been a receptacle for the burning of lamps. *T. Livius Bursetinus*, would gladly have believed, that it had been an hearth for one of those eternal lamps, such as have been found in *Tulliola's* tomb in *Italy*; and, if *Camden* be not misinformed, in *Englana* in the *cryptoporticus* of *Fl. Valerius Constantius*, father to *Constantine* the great, dedicated to the urns and ashes of the dead; but I imagine the invention not to be so ancient as this Pyramid. However, certainly a noble invention; and therefore pity it is it should have been smothered by the negligence of writers, as with a damp. How much better might *Pliny*, if he knew the composition of it, have described it, than he hath done the *linum albestinum*, a sort of linen spun out of the veins, as some suppose, of the *Caristian*, or *Cyprian* stone? (which in my travels I have often seen:) tho' *Salmastius*<sup>1</sup>, with more probability, contends the true *albestinum* to be the *linum vivum*, or *linum Indicum*; in the folds and wreaths of which, they enclosed the dead body of the prince; (for, saith *Pliny*, *Regum Indæ funebres tunice*: and no wonder, seeing not long after he adds, *Æquat pretia excellentium margaritarum*) committing it to the fire and flames till it were consumed to ashes: while in the same flames this shroud of linen, as if it had only been bathed and washed (to allude to his expression) by the fire, became more white and refined. Surely a rare and commendable piece of skill, which *Pancirollus* justly reckons among the *deperdita*; but infinitely inferior, either in respect of art or use, unto the former. And thus I have finished my description of all the inner parts of this Pyramid: in which I could neither borrow light to conduct me from the ancients; nor receive any manuduction from the uncertain informations of modern travellers, in those dark and hidden paths. We are now come abroad into the light and sun, where I found my janizary, and

<sup>c</sup> *Sands's* travels.

<sup>d</sup> *Jos. lib. 7. ant. Judaic. cap. 12.* "Εταψε δ' αὐτῷ, ὁ πῦρ καταβῆναι ἐν ἱεροσολύμοις διαφανέως, τὰς ἀλλὰ οἷς ἐπὶ τοῖς ἑσπέραις ἀπασιν, καὶ αὐτὸ πάλιν πάλιν καὶ αὐθιὰς ἐμφανίζοντα, &c.

<sup>e</sup> *Camden Brit. ubi agit de Brigantibus.*

<sup>f</sup> *Plin. lib. 18. cap. 1.*

<sup>g</sup> *Salmastii exercit. Plinian.*

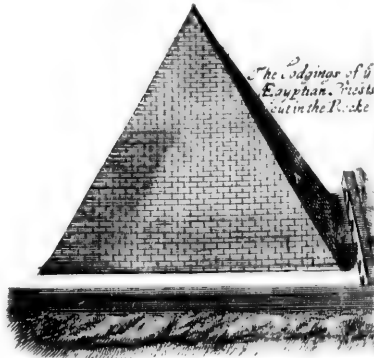
<sup>h</sup> *Panciroli. Titl. 4. rerum deperditarum.*

an *English* captain, a little impatient to have waited above three hours without, in expectation of my return, who imagined what they understood not, to be an impatient and vain curiosity.

<sup>1</sup> That I and my company should have continued so many hours in the Pyramid, and live (whereas we found no inconvenience) was much wondered at by Dr. Harvey, his majesty's learned physician: for, said he, seeing we never breathe the same air twice, but still new air is requisite to a new respiration, (the *juculus albidus* of it being spent in every expiration) it could not be but by long breathing we should have spent the aliment of that small stock of air within, and have been stifled: unless there were some secret tunnels conveying it to the top of the Pyramid, whereby it might pass out, and make way for fresh air to come in, at the entrance below. To which I returned him this answer: That it might be doubted whether the same numerical air could not be breathed more than once; and whether the *juculus*, and aliment of it, could be spent in one single respiration: Seeing those *urinatrices*, or divers under water, for sponges in the *Mediterranean* sea, and those for pearls in the *sinus Arabicus*, and *Persicus*, continuing above half an hour under water, mult needs often breathe in and out the same air. He gave me an ingenious answer, That they did it by help of sponges filled with oil, which still corrected and fed this air; the which oil being once evaporated, they were able to continue no longer, but must ascend up, or die. An experiment most certain and true. Wherefore I gave him this second answer: That the fuliginous air we breathed out in the Pyramid, might pass thorough those galleries we came up, and so thorough the straight neck, or entrance, leading into the Pyramid, and by the same fresh air might enter in, and come up to us. Which I illustrated with this similitude: As at the straits of *Gibraltar*, the sea is reported by some to enter in on *Europe* side, and to pass out on *Africa* side; so in this straight passage, being not much above three feet broad, on the one side air might pass out, and at the other side fresh air might enter in. And this might no more mix with the former air, than the *Rhodanus*, as *Pomponius Mela*, and some others report, passing through the *lacus Lemanus*, or lake of *Geneva*, doth mix and incorporate with the water of the lake. For as for any *tubuli*, to let out the fuliginous air at the top of the Pyramid, none could be discovered within, or without. He replied, They might be so small, as that they could not easily be discerned, and yet might be sufficient to make way for the air, being a thin and subtle body. To which I answered, That the less they were the sooner they would be obstructed with those tempests of sands, to which these deserts are frequently exposed: and therefore the narrow entrance into the Pyramid, is often so choked up with drifts of sand, that there is no entrance into it: wherefore we hire *Moor*s to remove them, and open the passage, before we can enter into the Pyramid, with which he rested satisfied. But I could not so easily be satisfied with that received opinion, That at the straits of *Gibraltar*, the sea enters in at the one side, and at the same time passes out at the other. For besides that, in twice passing those straits I could observe no such thing, but only an inlet, without any outlet of the sea: I enquired of a captain of a ship, being captain of one of the six that I was then in company with, and an understanding man, who had often passed that way with the pirates of *Algier*, whether ever he observed any outlet of the sea on *Africa* side? He answered, No. Being asked, Why then the pirates went out into the *Atlantic* sea on *Africa* side, if it were not, as the opinion is, to make use of the current? He answered, It was rather to secure themselves from being surprised by the Christians, who had near the mouth of the straits the port of *Gibraltar*, on the other side, to harbour in. Wherefore, when I consider with my self the great draught of waters that enter at this strait, and the swift current of waters which pass out of the *Pontus Euxinus*, by the *Bosphorus Thracicus*, into the *Mediterranean* sea, (both which I have seen) besides the many rivers that fall into it, and have no visible passage out: I cannot conceive, but that the *Mediterranean* sea, or *Urinal* (as the *Arabians* call it, from its figure) must long since have been filled up, and swelling higher, have drowned the plains of *Egypt*; which it hath never done. Wherefore I imagine it to be no absurdity in philosophy, to say that the earth is tubulous, and that there is a large passage under ground, from one sea to another. Which being granted, we may easily thence apprehend the reason why the *Mediterranean* sea rises no higher, notwithstanding the fall into it of so many waters; and also know the reason why the *Caspian* sea, tho' it hath not, in appearance, any commerce with other seas, continues salt, (for so it is, *whenever* *Policletus*, in *Strabo*, says to the contrary) and swells not over its banks, notwithstanding the fall of the great river *Volga*, and of others, into it. That which gave me occasion of entering into the speculation was this: In the longitude of eleven degrees, and latitude of forty one degrees, having borrowed the tackling of six ships, and in a calm day founded with a plummet of almost twenty pounds weight, carefully steering the boat, and keeping the plummet in a just perpendicular, at a thousand forty five *English* fathoms; that is, at above an *English* mile and a quarter in depth, I could find no land, or bottom.

## A Description of the Second PYRAMID.

## The second Pyramid.



**G**REAVES FROM the first Pyramid we went to the second, being scarce distant the flight of an arrow. By the way I observed, on the west-side of the first, the ruins of a pile of building, all of square and polished stone; such as <sup>a</sup>Pliny calls *bafaltes*, and describes to be, *ferrei coloris, & duritia*: of an iron colour and hardness: formerly, it may be, some habitation of the priests, or some monument of the dead. To the right hand of this, tending to the south, stands this second Pyramid; of which, besides the miracle, the ancient and modern writers have delivered little. <sup>b</sup>Herodotus relates, that *Cephren*, in imitation of his brother *Cheops*, built this; but that he fell short in respect of the magnitude. For (saith he) we have measured them. It were to be wished for fuller satisfaction of the reader, he had expressed the quantity, and also the manner how he took his measure. He adds, *It hath no subterraneous structures, neither is the Nilus by a channel derived into it, as in the former.* <sup>c</sup>Diodorus somewhat more particularly describes it thus: That for the architecture it is like unto the former, but much inferior to it in respect of magnitude; each side of the basis contains a stadium in length. The same measure, by <sup>d</sup>Strabo, is assigned to the altitude: Each of these, [discouring of the first and second Pyramids] is a fur-

long in height. That is, to comment on their words, of Grecian feet six hundred, of Roman six hundred twenty five: So that by the computation of Diodorus, each side should want an hundred Grecian feet of the former Pyramid. <sup>e</sup>Pliny makes the difference to be greater, for assigning eight hundred eighty three feet to the former, he allows to the side of the basis of this, but seven hundred thirty seven. By my observation, the stones are of colour white, nothing so great and vast as those of the first and fairest Pyramid; the sides rise not with degrees like that, but are all of them plain and smooth; the whole fabrick (except where it is opposed to the south) seeming very entire, free from any deformed ruptures or breaches. The height of it, taken by as deliberate a conjecture as I could make (which it was easy to do by reason of the nearness of this, and the former, being both upon the same plain) is not inferior to it; and therefore Strabo hath rightly judged them to be equal. The sides also of the basis of both are alike; as, besides the authority of <sup>f</sup>Strabo, the Venetian doctor assured me, who measured it with a line. There is no entry leading into it, and therefore what may be within, whether such spaces and compartments, as I observed in the former, or whether different, or none, I must leave to the conjecture of travellers, and to the discovery of after-times.

This Pyramid is bounded on the north and west-sides, with two very stately and elaborate pieces; which I do not so much admire, as that by all writers they have been pretermitted about thirty feet in depth, and more than a thousand and four hundred in length, out of the hard rock, these buildings have been cut in a perpendicular, and squared by the chissel, as I suppose, for lodgings of the priests. They run along at a convenient distance, parallel to the two sides we mentioned of this Pyramid, meeting in a right angle, and making a very fair and graceful prospect. The entrance into them is by square openings, hewn out of the rock, much of the same bigness with those I described in the first Pyramid. Whether these were symbolical (as the theology of the Egyptians consisted much in mysterious figures) and the depresso and lowness of these, were to teach the priests humility; and the squareness and evenness of them, an uniform and re-

<sup>a</sup> Plin. l. 35. cap. 7.

<sup>b</sup> Herodot. lib. 2.

<sup>c</sup> Diodor. Sic. lib. 1. Τῇ δὲ, κατὰ τὸν σχῆμα χειρὶς

παραλλήλων τῇ προσηρμένῃ, τὴν δὲ μετὰ πάλιν ἀντιπαραρῶν ὡς αἰ τὴν ἐν τῇ βάσει πλοῦτος ἔστιν ὡς ἐνδομῶν.

<sup>d</sup> Εἰς τὴν ἐνδομῶν τὸ ὄψος. Strabo, lib. 17.

<sup>e</sup> Plin. l. 36. cap. 12. Alterius intervalla singula per quatuor angulos pares 1300000 [pedes] comprehendunt.

<sup>f</sup> Strabo, l. 7.



**GREAVES** *dorus* I shall adjoin the testimony of <sup>a</sup> *Strabo*: *Farther, upon a higher rise of the hill, is the third (Pyramid) much less than the two former, but built with a greater expence: For almost from the foundation of it to the middle, it consists of black stone, with which they make mortars, brought from the remotest mountains of Æthiopia, which being hard, and not easy to be wrought, hath made the work the more costly.* <sup>d</sup> *Pliny* also, not as a spectator, and eye-witness, as the former, but as an historian writes thus: *The third (Pyramid) is less than the former we mentioned, but much more beautiful: it is erected with Æthiopick marble, and is three hundred sixty three feet between the angles. And this is all that hath been preserved of the ancients concerning this Pyramid. Amongst modern writers, none deserve to be placed before Bellonius, or rather P. Gillius: For* <sup>e</sup> *Thuanus* makes the other to have been a plagiarist, and to have published in his own name the observations of P. Gillius: a man very curious and inquisitive after truth, as appears by his topography of Constantinople, and his *Bosphorus Thracius*, to whom Bellonius served as an amanuensis. *The third Pyramid is much less than the former two, but it is a third part greater than that which is at Rome, near the mons Testaceus, as you pass to St. Paul's in the Ostian way. It is still perfect, and no more corrupted than as if it had been newly built: For it is made of a kind of marble, called basaltas, or Æthiopick marble, harder than iron it self.*

It will be in vain to repeat the traditions and descriptions of several others: All which, by a kind of confederacy, agree in the same tale for the substance, only differing in some circumstances. So that I shrewdly suspect, that *Diodorus* hath borrowed most of his relation from *Herodotus*; and *Strabo* and *Pliny* from *Diodorus*, or from them both; and the more learned moderns from them all: For else how can it be imagined, they should so constantly agree in that, which if my eyes, and memory, extremely fail me not, is most evidently false? And therefore I have a strong jealousy, that they never came near this third Pyramid; but that they did, as I have observed all travellers, in my time, in *Egypt* to do, fill themselves so full, and as it were so surfeit with the sight of the greater and fairer Pyramid, that they had

no appetite to be spectators of the rest, where they should only see the same miracle (for the Pyramids are all of the same figure) the farther they went, decreasing and presented in a less form: Or if they did view this, it was quasi per transennam; very perfunctorily, and slightly; and that through a false and coloured glass; for they have mistaken both in the quality of the stone, and colour of the Pyramid. I begin with <sup>b</sup> *Herodotus*, who by a notable piece of forgetfulness, if it be not a σφάλμα in the copies, makes the dimensions of each of the sides, in the basis of this, to be three hundred feet, and yet to want but twenty of the first Pyramid, to which he assigned before eight hundred feet, an impossibility in arithmetick: And therefore it will be no presumption to correct the place, and instead of ἑξήκοντα ποδῶν καλὰ δέσμευται, to write πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καλὰ δέσμευται. I know not how to palliate or excuse his other error, where he makes this Pyramid to be built as far as to the middle of it, with Æthiopick marble. If this sort of marble be ferrei coloris, as it is described by <sup>i</sup> *Pliny*, and granted by <sup>k</sup> *Diodorus* and <sup>l</sup> *Strabo*, both of these expressing the colour to be black, and the latter bringing it from the remotest mountains of Æthiopia, where the marble hath the same tincture and colour with the inhabitants; then can this relation of *Herodotus* no way be admitted: For the whole Pyramid seems to be of clear and white stone, somewhat choicer and brighter, than that in either of the two other Pyramids. And therefore I wonder that *Diodorus*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*; and amongst latter authors, *Bellonius*, *Gillius*, and several others, should have all followed *Herodotus*; when with a little pains and circumspection, they might have reformed his and their own error. It may perhaps be alledged in their defence, that they mean, the buildings within are erected with black and Æthiopick marble: And yet if this be granted, since there is no entrance leading into this, no more than is into the second Pyramid, what may be within, depends upon the incertainty of tradition or conjecture, both which are very fallible. Though it cannot be denied, but close by, on the east-side of it, there are the ruins of a pile of building, with a sad and dusky colour, much like that we described in passing to the second Pyramid, which might be the ground and occasion

<sup>a</sup> *Strabo*, l. 17. *Geog.*

<sup>c</sup> *Plin.* l. 36. c. 12. *Tertia minor prædicitur, sed multò spectatior, Æthi-*

*opici lapidebus assurgit CCCLXIII pedibus inter angulos.*

<sup>e</sup> *Thuan.* hist. l. 16. <sup>f</sup> *Bellon.* observ. l. 2.

<sup>g</sup> *c. 44. Tertia Pyramis duabus superioribus longè minor, tertia est autem parte major, ea quæ apud Testaceum*

*montem est Romæ, quæ ad D. Pauli eundem est, itinere Ostiensi. Adhuc integra est, nemagis rimis corrupta,*

*quàm si jam recens exstructa esset. Marmoris enim genere constat, quod Basaltas nuncupatur, vel lapis Æthi-*

*opicus, ipso ferre durior.*

<sup>h</sup> I have since conferred with an English captain, who having been four

times at Alexandria, and as often at the Pyramids, assures me that I am not mistaken.

<sup>i</sup> *Plin.* l. 36. c. 7. <sup>k</sup> *Diodor.* l. 1.

<sup>l</sup> *Strabo*, l. 17. *Geog.*



ors of the rest;  
 e the fame mira-  
 all of the fame  
 went, decreasing  
 rm: Or if they  
 per tranſcendiam;  
 ightly; and that  
 ured glaſs, for  
 in the quality of  
 the Pyramid. I  
 be not a *ſequi*  
 ſions of each  
 ſity, to be three  
 much but twenty  
 which he assigned  
 an impossibility  
 ore it will be in  
 e place, and in-  
 diſcal, to write  
 I know not how  
 her error, where  
 be built as far as  
*Athiopic* mar-  
 be *ferre coloris*,  
 uy, and granted  
 both of theſe  
 e black, and the  
 remotest moun-  
 the marble hath  
 out with the in-  
 elation of *Hero-*  
 For the whole  
 clear and whice  
 d brighter, than  
 other Pyramids.  
 At *Diodorus*, *Strabo*  
 latter authors,  
 al others, ſhould  
 ys; with a  
 ion, they might  
 own error. It  
 in their defence,  
 dings within are  
*Athiopic* marble:  
 l, ſince there is  
 is, no more than  
 d, what may be  
 e uncertainty of  
 both which are  
 cannot be denied,  
 ſide of it, with  
 building, with a  
 ch like that we  
 econd Pyramid,  
 and and occaſion

of this error. I cannot excuse the antients, but *Bellonius*, or *Gillius*, (for it is no matter which of them owns the relation, when both of them have erred) are far more inexcusable: Because it might have been expected from them, what *Livy* supposes, *Novi semper scriptores, aut in rebus certius aliquid allaturus se, aut scribendi arte rudem vetustatem superaturos credunt*. Whereas these on the contrary, have depraved what hath been in this particular, with truth delivered by the ancients. For whereas *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, equal the side of the *basis* to three hundred feet, and *Pliny* extends it to three hundred sixty three, they only make it a third part greater than the Pyramid at *Rome*, of *C. Cassius*, near the *mons Testaceus*: So that either they have much enlarged that at *Rome*, or shrunk and contracted this. For the Pyramid at *Rome*, exactly measured on that side which stands within the city, is compleatly seventy eight feet *English* in breadth; to which if we add a third part of it, the result will be an hundred and four; which should be equal to this *Egyptian* Pyramid, in the notion and acceptance of *Bellonius*. An unpardonable oversight, no less than two hundred feet, in a very little more than three hundred. For so much, besides the authority of *Herodotus*, and *Diodorus*, before cited, I take the side of this Pyramid to be, and the altitude to have much the same proportion.

I would gladly have seen in this, the name of *Mycerinus*, the founder of it.

engraven, as \* *Diodorus* mentions: Or that other inscription in the first, whereof *Herodotus* procured the interpretation: But both have been defaced by time. His words are these: \* *In the Pyramid there are Egyptian characters inscribed, which shew how much was expended upon the workmen, in radishes, onions, and garlick; which an interpreter (as I well remember) said, was the sum of a thousand and six hundred talents of silver; which if it be so, how much it is credible was spent in iron, and in meat, and in clothes for the labourers?* Hereby I might have known what to determine of the ancient *Egyptian* letters: I mean not the sacred ones (for those were all symbolical, expressing the abstractest notions of the mind, by visible similitudes of birds and beasts, or by representations of some other familiar objects) but those used in civil affairs. By such sculptures, which I have seen in gems found at *Alexandria*, and amongst the Mummies, I can no way subscribe to the assertion of *Kircherus*, tho' an able man, who in his *Prodromus Coptus*, contends, that the present *Egyptian* or *Coptic* character (which certainly is only a corruption and distortion of the *Greek*) is the same with that of the ancient *Egyptians*. But surely the *Egyptian* character is of a much higher descent: And if we believe *Tacitus* (whose opinion is very probable) they were the first inventors of letters; tho' some ascribe the honour of this invention to the *Phenicians*.

<sup>m</sup> T. Liv. lib. 1.

<sup>a</sup> Diodor. l. 1.

<sup>α</sup> T. Liv. lib. 1.      <sup>β</sup> Diodor. I. 1.      <sup>γ</sup> Herodot. I. 2. Σισύμβηται δὲ διὰ γραμμῶν Αἰγυπτίαν ἐν τῇ Περσίᾳ, ὅση ἔστι σισυμβή, καὶ κρίματι, καὶ σκόρπον ἀντισυμβή τοῖς ἠγροῦσιν, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ ἐν μιᾷ-  
 νῆα πρὸς ἑκατόντα καὶ ἑκατομμύριον πρὸς γραμμῶν ἑξῆς, ἑκατόντα καὶ ἑξῆς πέντε ἀρῶντα τιτλήουσι, &c.

<sup>9</sup> *Phœnices primi, famæ si creditur, ausi,*

*Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.*

*Nondum flumineas Memphis contexere biblos.*

¶ *Primi per figuras animalium Aegyptii sensus mentis effingebant: Et antiquissima monumenta memoriae bu-  
manae impressa saxis cernuntur: Et literarum semet imitatores peribident. Inde Phœnicas, quia mari præ-  
pollabant, intulisse Græciæ, gloriamque adeptos, tanquam repererunt, quæ acceperant. Tacit. 2. lib. annal.*

*Sculptaque servabant magicas animalia linguas.*

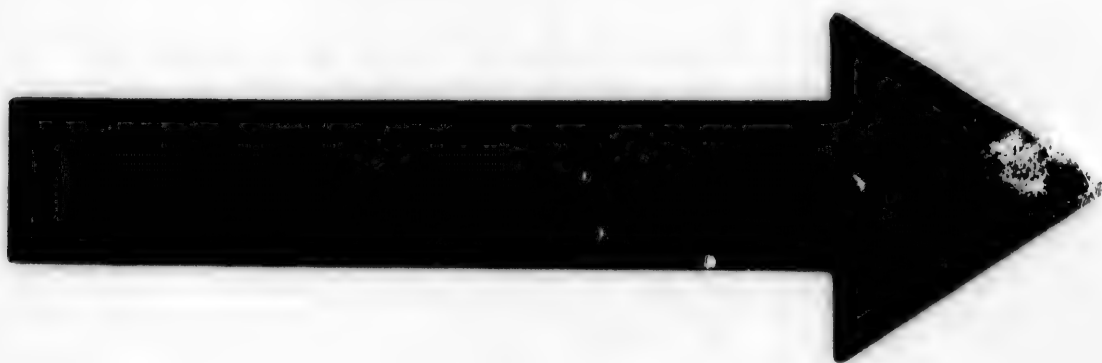
Lucan

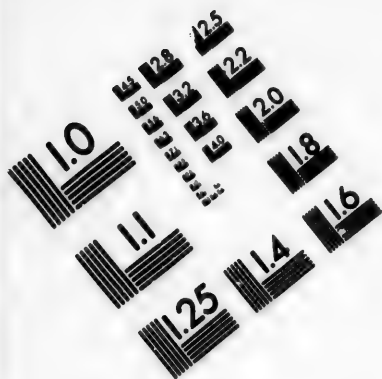
ita memoria bu

*Of the rest of the PYRAMIDS in the Lybian Desert.*

I Have done with these three Pyramids, each of them being very remarkable, and the two first reckoned amongst the miracles of the world. The rest in the *Libyan* desert lying scattered here and there, are (excepting one of them) but lesser copies, and as it were models of these: And therefore I shall neither much trouble my self, nor the reader, with the description of them. Tho' to speak the truth, did not the three first standing so near together, obscure the lustre of the rest, which lie far scattered, some of them were very considerable. And therefore I cannot but tax the omission of the ancients, and the inadvertency of all modern writers and travellers.

lers, who with too much supineness have neglected the description of one of them; which in my judgment is as worthy of memory, and as near a miracle, as any of those three which I have mentioned. And this stands from these south and by west, at twenty miles distance, more within the sandy desert, upon a rocky level like these, and not far from the village whence we enter the *Mummies*. This, as the *Venetian* doctor assured me, and as I could judge by conjecture at a distance, hath the same dimensions that the first and fairest of these; hath graduations, or ascents without, and of the same colour like that, (but more decay'd, especially at the top) and an en-





1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0  
4.5  
5.0  
5.6  
6.3  
7.1  
8.0  
9.0  
10.0  
11.2  
12.5  
14.0  
16.0  
18.0  
20.0  
22.5  
25.0  
28.0  
31.5  
36.0  
40.0  
45.0  
50.0  
56.0  
63.0  
71.0  
80.0  
90.0  
100.0

10  
0.1  
0.2  
0.3  
0.5  
0.7  
1.0  
1.5  
2.0  
3.0  
5.0  
10.0  
20.0  
50.0  
100.0





by the river (Nilus.) Others imagine, that bridges were made with brick: Which, the work being ended, were distributed into private houses. For they conceive, that the Nilus being much lower, could not come to wash them (away.) If I may assume the liberty of a traveller, I imagine, that they were erected, neither as *Herodotus* describes, nor as *Diodorus* reports, nor as *Pliny* relates; but that first they made a large and spacious tower in the midst, reaching to the top; to the sides of this tower, I conceive, the rest of the building to have been applied, piece after piece, like so many buttresses, or supporters, still lessening in height, till at last, they came to the lowermost degree. A difficult piece of building, taken in the best and easiest projection: And therefore it is no wonder, if it were not often imitated by the ancients, and no where expressed or commended, by the great master of architecture *Vitruvius*. Yet surely, if we judge of things by the events, and if we reflect upon the intention of monuments, which are raised by the living to perpetuate the memory of the dead, then is this as commendable a way as any. And there-

fore we see at *Rome*, that tho' by the revolution of so many ages, the *Mausoleum of Augustus* be almost decayed, and the *Septizonium of Severus* be utterly lost, both intended for lasting and stately sepulchres; yet the Pyramid of *C. Cæstius* stands fair, and almost entire: Which is no more to be compared, either for the vastness of the stones, or the whole bulk and fabrick of it, with these, than are the limbs and body of a dwarf, to the dimensions of a giant, or some large *Colossus*.

I have done with the work, but the artificers deserve not to be pretermitted; concerning whom, the observation of *Diodorus* is as true, as it is boldly delivered by him. *It is confessed, that these works (speaking of the Pyramids) far excel the rest in Ægypt, not only in the massiness of the structures, and in the expences, but also in the industry (and skill) of the artificers. The Egyptians think the architects are more to be admired than the kings who were at the expence: For they by their abilities and study, these by their wealth received by inheritance, and by the labours of others erected them.*

\* Admitting this supposition, we may easily apprehend, how those huge stones might, by engines, be raised in a perpendicular, as the work rose, with less difficulty and expence, than either in a slope or traverse line, upon banks of nitre, or bridges of brick, according to the traditions of *Diodorus* and *Pliny*: Both which must have been of a stupendous and almost incredible height. *Suetonius* in *Augusto*. *Spartianus* in *Severo*.

† *Diodor. Sic. l. 1.* Ὁμοιωμένοι τὴν οὐρανὸν τὰ ἔργα ποιεῖν οἱ παῖδες Αἰγύπτου ὁ μὲν τὸ βάρος τῆς κατασκευασμένης καὶ τὰς ἀπορίας, ἄλλα καὶ τὴν πολυτέλειαν τῆς ἱεραρχίας. καὶ οὗτοι διὰ θαυμάσιον μᾶλλον τὰς ἀρχαίων τῶν ἑλλήνων τὸν βασιλεὺς τοὺς παρασκευάζοντες αὐτοὺς εἰς τὰ αὐτὰ χρησάμενοι. τὰς μὲν τῶν ἑλλήνων φύσεις ἐκ τῶν φιλομαγείων, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων πλουσίαν ἐκ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων κυρίας ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀρχαῖς τῶν προτέρων.

## THE CONCLUSION.

AND thus much of the *Sciography*, or of the artificial and architectural part: I shall shut up all with one observation in nature, for the recreation of the reader, recited by *Strabo*, in these words: \* *We ought not to omit one of the strange things seen by us at the Pyramids: Some heaps of stone, being fragments betwixt off, lie before the Pyramids; amongst these are found little stones, some in the similitude and bigness of lentils, some as of grains of barley, which appear half unscaled: They report these are some relics of the provisions which were given to the workmen, and have been petrified; which seems probable enough.*

These, if there were ever any such, are either consumed by time, or scattered by the winds, or buried with those tempests of sand, to which the deserts are perpetually exposed: But *Diodorus*, who not long pre-

ceded him, was not so curious as to deliver this relation.—And were not *Strabo* a writer of much gravity and judgment, I should suspect that these petrified grains (tho' I know such petrefactions to be no impossibility in nature: For I have seen, at *Venice*, the bones and flesh of a man, and the whole head, except the teeth, entirely transmuted into stone: And at *Rome*, clear conduit-water, by long standing in aqueducts, hath been turned into perfect alabaster) are like those loaves of bread, which are reported to be found by the *Red Sea*, converted into stone, and by the inhabitants supposed to be some of the bread the *Israelites* left behind them, when they passed over for fear of *Pharaoh*. They are sold at *Grand Cairo*, handsomely made up, in the manner of the bread of these times; which is enough to discover the imposture. For

\* Ἐὰν τι τῶν ὁρατῶν ἐν ἡμῶν εἰς ταύτας παραβῇ ὡς ἄντι παρακίτων. Ἐὰν γὰρ τῶν Ἀλίουτῶν σαρὶς τοῦ περὶ τὸν πυραμίδων κτλ. ἐν ταύταις δ' ὁρίσται, ψήματα καὶ τυτὰ καὶ μεγάλῃ φασκιδῇ σῆμα, καὶ αἱ αὐτῶν σπέρματα ἐν τῇ ἱεροποιίᾳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀπολιθωμένων λείψανων τῶν τῶν ἱερέων τροφῆς ὡς ἰσχυρῶς δὲ. *Strabo* l. 17. *Geog.*

GREAVES the scripture makes them to have been unleavened cakes: <sup>b</sup> *They baked unleavened cakes of the dough which they brought forth out of Egypt.* Or else Strabo's relation may be like the tradition of the rising of dead mens bones every <sup>c</sup> year, in *Egypt*: A thing superstitiously believed by the Christians; and by the priests, either out of ignorance, or policy, maintained as an argument of the resurrection. The possibility and truth of it, *Metrophanes, the patriarch of Alexandria*, thought (but very illogically) might be proved out of the prophet *Esay*, <sup>d</sup> *And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcases*

*of the men that have transgressed against me, for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh.*

But I have digressed too far. The confutation of these, and the description of the *Mummies*, or of the rest of the *Egyptian* sepulchres (for from thence comes the matter of this their supposed resurrection) and that infinite mass, and variety of hieroglyphicks, which I have either seen there, or bought, or transcribed elsewhere, may be the <sup>e</sup> argument of another discourse.

<sup>b</sup> Exod. xii. 39.

<sup>c</sup> *Sands* in his travels writes, that they are seen to rise on Good-Friday. A *Frenchman*, at *Grand Cairo*, who had been present at the resurrection, shewed me an arm which he brought from thence; the flesh shrivelled, and dried like that of the *Mummies*. He observed the miracle to have been always behind him; once casually looking back, he discovered some bones carried privately by an *Egyptian*, under his vest, whereby he understood the mystery.

<sup>d</sup> *Esay* lvi. 24.

<sup>e</sup> An argument intended by me, and for which I made a collection of several antiquities in my travels abroad; but these (and would only these!) have unfortunately perished at home, amidst the sad distractions of the time.

A

# DISCOURSE

OF THE

## ROMAN FOOT

AND

## DENARIUS:

From whence, as from two Principles, the

## MEASURES and WEIGHTS

Used by the ANCIENTS, may be deduced.

---

By JOHN GREAVES, *Professor of Astronomy*  
in the University of Oxford.

---

Σπουδαλέον ὅπως ὁρίσθῃσι καλῶς αἱ ἀρχαί. μεγάλην γὰρ ἔχουσι βοτῆν  
πρὸς ἐπόμενα.

---

*Una fides, pondus, mensura, moneta sit una,  
Et status illæsus totius orbis erit.*

Budelius de monetis.

To his truly noble and learned FRIEND,

JOHN SELDEN, Esq;

Burgess of the University of OXFORD,

In the Honourable HOUSE of COMMONS.

SIR,

**T**HAT I should present you, who have so honourably deserved of antiquity, and of your country; and, if I may add mine own obligations, in particular of me, with so small a retribution as a Roman foot, and denarius, may seem more proportionable to mine abilities, than to the eminency of your place and worth. But you, who, to the honour of your profession, have joined the wisdom of the ancients, and justly have merited this elogy,

— Anglorum gloria gentis

Seldenus.

An elogy long since given you by a man, who is deservedly esteemed, πολλῶν ἀνδρῶν ἄλκιον, the learned Hugo Grotius; you are best able to judge of what importance these two are, in the discovery of the weights and measures used by the ancients.

And first, for measures, the  $\mu\omicron\nu\nu$  or cubit of the sanctuary, in the scriptures, Josephus, and the Rabbins: The  $\alpha\iota\upsilon\sigma\tau\iota\lambda\iota\omicron\varsigma$ , and  $\beta\alpha\upsilon\lambda\omicron\nu\iota\omicron\varsigma$   $\pi\acute{\omicron}\lambda\upsilon\varsigma$ , in Herodotus (the former equal to that of Samos: The latter mis-rendered by Pliny and Solinus, pes Babylonius:) The  $\pi\alpha\epsilon\gamma\sigma\alpha\gamma\iota\varsigma$   $\pi\alpha\gamma\sigma\alpha\kappa\omicron\varsigma$ , in Herodotus, containing xxx.  $\sigma\alpha\delta\iota\alpha$ s, in Strabo, sometimes lx. sometimes xl., and sometimes xxx. (but in Hesychius,  $\delta$   $\pi\alpha\epsilon\gamma\sigma\alpha\gamma\iota\varsigma$   $\chi\alpha\epsilon\iota$   $\mu\iota\lambda\iota\alpha$   $\tau\epsilon\tau\tau\alpha\mu\iota\alpha$ ; and in Abulfecia, three miles: With whom, and with the Persians, to this day it is called the  $\sigma$   $\sigma\alpha\tau\alpha\chi$ ) the  $\chi\alpha\iota\tau\omicron\nu$   $\alpha\iota\upsilon\sigma\tau\iota\lambda\iota\omicron\varsigma$  in Herodotus, Artemidorus, and Strabo: The  $\pi\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$   $\beta\alpha\sigma\iota\lambda\iota\kappa\omicron\varsigma$ , καὶ  $\phi\iota\lambda\iota\sigma\iota\gamma\epsilon\iota\omicron\varsigma$ , in Hero: The pes Ptolemaicus and Drusianus, in Hyginus: Besides infinite others depending upon the proportions of some of these: I say, these cannot, after the destruction of those ancient monarchies and republics, any other way be restored, than from such monuments, as, by divine Providence, have escaped the bands of ruin, and continued to these later ages. For were it not that the pes Romanus, or monetalis, as Hyginus terms it, were still extant in Rome, on the monument of Cosutius, and of Tit. Statilius Vol. Aper (for these two columns, the one with the inscription  $\mu\omicron\alpha$ .  $\Theta$ . mentioned by Marlianus and

Phillander: The other with  $\mu\omicron\alpha$ .  $\iota\beta$ . seen by the same Phillander, are both lost) we might utterly despair of knowing the measures of the Hebrews, Babylonians, Persians, Egyptians, Grecians, Romans, and of all others described in classical authors; who could not transmit to posterity the individual measures themselves, but only the proportions they respectively had to one another: which proportions being mere habitudes, cannot, as mathematicians observe, be reduced to the measures of these times, unless either some of the  $\chi\alpha\iota\tau\omicron\nu$   $\alpha\iota\upsilon\sigma\tau\iota\lambda\iota\omicron\varsigma$  themselves were existent; or else exact copies taken from the originals were derived to us.

In like manner it is for weights, the  $\sigma\kappa\alpha$  the  $\sigma\kappa\kappa$  the  $\sigma\kappa\kappa$  of the Hebrews, or  $\alpha\gamma\epsilon\lambda\omicron\varsigma$  of the Chaldeans, which Aruck renders by four  $\square\prime\prime\prime\prime$  zuzim; that is, four denarii (from whence the Persian  $\sigma\iota\gamma\lambda\omicron\varsigma$ , in Xenophon, and Hesychius, may have received its denomination: the  $\tau\alpha\lambda\alpha\iota\omicron\nu$   $\beta\alpha\varsigma\upsilon\lambda\omicron\nu\iota\omicron\varsigma$ , containing seven thousand Attick Drachms; the  $\tau\alpha\lambda\alpha\iota\omicron\nu$   $\alpha\iota\gamma\upsilon\alpha\iota\omicron\nu$  ten thousand; the  $\tau\alpha\lambda\alpha\iota\omicron\nu$   $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\gamma\omicron\nu$  fifteen hundred; the  $\tau\alpha\lambda\alpha\iota\omicron\nu$   $\alpha\sigma\iota\kappa\omicron\nu$  six thousand, all mentioned by Julius Pollux; the talentum Egyptium, in Varro, containing eighty pondo, or pounds; the talentum Euboicum in Festus four thousand denarii: these, with infinite others, both mensuræ and pondera, whether considered as medica, or georgica, or veterinaria, cannot in our times be restored, but only by such weights of the ancients as are still extant; that is, either by the denarius of the Romans, or  $\delta\epsilon\gamma\chi\mu\iota$  of the Grecians, or by the congius of Vespasian, or by the libræ, and uncie Romanæ, and the like, that have been preserved by antiquaries.

Seeing therefore the denarius is of as great moment for the discovery of weights, as the Roman foot for the knowledge of measures, I have taken these two, as two irrefragable principles, from whence the rest used by the ancients may be deduced. And because the denarius may be considered in a double respect, either as nummus, or as pondus: The first acceptance conducing to the valuation of coins, the second to the certainty of weights: It was

\* The *farfub*, with the ancients and moderns, contains three miles. *Abulf. Geog. MS.*

therefore necessary that both the weight, and valuation of the denarius, should be exactly known. To which purpose, in Italy, I examined with a balance (the scale of which the eighth part of a grain would sensibly turn) many hundred fair denarii, both consulars and caesareis, as also quinarii, or victoriat in silver; several aurei of the former and later emperors; besides the original standard of the congius, placed by Vespasian in the Capitol; and many unciae, and librae, in brass. From whence I collected the weight of the denarius, consularis, and caesareus; that to be the seventh part of the Roman ounce, as Celsus, Scribonius Largus, and Pliny, rightly describe; and this to be sometimes the eighth part, and sometimes the seventh, but most frequently in a middle proportion betwixt eight and seven, till Severus's and Gordianus's times; under whom, and the succeeding emperors, it recovered the weight of the denarius consularis; but lost much of its fineness by the mixture of alloy.

With these denarii, for the greater certainty, I compared such Grecian coins (especially Athenian) as I had either seen in choice cabinets, or bought of mine own; and those were  $\pi\rho\omega\tau\alpha$ , or  $\sigma\alpha\lambda\upsilon\varsigma$ , absolutely taken; which, as Julius Pollux, and Helychius, out of Polemarchus testify, weighed two drachms: The  $\tau\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\delta\epsilon\sigma\chi\mu\alpha$ , or  $\tau\epsilon\tau\epsilon\sigma\chi\mu\alpha$ , or  $\sigma\alpha\lambda\upsilon\varsigma$   $\alpha\rho\gamma\upsilon\epsilon\iota\varsigma$ , four drachms: The  $\delta\epsilon\sigma\chi\mu\alpha$ , the  $\tau\epsilon\lambda\omega\zeta\epsilon\lambda\alpha$ , or as Pollux names them, the  $\eta\mu\iota\delta\epsilon\sigma\chi\mu\alpha$ , with several others.

By which comparison I first discovered, that howsoever the Romans, as Pliny, and A. Gellius expressly; Valerius, and Suetonius, by way of consequence, equal the denarius to the drachma: And tho' the Greeks, as Strabo, Cleopatra, Plutarch, Galen, Dio, and many more, equal the drachma to the denarius, speaking in a popular estimation, and as they vulgarly passed in way of commerce, yet if we shall put on the resolution of him in the comedy,

Oculatæ nostræ sunt manus, credunt quod vident:

We may evidently discern in the scale, the drachma Attica to be heavier than the denarius: And therefore all such writers of the ancients, as equal them, if we speak strictly of weight, and not of estimation, have been deceived; and consequently, all modern writers following their traditions, in discourses de

ponderibus, & de re nummariâ have erred.

But because it is not probable, that the ancients, both Greeks and Romans, should be deceived in their own coins, and in their own times; it occasioned me by observing the practice abroad of the  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\upsilon\sigma\tau\alpha\iota$  in exchanges, with whom the same specifical coins, in different states, pass with different estimations, to think of some means how I might reconcile the traditions of the Greeks and Romans, concerning the weight and valuation of the drachma Attica and denarius; notwithstanding the difference in the balance, of such as are now found at Athens, and at Rome.

And this drew from me that discourse which I have inserted at the end of this book: Of some directions to be observed in comparing the valuations of coins: Which may serve, not only to reconcile the Greek and Roman writers, but especially the traditions of Philo, Josephus, Epiphanius, St. Hierom, and Helychius; who make the Hebrew  $\pi\pi\omega$  shekel, equal to the Attick tetradrachm, whereas in the scale, which is the best judge of this controversy, I find them manifestly unequal; the Hebrew, or Samaritan shekel, being much less than the Attick tetradrachm.

But it may be questioned, Why after the labours of Portius, Budæus, Alciatus, Agricola, Montanus, Mariana, Budelius, Alcasar, Villalpandus, Jo. Scaliger, Capellus, Snellius, and of many other eminent men who have writ, either dedita opera, or  $\epsilon\iota\varsigma$   $\pi\alpha\rho\iota\delta\alpha$ , de ponderibus & mensuris, I should undertake any thing of this nature? My answer is, that observing in them so great a variety, and contradiction of opinions, I was willing to use mine own judgment, how mean soever, in giving my self private satisfaction. And tho' I intended this work as a  $\pi\alpha\rho\iota\delta\alpha$  to other employments; yet having, by the advantage of travelling in foreign parts, perused in Italy, Greece, and Egypt, more antiquities than I think any of them above-named single, I thought it would not be unacceptable, if I did, as it is the manner of travellers, publish at home, such observations and discoveries as I made abroad. The which I humbly dedicate to you, as out of a desire to express my gratitude for many noble favours, So out of an assurance, that if they receive your approbation, I need not to fear the censure of others.

Your most obliged friend, and humble servant,

JOHN GREAVES.



## Of the Roman FOOT.

GRAVES

**T**HAT the foot was the most received and usual measure amongst the Romans, as the cubit amongst the Jews, is a thing not controverted by any: for Polybius describing their *scutum*, makes it in breadth over the bend, two [Roman] feet and a half, and in length four feet: Or if it be of a greater sort, a palm more is to be added to this measure. And not long after, expressing the manner of their castrametation, or encamping, he writes: That as often as a place is designed for the camp, the *prætorium* (or general's lodging) takes up that part, which is fittest for prospect and direction. Setting therefore up the standard, where they intend to fix the *prætorium*, they so measure out the square about a standard that each side may be distant from it an hundred feet, and the whole area contain four *jugera*. In like manner *Cæsar*, in the description of his bridge over the Rhine, makes the binders, or transversary beams, to be *bipedales*. Tully also judges the quantity of the apparent diameter of the sun to be *pedalis*. And not to produce more authorities, Suetonius relates, That Augustus presented before the people of Rome, Lucius, a young gentleman, ascended, only for to shew that he was 17 two feet in height, seventeen pounds in weight, and of an immense voice. But concerning the precise quantity of this foot, there is not any one thing after which learned men have more enquired, or in which they do less agree: For *Budeus* equals it to the Paris foot; *Latinus Latinus*, *Matheus*, *Ursinus*, and others, deduce it from an ancient monument in the Vatican of *T. Statilius Vol. Aper*. *Portius Vicentinus*, *Philander*, *Georgius Agricola*, *Gbetaldus*, *Donatus*, and several others, contend the foot on *Cossutius* monument in Rome, to be the true Roman foot: *Martianus* describes it out of a porphyry column, with this inscription, *NOA. O. Lucas Pætus* defines it from some brass feet found amongst the *rudera* in Rome: *Villalpandus* derives it from the measure of the *congus*, placed by *Vespasian* in the Capitol (the original standard being still extant): *Willebrordus Snellius* equals it to the *pes Rhinlandicus*; and several others have had several fancies and conjectures. In such a variety and uncertainty of opinions, we have no more solid foundation of our inquiry, than either to have recourse to the writings

of the ancients, or else to such other monuments of antiquity, as having escaped the injury and calamity of time, have continued intire to this present age.

And first for the ancients: *Vitruvius* in his third book of architecture, gives this description of the Roman foot: *E cubito cum dempti sunt palmi duo, relinquitur pes quatuor palmorum. Palmus autem habet quatuor digitos, ita efficitur nti pes habeat xvi digitos, & totidem asses æreis denarius.* *Columella* shews, that it was the basis and foundation to all their other measures: *Modus omnis areæ pedali mensurâ comprehenditur, qui digitorum est xvi. Pes multiplicatus in passus, & adus, & climata, & jugera, & stadia, centuriæque, mox etiam in majora spatia procedit. Passus pedes habet v.* *Frontinus* more clearly and distinctly expresseth the several parts and divisions of it. *Pes habet palmos iv. uncias xii. digitos xvi. Palmus habet digitos iv. uncias iii. Sextans, quæ eadem dodrans appellatur, habet palmos iii. uncias ix. digitos xii.* From which authority of *Frontinus*, and the place before cited of *Vitruvius*, we may collect some analogy to have been observed in the proportions of the Roman foot, and of the Roman coins: For as the *denarius* contain'd xvi asses, so the foot contained xvi digitos: And as the assis was divided in xii uncias, so likewise the foot was divided in xii uncias; and therefore the *dodrans* is used by *Frontinus*, and the *semuncia* and *scilicibus* by *Pliny*, for proportionable parts of the Roman foot; as the same are used by other classical authors for proportionable parts of the Roman assis, and uncia. From which analogy, the *pes Romanus*, I suppose, is termed by *Hyginus*, *pes monetalis*. Likewise in the ancient law of the xii tables (which Tully calls the fountain of the civil law) the *sestertius pes* hath the same proportion with the *sestertius* in coins: For as the *sestertius*, according to *Arruntius*, was olim *dupondius & semis*, anciently two pounds of brass and a half, so the *sestertius pes* was two feet and a half. *Volusius Martianus*, "*sestertius duos asses & semissem, quasi semis tertius; Græca figura ἑξάμονον ἡμιδράκων. Nam sex talenta & semitalentum eo verbo significantur. Lex etiam xii tabularum argumento est, in qua duo pedes & semisiss, sestertius pes vocatur.* But to return to *Frontinus*, who farther

<sup>a</sup> Polyb. l. 6. <sup>b</sup> Polyb. *ibid.* Τὸ πῶς δὲ τῆς σκαμνίας, ὃ πάλαιον καλεῖται, τὸν περὶ ἀποκρίσεως πῶς τῆς σκαμνίας τὸ πῶς τῆς σκαμνίας πῶς.

<sup>c</sup> Cic. l. 2. Acad. quæst. <sup>d</sup> Suetonius in Augusto. Adolescentulum Lucium bene se natum exhibuit, tantum ut ostenderet, quid erat bipedali minor, librarum xvii, ac vocis immensis. <sup>e</sup> Vitruvius, lib. 3.

<sup>f</sup> Columella, l. 5. de R. Rust. <sup>g</sup> Frontin. de limitibus agrorum. <sup>h</sup> Hygin. de limit. constit.

<sup>i</sup> Arruntius ex editione Gotafredi. <sup>k</sup> Vol. Met. de assis distrib. discouffing

discourſing of the Roman foot, gives a diſtinction of three ſorts of feet: and thoſe were firſt, *pes porreſtus*; next, *pes conſtratus*, or as *Agriſcola* reads it, *conſtratus*; and laſtly, *pes quadratus*. The firſt was the meaſure of longitudines, the other two of ſuperficies. There were, writes *Frontinus*, *In pede porreſto ſemipedes duo, in pede conſtrato ſemipedes quatuor, in pede quadrato ſemipedes octo*. Which words of his are to be thus explicated; the *pes porreſtus* was the Roman foot extended in length, and therefore there were in it *ſemipedes duo*: the *pes conſtratus*, was the ſquare of the *ſemipes*, and therefore the perimeter of it contained *ſemipedes quatuor*; or, which is all one, two entire Roman feet: the *pes quadratus*, was the ſquare of the Roman foot; wherefore of neceſſity there muſt be four feet in the perimeter, or in *Frontinus's* expreſſion, eight *ſemipedes*. The ſame *author* likewiſe in his book *de aqueductibus*, deſcribing the digit and uncia of this, (*Eſt autem digitus, ſays he*) *ut convenit, ſexta decima pars pedis, uncia duodecima* uſeth a diſtinction of digits, as he did of feet before, not mentioned by any other author, *Quemadmodum autem inter unciam, & digitum diverſitas, ita & ipſius digiti ſimplex obſervatio non eſt, nam alius vocatur quadratus, alius rotundus. Quadratus tribus quartis decimis ſuis rotundo major: rotundus tribus undecimis ſuis quadrato minor eſt*. The proportions here aſſigned by him to the *digitus quadratus*, and *rotundus*, are the ſame which *Archimedes* long before uſed: and thoſe are, that a circle hath the ſame proportion to the ſquare of the diameter, that *xii*. hath to *xiv*. *Hero* alſo, diſcourſing of ſeveral ſorts of meaſures, informs us thus concerning the foot: *Ὁ μὲν δακτύλος, μίσην ἐστὶ ἐμμερότατον. ἡ δὲ δοχμὴ ἐστὶ δακτύλων δ', ὅππῃ μίσην ἢ δακτύλου δόχμην παλαιστὴ τε ἢ δῶρον καλεῖται. ἡ δὲ λυγὰ ἐστὶ δακτύλων ἑ, πὶ δ' ὀρθόδωρον ἑ, ἡ δὲ αὐθαμνὴ ἑβ', ὡς πῆς δοχμῶν δ', ἥτοι δακτύλων ἑ, ἡ δὲ πυγμαὶ δακτύλων ἑ, ὡς πυγῶν κ', ὡς πῆχυν κδ', ἥτοι δοχμῶν ε', ἡ δὲ ὀρβυὰ πηχῶν δ', ἥτοι ποδῶν ε', The digit is the leaſt meaſure, the palm conſiſts of *iv* digits, and is called *daetylodochme*, and *palaiſte*, and *doron*. The *licbas* is ten digits, the *orbodoron* eleven, the ſpan *xii*. The foot hath *iv* palms, or *xvi* digits, the *pygme* *xviii* digits, the *pygon* *xx*, the *cubit* *xxiv*, or *vi* palms, the *orgyia* *iv* cubits, or *vi* feet. Moſt of which meaſures the Romans borrowed from the Greeks; as on the contrary, the Greeks borrowed the *iſſeron*, and *milium*, from the Roman *jugum* and *milliare*. The ſame *Hero* de-*

ſcribes another ſort of foot uſed in Italy: *Ὁ δὲ Ἰταλὸς πῆς δακτύλων ἐξ ἑπτὰς ἢ οὐκ ἑπτὰς. The Italian foot contains thirteen digits, and one third*. Whence *Salmaſius* concludes, that the Romans uſed one ſort of foot in Rome, conſiſting of *xvi* digits; and in ſome parts of Italy another, being but *xiii* digits, and one third. Which might be granted, did not *Hyginus*, who is much antienter, in his tract, *de Limitibus conſtituendis*, contradict it. His words are theſe: *Item dicitur in Germaniā in Tugris pes Drufianus, qui habet monetalem, & ſeſcunciam, ita ut ubicunque extra fines, legifque Romanorum, id eſt, ut ſollicitus proferam, ubicunque extra Italiam aliquid agitur inquirendum; & de hōc ipſa conditione diligenter præmoneo, ne quid ſit, quod præteritiſſe videamur*. Where ſpeaking immediately before of the *pes Romanus*, or as he alſo calls it, the *pes Monetalis*, by which he meaſures and defines the limites, he gives us this caution, That out of Italy (for in Italy he ſuppoſes one meaſure to be generally received) we are to obſerve the quantity of the foot, or meaſure of the country. And for this reaſon, to avoid ambiguity, he aſſigns the proportions of the *pes Drufianus*, at *Tongerē* in Germany, to be a *ſeſcuncia*, more than the *pes monetalis* uſed at Rome, and in Italy. And ſo in another part about *Cyrene*, which *Ptolemy* gave to the Romans: *Pes eorum qui Ptolemaicus appellatur habet monetalem pedem, & ſeſcunciam*. But to omit the *pes Ptolemaicus*, (for our inquiry is only of the Roman foot) I cannot but wonder at the miſtake of *Joſeph Scaliger*, concerning the *Pes Drufianus*, and *Romanus*, who thus writes: *Pes igitur ille Drufianus major eſt Romana ſeſcuncia, ſuis enim xxi digitum, quantorum xvi eſt pes Romanus*. If it were but a *ſeſcuncia*, greater than the Roman foot, as *Hyginus*, and he alſo make it, how can it poſſibly be *xxii* digitum? Or how can he excuſe his words, which immediately follow? *Ex quo colligitur pedem Drufianum omnino eſſe eum, qui bodie in Gallia, & Belgia in uſu eſt, qui proſeſſo major eſt vi digitis, quantorum xvi eſt pes, qui Romæ in borti Angeli Colotii ſculptus in ſaxo viſitur. Eum enim nos cum pede Gallicano comparantes, id veriffimum eſſe deprehendimus*. Neither is the error of ſome others much leſs, in making the *pes Monetalis*, or *Romanus*, and *pes Regius Pbilætaris*, to be equal. Becauſe the Roman foot conſiſted of *xvi* digits, as *Frontinus* writes, and the *pes Pbilætaris* of as many, as *Hero* ſhews: *Ὁ πῆς ὁ μὲν βασιλικός, ἢ φιλεταίος λυγόμενος ἐξ ἑπτὰς παλαιστὰς δ', δακτύλων ἑ. There-*

<sup>a</sup> Agriſcola de menſuris quibus intervalla metimur.

<sup>b</sup> Frontinus de limitibus agrorum.

<sup>c</sup> Frontinus de aqueductibus.

<sup>d</sup> Archimedes de circ. dimenſ. prop. 2.

<sup>e</sup> Salmaſii Exercit. Plinianæ, p. 684.

<sup>f</sup> Hyginus de limit. conſtit.

<sup>g</sup> Hyginus ibid.

<sup>h</sup> Joſ. Scaliger. de re nummaria.

<sup>i</sup> Hero in liagogo.

fore

**GREYER** fore both these are equal. The error is in supposing all digits to be alike; and therefore the same number of digits being in both, that both are equal. By the same argument we may conclude the Roman foot, and Arabian foot, and the derah, or cubit of these, to be equal to the cubit, or *sejquipes* of the Romans; seeing <sup>a</sup> *Abulfeda*, an Arabian geographer, defines the derah to consist of xxiv digits, and so many also did the Roman *sejquipes* contain. But the observation of <sup>b</sup> *Rhemnius Fannius* in this particular, is much better; which he applies to weights, and we may by analogy assign to measures.

*Semina sex alii siliquis latitantia curvis  
Attribuunt scrupulo, lentes veraciter æsto,  
Aut totidem speltas, numerant, tristefce  
lupinos  
Bis duo, sed si far generatim bis pondus  
ineffet,  
Servarent eadem diversæ pondera gentes:  
Nunc variant. Etenim cuncta non sedere  
certo  
Naturæ, sed lege valent, hominûmque re-  
pertis.*

But to return to the Roman foot: Lastly, We may alledge, <sup>c</sup> *Isidorus Hispalensis*. *Pal-  
mus autem, quatuor habet digitos, pes xvi  
digitos, passus pedes quinque, pertica passus  
duos, id est decem pedes.* And this is that which I find delivered by such of the an-  
cients as are extant. Out of which bare  
and naked descriptions, it is as impossible  
to recover the Roman foot, as it is for ma-  
thematicians, to take either the distance,  
or altitude of places, by the proportions  
of triangles alone, or by tables of signs  
and tangents, without having some cer-  
tain and positive measure given, which  
must be the foundation of their inquiry.  
All that can be collected by these descrip-  
tions, is this, that we may know into how  
many parts the Romans usually divided  
their feet; and all these divisions I have  
seen in some ancient ones. But suppose  
there were no Roman foot extant; how  
by xvi digits, or by iv palms, or by xii  
uncia, (which is the most uncertain of all;  
seeing whatsoever hath quantity, how great  
or small soever it is, may be divided in xii  
uncias) could it be precisely restored? For  
if that of <sup>d</sup> *Protagoras* be true, as well in  
measures, as in intellectual notions, that  
man is μέτρον πάντων μέτρον: Whence  
<sup>e</sup> *Vitruvius* observes, that the Latins de-  
nominated most of their measures, as *their  
digit, palm, foot, and cubit*, from the parts

and members of a man: Who shall be  
that perfect and square man, from whom  
we may take the pattern of these measures?  
Or if there be any such, how shall we know  
him? Or how shall we be certain the an-  
cients ever made choice of any such? Unless,  
as some fancy, that the cubit of the sanc-  
tuary was taken from the cubit of Adam,  
he being created in an excellent state of  
perfection: So we shall imagine these di-  
gits, and palms, to have been taken from  
some particular man of compleater lineam-  
ents than others. On the other side, if  
this foot may be restored by digits, and  
palms of any man at pleasure, since there  
is such a difference in the proportions of  
men, that it is as difficult to find two of  
the same dimensions, as two that have the  
same likeness of faces, how will it be pos-  
sible, out of such a diversity, to produce  
a certain positive measure, consisting in an  
indivisibility, not as a point doth in re-  
spect of parts, but in an indivisibility of  
application, as all originals and standards  
should do? The Arabians to avoid this dif-  
ficulty, shew us a more certain way, as they  
suppose, how to make this commensural digit,  
and consequently the foot: and that is by the  
breadth of six barley-corns laid one conti-  
guous to another: for thus <sup>f</sup> *Mubammed Ibn  
Mesoud*, in his book, entituled in Persian,  
*Gebandaniyb*, relates: *That in the time of Al-  
mamon* (the learned calif of Babylon) by the  
elevation of the pole of the Equator, they mea-  
sured the quantity of a degree upon the globe of  
the earth, and found it to be fifty six miles,  
and two thirds of a mile: every mile con-  
taining four thousand cubits, and each cubit  
twenty four digits, and every digit six barley-  
corns. The same proportions are assigned  
in the *geographia Nubienfis*, printed in Ara-  
bick at Rome: the cubit is twenty four digits,  
and every digit is six barley-corns. But this  
is as uncertain as the former, and is built  
upon a supposition, that all such are of the  
same dimension: whereas those of one coun-  
try differ much from those of another;  
and those of the same country (as I have  
made trial in Egypt, more out of curiosity,  
than as hoping this way to give my self  
satisfaction) are not all of the same bigness:  
And not only so, but in the self same ear,  
there is a sensible difference as experience  
doth shew. And yet *Snellius*, a man much  
to be commended for his abilities in the  
mathematicks, and to be blamed for his  
supine negligence, both in his measure of  
the magnitude of the earth, and in his  
dimensions of the Roman foot, upon these  
slight and weak principles, deduces the A-

<sup>a</sup> *Abulfeda* Geogr. Arab. MS.

<sup>b</sup> *Rhemnii Fannii* Fragmentum.

<sup>c</sup> *Isid. Hispal.* l. 15. c. 15.

<sup>d</sup> *Protagoras* apud *Aristot.* l. 13. c. 5. *Metaphyl.* μέτρον ὅλων μέτρον πάντων τοῖς ἀνθρώποις.

<sup>e</sup> *Nec minus mensurarum rationes, quæ in omnibus videntur necessariae esse, ex corporis membri colliguntur: ut digitum, palmum, pedem, cubitum.* *Vitruv.* l. 3. c. 1.

<sup>f</sup> *Mubammed Ibn Mesoud's Gebandaniyb.*

Arabian

rabian foot, <sup>d</sup> This containing ninety six grains, such as his Roman foot (for none besides himself will own it) contains ninety. Wherefore some other Arabians, to mend the matter, limit the breadth of one of them, <sup>e</sup> by six hairs of a camel, evenly joined one by another: By which invention their derah being almost answerable to the Roman *sestiquies*, or cubit, shall consist of twenty four digits, and every digit of six barley-corns, and every barley-corn of six hairs of a camel. So that in conclusion the hair of a camel shall be the *minimum* in respect of measures. But this invention, however at the first it may seem somewhat subtle (for we are come now almost as low as atoms) is least of all to be approved. For tho' the supposition were true, that all hairs are of a like bigness in all camels, whereas they are different in one and the same; yet this objection is unanswerable, that seeing hairs are not perfectly round tho' the sense judges them so, but angular, and that with some inequality, as magnifying-glasses plainly demonstrate, it will be very difficult so to size them together, that they shall always take up the same breadth: And if they do not, little errors committed in such small bodies, tho' at the first insensible, will infinitely increase and multiply, in the measuring of great distances, to which these are supposed the foundation. And therefore I cannot but approve the council of <sup>f</sup> Villalpandus, who advised such as will examine measures and weights, to begin with the greater, and not with the lesser. And that there is reason for his assertion, may be made evident, especially in weights, to such as shall make an experiment. For admit there were a standard of ten thousand grains, and another of one grain, it will be easy, by a continual subdivision of the former, with a good balance, to produce a weight equal to the standard of one grain: Yea, tho' at the beginning some little error had been committed, which after many divisions will vanish, and become imperceptible. Whereas on the contrary, the most curious man alive, with the exactest scale that the industry of the most skilful artizan can invent, shall never be able out of the standard of one grain, to produce a weight equal to the weight of ten thousand grains, but that there shall be a sensible and ap-

parent difference; yea, tho' he had that excellent scale mentioned by <sup>g</sup> Capellus at Sedan, which would sensibly be turned with the four hundredth part of a grain. The like difference as we find in weights, we may conceive by analogy to be in measures, when they shall be made out of such little parts as hairs, barley-corns, digits, and the like. And therefore I cannot but disapprove the ordinary course of most geographers, whether *Greeks*, *Latins*, or *Arabians*, that from such nice beginnings measure out a degree upon earth, and consequently the magnitude of this globe. On the contrary, the enterprize of <sup>h</sup> Snellius, in his *Eratosthenes Batavi*, and of our countryman <sup>i</sup> M. Wright, hath been more commendable: Who by the space of a degree on earth, (or which were better of many degrees) have endeavoured to fix measures with more exactness and certainty for posterity. But of this argument I shall have occasion to speak hereafter. And therefore to return to the business in hand.

Since the Roman foot cannot be recovered by hairs, grains, digits, palms, and such like physical bodies, which being of a various and indeterminate magnitude, cannot give, unless by accident, the commensuration of that which ought to be precisely limited and determinated; some relinquishing the former way as erroneous, have endeavoured with much ingenuity, by weights to find out the Roman foot: For there is the same analogy between measures and weights, as between continued and discrete quantities: And as mathematicians by numbers demonstrate, or rather illustrate the affections of lines, superficieses, and geometrical bodies: So by weights, measuring some physical bodies, especially such as are liquid, in cubical vessels, (which are easiest commensurable) we may render the exact quantity of the Roman foot, and by consequence of all their other measures. And therefore <sup>k</sup> Lucas Pæsius, and <sup>l</sup> Villalpandus, have attempted with probable reasons to discover the Roman foot, the one by the *Sextarius*, the other by the Roman *Congius*. For the *sextarius* being the sixth part of the *congius*, and the *congius* containing  $\times$  *librae*, or pounds, as it is manifest by that exquisite standard in Rome, with this inscription:

<sup>d</sup> Snellius in *Eratosth. Batav.* l. 2. cap. 2.

<sup>e</sup> *Aly Kufegy*, who assisted *Ulug Beg* in compiling his astronomical tables in *Perfian* (tables the most exact of any in the *East*) limits their breadth by six hairs of an horse. Every digit is six barley-corns laid evenly together, and the breadth of every barley-corn is six hairs of an horse's tail. Infit. Astron. *Aly Cusky*, MS.

<sup>f</sup> Villalpandus de apparatu urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 25. Atque in universum illud unum moniter velim eos omnes, qui mensurarum ac ponderum cognoscendorum desiderio tenentur, ne à minimis incipiunt examinare majora: nam vel minimus quisque error sæpius multiplicatus in magnam adducit errorum cumulum.

<sup>g</sup> Capellus de pond. & nummis, lib. 1.

<sup>h</sup> Wright of the errors of navigation.

<sup>i</sup> Luc. Pæsius, l. 3. de mensur. & pond. Rom.

<sup>k</sup> Villalpandus de appar. urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 25.

VOL. II.

8 L

IMP.



IMP. CAESARE

VESPAS. VI

T. CAES. AVG. F. IIII

MENSVRÆ

EXACTÆ IN

CAPITOLIO

P X

\* P X fig-  
nifies pon-  
da decem.

Again, the *congius* being the eighth part of the *ampbora*, or *quadrantal*, filled with water or wine, as by the testimonies of \* *Dioscorides*, \* *Sex Pompeius*, and of an ancient anonymous Greek author, translated by *Alciat*, it doth appear: If therefore a vessel be made of a cubical figure, which may receive VIII *congi*, or XLVIII *sextarii*, or LXXXIV pounds of water or of wine, out of the sides of this cube, by \* *Rhemnius Fannius* his description, or rather by *Sexius Pompeius*, who is ancients, will the Roman foot be deduced. For both these write (neither is it as yet contradicted by any man) that the longitude of one of the sides of the *ampbora* (being a cube) is answerable to the Roman foot. And here our enquiry would be at an end (supposing the authorities of *Festus* and *Fannius* to be unquestionable) were there not farther some objections, which cannot easily be removed. And those are first, a supposition that we have the true Roman *libra* (for by this we are to find the *congius*, admitting there were none extant, as by the *congius*, the *ampbora*, or *quadrantal*) a thing of as great difficulty as the foot it self. And besides, if this were obtained, yet we cannot have an absolute certainty, that water, or wine, shall in all places alike ponderate; by reason of the different gravity which is observed in natural bodies, tho' they be homogeneous, and of a like substance. Wherefore laying aside all such speculations, as being far from that accurateness which is required, there is no other possible means left for this discovery, but to have recourse to such monuments of antiquity, as have escaped the injury and calamity of time; which is our next, and second enquiry.

And here it will not be amiss to see what learned men, who not long preceded our age have observed out of ancient monuments, concerning the Roman foot: And then to relate what course I took to give my self private satisfaction; which, I hope,

will be also satisfactory to others. *Philander* in his commentaries upon *Vitruvius*, being one of the first that had seen, and diligently perused many ancient measures in Rome (whereas *Portius*, *Agricola*, *Glareanus*, and some others received them upon trust) gives us so much the more certain information. His words are these: *Veruntamen quoniam non statim ex cuiuscunque pollicibus, aut digitis, quis fuerit apud antiquos Romanus pes sciri potest. fastidum me studiosis rem gratam putavi, si ad marginem libri semipedem apponerem, dimensum ex antiquo pede, in marmore, quod est in hortis Angeli Colotii Romæ sculpto, cuius etiam, nisi me fallit memoria, meminit Leonardus Porcius lib. de Sestertio. Eum enim pedem, nos cæteris qui circumferuntur, prætulimus, quod conveniret cum eo, quem sculptum invenimus in alio marmoreo epitaphio T. Statilii Vol. Apri mensuris a sciorum, quod operâ Jacobi Melegbini summi Pont. archibetti ex janiculo non ita pridem resossum, in Vaticanum hortum translatum est. Quamvis jacentem in basilicâ apostolorum columnam ex porphyrite, cum his Græcis in calce literis ΠΟΔ. Θ. id est pedum novem, nos cum dimensi essemus, deprehenderimus non respondere nostro eum, quo usus fuerat ejus columnæ artifex, sed nostro esse majorem duobus scrupulis & besse, id est uncia parte nond. Ut argumentum aliquod esse possit pedis Græci fuisse modulo scapum columnæ factum, quod facilius conicere potuissim, si integra esset alia ex eodem lapide columnæ, quam in viâ latâ est conspiciere jacentem, bis in calce literis ΠΟΔ. ΙΒ. insignitam. Verum quando stadium Herodoto, l. 2. Heroni, Suidæ, cæteris Græcis sit sexcentorum pedum; Plinio, Columelle, cæteris Latinis sexcentorum viginti quinque nostrorum, necesse est Romanum à Græco semuncia superari. Thus far *Philander*. Not long after him, *Lucas Pærus*, having examined the foot on *T. Statilius tomb*, and that other of *Cossutius*, together with several ancient ones in brass, found amongst the *rudera* at Rome, concludes that the true Roman foot, *Diclis* duobus marmoreis comparatus, septima uncia parte, sive uncia scrupulis tribus, & duobus scrupulis sextulis, & sextula semisse brevior est. Much about the same time I find in *Ciaconius*, out of *Latinus Latinus*, another experiment to have been made, by many eminent men together at Rome. Superioribus autem annis (saith \* he) *Ant. Augustinus*, qui postmodum fuit archiepiscopus Tarraconensis, Jo. Baptista Sigbicellus episcopus Faventinus, P. Oflavius, Pacatus, Achilles Massæus, Achilles Statius, Benediclus Ægius, Fulvius Ursinus, Latinus Latinus,*

\* Fragmenta Dioscoridis.

\* Sext. Pomp. Fest. de verb. signif.

\* Rhemn. Fann. Fragment.

\* *Philander* in lib. 3. c. 3. *Vitruvii*.\* *Luc. Pærus*, l. 1. de antiq. Rom. & Græc. intervall. mensuris.\* *Ciaconius* è Lat. Latinis observationibus de pede Rom.



ers. *Phib-*  
*Vitruvius,*  
 een, and  
 e measures  
 pla, Glare-  
 upon  
 pre certain  
 euse: p *Ve-*  
*queque*  
 apud anti-  
*Strum* m  
 marginem  
 um ex an-  
 in *bortis*  
 etiam, nisi  
 arduus *Por-*  
 pedem, no-  
 imus, quid  
 invenimus  
 statili Vol.  
 perā *Jacobi*  
 ex janiculo  
 um *bortum*  
 em in bafi-  
 pyrite, cum  
 e. id est  
 oemus, de-  
 nostrum cu-  
 rex, fed nof-  
 e, beffe, id  
 mentum ali-  
 effe modulo  
 acilius con-  
 cia ex eodem  
 est conspi-  
 HOA. 18.  
 in Herodoto,  
 acis fit fe-  
 alle, ceteris  
 nostrorum,  
 unciā fup-  
 ot long af-  
 examined  
 that other  
 ancient  
 e rudera at  
 ue Roman  
 comparatus,  
 crispulus tri-  
 sextula se-  
 the fame  
 of *Latinus*  
 have been  
 together at  
 (faith + he)  
 acieb-  
 Sigibicellus  
 Pacatus,  
 Benedi-  
 Latinus;

cum terram pedis Rom. quantitatem statuerent, plures ejusd. pedis mensuras simul constituerunt, & eam oelo cum antiquissima diti pedis forma, qua in basi quadam in hortis Vaticanis extat, adamussim conuertere videntes, ex hoc pede quadrato vas conferunt, quod etiam nunc ologinta aqua, vel vini libris, quibus publicè signatis civitas utitur, omnino capere inveniunt, & cum oelo congiis antiquis ita congruere, ut neque minus quidquam, neque amplius inter utraque esset. Quo experimento evidentissime cognoverunt, & libris nostri temporis cum antiquis Romanis esse eadem, cum congiis antiqui vas sub Porsipiano Imp. signatum decem libras contineret, quod etiam nostri temporis libris capiti & hunc esse justum pedem Romanum, cum ex ejus modulo perfectum quadrantal ologinta libras contineret, qua cum congiis antiqui libris ad momentum reponderent. Notwithstanding these observations, Villalpandus, knowing how necessary it was to have the true dimensions of the Roman foot, to find out the proportions of the Hebrew cubit, made new experiments: And after examination of the measures and weights at Rome, he thus concludes: Sed is omnibus tam variis, aliisque multis sententiis prætermisiss, in hac una conqueisimus, ut arbitremur unum Farnesianum congium posse omnes antiquas Romanorum, atque aliarum gentium mensuras, omnique pondera pristina integritati restituere. And in another place, Quapropter alii omnibus conjecturis, argumentationibus, ævis pedibus, marmoris dimensionibus, aut sculpturis, quasi maris fustibus prætermisiss, in hac una pedis longitudine, quasi in portu conqueiscere jam tandem decrevimus. Yet Snellius in his *Eratsibenes Batavus* could not rest satisfied with this foot of Villalpandus, how exquisitely soever he imagines it: For he had a mind to discover it nearer home, making the Rhinland foot equal to the Roman. The proof of this assertion is taken from an ancient Roman armamentarium, or fort, near the sea, not far from Leiden, which by the natives is called, *Het buyt te Brien*: And is supported by Ortelius to have been built by *Claudius Cæsar*, in his intended voyage for Britain, of which Suetonius, and Dio, make mention: *Sive in commodiore legionum, cohortiumque transfectionem, sive quo militis bihernare* (saith Ortelius). *Arvis ipsius fundamenta*, (according to S. Snellius) quadrata sunt forma, & quaqueversum ducentis quadraginta Rhinlandicis pedibus patent. Ut vel hinc Romanæ mensuræ vestigia quàm planissimè agnoscas. *Nam ipsius pedis* duorum Romanorum juxerum magnitudinem complectitur. Juxeri enim mensuram ducentos & quadraginta longitudinis pedes esse,

non est serd quisquam qui ignoret, inquit Quintilianus, l. 1. cap. X. Varro de re rustica libro 1. cap. X. Jugerum quod quadratus duos aclus habet. Aclus quadratus, qui & latus est pedes 120 & longus totidem. Si modius, ac mina Latina appellatur, ut mihi plane dubium non videatur, eos hic Romanæ mensuræ modum secutos, bujas structuræ possiduum ita comprehendisse secundum jugeri mensuram, ut duo jugera, vel alius quatuor contineret. Frontinus de limitibus. Hi duo fundi juncti jugerum definiunt, deinde bac duo jugera juncti in unum quadratum agrum efficiunt, quod sint omnes aclus bini: Ut singula ideò latera ducentos & quadraginta pedes in longum patere necesse sit. Atqui totidem pedibus Rbinlandici singula latera exsporgi Geodætarum experientia confirmat Unde efficitur Romanum antiquum pedem nostro Rbinlandico planè æquari.

After these experiments of so many able and learned men, and those too taken from ancient monuments, it may seem strange, that we should not be able as yet to define the true quantity of the *Roman* foot. For this I can assign no other reasons than these: First that those which have described it, have either not exactly, and with such diligence as was requisite, performed it; or else, if they have been circumspect in this kind, they have committed to compare it with the standards or measures of other nations. On the contrary those which have compared it with the present standards, never took it from the ancient monuments, and originals, which are at *Rome*, but only from some draughts, or schemes delineated in books. Now how uncertain a way this is, doth appear by \* *Villalpandus*, who thus writes: *Ego dum hæc scriberem, hunc Colotianum pedem circino expendi, & in annotationibus Guil. Pbilanderi solersissimi viri, & apud Georgium Agricolum, & apud Lucam Patum, & Stanislavum Orjeffium, & nullum potius reperire alteri æqualem, imò verò neque ejusdem pedis assignatos similes partes.* The same have I observed in those *Roman* feet described by *Portius, Agricola, Pbilander, Patus, Cicconius, and Villalpandus* himself, that they differ one from another. And not only so, but those of the same author, in the same impression, are likewise different. Which last must arise, either by the diverse extension of the paper in the press, when it is moist, or by the unequal contraction of it, when it grows dry, or by some other accident, in the beating and binding. So that tho' it were granted, that so many learned men had found out what we enquire after, the *Roman* foot; yet it is im-

\* Villalpandi apparatus urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 25.  
l. 60.      \* Snell, in Eratosth. Bat. l. 2. c. 2.      \* Villalpand.

<sup>1</sup> Suetonius in Claudio. Dio Hist. Rom.

\* Snell, in Eratosth. Bat. l. 2, c. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Villalpan, de apparatus urbis ac templi, par. 2, l. 3, c. 25.

possible out of those schemes and draughts delivered in their books, for the reason before specified, to attain an absolute certainty. But *Snellius* shews us a remedy of this difficulty, which, in my opinion, is as vain as his *Roman* foot, (seeing by his supposition all paper must shrink alike, be it thick or thin) and that is, to allow one part in sixty for the shrinking of the paper. For so much (saith he) do *typographers* observe, that letters contract themselves, when they are taken off wet from the types.

Wherefore having received small satisfaction from the writings of the ancients, and not much better from the imperfect designations of the *Roman* foot, by modern authors, I proposed to my self in my travels abroad, these ways, which no reasonable man but must approve of. And those were, First, to examine as many ancient measures and monuments, in *Italy*, and other parts, as it was possible. And, Secondly, To compare these with as many standards, and originals, as I could procure the sight of. And last of all, to transmit both these, and them, to posterity, I exactly measured some of the most lasting monuments of the ancients. To this purpose, in the year 1639, I went into *Italy*, to view, as the other antiquities of the *Romans*, so especially those of weights and measures; and to take them with as much exactness as it was possible, I carried instruments with me made by the best artizans.

Where my first enquiry was after that monument of *T. Statilius Vol. Aper*, in the *Vatican* gardens, from whence *Philander* took the dimensions of the *Roman* foot, as others have since borrowed it from him. In the copying out of this upon an *English* foot in brasse, divided into 2000 parts, I spent at least two hours, (which I mention, to shew with what diligence I proceeded in this, and the rest) so often comparing the several divisions, and digits of it, respectively one with another, that I think more circumspection could not have been used; by which I plainly discovered the rudeness and insufficiency of that foot. For besides that the length of it is somewhat too much, (whatsoever *Latinius* out of an observation made by *Ant. Augustinus*, *Sigebellus*, *Pacatus*, *Maffæus*, *Statius*, *Ægius* and *Fulvius Ursinus*, pretend to the contrary) there is never a digit that is precisely answerable to one another. Howsoever it contains 1944 such parts, as the *English* foot contains 2000.

My next search was for the foot on the monument of *Coffutius*, in *hortis Colotianis*, from whence it hath since received its denomination, (tho' it be now removed) being termed by writers, *pes Colotianus*. This foot I took with great care, as it did well deserve, being very fair and perfect: Afterwards collating it with that *Roman* foot, which *Lucas Patus* caused to be engraved in the Capitol, in a white marble stone, I found them exactly to agree; and therefore I did wonder, why he should condemn this with his pen (for he makes some objections against it) which notwithstanding he hath erected with his hands (as appears by the inscription in the Capitol, CURANTE LU: PAETO.) It may be, upon second thoughts, he afterward privately retracted his error, which he was not willing to publish to the world. Now this of *Coffutius* is 1934 such parts, as the *English* foot contains 2000.

Next I sought after that porphyry column mentioned by *Marlianus*, as also by *Philander*, and others, with this inscription, ΠΟΔ. Θ. For if the length of that column were assigned according to the proportion of the *Greek* foot, then would the *Roman* foot be thence deduced; this (as I shall elsewhere shew) containing 24 such parts, as that contained 25: Or if it were made according to the *Roman* foot, as the *Grecians* after their subjection to the *Roman* empire, often used the same measures that the *Romans* did, then had I my desire. But the column being defaced or lost my labour was in vain: And it seems *Patus* about LXX years before made the same enquiry with as little satisfaction.

I should be too tedious in describing the several feet which I have perused in brasse, found amongst the *rudera* at *Rome*, and carefully preserved by antiquaries: Of most of which *Peireskius* hath given a good character, in some letters of his, which I have seen in the hands of *Buchardus*, a learned man, not yet printed; who thus writes: *I cannot sufficiently wonder at the inequality which I have found in the divisions by digits, and inches, of the ancient Roman feet; which seem to me to have been made for fashion-sake, & dicis causâ (as lamps that are found in tombs incapable of oil) more to express the mystery and profession of those that were to use them, than to regulate the measures of any thing besides them.*

Besides these, I examined the ancient structures of the *Romans*, hoping by collating one with another, to deduce the

<sup>1</sup> *Par: sexagesima typorum & formarum longitudini uncus decedit, quemadmodum à diligentibus & peritis typographis sciscitando edoctus sum.* Snell. in Erastolli. Batavo. l. 2. c. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Philander* in l. 3. c. 3. Vitruvii. <sup>3</sup> *Cicconius* è Latino Latino.

<sup>4</sup> *Græc. intervall. mensuris.* <sup>5</sup> *Marlianus* de Antiq. urbis.

<sup>6</sup> *Luc. Patus* l. 1. de Antiq. Rom. & Græc. intervall. mensuris.

<sup>7</sup> *Luc. Patus* l. 1. de Antiq. Rom.

<sup>8</sup> *Philander* in lib. 3. c. 3. Vitruvii.

<sup>9</sup> *Ex Epistolis Peireskii MSS.*

was for the foot on the  
us, in *bortis Colotianis*,  
since received its deno-  
now removed) being  
*pes Colotianus*. This  
at care, as it did well  
ir and perfect: After-  
that Roman foot, which  
to be engraved in the  
marble stone, I found  
ree; and therefore I  
should condemn this  
akes some objections  
withstanding he hath  
ls (as appears by the  
apitol, CURANTE  
may be, upon second  
rd privately retracted  
as not willing to pub-  
low this of *Coffutius* is  
the English foot con-

ter that porphyry co-  
Marlianus, as also by  
ers, with this inscrip-  
if the length of that  
ed according to the  
reek foot, then would  
thence deduced; this  
shew) containing 24  
contained 25: Or if it  
to the Roman foot,  
their subjection to the  
used the same mea-  
did, then had I my  
being defaced or lost  
: And it seems *Pæ-*  
s before made the  
little satisfaction.

ious in describing the  
have perused in brass,  
era at Rome, and care-  
tiquaries: Of most of  
a given a good cha-  
of his, which I have  
*Buchardus*, a learned  
; who thus writes:  
nder at the inequality  
the divisions by digits,  
at Roman feet; which  
made for fashion's sake,  
aps that are found in  
more to express the  
of those that were to  
gulate the measures of

examined the ancient  
ians, hoping by col-  
ther, to deduce the

dum à diligentibus & pe-

etus l. 1. de Antiq. Rom.  
r in lib. 3. c. 3. Vitruvii.  
lis Peireskii MSS.

dimension

dimension of their foot. For I presumed, that those excellent architects, before they began their work, must necessarily propose some models to themselves, according to the proportion of which, they meant to raise their fabricks: Which proportions could not be assigned, but in the parts of some common and received quantity; and this in probability was the Roman foot; being a measure generally used, and by publick authority prescribed. Upon which grounds I measured the stones in the foundation of the Capitol, Domitian's, or rather Vespasian's amphitheatre, the triumphal arks of Titus and Severus, together with that of Constantine the great, and above all that exquisite temple of the Pantheon, built by Agrippa, I know not whether with more cost or art: Concerning which *Sebastianus Serlius* is of opinion, That if all rules of architecture were lost, they might be revived out of this monument alone. And in truth, this place gave me more satisfaction than any other: For most of the white marble stones on the pavement, contained exactly three of those Roman feet on *Coffutius's* monument, and the lesser stones in porphyry contained one and an half.

But yet I thought this not sufficient, unless I went to *Terracina*, which is the ancient *Anxur*, and *LIII* miles distant from Rome: Having read in *Andreas Schottus*, out of *Pighius's Hercules Prodicus*, that near the sea by the *Via Appia*, in the height of a white rock, whence that of *Horace*,

*Impositum saxi latè candentibus Anxur,*

There are described the Roman *decempeda*. And indeed the place is very memorable, for the whiteness, altitude, and hardness of the rock, which notwithstanding is cut away perpendicularly, on the side towards the *Tyrrhene* sea, above an hundred and twenty feet in depth, to make passage for the *Appian* way; and at the space of every *decempeda*, these characters x xx xxx &c. (being almost cubitales) are fairly engraven, in a continued order, descending to cxx. Measuring below the distance between cxx and cx, it amounted to 1x English feet, and  $\frac{11}{16}$  of a foot, computing it from the line engraven above cxx, to the line next under cx. The rest I examined with my eyes, by often comparing the distance between cxx and cx, whether it were equal to that between cx and c, and this again (ascending upwards) to that between c and xc; which manner, though

it be uncertain and conjectural, and far from that exactness I used in all others, yet it was the best means I could then put in practice; and I am confident, that whoever shall measure those spaces, shall find a manifest inequality. To which opinion I am rather induced, because measuring there, in several places, the breadth of the *Appian* way, cut out of the same rock, I found a difference sometimes of one or two inches, or more. It being in one place *xlii* English feet, and  $\frac{11}{16}$  of a foot; in another, *xlii* feet and  $\frac{11}{16}$ ; in a third *xlii* and  $\frac{11}{16}$ . Whereby I concluded, that the ancients, in making that way, had not respect to a mathematical point, (as it was not necessary) but only that if any difference were, it should not be sensible. And such differences have I observed in the white *Corinthian* pillars, in the *Pantheon* before-mentioned, of above an inch or two, in the circuit of the *Scapus* near the *Torus*: which inequality, seeing no eye could discover, the masters of that exquisite work did justly condemn. Whereas the porphyry stones, and those of white marble, on the pavement, are sized so even, and so exactly to the proportions of the Roman foot, that nothing can be more accurate. And this the nature of the work required; for the temple being round, (which hath occasioned the *Italians* vulgarly to call it the *Rotundo*) the circle within could not so exquisitely have been filled up, if there had not been a special care taken in observing the true dimensions in every particular stone. But to return to the rock at *Anxur*: The spaces between those characters, to an eye that shall be intently fixed upon them, will be apparently different. So that I concur in opinion with *Schottus*, that those figures were placed there, to give notice to posterity, how much of the rock had been removed, to make passage for the *Appian* way; and not for any memorial of the Roman measures.

Having measured those places in the *Appian* way at *Terracina*, I made trial of at least xx others between *Terracina* and *Naples*, without any great satisfaction; and therefore, partly the incertainty that I found there, and partly the danger of thieves, discouraged me from measuring the Roman *miliare*; a work conceived to be of great use, for the discovery of the Roman foot. Seeing the *miliare* containing *mille passus*, as the very name imports, and every *passus* consisting of five feet, as *Columella*, and *Isidorus* expressly tell us; here therefore would be five thousand feet

\* Sebast. Serl. delle Antichità.

\* Andr. Schot. Itinerar.

\* Horat. l. 1. Serm. Sat. 5.

\* See at the end of this book the figure of these characters, as they are cut in the rock at *Anxur*, with lines encompassing them.

\* Schotti Itiner.

\* Columella de re rust. l. 5.

\* Isidorus, l. 15. c. 15. Origin.

\* L. II.

**G**RAEVES to help us to one, could there be but found out a perfect Roman mile. And this I imagined might probably be discovered amongst those many vestigia of Roman ways, which to this day are frequently seen in Italy. Wherefore conferring with *Gaspard Berii*, a man curious and judicious, (as appears by his ichnography of *Roma subterranea* in *Bosius*) as also with *Lucas Holstenius*, a learned companion of *Cluverius*, in those honourable travels of his, for the restauration of the ancient geography: they both informed me that there are still in the *Appian way*, where it passes over the *Pomptina Paludes*, several columns, or lapides miliarii, standing; whereby the Romans divided and distinguished their miles; and which occasioned those phrases, *ad primum, ad quartum, ad centesimum lapidem*, and the like. And these, it may be, at the first were ordinary stones, till *C. Gracchus* caused columns to be erected in their places: *Διαμετρήσας δὲ μίλιον ὁδὸν πᾶσαν (τὸ δὲ μίλιον ὅκτω σάδιον ὀλίγον δυνάει) κίονας λαθύνει στήλαι τοῦ μίλετος καλέσθαι. He measured out, saith Plutarch, by miles, all the ways, the mile containing little less than eight stadia, and placed columns of stone to design the measure.* The thing was of that ornament and use, as that it was afterwards taken up, and continued by the Roman emperors; as appears by these inscriptions, which are fairly engraven on the first column, found amongst the ruins in the *Appian way*, and from thence lately removed into the Capitol, by order of the Senate and people of Rome.

## I

IMP. CAESAR  
VESPASIANVS. AVG  
PONTIF. MAXIM  
TRIB. POTESTAT. VII  
IMP. XVII P. P. CENSOR  
COS. VII DESIGN. VII

\* Plutarchus in *Gracchis*.

† S. P. Q. R.

COLUMNAM MILIARIAM  
PRIMI AB. VERBE LAPIDIS. INDICEM  
AB. IMP. VESPASIANO. ET. NERVA  
RESTITUTAM  
DE. RVINIS. SVBVRBANIS. VIAE. APPIAE.  
IN. CAPITOLIVM. TRANSTVLIT

‡ The figure X signifies the distance of *Terracina* from the next city, or town, in the way to Rome; And that was *ad Medias*: A place so called, either because it was, *ad Media Paludes*, or else because it was in the mid-way, almost between *Terracina* and *Appii Forum*: For it was X miles from *Terracina*, and IX from *Appii Forum*; as appears by the *itinerarium Hierosolymitanum* in *Berbinus*.

2

Appii

Below this, on the end of the Scapus.

IMP. NERVA. CAESAR  
AVGVSTVS. PONTIFEX  
MAXIMVS. TRIBVNICIA  
POTESTATE. COS. III PATER  
PATRIAE REFECIT

Below this, on the basis of the same pillar.

IMP. CAESARI. DIVI  
TRAIANI. PARTHICI. F.  
DIVI. NERVAE NEPOTI  
TRAIANO. HADRIANO  
AVG. PONTIF. MAXIM  
TRIB. POTEST. II COS. II  
VIATORES. QVI. IPSI. ET. COS. ET  
PR. CETERISQVE. MAGISTRATIB  
APPARENT. ET. H. V.

To these I shall also add the inscription of another column *miliaria*, not extant in *Gruterus*, or any other, that I know, which I have seen at *Terracina*; the column being exactly of the same magnitude with the former, but wanting by the injury of time, a basis below, and a globe of nigh three feet diameter on the top, serving instead of a capital, both which the former hath.

Xs

IMP. CAESAR.  
DIVI NERVAE  
FILIVS. NERVA  
TRAIANVS. AVG  
GERMANICVS  
DACICVS  
PONTIF. MAX  
TRIB. POT XVIII  
IMP. VI COS. V P. P  
XVIII SILICE. SVA. PECVNIA  
STRAVIT

LIII

If

If therefore two such columns were found entire, (as I am informed there are four or five in the *decennovium*, standing in a continued order) the distance between two such being exactly measured, would much conduce to the discovery of the Roman foot. Upon which supposition I had almost resolved to have gone thither, as I did to other places, with no other intention, but only to have been a spectator of those columns, and to have trusted to mine own hands, in taking their distances. But upon a more deliberate examination of the business, I perceived that this enquiry did depend upon a very nice supposition: for if the *decempedatores*, or *curatores viarum*, proceeded not with extreme caution, and aimed almost at a mathematical point, in designing the just space of each particular mile (which in a work of that length is not probable; where the inequality of many feet could not be discerned by the eye, and might be admitted without any blemish. For in *Varro's* judgment, *Sensus nullus quod abest mille passus sentire potest*) it could not be, but the same differences, or somewhat like, must have crept in with them, which have been observed amongst us, in our measured and statute miles; out of which it would be a vain attempt exactly to demonstrate the *English* foot. The neglect of which circumspexion, amongst some other reasons that may be assigned, I take to be one, of the diversities which astronomers found in that memorable observation, made in the plains of *Singar*, or *Sinar*, by the command of *Alimamon* the renowned califf of *Baby-*

*lon*, about eight hundred years since, in proportioning the magnitude of a degree upon earth. For having taken the altitude of the pole at two several stations, differing a degree in the heavens, they measured the distance between these stations on earth, going on in the same meridian; where *some of them*, says *Abulfeda*, found it to be fifty six miles, and two thirds; others fifty six, without any fraction. If therefore the Roman *decempedatores*, or *geodate*, used not more circumspexion than the *Babylonian* astronomers (which is not likely) there can be no trust given to their miles, and less trust to the foot that shall be deduced from thence.

Wherefore to come to a conclusion; having made enquiry more ways than it may be any man hath done, and I think with as much caution and exactness as any, it will be necessary after all, to shew amongst so many feet, as are taken to be Roman, which I conceive to be the most genuine and true. And though in such an uncertainty and scarcity of ancient monuments, and in such a diversity of opinions, among modern writers, it may seem too great presumption, positively to define the magnitude of the Roman foot; yet having had the opportunity to have perused in this kind, more antiquities than any that have preceded, I may with the more confidence conclude, that the *pes Colotianus*, in my judgment, is the true Roman foot; and that for these reasons.

For first, It most exactly agrees with some very ancient and perfect Roman feet in brass, found long since amongst the ru-

Appii Forum  
Ad Medias IX.  
Taracina X.

The figure LIII<sup>1</sup> below, signifies the distance of *Tarracina* from *Rome*: which distance may be further proved out of *Appian*, in his third book of the civil wars, speaking of *Augustus*: *Omnes autem ad Tarquiniam dno transportatione per Populorum rationem*. Being about *Tarracina*, which is distant CCCC stadia from *Rome*. The stadia reduced to miles, if we allow VII Greek stadia and an half to a Roman mile, as *Suidas* doth, will make up LIII miles, and one third part of a mile: that is, two stadia and a half over and above. Which fraction *Appian* neglects; and therefore uses the round number CCCC stadia, for LIII miles.

The figure XVIII signifies the *decennovium*, or way passing over the fence, between *Appii Forum* and *Taracina*: so denominated, because it contained nineteen miles in length: which may also be proved out of *Procopius*, where he speaks of the *diuranosion*. This way was paved by *Trajan*, as the inscription shews, and I think first of all by him. Long after it was repaired by *Theodoricus*, according to another inscription that I have seen at *Tarracina*, of which *Gruterus* and *Clauertius* also make mention: where, omitting the titles of *Theodoricus* in the marble we find these words engraven:

DECENNOVII. VIAR. APPIAE. ID. EST. A. TRIP  
VSQVE. TERRACENAM. ITER. ET. LOCA. QVAE  
CONFLVENTIBVS. AB. VTRAQVE. PARTE. PALVDVM  
PER. OMNES. RETRO. PRINCIPVM. INVNDAVERANT  
VSVI. PVBLICO. ET. SECVRITATI. VIANIVM  
RESTITVIT. PER  
PLVRIMOS. QVI. ANTE. NON. ERANT. ALBEO  
DEDVCTA. IN. MARE. AQVA

By this number XVIII signifying the *decennovium*, and by the *itinerarium Hierosolymitanum*, we may safely correct the *itinerarium Antonini*, in which *Tarracina* is placed but XVIII miles distant from *Appii Forum*. And from hence likewise we may certainly know, how far the Christians went to meet *St. Paul*, and that was XXXIV miles. For so much was *Appii Forum* distant from *Rome*, if we subduct XVIII out of LIII; where-as the *itineraries of Bertius* edition make it more.

<sup>1</sup> *Varro* de L. L. lib. 5. <sup>2</sup> *Abulf. Geogr. Arab. MS.*

dera



*Greaves* *dera* at *Rome*; especially with that excellent one (as I remember) of *F. Ursinus*, a learned antiquary. Tho' I cannot deny but that I have seen two ancient feet in brads different from this; the one of *Gualdus*, a very fair one, wanting two parts and a half, of such as this contains a thousand, a small and inconsiderable difference. The second of *Gottifridus*, a gentleman of honourable quality, (to whom I stand obliged for the free donation of several antiquities) which exceeds it by eight parts; but this last hath been made by a very rude and unskilful hand.

Next, the proportions of almost all the white marble stones, as also of those lesser in porphyry, in the pavement of that admirable temple of the *Pantheon*, are either completely three of these feet, or one and a half; which, it is not probable, and in a structure of so much art, should have been the work of chance. Add to this the dimensions of several stones in the foundation of the capitol, in *Titus* and *Severus*, triumphal arches, corresponding either to the whole foot, or conjointly to the whole, and some *uncia*, or digits of it.

Thirdly, The inscription on the same monument where this foot is found, of the *circinus*, the *libella*, the *norma*, and the like, plainly shew, that these were intended to express *Cossutius's* profession, (whom *Pætus* imagines to have been a *sculptor*) and this being intended, I see no reason why the *Roman* foot should have been cut in so fair a relevy, either too short, or too long, when the same hand, and the same pains, might have made it exact. It is true, that the foot upon *Statilius's* tomb, is 1944 such parts. as this is but 1934; whereof the *English* foot taken by me from the iron yard, or standard of three feet, in *Guild-Hall* in *London*, contains 2000: But how rudely, in respect of digits, that foot of *Statilius* is described, I have before discovered. And therefore I wonder that *Philander* in his commentaries upon *Vitruvius*, should in a matter of such high concernment in architecture, proceed with so much inadvertency, affirming that between this of *Statilius*, and that of *Cossutius*, there is no difference. And if he a mathematician hath thus erred, (tho' commonly men versed in those sciences take not up things at too cheap a rate, without due examination) what opinion may we conceive of an-

other observation, made at the same moment, by *Ant. Augustianus*, *Jo. Baptista Sigbicellus*, *P. Orosius Pacatus*, *Achilles Maffæus*, *Achilles Statius*, *Benedictus Ægius*, *Fulvius Ursinus*, *Latinus Latinus*, with as many ancient feet as there were men present? I shrewdly suspect they flattered over their observation, as not regarding in nineteen hundred parts and better, the small excess or defect of ten parts; or not rightly apprehending what might be the consequences of such an error, how little soever, in measuring the vast magnitude of the terrestrial globe, or of the celestial bodies.

Lastly, Besides the authorities of *Portius Vicentinus*, *Georgius Agricola*, *Glareanus*, *Ghetaldus Donatus*, and of many other learned and judicious men, who approve of this *pes Colotianus*, (tho' bare authority is the worst, because the weakest kind of argument) that excellent *congius* of *Vespasian*, now extant in *Rome*, so highly and so justly magnified by *Villalpandus*, may likewise serve to confirm, if not totally my assertion, yet thus far, that I have not exceeded in assigning the true longitude: For by the clear evidences of *Dioscorides*, and of an anonymous author before cited, eight *congi* are the just measure of the *Roman ampóra*, or *quadrantal*; and again by as many testimonies of *Sextus Pompeius*, and *Rhemnius Fannius*, each of the sides of the *ampóra* is equal in longitude to the *Roman* foot. Wherefore having procured by special favour the *congius* of *Vespasian*, I took the measure of it with *milium* (being next to water, very proper for such a work) carefully prepared and cleansed, which being done with much diligence I caused a cube to be made answerable to the true dimension of the *pes Colotianus*; filling up the capacity of which, and often reiterating the same experiment, I found continually the excess of about half a *congius* to remain, and that an *ampóra* made by the *pes Colotianus*, would contain but vii *congi*, and about an half. And therefore I cannot sufficiently wonder at the observation of *Ant. Augustianus*, *Pacatus*, *Maffæus*, *Statinus*, *Ursinus*, and others, with a cube of that foot which is described on *Statilius's* monument: who affirm the *quadrantal* of this exactly to contain eight of these *congi* of *Vespasian*: Whereas upon due examination I confidently affirm, that they have erred. And therefore *Villalpandus*

<sup>a</sup> Luc. Pætus, lib. 1. de antiq. Rom. & Græc. interval. mensuris.

<sup>m</sup> Claconius è Latini Latini observ. de pede Rom. urbis ac templi.

<sup>o</sup> Fragmenta Dioscoridis.

<sup>r</sup> Rhem. Fann. arm. fragm.

<sup>t</sup> It had been better to have made my experiment with water, and then to have weighed it with an exact balance: but because no balances are found in *Rome* so exact as with us, I was fain to measure it with *milium*.

<sup>u</sup> Claconius è Latini Latini observationibus de pede Rom. Cum veram pedis Rom. quantitatem statuere vellent ejus. pedis mensuras simul contulerant. Et earum obo cum antiquissima didi pedis forma, quæ in basi quadam in hortis Vaticanis exstat, admodum convenire videntes, ex hoc pede quadrato vas consecravit, &c. Vide suprà.

<sup>v</sup> Villalpandus, l. 2. disp. 2. c. 11. de apparatu

<sup>p</sup> Sext. Pomp. Festus de verb. signif.

<sup>s</sup> Villalp. de apparatu urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 25.

*pandus*, in this particular, with more judgment and ingenuity hath published his observations, concerning the measure, and precise weight of *Vespasian's congius*, than any other whatsoever. Altho' I cannot be induced to assent to that deduction, which he infers of the *Roman foot*, (from the side of a *quadrantal* containing eight of these *congi*) relying upon the authorities of *Festus* and *Fannius*, against so many evidences produced to the contrary. Wherefore as he is singular in his opinion (for there is not one author of credit which follows his assertion) so is his foot as singular, there being not one of at least ten ancient ones, in the hands of several antiquaries (besides those inscribed on two monuments in *Rome*) which arrive to the proportions of his, by *xxvii* parts in two thousand. As for those other fancies of his (for they are no better) of describing also the *Roman foot*, by the altitude of *Vespasian's congius*, and assigning the *latus cubicum* of the *modius*, the *semicongius*, the *sextarius*, and *bemina*, from certain parallel circles circumscribed about it, (which certainly, as the scheme of the *congius* itself, drawn by me to the full proportion, shews, were delineated without any farther intention than for ornament) I do not think them worth the computation.

And therefore it will be much better, to give some solution to those authorities of *Sextus Pompeius*, and *Rhemnius Fannius*, alledged by him. For the objection which may be raised thence is very material: How the *pes Colotianus* can be the true *Roman foot*, since it is confessed by me, that it doth not precisely answer to the sides of a *quadrantal*, or cube, containing eight of those *congi* of *Vespasian*, or *xxviii sextarii*? Whereas on the contrary, *Festus* expressly writes, that the *quadrantal* was the square (he means the cube) of the *Roman foot*. *Quadrantal vocabant antiqui, quam ex Græco amphoram dicunt, quod vas pedis quadrati, octo & quadraginta capit sextarios.* And *Fannius* confirms the same.

*Pes longo spatio, latèque notetur in angulo, Angulus ut par sit, quem claudis linea triplex. Quatuor ex quadris medium cingatur inane: Amphora sit cubus: Quam ne violare liceret, Sacrare Jovi Tarpeio in monte Quirites.*

We might elevate their authorities by saying, these are only the testimonies of two grammarians, better versed in disputes of words, than critical in measures, which more properly are the speculation of mathematicians: And therefore if *Vitruvius* had affirmed it, much more credit might have been given. But we shall rather say, they wrote what was vulgarly, and commonly, upon tradition, believed, that the

length of one of the sides of the *amphora* was equal to the *Roman foot*: Not that it was precisely and exactly equal, but that of any known measure whatsoever then extant, this came the nearest to it, as indeed it doth; yea, so near, that if at this day the *amphora*, and *Roman foot*, were in use amongst us, many a writer that had never been so curious as diligently to compare them, would not be scrupulous to affirm as much. Which may appear by the practice of *Ant. Augustinus*, *Pacatus*, *Massæus*, *Statius*, *Ursinus*, and of several other learned men, not long before our times: Who tho' they purposely made it their inquiry to discover the true *Roman weights* and measures, and therefore made special use of this *congius* of *Vespasian*, yet have no less erred, as we shewed before, in the dimension of the *amphora*, than both *Festus* and *Fannius* have done. Neither will this answer seem improbable concerning measures, if we shall examine a place or two concerning coins, in which the ancients, and those too of the better sort of authors, have in the very same manner erred. For *Livy* writing that *Marcellus* gave to *L. Banti*, (or *Bandius*) 10 *bigati*, that is *denarii* (so called, because the *biga* was ordinarily stamped upon the reverse of the *denarius*): *Plutarch* describing the same gift, renders it by so many *drachmæ*, the *Grecian* manner of computation; not that the *drachma*, in the exact and intrinsic valuation, was equal then to the *denarius*, or the *denarius* to the *drachma* (as we shall shew in the ensuing discourse) but that in the vulgar and popular estimation, the one passed for the other, being both not much different in their weight, as well as valuation. *Like*wise *Dio* informs us, that *Octavius* promised the *Veteran* soldiers 10 *drachmæ* a man: Whereas *Cicero* expressing the same thing to *Atticus*, terms them 10 *denarii*. And *Suetonius* writes, that *Cæsar*, by testament, gave to each of the common people, *sestertia trecenta*, that is, 1000 *denarii*; which *Plutarch*, both in the life of *Brutus*, and of *Antonius*, renders *δραχμαὶ ἑξήκοντα ὀκτώ*, seventy five *drachms*. In the like manner we may say, that *Festus* and *Fannius* have described the *amphora* by the *Roman foot*; not as if this were the exact measure of it, but as being the most known and nearest proportion, in which, without falling into fractions, it might evenly and roundly be expressed.

And thus have we finished our enquiry after the *Roman foot*: Our next labour should be to compare it with the present standards, and originals, for measures of divers nations. For which I must refer the reader to this ensuing table.

<sup>a</sup> Vide etiam latus cubicum, modii, semicongi, sextarii, bemina, &c. Villalp. ibidem.

<sup>b</sup> Sext. Pomp. Festus de verb. signif.

<sup>c</sup> Rhema. Fannii carmina de pond. & mensuris.

<sup>d</sup> Livius, l. 23.

<sup>e</sup> Plutarchus in Marcello.

<sup>f</sup> Dio, l. 45. in Cæsare Octav.

<sup>g</sup> Cicero, l. 16. §. ep. ad Atticum.

<sup>h</sup> Plut. in Bruto. Idem in Antonio.

## SEMIPIES ROM.



## The Roman FOOT compared with the measures of divers Nations.

SUCH Parts as the Roman foot, or that on the monument of <i>Coffutius</i> in Rome, contains	1000
The foot on the monument of <i>Statilius</i> in Rome, contains	1005 $\frac{1}{2}$
The foot of <i>Villalpandus</i> , deduced from the <i>Congius</i> of <i>Vespasian</i> , contains	1019 $\frac{65}{100}$
The ancient Greek foot, being in proportion to the ancient Roman foot, as xxv to xxiv, contains	1041 $\frac{67}{100}$
The English foot	1034 $\frac{13}{100}$
The Paris foot	1104 $\frac{45}{100}$
The Venetian foot	1201 $\frac{65}{100}$
The Rbinland foot, or that of <i>Snellius</i>	1068 $\frac{25}{100}$
The derab, or cubit, at Cairo in Egypt	1886 $\frac{25}{100}$
The Persian arish	3306 $\frac{10}{100}$
The greater Turkish pike, at Constantinople	2272 $\frac{08}{100}$
The lesser Turkish pike, at Constantinople, is in proportion to the greater, as 31 to 32	
The braccio at Florence	1978 $\frac{28}{100}$
The braccio, for woollen, at Siena	1284 $\frac{38}{100}$
The braccio, for linen, at Siena	2041 $\frac{37}{100}$
The braccio at Naples	2171 $\frac{66}{100}$
The canna at Naples	7114 $\frac{79}{100}$
The vara at Almaria, and at Gibraltar, in Spain	2854 $\frac{19}{100}$
Il palmo di Architeti, at Rome; whereof x make the canna di Architeti	756 $\frac{98}{100}$
Il palmo del braccio di Mercantia, & di tessito di tela, at Rome; this and the former are both engraven in a white marble-stone in the Capitol, with this inscription, Curante Lu. Pato	719 $\frac{24}{100}$
The Genoa palm	842 $\frac{81}{100}$
The Antwerp ell	2360 $\frac{91}{100}$
The Amsterdam ell	2345 $\frac{40}{100}$
The Leyden ell	2337 $\frac{13}{100}$

## The English FOOT, taken from the Iron-Standard at Guild-Hall in London, and compared with the Standards for Measures of divers Nations.

SUCH parts as the English foot contains	1000
The Roman foot, or that on the monument of <i>Coffutius</i> in Rome, contains	967
The foot on the monument of <i>Statilius</i> in Rome, contains	972
The foot of <i>Villalpandus</i> , deduced from the <i>congius</i> of <i>Vespasian</i> , contains	986
The Greek foot	1007 $\frac{22}{100}$
The Paris foot	1068
The Venetian foot	1162
The Rbinland foot, or that of <i>Snellius</i>	1033
The derab, or cubit, at Cairo in Egypt	1824
The Persian arish	3197
The greater Turkish pike, at Constantinople	2200
The lesser Turkish pike at Constantinople, is in proportion to the greater, as 31 to 32	
The braccio at Florence	1913
The braccio for woollen, at Siena	1242
The braccio for linen, at Siena	1974
The braccio at Naples	2100
The canna at Naples	6880
The vara at Almaria, and at Gibraltar in Spain	2760
Il palmo di Architeti, at Rome; whereof x make the canna di Architeti	732
Il palmo del Braccio di Mercantia, & di tessito di Tela, at Rome; this and the former are both engraven in a white marble-stone in the Capitol, with this inscription, Curante Lu. Pato	695 $\frac{1}{100}$
The Genoa palm	815
The Antwerp ell	2283
The Amsterdam ell	2268
The Leyden ell	2260

This table I made by the Standards, the former by proportion. Of

## Of the DENARIUS.

**A**SI have made for measures, the Roman foot the foundation of my enquiry, and therefore have handled it in the precedent treatise: So for finding out of weights, I shall take the *denarius* as an undeniable principle, from whence those of the ancients, by a necessary consequence may be inferred. For as the unity is in respect of numbers, or the *sestertius* in discourses *de re nummaria*; so is the *denarius* for weights, a fit rise, or beginning, from whence the rest may be deduced. Not but that it were better (as I gave the caution before) if we absolutely consider the exactest ways of discovering weights, to begin with the greater, and by them to find out the less, than by the less to produce the greater; but if we look upon the condition of times, and consider the means that are left after so many revolutions and changes of the *Roman* empire, it will be safer to alter our method. For to this day there are many thousand *denarii* left and amongst these some so perfect and entire, as if they had been but newly brought from the mint; whereas of the *Roman libra*, and ounces, there are but few extant, if compared with these. *Lipsius*, and *Gruterius*, in their inscriptions mention some, and *Patus* some others, besides such as I have seen in the hands of antiquaries, and many of mine own: Most of which differ from one another, either as having been consumed by rust and time, or it may also be by the men that then lived, for their advantage lessened: A thing too often practised amongst us. Wherefore I think it more convenient by the *denarius* to deduce the proof and evidence of these, than by the diversity and uncertainty of these to conclude the *denarius*: And yet if some of the best and fairest of them shall agree with this, I shall think my self so much the more assured.

Now seeing the *denarius* may be considered in a double respect, either as *nummus*, or as *pondus*: In the first acception, the valuation of it in civil affairs is remarkable, in the latter, the gravity and ponderousness: I shall speak no farther of the former, than as it may conduce in some sort to illustrate the latter. The *denarius* was a silver coin in use amongst the *Romans*, passing at the first institution for *dena aera*, or ten *asses*. And so *Vitruvius* expressly

writes, *Nostri autem primò decem fecerunt antiquum numerum, & in denario denos aereos asses constituerunt*. The same thing is attested by *Volusius Metianus*. *Denarius primò asses decem valebat, unde & nomen traxit*. *Pliny*, besides a confirmation of the same valuation, assigns also the time in which it was first stamped. *Argentum signatum est anno urbis à quingentesimo octogesimo quinto, Q. Fabio consule, quinque annis ante primum bellum Punicum, & placuit denarius pro decem libris aëris*: That is, for ten *asses*. For the *asses* both then, and under the first consuls, were *librales*. *Dionysius Halicarnassensis*, *Ἦν δὲ ἀσάριον, χαλκόν νόμισμα, θάξας λίτραν*. The *assis* was a brass coin, weighing a pound. Where by the way, it is worth the observation, the strange, and in mine opinion, the unadvised proportion, betwixt the brass and silver moneys of those times: That ten pounds of brass should be but answerable to the eighty fourth part (for so much, or near it, was the *denarius*) of a pound of silver; or to speak more clearly, that one pound in silver should be equal in valuation to eight hundred forty pounds in brass. Neither can there be any excuse of that error, unless this, that there was then an infinite plenty of the one, and as great a scarcity of the other. However it were, the same proportion is testified by *Varro*, who farther adds; that the *Romans* took the first use and invention of the *denarius*, from the *Sicilians*: *In argento nummi, id à siculis, denarii quòd denos aëris valebant*. And according to this valuation the *denarius* had an impress upon it of the figure X, denoting the *decussis*, or number of the *asses*, as *Valerius Probus* witnesses, and sometimes this character X; both which I have seen, and can shew, in several ancient ones. This latter by the ignorance of scribes formerly in MSS. and of our printers of late, in the edition of *Celsus*, and of *Scribonius Largus*, is represented by an asterisk \*, and by a worse error in the same authors, the figure X expressing the *denarius*, as a *pondus*, is confounded with the figure X expressing a number. From this figure on the *denarius*, or *decussis*, *Vitruvius* calls the intersections of lines, *decusses*, and *decussationes*. And *Columella* useth the phrase *in stellam decussari*, when lines meet diamond-wise, or lozenge-like, as these in the character X or X. Neither did the de-

\* Vitruv. l. 3. c. 1.

Vol. Metianus de assis distributione.

\* Plinius, l. 33. c. 3.

Budaus, l. 5. de assis, correctis these numbers by *Livy* (l. 30.) and reads them 478.

Varro, l. 4. de ling. Lat.

Vitruv. l. 10.

Columella, l. 5.

**GRAVES** *naribus* long pass at the valuation of ten *asses*, nor the *asses* which before, and then were *librales*, continue at one stay; but with the exigencies of the Roman state, the rate of the *denarius* rose, and the weight of the *asses* fell; that is in effect, both the silver and the brass monies came to be augmented in their estimation. For by a public edict of *Fabius Maximus* the dictator, the common wealth being hardly pressed upon by *Hannibal*, the *denarius* came to be priced at *xvi asses*, and the *asses* which were then *sextantarii*, or the sixth part of the Roman pound, (for in the first *Punic* war, by reason of the excessive expences of the state, they first fell from being *librales*, to be *sextantarii*) came now in the second *Punic* war to be *unciales*. The whole progress and manner of this alteration, is by none so well and fully expressed as by *Pliny*, and therefore I shall a little insist upon his words: *Silver*, says he, came to be coined in the five hundred eighty fifth year of this city, *Q. Fabius* being consul, five years before the first *Punic* war, and then the *denarius* passed for *x* pounds of brass, the *quinarius* for *v*, the *sestertius* for *ii* pounds and an half. The weight of the *assis* in brass was diminished in the first *Punic* war, the common-wealth not being able to support the expences, and then it was decreed, that the *asses* should be coined *sextantario pondere*: That is, with the weight of the sixth part of a pound, or two ounces, whereas before they were *librales*. Tho' *Alciatus* here, upon a very gross mistake, contends, that they were then coined *dextantario pondere*, and not *sextantario*; but yet that they were called *asses sextantarii*, because the *sextans*, or sixth part of an ounce was wanting: whereas *Festus* expressly writes: *Grave æs dictum à pondere, quia deni asses singuli pondo libræ efficiant denarium ab hoc ipso numero dictum: Sed bello Punico populus Romanus pressus ære alieno, ex singulis assibus libralibus senos fecit, qui tantundem valerent*. And these words of *Pliny*, which immediately follow those before recited, put it out of controversy. <sup>b</sup> Whereby, says he, five parts were gained, and the debts (of the common-wealth) discharged. I would gladly see by what arithmetic *Alciatus* can demonstrate, that the

common-wealth shall gain five parts, making the *asses sextantarii*, in his sense; whereas on the contrary, taking them in this interpretation (as both <sup>1</sup> *Agricola*, and <sup>2</sup> *Vilalpandus* do) it is a thing most evident. For the whole pound, or *asses*, before consisting of *xii* ounces, being now reduced to two ounces, and these two passing at as high a rate in the valuation of things vendible, as the whole *libra* did, it is plain, that the common-wealth by this diminution of weight, keeping the same constant tenure of the estimation of the *asses*, gain'd ten parts in twelve, that is, five in six; and not one in six, as *Alciatus* would have it. But to omit this digression, and to return to <sup>3</sup> *Pliny*: *Afterwards being oppressed by Hannibal, under Q. Fabius Maximus the dictator, the asses were made unciales, and the denarius passed for xvi asses, the quinarius for viii, and the sestertius for iv. And hereby the common-wealth gained half, yet in the pay of the militia, the denarius was always accounted for x asses. The impress of the silver [that is of the denarius] were the bigæ, and quadrigæ; from whence they are called bigati, and quadrigati. Not long after, by the lex Papiria, the asses came to be semunciales. Livius Drusus, tribune of the people, mixed an eighth part of brass with the silver. Thus far Pliny. Out of which words it is most evident (omitting many passages of his worth our consideration) that as the *denarius* at the first institution passed for *x asses*, so afterwards it was valued at *xvi*. And *Vitruvius* gives a reason, why next to *x*, they made choice of *xvi*, rather than of *xii* or any other proportion: *Quoniam animadvertunt utroque numeros esse perfectos, & sex, & decem, utroque in unum conjece-runt, & fecerunt perfectissimum decussissexi*, where <sup>4</sup> *Budæus* reads *decussissexi*: But <sup>5</sup> *Vilalpandus* *decussis sex*, that it may be better, as he imagines, answer to the Greek, *δύναξις*. <sup>6</sup> *Hujus autem rei, scilicet Vitruvius, autorem invenerunt pedem. E cubito enim cum dempti sint palmi duo, relinquitur pes quatuor palmorum, palmus autem habet quatuor digitos, ita efficitur uti pes habeat sexdecim digitos, & totidem asses æreos denarius.* <sup>7</sup> *Metianus* also purposely treating of this argument, after that he had related that*

<sup>b</sup> *Argentum signatum est anno urbis 121. xxxv. Q. Fabio. Cof. quinque annis ante primum bellum Punicum. Et placuit denarius pro X libris æris, quinarius pro quinque, sestertius pro dupondio, ac semisse. Libræ autem pondus æris immutatum bello Punico primo, cum impensis res. non sufficeret, constitutumque ut asses sextantario pondere ferirentur. Plin. lib. 33. c. 3.*

<sup>1</sup> *Plin. l. 33. c. 3. Ita quinque partes fastæ lucri dissolutumque æs alienum.*

<sup>2</sup> *Postea Hannibale u. ente, Q. Fabio Maximo dictatore, asses unciales facti: placuitque denarium XVI assibus permutari, quinarium octonis, sestertium quaternis: ita res. dimidium lucrata est. In militari tamen stipendio semper denarius pro X assibus datus. Nota argenti fuere bigæ atque quadrigæ, & inde bigati, quadrigatique dicti. Mox lege Papiria semunciales asses facti, Livius Drusus in tribuatu plebis octavam partem æris argento miscuit. Plin. l. 33. c. 3.*

<sup>3</sup> *Vilalp. de apparatu urbis ac templi.*

<sup>4</sup> *Vitruv. l. 3. c. 1.*

<sup>5</sup> *Vol. Metianus de assis ditrib.*



the *denarius*, at the first institution, was valued at *x asses*, adds, *now it is worth xvi*. And not to cite more authorities, the impress or stamp of *xvi*, as well as of *x*, found upon several *denarii*, and seen both by *Antonius Augustinus*, (a man very accurate in coins, as appears by his dialogues) and by *Villalpandus*, besides one with the inscription of *C. Titinius*, with the same character, mentioned by *Fulvius Ursinus*, and *Dalechampius* puts it out of controversy. And this valuation of the *denarius*, as it is more than probable, continued from the first institution of it in the second *Punic* war, without any interruption, to *Justinian's* time, and it is likely longer; since there is no proof out of any ancient author, nor any character on any ancient *denarius* found to the contrary. As for those authorities which are alledged, and pressed by *Budæus*, and *Alciatus*, of *Varro*, *Apuleius*, *Arruntius*, and *Pompeius*, affirming that after the second *Punic* war, the *denarius* contained *x asses*, the *quinarius*, or *victorialis* *v*, the *sestertius* *xx* and a half: We may give a true and easy solution, that these writers expressed the valuation of them, as they were in their first original and beginning, with reflection to their primitive denomination: In which respect the *treviri monetales*, or officers of the mint, usually imprinted on the *denarius* the character *x*, rather than *xvi*; the former being the impress of its first institution, and the latter of its after valuation. And so in like manner may those citations be answered by *Plutarch*, *Dionysius*, and others, produced by some learned men to strengthen their assertion, that the *denarius* after the second *Punic* war returned to its first estimation. Which thing could not have been effected, without extreme loss and prejudice to particular men, in their private fortunes and estates; which the justice and wisdom of the *Roman* senate, under the consuls, was not likely to have introduced, or the people to have admitted.

To conclude, the *denarius*, as it is evident by many irrefragable authorities before alledged, in the highest valuation passed for *xvi asses*; and according to that proportion, the *quinarius*, or *victorialis* for *viii*, the *sestertius* for *xx*: But in the lowest valuation, or first institution, it passed for *x asses*: And then the proportion of the *quinarius* was *v*, of the *sestertius* *xx* and a half, and therefore was thus marked *HS*, or thus *HS*, as the *quinarius* had this character *V*, and also this *X*, as it is to be seen in a *victorialis* of mine own (besides

several others) with the face and inscription of *M. Cato*. By which coin that place may not unfitly be explained, which troubled *Budæus*, why the *ordo decussatus*, and *ordo quincuncialis*, signify in the ranking of trees the same thing, altho' the *quinarius*, or *quincunx*, give the denomination to one, and the *denarius*, or *decussis*, to the other. The reason is, because the *quinarius* had the character *X* imprinted on it, as well as the *denarius*, or *decussis*. Besides in *Temperarius*, we find the *quincunx* to be thus represented, as the *uncia* thus — so that five of these *uncie* making the *quincunx*, and these five being ranged like the figure *X* (the character of the *decussis*) it is no wonder if the *ordo decussatus*, and *quincuncialis*, were taken for the same.

That the *denarius* should have passed at any other rate between *xvi* and *x asses*, as there is no coin extant to prove it, so there is no express authority to conclude it. Tho' some infer out of *Polybius*, that it was valued also at *xii asses*: Because he defines the *ἡμισάκιον*, or *semissis*, to be *ἑξακοντα μύρια δηνάρια*, the fourth part of the *Attick obolus*; and *vi oboli* being in the *drachma*, to which *drachma* they suppose the *denarius* equal, therefore there must be *xxiv semisses*, or *xii asses* in the *denarius*. But with much better reason we may hence infer, that the *drachma* was somewhat bigger than the *denarius*, as we shall prove in this ensuing discourse; and therefore *Polybius* allows *xii asses* to it: Whereas, if it had been precisely equal to the *denarius*, he would have valued it at *x*, or else *xvi* of the lesser sort of *asses*. So that sir *H. Savile*, a man of exquisite judgment and learning, in his discourse at the end of *Sacutus*, justly blames *Hottoman* for altering the text of *Polybius*, and is himself to be censured, as also *Lyffius*, in inferring thence that the *denarius* contained *xii asses*.

The several parts of the *denarius*, excepting the *quinarius* and *sestertius*, of both which I have spoken before, are all comprized in this description of *Varro*, with which I shall conclude: *Nammi denarii decima libella, quod libram pondo as valebat, et erat ex argente parva; sembella quod sit libellæ dimidium quod semis assis. Teruncius à tribus antiis sembella quod vale dimidium, et est quarta pars sicut quadrans assis*. By which proportions it appears, that the *libella* was the tenth part of the *denarius*, when it was current at *x asses*, the *sembella* the *xxth*, the *teruncius* the *xii<sup>th</sup>*. And thus much of the *denarius* as it is *nominus*.

<sup>1</sup> Anton. August. Dialogo 1.

<sup>2</sup> Cod. MS. Temperarii.

<sup>3</sup> Varro, l. 4. de ling. Lat.

<sup>4</sup> Dalechampius in. Min. l. 33. c. 3.

<sup>5</sup> Polyb. l. 2.

<sup>6</sup> Budæus, l. 1. de assis.

<sup>7</sup> Lyffius Elector. c. 2.

GREAVES

The second, and our principal consideration of the *denarius*, is, as it is *pondus*, in which acception it will be necessary to premise a second distinction; that the *denarius* was either *confularis*, or *caesareus*. The *confularis* was that which was made under the government of the city by the consuls, the *caesareus* under the *Caesars*: The *confularis*, (I mean the *confularis* after the second *Punic* war, and under the later consuls) contained precisely the seventh part of the *Roman* ounce, as the other did the eighth part, or somewhat near it.

First that the *denarius confularis* of the later consuls, was the seventh part of the *Roman* ounce: This shall be our principal enquiry, because it is more evident of the two, and will give us the best light to discover the true weight of the *denarius*, in the notion and acception of the ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latins*. It is most apparent both by several fair coins which I have perused of the later consuls, as also by *Cornelius Celsus*, who lived in the beginning of the *Roman* emperors, before there happened a general diminution of the *denarius*, that it was then the seventh part of the ounce, who thus writes, *“ Sed & antea sciri volo in uncia pondus denariorum esse septem.* The same proportion is also exprest by *Scribonius Largus*, who lived not long after *Celsus*, as some imagine, his words are these: *Erit autem nota denarii unius pro Græca drachma; æquè enim in libra denarii octoginta quatuor apud nos, quot drachmæ apud Græcos incurrunt.* *“* *Pliny* also confirms the same. *Miscuit denario triumphator Antonius ferrum, alii* (he means under the emperors) *è pondere subtrahunt, cum sit justum octoginta quatuor è libris signari.* Out of which words of his, and of *Scribonius Largus*, it will by a necessary consequence be infer'd, that the true weight of the *denarius confularis* is the seventh part of an ounce. For if we multiply twelve, the number of the ounces in the *Roman* *libra* (as by all it is confess'd) by seven the number of the *denarii*, of which the ounce then consisted, the sum will be *xxxiii* *denarii*; and so many, say *Scribonius* and *Pliny*, ought justly to be in the *Roman* pound. And these are the only clear and positive authorities that are to be found in classical authors; most of the writings of the ancients, *de ponderibus* &

*mensuris*, having long since been lost; or else those few fragments that are left, of *Cleopatra*, *Dioscorides*, and of others, are so corrupted, that little truth with any certainty can be collected. From whence it will by way of corollary follow, that if either *denarius confularis* be given, the *Roman* ounce, and *libra*, in the same proportion will necessarily be thence deduced; or the *Roman* ounce, and *libra* be given, the *denarius* will as necessarily be concluded.

But before we farther treat of this argument, we shall endeavour also to demonstrate the *denarius*, by the *drachma Attica*. For *Scribonius* seems, and so do other ancients, to make them equal. And therefore *Pliny* writes: *“ Drachma Attica denarii argentei habet pondus: Whereas the drachma Ægina was much larger, this containing x such oboli as the Attick contained vi, and therefore the Athenians in hatred of the Ægenians, called it πικρὰν δραχμὴν, as Pollux testifies. And here as we considered the denarius, as nummus, and as pondus; so likewise must we take the drachma Attica, as nummus, and as pondus: In the prosecution of both which, relatively to the denarius, I shall insist so much the longer, because it is an argument that hath scarce at all, or very perfunctorily been handled. The drachma, as nummus, was a silver coin in use amongst the Athenians, (for I intend only to speak of the drachma Attica, for the same reason that *Pliny* doth, *“ Ferè enim Atticè observatione utuntur medici*) and so it was the measure of things vendible, as all coins are: And as *pondus*, so was it the measure of their gravity and weight. Now the *drachma*, as nummus, passed in the estimation of the best authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*, at the same rate and valuation as the *denarius* did. And therefore, as often as the *Latins* are to express the *Greek* *drachma*, they render it by the *denarius*; and on the contrary, the *Greeks* the *denarius* by the *drachma*. Thus what *Tully* renders by the *denarius*, *Dio* in his forty fifth book expresseth by the *drachma*. Their words, both speaking of *Augustus*, are these, *Veteranos quique Cassilini, & Calatie sunt* (as *Tully* relates) *perduxit ad suam sententiam, nec mirum, quingenos denarios dat.* Καὶ ἰδόντες ἰσχυρὸς τότε, saith *Dio*, κατὰ πικρὰν δραχμὴν. In like manner *Pliny**

<sup>a</sup> The *confularis* again may be considered, either in the time of the former, or of the latter consuls: That of the former consuls, at the first institution of it by *Q. Fabius*, five years before the first *Punic* war, *Peirecius* not improbably imagines to have been the sixth part of the *Roman* ounce: And *Agri-cola* by comparing it with the *talentum Atticum*, which *Varro* values at 15000 *Sesteritii* and with the *tetra-drachme*, which *Livy* (lib. 34.) estimates, *Trium fore denariorum*; as also upon the authority of the *Scholiast* of *Nicanor*, who equals the *denarius* to a drachme and an half, as *Priscian* doth to a drachme and a third part: I say, *Agri-cola* assigns it to almost the same proportion with *Peirecius*. But because I have seen no *denarii confulares* of so great antiquity, and these authorities may perchance admit other constructions, I shall leave this opinion as only probable, and follow what is more certain and demonstrative, of the later consuls.

<sup>c</sup> *Plinius*, l. 33. c. 9.

<sup>d</sup> *Celsus*, l. 5. c. 17.

<sup>e</sup> *Cicero*, l. 16. l. 5. Ep. ad Attic.

<sup>f</sup> *Dio*, l. 45.

<sup>g</sup> *Jul. Pol.* l. 9. c. 6.

<sup>h</sup> *Plinius*, l. 1. c. 27.

<sup>i</sup> *Plinius*, l. 21. c. 34.

writes,

writes, *Venisse murem ducentis nummis*, (that is, *denariis*; for *nummus* absolutely put is often, tho' not always, taken for the *denarius*, as on the contrary the *denarius* is taken for *nummus* in *Hefychius*, \* *δυναρεον τὸ νόμισμα, ἢ ἰσοδ' ἀργυρεον*.) *Casiliun ob-fidente Annibale, eumque qui venderat fame interisse, emptorem vixisse annales tradunt*. The same thing <sup>1</sup>*Valerius Maximus* reports in his seventh book, and sixth chapter, and <sup>2</sup>*Strabo* in his fifth book; the former writing that it was sold for 200 *denarii*, and the latter that it was bought for 200 *drachmae*. To these authorities I shall adjoin \* *Cleopatra*, τὸ Ἰταλὸν δυνάμεον ἔχει δραχμῶν δ. The Italian *denarius* containeth one *drachma*: And ° *A. Gellius*, *Lais μυρίας δραχμῶν ἢ τάλαντον ποσότη, hoc facit nummi nostratis, denarium decem milia*.

These two thus passing the one for the other, being also at the first institution much of the same fineness in respect of silver, it must necessarily be admitted, either that they were exactly the same for weight, which is our next enquiry, or else that they were not much different. For in comparing of foreign coins, the κολλυβιστοί, or *nummularii*, in ancient times, must have taken the same course, which our most knowing bankers do practise now. First, to respect the pureness and fineness of the coins, whether they be alike for the *intrinsic*; and next, whether they have the same weight; and if they differ in either, or both of these, according to those differences to proportion their exchanges. Those other accidental causes of the rising and falling of exchanges of moneys, since they are merely contingent, depending upon the necessities either of times, or places, or persons, I purposely pretermitt, as not so proper and essential to our enquiry. As for the *extrinsic* of coins, by which I mean the outward form, or character, and inscription of the prince, or state, tho' this may raise the valuation of them in those countries, which are subject to the prince, or state, and lessen them in those which are out of their dominions; yet this can produce no remarkable difference, more than what is usually assigned by the masters of the mint, for the waste in coining, and for the labour of the work.

With these cautions, if we shall examine the *Attick drachma*, and by such writings of the ancients, or by such coins as are extant, enquire their true weight, we shall come to such a preciseness as may be hoped for in a work of this nature. P *Suidas*

tells us in the general, *Δραχμή δ' ἑκατὶ νημιματὶ ἀρκεῖται*. The *drachma* is the weight of the silver money. And ° *Hefychius* more particularly informs us: *Δραχμή τὸ ὕδρον ἢ ὕψις*. The *drachma* is the eighth part of the ounce. And ° *Fannius* yet more distinctly writes:

*In scrupulis ternis drachmam, quo pondere doctis  
Argenti facili signatur pondus Athenis.*

To which we may add ° *Cleopatra*, ἡ δραχμή ἔχει γρημμάδα γ'. ἑκατὸς δ'. θυμῶν δ'. κροτία vi. χαλαρὸς μί. The *drachme* hath three scruples, six oboli, nine lupini, eighteen siliques, forty eight areola. The ° *Scholias* of *Nicander* also writes: as the *didrachma* to be τὸ τετραῖον ἢ ὕψις, The fourth part of the [Attick] ounce. In the same proportion are we to take those other silver *Athenian* coins mentioned by ° *Julius Pollux*, namely, the *tetradrachma*, which consisted of three *drachmes*, the *tridrachma*, or *tridrachma*, which by a syncope is the same with the *tridrachma*, containing four *drachmes*, or the half ounce. *Τετραδραχμον, τριδραχμον*, saith ° *Hefychius*; tho' ° *Ammonius* puts a distinction between them, *τετραδραχμον μὲν ὅ ἐστι τὸ νόμισμα, τριδραχμον δ' ἢ τετραδραχμον* [ἄξιον]. This the *Greeks* also called *σατὴ* as ° *Cleopatra*, and ° *Epiphanius* witness. ° *Ο σατῆς, in Cleopatra, ἂν κ' δ'. καλεῖται ἡ αὐτὴν τριδραχμον*: The *statēr* weighs four *drachms*, this they call the *tetra-drachme*. And this also may most clearly be collected out of ° *St. Matthew*, where seeing the original expresseth it more fully than our translation, I shall recite the words as they are in *Greek*: *Ἐλθόντων δ' αὐτῶν εἰς Καπερναῦν, προσήλθον εἰ τὰ διδραχμα λαμβάνοντες τὸ Πέτρον, καὶ ἔπον, ὃ διδάσκαλόν ἡμῶν ἢ τίλη τὰ διδραχμα*; which the vulgar renders thus: *Et cum venissent Capernaum, accesserunt qui didrachma accipiebant, ad Petrum, & dixerunt ei, Magister vester non solvit didrachma?* And our translation thus: *And when they were come to Capernaum, they that received tribute-money, came to Peter, and said, Dost not your master pay tribute?* In the twenty seventh verse of the same chapter, our Saviour answers: *Ἦνα μὴ σκανδαλίζωμεν αὐτοὺς, πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὸ θάλασσαν βάλε ἄλυστρον, καὶ ἢ ἀναβαίνοντα πρῶτον ἔλθω ἄρον, καὶ ἀνέλθας τὸ τέμα αὐτῷ ἀίρειται σατῆς. ἵναὸν λαβὼν δὲς αὐτοῖς ἀντὶ ἡμῶν ἢ οὐ. Notwithstanding, lest we should offend them, go thou to the sea, and cast an hook, and take up the fish that first cometh up: And*

\* *Hefychius* in voce *δυναρεον*. ° *Valer. Max.* l. 7. c. 6. ° *Strabo*, l. 5. *Geogr.* ° *Fragmenta Cleopatrae*. ° *A. Gellius* l. 1. c. 8. ° *Noft. Att.* ° *Suidas* in voce *δυναρεον*. ° *Hefychius* in voce *δυναρεον*. ° *Rhem. Fann.* ° *Fragmenta Cleopatrae*. ° *Scholias Nicandri*. ° *Jul. Poll.* l. 9. c. 6. ° *Hefychius* in voce *τετραδραχμον*. ° *Ammonius* *ἡμῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ καὶ τετραδραχμον* ἄξιον. ° *Fragmenta Cleopatrae*. ° *Epiphanius*, *ἡμῶν τάλαντον*. ° *Mat.* c. xvii. v. 24.

*GRAVES* when thou hast opened his mouth, thou shalt find a piece of money: That take, and give unto them for me, and thee. This, which our translation calls *tribute-money*, in the twenty fourth verse, is called in the original *διδραχμῶν*, or *two drachmes*; and so much was paid by the pole, according to *Josephus*, for each particular person. Our Saviour therefore paying for himself, and St. Peter, in the twenty seventh verse, bids him to give a *stater*; that is, a *τετραδραχμῶν*, or four drachmes; namely the double to the *διδραχμῶν*, which our translation renders too generally by a *piece of money*: But the *Perisian* translation interprets it distinctly by four drachmes: *Thou shalt find four drachmes in it; that take, and give for thee, and me.*

With this *Attick tetradrachme*, or silver *stater*, the Hebrew and Samaritan *שֶׁקֶל* *Shekel*, that is, *Sicle*, did also agree. For if we give credit to *Josephus*, who in *Sealiger's* esteem is, *diligentissimus & philologissimus omnium scriptorum*, we shall find them to be the same. *Ὁ δὲ σίκλος τέμνεται ἰσούριον ἓξ, ἡμισία δὲ δίχεται δραχμὰς τρεῖς ἀγνῆς. The sicle is a sort of money amongst the Hebrews, that contains four Attick drachmes. The same proportion is evidently collected out of *Psalm*, where for 1 shekel mentioned in the law, he renders 200 drachmes, and for xxx an *ox*. *Hesychius* likewise testifies as much, *σίκλος τετραδραχμῶν ἡμισίον. The sicle is [in valuation] the Attick tetradrachme: And *St. Hierome* the ablest of the fathers in the Jewish antiquities, *Siclus, id est stater, habet quatuor drachmas Atticas.***

These testimonies are so positive, and from so good authors (to which also I might adjoin *Epiphanius* in his book *de sententia*, did I not conceive him to be full of errors in that discourse) that I cannot sufficiently wonder at that strange opinion

of *Græppius*, and some others, introduced out of affection of novelty, of a double shekel, the one sacred, equal to the tetradrachme, the other profane, weighing the didrachme: That used in the sanctuary, this in civil commerce, without any solid foundation in the writ, or without any probability of reason, that in any wise state, the prince and people should have one sort of coin, and the priests should have another: And that this of the sanctuary should be in a double proportion to the other, and yet that both should concur in the same name. It is true there is often mention in the scriptures of the weights of the sanctuary, not as if these were different from what were used vulgarly in the city; but because the standards, and originals, the rules of commutative justice, and therefore of an high and sacred use, were kept (as it is more probable) in the sanctuary; for God himself makes this one of the priest's offices, *ut sint super omne pondus atque mensuram.* And it is no wonder that God, who so much hated a false balance, and a false measure, should commit the charge of these to the priests, as things most holy; since the heathens themselves out of a reverent estimation of them, placed them in their temples, as appears by that inscription of the *congius* of *Vespasian* before alledged, and now extant in *Rome*, and by these verses of *Fannius*, treating of the *Roman* measures:

*Amphora sit cubus, quam, ne violare liceret.*

*Sacravere Jovi Tarpeio in monte Quirites.*

And afterwards in the times of Christianity, they were kept in churches, as it is to be seen in the *authenticks* of *Justinian*, where he commands that the weights and

<sup>c</sup> Josephus l. 7. Bell. Jud. c. 27.

<sup>d</sup> Scal. *emend.* in lib. de Emend. Temp.

<sup>e</sup> Hesychius in voce *σίκλος*.

were those *temenura æquiva*, the xxx pieces of silver, which were given to Judas, as the reward of his treason. *Eusebius* relating the story expressly, terms them *silver staters*, which an Hebrew would have termed either silver shekels, or absolutely *שֶׁקֶל* *Cesef*: This in scripture phrase being frequently put for the shekel, and therefore the Syriack translation of the new testament reads it *שֶׁקֶל*: Whence *Tremellius* hath this annotation: *Observeant Hebræi, ubicunque in scripturis argentorum fit mentio, non expressis numismatis argentei specie, intelligi solum sanctuarii æquivalentem quatuor denariis.* Some modern writers imagine them to have been but xxx denarii; but *Baronius* contends that they were, *vel librarum argenti xxx, vel aurorum coronatorum trecentorum.* And *Arias Montanus*, that they were either xxx libra, or xxx talenta. The most probable opinion is, that this sum was neither so great as *Baronius* and *Montanus* make it, nor yet so little as some moderns would have it, but between both, and that is xxx shekels. *M. Casaubonus* in his exertions upon *Baronius*, hath a probable conjecture to strengthen this assertion: *Non enim temere factum videtur, quod filius Dei qui sese examinavit, assumpti foret formæ, Phil. ii. 7. Tringita argentei venderetur, sicut lege Dei municipia totidem sicli assignantur.* Exod. xxi. 32. & apud *Josephum*, lib. 4. c. 8. *Facit hoc quædam non parum ad Domini abjectionem declarandam, quod caput ejus tam parvi æstinatum est.* A small price I confess, xxx shekels being less than 20 of our ordinary crowns. But *Hierome* upon St. Matthew thought it to be as little, who thus writes, *as M. Casaubonus* renders him, *Infelicem Judam non cogitasse quanti pretii rem venderet. Sed Christum mundi salvatorem, Dei filium, cui vile ali-quod municipium minimo pretio addidisset.* Now the price of a servant we find in *Exodus* to have been thirty shekels. <sup>f</sup> *Epiphanius* *supra* adducitur.

<sup>g</sup> And all thy estimation shall be according to the shekel of the sanctuary. *Levit. xxvii. 25. Vet. vulg. sicle sanctuarii ponderabitur.*

<sup>h</sup> *Rheum. Fann. carmina de pond. & mensuris.*

<sup>i</sup> *Paral. xxiii. 29.*

<sup>j</sup> *Prov. xi. 1. item c. xx. ver. 10, 23.*

<sup>k</sup> *Authentic. collat. 9. de calulatoribus tit. 11. novel.*

<sup>l</sup> *measures*

introduced  
of a double  
to the tetra-  
weighing the  
the sanctuary,  
any solid  
out any pro-  
y wife state,  
d have one  
ould have  
the sanctuary  
proportion to  
should con-  
true there  
ures of the  
if these were  
vulgarily in  
standards, and  
ative justice,  
sacred use,  
nable) in the  
makes this  
ut *fant super*  
And it is no  
uch hated a  
sure, should  
the priests,  
the heathens  
estimation of  
ples, as ap-  
the *congus* of  
now extant  
of *Fannius*,  
es:

ne violare li-  
onte Quirites.

s of Christi-  
arches, as it  
of *Justinian's*  
weights and  
ckil.

Philo de dec-  
cles, I conceive,  
reward of his  
uld have termed  
for the shekel,  
mellus hath this  
numismatis ar-  
rs imagine them  
anti xxx, vel au-  
or xxx talenta.  
ntanus make it,  
M. Cafaubone  
: Non enim te-  
Triginta argen-  
d Josephum, lib-  
tam parvi assi-  
s. But Hierome  
him, *Infelitem*  
m, *ceu vile ali-*  
to have been  
nto.

25. *Vet. vulg.*  
10, 23.  
us tit. 11. *novel.*

measures should be kept, in *sacratissima cu-  
jusvis civitatis ecclesia*. As for these al-  
legations taken out of the interpretation of  
the LXX, whereby *Gregorius*, and others, go  
about to prove a double shekel, they are  
well, and solidly, in my judgment, answered  
by *Villalpandus*, and others to whom I  
shall refer the judicious reader: For I in-  
tend not here to speak of the Hebrew she-  
kel, or *Attick* drachme, more than what  
may serve to illustrate the *denarius*.

Seeing therefore, as we have proved,  
that the *Attick drachma* was equal in the  
notion and acception of the ancients, to  
the *denarius*: If therefore an entire, either  
*Attick Δραχμή*, or *Διδραχμή*, or *Τετραδραχμή*,  
were found, we might thence conclude  
the *denarius*. Again, since the Hebrew she-  
kel hath likewise been demonstrated to be  
equal to the *Attick Τετραδραχμή*, and this  
*Attick Τετραδραχμή* to four *denarii*, by the  
common and received axiom of geome-  
tricians, we may conclude, that the He-  
brew shekel was also equal to four *denarii*;  
that is, that four Roman *denarii*, the *Attick*  
*Τετραδραχμή*, and the Hebrew *שקל* were  
all respectively equal to one another. If  
therefore an Hebrew shekel, fair and entire,  
were found, we might as necessarily thence  
infer the *denarius*, as by the *Τετραδραχμή*.

We shall endeavour by both these to  
enquire out the truth, and first by the *Attick*  
*tetradrachmes* in silver: Because of these I  
have seen and weighed many, some of  
them very fair and perfect, and found at  
many several places, as *Athens*, *Constanti-  
nople*, *Tenedos*, and other parts; where the  
art of counterfeiting coins is not as yet  
crept in, and where it is to little purpose  
to practise it: Seeing in those places there  
are few so curious as to buy them, or that  
will give a greater valuation than what they  
are worth in the *intrinsick*. Wherefore having  
in *Italy*, and elsewhere, perused many hun-  
dred *denarii consulares*, I find by a frequent  
and exact trial, the best of them to amount  
to LXX grains *English*, such as I have care-  
fully taken from the standards of the troy,  
or silver weights, kept in the tower in  
*London*, and in goldsmiths-hall, and in the  
university of *Oxford*: On the other side  
weighing many *Attick tetradrachmes*, with  
the image of *Pallas* on the forepart, and  
of the *noctua* on the reverse: I find the best  
of these to be CCXXVIII grains; that is,  
each particular drachme LXVII grains.

And that no man may doubt whether  
these were true *Athenian tetradrachmes*, we  
are to observe, that the ancients used fe-

veral impresses on their coins, by which <sup>GREAVES</sup>  
they might be known and distinguished.  
And therefore *argentum signatum*, in the de-  
scription of *Quintus* his triumph over *Pbi-  
lip*, is by *Livy* opposed to *argentum in-  
sectum*, which *Pollux* terms *δραχμή*, as *Tul-  
ly* calls the former sort, *Facillum atque sig-  
natum*, and the *Greeks*, *ἐπισφραγισμένον*. Thus  
the *denarius* had the impress of the *biga*,  
or *quadriga*, as *Pliny* informs us: And  
therefore *Livy* uses the word *bigati* for  
*denarii*, and *Pliny* both *bigati* and *quadri-  
gati*. The brass coins of the Romans were  
thus marked: *Nota aris fuit ex altera  
parte Janus geminus, ex altera rostrum navis,  
in triente vero & quadrante rates*. The  
*Persians* stamped on the reverse an *archer*:  
Which occasioned that conceit of *Agellus*,  
mentioned by *Plutarch*, That the king of  
*Persia* had beaten him back with ten thou-  
sand archers; when with so much money  
he had corrupted the *Greeks*. The *Car-  
thaginians* on the one side signed the face  
of a woman, (I suppose in memory of  
queen *Dido*) on the reverse the head of an  
horse, or in *Virgil's* expression, *Caput  
acris equi*, both which I have seen. The  
*Peloponnesians* had the impress of a tortoise  
on their money, whence that witty *Greek*  
proverb took its original: *ἡ τὰς ἀφίδας, ἡ  
τὰς ἐσφίρας ἐν αὐτῇ χαλκήρα*. The money at  
*Tenedos* had on the one side a double hat-  
cher, and on the other side two heads, one  
of a man, and another of a woman, arising  
from the same stem, or neck, in memory  
of a law made by the king of that island  
(whom *Heracles* names *Tirrus*, placing  
him antecedent than the *Trojan* war,) that  
a man and a woman, taken in adultery,  
should have their heads struck off with  
an hatchet. In which kind I met with  
two very rare and ancient coins in silver,  
at *Constantinople*, both made with a very  
fair relevy, and both agreeing in the same  
image and inscription; the one weighed  
less than the *Attick tetradrachme*, the other  
wanted somewhat of the *drachme*. And  
because the coin hath not, I think, been  
seen by any antiquary, and the history is  
remarkable, I shall here express the figure  
of the fairest of these.



<sup>a</sup> Villal. de appar. urbis ac templi, par. 2. lib. 2. disp. 4. c. 28. Item par. 2. l. 2. disp. 4.  
<sup>b</sup> Quae eidem aequalia, sunt aequalia inter se. Eucl. ax. 1. l. 1. <sup>c</sup> Livius, l. 34. <sup>d</sup> Jul. Poll.  
l. 9. c. 6. <sup>e</sup> Cicer. 6. Verr. <sup>f</sup> Jul. Poll. l. 9. c. 6. <sup>g</sup> Liv. l. 34. <sup>h</sup> Plinius, l. 33. c. 3.  
<sup>i</sup> Plin. lib. <sup>j</sup> Plutarchus in Artaxerxe. <sup>k</sup> Virg. l. Aeneid. <sup>l</sup> Jul. Poll. l. 9. c. 6. <sup>m</sup> Heracles, ἐπὶ πύργῳ.





assume what I said before) that the *Attick tetradrachme* is two hundred fifty eight grains, and the *drachme* is sixty seven of our *Troy*, or *English* standard. Which may farther be confirmed by an *Attick drachme* of mine own, found in the *Black Sea*, with this inscription, *ΑΘΕ ΤΙΝΑΡΝΙΚΑ ΑΡΧΗ*; and by a *τετράδραχμο*, or *semidrachme*, bought by me at *Alexandria*; that weighing near sixty six grains, and this thirty and better: the face of *Minerva*, either by use or time, being a little diminished in both; but yet so little, that they cannot have lost above two or three grains of their primitive weight. And as this single *Attick drachme* of mine is much to be valued by antiquaries for the weight, and therefore was desired by the learned *Pesirefrus*: So is the inscription, *ΤΙΝΑΡΝΙΚΑ ΑΡΧΗ*, no less worth consideration, for the explication of a place in *Plutarch*, who describing the naval triumph of *L. Aemilius*, writes thus: *Pecunia translata nequaquam tanta pro specie regii triumphi. Tetradrachma Attica cccxxxii milia. Cistophori cccxxii mil.* Where *Budæus*, and *Rhodiginus*, instead of *tetradrachma*, read *tetradrachma*. *Tetradrachm enim quid sit, nemo in arbitrio novit, fatis Budæus.* I would rather read it, as the coin doth, *Tinarnika*; this having almost the same letters with *tetradrachma*, which by the scribes, I suppose, have been inverted. Neither is there any reason, why *Plutarch* might not as well mention in this triumph, *Attica tinarnica*, as *tetradrachma*; these being the fourth part of the *tetradrachma*, and therefore better agreeing with his description: *Pecunia translata nequaquam tanta pro specie regii triumphi*: he here better agreeing with the *cistophori* he also mentions: a sort of coin about half of these *Attica tinarnica*, whereas the *tetradrachma* were eight times as great. For *Pestus* expressing the *talentum Euboicum*, renders it by 7500 *cistophori*, and by 4000 *denarii*; that is *cis tetradrachmes*. *Euboicum talentum nummo Græco septem milium Cingentorum cistophorum est: nostro quatuor milium denariorum.*

And as these testimonies above alledged are beyond all exceptions; so the gold coins of the Grecians, which I have examined, do most evidently prove this proportion assigned to the *Attick drachme*. Which that we may the better understand, we are to observe what proportion the valuation of the gold of those times had to the silver; and

next, what proportion it had in respect of GREASE weight.

For the first, *Julius Pollux*, in very peripatous terms, puts it down: Τὸ ἡ χρυσὸν οὐκ ἂν ἀφύκει διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας τῆς ἐαυτοῦ τῆς ἐκ τῆς Μινυαίων ἀποκαταστάσεως μάτη. That the gold was in the tenfold proportion to the silver, one may evidently learn out of Menander's paracatasthece. \*The sabbotist of Aristotle's

ἱστορίας οὐ δαρκαίοι· ἰδιώται δ' ἵκανοι· αὐτοὶ, ὅπου ὁ ἀσπὴ τῶν Ἀττικῶν ὀνομαζομένη· χρυσὸν, ἡ δὲ δαρκαίου τῶν· ἑξὲς πάλαι· ἀλλ' αὖ' ἔτιγε τοῖς παλαιστοῖς βασιλεῦσι ἀποκαταστάσεως. Ἀλλοὶ δὲ τινες· διναρεῖς δ' ἄρκατοι· ἀφύκει δὲ ἀπονοῖ· εἰς τὴν πρὸς δαρκαίους διναρεῖς μὲν ἀφύκει. The daricks are golden staters, each of them is worth as much as that which is named by the Atticks the χρυσός. They are called so not from Darius the father of Xerxes, but from another king more ancient than he. Some say that the darick is valued at xx drachms of silver, so that v daricks are worth a mina of silver. For the Attick μῶν, or mina, containeth an hundred drachmes in weight, as it is very clear out of \*Pliny, \*Pollux, and others. *Menander* (faith *Pliny*) *quam supra minam vocant, pendit daricas Atticas centum.* And *Pollux*, τὴ μὲν δ' ἀπὸ Ἀθηναίων ἱκανὸν ἑξὲς χρυσῶν· Ἀττικῶν· The mina with the Athenians containeth an hundred Attick drachmes, and the χρυσὸν δαρκαίου, or ἑξήκοντα χρυσῶν of *Darius*, confiting of two drachmes in weight, as we shall presently prove, it will necessarily follow, that the proportion of the χρυσὸν χρυσία, was to the χρυσῶν ἀφύκει, in decupla ratione: and therefore, that five daricks, or ten drachmes of gold, were equal in valuation to an hundred drachmes in silver, that is, to the μῶν. The same proportion may be collected out of *Polybius*, when the *Romans* upon a sum of money to be received, concluded a peace with the *Ætolians*, Ἀπὸ τῆς τῆς μίσης τοῦ ἀφύκει χρυσία, χρυσίων ἰσὺν βύβασις διδόντες ἥ δίκαια μὲν ἀφύκει, χρυσία μὲν. Which words \*Livy renders thus: Pro argento si aurum dare mallet, dare convenit, dum pro argenteis decem aureis unus valeret. This being granted, as certainly of necessity it must, I would correct that place of \*Hesychius concerning the χρυσῶν χρυσία, and read it thus: χρυσῶν δ' χρυσία ὅλην νομισματικὴν εἰς ἀφύκει λήϊον δι' χρυσῶν ἰ, and not διδρυσῶν ἰ, as it is in the printed copies. And be-

\* I have since perused a fair *Athenian Treasury*, of my very worthy and learned friend, *John Marston*, Esq. weighing completely thirty three grains *Englsh*. As also another of *Mr Tho. Roe's*, together with an *Obole* of his, weighing eleven grains. † *Livius*, l. 37. ‡ *Bud.* l. 2. de ass. *Rhodigia*.

lect. antiq. l. 10. c. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Scholiastes Aristop.

7 Polybii *ἱστορίαι* πικ.

ὁ τοῖς ἑλλαστοι καὶ ὁμοχμοῖς

July 1961

4

**GREAVES** this of Hefycbius I would supply the defect of <sup>b</sup> Suidas, who writes: Δραχμή ἢ ἄλλη νομισμα<sup>α</sup> εἰς ἀργυρεὺς δραχμὰς ἰ. and make it thus, Δραχμή ἢ χρυσὸς ἄλλη νομισμα<sup>α</sup> εἰς ἀργυρεὺς λόλον δραχμὰς ἰ. For without the addition of χρυσός, and λόλον, there is no sense: and I believe Suidas took these very words out of Hefycbius.

Having thus found the proportion that the δραχμή χρυσὸς had to the silver, our next enquiry is, how many of the drachmes in weight the χρυσός, or χρυσὸς σάληρ, or aureus contained. <sup>c</sup> Julius Pollux gives us in this particular the best, and most positive information of any, ὁ δὲ χρυσὸς σάληρ δύο ἑκατ. δραχμὰς Ἀττικὰς. The golden stater [or aureus,] contains two Attick drachmes. The fame is confirmed by <sup>d</sup> Hefycbius: Πολύμαρχος φησὶ διώσαδ<sup>α</sup> δὲ χρυσὸν σάληρ πέντε Ἀττικὰς δραχμὰς δύο. ἢ δὲ τοῦ χρυσὸς δραχμῶν νομισμα<sup>α</sup> ἀργυρεὺς δραχμὰς δέκα. Polemarchus says, that the aureus amongst the Athenians contains two drachmes, and that the drachme of gold is worth ten drachmes of silver. And to this of Pollux and Hefycbius, all the aurei of the ancient Grecians, which have passed through my hands, do very well correspond. Now these aurei, as they had several impresses upon them, so had they several names, by which they are distinguished. For they were either Ἀττικοί, or Δαρκενοί, or Φιλίππειοι, or Ἀλεξάνδρειοι, or the like; all which we may prove by Xenophon, <sup>e</sup> Harpocratio, the scholiast of Aristophanes, and others, to have been equal unto two Attick drachmes, and therefore respectively equal to one another. Neither is this much to be wondered at, that the Grecians and Persians, though at enmity amongst themselves, yet should agree in the aurei; seeing that in our times the Venetian cbequeen, the Barbary ducat, the Egyptian and Turkish sberif, are almost all of the same pureness in respect of the gold, and not differing above a grain in the weight. Which difference we may also allow to those of the ancients, without any prejudice to our enquiry. Concerning these aurei, or golden staters, the observation of <sup>f</sup> Julius Pollux is worth our consideration: Καὶ οἱ μὲν Δαρκενοὶ ἑκατὸν σάληρας, οἱ δὲ Φιλίππειοι οἱ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρειοι, χρυσὸς πέντε ὄντες, ἢ οἱ μὲν χρυσὸς ἑκατὸς πρῶτος (ἢ σάληρ, ἢ δὲ σάληρ ἑκατὸς ἢ πέντε ὁ χρυσός). Of the staters some were denominated from Darius, some from Philip, some from Alexander, and were all of gold. And when you say the aureus, the stater is understood, but if you say the stater, the aureus

is not always meant. And this is most true; for the χρυσός, or aureus, (I speak not here of the aureus Romanus, this being somewhat less than these mentioned by Pollux) did always imply the σάληρ, but the σάληρ did not always infer the aureus: the stater being more general, signifying as well the argenteus, as the aureus, and that was double to this; the stater argenteus being four drachmes, as we proved before, and therefore the same with the tetradrachme, and the aureus two drachmes, and therefore equal in weight to the didrachme. Wherefore every aureus was rightly called a stater, but every stater could not rightly be called an aureus.

From these aurei then, or χρυσὸς σάληρας, we may deduce the silver Attick drachme, if we either had the Δαρκενοί, some of which to this day are found in Persia, or if we had the Φιλίππειοι, or the Ἀλεξάνδρειοι. To pass by the Δαρκενοί, because I have not perused any of them, and to speak only of the Φιλίππειοι and Ἀλεξάνδρειοι, of which there are many extant.

Concerning the Φιλίππειοι <sup>g</sup> Snellius writes thus: Philippi nummum unicum, & Alexandri Macedonum, solertissimus veterum nummorum aestimator Nicolaus Rockoxius possidet, utrumque eodem pondere granorum 179. Now CLXXXIX grains of gold in Holland, such as Snellius used, are answerable to an hundred thirty four grains English and an half. Near which proportion I have observed two others, with the inscription ΦΙΛΙΠΠΟΤ, excepting only a grain or two.

As for the Ἀλεξάνδρειοι, I find the weight of one of the fairest for impresson, and character, I think, in the world, which I bought at Alexandria, with the image and inscription ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΤ, to be exactly of English grains 133  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and another at Constantinople 133, and in the same proportion several others. With which comparing one of mine honoured and learned friend, John Marsham, Esq; I find his a grain defective: and weighing since some others, out of that choice and rare κομῆλιον of ancient coins, collected by the noble sir Simonds D'Ewes, knight baronet, I observed two of his to exceed 133 grains by half a grain.

Wherefore I may conclude (allowing only half a grain for so much wanting by time, or by the mint) from the aureus being double to the Attick drachme, that it hath been rightly assigned by me to be LXXVII grains: and from this with those limitations above mentioned, I may conclude the denarius consularis (which is our princi-

<sup>b</sup> Suidas in voce δραχμή.

<sup>c</sup> Jul. Poll. l. 4. c. 24.

<sup>d</sup> Hefycbius in voce χρυσός.

<sup>e</sup> Λίγυνοι δὲ τοὺς διώσαδαι δὲ Δαρκενὸν ἑκατὸν δραχμῶν ἰ (as Jof. Scaliger rightly corrected the printed copies, which render it 4 or 1000) ὡς τὰς πέντε Δαρκενὰς διώσαδαι μίαν ἑκατὸν. Harpocr. Τριτάτου Δαρκενὰ Xenophonti sunt δέκα σάληρα. Talentum autem 600 drachmæ. Ergo Δαρκενὴ sunt 20 drachmæ. Scal. de re num.

<sup>f</sup> Jul. Poll. l. 9. c. 6.

<sup>g</sup> Snellius de re nummaria.

is most true;  
eak not here  
being some-  
d by Pollux)  
ut the *salus*  
s: the *stater*  
g as well the  
hat was dou-  
s being four  
and there-  
drachme, and  
nd therefore  
me. Where-  
alled a *stater*,  
ly be called

ερεσται σάτρες,  
tick drachme,  
me of which  
or if we had  
moi. To pass  
not perused  
ly of the di-  
nch there are

nellius writes  
, & Alexan-  
eterum num-  
oxius possidet,  
m 179. Now  
and, such as  
an hundred  
n half. Near  
rved two o-  
ΑΙΠΟΤ, ex-

d the weight  
teffion, and  
rld, which I  
e image and  
e exactly of  
ther at Con-  
e proportion  
mparing one  
friend, *John*  
in defective:  
out of that  
cient coins,  
nds *D'Ewes*,  
wo of his to  
rain.

allowing on-  
wanting by  
e *aureus* be-  
me, that it  
y me to be  
with those li-  
may conclude  
is our princi-

re χειρὸς.  
printed copies,  
Xenophonti  
re num.

pal enquiry) seeing <sup>a</sup> Galen, l. 8. c. 3. de compositione medicam. According to the Latin manner of division, speaking of an antidote prescribed by *Aclepiades*, whereof the *dosis* was to be one drachme, or denarius, writes thus: Ἡγύμαιο δ' λίγων αὐτὸν δραχμῶν ἀρίστων, ἃ ἴσ' ὅτι χρὸν ἅπασιν τοῖς νοσήτοις ἰατροῖς ἰδοῖν ἐνομάσαν. ἄλλο δ' νοῖν ἡμᾶς ἰδὲν ἢ τῷ πρὸς γυμνασίῳ φῦσι ἀναίσχυντα. περιέχον δ' ὅτι δραχμῶν λιγυρῶν νῦν οὐα τοῖς τοῖσιν αἰσῶντες, ὅπερ Ῥωμαῖοι θηνάριον ἐνομάζουσιν. I suppose, that be means the silver drachme, for so all the later physicians are wont to call it; neither will the nature of the thing suffer us to understand any other. And it is manifest, that in such things as we all now name the drachme, the Romans name the denarius.

The denarius also, as we proved before out of *Philo*, *Josephus*, *St. Hierom*, and *Hesychius*, may be inferred by the Hebrew or Samaritan shekel: the shekel, by the joint testimony of all of them, being equal in valuation to the Attick stater Argenteus, or tetradrachme, and the Attick tetradrachme, as we have shewed, to four denarii consularis: If therefore an Hebrew or Samaritan shekel in silver, fair, and not impaired, were found, we might by this as well discover the denarius, as by the tetradrachme, or the aureus. And here I must confess I have not seen so many perfect and entire, with the Samaritan characters, which certainly are the best and truest, (for those with the later characters, invented, as some suppose, by *Esdras*, are most of them counterfeit, as to give my self satisfaction. For tho' I have perused that of *Arias Montanus*, now in the university of Oxford, which he describes in his tract *De Siculo*, and from whence he deduces the proportion of the Hebrew shekel; yet to speak the truth, there is no trust to be given to it: Not but that the coin is very ancient, and the inscription upon it in Samaritan characters well made; but the sides of it have been so filed away, that it hath very much lost of the true weight: For I find it to be scarce the weight of twenty-pence of our English standard. Whereas *Montanus*, if he made his observation exactly, equals it to almost four Spanish rials, or to four Roman julio's; both which exceed two of our English shillings. So that till such time as I may procure out of the east, (whither I have often sent) some perfect shekels, I must be content to take up the relations of others. And here I shall begin with *Moses Nebemani Gerundensis*, a jew, a learned expofitor of the *Pentateuch*; who, as *Arias Montanus* tells

us, flourished in Catalonia above 400 years since. His words, as *Montanus* hath delivered them in his tract *de siculo*, are these: <sup>1</sup> In comment. Exod. xxxix. Multis verbis differens significabas se non facile ad Salomonis Jarrhai, qui ante illum in Gallia scripserat, sententiam de siculo accedere; cum Salomon affirmasset, Siclum esse dimidium argenti unciam. Postea jam absoluto in omnem legem commentariorum opere, idem Moses Gerundensis capite ad eam rem propriè addito, sicali æstimationem à Salomone illo indicatam, re ipsà doctus, ingenuè, & apertè, ut viros doctos, & veri irruendi, atque docendi cupidus decet, comprobavit. Narrat autem se eo anno, quo illa scriberet, in Palestinam ex Hispaniâ sacrorum locorum visiendi causa novi delatum Acconam, quam nunc Jacoban vocant, devenisse; ibidemque sibi ab incolis ostensum fuisse nummum argenteum antiquissimum, expressis tamen signis & literis conspicium; in cujus altero latere forma esset vasculi illius, quod manna plenum in sacra arca ad seculorum monumentum, Dei jussu, & Moses procuratore fuerat repositum: Et in altero ramus ille admirabilis, quem in fasciculum virgularum plurimarum Aaronis nomine illatum (cum illius sacerdotali dignitati ab æmulis quibusdam obtrectaretur) postera die populus omnis florentem, amygdalæque explicantem vidit; inscriptiones etiam fuisse in eodem nummo Samaritanis characteribus, quæ olim communes totius Israelis literæ fuerant, ante discessionem decem tribuum à duabus, lingua sãdã Hebraica, quarum exemplum ex altera parte erat SEKEL ISRAEL, quod Latine sonat sicles Israelis: Ex altera vero JERUSALEM KEDESSAH, hoc est Jerusalem sancta: Qui nummus antiquitatem cum primis magnam probabat, ut; ole cuius nomine Israelis, eo tempore quo omnes xii tribus communi concordia Israelis nomen obtinebant; quoque Hierosolyma ipsi omnibus regia urbs, sancta quoque erat; eademque communis omnibus & religionis, & publicæ rei, & monetæ, atque literarum ratio, quæ postea discessione facta, alia atque alia utrique parti fuit. Namque Judæi, ut omnes fere scriptores asserunt, ne cum schismaticis Israelitis ullo sacrorum usu communicarent, eam literarum formam, quæ nunc etiam in usu est, hoc est quadratam, mutatis valde alteris: prioris figuris, adinvenere. Affirmat prætere, idem Gerundensis, nummum illum, qui sicli: inscribatur, sibi in statum pensum dimidiæ argenti uncie pondus reddidisse, ostensam quoque alteram monetam dimidiato pondere minorem, iisdem omnino vasis & ramis figuris quæ tamen non SEKEL, sed HASZI SEKEL, hoc est dimidius sicles diceretur, probare itaq; sibi vel maxime Salomonis Jarrhai de sicli pondere, & valore, sententiam. Thus

<sup>a</sup> Galenus, l. 8. de composi. medicam.  
Thubal Kain, five de menturis.

<sup>1</sup> Arias Montanus de Siculo, in libro qui inscribitur

GRAEVES for *Gerundenfis*: who if he had exprest with what half ounce he had compared his shekel, or if *Montanus* had done it for him, they had given the judicious reader better satisfaction. But this, I suppose, by a probable conjecture, may be supplied, in saying, that he living in *Catalonia*, weighed it with the *Catalonian*, or *Spanish* half ounce; which <sup>k</sup> *Villalpandus*, and <sup>l</sup> *Claconius*, both of them *Spaniards*, make equal to the half ounce now used at *Rome*; that is, to two shillings three pence farthing, *q.* of our money. This conjecture of mine will exceeding well confirm those many observations of *Villalpandus*, a man in this kind very curious, which he made of several ancient shekels in silver, who thus writes: <sup>m</sup> *Igitur ante aliquot annos appendimus siculum unum apud F. Ursinum & postmodum eos omnes, quos præcedenti capite percensuimus, atque conperimus singulos argenti sículos ex æquo semuncie Romanæ antiquæ respondere; ita ut ne minimum quidem bordei aut frumenti granulum, buic, vel illi lanci addi potuerit, quin in eam examen propenderet. Nec mirum cuiquam videri debet, antiquissimos nummos suo pristino ponderi nunc respondere, neque ullam argenti partem vetustate consumptam tot sæculis fuisse. Nam singulari Dei beneficio nobis contigit, tot integros appendere potuisse sículos. Id quod nummi ipsi integri vetustatem maxime præ se ferentes, literæ expresse, exstantisque, argenti color, atque alia id genus multa facile probant.* With these observations of *Villalpandus*, I find the weight of a very fair *Samaritan* shekel, of the truly noble and learned Mr. Selden, to agree: To whom I stand obliged for this favour as he doth for the coin, to the honourable antiquary, Sir Robert Cotton. To these testimonies, tho' (it may be) sufficient of themselves, I shall add <sup>n</sup> one more, for farther illustration of the weight of the *Hebrew*, or *Samaritan* shekel, and that is of an ancient, and fair one, in silver, amongst his majesty's coins, perused by the most reverend primate of Ireland, a man of exquisite learning and judgment, who hath often assured me, that it weighs two shillings five pence of the *English* standard; which proportion, excepting some few grains, in which it doth exceed, does well correspond with those of *Villalpandus*. And this may farther be confirmed out of the *Talmud*, כל כסף האמורה בתורה כסף צורי ושל רבו הכסף מדינה *Argentum omne cuius in lege fit mentio, intelligitur argentum Tyrium (ponderis & bonitatis ut in urbe Tyri: As*

<sup>p</sup> *Schlinder* interprets it) sed *Rabbinorum argentum intelligitur argentum commune provinciale*. Taking therefore the silver money of *Judea*, as the *Talmud* doth, to be equal to the *Tyrian*, and that of *Carthage* to be equal to that of *Tyre*: As it is very probable that the *Carthaginians*, being a plantation of the *Tyrians*, might observe their proportions in coins, as well as their customs in religion, we may by these discover the shekel to be much about the same weight that hath been assigned: For <sup>q</sup> *Ant. Augustinus*, describing in his dialogues the weight of two fair *Carthaginian* coins in silver, writes, that they are each of them somewhat more than four drachms: that is, as he elsewhere explains himself, a little more than half the *Roman* ounce. If therefore we shall adhere to the observation of *Gerundenfis*, made four hundred years since, or to these later of *Villalpandus*, and others; or to this conjecture of mine, the *Hebrew* shekel, and half the present *Roman* ounce, are either both the same, or else very near in proportion.

And this may easily be granted; but if it be, how will four denarii consulares, four *Attick* drachmes, and the *Hebrew* shekel, be reciprocally equal one to another, as they should be by those several testimonies before alledged? Whereas, by many hundred denarii consulares, tried by an exact ballance, I find the best of these to contain *LXII* grains *English*, and the *Attick* drachme *LXVII*. And the fourth part of the shekel to be but *LVI* grains <sup>2</sup>, if we admit of *Gerundenfis*, and *Villalpandus*'s observations. Which notwithstanding, according to *Philo*, *Josephus*, *St. Hierom*, *Epiphanius*, and *Hesychius*, should be equal to the *Attick* drachme; and the *Attick* drachme, by the testimonies of the ancients, should be likewise equal to the *denarius*. For the solution of this objection I answer: First, That the *denarius*, and *Attick* drachme, being distinct coins of different states, and not much unequal in the true weight, it is no wonder, especially in *Italy*, and in the *Roman* dominions, that they should pass one for another: no more than that the *Spanish* rials, in our sea-towns in *England*, should pass for testars; or the quarters of the dollar be exchanged for our shillings: whereas the *ric'* in the intrinsic valuation, is better than our testar by four grains, and somewhat more; and the quarter of the dollar is better than our shilling by more than eight grains, or a penny; but because they

<sup>k</sup> Eadem omnino sunt uncia, quibus olim Romani Hispanique utantur, &c. Villalp. de appar. urb. ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 20. <sup>l</sup> Claconius de ponderibus, pag. 45. <sup>m</sup> Villalp. de app. urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 5. disp. 4. c. 28.

<sup>n</sup> We may also insert the observation of *Anton. Augusti* dialogo 2. *Ne ho uno [sic] che è d'argento, & è di peso di quattro dramme conforme à quello che dice San Girolamo sopra Ezechiel: Where by four drachms he means half the Roman ounce.* <sup>p</sup> Schindlerus in Pentaglotto. <sup>q</sup> Ant. Augusti. Dialogo 6. <sup>r</sup> Kiddulsi. 11.



bbinorum ar-  
mane provin-  
der money of  
e to be equal  
e to be equal  
probable that  
plantation of  
their propor-  
e customs in  
discover the  
same weight  
Ant. Augus-  
es the weight  
s in silver,  
em somewbat  
s, as he esse-  
e more than  
herefore we  
on of Gerun-  
ars sine, or  
and others;  
the Hebrew  
oman ounce,  
is very near

nted; but if  
nsulares, four  
ew shekel, be-  
her, as they  
timonies be-  
many hun-  
by an exact  
se to contain  
Attick drachme  
of the shekel  
admit of Ge-  
observations,  
ding to Pbi-  
obanius, and  
p the Attick  
bme, by the  
ould be like-  
the solution  
st. That the  
being dis-  
s, and not  
ght, it is no  
d in the Ro-  
uld pass one  
t the Spanish  
land, shoud  
of the dollar  
gs: whereas  
ion, is better  
s, and some-  
of the dollar  
y more than  
because they

urb. ac templi,  
urbis ac templi.  
ialogo 2. Ne lo  
Giralamo sopra  
ulsi. 11.

want the valuation; character, and im-  
pression of our princes, which I call the ex-  
trinsic of coins, therefore doth the Spanish  
money fall from its true value with us,  
and so would ours do in Spain. By the  
same analogy must we conceive the Attick  
drachmes, tho' in the intrinsic they were  
somewhat better worth than the denarius,  
yet for want of the extrinsic, to have  
lost in Italy, and thereby to have become  
equal in valuation to the denarius. And  
this seems to be implied by \* Volusius Ma-  
tianus: *Victoriatas enim nunc tantundem va-  
let, quantum quinarium olim. At peregrinus  
nummus loco mercis, ut nunc tetradrachmum,  
& drachma habebatur.* Which words of  
his *loco mercis*, plainly shew they made some  
gain of the tetradrachmum, and drachma:  
As our merchants, and goldsmiths do of  
the Spanish rials, and quarters of a dollar.  
Which they could not do, if they were  
precisely equal, but must rather be losers  
in the melting or new coining of them.  
And therefore all \* modern writers that  
have treated of this argument, some of  
them making the drachma less than the de-  
narius, others equal, but none greater,  
have been deceived by a double paralogism,  
in standing too nicely upon the bare words  
of the ancients, without carefully examin-  
ing the things themselves. First, In making  
the denarius, and Attick drachme precisely  
equal, because all ancient authors generally  
express the Attick drachme by the denarius,  
or the denarius by the drachme; either be-  
cause in ordinary commerce, and in vulgar  
estimation, they passed one for another, in  
the Roman state; or else if any were so  
curious to observe their difference, as surely  
the ΚΑΛΥΨΙΣΑΙ were, yet by reason of their  
nearness, and to avoid fractions, and hav-  
ing no other names of coins that were  
precisely equal, whereby to render them,  
therefore all Greek and Latin authors, mu-  
tually used one for the other. And, secondly,  
Because some writers, (as Diofcorides and  
Cleopatra) affirm, that the Roman ounce  
contained eight drachmes, therefore modern  
authors infer, that the denarius, being equal  
to the drachme, and eight drachmes being  
in the Roman ounce (as so many were in  
the Attick) that therefore there are eight de-

narii in the Roman, and consequently that  
the Roman and Attick ounces are equal.  
Whereas Celsus, Cribonius Largus, and Pliny,  
as we shewed before, expressly write, that  
the Roman ounce contained in their time,  
which was after Diofcorides, seven denarii.  
And being natural Romans, and purposely  
mentioning the proportion of the denarius  
to the ounce, thereby the better to regulate  
their doses in physick, it is not probable  
but they must better have known it than  
the Grecians. Besides, who with any cer-  
tainty can collect out of these imperfect  
fragments of Diofcorides and Cleopatra (for  
those tracts of theirs, *de ponderibus* are no  
better) whether at the first they wrote in  
that manner, as they are now printed? Or  
if they did, why might not they endeavour  
to introduce into the Roman ounce, in  
imitation of the Attick, that manner of  
division, which is now generally received  
in our times, of making the ounce, of  
what kind soever it be, to contain eight  
drachmes. And surely this of eight being a  
compound number, as arithmeticians use to  
speak, was much fitter than seven, used by  
the Romans, which being a prime number,  
is therefore incapable of any other division.  
And then for to conclude, that because the  
Attick ounce had eight drachmes, and the  
Roman as many, that therefore their oun-  
ces are equal, is all one as to conclude,  
that the Paris and English ounces are  
equal, because the French as well as we  
(and so do all physicians of all countries  
that I know) divide their ounce by eight  
drachmes. And thus, I suppose, I have  
sufficiently answered the first part of the  
objection, concerning the denarius, and  
the Attick drachme: that if we respect the  
vulgar and popular estimation, in which  
sense classical authors understood them (for  
they could not well otherwise render them,  
than as they were current) so were they  
equal; but if we respect the intrinsic val-  
uation, which depends upon the weight,  
especially when coins are of a like fineness,  
so were they unequal: the Attick drachme  
being, of our money, eight pence farthing  
q. and the denarius consularis seven pence  
half-penny farthing; allowing for the stan-  
dard \* viii English grains to the silver penny.

\* Vol. Matianus de assis distributione. These words of Matianus I find in a MS of Temporarius, thus cor-  
rected: *Victoriatas enim nunc tantundem valet quantum quinarium. Olim ut peregrinus nummus loco mercis,  
ut nunc tetradrachmum, & drachma habebatur.* Whether it be by conjecture, or that he found it in some  
ancient MS. I know not, but the emendation I cannot but approve.

\* Budeus drachmam putat ejusdem ponderis esse cum denario: Onuphrius vero inter utrumque statuit ratio-  
nem sesquialteram, Agricolae sesquiseptimam, ut Porcinius tres denarii quatuor drachmas, Agricolae vero septem  
denarii octo drachmas efficiant. Capel de pond. & nummis, l. 1. lxxxiv denarii, quae est libra Romana, sunt  
aequales xxvi drachmis, quae est libra Italica, & medica. Scal. de re nummaria.

\* These proportions, with those before, and those which follow, are taken from the English standard at  
five shillings the ounce (as it was formerly coined) to avoid fractions: that is, eight grains to the silver penny:  
whereas in these times it is five shillings, two pence. Not that the ounce is encreased, for this is always con-  
stant and fixed; but that for reasons of state, our silver coins are diminished, and consequently contain fewer  
grains. And this diminution must necessarily be, as often as other nations, with whom we have commerce,  
rebat in the proportions of their coins; or else we must be content to be losers.

GREAVES

Neither do I know any authority, that either expressly, or by a true and logical consequence, can be produced out of classical authors, to infringe this assertion of mine, unless it be one in *Fannius*, which being a fragment is the less to be valued: and another in *Livy*, who thus writes, lib. XXXIV. in his description of the triumph of *Quintius*: *signati argenti octoginta quatuor milia fuere Atticorum, tetradrachmum vocant, trium fere denariorum in singulis argenti est pondus*. Which words of his occasioned *Georgius Agricola*, not knowing how to answer them, to bring in a distinction of three sorts of *denarii*: the *gravis* weighing an *Attic drachme* and an half, the *mediocris* one and a seventh part, the *levis* most commonly one; without any clear proof or evidence in any ancient author, and directly contrary to all ancient coins of the *Atticks* and *Romans* which I have seen: of which error he would not have been guilty (for there is no man that hath writ either *de ponderibus* & *mensuris*, or *de re metallica*, more solidly and judiciously than he) if he had been so happy as to have perused many entire *Grecian aurei* and *tetradrachmes*, or else to have examin'd a greater and more select quantity of *Roman* coins. To satisfy my self concerning that place of *Livy*, I had recourse to our MSS. here (and I could wish I had done the like in *Italy*) and these I find to agree with the printed copies; tho' the coins, which are much ancients than any MSS. constantly disagree. Wherefore if it be not a mistake in *Livy* himself, which I am not apt to believe in so grave an author, I would correct the copies by the coins, and instead of *111 fere denariorum*, make it thus, *1v fere denariorum*. Where the figure *v* being resolved into two lines, and left a little open at the bottom, might easily be taken by the scribe for the figure *11*. And this I do certainly believe is the true ground of that error, wherewith so many of late hath been perplexed. However it were, it is as ancient as *Priscian*, or *Pseudo-Priscian* (as *Capellus* styles him) who, in his tract *De ponderibus*, reads those words of *Livy* in the same manner, *Trium fere denariorum*.

As for the *denarius aureus*, a name I think not known to the ancients, which *Salmasius* and others collect out of *Livy*, *De sœdere Ætolicæ*. *Pro argento si aurum dare mallent, dare convenit, dum pro argen-*

*teis decem aureus unus valeret*. I see no solid foundation for that opinion; all that can be collected thence is, that the gold then was in *decupla ratione* to the silver, which I have proved before. And whereas *Plautus* hath his *denaria Philippiæ*,

*Nummi octingenti aurei in marsupio infuerunt, Præterea centum denaria Philippiæ*.

This is a metaphorical or comical expression of him, and no certain sort of coin; which he pleasantly calls *denarii*, because half the *χρυσοὶ Φιλίππειοι* were equal in weight to the *drachma*, and so also was the *Roman denarius* supposed to be.

Nor are we to take the *κλῶσ*, which is thrice mentioned by *St. Matthew*, and once by *St. Mark*, for the *denarius*, as some have done: no, nor for any other sort of coin: for it is precisely the *Latin* word *cenfus*; that is, *ὁ φόρος*, *tributum*, and so it is rendered by *St. Luke*, *ἡ ἐστὶν Καίσαρος φόρος δῶνα*, *ἡ ὡς*; where *St. Matthew* and *St. Mark* have it, *ἡ ἐστὶ δῶνα κλῶσος Καίσαρος ἡ ὡς*; tho' *Hefychius* and *Moscopulus*, both upon an error, interpret it a sort of coin. *Hefychius*, *κλῶσος* *ἄνθος νομισμα*, or *νομισμα* *ἄνθος*, as *M. Casaubone* corrects it: and *Moscopulus*, *κλῶσος* *νόμισμα* *δεσποτικῆς ἰσχυράς*, the *cenfus* is a coin equal in weight to the *drachme*: that is, in the notion of the *Greeks*, equal to the *denarius*. The error of these two *Greek* grammarians, is a misunderstanding the propriety of the *Latin* word *cenfus*: and that occasioned them to take *κλῶσος*, and *νόμισμα* *τὸ κλῶσος*, for the same. But the evangelist *Matthew* puts a manifest difference between *κλῶσος* *tributum*, and *νόμισμα*, the money that was paid for tribute. *Ἐπίδειξις μοι τὸ νόμισμα τὸ κλῶσος*, writes *St. Matthew*, *Shew me the money of the tribute*: or as our new translation renders it, *Shew me the tribute-money*. And the three evangelists, *Matthew*, *Mark*, and *Luke*, immediately after expressly term this money the *δωδεκά*. *οἱ δὲ προσένεκον αὐτῷ δωδεκά*: and they brought unto him a penny. Which being a *Roman* coin, and current amongst the *Jews*, being then in subjection to the *Romans*, it is more than probable that they paid their tribute to *Cæsar*, in the same species of money that was used by *Cæsar*; and not with any new or peculiar sort of coin, according to *Baronius* (which *M. Casaubone* hath justly

\* *G. Agricola* responso ad *Alciatum* de pond. & mensuris. *Argentii Romanorum denarii triplices sunt: Græci, qui pendunt drachmam Atticam cum dimidia: Mediores, qui drachmam & septimam ejus partem: Leves, qui plerumque drachmam.*

† If this answer be not satisfactory, we may say, as some have done, that *Livy*, *Fannius*, and the *scholiast* of *Nicanor*, speak of the *denarii* of the former consuls immediately succeeding *Q. Fabius*. For there being but six of those in the ounce, (as they suppose) the *denarius* will be greater than the *drachma*, as it will be less when seven were coined, under the later consuls, which is our assertion.

‡ *Livius*, l. 38.

§ *Plautus* in *Rudente*.

confuted) but with the ordinary current money of Rome, and that was the *denarius*.

Our next solution should be of the *shekel*. how it could be equal to the *tetradrachme*, and consequently to four *denarii*, when by the constant weight of the best Hebrew, or Samaritan *shekels* extant, we find them to be much less. And here I am a little unsatisfied, how to reconcile the coins to *Philo*, *Josephus*, *Epiphanius*, *St. Hierom*, and *Hefsebius*: or else, if we admit of the coins (as I know no just exceptions against them) how to excuse these authors of too supine negligence in comparing them, if so be they ever were so curious as to collate them with the *Attick tetradrachmes*. For if we shall say, that the silver *stater*, or *Attick tetradrachme* was a foreign coin, in respect of the rep. of the *Jews*, and therefore that in *Judea* it might somewhat fall from its true valuation, we shall say no more than what reason and experience confirm. But then that the *tetradrachme* should sink so low as to lose four-pence-half-penny, if we take the reverend *primate's* observation before-mentioned; or which is more, six-pence *q.* if we follow that of *Gerundenfis* and *Villaspandus*, or those of mine, upon two shillings nine pence half-penny, for so much was the *tetradrachme* of our money, it may seem too great a diminution; especially the *Attick* money being as pure, and fine, as that of the *shekel*; and therefore no goldsmith amongst the *Jews*, but would have given a greater rate only to melt it, and turn it into bullion. Yet on the other side, when I consider the practice of the money-changers amongst the *Jews* at this day, which it may be was as bad in *Philo's* and *Josephus's* time, and might occasion our Saviour not long before to whip them out of the temple, *which they by their extortions had made a den of thieves*; who now make it a trade at *Alexandria*, and elsewhere, in changing *Spanish* dollars into *madines*, (or the small silver money current in *Egypt*) to gain one or two *madines* upon every dollar, notwithstanding the *Spanish* money is as frequent, and as well known in *Turky*, as their own. I can the better imagine they might make the same advantage, or a little more, upon the *Attick tetradrachmes*: Which it may be also were not permitted, being contrary to their law, to pass so generally with them, as the *Spanish* money now doth (by reason of the image of *Pallas*, and the *Noëtia* instamped:) or if they were permitted, yet they might not be so common, and so well known: and therefore upon strangers in *Judea*, in giving them current money for that which was foreign, they would gain so much the more. So that *Philo*, and *Josephus*, when

they equal the *shekel* to the *tetradrachme*, <sup>GERRAVER</sup> may have taken it upon the relation and practice of these money-changers, and not upon any experiment of their own. The same answer may serve for *Epiphanius*, *St. Hierom*, and *Hefsebius*: tho' it may be these borrowed their descriptions from *Philo* or *Josephus*, who long preceded them: and being *Jews*, and living in the time when the state of the *Jews* was in being; whereas these did not, their authority is the more to be credited. And thus have we finished our enquiry of the *denarius consularis*, by comparing it with the *Attick drachmes*, and the Hebrew *shekels*.

ON CONGH VESPASIANI IN PALATIO  
FARNESIANO ROMÆ.



\* At my being in *Egypt*, thirty five *madines* passed for a dollar: *Sand's* in his travels writes forty.

GREAVES

The last and best way to discover the true weight of it, is by the *congius Romanus*, whereof by a special providence, as *Pætus*, and *Villalpandus*, have well observed, the original standard of *Vespasian* is still extant in *Rome*. This, as the superscription upon it, *XP* demonstrates, contains the weight of ten *Roman pounds*, and is equal (by the joint confession of all authors treating this argument) to six *sextarii*. Again, the *sextarius*, as *Galen* writes, ἔχει μίαν λίτραν ἢ ἡμίσητον ἢ ἑκτον, ὡς αἶμα τὰς πέντε ὑγίας κ'. Contains one pound and an half, and a sixth part, so that it bath in all twenty ounces. Or as *Oribasius*, physician to *Julian* the apostate, informs us, is equal to the *Roman pound*, and eight ounces. Ἰταλικὸν μέγεθος ἔχει ἕξας μκ'. ἕξας λίτρας μίαν, ἢ ὑγίας η'. The Italian amphora contains forty eight *sextarii*, and the *sextarius* one pound and eight ounces. The capacity therefore of this *congius* being fill'd up with six *sextarii*, of some certain sort of liquors, (for it is *liquorum mensura*) will give us ten *Roman pounds*, and consequently their ounces and *denarii*. The only difficulty is, with what sort of liquor we must measure it: for all liquors are not of the same gravity. And this is well cleared by *Rhemnius Fannius*, and others.

*Illud præterea tecum cōbiberē memento,  
Finitum pondus variis servare liquores.  
Nam libra, ut memorant, bessem sextarius  
addet,  
Sed puras pendas latices, seu dona Lyæi.*

The *sextarius*, saith *Fannius*, contains one pound and eight ounces, whether we weigh clear water, or wine: where by wine, according to *Agricola*, is to be understood, *vinum subum*, such as the *Greeks* call *κυσσόν*. Rather, I imagine, that wine, which *Galen* calls *λευκόν*, ἢ ἐνδοφύον. The *sextarius* then being one pound eight ounces of clear water, or pure wine, and six *sextarii* being in the *congius*, it is most evident that the *congius* contains ten pounds of water, or of wine. This also appears by a plebiscitum of the two *Silii*, *Publius*, and *Marius*, which is to be seen in the best copies of *Sextus Pompeius*.

The same is confirmed by *Dioscorides* i who for farther certainty, mentions with what sort of water we should measure it: and that is with rain-water, which he makes to be the most infallible of all: Ὁ χυρὸς τάλις τὸ κύβητον ἔχει λί. ι. τὸ ἡμικύβητον ἔχει λί. κ. ὁ ἕξας ἔχει λίτρας μίαν γα. η, δέκ. ὁ αὐτὸς δὲ σαβύς ἑστὶ ἢ ὕδατος ἢ ἕξας. φασὶ δὲ τὸ ἡμίβητον ὕδατος παντοῦθεν ἀψιδιδαμένων ὄναι τὸ σαβύον, αἶμα δὲ ὁ καὶ ψα τὸ αὐτὸ. The chus, (that is, the *congius*), contains ten pounds; the semicongius five; the *sextarius* one pound and eight ounces, &c. The weight of water, and of vinegar is the same. They say, that if it be filled up with rain-water, the weight will be most certain. The *congius* weighs seven hundred and twenty drachmes. An anonymous Greek author, falsely reputed to be *Galen*, in the edition at *Venice*, confirms the same, Πασεὶ δὲ τῷ ἰταλικῷ μέγεθος) ὁ χυρὸς μέγεθος μίαν ἔχει ξ. καὶ ὕμους ἑβ. σαβύον δὲ ὕδατος ἡμικύβητον, ὅπως ἑστὶν ἀψιδιδαμένων, δεκα-

<sup>3</sup> Pætus, l. 3. de antiq. liquid. arid. que mens. Villalp. de appar. urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 3. c. 25.

<sup>4</sup> Galen, l. 1. de compos. medicam.

<sup>5</sup> Oribasius, l. 2. ad Eustathium filium.

<sup>6</sup> Rhemius. Fan. carmina de pond. & mens.

<sup>7</sup> Agricola, l. 3. de ponder. rerum.

<sup>8</sup> Sextus Pomp. de verb. signif.

VTI. QUADRANTAL VINI. OCTOGINTA

PONDO. SIET

CONGIUS VINI. DECEM. IS. SIET

SEX. SEXTARII. CONGIUS VINI

DVO. DE. QVINQVAGINTA. SEXTARII

QUADRANTAL. SIET. VINI

SEXTARIUS. ÆQVVS. ÆQVO. CVM. LIBRA.

RIO. SIET

<sup>9</sup> Fragmenta Dioscoridia.

The proportion that rain-water hath to fountain-water, is as 1000000 to 997522, and the proportion that it hath to water distilled, is as 1000000 to 997065; as it hath been observed by *Snellius* in *Eratosth.* Bat. l. 2. c. 5. Est in æquali mole ratio aquæ pluvie ad distillatam, quemadmodum 1000000 ad 997065; pluvie autem ad putealem ut 1000000 ad 1007522.

This authority of *Dioscorides*, with that other citation following out of an anonymous Greek author, strongly proves my assertion, that the *drachma Attica* was more ponderous than the *denarius consularis*. For there being eighty four of these *denarii* in the *Roman pound*, as we have elsewhere proved, and ten *Roman pounds* in the *congius*, it is most evident there are 100000 *denarii* in the whole *congius*. Again, 100000 *drachms* by the testimonies of *Dioscorides*, and this anonymous writer being equal to the *congius*, and the *congius* being equal to 100000 *denarii*, therefore 100000 *drachms* are equal to 100000 *denarii*, and therefore of necessity every particular *drachma* of these, must be greater than each particular *denarius*. And tho', according to my assertion, the *congius* containeth some few *drachms* more than are by them assigned; yet that difference, seeing it might many ways happen, as I afterwards shew in the like experiments of *Villalpandus*, and *Gassendus*, it cannot any way overthrow my conclusion: for the *drachms* are still fewer than the *denarii consulares*, and therefore greater; which was the thing intended to be proved. And this may further be confirmed, in that both *Cleopatra*, and this anonymous author, make also the *sextus*, or *sextarius* (being the sixth part of the *congius*) to contain an hundred twenty *drachms* of fountain-water. Whereby it appears there is no error committed in the former numbers: Ὁ χυρὸς μέγεθος μίαν ἔχει καὶ ὕμους ἑβ. σαβύον δὲ ὕδατος ἡμικύβητον, ὅπως ἑστὶν ἀψιδιδαμένων, δεκα-

<sup>10</sup> Anonymus Græc.

s, contains  
whether we  
ere by wine,  
understood,  
cks call up-  
vine, which  
The sex-  
eight ounces  
d fix sextarii  
evident that  
s of water,  
by a plebif-  
and Marius,  
it copies of

Dioscorides;  
entions with  
measure it:  
, which he  
e of all: 'O  
μικρότερον ἔχει  
ἔστιν. ὁ αὐτὸς  
αὐτὸν ὅτι πῶς ὁ  
σαλὸν ἔστιν. ὁ  
The chus,  
ten pounds;  
us one pound  
of water,  
they say, that  
, the weight  
ngius weighs  
ebmes. An  
y reputed to  
ce, confirms  
ἔστιν. ὁ αὐτὸς  
αὐτὸν ὅτι πῶς ὁ  
σαλὸν ἔστιν. ὁ  
3. c. 25.

n.

tain-water, is as  
997065, as it  
ad diffillatam.

Greek author,  
confularis. For  
and ten Roman  
Again, 100000  
and the congius  
and therefore of  
nd tho', accord-  
d; yet that dif-  
of Villalpandus,  
than the denarii  
my farther be  
(being the sixth  
ears there is no  
The sextarius,  
mes. And the  
dred and twenty

μᾶλλον ἢ: Amongst the Romans is found the congius, containing in measure six sextarii (that is) XII cotylæ: but in weight of rain-water, which is most infallible, 100000 drachmes. And whereas <sup>1</sup> Dioscorides elsewhere writes: Τὸ αὐτὸν ἔχει λίτρας θ. π. ὁ μικρότερον ἢ. S. ὁ ἕτερος ἔχει λ'. α. S. The congius bath nine pounds; the semicongius four and a half; the sextarius one and an half: there is no repugnancy between this and his former assertion. For here he speaks of the congius filled with oil, and before of the same congius filled with water, or wine: and that this should be but nine pounds, whereas the former is ten, is no more repugnant to reason, than it is to nature, that oil should be lighter than water or wine: which <sup>2</sup> Ghetaidus, in his *Archimedes promotus*, hath demonstrated the most accurately of any man, to be in the proportion that 1 is to 1  $\frac{1}{2}$ , in respect of water, and as 1 is to 1  $\frac{1}{4}$ , in respect of wine; which is almost the same with Dioscorides. The not observing this difference of weight, arising from the different gravity of several liquors, in vessels of one and the same capacity, is that which hath occasioned much uncertainty and confusion, in modern writers. And therefore we shall for farther perspicuity insert that distinction, which is often inculcated by <sup>3</sup> Galen, that the Romans used two sorts of ounces and pounds: and those were either *sabmu-kal*, or *μικρά*, ponderal or mensural; the one had respect solely to the gravity, the other to the moles, and gravity conjointly; the former were always certain and fixed, consisting of solid matter; the latter were *vaja* (frequently, *ἐν νεύροις*) being receptacles and measures of liquid substances: and therefore the *libra*, and *uncia mensurales*, in these were greater or less, accord-

ing as the liquor to be measured was heavier or lighter. Whence <sup>4</sup> Galen blames physicians for not expressing this difference: Διὸ γὰρ οἱ ἰατροὶ ἐπιμαρτυροῦσι ἐν τῷ φαρμακείῳ βίβλῳ τὰς λίτρας ὅσας τιδὲ καλεῖται βαλάντιον τὰς ὑγρὰς ἢ τὰς λίγρας τῷ ὄγκῳ φαρμάκων, πότερον τὰς μετράδας, ἢ τὰς σαβμικάς. And he gives the reason of it. Πάλιν δὲ σαβμικὰ πῶς αἰετὸν τῷ σωματίῳ, ἢ μὲν καὶ ἢ ἕτερον. For the ponderal examines the weight of bodies, but the mensural the moles. But to return to the congius, and by it to our discovery of the denarius. The water then must be natural, either of some fountain, or of rain. For if it be artificial, such as are made by distillations, whether by a strong reverberation, or by a gentle, in an alembick; these having somewhat of the property of fire, will be lighter than the natural, as <sup>5</sup> Agricola and others observe. I shall produce two observations of the congius, with fountain-water, made by two very eminent and able men, *Villalpandus*, and *Gassendus*, the one at *Rome*, with the Roman weights, from the <sup>6</sup> original congius itself; the other at *Aix*, with the *Paris* weights, from a model, or copy of that at *Rome*, procured by *Peireskius*. And here to compare the denarius *confularis* with their observations, it is necessary to have exactly both the Roman and *Paris* weights. The former, with as much accurateness as it was possible, were taken in *Rome*: the other were sent me by *monfieur Hardy*, a learned man of honourable quality in *Paris*, who compared them with the standard. To begin with that of *Villalpandus*, who gives us a large description, with how much caution and circumspection, and with how exquisite a balance he twice made his experiment, whereby he discovered the weight of it in

<sup>1</sup> Fragmenta Dioscoridis.

<sup>2</sup> Galenus, l. 1. & 6. de comp. medicam. secundum genera.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. lib. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Ghetaidus in Archim. promotus.

<sup>5</sup> Lib. 6.

<sup>6</sup> Perinde verò ut vinum hoc satissimum omni nativo est levius, sic aqua: foris omnes, quæ ignis calore rebus quibusque excodis diffillarint, quas ob id diffillatas appellant, ceteris aquis leviores sunt. Agricola, l. 3. de pondere rerum.

<sup>7</sup> This congius I had weighed, if I could have procured a balance of such exactness, as was fitting for such a work. The want of which occasioned *Villalpandus* to suspect the observation of *Pætus*; though *Pætus* writes thus of himself. Plenum, cum iustissimâ trutinâ, quâ bodie Romæ utimur cum appendissem [congium,] invenî aquam, quâ eum compleveram, libras nostri temporis novem, uncias sex semis: efflere, quibus uncias quinque drachmas quatuor, scripulum unum, & grana XIV (quæ amplius sunt in his nostris, quam in antiquis libris computando eum congium libras decem) & ultra scripulum unum, & grana XIV (de quibus nullam rationem habendam esse judicavi) ex antiquis libris prædictis pendere invenî. But *Villalpandus* trying it long after *Pætus*, with more care, and with a balance made of purpose, found it to be exactly ten such pounds as are now used in *Rome*. All that I could do was to fill the capacity of it with *milium* well cleaned, and to compare it with the English measures taken from the standards. It contained of our measures for wine three quarts, one pint, and one eighth part of a pint. Of our corn, or dry measures, three quarts, and about one sixth part of a pint. At my being in *Italy*, there was found amongst the ruins at *Rome* a semicongius in brass, of the same figure with this of *Vespasian's*, the sides much consumed by rust. This I also measured, and found it to be the half of *Vespasian's* congius. From this measure of the congius we may rightly apprehend how vast that draught was of *Novellus Torquatus*, who drank three of these congii at once: from whence he was called *Novellus Tricongius*. The story is recited by *Pliny*, (l. 14. c. 22.) Apud nos cognomen etiam *Novellus* Torquatus *Mediolanensis* ad præconulatam usque et præturâ honoribus gestis, tribus congiis (vide & athen illi fuit) epotis uno impetu, spectante miraculi gratiâ Tiberio principe in senecta jam jecero, atque etiam aliis sævo, sed ipsâ juventut ad merum prætor fuerat. In the same chapter *Pliny* likewise discourses thus of *Cicero*, son to that famous orator: *Tergilla Ciceronem Marci filium binos congiis simul haurire solitum ipse objicit, Marceque Agrippæ à temulento scrybnum impatum.*



**W**ATER to be exactly answerable to ten such pounds as are now used in Rome: whence he concludes, ' *Constante asserimus antiquam Romanorum libram, unciam, ac pondus, tot aetatem successione, ac Romani imperii perturbationibus minime immutata fuisse, sed eadem per manus tradita usque ad nostra tempora perlarasse.* ' This Roman pound of his reduced to the English standard for silver, or Troy weight, with which I have faithfully collated it, is 5256 grains English, such as the Troy pound is 5760; the whole *congius* therefore consisting of ten pounds, will be 52560 English grains. The other observation is related by *Gassendus*, in his excellent discourse *De vitâ Piræti*: *Ut paucis ergo res dicatur, cautiones addimus easdem, quas Lucas Petus, & Villalpandus, dum vas ipsum, ad summum collum puteali aquâ oplevimus, expendimus, & ejus pondus subduximus. Deprehendimus autem aquam, quæ Romano pondere esse debuit decem librarum, seu unciarum centum viginti, esse pondere Parisiensi (quale nempe Parisiis exploratum, missumque est) librarum septem, minus uncia quadrante: seu unciarum centum undecim, & quadrantum uncia i. ium. Deinde ex hac proportionem collegimus unciam Romanam continere grana quingenta, & triginta sex, qualium quingenta, & septuaginta sex in Parisiensi continentur: unde & illis in drachmas collectis, obvenire cuilibet drachmæ grana sexaginta septem: idque proinde censuimus pondus denarii Cæsaris, quem dictum est fuisse "drachmalem. Now the Paris ounce sent to me by monsieur Hardy, containing four hundred seventy two grains English, and an half; and the *congius*, according to *Gassendus*, of the Paris ounces 111  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the complete weight of the *congius*, in grains, will be 52801  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Which sum exceeds that of *Villalpandus* by 241  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; that is, by more than half a Roman ounce. This difference (tho' it is not great) between these two observations of theirs, might arise, either from the unequal swelling of the water in the *congius*; or from the different gravity of fountain-water at Rome, and at Aix; or from some inequality of the model and original; or from*

defect in the *jugum*, or beam of the balance, which it it were not made by a very skilful hand, by the pressure of so great a weight, would suffer some alteration. Which way soever it was, either by some, or all of these, the difference cannot prejudice my conclusion a complete grain; which no reasonable man but will allow, either for coining, or for waste: for if I divide 52560, the number of grains in the *congius*, according to *Villalpandus*, by 100000, the number of the *denarii* in ten pounds, the sum will be 525  $\frac{6}{10}$ . Or if we shall follow *Gassendus*, though I should rather prefer *Villalpandus*, because he took his immediately from the original, then will the weight of the *denarius consularis* be 525  $\frac{1}{10}$ . The fraction in both without any convenience may be omitted. And this proportion of the weight of the *denarius consularis*, if it were necessary, I could farther prove by some of the *aurei consulares*, which often were double in weight to the *denarii*, as the *αυρεοί* *ἀνδροί* were double to the *δηνάρια* *ἀνδροί*; as also by several *quinarii* in silver (which are the half of the *denarii*) by a very ancient and perfect *sestuncia*, by a *quadrans* and *triens*, all of them in brass of mine own, and by several other weights examined abroad. One of them I cannot pretermitt, being near five Roman pounds, and very remarkable for this inscription: **EX. AUCTORITATE Q. JUNI. RUSTICI. PR. VR.** but the weight of it is a little defective; part of the *filum* (as many of the ancient Roman weights that I have seen, were *sex filice*, which is as hard or harder than marble) being broken away, else the rest is very entire and well polished. But I conceive, that by those former ways I have so irrefragably demonstrated the true ponderousness of the *denarius consularis*, that it would be thought superfluous, or a vain ostentation, to endeavour any farther to prove it. Wherefore instead of that I shall handle the *denarius caesareus*, which is our second enquiry.

The *denarius caesareus*, was that which was made under the government of the *Cæsars*. And this instead of the face and inscription *ROMA*, with the character X

<sup>1</sup> Villalpandus, l. 2. disp. 2. c. 11. de apparatu urbis ac templi.

<sup>2</sup> The inference of *Gassendus* I easily grant, that the *denarius*, under some of the *Cæsars*, was *drachmale*; that is, the eighth part of the Roman ounce. But neither was it always so under the *Cæsars*, nor if it had been so, will it therefore follow that it was *drachmale*, or the eighth part in respect of the Attick ounce. Seeing the *Athenian* ounce was greater than the Roman, as we have before proved; and therefore the *denarius consularis*, which was the seventh part of the Roman ounce, was scarce the eighth part of the Attick. Wherefore he must see how he can make it good, where he brings *Pirætiensis*, in the second book of his life, thus discoursing: — *Denarium, cum tempore regum pendisset tridentem unciam, sub antiquâ tamen rep. pendisset solum sextantem, sub recentiore partem septimam, sub primis Cæsaris ab octava, seu drachmam (Attica nempe drachma æqualem).*

<sup>3</sup> Of these Roman *sestunciae*, I have bought and seen several in brass. Besides one, which I owe to my very worthy and learned friend, doctor Ent.

<sup>4</sup> *Pactus*, l. 1. c. de antiq. Rom. & Græc. intero. mensuris, makes mention of a *libra Romana* in brass, procured by *Fulvius Ursinus*, of singular rarity: *In cujus supremâ plantis argenteis literis hæc erat nota I. & in circumferentiâ hæc alia EX. AVG. D. CABS.* But this I had not the happiness to see in Italy.

the balance,  
very skilful  
t a weight.  
Which way  
p, or all of  
judice my  
which no  
either for  
if I divide  
the congius,  
except the  
ounds, the  
shall follow  
ther prefer  
is immedi-  
the weight  
2 1/2. The  
convenience  
oportion of  
ularis, if it  
r prove by  
which often  
denarii, as  
o the *denx-*  
*quinarii* by  
denarii) by  
uncia, by a  
in brass of  
her weights  
em I cannot  
an pounds,  
inscription:  
Q. JUNI.  
the weight  
of the *filen*  
an weights  
e, which is  
being bro-  
y entire and  
hat by those  
bly demon-  
of the *de-*  
be thought  
tion, to en-  
it. Where-  
le the *dena-*  
nd enquiry,  
that which  
ment of the  
he face and  
character X

a vitâ Peireskii.  
was *drachma-*  
ars, nor if it  
of the *Attick*  
and therefore  
th part of the  
he second book  
e, *sub antiquâ*  
e: *ad novam*, seu

I owe to my  
in brass, pro-  
erat nota i. &  
Italy.

or  $\text{X}$  on the fore-part, and the impress of the *biga*, or *quadriga* on the reverse, (in which kind most of the *denarii consularis* were stamped) had on the reverse several impresses, and on the other side the image or resemblance of the emperor: which occasioned our Saviour to ask the question, when a *Studeus*, or Roman penny was shewed to him, *Whose is this image and superscription? They say unto him, Caesar's.* This *denarius Casareus*, if we respect some definitive quantity and weight, was as various and uncertain as the *denarius consularis* of the later consuls was constant and fixt; being under the first emperors, sometimes more, sometimes less, as the reasons and exigencies of the state did require, or the profuseness and prodigality of those times. Yet this uncertainty (as far as I have observed) was limited within some certain and determinate bounds: the *denarius Casareus* never exceeding the seventh part of the Roman ounce, and never being less than the eighth part, but often in a middle proportion between both, and that with much inequality. And this made *Villalpandus*, after many experiments at Rome, to conclude, that out of the *denarii* nothing concerning the Roman weights could be determined. Tho' *Portius, Agricola, Ciaconius, Snellius*, and several others, before and after him, are of a contrary opinion. And it may be, if *Villalpandus* had distinguished between the difference of times, and in them of the different coins, and considered those of the consuls, distinctly from those of the *Cæsars*, and those of the former *Cæsars* from those of the later, he would have reformed his judgment: for it plainly appears, upon examination, that the diminution of their weight was an invention introduced after *Antonius the Triumvir's* time, whereas before the *denarius* was fix'd. *Miscuit, saith Pliny, denario triumvir Antonius ferrum, alii è pondere subtrahunt* (his meaning is under the emperors, to *Vespasian's*, or his own time) *cum sit justum octoginta quatuor è libris signari*. Where he says very well in speaking so generally, *alii è pondere subtrahunt*, without precisely limiting the proportion. For this, as we observed, was very various and undeterminate: so that whereas the just number of the *denarii*, according to the practice of the later consuls, should be eighty four in the Roman pound, we find by the weight of the best of them under the former *Cæsars*, that they coined sometimes eighty six, eighty eight, &c. till at last there came to be ninety six *denarii* in the Roman pound,

that is, eight in the ounce. And this, by a very necessary consequence, may be inferred out of another place of *Pliny*, if we take for granted what some learned moderns confess, and the gold and silver coins found to this day, of the later consuls, and first emperors, strongly prove, that as the *Atticks* made their *χρυσός*, or *aureus* double in weight to the *δραχμή ἀργύρεα*: so did the Romans make their *aureus* double in weight to the *denarius*. Which proportion they might borrow from the *Athenians*, and other *Grecians*, who, as *Arias Montanus* imagines, first received it from the practice of the *Hebrews*: or rather, as I suppose, from the *Phenicians*, and thence from the *Hebrews*. From whence soever it came, it is not much material in our enquiry: that which we may safely conclude from thence is this; that the gold being in respect of weight, double to the silver, the *aureus Romanus* falling in its weight, the *denarius* likewise of necessity must fall: else could they not have continued in *dupla ratione*. Now in what manner the *aureus* was first coined, and how afterwards it lost of its primitive weight, *Pliny* informs us: *aureus nummus, post annum LXII percussus est, quam argenteus, ita ut scrupulum valeret sestertius vicenis, quod efficit in libras ratione sestertiorum, qui tunc erant, sestertius XXXX. Post hæc placuit XL. M. signari ex auri libris: paulatimque principes imminuere pondus, imminuisse vero ad XLV. M.* For this testimony, and the former, we are to thank *Pliny*, seeing there is neither Greek nor Latin author extant, from his time to *Theodosius*, that gives us any certainty, what to conclude concerning the ancient coins. And therefore since this later is of great consequence, but somewhat corrupted, I compared it with the MSS. in the Vatican and Florentine libraries, and with a fair one in Baliol-college, which renders the later part of it thus: *Postea placuit x. xl. signari ex auri libris, paulatimque principes imminuere pondus, imminuisse vero ad XLVIII.* Where for *XLVIII*, *Villalpandus* corrects, or rather corrupts the text in writing *XLV*. But *Agricola*, and *Snellius* read it by conjecture thus: *Post hæc placuit XLIII signari ex auri libris, paulatimque principes imminuere pondus, minutissimè vero ad XLVIII.* And *Snellius* gives a reason of it in his *Eratosthenes Batavus*. *Nam ita argentei denarii, & aurei: immixta eadem manet analogia, pondere subduplo, ut quamdiu octoginta quatuor argentei è libra, & è singulis uncis septem cudebantur, tam diu quoque aurei duo & quadraginta libram implerent, postquam vero argentei num-*

GARAYED

<sup>a</sup> Mat. xlii. 20.

<sup>b</sup> Plin. l. 33. c. 9.

<sup>c</sup> Villalp. de app. urbis ac templi, par. 2. l. 2. disp. 2. c. 12.

<sup>d</sup> l. 2. c. 5.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid.

<sup>f</sup> Villalp. de appar. urbis ac templi, par. 2. lib. 2. c. 13.

<sup>g</sup> Arias Montanus in *Thubal Cain*, sive de mensuris.

<sup>h</sup> Plinius, l. 3. c. 33.

<sup>i</sup> Snell. in Eratosth. Batav.

**GREAVES** *mi pondus immixtum est: ut sex & moneta in libram constituerentur, tum quique duo de quinquaginta aurei, pondere tanto leviores, in singulis libris cudi ceperunt.* Which conjecture seems not altogether improbable, if we respect the later consuls, and first *Cæsars*, in whose times we find the *aurei* to have been double to the *denarii Cæsarei*; but surely long before *Justinian*, the *aurei*, or as they were then also called the *solidi*, lost that proportion to the silver, and kept it only to the *semisses aurei*, to which they were double, as they were in a treble proportion to the *tremisses*.

Wherefore instead of these conjectures (which have been the bane of many a good author) of *Agriola*, *Villalpandus*, and *Snelhus*, I would read the later part of those words of *Pliny*, as the MSS. do, till I can see some concluding reason, or good authority of ancient authors to the contrary, for I do not see why the *Romans* at the first might not coin forty *aurei* out of the *libra*, as well as forty silver *teruncii* out of the *denarius*: which *Varro* assures us they did. And who knows whether at the first making of their gold coins, which was sixty two years according to *Pliny*, after the first coining of silver, they endeavoured to keep them in *dupla ratione*, in respect of weight: which graceful manner they might afterwards introduce by commerce with the *Grecians*.

And here, e'er I proceed any farther in my enquiry after the *denarius Cæsareus*, I cannot but complain, either of the negligence of former times, or unhappiness of ours; in that not one author extant mentions the true weight of the *denarii*, under the *Cæsars*. <sup>1</sup> *Xiphilinus* relates in his epitome of *Dio*, how *Antoninus Caracalla* corrupted and abased the coins; but makes no mention of the weight. *Τῶν δὲ Ἀντωνίνου, τὰς ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ νόμισμα κίβδηλον ἦν, τὰς ἀργύρου καὶ τὸ χρυσίου, ὁ παρήγεν ἡμῶν, τὸ μὲν οὐκ ἀπολύτως καὶ ἀκριβέστατον, τὸ δὲ καὶ οὐ καλῶ καὶ ἀκριβέστατον ἰσχυροῦς.* To *Antoninus*, as other things, so also his money was adulterated: for the silver and gold, which he gave us, the one was prepared of lead silvered over, and the other of brass gilt. <sup>2</sup> *Suidas* also speaking of the *monetarii* writes thus: *Μονηταῖοι οἱ καὶ τὸ νόμισμα τεχνῶν, οἱ δὲ Ἀντωνίνου διέφθειραν τὸ νόμισμα, καὶ τὸ ἰδίον ἀργύρεον φιλικότατον ἀνελόντες ἐμφύλιον ἔχρησαν πολεμικόν, ὥς μέλει Ἀντωνιανῶς χρηματισμῶν. (Ἐπεὶ βασιλεὺς καλῶσαν ὁμότητι καί μετὰ γὰρ.* The *monetarii*

are artificers employed in the making of money. These, in *Aurelian's* time, corrupted the money; and, having slain their governor *Felicissimus*, raised a civil war, whom *Aurelianus* with much difficulty conquering, put to death with exquisite torments. And many good laws were made by several emperors, against adulterating and corrupting of coins: and those executed with much severity, even in the time of Christianity: for we find under the emperor *Constantine*, that such as offended in this kind, were not only put to death, but to a cruel and bitter death by fire. *L. OMNES SOLIDI. C. THEOD. SI QVIS SOLIDI CIRCVLMV EXTERRIOREM INCIDERIT, VEL ADULTERATVM IN VENDENDO SVBJECERIT. Omnes solidi, in quibus nostri vultus, ac veneratio una est, uno pretio aestimandi sunt, atque vendendi, quanquam diversa formæ mensura sit: quod si quis aliter fecerit, aut capite puniri debet, aut flammis tradi, vel aliâ pœnâ morisferâ. Quod ille etiam patietur, qui mensuram circuli exterioris adraferit, ut ponderis minuat quantitatem, vel figuratum solidum, adulterii imitatione, in vendendo subjecerit.* In *Constantius's* time the same punishment was inflicted. *L. PRÆMIO. C. THEOD. DE FALSA MONETÆ. Præmio accusatoribus propositio, quicumque solidorum adulter potuerit reperiri, vel à quoquam fuerit publicatus, illico omni dilatione submoâ flammarum exustionibus mancipetur.* And afterwards under *Valentinianus*, *Theodosius*, and *Arcadius*, they were accounted, and suffered as *rei læsæ majestatis*. *L. FALSÆ MONETÆ. COD. EODEM. Falsæ monetæ rei, quos vulgò paracbaras vocant, majestatis crimine tenentur obnoxii.* But no where is it mentioned concerning the *denarii* and *quinarii*, which were the silver coins in common use, how much should be their weight. Wherefore in such a silence of ancient authors, we have no more solid and sure foundation of our enquiry, than either by our selves to examine the weight of the fairest coins under the emperors; or else to relate what others long before our time have observed. *Antonius Augustinus* in general informs us, when coins were at their highest perfection, and how they began to decline with the *Roman* empire: as commonly when money comes to be abased, and that the mint, like the pulse, beats too slowly and irregularly, it is an evident symptom of some distempers in the bowels of a state. <sup>3</sup> *The medals of all times (saith*

<sup>1</sup> *Varro*, l. 4. de ling. Lat.  
<sup>2</sup> *Sive Monetarii.*

<sup>3</sup> *Xiphilinus* in *Anton. Caracalla*.

<sup>4</sup> *Suidas* in voce *Μονηταῖοι*.

<sup>5</sup> *Le medaglie di tutti i tempi [sono degne da esser offerate degli Artifici] cominciando da Alessandro magno, nell'età del quale principalmente fiorirono, per fin al tempo dell'Imperator Gallieno, nell quale caddero affatto insieme con l'Imperio. Da indi poi in finà Giustiniano si trovano ben medaglie di tutti gli Imperadori ma con notabil perdita della pulitezza, & perfettione antica. Quel poi che habbiamo doppo Giustiniano, è tanto*

he) [are worthy to be observed by artizans] beginning from Alexander the great, in whose time they principally flourished, till the emperor Gallienus, when they chiefly fell together with the empire. From thence to the end of Justinian, there are found good medals of all the emperors, but with a notable diminution of their politeness and ancient perfection. Those which we have after Justinian are insufferably bad. The fault by all men is assigned to the Huns, and Vandals, and Alanes, and Goths, and Longobards, and to other bar- barous and savage nations, who conquered the greatest part of Europe. Erizzo, who lived almost an hundred years since, a very diligent man in the Roman coins, but it is to be wished that he had used more judgment in the explication of them, more particularly informs us. "Having compared the weight of those sorts of money, which are equal in weight to the Roman denarius, with the medals of silver, which have the heads of the Roman emperors: imprinted, I have found them not a little different, so that as it were all those medals weigh less than the denarius. And having also weighed those medals which have the effigies of the Cæsars, I have continually found them different amongst themselves in weight. This uncertainty so troubled Villalpandus, after many experiments made at Rome, that he knew not what to determine. And it seems "Blondus long before conceived it impossible: *Hæc omnia qualia per singulas ætates fuerint, ex amissim ostendere, non magis difficile, quàm impossibile fuerit, non solum quia obscuris & nostræ ætate ignotis verbis sunt à majoribus tradita, sed quia omnis sævæ etas suam habuit cudenti varietatem, & formam.* Wherefore, for farther satisfaction of the reader, I shall relate some observations of mine own: especially those of the twelve first Cæsars, which I took, with many others, by an accurate balance, from such choice cabinets in Italy. And first, I shall begin with the gold coins: for seeing the aurei under the former Cæsars were in dupl<sup>a</sup> ratione to the denarii, therefore the weight of those being known, we cannot be ignorant of the weight of the denarii Cæsarei. Besides, they are not subject to be consumed by time and rust, but only *ex interimento*, and therefore we may the safer give credit to them. And lastly, because the difference, tho' but of a grain, is of some consideration in gold, the masters of the mint use to be the more circumspect about them:

whereas in silver coins, since it is hardly <sup>GREAVES</sup> worth the pains to stand precisely upon the excess or defect of every grain, therefore there are few of these so exact, but either exceed or want in the very mint, one or two grains, and sometimes more.

*The Weight of some AUREI under the first twelve CÆSARS.*

	Eng. Grains.
* C. CAES. COS. III. _____	123 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A second, on the reverse, A. HIRTIVS. PR. _____	122 $\frac{1}{4}$
* A third, _____	124 $\frac{1}{2}$
AVGVSTVS. CAESAR. III. VIR _____	119 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A second, on the reverse, OB CI. VES SERVATOS _____	119 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A third, on the reverse, DIVOS. AVGVSTVS. _____	119
TIBERIVS _____	118 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A second, on the reverse, TI. CAESAR. DIVI. AVGVSTVS. On the reverse, a temple _____	117 $\frac{1}{2}$
CALIGVLA _____	
CLAVDIVS, on the reverse S. P. Q. R. OB. CIVES SERVATOS _____	117 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A second, _____	118 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A third, _____	118 $\frac{1}{2}$
* NERO, on the reverse, SALVS _____	116
* A second, on the reverse, IVPPITER. CVSTOS _____	113 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A third, on the reverse, CONCORDIA. AVGVSTA _____	113
GALBA, on the reverse, CONCORDIA. PROVINCIARVM _____	115
OTHO, on the reverse, SECVRTAS S. P. Q. R. _____	108 $\frac{1}{2}$
VITELLIVS, on the reverse, LIBERTAS RESTITVTA _____	112 $\frac{1}{2}$
VESPASIANVS, on the reverse, PACI AVGVSTI _____	111
* A second, on the reverse, COS. III. TR. POT. _____	114 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A third, on the reverse, PONT. MAX. TR. P. COS. VI. _____	111
* A fourth, on the reverse, PACI. AVGVSTI _____	108 $\frac{1}{2}$
* A fifth, on the reverse, PACI. AVGVSTI _____	110
* T. VESPASIANVS, on the reverse, ANNONA AVGVSTI _____	109 $\frac{1}{2}$
* DOMITIANNVS. COS. II. _____	113
* A second, DOMITIANVS. COS. VI. CAESAR. AVGVSTVS. F. on the reverse, IVVENTV. TIS. PRINCEPS _____	122 $\frac{1}{2}$

*attivo che non si può soffrire. Et se ne dà quasi da ognuno la colpa à gli Unni, à i Vandali, à gli Alani, à i Goti, à i Longobardi, & ad altre barbare, & fiere nazioni, che signoreggiarono gran parte d' Europa. Ant. August. dialog. 1.*

"Havendo io tali monete le quali sono del peso di un denario Rom pareggiate di peso alle medaglie di argento, che hanno scolpite le teste de i Principi Romani, le ho ritrovate differenti non poco del peso, sì che quelle medaglie pesano quasi tutte meno del denario; & havendo ancora pesate quelle medaglie che hanno scolpita la effigie de i Cæsari, le ho sempre ritrovate differenti fra loro nel peso. Blond. l. 5. de Roma triumph.

GREAVES

These *aurei* were selected by me out of several others, as the fairest and entirest; and amongst these to such as I have prefixed an asterisk, they are such as seemed so perfect, that I could make no just objections against them. By these it appears that *Pliny* speaking of the gold coins, rightly informs us: *Paulatimque principes imminuere pondus, imminuisse vero ad XLVIII. Tbat by degrees the emperors lessened the weight [of the aurei] to the forty eighth part of the Roman pound; that is, to the fourth part of the ounce. For this is the lowest weight, that I find, till Heliogabalus's time, who coined new sorts of aurei, different from what had been the constant practice of the Roman state: some of which were the fiftieth part of the libra Romana, and others again so massy, that they were centeni, or bilibres; which not long after were altered and abolished by Alexander Severus. The manner is expressed by *Ælius Lampridius*, in the life of Alexander Severus: *Formas binarias, ternarias, & quaternarias, & denarias etiam, atque amplius, usque ad bilibres quoque & centenas, quas Heliogabalus invenerat, resciri præcepit, nec in usu cuiusquam versari: atque ex eo his materia nomen inditum est, cum diceret plus largiendi banc esse imperatori causam, si cum multis solidos minores dare posset, dans decem vel amplius una forma, triginta, & quinquaginta, & centum dare cogere.* Under the same Alexander Severus began the *semisses aureorum*, and *tremisses* to be coined, which had not formerly been in use. The *semisses* were answerable in weight to the *denarii Casarei*, when they were least, that is, ninety six in the Roman pound; though *Agricola*, *Vilalpandus*, and others, upon a mistake, equal them then to the *drachma Attica*. *Ælius Lampridius* writing of Alexander Severus, plainly expresses, that in his time they began. *Tumque primum semisses aureorum formati sunt, tunc etiam, cum ad tertiam partem aurei vestigal decidisset, tremisses, dicente Alexandro etiam quartarios futuros, quod minus non posset.* Afterwards *Constantine*, *Constantius*, *Julian*, and other succeeding emperors, lessened the weight of the *aurei*, whereby there came to be seventy two in the Roman pound, so that each of them weighed the *sextula*, or four *scrupula*. That*

the *aurei* of *Constantine's* time were sixty two in the Roman pound, is most evident out of the *codex Theodosianus*, where they are also absolutely called *solidi*, without the addition of *aurei*. *L. SI QVIS. C. THEOD. DE PONDERATORIBVS, ET AVRI INFLATIONE. Siquis solidos appendere voluerit auri cœsti, septem solidos quaternorum scrupulorum, nostris vultibus figuratos, adpendat pro singulis uncis. xiv. vero pro duabus, juxta banc formam omnem summam debiti inflaturus, eadem ratione servanda, etsi materiam quis inferat, ut solidos dedisse videatur.* \* *Pancirollus*, in his *Thesaurus variarum lectionum utriusque juris*, reads vi *solidos*, instead of vii, and xii instead of xiv. And that it must necessarily be so, besides that the *solidi* of *Constantine* now extant prove as much, may be collected out of the proportion of weight which is here assigned by *Constantine* himself to the *solidi*, and that is four scruples, or the *sextula*. For the *solidus* containing four scruples, and the ounce containing twenty four scruples, there will therefore be six *solidi* in the ounce: again, the pound consisting of twelve ounces, and the ounce of six *solidi*, the whole pound therefore will consist of seventy two *solidi*. These *aurei* by *Justinian*, in like manner, are termed *solidi*. *L. QUOTIESCVNQUE. C. DE SVSCEPTORIBVS, PRÆPOSITIS, ET ARCARIIS.* Where he also defines the same weight. \* *Quotiescunque certa summa solidorum pro tituli qualitate debetur, & auri massa transmittitur, in LXXII. solidos libra feratur accepta.* The same thing is implicitly confirmed by *Isidorus*, (*l. XVI. Orig. c. 24.*) *Solidus alio nomine sextula dicitur, quod iis sex uncia compleatur. Hunc ut diximus, vulgus aureum solidum vocat, cujus tertiam partem ideo dixerunt tremissem, quod solidum faciat ter missus.* Where \* *Agricola*, I imagine, truly finds fault with him for calling the *solidus*, *sextula*; tho' the proportion he assigns is right; that is, that the *solidus* was the sixth part of the Roman ounce, and contained *æqualis sabbon*, the weight of the *sextula*, as it is attested by *Zonaras*: or, which is all one, that seventy two *solidi* were made out of a Roman pound, as *Justinian* before expressly assigned: and as infinite store of the *solidi*,

\* *Plin. l. 33. c. 3.*

\* *Lampridius in Alex. Severo.*

\* *Lampridius in Alex. Severo.*

\* *Codex Theodof. l. 1. de ponderatoribus.*

\* *Gui. Pancirolli thesaur. var. lect. utr. juris.*

\* *Cod. lib. 10. tit. 70. in recripto Valentiniani & Valentis Imp.*

\* This excellent place very hardly escaped *Halsander's* emendation, who had a great mind to have played the critick, and to have altered it. For he thus writes, *In vestito codice in rasam membranam hac ita rescripta sunt, ut certum sit alteram, & fortasse genuinum lectionem sublatam, & legendam, duodequingigesima, aut certe quingigesima.* A goodly consequence, because the parchment was scraped, and the first writing altered, therefore the true reading must be expunged, and a false one put in: whereas he might with more candour and ingenuity have concluded the contrary, that the false one was expunged by the scribe, and the true one inferred. For who uses in copying of MSS. to scrape any thing out of the *apographum*, but only when by collating it he finds it to be different from the original?

\* *Agricola, l. 2. de pond. & temperat. monetarum.*

\* *Zonar. l. 3.*



were sixty  
soft evident  
where they  
i, without  
12715. C.  
ORIBVS,  
E. Siquis  
oeli, septem  
nostris  
singulis un-  
ta hanc for-  
turnus, eadem  
quis inferat,  
ancirollus, in  
um utriusque  
of VII, and  
it must ne-  
cessarij of  
e as much,  
proportion of  
y Constantine  
is four scru-  
pulus  
solidus con-  
ounce con-  
ounce will there-  
again, the  
aces, and the  
pound there-  
solidi. These  
manner, are  
CYNQVE.  
VS, PRÆ-  
IS. Where  
ht. 1. Quoti-  
ora tituli qua-  
transmittitur,  
accepta. The  
med by Ipsi-  
olidus alio no-  
x uncia com-  
pulsus aureum  
tem ideo dix-  
faciat ter mis-  
agine, truly  
g the solidus,  
he assigns is  
was the sixth  
nd contained  
extula, as it is  
ch is all one,  
made out of  
fore expressly  
of the solidi,

or *aurei*, from *Constantine* to *Focas*, which I have weighed, manifestly prove.

In the same place of *Isidorus* we may collect the reason why the *aureus* was called *solidus*. After that, the *semisses*, and *tremisses aurei* were coined, the *aureus* was called *solidus*, because nothing was wanting to it. *Solidum enim antiqui integrum dicebant, & totum*: in which sense the *solidus* was also taken for the *libra* or *assis*; that is, as the *assis* is taken for the whole, according to that usual phrase of *civilians*, *ex assis bæres*, when one is heir to the whole inheritance: so the *solidus* was taken for the whole *assis*. *Volusius Metianus*: *Prima divisio solidi, id est libræ quod as vocatur, in duas partes dimidia deducitur*. From hence (saith *Salmasius*) the Romans called that the *solidus aureus*, when it had the same weight in gold, which the *solidus*, that is, the *assis* had in respect of *brass*, that is, two *drachmes*. Though I rather suppose that the *aureus* was called *solidus*, first of all in *Severus's* time, not for containing two *denarii* in weight, (which *Salmasius* calls *drachmes*) for so it always did under the later consuls, and first emperors, but because the *aureus* was then first divided into two parts; that is, into the *semisses* and *tremisses*, and so relatively to these the whole *aureus* was rightly called *solidus*. Of the same opinion is *Agricola*: *Quos aureos, cum respectum ad semisses & tremisses haberent, tunc primo dixerunt solidos, quod semisses ex dimidia eorum parte, tremisses ex tertia constarent*.

The *semisses* and *tremisses* of the other emperors, at some distance after *Severus*, came to be less in the same proportion, as the *aurei* were lessened. For the *aurei* of *Severus* were double to the *denarii Casarii*,

and therefore but forty eight in the pound, and not fifty, as *Heliogabalus* made, whose error *Severus* corrected. But when the later emperors made seventy two *aurei* out of the Roman pound, the *semisses* came also to be diminished, and were half of these new *aurei*, and not of the former, and the *tremisses* the third part. And here the *aurei* lost that proportion which they kept before, of being double to the *denarii*. Of these *tremisses* is *Justinian* to be understood, *L. FORTISS. MILITIBUS. COD. DE MILITARI VESTE*. *Fortissimis militibus nostris per Illyricum non binos tremisses pro singulis clamydibus, sed singulos solidos dare precipimus*. And this may be farther proved by a fair *tremissis* in gold of mine own of *Justinian*, with the inscription *D. N. JUSTINIANUS*, weighing twenty one grains *English*, and therefore wanting only three grains  $\frac{1}{2}$ , which it may have lost by time: otherwise it would be exactly the  $216^{\text{th}}$  part of the Roman pound; that is, the third part of the *aureus*, or *solidus* of those times: whereas if it had been coined to the proportion of the *aureus*, when there were forty eight in the pound, it should have weighed  $36$  grains  $\frac{1}{2}$ , so that it must have lost  $15 \frac{1}{2}$ , a difference so great in a piece of gold so fair, and withal of so small a quantity, altogether improbable. And therefore this coin alone, if no more were extant, would confute their opinion, who maintain that the *tremissis* of *Justinian* differed not from the *tremissis* of *Severus*, and consequently the *aurei* of them both, better than the reasons produced by *Covarruvias* to the contrary have done.

<sup>a</sup> Isidorus, l. 16. orig. c. 24.

<sup>b</sup> Vol. Metianus de assis distrib. <sup>c</sup> Hinc & solidum aureum dixerunt Romani, ubi idem pondus habere capi in auro, quod solidus, id est, as haberet in ære, duarum nempe drachmarum. Salmas. de modo Usur.

<sup>d</sup> Agricola, l. 2. de pond. & temp. monetarum. <sup>e</sup> I have since perused another *Tremissis* in gold, a very fair one, with this inscription, *D. N. JUSTINUS. P. F. AVG.* weighing twenty two grains, and better; which formerly belonged to the learned geographer, *Ortelius*. Besides a third, of *Majorianus*, with *CONOB* supercribed (which signifies, *Constantinopolitanum Obritzum*, or *Constantinopoli Obfignatum*) weighing likewise twenty two grains. And a fourth, of *Justinian*, weighing twenty three. <sup>f</sup> Covarruvias, tom. 1. c. 3. paragr. 1. & 2. de vet. aureis, & argenteis nummis.

The Weight of some of the fairest AUREI of the Roman Emperors, from Nerva to Heraclius.

On the fore-part of the AUREI are these characters:

On the reverse, these:

	Eng. Grains.
IMP. NERVA. CAES. AVG. P. M.	FIDES. EXERCITVS — 111 $\frac{1}{2}$
TR. P. II. COS. III. P. P.	
IMP. TRAIANVS. AUG. GER. DAC.	DIVVS. PATER. TRAIANI — 110 $\frac{1}{2}$
P. M. TR. P. COS. VI. P. P.	
IMP. CAESAR. TRAIAN. HADRIANVS. AVG.	COS. II. P. M. TR. P. P. AVG — 121 $\frac{1}{2}$
ANTONINVS. AVG. PIVS. P. P. TR.	COS. III. — 119 $\frac{1}{2}$
P. XII.	
VOL. II.	8 T ANTONINVS.

vero.  
tr. juris.  
to have played  
m hac ita rep-  
dequinquaginta.  
the first writing  
light with more  
scribe, and the  
bam, but only

	Eng. Grains.
GREAVES ANTONINVS. AVG. ARMENIACVS. P. M. TR. P. XVIII. IMP. II. COS. III. <i>in scuto victoria.</i> VIC. AVG. } 118½	
IMP. CAES. L. AVREL. VERVS. CONCORDIAE. AVGVSTOR. TR. P. II. COS. II. } 117½	
L. VERVS. AVG. ARM. PARTHI. TR. P. V. IMP. III. COS. II. } 113½	
MAX. } 114	
M COMM. ANT. P. FEL. AVG. P. P. IOVI VLTORI } 114	
SEVER. P. AVG. P. M. TR. P. X. COS. III. FELICITAS. SAECVLI } 114½	
IMP. M. ANT. GORDIANVS. AFR. CAESAR. M. ANT. GORDIA- } 114	
AVG NVS. AFR. AVG. } 114	
* Trebonianus Gallus. P. M. T. R. P. III. COS. II. P. P. } 75½	
* Gallienus. P. M. TR. P. III. COS. P. P. } 74½	
IMP. PROBVS. P. F. AVG VICTORIOSO. SEMPER } 106	
IMP. C. CARINVS. P. F. AVG. SPES. AVGG. } 72½	
DIOCLETIANVS. P. F. AVG. IOVI. CONSERVAT. AVGG. } 77½	
MAXIMIANVS. VIRTVS. MILITVM T. } 74½	
CONSTANTINVS. MAX. AVG SECVRTAS. REIPVBLICAE } 70½	
CONSTANTINVS. P. F. AVG Infra T. R. } 68	
CONSTANTIVS VIRTVS. AVGVSTI. N } 68	
IM. CAE. MAGNENTIVS. AVG GLORIA. REIPVBLICAE. VOT. XXX. MVLTI. XXXX. <i>infra</i> } 70	
SNNS } 70½	
VICTORIA AVGG. LIB. RO. MANOR } 70½	
Infra TR } 68½	
FL. CL. IVLIANVS. P. F. AVG VOT. X. MVLTI. XX. <i>infra</i> ANT } 68	
D. N. IOVIANVS. P. F. PERP. AVG SECVRTAS. REIPVBLICAE } 68	
D. N. VALENS. P. F. AVG VOT. V. MVLTI. X. <i>infra</i> COS. P } 68½	
D. N. VALENTINIANVS. P. F. AVG RESTITVTOR. REIP. <i>infra</i> ANTO } 69½	
<i>A second</i> RESTITVTOR. REIPVBLICAE } 69	
D. N. GRATIANVS. P. F. AVG VICTORIAE. AVGG. <i>infra</i> TROES } 69	
<i>A second</i> } 68½	
D. N. THEODOSIVS. P. F. AVG. VICTORIA. AVGG. <i>infra</i> CON } 68	
<i>A second</i> } 69½	
D. N. ARCADIVS. P. F. AVG NOVA. SPES. REIPVBLICAE } 67½	
<i>A second</i> } 68	
D. N. HONORIVS. P. F. AVG. VICTORIA. AVGGG. } 69½	
<i>A second</i> } 69½	
<i>A third</i> , D. N. HONORIVS. P. F. AVG VICTORIA. AVGGG. N. D. <i>infra</i> } 68½	
D. N. THEODOSIVS, P. F. AVG CONOB } 69½	
D. N. PLA. VALENTINIANVS IMP. XXXXII. COS. XVII. P. F. } 68	
D. N. VALENTINIANVS. AVG. <i>infra</i> CONOB. } 69½	
VICTORIA. AVGGG. <i>infra</i> CO- } 68	
NOB } 69½	
VICTORIA. AVGGG. <i>infra</i> CO- } 68	
NOB } 69½	
D. N. VALENTINIANVS. P. F. AVG. VICTORIA. AVGG. <i>infra</i> TROES } 68	
D. N. IVL. NEPOS. P. F. AVG VICTORIA. AVGGG. A. <i>infra</i> } 69½	
CONOB } 68½	
D. N. ANASTASIVS. P. F. AVG VICTORIA. AVGGG. <i>infra</i> CO- } 69	
D. N. IVSTINIANVS. P. F. AVG NOB } 68½	
VICTORIA AVGGG. A. <i>infra</i> } 69	
CONOB } 68½	
D. N. FOCAS. PERP. AVG VICTORIA. AVGGG. <i>infra</i> CO- } 69½	
D. N. FOCAS. PERP. AVG NOB } 69½	
HERACLIVS } 69½	
<i>A second</i> } 69½	
	And

# Of the DENARIUS.

715

ing. Grains.  
COS. } 118½  
VG. }  
OR. — 117½

— 113½  
— 114  
— 114½

DIA- } 114  
P. P — 75½  
— 74½  
— 106

G — 72½  
— 77½  
— 74½  
AE — 70½

68  
VOT }  
infra } 70  
RO- } 70½

ANT 68½  
AE — 68  
COS. P

ANTO 68½  
CAE- 69½  
— 69  
ROES 69

68½  
ON — 68  
— 69½  
AE — 67½

68  
69½

69½  
infra } 68½  
P. F. } 69½

CO- } 68  
CO- } 69½

ROES 68  
infra } 69½

CO- } 68½  
infra } 69

CO- } 68½  
NOB 69½  
69½  
69½

And

And thus much of the *aurei* under the former and later emperors, as they serve to illustrate and prove the weight of the *denarii* *Cæsarei*, which is our next and principal enquiry.

The *denarii* under the *Cæsars* were almost as various and unconstant as the *aurei*, sometimes more, sometimes less; and if they had not been so, they could not have kept that proportion to the *aurei* of the former emperors, which we assigned. From *Augustus's* time to *Vespasian*, as I find by examining many of them, they continually almost decreased, till from being the seventh part of the *Roman* ounce, they came now to be the eighth part: and therefore ninety fix were coined out of the *Roman libra*, whereas before under the consuls eighty four. From *Vespasian* to *Alex. Severus*, as far as I have observed, the silver continued at a kind of stay in respect of weight, excepting only such coins, as upon some extraordinary occasion, both then, and in the first emperor's time, were stamped either in honour of the prince, or of the empress, and *Augusta Familia*, or else in memory of some eminent action. These last, most usually, were equal to the *denarii* *consulares*, and many of them had these characters, *E. X. S. C.* or else *S. P. Q. R.* Under *Severus* and *Gordianus*, the *denarii* began to recover their primitive weight, and came to be equal to the *denarii* *consulares*, the half of which also were exactly the *quinarii*; and so continued during the succeeding emperors, till *Justinian*, with little diminution, but most commonly with a notable abatement and mixture of alloy. After *Justinian* there happened such a deluge of barbarous nations, which overflowed the greatest part of *Europe*, that not only the coins, but even the liberal arts and sciences, began with the majesty of the empire to decline from their first lustre and perfection.

Wherefore I shall not speak of the *μυλιαριον*, or *μυλιαριον*, a sort of silver coin in use before, and after *Justinian* which some collect out of *Cedrenus* to have been the eighth part of the ounce, and therefore equal to the *denarius* in the lowest valuation; tho' *Suidas* renders, *μυλιαριον* τὸ τοῦ νομισματος δίκαιον, and the *Sebastiastes Basilic. eclog.* 23. δικοδικαιον, and to contain twenty four *φωλλες*. But I shall not positively determine either the weight of this, or of the *κεκοικον*, or *siligua* in silver, both coined when the imperial seat was translated to *Byzantium*, unless I had examined some of the fairest of them. And for the same reason I shall not define the *Hebrew denarius*, mentioned

by *Elias the Tishbite*, in the word *יִינִיָּה* and by *Gal. 1. 10* *Moyses Gerundenis* upon *Exodus*, and by the *Chaldee paraphrase*, 2 *Reg. v. 5.* which I imagine to have been no other than the *Roman denarius*, used by the *Jews*: neither shall I determine the *Arabian dinar*, and *derbam*; the former of which the *Rabbins* call *יִינִיָּה עִרְבָּא* used by *Rbasis*, *Avicen*, *Meshe*, and by several other *Arabians*, both physicians and historians. All that can certainly be concluded is this, that by the *dinar*, when we speak of a coin, is meant sometime the *denarius*, and sometime the *aureus*: but when we speak of a weight, always the *aureus* is understood; as by the *derbam*, the *δραχμα*, or silver drachme. But surely the quality of the thing is different from the name: the silver drachme of the *Arabians*, as it is generally now used in the *Mahometan dominions* in the *East*, consisting of *xlviij* 4½ grains *English*, (as I have found by weighing many of them) which is much less than either the *drachma Attica*, or the *denarius Consularis*; and somewhat less than the *denarius Cæsareus*. And yet it is not improbable but that this may have continued with them without any diminution, for six or seven hundred years to our times, as well as the *Roman* pound and ounce have continued entire sixteen hundred years and better. But to omit any farther prosecution of the *dinar* and *derbam* of the *Arabians*, which may hereafter more fully be discussed, when we shall handle their measures and weights, and to go on with our discourse of the *Roman denarius*. After the breaking in of so many barbarous nations, as of a torrent, into the *Roman* empire, the *denarius* began generally to be disused; every one almost of these, as an argument of their sovereignty and conquests, making new coins of their own: or else such as continued the former, either by allays so abated the fineness, and valuation of the coins, or by several diminutions so impaired the weight, that the *denarius* totally fell, and at last almost vanished into nothing. Neither will this seem strange, if we shall consider, that the like alteration, in respect of weight, hath happened by the revolution of a less time, in our own coins. I shall instance in our *denarius* or penny, which in *Elisabeth's* time, that is, a little more than 150 years since, was the twentieth part of the *Troy*, or silver ounce: as *M. Lambard*, in his *Saxon Glossary* observes, and as by experience I have found (and the same proportion was anciently observed by the *French*, in their *denier*.)

<sup>a</sup> Cedrenus in histor. compend.

<sup>b</sup> Suidas in voce μυλιαριον.

<sup>c</sup> P. 72. col. 4.

<sup>d</sup> Lambardi Glossium Cantabrig. 1644.

<sup>e</sup> In appendice libri de limit. agrorum: Junta

Galles vigesima pars nostra denarius est, & xii denarii solidum reddunt.

**GREAVES** This proportion continued successively to Edward the first, in whose time we find the weight of the *denarius* by <sup>f</sup> Statute to be thus defined: *Per ordinationes totius regni Angliæ denarius Angliæ, qui vocatur Sterlingus, rotundus, sine insura, ponderabit xxxii grana frumenti in medio spica. Et xx denarii faciunt unciam, Et xii uncie faciunt libram.* Under <sup>1</sup> Edward the third it came first to be diminished to the twenty sixth part of the Troy ounce; and under <sup>h</sup> Henry the sixth it fell to the two and thirtieth; in <sup>1</sup> Edward the fourth's time it came to be the fortieth; under <sup>h</sup> Henry the eighth at first it was the fortieth, then the forty fifth. Afterward sixty pence were coined out of the ounce in the second year of <sup>1</sup> queen Elizabeth; and during her reign sixty two: which proportion is observed in these times. So that it is evident that *Ethelred's* penny was bigger than three of ours. And after times may see this of ours, as well as the *Roman denarius*, to be quite diminished, and brought to nothing. For if either our own exigencies, or the exigencies of foreign states with whom we have commerce, cause us or them (as occasions will never be wanting) to alter the proportions of the gold and silver coins, either in respect of weight, or in respect of purity, or lastly, in respect of the valuation the gold bears to silver; by all, or some of these causes, there will inevitably happen such a diminution of the penny (and proportionably of our other coins) that at length it will not be worth the coining. But I leave this speculation to such, whom it doth more nearly concern. And certainly it is a consideration not of the least importance; money being as the sinews and strength of a state, so the life and soul of commerce: and if those advantages which one country may make upon another, in the mystery of exchanges, and valuation of coins, be not thoroughly discovered, and prevented, by such as sit at the helm of the state, it may fare with them after much commerce, as with some bodies after much food, that instead of growing full, and fat, they may pine away, and fall into an irrecoverable consumption. But I return to the *Roman denarius*, which we have brought so low, that there is nothing now left of it, but only the name; and that also suffered an <sup>m</sup> alteration: for the later *Greeks* instead of the *δηνάριον*, called it the *σηνέριον*: and both *Greeks* and *Latins*, and sometimes the *Arabians*, took it not in the same

sense, as it passed for in the first institution; that is, for a silver coin, worth in valuation ten; or sixteen *asses*, but for any sort of coin whatsoever. And therefore <sup>n</sup> Meursius's observation, in his *Glossarium Græco-Barbarum*, is worth our consideration. *Postea δηνάριον dixerunt ævo corruptiore, Et generaliter pro quavis pecunia. Sicut Itali denaro. Galli denier. Hispani dinero. Anonymus de bello sacro.*

*Δηνάριον ἔχοντι πολλὰ, ὥστε τὰ ταχέστερα, Ἐπὶ αἰῶσι πολλοῖς καὶ οἱ πονεῖ μετ' αὐτῆς.*  
Whence the learned <sup>o</sup> Jos. Scaliger rightly observes, that, *Ultimis temporibus denarii pro exigua sipe usurpati sunt, ut hodie in Gallia. Imperator Aurelianus: Philippos minutulos quinquagenos, æris denarios centum. Eos Vopiscus in Bonoso sesteritios æris vocat. Macrobius de nummo ratilo loquens, qui erat æreus: Ita fuisse signatum hodieque intelligitur in alææ lusu, cum pueri denarios in sublime iactantes, capita, aut navia lusu teste vetustatis exclamant. In Evangelio secundum Marcum xii. λαλῶν δὲ ὁ ἰσὶ κα- δέξις. Hilarius, duos denarios viduæ in- opis Deo acceptiores. Luc. x. ἐκβαλὼν δὲ δηνάριον, Ambrosius, duo æra. Vetusissimus est igitur denarii usus, ἀντὶ τοῦ χρηματισμῶ, vel sipe. Thus far Scaliger.*

Such an uncertainty being then, as we have mentioned, both of the *aurei* and *denarii*, under the first *Cæsars*, in whose times the purest coins, and the best wits most flourished, and such an abatement and impureness of the silver under the later emperors, no reasonable man can imagine, that either the ancient grammarians, poets, orators, historians, or especially physicians, whom it did most concern to be precise, and most of which lived under the former emperors, did ever allude to the weight of the *denarius Cæsareus*, but rather to the *Consularis*. And to this only, and to no other, did the *Attick drachme* mentioned by *Dioscorides*, *Cleopatra*, *Galen*, *Julius Pollus*, *Oribasius*, and the rest of the *Greek* authors correspond. And thus have we finished our discourse concerning the *denarius*, in the notion and acceptance of the ancients, both *Greeks* and *Latins*.

Our next labour should be to compare it with the standards for weights of divers nations used in these times: for which I had recourse to the publick *Zygoſtata*, and *Ponderatores*, in my travels abroad; and for my observations I must refer the reader to this ensuing table.

<sup>f</sup> Stat. 31. Edov. 1.

<sup>h</sup> Stat. 9. Edov. 3.

<sup>b</sup> Stat. 2. Hen. 6.

<sup>1</sup> Stat. 5. Ed. 4.

<sup>1</sup> Stat. 36. Hen. 8.

<sup>h</sup> Stat. 2. Eliz.

<sup>m</sup> In the same manner the *solidus*, or *aureus*, as it lost its valuation, so suffered an alteration in the *Greek* name; for instead of *χρυσός*, we find the glosses to render it *χρυσόν*. *Glossæ, χρυσόν* *solidus*: and in the same glosses we read *δηνάριον* interpreted *δηνάριον*, and *δηνάριον* *sestertium*, and *δηνάριον* *λαλῶν* *αἰγρῶν*.

<sup>n</sup> Meursii *Glossarium Græco-Barbar.* in voce *δηνάριον*.

<sup>o</sup> Scalig. de re num.

*A TABLE of the gold and silver Weights of several Nations: Taken from their Standards, and compared with the Denarius.*

	Eng. Grains.
SUCH parts, or grains of the <i>English</i> standard for gold and silver (or of the <i>Troy</i> weight) as the <i>denarius Confularis</i> containeth sixty two, according to the weight of the best coins, or according to the weight of the <i>congius of Vespasian</i>	62 $\frac{1}{2}$
The ancient and modern <i>Roman</i> ounce containeth	438
The ancient and modern <i>Roman</i> pound, consisting of twelve ounces, containeth	5256
The <i>Troy</i> pound, or <i>English</i> standard of gold and silver, consisting of twelve ounces, containeth	5760
The <i>Troy</i> , or <i>English</i> ounce, (to which five shillings two pence of our money, in these times are equal) containeth	480
The <i>Paris</i> pound, or standard for gold and silver, of sixteen ounces	7560
The <i>Paris</i> ounce	472 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>Spanish</i> pound, or standard, for gold and silver, of sixteen ounces, taken by me at <i>Gibraltar</i>	7090
Another weigh'd by me at <i>Gibraltar</i>	7085
The <i>Spanish</i> pound in <i>Villalpandus</i> , is (I know not by what error) but	7035
The <i>Spanish</i> ounce at <i>Gibraltar</i> (the pound consisting of 7090 grains <i>English</i> )	443 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>Venetian</i> pound, or standard, for gold and silver, of twelve ounces	5528
The <i>Venetian</i> ounce	460 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>Neapolitan</i> pound, or standard, for gold and silver, of twelve ounces	4950
The <i>Neapolitan</i> ounce	412 $\frac{1}{2}$
The pound, or standard, for gold and silver, of twelve ounces, at <i>Florence</i> , <i>Pisa</i> , and <i>Legborne</i>	5286
The ounce at <i>Florence</i> , <i>Pisa</i> , and <i>Legborne</i>	440 $\frac{1}{2}$
The pound, or standard, at <i>Siena</i> , for gold and silver, of twelve ounces	5178
The ounce at <i>Siena</i>	431 $\frac{1}{2}$
The ounce at <i>Genoa</i> , for gold and silver	405 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>Turkish</i> okeb, or oke, at <i>Constantinople</i> , consisting of four hundred silver drams	19128
The silver dram generally used in the <i>Great Turk's</i> dominions: as also in <i>Persia</i> , and in the <i>Mogul's</i> countries, if I be not misinformed	47 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>Turkish</i> sultani, or <i>Egyptian</i> sherif, being a gold coin, with which the <i>Barbary</i> and <i>Venetian</i> chequeen, and <i>Norimberg</i> ducat, within a grain more or less, agree	53 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>ratel</i> , or <i>rotulo</i> , for gold and silver of a hundred forty four drams at <i>Cairo</i>	6886 $\frac{1}{2}$
The <i>ratel</i> , or <i>rotulo</i> , for silk of seven hundred and twenty drams at <i>Damascus</i> (with which I suppose they there formerly weighed their gold and silver; because most countries use the same weights for silks, gold, and silver)	34430 $\frac{1}{2}$

\* The weights (excepting the *rotulo of Damascus*) were diligently compared with the originals and standards; in like manner as I examined the measures above described. In both which, if any shall find some little difference from some originals, as five or six grains in the *English* pound, and it may be one or two parts of a thousand in the *English* foot, different from the standards in the *Exchequer*, or the *Tower*, or at *Winchester*, or some other place, it is not much to be wondered: for I have found as great differences in collating the *English* standards themselves: and have heard *Gaspard Berti* (one of the exactest men in this kind that I have known) to complain of the same diversity at *Rome*. And tho' it be a shame, that in any well-governed kingdom, or common-wealth, the standards, which are the rules of commutative justice, should be unequal, and therefore unjust; yet unless more art and circumspection be used, than hitherto hath been put in practice, it is impossible but such inequalities will creep in.

But this observation of mine, by some, may be thought too nice and curious. That which follows, I am certain, is as necessary, as the preservation of the life of many a man. And that is, that some physicians erroneously imagine the *granum auri* to be alike in all nations. And therefore *Fernelius*, a very able man (who, I think, was the first author of that opinion) writes thus: (*Fern. l. 4. c. 6. Method. medendi*) *Granum, cui tanquam basi reliqua innituntur pondera, ratum constansque esse debet; neque id granum esse bordei, neque tritici, neque cicris, neque frugis; ullius, aut leguminis, quod nullius par sit unico gentium pondus. At vero nummorum minutum, quod aurifabri granum appellant, & Latino momentum dici potest, omnibus mundi nationibus unum idemque est, & stabile, quod auri sacra famet, & opum furiosa libido, inviolata & incorrupta servat, idque signis & exemplaribus undique identidem collatis.* I indeed it was an useful fancy of his to think of some common measure, in which all nations might concur; tho' it is more to be wished for, than ever to be expected. But that alteration of his, *Inviolata, & incorrupta servat, idque signis & exemplaribus undique identidem collatis*, from a man of such rare abilities, I cannot but extremely wonder at: for if we shall go no farther to confute his assertion, than to compare our *grana auri* with those of *Paris*, which *Fernelius* used, we shall find ours much bigger: *xxix English* grains almost equalling *xxxvi of Paris*. Or if we shall compare the *Spanish grana auri*, with his, we shall find those much less: *xxxvi Spanish* grains weighing but *xxviii* and a half of his at *Paris*. The like could I demonstrate in those of other countries. By which dangerous and notable error, for want either of due care, or an exact balance, we may conceive that whatsoever also is delivered by the ancients, in the like nature, is not presently without due examination to be credited.

In this table I judged it much fitter to compare the *denarius* with the standards for gold and silver of several nations, than with their gold and silver coins now current. Because the pounds and ounces of the standard continue always the same; whereas the gold and silver coins being cut in several proportions, according to the exigencies of the state, admit of several alterations and diminutions.



## The CONCLUSION.

**G**RAVE: **I**T was my intention from the *pes Rom.* and *denarius*, together with the *cenius* of *Vespasian*, to have deduced the other weights and measures, used by the *Romans*; and from those of the *Romans*, by such testimonies as are upon record in the writings of the ancients, to have inferred those of the *Hebrews*, *Babylonians*, *Egyptians*, *Grecians*, and of other nations. A work, I confess, intricate and full of difficulties; wherein I could expect neither to give my self, nor others satisfaction, without first laying some sure and solid principles for the basis and foundation. Therefore that occasioned me to insist the more largely in the prosecution of the *pes Rom.* and *denarius*, and to examine all the ways I could possibly imagine, for the evident proof and confirmation of them. What in this kind I have done, and with how much truth and diligence, I leave to the impartial test of after-times, the rest at more leisure may be perfected. Yet these following observations, as a *coronis* to the whole work, I thought would not be unacceptable, if by way of anticipation I communicated them to the world: And those are how the originals and standards of weights and measures, notwithstanding the revolutions and vicissitudes of empires, may be perpetuated to posterity. Amongst several ways, which I have thought of, I know none more certain and unquestionable, than to compare them with some remarkable and lasting monuments, in remote countries, that have stood unimpaired for many hundred years, and are like to continue as many more. In which kind I made choice of the *first and most easterly* of the three great pyramids in *Egypt*; of the basis of that admirable Corinthian pillar, erected (as I suppose) by one of the *Ptolemys*, a quarter of a mile distant to the south from *Alexandria*, being one vast and entire marble-stone: of the rock at *Terracina* or *Anxur*, where it adjoins to the *Via Appia*, and almost touches the *Tyrrhene* sea: of the gate or entrance into the *Pantheon*, or temple of *Agrippa*, dedicated by him to all the gods, and by the Christians to all saints: of the *Porta Sancta*, in that new and exquisite structure of *St. Peter's church* in *Rome*. If the like had been attempted by some of the ancient mathematicians, our times would have been freed from much uncertainty, in discovering the weights and measures of the *Greeks* and *Latines*.

The first and most easterly of the three great pyramids in *Egypt*, hath on the north-side a square descent, when you are enter'd

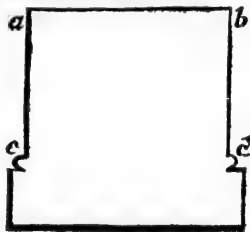
a little past the mouth of it, there is a joint, or line, made by the meeting of two smooth and polished stones over your head, which are parallel to those under your feet, the breadth at that joint, or line, is three feet and  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the *English* foot.

Within the pyramid, and about the midst of it, there is a fair room, or chamber, the top of which is flat, and covered with nine small stones; in it there stands a hollow tomb of one entire marble-stone: the length of the south-side of this room at the joint, or line, where the first and second rows of stone meet, is thirty four feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

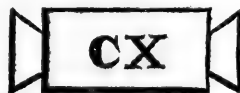
The breadth of the west-side of the same room at the joint or line, where the first and second row of stones meet, is seventeen feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The hollow or inner part of the marble tomb, near the top, on the west side of it, is in length six feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

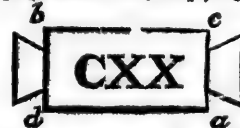
The hollow, or inner part of the marble tomb, near the top of it, on the north side, is in breadth two feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



The basis of the vast *Corinthian* pillar; about a quarter of a mile from *Alexandria* to the south, on the west-side of the pillar at *a b*, is in breadth twelve feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ . At *c d* it is fourteen feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



The rock at *Terracina*, or *Anxur*, near the *Via Appia*, close by the *Tyrrhene* sea, hath these figures, besides several others in the same perpendicular, very deeply engraven.



The uppermost line *b c*, over the figures *CXX*, in the innermost, and deepest part of the engraving, is in length four *English* feet, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The

The lowermost lined *a* in the innermost, and deepest part of the engraving, is in length four feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The stately gate or entrance into the *Pantheon*, or temple, built by *Agrippa* in *Rome*, the jambs, and top and bottom of it, being all of one entire marble-stone, is in breadth between the jambs, or sides, some three inches above the bottom, and some nine inches within, nineteen feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The *Porta Sancta*, on the right-hand of the frontispiece of *St. Peter's* church in *Rome*, is in breadth on the pavement, or threshold, between the jambs or sides of the entrance, eleven feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The great gate, or entrance, which is the middlemost of the five in the frontispiece of *St. Peter's* church in *Rome*, the doors of which are covered with leaves of brass, with very fair and exquisite figures, is in breadth, on the pavement, or threshold, between the jambs, or sides of it, eleven feet  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The measures being fixed, we may likewise fix the weights in this manner; by making a vessel of a cubical figure, answerable to the proportion of any one of these feet, or palms, or braces, which are described in the table at the end of the first treatise. This cubical vessel being filled with clear fountain-water, we are to weigh

it with an exact balance, and to express the weight of it by some one of those weights, which we have placed in a table at the end of the second treatise. The side of this cube being known, and the weight of it in water defined, the rest of the weights in the second table, by way of consequence, by these proportions which we have assigned, may be discovered. Thus for example: the *Roman* foot described by *Villalpandus*, is nine hundred eighty six parts, such as the *English* foot contains a thousand: this being cubed (saith he) weighs of fountain-water eighty *Roman* pounds. If therefore there be given nine hundred eighty six parts of a thousand of the *English* foot, the cube of this will give us eighty *Roman* pounds in fountain-water; and consequently the other measures will be discovered by those proportions we have assigned to them, in respect of the *Roman* pound. Again, eighty *Roman* pounds of water being given, if we reduce this into a cubical body, the side of it will give the *Roman* foot described by *Villalpandus*: and consequently the other measures may be deduced by those proportions we have given them in a peculiar table. Whereby it appears, that as by measures weights may be preserved, so on the contrary, by weights measures may be restored.

#### Some Directions to be observed in comparing the Valuations of COINS.

IN comparing the valuations either of ancient coins with modern, or of modern one with another, we are to consider: first, the *intrinsic* of them, and then the *extrinsic*: the *intrinsic* is either the *fineness* of the coin, in respect of metal, or the *gravity* in respect of weight. The *extrinsic* I term, first, the *character* imprinted on the coin. And, secondly, the *valuation* enjoined by the prince, or state: by which character and valuation, what *originally* and *materially* was but common metal, or plate, comes now *legally* and *formally* to be current money. With these limitations, if we shall compare ancient coins with modern, and modern one with another, it will be no difficult matter to proportion out their several respective valuations; and wuhal to reconcile the seeming repugnancies, either of ancient coins now found, differing from the traditions of ancient authors, or the traditions of ancient authors differing among themselves.

I shall first give an instance of modern coins compared with modern, in our *English* money compared with that of *Spain*, as being most familiar to us; the application of which will by analogy serve for all other distinct states and times, using distinct coins.

In comparing therefore *English* money with *Spanish* money in *England*, or *Spanish* money with *English* in *Spain*, we are thus to proceed: First, We are to examine whether they be of a like fineness for the *intrinsic*; if they be, then an ounce of *English* money, and an ounce of *Spanish* (supposing the weight of the ounce to be alike) will be of like value in any other country out of *England* and *Spain*; where neither are current, but only considered as so much metal, or plate. Secondly, We are to consider the *extrinsic*, that is, the form and stamp of the coin, with the valuation of it by the injunction of the prince of either state; and here that which before was *equal*, comes now to be *unequal*: for an ounce of *English* money in *England* comes to be more worth than an ounce of *Spanish* money in *England*; because this wants the character, stamp, and valuation of our princes, whereby it is current: and for the same reason will an ounce of *English* money be less in valuation than the ounce of *Spanish* money in *Spain*, supposing (as I said) the ounce in both countries to be exactly one and the same.

The same analogy will be, if we compare ancient coins, as those of the *Hebrews*, *Greeks*, and *Romans*, with our *modern* coins.

We

GREAVES We are first to consider the *intrinsic* of them, whether they be of a like weight and fineness for the metal with ours: and this is the *natural or physical consideration*. From whence we may conclude, that if, for example, so many *Attick tetradrachmes* do equal in pureness and weight, so many of our *English* shillings, newly brought from the mint, or so many of our *Troy or silver ounces*, taken from the standard, then are they to be balanced with these in the acceptance of them as plate; and a silversmith, abstracting from the *extrinsic*, that were to melt them both, would give a like value for them both. But if we, secondly, look upon them with the image and character of the state, and in the notion of money, which is the *politick consideration*, then that which before in the *trutina*, and scale, was equal, in the *foro*, and in commerce, comes to be unequal: and an ounce of *English* money shall pass for more than an ounce in *Attick tetradrachmes*, with reference to the expences of the mint, and to the civil valuation, depending upon a mandate, or law, enacted by the prince.

In like manner will it be, if we compare ancient coins with ancient, made in different states, as it is in comparing ancient coins with modern.

Upon these grounds of reason it will follow, that whereas the *Roman* authors make the *denarius consularis* to be equal to the *drachma Attica*, and the *Greeks* equal the *drachma Attica* to the *denarius consularis*, that both say true; and yet both of them, if we speak strictly and exactly, may be deceived. For the *denarius consularis* examined by the balance, which is the best judge of the *intrinsic*, (I speak of the *intrinsic* in respect of weight, and not the *intrinsic* in respect of fineness, that being best discovered by the scale, and this by the test: which last, for the more clearness of my discourse, I suppose in all these coins to be alike.) I say, the *denarius consularis* is found by me, contrary to the opinion of all modern writers, to be lighter than the *drachma Attica*: and therefore to speak strictly, and precisely, cannot be equal to it in the *intrinsic*. But again, if we look upon the *extrinsic* of the *drachma Attica*, and *denarius consularis*, that having the stamp of *Athens*, and this of *Rome*, here reason must be our balance, and not the *trutina*. For the *Athenian* coin being a foreigner, and not current in *Italy*, in the way of exchange and commerce, will lose of its primitive valuation it had at *Athens*, and for want of the *extrinsic* of the *Roman*

stamp, necessarily rebate in the *intrinsic*. And therefore both *Greeks* and *Romans* writing in *Italy*, might truly say, that the *denarius consularis*, and *drachma Attica*, were equal, that is, speaking in civil commerce, and popular estimation: altho' they were unequal in the *intrinsic* and natural valuation.

But if we shall change the scene, and carry the *denarius consularis* to *Athens*, the case will be quite altered. For the *denarius* being a stranger, and the *drachma Attica* a denizen, that cannot have the same privileges with this: and therefore the *extrinsic* of the *denarius* being there of no use, and the *intrinsic* in respect of weight falling short of the *drachma*, it must necessarily be much less in valuation at *Athens* than the *drachma*: and I think no advised *Athenian*, writing in *Attica*, would make them equal, I am certain no nummularius would.

The same may be said of the *Hebrew shekel*, and the *Attick tetradrachme*, and of all other coins of distinct states, mention'd in classical authors. Thus *Philo* and *Josephus*, in *Judea*, both truly equal the *shekel* to the *Attick tetradrachme*, that is in way of commerce; tho' the *shekel* be unequal, and less than the *tetradrachme*, (as I have found by examining many of them) in a just notion of weight. The reason is evident by what hath been expressed before: for in *Judea* the *extrinsic* makes amends for what the *shekel* wants in the *intrinsic*; and on the contrary, what the *tetradrachme* exceeds in the *intrinsic*, is diminished for want of the *extrinsic*, till at length in a popular estimation they come to be equal. But the quite contrary would happen, in the transportation of *shekels* from *Jerusalem* to *Athens*. Here the *shekel* would necessarily fall from its primitive valuation, and the *tetradrachme*, being considered now no longer as a foreigner, would recover what it lost in *Judea*, and consequently rise above the *Hebrew shekel*; as having a double advantage in the *extrinsic* from the state, and in the *intrinsic* from its weight.

But what need we to go so far for examples, when as we instanced before, we have them nearer home? The *Spanish* quarters of the dollar, or double rials, pass ordinarily in our settlements but for shillings, (whereas they are worth in the *intrinsic* thirteen pence farthing) and our shillings pass in *Spain* scarce for a rial and an half. For theirs wanting in *England* our *extrinsic*, and ours in *Spain* wanting their *extrinsic*, must respectively rise and fall in their valuation.

AN  
ACCOUNT  
OF  
COCHIN-CHINA.

IN TWO PARTS.

The FIRST Treats  
Of the TEMPORAL STATE of that Kingdom.

The SECOND,  
Of what concerns the SPIRITUAL.

Written in ITALIAN,

By the R. F. CHRISTOPHER BORRI, a Milaneze, of the SOCIETY of JESUS, who was one of the First MISSIONERS in that Kingdom.

To the READER.

**T**HIS account is so short, it requires not much preface, or to say the truth, any at all; a little time sufficing the curious to inform himself of the value and contents of it. Who the author was appears by the title, and what the cause of his going into that kingdom, his profession and only business being to preach Christianity to the infidels: he lived five years among them, and learn'd their language to perfection; and therefore his relation is not like those of travellers, who just pass through a country; or merchants, that touch at ports upon the business of trade, and consequently deliver very fabulous accounts, either to make their travels the more surprizing, or for want of knowing better, taking things upon bear-say, and not understanding their language to get certain information. This father on the contrary frequently conversing with all sorts of people, and having a settled residence there for years, had the opportunity of knowing what he writ. He gives the description of the kingdom, a considerable part whereof he travell'd over: he speaks of its products, which he had the benefit of for sustenance and cloathing: he tells us the temper and seasons of the air, which he several times felt: he relates the inundations which he often saw: he gives an account of their sects, which he learn'd from their priests, or omfays, whom he converted to Christianity: he sets down the power and government of the kingdom which he could be no stranger to, being familiar with several men in great authority: and to conclude, he particularizes how far the christian faith was been there propagated, which he well knows, as having been himself a labourer in the vineyard for the first five years; and after that, receiving it from those that succeeded him. In fine, the relation is curious, too short, and seems to carry all the air of truth imaginable, besides the general approbation it has always received in all parts, which is the greatest commendation that can be given it.

BORRI.

A N  
A C C O U N T  
O F  
C O C H I N - C H I N A.

The FIRST PART.

O F T H E  
Temporal State of the Kingdom of *Cochin-China*.

C H A P. I.

*Of the Name, Situation, and Extent of this Kingdom.*

BORRI.  
Name of  
*Cochin-  
China*.

**C**ochin-China, so call'd by the *Portugueses*, is by the natives call'd *Anam*, signifying a western country, because it lies west of *China*; for which same reason the *Japoneses* in their language give it the name of *Cocbi*, signifying the same as *Anam*, in the *Cochi-Chinese* Language. But the *Portugueses* having by means of the *Japoneses* been admitted to trade in *Anam*, of the *Japonesse* word *Cocbi*, and this other word *China*, compounded the name *Cochin-China*, applying it to this kingdom, as if they call'd it *Cochin* of *China*, the better to distinguish it from *Cochin* the city in *India*, inhabited by the *Portugueses*; and the reason why in the maps of the world we generally find *Cochin-China* set down under the denomination of *Cauchin-China*, or *Causchina*, or the like, is no other but the corruption of the right name, or that the authors of those maps would signify, that this kingdom was the beginning of *China*.

Its bounds This kingdom on the south borders upon that of *Chiampá*, in 11 degrees of north latitude, on the north somewhat inclining east-ward with *Tunchim*, on the east is the *Chinese* sea, and on the west north west the kingdom of *Lais*.

Extent. As to its extent, I shall here speak only of *Cochin-China*, which is part of the great kingdom of *Tunchim*, usurp'd by a king who was grandfather to him now reigning

in *Cochin-China*, who rebell'd against the great king of *Tunchim*: for as yet the *Portugueses* have traded only in this province; and here only the fathers of the society have been conversant, in order to introduce Christianity: yet at the end of this account, I shall discourse concerning some particulars of *Tunchim*, where our fathers got footing since my return into *Europe*.

*Cochin-China* extends above a hundred leagues along the sea, reckoning from the kingdom of *Chiampá*, in the aforesaid 11 degrees of north latitude, to the gulf of *Anam*, in the latitude of 17 degrees, or thereabouts, where the king of *Tunchim*'s dominions begin. The breadth is not much, being about twenty miles, all the country plain, shut up on the one side by the sea, and on the other by a ridge of mountains inhabited by the *Kemois*, which signifies a savage people; for tho' they are *Cochin-Chinese*, yet they no way acknowledge or submit to the king, keeping in the fastnesses of the uncouth mountains, bordering on the kingdom of *Lais*.

*Cochin-China* is divided into five provinces, the first bordering on *Tunchim*, where this king resides, is call'd *Sinuvá*; the second *Cachiam*, here the prince, the king's son resides and governs; the third, *Quam-guya*; the fourth *Quignin*, by the *Portugueses* call'd *Pullucambi*; and the fifth confining on *Chiampá*, is *Renran*.

C H A P.



## CHAP. II.

## Of the Climate, and Nature of the Country of Cochin-China.

**T**HIS kingdom, as has been said, lies between 11 and 17 degrees of north latitude; hence it follows of course, that the country is rather hot than cold, and yet it is not so hot as *India*, tho' it be in the same latitude, and within the torrid zone. The cause of the difference is, because in *India* there is no distinction of the four seasons of the year, so that the summer lasts there nine months without intermission, without feeling so much as a cloud either day or night, and therefore the air is continually, as it were, inflamed with the great reflection of the sun-beams. The other three months are call'd winter, not because there is any want of heat, but because at that time it generally rains day and night; and tho' to appearance, such continual rains should naturally cool the air, yet they falling in the three months of *May*, *June*, and *July*, when the sun is in its greatest elevation, and in the zenith of *India*, and no winds blowing but what are hot, the air continues so inflam'd, that sometimes the heat is more intense than in summer, when for the most part there are pleasant winds blowing from the sea, which cool the ground, wherewith, if Almighty God did not relieve those countries, they would be uninhabitable.

Great heat of India.  
Four seasons in Cochin-China.

But *Cochin-China* enjoying the distinction of the four seasons, tho' not in so perfect a manner as *Europe*, is much more temperate: for tho' its summer, which comprehends the three months of *May*, *June*, and *July*, be violent hot; because it lies within the torrid zone, and because the sun is then in its zenith, yet in *September*, *October*, and *November*, the autumn season, the heat ceases, and the air becomes very temperate by reason of the continual rains, which at this time usually fall upon the mountains of the *Kemois*, whence the waters running down in abundance do so flood the kingdom, that meeting with the sea, they seem to be all of a piece. These inundations during these three months, for the most part happen once a fortnight, and last three days at a time. They serve not only to cool the air, but to fertilize the earth, making it fruitful and abounding in all things, but particularly in rice, which is the most common and universal food of all the kingdom. During the other three winter months, which are *December*, *January*, and *February*, there are cold northerly winds, bringing cool rains, and so sufficiently distinguishing the winter from other seasons. To conclude, in *March*, *April*, and *May*, the effects of spring appear, all things being green

and blossoming.

Now since we have spoke of these inundations, I will not conclude this chapter without first observing some curiosities that occur on occasion of them.

The first is, That all men in general wish for them, not only that they may cool the air, but much more for the fertilizing of the earth: for which reason as soon as they appear, all the people are so pleas'd and joyful, that they express it by visiting, feasting, and presenting one another, all of them crying, and often repeating, *Daden Lut*, *Daden Lut*; that is, the inundation is come, it is here: and this is done by persons of all degrees, even to the king himself.

And in regard the inundations often come so unexpectedly, that very often when they do not think of it at night, they find themselves the next morning surrounded with water; so that they cannot go out of their houses, throughout the whole kingdom, as has been said: hence it is that abundances of cattle are drowned, for want of time to retire to the mountains, or higher grounds. For this reason there is a pleasant sort of law throughout the kingdom; which is, that if oxen, goats, swine, or other beasts, are drowned, the owner loses them, and they belong to him that first takes them: which causes much sport and jollity; because when the *Lut* happens, they all go out in boats, to seek the drowned cattle; upon which they afterwards feast and treat one another.

Nor are the younger sort without their Beneficial pastime; for there being in those fields of rice, an infinite number of rats, their nests filling with water, they are forced to swim out, and get upon the trees to save themselves: and it is pleasant to see the boughs loaded with rats, like fruit hanging on them. Then do the boys run out in their boats, striving to out-do one another, in shaking the trees, that the rats may fall and be drowned: which childish pastime is wonderful beneficial to the country, delivering it from those mischievous creatures, that otherwise, by degrees, would devour all the harvest.

In short, the *Lut* causes another considerable advantage: which is, that it affords every body the opportunity of furnishing his house with all necessaries, because the country being all navigable, during these three days, commodities are very easily convey'd from one city to another, and therefore then are held the greatest fairs and markets,

Beneficial inundations.

A pleasant law.

Beneficial pastime.

Markets and fairs on the water.

**BORRI.** kets, and with greater concourse of people than at any other time in the year. Then also it is, that they lay in provision of wood to burn and build, bringing it from the mountains in boats; which to this purpose come into the streets, and into the very houses, built for this purpose upon high

pillars, that water may have free passage, the people living during that time in the upper floors; to which it were a wonder if the *Lut* should ever rise, they being built according to the situation of the place, to such a height as they know by long experience, is sufficiently above the waters.

### CHAP. III.

#### Of the Fruitfulness of the Country.

**Rice.** IT is an easy matter to conceive the fertility of *Cochin-China*, by the advantages accruing from the *Lut*; yet we will mention some other particulars relating to it. The *Lut* leaves the land so fruitful, that rice is gathered three times a year, in such great plenty and abundance, that there is no body will work for gain, all persons having enough to live on plentifully.

**Oranges.** There are great quantities of fruit of several sorts, all the year about; and they are the same with those in *India*, *Cochin-China* being within the same climate. But to come to particulars; the oranges there are bigger than ours in *Europe*, and very full; the rind of them is thin, tender, and so well tasted, that it is eaten with the juice, which has a pleasant relish like lemons in *Italy*.

**Banana's.** There is a sort of fruit which the *Portuguese* call *banana's*, and others *Indian figs*; tho', in my judgment, the name of a fig is neither proper to those in *India*, nor in *Cochin-China*, because neither the tree nor fruit has any resemblance with our figs, the tree being like that we call *Indian Wheat*, but higher, and the leaves so long and broad, that two of them would serve to wrap a man in quite round, and from head to feet. Hence some have taken occasion to say, that this was the tree in paradise, with the leaves whereof *Adam* cover'd himself. This tree at the top produces a cluster of twenty, thirty, or forty of these *banana's* together; and each of them is in shape, length, and thickness, of an indifferent citron in *Italy*. Before the fruit is ripe, the rind is green; but afterwards yellow, as the citrons are. There is no need of a knife to pare this fruit, for the rind comes off as we shell beans. This fruit has a most fragrant smell; the pith or flesh of it is yellow, and firm, like that of a *bergamot* pear, when full ripe, that melts in the mouth. By this it appears to be no way like our fig, except in the taste and sweetness. There is another sort of them, which is only eaten roasted, and with wine: the stem dies every year, when it has produc'd the fruit, and leaves a young sprout at the foot, which grows up against the next year. That which in *Italy* they call

an *Indian fig*, is nothing like the plant, or fruit of this *banana*, we now speak of; nor is this which we have in *Italy* call'd an *Indian fig*, in those parts. This fruit is common throughout all *India*. There is another sort in *Cochin-China*, that is not found in *China*, nor *India*: it is as big as the largest citrons we have in *Italy*; so that one of them is enough to satisfy a man. These are nourishing, very white within, and full of black round seeds, which chew'd together with the white substance, are of a delicious taste, and a good medicine against the flux.

There is another fruit in *Cochin-China*, which I have not seen in any other country of *India*; and this they call *Can*: the outward form and nature of the rind is like our pomegranate; but within it contains a substance almost liquid, which is taken out, and eaten with a spoon; the taste is aromatick, and the colour like that of a ripe medlar.

They have another peculiar to the country, *Gaoi*, that grows, and is like our cherries, but tastes like raisins, and is call'd *gnoo*.

There are also melons, but not so good Melons: as ours in *Europe*; nor are they eaten without sugar or honey. The water-melons are large and delicate.

There is a fruit they call *giacca*, which *Giacca* is common to the other parts of *India*, but much larger in *Cochin-China*: It grows on a tree as high as the walnut, or chestnut, and has much longer prickles than the *jubeb*. It is as big as a very large pompon in *Italy*, so that one of them is a man's load. The out-rind is like that of a pine-apple, but soft and tender within. This fruit is full of certain yellow round kernels, like a small piece of coin, that is round and flat; and in the middle of every one of them, is a stone that is thrown away. There are two sorts of this fruit; one in *Portuguese* is call'd *giacca barca*: the stone of this is thrown away, and the pulp is stiff; they do not take out the stone of the other; nor is the pulp hard, but soft as glue: both these in taste somewhat resemble that delicious fruit called the *durian*, whereof we shall speak next.

This *durian* is one of the most delicious fruits in the world, and only found in *Malacca*,

*laca*, *Borneo*, and the adjacent islands. The tree differs little from the *giacca* last mentioned, and the fruit it self is like it without, and that resembles the pine-apple, even in the hardness of the rind. The meat within is very white about the bone, to which it sticks like glue, and tastes very like our *mangiare bianco* (a dainty among the *Italians*.) This meat and liquor is divided into ten or twelve little apartments, in each of which the flesh and moisture is about its stone, which is as big as a large chestnut. And it is to be observ'd, that when they break open the shell of this fruit, there comes from it an ill scent, like that of a rotten onion, all the substance within remaining of a most sweet and unexpressible flavour, whereupon I will relate what happened in my presence: a prelate arriv'd at *Malacca*, and one there opened a *durian* before him to give him a taste; the prelate was so offended at that nausous smell that came from it when broke, that he would not taste it by any means. Being afterwards set down to dinner, they gave the rest of the company *mangiare bianco*; but on this prelate's plate they laid the white substance of this fruit, which is so like the *mangiare bianco*, that he could not distinguish the difference by the sight. The prelate tasted it, and thought it so much more delicious than usual, that he ask'd, what cook dress'd it so rarely? Then he that had invited him to dinner, smiling, told him, It was no other cook but God himself, who had produc'd that fruit, which was the very *durian* he would not taste. The prelate was so astonish'd, that he thought he could never eat enough; and they so dear, that even at *Malacca*, where they grow, they sometimes cost a crown apiece.

*Ananas.* *Cochin-China* abounds in another sort of fruit, by the *Portugueses* call'd *ananas*; which tho' it be common to all *India*, and *Brazile*, yet because I have not found it well describ'd by those that have writ of it, I would not pass it by. This fruit does not grow on a tree, nor from a seed, but on a stalk, like our artichokes, and the stem and leaves are much like those of the thistle or artichoke. The fruit is like a cylinder, a span long, and so thick that it requires both hands to grasp it. The pulp within is close, and like a radish, the rind somewhat hard, scaly like a fish. When ripe, it is yellow both within and without, is par'd with a knife, and eaten raw, the taste of it an eager sweet, and as soft as a full-ripe bergamot-pear.

*Areca.* There is besides, in *Cochin-China*, a fruit peculiar to that country, which the *Portugueses* call *areca*. The trunk of it is as trait as a palm-tree, hollow within, and produces leaves like those of the palm, on-

ly at the top among these leaves, there *BORRI.* grow some small boughs, which bear the fruit in shape and bigness like a walnut, green without just as the nut is; within it is white and hard like a chestnut, and has no taste at all. This fruit is not eaten alone, but is wrapp'd up in leaves of *belle*, well known in *India*, which are like our ivy-leaves in *Europe*, and the plant it self clings to trees like the ivy. These leaves are cut in pieces, and in them they wrap a bit of *areca*, each of them making four or five morsels; and with the *areca* they put some lime, which is not there made of stone, as in *Europe*, but of oyster-shells; and as among us there are cooks and caterers, &c. so in *Cochin-China* there is one in every family, whose business is to wrap up these morsels of *areca* in *belle*, and these persons being women, are call'd *Betteres*. They fill their boxes with these morsels, and chew them all day, not only when they are at home, but when they are walking, or talking, at all times, and in all places, never swallowing, but spitting them out when they are well chew'd, retaining nothing but the relish and virtue of it, which wonderfully comforts the stomach. These morsels are so much in use, that when one of them goes to make a visit, he carries a box full of them, and presently presents some of the party visited, who claps it into his mouth; and before the visitor departs, he that is visited sends to his *Better*-woman for a box of the same, and presents it to the visitor, to return his kindness; and these morsels must be still making. And there is so much of this *areca* us'd, that the greatest revenues of that country come from the fields of it, as among us of olive-gardens, and the like.

*Tobacco* is also us'd there, but not so much Other as *belle*. The country also abounds in all growth. sorts of pumpions and sugar canes. The *European* fruits are not yet come thither; but I believe grapes and figs would take very well. Our herbs, as lettuce, endive, colworts, and the like, come up well in *Cochin-China*, as they do throughout all *India*: But they grow into leaf, without producing any seed, so that it must be still supplied out of *Europe*.

There is also great plenty of flesh, by reason of the great multitude not only of tame cattle, as cows, goats, swine, buffaloes, and the like; but of wild, such as deer, much bigger than those of *Europe*, wild boars, &c. and of hens both tame and wild, of which sort the fields are full, turtles, pigeons, ducks, geese, and cranes, which are savory enough; and in short, other sorts, which we have not in *Europe*.

Their fishery is very great, and fish so delicious, that tho' I have travell'd so many

**BORRI.** countries, I do not think I have met with any to compare to that of *Cochin-China*. And the country, as was said before, lying all along upon the sea, there are so many boats go out a fishing, and they bring in so much fish to all parts of the kingdom, that it is really very remarkable to see the long rows of people continually carrying fish from the shore to the mountains; which is duly done every day, for four hours before sun-rising. And tho' generally among the *Cochin-Chineſes*, fish is more valu'd than flesh, yet the main reason why they apply themselves so much to fishing, is to furnish themselves with a kind of sauce, which they call *balacchiam*, which is made of salt fish macerated and steeped in water. This is a sharp liquor, not unlike mustard, whereof every body lays in such store, that they fill barrels and tubs of it, as many in *Europe* lay in their stocks of wine. This of it self is no food, but serves to sharpen the appetite to the rice, which they cannot eat without it. For this reason, tho' rice be the general and most common sustenance in *Cochin-China*, there must be vast quantities of *balacchiam*, without which it is not eaten, and consequently there is continual fishing. There is no less plenty of shell-fish, oysters, and other product of the sea, especially of one sort, which they call *cameron*. (I suppose this to be the *Portuguese* word *camerano*, signifying shrimps, or prawns.)

Besides all this, providence has furnish'd them with a sort of food so rare and delicate, that in my opinion it may be compar'd to the *manna*, wherewith the chosen people of God were fed in the desert. This is so peculiar to *Cochin-China*, that it is no where else to be found: and I will give an account of what I know of it by experience, and not by hear-say, having seen and eaten of it several times.

In this country there is found a small bird like a swallow, which fastens its nest to the rocks, the sea-waves break against. This little creature with its beak, takes up some of the foam of the sea, and mixing it with a certain moisture it draws from its own stomach, makes a sort of slime, or bituminous substance, which serves to build its nest, which when dry and hardened, remains transparent, and of a colour between green and yellow. The country people gather these nests, and being soften'd in water, they serve to season meat, whether fish, flesh, herbs, or any sort whatsoever; and give every thing so different a relish, and so proper to it, as if they had been season'd with pepper, cinnamon, cloves, and the richest spice; this nest alone being enough to season all sorts of provisions, without salt, oil, bacon, or any other addi-

tion; and therefore I said I thought it like manna, which had in it the taste of all the most delicious meats; saving that this is the work of a small bird, and that was made by God's angels. And such great store of them is found, that I my self saw ten small boats laden with nests, taken among the rocks, in not above a mile's distance. But they being so precious a commodity, only the king deals in them, they being all kept for him; and his greatest vent is to the king of *China*, who values them at a great rate.

They eat no sort of white meats, looking upon it as a sin to milk the cows, or other creatures: and the reason they give for this nicety, is, that milk was by nature appointed for sustenance of the young ones: as if the owner of the young ones could not dispose of their sustenance. They eat some things which we loath, and count venomous, as camelions, which are here somewhat bigger than those that are sometimes brought dry'd up into *Italy*, out of other countries. I saw a friend buy five ty'd together in a cluster, and lay them upon the live coals, which having burn'd the string, they walk'd about gently, as they used to do till they felt the heat of the fire; which being of a violent cold nature, they resisted a-while, but were at last broil'd: my friend took them up, and scraping off the burn'd skin with a knife, the flesh remain'd extraordinary white; then he bruise'd and boil'd them in a certain sort of sauce like butter, and then eat them as a great dainty, inviting me to bear him company: but I had enough with the sight of it.

*Cochin-China* abounds in all other things necessary for the support of human life; and in the first place for cloathing: there is such plenty of silk, that the peasants and mechanicks generally wear it; so that I was often pleas'd to see men and women at their labour, carrying stone, earth, lime, or the like, without the least fear of tearing or spoiling the rich cloaths they had on. Nor will they wonder at it, who shall know, that the mulberry-trees, whose leaves feed the silk-worms, grow in vast plains, as hemp does among us, and run up as fast; so that in a few months the said worms appear upon them, and feed in the open air, spinning their thread at the proper time, and winding their bottoms in such plenty, that the *Cochin-Chineſes* have not only enough for their own uses, but they furnish *Japan*, and send it into the kingdom of *Lais*, whence it afterwards spreads as far as *Tibet*; this silk being not so fine and soft, but stronger and more substantial than that of *China*.

The structures the *Cochin-Chineſes* use of wood, are nothing inferior to those of any other part of the world; for without falsifying,

Wonderful nests.

Incorruptible trees call'd tin.

The houses.

Aquila, and calamba, or doriferous wood.

falsifying, this country has the best timber in the universe, in the opinion of all that have been there to this time. Among the variety and multitude of their trees, there are two that most usually serve for building, and are so incorruptible, that they do not decay in the least, either under ground, or under water; and they are so solid and heavy, that they do not swim upon the water, and a log of them serves instead of an anchor to a ship. One of them is black, but not so as ebony; the other is red, and both of them, when the bark is taken off are so smooth and slick, that they scarce need any planing. These trees are call'd *tin*; and they would not deviate much from the truth, who should say, they were that incorruptible wood, which *Solomon* made use of for building the temple: for we know the scripture gives them a name much like this, calling them *ligna thyria*. The mountains of *Cochin-China* are all full of these trees, all frant, of such a prodigious height, that they seem to touch the clouds, and so thick that two men cannot fathom them. Of this timber the *Cochin-Chinese* build their houses, every man being free to cut down as many as he pleases.

The whole fabrick of their houses rests upon high, solid, and well settled pillars, between which they place boards to remove at pleasure; either to exchange them for cane-lattices, which they weave neatly, to let in the air in hot weather; or to leave a free passage for the water and boats, at the time of the inundation, as we observ'd above. They have also a thousand curious inventions, and ingenious contrivances to set off their houses, with carving, and other works on wood, which are a very great ornament.

Since we have begun to talk of the trees, before we proceed upon any other matter, I will here mention something of a sort of wood, accounted the richest commodity that can be carried out of *Cochin-China* to other parts; which is the most famous wood call'd *aquila*, or eagles-wood, and *calamba*; which are the same thing as to the tree, but differ in their value and vertue. Of these trees, which are thick and high enough, the *Kemois* mountains are very full; if the wood be cut off a young tree, it proves *aquila*, or eagle-wood, and this there is most plenty of, every one cutting as much as he can: but when the wood is of an old tree, that proves *calamba*; which were very hard to be found, had not nature it self provided for it, causing these same trees to grow on the tops of unaccessible mountains, where growing old without being expos'd to destruction, some boughs of

them now and then drop down, breaking off either for want of moisture, or through age, and are therefore found rotten and worm-eaten, infinitely exceeding the common *aquila*, or eagle-wood, in vertue and sweet scent; and this is the so highly valuable and famous *calamba*. The *aquila* is sold by any body, but the *calamba* belongs only to the king, because of the high value of its perfume and vertue. And to say the truth, it is so sweet where they gather it, that some pieces being presented me, for a trial, I buried them above a yard and a half under ground, and yet they discovered themselves by their fragrancy. The *calamba*, where taken, is worth five ducats a pound; but in the port of *Cochin-China*, where the trade is, it bears a much greater price, and is not sold under sixteen ducats a pound. In *Japan* it is worth two hundred ducats a pound; but if there be a piece big enough for a man to lay his head on like a pillow, the *Japaneses* will give after the rate of three or four hundred ducats a pound: the reason of it is, because they instead of a soft down-pillow, when they sleep, lay their head on some hard thing, and generally it is a piece of wood, which every one according to his ability endeavours to have of as great value as can; and a piece of *calamba* is look'd upon as a pillow fit for none but a king, or some great lord. Yet the *aquila*, tho' of less price and esteem than the *calamba*, is so considerable, that one ship's load of it, enriches any merchant for ever: and the best advantage the king can allow the governor of *Malacca*, is to grant him one voyage of *aquila*; because the *Brachmans* and *Banians* of *India*, using to burn their dead with this sweet wood, the consumption of it is continually very great.

To conclude, *Cochin-China* abounds in rich mines of the most precious metals, especially of gold: and to reduce to a few words, what might be said more at large of the plenty of this country, I will conclude with that which the *European* merchants trading thither commonly say of it; which is, that in some measure the wealth of *Cochin-China* is greater than that of *China* it self; and we all know how rich that country is in all respects.

I ought in this place to say something of the beasts, whereof we before observ'd there was great variety and numbers in *Cochin-China*: but that I may not dilate too much, I will only treat of the elephants and abadas, or rhinocero's, chiefly found here; of which many curious things may be said, which perhaps very many have not heard of.

C H A P.



## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Elephants and Abadas, or Rhinocero's.

**BORR.** **T**HERE are abundance of elephants in the woods of *Cochin-China*, which they make no use of, because they know not how to take, or tame them: therefore they bring them tame and well taught from *Cambogia*, a neighbouring kingdom. These are twice as big as those of *India*, the round print of their feet they leave behind them, is not less than half a yard diameter; the two teeth striking out of the mouth, whereof ivory is made, are very often four yards and a half long; that is, those of the males, for those of the females are much shorter; by which it is easy to compute, how much those elephants of *Cochin-China* are bigger than those shewn about in *Europe*, whose teeth are not above three quarters of a yard long. The elephants live many years; and I asking, how old one might be? The driver of it told me, It was sixty years old before it came from *Cambogia*, and had lived forty in *Cochin-China*: and having myself several times travell'd upon elephants in that kingdom, I can relate many things that will seem strange, but yet are very true.

Elephants  
their age.

They carry  
by land  
and water.

An elephant generally carries thirteen or fourteen persons, who are thus dispos'd of: as we lay a saddle on a horse, so they clasp a certain machine upon the elephant, which is like a coach, wherein there are four seats; it is fastned with chains under the elephant's belly, as a horse's saddle is girt. The coach has two doors on the sides, where six persons sit, three on a side; and another behind, where there are two more; and lastly, the *nayre*, who supplies the place of a coachman, sits over the elephant's head, and guides him. Nor have I travell'd in this manner by land only, but very often by sea too, crossing arms of it above a mile over: and it was wonderful to any body that knew it not before, to see such a vast great lump of flesh swimming under such a weight, so that it look'd like a boat rowing. True it is, the beast groan'd under the toil, occasion'd by the unreasonable bulk of its own body, and the difficulty of breathing; and therefore to ease it self in that pain, it suck'd in water with the trunk, and spouted it out so high, that it look'd like some great whale gliding along the ocean.

They help  
up passengers.

For the same reason of its mighty corpulency it finds much difficulty in stooping down; and this being absolutely necessary for the conveniency of passengers to get up to, or down from the coach, he does it not but when commanded by the *nayre*; and if

when he is kneeling, any one stops but never so little, upon ceremony, or any other account, he rises up, not having patience to continue in that posture, it is so painful.

Nor is it less wonderful to behold, how at the *nayre's* command, he makes, as it were, a ladder of his limbs, for the greater conveniency of those that are to get up into the coach: the first step is his foot, which is high enough; for the second, he turns out the first joint above the same foot, distant enough from the other; for the third, he bends his knee; for the fourth, his hip-bone, sticking out to that purpose; and from whence, he that gets up, lays hold of a chain fastned to the coach it self, where he seats himself.

By this it plainly appears, how much they are mistaken, who say and write, that the elephant can neither kneel nor bow down; and that the only way to take him, is to cut the tree he leans against to sleep: for that falling together with the false support, and not being able to rise, he becomes a certain prey to him that lies in wait: which is all a fable, tho' it be true that he lies not down to sleep, that being an uneasy posture to him, as has been said, but sleeps always standing, with a continual agitation of his head.

Upon occasion of war or battle, they take off the roof of the coach, whence, as it were from a tower, the soldiers fight with muskets, arrows, and sometimes a small piece of cannon, the elephant being strong enough to carry it, his strength being answerable to all the rest: and I have seen one myself, that would carry vast weights upon his trunk; and another that lifted up a great piece of cannon with it; and another, who by himself launch'd ten galliots one after another, taking hold of them very dexterously with his teeth, and shoving them into the sea. I have seen others pull up large trees with as much ease we do a cabbage, or a lettuce: with the same ease they throw down houses, levelling whole streets when they are commanded, either to do harm to an enemy in war, or to stop the fury of the flames upon occasion of any fire.

The trunk's length is proportionable to the height of the rest of his body, so that he can take up any thing off the ground without stooping. It is made of abundance of small sinews knit together, which makes it so pliable, that he can take up the least thing, and yet so strong and firm as we have shewn.

All the body is covered with a rough ash-colour skin. An elephant's usual day's journey is twelve leagues, and his motion has the same effect upon those that are not used to it, as that of a ship has at sea.

Great  
sense of  
the ele-  
phant.

I shall say nothing more wonderful concerning the elephant's docility, or aptness to learn, than what is generally reported; by which it will appear, there was reason to say, *No beast was more sensible than the elephant*: for it does such things as seem to be the acts of prudence and understanding. In the first place, though the *mayre* makes use of a certain instrument of iron a yard long, which has a hook at one end, wherewith he strikes and punces him, that he may be watchful, and mind what he bids him do, yet for the most part, he governs him only by words: by which it appears he understands the language very well; and some of them understand three or four that are very different, according to the several countries they have lived in. Thus he that I travelled on, seemed to understand the language of *Cambogia*, whence he came, and that of *Cochin-China*, where he was. And who would not admire to hear the *mayre* discourse with his elephant, tell him the way and road he is to take, what place he is to pass by, what inn they are to lie at, what they shall there find to eat; and in short, give him an exact account of all that is to be done during the journey? and to see the elephant perform what he expects from him, as regularly as any man of good sense could do: inasmuch, that when the elephant seems to have understood what place he was to go to, he takes the shortest cut to it, without minding the beaten road, rivers, woods, or mountains, but goes on, not doubting to overcome all difficulties, as in effect he does: for if any rivers be in the way, he either fords or swims them; if woods, he breaks the boughs of the trees, pulls them up whole, or cuts them with a sharp iron like a scythe, which to this purpose is fastened to the fore-part of the top of the coach, wherewith upon occasion having first laid hold of the boughs, he cuts them with his trunk, and makes himself way, cutting through the thickest forest, where it is easily known to have been an elephant that made the way: and all this he does with great ease and expedition, in obedience to the *mayre*.

The ele-  
phant un-  
derstands  
what is  
said.

One only thing disturbs this creature, and puts it to great pain; which is, when a thorn, or such like thing, runs into the bottom of his foot, which is extraordinary soft and tender, and therefore he treads very cautiously, when he goes thro' places where there may be danger of such an accident. I went a journey once with seven

Vol. II.

or eight elephants in a company, and heard *BORRI*, the *mayre*, every one warn his own beast, to look out carefully where he set his feet: for they were to pass over a sandy place about a mile in length, where thorns grew up among the sand; upon this intimation all the elephants held down their heads, and looking out, as it were, for some small thing that is lost, they walk'd that mile very cautiously, step by step; till being told there was no more to fear, they lifted up their heads, going on as they had done at first. Being come at night to the inn, the *mayres* sent the elephants to the wood to feed, without taking the coach off their backs; and I asking, why they did not take it down: They answered, That the elephants fed on the boughs of trees, and therefore they left the coach on their backs, that they might cut them with that iron we said was before it. The next day being come where there was no wood, every *mayre* carried a large bundle of green boughs for his elephant. I took particular satisfaction to observe one, who more nimbly than the rest, laying hold of those boughs with his trunk, barked them with his teeth, and then eat them up as quick, and with as good a gust, as we would a fig, or any other sort of fruit. Discouraging the next day with my fellow-travellers, who were about twenty, I told them, how much I was pleased to see that elephant eat the boughs so cleverly. Then the *mayre*, by order of the elephant's master, called him by his name, which was *Gnin*, he being at some distance, but presently lifted up his head to give ear to what was said to him. Remember, said the *mayre*, that father, the passenger that looked upon you yesterday, when you was eating; take such a bough as one of them was, and come before him, as you did yesterday. No sooner had the *mayre* spoke the words, but the elephant came before me with a bough in his trunk, singling me out among all the company, shew'd it me, bark'd, and eat it; then inclining himself very low, he went away, as it were, laughing, making signs of joy and satisfaction; leaving me full of astonishment, to see that a beast should be so apt to understand, and do what it was commanded. Yet the elephant is obedient to none but the *mayre*, or his master; and he will only endure to see them get upon him: for if he should see any other person mount, there were danger that he would throw down the coach with his trunk, and kill him: and therefore when any body is to get up, the *mayre* generally covers his eyes with his ears, which are very large and ill shap'd.

If at any time the elephant does not obey so readily as he should, the *mayre* beats are corrected. him cruelly on the middle of his forehead.

8 Z

standing

**BORRI.** standing himself all the while upright on his head: One time when I was upon him, with several others, the *nayre* beat him, as has been said, and every stroke he gave him, it looked as if we should have been all thrown down headlong. Generally they give him six or seven strokes on the middle of the forehead; but with such force, that the elephant quakes and yet bears all patiently. There is only one time when he obeys neither the *nayre*, nor any other body; which is when on a sudden he is inflamed with lust: for then, being quite besides himself, he bears with no body, but lays hold of the coach with all that are in it, killing, destroying, and beating every thing to pieces. But the *nayre* by certain signs discovers it a little before it comes, and getting down speedily with all the passengers, unloads him, taking down the coach, and leaves him alone in some by-place, till that fury be over: after which, being sensible of his error, and as it were ashamed of himself, he goes with his head low to receive the blows that are to be given him, thinking he has deserved them.

Now useful in war

Formerly the elephants were of great use in war, and those armies were formidable that carried great troops of them into the field; but since the *Portugueses* found out the way of using artificial fireworks to them, they are rather hurtful than otherwise: for not being able to endure those sparks of fire which get into their eyes, they betake themselves to flight, breaking their own armies, killing and confounding all that stands in their way.

The Rhinoceros.

The tame elephant fights with only two creatures, which are the wild elephant, and the abada, or rhinoceros; the latter it overcomes, by the first is generally conquered. The rhinoceros is a beast of shape between a horse and an ox, but as big as one of the smallest elephants, covered all over

with scales, as it were so many plates of armour. He has but one horn in the middle of the forehead, which is straight and pyramidal, and his feet and hoofs are like those of an ox. When I was at *Nuocmon*, a city in the province of *Pulucambi*, the governor went out to hunt a rhinoceros, that was in a wood near our dwelling place. He had with him above an hundred men, some a foot, and some a horseback, and eight or ten elephants. The rhinoceros came out of the wood, and seeing so many enemies, was so far from giving any tokens of fear, that it furiously encountered them all; who opened and making a lane, let the rhinoceros run through: It came to the rear, where the governor was a top of his elephant, waiting to kill it: the elephant endeavours to lay hold with his trunk, but could not by reason of the rhinoceros's swiftness and leaping, that striving to wound the elephant with its horn. The governor knowing it could receive no hurt, by reason of the scales, unless they struck it on the side, waited till leaping it laid open the naked place, and casting a dart, dexterously struck it through from side to side, with great applause and satisfaction of all the multitude of spectators; who without any more to do, laid it upon a great pile of wood, setting fire to it, leaped and danced about, whilst the scales were burning, and flesh roasting, cutting pieces as it roasted, and eating them. Of the entrails, that is the heart, liver, and brain, they made a more dainty dish, and gave it to the governor, who was upon a rising ground, diverting himself with their merriment. I being present obtained the hoofs of the governor; which are looked upon to have the same quality and virtue, as the claws of the great beast (or the hoof of the elk) and so the horn is good against poison, as is the unicorn's.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Qualities, Customs, and Manners of the Cochin-Chineses; of their way of Living, their Habit and Cures.*

Colour and disposition of body of the Cochin-Chineses.

**THE** *Cochin-Chineses* are in colour like the *Chineses*; that is, inclined to an olive-colour: I mean those that are nearest the sea; for those up the inland, as far as *Tonchin*, are as white as the *Europeans*. The shape of their faces is exactly like the *Chineses*, with flat noses, little eyes, but of an indifferent stature, not so small as the *Japoneses*, nor so tall as the *Chineses*. Yet they are stronger and more active than either of them, and braver than the *Chineses*, but are out-done by the *Japoneses* in one thing, which is the contempt of life in dangers and battles; the *Japoneses* seeming to make

no account of life, nor to apprehend the least fear of death.

The *Cochin-Chineses* are naturally the most courteous and affable of all the *Eastern* nations; and tho' on the one side they value themselves much upon their valour, yet on the other they look upon it as a great shame, to suffer themselves to be transported with passion. And whereas all the other *Eastern* nations, looking upon the *Europeans* as a profane people, do naturally abhor them, and therefore fly from us when first we come among them: in *Cochin-China* it falls out just contrary; for they

Their civility.

they strive who shall be nearest us, ask a thousand questions, invite us to eat with them, and in short use all manner of courtesy with much familiarity and respect. So it happened to me and my companions when we first came there, being, as it were, among friends of an old standing. This is a very good disposition to facilitate the preaching of the gospel.

**Liberality** This loving and easy disposition is the cause of much concord among them, they all treating one another as familiarly as if they were brothers or of the same family, tho' they have never known or seen one another before; and it would be look'd upon as a most vile action, if one man eating any thing, tho' never so little, shou'd not share with all about him, giving every one a bit. They are also naturally kind and free-hearted to the poor, to whom it is customary among them never to deny an alms, when asked; and it would be reputed a great fault to deny it, as if it were due to them. Thus it happened, that some strangers escaping from a shipwreck in a port in *Cochin-China*, and not knowing the language to make known their want, but learning only this word *doi*, which signifies, *I am hungry*: when the natives saw strangers at their doors, crying out *doi*, as if the greatest misfortune in the world had befallen them, every one strove to be before another in giving them to eat; so that in a short time they gathered so much provision, that a ship being afterwards given them by the king to return to their country, they took such an affection to that country, where they found all things for their sustenance at such easy rate, that not a man of them would go away; so that the captain of the ship was forced to drive them aboard with many blows and cuts, which he effectually did, loading the ship with the rice they had gathered only by going about, crying, *I am hungry*.

But as ready as the *Cochin-Chinese* are to give, so are they as apt, if not more, to ask any thing they see, so that as soon as ever they cast their eye on any thing that is new to them, and curious, they say, *Schin Mocai*; that is, *Give me one of these things*: and it is such a rudeness to refuse them, tho' the thing be rare and precious, that whosoever should do it, would be ever after looked upon as a vile person; so that a man must either hide, or be ready to give what he shews. A *Portuguese* merchant disliking this uncommon custom, as not used to it, resolved, since every one asked of him whatsoever he saw, to do the same with them: accordingly he came to a poor fisherman's boat, and laying hold of a pannier full of fish, in the country language; said to him, *Schin Mocai*, the ho-

nest man made no answer, but gave him **BORRY** all the pannier as it was, for him to carry home, as he did, admiring the liberality of the *Cochin-Chinese*; but taking compassion on the poor fisherman, he afterwards paid him the full value of it.

The manner of breeding and civility the *Cochin-Chinese* use, is more or less the same with that of the *Chinese*, always punctually observing all niceties; we know these latter observe between superiors and inferiors, equals, and the respect due to ancient persons, ever preferring the eldest, of what degree soever, and giving them preference before the younger. Wherefore some of those gentlemen coming often a visiting to our house, tho' the interpreter told them, that a father we had there somewhat elder than the rest, was not our superior: yet they could never be brought to pay their respect to the young superior, before the old man. In every house, tho' never so poor, the *Cochin-Chinese* have three sorts of seats; the first and meanest, is a mat upon the bare floor, on which persons of equal quality sit, as those that are of the same family. The next is, a low stool, covered with a very fine mat; which is for persons of better account. The third, is a couch about three quarters of a yard high, on which only the lords and governors of places sit, or persons dedicated to the divine service, and on this they always make our fathers sit.

This good nature and civility of the *Cochin-Chinese*, makes them so courteous to strangers, whom they allow to live according to their own laws, and to wear what cloaths they please; and so they praise their customs, and admire their doctrine, frankly preferring them before their own; quite contrary to the *Chinese*, who despise all but their own customs and doctrine.

As for their habit, we have before observed, that it is the general custom in *Cochin-China* to wear silk; it only remains to speak of the fashion of their clothes. To begin with the women; I think the modestest garb of all *India*; for even in the hottest weather, they suffer no part of the body to be uncovered: they wear five or six petticoats one over another, all of several colours; the first reaches to the ground, which they trail along the ground with such gravity and state, that the tips of their toes are not seen: the second is half a span shorter than the first: the third shorter than that; and so one over another; so that all the several colours appear: and this is the women's habit from the waist downwards, for on their bodies they wear doublets checkered, of several colours; over all they have a veil; but so thin, that tho' it covers them, yet it is transparent, and shews all their gaiety with

Their breeding.

Fashion of clothes.

**BORRI.** with modesty, and makes a beauteous majestic appearance. Their hair is loose, spreading over their shoulders, so long that it reaches to the ground, and the longer the greater beauty it is reckon'd. On their head they wear such a broad cap, that it covers all their faces, so that they cannot see above four or five paces before them; and these caps are interwoven with silk and gold, according to the quality of the person. The women when met, are not obliged to any other return of civility, but to lift up the brims of their caps, so much, as their face may be seen. The men, instead of breeches, swath themselves with a whole piece of stuff, putting on over them five or six long and large gowns all of fine silk, and of several colours, with wide sleeves, like those of the monks of the order of St. *Benedict*; and these gowns, from the waste downwards, are all flashed curiously, so that as a man moves, he makes a shew of all those several colours together, and if any wind blows to lift them up, they look like peacocks with their fine feathers spread abroad.

Hair and  
nails  
never cut.

They let their hair grow as the women do, down to their heels, and wear the same sort of hats, or broad caps. Those who have any beard, and they are but few, never cut it; being in this like the *Chinese*, as they are in suffering the nails of their hands to grow, which the people of note never pare; this being a mark of distinction between them and the commonalty, who always keep them short, for the convenience of their trades; whereas the gentry have them so long, that they cannot grasp any small thing in their hands. Nor can they approve of our fashion of cutting our hair and nails; being of opinion, that they were given by nature, as an ornament to man: so that some discourse arising once concerning hair, they started an objection, which was not so easy to answer at sight, saying: *If the Saviour of the world, whom in your actions you profess your selves to imitate, wore his hair long, after the manner of the Nazarites, as you your selves do affirm, and shew by your pictures, why do not you do so too?* Adding, *That our Saviour's wearing long hair, demonstrated it to be the better fashion.* But at last they were satisfy'd with the answer we made, that this imitation did not consist in the outward dress.

The scholars.

The scholars and doctors are somewhat more gravely clad, without so many colours and flashes, and therefore cover all their gowns with one of black damask. They also wear a thing like a stole about their necks, and a blew silk maniple on their arms, covering their heads with caps made after the manner of mitres.

Both men and women carry fans in their

hands, rather for ornament than use, and they are not unlike to those the women in *Europe* use. For mourning, as we *Europeans* use black, they wear white. They never uncover their heads in saluting, that being looked upon as an uncivil action. Wherein they agree with the *Chinese*, among whom that custom is reputed so unmannerly, that to comply with them in this particular, the fathers of the society were forced to obtain leave of pope *Paul* the fifth, to celebrate the holy sacrifice of the mass covered. In short, the *Cochin-Chinese* wear neither shoes nor stockings, only saving their feet with leather soles fastened across the toes with silk, like sandals; nor do they think it indecent to go quite barefoot; and though going shod or unshod, they are apt to dirty their feet, they value it not, there being in every house at the door of the chief room, a large pan of clean water, in which they wash their feet, leaving those soles or sandals they use there, to take them again when they go away, because they cannot then dirt their feet, all the floors being covered with mats.

The *Cochin-Chinese* not being so fond of their own customs, as to despise those of strangers, as the *Chinese* do, our fathers in those parts have no occasion to change their habit, wherein they differ but little from the generality of all *India*. They wear a thin cotton cassock, which they call *Ebingon*, and is generally blew, without any cloak, or other upper-garment. They have no shoes, neither after the *European*, nor country fashion; the first they cannot get, because there is no body knows how to make them; and the latter they cannot endure, because of the pain it is to any body that is not used to it, to have his toes spread at a distance from one another, by reason of the buttons that fasten them on, and therefore they choose as the less evil, to go quite barefoot, tho' it exposes them to continual pains in the bowels, especially at first, by reason of the dampness of the country, and their not being used to it. True it is, that in time nature complies, and the skin grows so hard, that it is no pain to walk upon stones or briars. When I returned to *Macao*, I could not endure shoes, thinking them a weight and encumbrance to my feet.

The chief sustenance of the *Cochin-Chinese* is rice; and it is wonderful, that tho' the country abounds in flesh, fowl, fish, and fruit, of so many several sorts, yet when they eat, they first fill their belly with rice, and then taste of other things, as it were for fashion-sake. They make more account of rice than we do of bread, and that it may not clog them, they eat it alone without any seasoning of salt, sugar,



use, and women in we *Euro-*. They ing, that vil action. *Chinese*, a- ted so un- em in this city were *Paul* the ice of the *bin-Chi-* ngs, only s fastened dals; nor quite bare- or unshod, they value use at the ge pan of their feet, y use there, go away, air feet, all ats. so fond of se those of r fathers in hange their little from ey wear a call *Ebin-* ithout any nt. They *European*, ey cannot nowns how they cannot t is to any o have his ne another, fasten them as the less ' it exposes the bowels, f the damp- not being time nature ys so hard, on stones or *acao*, I could em a weight

*Cochin-Chi-* Their diet. ul, that tho' e, fowl, fish, al sorts, yet l their belly ther things, They make do of bread, em, they eat g of salt, su- gar,

gar, oil, or butter, but boiled in so much water as will keep it from burning to, so that the grain remains whole, only soften'd and moisten'd. For this very reason that the rice is not seasoned, it is the easier of digestion, and therefore they that live upon rice, as they do in the *East*, commonly eat it at least four times a day, and a great quantity of it to support nature. The *Cochin-Chinese* eat sitting cross-legged on the ground, with a round table before them breast-high, with mouldings, or adorned with silver or gold, according to the people's quality or wealth. It is not very large; because the custom is for every man to have one to himself, so that at a feast, as many guests as there are, so many tables are provided, and the same is done when they dine privately; only, sometimes man and wife, or father and son, will make a shift with the same table. They neither use knives nor forks; of the first they have no need, because every thing is brought up from the kitchen cut into small bits; the place of the last is supplied by two little sticks, wherewith they neatly and very readily take up any thing; nor have they any need of napkins, for they never foul their hands, nor touch any thing with them.

Their  
treats.

There are frequent invitations among neighbours, and at these entertainments they provide other sorts of dishes than what we have hitherto spoke of; for they make no account of rice, supposing every man has enough of that at home; and tho' he that treats be never so poor, he does not come off with credit, unless every guest's table be served with at least an hundred dishes; and it being the custom to invite all their friends, kindred and neighbours, there is no feast where there is less than thirty, forty, fifty, sometimes a hundred, and even two hundred guests: I was once my self at a solemn entertainment, at which no less than two thousand were feasted, and therefore these banquets must be made in the country, that there may be room for so many tables. Nor must any body admire that the tables being small, they be furnished with a hundred dishes at least; for upon these occasions they very curiously make frames of sugar-canes on the table, on which they dispose of the said dishes; and there must be in them all the varieties of meat the country produces, as well flesh as fish, and butcher's meat as fowl, wild and tame creatures, with all sorts of fruit the season affords; for if but one were wanting, it would be a great fault in the entertainer, and they would not count it a feast. The men of quality that are invited eat first, being waited on by their chief servants. When the masters have tasted of all they like best, these same

principal servants take their places, and *BORRI*. eat, being waited on by the inferior sort: then these succeed in their places; and because all of them are not able to consume such plenty, and according to custom all the dishes must be emptied; when these are satisfied, then the very meanest servants of every great man come in, and do not only eat their belly full, but put up all the fragments in bags they carry for that purpose, and carry them home, where they merrily divide it among the boys, and other mean fry, and so the feast ends.

Their  
drink.

*Cochin-China* produces no grapes, and therefore instead of wine they drink a liquor distilled from rice, which tastes like brandy, and resembles it in colour and harshness, spirit and briskness, and they have such plenty of it, that all people in general drink as much as they will of it, and are as drunk as people are among us with wine. Graver persons mix that liquor with some other water distilled from *calamba*; which gives it a delicious smell, and is a delicate composition.

Between meals they drink hot water, wherein they boil the root of an herb they call *chia*, from which the liquor takes name. It is cordial, and helps to digest humours from the stomach, and advance digestion. The *Japanese* and *Chinese* use such a sort of drink, only that in *China*, instead of the root, they boil the leaves of the herb; and in *Japan*, a powder made of the same leaves; but the effect is the same, and they all call it *chia*.

Amidst this great plenty of meat, and abundance of provisions, it is incredible how much hunger and thirst we *Europeans* endure; not so much for want of food, as because we are not used to that diet, nature finding a very great misfortune of bread and wine: and I believe the *Cochin-Chinese* would be in the same condition, should they come into *Europe*, where they would be deprived of their usual sustenance of rice, tho' they had plenty of other delicate provisions. To this purpose I will not omit to relate what happened to us with a governor of *Cochin-China*, he being a friend of ours, was invited by us to eat at our house; and the more to shew our affection, we endeavoured to have several dishes dressed for him after the *European* manner. He sat down to table, and when we expected he should acknowledge our kindness, commend the cookery, and thank us for the rarity, because we had been at much trouble about it: when he had tasted them all, he could not eat of any one, though out of civility he strove against his stomach; and we were forced to dress more meat after the country-fashion, the best we could, whereof he afterwards eat very favourably,

**BORRI.** to his own and our satisfaction. Yet providence does not neglect a thousand ways to support those that undergo these hardships for the preaching of the gospel, finding means, even in this world, to requite what they suffer for the sake of God, as happens in this particular of food, as was before said of going bare-foot; for by degrees nature grows familiar with it, and comes to be so habituated to the custom of the country, that it looks strange when to return to its first ways. This happened to me, who when I returned from thence, coveted nothing but the rice of *Cochin-China*, which I thought satisfied me more than any other thing.

**Physicians.** As for physicians, and their way of practice, there are abundance of doctors, not only *Portuguese*, but natives; and it often is experimentally known, that the country physicians easily cure several diseases, which the *European* physicians know not what to do with: so it sometimes happens, that after our physicians have given over a patient, they call one of the country, and he cures him.

**Way of practice.** The physicians of the country use this sort of practice: being come to the patient's bed-side, they stay a little to settle themselves after the motion of coming; then they feel the pulse for a long while together, very attentively, and with much consideration; after which they usually say, You have such a distemper; and if incurable, they honestly say, I have no cure for this disease: which is a sign the patient will die. If they find the disease curable, they say, I have a medicine that will cure him; and I will do it in so many days. Then they agree what they are to have if they cure the sick man, bargaining the best they can, and sometimes they draw up writings to bind the contract. After this the physician himself prepares the medicine, without the help of an apothecary; for which reason there are none in the country: and this they do, that they may not discover the secret of the art they work; and because they will not trust another to put together the ingredient they prescribe. If the patient recovers within the time appointed, as generally happens, he pays the price agreed on; if he miscarries, the physician loses his labour and medicines.

**Medicines.** The medicines they give are not like ours, which cause a loathing, and are laxative; but theirs are palatable as their broths, and nourishing without any other sustenance, which makes them give the patient several doses in a day, as we give broth at so many hours interval; and these do not alter the course of nature, but only help the usual operations of nature dispersing the peccant humours, without wracking the patient.

I remember a passage worth the relating in this place: a *Portuguese* falling sick, sent for the *European* physicians; who having used their endeavours, gave him over. When they were gone, a physician of the country was called; who undertook to cure him in so many days, strictly enjoining him, whilst he was under his hands, to have a care of having to do with women upon pain of certain death, from which the virtue of his medicine could not deliver him. They agreed upon the price, and the physician undertook to cure him in thirty days. The patient took the medicines prescribed him, and in a few days found himself so well recovered, that he was not afraid to transgress the physician's injunction; who coming to visit him, by the alteration of his pulse discovered the sick man's incontinency, and bid him prepare to die, because there was no cure for him; but that he should pay him his money, since it was none of his fault that he must die. The case was try'd; the sick man was adjudged to pay: and so he died.

Bleeding is also used, but not so much as in *Europe*, nor is it done with a steel lancet; but they have abundance of goose-quills, in which they fix some bits of fine porcelain, made sharp, and shaped like the teeth of a saw, some bigger, some less, of several sizes. When they are to let blood, they apply one of these quills to the vein, proportionable to the bigness of it, and giving it a fillip with the finger, open the vein, only so much of the porcelain entering as is requisite: and what is most wonderful, when they have drawn the blood, they use no fillet or binding to stop it; but wetting their thumb with spittle they press the orifice, so that the flesh returning to the place whence it was parted, the blood is stoppt, and runs out no more: which I suppose to proceed from the manner of opening the vein, as it were sawing it with that porcelain full of teeth, and therefore it closes again the easier.

There are also surgeons, who have some wonderful secrets, whereof I will give but two instances, one practised upon my self, the other upon one of our brothers, my companion: I happened to fall from a very high place, with my breast against the corner of a stone, whereupon I presently began to spit blood, and had a wound in my breast outwardly. We applied some medicines after our *European* manner, but to no purpose. A surgeon of the country came and took a quantity of a certain herb like that we call mercury, and making it into a plaister, laid it on my breast, then he caused some of that herb to be boiled for me to drink, and made me eat

A notable story.

Cures.

the same herb raw: and thus in a few days perfectly cured me. I, to make another experiment, caused the leg of a hen to be broke in several places, and making a plaister as he had done of the same herb, bound it upon the broken leg, and in a few days it was whole and sound.

A scorpion bit a brother of ours, my companion, in the neck; and in that kingdom the bite of a scorpion is mortal. All his throat swelled immediately, and we were about giving him extreme unction. A surgeon was sent for, who immediately set a pot of rice a boiling in nothing but fair water, then clapping the pot to the brother's feet, covered him and it close with cloths, that the steam might not go out, and as soon as the said steam and hot

smoke of the rice came up to the place <sup>BORR.</sup> where the bite was, the brother felt the pain abate, the swelling in his throat fell, and he remained as sound as if nothing had ailed him.

Many other instances might be added, but I shall only say, that the medicines in those parts have a greater virtue than when they come to us; and particularly I can affirm, that I brought with me a small cask of *rhubarb*, which was extraordinary good there, and when I came into *Europe*, having spent two years by the way, I found it so changed, that I scarce knew it my self, so that those medicines lose much of their virtue in bringing from those countries to our parts.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of the Civil and Political Government of the Cochin-Chineſes.

I Will give a brief account of as much as may suffice for the reader's information; for it would be too tedious, and from the purpose of this my short relation, to discourse of every thing in particular. The government of *Cochin-China*, in general, is a medium betwixt those of *Cbina* and *Japan*: for whereas the *Japoneſes* make less account of learning than military knowledge: and on the contrary, the *Chineſes* attribute all to learning, taking little notice of warlike affairs. The *Cochin-Chineſes* following the example of neither, equally encourage learning, and skill in war, according as occasion offers, sometimes preferring the foldier, and sometimes the scholar, and so repulsing them as appears most convenient.

Learning. In *Cochin-China* there are several universities, in which there are professors, scholars, and degrees conferred by way of examination, in the same manner as is practised in *Cbina*, the same sciences being taught, and the same books and authors read; that is, *Zinſu*, or *Confucius*, as the *Portugueſes* call them; which are authors of such profound learning, and in such esteem and reputation among them, as *Aristotle* is among us, being much ancients than he. These books of theirs are full of erudition, of stories, of grave sentences, of proverbs, and such like things, for the directing a civil life, as are *Seneca*, *Cato*, and *Cicero*, among us; and they spend many years in learning the true sense of the phrases, words, characters, and hieroglyphicks, they are writ in; but that they most value is moral philosophy, or ethics, æconomy, and policy. It is comical to see and hear them, when they are studying, read and repeat their lessons in such a

tone as if they were singing, which they do to use themselves to it, and give every word its proper accents, which are many, every one expressing a several thing: and therefore one would think, that to converse with them, a man must understand the grounds of music.

The language they generally speak, is different from that they read and teach in at the schools, and which their books are writ in: as among us the vulgar language differs from the *Latin* used in the schools. Wherein they differ from the *Chineſes*, who, if they are learned, or noble, always use the same language, which they call of *mandarines*; that is, of doctors, judges, and governors, and the characters they use in writing: and printing their books, are above eight thousand, all differing from one another. And for this reason the fathers of the society spend eight, and even ten years, in studying the *Chineſe* books, before they can be masters, and go abroad to converse with them. But the *Cochin-Chineſes* have reduced the characters to three thousand, which they generally make use of: and these are enough to express themselves in their harangues, letters, petitions, memorials, and such things which do not belong to printed books; for those of necessity must be in *Chineſe* characters. The *Japoneſes* have been more ingenious, who tho' in all that belongs to books, whether written or printed, they agree with the *Chineſes*; yet for common uses have found out forty eight letters, wherewith they express whatsoever they please, as well as we do with our alphabet: and yet the *Chineſe* characters are in such esteem even among the *Japoneſes*, that these forty eight letters, notwithstanding the use they are of above the others,

**BORRI.** others, are contemned in comparison of them; inasmuch, that in scorn they call them women's letters.

The ingenious invention of printing was found out in *China*, and *Cochin-China*, long before it was in *Europe*: but not in such perfection: for they do not compose joining letters and characters, but with a graver, penknife, or such instrument, cut and carve the characters upon a stone as they will have them in their books: on this board so carved they lay their paper, and print it off, as we in *Europe* do copper-plates, or the like.

Besides these books of morals, they have others, which contain things they account sacred; as for instance: the creation and beginning of the world: of the rational souls of demons: of idols, and of their several sects. These books are called *Saye Kim*, to distinguish them from the profane, which they call *Saye Chiu*. Of the doctrine of their sacred books, we shall treat in the second part of this account, where the subject will be more suitable.

The language.

Tho' the language of the *Cochin-Chineſes* be in one respect like that of the *Chineseſes*, both of them using all monosyllables, delivered in several tones and accents; yet they utterly differ in the word it self, the *Cochin-Chineſes* being more full of vowels, and consequently softer and sweeter, more copious in tones and accents, and therefore more harmonious. The language of *Cochin-China* is, in my opinion, the easiest of any, for those that have a musical ear, to take the tones and accents; for it has no variety by way of conjunction of verbs, or declination of nouns, but one and the same word, with the addition of an adverb, or pronoun, signifies the present, the preterit, and future tenses, the singular number, and the plural; and in fine, serves for all moods, tenses, and persons, and the diversity of numbers and cases. For instance: This word, *To have*, which in the *Chineseſe* language is *Co*, by only adding a pronoun, serves all occasions, saying, *I have*, *Thou have*, *He have*; the name of the person making that diversity, which we express by altering the termination, thus, *I have*, *Thou hast*, *He has*. In the same manner they make the several tenses; saying, for the present, *I now have*; for the preterit, *I heretofore have*; and for the future, *I hereafter have*: And so without ever altering the word *Co*; by which it appears how easily this language may be learned: as it happened to me, who in six months understood so much, that I could discourse, and even hear their confessions, tho' not so perfectly, for it requires at least four years to be a master. [This variety of moods and tenses, appears better by the Latin, or

other languages, than in English, where we use much the same method, as he represents in *Cochin-China*; our variations the same, being but few, as to instance in the same word, I have, You have, We have, They have, I shall have, May we have: and so in this, and many others.]

But to return to our relation: I was saying, that the *Cochin-Chineſes* reward not only the learned with dignities, employments, and revenues; but that they make great account of good soldiers, in which particular they act differently from us; for instead of assigning brave commanders, some land, earldom, or marquissate, as a reward of their valour, they allot him such a number of people, and vassals, belonging to the king himself, who whatsoever part of the kingdom they live in, are obliged to own him as their lord, to whom they have been assigned by the king, being bound upon all occasions to serve him with their weapons, and to pay him all those duties they before paid to the king himself; and therefore, as we say, such a one is lord, earl, or marquess of such a place; they say, such a one is a man of fifty, such a one of a thousand men, to such a one the king has added three thousand, to such a one two thousand; their dignity, wealth, and grandeur increasing by the addition of many vassals. We shall speak of the wars of this kingdom in the next chapter.

It remains that we say somewhat worth being known of the civil government. In the first they govern rather after a military manner, than by judges, counsellors, and lawyers, and their formalities, the vice-roys and governors of provinces performing that function; for every day they give publick audience for four hours daily, in a large court within their own palace, two hours in the morning, and two after dinner. Hither all suits and complaints are brought, and the vice-roy, or governor, sitting on a tribunal raised like a balcony, hears every man in his turn; and these governors being generally men of sound judgment, capacity, and experience, they easily discover the truth of the matter by the questions they put, and much more by the common consent of the stander-by, which is gathered by the applause they give the plaintiff, or defendant, and accordingly they immediately, without delay, give judgment with a loud voice, which is immediately executed without any demur, or appeal, whether the sentence be death, banishment, whipping, or fine, every crime being punished as the law appoints.

The crimes generally try'd and severely punished are many, but they are particularly rigid against false witnesses, thieves, and adulterers. The first of these being convicted

Rewards for military men.

False witnesses, how punished.

convicted of having given false evidence, are themselves indispensably condemned, as if they themselves had committed the crime they accuse others of. And if the crime they alledged deserved death, they are sentenced to die: and experience teaches, that this way of trial is very proper to find out the truth.

**Thieves.** Thieves, if the theft be considerable, are beheaded; if small, as for example, a hen, for the first offence they have a finger cut off, for the second another finger, for the third an ear, and for the fourth the head.

**Adulterers.** Adulterers, both men and women, indifferently are cast to the elephants to be killed, which is done thus: They lead the criminal out into the field, where in the presence of an infinite number of people flocking together, he is set in the middle with his hands and feet bound, near an elephant, to whom the condemned person's sentence is read, that he may execute every part of it orderly; first that he lay hold of, grasp, and hold him fast with his trunk, and so hold him in the air, shewing him to all the company; then that he toss him up, and catch him upon the points of his teeth, that his own weight may strike them through him; that then he dash him against the ground; and lastly, that he bruise and crush him to pieces with his feet: All which is exactly performed by the elephant, to the great terror and amazement of the spectators, who are taught by this punishment, at another man's cost, what fidelity is due between married persons.

Since we are upon this point of matrimony, it will not be from the purpose to deliver some farther particulars concerning it, before we conclude this chapter. The *Cochin-Chinese*, tho' heathens, never use to contract matrimony within those degrees forbid by the laws of God and nature, nor within the first degree of the collateral line of brothers and sisters. In other degrees matrimony is lawful to every man with only one woman; tho' rich men use to have many concubines, under pretence of grandeur and generosity, looking upon it as covetousness, not to have as many as every man's income will conveniently maintain; and these are called second, third, fourth, and fifth wives, and so on, according to every one's rank, all which wait upon the first, which is accounted, and really is the true wife, whose business it is to chuse the others for her husband. But these marriages of theirs are not indissoluble, the laws of *Cochin-China* allowing of divorces, but not at the will of either party, it being first requisite, that the person suing for it, convict the other of many offences; which being made out, it is lawful to dissolve the first marriage, and marry again. The husbands bring the portion, and leave their own houses to go to the wife's; upon whose fortunes they live, the women managing all the household-affairs, and governing the family whilst the husband lives idle at home, hardly knowing what there is in the house, satisfied that they have meat and clothes.

# CHAP. VII.

## Of the Power of the King of Cochin-China, and of the Wars he has in his Kingdom.

**Their skill in cannon and small arms.** I Took notice at the beginning of this account, that *Cochin-China* was a province of the great kingdom of *Tonchin*, usurp'd by the grandfather of the king now reigning; who being made governor of it, rebelled against the kaid king of *Tonchin*; to which he was not a little encouraged, by having in a short time got together a great many pieces of cannon of the wrecks of several *Portuguese* and *Dutch* ships, cast away upon those rocks, which being taken up by the country people, there are above sixty of the biggest, at this time, to be seen in the king's palace. The *Cochin-Chinese* are now become so expert in managing artillery, that they perform it better than the *Europeans*, practising continually to shoot at a mark, with such success, that being proud of their skill, as soon as any *European* ship arrives in

their ports, the king's gunners challenge ours, who being sensible that they cannot stand in competition with them, as near as they can, avoid this trial of skill, being convinced by experience, that they will hit any thing as exactly with a cannon, as another shall do with a firelock; which they are also very expert at, often drawing out into the field to exercise. Another great encouragement to rebellion, was, his having above a hundred galleys, which rendering him formidable by sea, and the artillery by land, he easily compass'd his designs against the king of *Tonchin*. Besides, by reason of the constant trade in *Japan*, there were in *Cochin-China* abundance of *Catars*, which are scymitars made in *Japan*, and excellently temper'd: And all the country abounding in horses, which tho' small, are handsome and mettlesome,



**BORAT.** themselves, on which they fight, casting darts, and daily exercise themselves.

**King's power.**

The power of this king is so great, that whenever he pleases, he can bring 80000 fighting men into the field, and yet is always in fear of the king of *Tonchin*, whose power is four times as great; to whom, for quietness sake, he, by agreement, pays a tribute, of all such things as his kingdom affords, and are useful for that of *Tonchin*, particularly of gold, silver, and rice; furnishing, besides all this, plank and timber for building of galleys. And for the same reason he was about entering into a league with the fugitive son of the late king, who lorded it in the utmost province of *Tonchin*, which borders upon *China*, that in case he succeeded, and became master of *Tonchin*, *Cochin-China* might remain free from all tribute and acknowledgment.

For the better understanding hereof, it is to be observed, that when I was in *Cochin-China*, that kingdom was in the possession not of the precedent king, but the tutor or governor of that son, who made his escape from the said governor to save his life. The said prince lived like a fugitive, in the farthest province adjoining to *China*; where being known to be what he was, that is the late king's son, he was received by that people as their sovereign lord, and by his good government he had so strengthened himself, that his tutor already declared king of *Tonchin*, was much afraid, seeing him grow so great, lest he should agree with the king of *Cochin-China*, who is of the opposite side, to catch him between them, and expel him his unjust possession. He therefore every year form'd a considerable army to destroy the aforesaid prince; but always to no purpose, because the army being of necessity to march five or six days, through a country where there is no other water to drink, but that of some rivers coming from the enemies country; the army always found it poison'd by the prince's party, with a sort of herb, the effect whereof was such, that it destroyed both men and horses; which obliged him always to retire after much trouble and expence cast away.

**Wars in Cochin-China.**

The military discipline, and art of war in *Cochin-China*, is almost the same as in *Europe*, the same form being observed in drawing up, fighting, and retiring. This king has generally war in three parts of his kingdom: First, he is always upon his defence against the king of *Tonchin*, who as has been said continually threatens and assaults his frontiers, and therefore the king of *Cochin-China* has his residence in *Sinua*, the extreme part of his dominions, the better to oppose him, and march his

forces towards the confines of *Tonchin*, which is a powerful province, and generally under experienced and martial governments.

The next is a sort of civil war, raised by two of his own brothers, who aiming to be equal in command and power, not satisfied with what has been allotted them, have rebelled against him, and craving succours from *Tonchin*, gave him perpetual trouble. Whilst I lived in those parts, they having got some pieces of cannon, which they carried upon elephants, fortified themselves so well upon the frontiers, that the king's army marching against them, was in the first engagement routed with the loss of 3000 men; but coming to a second battle, the king's brothers lost all they had gained before, being both made prisoners; and they had both immediately lost their lives, had not his majesty's natural clemency and brotherly affection prevailed, and taken place of his anger, so far as to spare their lives, yet so as to keep them prisoners.

The third place where he has continual war, is on the west-side, and utmost bound of his kingdom called *Renran*, against the king of *Chiampá*; whose efforts being weaker, are sufficiently repulsed by the troops of that same province, and the governor.

He is also in continual motion, and making warlike preparations to assist the king of *Cambogia*, who has married his bastard daughter, sending him succours of galleys, and men, against the king of *Siam*; and therefore the arms of *Cochin-China*, and their valour, is famous and renowned, as well by sea as by land.

At sea they fight in galleys, as has been The said, each of which carries cannon, and is lie. mann'd with musketeers: Nor will it seem strange, that the king of *Cochin-China* has an hundred, or more, galleys in a readiness, when the method of furnishing them is known. It is therefore to be observed, that the *Cochin-Chinese* do not use to have a crew of criminals, or other slaves, to row in their galleys; but when they are to go out to fight, or for any other purpose, the way to man them immediately is this: A great number of officers, and commissaries, go out privately, and scouring on a sudden all together throughout the whole kingdom, with the king's authority, press all they find fit for the oar, conducting them all together to the galleys, unless they be exempted by birth, or any other privilege. Nor is this method so troublesome as it appears at first sight; for in the first place they are well used and paid aboard the galleys; and besides, their wives and children are fed and provided with all things necessary,

Tonchin,  
and gene-  
ral gover-

er, raised  
to aiming  
power, not  
ted them,  
craving  
perpetu-  
of parts,  
cannon,  
ts, forti-  
frontiers,  
nt them,  
ted with  
ning to a  
s lost all  
oth made  
mediately  
y's natu-  
tion pre-  
anger, so  
so as to

continual  
ost bound  
gainst the  
ts being  
d by the  
d the go-

and mak-  
the king  
is bastard  
of galleys,  
iam; and  
bina, and  
owned, as

s has been The gal-  
on, and is lies.  
ill it seem  
China has  
a readi-  
ing them  
rved, that  
o have a  
s, to row  
are to go  
pose, the  
s this: A  
missaries,  
on a sud-  
hole king-  
prefs all  
ting them  
s they be  
privilege.  
ome as it  
first place  
ard the gal-  
d children  
things ne-  
cessary,

cessary, according to their condition, all the while they are from their houses. Nor do they only serve at the oar, but upon occasion lay hold of their weapons, and behave themselves bravely, for which purpose every one has his musket, darts, and scymitar allotted him; and the *Cochin-Chinese* being of an undaunted spirit, and brave, they give good tokens of their valour, either rowing to join their enemies, or with their arms when joined. Their galleys are somewhat less, but particularly narrower than ours, but so neat, and so well adorned with gold and silver, that they afford a glorious sight. Chiefly the stem, which they account the most honourable part, is all over gold, there the captain and persons of chief note have their station: and the reason they give for it is, that it being the captain's duty to be the first upon any danger, it is fit he should be in the pro-

perest part of the gally for that purpose. *Barri.*

Among other sorts of defensive arms they use in war, they have certain oval, hollow targets, so long that they cover a man quite, and so light, that they can manage them without any trouble. The cities of this kingdom have a great advantage in the manner of their houses, which being all of wood upon pillars of timber, as has been said before when the enemy comes so strong, that they perceive they cannot oppose him, every man flies to the mountain with what he has, firing the houses, so that the enemy finds nothing but the ruins left by the flames, and having no place to fortify himself, nor any thing to subsist on, is forced to retire back to his own country, and the inhabitants returning to the same place in a short time, with great ease rebuild their houses.

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of the Trade and Ports of Cochin-China.

Trade of  
*Cochin-  
China.*

THE great plenty *Cochin-China* affords of all things necessary for the support of human life, as has been said before, is the cause that the people have no curiosity, or inclination to go into other kingdoms to trade; and therefore they never go so far to sea, as to lose sight of their beloved shore; yet they are very ready to admit of strangers, and are very well pleased they should come not only from the neighbouring countries, but from the remotest parts to trade with them. Nor do they need to use any art for this purpose, strangers being sufficiently allured by the fruitfulness of the country, and the great wealth which abounds there; and therefore they resort thither not only from *Tonchin*, *Cambogia*, *Chinchoos*, and other neighbouring places, but from the remotest, as *China*, *Macao*, *Japan*, *Manila*, and *Malacca*, all of them carrying silver to *Cochin-China*, to carry away the commodities of the country, which are not bought, but exchanged for plate, which is here put off as a commodity, being sometimes worth more, and sometimes less, according as there is more or less plenty of it, as is usual with silk and other goods.

All the coin they use is of brass, and of the same value, like a *quadrine*, 500 of which make a crown. These pieces are quite round, with the king's arms and ensign stamped on them, and every one of them has a hole through the middle, which serves to string them by thousands, and every thousand is worth two crowns.

The *Chinese* and *Japanese*, drive the chief trade of *Cochin-China*; which is managed

at a fair held yearly at one of the ports of this kingdom, and lasting about four months. The *Chinese*, in their vessels they call *junks*, bring the value of four or five millions in plate; and the *Japanese*, in their ships called *sonnes*, an infinite quantity of very fine silk, and other commodities of their country. The king has a vast revenue from this fair by customs, and impost, and all the whole country receives great profit. The *Cochin-Chinese* applying themselves very little to arts, because plenty makes them lazy; and being soon taken with the curiosities of other countries it comes to pass, that they put a great value upon, and buy at great rates, many things, which to others are of very small worth; as for instance, combs, needles, bracelets, and pendants of glass, and such-like women's tackling. I remember a *Portuguese*, who bringing into *Cochin-China* from *Macao*, a box full of needles, which could not be worth above thirty ducats, made above a thousand of it, selling that for sixpence in *Cochin-China*, which had not cost him above a farthing at *Macao*. In short, they out-bid one another, in buying any thing that is very new and strange without sparing for price. They are very fond of our hats, of caps, of girdles, shirts, and all other sorts of garments we wear, because they are quite different from theirs; but above all, they put a great value upon coral.

As for their ports, it is wonderful that in a coast little more than an hundred leagues in length, there should be above sixty most convenient landing-places, which

Richtrade  
of the  
*Chinese*  
and *Ja-  
ponese*.

Sea-ports.

**BORR.** is so, because there are many large arms of the sea. But the principal port, to which all strangers resort, and where the afore-mentioned fair is kept, is that of the province of *Cacbian*, which has two mouths, or inlets from the sea, the one called *Pullucbiampello*, and the other of *Turon*, being at first three or four leagues distant from one another, but running in seven or eight leagues like two great rivers, at last join in one, where the vessels that come in both ways meet. Here the king of *Cochin-China* assigned the *Chinese*, and *Japanese*, a convenient spot of ground, to build a city for the benefit of the fair. This city is called *Faisó*, and is so large, that we may say they are two, one of *Chinese*, the other of *Japanese*; for they are divided from one another, each having their distinct governor, and the *Chinese* living according to the laws of *China*, as the *Japanese* do according to those of *Japan*.

All nations admitted to trade.

And because, as we said before, the king of *Cochin-China* gave free admittance to all nations whatsoever, the *Dutch* resorted thither with all sorts of commodities. Hereupon the *Portuguese* of *Macao* resolved to send an ambassador to the king, to demand in their name, that the *Dutch*, as mortal enemies to their nation, should be excluded all *Cochin-China*. One captain *Ferdinand de Costa*, a man well known for his valour, was appointed to go upon this embassy, which he delivered and was favourably heard, with assurances of obtaining his demands. Nevertheless, whilst he was yet at that court, there arrived a *Dutch* ship, and coming to an anchor in the port, some of them landed with much mirth and jollity, and presently went with rich presents to the king: He accepted of them very graciously, and granted them the usual liberty of trading freely in his kingdom. *Costa* hearing of it, went presently to the king, and complaining, That his majesty did not keep his word with him, in a *Portuguese* bravado gave a stamp on the ground to shew his resentment. The king and all the courtiers were pleased at his passion, and bidding him have patience, and expect the event, for he should find he had no cause to complain, dismissed him. In the mean while he ordered all the *Dutch* to go ashore, and land all their goods against the fair at *Turon*, as the *Portuguese* did; which they perform'd: But as they were going upon the river in boats, they were on a sudden assaulted by the galleys, which destroyed most of them. The king remained master of their goods; and to justify this action, alledged, that

he very well knew the *Dutch*, as notorious pirates, who infested all the seas, were worthy of severer punishment; and therefore, by proclamation, forbid any of them ever resorting to his country: and it was actually found, that those very men had robbed some vessels of *Cochin-China*, and therefore took this just revenge; admitting the *Portuguese* as good and sincere friends: Who not long after sent another ambassador from *Macao*, to obtain of the king a confirmation of the afore-said edict, at the instance of *Acosta*, alledging as a motive, the danger that the *Dutch*, in time, might cunningly possess themselves of some part of *Cochin-China*, as they had done in other parts of *India*. But the new ambassador was advised by knowing men of that country, not to mention any such thing to the king, because that very thing would be a motive to him to grant the *Dutch* a free trade, and invite all *Holland* to come over; he pretended to be afraid of no nation in the world; quite contrary to the king of *China*, who being afraid of every body, forbids all strangers trading in his kingdom; and therefore the ambassador must urge other motives to obtain his desire.

The king of *Cochin-China* has always shewn himself a great friend to the *Portuguese* that trade in that kingdom, and has several times offered them three or four leagues of the fruitfulest country about the port of *Turon*, that they may build a city there with all sorts of conveniences, as the *Chinese*, and *Japanese*, have done. And were it allowed me to give his catholick majesty my opinion in this point, I should say, he ought, by all means, to command the *Portuguese* to accept of the kind offer made them, and to build a good city there as soon as possible; which would be a refuge, and brave defence, for all the ships that pass by towards *China*: For here a fleet might be kept in readiness against the *Dutch*, that sail to *China* and *Japan*, who of necessity must pass through the middle of the bay, that lies between the coast of this kingdom, in the provinces of *Ranran*, and *Pulucambi*, and the rocks of *Pulusifi*.

This is what small matter I thought I could, with truth, give an account of, concerning the temporal state of *Cochin-China*, according to the knowledge I could gain in some years I resided there; as will farther appear in the second part of this relation.

### The End of the First Part.

The

The  
suits  
first  
taught  
Christianity  
Cochin-China

## The Second P A R T.

## T R E A T I N G

## Of the SPIRITUAL STATE of Cochín-China.

## C H A P. I.

*Of the first entring of the Fathers of the Society of J E S U S into that Kingdom :  
And of the two Churches built at Turon and Cacchian.*

The je-  
suits the  
first that  
taught  
Christi-  
anity in  
Cochin-  
China.

**B**EFORE the fathers of the society of J E S U S went into Cochín-China, it was the custom of the Portuguese trading thither, to carry thither with them from Malacca, and Macao, and the Spaniards from Manila, some chaplains, to say mass and administer the sacraments to them, during their stay there, which generally was three or four months in a year. These chaplains having no other obligation but only to serve the Portuguese, never thought of promoting the spiritual welfare of the natives of that country, not applying themselves to learn their language, nor using any other means to communicate the light of the gospel to them. And yet there was one of these who had the face to publish in Spain, in a book call'd, *The Voyage of the World*; that he had catechis'd and baptis'd the infants or princess of Cochín-China, and a great many of her ladies: whereas never infant, nor any other person of all that royal family, till this time, has shewn any inclination to become Christian, notwithstanding we fathers go every year to visit the king, and discourse with all the great men of the court; and yet the infant has not given any token of being a Christian, or so much as knowing what a Christian is. And it may well be discern'd, how falsely he talks in this point, by the other fables he adds in the same book, concerning that infant; as that she would have marry'd the said chaplain, and the like. We know of none but some fathers of the order of St. Francis, that went from Manila, and one of St. Augustine, from Macao to Cochín-China, merely for the conversion of those souls. But they meeting with no success, by reason of the many several difficulties that occur, they return'd to their countries: Providence so ordering it, which had design'd that land to be culti-

Vol. II.

vated by the sons of the holy patriarch Ignatius, which was done as follows.

Certain Portuguese merchants acquainted the superiors of the society of J E S U S at Macao, with the great advantages that might be gain'd, to advance the glory of God in Cochín-China, if there were undaunted and zealous labourers sent thither; and particularly one captain earnestly pressed the father provincial, not to abandon a kingdom so capable of being instructed in the holy faith. The proposal seem'd to the father very agreeable to the spirit of our vocation, and therefore without demurring upon the execution of it, he made choice for this enterprize of F. Francis Buzome, who had been professor of divinity at Macao, by birth a Genoese, but educated in the kingdom of Naples, where he was admitted into the society, and whence he set out for India: together with F. James Caravalbo, a Portuguese, who from Cochín-China was to attempt to go over to Japan, as he did. This was he, who being put into a pool of cold water in the dead of winter, and expos'd to the wind and snow, gave up his life for the sake of his Redeemer, freezing leisurely to death. F. Caravalbo being gone, F. Buzome was left alone in Cochín-China, with only a lay-brother to attend him: being zealously inflam'd with the desire of saving souls, he us'd all possible means for their conversion, and to this purpose began his mission at Turon. But as yet he knew not the language, nor could he find any interpreter that knew any more Portuguese than what was requisite for buying and selling, and some words or phrases, which the interpreters of the chaplains of ships, who were there before the fathers of the society, made use of to ask the Cochín-Chinese, Whether they would be Christians? After this manner they

BORRI.

Manner of  
their go-  
ing thi-  
ther.

Mistaken  
conver-  
sion.

BORRI. they had made some, but such as might rather be accounted so by name than by profession; for they did not so much as understand what the name of a Christian meant: and this by reason of the phrase the interpreters us'd to ask them, Whether they would be Christians: for the words they made use of, signify'd nothing more, than that they would become *Portuguese*; which F. Francis Buzome found out by this following accident: a play was acted in the publick market-place, at which the father saw one in the habit of a *Portuguese*, brought in by way of ridicule, with a great belly so artificially made, that a boy was hid in it; the player, before the audience, turn'd him out of his belly, and ask'd him, Whether he would go into the belly of the *Portuguese*? Using these words, *Con gnou muon bau tlom laom Hoalaom cbiam*? That is, *Little boy, will you go into the belly of the Portuguese, or not?* The boy answer'd, *He would*: and then he put him in again, often repeating the same thing to divert the spectators. The father observing, that the phrase the player so often repeated, *Muon bau tlom laom Hoalaom cbiam*, was the same the interpreters us'd, when they ask'd any one, Whether he would be a Christian? Presently conceiv'd the mistake the *Cochin-Chinese* were under; who thought, that to become a Christian was only to cease being a *Cochin-Chinese*, and become a *Portuguese*; which to make sport was express'd in the play, by making the boy go into the belly of him that acted the *Portuguese*. The father took care, that so pernicious an error should spread no farther, teaching those already baptis'd their duty, and instructing those that were newly converted, what it was to be baptis'd and become a Christian, taking particular care that the interpreters should be well inform'd in this particular, that they might afterwards serve faithfully in teaching of others; changing the abovemention'd phrase into this, *Muon bau dau christian cbiam*? That is, *Will you enter into the christian law, or no?* His great diligence and charity was so successful, that within a few days he began to reap the fruit of his labours, as well by the reformation of those who before were Christians only in name, as the conversion of many more. Nor was the same of his charity and zeal for the gaining of souls confin'd to *Turon*, his usual place of residence, but spread abroad into other places; he labouring in all places to

instruct, convert, and dispose the people to receive baptism with such fervour, and so great a concourse about him, that in a short time those new Christians built a very large church at *Turon*, in which the most holy sacrifice of the mass was publickly celebrated, and the christian doctrine preach'd and taught, by means of the interpreters, then well instructed; all persons being very much taken with F. Francis Buzome: who besides his being a person of great knowledge and virtue, entirely gain'd the affections of those heathens, by his great meekness and affability, inso-much that they all flock'd after him. This particularly happened at *Cacchiam*, the city where the king resides, six or seven leagues from *Turon*, up the river.

Here F. Buzome made so great an impression, that a place was presently allotted him for a church, which was built in a very short time, every body contributing to the expence, and to the work, according to their power. Besides, he had a good house assign'd him, fit for to make a residence of fathers, who were to go thither in time to instruct that people in matters of faith: all which was done with the assistance of a most noble lady, who was converted, and in baptism took the name of *Joanna*. She not only undertook the foundation of the house and church, but erected several altars and places of prayer in her own house, never ceasing to bless and praise God for the mercy shewn her, in enlightening and drawing her to the faith. All this his divine majesty brought to pass in the space of a year, through the means of his servant, F. Francis Buzome; whose fame being spread as far as *Macao*, the following year our father provincial thought fit to send him another father, that was younger, with a *Japense* brother, that learning the language, he might afterwards preach without standing in need of an interpreter. This was F. Francis de Pina, a *Portuguese*, who had learn'd divinity under F. Francis Buzome. And tho' this second year the increase was not answerable to that of the first, as to the conversion of souls, yet the advantage was much greater in the sufferings of a cruel persecution, rais'd by the enemy that sow'd the tares, who could not endure to see the divine seed grow up so prosperously in those parts, and endeavour'd to choke it; as shall be shewn in the next chapter.



## CHAP. II.

*Of the Persecution the New Church of Cochin-China endur'd, at its first Institution: and how I was sent thither to be assisting to it, by my Superiors.*

Cause of  
the persecu-  
tion.

THE persecution against the fathers took its beginning from an accident at first sight ridiculous, and of no moment, which afterwards gave them much cause to lament. That year there happened an universal barrenness throughout the whole kingdom, for want of the usual inundation in autumn; which, as was said in the first part, is so necessary for bringing up the rice, the chief support of life in that country. Hereupon their priests, whom they call *om'saii*, held a great council, to find out the cause why their idols were so angry with all their kingdom, that seeing the people starve to death about the fields, yet they were not the least mov'd to compassion for so great a calamity. It was there unanimously agreed, that there was nothing new in the kingdom, so opposite to the worship of the idols, as the admitting of strangers freely to preach up a law there, that utterly contradicted the honour given to those Idols; and that they being justly provok'd at it, reveng'd themselves by denying them their desired rain.

The fa-  
thers ba-  
nish'd.

This being agreed on as a most undoubted truth, according to their ignorance, they presently went in a tumultuous manner to the king, and press that the preachers of the new law may be banish'd all the kingdom, that being the only means to appease the wrath of their gods. The wise king laugh'd at their project, knowing it to be a foolish notion of those priests, and made little account of it, having a great esteem for the fathers, and a kindness for the *Portuguese*. Yet this favour of the king avail'd them but little to oppose the fury of the ministers of Satan; for they so stirr'd up the people to press that the preachers of the gospel might be expell'd the kingdom, that the king, not able to resist without danger of a mutiny, sent for the fathers, and with much concern told them, He was sensible of the folly of the people, and ignorance of the priests; but that it was not prudence to withstand a multitude, so eagerly bent upon such an affair as that was, which was designed for the removing so general a calamity; and therefore they must depart his kingdom as soon as possible. The fathers having heard these words with tears in their eyes, seeing themselves oblig'd to forsake those new and tender plants of Christianity, yet ever submitting to the will of God, went away to embark; but being got aboard, in obedience to the king's command, they could never get out

of the harbour, because at that time a sort of contrary winds, which usually hold three or four months, had begun to blow, which by the *Portuguese* are call'd *Moncao*, or general winds. The *Cochin-Chinese* observing it, would not allow them to return into the city, but oblig'd them to remain upon the shore depriv'd of all human comfort, and expos'd to the burning heat of the sun, which in those parts is very violent. It was a great satisfaction to them in the midst of their sufferings, to see the constancy of some of those new Christians, who never forsook their masters, following, accompanying, and relieving them the best they could, becoming voluntary companions in their sufferings. F. *Buzome* had here a new trial of his virtue; for the uneasiness of this uncomfortable life, in a few days, caus'd an imposthume to break out in his breast, from which abundance of corruption ran, and was a mighty weakening to him.

BORRI.

The infernal fiend, not satisfied to have brought the preachers of the gospel to this miserable condition, made yet farther efforts to discredit their doctrine, and catholic religion, making use to this purpose of one of those *om'saii*, who living a solitary life, was therefore in great reputation of sanctity. This man coming one day from his hermitage, publicly boasted, That by his prayers he would cause the idols immediately to send rain: and without more to do, went away follow'd by an innumerable multitude to the top of a mountain, where he began to call upon his devils, and striking the earth three times with his foot, the sky was presently clouded, and there fell a shower of rain; which tho' not sufficient to supply the want, yet was enough to give a reputation to that minister of hell, and to discredit our holy faith, every one saying, They had not yet seen the foreign priests obtain so much by their prayers of the great God, whose servants they profess'd themselves. This accident troubled the fathers more than the misery they liv'd in: but Providence comforted them by the means of the lady *Joanna* above-mention'd. She, as it were, with a prophetick spirit, bid them not be concern'd at any thing that had happened; for in a little time God would make the hypocrisy of that *om'saii*, and the vanity of his idols, known to all men, by destroying the reputation he had gain'd till then; all which was verified to a tittle soon after. For the same of his sanctity

An hypo-  
crite priest  
of the  
idols de-  
rected and  
punish'd.

**BORRI.** sanctity being spread abroad upon account of the rain, and coming to the king's ear, he presently sent for him, and gave him an apartment in the palace. There he fell in love with one of the king's concubines, and found no difficulty to compass his design; but the matter being known, tho' in *Cochin-China* this be accounted a most heinous crime, and it be death to have to do with a woman the king has once touch'd; yet they could not proceed to execution against him, as being a person sacred among them, but according to the form appointed by their laws. The king therefore gave the sentence, That the *omsai* should vanish; but that he should neither go east, west, north, nor south, nor through any part whatsoever of his kingdom. This decree being publish'd, was immediately executed in such manner, that the *omsai* vanish'd with great shame, and was never more seen in the kingdom, nor out of it.

The church burnt.

But the devil being enraged, vented his fury against God's servants, stirring up the people to fire the church in *Turon*, to the grief of the fathers, who held all from the shore without hopes of redress.

The author in *Cochin-China*.

In the mean while the news of the fathers misfortune was spread all about the neighbouring countries, and even as far as *Macao*, which was a great trouble to the fathers of that college, who pitying their brethren, resolv'd to send them some relief by a *Portuguese* vessel that was ready to sail to *Cochin-China*; and the fathers judg'd the business might succeed the better, if two fathers going in it, one had the name of chaplain of the ship, to return in it; and that the *Cochin-Chinese* might have no cause to complain, or be incens'd, he that remain'd was to go disguis'd: *F. Peter Marques*, a *Portuguese*, was appointed chaplain; and I had the good fortune to be his companion, obedience so ordering it: for tho' I had been destin'd for *China* by our father general, I freely and affectionately embraced the opportunity of dedicating my self to God in the mission of *Cochin-China*, and for the comfort of those afflicted fathers, seeing my self quite shut out of *China*, by reason of the persecution rais'd there. I set out from *Macao* in the habit of a slave, and soon arrived in *Cochin-China* upon my birth day, which was very near opening the way for me to a blessed life; but it pleas'd Providence to order matters otherwise, either because my sins made me unworthy of such a mercy, or for other causes only known to God: as the vessel was entering the harbour, upon which there were abundance of the country people, there happened, I know not how, a quarrel between two *Portuguese*, and one of them falling down for dead, the other leap'd into the sea to

escape the wounded man's friends and companions, who would have kill'd him. He swam a-while, but being tir'd, drew towards the ship again, to save himself from sinking, and endeavouring to catch hold could not, because they were ready above with half-pikes, javelins, and swords, to wound him. I seeing him in that distress, endeavour'd to relieve him; and tho' I was in a servile habit, ran among them, and calling out to one, and pulling another, took such pains that I appeas'd them. The *Cochin-Chinese* who were aboard the Ship, seeing the *Portuguese* pacified at the sight of a slave, began presently to suspect the matter; and knowing by experience, that the *Portuguese*, when in a passion, are not so easily quell'd, unless religious men interpose, said to one another, This man is certainly no slave, as his habit seems to suggest; and being no merchant, as the rest are, he is certainly one of their religious men, that endeavours, contrary to the king's command, to be conceal'd in our country, but we will discover him to the king himself, that he may be punish'd as he deserves. Immediately they flock'd about me, and tho' I did not understand their language, yet I plainly perceiv'd they had all a jealousy of me; and notwithstanding all my endeavours not to discover my self, I could not prevent their sending advice to court. When I had satisfi'd my self as to this point, believing I was certainly a dead man, I resolv'd to die as what I was: accordingly I put on my habit of the society, a surplice over it, and a stole about my neck; and in that habit I began publickly to preach the faith of Christ by means of the interpreter; then erecting an altar on the shore, I said mass, and gave the communion to the *Portuguese* that were present, standing ready for whatsoever it should please God to appoint: But it pleas'd him not that I should then shed my blood for him. Whilst my cause was in hand, it rain'd so abundantly day and night, without ever ceasing, that every man apply'd himself to tilling of the ground, and sowing of rice, and perhaps reflecting that they had obtain'd that at my arrival, which they had so long wish'd for, looking upon it as a good omen; and concluding it was not the fault of the fathers that they had wanted rain, they repented them of all they had done against us, and never gave us any farther trouble, but suffer'd us to live freely throughout the kingdom.

Matters being thus pacified, I resolv'd to go look out *F. Buzome*, and his companion, since I was gone thither to the end; and whilst I was endeavouring to hear some news of him, the report of my arrival being spread about the city, that lady

Charity of  
Japanese  
Christians

Joanna

Joanna also mentioned found me out. By her I understood that F. Francis de Pina, with the Japanese brother, had been privately conveyed by Japanese Christians to the city Faisó, all people certainly concluding that the fathers were then got out of the kingdom. Upon this information, F. Peter Marques, who knew the language of Japan very well, would have us go to Faisó, where we found F. Francis de Pina, who was there hid, but very well used by those good Japanese Christians, to whom he privately administered the sacraments. We received incredible joy in meeting: for besides the general charity of religion, we had been companions, and great friends, in the college of Macao; and the kindness of the Japanese was extraordinary, for they treated us during a fortnight very splendidly, with great demonstrations of affection and joy.

Here I also understood how, through God's special providence, F. Buzome was also safe in the kingdom, as if God had particularly defended him for the good of that mission, where whilst he was upon the strand amidst so many afflictions, and with that impostume in his breast, the governor of Pulucambi came to Turon; who seeing that man so ill used, that he looked like a walking ghost, being moved to compassion asked who he was, and what misfortune had brought him to that miserable condition. He was told all that had happened; and that the want of rain being laid to his and his companion's charge, he had been banished by the king's order. The governor was not a little amazed, and laughed to think that this should be attributed to a poor religious man, which could no way depend of him; therefore he ordered him to be taken from that open shore, and carry'd into one of his galleys, in which he carry'd him to his province, entertained him in his own house, had him looked after by the most skilful physicians in that city, and made his own children attend him during a whole year; for so long his sickness lasted: all men admiring that a heathen should behave himself so charitably towards a stranger utterly unknown to him only out of mere natural compassion.

Thus we were four priests of the society in Cochin-China: F. Buzome, at Pulucambi, one hundred fifty miles from the port of Turon; F. Peter Marques remained at Fal-

só, as superior, and to serve the Japanese; BORRI. keeping F. Francis de Pina for his companion: and I returned to Turon, there to serve the Portuguese, to say mass, preach to them, and hear their confessions, and learning at the same time the language of Cochin-China, endeavoured, with the assistance of the interpreters, to persuade some of those heathens to be baptized; and above all, to encourage and confirm those that were already baptized. Soon after my first coming, their happened a mean accident worthy to be known: I was called to make a dying infant a Christian; I did so, and soon after it gave up the ghost. I was concerned, not knowing where to bury it, which made me think of fixing a burying-place for all the Christians that should die for the future. To this purpose I ordered a mast of a ship that was cast by, to be taken, and a stately cross to be made of it: which done, I invited all the Portuguese, and sailors, to help to carry it to the appointed place, I attending with my surplice and stole. Whilst the hole was digging to erect the holy cross, a company of armed men came out from the neighbourhood, who with their muskets threatened to kill me; which I perceiving, caus'd the interpreter to endeavour to know of them, what it was they would be at? And was told, they would not have that cross erected there, because they feared the devils would infest their houses. I answer'd, It would be quite contrary; because the cross had such a virtue, that it put the devil to flight. With this they were so well pleased, that laying down their arms, they all ran to help: and thus the cross was set up to the general satisfaction of all parties, and the burial-place fixed. Soon after the governor of Pulucambi came thither, and brought F. Buzome with him; and we met all four fathers of the society, to our unspeakable joy at Faisó, together with two lay-brothers, one a Portuguese, and the other a Japanese. After a charitable reception, we consulted together about the most proper means of promoting that mission. It was unanimously agreed, that F. Peter Marques should stay at Faisó with the Japanese brother, because he was a good preacher; and the other three, with the Portuguese brother, should follow the governor of Pulucambi, who earnestly desired it; which was accordingly done, as shall be here related.

## CHAP. V.

*The Governor of Pulucambi introduces the Fathers of the Society into his Province, building them a House and Church.*

**BORRI.** *F. Francis Buzome, F. Francis de Pina,* and I, set out from *Faisú*, for *Pulucambi*, with the governor of that province; who all the way treated us with inexpressible courtesie and kindness, always lodging us near himself, and behaving himself in such manner, that there being no human motives to incline him so to do, it plainly appeared to be the work of Providence.

Great goodness of the governor of Pulucambi  
He appointed a galley only to carry us and our interpreters, not suffering so much as our baggage to be put aboard it, but ordered another boat for it. In this easie manner we travelled twelve large days journey, putting into a port morning and evening, and all the ports being near great towns or cities of the province of *Quangbia*, in which province the governor had as much power as in his own at *Pulucambi*; all people ran to pay their respects and acknowledgments, bringing him rich presents, the first of which always fell to our share, he himself so ordering it, every one admiring to see us so honoured; which gained us much esteem and reputation among those people, that being the design of the governor: and this was much forwarded by the great account he made of our intercession, when any criminal was to be punished: for we no sooner opened our mouths, but we obtained all we desired; by which means we not only gained the reputation of being great with the governor, but of having compassion and kindness for those people, who therefore loved and respected us. Besides, during the whole voyage, he treated us as if we had been some great lords, contriving sports and pastimes in all parts, causing the galleys sometimes to represent a sea-fight, sometimes to row for rewards. Nor did there a day pass but he came aboard our galley to visit us, seeming much pleased with our conversation, especially when we discoursed of religion and our holy faith. In this manner we came to the province of *Pulucambi*, thro' which we had still some days journey to make, before we arrived at the governor's palace, who for our greater diversion would have us travel by land. To this purpose he ordered seven elephants to be provided; and the more to honour us, would have one for each, causing an hundred men, some on horseback, and some a foot, to attend us: and the journey being for recreation, we spent eight days in it, being royally entertained wheresoever we

came; but particularly in the house of a sister of his, we had a most splendid entertainment, not only for the variety and number of dishes, but much more for the rarity of the dressing, all things being dressed after the *European* manner, tho' neither the governor, nor any of the family were to taste of them.

Being at length come to the governor's palace, all the entertainments and dainties of the journey concluded in such a reception as he used to make for kings and great princes, treating us for eight days together in most splendid manner, making us sit in his royal throne, and eating with us himself in publick, with his wife and children; to the great astonishment of all that city, where it was unanimously affirmed, such a reception had never been seen, unless it were for some royal person: and this was the cause of the report generally spread throughout the kingdom, that we were a king's sons, and were come thither about matter of great concern; which being known by the governor, he was mightily pleased; and before the chiefest men of the court he publicly said, *It is very true, that the fathers were the sons of a king, for they were angels, come thither, not for any want or necessity of their own, being provided with all things in their own countries, but only out of pure zeal to save their souls: And therefore he advised them, to give ear to the fathers, and observe the law they would preach to them, learn the doctrine they taught, and receive the faith they delivered: for (said he) I have often discoursed and conversed with these men, and plainly perceive by the doctrine they teach, that there is no true law but theirs, nor no way but that they shew, which leads to eternal salvation. But take heed what you do, for unless you learn that true doctrine, which I, your chief, bring to you by means of these fathers, your neglect and infidelity will be punished eternally in hell.* Thus spake that lord, becoming a preacher of the gospel, tho' himself a heathen; all men being the more amazed and astonished at it, because of the great conceit they had of his wisdom.

After the first eight days, we gave him the favour to understand, that we would rather go to live in the city, the better to promote the preaching of the gospel, which we could not so well attend in the palace, because it was three miles from the city, in an open field, according to the custom of the country. The governor would not have parted with

His grandeur, and affection to the fathers.

The fathers settled.

A new way built church.

with us, because of the great affection he had for us, but preferring the publick good before his own satisfaction, he immediately ordered there should be a very convenient house provided in the city *Nuocman*: and moreover told us, we might see above a hundred houses that were about his palace, and take our choice of the convenientest of them, to make a church of it; and acquainting him with it, he would provide all that was necessary. We returned him thanks for so many favours bestowed on us during our journey, and those we still received. Having taking our leaves for the present, we mounted the elephants again, and with a great attendance went away to the city *Nuocman*, which extends itself five miles in length, and half a mile in breadth, where we were by the governor's order received with extraordinary honour. He not being able to endure to be so far from us, came the next day to visit us, to know whether the house we had given us was convenient; and told us, he knew that we being strangers, could not have money and other necessities, but that he took upon him to provide every thing; and immediately ordered a good sum to be paid us monthly, and every day flesh, fish, and rice to be sent in for us, our interpreters, and all the servants of the house: and not so satisfied, he frequently sent us so many presents, that they alone were sufficient to furnish us plentifully with all things. The more to honour and credit us among all men, he one day gave publick audience in the court of our house, in the manner as we said above was practised in *Cochin-China*. Here several criminals were tried, every one receiving sentence according to his crime; among the rest, two were condemned to be shot to death with arrows, and whilst they were bound we undertook to beg their pardon, which was immediately granted, and he ordered them to be discharged, publicly protesting, he would not have done it at the request of any other, but to these holy men, who teach the true way for the salvation of souls, (said he) I can deny nothing; and I am myself impatient to be rid of those impediments that obstruct my being baptized, and receiving their holy faith; which is what you all ought to do, if you desire to oblige me.

A rare way of building a church.

Then turning to us, he again desired we would appoint the place for the church, that he might give orders for its speedy fitting up. We shew'd him a place that seem'd convenient enough, and he approving of it, went away to his palace. Before three days were over, news was brought us, that the church was coming: we went out with great joy, and no less curiosity,

to see how a church should come, which tho' we knew was to be made of timber, as had been agreed, yet it could not choose but be a great pile, according to the space it must fill, standing upon great pillars. On a sudden, in the field, we spied above a thousand men, all loaded with materials for this fabrick. Every pillar was carried by thirty lusty men; others carried the beams, others the planks, others the capitals, others the bases; some one thing, some another, and so all of them went in order to our house, filling all the court, which was very large, to our unspeakable joy and satisfaction. One only thing displeased us, that we had not provisions enough in the house, to give so great a multitude a small entertainment; for tho' they were paid by the governor, yet it looked like ill-breeding to send them away without some refreshment: but we were soon eased of this trouble; seeing every one sit down upon the piece he brought, being obliged to keep and deliver it, and take out of his wallet, his pot with flesh, fish, and rice, and lighting a fire, fall to cooking very quietly, without asking any thing. When they had eaten, the architect came, and taking out a line, view'd the ground, mark'd out the distances, and calling those that carried the pillars, fixed them in their places; this done, he called for the other parts, one after another, that every man might give an account of what he brought, and go his way: and thus all things proceeding very regularly, and every man labouring his best, all that great pile was set up in one day; yet either through over-much haste, or the negligence of the architect, it proved somewhat awry, and leaning to one side; which being made known to the governor, he presently commanded the architect, upon pain of cutting off his legs, to call all the workmen he had need of, and mend it. The architect obey'd, and taking the church to pieces with a like number of workmen, rebuilt it in a very short time very completely. And we blessed God, for that a time when Christians were so lukewarm, it had pleased him to stir up a heathen so zealously to build a church, in honour of his Divine Majesty.

And to shew how affectionately the governor looked to our affairs, I will give one particular instance, and so end this chapter. In the months of *June, July, and August*, the south-west winds generally reign in *Cochin-China*, which causes such an extraordinary heat, that the houses are perfectly parch'd and dried up; and being all of wood, the least spark of fire, that through negligence or other accident falls upon them, immediately takes, as it would



**BORRI.** would do in tinder; and therefore during those months, there are generally great fires throughout the kingdom; for when it has taken hold of one house, the flame soon catches hold of those that lie the way the wind blows, and miserably consumes them. To deliver us from this danger, our house being in the middle of the city, and to make it farther appear what esteem the governor made of us, he put out an

edict, commanding, that the tops of all the houses that lay south-west of us, should be taken off; and there were so many of them, that they extended at least two miles; which he did to the end, that if any of them took fire, it might be the easier to prevent its passing forward to ours; and this was readily performed by them all, by reason of the great respect they bore us.

#### CHAP. IV.

##### *Of the Governor of Pulucambi's Death.*

**O**UR affairs advanced very prosperously in this city, and it was now the time, when the Providence was, according to the method, to give us a taste of suffering; where-with God frequently tries his servants; and so we ever see he gives such a mixture of prosperity and adversity, that they neither be depressed by the one, nor puffed up by the other: and as the primitive church was founded by the holy apostles upon these two pillars of prosperity and tribulation, even so it pleased the Almighty, that the new church of *Cochin-China* should be established by his apostolical ministers. The first beginnings of this mission were very successful, as has been seen in the first chapter of this second part; but very soon after ensued that terrible persecution for want of rain, which had like to have ruined all. Afterwards, with the favour of the governor of *Pulucambi*, the storms seemed to be blown off, and the budding vine seemed to promise abundance of fruit: but it pleased him that disposes of all things, that the governor of *Pulucambi's* death, like a violent north-wind, almost destroyed all in the bud. This misfortune happen'd as follows: the governor went out one day a hunting on his elephant, very well pleased, and the sport drawing him on, he made no reflection that he rode all day over a scorching plain, where the heat pierced his head in such manner, that at night he fell into a burning fever; upon notice whereof, we hastened to the palace to visit, or rather to baptize him, if we found him in imminent danger. He kept us with him two days, we still pressing him to be baptised, as he had often said he would; to which he always answered, he was ordering his affairs for that purpose, but came to no conclusion. The third day he lost his senses, God so permitting, for causes only known to himself; and perhaps that vain honour he ever passionately coveted, was the reward of the good turns he did us: in fine, he began to rave, and so continued three days, till overcome

by the violence of the distemper, he died without baptism.

Any man may guess how much we were concerned at this accident, seeing ourselves forsaken in a strange country, and destitute of all human help; but it chiefly grieved us, that a person so well disposed, and through whole means we had conceived hopes, that the faith might spread throughout the whole kingdom, should die so in our hands without baptism. Abundance of their rites and superstitious ceremonies were performed at this governor's death, at which we were present till the last. It would be endless to relate them all, and therefore I will set down two or three, by which the others used by those gentiles upon such occasions may be guessed at. First, whilst he lay in his agony, there was a multitude of armed men, who did not cease to cut and make thrusts in the air with their scimitars, cast darts and fire muskets in the rooms of the palace; but particularly two, that stood on each side of the dying man, were continually striking the air about his mouth with their scimitars, and both these and the others being asked, why they did so, told us, they frightened the devils, that they might not hurt the governor's soul, as it was departing his body. These superstitious ceremonies made us pity their ignorance, but not fear any harm to our selves, as followed when the governor was dead: for we had much cause to fear being expelled that province of *Pulucambi*, and perhaps all the kingdom, with the loss of all we had acquired towards settling Christianity, and perhaps worse. It is the custom when any great person dies, for all the *om/sais*, or priests of the country, to meet together, in order to find out not the natural, but the superstitious cause of his death; and being agreed upon what it may be, immediately that thing to which it is attributed, is ordered to be burnt, whether it be a house, garment, man or beast. Accordingly all the *om/sais* being assembled in a great hall, they began to argue this point:

Heathen ceremonies at the governor's death.

The governor's death.

Sord  
died  
the  
of t  
foul  
part

we who were present, remembering the persecution for want of rain, there being at that time nothing extraordinary in the province, but the governor's kind reception to us, and his assigning a house, and building a church in the city, with such extraordinary tokens of affection for our holy law; did not at all question, but that these things being represented to them, they would lay the death of that lord to our charge, and consequently would order us all to be burnt alive, together with our house and church, and all our goods. Therefore we stood in a corner of the hall, recommending our selves to God, and preparing our selves for whatever his Divine Majesty should suffer to be decreed against us; when one of the *omfais*, who was the eldest of them, and as it were their dean, standing up, said with a loud voice, that, in his opinion, the only cause of the governor's death, was the falling of a beam some days since in the new palace; and he was the more apt to believe it, because all the distemper was in his head, as appeared by his raving; an evident sign, as he said, of the stroke he had received in his head by the aforesaid beam: all which he meant metaphorically, and in a superstitious sense, and therefore it pleased the other *omfais*, who all unanimously agreed in the same sentiment: and so rising without more to do, they went and set fire to that palace, which was all reduced to ashes, whilst we gave thanks to God for having escaped to manifest a danger.

Sorcery to discover the state of the soul departed.

This done, some other *omfais*, who profess necromancy, came to the governor's palace, to perform another superstitious ceremony, according to the custom of the country. The kindred of the party deceased looking upon it as a great blessing, that any body inspired by an evil spirit, should speak concerning the state of the soul departed; and to this purpose those wizard *omfais* were called, of whom they all earnestly beg that devilish favour, he that obtains it being much envied by the rest. These conjurers made their circles, and used several charms both in words and actions, that the devil might enter into some one of the governor's kindred, who were there in a suppliant posture, but all in vain. At last a sister of the governor's, for whom he had an extraordinary kindness, came in, and begging the same favour, immediately gave manifest signs that she was possessed: for being decrepid, by reason of her great age, and not able to go alone, she began, to the astonishment of the spectators, to skip as nimbly as if she had been a young girl, and the stick she threw from her hung in the air, all the while the devil was in her body,

Vol. II.

during which time talking in a raving manner, and doing many disorderly actions, she uttered several extravagancies about the state and place her brother's soul was in; and concluding her mad discourse, the devil leaving her, she fell down as if she had been dead, remaining so spent for the space of eight days, that she could not stir for meer weakness, all the kindred and friends flocking to visit her, and congratulate her happiness, in that she had been chosen among all the relations for an action (as they thought it) so glorious and honourable for the dead man.

At length they began to order the funeral of this lord; and as in the catholic church it is the custom to honour the memory of men renowned for sanctity of life, by a solemn canonization; so in *Cochin-China*, the devil always mimicking holy things, the more to delude the people, it is customary to honour the death of those who have been universally reputed just men, and upright in their actions, and adorned with moral virtues, with great solemnity and magnificence, canonizing them, if we may so call it, after their manner, by eternizing their memory, and giving them immortal veneration. For this reason, the governor of *Pelucambi*, who by all men, not only in his own province, but throughout all the kingdom was, for his extraordinary natural parts, reputed a man of great wisdom, and incomparable prudence, his government being adorned with singular justice and integrity, together with an unusual inclination and affection for all needy persons, was judged not to require a dolorful sad funeral pomp, as was due to others; but on the contrary, all demonstrations of joy and grandeur, which might declare him worthy of religious honours, and to be added to the number of their gods. This being decreed, they all endeavoured to lay aside their mourning and sorrow, and to express all pleasure and satisfaction; and to this purpose all the governor's kindred, for the space of eight days, sumptuously treated all the people, during which time, they did nothing from morning till night, but eat and drink, sing, dance, and play upon musical and warlike instruments.

After the eight days, the body was carry'd in a silver coffin gilt, under a canopy, to the city where he was born, called *Cbisu*, three days journey distant, attended by a multitude of all sorts of people, dancing and rejoicing, leaving the palace where he died utterly disinhabited, that it might run to ruin, and no sign of it remaining; so the memory of the governor's death might be lost in perpetual oblivion, he still remaining alive with perpetual praise and veneration in the

9 E

hearts

BORRI.

Heathen canonization.

The governor's funeral.

**BORRI.** hearts and mouths of all men. Being come to a spacious plain without *Cbisu*, they all fell to work upon a palace, twice as magnificent and sumptuous as that the governor died in; and to make a greater shew of the dead man's wealth, they built as many galleys as he used to keep, upon wheels, for them to run upon dry land. In the same manner they made wooden elephants and horses, and all other moveables used when the governor went abroad when alive, without sparing any cost. In the midst of the palace they erected a stately temple, with a fine altar, on which they placed the coffin covered, and hid with such curious workmanship, that the hieroglyphicks, carving, and painting, greatly move those gentiles to respect. For three days continually they performed several sacrifices and ceremonies, by the ministry of five or six hundred *om/aiis*, all clad in white, who spent the time in singing and sacrificing, offering wine, oxen, and buffaloes, in great numbers, the public entertainments continuing these three days, for above two thousand men of note, every one having his table to himself, according to custom, and each of them covered with above two hundred dishes. At the end of these three days they set fire to all that pile, burning the palace and temple, with all the perfumes and furniture, only saving the coffin with the body, which was afterwards buried, and privately removed to twelve several graves, that the people being always in doubt where it had been left, that uncertainty might increase the honour of the new idol, they adoring it in all those places where they thought the bones might be. Thus the solemnity ended for that time, till some months after, that is, in the seventh moon, according to their computation of time, it was repeated in the same manner as it had been performed at first; a few months after it was done a third time, and so from time to time for three years, all the revenues assigned the governor of that province by the king, being spent upon this solemnity for those three years, and therefore no other governor was appointed during that time, they being persuaded that the dead man's soul, which was placed among the gods, would continue in the government for those three years. However, his own son was appointed his deputy-governor, or lieutenant.

The fathers questioned concerning the governor's soul.

We three fathers of the society then in that province, were present at most of this solemnity; and tho' we did not attend at their superstitious ceremonies, yet to avoid being thought ungrateful and unmannerly, we were forced to accept of some invitations, in one of which we were forewarned

we should be asked where the governor's soul was; assuring us, that if we said it was in hell, we should presently be cut to pieces. We were a little after publicly asked the question, and answered, That no man could be saved without baptism; but that through the mercy of God, and earnest desire to be baptized sufficing, where better cannot be; if the governor, at last, had such a desire, as it was likely he had, because of the affection he bore our faith, as we said above, and that he would have asked it, but that the violence of his distemper hindered, therefore it might be believed he was saved, and not damned.

This answer, tho' new and unexpected, in some measure satisfy'd them, in token whereof they offer'd us some whole buffaloes, some boiled, some roasted, which had been sacrificed to their new idol, the dead governor; but we refusing them, saying, Our law forbid us to eat of that flesh so defiled by their sacrifice: instead of the dead sacrificed buffaloes, they ordered others alive to be given us; the governor's kindred afterwards sending us elephants, that we might return on them to *Pulucambi*, with as much honour as when the governor was living.

These were the last favours we received <sup>The favour in virtue of the governor of *Pulucambi*'s there in distress.</sup> in favour; and therefore returning home, we were left like fatherless children, forsaken by all the world. Now no body minded us, the allowance of rice for our maintenance failed, and we having but twenty crowns must in a few days have been reduced to great misery and want; and if any one fell sick, we durst not call any body to breath a vein, because we had not wherewithal to pay for it; and tho' there were among them people very ready to supply the needy, esp.ially with sustenance, as was said above, yet it was not convenient for us to ask any thing, lest we should lose all the advantage we made, as to the conversion of souls, because they would have said, we went not thither to preach the law of *JESUS CHRIST*, but to supply our wants under the protection of the governor. No body now came to our house, that first shew of authority ceasing, and tho' we had learned the language of the country, yet they made no account of the words of three poor men, left in the midst of infinite idolaters, and despised our doctrines, as an invention of our own, carried thither to oppose the ancient sects and tenets.

Three years pass'd after this manner, and yet we were not so much troubled at our own wants, which God knows were very great, as to see every day less hopes of promoting the service of God among those

those pagans, having during those three years converted but very few, and that with unpeakable labour and toil. Things being in this posture, in some measure desperate, we being inclinable to believe the time was not yet come, when it would please God to enlighten the darkness of those people, either because our sins obstructed it, or for some other hidden judgments of God. But when our human frailty shewed it self most diffident of di-

vine assistance, even then, the more to comfort us, the God of mercy shewed the wonderful effects of his divine omnipotency, that the noble undertaking of converting souls might be wholly attributed to him, we then owning we had no power to proceed in it, and that we might know experimentally, that *neither be who waters, nor be who plants, does anything; but it is God that gives the increase;* as will appear in the following chapter.

## CHAP. V.

*How God made way for the Conversion of the Province of Pulucambi, by means of the noblest Persons in it.*

The fact here differs.

WE having nothing to maintain us at Pulucambi, and converting no body, dispersed our selves into several parts: F. Francis de Pina went to live at Faifó, a Japanese city, as has been said, with a design to serve those Christians, whose pastor he had been before, and to live upon their alms. He being well skilled in the language of Cochin-China, and talking it naturally, never ceased there to preach our holy faith. F. Francis Buzome went away for Furon, carrying along with him the best interpreter we had, to endeavour to obtain some alms of the Portuguese there, that might at least maintain us two in Pulucambi, in our house at Nuocman, till some supply came from Macao.

Conversion of a great lady.

Thus was I left in Pulucambi, solitary and disconsolate, without any hopes of the conversion of those gentiles. When one day being at home, far from any such thought, I saw a number of elephants before our door, with many ladies, and a large retinue of gentlemen, after whom followed a great lady, and principal matron, most richly clad, and adorned with abundance of rich jewels, according to the country fashion. I was much surprized at the unusual spectacle, and majesty of the lady, and in suspense, not imagining what might be the design of the new visit. Going out at last to receive her, I understood she was wife to the ambassador the king of Cochin-China was sending to the king of Cambogia, which ambassador was a native of Nuocman, where we dwelt, and next the governor the chief man in that city, who was then at the court of Sinus, treating with that king upon the subject of his embassy. After the usual ceremonies and compliments, according to the custom of the country, the lady being unwilling to lose time upon matters that were not to her purpose, *Let us come (said she) to the business I aim at; I have been fully informed, father, of your coming into this our country and province, and of*

*the occasion of your coming; I see the holy and unblemished life you lead, I know you preach and teach the true God; and being satisfied that this is most agreeable to reason, am persuaded that there is no true law but yours, nor other God but yours, nor any way to life everlasting, but that you teach; and therefore my coming to your house, is for no other intent, but earnestly to beg of you, that bathing me in your holy water, you will add me to the number of Christians; this is the utmost of my wishes and desires.* In the first place I commended her good and holy resolution, exhorting her to return thanks to God for so signal a mercy bestowed on her, in calling her to the knowledge of his holy law, there being nothing in this world to be valued equal to the soul's salvation. Next I made my excuse for not complying out of hand with her pious and reasonable request; because, altho' I had some knowledge of the Cochin-Chinese language, yet it was not enough to instruct her in the lofty mysteries of our christian religion; and therefore I advised her excellency to wait for F. Buzome, who in a few days was to return from Turon, having with him an excellent interpreter, by whose means she would be instructed as she ought to be to her own satisfaction, and obtain the end of her holy desires. *The great fire (replied she) that inflames my heart, will not allow of such a long delay; and the more, for that my husband is hourly expected from court, with whom I am soon to embark for the kingdom of Cambogia, where the dangers of the sea being frequent, a storm may happen to rise, where dying, I may perish for ever.* She added, that it was enough if I dis-couraged of matters divine, as I did of other things; for she should understand all I said. These visible tokens of her resolution obliging me to it, I began the best I could to inform her in several matters and principles of our holy faith. Soon after it pleased God, F. Buzome returned, and seeing this good success, gave infinite thanks to

**BORRI.** to God. The lady was much pleased with the arrival of the interpreter, whom she had so earnestly expected; with whose assistance, and her continual application, study, and attention at catechizing, which was done for two hours before and two hours after dinner, in a fortnight's time she became perfect in the christian doctrine. Above all, what made the greatest impression on her heart, was the knowledge of JESUS CHRIST, true God, made man, and humbled for the sake of man; and therefore in some measure to imitate our Saviour's great humility, she for the future came to our house, which was a good mile from hers, not only without the state and elephants she used before, but bare-footed, in dirt, and upon stones, obliging her gentlemen and ladies, by her example, to imitate her devotion.

In our spiritual discourses, and exposition upon the catechism, when we came to make mention of hell, describe its torments, represent the greatness, eternity, and variety of torments there suffered, the horrible company of devils, the darkness of those infernal dungeons, and uninhabitable dens; and lastly, the torture of fire: both she and her ladies were so terrified, that having by themselves, all night, considered upon what they had heard, they came again the next day to tell us, they would all be Christians, to avoid that everlasting misery: But we telling them it was impossible, they being servants, and consequently concubines to the ambassador, according to the custom of the country, as has been mentioned in the first treatise, the ambassador's lady answered, *That impediment does not concern me. It is so, said we, for your excellency is your husband's only wife, and has not to do with other men, and therefore may freely be baptized.* At these words, lifting up her hands to heaven, she gave such tokens of joy, as if she had been besides her self, tho' she had never been truly so much her self, as when she shewed such signs of joy, for that which ought to be the only cause of all our satisfaction. Her women on the other side, seeing themselves excluded the way of salvation, cried out aloud, they would forbear being the ambassador's concubines, since it obstructed their baptism, and was the way to damnation. The lady seconded their good purposes, taking upon her to deliver them from that sin, and get every one of them a husband. All lets and impediments being removed by these promises of the lady, and firm purposes of the women, one day, which was the joyfullest I ever saw in my life, the ambassador's lady richly apparelled, and dressed with jewels, and nobly attended to our church by gentlemen, was baptiz-

Twenty  
six baptiz-  
ed.

tized, with twenty five of her women, and as chief of them called *Urfula*, to the glory of JESUS CHRIST, who by means of these few women, opened a way to the conversions made by our mission in *Cochin-China*.

After they were baptized, we went in procession to the palace of the ambassador's lady *Urfula*, where there was an oratory, in which she used before to perform her superstitious devotions to an idol. When we came in, we first sprinkled the house with holy water, and then the lady, and her women, courageously laid hold of the idol, and throwing it violently against the ground, beat it to pieces, trampling on it; in whose place we set up a fine picture of our Saviour, which those new devout Christians falling down, devoutly worshipped, owning themselves his most humble and devout slaves. Then we put about their necks some *Agnus Dei's*, crosses, medals, and relics, which they valued above the gold chains, and strings of pearls they were adorned with. Having obtained this victory over the devil, after saying the litany, and other prayers in the oratory, now blessed, *F. Buzome*, and I, returned home with that satisfaction and thanksgiving that every man may imagine. The ambassador's lady, and her women, came after this, every day duly to mass, catechize, and other spiritual exercises, with great tokens of fervour, and christian piety.

At this time the ambassador, husband to the lady *Urfula*, came from court, to depart in a short time upon his embassy to the king of *Cambogia*. It is the custom of that country, when the head of the family comes from afar off, for the wife, children, and rest of the family, to go out at least a mile upon the way to meet him. The lady *Urfula* failed to perform this ceremony, being then retired in her oratory. The husband wondering at it, and suspecting she might be hindered by sickness, asked what was become of her; but understanding she was well, admired it the more, till coming to the gate of his palace, and missing the usual reception, he began to mistrust she was angry with him. At length he went up, and into the oratory, where he found his lady and her maids, with *Agnus Dei's*, and relics about their necks, beads in their hands, and other christian signs, praying before the image of our Saviour. The ambassador was astonished at this sight, and his lady directing her discourse to him, bid him not admire that she had forbore the usual compliments to him, because she was raised to a higher pitch of honour than he was, both she and her women being children of the true

The lady's  
carriage to  
her husband.



true God, and Saviour of the world, Jesus Christ, whose picture she shewed him, saying, he ought to adore him, if he would be equal to them in dignity. The ambassador moved by his lady's words, and the beauty of the picture, with tears in his eyes fell down and adored; then standing up, he turned to his wife and women, saying, *How is it possible you should be Christians? Have you a mind to leave me? Do not you know that the law the fathers preach forbids polygamy? Therefore you must either find another dwelling-place, or I leave this to you, and seek out another house.* His lady answered, *Neither need you depart, nor we leave you, for there will be a remedy for all things.* Wisely concealing for the present, the prohibition of plurality of wives, to avoid that difficulty which would have bred a disturbance. The ambassador took heart at these words, and conceiving, as yet, that he need not be obliged to leave his women; thus piously imposed upon, he said, he would be a Christian too, and follow the good example set him by his wife, and her women.

The ambassador instructed

The next morning betimes the ambassador came to our house, to tell us, that since we had made his wife a Christian, he had a mind to embrace the same religion, if we thought it practicable. Very practicable, said we, full of joy and satisfaction at so grateful a question? For in case he were resolved, we would in a short time instruct him sufficiently to be baptized. He was pleased, and because the affairs of his embassy took up the day, so that he had not leisure to be instructed: upon his request we agreed to go to his house at night, where we began to catechize him, continuing it for twenty nights, four or five hours at a time, informing him in the mysteries of our holy faith, from the creation of the world, till the redemption of man, the glory of heaven, and pains of hell. It was no small matter for so great a person, and so full of business, to lose his sleep to hear the word of God; and he gave himself to them with great application, asking many very ingenious questions, which shewed his great wit. In all our discourses, our whole aim was to imprint the truth of our holy law in the heart of this noble man, and make it agreeable to reason, that being made sensible of the great importance of salvation, and the terror of the pains of hell, and being well inclined to, and convinced of the certainty of our religion, he might afterwards make less difficulty in the main point concerning polygamy; which was the only thing he stuck at, and which we till then had designedly forbore to speak of. Having gone so far towards the ambassador's

Vol. II.

conversion, we began to expound upon the commandments, where we informed him, that among Christians it was unlawful to have many wives.

This proposition was so unexpected, that like fire that has water thrown on it, the ambassador presently cooled, and taking leave of us, said, this was a matter of great consequence, and therefore required time to come to a resolution. This answer was so displeasing and grievous to us, that returning home we spent that night in prayer and mortification, praying to God with all the fervour we could, that he would be pleased to put a happy conclusion to the work he had so well begun. Next morning one of the most learned *onassis* in the city came to us from the ambassador, to examine the reasons for the prohibition of polygamy. Among other objections, this man made one, in his opinion, of the greatest force, which was, Why plurality of wives should be forbid, since generation and children were a work of perfection, and so agreeable to nature, chiefly when a man had a barren wife, as was the ambassador's case, and might not have another to get heirs upon. We wanted not answers according to our divinity, but perceiving they were not satisfactory to them because they were not used to our theological notions, we at last added a reason out of scripture, whereof the ambassador had before some knowledge from us, and it pleased God, this made an impression on his heart, and absolutely convinced him. This was putting of him in mind, that God being so just, and the law he had prescribed so agreeable to natural reason, as he himself had owned, he ought without doubt to obey in this point, since God himself commanded it; and this so much the more, in regard that God creating man, intimated the same to him, when there was most occasion for propagating human race; and yet he gave Adam but one wife, whereas he could as easily have given him many more, that man might multiply the faster. This reason, I say, fully satisfied the ambassador, yet finding it difficult to observe the precept, as being a thing he was much addicted to: *Is there no remedy, said he, or dispensation from the pope, or any other means, tho' never so difficult, to have this point remitted?* We told him, it was in vain to seek any redress whatsoever in this case; and therefore, if he desired to be saved, he must dismiss the other women, and stick to his wife. Then the ambassador lifting up his eyes and hands to heaven, as it were struggling with himself, and presiding on by truth, with a generous resolution said, *If then multiplicity of wives be inconsistent*

BORRI.

Convinced about polygamy.

The lady's carriage to her husband.

**BORRI.** *sistent with my salvation, let them all go in the name of God; for it is pity to lose an eternity of glory, for a transitory delight.* Then turning to his concubines, who were present with his wife, he discharged them all: but perceiving they laughed at his discharge, as a thing that would never stand good; to shew he was in earnest, he ordered his wife to pay them all off immediately, and let not one of them stay in his palace that night. After which turning again to the fathers, *Behold, said he, I have readily performed all you commanded me.* Having obtained our desires, we went home to give thanks to Almighty God.

His conversion.

But the devil found out a way still to make opposition, making use of the lady *Ursula's* womanish temper; for she had not the heart to turn away those women she had bred up from their infancy in her house, and loved them as if they were her own children. Therefore some strife arising between the man and his wife, he pressing to have them gone, and she opposing, the ambassador dissatisfied, came to us to justify himself, and desire to be baptized, since the impediment was removed, he being willing the women should depart his house. We were about going to work, perceiving he spoke rationally, and particularly because he resolved they should not continue in his house as his concubines, but as his lady's servants. But the good man making a stand as if he were thinking, at last said he had a scruple to propose: *Since, according to what you fathers have taught me, said he, God sees into the heart of man, and cannot be deceived, tho' I desire to forsake and send away the women, yet whilst they continue in the house, I plainly see, either my ancient habit, or frailty of nature will easily cause me to fall again into sin; therefore methinks I do not proceed with due sincerity in this affair.* We perceiving, by the ambassador's discreet and christian discourse, he foresaw the danger of being in the immediate occasion of sin, studied some proper means to remove so considerable an impediment, but nothing occurring for the present he himself being very earnest upon the business, proposed a method, which we stuck to as the best of all others: *Fathers, said he, the safest way I can think of is that you as their directors powerfully persuade the christian women that were my concubines, (for the heathens I will infallibly make my wife turn away) that in case through frailty I should be under any temptation they resist me resolutely; and so much as I bear a great respect to, and stand in awe of our Saviour's picture placed in the oratory, if the women lie in that place, I will rather be torn to pieces than have any*

*thing to do with them in the presence of that great Lord; and they being thus secured against me, till there be an opportunity of marrying them, it will be known abroad, that they are not kept in the house as my concubines, but only as servants to my only wife Ursula, and the people will be sensible I do not act contrary to the law of God.* This method was so well approved of, that the day after it was put in execution, the ambassador was baptized in great state, attended by drums, fifes and other instruments, and he himself clad in rich apparel. With him were baptized twenty other gentlemen, his best friends, and he had the name of our holy patriarch *Ignatius* given him. After which, taking his wife *Ursula* by the hand, she renewed the old contract of matrimony as a sacrament of the church. The joy they all conceived at their baptism, and new marriage, was unspeakable.

It now remained that the ambassador should depart on his embassy for *Cambogia*; and he ordered, that the ship which was to carry him, should have a cross in its colours, and the picture of the glorious father *S. Ignatius* his protector, causing all the jacks and pennants to express the religion he professed. Embarking with all his gentlemen and christian women, he had a prosperous voyage from *Nuocman* to *Cambogia*. When the Squadron appeared, being well known to the people of *Cambogia* to be the ambassador's, they were all astonished, seeing christian colours set up; and therefore they imagined that the king of *Cochin-China*, instead of the ordinary ambassador, had sent some extraordinary *Portuguese* Christian; but their doubt was soon cleared, seeing the usual ambassador land with a cross and medals on his breast, among the gold chains and jewels. This sight on the one hand, moved the *Portuguese* and *Japanese* Christians, who reside there on account of trade, to give shouts of joy, and bless God for this new off-spring *Cochin-China* had produced; and on the other, the heathens could not believe that the ambassador, who before was observed to be excessively lascivious, should embrace the christian religion, which forbids all immodesty. But the grace of the holy Ghost soon appeared to strengthen human frailty; for tho' the ambassador at his palace in *Cambogia*, had double the number of concubines, as generally used to attend his wife, he ordered them to be all dismissed; nor did he ever lift up his eyes to look at them, which made his fame spread abroad, as of a man of singular sanctity and virtue; and being reputed a man of great knowledge, his example moved many of the most learned persons of *Pulacambi* to be baptized.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VI.

*How God open'd another way to Christianity, through the means of the learned People among the Heathens.*

Means for  
the con-  
version of  
the *Cochin-  
Chineſes*.

GOD's infinite mercy, and his ardent desires for the ſalvation of mankind, finds out divers means ſuitable to the ſeveral conditions of perſons, which are as it were ſo many ways to direct and lead them to that end for which they were created. Thus we ſee he himſelf in perſon called upon his people, and complying with the inclination of the perſons, invited the wiſe men by means of the ſtar; *Denis* the *Aeropagite* the aſtronomer, by the prodigy of the wonderful eclipse; *S. Auguſtine* by the knowledge of the true light and law, and the confuſion and obſcurity of former errors; and in fine, he calls the ignorant multitude, by the means of prodigies, wonders and miracles. So it fell out in the new church of *Cochin-China*; for when his divine majeſty had by himſelf convinced ſome of the principal perſons, as has been ſhewn, next he call'd not only the learned and wiſe philoſophers and mathematicians, by means of ſome eclipses, as ſhall be ſhewn in this chapter, but alſo the *onſais* or prieſts, who were hardened in the errors of their heathen ſects, to the knowledge of the true religion, as the following chapter will make appear. And laſtly, in the next to that we ſhall ſet down, how he opened the way of ſalvation to the people by means of ſeveral prodigies and miracles.

Aſtrology  
in great  
eſteem.

Now to come to the manner of converting the wiſe and learned *Cochin-Chineſes*, reputed excellent mathematicians, by means of the eclipse. For the better underſtanding of what we are to ſay, it is requiſite in the firſt place to be acquainted with a cuſtom they have in this kingdom, relating to the ſcience of aſtrology, but particularly of eclipses; for they make ſuch a great account of it, that they have large halls where it is taught in their univerſity; and there are ſpecial allowances aſſign'd the aſtrogers; as for inſtance, Lands which pay them a tribute or ſtipend. The king has his peculiar aſtrogers, and ſo has the prince his ſon, who uſe all their art to ſet down eclipses exactly. But wanting the reformation of the calendar, and other matters, relating to the motion of the ſun and moon which we have, they commit ſome miſtakes in the calculation of the moons and eclipses, wherein they generally err two or three hours, and ſometimes, tho' not ſo often, a whole day; tho' generally they are right as to the material part of the eclipse. Every time they hit right, the king rewards them with a certain quantity of

land; and ſo when they miſtake, that ſame quantity is taken from them.

The reaſon why they make ſuch account of fortelling the eclipse, is becauſe of the many ſuperſtitious at that time uſ'd towards the ſun and moon, for which they prepare themſelves in very ſolemn manner: for the king being told the day and hour a month before the eclipse happens, ſends orders throughout all the provinces of the kingdom, for the learned and common ſort to be in a readineſs that day. When the time is come, all the lords in every province meet with their governors, commanders and gentry, and people with their proper officers in every city and liberty. The greateſt aſſembly is at court, where the principal men of the kingdom are, who all go out with colours and arms. Firſt goes the king cloath'd in mourning, and after him all the court, who liſting up their eyes to the ſun or moon, as the eclipse comes on them, make ſeveral obeiſſances and adorations, ſpeaking ſome words of compaſſion for the pain thoſe planets endure; for they look upon the eclipse to be no other, but that the dragon ſwallows up the ſun or moon; and therefore, as we ſay, the moon is all or half eclips'd; ſo they ſay, *Da an nua*, *Da an bet*; that is, the dragon has eaten half, now he eats all.

Which way of expreſſion, tho' it be nothing to the purpoſe, yet it ſhews that they aſſign the ſame ground for the eclipse originally that we do, which is cutting of the ecliptick, that is the ſun's circle and the line of the courſe of the moon, in thoſe two points which we call the dragon's head and tail, as aſtronomers well know: whence it follows, that the very ſame doctrine, and the ſame terms and names of the dragon, are common both to us and them, and ſo they give names like ours to the ſigns of the zodiack, ſuch as *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, &c. And thus in proceſs of time the people have invented fabulous cauſes of the eclipse, inſtead of the true, ſaying that the ſun and moon, when eclipsed are drown'd by the dragon; whereas, at that time they are really in the head or tail of the aſtronomical dragon.

Now to return to the compaſſion they have for thoſe ſuffering planets; when the adoration is over, they begin firſt at the king's palace, and then throughout all the city to fire muſkets and cannon, ring bells, ſound trumpets, beat drums, and play upon other inſtruments, even to clatter-

Their a-  
ſtrogical  
terms  
and ours  
alike.

**BORRI.** ing of the kettles, and other utensils of the kitchen in all houses: and this is done, to the end the dragon may be frighted with the great noise, and not proceed to eat any more, but vomit up what he has already eaten of the sun or moon.

Conversion  
only by  
means of  
an eclipse.

When we were inform'd of this custom, the first eclipse that happened was one of the moon, in the year 1630. on the ninth of December, at eleven at night. I was then in the city *Nuochman*, in the province of *Pukamhi*, where there was the commander of the ward we liv'd in, whose son was become a Christian; tho' the father, as proud of his own learning, despis'd not only our religion but our knowledge; and we earnestly desir'd his conversion, hoping that if he receiv'd the catholick faith, his example would induce those of his ward or quarter to do the same. This man came once to visit us before the eclipse of the moon happened, and in discourse we happened to talk of it, he positively affirming there would be no such eclipse: and tho' we demonstrated it to him, according to our calculation, and shew'd him the figure of it in our books, yet he would never believe it; alledging among other arguments for his obstinacy, that if any such eclipse were like to be, the king would doubtless have sent him notice a month before, according to the custom of the kingdom, whereas there wanted but eight days of the time by us appointed; wherefore he having no such advice, it was a certain sign that there would be no such eclipse. He persisting obstinately in his opinion, would needs lay a wager of a *Cabaia*, which is a silk gown. We agreed to it upon condition, that if we lost we were to give him such a garment; but if we won, instead of paying the gown, he was to come to us for eight days together, to hear the catechize and mysteries of our faith expounded. He reply'd, he would not only do so, but the very moment he saw the eclipse would become a Christian: for he said, if our doctrine was so certain and infallible in such hidden and heavenly things as eclipses are, and theirs so erroneous, there was no doubt but our religion and knowledge of the true God was no less assured and safe, and theirs false. The day of the eclipse being come, the aforesaid gentleman with a great many scholars came to our house at night, bringing them as witnesses of the event. But because the eclipse was to be at eleven at night, I went to say my office, turning up the hour glass in the mean while. An hour before the time these men came several times, calling upon me by way of derision to see the eclipse, thinking I had not withdrawn to say my office, but had hid my self for shame that there would be

no eclipse. Yet they could not but admire at my assurance in answering them, that the hour was not yet come, till the glass was run out, which they gazed at, as if it had been some wonderful thing. Then going out, I shew'd them that the circle of the moon on that side the eclipse began, was not so perfect as it should be, and soon after all the moon being darkened, they perceiv'd the truth of my prediction. The commander and all of them being astonish'd, presently sent to give notice of it to all the ward, and spread the news of the eclipse throughout the city, that every man might go out to make the usual noise in favour of the moon; giving out every where, that there were no such men as the fathers, whose doctrine and books could not choose but be true, since they had so exactly foretold the eclipse, which their learned men had taken no notice of; and therefore in performance of his promise, the commander with all his family became Christians, as did many more of his ward, with some of the most learned men in this city, and other men of note.

Such another accident happened at the same time, tho' among people of greater quality, and in a more eminent place. Tho' the king's astrologers had not foreseen this eclipse, yet those belonging to the prince at *Cacciam*, being more studious and intelligent, foretold it; but with a gross mistake as to time: for it was not of an hour or two, as is usual, but of a whole day, giving out that the full moon, and consequently the eclipse would be a day sooner than it was. *F. Francis de Pina*, who was then at court, had given notice of it to a courtier who was very great with the prince, being his *ongue*; that is, in the nature of matter of the ceremonies. The father told him, That since the eclipse was not to fall out as their astrologers said, but as *F. Christopher Bonri* affirm'd, the following night, he should give the prince his matter notice of it. But the *ongue* not giving entire credit to the father, would not do that duty of his office at that time. The hour appointed by the astrologers being come, and the prince having notice of it, he went out with his whole court, according to custom, to see and help the moon, that as they said was to be eclips'd; but finding he was deceiv'd, and growing angry with his mathematicians for their mistake, he order'd they should forfeit the revenue of a town, according to the custom before mention'd. Hence the *ongue* took occasion to acquaint the prince that the *European* father had, before this happened, told him the eclipse would be the night following. The prince was mightily pleas'd that the fathers should be

The fathers fore-  
told the e-  
clipse  
truer than  
the Co-  
chin-Chi-  
nese astro-  
logers.

right, where his mathematicians had miscarried.

The *omne* repair'd immediately to the father, to know the precise time of the eclipse; who having shew'd him that it was to be exactly at eleven the following night, he still continu'd doubtful of the truth of the matter, and therefore would not wake the prince till he saw the beginning of the eclipse. Then he ran to rouse him, and he coming out with some of his courtiers, perform'd the usual ceremonies and adorations to the moon. Yet he would not make the matter publicly known, for fear of utterly discrediting their books and mathematicians, tho' all men conceiv'd a great opinion of our doctrine, and particularly the *omne*, who from that time forwards for a whole month came to hear the catechising, diligently learning all that belongs to our holy faith. However he was not baptiz'd, wanting resolution to overcome the difficulty of the multiplicity of women, as the ambassador *Ignatius* had done before. He forbore not nevertheless publicly with much fervour to declare our doctrine and law were true, and all others false, and said he would certainly die a Christian, which mov'd many others to desire to be baptiz'd.

An eclipse of the sun mistaken.

Having talk'd of the eclipse of the moon, we will coincide with another of the sun, which happened on the 22d of May, 1621, which the king's astrologers foretold was to last two hours; but having conceiv'd a great opinion of us as to this particular, for their own greater security, they came to ask our opinions concerning it. I told them it was true there would be an eclipse of the sun, the figure whereof I shew'd in our *ephemerides*; but I purposely forbore to let them know, that it would not be seen in *Cochin-China*, by reason of the moon's parallax to the sun. Now they know not what the parallax is, which is the cause they are often deceiv'd, not finding the just time by their books and calculations. This I did, that their error being observ'd, our knowledge might appear the more: I therefore demanded time to find out the precise time, saying in general terms, it was requisite to measure heaven by the earth, to discover whether that eclipse would be visible in their country; and I delay'd the answer so long, till the time of making known the eclipse being come, the astrologers satisfy'd that our book agreed with their opinion, without farther reflection, concluded the eclipse was most certain, and advis'd the king to publish it after the usual manner. When the astrologers had spread their false prediction throughout the kingdom, I gave it out that the eclipse would not be seen at all in *Cochin-China*. This assertion of

VOL. II.

ours was carry'd to the prince, who being *BORRI*, doubtful in the matter, sent his mathematicians to me to ask my opinion, and argue the point. This dispute had no other effect on them, but only to increase their doubts, and hold the prince in suspense, whether he ought to send his orders throughout the kingdom, as the king his father had done, or publish the contrary; for on the one hand it wrought upon him to see that both their books and ours granted the eclipse, wherefore he thought it would be a dishonour to him, in case it happened not to have sent the usual advice; and on the other side, he had a great opinion of us on account of the antecedent eclipse of the moon. Hereupon sending to consult me again, I answer'd, that having calculated the eclipse very exactly, I found it could not possibly be visible in his kingdom; and therefore he need not take any care to send advice about the country, for I would be answerable for his and his astrologers reputation, against the king and his mathematicians. He at last rely'd upon my words, and took no care to give notice in his liberty of the eclipse, the whole court and king's astrologers admiring at it; and they enquiring into the cause of the prince's neglect, were answer'd, that he had better mathematicians in his court than the king his father: by which they understood that some of our fathers being there, he forsook the opinion of the natives for theirs. However the publication they had made being irrevocable, the usual preparations were made against the day of the eclipse, till the hour being come they experimentally perceiv'd their error. The day was clear and not a cloud to be seen, and tho' it was the month of May, when the sun is there in the zenith, and the time of the day about three in the afternoon when the heat is violent, yet the king did not omit to go out with his courtiers, enduring all the burning sun for a long time; but finding himself impos'd upon, and being much incens'd, as well by reason of the great heat he endur'd, as at the ignorance of his mathematicians, who had put him to that trouble without any reason, he reprimanded them severely. They alledg'd for their excuse, that there would be an eclipse infallibly, but that they had made a day's mistake as to the conjunction of the moon, and therefore it would be seen the next day at that same hour. The king submitted to his astrologers, and coming out the next day at the same hour, suffer'd the same inconvenience of heat, to the great shame of his astrologers, who escap'd not unpunish'd; for he not only took away their revenues, but order'd they should kneel a whole day in the court of the palace, bare-headed expos'd to the

9 G

heat



**BORR.** heat of the sun, and to the scorn of all the courtiers. To return to the prince who had got the better in this point, he writ to his father in a jesting manner, That tho' he was his son, he had out-done him as to the eclipse, and had more learned men at his court.

It is not to be imagin'd how much reputation this accident gain'd us among the learned, infomuch that even the king's and

prince's mathematicians came to us, earnestly begging we would receive them for our scholars; and upon this account the fame of the fathers was every where so great, that not only our knowledge in astronomy, but our religion was extoll'd above their own, they arguing from the heavenly bodies to things above the heavens, as I said before.

#### C H A P. VII.

*How God open'd another way to Christianity, by means of the Omfais, or Heathen Priests.*

Conversion  
of a hea-  
then  
priest.

**G**OD in his infinite wisdom foreknowing of how great consequence it would be for the conversion of those heathens, that some of their priests or *omfais* should be converted, because of the great authority they have among all the people, it pleas'd his Divine Majesty to open even this way to his holy faith. An *omfai* whose name was *Ly*, liv'd near to our house, and had the charge of an idol temple, and being a neighbour had frequent opportunities of conversing with us, and of coming to some knowledge of our rules, actions, and course of life. This pleas'd him so well, that proceeding still farther, he would needs be inform'd as to the law of God, whereof we gave him a full account; and coming to discourse of the resurrection of our LORD, shewing him how he rose again, that he and all men might rise again the last day, he was so pleas'd at it, that being inspir'd by God, he ask'd to be baptis'd, which was accordingly granted to him and all his family upon Christmas night, which he spent on his knees in prayer with floods of tears, uttering these words, *Tui ciam biet*; that is, I knew not, as if he would have said, Forgive me my God, for till now I knew you not. Then continuing some time very still, as it were contemplating, he repeated the same words, making a sweet harmony to the new born infant. After baptism he took such an affection for us, that he resolv'd to come to us with all his family, that he might live under our rule; but being inform'd that could not be, because he was marry'd, he concluded to live nearer to our house, that he might regulate his actions by the sound of our bell, even to saying the long litany in his oratory, at the time we use to say it every day, according to the custom of the society. And it is remarkable, that observing me at a certain hour us'd to say our beads walking, he would walk at the same time, to the amazement of his countrymen, who look upon walking as a strange and ridicu-

lous action, because they never going a step but what is about business, or to some diversion, look'd upon our action of walking as idle, because we went to a place to no other end but to return; so that the people flock'd to see us walk, and admiring the strangeness of it said, *Omfai di lay*; that is, the father goes and come, goes and comes. Yet their gazing did not make *omfai Ly* leave his custom, which tended to nothing but to be like us in all points. He had but one wife, and had lived about thirty years, which was his age, so strictly up to the law of nature, that he had never, as he said, to that time, knowingly deviated in any matter of conscience from what was just and upright; and his adoring of idols was because he thought it contrary to reason not to adore them. This shews how true that doctrine of divines is, to wit, that God never fails to have baptism administered, either by the hands of men, as this was, or the ministry of angels, to a heathen who lives a good moral life, according to the dictates of reason, and law of nature. This *omfai Ly* wholly devoted himself to the service of God, and after providing for the maintenance of his family, all he and they could earn was bestow'd upon our church, taking special care of its neatness and decency, and of adorning the altars.

A notable  
moral hea-  
then.

Nor was this all God requir'd of this his belov'd servant; for he so inflam'd his heart, that he applied himself to preach the faith of CHRIST publicly, making the mystery of the resurrection the usual subject of his discourse, whereby he attracted and converted abundance, not only of the common sort, but several *omfais*; for tho' he was none of the most learned, yet his fervour so well supply'd that defect, that among those who came to desire baptism, there was one of the most learned and famous men in the kingdom, whose authority, he himself proving the falsity of the heathen sects, immediately increas'd the harvest of the church. This man there-  
fore

Other  
converts.

fore took upon him to oppose the other gentiles, easily confuting them, as being well acquainted with the grounds they went upon; herein very much easing our fathers, who not being so well acquainted with their sects, could not so well oppose them.

Several  
forts of  
*omfais*.

And in truth there was need of such a help; for there is such variety of *omfais* in that country, that it looks as if the devil had endeavoured among those gentiles, to represent the beauty and variety of religious orders instituted by holy men in the catholick church, their several habits answering their several professions; for some are clad in white, others in black, others in blue, and other colours; some living in community, some like curates, chaplains, canons, and prebends; others profess poverty, living upon alms; others exercise the works of mercy, ministering to the sick, either natural physick, or magick charms, without receiving any reward; others undertaking some pious work, as building of bridges, or other such things for the publick good, or erecting of temples, and going about the kingdom, begging alms to this purpose, even as far as the kingdom of *Tonchin*; others teach the doctrine of their religion, who being very rich, have publick schools, as universal masters. There are also some *omfais* who profess the farriers trade, compassionately cure elephants, oxen, and horses, without

asking any reward, being satisfy'd with any thing that is freely given them. Lastly, Others look to the monasteries of women, who live in community, and admit of no man among them but the *omfais* who looks to them, and they are all his wives.

There are vast temples with beautiful towers and steeples, nor is there any town, tho' never so little, without a temple to worship its idols, which are generally very large statues, with abundance of gold and silver shut up in their breasts or bellies, where no body dares to touch it, till extreme necessity obliges some thief to gut the idol, without regard to so great a sacrilege as that is accounted among them; and what is very remarkable, they have chaplets and strings of beads about their necks, and make so many processions that they outdo the Christians in praying to their false gods. There are also among them some persons resembling abbots, bishops, and arch-bishops, and they use gilt staves, not unlike our crostiers, insomuch that if any man come newly into that country, he might easily be persuaded there had been Christians there in former times; so near has the devil endeavoured to imitate us. This will give us an opportunity of adding here a chapter of the sects in *Cochin-China*, to give some light how we may draw that people out of such darkness, and bring them into the light of the gospel.

## C H A P. VIII.

## A short Account of the Sects in Cochín-China.

THE end of all sects is either the god they adore, or the glory and happiness they expect, some believing the immortality of the soul, others concluding that all ends when the body dies. Upon these two principles the eastern nations build all their sects; all which took their origin from a great metaphysician of the kingdom of *Siam*, whose name was *Xaca*, much antienter than *Aristotle*, and nothing inferior to him in capacity, and the knowledge of natural things. The sharpness of this man's wit raising him to consider the nature and fabrick of the world, reflecting on the beginning and end of all things, and particularly of human nature, the chief lady of this worldly palace; he once went up to the top of a mountain, and there attentively observing the moon, which rising in the darkness of the night, gently raised it self above the horizon to be hid again the next day in the same darkness, and the sun getting up in the morning to set again at night, he concluded that as well moral as physical and natural things were nothing, came of nothing,

The philosopher  
*Xaca*.

and ended in nothing. Therefore returning home, he writ several books and large volumes upon this subject, calling them, *Of nothing*; wherein he taught that the things of this world, by reason of the duration and measure of time, are nothing: for tho' they had a being, said he, yet they would be nothing, nothing at present, and nothing in the time to come; for the present being but a moment, was the same as nothing.

His second argument he grounded on the composition of things; let us instance, said he, in a rope, the which not being naturally distinguished from its parts, inasmuch as they give its being and composition, so it appears that the rope as a rope is nothing; for as a rope it is no distinct thing from the threads it is compos'd of, and the threads themselves are no distinct thing from the hemp they are made of, and the hemp has no other being but the elements, whereof its substance consists: so that resolving all things after this manner into the elements, and those to a sort of *materia prima*, and meer *potentia*, which

His opinion, on, that all this world is nothing.

**BORRI.** which is therefore actually nothing, he at last proved, that as well the heavenly things, as those under heaven, were truly nothing.

So of all  
moral  
things

In the same manner did he argue as to moral things: that the natural happiness of man did not consist in a positive concurrence of all that is good, which he looked upon as impossible, but rather in being free from all that is evil, and therefore said, it was no other thing but to have no disease, pain, trouble, or the like; and for a man to have such power over his passions, as not to be sensible of affection or aversion, to honour or disgrace, want or plenty, riches or poverty, life or death, and that herein consisted true beatitude. Whence he inferred, that all these things being nothing, they took their origin as it were from a cause not efficient but material, from a principle which in truth was nothing, but an eternal, infinite, immense, immutable, almighty, and to conclude, a God that was nothing, and the origin of this nothing.

The  
world  
how made

As a prelude or introduction to his sect, this philosopher gave some account of the making of the world under two metaphors. The one was, that the world came out of an egg, which stretched out so vastly, that the heavens were made of the shell; the air, fire, and water, of the white; and of the yolk, the earth and all earthly things. The other metaphor he took from the body of a vast great man, whom they call *Banco*, whom he would call *Microcosm*, saying that the mass of the world came from him, his skull extending to form the heavens, his two eyes making the sun and moon, his flesh the earth, his bones the mountains, his hair plants and trees, and his belly the sea, and thus applying all the limbs and parts of man's body, to the fabric and ornament of the world; he added, that the other men spread about all the world, were made of this great man's lice.

Another  
doctrine  
of the  
same phi-  
losopher.

Having established this doctrine of nothing, he gathered some scholars, by whose means he spread it throughout all the east. But the *Chinese* who knew that a sect which reduced all things to nothing, was hurtful to the government, would not hearken to it, nor allow there was no punishment for wicked men, or that the happiness of the good should be reduced only to the being free from sufferings in this world, and the authority of the *Chinese* being so great, others following their example, rejected his doctrine. *Xaca* dissatisfied that he was disappointed of followers, changed his mind, and retiring writ several other great books, teaching that there was a real origin of all things, a Lord of heaven, hell, immor-

tal, and transmigration of souls from one body to another, better or worse, according to the merits or demerits of the person; tho' they do not forget to assign a sort of heaven and hell for the souls departed, expressing the whole metaphorically under the names of things corporeal, and of the joys and sufferings of this world.

This second doctrine being made public, the *Chinese* received it, and above others the *bonzis*, who are generally the meanest and most inconsiderable people in *Japan*, who being zealous for their spiritual advantage admitted this doctrine, and preserved it in twelve several sorts of sects all differing from one another, tho' that which is most followed and esteemed, is the opinion and sect that believes all to be nothing, which they call *genfu*. These sometimes go abroad into a field to hear a sermon, that is a discourse of bliss made by a *bonzo*, who treats of no other subject, but to persuade his congregation, that human bliss is nothing, and that he is happy who values not whether he has children or no children, whether he is rich or poor, sick or well, and the like; and the *bonzo* preaches this doctrine with such strength of argument, and vehemency, that the audience being fully bent upon the contempt of all things, which in themselves they look upon as nothing, suffering themselves to be in a manner transported, they express their satisfaction and happiness in this manner, that is often crying out with a loud voice, *xin, xin, xin*; that is, nothing, nothing, nothing, accompanying their voices with certain bits of boards they clap between the fingers of one hand striking them together with the other (as boys play on their snappers) and with this noise they are quite besides themselves as if they were drunk, and then they say they have done an act of bliss. The *Japanese* and others making so great account of this opinion of nothing, was the cause that when *Xaca* the author of it was come to his last, calling together his disciples, he protested to them upon the word of a dying man, that in the many years he had lived and study'd, he had found nothing so true, nor any opinion so well grounded, as was the sect of nothing; and tho' his second doctrine seemed to differ from it, yet they must look upon it as no contradiction or recantation, but rather a proof and confirmation of the first, tho' not in plain terms, yet by way of metaphors and parables, which might all be apply'd to the opinion of nothing, as would plainly appear by his books.

But it is time to return to our *Cochin-Chinese*, who not receiving this most foolish and vain doctrine, which denying the substantial

The sect  
that be-  
lieves all  
to be no-  
thing.

Errors of  
the Co-  
chin-Chi-  
nese.

stantial form, reduces all things to nothing, they generally throughout all the kingdom hold the immortality of the soul, and consequently the eternal rewards for the just, and punishments for the wicked, yet mixing a thousand errors with these truths. The first of which is, that they do not distinguish between the immortal soul and the demons, calling both by one and the same name *Maa*, and attributing to them both, the same practice of doing mischief to the living. The second is, that they assign one of the rewards of the soul to be transmigration from one body to another, more worthy, nobler, and in greater dignity; as from one of the common sort to a king, or great lord. The third, that the souls of the dead stand in need of sustenance and corporal food, and therefore at certain times in the year according to their custom, the children make plentiful entertainments for their dead parents, men for their wives, and friends for their acquaintance departed, expecting a long time for the dead guest to come and sit down at table to eat. We one day confuted these errors with arguments which the philosophers call *à priori*, and therefore told them that the soul was a spirit, and had no mouth or other material part to eat, and therefore they were deceived to think they could feed. And then *à posteriori*, for in case they did eat, then the dishes would not be as full after they had done as they were before. They laughed at these arguments, saying, these fathers know nothing; and to solve both difficulties, answered, that meat consisted of two parts, one the substance, the other the accidents of quantity, quality, smell, taste, and the like. The immaterial souls of the dead, said they, taking only the substance of the meat, which being immaterial, was proper sustenance for the incorporeal spirit, left only the accidents in the dishes, as they appear to our corporal eyes, to which purpose the dead had no need of corporeal parts as we said. Any wife man may by this false answer discover

the acuteness of the *Cochin-Chinese* philosophers, tho' they absolutely err as to the reality of the argument.

They also err in respect to the souls themselves, adoring those of men who were looked upon as holy in this world, adding them to the number of their idols, whereof their temples are full, placing them orderly according to their several degrees, in rows along the sides of the temples, the least first, and so bigger and bigger, till the last are extraordinary large. But the high altar being the most honourable place in the temple, is purposely kept empty, behind which is a vacant dark space, to express that he whom they adore as God, and on whom the pagods, who like us were visible and corporal men, is invisible, wherein they think the greatest honour consists. Such a multitude of idols, by them accounted gods, giving us occasion to endeavour to demonstrate to them, that there can be but one only God: They answered, they agreed to it, supposing those that were placed along the sides of the temples, were not they that had created heaven and earth, but holy men whom they honoured, as we do the holy apostles, martyrs, and confessors, with the same distinction of greater and lesser sanctity, as we assign among our saints. And therefore to corroborate their assertion they added, that the vacant dark place about the high altar, was the proper place of the Creator of heaven and earth, who being invisible, and quite remote from our senses, could not be represented by visible images of idols, but that under that vacuity and darkness the due adoration was to be given him as to a thing incomprehensible, using the intercession of the idols, that they may obtain favours and blessings of him. And altho' according to what has been hitherto said, they seem to have an efficient and intellectual cause for God, yet upon mature examination of the matter and their books, we find that they certainly adore a predominant element.

# C H A P. IX.

## How God opened another Way to the Conversion of the meaner sort by miraculous Means.

Frequent apparitions of devils.

IT remains that we shew how God acting conformably to the mean vulgar people of *Cochin-China*, who were used to see phantoms, visions, and apparitions, the devil often appearing to them, was pleased to shew some miracles, to the end that declining in their opinion of diabolical prodigies, they might own the only Lord and singular worker of true wonders. The

devils appear so frequently among those heathens, that not to speak of the oracles they deliver by the mouth of idols, which are in great esteem among the wretched gentiles, they walk about the cities so familiarly in human shapes, that they are not at all feared but admitted into company, and this is carried so far, that there are abundance of *Incubi* and *Succubi*. And

*Incubi and Succubi.*

Vol. II.

q H

als from  
rie, ac-  
the per-  
gn a fort  
departed,  
ly under  
d of the

de pub- The sect  
nd above that be-  
ally the lieves all  
people in to be no-  
their spi- thing.

doctrines,  
sorts of  
her, tho'  
esteemed,  
ves all to  
u. These  
to hear a  
made by  
subject,  
that hu-  
is happy  
children or  
or poor,  
the *benne*  
strength  
at the au-  
contempt  
lives they  
themselves  
they ex-  
piness in  
out with  
at is, no-  
mpanying  
ards they  
one hand  
other (as  
with this  
selves as if  
y say they  
Japanese  
unt of this  
cause that  
s come to  
ciples, he  
of a dy-  
ars he had  
d nothing  
grounded,  
d tho' his  
from it,  
no contra-  
er a proof  
ho' not in  
metaphors  
be apply'd  
ould plain-

our *Cochin*- Errors of  
most foolish the *Cochin-Chi*-  
ing the sub- nesti.  
stantial

**HORRIBLE** among great people those husbands account themselves happy, who know their wives have such familiars; for generally they have to do with none but married women, publicly boasting that they are worthy to mix with a nature so much above their own as is the devils. It happened in my time, that a woman of great quality, mother to two sons who were Christians, envied by her neighbours not so much for her beauty, as for her dishonest familiarity with the devil, positively refusing to become a Christian, came to die in labour, and by the assistance of the devil brought forth two eggs: Now it being held as most certain among them, that the devil her *Incubus* was god of the rivers, they did not bury the body in a cave, building a chapel over it as is the usual custom, but carrying it in solemn procession to a river cast it into the deep, together with the two eggs, saying, let her go to the lord of the river, since she was worthy to have to do with him when living. Among the common sort this filthiness is not esteemed an honour, but they rather account it a grievous distemper when their women are thus molested by the devil, as we should their being possessed. These women therefore understanding that the religion of the fathers was altogether opposite to the devil, they imagined they might have some medicine against this distemper, calling holy things, as the water of baptism, *Agnus Dei*, and the like, medicines, and therefore came to our house to beg such medicines; and by the grace of God all those that carried away with them any bit of *Agnus Dei*, were never more molested by the devil, yet with this difference, that those who were not Christians saw the *Incubus* come to the bed's-side, but had not power to lay hold on, or touch their persons, whereas the Christians perceived that he could not come near the chamber-door, which occasioned several to be baptized.

Other  
monstrous  
visions.

Tho' these *Incubus* devils appearing in human shapes, do no harm to the body, yet sometimes there are others that appear in horrid and frightful shapes, and the *Cochin-Chinenses*, who have often seen, describe them after the same manner as we paint them, for example, with a cock's face, a long tail, a bat's wings, a hideous look, bloody flaming eyes; and when they appear in such shapes, they are much feared, being then generally harmful to men, sometimes carrying them up to the tops of houses to cast them down headlong. We once heard a wonderful noise of people in our street,

crying out very loud, *Maqui Maco*, that is, the devil in a monstrous shape; whereupon some gentiles came running to defend us, that since we had weapons against those evil spirits, we would go relieve those distressed people who were infested by them. Having recommended our selves to God, and arm'd our selves with crosses, *Agnus Dei* and relics, we went two of us to the place where the devil was, and came so near, that we only wanted turning of a corner to be upon him, when he suddenly vanished, leaving three prints of feet upon the pavement, which I saw, and were above two spans long, with the marks of a cock's talons and spurs. Some attributed the devil's flying to the virtue of the holy cross and relics we carried with us.

These frightful apparitions God has made <sup>Good</sup> use of to attract many to his holy faith, <sup>visions.</sup> yet not denying them good visions, as will appear by the following accidents, which happened before me in that kingdom. The first was, that as we were one day in our own house, we saw a procession of a vast multitude of people in a field making towards us, whither when they came, being asked what they would have, they answered, that a most beautiful lady came from their land through the air, on a throne of bright clouds, who bid them go to that city, where they should find the fathers, who would shew them the sure way to bliss, and the knowledge of the true God of heaven. This made us give thanks to the blessed Virgin, whose this great benefit was owned to be, and having catechised and baptized the people sent them home well pleased.

The second was at another time, F. Francis Buzome and I returning homeward together, such a multitude of people came to another place, who having paid us very much respect, told F. Francis Buzome, they were come to him to teach them what he had promised them the night before when he was in their town. The father was astonished at their demand, having never been in the place they spoke of; but examining into the matter, I found that God of his infinite mercy had caused some angel in the father's shape, or in a dream had given those people some knowledge of our holy faith. The fame of these miracles being spread abroad, such numbers of people were converted, that the church given us by the governor was too little, and we were forced to build one larger, his wife, children, and kindred, with many other Christians contributing towards it.



CHAP. X.

Of the Churches and Christians of Faifo, Turon, and Cacchiam.

What the fathers did at Faifo.

**F** Francis de Pina being gone to Faifo, a city of the *Japoneses*, as was said before, he there joined F. Peter Marques, and they did great service in that city. The last of them, who was master of the *Japonefe* tongue, in a short time reformed some of those Christians who were become libertines, and kept women, and converted many pagans. The other who understood the language of *Cocbin-China* made many Christians, and having convinced some *bon-zos* and *om-fais*, by that means drew over many more to the holy faith; so that between *Japoneses* and *Cocbin-Chinefes*, that church for number and religious observance might compare with many in *Europe*, such was their piety, zeal, frequenting of the sacraments, and other godly works. The church of *Turon*, which we said in the second chapter of this book, the heathens burnt down during the first persecution, was by God's permission rebuilt by means of the fathers of the society, who gained many Christians in that city.

At Turon.

At Cacchiam.

Abundance of people were likewise converted to our faith at *Cacchiam*; which good work was much forwarded by the

*Omgne*, who on account of the father's BORRI. fortelling the eclipse so certainly, as was before observed, publicly affirmed, there was no other true religion but that the fathers taught. This was the state of affairs there, when I came away out of that country for *Europe*, which was in the year 1622.

Afterwards by the annual letters sent me by those fathers, my companions left there cultivating that vineyard, I understood that there were still about a thousand converted and baptized in a year, and that Christianity flourished more than ever it had done at *Cacchiam* particularly. But now of late they write, that the king had forbid any more becoming Christians, and threatned to expel the fathers out of the kingdom, and this because the *Portuguese* trade failed. Yet it pleased God this persecution went no farther, the king being satisfied, provided one of the fathers went away to *Macao*, to endeavour to persuade the *Portuguese* to continue the trade, as it seems was afterwards done; so that things are now quiet, and the fathers continue gaining new Christians as they did at first.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Kingdom of Tunchim.

**W**HEN the superiors of *Macao* sent me into *Cocbin-China*, they told me, they did not absolutely design I should continue in that mission, but only to learn the language, that I might afterwards discover the kingdom of *Tunchim*. For this reason during those five years I dwelt there, I almost made it my business to enquire into, and get certain information of the affairs of that kingdom, the language being the same, as formerly it was but one kingdom. I will therefore say as much of it as any way concerns *Cocbin-China*, which has some dependance upon *Tunchim*, and this according to the accounts given me by natives of *Tunchim*, who came to the province of *Pulucambi*, where I resided most part of my time; the rest I will leave to the news we shall receive from our fathers, who are there still making further discoveries.

A description of Tunchim.

This kingdom, besides *Cocbin-China* which belongs to it, contains four other provinces, all extending equally in length and breadth. In the very center of them is the royal city of *Tunchim*, from which all the kingdom takes name, there the

court is kept, and the king resides, being encompassed on all sides by those four provinces, composing a square four times as big as *Cocbin-China*. On the east-side of this kingdom is the gulf of *Ainam*, into which falls a great and navigable river that runs down eighteen leagues from the city *Tunchim*, and *Japonefe* ships call'd *Jonks* go up it. This river generally overflows twice a year, in *June* and *November*, drowning almost half the city, but it lasts not long. On the south are the frontiers of *Simwa*, the court of *Cocbin-China*, as has been observed already. On the north of it is *China*, without the defence of a wall, the trade and commerce between the *Chinese* and *Tunchinefes* being so mutual and constant, that it will not allow of walls and gates shut, as they are again? other foreigners. This is the reason that induces the fathers of our society to attempt the entrance into *China* that way, knowing they shall not on this side meet with all those impediments that strangers meet with throughout all the rest of the kingdom, and more especially about *Canton*. Lastly, on the west it borders on the kingdom of

1

Lai,

*BORRI. Lai*, into which *F. Alexander Rhodes* of *Avignon* made his way thro' *Cochin-China*; and this kingdom, I am of opinion, cannot but border upon that of *Tibet*, newly discovered; which I am apt to believe, as well by reason of the extent and length of the land of *Tibet* and borders of *Lai*, because by the greatness and compas of these two kingdoms, it seems impossible that any other land should lie betwixt them; as also much more on account of what the same fathers who were there relate of *Tibet*, who report that the farthest province of *Tibet* eastward borders upon, and trades with a people, who sell them raw silk and fine dithes, like those of *China*, and such like commodities, which we know *Tunchim* abounds in, and sell them to the *Lais*.

The government. As to the government of this kingdom it is hereditary, and ruled as follows: The supreme regal dignity resides in one they call *Buna*; but he of himself does nothing at all, all things being left to his favourite, whom they call *Chiuua*, whose power is so absolute both in peace and war, that he is come by degrees to own no superior; the *Buna* remaining in his royal palace, quite cut off from all management of the publick affairs, satisfied with an exterior respect due to him as a sort of sacred person, and with the authority of making laws, and confirming all edicts. When the *Chiuua* dies, he always endeavours to have his son succeed him in the government; but for the most part it falls out that the tutors of those sons aspiring themselves to that dignity, endeavour to murder them, and by that means possess themselves of the dignity of *Chiuua*.

Power. The *Chiuua's* power is so great, that suitable to the bigness of the kingdom, he is able to bring into the field three or four times the number of men as the king of *Cochin-China*, whose army as was said above amounts to 80000 men. Nor is it any

difficult matter for the *Chiuua*, as often as he pleases, to raise 300000 armed men or more, because the prime lords of his kingdom, such as among us, dukes, marquesses, and earls, are oblig'd in time of war to furnish them at their own expence. The *Buna's* strength is not above 40000 men for his guard. Yet he is always own'd as superiour to the *Chiuua* of *Tunchim*, by the king of *Cochin-China*, and by that other *Chiuua*, we observ'd in the first book to be fled into the province bordering upon *China*, tho' these are continually at war against one another; and the king of *Lais* bordering upon *Tunchim*, pays him a certain tribute.

Therefore when we say this crown is hereditary, it is to be understood only in reference to the *buna* whose children always succeed, the royal race being continued in his family. This is as much as I thought fit briefly to say of the kingdom of *Tunchim*, from what I could learn of it till my return into *Europe*.

Since then I have been inform'd, that *F. Julian Baldinotte*, an Italian born at *Pistoria* in *Tuscany*, was sent into that kingdom to make some way for the gospel, and arriv'd from *Macao* at the city *Tunchim*, after a month's sail. As for what the said father found in that country, what pass'd between the king and him, the solemnity of his reception, and the first foundation he laid for Christianity, I refer the reader to the account given lately by that father himself; and we are still expecting fresh advices from the other fathers, as *F. Peter Marques* a Portuguese, and *F. Alexander Rhodes* of *Avignon*, who we said before had been in *Cochin-China* and are there still gaining Christians. We therefore hope both these kingdoms of *Tunchim* and *Cochin-China*, will soon be united to the flock of the church, acknowledging and giving the due obedience to the universal pastor and vicar of CHRIST our LORD on earth.

### THE CONCLUSION.

IT is not possible but that such as have least inclination to the discovery of the world, and are most affected to their own countries and homes, must be excited by this short account to desire to see not only the variety but the truth of such strange things, which tho' they be not supernatural, may yet be term'd miracles of nature. Such are those I have said I saw in *Cochin-China*, a land as to its climate and seasons of the year habitable, by reason of the fruitfulness of its soil abounding in provisions, fruit, birds, and beasts, and the sea, in choice and delicious fish; and most healthy, because of the excellent temper of the air,

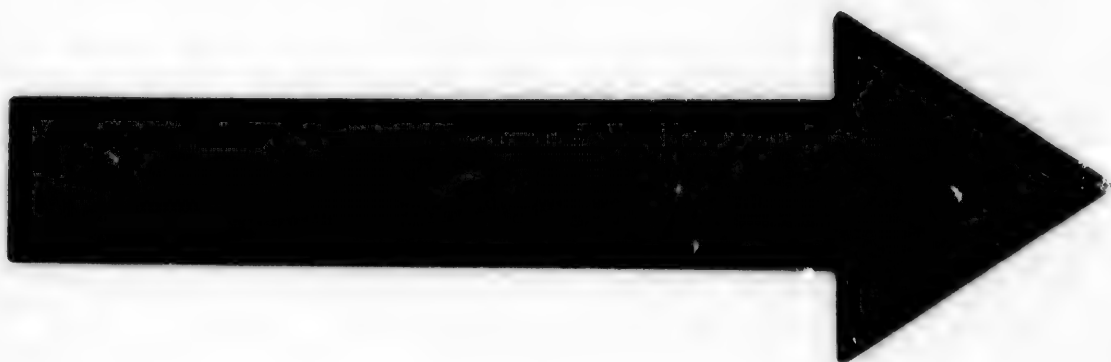
inasmuch that those people do not yet know what the plague is. It is rich in gold, silver, silk, *Calambé*, and other things of great value, fit for trade by reason of the ports and resort of all nations: peaceable, because of their loving, generous, and sweet disposition; and lastly secure, not only by the valour and bravery of the *Cochin-Chinezes* accounted such by other countries, and their store of arms, and skill in managing them; but even by nature, which has shut it in on the one side by the sea, and on the other by the rocky *Alps*, and uncouth mountains of the *Kemois*. This is that part of the earth call'd *Cochin-China*, which

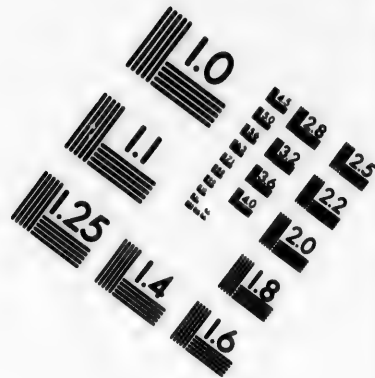
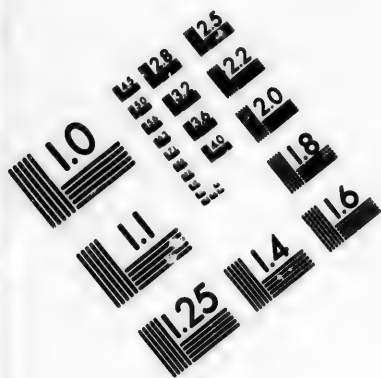
**BORRI.** which wants nothing to make it a part of heaven, but that God should send thither a great many of his angels, so S. *John Chrysostom* calls apostolical men, and preachers of the gospel. How easily would the faith be spread abroad in this kingdom of *Cochin-China*, where there are not those difficulties which we fathers of the society dispers'd about the *East*, do meet with in other countries; for there is no need here of being disguis'd or conceal'd, these people admitting of all strangers in their kingdom, and being well pleas'd that every one should live in his own religion. Nor is it necessary before preaching to spend many years in studying their letters and hieroglyphicks, as the fathers in *Cbina* do, for here it is enough to learn the language, which as has been said is so easie, that a man may preach in a year. The people are not shy, nor do they shun strangers, as is practis'd in other eastern nations, but make much of them, affect their persons, prize their commodities, and commend their doctrine.

They do not lie under that great impediment for the receiving the grace of the gospel, that is, the sin of sodomy, and others contrary to nature, which is frequent in all the other eastern countries, the very name whereof the *Cochin-Chinese* naturally abhor. In short, these people may very easily be taught the principal mysteries of our holy faith, they, as we have shewn, in a manner adoring but one only God, accounting the idols as inferior saints, allowing the immortality of the soul, eternal punishments for the wicked, and bliss for the

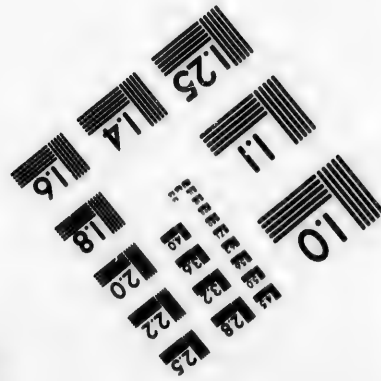
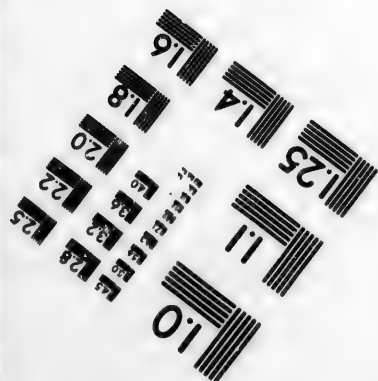
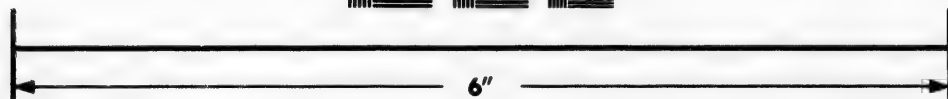
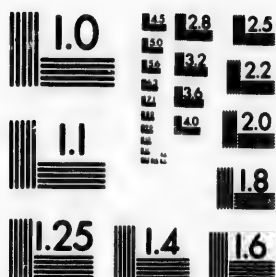
just, using temples, sacrifices, processions, so that changing the objects, it would be easie to introduce the worship. That there will be no difficulty in making out the mystery of the holy eucharist may appear by the distinction they make between the accidents and substance of the meat they provide for the dead, as has been said above in this second book. All these things inflame the minds of the children of the society, who tho' recluse and shut up in the colleges and provinces of *Europe*, have an ardent desire to convert the world. And tho' many of them put it in practice with the assistance of the holy see apostolick, which with a fatherly care relieves the mission of *Japan*; as also by his catholick majesty king *Philip*, and his council of the *Indies*, who so frequently with incredible bounty supply the *East* and *West-Indies* with ministers of the gospel, yet it is impossible that these two great pillars which support other mighty weights, and bear almost all the world on their shoulders, can sufficiently supply all that daily occurs and is discover'd. I therefore trust in God, that his Divine Providence will rouse up some generous soul, inflam'd with the zeal of God's honour, to send and maintain some evangelical ministers, who satisfy'd with a religious and poor sustenance, may convey the food of the gospel not only throughout *Cochin-China*, but unto the great kingdom of *Tuncbin*, founding a church and christian flock that may compare with the most renowned in the world.

F I N I S.





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4303





# INDEX

TO THE

## Second Volume.

<b>A.</b>	<b>Page 609</b>	<b>Arrecife, wrongly call'd Retif by the Dutch in Brasil</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>A BURENA Bay</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>Strengthened with Palisadoes</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Account of the proceedings of the Portuguese after their landing in Brasil</b>	<b>103</b>	<b>Reliev'd</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>Of the Portuguese forces</b>	<b>105</b>	<b>Close block'd up</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>Of their consultations and resolutions upon them</b>	<b>106</b>	<b>Articles of agreement betwixt Columbus and the rebels</b>	<b>595</b>
<b>Of 42 persons who perish'd by shipwreck near Spitzbergen</b>	<b>381</b>	<b>Other articles betwixt them</b>	<b>597</b>
<b>Of Greenland savages carry'd into Denmark</b>	<b>415</b>	<b>Arvore d'a Noite, or the Melancholy-tree</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>Of their boats, manner of using them, and attempts to return to Greenland</b>	<b>416</b>	<b>As its value and weight</b>	<b>691</b>
<b>Of Greenlanders beyond the mountains</b>	<b>419</b>	<b>Asbestinum linum</b>	<b>666</b>
<b>Asia kingdom and its towns</b>	<b>189</b>	<b>Affetida</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>Actions of the jesuits in Cochín-china</b>	<b>763</b>	<b>Afratan kingdom</b>	<b>492</b>
<b>Advertisements for wild heads</b>	<b>366</b>	<b>Astrology in great esteem in Cochín-china</b>	<b>755</b>
<b>Advice concerning the Portuguese insurrection in Brasil, and resolution of the Dutch council there</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>Atlantis, neither Hispaniola nor Cuba</b>	<b>510</b>
<b>Advice from cape S. Augustin</b>	<b>85</b>	<b>Attempts to discover before Columbus</b>	<b>314</b>
<b>Advice concerning philology</b>	<b>485</b>	<b>Atty, Aly-tree</b>	<b>252</b>
<b>Adulterers, their punishment in Cochín-china</b>	<b>737</b>	<b>Attingen country</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>Agati tree</b>	<b>251</b>	<b>Au, or fig trees</b>	<b>251</b>
<b>Agreement betwixt Dutch and Portuguese in Brasil, and approbation of it</b>	<b>37, 38</b>	<b>Away river in Brasil</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>The reasons for making of it</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>B.</b>	
<b>Aquila, or eagle wood</b>	<b>727</b>	<b>Baharen island, its pearl fishery</b>	<b>207</b>
<b>Akaju, a sort of wild apple</b>	<b>132</b>	<b>Baker sent by the Dutch as a spy, is seiz'd</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>Albuquerque his actions at Ormuz</b>	<b>203</b>	<b>Balachiam, a sauce in Cochín-china</b>	<b>726</b>
<b>His death</b>	<b>204</b>	<b>Baldpate fish</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>Ali, or water-flower</b>	<b>294</b>	<b>Baligata mountain</b>	<b>262</b>
<b>Alligators</b>	<b>611</b>	<b>Balsam of Copayba</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Aloe leaves their use among the Malabars</b>	<b>249</b>	<b>Bamboo Cane</b>	<b>286</b>
<b>Alu, or fig-tree</b>	<b>252</b>	<b>Bananas</b>	<b>724</b>
<b>Ambalamb tree</b>	<b>251</b>	<b>Banishment of the jesuits of Cochín-china</b>	<b>743</b>
<b>Ambona island and villages there</b>	<b>162, 163</b>	<b>Barbadoes island describ'd, its fruit and trees, number of inhabitants</b>	<b>363, 364</b>
<b>Its mountains, air and product</b>	<b>163</b>	<b>Barclay-Cape near Malata</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>Under whose jurisdiction it is: its fort: the manners and customs of the natives</b>	<b>166</b>	<b>Barclay-Fort in Brasil</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Their weapons, and women, courts of justice there, how it came under Ternate</b>	<b>166, 167</b>	<b>Barbolomew Columbus</b>	<b>504</b>
<b>How the Portuguese became masters of it</b>	<b>168</b>	<b>Bai's commission 105. He gives an account of his proceedings 106. Is sent to Itamarika</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>Amboinese fish</b>	<b>305</b>	<b>Batavia city in Java</b>	<b>265</b>
<b>Amfion, or opium</b>	<b>285</b>	<b>Its harbours</b>	<b>266</b>
<b>Amokoi, a sort of Nuyres, good soldiers</b>	<b>236</b>	<b>Its street, public buildings, the cross, church</b>	<b>266, 267</b>
<b>Amphor how much it contains</b>	<b>706</b>	<b>The town-house, and hospital for sick</b>	<b>267</b>
<b>Ananas fruit</b>	<b>289, &amp; 725</b>	<b>The spin-house, slaughter-houses, hall for sale of stuffs, city-stables</b>	<b>268, 269</b>
<b>Anchias kingdom</b>	<b>352</b>	<b>The Chinese hospital for sick and aged persons, the hospital for children</b>	<b>270</b>
<b>Angola kingdom</b>	<b>ibid.</b>	<b>The house of the Artisans, the rope-alley</b>	<b>270, 271</b>
<b>Anrae tree and fruit</b>	<b>288</b>	<b>The magazine of rice, the prawn-house, the fish-market, the rice, or corn-market</b>	<b>271, 272</b>
<b>Antes, a sort of beast in Brasil</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>The fowl and fruit-markets, the latin and greek school, the castle</b>	<b>272, 273</b>
<b>Antient measures no way to be found out but by antient monuments</b>	<b>681</b>	<b>The governor's house, houses of the council, armory</b>	<b>274</b>
<b>St. Antony island</b>	<b>148</b>	<b>The brick-works</b>	<b>ibid.</b>
<b>Antony Vaz's island</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>The out-works, the inhabitants</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>Antony de Oliveira's examination and confession</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>Chinese and Malabars there</b>	<b>275, 276</b>
<b>Antony Kriminatis his bravery, and death</b>	<b>258</b>	<b>The Moor, Amboyese, and Javanese there</b>	<b>276, 277</b>
<b>Ants, or Pimires</b>	<b>317</b>	<b>Foreigners their number. The government</b>	<b>278, 279</b>
<b>Apartments cut out of the solid rock in Egypt</b>	<b>668, 669</b>	<b>Ecclesiastical government. Original and rise of the city</b>	<b>279, 280</b>
<b>Apes and Monkeys</b>	<b>318, 319</b>	<b>Bravery of its governor</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>Apparitions of devils in Cochín-china</b>	<b>761</b>	<b>Is besieg'd by the Javanese</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>Appel, or Nalla Appella tree</b>	<b>251</b>	<b>Its out-works</b>	<b>ibid.</b>
<b>Arabian romantic account of the Pyramids</b>	<b>660, 661</b>	<b>Bat of Malabar</b>	<b>256</b>
<b>Archbishop of Bremen metropolitan of the North</b>	<b>401</b>	<b>Of Brasil</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Ardemira plain in Ormuz</b>	<b>197</b>	<b>Of other parts of India</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>Areaja tree</b>	<b>254</b>		<b>Battle</b>
<b>Areca</b>	<b>ibid.</b>		

# Index to the Second Volume.

Battle betwixt <i>Rodol</i> and <i>Jeremy</i>	341	<i>Carique</i> apprehended, makes his escape	616
At <i>Rottenfou</i> , p. 342. <i>Engliſh</i> in this battle,	ibid.	<i>Calamba</i> odoriferous wood	727
Bears mountain in <i>Greenland</i>	369	<i>Calmut Tartars</i>	492
<i>Belem</i> river	614	<i>Cambala</i> , the ſame as <i>Peking</i>	493, 494
Beneficial ſport	723	<i>Gambara</i> iſland taken by the <i>Dutch</i>	187
Benjamin tree	285	<i>Cambia</i> country deſcrib'd	349
Benzooin tree	ibid.	Camellions eaten	726
Betel plant	290	Camomil tree	293
Billimbin, or <i>Blimbina</i> fruit	302	Can fruit	724
Biobi ſerpent	17	Canary tree	293
Birds of <i>Braſil</i>	21	Canoes	530
Of <i>Java</i>	312	Pals from <i>Jamaica</i> to <i>Hiſpaniola</i>	621
Of prey	314	Two vaſt ones	535
Like quails	315	Canonization of heathen <i>Cochin-chineſes</i>	749
In <i>Greenland</i>	425	Cape of <i>Good-hope</i>	150
Birds, ſea-weeds, and other tokens ſeen by <i>Columbuſ</i>	525	Capt. <i>Blair</i> ſent aboard the <i>Dutch</i> ſhips with ſome troops	69
Birds and tortoiſes in the <i>Weſt-India</i> iſlands	560	<i>Caracajal</i> ſuſpected, yet truſted	593
Bitter fiſh	308	<i>Caravara-Bay</i> , and product of the country	609
Bitter green plant	302	<i>Cardamoms</i>	284
Blue beans in <i>Java</i>	283	Carps	310
Blue plums	304	<i>Cafan</i> kingdom	492
Blockade of <i>S. Antonio</i> rais'd	70	<i>Cafſian</i> ſea deſcrib'd	348
Bloody empreſs	350	<i>Catcha</i> town	614
Blower fiſh	309	<i>Catcha</i> river	610
Boa Kamba, or <i>Indian</i> pears	300	Caterpillars	317
Boa Malaca fruit	293	Cattle of <i>Braſil</i>	24
<i>Bocaiſſa</i> , where lepers are cured, and how	581	Cauſe of the interruption of commerce with <i>Greenland</i>	410
Bears tame and wild	320	Cauſe of the perſecution in <i>Cochin-china</i>	743
Boca Bidara, or Moſſam fruit	298	Champangam tree	255
Boca del Drago	586	Champangad flower	295
Boenga Mera plant	305	Characters of the <i>Egyptians</i>	671
Boitrapo ſerpent	17	Charity of <i>Japoſeſe</i> chriſtians	744
Bold adventure to the deſtruction of the adventurer	415	<i>Charlton</i> iſland	461
<i>Bom ſucceſſo</i> village in <i>Braſil</i>	8	Chavana Mandara tree	253
Bone fiſh	308	<i>Cheepi</i> , king of <i>Egypt</i> his monument	605
Bonito fiſh	310	Chevique lenga fruit	249
<i>Borri</i> in <i>Cochin-china</i>	744	<i>Chinese</i> tomb at <i>Batavia</i>	282
<i>Bucadilla</i> judge of <i>Hiſpaniola</i>	600	<i>Chinese</i> fiſh	308
<i>Buxbar</i> , <i>Tartars</i>	493	<i>Chineseſe</i> ſhelter themſelves in the iſlands of <i>Ey</i> and <i>Queymay</i> , attack <i>Teywan</i> , engagement betwixt them and the <i>Dutch</i> , the <i>Dutch</i> fly	170
<i>Buſſes</i>	126	They ſend deputies to no effect; the <i>Chineseſe</i> attack their fort and are repulſ'd	171, 172
<i>Buſſiſſe</i>	278	They ſend a meſſage to the beſieg'd, and kill the <i>Dutch</i> priſoners	172, 173
<i>Buoro</i> , or <i>Buero</i> iſland	160	Repulſe a ſally of the beſieg'd	173
<i>Bramins</i> in their ſect 195 and 253. Their feaſts, ſeveral forts of them	234	Renew their attack and are repulſ'd	ibid.
<i>Braſil</i> deſcrib'd, its ſituation, extent and diviſion	7	<i>Chriſtian</i> the fiſh king of <i>Denmark</i> , his endeavours to recover <i>Greenland</i>	413
its excellency	31	Chriſtianity when firſt in <i>Iſland</i>	387
Wholeſomeſs of its climate	ibid.	Chriſtians find good reception among the <i>Indians</i>	614
Its flouriſhing ſtate, its decay and the reaſon, 35, 96	35, 96	Churches erected in <i>Cochin-china</i>	742
Its fertility	131	Citizens of <i>Arrecife</i> petition for pulling down prince <i>Maurice's</i> houſe	94
Its trade, the peopling of it, and free inhabitants.	ibid.	Clove tree 164. Royal clove	165
The jews, ſlaves and blacks	156	<i>Cochin</i> beſieg'd by the <i>Dutch</i> , and the ſiege rais'd, 218	218
The natives	ibid.	Beſieg'd again by them, and taken	220
<i>Braſil</i> wood	132	Deſcrib'd	221
<i>Braſilian</i> commanders ſummon'd	105	<i>Cochin-china</i> , its name, bounds, extent	722
<i>Braſilians</i> reſolve to leave <i>Itamarika</i>	113	Its diviſion, ſeaſons	722, 723
They depart from the ſorts near the <i>Arrecife</i> , ibid.	ibid.	Cattle, fowl and fiſh	725, 726
Their food and drink	134	All the natives wear ſilk, their building	726, 727
Their cloathing	138	Their houſes, its great wealth	727
Their houſhold ſtuff	139	All nations admitted to trade there	740
Their weapons, way of counting their age, and religion	139, 140	<i>Cochin-chineſeſe</i> , the colour and diſpoſition of their bodies, civility, liberality	730
Their diſtempers and remedies, their child-bearing, how they welcome their friends	149, 150	Their breeding, faſhion of cloaths, they never cut hair nor nails	731, 732
Bridge between the <i>Arrecife</i> and iſland of <i>Antony Vaz</i> in <i>Braſil</i>	18	Their ſcholars and diet	732
Ba-pariti tree	253	Their treats, drink	733
Buffaloes of <i>Java</i>	320	Physicians, way of practice, medicines, bleeding, ſurgeons	734
<i>Bul, rate</i> and admiral <i>Litchbars</i> ſent to cape <i>S. Auguſtina</i> . Their actions	84	Their ſkill in cannon and ſmall fire-arms	737
<i>Bulfrate</i> ſent to <i>Itamarika</i>	101	<i>Cochin-chineſeſe</i> aſtrological terms, and ours alike	755
(His proceedings)	ibid. & 111	<i>Cava</i> trees	134, 144
Burning of a church in <i>Cochin-china</i>	744	Codfiſh	307
<i>Buſa</i> in <i>Tranſſylvania</i> , overthrowſ <i>Myſſes</i>	140	Coin of <i>Tenedos</i> remarkable	698
Aſſiſts <i>Rodol</i> in <i>Walachia</i>	ibid.	Coins of ſeveral places	698
Butterflies	315	Colony on the continent abandon'd	619
Button-flower	286	<i>Columbuſ</i>	
<i>C. Abo Verde</i> iſlands	C.		
<i>Cacique</i> , or <i>Indian</i> king	536		

# Index to the Second Volume.

<i>Columbus</i> his original and name	502	He abdicates the government of the <i>Dutch Brasil</i> , and takes his leave	43
No certainty of his parentage	504	Courte to <i>Greenland</i>	409 & 413
Description of his person	506	Crab, or wild plums	298
He serves under another of the same name, comes to <i>Portugal</i> and marries	508	<i>Craqueur</i> taken by the <i>Dutch</i> , destroy'd, description of it	218
Goes into <i>Spain</i>	519	Crawfish	310
Meets with many disappointments. His demands, they are granted	522	Creeping beans of <i>Java</i>	296
He sets out and arrives at <i>Gomera</i>	523	<i>Crim Tartars</i> court, his houses and carts	344, 345
Sails to the westward	524	His entertainment of ambassadors	346
Alters his course	528	How he raises an army	347
Discovers several islands	529	The manner of his wars, how he divides the spoil, how he serves the great <i>Turk</i>	ibid.
Loses his ship	537	Crocodiles in <i>Brasil</i>	25
Returns towards <i>Spain</i>	541	Crooked back fish	307
Arrives at the <i>Azores</i>	542	Crosses the hieroglyphick of life everlasting	647
Arrives at <i>Lisbon</i> , refuses to quit his vessel, is nobly receiv'd by the king of <i>Portugal</i>	544	Crows	314
Returns to <i>Pales</i> , his reception at <i>Borlousa</i>	546	Cruel design of <i>Blacks</i>	316
His letters patent	547	<i>Cuba</i> island	532
They are confirm'd	548	A town in it	533
His second voyage	549	Its coast	558
He arrives at the <i>Canaries</i>	ibid.	<i>Cubebis</i> fruit	284
At <i>Hispaniola</i>	553		
His journey to the mines	555	D. Danger of <i>Greenland</i> adventurers	410
Goes to discover	557	<i>Danish Greenland</i> Company	417
Is imbay'd	561	<i>Danish</i> measure	412
Returns to <i>Spain</i>	578	Dap-Daf, or Pap-Dap fruit	291
Sails again to discover, and recovers a <i>Spanish</i> ship,	581	Dallen island	155
Discovers the coast of <i>Paria</i>	585	Date tree	289
Is sent to <i>Spain</i> in irons	601	<i>Devis's</i> gulph	414
Discharg'd there and well receiv'd at court,	602	<i>Edulontas</i>	296
His fourth voyage, he foresees a great storm, and is refus'd admittance into <i>Hispaniola</i>	603, 604	Debates of the <i>Dutch</i> about attacking the <i>Portuguese</i>	113
All his ships escape the storm	604	About their proceedings	122
Discovers along the continent	ibid.	Delays in <i>Columbus's</i> affairs	581
Sails away for <i>Spain</i> , leaving a colony on the continent	617	Delicious country	535
His care to prevent disorders, he runs his ship aground	620	<i>Denarius</i> , what it was as a coin	691
Returns into <i>Spain</i>	627	<i>Denarius consularis</i> , its weight	697
Dies	628	<i>Denarius Caesaris</i>	708
Complaints against <i>Columbus</i>	600	Deputies sent by the <i>Dutch</i> to the <i>Tapeyers</i> , and success of their negotiation	100
<i>Camerin</i> cape	192	Deputies sent by the <i>Dutch</i> to the governor of <i>Babia</i> , their instructions	61
Computations at sea differ	527	They arrive at <i>Babia</i> , are admitted to audience, their propositions	ibid.
Conception island	531	The governor's answer	62
<i>Conchas</i> cape	587	Their second audience, and governor's second answer, a reply to them	63
Conclusion of <i>Borris's</i> account of <i>Cochin-china</i>	337	They take their leave, their return to <i>Arrecife</i>	64
Conferences of the <i>Dutch</i>	124	Description of unknown parts of <i>Africa</i>	351
<i>Congius</i> , how much it contain'd	705	Desperate sea-fight	331
<i>Congo</i> kingdom	352	Diet of the men wintering at <i>Winter's</i> forest	459
Conjugal affection of an <i>Indian</i>	534	<i>Digg's</i> island	436
Consequence of <i>Rio Grande</i> to the <i>Dutch</i>	112	<i>Ding</i> island destitute of inhabitants	185
Considerations about loss of time	357	<i>Digo Lopez Leite</i> examin'd by the <i>Dutch</i>	57
Conspiracy against <i>Columbus</i>	555	Directions in comparing the value of coins	719
Conspiracy of the <i>Indians</i> in <i>Hispaniola</i> to destroy the <i>Spaniards</i>	590	Diseases among the men wintering in <i>Winter's</i> forest	459
Consultations of the <i>Dutch</i> about removing several garisons to <i>Arrecife</i>	98	<i>Disabacca</i> sea describ'd	343
For the safety of <i>Itamarika</i>	102	<i>Dominica</i> island	550
About scarcity of provisions	112	Drado fish	311
About the relief of <i>Itamarika</i>	115	Dou-onta shrub	296
About drawing all their forces to <i>Arrecife</i>	89	Drachma, a silver coin	694
Continuation of the history of <i>Virginia</i> , <i>Summer-islands</i> and <i>New-England</i>	354	Drachma weight	698
Their state, number of planters, condition of the <i>Savages</i> , increase of cattle and poultry, plenty of corn, their drink, servants diet, arms, and exercise, health and discoveries	355, 356	Dronce, or Dodaers bird	313
Conversion of a heathen priest	758	Ducks	314
Conversion of a great lady in <i>Cochin-china</i>	751	Duck foot flower	298
Her carriage to her husband	752	Durian fruit	205, 724
Conversions by means of an eclipse	756	<i>Durni Cacique</i>	614
Other converts	758	<i>Dutch</i> banish'd all <i>Cochin-china</i>	740
Cormorants	214	<i>Dutch</i> , what they possess'd in <i>Brasil</i>	8 & 33
<i>Cosimo</i> , mares milk	345	Miscary in their design on the <i>Spanish</i> plate fleet	34
<i>Cotton</i> of <i>Bengala</i>	294	Their ships order'd to <i>Babia</i>	ibid.
Councils, directions to the <i>Dutch</i> at <i>Arrecife</i> , they equip some ships	74	Their camp in <i>Brasil</i> remov'd to <i>Moribaka</i>	53
Cover'd <i>Canoes</i>	605	Those at <i>Itamarika</i> reinforce'd	55
Count <i>Maurice's</i> letter to the viceroy of <i>Brasil</i>	35	Their fall in <i>Brasil</i>	56
		Their council in <i>Brasil</i> recal their ships from the <i>Red Land</i>	58
		They debate whether they shall employ the <i>Tapeyers</i> of <i>Brasil</i>	68
		Their admiral sets sail from <i>Arrecife</i>	77
		They fight and work the <i>Portuguese</i> fleet	78
		<i>Dutch</i>	

# Index to the Second Volume.

<i>Brazil</i> , 43 99 & 413 298 Description 218 310 296 344, 445 346 347 the Spoil, ibid. 25 307 647 314 216 332 333 358 284  410 417 413 291 155 289 414 296 <i>Portuguese</i> 113 122 581 535 691 697 708 and suc- 100 of <i>Babia</i> , 61 ence, their ibid. 62 second an- 63 reife, 64 354 331 459 436 185 57 719 forest 459 343 350 311 296 694 698 313 314 298 202, 724 614 740 8 & 33 fleet, 34 ibid. 53 53 56 from the 59 <i>Tapestry</i> 68 77 78 <i>Dutch</i>	<i>Dutch</i> prisoners carry'd to <i>Babia</i> , committed to pri- son, suffer for want of victuals, are provided, have audience of the governor 92, 93 Are discharg'd, sent to <i>Tercera</i> , thence to <i>Portugal</i> , and arrive in <i>Holland</i> 93, 94 <i>Dutch</i> defeat the <i>Portuguese</i> , attack them again with- out success 104 Attack them without success 107 Their parties sent abroad without success 108 Go out for provisions unsuccessfully 110 Attempt the recovery of the river of St. <i>Francis</i> 120. Are defeated there 122 Lose a ship to the <i>Chinese</i> 172 Miscarry in their design of carrying off a <i>Chinese</i> ship ibid. Defend themselves to the utmost in the island <i>Formosa</i> 174 Murder'd by the people of <i>Palinbam</i> in <i>Sumatra</i> 188 Their fleet goes up the river of <i>Palinbam</i> , ibid. returns to <i>Batavia</i> 189 Their design against the coast of <i>Malabar</i> 214 They land near <i>Cranganer</i> 217 <i>Dutch</i> lose all <i>Brazil</i> 145 Dutter plant 294 Diet of the <i>Tartars</i> and their slaves 344  E. EARL of <i>Brissel's</i> island 444 Earl of <i>Danby's</i> island 446 Echo in the <i>Pyramids</i> 663 Ecclesiastical state of the <i>Dutch Brazil</i> when they were there, their church council 32 Eclipse of the Moon 398. and 448. Eclipse more truly foretold by the Jesuit, than by the <i>Cochin- chinese</i> astrologers 756 Eclipse of the sun mistaken 757 <i>Edda</i> , to the islanders call their mythology, or expla- nation of their fables 388 Eels 306 <i>Egyptians</i> more careful of their tombs than of their houses 650 Eggs strangely hatch'd 382 Elengi tree 255 Elephants their age, they carry by land and water, they help up passengers, how they sleep, their vast strength 728. Their trunk, their great sense, they understand what is said 728, 729. How they are corrected: they are now useless in war 730 Elephants nose fish 307 Embassador of <i>Cochin-china</i> instructed in Christianity 753. Convinc'd about polygamy, and converted 753, 754 Embassadors from the court of <i>Sagua</i> in <i>Africa</i> , ad- mitted to audience by the <i>Dutch</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 42 Emu bird in <i>Java</i> 311 Encounter of <i>Turks</i> and <i>Christians</i> 334 <i>English</i> penny, how its weight has been alter'd, 716 Ensign <i>Slutenisky</i> sent abroad, and his account 53 Envoys sent by the <i>Dutch</i> into the <i>Portuguese Brazil</i> , and their instructions 43 Their arrival at St. <i>Salvador</i> , and first, second and third audience 44 Their return to <i>Arrecife</i> 45 Their report to the council ibid. Error of some sea charts 605 Errors of those that seek the originals of nations 391 Errors of the <i>Cochin-chinese</i> 761 Evulsions of the <i>Portuguese</i> 56 <i>Ey</i> and <i>Quaymy</i> islands 170  F. <i>Fabas de Moura</i> , or <i>Moor's</i> beans 296 Fabulous accounts of <i>Pyramids</i> 658 False alarm, at <i>Arrecife</i> 73 False witnesses how punish'd in <i>Cochin-china</i> 736 Familiar spirits among the islanders 386 Famine at <i>Arrecife</i> 115 <i>Farinha de pas</i> , how prepar'd 127 Fathers settled in <i>Cochin-china</i> 746 Question'd concerning a governor's soul 750 Are in distress and disperse ibid.  <i>Fernandina</i> island 531 <i>Fernando de Noronha</i> island 6 <i>Fernando Vale</i> examin'd by the <i>Dutch</i> 58 <i>Fez</i> describ'd 351 Fierce <i>Indians</i> 540 Fierce wild cat 609 Fight with two <i>Turkish</i> ships 4 Fire engines of the people of <i>Sumatra</i> 187 They prove unsuccessful 188 Fire in the <i>Dutch</i> soldiers quarters 121 Fire flies 317 Fireworks, their effect 233 Fishery encourag'd 111 Fish in <i>Brazil</i> 22 Fishing, a pretty way 560 Five-finger fish 309 Five-eyes fish 310 Flamingos fowl 151 Flat fish 307 Fleet equip'd in <i>Holland</i> for relief of <i>Brazil</i> 116 Flamming the <i>Dutch</i> lieutenant order'd to retire to S. <i>Antonio</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 68 Floating islands 513 Flood sudden and dangerous 613 Flounder 307 Flying cat 312 Flying fish 309 Flying snake 316 Fogo island 582 Fokki-fokke fruit 283 Food of the <i>Indians</i> 534 <i>Forkish's</i> voyage to <i>Greenland</i> 412 Fork-tail fish 309 <i>Formosa</i> island 174 In natives, their clothing, food, women: these till the ground, the men hunt 174, 175 Their houses, utensils, government, age in esteem among them, their marriages, justice 175, 176 Their weapons and religion 176 Fort <i>Frederick Henry</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 12 Fort <i>Erasmus</i> in <i>Brazil</i> ibid. Fort <i>William</i> in <i>Brazil</i> ibid. Fort <i>Bruin</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 14 Fort <i>Victoria</i> 166 Fort <i>Waardenburgh</i> in <i>Brazil</i> ibid. Fort built, and men left by <i>Columbus</i> in <i>Hispaniola</i> , 538 Forts in the hands of the <i>Dutch</i> , and those in the hands of the <i>Portuguese</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 124 Fortifications of <i>Maurice</i> town in <i>Brazil</i> enlarg'd, 52 Fourteen ships bound for <i>Spain</i> cast away 604 Fray with the <i>Indians</i> 540 <i>Friedrich</i> second king of <i>Denmark</i> endeavours to re- cover <i>Greenland</i> 411 Frogs in <i>Java</i> 317 Fula Mogori 304 Fulo de Sapato, or single and double Shoe flower, 298 Fulo island 323 Fusileers, a company of them erected by the <i>Dutch</i> , 101 Four companies of them 105  G. Alleys, scimitars and horses of <i>Cochin-china</i> 737 <i>Gamron</i> city 192 Ganchi tree 249 <i>Garassou</i> river in <i>Brazil</i> 26 Garden of count <i>Maurice</i> in <i>Brazil</i> 13 <i>Gerde</i> , a town in <i>Greenland</i> 401 <i>Garfman</i> sent to <i>Rio Grande</i> 107 Advice from him 109 He is secur'd ibid. Summons the <i>Tapeyers</i> without orders 112 Garison of cape S. <i>Augustine</i> , what become of it 91 Garisons of three <i>Dutch</i> forts oblig'd to surrender, and carry'd to <i>Babia</i> 99 Geese 314 Gekko, or <i>Indian</i> salamander, a poisonous creature, 15 <i>Geldria</i> fort in <i>India</i> 213 General pardon in <i>Hispaniola</i> 594 <i>Giacca</i> vid. <i>Jacca</i> Guoo fruit 724 Goa 192 Goats 9 & 102
--	---



## Index to the Second Volume.

Gods of <i>Java</i>	320	Their tongue, stupidity, marriages, religion	100
Gods of <i>Egypt</i>	77	Divers nations of them	114
Gold mines of <i>Uvira</i>	614	<i>Hottentot's</i> fish	131
Goldfinch, or Linnet	316	<i>Hottentot's</i> hope	488
<i>Gamron</i> city in <i>Perfia</i> describ'd, its houses, streets,		<i>Hudja's</i> , ,	425
scarcity of fresh water	192	<i>Hudja's</i> freights, the inhabitants about them	423
Unwholomness of the air, stifling winds, trade of		Breadth of the freights	423
the inhabitants	193	Hunters bird in <i>Java</i>	313
Their disposition, clothing and diet	194	Huntman's tree	301
Gondola bean	296	Houie, Capt. <i>James</i> and his men winter'd in, describ'd	443
Good visions in <i>Cochin-china</i>	761		443
Good news out of <i>Parayba</i>	57	Houies of <i>Greenland</i>	412
Goodness of a <i>Cochin-china</i> governor	746	Hurricanes	361
His grandeur and affection to the jews	ibid.	Hypocrite idolatrous priest detected and punish'd	743
His death	748		
His funeral	749		
<i>Gotha Lindemau</i> a <i>Dane</i> Gills to <i>Greenland</i>	413		
Governor of <i>S. Salvadore's</i> letter to the <i>Dutch</i>	45	<b>J</b> Abiru Guacu, a bird in <i>Brasyl</i>	73
Governor of <i>Bahia's</i> letter to the <i>Dutch</i> council	46	Jacks of <i>Malabar</i>	256
Governor of <i>Gamron</i>	196	Other Jackals	151
Governor of <i>Hispansia</i> his base practices	624	<i>Jackal</i> rabbit, treacherously kill'd	169
<i>Gviana</i> , town and river in <i>Brasyl</i>	26	<i>Jack Kerstlin's</i> fish	307
Condition of the town	29	Jackal insect	317
<i>Gracias a Dios</i> cape	607	<i>Jamaica's</i> , its coast	559
Great districts	561: 615	Its great beauty	562
Great heat of <i>India</i>	732	Jambo fruit	248: 283: 287
Great cures	734	Jambo tree	203
Great mispition	304	Jambolan fruit	204
Græc's method for ascertaining the quantity of the		<i>James</i> (Captain) sets out on his voyage to discover	
<i>Roman</i> foot	684	the north west passage	432
<i>Greenland</i> new and old	399: 402	In great danger with the ice	433: 434
<i>Greenland</i> describ'd, its latitude	ibid.	Strikes upon a rock, without hurt	439
Receives Christianity	401	After much beating in storms, and escaping great	
Uncertain whether it is a continent or island	421	dangers, he runs his ship aground in an island, 450	
Grunting fish two kinds	306: 307	Sinks her down	451
<i>Guadalupe</i> island	530	Builds conveniences ashore, and fetches all things	
Its product	531	from aboard	451: 454
Gudgeons	310	Puts to sea again	467
Guides in <i>Tartary</i>	348	Comes into <i>Hudja's</i> freights	474
Gunsners treacherous	715	Returns to <i>England</i>	475
Gwira bird	314	<i>Jaret</i> island	209
Gwira	314	<i>Jaron</i> , or white violet	304
		<i>Java</i> island has two kingdoms, its cities, manners and	
		customs of the natives, their clothing, religion, its	
		fertility, the air and seasons	204
		Its trees, plants and flowers, fruits of the earth, 284	
		<i>Javanese</i> rotanga	288
		<i>Javanese</i> turnips	209
		<i>Javanese</i> flower	301
		<i>Javara</i> serpent	17
		<i>Jiara</i> adder	ibid.
		<i>Jiboboka</i> serpent	ibid.
		<i>Jibacoa</i> serpent	ibid.
		Ice of several colours	400
		Ice shoals, how to escape them	410
		Ice in <i>Charlton</i> island, how it broke away	465
		<i>Yedo</i> , capital of <i>Japan</i> burnt	498
		<i>Jelats</i> first taught Christianity in <i>Cochin-china</i>	741
		<i>Jesus</i> did not imbalm the dead	649
		Ignorance of pilots carries some ships to the west of	
		<i>Hispansia</i>	591
		Imbalmng of the <i>Egyptians</i>	646
		Imperial island	157
		<i>Imabi</i> and <i>Uucabi</i> in <i>Cochin-china</i>	762
		Indian almond tree	288
		Indian antiquities	567
		Indian betony tree	299
		Indian clad	361
		Indian dog's tongue	302
		Indian eels	300
		Indian garden herbs	283
		Indian grass	300
		Indian king sides with the <i>Spaniards</i>	685
		Indian manner of fighting	615
		Indian oak	295
		Indian primprint	300
		Indian policy	613
		Indian saffron or barbori	299
		Indian sage	300
		Indian saints	591
		Indian set ashore in <i>Hispansia</i>	153

# Index to the Second Volume.

ion 461  
154  
151  
448  
443  
422  
421  
341  
301  
a, describ'd  
444  
412  
361  
nib'd, 741  
  
22  
286  
256  
151  
109  
307  
317  
559  
564  
283, 287  
203  
298  
to discover  
418  
433, 434  
439  
aping great  
island, 450  
451  
a all things  
451, 454  
467  
471  
475  
289  
294  
anners and  
eligion, its  
264  
earth, 283  
288  
299  
301  
17  
ibid.  
ibid.  
ibid.  
400  
410  
465  
498  
na 741  
649  
he west of  
501  
646  
157  
704  
288  
567  
299  
501  
308  
300  
283  
300  
685  
615  
295  
300  
613  
299  
300  
195  
553  
Indian

Indian forest 285  
Indian twine 609  
Indian tree house look 290  
Indian veronica ibid.  
Indian verbene 300  
Indian wines 613  
Indians come freely aboard *Columbus* 553, 585  
Fail to supply the *Spaniards* in *Jamaica* 623  
Indians living upon fish 560  
Indians why they revolted 564  
100000 of them defeated 565  
Indians of *Hispánola*, whence they say they came, 567  
How they found the way to make women 569  
How they say the sea was made 570  
Their opinion of the dead, and the figure they assign the devil 571  
Their cures of the sick 572  
Their punishment of physicians, their *Cymis* or idols 573  
Other follies of theirs 575  
How they were converted 578  
Indians of *Carriari* civilis'd 608  
Indians attack a new colony on the continent, and kill all the *Spaniards* in their boats 617  
Indians aboard *Columbus*, some swim ashore, others hang themselves 618  
Indigo 150  
Infinite number of small islands 559  
Infinite number of tortoises, crabs, and butterflies 561  
Inhuman act of provensals 331  
*Injams*, or byrr roots 303  
Insects of *Brasil* 21  
Inundations in *Cochin-china* 723  
*Jahn Vieira* accus'd of treason 111  
Executed ibid.  
*Jar*, or *Jober* kingdoms, disposition of the natives, their clothing 184  
*Joseph* imbalin'd in *Egypt* 649  
Journal of seven sailors left in *Greenland* 367  
Of seven others left in *Spiritzbergen* 379  
*Jubilla* island 532  
*Jubilla* the first colony in the *West Indies* 554  
*Juland* describ'd 383  
Its name, mountains, springs, a strange lake in it, 384  
No buying or selling there, but only bartering, 385  
It was formerly divided into four provinces 386  
Its government ibid.  
The manners and qualities of the natives, 387, 388  
Their manner of building 389  
Their bishops, chess play, and dialect ibid.  
Their true founder 390  
Their chronicles 393  
Island of *St. Paul* in one degree of north latitude, 5  
*Israhites*, shepherds 637  
*Israhites* supply'd 109  
Ity Abu-tree 251  
Jumpers 316  
*Jupiniani*'s history false 504

K.  
*K Aso*, or *Herba Pica* 129  
*Kapivaribi* river 12  
Kabos fish 307  
Kadlang pease 296  
Kael fish 306  
Kalkotten pala tree 250  
Kalkhan river 320  
Kalinana serpent 17  
Kanimam tree 254  
Kanchenapou 253  
Kakkerlacken, or *Kakalackas* 317  
Kappok tree 292  
Karambolas fruit 298  
Karappa, or round fish 309  
Karkapuli fruit 248  
Kasjou fruit 129  
Katambalam tree 251  
Kassian beans 305  
Kassipiri flower 287  
Kayelle bay 160

*Kaulon* first taken by the *Dutch* 69  
*Killa* island 146  
Kindness of the *Indians* to the *Spaniards* 538  
King of *Cochin-china*'s power 257  
King of *Danmark*'s adventures into *Greenland* 414, 415  
Kings of *Denmark* 411  
Kings of *Juda*, their reigns 640  
Kings fish 306  
*Kijna* river in *India* 214  
Kijp fish 307  
Kneffon fish ibid.  
Kocklan puli tree 249  
Kokoy, a bird in *Brasil* 214, 314  
*Kolay* in *India* taken by the *Dutch* 215  
Kolbiy bird 314  
Kolnil tree 254  
Koikas plant 299  
Korets fish 308  
*Koulang* describ'd 219  
*Koulang* cape 232  
Kuanonga tree 295  
Kuchuparii tree 251  
Kukuroku serpent 16  
Kurodjala tree 247

L.  
Labyrinth in *Egypt* 633  
Lamprey 307  
Land fort in *Brasil* 14  
Language of *Cochin-china* 736  
Langsap fruit 297  
*La Roch* (captain) relieves *Smith* 311  
Lasting Runick letters 406  
Leaping fish 309  
Learning in *Cochin-china* 735  
Letters from *Vieira* to merchants in the *Dutch Brasil* 119  
Left by captain *James* in *Charleston* island 476  
To *Columbus* concerning the discovery of the *West Indies* 511, 512  
From the *Dutch* great council of *Brasil* to the *West-India* company 47  
Of intelligence to the *Dutch* council of *Brasil* 48  
From the *Dutch* great council to the governor of *Bahia* 62  
Seiz'd and communicated to the *Dutch* council, 71  
Sent to the *Dutch* council 74  
Their contents 75. Debates of the council upon them ibid.  
From the council to the *Portuguese* admiral 76  
To the *Dutch* council from *Rio Grande* 77  
From the *Dutch* admiral to the council 78  
From the *Portuguese* admiral to *Andrew Vidal*, 79  
From *Andrew Vidal* to the *Portuguese* admiral, ibid.  
From *Vidal* to the *Dutch* council 80  
From the *Portuguese* commanders to the *Dutch* council 83  
From the governor of *Bahia* concerning the taking of the cape of *Pantal* 86  
From the *Portuguese* commanders to admiral *Parayba* ibid.  
From *Andrew Vidal* to the *Dutch* council, and their answer 88, 89  
To the *Dutch* council out of *Parayba* 89  
Other letters of *Portuguese* 87, 88  
*Liabart* the *Dutch* admiral dies 121  
Lights seen about the mast in a storm 3  
*Linga* island 181  
Living creatures of *Malabar* 255  
Lobsters 311  
Locusts 317  
Longitude, an appendix concerning it 489  
Lory bird 315  
*Lynx*, a fierce creature 318

M.  
*Macassar* Fox 318  
*Macassar* foldiers 277  
Macer, or macre tree 247  
*Madian* mountain near *Malacca* 180  
*Madure*, its seven sea-ports, their inhabitants 257  
*Magnus*

## Index to the Second Volume.

<i>Agave</i> , king of <i>Norway</i> , and <i>Erick</i> of <i>Denmark</i> , con- quer <i>Greenland</i>	40	<i>Monstrous</i> island	503
<i>Maize</i> , or <i>Indian</i> wheat	307	Monstrous fish	503
<i>Makandou</i> tree	306	Monstrous visions in <i>Cocbin china</i>	68
<i>Makassar</i> soldiers	278	Monuments where the Roman foot is preter'd	68
<i>Malabar</i> coast, its limits, division, product	232	Mony island	321
Its air, seasons, houses, how the people eat and drink	232, 233	Moringo tree	209
They use opium	233	<i>Morisco</i> its description	350
The common people there	237	Morokko tree	209
How they were converted, return to <i>Paganism</i> , are reconcil'd to the church	237, 238	Mortality among the <i>Blacks</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	30
<i>Mahometans</i> among them	239	<i>Mojos</i> , when he liv'd	618
The government	ibid.	Moult bebet plant	28
Burials of the kings, a peculiar way of theirs of taking an oath	240, 241	Mountains in <i>Ormus</i>	117
Their marriages and writing	241, 242	Mouth of a river choak'd with sand	149
Their religious worship	242	<i>Mojos</i> besieges <i>Regal</i>	149
Product of the country	244	<i>Muñ Hamet</i> , king or great aemir of <i>Barbary</i> , his love to <i>Englishmen</i>	350
<i>Malacca</i> country and city	177	<i>Millet</i>	308
When taken by the <i>Portugueses</i> , attack'd, and taken by the <i>Dutch</i> , its original	177, 178	<i>Ment</i> the <i>Dane</i> , his voyage to discover a passage be- twixt <i>Greenland</i> and <i>America</i>	423
Its trade	178	He comes to anchor betwixt two islands	423
Its coin, the natives, their cloaths, tongue, religion, the country	179, 180	Endures extreme cold, makes his will	425
<i>Malicams</i> , people of <i>Malabar</i>	243	Recovers, reimbarks with only two seamen, pre- pares for a second voyage into <i>Greenland</i> , dies with grief	425, 426
<i>Maniokoa</i> root	126	<i>Ment's</i> haven, the country about it, an altar of the natives, their sacrifices	424
<i>Mangam</i> fruit	206	Living creatures there, no rain in seven months	424, 425
<i>Mango</i> fruit	287	<i>Muciles</i>	311
<i>Mangostan</i> fruit	288	<i>Mulcovite</i> embassadors reception in <i>China</i>	494
<i>Mangaputeram</i> tree	255	Mushrooms	209
Manner of the <i>Jesuits</i> going to <i>Cocbin china</i>	741	Mutineers go away from <i>Columbus</i> to the coast of <i>Jamaica</i>	622
<i>Manahilis</i> island	437	Their barbarities	623
<i>Maratinnia</i> river in <i>Brasil</i>	26	They are offer'd pardon by <i>Columbus</i> , but continue obdurate	626
<i>Mardickers</i> or topplers	277	Are round	627
<i>Margaret</i> fort in <i>Brasil</i>	27	They submit and are pardon'd	
<i>Margaret</i> queen of <i>Norway</i>	411	Mutiny of <i>Brasilians</i> , appeas'd	
<i>Margarita</i> island	487	Mutiny against <i>Columbus</i>	62
<i>Margaritana</i> island	450	Muttering among <i>Columbus's</i> seamen, and muti- ny	634
Maritime observations	583	<i>Myrs</i> lake in <i>Egypt</i>	534
<i>Marcos</i> description	294		
<i>Marguis's</i> a <i>Spanish</i> <i>Arguin</i> arrives at the cape of <i>Good- hope</i>	322		
<i>Mars</i> taken prisoner, his depositions	110		
<i>Martin</i> kingdom	215		
<i>Martin Alonso</i> leaves <i>Columbus</i>	534		
Returns to him	540		
<i>Martins</i> , birds	313		
<i>Marygold</i>	301		
<i>Matigapatas</i> city in <i>India</i> describ'd, and its bridge	214		
<i>Mathapoura</i> fort in <i>Sumatra</i> taken by the <i>Dutch</i> , 187			
Mathematical instruments for sea	480		
Matrimony in <i>Cocbin china</i>	737		
<i>Matrice</i> town in <i>Brasil</i>	12		
Means for conversion of the <i>Cocbin-chinjes</i>	755		
Medals when they flourish'd	710		
Mediterranean sea, how it may empty it self	667		
<i>Melchior</i> earl takes a <i>Bassa</i> prisoner	334		
Serves prince <i>Sigmund</i>	335		
Makes incursions	ibid.		
Members of the old <i>Dutch</i> council of <i>Brasil</i> surrender the government	118		
<i>Mercenar</i> duke overthrows <i>Hassan Bassa</i>	334		
Divides his army, he and his brother-in-law die sud- denly	335		
Messenger from the <i>Portugueses</i> to the <i>Dutch</i> hang'd	99		
<i>Mill</i> island	436		
<i>Mina</i> , or <i>Mna</i> , its value	699		
Mines of sulphur in <i>Iceland</i>	385		
Miserable spectacle	125		
Mitken conversions in <i>Cocbin china</i>	742		
<i>Mitum Solis</i> plant	300		
Modesty of <i>Indians</i>	606		
<i>Momadavil</i> king of <i>Cocbin</i>	220		
Dies aboard the <i>Dutch</i> , and is succeeded by his brother	ibid.		
<i>Mogol Tartars</i>	493		
<i>Mongapa</i> river in <i>Brasil</i>	88		
Its fertility	ibid.		
		<i>N</i>	
		<i>Nabozza</i> island	625
		<i>Narhuah</i> , a great fish	405
		<i>Nayk</i> of <i>Madure</i> kingdom	260
		<i>Nardus</i>	285
		<i>Nayres</i> noble <i>Indians</i>	235
		Their marriages	236
		<i>Negapatan</i> city in <i>India</i> , fummon'd by the <i>Dutch</i> , 210	
		Surrendered to them	ibid.
		<i>Nereis</i> island describ'd	364
		New directions sent by the <i>Dutch</i> to <i>Brasil</i>	33
		New plantation	358
		New principality of <i>South-Wales</i>	440
		<i>Nicolson</i> , a <i>Dutch</i> captain deserts from the <i>Portugueses</i>	104
		<i>Nisabuff's</i> departure out of <i>Holland</i>	3
		Cuts the <i>Equisetial</i> , and arrives at <i>Brasil</i>	6
		An accident happens to him	116
		In order'd to <i>Rio de S. Francisco</i>	120
		In danger of drowning	12

# Index to the Second Volume.

Is sent to treat with the <i>Malabar</i> princes	221	Pale tree	225
His audience of the king of <i>Kalalang</i> , departs to	ibid.	Palega-Pagamei tree	225
<i>Perla</i> , and audience of that king	ibid.	Palmbang in <i>Sumatra</i> attack'd by the <i>Dutch</i>	186
Returns to <i>Perla</i> , and has a second audience,	221, 222	Its fortification, taken by the <i>Dutch</i>	189
Departs thence	223	<i>Pahpatan</i> lost	192
Goes to <i>Moson</i>	224	Palace of count <i>Maurice</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	21
<i>Hadari's</i> letter to the king	ibid.	Palace of the king of <i>Perla</i>	222
Returns to <i>Kulang</i> , is presented by the king of	ibid.	Palmetras, or palm tree woods in <i>Pernambuco</i>	10
<i>Kalalang</i>	225	Pampus fish	309
Goes to <i>Atengen</i> , is call'd to court, proposals made	226	<i>Pan</i> , or <i>Pubain</i> kingdom	181
to him and his answer	226	<i>Parabá</i> , cape, river, and city in <i>Brasil</i>	26 & 27
Is call'd to court again, and departs thence	229	Conquer'd by the <i>Dutch</i>	28
Goes to <i>Gouarou</i>	ibid.	<i>Paria</i> gulph	285, 286
His treaty with that queen	229	<i>Paris</i> tree	253
Goes to the queen of <i>Kulang</i>	230	<i>Parokeets</i>	313, 315
Returns to <i>Kulang</i>	231	<i>Parrot</i> fish	308
Takes leave of the court of <i>Gouarou</i> , and prince	232	<i>Patani</i> kingdom	182
<i>Barsette</i> <i>Pala</i>	232	Its climate, natives, and how they catch elephants	182, 183
Pursues his voyage, and comes to <i>Toutecrin</i>	236	Their trade	184
Retires to <i>Kulang</i>	261	Their language	ibid.
Goes to <i>Cochin</i> , is sent to <i>Columbo</i>	261	Patent of prince <i>Sigismund</i>	338
His return to <i>Holland</i>	321	<i>Patty</i> tree	301
Arrives at the cape of <i>Good hope</i>	322	<i>Pavate</i> , or <i>Valavelli</i> shrub	248
Sails to <i>St. Helen's</i> isle, passes the line	323	<i>Pearl</i> banks	261
Arrives in the <i>Tenel</i> , and gives an account to the	324	<i>Pearl</i> fishing, how perform'd, and <i>pearl</i> dust, 207,	261
company	324	<i>Pearls</i> in the <i>West</i> Indies	268
His third voyage, arrives at the cape of <i>Good hope</i> ,	325	<i>Pen</i> fish	307
lands at <i>Madagascar</i>	ibid. 325	<i>Penguin</i> towl	151
Is left there and never more heard of	326	<i>Pepper</i>	303
<i>Nigardineis</i> , its effects	358	<i>Perala</i> tree	322
<i>Nile</i> river, why it overflows	657	<i>Perlian</i> poils	195
<i>Nilikamaram</i> tree	254	<i>Peyce</i> kok, or fish kok	309
<i>Numerado</i> plant	292	<i>Pheasants</i>	218
<i>Nonfensual</i> fables of <i>Indians</i>	569	<i>Pillars</i> erected in the <i>Roman</i> ways at every mile,	287
<i>Norway</i> wonderfully fruitful	404	<i>Pimiquaco</i> , or <i>Papay</i>	130
<i>Norwegians</i> were not the first inhabitants of <i>Greenland</i>	427	<i>Piscadores</i> , or <i>Pebu</i> islands	158
Notable words of an <i>Indian</i>	564	<i>Pismire</i> eaters, or ant bears	319
Notable story of a <i>Cochin</i> chinese physician	734	<i>Pismires</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	18
<i>Nottingham's</i> island	456	<i>Pit</i> fish	408
Number of those sent from <i>Babia</i> to reinforce the	53	<i>Pleasant</i> law	723
revolted <i>Portuguese</i>	53	<i>Ploger</i> , a <i>French</i> earl, his generosity	332
<i>Nurotti</i> tree	254	<i>Pock</i> fish	308
O.		<i>Poero</i> bird	314
<i>O</i> Belisks and pyramids represented delicias	651	<i>Polion</i> the strongest in the world	15
<i>Oby</i> river	491	<i>Pollionous</i> sea-beam	185
<i>Odollam</i> tree	254	<i>Ponta</i> <i>Pedra</i> , a cape in <i>Brasil</i>	26
<i>Ojeda</i> flurs up the people in <i>Hispaniola</i> to rebellion,	598	<i>Pope's</i> grant to the king of <i>Spain</i>	546
but is forc'd away	401	<i>Perla</i> , its king and government	223
<i>Olau</i> <i>Trugger</i> , king of <i>Norway</i> , a christian	401	<i>Porcupine</i>	320
Old <i>Greenland</i> , describ'd	402	<i>Porco</i>	214
It is barren, its beasts, fishery, and white bears	402	<i>Porjena's</i> tomb	653
Its air	408	<i>Porto</i> <i>Francisco</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	26
<i>Olinda</i> city in <i>Brasil</i>	14	<i>Porto</i> <i>Lucna</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	27
<i>Omitana</i> , several sorts of them	759	<i>Porto</i> <i>Bello</i>	610
<i>Oranges</i>	304	<i>Portuguese</i> <i>Brasil</i>	33
<i>Oranges</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	332	<i>Portuguese</i> admiral, prisoner among the <i>Dutch</i> , exa-	100
Orders sent to <i>Minheer</i> <i>Dortmont</i>	94	mined	100
Orders concerning allowance of bread	111	<i>Portuguese</i> revolt from the <i>Dutch</i> in <i>Pejaka</i>	54
Original of the <i>Northern</i> nations	390	Play the masters	82
<i>Ormus</i> island	196	Believe cape <i>St. Augustin</i>	84
<i>Ormus</i> city in the <i>Portuguese</i> time	198	Kill all the <i>Dutch</i> in their service	99
Under the <i>Persians</i> , its cattle, the harbour, scarcity	198, 199	Attack <i>Itamarica</i>	101
of water	198, 199	Are defeated	104, 106
Drink of the inhabitants; account of the island,	201	Prepare to invade the <i>Dutch</i> <i>Brasil</i>	73
Val territories belonging to its kings, how they	205	Pretences of theirs for this invasion	ibid.
secur'd their sovereignty, their riches	205	They fall from <i>Babia</i> , their admiral's instructions,	ibid.
Its conquest by the <i>Persians</i> , and vast trade in former	206	they land their men, sail to <i>Pernambuco</i>	ibid.
ages	206	They leave the road	77
<i>Ovidio</i> , a <i>Spanish</i> author disprov'd	315	Endeavour to fire the <i>Dutch</i> ships	105
<i>Ounce</i> <i>Roman</i> and <i>Grecian</i>	703	Attack a wooden fort near <i>Arraife</i>	108
<i>Oxen</i> with bunches	318	Land on <i>Itamarica</i>	114
<i>Oxen</i> and <i>Cows</i> of <i>Java</i>	320	Leave it	116
<i>Oyl</i> of cinnamon and volatile salt	246	Batter the <i>Dutch</i> wooden fort	123
Its virtues	ibid.	Rebuild a fort	125
<i>Oylers</i>	311	When they came first into the <i>Persian</i> gulph,	203
P.		How they coasted to <i>India</i>	358
<i>P</i> <i>ACO</i> <i>Katinga</i>	189	Design to secure <i>Columbus</i> , their treachery	543
<i>P</i> <i>Pagan</i> temples in <i>Island</i>	186	Restore his men they had basely seiz'd	544
<i>Pajaneli</i> tree	249	<i>Portuguese</i> savour'd in <i>Cochin</i> china	740
Vol. II.		<i>Potatoes</i>	305
		9 I.	Prepa-

## Index to the Second Volume.

[illegible]



# Index to the Second Volume.

69	Sea hog	307	Standards of weights and measures, how to be perpe-
72	Sea louse	ibid.	suated to p. arity
99	Sea monster	310	Strip fish
237	Sea pigeon	308	Stock doves
149	Sea porpoise, or sea hog	305	Stone beam
730	Sea ports in <i>Cochin-china</i>	739	Stone fort in <i>Brasil</i>
632	Sea snake	308	Storms
387	Sea star	310	Stories of a Lion
315	Sea unicorn	418	Strand bird or ox eye
ibid.	<i>Schaffien Carvalls</i> made prisoner by the <i>Dutch</i> , his		Strange shower of ashes
739	confession	51	Strange light
409	He is discharg'd	52	Strange money
29	His second confession	55	Stratagems
401	Sett in <i>Cochin-china</i> that believes all to be nothing.	760	Streights of <i>Malacca</i>
155	Semisses	713	Succours sent to <i>Pejaka</i>
181	Sepulcher of an <i>Indian</i> saint	194	Suckers fish
17	<i>Serinbain</i> fort block'd up by and surrendered to the		Sucotyro, or sucotario strange beast
its divi-	<i>Portuguese</i>	81	Sudden change of weather
678	Serpents in <i>Brasil</i>	15	Sugar canes
687, 688	<i>Sextarius</i> , what measure it was	706	<i>Susatra</i> island, its situation, is divided into many
690	Shambles of man's flesh	552	kingdoms
ibid.	Sharks	309, 612	Unwholmessness of its air
301	Sheep of <i>Java</i>	330	Its natives, rivers, soil, earth, oil, language and man-
334	Shelk, its value	696	ners of the natives, their diet
314	Its weight	702	Summer islands, their state
	Shepherds near <i>Gamron</i>	196	Summons of the <i>Portuguese</i> to the fort of <i>Serinbain</i>
27	Shield hogs	30	80
148	Ship orange-tree arrives at <i>Arrecife</i> from <i>Holland</i>	94	Superstitions concerning eclipses in <i>Cochin-china</i>
the <i>English</i>	Ship taken by <i>Dunkirkers</i>	377	755
361	Ships sent to the river of <i>St. Francis</i> under <i>Will. Lam-</i>		<i>Susiboa</i> plant
with the	<i>berts</i> , an account of his expedition	98	291
ibid.	Ships sent out a cruising	109	Suspicion of treachery conceiv'd by the <i>Dutch</i> in <i>Brasil</i> ,
362	Ships arrive from <i>Holland</i> at <i>Arrecife</i>	117	as increas'd by letters from ships, resolution taken
7	Ships fitted to carry rebels out of <i>Hispaniola</i>	596	thereupon
138	<i>Shoops</i> marches to <i>Barretta</i>	117	It is renew'd
552	Returns to <i>Guyana</i>	120, 123	42
403	Short nose fish	308	Sword fish
6	Shrimps	400	310
209	Stampan flower	287	
556	Stankos, their horns	652	T. <i>Table</i> bay and fort, and creatures there
147	Step-flap fish	310	150
437	Siara river and captainship	30	<i>Table</i> mountain, and its bay, subject to storms.
125	Taken by the <i>Dutch</i>	ibid.	292
197	<i>Siberia</i> describ'd	71	<i>Tamarika</i> island in <i>Brasil</i>
148	Its inhabitants, how subdu'd by the <i>Moscovites</i>	51	35
135	revenues	492	The consequence of it
308	Siege of <i>Olompagh</i>	332	<i>Teparys</i>
discover'd	Siege of <i>Alba Regalis</i>	333	Their habit
529	<i>Sigismund</i> yields his country to <i>Busia</i>	339	They murder 37 <i>Portuguese</i>
530	Signs to discover the nearness of the cape of <i>Good</i>	156	They desert
552	<i>Hope</i>	414	Kill 15 <i>Portuguese</i> , and clear <i>Rio Grande</i> of them
582	Silver stones	414	102, 103
ibid.	<i>Simbar</i> Mangiram	297	Kill many <i>Portuguese</i>
412	<i>Sinapura</i> point	480	104
413	<i>Sir Thomas Roe's</i> Island	445	Leave the <i>Dutch</i> party
with them	<i>Slaggsford</i> city in <i>Greenland</i>	402	122
415	Skarmishes	108	<i>Tartars</i> , their habit
311	<i>Skraghlers</i> , people of <i>Greenland</i>	403	Their manners
252	Small camp form'd by the <i>Dutch</i> in <i>Brasil</i>	31	ibid.
<i>Dutch</i> in	<i>Smith's</i> birth, and first adventures	339	Their idolatry and lodgings
56	Is sent prisoner into <i>Tartary</i>	343	Their feasts, diet, how they become populous
ibid.	His usage there	ibid.	345, 346
ancil, and	How he made his escape, his passage to <i>Russia</i>	348	Antient buildings, commodities for tribute to the
56, 57	His observations in his journey	349	<i>Tartars</i> , good laws, but no lawyers, their slaves
317	Exploits of his	365	346
18	Snakes	316	Their arms
316	<i>Suorro Storlefonius</i> , author of the island <i>Edda</i>	400	347
149	Snow as small, hard, and dry as sand	458	Temples in <i>Cochin china</i>
310	Soals	310	759
306	Stone hard	402	<i>Tengepatrum</i> city
309	<i>Solidus</i>	713	357
306	Sorcery to discover the state of a soul departed	749	Terrible storm
331	Soldiers fish	309	541, 544
310	<i>Spaniards</i> left in <i>Hispaniola</i> destroy'd	554	Terrible tempests for many days
308	<i>Spaniards</i> sent about <i>Hispaniola</i>	558	Tellimonies out of <i>Columbus's</i> writings
409	<i>Spaniards</i> (twins) some leagues for intelligence	619	612
306	<i>Spanish</i> flies	317	Tetradrachma, its weight
331	Spiders	23 & 318	698, 699
308	<i>Spitzbergen</i> describ'd	420	Theft unknown in <i>Perca</i> in <i>India</i>
Sea	Stags	319	Thieves, how punish'd in <i>Cochin china</i>
			737
			<i>St. Thomas</i> city
			209
			Thousand legs
			316
			Three single combats
			336
			Three golden balls in <i>Africk</i>
			350
			Three strange monsters
			409
			Thurd fish
			306
			Timbo, or Tipo leaves
			132
			<i>Timorese</i> soldiers
			278
			Tin incorruptible trees in <i>Cochin-china</i>
			727
			Tobacco
			304
			<i>Tobolske</i> , capital of <i>Siberia</i>
			491
			Tokens observ'd by <i>Columbus</i> on his discovery
			525, &
			528
			Topassers
			277
			Torpedo

**Index to the Second Volume.**

Torpedo fish 151  
 Torre tree 259  
 Tortoises, how caught 583  
 Tortoise islands 583  
 Tortoise islands 583  
 Toward and his son *Erick* 400  
 Towkan, a bird in *Brasil* 417  
 Tzschibin village 417  
 At war with the *Portugueses* 418  
 Manners and customs of the people of the country, their way of living, and government 424  
 Towns and villages of *Yernambuco* 424  
 Trade of *Cochin-china* 719  
 Trade with *Indians* 613  
 Travado, a storm 613  
 Travancor kingdom 338  
 Treaty against burning concluded in *Brasil* 338  
 Trempies 713  
 Trials in *Cochin-china* 736  
 Tribute of *Gresaland* 410  
 Trinity island 483  
 Its natives 484  
 Trumpeter discovers the *Portugueses* designs upon *Yamari* 92  
 His journey discover'd 484  
 Tzschibin kingdom describ'd, its government and power 763, 764  
 The succession 764  
 Turdes 764  
 Tzschibabate port of the *ile of Ormus* 757  
 Twenty-fix baptis'd in *Cochin-china* 757  
 Two *Portugueses* condemn'd to death 713  
 Tyripipelin Pagod 713  
 Tzina temple 418

V.

Vander Voerden sent with credentials into *Holland*, &c. 471  
 Variation of the compass, how taken 471  
 Velutia mandara tree 251  
 Viceroys of *Travancor* comes to *Koolang* 338  
 Vidal solicits the exchange of prisoners 730  
 Villainy of four *Frenchmen* 730  
 Vines in *Java* 483  
 Violent storms 164 & 408  
 Virginia, its state 354  
 Hospitality and commodities there 356  
 Unfortunate Siege of *Caniza* 435  
 Unicorns 404, 406  
 Universe, how made 760  
 Voyages to *Guinea*, and the river of the *Amazon*, 359

W.

Wagener sets out and arrives at *Brasil* 496  
 Returns home and sails for the *East-Indies*, 497  
 Is sent to *Japan* 498  
 Returns to *Batavia*, goes to *Mainfari*, is sent governor to the cape of *Good-hope* 499  
 Returns to *Batavia*, is sent envoy to *Jawa*, falls thence to *Japan*, and back to *Batavia*, whence he returns to *Holland* 500  
 Walachia subjected to the emperor 341

X.

XACA, the *Cochin-chinese* philosopher, his opinion that all the world is nothing, and to all moral things 759, 760  
 More of his doctrine 760

Y.

Y Alamber bird 315  
 Yellow tail fish 306  
 Yvannas alligators 536

Z.

Z Agou tree 165  
 Zeal of *Cochin-chinese* converts 753  
 Zelandia fort in the island *Formosa*, surrender'd by the *Dutch* to the *Chingies* 174  
 Zabraba town 614  
 Zus, or Zurumbur, a shrub 647  
 Zwerts tortur'd 92

239	
611	
759	
297	
309	
305	
681	
711	
713	
710	
347	
445	
621	
144	
306	
359	
385	
314	
358	
1	
504	
394	
803	
193	
ibid.	
454	
579	
613	
686	
746	
800	
315	
315	
336	
165	
752	
174	
247	
92	

